Ministry of Industry and Commerce

وزارة الصناعة والتجارة

Business Activity Directory

Kingdom of Bahrain

Version no. August 2024

www.sijilat.bh

2030 البحرين BAHRAIN

سجلات SIJILAT نظام السجلات التجارية COMMERCIAL REGISTRATION PORTAL

حضرة صاحب الجلالة الملك حمد بن عيسى آل خليفة

ملك البلاد المعظم

حفظه الله ورعاه

صاحب السمو الملكي الأمير سلمان بن حمد آل خليفة

ولي العهد نائب القائد الأعلى رئيس مجلس الوزراء

حفظه الله ورعاه

المغفور له بإذن الله تعالى

الأمير الراحل الشيخ عيسى بن سلمان آل خليفة

Agriculture, animal production, and fishing

Business Activity Name	ISIC 4
Crop Production and Plant Propagation	011
Animal production	014-1
Animal production - production of eggs	014-2
Support activities for crop production	0161
Support activities for animal production	0162
Aquaculture	032

Mining and quarrying

Business Activity Name	ISIC 4
Extraction of crude petroleum and natural gas	06
Quarrying of stone, sand and clay	081-1
Quarrying of stone, sand and clay - Extraction of Marine Sand	081-2
Other Mining and quarrying	089
Support activities for petroleum and natural gas extraction - Technical services for oil and gas	0910-2
Support activities for other mining and quarrying	0990

Manufacturing

Business Activity Name	ISIC 4
Processing and preserving of meat - Workshop	101-1
Processing and preserving of meat - Factory	101-2
Processing and preserving of fish, crustaceans and molluscs - Workshop	102-1

Manufacturing

Business Activity Name	ISIC 4
Processing and preserving of fish, crustaceans and molluscs - Factory	102-2
Processing and preserving of fruit and vegetables - Workshop	103-1
Processing and preserving of fruit and vegetables - Factory	103-2
Manufacture of vegetable, animal, and fish oils and fats - Workshop	104-1
Manufacture of vegetable, animal, and fish oils and fats - Factory	104-2
Manufacture of dairy products - Workshop	105-1
Manufacture of dairy products - Factory	105-2
Manufacture of grain mill products, starches and starch products - Workshop	106-1
Manufacture of grain mill products, starches and starch products - Factory	106-2
Manufacture of other food products - Workshop	107-1
Manufacture of other food products - Factory	107-2
Manufacture of bakery products - Workshop	1071-1
Manufacture of bakery products - Factory	1071-2
Traditional Baker	10711
Manufacture of cocoa, chocolate and sugar confectionery - Workshop	1073-1
Manufacture of cocoa, chocolate and sugar confectionery - Factory	1073-2
Manufacture of prepared animal feeds - Workshop	108-1
Manufacture of prepared animal feeds - Factory	108-2
Manufacture of soft drinks; production of mineral waters and other bottled waters - Workshop	1104-1
Manufacture of soft drinks; production of mineral waters and other bottled waters - Factory	1104-2

Manufacturing

Business Activity Name	ISIC 4
Manufacturing and packaging of all kinds of Cigarette tobacco	12001
Manufacturing and packaging of all kinds of honeyed tobacco	12002
Manufacture of textiles - Workshop	13-1
Manufacture of textiles - Factory	13-2
Manufacture of wearing apparel - Workshop	140-1
Manufacture of wearing apparel - Factory	140-2
Apparel Tailoring Activities	14104
Manufacture of leather and related products - Workshop	15-1
Manufacture of leather and related products - Factory	15-2
Manufacture of wood and of products of wood and cork, except furniture; manufacture of articles of straw and plaiting materials	160
Carpentry Workshop	16225
Manufacture of paper and paper products - Workshop	17-1
Manufacture of paper and paper products - Factory	17-2
Printing	1811
Other Printing/ Engraving Services	18119
Service activities related to printing	1812
Reproduction of recorded media	182
Manufacture of coke oven products	191
Manufacture of refined petroleum products	192
Manufacture of basic chemicals	2011
Manufacture of fertilizers and nitrogen compounds - Workshop	2012-1
Manufacture of fertilizers and nitrogen compounds - Factory	2012-2
Manufacture of plastics and synthetic rubber in primary forms - Workshop	2013-1

Manufacturing

Business Activity Name	ISIC 4
Manufacture of plastics and synthetic rubber in primary forms - Factory	2013-2
Manufacture of pesticides and other agrochemical products	2021
Manufacture of paints, varnishes and similar coatings, printing ink and mastics - Workshop	2022-1
Manufacture of paints, varnishes and similar coatings, printing ink and mastics - Factory	2022-2
Manufacture of soap and detergents, cleaning and polishing preparations, perfumes and toilet preparations - Workshop	2023-1
Manufacture of soap and detergents, cleaning and polishing preparations, perfumes and toilet preparations - Factory	2023-2
Manufacture of other chemical products - Workshop	2029-1
Manufacture of other chemical products - Factory	2029-2
Manufacture of man-made fibres	203
Manufacture of basic pharmaceutical products and pharmaceutical preparations - Workshop	21-1
Manufacture of basic pharmaceutical products and pharmaceutical preparations - Factory	21-2
Manufacture of rubber products - Workshop	221-1
Manufacture of rubber products - Factory	221-2
Manufacture of plastics products - Workshop	222-1
Manufacture of plastics products - Factory	222-2
Manufacture of glass, fiberglass and their products - Workshop	231-1
Manufacture of glass, fiberglass and their products - Factory	231-2
Cutting of glass and mirrors	231052
Manufacture of non-metallic mineral products - Workshop	239-1
Manufacture of non-metallic mineral products - Factory	239-2

Manufacturing

Business Activity Name	ISIC 4
Manufacture of basic iron and steel	241
Manufacture of basic precious and other non-ferrous metals - Workshop	242-1
Manufacture of basic precious and other non-ferrous metals - Factory	242-2
Casting of metals - Workshop	243-1
Casting of metals - Factory	243-2
Manufacture of structural metal products - Workshop	2511-1
Manufacture of structural metal products - Factory	2511-2
Manufacture of tanks, reservoirs and containers of metal - Workshop	2512-1
Manufacture of tanks, reservoirs and containers of metal - Factory	2512-2
Manufacture of steam generators, except central heating hot water boilers	2513
Forging, pressing, stamping and roll-forming of metal; powder metallurgy - Workshop	2591-1
Forging, pressing, stamping and roll-forming of metal; powder metallurgy - Factory	2591-2
Welding, Blacksmith, and Fabrication Workshop	259190
Treatment and coating of metals; machining - Workshop	2592-1
Treatment and coating of metals; machining - Factory	2592-2
Manufacture of other fabricated metal products - Workshop	2599-1
Manufacture of other fabricated metal products - Factory	2599-2
Manufacture of computer, electronic and optical products - Workshop	26-1
Manufacture of computer, electronic and optical products - Factory	26-2

Manufacturing

Business Activity Name	ISIC 4
Manufacture of electric motors, generators, transformers and electricity distribution and control apparatus	271
Manufacture of batteries and accumulators	272
Manufacture of wiring and wiring devices	273
Manufacture of wiring devices	2733
Manufacture of electric lighting equipment	274
Manufacture of domestic appliances	275
Manufacture of other electrical equipment	279
Manufacture of machinery and equipment	28
Manufacture of motor vehicles	291
Manufacture of bodies (coachwork) for motor vehicles; manufacture of trailers and semi-trailers	292
Manufacture of parts and accessories for motor vehicles	293
Auto-Upholstery	293093
Ship Building and Repair Services	30111
Construction of Floating structures	30112
Building of Pleasure and sporting boats	3012
Manufacture of railway locomotives and rolling stock	302
Manufacture of air and spacecraft and related machinery	303
Manufacture of motorcycles	3091
Manufacture of bicycles and invalid carriages	3092
Manufacture of other transport equipment	3099
Manufacture of furniture - Workshop	310-1
Manufacture of furniture - Factory	310-2
Furniture upholstery and curtain making	31004

Manufacturing

Business Activity Name	ISIC 4
Manufacture of jewellery, bijouterie and related articles - Workshop	321-1
Manufacture of jewellery, bijouterie and related articles - Factory	321-2
Manufacture of musical instruments - Workshop	322-1
Manufacture of musical instruments - Factory	322-2
Manufacture of sports goods	323
Manufacture of games and toys - Workshop	324-1
Manufacture of games and toys - Factory	324-2
Manufacture of "scale" models and similar recreational models - Workshop	32405-1
Manufacture of "scale" models and similar recreational models - Factory	32405-2
Manufacture of medical and dental instruments and supplies - Workshop	325-1
Manufacture of medical and dental instruments and supplies - Factory	325-2
Manufacture of stationary, art and handcraft tools - Workshop	32901-1
Manufacture of stationary, art and handcraft tools - Factory	32901-2
Manufacture of protective safety equipment	32906
Manufacture of miscellaneous articles - Workshop	32907-1
Manufacture of miscellaneous articles - Factory	32907-2
Repair of fabricated metal products	3311
Repair of Machinery and equipment	3312
Repair of electronic, electrical, and optical equipment	3313
Repair and routine maintenance of ships	331501-1
Repair and routine maintenance of ships - Diving Services related to Marine Activities	331501-2

Manufacturing

Business Activity Name	ISIC 4
Repair and routine maintenance pleasure boats	331502
Repair and maintenance of aircraft and aircraft engines - Aircraft Line Maintenance Services	331504-1
Repair and maintenance of aircraft and aircraft engines - Aircraft Heavy Maintenance Services	331504-2
Repair and maintenance of aircraft and aircraft engines - Aircraft Washing Services	331504-3
Repair and maintenance of other Industrial equipment	3319
Installation of industrial machinery and equipment	332

Electricity, gas, steam and air conditioning supply

Business Activity Name	ISIC 4
Electric Power Generation	351001
Electric Power Transmission and Distribution	351002
Production & Distribution of Natural Gas	352
Steam and air conditioning supply	353

Water supply; sewerage, waste management and remediation activities

Business Activity Name	ISIC 4
Water collection, treatment and supply	36-1
Water collection, treatment and supply - Drilling of Artesian Water Wells	36-2
Sewerage	37

Water supply; sewerage, waste management and remediation activities

Business Activity Name	ISIC 4
Waste collection, treatment and disposal activities	381
Materials recovery - Workshop	383-1
Materials recovery - Factory	383-2
Materials recovery - Refrigerant Reclamation	383-3
Ship Recycling Services	383003
Treatment of Oil Waste	383009
Remediation activities and other waste management services	39-1
Remediation activities and other waste management services - Oil spills cleaning Service	39-2

Construction

Business Activity Name	ISIC 4
Construction of buildings	41
Construction of roads and railways	421
Construction of utility projects	422
Construction of other civil engineering projects	429
Demolition and site preparation	431
Offshore Reclamation	43129
Electrical Installation	4321
Heat, Air-Conditioning and Refrigeration Installation and Maintenance	43221
Plumbing and Sanitary ware fixing	43223
Other construction installation	4329
Building completion, finishing, and decor	433

Construction

Business Activity Name	ISIC 4
Other specialized construction activities	439

Sale/Trading Activities; repair of motor vehicles and motorcycles

Business Activity Name	ISIC 4
Sale/Trade of motor vehicles	451
Maintenance and repair of motor vehicles	452
Car Washing and Polishing	45205
Sale/Trade of motor vehicle parts and accessories	453
Sale/Trade of motorcycles, including mopeds	45401
Sale/Trade of parts and accessories for motorcycles	45402
Maintenance and repair of motorcycles	45403
Trading on a fee or exchange or on contract basis or auctions	461
Sale/Trade of agricultural raw materials	46201
Sale/Trade of animals	46205-1
Sale/Trade of animals - Fish/Marine species	46205-2
Sale/Trade of leather (untanned amimal skin)	46206
Sale/ Veterinary Medicines	4649511
Sale and installation of telecommunications equipment and parts	4652
Sale/Trade of agricultural machinery, equipment and supplies	4653
Sale/Trade in other machinery and equipment and parts	4659-1
Sale/Trade in other machinery and equipment and parts - Medical Devices, Supplies and Related Spare Parts	4659-2
Sale/Trade of Transportation spare parts and equipment except for Motor Vehicles, Motor cycles.	46593-1

Sale/Trading Activities; repair of motor vehicles and motorcycles

Business Activity Name	ISIC 4
Sale/Trade of Transportation spare parts and equipment except for Motor Vehicles, Motor cycles. - Import, export and sale of aircraft spare parts	46593-2
Sale/Trade of solid, liquid and gaseous fuels and related products - Collecting used oil and waste lubricating oils	4661-1
Sale/Trade of solid, liquid and gaseous fuels and related products - Specialty petroleum products import	4661-2
Sale/Trade of solid, liquid and gaseous fuels and related products - Exporting blended petroleum products.	4661-5
Sale/Trade of solid, liquid and gaseous fuels and related products - Exporting recycled used oils, lubricants, and greases	4661-6
Sale/Trade of solid, liquid and gaseous fuels and related products - Direct export of petroleum products	4661-7
Sale/Trade of solid, liquid and gaseous fuels and related products - Aircraft Refueling Services	4661-8
Sale/Trade in metals and metal ores	4662
Sale/Trade of construction materials, hardware, plumbing and heating equipment and supplies	4663
Sale/Trading in industrial chemicals	46691-1
Sale/Trading in industrial chemicals - Substances subject to the convention on the prohibition of Chemical Weapons	46691-2
Sale/Trading in industrial chemicals - Sales/Trading in Refrigerants	46691-3
Sale/Trading in fertilizers,Soil Conditioners and Pesticides	46692
Sale/Trading in cleaning materials	46693
Sale/Trading in plastic material and rubber products	46694
Sale/Trading in paper and cardboard products	46695
Sale/Trading in waste and scrap	46699
Sale/Trading in other industrial products/ raw material	466999

Sale/Trading Activities; repair of motor vehicles and motorcycles

Business Activity Name	ISIC 4
General Trade	469-1
General Trade - including sale/trade of Food and Beverages	469-2
General Trade - including sale/trade of tobacco products	469-3
General Trade - including sale/trade of Food, Beverages, and tobacco products	469-4
Authorised Distributor	4699
Sale/Trade of Food and Beverages	4721-1
Sale/Trade of Food and Beverages - Fish/Marine species	4721-2
Sale/Trade of Food and Beverages - Health Food	4721-3
Sale of tobacco products	4723
Sale of fuel in specialized stores - Land Service Station	473-1
Sale of fuel in specialized stores - Marine Service Station	473-2
Sale/Trade of information, and communications equipment and related software	474
Sale/Trade of Video Games	47412
Sale/Trade of textiles	4751
Sale/Trade of carpets, rugs, wall and floor coverings	4753
Sale/Trade of Furniture and all household articles	47591
Sale/Trade of Electrical and electronic Household appliances	47592
Sale/Trade of household utensils, cutlery, glassware, and related items	47593
Sale/Trade of lighting equipment and articles of lighting	47594
Sale/Trade of Musical Instruments	47595
Sale/Trade of Safety Systems	47596
Sale/Trade of books, magazines, newspapers	47611

Sale/Trading Activities; repair of motor vehicles and motorcycles

Business Activity Name	ISIC 4
Sale/Trade of Stationary, arts and crafts, and office/professional tools and apparatus	47612
Sale/Tradeof music and video recordings, and cinematographic films	4762
Sale/Trade of sporting equipment	4763
Sale/Trade of games and toys	4764
Sale/Trade of clothing, footwear, apparel accessories, and leather articles	4771
Sale/Trade of pharmaceutical and medical goods - Pharmacy (Importing)	4772-1
Sale/Trade of pharmaceutical and medical goods - Pharmacy (non- importing)	4772-2
Sale/Trade of pharmaceutical and medical goods - Hospital Pharmacy	4772-3
Sale/Trade of pharmaceutical and medical goods - Sale of Simple Medicine	4772-4
Sale/Trade of pharmaceutical and medical goods - Sale of Alternative medicine products	4772-5
Sale/Trade of pharmaceutical and medical goods - Scientific Office or Pharmaceutical Services Center	4772-6
Sale/Tradeof perfumery, cosmetic and toiletries	47723
Sale/Trade of photographic, optical and precision equipment	47731
Sale/Trade of optical goods; Activities of Opticians	47732
Sale/Trade of jewellery and related articles - Gold and Precious Jewellery	47733-1
Sale/Trade of jewellery and related articles - Silver and Related Articles	47733-2
Sale/Trade Pet/ Animal food and accessories	477341
Sale/Trade of flowers, plants,and seeds	47735-1

Sale/Trading Activities; repair of motor vehicles and motorcycles

Business Activity Name	ISIC 4
Sale/Trade of souvenirs, craft work, religious articles, stamps and coins; Activities of commercial art galleries	47736-1
Sale/Trade of souvenirs, craft work, religious articles, stamps and coins; Activities of commercial art galleries - Crafts activities	47736-2
Sale/Trade of souvenirs, craft work, religious articles, stamps and coins; Activities of commercial art galleries - Sale/Trade of artwork in art galleries	47736-3
Sale of household fuel oil, coal and fuel wood - (excluding gas cylinders)	47737-1
Sale of household fuel oil, coal and fuel wood - LPG Bottling Stations	47737-2
Sale of household fuel oil, coal and fuel wood - LPG Cylinder Distribution	47737-4
Sale of household fuel oil, coal and fuel wood - Refilling of Refrigerant Cylinders	47737-5
Sale of second-hand goods	4774
Retail sale via Internet	4791
In flight sales services	479991

Transportation and storage

Business Activity Name	ISIC 4
Passenger rail transport, interurban	4911
Freight rail transport	4912
Passenger land transport - Transport of passengers (Domestic)	49211-1
Passenger land transport - Transport of passengers (International)	49211-2
Passenger land transport - Public Transportation	49211-3

Transportation and storage

Business Activity Name	ISIC 4
Taxi - Taxi	49221-1
Taxi - Call Taxi	49221-2
Freight transport by road - Internal Transport of goods	4923-1
Freight transport by road - International Transport of goods	4923-2
Sea and coastal passenger water transport	5011
Sea and coastal freight water transport - Ship Management and operation Services	5012-1
Sea and coastal freight water transport - Ports, Maritime and/or Logistics Service in Ports and Private Jetties	5012-2
Renting of barge, tug boats and ships	502103
Passenger Air Transport - Schedule Passengers airline services	5110-1
Passenger Air Transport - Non-schedule passengers operators services	5110-2
Passenger Air Transport - Private Executive Operators Services	5110-3
Passenger Air Transport - Low Cost Carrier services	5110-4
Passenger Air Transport - Air Taxi Services	5110-5
Freight air transport - Schedule cargo airline services	5120-1
Freight air transport - Non schedule cargo operators services	5120-2
Warehousing and storage	521-1
Warehousing and storage - Storage of Food Items	521-2
Warehousing and storage - Storage of Pharmaceutical products	521-3
Warehousing and storage - Storage of Medical Devices	521-4
Other service activities incidental to land transportation- Provision of smart applications for public transport activities	52210
Operating of Car Parks	522103
Towing and Road Side Assistance	522105

Transportation and storage

Business Activity Name	ISIC 4
Valet Parking Services	522110
Service activities incidental to water transportation - Management and Operation of Ports and Private Jetties	52220-1
Service activities incidental to water transportation - Management and Operation of Dry Dock	52220-2
Service activities incidental to water transportation - Towage	52220-3
Service activities incidental to water transportation - Navigational Aid Services	52220-4
Service activities incidental to water transportation - Bunkering Services	52220-5
Service activities incidental to water transportation - Pilotage	52220-6
Operating parks for Boats and Yachts	522209
Service activities incidental to air transportation - Airport Operator	5223-1
Service activities incidental to air transportation - Aircraft Handling Services Airlines	5223-2
Service activities incidental to air transportation - Aircraft Handling Services for Cargo	5223-3
Service activities incidental to air transportation - Private Aircraft Handling Services	5223-4
Service activities incidental to air transportation - Passenger Services	5223-5
Service activities incidental to air transportation - Airport Lounge Operations	5223-6
Service activities incidental to air transportation - Air and Ground Telecommunications Services for aircrafts	5223-7
Service activities incidental to air transportation - Areal Work air transport Operator services	5223-8
Cargo handling	5224-1

Transportation and storage

Business Activity Name	ISIC 4
Cargo handling - Stevedoring	5224-2
Cargo Clearance	522901
Sea Freight Agent	5229021
Shipping Agent	5229022
Air Cargo Agent	522903
Goods re-export and other logistics value add services	5229091
Transport and storage of currency and precious items	5229092
Courier Services - Local Courier and Express Operators up to 30 Kg	532-1
Courier Services - International Courier and Express Companies up to 30 Kg	532-2
Courier Services - Distribution of newspapers and magazines and promotional materials transport companies	532-3

Accommodation and food service activities

Business Activity Name	ISIC 4
Short term accommodation activities	551-1
Short term accommodation activities - Floating Tourist Hotel	551-2
Other accommodation	559
Food and beverage service activities	5610-1
Food and beverage service activities - With Sheesha	5610-2
Food and beverage service activities - Restaurants for Tourist Services	5610-3
Food and beverage service activities - Floating Tourist Restaurant	5610-4

Accommodation and food service activities

Business Activity Name	ISIC 4
Food and beverage service activities - Mobile Food Service Activities	5610-5
Catering Services	5621-1
Catering Services - Aircraft Catering Services	5621-2
Catering Services - Ship Chandelling Agent	5621-3
Food Transportation Companies	56291
Arranging and Assembling Tours	7990

Information and communication

Business Activity Name	ISIC 4
Publishing of books, periodicals and other publishing activities - press, publishing, and distribution [Daily Newspaper]	581-1
Publishing of books, periodicals and other publishing activities - press, publishing, and distribution [Non - Daily Newspaper]	581-2
Publishing of books, periodicals and other publishing activities - press, publishing, and distribution [Specialized - Newspaper]	581-3
Publishing of books, periodicals and other publishing activities - Publishing and Distribution Houses	581-4
Publishing of books, periodicals and other publishing activities - Office Printing Services	581-5
Software publishing	582
Motion picture, video and television programme activities	591
Motion picture projection activities	5914
Sound recording and music publishing activities	592
Radio broadcasting	601

Information and communication

Business Activity Name	ISIC 4
Television programming and broadcasting activities	602
Telecommunication Activities - Individual License for internet exchange	61-1
Telecommunication Activities - Individual license for public access mobile radio services	61-10
Telecommunication Activities - Individual License for Earth Station Services	61-11
Telecommunication Activities - Individual license for national wireless services	61-12
Telecommunication Activities - Fixed Telecommunications Infrastructure Network License	61-13
Telecommunication Activities - Class License for internet services	61-2
Telecommunication Activities - Individual license for international telecommunications facilities	61-3
Telecommunication Activities - Individual license for international telecommunications services	61-4
Telecommunication Activities - Individual license for mobile telecommunications	61-5
Telecommunication Activities - Class License for value added services	61-6
Telecommunication Activities - Individual license for national fixed services	61-7
Internet/ Call Cabins	619001
Computer programming activities	6201
Computer Consultancy and computer facilities management activities	6202
Other information technology and computer services activities	6209
Data processing, hosting and related activities	6311
Operations of eMarketplaces / websites / web portals	6312

Information and communication

Business Activity Name	ISIC 4
Other information service activities	6399

Financial and insurance activities

Business Activity Name	ISIC 4
Banks - Conventional Retail Banks - Locally Incorporated	64191-1
Banks - Conventional Retail Banks - Foreign Branch	64191-2
Banks - Conventional Wholesale Banks - Locally Incorporated	64191-3
Banks - Conventional Wholesale Banks - Foreign Branch	64191-4
Banks - Retail Banks (Islamic Principles) - Locally Incorporated	64191-5
Banks - Retail Banks (Islamic Principles) - Foreign	64191-6
Banks - Wholesale Banks (Islamic Principles) - Locally Incorporated	64191-7
Banks - Wholesale Banks (Islamic Principles) - Foreign	64191-8
Money Exchange Companies	64193
Activities of holding companies	642
Trusts, Funds and Similar Financial Entities - Special Purpose Vehicle (SPV)	643-1
Trusts, Funds and Similar Financial Entities - Trust Service Provider Subsidiaries	643-2
Trusts, Funds and Similar Financial Entities - Fund Company	643-3
Trusts, Funds and Similar Financial Entities - Insurance Pools & Syndicates	643-4
Trusts, Funds and Similar Financial Entities - General Partner of Investment Limited Partnerships	643-5
Trusts, Funds and Similar Financial Entities - Securitization	643-6

Financial and insurance activities

Business Activity Name	ISIC 4
Trusts, Funds and Similar Financial Entities - Collective Investment Undertaking	643-7
Trusts, Funds and Similar Financial Entities - Private Investment Undertaking	643-8
Other credit granting activities - Financing Companies	6492-1
Other credit granting activities - Microfinance Institutions	6492-2
Selling and buying shares and securities for company's account only	64991
Insurance/ Re-insurance Activities - Insurance and Re-insurance Companies - Locally	6500-1
Insurance/ Re-insurance Activities - Insurance and Re-insurance Companies - Branch	6500-2
Insurance/ Re-insurance Activities - Captive Insurance Companies	6500-3
Administration of financial markets - Licensed Exchanges	6611-1
Administration of financial markets - Licensed Clearing, Settlement and Central Depository Systems	6611-2
Security and commodity contracts brokerage - Licensed Securities Discount Broker	6612-1
Security and commodity contracts brokerage - Licensed Securities Broker	6612-2
Security and commodity contracts brokerage - Licensed Securities Broker-Dealer	6612-3
Security and commodity contracts brokerage - Licensed Securities Clearing Member	6612-4
Commodity Contracts Brokerage	661202-1
Commodity Contracts Brokerage - International Brokerage of Oil and Gas	661202-2
Other activities auxiliary to financial service activities - Investment Business Firm, Category 3	6619-1

Financial and insurance activities

Business Activity Name	ISIC 4
Other activities auxiliary to financial service activities - Ancillary Service Providers - Others	6619-10
Other activities auxiliary to financial service activities - Crowdfunding Platform Operator	6619-12
Other activities auxiliary to financial service activities - Account Information Service Provider (AISP)	6619-13
Other activities auxiliary to financial service activities - Payment Initiation Service Provider (PISP)	6619-14
Other activities auxiliary to financial service activities - Trust Service Provider – Category A	6619-15
Other activities auxiliary to financial service activities - Trust Service Provider – Category B	6619-16
Other activities auxiliary to financial service activities - Crypto-asset services / Category 1	6619-17
Other activities auxiliary to financial service activities - Crypto-asset services / Category 2	6619-18
Other activities auxiliary to financial service activities - Crypto-asset services / Category 3	6619-19
Other activities auxiliary to financial service activities - Representitive Office of Foreign companies providing regulated activities	6619-2
Other activities auxiliary to financial service activities - Crypto-asset services / Category 4	6619-20
Other activities auxiliary to financial service activities - Ancillary Service Providers-Third Party Administrators(TPA)	6619-3
Other activities auxiliary to financial service activities - Fund Administrator	6619-4
Other activities auxiliary to financial service activities - Registrar License	6619-5
Other activities auxiliary to financial service activities - Ancillary Service Providers - Card Processing	6619-6

Financial and insurance activities

Business Activity Name	ISIC 4
Other activities auxiliary to financial service activities - Ancillary Service Providers - Credit Reference Bureau	6619-7
Other activities auxiliary to financial service activities - Ancillary Service Providers - Payment Service Provider	6619-8
Other activities auxiliary to financial service activities - Ancillary Service Providers - Shari'a Advisory/Review Services	6619-9
Risk and damage evaluation (Loss Adjusters)	6621
Insurance Brokers	6622
Other activities auxiliary to insurance and pension funding - Insurance Consultants	6629-1
Other activities auxiliary to insurance and pension funding - Insurance Managers	6629-2
Other activities auxiliary to insurance and pension funding - Actuaries	6629-3
Fund management activities - Investment Business Firm, Category 1	663-1
Fund management activities - Investment Business Firm, Category 2	663-2
Fund management activities - Investment Business Firm, Category 4	663-3

Real estate activities

Business Activity Name	ISIC 4
Real estate activities with own or leased property	681
Real estate activities on a fee or contract basis - Management of Real estate	682-1

Real estate activities

Business Activity Name	ISIC 4
Real estate activities on a fee or contract basis - brokerage in Real estate	682-2
Duty Free Services	682091

Professional, scientific and technical activities

Business Activity Name	ISIC 4
Legal activities - Lawyers	691-1
Legal activities - Foreign Legal Consultancy Offices	691-2
Accounting Activities - Audit Firms	692-1
Accounting Activities - Booking-keeping / Accounting firms	692-2
Accounting Activities - Tax Advisory Services	692-4
Activities of head offices or Management Offices	701-1
Activities of head offices or Management Offices - Hospitality Management	701-2
Activities of head offices or Management Offices - Drilling for oil and gas outside Bahrain	701-3
Activities of head offices or Management Offices - Offshore Contracting/EPC	701-4
Management consultancy activities	702
Public Relations	70209
Architectural and engineering activities and related technical consultancy - Categories (A), (B), (C) – Engineering Offices	711-1
Architectural and engineering activities and related technical consultancy - Categories (D), (E) - Companies having their own Engineering Departments	711-2

Professional, scientific and technical activities

Business Activity Name	ISIC 4
Architectural and engineering activities and related technical consultancy - Category (K) – Opinion Office	711-3
Architectural and engineering activities and related technical consultancy - Category (F) – Engineering Laboratories and testing activities	711-4
Architectural and engineering activities and related technical consultancy - Renewable Energy Engineering	711-5
Architectural and engineering activities and related technical consultancy - Energy efficiency services	711-6
Testing, Inspection, and Certification Services - ISO Standards Consulting	71202-1
Testing, Inspection, and Certification Services - ISO Standards Certification	71202-2
Performance testing of complete machinery: motors, computers, electronic equipment etc.	71205
Performance testing of automobiles	71206-1
Performance testing of automobiles - Vehicles Technical Inspection	71206-2
Other Testing and analysis activities	71209-1
Research and experimental development on natural sciences and engineering	721
Research and experimental development on social sciences and humanities	722
Publicity and Advertising	73101
Fixing and Removing of Advertisement Boards	73103
Other Marketing/ Promotion Activities	73109
Public opinion polling	732
Fashion Design	741010
Jewellery Design	741011

Professional, scientific and technical activities

Business Activity Name	ISIC 4
Interior Decoration	74102
Graphic Design	74103
Other Specialized Design Activities	74109
Photographic activities	742-1
Photographic activities - Laboratory for developing colour films	742-2
Chef	7490901
Veterinary activities	75
Other building and industrial cleaning activities	8129-1
Organization of conventions, events, and trade shows	823-1
Packaging activities	8292-1
Operational of recreational water transportation facilities	932902-1

Administrative and support service activities

Business Activity Name	ISIC 4
Renting and leasing of motor vehicles	771-1
Renting and leasing of motor vehicles - Luxury Vehicles Rental With Driver	771-2
Renting and leasing of recreational and sports goods	7721
Renting of video tapes and disks	7722
Renting and leasing of other personal and household goods	7729
Renting and operational leasing of machinery and equipment	77301
Motorcycle Rental	773021
Renting and operational leasing of water-transport equipment	77303

Administrative and support service activities

Business Activity Name	ISIC 4
Selling, Renting, and operational leasing of Aircraft or air transport equipment	77304
Renting and operational leasing of office machinery and equipment	77307
Renting of Animals	77309
Leasing of intellectual property and similar products, except copyrighted works	774
Recruiting Manpower Agency	781
Activities of Attraction and Nomination For Senior Executive Positions	7810
Employment Office	782
Travel office activities - Travel Agencies Office	7911-1
Travel office activities - Airline General Sales Agent	7911-2
Travel office activities - Direct Sales for the airline operating in Bahrain	7911-3
Travel office activities - Sales of private air transport services	7911-4
Operation of Land Tours - Internal Transport of Tourists	791202-1
Operation of Land Tours - International Transport of Tourists	791202-2
Operation of Sea/Diving Tours - Operation of Sea/Diving Tours without Pearl Diving	791203-1
Operation of Sea/Diving Tours - Operation of Sea/Diving Tours with Pearl Diving	791203-2
Reservation/Ticket Sales Activities for entertainment or recreational purposes (excluding air transportation)	79902
Visitor Assistance Services	79903
Offices for the coordination of medical treatments	79904
Computer Reservation System for air transportation	799091
Private security activities	801

Administrative and support service activities

Business Activity Name	ISIC 4
Security systems service activities	802
Combined facilities support activities (excluding guard and security activities)	811
General cleaning of buildings	8121
Other building and industrial cleaning activities - Public and Private utility Contracts	8129-2
Landscape care and maintenance service activities	813
Office administrative and support activities - Office administrative and support activities	821-1
Office administrative and support activities - Business Incubators and Accelerators	821-2
Activities of call centres	822
Organization of conventions, events, and trade shows - Offices for Organizing tourism festivals	823-2
Activities of collection agencies and credit bureaus	8291-1
Activities of collection agencies and credit bureaus - Tax Reclaim Services	8291-2
Packaging activities - Packaging of Food	8292-2
Packaging activities - Packaging of Chemicals	8292-3
Packaging activities - Packaging of Cosmetics or herbs	8292-4
Packaging activities - Packaging of vegetable/ animal/ fish oil	8292-5
Other business support service activities	8299-1
Other business support service activities - Clearance of Government Transactions	8299-2
Other business support service activities - Enforcement Agent	8299-3
Other business support service activities - Employment Registration Center	8299-4

Education

Business Activity Name	ISIC 4
Pre-primary	85101
Private Education - National Private School	8521-1
Private Education - National Educational Institute	8521-2
Technical and Vocational Training - Management and Business Training Centers and Institutes	8522-1
Technical and Vocational Training - Vocational and Technical Centers and Institutes	8522-2
Higher education	8530
Sports Instruction (baseball, basketball, cricket, football, swimming, or any sports Instruction activity not specified elsewhere)	854101
Horse Riding Instruction	854103
Scuba Diving Instructions	8541041
Martial Arts Instruction	854105
Fitness/ Yoga Instruction	854106
Other Sports and recreation education	854109
Performing arts/ drama school	85421
Design of Training Programs	854953
Other education	85499
Training in Civil Aviation	854991
Educational support activities	855-1
Educational support activities - Educational Services Offices for Students Studying Abroad	855-2

Human health and social work activities

Business Activity Name	ISIC 4
Translation and interpretation	74901
Valuation/ evaluation Activities	74902
Security Consulting	749031
Agriculture related consultancy	749032
Environment related consultancy	749033
Tourism related consultancy	7490341
Water resources related consultancy	7490342
Family Counseling	7490343
Other professional, scientific and technical activities	74909
General Hospital - General Hospital	86101-1
General Hospital - Teaching Hospital	86101-2
Specialized Hospital - Specialized Medical Hospital	86102-1
Specialized Hospital - Specialized Surgical Hospital	86102-2
Specialized Hospital - Specialized Obstetrics and Gynecology Hospital	86102-3
Specialized Hospital - Specialized Pediatric Hospital	86102-4
Specialized Hospital - Specialized Rehabilitation Hospital	86102-5
Specialized Hospital - One Day Surgery Hospital	86102-6
Specialized medical clinic	86201
Non-specialized medical clinics	86202
Dental Practice	86203
Other Medical center - General Medical Center	86209-1
Other Medical center - Residential nursing care facilities	86209-2
Other Medical center - Multi-Specialty Medical Center	86209-3
Other Medical center - Specialized Medical Center	86209-4

Human health and social work activities

Business Activity Name	ISIC 4
Other Medical center - Mobile Medical Center	86209-5
Other Medical center - General Dental Center	86209-6
Other Medical center - Specialized Dental Center	86209-7
Other Medical center - Multi-Specialty Dental Center	86209-8
Other Medical center - Mobile Dental Center	86209-9
Radiology Center - Comprehensive Radiology Center	862092-1
Radiology Center - Preliminary Radiology Unit	862092-2
Radiology Center - Specialized Radiology Unit	862092-3
Medical Laboratory - General Medical Laboratory	869002-1
Medical Laboratory - Preliminary Medical Laboratory	869002-2
Medical Laboratory - Specialized Medical Laboratory	869002-3
Medical Laboratory - Blood Collection Unit	869002-4
Medical Laboratory - Dental Laboratory	869002-5
Medical Laboratory - Sleep Lab	869002-6
Physiotherapy Centre	869003
Ambulance Services - Air Ambulance Services	869005-2
Alternative Medicine - Alternative Medicine Center	869007-1
Alternative Medicine - Alternative Medicine Unit	869007-2
Other human health activities	869009
Post addiction Rehabilitation centers - Without Accommodation	872-1
Post addiction Rehabilitation centers - With Accommodation	872-2
Residential care activities for the elderly and disabled	873
Other residential care activities	879
Social work activities without accommodation for the elderly and disabled - Centers For People With Disabilities	881-1

Human health and social work activities

Business Activity Name	ISIC 4
Social work activities without accommodation for the elderly and disabled - Daycare For Elderly	881-2
Child day-care Activities	88902
Other social work activities without accommodation	88909

Arts, entertainment, sports and recreation

Business Activity Name	ISIC 4
Production of live theatrical presentations and other stage productions	90001
Operation of concert and theatre halls and other art facilities	90002
Activities of sculptors, painters, cartoonists, etc.	90003
Other creative, arts, and entertainment activities	90009
Library and archives activities	9101
Museums activities and operation of historical sites and buildings	9102
Botanical/ zoological gardens and nature reserves activities	9103
Operation of sports facilities	9311
Activities of private sports clubs	9312
Activities of producers or promoters of sports events	931901
Activities of amusement parks and theme parks	9321
Other amusement and recreation activities	9329
Rental of Swimming Pools	932901
Operational of recreational water transportation facilities - Hiring yachts, boats and jet skies	932902-2
Operation of halls/facilities for entertainment games and recreational facilities	932910

Personal service activities; Repair Activities

Business Activity Name	ISIC 4
Repair of computers and peripheral equipment	9511
Repair of communication equipment	9512
Repair of consumer electronics	9521
Repair of household appliances and home and garden equipment	9522
Repair of footwear and leather goods	9523
Repair of furniture and home furnishings	9524
Repair of other personal and household goods	9529
Washing and (dry-) cleaning of textile and fur products	9601
Ironing of textiles and fur products	960111
Hairdressing and other beauty treatment - Men	9602-1
Hairdressing and other beauty treatment - Ladies	9602-2
Beauty and Hairdressing Expert	9602901
Massage Parlours and other relaxation and bathing techniques services - Men	96092-1
Massage Parlours and other relaxation and bathing techniques services - Ladies	96092-2
Pet Care services; Animal Training	96093
Consultancy in Animal Taming	960931
Other personal service activities	960990
Personal shopper	9609901
Personal Events Planners	960991

Agriculture, animal production, and fishing

سجلات
SIJILAT
نظام السجلات التجارية
COMMERCIAL REGISTRATION PORTAL

Agriculture, animal production, and fishing

ISIC4	Business activity
011	Crop Production and Plant Propagation

Description

Includes the growing of all types of crop, as well as the production of all vegetative planting materials including cuttings, suckers and seedlings for direct plant propagation or to create plant grafting stock into which selected scion is grafted for eventual planting to produce crops. This Activity also includes post-harvest crop activities and seed processing for propagation.

Business Requirements

Age

18 and above

Allowed for Nationalities

Bahraini 100%	GCC 100%
American 100%	Singaporean 100%
Icelander 100%	Liechtenstein er 100%
Norwegian 100%	Swiss 100%

Foreign Allowed up to 100%

Legal Type

It is allowed to register according to the legal forms mentioned below

Allowed for Individual Commercial Registration (ICR) : Yes

Allowed for Company Commercial Registration (CCR) : Yes

- Bahrain Shareholding Company (Public)
- With Limited Liability Company
- Branch of a Foreign Company
- Bahrain Shareholding Company (Closed)
- Partnership Company
- Simple Commandite Company
- Commandite By Shares Company
- Non Profit Company

Required Step of Licenses and Approvals

Ministry / Directorate	License / Approval Requirements	Approval Type
Municipality Affairs	Site Approval for Crop Production and Plant Propagation	Post
Agricultural Health Directorate	Approval of the activity of Crop Production and Plant Propagation Activities	Post

Municipality Affairs (Post) (011)

Approval Name	Description	Estimated Time
Site Approval for Crop Production and Plant Propagation	Municipality Approval for the Commercial Registration address or the site in which the Activity will be practiced	3 Days

Fee Details (if any)

10 BD

License Information

General Conditions:
1. Size of shop/premises must be sufficient for the activity
2. Businesses may not carry out the activity outside the boundaries of the shop/ premises
3. It is prohibited to display or store any items or equipment outside the shop / premises boundary without prior approval from the Municipality. In the event of non-compliance, the Ministry of Municipality Affairs has the right to take necessary action.
4. Maintain cleanliness of the site
5. Comply with the parking space regulations as per the Construction regulatory requirements

Activity Specific Conditions:
1. The farm or plantation nursery must be in compliance with the Construction Regulatory Requirements (Refer to Section 7 of Cabinet's Decision (28) of the year 2009 regarding the Regulatory Requirements of Construction for various areas in the Kingdom of Bahrain)
2. The commercial registration can be registered under an administration office provided the availability of an official farm or plantation nursery that is in compliant to the construction regulatory requirements

Note: Uploading pictures of the site/shop may expedite the process of obtaining

approval

Required Documents

- Shop photos

Other Documents

- Cabinet's Decision (56) of the year 2022 regarding the Regulatory Requirements of Construction for various areas in the Kingdom of Bahrain

Agricultural Health Directorate (Post) (011)

Approval Name	Description	Estimated Time
Approval of the activity of Crop Production and Plant Propagation Activities	Approval of the activity of Crop Production and Plant Propagation Activities	5 Days

Fee Details (if any)

There is no Estimated Processing Time (Days) in this license.

License Information

• The growing site should be within the agricultural zone or suitable for the specified agricultural activity.
• There must be a water source in the site and the water quality should be suitable for irrigating plants.

Operational requirements :
• The growing site should keep continuously a record of the varieties of plants grown, their quantities, agricultural pest incidence, and how they were controlled. This record should be presented when demanded by the formal authority.
• The growing site should contain a separate special store for fertilizers and pesticides in use. Taking into consecration all safety measures needed according to Law No. (38) of 2005 approving the system (law) of fertilizers and soil conditioners in the countries of the Cooperation Council for the Arab States of the Gulf. And the law No. (37) of 2005 approving the pesticide system (law) for the countries of the Cooperation Council for the Arab States of the Gulf.
• Prohibited crops such as poppy, Cannabis, Qat should not be grown in the site. According to law of Law No. (15) of 2007 regarding Narcotic Drugs and Psychotropic Substances, article no 3.
• The grown plants should be kept healthy and free from pests and diseases, using environmentally friendly measures, and taking in consecration all precautions of pesticides use.
• If the growing site is assigned for commercial production of seeds and seedlings, then the requirements stated in rules and legislations for this type of production should be adopted according to Law No. (34) of 2012 approving the Law (Regulation) for Seeds

and Seedlings of the Cooperation Council for the Arab States of the Gulf

1- Conditions that need to be satisfied in case of importing agricultural shipments from abroad:
• The importer should obtain import permit in advance from Plant Health Section.
• To comply with rules of Plant Quarantine Law for the Cooperation Council for the Arab States of the Gulf issued by law no. (5) of year 2003, its amendments and implementing Ministerial Decrees, and the requirements specified by Plant Health Section.
• The consignment should be accompanied by a phytosanitary certificate (based on the model of the IPPC) issued by the country of export.
• Consignments with natural agricultural soil like sand or clay or with agricultural wastes are prohibited.

Other Documents

•GCC regulations regarding fertilizers and soil conditioners issued under law (38) of 2005
•GCC regulations regarding pesticides issued under law (37) of 2005
•Law No. (34) of 2012 approving the Law (Regulation) for Seeds, Seeds and Seedlings of the Gulf Cooperation Council

Agriculture, animal production, and fishing

ISIC4	Business activity
014-1	Animal production

Description

Includes establishments engaged in raising and breeding of all animals and poultry, except aquatic animals, as well as benefiting from them and their products for commercial purposes.

This activity excludes:
- breeding support services, such as stud services, see 0162
- farm animal boarding and care, see 0162
- production of hides and skins from slaughterhouses, see 1010

Business Requirements

Age

18 and above

Allowed for Nationalities

- Bahraini 100%
- American 100%
- GCC 100%

Legal Type

It is allowed to register according to the legal forms mentioned below

Allowed for Individual Commercial Registration (ICR) : Yes

Allowed for Company Commercial Registration (CCR) : Yes

- Bahrain Shareholding Company (Public)
- With Limited Liability Company
- Branch of a Foreign Company
- Bahrain Shareholding Company (Closed)
- Partnership Company
- Simple Commandite Company
- Commandite By Shares Company
- Non Profit Company

Required Step of Licenses and Approvals

Ministry / Directorate	License / Approval Requirements	Approval Type
Control And Animal Health Directorate	Approval for Animal Production	Pre
Municipality Affairs	Site Approval for Animal Production	Post
Supreme Council for Environment	Environmental Approval for Animal Production activity	Post
Control And Animal Health Directorate	Approval for Animal Production	Final Site Inspection

Control And Animal Health Directorate (Pre) (014-1)

Approval Name	Description	Estimated Time
Approval for Animal Production	Approval for Animal Production	5 Days

Fee Details (if any)

There is no Estimated Processing Time (Days) in this license.

License Information

A farm/stockyard must be made available to practice this activity

Required Documents

•Lease agreement/ ownership certificate of a farm/ stockyard

Municipality Affairs (Post) (014-1)

Approval Name	Description	Estimated Time
Site Approval for Animal Production	Municipality Approval for the Commercial Registration address or the site in which the Activity will be practiced	3 Days

Fee Details (if any)

10 BD

License Information

General Conditions:
1. Size of shop/premises must be sufficient for the activity
2. Businesses may not carry out the activity outside the boundaries of the shop/ premises
3. It is prohibited to display or store any items or equipment outside the shop / premises boundary without prior approval from the Municipality. In the event of non-compliance, the Ministry of Municipality Affairs has the right to take necessary action.
4. Maintain cleanliness of the site
5. Comply with the parking space regulations as per the Construction regulatory requirements

Activity Specific Conditions:
1. The farm or stockyard must be in compliance with the Construction Regulatory Requirements (Refer to Section 7 of Cabinet's Decision (28) of the year 2009 regarding the Regulatory Requirements of Construction for various areas in the Kingdom of Bahrain)
2. The commercial registration can be registered under an administration office provided the availability of an official farm or stockyard that is in compliant to the construction regulatory requirements

Note: Uploading pictures of the site/shop may expedite the process of obtaining approval

Required Documents

- Address Certificate of the farm or stockyard from the Central Informatics organization
- Lease agreement (after obtaining the necessary approvals from other licensing entities)
- Shop photos

Other Documents

- Cabinet's Decision (56) of the year 2022 regarding the Regulatory Requirements of Construction for various areas in the Kingdom of Bahrain

Supreme Council for Environment (Post) (014-1)

Approval Name	Description	Estimated Time
Environmental Approval for Animal Production activity	This service aims to assess the environmental impact and licensing of development, industrial and production projects and activities, in accordance with the standards of protecting the environment and its natural resources	10 Days

Fee Details (if any)

- 30 Bahraini Dinars or 200 Bahraini Dinars for the fast-track procedure (when the data requested within the EA-2 form is sufficient without the need for additional studies)
- 4000 Bahraini Dinars or 6000 Bahraini Dinars for the fast track procedure (when it is necessary to submit an environmental impact assessment study for the project), with an additional payment of 100 Bahraini Dinars when it is necessary to submit a proposal for the scope of the study before submitting it or 500 Bahraini Dinars for a fast track procedure when the proposed scope of the study is being submitted before the study

License Information

To check the requirements for this approval, kindly download the detailed requirements sheet from the other downloadable documents section, which includes the following requirements:

- Building layout engineering and equipment requirements
- Workplace requirements
- Storage requirements
- Material management requirements
- Waste Management Requirements
- Documents and reporting requirements

• General requirements

Other Documents

•Annex to the Minister of Housing, Municipalities and Environment order regarding the project's environmental assessment
•Law No. (2) of 2021 regarding the environmental standards of air as decided by the Chairman of the Supreme Council for Environment
•Law No. (3) of 2021 regarding the environmental standards of water as decided by the Chairman of the Supreme Council for the Environment
•Law No. (5) of 2021 regarding CITES Annexes to the Convention on International Trade in Endangered Fauna and Flora
•Law No. (54) of 2014 regarding the approval of the unified law regarding substances that deplete the ozone layer for the GCC countries
•Ministerial Order No. (1) of 1998 regarding Project's Environmental Assessment
•Ministerial Order No. (10) of 2006 regarding the installation of devices for on-line monitoring of atmospheric air pollutants
•Ministerial Order No. (11) of 2019 regarding the issue of technical specification of plastic products
•Ministerial Order No. (3) of 2005 regarding environmental requirements and standards in workplaces, especially regarding workers' exposure to heat and noise, and the provision of tools and protective clothing such as gloves, glasses, face masks and earplugs, with a commitment to use them during work
•Ministerial Order No. (3) of 2006 regarding the management of hazardous waste
•Ministerial Order No. (4) of 2005 regarding the management of used oils
•Ministerial Order No. (4) of 2006 regarding the management of hazardous chemicals
•Ministerial Order No. (4) of 2021 regarding the fees of the licenses and services provided by the Supreme Council for Environment
•Ministerial Order No. (6) of 2013 amending order No. (4) of 2006 regarding the management of hazardous chemicals
•Ministerial Order No. (7) of 2002 regarding the control importation and use of prohibited and severely restricted chemicals, and not to import any chemical compound except after obtaining approvals of all concerned authorities, including the executive body of the Supreme Council for Environment
•Ministerial Order No. (7) of 2013 amending order No. (3) of 2006 regarding the management of hazardous waste
•Ministerial Order No. 4 of 2014 regarding the management of the environmental consulting offices operations in the Kingdom of Bahrain
•Order No. (2) of 2020 determining the categories of fees for licensing refrigeration media, refrigeration units and air conditioning units as decided by the Chairman of the Supreme Council for the Environment
•Requirements for business activities
•law No. (1) of 2020 regarding the management of refrigeration media, refrigeration units and air conditioning units as decided by the Chairman of the Supreme Council for the Environment

•law No. (2) of 2019 regarding the ban on the import of plastic waste of all kinds as decided by the Chairman of the Supreme Council for the Environment
•law No. (204) of 2018 regarding banning the export of some types of local fishes, shrimps and other aquatic organisms, and coordinating with the Agriculture and Marine Resources at the Ministry of Works, Municipalities and Urban Planning regarding the import and export of some species
•المرسوم رقم 7 لسنة 2022 بشأن البيئة والقرارات الوزارية المنفذة له

Control And Animal Health Directorate (Final Site Inspection) (014-1)

Approval Name	Description	Estimated Time
Approval for Animal Production	Approval for Animal Production	5 Days

Fee Details (if any)

There is no Estimated Processing Time (Days) in this license.

License Information

A farm/stockyard must be made available to practice this activity

Required Documents

•Lease agreement/ ownership certificate of a farm/ stockyard

Agriculture, animal production, and fishing

ISIC4	Business activity
014-2	Animal production - production of eggs

Description

Includes establishments engaged in produce poultry eggs, on the condition that the production process be in large-scale quantities using automated power.

Business Requirements

Age

18 and above

Allowed for Nationalities

Bahraini 100%	GCC 100%
American 100%	Singaporean 100%
Icelander 100%	Liechtenstein er 100%
Norwegian 100%	Swiss 100%

Foreign Allowed up to 100%

Legal Type

It is allowed to register according to the legal forms mentioned below

Allowed for Individual Commercial Registration (ICR) : Yes

Allowed for Company Commercial Registration (CCR) : Yes

- Bahrain Shareholding Company (Public)
- With Limited Liability Company
- Branch of a Foreign Company
- Bahrain Shareholding Company (Closed)
- Partnership Company
- Simple Commandite Company
- Commandite By Shares Company
- Non Profit Company

Required Step of Licenses and Approvals

Ministry / Directorate	License / Approval Requirements	Approval Type
Directorate Of Industrial Developments	Approval by Directorate of Industrial Developments(Pre)	Pre
Control And Animal Health Directorate	Approval for Animal Production	Pre
Supreme Council for Environment	Environmental Approval for Animal Production - Egg Production activity	Post
Municipality Affairs	Site Approval for Animal Production	Post
Control And Animal Health Directorate	Approval for Animal Production	Final Site Inspection
Directorate Of Industrial Developments	Notification Only	Final Site Inspection

Directorate Of Industrial Developments (Pre) (014-2)

Approval Name	Description	Estimated Time
Approval by Directorate of Industrial Developments(Pre)	This is a preliminary approval given by the Directorate of Industrial Development to ensure that the applicant has selected the appropriate activity based on the information provided	5 Days

Fee Details (if any)

There is no Estimated Processing Time (Days) in this license.

License Information

Applicants would have to provide through the system the following information:

General Information:

- Total Amount Invested in the Project (This should include value of machinery and fixed assets)
- Estimated number of workforce (Bahraini and Non-Bahraini)
- Expected utility consumption of electricity, water and natural gas
- Total area of the project

Activity Information:

- Product Information:

1) The products to be manufactured by choosing the appropriate HS codes (HS code list can be downloaded from the application if needed).
2) Product name.
3) Expected production date (The expected date on which the factory will start producing the product).

4) The maximum installed capacity and the expected production capacity per year based on the fixed HS code's unit of measure.

• Main raw materials: The main raw materials to be used in production and its source

• Main Machinery and Equipment: The main machinery and equipment to be used in production and its information.

• Manufacturing process: Brief on the manufacturing process explaining how materials are transformed from one state to another until reaching the final product, mentioning the types of materials used, the operations performed, and the machinery/equipment used in each step (if any) for each product.

Required Documents

•Photos of machinery/ equipment to be used
•Photos of products to be manufactured

Other Documents

•Law No. (81) of 2006 with respect to approving The Common Industrial Law of the GCC
•Ministerial Resolution No. (11) of 2009
•Operational requirements for the directorate of industrial developments activities

Control And Animal Health Directorate (Pre) (014-2)

Approval Name	Description	Estimated Time
Approval for Animal Production	Approval for Animal Production	5 Days

Fee Details (if any)

There is no Estimated Processing Time (Days) in this license.

License Information

A farm/stockyard must be made available to practice this activity

Required Documents

•Lease agreement/ ownership certificate of a farm/ stockyard

Supreme Council for Environment (Post) (014-2)

Approval Name	Description	Estimated Time
Environmental Approval for Animal Production - Egg Production activity	This service aims to assess the environmental impact and licensing of development, industrial and production projects and activities, in accordance with the standards of protecting the environment and its natural resources	10 Days

Fee Details (if any)

- 30 Bahraini Dinars or 200 Bahraini Dinars for the fast-track procedure (when the data requested within the EA-2 form is sufficient without the need for additional studies)
- 4000 Bahraini Dinars or 6000 Bahraini Dinars for the fast track procedure (when it is necessary to submit an environmental impact assessment study for the project), with an additional payment of 100 Bahraini Dinars when it is necessary to submit a proposal for the scope of the study before submitting it or 500 Bahraini Dinars for a fast track procedure when the proposed scope of the study is being submitted before the study

License Information

To check the requirements for this approval, kindly download the detailed requirements sheet from the other downloadable documents section, which includes the following requirements:

- Building layout engineering and equipment requirements
- Workplace requirements
- Storage requirements
- Material management requirements
- Waste Management Requirements
- Documents and reporting requirements

• General requirements

Other Documents

•Annex to the Minister of Housing, Municipalities and Environment order regarding the project's environmental assessment
•Law No. (2) of 2021 regarding the environmental standards of air as decided by the Chairman of the Supreme Council for Environment
•Law No. (3) of 2021 regarding the environmental standards of water as decided by the Chairman of the Supreme Council for the Environment
•Law No. (5) of 2021 regarding CITES Annexes to the Convention on International Trade in Endangered Fauna and Flora
•Law No. (54) of 2014 regarding the approval of the unified law regarding substances that deplete the ozone layer for the GCC countries
•Law No. (7) of 2022 regarding the environment
•Ministerial Order No. (1) of 1998 regarding Project's Environmental Assessment
•Ministerial Order No. (10) of 2006 regarding the installation of devices for on-line monitoring of atmospheric air pollutants
•Ministerial Order No. (11) of 2019 regarding the issue of technical specification of plastic products
•Ministerial Order No. (3) of 2005 regarding environmental requirements and standards in workplaces, especially regarding workers' exposure to heat and noise, and the provision of tools and protective clothing such as gloves, glasses, face masks and earplugs, with a commitment to use them during work
•Ministerial Order No. (3) of 2006 regarding the management of hazardous waste
•Ministerial Order No. (4) of 2005 regarding the management of used oils
•Ministerial Order No. (4) of 2006 regarding the management of hazardous chemicals
•Ministerial Order No. (4) of 2021 regarding the fees of the licenses and services provided by the Supreme Council for Environment
•Ministerial Order No. (6) of 2013 amending order No. (4) of 2006 regarding the management of hazardous chemicals
•Ministerial Order No. (7) of 2002 regarding the control importation and use of prohibited and severely restricted chemicals, and not to import any chemical compound except after obtaining approvals of all concerned authorities, including the executive body of the Supreme Council for Environment
•Ministerial Order No. (7) of 2013 amending order No. (3) of 2006 regarding the management of hazardous waste
•Ministerial Order No. 4 of 2014 regarding the management of the environmental consulting offices operations in the Kingdom of Bahrain
•Order No. (2) of 2020 determining the categories of fees for licensing refrigeration media, refrigeration units and air conditioning units as decided by the Chairman of the Supreme Council for the Environment
•Requirements for business activities
•law No. (1) of 2020 regarding the management of refrigeration media, refrigeration units and air conditioning units as decided by the Chairman of the Supreme Council for

the Environment
•law No. (2) of 2019 regarding the ban on the import of plastic waste of all kinds as decided by the Chairman of the Supreme Council for the Environment
•law No. (204) of 2018 regarding banning the export of some types of local fishes, shrimps and other aquatic organisms, and coordinating with the Agriculture and Marine Resources at the Ministry of Works, Municipalities and Urban Planning regarding the import and export of some species

Municipality Affairs (Post) (014-2)

Approval Name	Description	Estimated Time
Site Approval for Animal Production	Municipality Approval for the Commercial Registration address or the site in which the Activity will be practiced	3 Days

Fee Details (if any)

10 BD

License Information

General Conditions:
1. Size of shop/premises must be sufficient for the activity
2. Businesses may not carry out the activity outside the boundaries of the shop/ premises
3. It is prohibited to display or store any items or equipment outside the shop / premises boundary without prior approval from the Municipality. In the event of non-compliance, the Ministry of Municipality Affairs has the right to take necessary action.
4. Maintain cleanliness of the site
5. Comply with the parking space regulations as per the Construction regulatory requirements

Activity Specific Conditions:
1. The farm or stockyard must be in compliance with the Construction Regulatory Requirements (Refer to Section 7 of Cabinet's Decision (28) of the year 2009 regarding the Regulatory Requirements of Construction for various areas in the Kingdom of Bahrain)
2. The commercial registration can be registered under an administration office provided the availability of an official farm or stockyard that is in compliant to the construction regulatory requirements

Note: Uploading pictures of the site/shop may expedite the process of obtaining approval

Required Documents

- Address Certificate of the farm or stockyard from the Central Informatics organization
- Lease agreement (after obtaining the necessary approvals from other licensing entities)
- Shop photos

Other Documents

- Cabinet's Decision (56) of the year 2022 regarding the Regulatory Requirements of Construction for various areas in the Kingdom of Bahrain

Control And Animal Health Directorate (Final Site Inspection) (014-2)

Approval Name	Description	Estimated Time
Approval for Animal Production	Approval for Animal Production	5 Days

Fee Details (if any)

There is no Estimated Processing Time (Days) in this license.

License Information

A farm/stockyard must be made available to practice this activity

Required Documents

•Lease agreement/ ownership certificate of a farm/ stockyard

Directorate Of Industrial Developments (Final Site Inspection) (014-2)

Approval Name	Description	Estimated Time
Notification Only	Notification to the Industrial development directorate on obtaining a commercial registration with the license to practice the activity.	There is no License Information in this license. Days

Fee Details (if any)

There is no Estimated Processing Time (Days) in this license.

License Information

The industrial license is automatically issued by the Industrial development Directorate after obtaining the approval of other licensing/approving entities.

Please ensure that the actual production date does no exceed the expected production date.

If actual production will start on or before the expected production date please apply for a “New Industrial Registration” by following the steps below:

1- Visit the Industrial services system (www.industry.bh).
2- Select “Industrial Registration”.
3- Select “New Registration” application.

In the event that the actual production date will exceed the expected production date an “Extension of expected production date” application must be submitted by following the steps below:

1- Visit the Industrial services system (www.industry.bh).

2- Select “Industrial License”.
3- Select “Extension of expected production date” application.

Please note that failure to do so within 60 days from the expected production date will result in a violation to be added.

Other Documents

- Law No. (81) of 2006 with respect to approving The Common Industrial Law of the GCC
- Ministerial Resolution No. (11) of 2009 with respect to promulgating Implementing Regulation
- Operational requirements for the directorate of industrial developments activities

Agriculture, animal production, and fishing

ISIC4	Business activity
0161	Support activities for crop production

Description

This activity includes agricultural activities on a fee or contract basis such as: preparation of fields, establishing a crop, treatment of crops, crop spraying, trimming of fruit trees and vines, harvesting, pest control in connection with agriculture, operation of agricultural irrigation equipment
This activity also includes:
- provision of agricultural machinery with operators and crew
- maintenance of land to keep it in good condition for agricultural use

Business Requirements

Age

18 and above

Allowed for Nationalities

- Bahraini 100%
- GCC 100%
- American 100%

Legal Type

It is allowed to register according to the legal forms mentioned below

Allowed for Individual Commercial Registration (ICR) : Yes

Allowed for Company Commercial Registration (CCR) : Yes

- Bahrain Shareholding Company (Public)
- With Limited Liability Company
- Branch of a Foreign Company
- Bahrain Shareholding Company (Closed)
- Partnership Company
- Simple Commandite Company
- Commandite By Shares Company
- Non Profit Company

Required Step of Licenses and Approvals

Ministry / Directorate	License / Approval Requirements	Approval Type
Municipality Affairs	Site Approval for Support Activities for crop production	Post
Agricultural Health Directorate	Approval of the activity of Support activities for crop production	Post
Agricultural Health Directorate	Approval of the activity of Support activities for crop production	Final Site Inspection

Municipality Affairs (Post) (0161)

Approval Name	Description	Estimated Time
Site Approval for Support Activities for crop production	Municipality Approval for the Commercial Registration address or the site in which the Activity will be practiced	3 Days

Fee Details (if any)

There is no Estimated Processing Time (Days) in this license.

License Information

General Conditions:
1. Size of shop/premises must be sufficient for the activity
2. Businesses may not carry out the activity outside the boundaries of the shop/ premises
3. It is prohibited to display or store any items or equipment outside the shop / premises boundary without prior approval from the Municipality. In the event of non-compliance, the Ministry of Municipality Affairs has the right to take necessary action.
4. Maintain cleanliness of the site
5. Comply with the parking space regulations as per the Construction regulatory requirements

Note: Uploading pictures of the site/shop may expedite the process of obtaining approval

Required Documents

- Lease agreement (after obtaining the necessary approvals from other licensing entities)
- Shop photos

Other Documents

•Cabinet’s Decision (56) of the year 2022 regarding the Regulatory Requirements of Construction for various areas in the Kingdom of Bahrain

Agricultural Health Directorate (Post) (0161)

Approval Name	Description	Estimated Time
Approval of the activity of Support activities for crop production	Approval of the activity of Support activities for crop production	5 Days

Fee Details (if any)

There is no Estimated Processing Time (Days) in this license.

License Information

Requirements: Conditions that should be followed (after obtaining the approval) in case of importing agricultural shipments from abroad:
1- The importer should obtain import permit in advance from Plant Health Section.
2- To comply with rules of Plant Quarantine Law for the Cooperation Council for the Arab States of the Gulf issued by law no. (5) of year 2003, its amendments and implementing Ministerial Decrees, and the requirements specified by Plant Health Section.
3- The consignment should be accompanied by a phytosanitary certificate (based on the model of the IPPC) issued by the country of export.
4- Consignments with natural agricultural soil like sand or clay or with agricultural wastes are prohibited

Other Documents

- GCC regulations regarding fertilizers and soil conditioners issued under law (38) of 2005
- GCC regulations regarding pesticides issued under law (37) of 2005

Agricultural Health Directorate (Final Site Inspection) (0161)

Approval Name	Description	Estimated Time
Approval of the activity of Support activities for crop production	Approval of the activity of Support activities for crop production	5 Days

Fee Details (if any)

There is no Estimated Processing Time (Days) in this license.

License Information

Requirements: Conditions that should be followed (after obtaining the approval) in case of importing agricultural shipments from abroad:
1- The importer should obtain import permit in advance from Plant Health Section.
2- To comply with rules of Plant Quarantine Law for the Cooperation Council for the Arab States of the Gulf issued by law no. (5) of year 2003, its amendments and implementing Ministerial Decrees, and the requirements specified by Plant Health Section.
3- The consignment should be accompanied by a phytosanitary certificate (based on the model of the IPPC) issued by the country of export.
4- Consignments with natural agricultural soil like sand or clay or with agricultural wastes are prohibited

Other Documents

- GCC regulations regarding fertilizers and soil conditioners issued under law (38) of 2005
- GCC regulations regarding pesticides issued under law (37) of 2005

Agriculture, animal production, and fishing

ISIC4	Business activity
0162	Support activities for animal production

Description

This activity includes animal production support activities on a fee or contract basis such as, promotion of propagation, growth and output of animals; herd testing services, droving services, agistment services, poultry caponizing, coop cleaning etc.; activities related to artificial insemination; stud services; sheep shearing; farm animal boarding and care; activities of farriers.
This activity also include:
- production of pulled wool
- production of feathers and down

Business Requirements

Age

18 and above

Allowed for Nationalities

Bahraini
100%

GCC
100%

American
100%

Legal Type

It is allowed to register according to the legal forms mentioned below

Allowed for Individual Commercial Registration (ICR) : Yes

Allowed for Company Commercial Registration (CCR) : Yes

- Bahrain Shareholding Company (Public)
- With Limited Liability Company
- Branch of a Foreign Company
- Bahrain Shareholding Company (Closed)
- Partnership Company
- Simple Commandite Company
- Commandite By Shares Company
- Non Profit Company

Required Step of Licenses and Approvals

Ministry / Directorate	License / Approval Requirements	Approval Type
Control And Animal Health Directorate	Approval for Support activities for animal production	Pre
Supreme Council for Environment	Environmental Approval for Support activities for livestock production activity	Post
Municipality Affairs	Site Approval for Support Activities for animal production	Post
Control And Animal Health Directorate	Approval for Support activities for animal production	Final Site Inspection

Control And Animal Health Directorate (Pre) (0162)

Approval Name	Description	Estimated Time
Approval for Support activities for animal production	Approval for Support activities for animal production	5 Days

Fee Details (if any)

There is no Estimated Processing Time (Days) in this license.

License Information

The license application to display animals in zoos, bird parks, children's gardens, animal rental places, circuses or the like must be accompanied by a plan of the facility's location and another detailing its various buildings and facilities along with an operation plan that includes employment
Please refer to the standards of animal welfare practices
o Cruelty to animals
o Animal owner duties
o Conditions for dealing with animals
o Conditions for establishing animal facilities
o Animal transport
o The use of animals for scientific purposes
o Disposal of animals

Operational requirements after obtaining the Business license
1. Each commercial animal facility must appoint a veterinarian permanently, and he must be licensed by the competent authority to practice the veterinary profession, except for the temporary commercial or recreational facilities where the supervision of a veterinarian, a veterinary clinic, or a veterinary hospital is sufficient.
2. The competent authority issues a license for each animal observer in any commercial animal facility by the competent authority after the following conditions are met:
* Conducting a competency test in dealing with animals.
* Animal observers must submit scientific certificates that are duly documented and equivalent in the field of animal care.
* Animal observers are required to have duly documented experience certificates of no

less than (5) five years in the same field.
* A duly documented (2) two-year experience certificate for animal observers in the same field is sufficient.
A- The term of the license shall be according to the type and size of the facility, provided that it does not exceed one year;
3. The license granted to operate the animal facility shall be withdrawn if the license owner violates the Animal Welfare Law of the GCC countries or the regulations issued thereof, or if they violate the license terms issued by the competent authority.

Other Documents

- GCC's Unified Standards for Veterinary Facilities
- Minister of Works, Municipalities Affairs and Urban Planning Decision No. (37) of 2020 issuing the executive regulations of the Animal Welfare Law for the Gulf Cooperation Council states issued by Law No. (52) of 2014
- Standards of animal welfare practices

Supreme Council for Environment (Post) (0162)

Approval Name	Description	Estimated Time
Environmental Approval for Support activities for livestock production activity	This service aims to assess the environmental impact and licensing of development, industrial and production projects and activities, in accordance with the standards of protecting the environment and its natural resources	10 Days

Fee Details (if any)

* 30 Bahraini Dinars or 200 Bahraini Dinars for the fast track procedure when the data requested within the EA2 form is sufficient without the need for additional studies
* 4000 Bahraini Dinars or 6000 Bahraini Dinars for the fast track procedure (when it is necessary to submit an environmental impact assessment study for the project), with an additional payment of 100 Bahraini Dinars when it is necessary to submit a proposal for the scope of the study before submitting it or 500 Bahraini Dinars for a fast track procedure when the proposed scope of the study is being submitted before the study

License Information

To check the requirements for this approval, kindly download the detailed requirements sheet from the other downloadable documents section, which includes the following requirements:

- Building layout engineering and equipment requirements
- Workplace requirements
- Storage requirements
- Material management requirements
- Waste Management Requirements
- Documents and reporting requirements

• General requirements

Required Documents

•Requirements for business activities

Other Documents

•Annex to the Minister of Housing, Municipalities and Environment order regarding the project's environmental assessment
•Law No. (2) of 2021 regarding the environmental standards of air as decided by the Chairman of the Supreme Council for Environment
•Law No. (3) of 2021 regarding the environmental standards of water as decided by the Chairman of the Supreme Council for the Environment
•Law No. (5) of 2021 regarding CITES Annexes to the Convention on International Trade in Endangered Fauna and Flora
•Law No. (54) of 2014 regarding the approval of the unified law regarding substances that deplete the ozone layer for the GCC countries
•Law No. (7) of 2022 regarding the environment
•Ministerial Order No. (1) of 1998 regarding Project's Environmental Assessment
•Ministerial Order No. (10) of 2006 regarding the installation of devices for on-line monitoring of atmospheric air pollutants
•Ministerial Order No. (11) of 2019 regarding the issue of technical specification of plastic products
•Ministerial Order No. (3) of 2005 regarding environmental requirements and standards in workplaces, especially regarding workers' exposure to heat and noise, and the provision of tools and protective clothing such as gloves, glasses, face masks and earplugs, with a commitment to use them during work
•Ministerial Order No. (3) of 2006 regarding the management of hazardous waste
•Ministerial Order No. (4) of 2005 regarding the management of used oils
•Ministerial Order No. (4) of 2006 regarding the management of hazardous chemicals
•Ministerial Order No. (4) of 2021 regarding the fees of the licenses and services provided by the Supreme Council for Environment
•Ministerial Order No. (6) of 2013 amending order No. (4) of 2006 regarding the management of hazardous chemicals
•Ministerial Order No. (7) of 2002 regarding the control importation and use of prohibited and severely restricted chemicals, and not to import any chemical compound except after obtaining approvals of all concerned authorities, including the executive body of the Supreme Council for Environment
•Ministerial Order No. (7) of 2013 amending order No. (3) of 2006 regarding the management of hazardous waste
•Ministerial Order No. 4 of 2014 regarding the management of the environmental consulting offices operations in the Kingdom of Bahrain

•Operational Requirements for Storage of Food Items
•Order No. (2) of 2020 determining the categories of fees for licensing refrigeration media, refrigeration units and air conditioning units as decided by the Chairman of the Supreme Council for the Environment
•law No. (1) of 2020 regarding the management of refrigeration media, refrigeration units and air conditioning units as decided by the Chairman of the Supreme Council for the Environment
•law No. (2) of 2019 regarding the ban on the import of plastic waste of all kinds as decided by the Chairman of the Supreme Council for the Environment
•law No. (204) of 2018 regarding banning the export of some types of local fishes, shrimps and other aquatic organisms, and coordinating with the Agriculture and Marine Resources at the Ministry of Works, Municipalities and Urban Planning regarding the import and export of some species
•licensing form for the supreme council of the environment

Municipality Affairs (Post) (0162)

Approval Name	Description	Estimated Time
Site Approval for Support Activities for animal production	Municipality Approval for the Commercial Registration address or the site in which the Activity will be practiced	3 Days

Fee Details (if any)

There is no Estimated Processing Time (Days) in this license.

License Information

General Conditions:
1. Size of shop/premises must be sufficient for the activity
2. Businesses may not carry out the activity outside the boundaries of the shop/ premises
3. It is prohibited to display or store any items or equipment outside the shop / premises boundary without prior approval from the Municipality. In the event of non-compliance, the Ministry of Municipality Affairs has the right to take necessary action.
4. Maintain cleanliness of the site
5. Comply with the parking space regulations as per the Construction regulatory requirements

Activity Specific Conditions:
1. The commercial address of the Commercial Registration for this activity can an office address only if the operations shall be of an administrative nature.
2. No animal sheltering or actual practice of the activity is allowed to be performed in administrative offices

Note: Uploading pictures of the site/shop may expedite the process of obtaining approval

Required Documents

- Lease agreement (after obtaining the necessary approvals from other licensing entities)
- Shop photos

Other Documents

- GCC's Unified Standards for Veterinary Facilities

Control And Animal Health Directorate (Final Site Inspection) (0162)

Approval Name	Description	Estimated Time
Approval for Support activities for animal production	Approval for Support activities for animal production	5 Days

Fee Details (if any)

There is no Estimated Processing Time (Days) in this license.

License Information

The license application to display animals in zoos, bird parks, children's gardens, animal rental places, circuses or the like must be accompanied by a plan of the facility's location and another detailing its various buildings and facilities along with an operation plan that includes employment
Please refer to the standards of animal welfare practices
o Cruelty to animals
o Animal owner duties
o Conditions for dealing with animals
o Conditions for establishing animal facilities
o Animal transport
o The use of animals for scientific purposes
o Disposal of animals

Operational requirements after obtaining the Business license
1. Each commercial animal facility must appoint a veterinarian permanently, and he must be licensed by the competent authority to practice the veterinary profession, except for the temporary commercial or recreational facilities where the supervision of a veterinarian, a veterinary clinic, or a veterinary hospital is sufficient.
2. The competent authority issues a license for each animal observer in any commercial animal facility by the competent authority after the following conditions are met:
* Conducting a competency test in dealing with animals.
* Animal observers must submit scientific certificates that are duly documented and

equivalent in the field of animal care.
* Animal observers are required to have duly documented experience certificates of no less than (5) five years in the same field.
* A duly documented (2) two-year experience certificate for animal observers in the same field is sufficient.
A- The term of the license shall be according to the type and size of the facility, provided that it does not exceed one year;
3. The license granted to operate the animal facility shall be withdrawn if the license owner violates the Animal Welfare Law of the GCC countries or the regulations issued thereof, or if they violate the license terms issued by the competent authority.

Other Documents

- GCC's Unified Standards for Veterinary Facilities
- Minister of Works, Municipalities Affairs and Urban Planning Decision No. (37) of 2020 issuing the executive regulations of the Animal Welfare Law for the Gulf Cooperation Council states issued by Law No. (52) of 2014
- Standards of animal welfare practices

Agriculture, animal production, and fishing

ISIC4	Business activity
032	Aquaculture

Description

Includes aquaculture (or aquafarming), i.e. the production process involving the culturing or farming (including harvesting) of aquatic organisms (fish, molluscs, crustaceans, plants, crocodiles, alligators and amphibians) using techniques designed to increase the production of the organisms in question beyond the natural capacity of the environment (for example regular stocking, feeding and protection from predators).
Culturing/farming refers to the rearing up to their juvenile and/or adult phase under captive conditions of the above organisms. In addition, aquaculture also encompasses individual, corporate or state ownership of the individual organisms throughout the rearing or culture stage, up to and including harvesting.

Business Requirements

Age

18 and above

Allowed for Nationalities

Bahraini 100%	GCC 100%
American 100%	Singaporean 100%
Icelander 100%	Liechtenstein er 100%
Norwegian 100%	Swiss 100%

Foreign Allowed up to 100%

Legal Type

It is allowed to register according to the legal forms mentioned below

Allowed for Individual Commercial Registration (ICR) : Yes

Allowed for Company Commercial Registration (CCR) : Yes

- Bahrain Shareholding Company (Public)
- With Limited Liability Company
- Branch of a Foreign Company
- Bahrain Shareholding Company (Closed)
- Partnership Company
- Simple Commandite Company
- Commandite By Shares Company
- Non Profit Company

Required Step of Licenses and Approvals

Ministry / Directorate	License / Approval Requirements	Approval Type
Municipality Affairs	Site Approval for Aquaculture Activity	Post
Directorate of Fisheries	License for Aquaculture	Post

Municipality Affairs (Post) (032)

Approval Name	Description	Estimated Time
Site Approval for Aquaculture Activity	Municipality Approval for the Commercial Registration address or the site in which the Activity will be practiced	3 Days

Fee Details (if any)

10 BD

License Information

General Conditions:
1. Size of shop/premises must be sufficient for the activity
2. Businesses may not carry out the activity outside the boundaries of the shop/ premises
3. It is prohibited to display or store any items or equipment outside the shop / premises boundary without prior approval from the Municipality. In the event of non-compliance, the Ministry of Municipality Affairs has the right to take necessary action.
4. Maintain cleanliness of the site
5. Comply with the parking space regulations as per the Construction Regulatory Requirements

Activity Specific Conditions:
1. Availability of licensed basins by the Ministry of Works, Municipalities, and Urban Planning
2. The commercial registration can be registered under an administration office provided the availability of basins that are licensed by the Ministry of Works, Municipalities, and Urban Planning
3. Storing of aquaculture/crop in administrative offices is not allowed

Note: Uploading pictures of the site/shop may expedite the process of obtaining approval

Required Documents

- Lease agreement (after obtaining the necessary approvals from other licensing entities)
- Shop photos

Other Documents

- Cabinet's Decision (56) of the year 2022 regarding the Regulatory Requirements of Construction for various areas in the Kingdom of Bahrain

Directorate of Fisheries (Post) (032)

Approval Name	Description	Estimated Time
License for Aquaculture	License for Aquaculture	5 Days

Fee Details (if any)

There is no Estimated Processing Time (Days) in this license.

License Information

Applicants must submit a business plan or feasibility study for the aquaculture facilities

Required Documents

- Business plan/ feasibility study

Mining and quarrying

سجلات
SIJILAT
نظام السجلات التجارية
COMMERCIAL REGISTRATION PORTAL

Mining and quarrying

ISIC4	Business activity
06	Extraction of crude petroleum and natural gas

Description

Includes the process of extracting petroleum from oil reservoirs in the earth, including primary recovery, which depends on the pressure of water and natural gas, secondary recovery, which involves injecting water and gas using electrical submersible pumps when natural pressure falls, and tertiary recovery, which relies on increasing the oil's mobility to force it to the surface.
Also included is the extraction of natural gas from gas reservoirs or as a byproduct of petroleum extraction.
This activity excludes:
- support activities for petroleum and gas extraction (see 0910).
- Refining of petroleum products (see 1920)

Business Requirements

Age

18 and above

Allowed for Nationalities

Bahraini 100%		GCC 100%	
American 100%		Singaporean 100%	
Icelander 100%		Liechtenstein er 100%	
Norwegian 100%		Swiss 100%	

Foreign Allowed up to 100%

Legal Type

It is allowed to register according to the legal forms mentioned below

Allowed for Individual Commercial Registration (ICR) : Yes

Allowed for Company Commercial Registration (CCR) : Yes

- Bahrain Shareholding Company (Public)
- With Limited Liability Company
- Branch of a Foreign Company
- Bahrain Shareholding Company (Closed)
- Partnership Company
- Simple Commandite Company
- Commandite By Shares Company
- Non Profit Company

Required Step of Licenses and Approvals

Ministry / Directorate	License / Approval Requirements	Approval Type
Ministry of Oil and Environment	Approval For Extraction of crude petroleum and	Pre

	natural gas	
Municipality Affairs	Site Approval for mining and quarrying related activities	Post
Supreme Council for Environment	Environmental Approval for Extraction of crude oil and natural gas activity	Post

Ministry of Oil and Environment (Pre) (06)

Approval Name	Description	Estimated Time
Approval For Extraction of crude petroleum and natural gas	Approval For Extraction of crude petroleum and natural gas	3 Days

Fee Details (if any)

There is no Estimated Processing Time (Days) in this license.

License Information

Provide any data or documents deemed necessary by the Ministry of Oil and Environment at any point during or following the completion of the licensing process

Required Documents

•Copy of the contract statement with the Government of the Kingdom of Bahrain

Municipality Affairs (Post) (06)

Approval Name	Description	Estimated Time
Site Approval for mining and quarrying related activities	Municipality Approval for the Commercial Registration address or the site in which the Activity will be practiced	3 Days

Fee Details (if any)

10 BD

License Information

General Conditions:
1. Size of shop/premises must be sufficient for the activity
2. Businesses may not carry out the activity outside the boundaries of the shop/ premises
3. It is prohibited to display or store any items or equipment outside the shop / premises boundary without prior approval from the Municipality.In the event of non-compliance, the Ministry of Municipality Affairs has the right to take necessary action.
4. Maintain cleanliness of the site
5. Comply with the parking space regulations as per the Construction Regulatory Requirements

Note: Uploading pictures of the site/shop may expedite the process of obtaining approval

Required Documents

- Lease agreement (after obtaining the necessary approvals from other licensing entities)
- Shop photos

Other Documents

- Cabinet's Decision (56) of the year 2022 regarding the Regulatory Requirements of Construction for various areas in the Kingdom of Bahrain

Supreme Council for Environment (Post) (06)

Approval Name	Description	Estimated Time
Environmental Approval for Extraction of crude oil and natural gas activity	This service aims to assess the environmental impact and licensing of development, industrial and production projects and activities, in accordance with the standards of protecting the environment and its natural resources	10 Days

Fee Details (if any)

- 30 Bahraini Dinars or 200 Bahraini Dinars for the fast-track procedure (when the data requested within the EA-2 form is sufficient without the need for additional studies)
- 4000 Bahraini Dinars or 6000 Bahraini Dinars for the fast track procedure (when it is necessary to submit an environmental impact assessment study for the project), with an additional payment of 100 Bahraini Dinars when it is necessary to submit a proposal for the scope of the study before submitting it or 500 Bahraini Dinars for a fast track procedure when the proposed scope of the study is being submitted before the study

License Information

To check the requirements for this approval, kindly download the detailed requirements sheet from the other downloadable documents section, which includes the following requirements:

- Building layout engineering and equipment requirements
- Workplace requirements
- Storage requirements
- Material management requirements
- Waste Management Requirements
- Documents and reporting requirements

• General requirements

Required Documents

•Clear pictures of the site from the outside and inside
•The area of the project location in square feet and a document showing the location distribution of the project activity(s).

Other Documents

•1. Law No. (7) of 2022 regarding the environment
•Annex to the Minister of Housing, Municipalities and Environment order regarding the project's environmental assessment
•Law No. (2) of 2021 regarding the environmental standards of air as decided by the Chairman of the Supreme Council for Environment
•Law No. (3) of 2021 regarding the environmental standards of water as decided by the Chairman of the Supreme Council for the Environment
•Law No. (54) of 2014 regarding the approval of the unified law regarding substances that deplete the ozone layer for the GCC countries
•Ministerial Order No. (1) of 1998 regarding Project's Environmental Assessment
•Ministerial Order No. (10) of 2006 regarding the installation of devices for on-line monitoring of atmospheric air pollutants
•Ministerial Order No. (3) of 2005 regarding environmental requirements and standards in workplaces, especially regarding workers' exposure to heat and noise, and the provision of tools and protective clothing such as gloves, glasses, face masks and earplugs, with a commitment to use them during work
•Ministerial Order No. (3) of 2006 regarding the management of hazardous waste
•Ministerial Order No. (4) of 2005 regarding the management of used oils
•Ministerial Order No. (4) of 2006 regarding the management of hazardous chemicals
•Ministerial Order No. (4) of 2021 regarding the fees of the licenses and services provided by the Supreme Council for Environment
•Ministerial Order No. (6) of 2013 amending order No. (4) of 2006 regarding the management of hazardous chemicals
•Ministerial Order No. (7) of 2002 regarding the control importation and use of prohibited and severely restricted chemicals, and not to import any chemical compound except after obtaining approvals of all concerned authorities, including the executive body of the Supreme Council for Environment
•Ministerial Order No. (7) of 2013 amending order No. (3) of 2006 regarding the management of hazardous waste
•Ministerial Order No. 4 of 2014 regarding the management of the environmental consulting offices operations in the Kingdom of Bahrain
•Order No. (2) of 2020 determining the categories of fees for licensing refrigeration media, refrigeration units and air conditioning units as decided by the Chairman of the

Supreme Council for the Environment
- Requirements for business activities
- Requirements for business activities
- law No. (1) of 2020 regarding the management of refrigeration media, refrigeration units and air conditioning units as decided by the Chairman of the Supreme Council for the Environment

Mining and quarrying

ISIC4	Business activity
081-1	Quarrying of stone, sand and clay

Description

This activity includes:
- quarrying, rough trimming and sawing of monumental and building stone such as sandstone etc.
- quarrying, crushing and breaking of limestone
- extraction of industrial sand, sand for construction and gravel
- breaking and crushing of stone and gravel
- quarrying of sand

Please note that an additional license is required to perform dredging activities

Business Requirements

Age

18 and above

Allowed for Nationalities

Bahraini
100%

American
100%

GCC
100%

Legal Type

It is allowed to register according to the legal forms mentioned below

Allowed for Individual Commercial Registration (ICR) : Yes

Allowed for Company Commercial Registration (CCR) : Yes

- Bahrain Shareholding Company (Public)
- With Limited Liability Company
- Branch of a Foreign Company
- Bahrain Shareholding Company (Closed)
- Partnership Company
- Simple Commandite Company
- Commandite By Shares Company
- Non Profit Company

Required Step of Licenses and Approvals

Ministry / Directorate	License / Approval Requirements	Approval Type
Supreme Council for Environment	Environmental Approval for Exploitation of quarries to extract stones, sand and shale activity	Post
Municipality Affairs	Site Approval for mining and quarrying related activities	Post

Supreme Council for Environment (Post) (081-1)

Approval Name	Description	Estimated Time
Environmental Approval for Exploitation of quarries to extract stones, sand and shale activity	This service aims to assess the environmental impact and licensing of development, industrial and production projects and activities, in accordance with the standards of protecting the environment and its natural resources	10 Days

Fee Details (if any)

- 100 Bahraini Dinars or 200 Bahraini Dinars for the fast-track procedure (when the data requested within the EA-1 form is sufficient without the need for additional studies)
- 4000 Bahraini Dinars or 6000 Bahraini Dinars for the fast track procedure (when it is necessary to submit an environmental impact assessment study for the project), with an additional payment of 100 Bahraini Dinars when it is necessary to submit a proposal for the scope of the study before submitting it or 500 Bahraini Dinars for a fast track procedure when the proposed scope of the study is being submitted before the study

License Information

To check the requirements for this approval, kindly download the detailed requirements sheet from the other downloadable documents section, which includes the following requirements:

- Building layout engineering and equipment requirements
- Workplace requirements
- Storage requirements
- Material management requirements
- Waste Management Requirements
- Documents and reporting requirements

- General requirements

Other Documents

- Requirements for business activities

Municipality Affairs (Post) (081-1)

Approval Name	Description	Estimated Time
Site Approval for mining and quarrying related activities	Municipality Approval for the Commercial Registration address or the site in which the Activity will be practiced	3 Days

Fee Details (if any)

10 BD

License Information

General Conditions:
1. Size of shop/premises must be sufficient for the activity
2. Businesses may not carry out the activity outside the boundaries of the shop/ premises
3. It is prohibited to display or store any items or equipment outside the shop / premises boundary without prior approval from the Municipality.In the event of non-compliance, the Ministry of Municipality Affairs has the right to take necessary action.
4. Maintain cleanliness of the site
5. Comply with the parking space regulations as per the Construction Regulatory Requirements

Note: Uploading pictures of the site/shop may expedite the process of obtaining approval

Required Documents

- Lease agreement (after obtaining the necessary approvals from other licensing entities)
- Shop photos

Other Documents

- Cabinet's Decision (56) of the year 2022 regarding the Regulatory Requirements of Construction for various areas in the Kingdom of Bahrain

Mining and quarrying

ISIC4	Business activity
081-2	Quarrying of stone, sand and clay - Extraction of Marine Sand

Description

This options is required to perform dredging activities, for example:
- Dredging of industrial sand, sand for construction and gravel

Business Requirements

Age

18 and above

Allowed for Nationalities

- Bahraini 100%
- American 100%
- GCC 100%

Legal Type

It is allowed to register according to the legal forms mentioned below

Allowed for Individual Commercial Registration (ICR) : Yes

Allowed for Company Commercial Registration (CCR) : Yes

- Bahrain Shareholding Company (Public)
- With Limited Liability Company
- Branch of a Foreign Company
- Bahrain Shareholding Company (Closed)
- Partnership Company
- Simple Commandite Company
- Commandite By Shares Company
- Non Profit Company

Required Step of Licenses and Approvals

Ministry / Directorate	License / Approval Requirements	Approval Type
Directorate of Fisheries	Extraction of Marine Sand	Pre
Directorate of Fisheries	Extraction of Marine Sand	Post
Municipality Affairs	Site Approval for mining and quarrying related activities	Post
Supreme Council for Environment	Environmental Approval for Exploitation of quarries to extract stones, sand and shale - extraction of marine sand activity	Post

Directorate of Fisheries (Pre) (081-2)

Approval Name	Description	Estimated Time
Extraction of Marine Sand	Extraction of Marine Sand	5 Days

Fee Details (if any)

BD 50,000

License Information

• An Industrial land with a waterfront must be allocated for the purpose of establishing a berth for the excavators in accordance with law no. 20 of 2006 regarding the protection of beaches, coasts, and sea ports.
• For more details, please refer to Ministerial order No. 88 of 2014 issuing the Executive Regulations of Law No. 37 of 2014 concerning the extraction and sale of marine sand

Required Documents

•A List with the number of vessels to be used for this activity along with their names and ship registration certificate, and an indication whether they are owned by the CR owner or not.
•A detailed statement of the coordinates of the site/ sites where the extraction of sand will be performed, accompanied by their respective survey maps approved by the Survey and Land Registration Bureau
•A list of the mechanisms that will be used in the process of extracting the marine sands and indicating whether they are owned by the applicant or not
•List of names of the ship/ vessel crew with copies of passports, and their licenses for practicing maritime professions issued by the Customs Department
•Profile of company

Other Documents

- Ministerial order No. 88 of 2014 issuing the Executive Regulations of Law No. 37 of 2014 concerning the extraction and sale of marine sand

Directorate of Fisheries (Post) (081-2)

Approval Name	Description	Estimated Time
Extraction of Marine Sand	Extraction of Marine Sand	5 Days

Fee Details (if any)

BD 50,000

License Information

• An Industrial land with a waterfront must be allocated for the purpose of establishing a berth for the excavators in accordance with law no. 20 of 2006 regarding the protection of beaches, coasts, and sea ports.
• For more details, please refer to Ministerial order No. 88 of 2014 issuing the Executive Regulations of Law No. 37 of 2014 concerning the extraction and sale of marine sand

Required Documents

•A List with the number of vessels to be used for this activity along with their names and ship registration certificate, and an indication whether they are owned by the CR owner or not.
•A detailed statement of the coordinates of the site/ sites where the extraction of sand will be performed, accompanied by their respective survey maps approved by the Survey and Land Registration Bureau
•A list of the mechanisms that will be used in the process of extracting the marine sands and indicating whether they are owned by the applicant or not
•List of names of the ship/ vessel crew with copies of passports, and their licenses for practicing maritime professions issued by the Customs Department
•Profile of company

Other Documents

- Ministerial order No. 88 of 2014 issuing the Executive Regulations of Law No. 37 of 2014 concerning the extraction and sale of marine sand

Municipality Affairs (Post) (081-2)

Approval Name	Description	Estimated Time
Site Approval for mining and quarrying related activities	Municipality Approval for the Commercial Registration address or the site in which the Activity will be practiced	3 Days

Fee Details (if any)

10 BD

License Information

General Conditions:
1. Size of shop/premises must be sufficient for the activity
2. Businesses may not carry out the activity outside the boundaries of the shop/ premises
3. It is prohibited to display or store any items or equipment outside the shop / premises boundary without prior approval from the Municipality.In the event of non-compliance, the Ministry of Municipality Affairs has the right to take necessary action.
4. Maintain cleanliness of the site
5. Comply with the parking space regulations as per the Construction Regulatory Requirements

Note: Uploading pictures of the site/shop may expedite the process of obtaining approval

Required Documents

- Lease agreement (after obtaining the necessary approvals from other licensing entities)
- Shop photos

Other Documents

- Cabinet's Decision (56) of the year 2022 regarding the Regulatory Requirements of Construction for various areas in the Kingdom of Bahrain

Supreme Council for Environment (Post) (081-2)

Approval Name	Description	Estimated Time
Environmental Approval for Exploitation of quarries to extract stones, sand and shale - extraction of marine sand activity	This service aims to assess the environmental impact and licensing of development, industrial and production projects and activities, in accordance with the standards of protecting the environment and its natural resources	10 Days

Fee Details (if any)

- 100 Bahraini Dinars or 200 Bahraini Dinars for the fast-track procedure (when the data requested within the EA-5 form is sufficient without the need for additional studies)
- 4000 Bahraini Dinars or 6000 Bahraini Dinars for the fast track procedure (when it is necessary to submit an environmental impact assessment study for the project), with an additional payment of 100 Bahraini Dinars when it is necessary to submit a proposal for the scope of the study before submitting it or 500 Bahraini Dinars for a fast track procedure when the proposed scope of the study is being submitted before the study

License Information

To check the requirements for this approval, kindly download the detailed requirements sheet from the other downloadable documents section, which includes the following requirements:

- Building layout engineering and equipment requirements
- Workplace requirements
- Storage requirements
- Material management requirements
- Waste Management Requirements
- Documents and reporting requirements

• General requirements

Other Documents

•Annex to the Minister of Housing, Municipalities and Environment order regarding the project's environmental assessment
•Law No. (2) of 2021 regarding the environmental standards of air as decided by the Chairman of the Supreme Council for Environment
•Law No. (3) of 2021 regarding the environmental standards of water as decided by the Chairman of the Supreme Council for the Environment
•Law No. (7) of 2022 regarding the environment
•Law No. (7) of 2022 regarding the environment
•Ministerial Order No. (1) of 1998 regarding Project's Environmental Assessment
•Ministerial Order No. (10) of 2006 regarding the installation of devices for on-line monitoring of atmospheric air pollutants
•Ministerial Order No. (3) of 2005 regarding environmental requirements and standards in workplaces, especially regarding workers' exposure to heat and noise, and the provision of tools and protective clothing such as gloves, glasses, face masks and earplugs, with a commitment to use them during work
•Ministerial Order No. (3) of 2006 regarding the management of hazardous waste
•Ministerial Order No. (4) of 2005 regarding the management of used oils
•Ministerial Order No. (4) of 2006 regarding the management of hazardous chemicals
•Ministerial Order No. (4) of 2021 regarding the fees of the licenses and services provided by the Supreme Council for Environment
•Ministerial Order No. (6) of 2013 amending order No. (4) of 2006 regarding the management of hazardous chemicals
•Ministerial Order No. (7) of 2002 regarding the control importation and use of prohibited and severely restricted chemicals, and not to import any chemical compound except after obtaining approvals of all concerned authorities, including the executive body of the Supreme Council for Environment
•Ministerial Order No. (7) of 2013 amending order No. (3) of 2006 regarding the management of hazardous waste
•Ministerial Order No. 4 of 2014 regarding the management of the environmental consulting offices operations in the Kingdom of Bahrain
•Requirements for business activities

Mining and quarrying

ISIC4	Business activity
089	Other Mining and quarrying

Description

Mining and quarrying of various minerals not mentioned elsewhere

Business Requirements

Age

18 and above

Allowed for Nationalities

- Bahraini 100%
- GCC 100%
- American 100%
- Singaporean 100%
- Icelander 100%
- Liechtenstein er 100%
- Norwegian 100%
- Swiss 100%

Legal Type

It is allowed to register according to the legal forms mentioned below

Allowed for Individual Commercial Registration (ICR) : Yes

Allowed for Company Commercial Registration (CCR) : Yes

- Bahrain Shareholding Company (Public)
- With Limited Liability Company
- Branch of a Foreign Company
- Bahrain Shareholding Company (Closed)
- Partnership Company
- Simple Commandite Company
- Commandite By Shares Company
- Non Profit Company

Required Step of Licenses and Approvals

Ministry / Directorate	License / Approval Requirements	Approval Type
Municipality Affairs	Site Approval for mining and quarrying related activities	Post
Supreme Council for Environment	Environmental Approval for Mining and quarrying activities n.e.c.activity	Post

Municipality Affairs (Post) (089)

Approval Name	Description	Estimated Time
Site Approval for mining and quarrying related activities	Municipality Approval for the Commercial Registration address or the site in which the Activity will be practiced	3 Days

Fee Details (if any)

10 BD

License Information

General Conditions:
1. Size of shop/premises must be sufficient for the activity
2. Businesses may not carry out the activity outside the boundaries of the shop/ premises
3. It is prohibited to display or store any items or equipment outside the shop / premises boundary without prior approval from the Municipality.In the event of non-compliance, the Ministry of Municipality Affairs has the right to take necessary action.
4. Maintain cleanliness of the site
5. Comply with the parking space regulations as per the Construction Regulatory Requirements

Note: Uploading pictures of the site/shop may expedite the process of obtaining approval

Required Documents

- Lease agreement (after obtaining the necessary approvals from other licensing entities)
- Shop photos

Other Documents

- Cabinet's Decision (56) of the year 2022 regarding the Regulatory Requirements of Construction for various areas in the Kingdom of Bahrain

Supreme Council for Environment (Post) (089)

Approval Name	Description	Estimated Time
Environmental Approval for Mining and quarrying activities n.e.c.activity	This service aims to assess the environmental impact and licensing of development, industrial and production projects and activities, in accordance with the standards of protecting the environment and its natural resources	10 Days

Fee Details (if any)

- 30 or 100 Bahraini Dinars (depends on the activity which will be practiced) ; or 200 Bahraini Dinars for the fast-track procedure (when the data requested within the EA-1 form is sufficient without the need for additional studies)
- 4000 Bahraini Dinars or 6000 Bahraini Dinars for the fast track procedure (when it is necessary to submit an environmental impact assessment study for the project), with an additional payment of 100 Bahraini Dinars when it is necessary to submit a proposal for the scope of the study before submitting it or 500 Bahraini Dinars for a fast track procedure when the proposed scope of the study is being submitted before the study

License Information

To check the requirements for this approval, kindly download the detailed requirements sheet from the other downloadable documents section, which includes the following requirements:

- Building layout Engineering and Equipment Requirements
- Workplace requirements
- Storage requirements
- Material management requirements
- Waste Management Requirements

- Documents and reporting requirements
- General requirements

Other Documents

- Annex to the Minister of Housing, Municipalities and Environment order regarding the project's environmental assessment
- Law No. (2) of 2021 regarding the environmental standards of air as decided by the Chairman of the Supreme Council for Environment
- Law No. (3) of 2021 regarding the environmental standards of water as decided by the Chairman of the Supreme Council for the Environment
- Law No. (54) of 2014 regarding the approval of the unified law regarding substances that deplete the ozone layer for the GCC countries
- Law No. (7) of 2022 regarding the environment
- Ministerial Order No. (1) of 1998 regarding Project's Environmental Assessment
- Ministerial Order No. (10) of 2006 regarding the installation of devices for on-line monitoring of atmospheric air pollutants
- Ministerial Order No. (11) of 2019 regarding the issue of technical specification of plastic products
- Ministerial Order No. (3) of 2005 regarding environmental requirements and standards in workplaces, especially regarding workers' exposure to heat and noise, and the provision of tools and protective clothing such as gloves, glasses, face masks and earplugs, with a commitment to use them during work
- Ministerial Order No. (3) of 2006 regarding the management of hazardous waste
- Ministerial Order No. (4) of 2005 regarding the management of used oils
- Ministerial Order No. (4) of 2006 regarding the management of hazardous chemicals
- Ministerial Order No. (4) of 2021 regarding the fees of the licenses and services provided by the Supreme Council for Environment
- Ministerial Order No. (6) of 2013 amending order No. (4) of 2006 regarding the management of hazardous chemicals
- Ministerial Order No. (7) of 2002 regarding the control importation and use of prohibited and severely restricted chemicals, and not to import any chemical compound except after obtaining approvals of all concerned authorities, including the executive body of the Supreme Council for Environment
- Ministerial Order No. (7) of 2013 amending order No. (3) of 2006 regarding the management of hazardous waste
- Ministerial Order No. 4 of 2014 regarding the management of the environmental consulting offices operations in the Kingdom of Bahrain
- Order No. (2) of 2020 determining the categories of fees for licensing refrigeration media, refrigeration units and air conditioning units as decided by the Chairman of the Supreme Council for the Environment
- Requirements for business activities
- law No. (1) of 2020 regarding the management of refrigeration media, refrigeration units and air conditioning units as decided by the Chairman of the Supreme Council for the Environment

•law No. (2) of 2019 regarding the ban on the import of plastic waste of all kinds as decided by the Chairman of the Supreme Council for the Environment

Mining and quarrying

ISIC4	Business activity
0910-2	Support activities for petroleum and natural gas extraction - Technical services for oil and gas

Description

It includes providing one or more technical oil services to companies and entities in the oil and gas industry related to support activities for crude oil and natural gas extraction. This includes, but is not limited to:

1. Providing technical support services for oil drilling operations, including machinery, equipment, materials, software, and technologies.
2. Repair and maintenance services for machinery and equipment.
3. Processing, operation, and rehabilitation services for supporting machinery and equipment.
4. Enhance and maintenance services for oil and gas wells.

It does not include training, educational, consulting, or qualification services, providing labor, administrative services, or similar services.

Business Requirements

Age

18 and above

Allowed for Nationalities

Bahraini 100%		GCC 100%	
American 100%		Singaporean 100%	
Icelander 100%		Liechtenstein er 100%	
Norwegian 100%		Swiss 100%	

Foreign Allowed up to 100%

Legal Type

It is allowed to register according to the legal forms mentioned below

Allowed for Individual Commercial Registration (ICR) : Yes

Allowed for Company Commercial Registration (CCR) : Yes

- Bahrain Shareholding Company (Public)
- With Limited Liability Company
- Branch of a Foreign Company
- Bahrain Shareholding Company (Closed)
- Partnership Company
- Simple Commandite Company
- Commandite By Shares Company
- Non Profit Company

Required Step of Licenses and Approvals

Ministry / Directorate	License / Approval Requirements	Approval Type
Ministry of Oil and Environment	Technical services for oil and gas	Notification Only

Municipality Affairs	Site Approval for mining and quarrying related activities	Post

Ministry of Oil and Environment (Notification Only) (0910-2)

Approval Name	Description	Estimated Time
Technical services for oil and gas	It includes providing one or more technical oil services to companies and entities in the oil and gas industry related to support activities for crude oil and natural gas extraction. This includes, but is not limited to: 1. Providing technical support services for oil drilling operations, including machinery, equipment, materials, software, and technologies. 2. Repair and maintenance services for machinery and equipment. 3. Processing, operation, and rehabilitation services for supporting machinery and equipment. 4. Enhance and maintenance services for oil and gas wells. It does not include training, educational, consulting, or qualification services, providing labor, administrative	3 Days

	services, or similar services	

Fee Details (if any)

There is no Estimated Processing Time (Days) in this license.

License Information

Please consider the following requirements after obtaining the license:
- Copies of agreements/contracts with oil companies for the provision of technical services in the oil and gas field, along with contact information.
- Provide general information about the company, its projects, and services provided to oil companies and entities.
- Provide specific details, such as project lists, ongoing or contracted projects with local or regional oil companies, or related agreements, tenders, and correspondences.
- A list of oil companies that the company has contracted with or provided technical services to.
- Provide contact details for further assistance and specific inquiries

Municipality Affairs (Post) (0910-2)

Approval Name	Description	Estimated Time
Site Approval for mining and quarrying related activities	Municipality Approval for the Commercial Registration address or the site in which the Activity will be practiced	3 Days

Fee Details (if any)

10 BD

License Information

General Conditions:
1. Size of shop/premises must be sufficient for the activity
2. Businesses may not carry out the activity outside the boundaries of the shop/ premises
3. It is prohibited to display or store any items or equipment outside the shop / premises boundary without prior approval from the Municipality.In the event of non-compliance, the Ministry of Municipality Affairs has the right to take necessary action.
4. Maintain cleanliness of the site
5. Comply with the parking space regulations as per the Construction Regulatory Requirements

Note: Uploading pictures of the site/shop may expedite the process of obtaining approval

Required Documents

- Lease agreement (after obtaining the necessary approvals from other licensing entities)
- Shop photos

Other Documents

- Cabinet's Decision (56) of the year 2022 regarding the Regulatory Requirements of Construction for various areas in the Kingdom of Bahrain

Mining and quarrying

ISIC4	Business activity
0990	Support activities for other mining and quarrying

Description

This activity includes:
- support services on a fee or contract basis, required for mining activities.
· exploration services, e.g. traditional prospecting methods, such as taking core samples and making geological observations at prospective sites
· draining and pumping services, on a fee or contract basis
· test drilling and test hole boring

This activity excludes:
- specialized repair of mining machinery, see 3312

Business Requirements

Age

18 and above

Allowed for Nationalities

Bahraini 100%	GCC 100%
American 100%	Singaporean 100%
Icelander 100%	Liechtenstein er 100%
Norwegian 100%	Swiss 100%

Foreign Allowed up to 100%

Legal Type

It is allowed to register according to the legal forms mentioned below

Allowed for Individual Commercial Registration (ICR) : Yes

Allowed for Company Commercial Registration (CCR) : Yes

- Bahrain Shareholding Company (Public)
- With Limited Liability Company
- Branch of a Foreign Company
- Bahrain Shareholding Company (Closed)
- Partnership Company
- Simple Commandite Company
- Commandite By Shares Company
- Non Profit Company

Required Step of Licenses and Approvals

Ministry / Directorate	License / Approval Requirements	Approval Type
Municipality Affairs	Site Approval for mining and quarrying related activities	Post
Supreme Council for Environment	Environmental Approval for Other business support activities for mining and quarrying activity	Post

Municipality Affairs (Post) (0990)

Approval Name	Description	Estimated Time
Site Approval for mining and quarrying related activities	Municipality Approval for the Commercial Registration address or the site in which the Activity will be practiced	3 Days

Fee Details (if any)

10 BD

License Information

General Conditions:
1. Size of shop/premises must be sufficient for the activity
2. Businesses may not carry out the activity outside the boundaries of the shop/ premises
3. It is prohibited to display or store any items or equipment outside the shop / premises boundary without prior approval from the Municipality.In the event of non-compliance, the Ministry of Municipality Affairs has the right to take necessary action.
4. Maintain cleanliness of the site
5. Comply with the parking space regulations as per the Construction Regulatory Requirements

Note: Uploading pictures of the site/shop may expedite the process of obtaining approval

Required Documents

- Lease agreement (after obtaining the necessary approvals from other licensing entities)
- Shop photos

Other Documents

- Cabinet's Decision (56) of the year 2022 regarding the Regulatory Requirements of Construction for various areas in the Kingdom of Bahrain

Supreme Council for Environment (Post) (0990)

Approval Name	Description	Estimated Time
Environmental Approval for Other business support activities for mining and quarrying activity	This service aims to assess the environmental impact and licensing of development, industrial and production projects and activities, in accordance with the standards of protecting the environment and its natural resources	10 Days

Fee Details (if any)

- 30 or 100 Bahraini Dinars (depends on the activity which will be practiced) ;or 200 Bahraini Dinars for the fast-track procedure (when the data requested within the EA-1 form is sufficient without the need for additional studies)
- 4000 Bahraini Dinars or 6000 Bahraini Dinars for the fast track procedure (when it is necessary to submit an environmental impact assessment study for the project), with an additional payment of 100 Bahraini Dinars when it is necessary to submit a proposal for the scope of the study before submitting it or 500 Bahraini Dinars for a fast track procedure when the proposed scope of the study is being submitted before the study

License Information

To check the requirements for this approval, kindly download the detailed requirements sheet from the other downloadable documents section, which includes the following requirements:

- Building layout engineering and equipment requirements
- Workplace requirements
- Storage requirements
- Material management requirements
- Waste Management Requirements

- Documents and reporting requirements
- General requirements

Other Documents

- Annex to the Minister of Housing, Municipalities and Environment order regarding the project's environmental assessment
- Law No. (2) of 2019 regarding the ban on the import of plastic waste of all kinds as decided by the Chairman of the Supreme Council for the Environment
- Law No. (2) of 2021 regarding the environmental standards of air as decided by the Chairman of the Supreme Council for Environment
- Law No. (3) of 2021 regarding the environmental standards of water as decided by the Chairman of the Supreme Council for the Environment
- Law No. (54) of 2014 regarding the approval of the unified law regarding substances that deplete the ozone layer for the GCC countries
- Law No. (7) of 2022 regarding the environment
- Ministerial Order No. (1) of 1998 regarding Project's Environmental Assessment
- Ministerial Order No. (10) of 2006 regarding the installation of devices for on-line monitoring of atmospheric air pollutants
- Ministerial Order No. (11) of 2019 regarding the issue of technical specification of plastic products
- Ministerial Order No. (3) of 2005 regarding environmental requirements and standards in workplaces, especially regarding workers' exposure to heat and noise, and the provision of tools and protective clothing such as gloves, glasses, face masks and earplugs, with a commitment to use them during work
- Ministerial Order No. (3) of 2006 regarding the management of hazardous waste
- Ministerial Order No. (4) of 2005 regarding the management of used oils
- Ministerial Order No. (4) of 2006 regarding the management of hazardous chemicals
- Ministerial Order No. (4) of 2021 regarding the fees of the licenses and services provided by the Supreme Council for Environment
- Ministerial Order No. (6) of 2013 amending order No. (4) of 2006 regarding the management of hazardous chemicals
- Ministerial Order No. (7) of 2002 regarding the control importation and use of prohibited and severely restricted chemicals, and not to import any chemical compound except after obtaining approvals of all concerned authorities, including the executive body of the Supreme Council for Environment
- Ministerial Order No. (7) of 2013 amending order No. (3) of 2006 regarding the management of hazardous waste
- Ministerial Order No. 4 of 2014 regarding the management of the environmental consulting offices operations in the Kingdom of Bahrain
- Order No. (2) of 2020 determining the categories of fees for licensing refrigeration media, refrigeration units and air conditioning units as decided by the Chairman of the Supreme Council for the Environment
- Requirements for business activities
- law No. (1) of 2020 regarding the management of refrigeration media, refrigeration

units and air conditioning units as decided by the Chairman of the Supreme Council for the Environment

Manufacturing

سجلات
SIJILAT
نظام السجلات التجارية
COMMERCIAL REGISTRATION PORTAL

Manufacturing

ISIC4	Business activity
101-1	Processing and preserving of meat - Workshop

Description

This activity includes:
- operation of slaughterhouses engaged in killing, dressing or packing meat: beef, poultry, lamb, rabbit, mutton, camel, etc.
- production of fresh, chilled or frozen meat, in carcasses or in cuts or individual portions.
- production of dried, salted or smoked meat
- production of meat products: sausages, salami, puddings, saveloys, bolognas, pâtés

This activity also includes:
- production of hides and skins originating from slaughterhouses, including fellmongery
- processing of animal offal

This activity excludes:
- manufacture of prepared frozen meat and poultry dishes, see 107
- manufacture of soup containing meat, see 107
- wholesale trade of meat, see 463
- packaging of meat, see 8292

Business Requirements

Age

18 and above

Allowed for Nationalities

Bahraini 100%		GCC 100%	
American 100%		Singaporean 100%	
Icelander 100%		Liechtenstein er 100%	
Norwegian 100%		Swiss 100%	

Foreign Allowed up to 100%

Legal Type

It is allowed to register according to the legal forms mentioned below

Allowed for Individual Commercial Registration (ICR) : Yes

Allowed for Company Commercial Registration (CCR) : Yes

- Bahrain Shareholding Company (Public)
- With Limited Liability Company
- Branch of a Foreign Company
- Bahrain Shareholding Company (Closed)
- Partnership Company
- Simple Commandite Company
- Commandite By Shares Company
- Non Profit Company

Required Step of Licenses and Approvals

Ministry / Directorate	License / Approval Requirements	Approval Type
Control And Animal Health Directorate	Approval for Processing and preserving of meat	Post

Municipality Affairs	Site Approval for manufacturing activities (Type B)	Post

Control And Animal Health Directorate (Post) (101-1)

Approval Name	Description	Estimated Time
Approval for Processing and preserving of meat	Approval for Processing and preserving of meat	5 Days

Fee Details (if any)

There is no Estimated Processing Time (Days) in this license.

License Information

To obtain the license, the slaughterhouse should have the following facilities/areas:
*A Barn.
*Slaughtering and butchering hall.
*Room for keeping hides.
*Room for cleaning intestines.
*Warehouse.
*Workers' room.
*Cooling room.
*Waiting area.
*Administration building.
*Availability of a source of electrical energy.
*Availability of a source of drinking water.
Please refer to the standards of animal welfare practices

o Cruelty to animals

o Animal owner duties

o Conditions for dealing with animals

o Conditions for establishing animal facilities

o Animal transport

o The use of animals for scientific purposes

o Disposal of animals

Operational requirements after obtaining the Business license

1. Each commercial animal facility must appoint a veterinarian permanently, and he must be licensed by the competent authority to practice the veterinary profession, except for the temporary commercial or recreational facilities where the supervision of a veterinarian, a veterinary clinic, or a veterinary hospital is sufficient.

2. The competent authority issues a license for each animal observer in any commercial animal facility by the competent authority after the following conditions are met:

* Conducting a competency test in dealing with animals.

* Animal observers must submit scientific certificates that are duly documented and equivalent in the field of animal care.

* Animal observers are required to have duly documented experience certificates of no less than (5) five years in the same field.

* A duly documented (2) two-year experience certificate for animal observers in the same field is sufficient.

A- The term of the license shall be according to the type and size of the facility, provided that it does not exceed one year;

3. The license granted to operate the animal facility shall be withdrawn if the license owner violates the Animal Welfare Law of the GCC countries or the regulations issued thereof, or if they violate the license terms issued by the competent authority.

Other Documents

•GCC's Unified Standards for Veterinary Facilities
•Minister of Works, Municipalities Affairs and Urban Planning Decision No. (37) of 2020 issuing the executive regulations of the Animal Welfare Law for the Gulf Cooperation Council states issued by Law No. (52) of 2014
•Mobile slaughterhouse Operational Requirements Form
•Standards of animal welfare practices

Municipality Affairs (Post) (101-1)

Approval Name	Description	Estimated Time
Site Approval for manufacturing activities (Type B)	Municipality Approval for the Commercial Registration address or the site in which the Activity will be practiced	3 Days

Fee Details (if any)

10 BD

License Information

General Conditions:
1. Size of shop/premises must be sufficient for the activity
2. Businesses may not carry out the activity outside the boundaries of the shop/ premises
3. It is prohibited to display or store any items or equipment outside the shop / premises boundary without prior approval from the Municipality. In the event of non-compliance, the Ministry of Municipality Affairs has the right to take necessary action.
4. Maintain cleanliness of the site
5. Comply with the parking space regulations as per the Construction Regulatory Requirements

Activity Specific Conditions:
1. The Commercial Registration for this activity can only be registered in service and industrial streets/areas

Note: Uploading pictures of the site/shop may expedite the process of obtaining approval

Required Documents

- Lease agreement (after obtaining the necessary approvals from other licensing entities)
- Shop photos

Other Documents

- Cabinet's Decision (56) of the year 2022 regarding the Regulatory Requirements of Construction for various areas in the Kingdom of Bahrain

Manufacturing

ISIC4	Business activity
101-2	Processing and preserving of meat - Factory

Description

This activity includes:
- operation of slaughterhouses engaged in killing, dressing or packing meat: beef, poultry, lamb, rabbit, mutton, camel, etc.
- production of fresh, chilled or frozen meat, in carcasses or in cuts or individual portions.
- production of dried, salted or smoked meat
- production of meat products: sausages, salami, puddings, saveloys, bolognas, pâtés

This activity also includes:
- production of hides and skins originating from slaughterhouses, including fellmongery
- processing of animal offal

This activity excludes:
- manufacture of prepared frozen meat and poultry dishes, see 107
- manufacture of soup containing meat, see 107
- wholesale trade of meat, see 463
- packaging of meat, see 8292

Business Requirements

Age

18 and above

Allowed for Nationalities

Bahraini 100%		GCC 100%	
American 100%		Singaporean 100%	
Icelander 100%		Liechtenstein er 100%	
Norwegian 100%		Swiss 100%	

Foreign Allowed up to 100%

Legal Type

It is allowed to register according to the legal forms mentioned below

Allowed for Individual Commercial Registration (ICR) : Yes

Allowed for Company Commercial Registration (CCR) : Yes

- Bahrain Shareholding Company (Public)
- With Limited Liability Company
- Branch of a Foreign Company
- Bahrain Shareholding Company (Closed)
- Partnership Company
- Simple Commandite Company
- Commandite By Shares Company
- Non Profit Company

Required Step of Licenses and Approvals

Ministry / Directorate	License / Approval Requirements	Approval Type
Directorate Of Industrial Developments	Approval by Directorate of Industrial	Pre

	Developments(Pre)	
Municipality Affairs	Site Approval for manufacturing activities (Type B)	Post
Supreme Council for Environment	Environmental Approval for Meat processing and preservation - factory activity	Post
Ministry of Health	Health approval for Processing and preserving of meat	Post
Directorate Of Industrial Developments	Notification Only	Final Site Inspection

Directorate Of Industrial Developments (Pre) (101-2)

Approval Name	Description	Estimated Time
Approval by Directorate of Industrial Developments(Pre)	This is a preliminary approval given by the Directorate of Industrial Development to ensure that the applicant has selected the appropriate activity based on the information provided	5 Days

Fee Details (if any)

There is no Estimated Processing Time (Days) in this license.

License Information

Applicants would have to provide through the system the following information:

General Information:

- Total Amount Invested in the Project (This should include value of machinery and fixed assets)
- Estimated number of workforce (Bahraini and Non-Bahraini)
- Expected utility consumption of electricity, water and natural gas
- Total area of the project

Activity Information:

- Product Information:

1) The products to be manufactured by choosing the appropriate HS codes (HS code list can be downloaded from the application if needed).
2) Product name.
3) Expected production date (The expected date on which the factory will start producing the product).

4) The maximum installed capacity and the expected production capacity per year based on the fixed HS code's unit of measure.

• Main raw materials: The main raw materials to be used in production and its source

• Main Machinery and Equipment: The main machinery and equipment to be used in production and its information.

• Manufacturing process: Brief on the manufacturing process explaining how materials are transformed from one state to another until reaching the final product, mentioning the types of materials used, the operations performed, and the machinery/equipment used in each step (if any) for each product.

Required Documents

•Photos of machinery/ equipment to be used
•Photos of products to be manufactured

Other Documents

•Law No. (81) of 2006 with respect to approving The Common Industrial Law of the GCC
•Ministerial Resolution No. (11) of 2009
•Operational requirements for the directorate of industrial developments activities

Municipality Affairs (Post) (101-2)

Approval Name	Description	Estimated Time
Site Approval for manufacturing activities (Type B)	Municipality Approval for the Commercial Registration address or the site in which the Activity will be practiced	3 Days

Fee Details (if any)

10 BD

License Information

General Conditions:
1. Size of shop/premises must be sufficient for the activity
2. Businesses may not carry out the activity outside the boundaries of the shop/ premises
3. It is prohibited to display or store any items or equipment outside the shop / premises boundary without prior approval from the Municipality. In the event of non-compliance, the Ministry of Municipality Affairs has the right to take necessary action.
4. Maintain cleanliness of the site
5. Comply with the parking space regulations as per the Construction Regulatory Requirements

Activity Specific Conditions:
1. The Commercial Registration for this activity can only be registered in service and industrial streets/areas

Note: Uploading pictures of the site/shop may expedite the process of obtaining approval

Required Documents

- Lease agreement (after obtaining the necessary approvals from other licensing entities)
- Shop photos

Other Documents

- Cabinet's Decision (56) of the year 2022 regarding the Regulatory Requirements of Construction for various areas in the Kingdom of Bahrain

Supreme Council for Environment (Post) (101-2)

Approval Name	Description	Estimated Time
Environmental Approval for Meat processing and preservation - factory activity	This service aims to assess the environmental impact and licensing of development, industrial and production projects and activities, in accordance with the standards of protecting the environment and its natural resources	10 Days

Fee Details (if any)

- 30 Bahraini Dinars or 200 Bahraini Dinars for the fast-track procedure (when the data requested within the EA-2 form is sufficient without the need for additional studies)
- 4000 Bahraini Dinars or 6000 Bahraini Dinars for the fast track procedure (when it is necessary to submit an environmental impact assessment study for the project), with an additional payment of 100 Bahraini Dinars when it is necessary to submit a proposal for the scope of the study before submitting it or 500 Bahraini Dinars for a fast track procedure when the proposed scope of the study is being submitted before the study

License Information

To check the requirements for this approval, kindly download the detailed requirements sheet from the other downloadable documents section, which includes the following requirements:

- Building layout engineering and equipment requirements
- Workplace requirements
- Storage requirements
- Material management requirements
- Waste Management Requirements
- Documents and reporting requirements

• General requirements

Other Documents

•Annex to the Minister of Housing, Municipalities and Environment order regarding the project's environmental assessment
•Law No. (2) of 2021 regarding the environmental standards of air as decided by the Chairman of the Supreme Council for Environment
•Law No. (3) of 2021 regarding the environmental standards of water as decided by the Chairman of the Supreme Council for the Environment
•Law No. (5) of 2021 regarding CITES Annexes to the Convention on International Trade in Endangered Fauna and Flora
•Law No. (54) of 2014 regarding the approval of the unified law regarding substances that deplete the ozone layer for the GCC countries
•Law No. (7) of 2022 regarding the environment
•Ministerial Order No. (1) of 1998 regarding Project's Environmental Assessment
•Ministerial Order No. (10) of 2006 regarding the installation of devices for on-line monitoring of atmospheric air pollutants
•Ministerial Order No. (11) of 2019 regarding the issue of technical specification of plastic products
•Ministerial Order No. (3) of 2005 regarding environmental requirements and standards in workspaces
•Ministerial Order No. (3) of 2006 regarding the management of hazardous waste
•Ministerial Order No. (4) of 2005 regarding the management of used oils
•Ministerial Order No. (4) of 2006 regarding the management of hazardous chemicals
•Ministerial Order No. (4) of 2021 regarding the fees of the licenses and services provided by the Supreme Council for Environment
•Ministerial Order No. (6) of 2013 amending order No. (4) of 2006 regarding the management of hazardous chemicals
•Ministerial Order No. (7) of 2002 regarding the control importation and use of prohibited and severely restricted chemicals
•Ministerial Order No. (7) of 2013 amending order No. (3) of 2006 regarding the management of hazardous waste
•Ministerial Order No. 4 of 2014 regarding the management of the environmental consulting offices operations in the Kingdom of Bahrain
•Order No. (2) of 2020 determining the categories of fees for licensing refrigeration media, refrigeration units and air conditioning units as decided by the Chairman of the Supreme Council for the Environment
•Requirements for business activities
•law No. (1) of 2020 regarding the management of refrigeration media, refrigeration units and air conditioning units as decided by the Chairman of the Supreme Council for the Environment
•law No. (2) of 2019 regarding the ban on the import of plastic waste of all kinds as decided by the Chairman of the Supreme Council for the Environment
•law No. (204) of 2018 regarding banning the export of some types of local fishes,

shrimps and other aquatic

Ministry of Health (Post) (101-2)

Approval Name	Description	Estimated Time
Health approval for Processing and preserving of meat	Health approval for Processing and preserving of meat	5 Days

Fee Details (if any)

150 BD

License Information

Please refer to the “Activity License Checklist – Ministry of Health“ document under the “other downloadable documents” section for the licensing requirements.

For faster processing, you may engage any of the licensed engineering offices listed under the “Service Providers Directory” to provide drawings/layout of the premises, which should then be attached to the application that you will submit online. To access the list of licensed engineering offices follow the below steps:
1- Click on “Public Service” on the main navigation bar
2- Click on “Service Providers Directory”
3- Click on “Click Here” button adjacent to “List of Engineering Offices for Ministry of Health related activities”

Required Documents

- Drawings/ layout of premises (approved by an engineering office).
- Requirement Checklist (Stamped by an engineering office)
- drawings/layouts of the premises

Other Documents

- Activity License Checklist - Ministry of Health
- Operational requirements for food production and packaging

Directorate Of Industrial Developments (Final Site Inspection) (101-2)

Approval Name	Description	Estimated Time
Notification Only	Notification to the Industrial development directorate on obtaining a commercial registration with the license to practice the activity.	There is no License Information in this license. Days

Fee Details (if any)

There is no Estimated Processing Time (Days) in this license.

License Information

The industrial license is automatically issued by the Industrial development Directorate after obtaining the approval of other licensing/approving entities.

Please ensure that the actual production date does no exceed the expected production date.

If actual production will start on or before the expected production date please apply for a “New Industrial Registration” by following the steps below:

1- Visit the Industrial services system (www.industry.bh).
2- Select “Industrial Registration”.
3- Select “New Registration” application.

In the event that the actual production date will exceed the expected production date an “Extension of expected production date” application must be submitted by following the steps below:

1- Visit the Industrial services system (www.industry.bh).

2- Select “Industrial License”.
3- Select “Extension of expected production date” application.

Please note that failure to do so within 60 days from the expected production date will result in a violation to be added.

Other Documents

- Law No. (81) of 2006 with respect to approving The Common Industrial Law of the GCC
- Ministerial Resolution No. (11) of 2009 with respect to promulgating Implementing Regulation
- Operational requirements for the directorate of industrial developments activities

Manufacturing

ISIC4	Business activity
102-1	Processing and preserving of fish, crustaceans and molluscs - Workshop

Description

This activity includes:
- preparation and preservation of fish, crustaceans and molluscs: freezing, deep-freezing, drying, smoking, salting, immersing in brine, canning etc.
- production of fish, crustacean and mollusc products: cooked fish, fish fillets, roes, caviar, caviar substitutes etc.
- production of fishmeal for human consumption or animal feed
- production of meals and solubles from fish and other aquatic animals unfit for human consumption

This activity also includes:
- activities of vessels engaged only in the processing and preserving of fish
- processing of seaweed

This activity excludes:
- production of oils and fats from marine material, see 1040
- manufacture of prepared frozen fish dishes, see 107
- manufacture of fish soups, see 107

Business Requirements

Age

18 and above

Allowed for Nationalities

Bahraini 100%		GCC 100%	
American 100%		Singaporean 100%	
Icelander 100%		Liechtenstein er 100%	
Norwegian 100%		Swiss 100%	

Foreign Allowed up to 100%

Legal Type

It is allowed to register according to the legal forms mentioned below

Allowed for Individual Commercial Registration (ICR) : Yes

Allowed for Company Commercial Registration (CCR) : Yes

- Bahrain Shareholding Company (Public)
- With Limited Liability Company
- Branch of a Foreign Company
- Bahrain Shareholding Company (Closed)
- Partnership Company
- Simple Commandite Company
- Commandite By Shares Company
- Non Profit Company

Required Step of Licenses and Approvals

Ministry / Directorate	License / Approval Requirements	Approval Type
Ministry of Health	Health approval for Processing and preserving	Post

	of fish, crustaceans and molluscs	
Municipality Affairs	Site Approval for manufacturing activities (Type B)	Post

Ministry of Health (Post) (102-1)

Approval Name	Description	Estimated Time
Health approval for Processing and preserving of fish, crustaceans and molluscs	Health approval for Processing and preserving of fish, crustaceans and molluscs	5 Days

Fee Details (if any)

150 BD

License Information

Please refer to the “Activity License Checklist – Ministry of Health“ document under the “other downloadable documents” section for the licensing requirements.

For faster processing, you may engage any of the licensed engineering offices listed under the “Service Providers Directory” to provide drawings/layout of the premises, which should then be attached to the application that you will submit online. To access the list of licensed engineering offices follow the below steps:
1- Click on “Public Service” on the main navigation bar
2- Click on “Service Providers Directory”
3- Click on “Click Here” button adjacent to “List of Engineering Offices for Ministry of Health related activities”

Required Documents

- Drawings/ layout of premises (approved by an engineering office).
- Requirement Checklist (Stamped by an engineering office)
- drawings/layouts of the premises

Other Documents

- Activity License Checklist - Ministry of Health
- Operational requirements for food production and packaging

Municipality Affairs (Post) (102-1)

Approval Name	Description	Estimated Time
Site Approval for manufacturing activities (Type B)	Municipality Approval for the Commercial Registration address or the site in which the Activity will be practiced	3 Days

Fee Details (if any)

10 BD

License Information

General Conditions:
1. Size of shop/premises must be sufficient for the activity
2. Businesses may not carry out the activity outside the boundaries of the shop/ premises
3. It is prohibited to display or store any items or equipment outside the shop / premises boundary without prior approval from the Municipality. In the event of non-compliance, the Ministry of Municipality Affairs has the right to take necessary action.
4. Maintain cleanliness of the site
5. Comply with the parking space regulations as per the Construction Regulatory Requirements

Activity Specific Conditions:
1. The Commercial Registration for this activity can only be registered in service and industrial streets/areas

Note: Uploading pictures of the site/shop may expedite the process of obtaining approval

Required Documents

- Lease agreement (after obtaining the necessary approvals from other licensing entities)
- Shop photos

Other Documents

- Cabinet's Decision (56) of the year 2022 regarding the Regulatory Requirements of Construction for various areas in the Kingdom of Bahrain

Manufacturing

ISIC4	Business activity
102-2	Processing and preserving of fish, crustaceans and molluscs - Factory

Description

This activity includes:
- preparation and preservation of fish, crustaceans and molluscs: freezing, deep-freezing, drying, smoking, salting, immersing in brine, canning etc.
- production of fish, crustacean and mollusc products: cooked fish, fish fillets, roes, caviar, caviar substitutes etc.
- production of fishmeal for human consumption or animal feed
- production of meals and solubles from fish and other aquatic animals unfit for human consumption

This activity also includes:
- activities of vessels engaged only in the processing and preserving of fish
- processing of seaweed

This activity excludes:
- production of oils and fats from marine material, see 1040
- manufacture of prepared frozen fish dishes, see 107
- manufacture of fish soups, see 107

Business Requirements

Age

18 and above

Allowed for Nationalities

Bahraini 100%		GCC 100%	
American 100%		Singaporean 100%	
Icelander 100%		Liechtenstein er 100%	
Norwegian 100%		Swiss 100%	

Foreign Allowed up to 100%

Legal Type

It is allowed to register according to the legal forms mentioned below

Allowed for Individual Commercial Registration (ICR) : Yes

Allowed for Company Commercial Registration (CCR) : Yes

- Bahrain Shareholding Company (Public)
- With Limited Liability Company
- Branch of a Foreign Company
- Bahrain Shareholding Company (Closed)
- Partnership Company
- Simple Commandite Company
- Commandite By Shares Company
- Non Profit Company

Required Step of Licenses and Approvals

Ministry / Directorate	License / Approval Requirements	Approval Type
Directorate Of Industrial Developments	Approval by Directorate of Industrial	Pre

	Developments(Pre)	
Municipality Affairs	Site Approval for manufacturing activities (Type B)	Post
Supreme Council for Environment	Environmental Approval for Processing and preservation of fish, crustaceans and mollusks - factory activity	Post
Ministry of Health	Health approval for Processing and preserving of fish, crustaceans and molluscs	Post
Directorate Of Industrial Developments	Notification Only	Final Site Inspection

Directorate Of Industrial Developments (Pre) (102-2)

Approval Name	Description	Estimated Time
Approval by Directorate of Industrial Developments(Pre)	This is a preliminary approval given by the Directorate of Industrial Development to ensure that the applicant has selected the appropriate activity based on the information provided	5 Days

Fee Details (if any)

There is no Estimated Processing Time (Days) in this license.

License Information

Applicants would have to provide through the system the following information:

General Information:

- Total Amount Invested in the Project (This should include value of machinery and fixed assets)
- Estimated number of workforce (Bahraini and Non-Bahraini)
- Expected utility consumption of electricity, water and natural gas
- Total area of the project

Activity Information:

- Product Information:

1) The products to be manufactured by choosing the appropriate HS codes (HS code list can be downloaded from the application if needed).
2) Product name.
3) Expected production date (The expected date on which the factory will start producing the product).

4) The maximum installed capacity and the expected production capacity per year based on the fixed HS code's unit of measure.

• Main raw materials: The main raw materials to be used in production and its source

• Main Machinery and Equipment: The main machinery and equipment to be used in production and its information.

• Manufacturing process: Brief on the manufacturing process explaining how materials are transformed from one state to another until reaching the final product, mentioning the types of materials used, the operations performed, and the machinery/equipment used in each step (if any) for each product.

Required Documents

•Photos of machinery/ equipment to be used
•Photos of products to be manufactured

Other Documents

•Law No. (81) of 2006 with respect to approving The Common Industrial Law of the GCC
•Ministerial Resolution No. (11) of 2009
•Operational requirements for the directorate of industrial developments activities

Municipality Affairs (Post) (102-2)

Approval Name	Description	Estimated Time
Site Approval for manufacturing activities (Type B)	Municipality Approval for the Commercial Registration address or the site in which the Activity will be practiced	3 Days

Fee Details (if any)

10 BD

License Information

General Conditions:
1. Size of shop/premises must be sufficient for the activity
2. Businesses may not carry out the activity outside the boundaries of the shop/ premises
3. It is prohibited to display or store any items or equipment outside the shop / premises boundary without prior approval from the Municipality. In the event of non-compliance, the Ministry of Municipality Affairs has the right to take necessary action.
4. Maintain cleanliness of the site
5. Comply with the parking space regulations as per the Construction Regulatory Requirements

Activity Specific Conditions:
1. The Commercial Registration for this activity can only be registered in service and industrial streets/areas

Note: Uploading pictures of the site/shop may expedite the process of obtaining approval

Required Documents

- Lease agreement (after obtaining the necessary approvals from other licensing entities)
- Shop photos

Other Documents

- Cabinet's Decision (56) of the year 2022 regarding the Regulatory Requirements of Construction for various areas in the Kingdom of Bahrain

Supreme Council for Environment (Post) (102-2)

Approval Name	Description	Estimated Time
Environmental Approval for Processing and preservation of fish, crustaceans and mollusks - factory activity	This service aims to assess the environmental impact and licensing of development, industrial and production projects and activities, in accordance with the standards of protecting the environment and its natural resources	10 Days

Fee Details (if any)

- 30 Bahraini Dinars or 200 Bahraini Dinars for the fast-track procedure (when the data requested within the EA-2 form is sufficient without the need for additional studies)
- 4000 Bahraini Dinars or 6000 Bahraini Dinars for the fast track procedure (when it is necessary to submit an environmental impact assessment study for the project), with an additional payment of 100 Bahraini Dinars when it is necessary to submit a proposal for the scope of the study before submitting it or 500 Bahraini Dinars for a fast track procedure when the proposed scope of the study is being submitted before the study

License Information

To check the requirements for this approval, kindly download the detailed requirements sheet from the other downloadable documents section, which includes the following requirements:

- Building layout engineering and equipment requirements
- Workplace requirements
- Storage requirements
- Material management requirements
- Waste Management Requirements
- Documents and reporting requirements

- General requirements

Ministry of Health (Post) (102-2)

Approval Name	Description	Estimated Time
Health approval for Processing and preserving of fish, crustaceans and molluscs	Health approval for Processing and preserving of fish, crustaceans and molluscs	5 Days

Fee Details (if any)

150 BD

License Information

Please refer to the “Activity License Checklist – Ministry of Health“ document under the “other downloadable documents” section for the licensing requirements.

For faster processing, you may engage any of the licensed engineering offices listed under the “Service Providers Directory” to provide drawings/layout of the premises, which should then be attached to the application that you will submit online. To access the list of licensed engineering offices follow the below steps:
1- Click on “Public Service” on the main navigation bar
2- Click on “Service Providers Directory”
3- Click on “Click Here” button adjacent to “List of Engineering Offices for Ministry of Health related activities”

Required Documents

- Drawings/ layout of premises (approved by an engineering office).
- Requirement Checklist (Stamped by an engineering office)
- drawings/layouts of the premises

Other Documents

- Activity License Checklist - Ministry of Health
- Operational requirements for food production and packaging

Directorate Of Industrial Developments (Final Site Inspection) (102-2)

Approval Name	Description	Estimated Time
Notification Only	Notification to the Industrial development directorate on obtaining a commercial registration with the license to practice the activity.	There is no License Information in this license. Days

Fee Details (if any)

There is no Estimated Processing Time (Days) in this license.

License Information

The industrial license is automatically issued by the Industrial development Directorate after obtaining the approval of other licensing/approving entities.

Please ensure that the actual production date does no exceed the expected production date.

If actual production will start on or before the expected production date please apply for a “New Industrial Registration” by following the steps below:

1- Visit the Industrial services system (www.industry.bh).
2- Select “Industrial Registration”.
3- Select “New Registration” application.

In the event that the actual production date will exceed the expected production date an “Extension of expected production date” application must be submitted by following the steps below:

1- Visit the Industrial services system (www.industry.bh).

2- Select “Industrial License”.
3- Select “Extension of expected production date” application.

Please note that failure to do so within 60 days from the expected production date will result in a violation to be added.

Other Documents

- Law No. (81) of 2006 with respect to approving The Common Industrial Law of the GCC
- Ministerial Resolution No. (11) of 2009 with respect to promulgating Implementing Regulation
- Operational requirements for the directorate of industrial developments activities

Manufacturing

ISIC4	Business activity
103-1	Processing and preserving of fruit and vegetables - Workshop

Description

This activity includes:
- manufacture of food consisting chiefly of fruit or vegetables, except ready-made dishes in frozen or canned form
- preserving of fruit, nuts or vegetables: freezing, drying, immersing in oil or in vinegar, canning etc.
- manufacture of fruit or vegetable food products
- manufacture of fruit or vegetable juices
- manufacture of jams, marmalades and table jellies
- processing and preserving of potatoes: such as: manufacture of prepared frozen potatoes, dehydrated mashed potatoes, potato snacks, potato crisps, potato flour and meal
- roasting of nuts
- manufacture of nut foods and pastes

This activity also includes:
- industrial peeling of potatoes
- production of concentrates from fresh fruits and vegetables
- manufacture of perishable prepared foods of fruit and vegetables, such as: salads, peeled or cut vegetables, tofu (bean curd)

This activity excludes:
- manufacture of flour or meal of dried leguminous vegetables, see 106
- manufacture of artificial concentrates, see 107

Business Requirements

Age

18 and above

Allowed for Nationalities

Bahraini 100%		GCC 100%	
American 100%		Singaporean 100%	
Icelander 100%		Liechtenstein er 100%	
Norwegian 100%		Swiss 100%	

Foreign Allowed up to 100%

Legal Type

It is allowed to register according to the legal forms mentioned below

Allowed for Individual Commercial Registration (ICR) : Yes

Allowed for Company Commercial Registration (CCR) : Yes

- Bahrain Shareholding Company (Public)
- With Limited Liability Company
- Branch of a Foreign Company
- Bahrain Shareholding Company (Closed)
- Partnership Company
- Simple Commandite Company
- Commandite By Shares Company
- Non Profit Company

Required Step of Licenses and Approvals

Ministry / Directorate	License / Approval Requirements	Approval Type
Municipality Affairs	Site Approval for manufacturing activities	Post

	(Type B)	
Ministry of Health	Health approval for Processing and preserving of fruit and vegetables	Post

Municipality Affairs (Post) (103-1)

Approval Name	Description	Estimated Time
Site Approval for manufacturing activities (Type B)	Municipality Approval for the Commercial Registration address or the site in which the Activity will be practiced	3 Days

Fee Details (if any)

10 BD

License Information

General Conditions:
1. Size of shop/premises must be sufficient for the activity
2. Businesses may not carry out the activity outside the boundaries of the shop/ premises
3. It is prohibited to display or store any items or equipment outside the shop / premises boundary without prior approval from the Municipality. In the event of non-compliance, the Ministry of Municipality Affairs has the right to take necessary action.
4. Maintain cleanliness of the site
5. Comply with the parking space regulations as per the Construction Regulatory Requirements

Activity Specific Conditions:
1. The Commercial Registration for this activity can only be registered in service and industrial streets/areas

Note: Uploading pictures of the site/shop may expedite the process of obtaining approval

Required Documents

- Lease agreement (after obtaining the necessary approvals from other licensing entities)
- Shop photos

Other Documents

- Cabinet's Decision (56) of the year 2022 regarding the Regulatory Requirements of Construction for various areas in the Kingdom of Bahrain

Ministry of Health (Post) (103-1)

Approval Name	Description	Estimated Time
Health approval for Processing and preserving of fruit and vegetables	Health approval for Processing and preserving of fruit and vegetables	5 Days

Fee Details (if any)

150 BD

License Information

Please refer to the “Activity License Checklist – Ministry of Health“ document under the “other downloadable documents” section for the licensing requirements.

For faster processing, you may engage any of the licensed engineering offices listed under the “Service Providers Directory” to provide drawings/layout of the premises, which should then be attached to the application that you will submit online. To access the list of licensed engineering offices follow the below steps:
1- Click on “Public Service” on the main navigation bar
2- Click on “Service Providers Directory”
3- Click on “Click Here” button adjacent to “List of Engineering Offices for Ministry of Health related activities”

Required Documents

- Drawings/ layout of premises (approved by an engineering office).
- Requirement Checklist (Stamped by an engineering office)
- drawings/layouts of the premises

Other Documents

- Activity License Checklist - Ministry of Health
- Operational requirements for food production and packaging

Manufacturing

ISIC4	Business activity
103-2	Processing and preserving of fruit and vegetables - Factory

Description

This activity includes:
- manufacture of food consisting chiefly of fruit or vegetables, except ready-made dishes in frozen or canned form
- preserving of fruit, nuts or vegetables: freezing, drying, immersing in oil or in vinegar, canning etc.
- manufacture of fruit or vegetable food products
- manufacture of fruit or vegetable juices
- manufacture of jams, marmalades and table jellies
- processing and preserving of potatoes: such as: manufacture of prepared frozen potatoes, dehydrated mashed potatoes, potato snacks, potato crisps, potato flour and meal
- roasting of nuts
- manufacture of nut foods and pastes

This activity also includes:
- industrial peeling of potatoes
- production of concentrates from fresh fruits and vegetables
- manufacture of perishable prepared foods of fruit and vegetables, such as: salads, peeled or cut vegetables, tofu (bean curd)

This activity excludes:
- manufacture of flour or meal of dried leguminous vegetables, see 106
- manufacture of artificial concentrates, see 107

Business Requirements

Age

18 and above

Allowed for Nationalities

Bahraini 100%		GCC 100%	
American 100%		Singaporean 100%	
Icelander 100%		Liechtenstein er 100%	
Norwegian 100%		Swiss 100%	

Foreign Allowed up to 100%

Legal Type

It is allowed to register according to the legal forms mentioned below

Allowed for Individual Commercial Registration (ICR) : Yes

Allowed for Company Commercial Registration (CCR) : Yes

- Bahrain Shareholding Company (Public)
- With Limited Liability Company
- Branch of a Foreign Company
- Bahrain Shareholding Company (Closed)
- Partnership Company
- Simple Commandite Company
- Commandite By Shares Company
- Non Profit Company

Required Step of Licenses and Approvals

Ministry / Directorate	License / Approval Requirements	Approval Type
Directorate Of Industrial Developments	Approval by Directorate of Industrial	Pre

	Developments(Pre)	
Municipality Affairs	Site Approval for manufacturing activities (Type B)	Post
Ministry of Health	Health approval for Processing and preserving of fruit and vegetables	Post
Supreme Council for Environment	Environmental Approval for Processing and preservation of fruits and vegetables - factory activity	Post
Directorate Of Industrial Developments	Notification Only	Final Site Inspection

Directorate Of Industrial Developments (Pre) (103-2)

Approval Name	Description	Estimated Time
Approval by Directorate of Industrial Developments(Pre)	This is a preliminary approval given by the Directorate of Industrial Development to ensure that the applicant has selected the appropriate activity based on the information provided	5 Days

Fee Details (if any)

There is no Estimated Processing Time (Days) in this license.

License Information

Applicants would have to provide through the system the following information:

General Information:

- Total Amount Invested in the Project (This should include value of machinery and fixed assets)
- Estimated number of workforce (Bahraini and Non-Bahraini)
- Expected utility consumption of electricity, water and natural gas
- Total area of the project

Activity Information:

- Product Information:

1) The products to be manufactured by choosing the appropriate HS codes (HS code list can be downloaded from the application if needed).
2) Product name.
3) Expected production date (The expected date on which the factory will start producing the product).

4) The maximum installed capacity and the expected production capacity per year based on the fixed HS code's unit of measure.

• Main raw materials: The main raw materials to be used in production and its source

• Main Machinery and Equipment: The main machinery and equipment to be used in production and its information.

• Manufacturing process: Brief on the manufacturing process explaining how materials are transformed from one state to another until reaching the final product, mentioning the types of materials used, the operations performed, and the machinery/equipment used in each step (if any) for each product.

Required Documents

•Photos of machinery/ equipment to be used
•Photos of products to be manufactured

Other Documents

•Law No. (81) of 2006 with respect to approving The Common Industrial Law of the GCC
•Ministerial Resolution No. (11) of 2009
•Operational requirements for the directorate of industrial developments activities

Municipality Affairs (Post) (103-2)

Approval Name	Description	Estimated Time
Site Approval for manufacturing activities (Type B)	Municipality Approval for the Commercial Registration address or the site in which the Activity will be practiced	3 Days

Fee Details (if any)

10 BD

License Information

General Conditions:
1. Size of shop/premises must be sufficient for the activity
2. Businesses may not carry out the activity outside the boundaries of the shop/ premises
3. It is prohibited to display or store any items or equipment outside the shop / premises boundary without prior approval from the Municipality. In the event of non-compliance, the Ministry of Municipality Affairs has the right to take necessary action.
4. Maintain cleanliness of the site
5. Comply with the parking space regulations as per the Construction Regulatory Requirements

Activity Specific Conditions:
1. The Commercial Registration for this activity can only be registered in service and industrial streets/areas

Note: Uploading pictures of the site/shop may expedite the process of obtaining approval

Required Documents

- Lease agreement (after obtaining the necessary approvals from other licensing entities)
- Shop photos

Other Documents

- Cabinet's Decision (56) of the year 2022 regarding the Regulatory Requirements of Construction for various areas in the Kingdom of Bahrain

Ministry of Health (Post) (103-2)

Approval Name	Description	Estimated Time
Health approval for Processing and preserving of fruit and vegetables	Health approval for Processing and preserving of fruit and vegetables	5 Days

Fee Details (if any)

150 BD

License Information

Please refer to the “Activity License Checklist – Ministry of Health“ document under the “other downloadable documents” section for the licensing requirements.

For faster processing, you may engage any of the licensed engineering offices listed under the “Service Providers Directory” to provide drawings/layout of the premises, which should then be attached to the application that you will submit online. To access the list of licensed engineering offices follow the below steps:
1- Click on “Public Service” on the main navigation bar
2- Click on “Service Providers Directory”
3- Click on “Click Here” button adjacent to “List of Engineering Offices for Ministry of Health related activities”

Required Documents

- Drawings/ layout of premises (approved by an engineering office).
- Requirement Checklist (Stamped by an engineering office)
- drawings/layouts of the premises

Other Documents

- Activity License Checklist - Ministry of Health
- Operational requirements for food production and packaging

Supreme Council for Environment (Post) (103-2)

Approval Name	Description	Estimated Time
Environmental Approval for Processing and preservation of fruits and vegetables - factory activity	This service aims to assess the environmental impact and licensing of development, industrial and production projects and activities, in accordance with the standards of protecting the environment and its natural resources	10 Days

Fee Details (if any)

- 30 Bahraini Dinars or 200 Bahraini Dinars for the fast-track procedure (when the data requested within the EA-2 form is sufficient without the need for additional studies)
- 4000 Bahraini Dinars or 6000 Bahraini Dinars for the fast track procedure (when it is necessary to submit an environmental impact assessment study for the project), with an additional payment of 100 Bahraini Dinars when it is necessary to submit a proposal for the scope of the study before submitting it or 500 Bahraini Dinars for a fast track procedure when the proposed scope of the study is being submitted before the study

License Information

To check the requirements for this approval, kindly download the detailed requirements sheet from the other downloadable documents section, which includes the following requirements:

- Building layout engineering and equipment requirements
- Workplace requirements
- Storage requirements
- Material management requirements
- Waste Management Requirements
- Documents and reporting requirements

• General requirements

Other Documents

•Annex to the Minister of Housing, Municipalities and Environment order regarding the project's environmental assessment
•Law No. (2) of 2021 regarding the environmental standards of air as decided by the Chairman of the Supreme Council for Environment
•Law No. (3) of 2021 regarding the environmental standards of water as decided by the Chairman of the Supreme Council for the Environment
•Law No. (5) of 2021 regarding CITES Annexes to the Convention on International Trade in Endangered Fauna and Flora
•Law No. (54) of 2014 regarding the approval of the unified law regarding substances that deplete the ozone layer for the GCC countries
•Law No. (7) of 2022 regarding the environment
•Ministerial Order No. (1) of 1998 regarding Project's Environmental Assessment
•Ministerial Order No. (10) of 2006 regarding the installation of devices for on-line monitoring of atmospheric air pollutants
•Ministerial Order No. (11) of 2019 regarding the issue of technical specification of plastic products
•Ministerial Order No. (3) of 2005 regarding environmental requirements and standards in workplaces, especially regarding workers' exposure to heat and noise, and the provision of tools and protective clothing such as gloves, glasses, face masks and earplugs, with a commitment to use them during work
•Ministerial Order No. (3) of 2006 regarding the management of hazardous waste
•Ministerial Order No. (4) of 2005 regarding the management of used oils
•Ministerial Order No. (4) of 2006 regarding the management of hazardous chemicals
•Ministerial Order No. (4) of 2021 regarding the fees of the licenses and services provided by the Supreme Council for Environment
•Ministerial Order No. (6) of 2013 amending order No. (4) of 2006 regarding the management of hazardous chemicals
•Ministerial Order No. (7) of 2002 regarding the control importation and use of prohibited and severely restricted chemicals, and not to import any chemical compound except after obtaining approvals of all concerned authorities, including the executive body of the Supreme Council for Environment
•Ministerial Order No. (7) of 2013 amending order No. (3) of 2006 regarding the management of hazardous waste
•Ministerial Order No. 4 of 2014 regarding the management of the environmental consulting offices operations in the Kingdom of Bahrain
•Order No. (2) of 2020 determining the categories of fees for licensing refrigeration media, refrigeration units and air conditioning units as decided by the Chairman of the Supreme Council for the Environment
•Requirements for business activities
•law No. (1) of 2020 regarding the management of refrigeration media, refrigeration units and air conditioning units as decided by the Chairman of the Supreme Council for

the Environment
•law No. (2) of 2019 regarding the ban on the import of plastic waste of all kinds as decided by the Chairman of the Supreme Council for the Environment
•law No. (204) of 2018 regarding banning the export of some types of local fishes, shrimps and other aquatic
•licensing form for the supreme council of the environment

Directorate Of Industrial Developments (Final Site Inspection) (103-2)

Approval Name	Description	Estimated Time
Notification Only	Notification to the Industrial development directorate on obtaining a commercial registration with the license to practice the activity.	There is no License Information in this license. Days

Fee Details (if any)

There is no Estimated Processing Time (Days) in this license.

License Information

The industrial license is automatically issued by the Industrial development Directorate after obtaining the approval of other licensing/approving entities.

Please ensure that the actual production date does no exceed the expected production date.

If actual production will start on or before the expected production date please apply for a “New Industrial Registration” by following the steps below:

1- Visit the Industrial services system (www.industry.bh).
2- Select “Industrial Registration”.
3- Select “New Registration” application.

In the event that the actual production date will exceed the expected production date an “Extension of expected production date” application must be submitted by following the steps below:

1- Visit the Industrial services system (www.industry.bh).

2- Select “Industrial License”.
3- Select “Extension of expected production date” application.

Please note that failure to do so within 60 days from the expected production date will result in a violation to be added.

Other Documents

- Law No. (81) of 2006 with respect to approving The Common Industrial Law of the GCC
- Ministerial Resolution No. (11) of 2009 with respect to promulgating Implementing Regulation
- Operational requirements for the directorate of industrial developments activities

Manufacturing

ISIC4	Business activity
104-1	Manufacture of vegetable, animal, and fish oils and fats - Workshop

Description

This activity includes the manufacture of crude and refined oils and fats from vegetable or animal materials, except rendering or refining of lard and other edible animal fats.
This activity includes:
- manufacture of crude vegetable oils: olive oil, soya-bean oil, palm oil, sunflower-seed oil, cotton-seed oil, rape, colza or mustard oil, linseed oil etc.
- manufacture of non-defatted flour or meal of oilseeds, oil nuts or oil kernels
- manufacture of refined vegetable oils: olive oil, soya-bean oil etc.
- processing of vegetable oils: blowing, boiling, dehydration, hydrogenation etc.
- manufacture of margarine
- manufacture of melanges and similar spreads
- manufacture of compound cooking fats

This activity also includes:
- manufacture of non-edible animal oils and fats
- extraction of fish and marine mammal oils
- production of cotton linters, oilcakes and other residual products of oil production.

This activity excludes:
- rendering and refining of lard and other edible animal fats, see 101
- wet corn milling, see 106
- production of essential oils, see 2029
- treatment of oil and fats by chemical processes, see 2029

Business Requirements

Age

18 and above

Allowed for Nationalities

Bahraini 100%		GCC 100%	
American 100%		Singaporean 100%	
Icelander 100%		Liechtenstein er 100%	
Norwegian 100%		Swiss 100%	

Foreign Allowed up to 100%

Legal Type

It is allowed to register according to the legal forms mentioned below

Allowed for Individual Commercial Registration (ICR) : Yes

Allowed for Company Commercial Registration (CCR) : Yes

- Bahrain Shareholding Company (Public)
- With Limited Liability Company
- Branch of a Foreign Company
- Bahrain Shareholding Company (Closed)
- Partnership Company
- Simple Commandite Company
- Commandite By Shares Company
- Non Profit Company

Required Step of Licenses and Approvals

Ministry / Directorate	License / Approval Requirements	Approval Type
Ministry of Health	Health approval for Manufacture of vegetable,	Post

	animal, and fish oils and fats	
Supreme Council for Environment	Environmental Approval for Manufacture of vegetable and animal oils and fats - workshop activity	Post
Municipality Affairs	Site Approval for manufacturing activities (Type B)	Post

Ministry of Health (Post) (104-1)

Approval Name	Description	Estimated Time
Health approval for Manufacture of vegetable, animal, and fish oils and fats	Health approval for Manufacture of vegetable, animal, and fish oils and fats	5 Days

Fee Details (if any)

150 BD

License Information

Please refer to the “Activity License Checklist – Ministry of Health“ document under the “other downloadable documents” section for the licensing requirements.

For faster processing, you may engage any of the licensed engineering offices listed under the “Service Providers Directory” to provide drawings/layout of the premises, which should then be attached to the application that you will submit online. To access the list of licensed engineering offices follow the below steps:
1- Click on “Public Service” on the main navigation bar
2- Click on “Service Providers Directory”
3- Click on “Click Here” button adjacent to “List of Engineering Offices for Ministry of Health related activities”

Required Documents

- Drawings/ layout of premises (approved by an engineering office).
- Requirement Checklist (Stamped by an engineering office)
- drawings/layouts of the premises

Other Documents

- Activity License Checklist - Ministry of Health
- Operational requirements for food production and packaging

Supreme Council for Environment (Post) (104-1)

Approval Name	Description	Estimated Time
Environmental Approval for Manufacture of vegetable and animal oils and fats - workshop activity	This service aims to assess the environmental impact and licensing of development, industrial and production projects and activities, in accordance with the standards of protecting the environment and its natural resources	10 Days

Fee Details (if any)

- 30 Bahraini Dinars or 200 Bahraini Dinars for the fast-track procedure (when the data requested within the EA-2 form is sufficient without the need for additional studies)
- 4000 Bahraini Dinars or 6000 Bahraini Dinars for the fast track procedure (when it is necessary to submit an environmental impact assessment study for the project), with an additional payment of 100 Bahraini Dinars when it is necessary to submit a proposal for the scope of the study before submitting it or 500 Bahraini Dinars for a fast track procedure when the proposed scope of the study is being submitted before the study

License Information

To check the requirements for this approval, kindly download the detailed requirements sheet from the other downloadable documents section, which includes the following requirements:

- Building layout engineering and equipment requirements
- Workplace requirements
- Storage requirements
- Material management requirements
- Waste Management Requirements

- Documents and reporting requirements
- General requirements

Other Documents

•Annex to the Minister of Housing, Municipalities and Environment order regarding the project's environmental assessment
•Law No. (2) of 2021 regarding the environmental standards of air as decided by the Chairman of the Supreme Council for Environment
•Law No. (3) of 2021 regarding the environmental standards of water as decided by the Chairman of the Supreme Council for the Environment
•Law No. (5) of 2021 regarding CITES Annexes to the Convention on International Trade in Endangered Fauna and Flora
•Law No. (54) of 2014 regarding the approval of the unified law regarding substances that deplete the ozone layer for the GCC countries
•Law No. (7) of 2022 regarding the environment
•Ministerial Order No. (1) of 1998 regarding Project's Environmental Assessment
•Ministerial Order No. (10) of 2006 regarding the installation of devices for on-line monitoring of atmospheric air pollutants
•Ministerial Order No. (11) of 2019 regarding the issue of technical specification of plastic products
•Ministerial Order No. (3) of 2005 regarding environmental requirements and standards in workplaces, especially regarding workers' exposure to heat and noise, and the provision of tools and protective clothing such as gloves, glasses, face masks and earplugs, with a commitment to use them during work
•Ministerial Order No. (3) of 2006 regarding the management of hazardous waste
•Ministerial Order No. (4) of 2005 regarding the management of used oils
•Ministerial Order No. (4) of 2006 regarding the management of hazardous chemicals
•Ministerial Order No. (4) of 2021 regarding the fees of the licenses and services provided by the Supreme Council for Environment
•Ministerial Order No. (6) of 2013 amending order No. (4) of 2006 regarding the management of hazardous chemicals
•Ministerial Order No. (7) of 2002 regarding the control importation and use of prohibited and severely restricted chemicals, and not to import any chemical compound except after obtaining approvals of all concerned authorities, including the executive body of the Supreme Council for Environment
•Ministerial Order No. (7) of 2013 amending order No. (3) of 2006 regarding the management of hazardous waste
•Ministerial Order No. 4 of 2014 regarding the management of the environmental consulting offices operations in the Kingdom of Bahrain
•Order No. (2) of 2020 determining the categories of fees for licensing refrigeration media, refrigeration units and air conditioning units as decided by the Chairman of the Supreme Council for the Environment
•Requirements for business activities
•law No. (1) of 2020 regarding the management of refrigeration media, refrigeration

units and air conditioning units as decided by the Chairman of the Supreme Council for the Environment
•law No. (2) of 2019 regarding the ban on the import of plastic waste of all kinds as decided by the Chairman of the Supreme Council for the Environment
•law No. (204) of 2018 regarding banning the export of some types of local fishes, shrimps and other aquatic

Municipality Affairs (Post) (104-1)

Approval Name	Description	Estimated Time
Site Approval for manufacturing activities (Type B)	Municipality Approval for the Commercial Registration address or the site in which the Activity will be practiced	3 Days

Fee Details (if any)

10 BD

License Information

General Conditions:
1. Size of shop/premises must be sufficient for the activity
2. Businesses may not carry out the activity outside the boundaries of the shop/ premises
3. It is prohibited to display or store any items or equipment outside the shop / premises boundary without prior approval from the Municipality. In the event of non-compliance, the Ministry of Municipality Affairs has the right to take necessary action.
4. Maintain cleanliness of the site
5. Comply with the parking space regulations as per the Construction Regulatory Requirements

Activity Specific Conditions:
1. The Commercial Registration for this activity can only be registered in service and industrial streets/areas

Note: Uploading pictures of the site/shop may expedite the process of obtaining approval

Required Documents

- Lease agreement (after obtaining the necessary approvals from other licensing entities)
- Shop photos

Other Documents

- Cabinet's Decision (56) of the year 2022 regarding the Regulatory Requirements of Construction for various areas in the Kingdom of Bahrain

Manufacturing

ISIC4	Business activity
104-2	Manufacture of vegetable, animal, and fish oils and fats - Factory

Description

This activity includes the manufacture of crude and refined oils and fats from vegetable or animal materials, except rendering or refining of lard and other edible animal fats.
This activity includes:
- manufacture of crude vegetable oils: olive oil, soya-bean oil, palm oil, sunflower-seed oil, cotton-seed oil, rape, colza or mustard oil, linseed oil etc.
- manufacture of non-defatted flour or meal of oilseeds, oil nuts or oil kernels
- manufacture of refined vegetable oils: olive oil, soya-bean oil etc.
- processing of vegetable oils: blowing, boiling, dehydration, hydrogenation etc.
- manufacture of margarine
- manufacture of melanges and similar spreads
- manufacture of compound cooking fats

This activity also includes:
- manufacture of non-edible animal oils and fats
- extraction of fish and marine mammal oils
- production of cotton linters, oilcakes and other residual products of oil production.

This activity excludes:
- rendering and refining of lard and other edible animal fats, see 101
- wet corn milling, see 106
- production of essential oils, see 2029
- treatment of oil and fats by chemical processes, see 2029

Business Requirements

Age

18 and above

Allowed for Nationalities

Bahraini 100%		GCC 100%	
American 100%		Singaporean 100%	
Icelander 100%		Liechtenstein er 100%	
Norwegian 100%		Swiss 100%	

Foreign Allowed up to 100%

Legal Type

It is allowed to register according to the legal forms mentioned below

Allowed for Individual Commercial Registration (ICR) : Yes

Allowed for Company Commercial Registration (CCR) : Yes

- Bahrain Shareholding Company (Public)
- With Limited Liability Company
- Branch of a Foreign Company
- Bahrain Shareholding Company (Closed)
- Partnership Company
- Simple Commandite Company
- Commandite By Shares Company
- Non Profit Company

Required Step of Licenses and Approvals

Ministry / Directorate	License / Approval Requirements	Approval Type
Directorate Of Industrial Developments	Approval by Directorate of Industrial	Pre

	Developments(Pre)	
Municipality Affairs	Site Approval for manufacturing activities (Type B)	Post
Ministry of Health	Health approval for Manufacture of vegetable, animal, and fish oils and fats	Post
Supreme Council for Environment	Environmental Approval for Manufacture of vegetable and animal oils and fats – factory activity	Post
Directorate Of Industrial Developments	Notification Only	Final Site Inspection

Directorate Of Industrial Developments (Pre) (104-2)

Approval Name	Description	Estimated Time
Approval by Directorate of Industrial Developments(Pre)	This is a preliminary approval given by the Directorate of Industrial Development to ensure that the applicant has selected the appropriate activity based on the information provided	5 Days

Fee Details (if any)

There is no Estimated Processing Time (Days) in this license.

License Information

Applicants would have to provide through the system the following information:

General Information:

- Total Amount Invested in the Project (This should include value of machinery and fixed assets)
- Estimated number of workforce (Bahraini and Non-Bahraini)
- Expected utility consumption of electricity, water and natural gas
- Total area of the project

Activity Information:

- Product Information:

1) The products to be manufactured by choosing the appropriate HS codes (HS code list can be downloaded from the application if needed).
2) Product name.
3) Expected production date (The expected date on which the factory will start producing the product).

4) The maximum installed capacity and the expected production capacity per year based on the fixed HS code's unit of measure.

• Main raw materials: The main raw materials to be used in production and its source

• Main Machinery and Equipment: The main machinery and equipment to be used in production and its information.

• Manufacturing process: Brief on the manufacturing process explaining how materials are transformed from one state to another until reaching the final product, mentioning the types of materials used, the operations performed, and the machinery/equipment used in each step (if any) for each product.

Required Documents

•Photos of machinery/ equipment to be used
•Photos of products to be manufactured

Other Documents

•Law No. (81) of 2006 with respect to approving The Common Industrial Law of the GCC
•Ministerial Resolution No. (11) of 2009
•Operational requirements for the directorate of industrial developments activities

Municipality Affairs (Post) (104-2)

Approval Name	Description	Estimated Time
Site Approval for manufacturing activities (Type B)	Municipality Approval for the Commercial Registration address or the site in which the Activity will be practiced	3 Days

Fee Details (if any)

10 BD

License Information

General Conditions:
1. Size of shop/premises must be sufficient for the activity
2. Businesses may not carry out the activity outside the boundaries of the shop/ premises
3. It is prohibited to display or store any items or equipment outside the shop / premises boundary without prior approval from the Municipality. In the event of non-compliance, the Ministry of Municipality Affairs has the right to take necessary action.
4. Maintain cleanliness of the site
5. Comply with the parking space regulations as per the Construction Regulatory Requirements

Activity Specific Conditions:
1. The Commercial Registration for this activity can only be registered in service and industrial streets/areas

Note: Uploading pictures of the site/shop may expedite the process of obtaining approval

Required Documents

- Lease agreement (after obtaining the necessary approvals from other licensing entities)
- Shop photos

Other Documents

- Cabinet's Decision (56) of the year 2022 regarding the Regulatory Requirements of Construction for various areas in the Kingdom of Bahrain

Ministry of Health (Post) (104-2)

Approval Name	Description	Estimated Time
Health approval for Manufacture of vegetable, animal, and fish oils and fats	Health approval for Manufacture of vegetable, animal, and fish oils and fats	5 Days

Fee Details (if any)

150 BD

License Information

Please refer to the “Activity License Checklist – Ministry of Health“ document under the “other downloadable documents” section for the licensing requirements.

For faster processing, you may engage any of the licensed engineering offices listed under the “Service Providers Directory” to provide drawings/layout of the premises, which should then be attached to the application that you will submit online. To access the list of licensed engineering offices follow the below steps:
1- Click on “Public Service” on the main navigation bar
2- Click on “Service Providers Directory”
3- Click on “Click Here” button adjacent to “List of Engineering Offices for Ministry of Health related activities”

Required Documents

- Drawings/ layout of premises (approved by an engineering office).
- Requirement Checklist (Stamped by an engineering office)
- drawings/layouts of the premises

Other Documents

- Activity License Checklist - Ministry of Health
- Operational requirements for food production and packaging

Supreme Council for Environment (Post) (104-2)

Approval Name	Description	Estimated Time
Environmental Approval for Manufacture of vegetable and animal oils and fats – factory activity	This service aims to assess the environmental impact and licensing of development, industrial and production projects and activities, in accordance with the standards of protecting the environment and its natural resources	10 Days

Fee Details (if any)

- 30 Bahraini Dinars or 200 Bahraini Dinars for the fast-track procedure (when the data requested within the EA-2 form is sufficient without the need for additional studies)
- 4000 Bahraini Dinars or 6000 Bahraini Dinars for the fast track procedure (when it is necessary to submit an environmental impact assessment study for the project), with an additional payment of 100 Bahraini Dinars when it is necessary to submit a proposal for the scope of the study before submitting it or 500 Bahraini Dinars for a fast track procedure when the proposed scope of the study is being submitted before the study

License Information

To check the requirements for this approval, kindly download the detailed requirements sheet from the other downloadable documents section, which includes the following requirements:

- Building layout engineering and equipment requirements
- Workplace requirements
- Storage requirements
- Material management requirements
- Waste Management Requirements

- Documents and reporting requirements
- General requirements

Other Documents

•Annex to the Minister of Housing, Municipalities and Environment order regarding the project's environmental assessment
•Law No. (2) of 2021 regarding the environmental standards of air as decided by the Chairman of the Supreme Council for Environment
•Law No. (3) of 2021 regarding the environmental standards of water as decided by the Chairman of the Supreme Council for the Environment
•Law No. (5) of 2021 regarding CITES Annexes to the Convention on International Trade in Endangered Fauna and Flora
•Law No. (54) of 2014 regarding the approval of the unified law regarding substances that deplete the ozone layer for the GCC countries
•Law No. (7) of 2022 regarding the environment
•Ministerial Order No. (1) of 1998 regarding Project's Environmental Assessment
•Ministerial Order No. (10) of 2006 regarding the installation of devices for on-line monitoring of atmospheric air pollutants
•Ministerial Order No. (11) of 2019 regarding the issue of technical specification of plastic products
•Ministerial Order No. (3) of 2005 regarding environmental requirements and standards in workplaces, especially regarding workers' exposure to heat and noise, and the provision of tools and protective clothing such as gloves, glasses, face masks and earplugs, with a commitment to use them during work
•Ministerial Order No. (3) of 2006 regarding the management of hazardous waste
•Ministerial Order No. (4) of 2005 regarding the management of used oils
•Ministerial Order No. (4) of 2006 regarding the management of hazardous chemicals
•Ministerial Order No. (4) of 2021 regarding the fees of the licenses and services provided by the Supreme Council for Environment
•Ministerial Order No. (6) of 2013 amending order No. (4) of 2006 regarding the management of hazardous chemicals
•Ministerial Order No. (7) of 2002 regarding the control importation and use of prohibited and severely restricted chemicals, and not to import any chemical compound except after obtaining approvals of all concerned authorities, including the executive body of the Supreme Council for Environment
•Ministerial Order No. (7) of 2013 amending order No. (3) of 2006 regarding the management of hazardous waste
•Ministerial Order No. 4 of 2014 regarding the management of the environmental consulting offices operations in the Kingdom of Bahrain
•Order No. (2) of 2020 determining the categories of fees for licensing refrigeration media, refrigeration units and air conditioning units as decided by the Chairman of the Supreme Council for the Environment
•Requirements for business activities
•law No. (1) of 2020 regarding the management of refrigeration media, refrigeration

units and air conditioning units as decided by the Chairman of the Supreme Council for the Environment
•law No. (2) of 2019 regarding the ban on the import of plastic waste of all kinds as decided by the Chairman of the Supreme Council for the Environment
•law No. (204) of 2018 regarding banning the export of some types of local fishes, shrimps and other aquatic

Directorate Of Industrial Developments (Final Site Inspection) (104-2)

Approval Name	Description	Estimated Time
Notification Only	Notification to the Industrial development directorate on obtaining a commercial registration with the license to practice the activity.	There is no License Information in this license. Days

Fee Details (if any)

There is no Estimated Processing Time (Days) in this license.

License Information

The industrial license is automatically issued by the Industrial development Directorate after obtaining the approval of other licensing/approving entities.

Please ensure that the actual production date does no exceed the expected production date.

If actual production will start on or before the expected production date please apply for a “New Industrial Registration” by following the steps below:

1- Visit the Industrial services system (www.industry.bh).
2- Select “Industrial Registration”.
3- Select “New Registration” application.

In the event that the actual production date will exceed the expected production date an “Extension of expected production date” application must be submitted by following the steps below:

1- Visit the Industrial services system (www.industry.bh).

2- Select “Industrial License”.
3- Select “Extension of expected production date” application.

Please note that failure to do so within 60 days from the expected production date will result in a violation to be added.

Other Documents

- Law No. (81) of 2006 with respect to approving The Common Industrial Law of the GCC
- Ministerial Resolution No. (11) of 2009 with respect to promulgating Implementing Regulation
- Operational requirements for the directorate of industrial developments activities

Manufacturing

ISIC4	Business activity
105-1	Manufacture of dairy products - Workshop

Description

This activity includes:
- manufacture of fresh liquid milk, pasteurized, sterilized, homogenized and/or ultra heat treated
- manufacture of milk-based drinks
- manufacture of cream from fresh liquid milk, pasteurized, sterilized, homogenized
- manufacture of dried or concentrated milk whether or not sweetened
- manufacture of milk or cream in solid form
- manufacture of butter
- manufacture of yoghurt
- manufacture of cheese and curd
- manufacture of whey
- manufacture of casein or lactose
- manufacture of ice cream and other edible ice such as sorbet

This activity excludes:
- production of raw milk (cattle), see 0141
- production of raw milk (camels, etc.), see 014
- production of raw milk (sheep, goats, horses, asses, etc.), see 0144
- manufacture of non-dairy milk and cheese substitutes, see 1079
- activities of ice cream parlours, see 561

Business Requirements

Age

18 and above

Allowed for Nationalities

Bahraini 100%		GCC 100%	
American 100%		Singaporean 100%	
Icelander 100%		Liechtenstein er 100%	
Norwegian 100%		Swiss 100%	

Foreign Allowed up to 100%

Legal Type

It is allowed to register according to the legal forms mentioned below

Allowed for Individual Commercial Registration (ICR) : Yes

Allowed for Company Commercial Registration (CCR) : Yes

- Bahrain Shareholding Company (Public)
- With Limited Liability Company
- Branch of a Foreign Company
- Bahrain Shareholding Company (Closed)
- Partnership Company
- Simple Commandite Company
- Commandite By Shares Company
- Non Profit Company

Required Step of Licenses and Approvals

Ministry / Directorate	License / Approval Requirements	Approval Type
Supreme Council for Environment	Environmental Approval for Dairy Products	Post

	Manufacture - Workshop activity	
Municipality Affairs	Site Approval for manufacturing activities (Type B)	Post
Ministry of Health	Health approval for Manufacture of dairy products	Post

Supreme Council for Environment (Post) (105-1)

Approval Name	Description	Estimated Time
Environmental Approval for Dairy Products Manufacture - Workshop activity	This service aims to assess the environmental impact and licensing of development, industrial and production projects and activities, in accordance with the standards of protecting the environment and its natural resources	10 Days

Fee Details (if any)

- 30 Bahraini Dinars or 200 Bahraini Dinars for the fast-track procedure (when the data requested within the EA-2 form is sufficient without the need for additional studies)
- 4000 Bahraini Dinars or 6000 Bahraini Dinars for the fast track procedure (when it is necessary to submit an environmental impact assessment study for the project), with an additional payment of 100 Bahraini Dinars when it is necessary to submit a proposal for the scope of the study before submitting it or 500 Bahraini Dinars for a fast track procedure when the proposed scope of the study is being submitted before the study

License Information

To check the requirements for this approval, kindly download the detailed requirements sheet from the other downloadable documents section, which includes the following requirements:

- Building layout engineering and equipment requirements
- Workplace requirements
- Storage requirements
- Material management requirements
- Waste Management Requirements

- Documents and reporting requirements
- General requirements

Other Documents

- Annex to the Minister of Housing, Municipalities and Environment order regarding the project's environmental assessment
- Law No. (2) of 2021 regarding the environmental standards of air as decided by the Chairman of the Supreme Council for Environment
- Law No. (3) of 2021 regarding the environmental standards of water as decided by the Chairman of the Supreme Council for the Environment
- Law No. (3) of 2021 regarding the environmental standards of water as decided by the Chairman of the Supreme Council for the Environment
- Law No. (5) of 2021 regarding CITES Annexes to the Convention on International Trade in Endangered Fauna and Flora
- Law No. (5) of 2021 regarding CITES Annexes to the Convention on International Trade in Endangered Fauna and Flora
- Law No. (54) of 2014 regarding the approval of the unified law regarding substances that deplete the ozone layer for the GCC countries
- Law No. (7) of 2022 regarding the environment
- Ministerial Order No. (1) of 1998 regarding Project's Environmental Assessment
- Ministerial Order No. (10) of 2006 regarding the installation of devices for on-line monitoring of atmospheric air pollutants
- Ministerial Order No. (11) of 2019 regarding the issue of technical specification of plastic products
- Ministerial Order No. (3) of 2005 regarding environmental requirements and standards in workplaces, especially regarding workers' exposure to heat and noise, and the provision of tools and protective clothing such as gloves, glasses, face masks and earplugs, with a commitment to use them during work
- Ministerial Order No. (3) of 2006 regarding the management of hazardous waste
- Ministerial Order No. (4) of 2005 regarding the management of used oils
- Ministerial Order No. (4) of 2006 regarding the management of hazardous chemicals
- Ministerial Order No. (4) of 2021 regarding the fees of the licenses and services provided by the Supreme Council for Environment
- Ministerial Order No. (6) of 2013 amending order No. (4) of 2006 regarding the management of hazardous chemicals
- Ministerial Order No. (7) of 2002 regarding the control importation and use of prohibited and severely restricted chemicals, and not to import any chemical compound except after obtaining approvals of all concerned authorities, including the executive body of the Supreme Council for Environment
- Ministerial Order No. (7) of 2013 amending order No. (3) of 2006 regarding the management of hazardous waste
- Ministerial Order No. 4 of 2014 regarding the management of the environmental consulting offices operations in the Kingdom of Bahrain
- Order No. (2) of 2020 determining the categories of fees for licensing refrigeration

media, refrigeration units and air conditioning units as decided by the Chairman of the Supreme Council for the Environment
•Order No. (2) of 2020 determining the categories of fees for licensing refrigeration media, refrigeration units and air conditioning units as decided by the Chairman of the Supreme Council for the Environment
•Requirements for business activities
•law No. (1) of 2020 regarding the management of refrigeration media, refrigeration units and air conditioning units as decided by the Chairman of the Supreme Council for the Environment
•law No. (2) of 2019 regarding the ban on the import of plastic waste of all kinds as decided by the Chairman of the Supreme Council for the Environment
•law No. (204) of 2018 regarding banning the export of some types of local fishes, shrimps and other aquatic organisms, and coordinating with the Agriculture and Marine Resources at the Ministry of Works, Municipalities and Urban Planning regarding the import and export of some species

Municipality Affairs (Post) (105-1)

Approval Name	Description	Estimated Time
Site Approval for manufacturing activities (Type B)	Municipality Approval for the Commercial Registration address or the site in which the Activity will be practiced	3 Days

Fee Details (if any)

10 BD

License Information

General Conditions:
1. Size of shop/premises must be sufficient for the activity
2. Businesses may not carry out the activity outside the boundaries of the shop/ premises
3. It is prohibited to display or store any items or equipment outside the shop / premises boundary without prior approval from the Municipality. In the event of non-compliance, the Ministry of Municipality Affairs has the right to take necessary action.
4. Maintain cleanliness of the site
5. Comply with the parking space regulations as per the Construction Regulatory Requirements

Activity Specific Conditions:
1. The Commercial Registration for this activity can only be registered in service and industrial streets/areas

Note: Uploading pictures of the site/shop may expedite the process of obtaining approval

Required Documents

- Lease agreement (after obtaining the necessary approvals from other licensing entities)
- Shop photos

Other Documents

- Cabinet's Decision (56) of the year 2022 regarding the Regulatory Requirements of Construction for various areas in the Kingdom of Bahrain

Ministry of Health (Post) (105-1)

Approval Name	Description	Estimated Time
Health approval for Manufacture of dairy products	Health approval for Manufacture of dairy products	5 Days

Fee Details (if any)

150 BD

License Information

Please refer to the “Activity License Checklist – Ministry of Health“ document under the “other downloadable documents” section for the licensing requirements.

For faster processing, you may engage any of the licensed engineering offices listed under the “Service Providers Directory” to provide drawings/layout of the premises, which should then be attached to the application that you will submit online. To access the list of licensed engineering offices follow the below steps:
1- Click on “Public Service” on the main navigation bar
2- Click on “Service Providers Directory”
3- Click on “Click Here” button adjacent to “List of Engineering Offices for Ministry of Health related activities”

Required Documents

- Drawings/ layout of premises (approved by an engineering office).
- Requirement Checklist (Stamped by an engineering office)
- drawings/layouts of the premises

Other Documents

- Activity License Checklist - Ministry of Health
- Operational requirements for food production and packaging

Manufacturing

ISIC4	Business activity
105-2	Manufacture of dairy products - Factory

Description

This activity includes:
- manufacture of fresh liquid milk, pasteurized, sterilized, homogenized and/or ultra heat treated
- manufacture of milk-based drinks
- manufacture of cream from fresh liquid milk, pasteurized, sterilized, homogenized
- manufacture of dried or concentrated milk whether or not sweetened
- manufacture of milk or cream in solid form
- manufacture of butter
- manufacture of yoghurt
- manufacture of cheese and curd
- manufacture of whey
- manufacture of casein or lactose
- manufacture of ice cream and other edible ice such as sorbet

This activity excludes:
- production of raw milk (cattle), see 0141
- production of raw milk (camels, etc.), see 014
- production of raw milk (sheep, goats, horses, asses, etc.), see 0144
- manufacture of non-dairy milk and cheese substitutes, see 1079
- activities of ice cream parlours, see 561

Business Requirements

Age

18 and above

Allowed for Nationalities

Bahraini 100%		GCC 100%	
American 100%		Singaporean 100%	
Icelander 100%		Liechtenstein er 100%	
Norwegian 100%		Swiss 100%	

Foreign Allowed up to 100%

Legal Type

It is allowed to register according to the legal forms mentioned below

Allowed for Individual Commercial Registration (ICR) : Yes

Allowed for Company Commercial Registration (CCR) : Yes

- Bahrain Shareholding Company (Public)
- With Limited Liability Company
- Branch of a Foreign Company
- Bahrain Shareholding Company (Closed)
- Partnership Company
- Simple Commandite Company
- Commandite By Shares Company
- Non Profit Company

Required Step of Licenses and Approvals

Ministry / Directorate	License / Approval Requirements	Approval Type
Directorate Of Industrial Developments	Approval by Directorate of Industrial	Pre

	Developments(Pre)	
Supreme Council for Environment	Environmental Approval for Manufacture of dairy products - factory activity	Post
Municipality Affairs	Site Approval for manufacturing activities (Type B)	Post
Ministry of Health	Health approval for Manufacture of dairy products	Post
Directorate Of Industrial Developments	Notification Only	Final Site Inspection

Directorate Of Industrial Developments (Pre) (105-2)

Approval Name	Description	Estimated Time
Approval by Directorate of Industrial Developments(Pre)	This is a preliminary approval given by the Directorate of Industrial Development to ensure that the applicant has selected the appropriate activity based on the information provided	5 Days

Fee Details (if any)

There is no Estimated Processing Time (Days) in this license.

License Information

Applicants would have to provide through the system the following information:

General Information:

- Total Amount Invested in the Project (This should include value of machinery and fixed assets)
- Estimated number of workforce (Bahraini and Non-Bahraini)
- Expected utility consumption of electricity, water and natural gas
- Total area of the project

Activity Information:

- Product Information:

1) The products to be manufactured by choosing the appropriate HS codes (HS code list can be downloaded from the application if needed).
2) Product name.
3) Expected production date (The expected date on which the factory will start producing the product).

4) The maximum installed capacity and the expected production capacity per year based on the fixed HS code's unit of measure.

• Main raw materials: The main raw materials to be used in production and its source

• Main Machinery and Equipment: The main machinery and equipment to be used in production and its information.

• Manufacturing process: Brief on the manufacturing process explaining how materials are transformed from one state to another until reaching the final product, mentioning the types of materials used, the operations performed, and the machinery/equipment used in each step (if any) for each product.

Required Documents

•Photos of machinery/ equipment to be used
•Photos of products to be manufactured

Other Documents

•Law No. (81) of 2006 with respect to approving The Common Industrial Law of the GCC
•Ministerial Resolution No. (11) of 2009
•Operational requirements for the directorate of industrial developments activities

Supreme Council for Environment (Post) (105-2)

Approval Name	Description	Estimated Time
Environmental Approval for Manufacture of dairy products - factory activity	This service aims to assess the environmental impact and licensing of development, industrial and production projects and activities, in accordance with the standards of protecting the environment and its natural resources	10 Days

Fee Details (if any)

- 30 Bahraini Dinars or 200 Bahraini Dinars for the fast-track procedure (when the data requested within the EA-2 form is sufficient without the need for additional studies)
- 4000 Bahraini Dinars or 6000 Bahraini Dinars for the fast track procedure (when it is necessary to submit an environmental impact assessment study for the project), with an additional payment of 100 Bahraini Dinars when it is necessary to submit a proposal for the scope of the study before submitting it or 500 Bahraini Dinars for a fast track procedure when the proposed scope of the study is being submitted before the study

License Information

To check the requirements for this approval, kindly download the detailed requirements sheet from the other downloadable documents section, which includes the following requirements:

- Building layout engineering and equipment requirements
- Workplace requirements
- Storage requirements
- Material management requirements
- Waste Management Requirements

- Documents and reporting requirements
- General requirements

Other Documents

•Annex to the Minister of Housing, Municipalities and Environment order regarding the project's environmental assessment
•Law No. (2) of 2021 regarding the environmental standards of air as decided by the Chairman of the Supreme Council for Environment
•Law No. (3) of 2021 regarding the environmental standards of water as decided by the Chairman of the Supreme Council for the Environment
•Law No. (5) of 2021 regarding CITES Annexes to the Convention on International Trade in Endangered Fauna and Flora
•Law No. (54) of 2014 regarding the approval of the unified law regarding substances that deplete the ozone layer for the GCC countries
•Law No. (7) of 2022 regarding the environment
•Ministerial Order No. (1) of 1998 regarding Project's Environmental Assessment
•Ministerial Order No. (10) of 2006 regarding the installation of devices for on-line monitoring of atmospheric air pollutants
•Ministerial Order No. (11) of 2019 regarding the issue of technical specification of plastic products
•Ministerial Order No. (3) of 2005 regarding environmental requirements and standards in workplaces, especially regarding workers' exposure to heat and noise, and the provision of tools and protective clothing such as gloves, glasses, face masks and earplugs, with a commitment to use them during work
•Ministerial Order No. (3) of 2006 regarding the management of hazardous waste
•Ministerial Order No. (4) of 2005 regarding the management of used oils
•Ministerial Order No. (4) of 2006 regarding the management of hazardous chemicals
•Ministerial Order No. (4) of 2021 regarding the fees of the licenses and services provided by the Supreme Council for Environment
•Ministerial Order No. (6) of 2013 amending order No. (4) of 2006 regarding the management of hazardous chemicals
•Ministerial Order No. (7) of 2002 regarding the control importation and use of prohibited and severely restricted chemicals, and not to import any chemical compound except after obtaining approvals of all concerned authorities, including the executive body of the Supreme Council for Environment
•Ministerial Order No. (7) of 2013 amending order No. (3) of 2006 regarding the management of hazardous waste
•Ministerial Order No. 4 of 2014 regarding the management of the environmental consulting offices operations in the Kingdom of Bahrain
•Order No. (2) of 2020 determining the categories of fees for licensing refrigeration media, refrigeration units and air conditioning units as decided by the Chairman of the Supreme Council for the Environment
•Requirements for business activities
•law No. (1) of 2020 regarding the management of refrigeration media, refrigeration

units and air conditioning units as decided by the Chairman of the Supreme Council for the Environment
•law No. (2) of 2019 regarding the ban on the import of plastic waste of all kinds as decided by the Chairman of the Supreme Council for the Environment
•law No. (204) of 2018 regarding banning the export of some types of local fishes, shrimps and other aquatic organisms, and coordinating with the Agriculture and Marine Resources at the Ministry of Works, Municipalities and Urban Planning regarding the import and export of some species

Municipality Affairs (Post) (105-2)

Approval Name	Description	Estimated Time
Site Approval for manufacturing activities (Type B)	Municipality Approval for the Commercial Registration address or the site in which the Activity will be practiced	3 Days

Fee Details (if any)

10 BD

License Information

General Conditions:
1. Size of shop/premises must be sufficient for the activity
2. Businesses may not carry out the activity outside the boundaries of the shop/ premises
3. It is prohibited to display or store any items or equipment outside the shop / premises boundary without prior approval from the Municipality. In the event of non-compliance, the Ministry of Municipality Affairs has the right to take necessary action.
4. Maintain cleanliness of the site
5. Comply with the parking space regulations as per the Construction Regulatory Requirements

Activity Specific Conditions:
1. The Commercial Registration for this activity can only be registered in service and industrial streets/areas

Note: Uploading pictures of the site/shop may expedite the process of obtaining approval

Required Documents

- Lease agreement (after obtaining the necessary approvals from other licensing entities)
- Shop photos

Other Documents

- Cabinet's Decision (56) of the year 2022 regarding the Regulatory Requirements of Construction for various areas in the Kingdom of Bahrain

Ministry of Health (Post) (105-2)

Approval Name	Description	Estimated Time
Health approval for Manufacture of dairy products	Health approval for Manufacture of dairy products	5 Days

Fee Details (if any)

150 BD

License Information

Please refer to the “Activity License Checklist – Ministry of Health“ document under the “other downloadable documents” section for the licensing requirements.

For faster processing, you may engage any of the licensed engineering offices listed under the “Service Providers Directory” to provide drawings/layout of the premises, which should then be attached to the application that you will submit online. To access the list of licensed engineering offices follow the below steps:
1- Click on “Public Service” on the main navigation bar
2- Click on “Service Providers Directory”
3- Click on “Click Here” button adjacent to “List of Engineering Offices for Ministry of Health related activities”

Required Documents

- Drawings/ layout of premises (approved by an engineering office).
- Requirement Checklist (Stamped by an engineering office)
- drawings/layouts of the premises

Other Documents

- Activity License Checklist - Ministry of Health
- Operational requirements for food production and packaging

Directorate Of Industrial Developments (Final Site Inspection) (105-2)

Approval Name	Description	Estimated Time
Notification Only	Notification to the Industrial development directorate on obtaining a commercial registration with the license to practice the activity.	There is no License Information in this license. Days

Fee Details (if any)

There is no Estimated Processing Time (Days) in this license.

License Information

The industrial license is automatically issued by the Industrial development Directorate after obtaining the approval of other licensing/approving entities.

Please ensure that the actual production date does no exceed the expected production date.

If actual production will start on or before the expected production date please apply for a “New Industrial Registration” by following the steps below:

1- Visit the Industrial services system (www.industry.bh).
2- Select “Industrial Registration”.
3- Select “New Registration” application.

In the event that the actual production date will exceed the expected production date an “Extension of expected production date” application must be submitted by following the steps below:

1- Visit the Industrial services system (www.industry.bh).

2- Select “Industrial License”.
3- Select “Extension of expected production date” application.

Please note that failure to do so within 60 days from the expected production date will result in a violation to be added.

Other Documents

- Law No. (81) of 2006 with respect to approving The Common Industrial Law of the GCC
- Ministerial Resolution No. (11) of 2009 with respect to promulgating Implementing Regulation
- Operational requirements for the directorate of industrial developments activities

Manufacturing

ISIC4	Business activity
106-1	Manufacture of grain mill products, starches and starch products - Workshop

Description

This activity includes the milling of flour or meal from grains or vegetables, the milling, cleaning and polishing of rice, as well as the manufacture of flour mixes or doughs from these products. Also included are the wet milling of corn and vegetables and the manufacture of starch and starch products.
- grain milling: production of flour, groats, meal or pellets of wheat, rye, oats, maize (corn) or other cereal grains
- rice milling: production of husked, milled, polished, glazed, parboiled or converted rice; production of rice flour
- vegetable milling: production of flour or meal of dried leguminous vegetables, of roots or tubers, or of edible nuts
- manufacture of cereal breakfast foods
- manufacture of flour mixes and prepared blended flour and dough for bread, cakes, biscuits or pancakes
- manufacture of starches from rice, potatoes, maize etc.
- wet corn milling
- manufacture of glucose, glucose syrup, maltose, inulin etc.
- manufacture of gluten
- manufacture of tapioca and tapioca substitutes prepared from starch
- manufacture of corn oil

This activity excludes:
- manufacture of potato flour and meal, see 103
- manufacture of lactose (milk sugar), see 105
- production of cane or beet sugar, see 107

Business Requirements

Age

18 and above

Allowed for Nationalities

Bahraini 100%		GCC 100%	
American 100%		Singaporean 100%	
Icelander 100%		Liechtenstein er 100%	
Norwegian 100%		Swiss 100%	

Foreign Allowed up to 100%

Legal Type

It is allowed to register according to the legal forms mentioned below

Allowed for Individual Commercial Registration (ICR) : Yes

Allowed for Company Commercial Registration (CCR) : Yes

- Bahrain Shareholding Company (Public)
- With Limited Liability Company
- Branch of a Foreign Company
- Bahrain Shareholding Company (Closed)
- Partnership Company
- Simple Commandite Company
- Commandite By Shares Company
- Non Profit Company

Required Step of Licenses and Approvals

Ministry / Directorate	License / Approval Requirements	Approval Type
Municipality Affairs	Site Approval for manufacturing activities	Post

	(Type B)	
Ministry of Health	Health approval for Manufacture of grain mill products, starches and starch products	Post

Municipality Affairs (Post) (106-1)

Approval Name	Description	Estimated Time
Site Approval for manufacturing activities (Type B)	Municipality Approval for the Commercial Registration address or the site in which the Activity will be practiced	3 Days

Fee Details (if any)

10 BD

License Information

General Conditions:
1. Size of shop/premises must be sufficient for the activity
2. Businesses may not carry out the activity outside the boundaries of the shop/ premises
3. It is prohibited to display or store any items or equipment outside the shop / premises boundary without prior approval from the Municipality. In the event of non-compliance, the Ministry of Municipality Affairs has the right to take necessary action.
4. Maintain cleanliness of the site
5. Comply with the parking space regulations as per the Construction Regulatory Requirements

Activity Specific Conditions:
1. The Commercial Registration for this activity can only be registered in service and industrial streets/areas

Note: Uploading pictures of the site/shop may expedite the process of obtaining approval

Required Documents

- Lease agreement (after obtaining the necessary approvals from other licensing entities)
- Shop photos

Other Documents

- Cabinet's Decision (56) of the year 2022 regarding the Regulatory Requirements of Construction for various areas in the Kingdom of Bahrain

Ministry of Health (Post) (106-1)

Approval Name	Description	Estimated Time
Health approval for Manufacture of grain mill products, starches and starch products	Health approval for Manufacture of grain mill products, starches and starch products	5 Days

Fee Details (if any)

250 BD

License Information

Please refer to the “Activity License Checklist – Ministry of Health“ document under the “other downloadable documents” section for the licensing requirements.

For faster processing, you may engage any of the licensed engineering offices listed under the “Service Providers Directory” to provide drawings/layout of the premises, which should then be attached to the application that you will submit online. To access the list of licensed engineering offices follow the below steps:
1- Click on “Public Service” on the main navigation bar
2- Click on “Service Providers Directory”
3- Click on “Click Here” button adjacent to “List of Engineering Offices for Ministry of Health related activities”

Required Documents

- Drawings/ layout of premises (approved by an engineering office).
- Requirement Checklist (Stamped by an engineering office)
- drawings/layouts of the premises

Other Documents

- Activity License Checklist - Ministry of Health
- Operational requirements for food production and packaging

Manufacturing

ISIC4	Business activity
106-2	Manufacture of grain mill products, starches and starch products - Factory

Description

This activity includes the milling of flour or meal from grains or vegetables, the milling, cleaning and polishing of rice, as well as the manufacture of flour mixes or doughs from these products. Also included are the wet milling of corn and vegetables and the manufacture of starch and starch products.
- grain milling: production of flour, groats, meal or pellets of wheat, rye, oats, maize (corn) or other cereal grains
- rice milling: production of husked, milled, polished, glazed, parboiled or converted rice; production of rice flour
- vegetable milling: production of flour or meal of dried leguminous vegetables, of roots or tubers, or of edible nuts
- manufacture of cereal breakfast foods
- manufacture of flour mixes and prepared blended flour and dough for bread, cakes, biscuits or pancakes
- manufacture of starches from rice, potatoes, maize etc.
- wet corn milling
- manufacture of glucose, glucose syrup, maltose, inulin etc.
- manufacture of gluten
- manufacture of tapioca and tapioca substitutes prepared from starch
- manufacture of corn oil

This activity excludes:
- manufacture of potato flour and meal, see 103
- manufacture of lactose (milk sugar), see 105
- production of cane or beet sugar, see 107

Business Requirements

Age

18 and above

Allowed for Nationalities

Bahraini 100%		GCC 100%	
American 100%		Singaporean 100%	
Icelander 100%		Liechtenstein er 100%	
Norwegian 100%		Swiss 100%	

Foreign Allowed up to 100%

Legal Type

It is allowed to register according to the legal forms mentioned below

Allowed for Individual Commercial Registration (ICR) : Yes

Allowed for Company Commercial Registration (CCR) : Yes

- Bahrain Shareholding Company (Public)
- With Limited Liability Company
- Branch of a Foreign Company
- Bahrain Shareholding Company (Closed)
- Partnership Company
- Simple Commandite Company
- Commandite By Shares Company
- Non Profit Company

Required Step of Licenses and Approvals

Ministry / Directorate	License / Approval Requirements	Approval Type
Directorate Of Industrial Developments	Approval by Directorate of Industrial	Pre

	Developments(Pre)	
Ministry of Health	Health approval for Manufacture of grain mill products, starches and starch products	Post
Municipality Affairs	Site Approval for manufacturing activities (Type B)	Post
Supreme Council for Environment	Environmental Approval for Manufacture of grain and starch mill products and other productsstarch - Factory activity	Post
Directorate Of Industrial Developments	Notification Only	Final Site Inspection

Directorate Of Industrial Developments (Pre) (106-2)

Approval Name	Description	Estimated Time
Approval by Directorate of Industrial Developments(Pre)	This is a preliminary approval given by the Directorate of Industrial Development to ensure that the applicant has selected the appropriate activity based on the information provided	5 Days

Fee Details (if any)

There is no Estimated Processing Time (Days) in this license.

License Information

Applicants would have to provide through the system the following information:

General Information:

- Total Amount Invested in the Project (This should include value of machinery and fixed assets)
- Estimated number of workforce (Bahraini and Non-Bahraini)
- Expected utility consumption of electricity, water and natural gas
- Total area of the project

Activity Information:

- Product Information:

1) The products to be manufactured by choosing the appropriate HS codes (HS code list can be downloaded from the application if needed).
2) Product name.
3) Expected production date (The expected date on which the factory will start producing the product).

4) The maximum installed capacity and the expected production capacity per year based on the fixed HS code's unit of measure.

• Main raw materials: The main raw materials to be used in production and its source

• Main Machinery and Equipment: The main machinery and equipment to be used in production and its information.

• Manufacturing process: Brief on the manufacturing process explaining how materials are transformed from one state to another until reaching the final product, mentioning the types of materials used, the operations performed, and the machinery/equipment used in each step (if any) for each product.

Required Documents

•Photos of machinery/ equipment to be used
•Photos of products to be manufactured

Other Documents

•Law No. (81) of 2006 with respect to approving The Common Industrial Law of the GCC
•Ministerial Resolution No. (11) of 2009
•Operational requirements for the directorate of industrial developments activities

Ministry of Health (Post) (106-2)

Approval Name	Description	Estimated Time
Health approval for Manufacture of grain mill products, starches and starch products	Health approval for Manufacture of grain mill products, starches and starch products	5 Days

Fee Details (if any)

250 BD

License Information

Please refer to the “Activity License Checklist – Ministry of Health“ document under the “other downloadable documents” section for the licensing requirements.

For faster processing, you may engage any of the licensed engineering offices listed under the “Service Providers Directory” to provide drawings/layout of the premises, which should then be attached to the application that you will submit online. To access the list of licensed engineering offices follow the below steps:
1- Click on “Public Service” on the main navigation bar
2- Click on “Service Providers Directory”
3- Click on “Click Here” button adjacent to “List of Engineering Offices for Ministry of Health related activities”

Required Documents

- Drawings/ layout of premises (approved by an engineering office).
- Requirement Checklist (Stamped by an engineering office)
- drawings/layouts of the premises

Other Documents

- Activity License Checklist - Ministry of Health
- Operational requirements for food production and packaging

Municipality Affairs (Post) (106-2)

Approval Name	Description	Estimated Time
Site Approval for manufacturing activities (Type B)	Municipality Approval for the Commercial Registration address or the site in which the Activity will be practiced	3 Days

Fee Details (if any)

10 BD

License Information

General Conditions:
1. Size of shop/premises must be sufficient for the activity
2. Businesses may not carry out the activity outside the boundaries of the shop/ premises
3. It is prohibited to display or store any items or equipment outside the shop / premises boundary without prior approval from the Municipality. In the event of non-compliance, the Ministry of Municipality Affairs has the right to take necessary action.
4. Maintain cleanliness of the site
5. Comply with the parking space regulations as per the Construction Regulatory Requirements

Activity Specific Conditions:
1. The Commercial Registration for this activity can only be registered in service and industrial streets/areas

Note: Uploading pictures of the site/shop may expedite the process of obtaining approval

Required Documents

- Lease agreement (after obtaining the necessary approvals from other licensing entities)
- Shop photos

Other Documents

- Cabinet's Decision (56) of the year 2022 regarding the Regulatory Requirements of Construction for various areas in the Kingdom of Bahrain

Supreme Council for Environment (Post) (106-2)

Approval Name	Description	Estimated Time
Environmental Approval for Manufacture of grain and starch mill products and other productsstarch - Factory activity	This service aims to assess the environmental impact and licensing of development, industrial and production projects and activities, in accordance with the standards of protecting the environment and its natural resources	10 Days

Fee Details (if any)

- 30 Bahraini Dinars or 200 Bahraini Dinars for the fast-track procedure (when the data requested within the EA-2 form is sufficient without the need for additional studies)
- 4000 Bahraini Dinars or 6000 Bahraini Dinars for the fast track procedure (when it is necessary to submit an environmental impact assessment study for the project), with an additional payment of 100 Bahraini Dinars when it is necessary to submit a proposal for the scope of the study before submitting it or 500 Bahraini Dinars for a fast track procedure when the proposed scope of the study is being submitted before the study

License Information

To check the requirements for this approval, kindly download the detailed requirements sheet from the other downloadable documents section, which includes the following requirements:

- Building layout engineering and equipment requirements
- Workplace requirements
- Storage requirements
- Material management requirements
- Waste Management Requirements

- Documents and reporting requirements
- General requirements

Other Documents

- Annex to the Minister of Housing, Municipalities and Environment order regarding the project's environmental assessment
- Law No. (2) of 2021 regarding the environmental standards of air as decided by the Chairman of the Supreme Council for Environment
- Law No. (3) of 2021 regarding the environmental standards of water as decided by the Chairman of the Supreme Council for the Environment
- Law No. (5) of 2021 regarding CITES Annexes to the Convention on International Trade in Endangered Fauna and Flora
- Law No. (54) of 2014 regarding the approval of the unified law regarding substances that deplete the ozone layer for the GCC countries
- Law No. (7) of 2022 regarding the environment
- Law No. (7) of 2022 regarding the environment
- Ministerial Order No. (1) of 1998 regarding Project's Environmental Assessment
- Ministerial Order No. (10) of 2006 regarding the installation of devices for on-line monitoring of atmospheric air pollutants
- Ministerial Order No. (11) of 2019 regarding the issue of technical specification of plastic products
- Ministerial Order No. (3) of 2005 regarding environmental requirements and standards in workplaces, especially regarding workers' exposure to heat and noise, and the provision of tools and protective clothing such as gloves, glasses, face masks and earplugs, with a commitment to use them during work
- Ministerial Order No. (3) of 2006 regarding the management of hazardous waste
- Ministerial Order No. (4) of 2005 regarding the management of used oils
- Ministerial Order No. (4) of 2006 regarding the management of hazardous chemicals
- Ministerial Order No. (4) of 2021 regarding the fees of the licenses and services provided by the Supreme Council for Environment
- Ministerial Order No. (6) of 2013 amending order No. (4) of 2006 regarding the management of hazardous chemicals
- Ministerial Order No. (7) of 2002 regarding the control importation and use of prohibited and severely restricted chemicals, and not to import any chemical compound except after obtaining approvals of all concerned authorities, including the executive body of the Supreme Council for Environment
- Ministerial Order No. (7) of 2013 amending order No. (3) of 2006 regarding the management of hazardous waste
- Ministerial Order No. 4 of 2014 regarding the management of the environmental consulting offices operations in the Kingdom of Bahrain
- Order No. (2) of 2020 determining the categories of fees for licensing refrigeration media, refrigeration units and air conditioning units as decided by the Chairman of the Supreme Council for the Environment
- Requirements for business activities

•law No. (1) of 2020 regarding the management of refrigeration media, refrigeration units and air conditioning units as decided by the Chairman of the Supreme Council for the Environment
•law No. (2) of 2019 regarding the ban on the import of plastic waste of all kinds as decided by the Chairman of the Supreme Council for the Environment
•law No. (204) of 2018 regarding banning the export of some types of local fishes, shrimps and other aquatic organisms, and coordinating with the Agriculture and Marine Resources at the Ministry of Works, Municipalities and Urban Planning regarding the import and export of some species

Directorate Of Industrial Developments (Final Site Inspection) (106-2)

Approval Name	Description	Estimated Time
Notification Only	Notification to the Industrial development directorate on obtaining a commercial registration with the license to practice the activity.	There is no License Information in this license. Days

Fee Details (if any)

There is no Estimated Processing Time (Days) in this license.

License Information

The industrial license is automatically issued by the Industrial development Directorate after obtaining the approval of other licensing/approving entities.

Please ensure that the actual production date does no exceed the expected production date.

If actual production will start on or before the expected production date please apply for a “New Industrial Registration” by following the steps below:

1- Visit the Industrial services system (www.industry.bh).
2- Select “Industrial Registration”.
3- Select “New Registration” application.

In the event that the actual production date will exceed the expected production date an “Extension of expected production date” application must be submitted by following the steps below:

1- Visit the Industrial services system (www.industry.bh).

2- Select “Industrial License”.
3- Select “Extension of expected production date” application.

Please note that failure to do so within 60 days from the expected production date will result in a violation to be added.

Other Documents

- Law No. (81) of 2006 with respect to approving The Common Industrial Law of the GCC
- Ministerial Resolution No. (11) of 2009 with respect to promulgating Implementing Regulation
- Operational requirements for the directorate of industrial developments activities

Manufacturing

ISIC4	Business activity
107-1	Manufacture of other food products - Workshop

Description

This activity includes the production of a variety of food products not included in previous activities. This includes the production of sugar products, macaroni, noodles and similar products, prepared meals and dishes, coffee, tea and spices, as well as perishable and specialty food products.
This activity excludes:
- manufacture of glucose, glucose syrup, maltose, see 106
- preparation of meals and dishes for immediate consumption, see 5610

Business Requirements

Age

18 and above

Allowed for Nationalities

Bahraini 100%		GCC 100%	
American 100%		Singaporean 100%	
Icelander 100%		Liechtenstein er 100%	
Norwegian 100%		Swiss 100%	

Foreign Allowed up to 100%

Legal Type

It is allowed to register according to the legal forms mentioned below

Allowed for Individual Commercial Registration (ICR) : Yes

Allowed for Company Commercial Registration (CCR) : Yes

- Bahrain Shareholding Company (Public)
- With Limited Liability Company
- Branch of a Foreign Company
- Bahrain Shareholding Company (Closed)
- Partnership Company
- Simple Commandite Company
- Commandite By Shares Company
- Non Profit Company

Required Step of Licenses and Approvals

Ministry / Directorate	License / Approval Requirements	Approval Type
Ministry of Health	Health approval for Manufacture of other food products	Post
Municipality Affairs	Site Approval for manufacturing activities (Type B)	Post

Ministry of Health (Post) (107-1)

Approval Name	Description	Estimated Time
Health approval for Manufacture of other food products	Health approval for Manufacture of other food products	5 Days

Fee Details (if any)

150 BD

License Information

Please refer to the “Activity License Checklist – Ministry of Health“ document under the “other downloadable documents” section for the licensing requirements.

For faster processing, you may engage any of the licensed engineering offices listed under the “Service Providers Directory” to provide drawings/layout of the premises, which should then be attached to the application that you will submit online. To access the list of licensed engineering offices follow the below steps:
1- Click on “Public Service” on the main navigation bar
2- Click on “Service Providers Directory”
3- Click on “Click Here” button adjacent to “List of Engineering Offices for Ministry of Health related activities”

Required Documents

- Drawings/ layout of premises (approved by an engineering office).
- Requirement Checklist (Stamped by an engineering office)
- drawings/layouts of the premises

Other Documents

- Activity License Checklist - Ministry of Health
- Operational requirements for food production and packaging

Municipality Affairs (Post) (107-1)

Approval Name	Description	Estimated Time
Site Approval for manufacturing activities (Type B)	Municipality Approval for the Commercial Registration address or the site in which the Activity will be practiced	3 Days

Fee Details (if any)

10 BD

License Information

General Conditions:
1. Size of shop/premises must be sufficient for the activity
2. Businesses may not carry out the activity outside the boundaries of the shop/ premises
3. It is prohibited to display or store any items or equipment outside the shop / premises boundary without prior approval from the Municipality. In the event of non-compliance, the Ministry of Municipality Affairs has the right to take necessary action.
4. Maintain cleanliness of the site
5. Comply with the parking space regulations as per the Construction Regulatory Requirements

Activity Specific Conditions:
1. The Commercial Registration for this activity can only be registered in service and industrial streets/areas

Note: Uploading pictures of the site/shop may expedite the process of obtaining approval

Required Documents

- Lease agreement (after obtaining the necessary approvals from other licensing entities)
- Shop photos

Other Documents

- Cabinet's Decision (56) of the year 2022 regarding the Regulatory Requirements of Construction for various areas in the Kingdom of Bahrain

Manufacturing

ISIC4	Business activity
107-2	Manufacture of other food products - Factory

Description

This activity includes the production of a variety of food products not included in previous activities. This includes the production of sugar products, macaroni, noodles and similar products, prepared meals and dishes, coffee, tea and spices, as well as perishable and specialty food products.
This activity excludes:
- manufacture of glucose, glucose syrup, maltose, see 106
- preparation of meals and dishes for immediate consumption, see 5610

Business Requirements

✔ Age

18 and above

✔ Allowed for Nationalities

Bahraini 100%		GCC 100%	
American 100%		Singaporean 100%	
Icelander 100%		Liechtenstein er 100%	
Norwegian 100%		Swiss 100%	

Foreign Allowed up to 100%

Legal Type

It is allowed to register according to the legal forms mentioned below

Allowed for Individual Commercial Registration (ICR) : Yes

Allowed for Company Commercial Registration (CCR) : Yes

- Bahrain Shareholding Company (Public)
- With Limited Liability Company
- Branch of a Foreign Company
- Bahrain Shareholding Company (Closed)
- Partnership Company
- Simple Commandite Company
- Commandite By Shares Company
- Non Profit Company

Required Step of Licenses and Approvals

Ministry / Directorate	License / Approval Requirements	Approval Type
Directorate Of Industrial Developments	Approval by Directorate of Industrial Developments(Pre)	Pre
Municipality Affairs	Site Approval for manufacturing activities (Type B)	Post
Ministry of Health	Health approval for Manufacture of other food products	Post
Supreme Council for Environment	Environmental Approval for Manufacture of other food products - factory activity	Post
Directorate Of Industrial Developments	Notification Only	Final Site Inspection

Directorate Of Industrial Developments (Pre) (107-2)

Approval Name	Description	Estimated Time
Approval by Directorate of Industrial Developments(Pre)	This is a preliminary approval given by the Directorate of Industrial Development to ensure that the applicant has selected the appropriate activity based on the information provided	5 Days

Fee Details (if any)

There is no Estimated Processing Time (Days) in this license.

License Information

Applicants would have to provide through the system the following information:

General Information:

- Total Amount Invested in the Project (This should include value of machinery and fixed assets)
- Estimated number of workforce (Bahraini and Non-Bahraini)
- Expected utility consumption of electricity, water and natural gas
- Total area of the project

Activity Information:

- Product Information:

1) The products to be manufactured by choosing the appropriate HS codes (HS code list can be downloaded from the application if needed).
2) Product name.
3) Expected production date (The expected date on which the factory will start producing the product).

4) The maximum installed capacity and the expected production capacity per year based on the fixed HS code's unit of measure.

• Main raw materials: The main raw materials to be used in production and its source

• Main Machinery and Equipment: The main machinery and equipment to be used in production and its information.

• Manufacturing process: Brief on the manufacturing process explaining how materials are transformed from one state to another until reaching the final product, mentioning the types of materials used, the operations performed, and the machinery/equipment used in each step (if any) for each product.

Required Documents

•Photos of machinery/ equipment to be used
•Photos of products to be manufactured

Other Documents

•Law No. (81) of 2006 with respect to approving The Common Industrial Law of the GCC
•Ministerial Resolution No. (11) of 2009
•Operational requirements for the directorate of industrial developments activities

Municipality Affairs (Post) (107-2)

Approval Name	Description	Estimated Time
Site Approval for manufacturing activities (Type B)	Municipality Approval for the Commercial Registration address or the site in which the Activity will be practiced	3 Days

Fee Details (if any)

10 BD

License Information

General Conditions:
1. Size of shop/premises must be sufficient for the activity
2. Businesses may not carry out the activity outside the boundaries of the shop/ premises
3. It is prohibited to display or store any items or equipment outside the shop / premises boundary without prior approval from the Municipality. In the event of non-compliance, the Ministry of Municipality Affairs has the right to take necessary action.
4. Maintain cleanliness of the site
5. Comply with the parking space regulations as per the Construction Regulatory Requirements

Activity Specific Conditions:
1. The Commercial Registration for this activity can only be registered in service and industrial streets/areas

Note: Uploading pictures of the site/shop may expedite the process of obtaining approval

Required Documents

- Lease agreement (after obtaining the necessary approvals from other licensing entities)
- Shop photos

Other Documents

- Cabinet's Decision (56) of the year 2022 regarding the Regulatory Requirements of Construction for various areas in the Kingdom of Bahrain

Ministry of Health (Post) (107-2)

Approval Name	Description	Estimated Time
Health approval for Manufacture of other food products	Health approval for Manufacture of other food products	5 Days

Fee Details (if any)

150 BD

License Information

Please refer to the “Activity License Checklist – Ministry of Health“ document under the “other downloadable documents” section for the licensing requirements.

For faster processing, you may engage any of the licensed engineering offices listed under the “Service Providers Directory” to provide drawings/layout of the premises, which should then be attached to the application that you will submit online. To access the list of licensed engineering offices follow the below steps:
1- Click on “Public Service” on the main navigation bar
2- Click on “Service Providers Directory”
3- Click on “Click Here” button adjacent to “List of Engineering Offices for Ministry of Health related activities”

Required Documents

- Drawings/ layout of premises (approved by an engineering office).
- Requirement Checklist (Stamped by an engineering office)
- drawings/layouts of the premises

Other Documents

- Activity License Checklist - Ministry of Health
- Operational requirements for food production and packaging

Supreme Council for Environment (Post) (107-2)

Approval Name	Description	Estimated Time
Environmental Approval for Manufacture of other food products - factory activity	This service aims to assess the environmental impact and licensing of development, industrial and production projects and activities, in accordance with the standards of protecting the environment and its natural resources	10 Days

Fee Details (if any)

- 30 Bahraini Dinars or 200 Bahraini Dinars for the fast-track procedure (when the data requested within the EA-2 form is sufficient without the need for additional studies)
- 4000 Bahraini Dinars or 6000 Bahraini Dinars for the fast track procedure (when it is necessary to submit an environmental impact assessment study for the project), with an additional payment of 100 Bahraini Dinars when it is necessary to submit a proposal for the scope of the study before submitting it or 500 Bahraini Dinars for a fast track procedure when the proposed scope of the study is being submitted before the study

License Information

To check the requirements for this approval, kindly download the detailed requirements sheet from the other downloadable documents section, which includes the following requirements:

- Building layout engineering and equipment requirements
- Workplace requirements
- Storage requirements
- Material management requirements
- Waste Management Requirements

- Documents and reporting requirements
- General requirements

Other Documents

- Annex to the Minister of Housing, Municipalities and Environment order regarding the project's environmental assessment
- Law No. (2) of 2021 regarding the environmental standards of air as decided by the Chairman of the Supreme Council for Environment
- Law No. (3) of 2021 regarding the environmental standards of water as decided by the Chairman of the Supreme Council for the Environment
- Law No. (5) of 2021 regarding CITES Annexes to the Convention on International Trade in Endangered Fauna and Flora
- Law No. (54) of 2014 regarding the approval of the unified law regarding substances that deplete the ozone layer for the GCC countries
- Law No. (7) of 2022 regarding the environment
- Law No. (7) of 2022 regarding the environment
- Ministerial Order No. (1) of 1998 regarding Project's Environmental Assessment
- Ministerial Order No. (10) of 2006 regarding the installation of devices for on-line monitoring of atmospheric air pollutants
- Ministerial Order No. (11) of 2019 regarding the issue of technical specification of plastic products
- Ministerial Order No. (3) of 2005 regarding environmental requirements and standards in workplaces, especially regarding workers' exposure to heat and noise, and the provision of tools and protective clothing such as gloves, glasses, face masks and earplugs, with a commitment to use them during work
- Ministerial Order No. (3) of 2006 regarding the management of hazardous waste
- Ministerial Order No. (4) of 2005 regarding the management of used oils
- Ministerial Order No. (4) of 2006 regarding the management of hazardous chemicals
- Ministerial Order No. (4) of 2021 regarding the fees of the licenses and services provided by the Supreme Council for Environment
- Ministerial Order No. (6) of 2013 amending order No. (4) of 2006 regarding the management of hazardous chemicals
- Ministerial Order No. (7) of 2002 regarding the control importation and use of prohibited and severely restricted chemicals, and not to import any chemical compound except after obtaining approvals of all concerned authorities, including the executive body of the Supreme Council for Environment
- Ministerial Order No. (7) of 2013 amending order No. (3) of 2006 regarding the management of hazardous waste
- Ministerial Order No. 4 of 2014 regarding the management of the environmental consulting offices operations in the Kingdom of Bahrain
- Order No. (2) of 2020 determining the categories of fees for licensing refrigeration media, refrigeration units and air conditioning units as decided by the Chairman of the Supreme Council for the Environment
- Requirements for business activities

•law No. (1) of 2020 regarding the management of refrigeration media, refrigeration units and air conditioning units as decided by the Chairman of the Supreme Council for the Environment
•law No. (2) of 2019 regarding the ban on the import of plastic waste of all kinds as decided by the Chairman of the Supreme Council for the Environment
•law No. (204) of 2018 regarding banning the export of some types of local fishes, shrimps and other aquatic organisms, and coordinating with the Agriculture and Marine Resources at the Ministry of Works, Municipalities and Urban Planning regarding the import and export of some species

Directorate Of Industrial Developments (Final Site Inspection) (107-2)

Approval Name	Description	Estimated Time
Notification Only	Notification to the Industrial development directorate on obtaining a commercial registration with the license to practice the activity.	There is no License Information in this license. Days

Fee Details (if any)

There is no Estimated Processing Time (Days) in this license.

License Information

The industrial license is automatically issued by the Industrial development Directorate after obtaining the approval of other licensing/approving entities.

Please ensure that the actual production date does no exceed the expected production date.

If actual production will start on or before the expected production date please apply for a “New Industrial Registration” by following the steps below:

1- Visit the Industrial services system (www.industry.bh).
2- Select “Industrial Registration”.
3- Select “New Registration” application.

In the event that the actual production date will exceed the expected production date an “Extension of expected production date” application must be submitted by following the steps below:

1- Visit the Industrial services system (www.industry.bh).

2- Select “Industrial License”.
3- Select “Extension of expected production date” application.

Please note that failure to do so within 60 days from the expected production date will result in a violation to be added.

Other Documents

- Law No. (81) of 2006 with respect to approving The Common Industrial Law of the GCC
- Ministerial Resolution No. (11) of 2009 with respect to promulgating Implementing Regulation
- Operational requirements for the directorate of industrial developments activities

Manufacturing

ISIC4	Business activity
1071-1	Manufacture of bakery products - Workshop

Description

This activity includes the manufacture of fresh, frozen or dry bakery products.
This activity includes:
- manufacture of bread and rolls
- manufacture of fresh pastry, cakes, pies, tarts etc.
- manufacture of rusks, biscuits and other dry bakery products
- manufacture of preserved pastry goods and cakes
- manufacture of snack products (cookies, crackers, pretzels etc.), whether sweet or salted
- manufacture of tortillas
- manufacture of frozen bakery products: pancakes, waffles, rolls etc.

This activity excludes:
- manufacture of farinaceous products (pastas), see 1079
- manufacture of potato snacks, see 103
- heating up of bakery items for immediate consumption, see 5610

Business Requirements

Age

18 and above

Allowed for Nationalities

Bahraini 100%		GCC 100%	
American 100%		Singaporean 100%	
Icelander 100%		Liechtenstein er 100%	
Norwegian 100%		Swiss 100%	

Foreign Allowed up to 100%

Legal Type

It is allowed to register according to the legal forms mentioned below

Allowed for Individual Commercial Registration (ICR) : Yes

Allowed for Company Commercial Registration (CCR) : Yes

- Bahrain Shareholding Company (Public)
- With Limited Liability Company
- Branch of a Foreign Company
- Bahrain Shareholding Company (Closed)
- Partnership Company
- Simple Commandite Company
- Commandite By Shares Company
- Non Profit Company

Required Step of Licenses and Approvals

Ministry / Directorate	License / Approval Requirements	Approval Type
General Directrate Of Civil Defence	Manufacture of bakery products - Workshop	Post

Municipality Affairs	Site Approval for manufacturing activities (Type B)	Post
Ministry of Health	Health approval for Manufacture of bakery products	Post

General Directrate Of Civil Defence (Post) (1071-1)

Approval Name	Description	Estimated Time
Manufacture of bakery products - Workshop	checking the approval requirements of the general directorate of civil defense	5 Days

Fee Details (if any)

10 BD Fire prevention and protection certificate fees

License Information

1. Provide the documents mentioned in the “Required Documents” section
2. Comply with the requirements listed in the inspection checklist found in the “Other Downloadable Documents” section
3. Provide proof to the General Directorate of Civil Defense that an alarm and firefighting equipment have been installed within 6 months of obtaining a Commercial Registration and license

If a warehouse is used:
A safety certificate must be obtained viaBahrain.bh

Required Documents

•Annual maintenance contract from a company specialized in chimney.
•No-objection letter for alarm and extinguisher installation from Civil Defense, or purchasing receipt of alarm equipment and extinguishers along with an annual maintenance contract from a company certified by Civil defense
•Photos required for civil defense activities
•Purchasing invoice of security camera system with specifying the type and storage capacity.

Other Documents

- Sample pictures of the general directorate of civil defense requirements
- licencing requirments of the general directorat of civil defense for activity number "1071-1"

Municipality Affairs (Post) (1071-1)

Approval Name	Description	Estimated Time
Site Approval for manufacturing activities (Type B)	Municipality Approval for the Commercial Registration address or the site in which the Activity will be practiced	3 Days

Fee Details (if any)

10 BD

License Information

General Conditions:
1. Size of shop/premises must be sufficient for the activity
2. Businesses may not carry out the activity outside the boundaries of the shop/ premises
3. It is prohibited to display or store any items or equipment outside the shop / premises boundary without prior approval from the Municipality. In the event of non-compliance, the Ministry of Municipality Affairs has the right to take necessary action.
4. Maintain cleanliness of the site
5. Comply with the parking space regulations as per the Construction Regulatory Requirements

Activity Specific Conditions:
1. The Commercial Registration for this activity can only be registered in service and industrial streets/areas

Note: Uploading pictures of the site/shop may expedite the process of obtaining approval

Required Documents

- Lease agreement (after obtaining the necessary approvals from other licensing entities)
- Shop photos

Other Documents

- Cabinet's Decision (56) of the year 2022 regarding the Regulatory Requirements of Construction for various areas in the Kingdom of Bahrain

Ministry of Health (Post) (1071-1)

Approval Name	Description	Estimated Time
Health approval for Manufacture of bakery products	Health approval for Manufacture of bakery products	5 Days

Fee Details (if any)

150 BD

License Information

Please refer to the “Activity License Checklist – Ministry of Health“ document under the “other downloadable documents” section for the licensing requirements.

For faster processing, you may engage any of the licensed engineering offices listed under the “Service Providers Directory” to provide drawings/layout of the premises, which should then be attached to the application that you will submit online. To access the list of licensed engineering offices follow the below steps:
1- Click on “Public Service” on the main navigation bar
2- Click on “Service Providers Directory”
3- Click on “Click Here” button adjacent to “List of Engineering Offices for Ministry of Health related activities”

Required Documents

- Drawings/ layout of premises (approved by an engineering office).
- Requirement Checklist (Stamped by an engineering office)
- drawings/layouts of the premises

Other Documents

- Activity License Checklist - Ministry of Health
- Operational requirements for food production and packaging

Manufacturing

ISIC4	Business activity
1071-2	Manufacture of bakery products - Factory

Description

This activity includes the manufacture of fresh, frozen or dry bakery products.
This activity includes:
- manufacture of bread and rolls
- manufacture of fresh pastry, cakes, pies, tarts etc.
- manufacture of rusks, biscuits and other dry bakery products
- manufacture of preserved pastry goods and cakes
- manufacture of snack products (cookies, crackers, pretzels etc.), whether sweet or salted
- manufacture of tortillas
- manufacture of frozen bakery products: pancakes, waffles, rolls etc.

This activity excludes:
- manufacture of farinaceous products (pastas), see 1079
- manufacture of potato snacks, see 103
- heating up of bakery items for immediate consumption, see 5610

Business Requirements

Age

18 and above

Allowed for Nationalities

Bahraini 100%		GCC 100%	
American 100%		Singaporean 100%	
Icelander 100%		Liechtenstein er 100%	
Norwegian 100%		Swiss 100%	

Foreign Allowed up to 100%

Legal Type

It is allowed to register according to the legal forms mentioned below

Allowed for Individual Commercial Registration (ICR) : Yes

Allowed for Company Commercial Registration (CCR) : Yes

- Bahrain Shareholding Company (Public)
- With Limited Liability Company
- Branch of a Foreign Company
- Bahrain Shareholding Company (Closed)
- Partnership Company
- Simple Commandite Company
- Commandite By Shares Company
- Non Profit Company

Required Step of Licenses and Approvals

Ministry / Directorate	License / Approval Requirements	Approval Type
Directorate Of Industrial Developments	Approval by Directorate of Industrial	Pre

	Developments(Pre)	
General Directrate Of Civil Defence	Manufacture of bakery products - Factory	Post
Municipality Affairs	Site Approval for manufacturing activities (Type B)	Post
Ministry of Health	Health approval for Manufacture of bakery products	Post
Supreme Council for Environment	Environmental Approval for manufacture of bakery products - factory activity	Post
Directorate Of Industrial Developments	Notification Only	Final Site Inspection

Directorate Of Industrial Developments (Pre) (1071-2)

Approval Name	Description	Estimated Time
Approval by Directorate of Industrial Developments(Pre)	This is a preliminary approval given by the Directorate of Industrial Development to ensure that the applicant has selected the appropriate activity based on the information provided	5 Days

Fee Details (if any)

There is no Estimated Processing Time (Days) in this license.

License Information

Applicants would have to provide through the system the following information:

General Information:

- Total Amount Invested in the Project (This should include value of machinery and fixed assets)
- Estimated number of workforce (Bahraini and Non-Bahraini)
- Expected utility consumption of electricity, water and natural gas
- Total area of the project

Activity Information:

- Product Information:

1) The products to be manufactured by choosing the appropriate HS codes (HS code list can be downloaded from the application if needed).
2) Product name.
3) Expected production date (The expected date on which the factory will start producing the product).

4) The maximum installed capacity and the expected production capacity per year based on the fixed HS code's unit of measure.

• Main raw materials: The main raw materials to be used in production and its source

• Main Machinery and Equipment: The main machinery and equipment to be used in production and its information.

• Manufacturing process: Brief on the manufacturing process explaining how materials are transformed from one state to another until reaching the final product, mentioning the types of materials used, the operations performed, and the machinery/equipment used in each step (if any) for each product.

Required Documents

•Photos of machinery/ equipment to be used
•Photos of products to be manufactured

Other Documents

•Law No. (81) of 2006 with respect to approving The Common Industrial Law of the GCC
•Ministerial Resolution No. (11) of 2009
•Operational requirements for the directorate of industrial developments activities

General Directrate Of Civil Defence (Post) (1071-2)

Approval Name	Description	Estimated Time
Manufacture of bakery products - Factory	checking the approval requirements of the general directorate of civil defense	5 Days

Fee Details (if any)

50 BD Fire prevention and protection certificate fees

License Information

1. Provide the documents mentioned in the “Required Documents” section
2. Comply with the requirements listed in the inspection checklist found in the “Other Downloadable Documents” section
3. Provide proof to the General Directorate of Civil Defense that an alarm and firefighting equipment have been installed within 6 months of obtaining a Commercial Registration and license

If a warehouse is used: A safety certificate must be obtained viaBahrain.bh

Required Documents

•Annual maintenance contract from a company specialized in chimney.
•No-objection letter for alarm and extinguisher installation from Civil Defense, or purchasing receipt of alarm equipment and extinguishers along with an annual maintenance contract from a company certified by Civil defense
•Photos required for civil defense activities
•Purchasing invoice of security camera system with specifying the type and storage capacity.

Other Documents

- Sample pictures of the general directorate of civil defense requirements
- licencing requirments of the general directorat of civil defense for activity number "1071-2"

Municipality Affairs (Post) (1071-2)

Approval Name	Description	Estimated Time
Site Approval for manufacturing activities (Type B)	Municipality Approval for the Commercial Registration address or the site in which the Activity will be practiced	3 Days

Fee Details (if any)

10 BD

License Information

General Conditions:
1. Size of shop/premises must be sufficient for the activity
2. Businesses may not carry out the activity outside the boundaries of the shop/ premises
3. It is prohibited to display or store any items or equipment outside the shop / premises boundary without prior approval from the Municipality. In the event of non-compliance, the Ministry of Municipality Affairs has the right to take necessary action.
4. Maintain cleanliness of the site
5. Comply with the parking space regulations as per the Construction Regulatory Requirements

Activity Specific Conditions:
1. The Commercial Registration for this activity can only be registered in service and industrial streets/areas

Note: Uploading pictures of the site/shop may expedite the process of obtaining approval

Required Documents

- Lease agreement (after obtaining the necessary approvals from other licensing entities)
- Shop photos

Other Documents

- Cabinet's Decision (56) of the year 2022 regarding the Regulatory Requirements of Construction for various areas in the Kingdom of Bahrain

Ministry of Health (Post) (1071-2)

Approval Name	Description	Estimated Time
Health approval for Manufacture of bakery products	Health approval for Manufacture of bakery products	5 Days

Fee Details (if any)

150 BD

License Information

Please refer to the “Activity License Checklist – Ministry of Health“ document under the “other downloadable documents” section for the licensing requirements.

For faster processing, you may engage any of the licensed engineering offices listed under the “Service Providers Directory” to provide drawings/layout of the premises, which should then be attached to the application that you will submit online. To access the list of licensed engineering offices follow the below steps:
1- Click on “Public Service” on the main navigation bar
2- Click on “Service Providers Directory”
3- Click on “Click Here” button adjacent to “List of Engineering Offices for Ministry of Health related activities”

Required Documents

- Drawings/ layout of premises (approved by an engineering office).
- Requirement Checklist (Stamped by an engineering office)
- drawings/layouts of the premises

Other Documents

- Activity License Checklist - Ministry of Health
- Operational requirements for food production and packaging

Supreme Council for Environment (Post) (1071-2)

Approval Name	Description	Estimated Time
Environmental Approval for manufacture of bakery products - factory activity	This service aims to assess the environmental impact and licensing of development, industrial and production projects and activities, in accordance with the standards of protecting the environment and its natural resources	10 Days

Fee Details (if any)

- 30 Bahraini Dinars or 200 Bahraini Dinars for the fast-track procedure (when the data requested within the EA-2 form is sufficient without the need for additional studies)
- 4000 Bahraini Dinars or 6000 Bahraini Dinars for the fast track procedure (when it is necessary to submit an environmental impact assessment study for the project), with an additional payment of 100 Bahraini Dinars when it is necessary to submit a proposal for the scope of the study before submitting it or 500 Bahraini Dinars for a fast track procedure when the proposed scope of the study is being submitted before the study

License Information

To check the requirements for this approval, kindly download the detailed requirements sheet from the other downloadable documents section, which includes the following requirements:

- Building layout engineering and equipment requirements
- Workplace requirements
- Storage requirements
- Material management requirements
- Waste Management Requirements

- Documents and reporting requirements
- General requirements

Other Documents

•Annex to the Minister of Housing, Municipalities and Environment order regarding the project's environmental assessment
•Law No. (2) of 2021 regarding the environmental standards of air as decided by the Chairman of the Supreme Council for Environment
•Law No. (3) of 2021 regarding the environmental standards of water as decided by the Chairman of the Supreme Council for the Environment
•Law No. (5) of 2021 regarding CITES Annexes to the Convention on International Trade in Endangered Fauna and Flora
•Law No. (54) of 2014 regarding the approval of the unified law regarding substances that deplete the ozone layer for the GCC countries
•Law No. (7) of 2022 regarding the environment
•Ministerial Order No. (1) of 1998 regarding Project's Environmental Assessment
•Ministerial Order No. (10) of 2006 regarding the installation of devices for on-line monitoring of atmospheric air pollutants
•Ministerial Order No. (11) of 2019 regarding the issue of technical specification of plastic products
•Ministerial Order No. (3) of 2005 regarding environmental requirements and standards in workplaces, especially regarding workers' exposure to heat and noise, and the provision of tools and protective clothing such as gloves, glasses, face masks and earplugs, with a commitment to use them during work
•Ministerial Order No. (3) of 2006 regarding the management of hazardous waste
•Ministerial Order No. (4) of 2005 regarding the management of used oils
•Ministerial Order No. (4) of 2006 regarding the management of hazardous chemicals
•Ministerial Order No. (4) of 2021 regarding the fees of the licenses and services provided by the Supreme Council for Environment
•Ministerial Order No. (6) of 2013 amending order No. (4) of 2006 regarding the management of hazardous chemicals
•Ministerial Order No. (7) of 2002 regarding the control importation and use of prohibited and severely restricted chemicals, and not to import any chemical compound except after obtaining approvals of all concerned authorities, including the executive body of the Supreme Council for Environment
•Ministerial Order No. (7) of 2013 amending order No. (3) of 2006 regarding the management of hazardous waste
•Ministerial Order No. 4 of 2014 regarding the management of the environmental consulting offices operations in the Kingdom of Bahrain
•Order No. (2) of 2020 determining the categories of fees for licensing refrigeration media, refrigeration units and air conditioning units as decided by the Chairman of the Supreme Council for the Environment
•Requirements for business activities
•law No. (1) of 2020 regarding the management of refrigeration media, refrigeration

units and air conditioning units as decided by the Chairman of the Supreme Council for the Environment
•law No. (2) of 2019 regarding the ban on the import of plastic waste of all kinds as decided by the Chairman of the Supreme Council for the Environment
•law No. (204) of 2018 regarding banning the export of some types of local fishes, shrimps and other aquatic organisms, and coordinating with the Agriculture and Marine Resources at the Ministry of Works, Municipalities and Urban Planning regarding the import and export of some species

Directorate Of Industrial Developments (Final Site Inspection) (1071-2)

Approval Name	Description	Estimated Time
Notification Only	Notification to the Industrial development directorate on obtaining a commercial registration with the license to practice the activity.	There is no License Information in this license. Days

Fee Details (if any)

There is no Estimated Processing Time (Days) in this license.

License Information

The industrial license is automatically issued by the Industrial development Directorate after obtaining the approval of other licensing/approving entities.

Please ensure that the actual production date does no exceed the expected production date.

If actual production will start on or before the expected production date please apply for a “New Industrial Registration” by following the steps below:

1- Visit the Industrial services system (www.industry.bh).
2- Select “Industrial Registration”.
3- Select “New Registration” application.

In the event that the actual production date will exceed the expected production date an “Extension of expected production date” application must be submitted by following the steps below:

1- Visit the Industrial services system (www.industry.bh).

2- Select “Industrial License”.
3- Select “Extension of expected production date” application.

Please note that failure to do so within 60 days from the expected production date will result in a violation to be added.

Other Documents

- Law No. (81) of 2006 with respect to approving The Common Industrial Law of the GCC
- Ministerial Resolution No. (11) of 2009 with respect to promulgating Implementing Regulation
- Operational requirements for the directorate of industrial developments activities

Manufacturing

ISIC4	Business activity
10711	Traditional Baker

Description

This activity includes the production of local/traditional bread in a small bakery

Business Requirements

Age

18 and above

Allowed for Nationalities

Bahraini 100%		GCC 100%	
American 100%		Singaporean Allowed up to 49% (a minimum Bahraini ownership of 51% is required)	
Icelander Allowed up to 49% (a minimum Bahraini ownership of 51% is required)		Liechtenstein er Allowed up to 49% (a minimum Bahraini ownership of 51% is required)	
Norwegian Allowed up to 49% (a minimum Bahraini ownership of 51% is required)		Swiss Allowed up to 49% (a minimum Bahraini ownership of 51% is required)	

Foreign Allowed up to Allowed up to 49% (a minimum Bahraini ownership of 51% is required)

Legal Type

It is allowed to register according to the legal forms mentioned below

Allowed for Individual Commercial Registration (ICR) : Yes

Allowed for Company Commercial Registration (CCR) : Yes

- Bahrain Shareholding Company (Public)
- With Limited Liability Company
- Branch of a Foreign Company
- Bahrain Shareholding Company (Closed)
- Partnership Company
- Simple Commandite Company
- Commandite By Shares Company
- Non Profit Company

Required Step of Licenses and Approvals

Ministry / Directorate	License / Approval Requirements	Approval Type
Municipality Affairs	Site Approval for manufacturing activities (Type A)	Post
Ministry of Health	Health approval for Traditional Baker	Post
General Directrate Of Civil Defence	Traditional Baker	Post

Municipality Affairs (Post) (10711)

Approval Name	Description	Estimated Time
Site Approval for manufacturing activities (Type A)	Municipality Approval for the Commercial Registration address or the site in which the Activity will be practiced	3 Days

Fee Details (if any)

10 BD

License Information

General Conditions:
1. Size of shop/premises must be sufficient for the activity
2. Businesses may not carry out the activity outside the boundaries of the shop/ premises
3. It is prohibited to display or store any items or equipment outside the shop / premises boundary without prior approval from the Municipality. In the event of non-compliance, the Ministry of Municipality Affairs has the right to take necessary action.
4. Maintain cleanliness of the site
5. Comply with the parking space regulations as per the Construction Regulatory Requirements

Activity Specific Conditions:
1. The commercial address for this activity can be registered in areas classified as commercial, services, or industrial

Note: Uploading pictures of the site/shop may expedite the process of obtaining approval

Required Documents

- Lease agreement (after obtaining the necessary approvals from other licensing entities)
- Shop photos

Other Documents

- Cabinet's Decision (56) of the year 2022 regarding the Regulatory Requirements of Construction for various areas in the Kingdom of Bahrain

Ministry of Health (Post) (10711)

Approval Name	Description	Estimated Time
Health approval for Traditional Baker	Health approval for Traditional Baker	5 Days

Fee Details (if any)

30 BD

License Information

Please refer to the “Activity License Checklist – Ministry of Health“ document under the “other downloadable documents” section for the licensing requirements.

For faster processing, you may engage any of the licensed engineering offices listed under the “Service Providers Directory” to provide drawings/layout of the premises, which should then be attached to the application that you will submit online. To access the list of licensed engineering offices follow the below steps:
1- Click on “Public Service” on the main navigation bar
2- Click on “Service Providers Directory”
3- Click on “Click Here” button adjacent to “List of Engineering Offices for Ministry of Health related activities”

Required Documents

- Drawings/ layout of premises (approved by an engineering office).
- Requirement Checklist (Stamped by an engineering office)
- drawings/layouts of the premises

Other Documents

- Activity License Checklist - Ministry of Health
- Operational requirements for food production and packaging

General Directrate Of Civil Defence (Post) (10711)

Approval Name	Description	Estimated Time
Traditional Baker	checking the approval requirements of the general directorate of civil defense	5 Days

Fee Details (if any)

10 BD Fire prevention and protection certificate fees

License Information

1. Provide the documents mentioned in the “Required Documents” section
2. Comply with the requirements listed in the inspection checklist found in the “Other Downloadable Documents” section
3. Provide proof to the General Directorate of Civil Defense that an alarm and firefighting equipment have been installed within 6 months of obtaining a Commercial Registration and license

If a warehouse is used: A safety certificate must be obtained viaBahrain.bh

Required Documents

•Annual maintenance contract from a company specialized in chimney.
•No-objection letter for alarm and extinguisher installation from Civil Defense, or purchasing receipt of alarm equipment and extinguishers along with an annual maintenance contract from a company certified by Civil defense
•Photos required for civil defense activities
•Purchasing invoice of security camera system with specifying the type and storage capacity.

Other Documents

- Sample pictures of the general directorate of civil defense requirements
- licencing requirments of the general directorat of civil defense for activity number "10711"

Manufacturing

ISIC4	Business activity
1073-1	Manufacture of cocoa, chocolate and sugar confectionery - Workshop

Description

This activity includes:
- manufacture of cocoa, cocoa butter, cocoa fat, cocoa oil
- manufacture of chocolate and chocolate confectionery
- manufacture of sugar confectionery: caramels, cachous, nougats, fondant, white chocolate
- manufacture of chewing gum
- preserving in sugar of fruit, nuts, fruit peels and other parts of plants
- manufacture of confectionery lozenges and pastilles

Business Requirements

Age

18 and above

Allowed for Nationalities

Bahraini 100%		GCC 100%	
American 100%		Singaporean 100%	
Icelander 100%		Liechtenstein er 100%	
Norwegian 100%		Swiss 100%	

Foreign Allowed up to 100%

Legal Type

It is allowed to register according to the legal forms mentioned below

Allowed for Individual Commercial Registration (ICR) : Yes

Allowed for Company Commercial Registration (CCR) : Yes

- Bahrain Shareholding Company (Public)
- With Limited Liability Company
- Branch of a Foreign Company
- Bahrain Shareholding Company (Closed)
- Partnership Company
- Simple Commandite Company
- Commandite By Shares Company
- Non Profit Company

Required Step of Licenses and Approvals

Ministry / Directorate	License / Approval Requirements	Approval Type
Municipality Affairs	Site Approval for manufacturing activities (Type B)	Post
Ministry of Health	Health approval for Manufacture of cocoa, chocolate and sugar confectionery	Post

Municipality Affairs (Post) (1073-1)

Approval Name	Description	Estimated Time
Site Approval for manufacturing activities (Type B)	Municipality Approval for the Commercial Registration address or the site in which the Activity will be practiced	3 Days

Fee Details (if any)

10 BD

License Information

General Conditions:
1. Size of shop/premises must be sufficient for the activity
2. Businesses may not carry out the activity outside the boundaries of the shop/ premises
3. It is prohibited to display or store any items or equipment outside the shop / premises boundary without prior approval from the Municipality. In the event of non-compliance, the Ministry of Municipality Affairs has the right to take necessary action.
4. Maintain cleanliness of the site
5. Comply with the parking space regulations as per the Construction Regulatory Requirements

Activity Specific Conditions:
1. The Commercial Registration for this activity can only be registered in service and industrial streets/areas

Note: Uploading pictures of the site/shop may expedite the process of obtaining approval

Required Documents

- Lease agreement (after obtaining the necessary approvals from other licensing entities)
- Shop photos

Other Documents

- Cabinet's Decision (56) of the year 2022 regarding the Regulatory Requirements of Construction for various areas in the Kingdom of Bahrain

Ministry of Health (Post) (1073-1)

Approval Name	Description	Estimated Time
Health approval for Manufacture of cocoa, chocolate and sugar confectionery	Health approval for Manufacture of cocoa, chocolate and sugar confectionery	5 Days

Fee Details (if any)

100 BD

License Information

Please refer to the “Activity License Checklist – Ministry of Health“ document under the “other downloadable documents” section for the licensing requirements.

For faster processing, you may engage any of the licensed engineering offices listed under the “Service Providers Directory” to provide drawings/layout of the premises, which should then be attached to the application that you will submit online. To access the list of licensed engineering offices follow the below steps:
1- Click on “Public Service” on the main navigation bar
2- Click on “Service Providers Directory”
3- Click on “Click Here” button adjacent to “List of Engineering Offices for Ministry of Health related activities”

Required Documents

- Drawings/ layout of premises (approved by an engineering office).
- Requirement Checklist (Stamped by an engineering office)
- drawings/layouts of the premises

Other Documents

- Activity License Checklist - Ministry of Health
- Operational requirements for food production and packaging

Manufacturing

ISIC4	Business activity
1073-2	Manufacture of cocoa, chocolate and sugar confectionery - Factory

Description

This activity includes:
- manufacture of cocoa, cocoa butter, cocoa fat, cocoa oil
- manufacture of chocolate and chocolate confectionery
- manufacture of sugar confectionery: caramels, cachous, nougats, fondant, white chocolate
- manufacture of chewing gum
- preserving in sugar of fruit, nuts, fruit peels and other parts of plants
- manufacture of confectionery lozenges and pastilles

Business Requirements

Age

18 and above

Allowed for Nationalities

Bahraini 100%		GCC 100%	
American 100%		Singaporean 100%	
Icelander 100%		Liechtenstein er 100%	
Norwegian 100%		Swiss 100%	

Foreign Allowed up to 100%

Legal Type

It is allowed to register according to the legal forms mentioned below

Allowed for Individual Commercial Registration (ICR) : Yes

Allowed for Company Commercial Registration (CCR) : Yes

- Bahrain Shareholding Company (Public)
- With Limited Liability Company
- Branch of a Foreign Company
- Bahrain Shareholding Company (Closed)
- Partnership Company
- Simple Commandite Company
- Commandite By Shares Company
- Non Profit Company

Required Step of Licenses and Approvals

Ministry / Directorate	License / Approval Requirements	Approval Type
Directorate Of Industrial Developments	Approval by Directorate of Industrial Developments(Pre)	Pre
Ministry of Health	Health approval for Manufacture of cocoa, chocolate and sugar confectionery	Post
Supreme Council for Environment	Environmental Approval for Manufacture of cocoa, chocolate and sugary sweets - Factory activity	Post
Municipality Affairs	Site Approval for manufacturing activities (Type B)	Post
Directorate Of Industrial Developments	Notification Only	Final Site Inspection

Directorate Of Industrial Developments (Pre) (1073-2)

Approval Name	Description	Estimated Time
Approval by Directorate of Industrial Developments(Pre)	This is a preliminary approval given by the Directorate of Industrial Development to ensure that the applicant has selected the appropriate activity based on the information provided	5 Days

Fee Details (if any)

There is no Estimated Processing Time (Days) in this license.

License Information

Applicants would have to provide through the system the following information:

General Information:

- Total Amount Invested in the Project (This should include value of machinery and fixed assets)
- Estimated number of workforce (Bahraini and Non-Bahraini)
- Expected utility consumption of electricity, water and natural gas
- Total area of the project

Activity Information:

- Product Information:

1) The products to be manufactured by choosing the appropriate HS codes (HS code list can be downloaded from the application if needed).
2) Product name.
3) Expected production date (The expected date on which the factory will start producing the product).

4) The maximum installed capacity and the expected production capacity per year based on the fixed HS code's unit of measure.

• Main raw materials: The main raw materials to be used in production and its source

• Main Machinery and Equipment: The main machinery and equipment to be used in production and its information.

• Manufacturing process: Brief on the manufacturing process explaining how materials are transformed from one state to another until reaching the final product, mentioning the types of materials used, the operations performed, and the machinery/equipment used in each step (if any) for each product.

Required Documents

•Photos of machinery/ equipment to be used
•Photos of products to be manufactured

Other Documents

•Law No. (81) of 2006 with respect to approving The Common Industrial Law of the GCC
•Ministerial Resolution No. (11) of 2009
•Operational requirements for the directorate of industrial developments activities

Ministry of Health (Post) (1073-2)

Approval Name	Description	Estimated Time
Health approval for Manufacture of cocoa, chocolate and sugar confectionery	Health approval for Manufacture of cocoa, chocolate and sugar confectionery	5 Days

Fee Details (if any)

100 BD

License Information

Please refer to the “Activity License Checklist – Ministry of Health“ document under the “other downloadable documents” section for the licensing requirements.

For faster processing, you may engage any of the licensed engineering offices listed under the “Service Providers Directory” to provide drawings/layout of the premises, which should then be attached to the application that you will submit online. To access the list of licensed engineering offices follow the below steps:
1- Click on “Public Service” on the main navigation bar
2- Click on “Service Providers Directory”
3- Click on “Click Here” button adjacent to “List of Engineering Offices for Ministry of Health related activities”

Required Documents

- Drawings/ layout of premises (approved by an engineering office).
- Requirement Checklist (Stamped by an engineering office)
- drawings/layouts of the premises

Other Documents

- Activity License Checklist - Ministry of Health
- Operational requirements for food production and packaging

Supreme Council for Environment (Post) (1073-2)

Approval Name	Description	Estimated Time
Environmental Approval for Manufacture of cocoa, chocolate and sugary sweets - Factory activity	This service aims to assess the environmental impact and licensing of development, industrial and production projects and activities, in accordance with the standards of protecting the environment and its natural resources	10 Days

Fee Details (if any)

- 30 Bahraini Dinars or 200 Bahraini Dinars for the fast-track procedure (when the data requested within the EA-2 form is sufficient without the need for additional studies)
- 4000 Bahraini Dinars or 6000 Bahraini Dinars for the fast track procedure (when it is necessary to submit an environmental impact assessment study for the project), with an additional payment of 100 Bahraini Dinars when it is necessary to submit a proposal for the scope of the study before submitting it or 500 Bahraini Dinars for a fast track procedure when the proposed scope of the study is being submitted before the study

License Information

To check the requirements for this approval, kindly download the detailed requirements sheet from the other downloadable documents section, which includes the following requirements:

- Building layout engineering and equipment requirements
- Workplace requirements
- Storage requirements
- Material management requirements
- Waste Management Requirements

- Documents and reporting requirements
- General requirements

Other Documents

- Annex to the Minister of Housing, Municipalities and Environment order regarding the project's environmental assessment
- Law No. (2) of 2021 regarding the environmental standards of air as decided by the Chairman of the Supreme Council for Environment
- Law No. (3) of 2021 regarding the environmental standards of water as decided by the Chairman of the Supreme Council for the Environment
- Law No. (54) of 2014 regarding the approval of the unified law regarding substances that deplete the ozone layer for the GCC countries
- Law No. (7) of 2022 regarding the environment
- Ministerial Order No. (1) of 1998 regarding Project's Environmental Assessment
- Ministerial Order No. (10) of 2006 regarding the installation of devices for on-line monitoring of atmospheric air pollutants
- Ministerial Order No. (11) of 2019 regarding the issue of technical specification of plastic products
- Ministerial Order No. (3) of 2005 regarding environmental requirements and standards in workplaces, especially regarding workers' exposure to heat and noise, and the provision of tools and protective clothing such as gloves, glasses, face masks and earplugs, with a commitment to use them during work
- Ministerial Order No. (3) of 2006 regarding the management of hazardous waste
- Ministerial Order No. (4) of 2005 regarding the management of used oils
- Ministerial Order No. (4) of 2006 regarding the management of hazardous chemicals
- Ministerial Order No. (4) of 2021 regarding the fees of the licenses and services provided by the Supreme Council for Environment
- Ministerial Order No. (6) of 2013 amending order No. (4) of 2006 regarding the management of hazardous chemicals
- Ministerial Order No. (7) of 2002 regarding the control importation and use of prohibited and severely restricted chemicals, and not to import any chemical compound except after obtaining approvals of all concerned authorities, including the executive body of the Supreme Council for Environment
- Ministerial Order No. (7) of 2013 amending order No. (3) of 2006 regarding the management of hazardous waste
- Ministerial Order No. 4 of 2014 regarding the management of the environmental consulting offices operations in the Kingdom of Bahrain
- Order No. (2) of 2020 determining the categories of fees for licensing refrigeration media, refrigeration units and air conditioning units as decided by the Chairman of the Supreme Council for the Environment
- Requirements for business activities
- law No. (1) of 2020 regarding the management of refrigeration media, refrigeration units and air conditioning units as decided by the Chairman of the Supreme Council for the Environment

•law No. (2) of 2019 regarding the ban on the import of plastic waste of all kinds as decided by the Chairman of the Supreme Council for the Environment

Municipality Affairs (Post) (1073-2)

Approval Name	Description	Estimated Time
Site Approval for manufacturing activities (Type B)	Municipality Approval for the Commercial Registration address or the site in which the Activity will be practiced	3 Days

Fee Details (if any)

10 BD

License Information

General Conditions:
1. Size of shop/premises must be sufficient for the activity
2. Businesses may not carry out the activity outside the boundaries of the shop/ premises
3. It is prohibited to display or store any items or equipment outside the shop / premises boundary without prior approval from the Municipality. In the event of non-compliance, the Ministry of Municipality Affairs has the right to take necessary action.
4. Maintain cleanliness of the site
5. Comply with the parking space regulations as per the Construction Regulatory Requirements

Activity Specific Conditions:
1. The Commercial Registration for this activity can only be registered in service and industrial streets/areas

Note: Uploading pictures of the site/shop may expedite the process of obtaining approval

Required Documents

- Lease agreement (after obtaining the necessary approvals from other licensing entities)
- Shop photos

Other Documents

- Cabinet's Decision (56) of the year 2022 regarding the Regulatory Requirements of Construction for various areas in the Kingdom of Bahrain

Directorate Of Industrial Developments (Final Site Inspection) (1073-2)

Approval Name	Description	Estimated Time
Notification Only	Notification to the Industrial development directorate on obtaining a commercial registration with the license to practice the activity.	There is no License Information in this license. Days

Fee Details (if any)

There is no Estimated Processing Time (Days) in this license.

License Information

The industrial license is automatically issued by the Industrial development Directorate after obtaining the approval of other licensing/approving entities.

Please ensure that the actual production date does no exceed the expected production date.

If actual production will start on or before the expected production date please apply for a “New Industrial Registration” by following the steps below:

1- Visit the Industrial services system (www.industry.bh).
2- Select “Industrial Registration”.
3- Select “New Registration” application.

In the event that the actual production date will exceed the expected production date an “Extension of expected production date” application must be submitted by following the steps below:

1- Visit the Industrial services system (www.industry.bh).

2- Select “Industrial License”.
3- Select “Extension of expected production date” application.

Please note that failure to do so within 60 days from the expected production date will result in a violation to be added.

Other Documents

- Law No. (81) of 2006 with respect to approving The Common Industrial Law of the GCC
- Ministerial Resolution No. (11) of 2009 with respect to promulgating Implementing Regulation
- Operational requirements for the directorate of industrial developments activities

Manufacturing

ISIC4	Business activity
108-1	Manufacture of prepared animal feeds - Workshop

Description

This activity includes:
- manufacture of prepared feeds for pets, including dogs, cats, birds, fish etc.
- manufacture of prepared feeds for farm animals, including animal feed concentrates and feed supplements
- preparation of unmixed (single) feeds for farm animals
- treatment of slaughter waste to produce animal feeds

This class excludes:
- production of fishmeal for animal feed, see 102
- production of oilseed cake, see 104
- activities resulting in by-products usable as animal feed without special treatment, e.g. oilseeds (see 104), grain milling residues (see 106) etc.

Business Requirements

Age

18 and above

Allowed for Nationalities

Bahraini 100%		GCC 100%	
American 100%		Singaporean 100%	
Icelander 100%		Liechtenstein er 100%	
Norwegian 100%		Swiss 100%	

Foreign Allowed up to 100%

Legal Type

It is allowed to register according to the legal forms mentioned below

Allowed for Individual Commercial Registration (ICR) : Yes

Allowed for Company Commercial Registration (CCR) : Yes

- Bahrain Shareholding Company (Public)
- With Limited Liability Company
- Branch of a Foreign Company
- Bahrain Shareholding Company (Closed)
- Partnership Company
- Simple Commandite Company
- Commandite By Shares Company
- Non Profit Company

Required Step of Licenses and Approvals

Ministry / Directorate	License / Approval Requirements	Approval Type
Supreme Council for Environment	Environmental Approval for Manufacture of	Post

	prepared animal feed - workshop activity	
Municipality Affairs	Site Approval for manufacturing activities (Type B)	Post

Supreme Council for Environment (Post) (108-1)

Approval Name	Description	Estimated Time
Environmental Approval for Manufacture of prepared animal feed - workshop activity	This service aims to assess the environmental impact and licensing of development, industrial and production projects and activities, in accordance with the standards of protecting the environment and its natural resources	10 Days

Fee Details (if any)

- 30 Bahraini Dinars or 200 Bahraini Dinars for the fast-track procedure (when the data requested within the EA-2 form is sufficient without the need for additional studies)
- 4000 Bahraini Dinars or 6000 Bahraini Dinars for the fast track procedure (when it is necessary to submit an environmental impact assessment study for the project), with an additional payment of 100 Bahraini Dinars when it is necessary to submit a proposal for the scope of the study before submitting it or 500 Bahraini Dinars for a fast track procedure when the proposed scope of the study is being submitted before the study

License Information

To check the requirements for this approval, kindly download the detailed requirements sheet from the other downloadable documents section, which includes the following requirements:

- Building layout engineering and equipment requirements
- Workplace requirements
- Storage requirements
- Material management requirements
- Waste Management Requirements

- Documents and reporting requirements
- General requirements

Other Documents

•Annex to the Minister of Housing, Municipalities and Environment order regarding the project's environmental assessment
•Law No. (2) of 2021 regarding the environmental standards of air as decided by the Chairman of the Supreme Council for Environment
•Law No. (3) of 2021 regarding the environmental standards of water as decided by the Chairman of the Supreme Council for the Environment
•Law No. (5) of 2021 regarding CITES Annexes to the Convention on International Trade in Endangered Fauna and Flora
•Law No. (54) of 2014 regarding the approval of the unified law regarding substances that deplete the ozone layer for the GCC countries
•Law No. (7) of 2022 regarding the environment
•Ministerial Order No. (1) of 1998 regarding Project's Environmental Assessment
•Ministerial Order No. (10) of 2006 regarding the installation of devices for on-line monitoring of atmospheric air pollutants
•Ministerial Order No. (11) of 2019 regarding the issue of technical specification of plastic products
•Ministerial Order No. (3) of 2005 regarding environmental requirements and standards in workplaces, especially regarding workers' exposure to heat and noise, and the provision of tools and protective clothing such as gloves, glasses, face masks and earplugs, with a commitment to use them during work
•Ministerial Order No. (3) of 2006 regarding the management of hazardous waste
•Ministerial Order No. (4) of 2005 regarding the management of used oils
•Ministerial Order No. (4) of 2006 regarding the management of hazardous chemicals
•Ministerial Order No. (4) of 2021 regarding the fees of the licenses and services provided by the Supreme Council for Environment
•Ministerial Order No. (6) of 2013 amending order No. (4) of 2006 regarding the management of hazardous chemicals
•Ministerial Order No. (7) of 2002 regarding the control importation and use of prohibited and severely restricted chemicals, and not to import any chemical compound except after obtaining approvals of all concerned authorities, including the executive body of the Supreme Council for Environment
•Ministerial Order No. (7) of 2013 amending order No. (3) of 2006 regarding the management of hazardous waste
•Ministerial Order No. 4 of 2014 regarding the management of the environmental consulting offices operations in the Kingdom of Bahrain
•Order No. (2) of 2020 determining the categories of fees for licensing refrigeration media, refrigeration units and air conditioning units as decided by the Chairman of the Supreme Council for the Environment
•Requirements for business activities
•law No. (1) of 2020 regarding the management of refrigeration media, refrigeration

units and air conditioning units as decided by the Chairman of the Supreme Council for the Environment
•law No. (2) of 2019 regarding the ban on the import of plastic waste of all kinds as decided by the Chairman of the Supreme Council for the Environment
•law No. (204) of 2018 regarding banning the export of some types of local fishes, shrimps and other aquatic organisms, and coordinating with the Agriculture and Marine Resources at the Ministry of Works, Municipalities and Urban Planning regarding the import and export of some species

Municipality Affairs (Post) (108-1)

Approval Name	Description	Estimated Time
Site Approval for manufacturing activities (Type B)	Municipality Approval for the Commercial Registration address or the site in which the Activity will be practiced	3 Days

Fee Details (if any)

10 BD

License Information

General Conditions:
1. Size of shop/premises must be sufficient for the activity
2. Businesses may not carry out the activity outside the boundaries of the shop/ premises
3. It is prohibited to display or store any items or equipment outside the shop / premises boundary without prior approval from the Municipality. In the event of non-compliance, the Ministry of Municipality Affairs has the right to take necessary action.
4. Maintain cleanliness of the site
5. Comply with the parking space regulations as per the Construction Regulatory Requirements

Activity Specific Conditions:
1. The Commercial Registration for this activity can only be registered in service and industrial streets/areas

Note: Uploading pictures of the site/shop may expedite the process of obtaining approval

Required Documents

- Lease agreement (after obtaining the necessary approvals from other licensing entities)
- Shop photos

Other Documents

- Cabinet's Decision (56) of the year 2022 regarding the Regulatory Requirements of Construction for various areas in the Kingdom of Bahrain

Manufacturing

ISIC4	Business activity
108-2	Manufacture of prepared animal feeds - Factory

Description

This activity includes:
- manufacture of prepared feeds for pets, including dogs, cats, birds, fish etc.
- manufacture of prepared feeds for farm animals, including animal feed concentrates and feed supplements
- preparation of unmixed (single) feeds for farm animals
- treatment of slaughter waste to produce animal feeds

This class excludes:
- production of fishmeal for animal feed, see 102
- production of oilseed cake, see 104
- activities resulting in by-products usable as animal feed without special treatment, e.g. oilseeds (see 104), grain milling residues (see 106) etc.

Business Requirements

Age

18 and above

Allowed for Nationalities

Bahraini 100%		GCC 100%	
American 100%		Singaporean 100%	
Icelander 100%		Liechtenstein er 100%	
Norwegian 100%		Swiss 100%	

Foreign Allowed up to 100%

Legal Type

It is allowed to register according to the legal forms mentioned below

Allowed for Individual Commercial Registration (ICR) : Yes

Allowed for Company Commercial Registration (CCR) : Yes

- Bahrain Shareholding Company (Public)
- With Limited Liability Company
- Branch of a Foreign Company
- Bahrain Shareholding Company (Closed)
- Partnership Company
- Simple Commandite Company
- Commandite By Shares Company
- Non Profit Company

Required Step of Licenses and Approvals

Ministry / Directorate	License / Approval Requirements	Approval Type
Directorate Of Industrial Developments	Approval by Directorate of Industrial	Pre

	Developments(Pre)	
Supreme Council for Environment	Environmental Approval for Manufacture of prepared animal feed - factory activity	Post
Municipality Affairs	Site Approval for manufacturing activities (Type B)	Post
Directorate Of Industrial Developments	Notification Only	Final Site Inspection

Directorate Of Industrial Developments (Pre) (108-2)

Approval Name	Description	Estimated Time
Approval by Directorate of Industrial Developments(Pre)	This is a preliminary approval given by the Directorate of Industrial Development to ensure that the applicant has selected the appropriate activity based on the information provided	5 Days

Fee Details (if any)

There is no Estimated Processing Time (Days) in this license.

License Information

Applicants would have to provide through the system the following information:

General Information:

- Total Amount Invested in the Project (This should include value of machinery and fixed assets)
- Estimated number of workforce (Bahraini and Non-Bahraini)
- Expected utility consumption of electricity, water and natural gas
- Total area of the project

Activity Information:

- Product Information:

1) The products to be manufactured by choosing the appropriate HS codes (HS code list can be downloaded from the application if needed).
2) Product name.
3) Expected production date (The expected date on which the factory will start producing the product).

4) The maximum installed capacity and the expected production capacity per year based on the fixed HS code's unit of measure.

• Main raw materials: The main raw materials to be used in production and its source

• Main Machinery and Equipment: The main machinery and equipment to be used in production and its information.

• Manufacturing process: Brief on the manufacturing process explaining how materials are transformed from one state to another until reaching the final product, mentioning the types of materials used, the operations performed, and the machinery/equipment used in each step (if any) for each product.

Required Documents

•Photos of machinery/ equipment to be used
•Photos of products to be manufactured

Other Documents

•Law No. (81) of 2006 with respect to approving The Common Industrial Law of the GCC
•Ministerial Resolution No. (11) of 2009
•Operational requirements for the directorate of industrial developments activities

Supreme Council for Environment (Post) (108-2)

Approval Name	Description	Estimated Time
Environmental Approval for Manufacture of prepared animal feed - factory activity	This service aims to assess the environmental impact and licensing of development, industrial and production projects and activities, in accordance with the standards of protecting the environment and its natural resources	10 Days

Fee Details (if any)

- 30 Bahraini Dinars or 200 Bahraini Dinars for the fast-track procedure (when the data requested within the EA-2 form is sufficient without the need for additional studies)
- 4000 Bahraini Dinars or 6000 Bahraini Dinars for the fast track procedure (when it is necessary to submit an environmental impact assessment study for the project), with an additional payment of 100 Bahraini Dinars when it is necessary to submit a proposal for the scope of the study before submitting it or 500 Bahraini Dinars for a fast track procedure when the proposed scope of the study is being submitted before the study

License Information

To check the requirements for this approval, kindly download the detailed requirements sheet from the other downloadable documents section, which includes the following requirements:

- Building layout engineering and equipment requirements
- Workplace requirements
- Storage requirements
- Material management requirements
- Waste Management Requirements

- Documents and reporting requirements
- General requirements

Other Documents

•Annex to the Minister of Housing, Municipalities and Environment order regarding the project's environmental assessment
•Law No. (2) of 2021 regarding the environmental standards of air as decided by the Chairman of the Supreme Council for Environment
•Law No. (3) of 2021 regarding the environmental standards of water as decided by the Chairman of the Supreme Council for the Environment
•Law No. (5) of 2021 regarding CITES Annexes to the Convention on International Trade in Endangered Fauna and Flora
•Law No. (54) of 2014 regarding the approval of the unified law regarding substances that deplete the ozone layer for the GCC countries
•Law No. (7) of 2022 regarding the environment
•Ministerial Order No. (1) of 1998 regarding Project's Environmental Assessment
•Ministerial Order No. (10) of 2006 regarding the installation of devices for on-line monitoring of atmospheric air pollutants
•Ministerial Order No. (11) of 2019 regarding the issue of technical specification of plastic products
•Ministerial Order No. (3) of 2005 regarding environmental requirements and standards in workplaces, especially regarding workers' exposure to heat and noise, and the provision of tools and protective clothing such as gloves, glasses, face masks and earplugs, with a commitment to use them during work
•Ministerial Order No. (3) of 2006 regarding the management of hazardous waste
•Ministerial Order No. (4) of 2005 regarding the management of used oils
•Ministerial Order No. (4) of 2006 regarding the management of hazardous chemicals
•Ministerial Order No. (4) of 2021 regarding the fees of the licenses and services provided by the Supreme Council for Environment
•Ministerial Order No. (6) of 2013 amending order No. (4) of 2006 regarding the management of hazardous chemicals
•Ministerial Order No. (7) of 2002 regarding the control importation and use of prohibited and severely restricted chemicals, and not to import any chemical compound except after obtaining approvals of all concerned authorities, including the executive body of the Supreme Council for Environment
•Ministerial Order No. (7) of 2013 amending order No. (3) of 2006 regarding the management of hazardous waste
•Ministerial Order No. 4 of 2014 regarding the management of the environmental consulting offices operations in the Kingdom of Bahrain
•Order No. (2) of 2020 determining the categories of fees for licensing refrigeration media, refrigeration units and air conditioning units as decided by the Chairman of the Supreme Council for the Environment
•Requirements for business activities
•law No. (1) of 2020 regarding the management of refrigeration media, refrigeration

units and air conditioning units as decided by the Chairman of the Supreme Council for the Environment
•law No. (2) of 2019 regarding the ban on the import of plastic waste of all kinds as decided by the Chairman of the Supreme Council for the Environment
•law No. (204) of 2018 regarding banning the export of some types of local fishes, shrimps and other aquatic organisms, and coordinating with the Agriculture and Marine Resources at the Ministry of Works, Municipalities and Urban Planning regarding the import and export of some species

Municipality Affairs (Post) (108-2)

Approval Name	Description	Estimated Time
Site Approval for manufacturing activities (Type B)	Municipality Approval for the Commercial Registration address or the site in which the Activity will be practiced	3 Days

Fee Details (if any)

10 BD

License Information

General Conditions:
1. Size of shop/premises must be sufficient for the activity
2. Businesses may not carry out the activity outside the boundaries of the shop/ premises
3. It is prohibited to display or store any items or equipment outside the shop / premises boundary without prior approval from the Municipality. In the event of non-compliance, the Ministry of Municipality Affairs has the right to take necessary action.
4. Maintain cleanliness of the site
5. Comply with the parking space regulations as per the Construction Regulatory Requirements

Activity Specific Conditions:
1. The Commercial Registration for this activity can only be registered in service and industrial streets/areas

Note: Uploading pictures of the site/shop may expedite the process of obtaining approval

Required Documents

- Lease agreement (after obtaining the necessary approvals from other licensing entities)
- Shop photos

Other Documents

- Cabinet's Decision (56) of the year 2022 regarding the Regulatory Requirements of Construction for various areas in the Kingdom of Bahrain

Directorate Of Industrial Developments (Final Site Inspection) (108-2)

Approval Name	Description	Estimated Time
Notification Only	Notification to the Industrial development directorate on obtaining a commercial registration with the license to practice the activity.	There is no License Information in this license. Days

Fee Details (if any)

There is no Estimated Processing Time (Days) in this license.

License Information

The industrial license is automatically issued by the Industrial development Directorate after obtaining the approval of other licensing/approving entities.

Please ensure that the actual production date does no exceed the expected production date.

If actual production will start on or before the expected production date please apply for a “New Industrial Registration” by following the steps below:

1- Visit the Industrial services system (www.industry.bh).
2- Select “Industrial Registration”.
3- Select “New Registration” application.

In the event that the actual production date will exceed the expected production date an “Extension of expected production date” application must be submitted by following the steps below:

1- Visit the Industrial services system (www.industry.bh).

2- Select “Industrial License”.
3- Select “Extension of expected production date” application.

Please note that failure to do so within 60 days from the expected production date will result in a violation to be added.

Other Documents

- Law No. (81) of 2006 with respect to approving The Common Industrial Law of the GCC
- Ministerial Resolution No. (11) of 2009 with respect to promulgating Implementing Regulation
- Operational requirements for the directorate of industrial developments activities

Manufacturing

ISIC4	Business activity
1104-1	Manufacture of soft drinks; production of mineral waters and other bottled waters - Workshop

Description

This activity includes:- manufacture of non-alcoholic beverages
- production of natural mineral waters and other bottled waters
- manufacture of soft drinks:
· non-alcoholic flavoured and/or sweetened waters: lemonade, orangeade, cola, fruit drinks, tonic waters etc.
- Includes production small ice cubes and the packing thereof in plastic bags for consumption

This class excludes:
- production of fruit and vegetable juice, see 103
- manufacture of milk-based drinks, see 105
- manufacture of coffee, tea and maté products, see 107
- manufacture of alcohol-based drinks

Business Requirements

Age

18 and above

Allowed for Nationalities

Bahraini 100%		GCC 100%	
American 100%		Singaporean 100%	
Icelander 100%		Liechtenstein er 100%	
Norwegian 100%		Swiss 100%	

Foreign Allowed up to 100%

Legal Type

It is allowed to register according to the legal forms mentioned below

Allowed for Individual Commercial Registration (ICR) : Yes

Allowed for Company Commercial Registration (CCR) : Yes

- Bahrain Shareholding Company (Public)
- With Limited Liability Company
- Branch of a Foreign Company
- Bahrain Shareholding Company (Closed)
- Partnership Company
- Simple Commandite Company
- Commandite By Shares Company
- Non Profit Company

Required Step of Licenses and Approvals

Ministry / Directorate	License / Approval Requirements	Approval Type
Ministry of Health	Health approval for Manufacture of soft	Post

	drinks; production of mineral waters and other bottled waters	
Supreme Council for Environment	Environmental Approval for Beverage Making, Mineral Water Production and Other Bottled Water - Workshop activity	Post
Municipality Affairs	Site Approval for manufacturing activities (Type B)	Post

Ministry of Health (Post) (1104-1)

Approval Name	Description	Estimated Time
Health approval for Manufacture of soft drinks; production of mineral waters and other bottled waters	Health approval for Manufacture of soft drinks; production of mineral waters and other bottled waters	5 Days

Fee Details (if any)

150 BD

License Information

Please refer to the “Activity License Checklist – Ministry of Health“ document under the “other downloadable documents” section for the licensing requirements.

For faster processing, you may engage any of the licensed engineering offices listed under the “Service Providers Directory” to provide drawings/layout of the premises, which should then be attached to the application that you will submit online. To access the list of licensed engineering offices follow the below steps:
1- Click on “Public Service” on the main navigation bar
2- Click on “Service Providers Directory”
3- Click on “Click Here” button adjacent to “List of Engineering Offices for Ministry of Health related activities”

Required Documents

- Drawings/ layout of premises (approved by an engineering office).
- Requirement Checklist (Stamped by an engineering office)
- drawings/layouts of the premises

Other Documents

- Operational requirements for food production and packaging
- استمارة ترخيص النشاط - وزارة الصحة

Supreme Council for Environment (Post) (1104-1)

Approval Name	Description	Estimated Time
Environmental Approval for Beverage Making, Mineral Water Production and Other Bottled Water - Workshop activity	This service aims to assess the environmental impact and licensing of development, industrial and production projects and activities, in accordance with the standards of protecting the environment and its natural resources	10 Days

Fee Details (if any)

- 30 Bahraini Dinars or 200 Bahraini Dinars for the fast-track procedure (when the data requested within the EA-2 form is sufficient without the need for additional studies)
- 4000 Bahraini Dinars or 6000 Bahraini Dinars for the fast track procedure (when it is necessary to submit an environmental impact assessment study for the project), with an additional payment of 100 Bahraini Dinars when it is necessary to submit a proposal for the scope of the study before submitting it or 500 Bahraini Dinars for a fast track procedure when the proposed scope of the study is being submitted before the study

License Information

To check the requirements for this approval, kindly download the detailed requirements sheet from the other downloadable documents section, which includes the following requirements:

- Building layout engineering and equipment requirements
- Workplace requirements
- Storage requirements
- Material management requirements
- Waste Management Requirements

- Documents and reporting requirements
- General requirements

Other Documents

- Annex to the Minister of Housing, Municipalities and Environment order regarding the project's environmental assessment
- Law No. (2) of 2021 regarding the environmental standards of air as decided by the Chairman of the Supreme Council for Environment
- Law No. (3) of 2021 regarding the environmental standards of water as decided by the Chairman of the Supreme Council for the Environment
- Law No. (54) of 2014 regarding the approval of the unified law regarding substances that deplete the ozone layer for the GCC countries
- Law No. (7) of 2022 regarding the environment
- Ministerial Order No. (1) of 1998 regarding Project's Environmental Assessment
- Ministerial Order No. (10) of 2006 regarding the installation of devices for on-line monitoring of atmospheric air pollutants
- Ministerial Order No. (11) of 2019 regarding the issue of technical specification of plastic products
- Ministerial Order No. (3) of 2005 regarding environmental requirements and standards in workplaces, especially regarding workers' exposure to heat and noise, and the provision of tools and protective clothing such as gloves, glasses, face masks and earplugs, with a commitment to use them during work
- Ministerial Order No. (3) of 2006 regarding the management of hazardous waste
- Ministerial Order No. (4) of 2005 regarding the management of used oils
- Ministerial Order No. (4) of 2006 regarding the management of hazardous chemicals
- Ministerial Order No. (4) of 2021 regarding the fees of the licenses and services provided by the Supreme Council for Environment
- Ministerial Order No. (6) of 2013 amending order No. (4) of 2006 regarding the management of hazardous chemicals
- Ministerial Order No. (7) of 2002 regarding the control importation and use of prohibited and severely restricted chemicals, and not to import any chemical compound except after obtaining approvals of all concerned authorities, including the executive body of the Supreme Council for Environment
- Ministerial Order No. (7) of 2013 amending order No. (3) of 2006 regarding the management of hazardous waste
- Ministerial Order No. 4 of 2014 regarding the management of the environmental consulting offices operations in the Kingdom of Bahrain
- Order No. (2) of 2020 determining the categories of fees for licensing refrigeration media, refrigeration units and air conditioning units as decided by the Chairman of the Supreme Council for the Environment
- Requirements for business activities
- law No. (1) of 2020 regarding the management of refrigeration media, refrigeration units and air conditioning units as decided by the Chairman of the Supreme Council for the Environment

•law No. (2) of 2019 regarding the ban on the import of plastic waste of all kinds as decided by the Chairman of the Supreme Council for the Environment

Municipality Affairs (Post) (1104-1)

Approval Name	Description	Estimated Time
Site Approval for manufacturing activities (Type B)	Municipality Approval for the Commercial Registration address or the site in which the Activity will be practiced	3 Days

Fee Details (if any)

10 BD

License Information

General Conditions:
1. Size of shop/premises must be sufficient for the activity
2. Businesses may not carry out the activity outside the boundaries of the shop/ premises
3. It is prohibited to display or store any items or equipment outside the shop / premises boundary without prior approval from the Municipality. In the event of non-compliance, the Ministry of Municipality Affairs has the right to take necessary action.
4. Maintain cleanliness of the site
5. Comply with the parking space regulations as per the Construction Regulatory Requirements

Activity Specific Conditions:
1. The Commercial Registration for this activity can only be registered in service and industrial streets/areas

Note: Uploading pictures of the site/shop may expedite the process of obtaining approval

Required Documents

- Lease agreement (after obtaining the necessary approvals from other licensing entities)
- Shop photos

Other Documents

- Cabinet's Decision (56) of the year 2022 regarding the Regulatory Requirements of Construction for various areas in the Kingdom of Bahrain

Manufacturing

ISIC4	Business activity
1104-2	Manufacture of soft drinks; production of mineral waters and other bottled waters - Factory

Description

This activity includes:- manufacture of non-alcoholic beverages
- production of natural mineral waters and other bottled waters
- manufacture of soft drinks:
· non-alcoholic flavoured and/or sweetened waters: lemonade, orangeade, cola, fruit drinks, tonic waters etc.

This class excludes:
- production of fruit and vegetable juice, see 103
- manufacture of milk-based drinks, see 105
- manufacture of coffee, tea and maté products, see 107
- manufacture of alcohol-based drinks

Business Requirements

Age

18 and above

Allowed for Nationalities

Bahraini 100%		GCC 100%	
American 100%		Singaporean 100%	
Icelander 100%		Liechtenstein er 100%	
Norwegian 100%		Swiss 100%	

Foreign Allowed up to 100%

Legal Type

It is allowed to register according to the legal forms mentioned below

Allowed for Individual Commercial Registration (ICR) : Yes

Allowed for Company Commercial Registration (CCR) : Yes

- Bahrain Shareholding Company (Public)
- With Limited Liability Company
- Branch of a Foreign Company
- Bahrain Shareholding Company (Closed)
- Partnership Company
- Simple Commandite Company
- Commandite By Shares Company
- Non Profit Company

Required Step of Licenses and Approvals

Ministry / Directorate	License / Approval Requirements	Approval Type
Directorate Of Industrial Developments	Approval by Directorate of Industrial	Pre

	Developments(Pre)	
Municipality Affairs	Site Approval for manufacturing activities (Type B)	Post
Supreme Council for Environment	Environmental Approval for Beverage Manufacture, Production of Mineral Water and Other Bottled Water – Factory activity	Post
Ministry of Health	Health approval for Manufacture of soft drinks; production of mineral waters and other bottled waters	Post
Directorate Of Industrial Developments	Notification Only	Final Site Inspection

Directorate Of Industrial Developments (Pre) (1104-2)

Approval Name	Description	Estimated Time
Approval by Directorate of Industrial Developments(Pre)	This is a preliminary approval given by the Directorate of Industrial Development to ensure that the applicant has selected the appropriate activity based on the information provided	5 Days

Fee Details (if any)

There is no Estimated Processing Time (Days) in this license.

License Information

Applicants would have to provide through the system the following information:

General Information:

- Total Amount Invested in the Project (This should include value of machinery and fixed assets)
- Estimated number of workforce (Bahraini and Non-Bahraini)
- Expected utility consumption of electricity, water and natural gas
- Total area of the project

Activity Information:

- Product Information:

1) The products to be manufactured by choosing the appropriate HS codes (HS code list can be downloaded from the application if needed).
2) Product name.
3) Expected production date (The expected date on which the factory will start producing the product).

4) The maximum installed capacity and the expected production capacity per year based on the fixed HS code's unit of measure.

• Main raw materials: The main raw materials to be used in production and its source

• Main Machinery and Equipment: The main machinery and equipment to be used in production and its information.

• Manufacturing process: Brief on the manufacturing process explaining how materials are transformed from one state to another until reaching the final product, mentioning the types of materials used, the operations performed, and the machinery/equipment used in each step (if any) for each product.

Required Documents

•Photos of machinery/ equipment to be used
•Photos of products to be manufactured

Other Documents

•Law No. (81) of 2006 with respect to approving The Common Industrial Law of the GCC
•Ministerial Resolution No. (11) of 2009
•Operational requirements for the directorate of industrial developments activities

Municipality Affairs (Post) (1104-2)

Approval Name	Description	Estimated Time
Site Approval for manufacturing activities (Type B)	Municipality Approval for the Commercial Registration address or the site in which the Activity will be practiced	3 Days

Fee Details (if any)

10 BD

License Information

General Conditions:
1. Size of shop/premises must be sufficient for the activity
2. Businesses may not carry out the activity outside the boundaries of the shop/ premises
3. It is prohibited to display or store any items or equipment outside the shop / premises boundary without prior approval from the Municipality. In the event of non-compliance, the Ministry of Municipality Affairs has the right to take necessary action.
4. Maintain cleanliness of the site
5. Comply with the parking space regulations as per the Construction Regulatory Requirements

Activity Specific Conditions:
1. The Commercial Registration for this activity can only be registered in service and industrial streets/areas

Note: Uploading pictures of the site/shop may expedite the process of obtaining approval

Required Documents

- Lease agreement (after obtaining the necessary approvals from other licensing entities)
- Shop photos

Other Documents

- Cabinet's Decision (56) of the year 2022 regarding the Regulatory Requirements of Construction for various areas in the Kingdom of Bahrain

Supreme Council for Environment (Post) (1104-2)

Approval Name	Description	Estimated Time
Environmental Approval for Beverage Manufacture, Production of Mineral Water and Other Bottled Water – Factory activity	This service aims to assess the environmental impact and licensing of development, industrial and production projects and activities, in accordance with the standards of protecting the environment and its natural resources	10 Days

Fee Details (if any)

- 30 Bahraini Dinars or 200 Bahraini Dinars for the fast-track procedure (when the data requested within the EA-2 form is sufficient without the need for additional studies)
- 4000 Bahraini Dinars or 6000 Bahraini Dinars for the fast track procedure (when it is necessary to submit an environmental impact assessment study for the project), with an additional payment of 100 Bahraini Dinars when it is necessary to submit a proposal for the scope of the study before submitting it or 500 Bahraini Dinars for a fast track procedure when the proposed scope of the study is being submitted before the study

License Information

To check the requirements for this approval, kindly download the detailed requirements sheet from the other downloadable documents section, which includes the following requirements:

- Building layout engineering and equipment requirements
- Workplace requirements
- Storage requirements
- Material management requirements
- Waste Management Requirements

- Documents and reporting requirements
- General requirements

Other Documents

- Annex to the Minister of Housing, Municipalities and Environment order regarding the project's environmental assessment
- Law No. (2) of 2019 regarding the ban on the import of plastic waste of all kinds as decided by the Chairman of the Supreme Council for the Environment
- Law No. (2) of 2021 regarding the environmental standards of air as decided by the Chairman of the Supreme Council for Environment
- Law No. (3) of 2021 regarding the environmental standards of water as decided by the Chairman of the Supreme Council for the Environment
- Law No. (54) of 2014 regarding the approval of the unified law regarding substances that deplete the ozone layer for the GCC countries
- Law No. (7) of 2022 regarding the environment
- Ministerial Order No. (1) of 1998 regarding Project's Environmental Assessment
- Ministerial Order No. (10) of 2006 regarding the installation of devices for on-line monitoring of atmospheric air pollutants
- Ministerial Order No. (11) of 2019 regarding the issue of technical specification of plastic products
- Ministerial Order No. (3) of 2005 regarding environmental requirements and standards in workplaces, especially regarding workers' exposure to heat and noise, and the provision of tools and protective clothing such as gloves, glasses, face masks and earplugs, with a commitment to use them during work
- Ministerial Order No. (3) of 2006 regarding the management of hazardous waste
- Ministerial Order No. (4) of 2005 regarding the management of used oils
- Ministerial Order No. (4) of 2006 regarding the management of hazardous chemicals
- Ministerial Order No. (4) of 2021 regarding the fees of the licenses and services provided by the Supreme Council for Environment
- Ministerial Order No. (6) of 2013 amending order No. (4) of 2006 regarding the management of hazardous chemicals
- Ministerial Order No. (7) of 2002 regarding the control importation and use of prohibited and severely restricted chemicals, and not to import any chemical compound except after obtaining approvals of all concerned authorities, including the executive body of the Supreme Council for Environment
- Ministerial Order No. (7) of 2013 amending order No. (3) of 2006 regarding the management of hazardous waste
- Ministerial Order No. 4 of 2014 regarding the management of the environmental consulting offices operations in the Kingdom of Bahrain
- Order No. (2) of 2020 determining the categories of fees for licensing refrigeration media, refrigeration units and air conditioning units as decided by the Chairman of the Supreme Council for the Environment
- Requirements for business activities
- law No. (1) of 2020 regarding the management of refrigeration media, refrigeration

units and air conditioning units as decided by the Chairman of the Supreme Council for the Environment

Ministry of Health (Post) (1104-2)

Approval Name	Description	Estimated Time
Health approval for Manufacture of soft drinks; production of mineral waters and other bottled waters	Health approval for Manufacture of soft drinks; production of mineral waters and other bottled waters	5 Days

Fee Details (if any)

150 BD

License Information

Please refer to the “Activity License Checklist – Ministry of Health“ document under the “other downloadable documents” section for the licensing requirements.

For faster processing, you may engage any of the licensed engineering offices listed under the “Service Providers Directory” to provide drawings/layout of the premises, which should then be attached to the application that you will submit online. To access the list of licensed engineering offices follow the below steps:
1- Click on “Public Service” on the main navigation bar
2- Click on “Service Providers Directory”
3- Click on “Click Here” button adjacent to “List of Engineering Offices for Ministry of Health related activities”

Required Documents

- Drawings/ layout of premises (approved by an engineering office).
- Requirement Checklist (Stamped by an engineering office)
- drawings/layouts of the premises

Other Documents

- Operational requirements for food production and packaging
- استمارة ترخيص النشاط - وزارة الصحة

Directorate Of Industrial Developments (Final Site Inspection) (1104-2)

Approval Name	Description	Estimated Time
Notification Only	Notification to the Industrial development directorate on obtaining a commercial registration with the license to practice the activity.	There is no License Information in this license. Days

Fee Details (if any)

There is no Estimated Processing Time (Days) in this license.

License Information

The industrial license is automatically issued by the Industrial development Directorate after obtaining the approval of other licensing/approving entities.

Please ensure that the actual production date does no exceed the expected production date.

If actual production will start on or before the expected production date please apply for a “New Industrial Registration” by following the steps below:

1- Visit the Industrial services system (www.industry.bh).
2- Select “Industrial Registration”.
3- Select “New Registration” application.

In the event that the actual production date will exceed the expected production date an “Extension of expected production date” application must be submitted by following the steps below:

1- Visit the Industrial services system (www.industry.bh).

2- Select “Industrial License”.
3- Select “Extension of expected production date” application.

Please note that failure to do so within 60 days from the expected production date will result in a violation to be added.

Other Documents

- Law No. (81) of 2006 with respect to approving The Common Industrial Law of the GCC
- Ministerial Resolution No. (11) of 2009 with respect to promulgating Implementing Regulation
- Operational requirements for the directorate of industrial developments activities

Manufacturing

ISIC4	Business activity
12001	Manufacturing and packaging of all kinds of Cigarette tobacco

Description

Includes the manufacture of cigarettes, cigarette tobacco and cigars of all kinds, in addition to other tobacco products such as nicotine liquid, heat and vape. This activity does not include;
- Tobacco cultivation or primary processing
- Manufacture of molasses and syrup products (Flavored Tobacco)

Business Requirements

✔ Age

18 and above

✔ Allowed for Nationalities

Bahraini 100%		GCC 100%	
American 100%		Singaporean 100%	
Icelander 100%		Liechtensteiner 100%	
Norwegian 100%		Swiss 100%	

Foreign Allowed up to 100%

Legal Type

It is allowed to register according to the legal forms mentioned below

Allowed for Individual Commercial Registration (ICR) : Yes

Allowed for Company Commercial Registration (CCR) : Yes

- Bahrain Shareholding Company (Public)
- With Limited Liability Company
- Branch of a Foreign Company
- Bahrain Shareholding Company (Closed)
- Partnership Company
- Simple Commandite Company
- Commandite By Shares Company

Required Step of Licenses and Approvals

Ministry / Directorate	License / Approval Requirements	Approval Type
Directorate Of Industrial Developments	Approval by Directorate of Industrial Developments on Manufacturing and packaging of all kinds of Cigarette tobacco(Pre)	Pre
Municipality Affairs	Site Approval for manufacturing activities (Type C)	Post
Directorate Of Industrial Developments	Final Approval by IDD for Manufacturing of of all kinds of Cigarette and Honeyed Tobacco-Notification Only	Final Site Inspection

Directorate Of Industrial Developments (Pre) (12001)

Approval Name	Description	Estimated Time
Approval by Directorate of Industrial Developments on Manufacturing and packaging of all kinds of Cigarette tobacco(Pre)	This is a preliminary approval given by the Directorate of Industrial Development to ensure that the applicant has selected the appropriate activity based on the information provided	5 Days

Fee Details (if any)

BD100,000 Activity Fee
BD10,000 Activity Renewal Fee

License Information

Submit an annual report to the Directorate of Industrial Development indicating the percentage of exports and local sales from the maximum production capacity licensed for.

Municipality Affairs (Post) (12001)

Approval Name	Description	Estimated Time
Site Approval for manufacturing activities (Type C)	Municipality Approval for the Commercial Registration address or the site in which the Activity will be practiced	3 Days

Fee Details (if any)

10 BD

License Information

General Conditions:
1. Size of shop/premises must be sufficient for the activity
2. Businesses may not carry out the activity outside the boundaries of the shop/ premises
3. It is prohibited to display or store any items or equipment outside the shop / premises boundary without prior approval from the Municipality. In the event of non-compliance, the Ministry of Municipality Affairs has the right to take necessary action.
4. Maintain cleanliness of the site
5. Comply with the parking space regulations as per the Construction Regulatory Requirements

Activity Specific Conditions:
1. The commercial registration for this activity can be registered on Industrial streets/ areas only

Note: Uploading pictures of the site/shop may expedite the process of obtaining approval

Required Documents

- Lease agreement (after obtaining the necessary approvals from other licensing entities)
- Shop photos

Other Documents

- Cabinet's Decision (93) of the year 2023 regarding the Regulatory Requirements of Construction for various areas in the Kingdom of Bahrain

Directorate Of Industrial Developments (Final Site Inspection) (12001)

Approval Name	Description	Estimated Time
Final Approval by IDD for Manufacturing of of all kinds of Cigarette and Honeyed Tobacco-Notification Only	For Manufacturing and packaging of all kinds of Cigarette tobacco: Includes the manufacture of cigarettes, cigarette tobacco and cigars of all kinds, in addition to other tobacco products such as nicotine liquid, heat and vape. This activity does not include; - Tobacco cultivation or primary processing - Manufacture of molasses and syrup products (Flavored Tobacco) For Manufacturing and packaging of all kinds of honeyed tobacco: This activity includes the manufacturing of all kinds of honeyed tobacco products. The main purpose of such manufacturing is for exporting. This activity does not include: - Growing or preliminary processing of tobacco - Manufacture of	5 Days

	cigarettes, cigarette tobacco, and cigars in all forms	

Fee Details (if any)

There is no Estimated Processing Time (Days) in this license.

License Information

There is no License Information in this license.

Manufacturing

ISIC4	Business activity
12002	Manufacturing and packaging of all kinds of honeyed tobacco

Description

This activity includes the manufacturing of all kinds of honeyed tobacco products. The main purpose of such manufacturing is for exporting.
This activity does not include:
- Growing or preliminary processing of tobacco
- Manufacture of cigarettes, cigarette tobacco, and cigars in all forms

Business Requirements

✔ Age

18 and above

✔ Allowed for Nationalities

Bahraini 100%		GCC 100%	
American 100%		Singaporean 100%	
Icelander 100%		Liechtenstein er 100%	
Norwegian 100%		Swiss 100%	

Foreign Allowed up to 100%

Legal Type

It is allowed to register according to the legal forms mentioned below

Allowed for Individual Commercial Registration (ICR) : Yes

Allowed for Company Commercial Registration (CCR) : Yes

- Bahrain Shareholding Company (Public)
- With Limited Liability Company
- Branch of a Foreign Company
- Bahrain Shareholding Company (Closed)
- Partnership Company
- Simple Commandite Company
- Commandite By Shares Company

Required Step of Licenses and Approvals

Ministry / Directorate	License / Approval Requirements	Approval Type
Directorate Of Industrial Developments	Approval by Directorate of Industrial Developments on Manufacturing and packaging of all kinds of honeyed tobacco (Pre)	Pre
Municipality Affairs	Site Approval for manufacturing activities (Type C)	Post
Directorate Of Industrial Developments	Final Approval by IDD for Manufacturing of of all kinds of Cigarette and Honeyed Tobacco-Notification Only	Final Site Inspection

Directorate Of Industrial Developments (Pre) (12002)

Approval Name	Description	Estimated Time
Approval by Directorate of Industrial Developments on Manufacturing and packaging of all kinds of honeyed tobacco (Pre)	This is a preliminary approval given by the Directorate of Industrial Development to ensure that the applicant has selected the appropriate activity based on the information provided	5 Days

Fee Details (if any)

BD10,000 Activity Fee
BD1000 Activity Renewal Fee

License Information

Submit an annual report to the Directorate of Industrial Development indicating the percentage of exports and local sales from the maximum production capacity licensed for.

Municipality Affairs (Post) (12002)

Approval Name	Description	Estimated Time
Site Approval for manufacturing activities (Type C)	Municipality Approval for the Commercial Registration address or the site in which the Activity will be practiced	3 Days

Fee Details (if any)

10 BD

License Information

General Conditions:
1. Size of shop/premises must be sufficient for the activity
2. Businesses may not carry out the activity outside the boundaries of the shop/ premises
3. It is prohibited to display or store any items or equipment outside the shop / premises boundary without prior approval from the Municipality. In the event of non-compliance, the Ministry of Municipality Affairs has the right to take necessary action.
4. Maintain cleanliness of the site
5. Comply with the parking space regulations as per the Construction Regulatory Requirements

Activity Specific Conditions:
1. The commercial registration for this activity can be registered on Industrial streets/ areas only

Note: Uploading pictures of the site/shop may expedite the process of obtaining approval

Required Documents

- Lease agreement (after obtaining the necessary approvals from other licensing entities)
- Shop photos

Other Documents

- Cabinet's Decision (93) of the year 2023 regarding the Regulatory Requirements of Construction for various areas in the Kingdom of Bahrain

Directorate Of Industrial Developments (Final Site Inspection) (12002)

Approval Name	Description	Estimated Time
Final Approval by IDD for Manufacturing of of all kinds of Cigarette and Honeyed Tobacco- Notification Only	For Manufacturing and packaging of all kinds of Cigarette tobacco: Includes the manufacture of cigarettes, cigarette tobacco and cigars of all kinds, in addition to other tobacco products such as nicotine liquid, heat and vape. This activity does not include; - Tobacco cultivation or primary processing - Manufacture of molasses and syrup products (Flavored Tobacco) For Manufacturing and packaging of all kinds of honeyed tobacco: This activity includes the manufacturing of all kinds of honeyed tobacco products. The main purpose of such manufacturing is for exporting. This activity does not include: - Growing or preliminary processing of tobacco - Manufacture of	5 Days

	cigarettes, cigarette tobacco, and cigars in all forms	

Fee Details (if any)

There is no Estimated Processing Time (Days) in this license.

License Information

There is no License Information in this license.

Manufacturing

ISIC4	Business activity
13-1	Manufacture of textiles - Workshop

Description

This activity includes preparation and spinning of textile fibres as well as textile weaving, finishing of textiles, manufacture of made-up textile articles (except apparel), manufacture of knitted and crocheted fabrics, manufacture of carpets and rugs, manufacture of cordage, rope, twine and netting (e.g. household linen, blankets, rugs, cordage etc.), as well as the manufacture of other textiles.

Business Requirements

Age

18 and above

Allowed for Nationalities

Bahraini 100%		GCC 100%	
American 100%		Singaporean 100%	
Icelander 100%		Liechtenstein er 100%	
Norwegian 100%		Swiss 100%	

Foreign Allowed up to 100%

Legal Type

It is allowed to register according to the legal forms mentioned below

Allowed for Individual Commercial Registration (ICR) : Yes

Allowed for Company Commercial Registration (CCR) : Yes

Allowed for Sijilli : Yes

- Bahrain Shareholding Company (Public)
- With Limited Liability Company
- Branch of a Foreign Company
- Bahrain Shareholding Company (Closed)
- Partnership Company
- Simple Commandite Company
- Commandite By Shares Company
- Non Profit Company

Required Step of Licenses and Approvals

Ministry / Directorate	License / Approval Requirements	Approval Type
Supreme Council for Environment	Environmental Approval for Textile Making - Workshop activity	Post
Municipality Affairs	Site Approval for manufacturing activities (Type B)	Post

Supreme Council for Environment (Post) (13-1)

Approval Name	Description	Estimated Time
Environmental Approval for Textile Making - Workshop activity	This service aims to assess the environmental impact and licensing of development, industrial and production projects and activities, in accordance with the standards of protecting the environment and its natural resources	10 Days

Fee Details (if any)

- 30 Bahraini Dinars or 200 Bahraini Dinars for the fast-track procedure (when the data requested within the EA-2 form is sufficient without the need for additional studies)
- 4000 Bahraini Dinars or 6000 Bahraini Dinars for the fast-track procedure (when it is required to submit an environmental impact assessment study for the project) + with the additional payment amount of “100 Bahraini Dinars when it is required to submit a proposal for the scope of study before submitting it or 500 Bahraini Dinars for a fast-track procedure when the proposed scope of the study is being submitted before study submitting stage”

License Information

To check the requirements for this approval, kindly download the detailed requirements sheet from the other downloadable documents section, which includes the following requirements:

- Building layout engineering and equipment requirements
- Workplace requirements
- Storage requirements
- Material Management Requirements

- Waste management requirements
- Documents and reporting requirements
- General requirements

Other Documents

- Annex to the Minister of Housing, Municipalities and Environment order regarding the project's environmental assessment
- Law No. (2) of 2021 regarding the environmental standards of air as decided by the Chairman of the Supreme Council for Environment
- Law No. (3) of 2021 regarding the environmental standards of water as decided by the Chairman of the Supreme Council for the Environment
- Law No. (5) of 2021 regarding CITES Annexes to the Convention on International Trade in Endangered Fauna and Flora
- Law No. (7) of 2022 regarding the environment
- Ministerial Order No. (1) of 1998 regarding Project's Environmental Assessment
- Ministerial Order No. (10) of 2006 regarding the installation of devices for on-line monitoring of atmospheric air pollutants
- Ministerial Order No. (3) of 2005 regarding environmental requirements and standards in workplaces, especially regarding workers' exposure to heat and noise, and the provision of tools and protective clothing such as gloves, glasses, face masks and earplugs, with a commitment to use them during work
- Ministerial Order No. (3) of 2006 regarding the management of hazardous waste
- Ministerial Order No. (4) of 2005 regarding the management of used oils
- Ministerial Order No. (4) of 2006 regarding the management of hazardous chemicals
- Ministerial Order No. (4) of 2021 regarding the fees of the licenses and services provided by the Supreme Council for Environment
- Ministerial Order No. (6) of 2013 amending order No. (4) of 2006 regarding the management of hazardous chemicals
- Ministerial Order No. (7) of 2002 regarding the control importation and use of prohibited and severely restricted chemicals, and not to import any chemical compound except after obtaining approvals of all concerned authorities, including the executive body of the Supreme Council for Environment
- Ministerial Order No. (7) of 2013 amending order No. (3) of 2006 regarding the management of hazardous waste
- Ministerial Order No. 4 of 2014 regarding the management of the environmental consulting offices operations in the Kingdom of Bahrain
- Requirements for business activities

Municipality Affairs (Post) (13-1)

Approval Name	Description	Estimated Time
Site Approval for manufacturing activities (Type B)	Municipality Approval for the Commercial Registration address or the site in which the Activity will be practiced	3 Days

Fee Details (if any)

10 BD

License Information

General Conditions:
1. Size of shop/premises must be sufficient for the activity
2. Businesses may not carry out the activity outside the boundaries of the shop/ premises
3. It is prohibited to display or store any items or equipment outside the shop / premises boundary without prior approval from the Municipality. In the event of non-compliance, the Ministry of Municipality Affairs has the right to take necessary action.
4. Maintain cleanliness of the site
5. Comply with the parking space regulations as per the Construction Regulatory Requirements

Activity Specific Conditions:
1. The Commercial Registration for this activity can only be registered in service and industrial streets/areas

Note: Uploading pictures of the site/shop may expedite the process of obtaining approval

Required Documents

- Lease agreement (after obtaining the necessary approvals from other licensing entities)
- Shop photos

Other Documents

- Cabinet's Decision (56) of the year 2022 regarding the Regulatory Requirements of Construction for various areas in the Kingdom of Bahrain

Manufacturing

ISIC4	Business activity
13-2	Manufacture of textiles - Factory

Description

This activity includes preparation and spinning of textile fibres as well as textile weaving, finishing of textiles, manufacture of made-up textile articles (except apparel), manufacture of knitted and crocheted fabrics, manufacture of carpets and rugs, manufacture of cordage, rope, twine and netting (e.g. household linen, blankets, rugs, cordage etc.), as well as the manufacture of other textiles.

Business Requirements

✔ Age

18 and above

✔ Allowed for Nationalities

Bahraini 100%		GCC 100%	
American 100%		Singaporean 100%	
Icelander 100%		Liechtenstein er 100%	
Norwegian 100%		Swiss 100%	

Foreign Allowed up to 100%

Legal Type

It is allowed to register according to the legal forms mentioned below

Allowed for Individual Commercial Registration (ICR) : Yes

Allowed for Company Commercial Registration (CCR) : Yes

- Bahrain Shareholding Company (Public)
- With Limited Liability Company
- Branch of a Foreign Company
- Bahrain Shareholding Company (Closed)
- Partnership Company
- Simple Commandite Company
- Commandite By Shares Company
- Non Profit Company

Required Step of Licenses and Approvals

Ministry / Directorate	License / Approval Requirements	Approval Type
Directorate Of Industrial Developments	Approval by Directorate of Industrial Developments(Pre)	Pre
Municipality Affairs	Site Approval for manufacturing activities (Type B)	Post
Supreme Council for Environment	Environmental Approval for Textile Manufacture - Factory activity	Post
Directorate Of Industrial Developments	Notification Only	Final Site Inspection

Directorate Of Industrial Developments (Pre) (13-2)

Approval Name	Description	Estimated Time
Approval by Directorate of Industrial Developments(Pre)	This is a preliminary approval given by the Directorate of Industrial Development to ensure that the applicant has selected the appropriate activity based on the information provided	5 Days

Fee Details (if any)

There is no Estimated Processing Time (Days) in this license.

License Information

Applicants would have to provide through the system the following information:

General Information:

- Total Amount Invested in the Project (This should include value of machinery and fixed assets)
- Estimated number of workforce (Bahraini and Non-Bahraini)
- Expected utility consumption of electricity, water and natural gas
- Total area of the project

Activity Information:

- Product Information:

1) The products to be manufactured by choosing the appropriate HS codes (HS code list can be downloaded from the application if needed).
2) Product name.
3) Expected production date (The expected date on which the factory will start producing the product).

4) The maximum installed capacity and the expected production capacity per year based on the fixed HS code's unit of measure.

• Main raw materials: The main raw materials to be used in production and its source

• Main Machinery and Equipment: The main machinery and equipment to be used in production and its information.

• Manufacturing process: Brief on the manufacturing process explaining how materials are transformed from one state to another until reaching the final product, mentioning the types of materials used, the operations performed, and the machinery/equipment used in each step (if any) for each product.

Required Documents

•Photos of machinery/ equipment to be used
•Photos of products to be manufactured

Other Documents

•Law No. (81) of 2006 with respect to approving The Common Industrial Law of the GCC
•Ministerial Resolution No. (11) of 2009
•Operational requirements for the directorate of industrial developments activities

Municipality Affairs (Post) (13-2)

Approval Name	Description	Estimated Time
Site Approval for manufacturing activities (Type B)	Municipality Approval for the Commercial Registration address or the site in which the Activity will be practiced	3 Days

Fee Details (if any)

10 BD

License Information

General Conditions:
1. Size of shop/premises must be sufficient for the activity
2. Businesses may not carry out the activity outside the boundaries of the shop/ premises
3. It is prohibited to display or store any items or equipment outside the shop / premises boundary without prior approval from the Municipality. In the event of non-compliance, the Ministry of Municipality Affairs has the right to take necessary action.
4. Maintain cleanliness of the site
5. Comply with the parking space regulations as per the Construction Regulatory Requirements

Activity Specific Conditions:
1. The Commercial Registration for this activity can only be registered in service and industrial streets/areas

Note: Uploading pictures of the site/shop may expedite the process of obtaining approval

Required Documents

- Lease agreement (after obtaining the necessary approvals from other licensing entities)
- Shop photos

Other Documents

- Cabinet's Decision (56) of the year 2022 regarding the Regulatory Requirements of Construction for various areas in the Kingdom of Bahrain

Supreme Council for Environment (Post) (13-2)

Approval Name	Description	Estimated Time
Environmental Approval for Textile Manufacture - Factory activity	This service aims to assess the environmental impact and licensing of development, industrial and production projects and activities, in accordance with the standards of protecting the environment and its natural resources	10 Days

Fee Details (if any)

- 30 Bahraini Dinars or 200 Bahraini Dinars for the fast-track procedure (when the data requested within the EA-2 form is sufficient without the need for additional studies)
- 4000 Bahraini Dinars or 6000 Bahraini Dinars for the fast track procedure (when it is necessary to submit an environmental impact assessment study for the project), with an additional payment of 100 Bahraini Dinars when it is necessary to submit a proposal for the scope of the study before submitting it or 500 Bahraini Dinars for a fast track procedure when the proposed scope of the study is being submitted before the study

License Information

To check the requirements for this approval, kindly download the detailed requirements sheet from the other downloadable documents section, which includes the following requirements:

- Building layout engineering and equipment requirements
- Workplace requirements
- Storage requirements
- Material management requirements
- Waste Management Requirements

- Documents and reporting requirements
- General requirements

Other Documents

- Annex to the Minister of Housing, Municipalities and Environment order regarding the project's environmental assessment
- Law No. (2) of 2021 regarding the environmental standards of air as decided by the Chairman of the Supreme Council for Environment
- Law No. (3) of 2021 regarding the environmental standards of water as decided by the Chairman of the Supreme Council for the Environment
- Law No. (5) of 2021 regarding CITES Annexes to the Convention on International Trade in Endangered Fauna and Flora
- Law No. (7) of 2022 regarding the environment
- Ministerial Order No. (1) of 1998 regarding Project's Environmental Assessment
- Ministerial Order No. (10) of 2006 regarding the installation of devices for on-line monitoring of atmospheric air pollutants
- Ministerial Order No. (3) of 2005 regarding environmental requirements and standards in workplaces, especially regarding workers' exposure to heat and noise, and the provision of tools and protective clothing such as gloves, glasses, face masks and earplugs, with a commitment to use them during work
- Ministerial Order No. (3) of 2006 regarding the management of hazardous waste
- Ministerial Order No. (4) of 2005 regarding the management of used oils
- Ministerial Order No. (4) of 2006 regarding the management of hazardous chemicals
- Ministerial Order No. (4) of 2021 regarding the fees of the licenses and services provided by the Supreme Council for Environment
- Ministerial Order No. (6) of 2013 amending order No. (4) of 2006 regarding the management of hazardous chemicals
- Ministerial Order No. (7) of 2002 regarding the control importation and use of prohibited and severely restricted chemicals, and not to import any chemical compound except after obtaining approvals of all concerned authorities, including the executive body of the Supreme Council for Environment
- Ministerial Order No. (7) of 2013 amending order No. (3) of 2006 regarding the management of hazardous waste
- Ministerial Order No. 4 of 2014 regarding the management of the environmental consulting offices operations in the Kingdom of Bahrain
- Requirements for business activities

Directorate Of Industrial Developments (Final Site Inspection) (13-2)

Approval Name	Description	Estimated Time
Notification Only	Notification to the Industrial development directorate on obtaining a commercial registration with the license to practice the activity.	There is no License Information in this license. Days

Fee Details (if any)

There is no Estimated Processing Time (Days) in this license.

License Information

The industrial license is automatically issued by the Industrial development Directorate after obtaining the approval of other licensing/approving entities.

Please ensure that the actual production date does no exceed the expected production date.

If actual production will start on or before the expected production date please apply for a “New Industrial Registration” by following the steps below:

1- Visit the Industrial services system (www.industry.bh).
2- Select “Industrial Registration”.
3- Select “New Registration” application.

In the event that the actual production date will exceed the expected production date an “Extension of expected production date” application must be submitted by following the steps below:

1- Visit the Industrial services system (www.industry.bh).

2- Select “Industrial License”.
3- Select “Extension of expected production date” application.

Please note that failure to do so within 60 days from the expected production date will result in a violation to be added.

Other Documents

- Law No. (81) of 2006 with respect to approving The Common Industrial Law of the GCC
- Ministerial Resolution No. (11) of 2009 with respect to promulgating Implementing Regulation
- Operational requirements for the directorate of industrial developments activities

Manufacturing

ISIC4	Business activity
140-1	Manufacture of wearing apparel - Workshop

Description

This activity includes all manufacturing (ready-to-wear or made-to-measure), in all materials (e.g. leather, fabric, knitted and crocheted fabrics etc.), of all items of clothing (e.g. outerwear, underwear for men, women or children; work, city or casual clothing etc.) and accessories. There is no distinction made between clothing for adults and clothing for children, or between modern and traditional clothing. This activity also includes the manufacture of articles of fur, as well as manufacture of knitted and crocheted apparel.

Business Requirements

✔ Age

18 and above

✔ Allowed for Nationalities

Bahraini 100%		GCC 100%	
American 100%		Singaporean 100%	
Icelander 100%		Liechtenstein er 100%	
Norwegian 100%		Swiss 100%	

Foreign Allowed up to 100%

Legal Type

It is allowed to register according to the legal forms mentioned below

Allowed for Individual Commercial Registration (ICR) : Yes

Allowed for Company Commercial Registration (CCR) : Yes

- Bahrain Shareholding Company (Public)
- With Limited Liability Company
- Branch of a Foreign Company
- Bahrain Shareholding Company (Closed)
- Partnership Company
- Simple Commandite Company
- Commandite By Shares Company
- Non Profit Company

Required Step of Licenses and Approvals

Ministry / Directorate	License / Approval Requirements	Approval Type
Municipality Affairs	Site Approval for manufacturing activities (Type B)	Post

Municipality Affairs (Post) (140-1)

Approval Name	Description	Estimated Time
Site Approval for manufacturing activities (Type B)	Municipality Approval for the Commercial Registration address or the site in which the Activity will be practiced	3 Days

Fee Details (if any)

10 BD

License Information

General Conditions:
1. Size of shop/premises must be sufficient for the activity
2. Businesses may not carry out the activity outside the boundaries of the shop/ premises
3. It is prohibited to display or store any items or equipment outside the shop / premises boundary without prior approval from the Municipality. In the event of non-compliance, the Ministry of Municipality Affairs has the right to take necessary action.
4. Maintain cleanliness of the site
5. Comply with the parking space regulations as per the Construction Regulatory Requirements

Activity Specific Conditions:
1. The Commercial Registration for this activity can only be registered in service and industrial streets/areas

Note: Uploading pictures of the site/shop may expedite the process of obtaining approval

Required Documents

- Lease agreement (after obtaining the necessary approvals from other licensing entities)
- Shop photos

Other Documents

- Cabinet's Decision (56) of the year 2022 regarding the Regulatory Requirements of Construction for various areas in the Kingdom of Bahrain

Manufacturing

ISIC4	Business activity
140-2	Manufacture of wearing apparel - Factory

Description

This activity includes all manufacturing (ready-to-wear or made-to-measure), in all materials (e.g. leather, fabric, knitted and crocheted fabrics etc.), of all items of clothing (e.g. outerwear, underwear for men, women or children; work, city or casual clothing etc.) and accessories. There is no distinction made between clothing for adults and clothing for children, or between modern and traditional clothing. This activity also includes the manufacture of articles of fur, as well as manufacture of knitted and crocheted apparel.

Business Requirements

Age

18 and above

Allowed for Nationalities

Bahraini 100%		GCC 100%	
American 100%		Singaporean 100%	
Icelander 100%		Liechtenstein er 100%	
Norwegian 100%		Swiss 100%	

Foreign Allowed up to 100%

Legal Type

It is allowed to register according to the legal forms mentioned below

Allowed for Individual Commercial Registration (ICR) : Yes

Allowed for Company Commercial Registration (CCR) : Yes

- Bahrain Shareholding Company (Public)
- With Limited Liability Company
- Branch of a Foreign Company
- Bahrain Shareholding Company (Closed)
- Partnership Company
- Simple Commandite Company
- Commandite By Shares Company
- Non Profit Company

Required Step of Licenses and Approvals

Ministry / Directorate	License / Approval Requirements	Approval Type
Directorate Of Industrial Developments	Approval by Directorate of Industrial Developments(Pre)	Pre
Municipality Affairs	Site Approval for manufacturing activities (Type B)	Post
Supreme Council for Environment	Environmental Approval for Making clothes - factory activity	Post
Directorate Of Industrial Developments	Notification Only	Final Site Inspection

Directorate Of Industrial Developments (Pre) (140-2)

Approval Name	Description	Estimated Time
Approval by Directorate of Industrial Developments(Pre)	This is a preliminary approval given by the Directorate of Industrial Development to ensure that the applicant has selected the appropriate activity based on the information provided	5 Days

Fee Details (if any)

There is no Estimated Processing Time (Days) in this license.

License Information

Applicants would have to provide through the system the following information:

General Information:

- Total Amount Invested in the Project (This should include value of machinery and fixed assets)
- Estimated number of workforce (Bahraini and Non-Bahraini)
- Expected utility consumption of electricity, water and natural gas
- Total area of the project

Activity Information:

- Product Information:

1) The products to be manufactured by choosing the appropriate HS codes (HS code list can be downloaded from the application if needed).
2) Product name.
3) Expected production date (The expected date on which the factory will start producing the product).

4) The maximum installed capacity and the expected production capacity per year based on the fixed HS code's unit of measure.

• Main raw materials: The main raw materials to be used in production and its source

• Main Machinery and Equipment: The main machinery and equipment to be used in production and its information.

• Manufacturing process: Brief on the manufacturing process explaining how materials are transformed from one state to another until reaching the final product, mentioning the types of materials used, the operations performed, and the machinery/equipment used in each step (if any) for each product.

Required Documents

•Photos of machinery/ equipment to be used
•Photos of products to be manufactured

Other Documents

•Law No. (81) of 2006 with respect to approving The Common Industrial Law of the GCC
•Ministerial Resolution No. (11) of 2009
•Operational requirements for the directorate of industrial developments activities

Municipality Affairs (Post) (140-2)

Approval Name	Description	Estimated Time
Site Approval for manufacturing activities (Type B)	Municipality Approval for the Commercial Registration address or the site in which the Activity will be practiced	3 Days

Fee Details (if any)

10 BD

License Information

General Conditions:
1. Size of shop/premises must be sufficient for the activity
2. Businesses may not carry out the activity outside the boundaries of the shop/ premises
3. It is prohibited to display or store any items or equipment outside the shop / premises boundary without prior approval from the Municipality. In the event of non-compliance, the Ministry of Municipality Affairs has the right to take necessary action.
4. Maintain cleanliness of the site
5. Comply with the parking space regulations as per the Construction Regulatory Requirements

Activity Specific Conditions:
1. The Commercial Registration for this activity can only be registered in service and industrial streets/areas

Note: Uploading pictures of the site/shop may expedite the process of obtaining approval

Required Documents

- Lease agreement (after obtaining the necessary approvals from other licensing entities)
- Shop photos

Other Documents

- Cabinet's Decision (56) of the year 2022 regarding the Regulatory Requirements of Construction for various areas in the Kingdom of Bahrain

Supreme Council for Environment (Post) (140-2)

Approval Name	Description	Estimated Time
Environmental Approval for Making clothes - factory activity	This service aims to assess the environmental impact and licensing of development, industrial and production projects and activities, in accordance with the standards of protecting the environment and its natural resources	10 Days

Fee Details (if any)

- 30 Bahraini Dinars or 200 Bahraini Dinars for the fast-track procedure (when the data requested within the EA-2 form is sufficient without the need for additional studies)
- 4000 Bahraini Dinars or 6000 Bahraini Dinars for the fast track procedure (when it is necessary to submit an environmental impact assessment study for the project), with an additional payment of 100 Bahraini Dinars when it is necessary to submit a proposal for the scope of the study before submitting it or 500 Bahraini Dinars for a fast track procedure when the proposed scope of the study is being submitted before the study

License Information

To check the requirements for this approval, kindly download the detailed requirements sheet from the other downloadable documents section, which includes the following requirements:

- Building layout engineering and equipment requirements
- Workplace requirements
- Storage requirements
- Material management requirements
- Waste Management Requirements

• Documents and reporting requirements
• General requirements

Other Documents

•Law No. (2) of 2021 regarding the environmental standards of air as decided by the Chairman of the Supreme Council for Environment
•Law No. (3) of 2021 regarding the environmental standards of water as decided by the Chairman of the Supreme Council for the Environment
•Law No. (5) of 2021 regarding CITES Annexes to the Convention on International Trade in Endangered Fauna and Flora
•Law No. (54) of 2014 regarding the approval of the unified law regarding substances that deplete the ozone layer for the GCC countries
•Law No. (7) of 2022 regarding the environment
•Ministerial Order No. (1) of 1998 regarding Project's Environmental Assessment
•Ministerial Order No. (10) of 2006 regarding the installation of devices for on-line monitoring of atmospheric air pollutants
•Ministerial Order No. (11) of 2019 regarding the issue of technical specification of plastic products
•Ministerial Order No. (3) of 2005 regarding environmental requirements and standards in workplaces, especially regarding workers' exposure to heat and noise, and the provision of tools and protective clothing such as gloves, glasses, face masks and earplugs, with a commitment to use them during work
•Ministerial Order No. (3) of 2006 regarding the management of hazardous waste
•Ministerial Order No. (4) of 2005 regarding the management of used oils
•Ministerial Order No. (4) of 2006 regarding the management of hazardous chemicals
•Ministerial Order No. (4) of 2021 regarding the fees of the licenses and services provided by the Supreme Council for Environment
•Ministerial Order No. (6) of 2013 amending order No. (4) of 2006 regarding the management of hazardous chemicals
•Ministerial Order No. (7) of 2002 regarding the control importation and use of prohibited and severely restricted chemicals, and not to import any chemical compound except after obtaining approvals of all concerned authorities, including the executive body of the Supreme Council for Environment
•Ministerial Order No. (7) of 2013 amending order No. (3) of 2006 regarding the management of hazardous waste
•Ministerial Order No. 4 of 2014 regarding the management of the environmental consulting offices operations in the Kingdom of Bahrain
•Order No. (2) of 2020 determining the categories of fees for licensing refrigeration media, refrigeration units
•Requirements for business activities
•and air conditioning units as decided by the Chairman of the Supreme Council for the Environment
•law No. (1) of 2020 regarding the management of refrigeration media, refrigeration units and air conditioning units as decided by the Chairman of the Supreme Council for

the Environment
•law No. (2) of 2019 regarding the ban on the import of plastic waste of all kinds as decided by the Chairman of the Supreme Council for the Environment

Directorate Of Industrial Developments (Final Site Inspection) (140-2)

Approval Name	Description	Estimated Time
Notification Only	Notification to the Industrial development directorate on obtaining a commercial registration with the license to practice the activity.	There is no License Information in this license. Days

Fee Details (if any)

There is no Estimated Processing Time (Days) in this license.

License Information

The industrial license is automatically issued by the Industrial development Directorate after obtaining the approval of other licensing/approving entities.

Please ensure that the actual production date does no exceed the expected production date.

If actual production will start on or before the expected production date please apply for a “New Industrial Registration” by following the steps below:

1- Visit the Industrial services system (www.industry.bh).
2- Select “Industrial Registration”.
3- Select “New Registration” application.

In the event that the actual production date will exceed the expected production date an “Extension of expected production date” application must be submitted by following the steps below:

1- Visit the Industrial services system (www.industry.bh).

2- Select “Industrial License”.
3- Select “Extension of expected production date” application.

Please note that failure to do so within 60 days from the expected production date will result in a violation to be added.

Other Documents

- Law No. (81) of 2006 with respect to approving The Common Industrial Law of the GCC
- Ministerial Resolution No. (11) of 2009 with respect to promulgating Implementing Regulation
- Operational requirements for the directorate of industrial developments activities

Manufacturing

ISIC4	Business activity
14104	Apparel Tailoring Activities

Description

This activity includes the activities of a tailoring shop, as well as a tailoring workshop for the design and production of garments of all kind

Business Requirements

Age

18 and above

Allowed for Nationalities

- Bahraini 100%
- American 100%
- GCC 100%

Legal Type

It is allowed to register according to the legal forms mentioned below

Allowed for Individual Commercial Registration (ICR) : Yes

Allowed for Company Commercial Registration (CCR) : Yes

Allowed for Sijilli : Yes

- Bahrain Shareholding Company (Public)
- With Limited Liability Company
- Branch of a Foreign Company
- Bahrain Shareholding Company (Closed)
- Partnership Company
- Simple Commandite Company
- Commandite By Shares Company
- Non Profit Company

Required Step of Licenses and Approvals

Ministry / Directorate	License / Approval Requirements	Approval Type
Municipality Affairs	Site Approval for manufacturing activities (Type A)	Post

Municipality Affairs (Post) (14104)

Approval Name	Description	Estimated Time
Site Approval for manufacturing activities (Type A)	Municipality Approval for the Commercial Registration address or the site in which the Activity will be practiced	3 Days

Fee Details (if any)

10 BD

License Information

General Conditions:
1. Size of shop/premises must be sufficient for the activity
2. Businesses may not carry out the activity outside the boundaries of the shop/ premises
3. It is prohibited to display or store any items or equipment outside the shop / premises boundary without prior approval from the Municipality. In the event of non-compliance, the Ministry of Municipality Affairs has the right to take necessary action.
4. Maintain cleanliness of the site
5. Comply with the parking space regulations as per the Construction Regulatory Requirements

Activity Specific Conditions:
1. The commercial address for this activity can be registered in areas classified as commercial, services, or industrial

Note: Uploading pictures of the site/shop may expedite the process of obtaining approval

Required Documents

- Lease agreement (after obtaining the necessary approvals from other licensing entities)
- Shop photos

Other Documents

- Cabinet's Decision (56) of the year 2022 regarding the Regulatory Requirements of Construction for various areas in the Kingdom of Bahrain

Manufacturing

ISIC4	Business activity
15-1	Manufacture of leather and related products - Workshop

Description

This activity includes dressing and dyeing of fur and the transformation of hides into leather by tanning or curing and fabricating the leather into products for final consumption. It also includes the manufacture of similar products from other materials (imitation leathers or leather substitutes), such as rubber footwear, textile luggage etc. The products made from leather substitutes are included here, since they are made in ways similar to those in which leather products are made (e.g. luggage) and are often produced in the same unit. Products produced by this activity includes:

- chamois dressed, parchment dressed, patent or metallized leathers
- composition leather
- luggage, handbags and the like, of leather, composition leather or any other material, such as plastic sheeting, textile materials, vulcanized fibre or paperboard, where the same technology is used as for leather
- saddlery and harness
- non-metallic watch bands (e.g. fabric, leather, plastic)
- diverse articles of leather or composition leather: driving belts, packings etc.
- shoe-lace, of leather
- horse whips.

Business Requirements

Age

18 and above

Allowed for Nationalities

Bahraini 100%		GCC 100%	
American 100%		Singaporean 100%	
Icelander 100%		Liechtenstein er 100%	
Norwegian 100%		Swiss 100%	

Foreign Allowed up to 100%

Legal Type

It is allowed to register according to the legal forms mentioned below

Allowed for Individual Commercial Registration (ICR) : Yes

Allowed for Company Commercial Registration (CCR) : Yes

- Bahrain Shareholding Company (Public)
- With Limited Liability Company
- Branch of a Foreign Company
- Bahrain Shareholding Company (Closed)
- Partnership Company
- Simple Commandite Company
- Commandite By Shares Company
- Non Profit Company

Required Step of Licenses and Approvals

Ministry / Directorate	License / Approval Requirements	Approval Type
Supreme Council for Environment	Environmental Approval for Manufacture of leather	Post

	products and related products - workshop activity	
Municipality Affairs	Site Approval for manufacturing activities (Type B)	Post

Supreme Council for Environment (Post) (15-1)

Approval Name	Description	Estimated Time
Environmental Approval for Manufacture of leather products and related products - workshop activity	This service aims to assess the environmental impact and licensing of development, industrial and production projects and activities, in accordance with the standards of protecting the environment and its natural resources	10 Days

Fee Details (if any)

- 30 Bahraini Dinars or 200 Bahraini Dinars for the fast-track procedure (when the data requested within the EA-2 form is sufficient without the need for additional studies)
- 4000 Bahraini Dinars or 6000 Bahraini Dinars for the fast track procedure (when it is necessary to submit an environmental impact assessment study for the project), with an additional payment of 100 Bahraini Dinars when it is necessary to submit a proposal for the scope of the study before submitting it or 500 Bahraini Dinars for a fast track procedure when the proposed scope of the study is being submitted before the study

License Information

To check the requirements for this approval, kindly download the detailed requirements sheet from the other downloadable documents section, which includes the following requirements:

- Building layout engineering and equipment requirements
- Workplace requirements
- Storage requirements
- Material management requirements
- Waste Management Requirements

- Documents and reporting requirements
- General requirements

Other Documents

•Annex to the Minister of Housing, Municipalities and Environment order regarding the project's environmental assessment
•Law No. (2) of 2021 regarding the environmental standards of air as decided by the Chairman of the Supreme Council for Environment
•Law No. (3) of 2021 regarding the environmental standards of water as decided by the Chairman of the Supreme Council for the Environment
•Law No. (5) of 2021 regarding CITES Annexes to the Convention on International Trade in Endangered Fauna and Flora
•Law No. (54) of 2014 regarding the approval of the unified law regarding substances that deplete the ozone layer for the GCC countries
•Law No. (7) of 2022 regarding the environment
•Ministerial Order No. (1) of 1998 regarding Project's Environmental Assessment
•Ministerial Order No. (10) of 2006 regarding the installation of devices for on-line monitoring of atmospheric air pollutants
•Ministerial Order No. (11) of 2019 regarding the issue of technical specification of plastic products
•Ministerial Order No. (3) of 2005 regarding environmental requirements and standards in workplaces, especially regarding workers' exposure to heat and noise, and the provision of tools and protective clothing such as gloves, glasses, face masks and earplugs, with a commitment to use them during work
•Ministerial Order No. (3) of 2006 regarding the management of hazardous waste
•Ministerial Order No. (4) of 2005 regarding the management of used oils
•Ministerial Order No. (4) of 2006 regarding the management of hazardous chemicals
•Ministerial Order No. (4) of 2021 regarding the fees of the licenses and services provided by the Supreme Council for Environment
•Ministerial Order No. (6) of 2013 amending order No. (4) of 2006 regarding the management of hazardous chemicals
•Ministerial Order No. (7) of 2002 regarding the control importation and use of prohibited and severely restricted chemicals, and not to import any chemical compound except after obtaining approvals of all concerned authorities, including the executive body of the Supreme Council for Environment
•Ministerial Order No. (7) of 2013 amending order No. (3) of 2006 regarding the management of hazardous waste
•Ministerial Order No. 4 of 2014 regarding the management of the environmental consulting offices operations in the Kingdom of Bahrain
•Order No. (2) of 2020 determining the categories of fees for licensing refrigeration media, refrigeration units and air conditioning units as decided by the Chairman of the Supreme Council for the Environment
•Requirements for business activities
•law No. (1) of 2020 regarding the management of refrigeration media, refrigeration

units and air conditioning units as decided by the Chairman of the Supreme Council for the Environment
•law No. (2) of 2019 regarding the ban on the import of plastic waste of all kinds as decided by the Chairman of the Supreme Council for the Environment
•law No. (204) of 2018 regarding banning the export of some types of local fishes, shrimps and other aquatic organisms, and coordinating with the Agriculture and Marine Resources at the Ministry of Works, Municipalities and Urban Planning regarding the import and export of some species

Municipality Affairs (Post) (15-1)

Approval Name	Description	Estimated Time
Site Approval for manufacturing activities (Type B)	Municipality Approval for the Commercial Registration address or the site in which the Activity will be practiced	3 Days

Fee Details (if any)

10 BD

License Information

General Conditions:
1. Size of shop/premises must be sufficient for the activity
2. Businesses may not carry out the activity outside the boundaries of the shop/ premises
3. It is prohibited to display or store any items or equipment outside the shop / premises boundary without prior approval from the Municipality. In the event of non-compliance, the Ministry of Municipality Affairs has the right to take necessary action.
4. Maintain cleanliness of the site
5. Comply with the parking space regulations as per the Construction Regulatory Requirements

Activity Specific Conditions:
1. The Commercial Registration for this activity can only be registered in service and industrial streets/areas

Note: Uploading pictures of the site/shop may expedite the process of obtaining approval

Required Documents

- Lease agreement (after obtaining the necessary approvals from other licensing entities)
- Shop photos

Other Documents

- Cabinet's Decision (56) of the year 2022 regarding the Regulatory Requirements of Construction for various areas in the Kingdom of Bahrain

Manufacturing

ISIC4	Business activity
15-2	Manufacture of leather and related products - Factory

Description

This activity includes dressing and dyeing of fur and the transformation of hides into leather by tanning or curing and fabricating the leather into products for final consumption. It also includes the manufacture of similar products from other materials (imitation leathers or leather substitutes), such as rubber footwear, textile luggage etc. The products made from leather substitutes are included here, since they are made in ways similar to those in which leather products are made (e.g. luggage) and are often produced in the same unit. Products produced by this activity includes:

- chamois dressed, parchment dressed, patent or metallized leathers
- composition leather
- luggage, handbags and the like, of leather, composition leather or any other material, such as plastic sheeting, textile materials, vulcanized fibre or paperboard, where the same technology is used as for leather
- saddlery and harness
- non-metallic watch bands (e.g. fabric, leather, plastic)
- diverse articles of leather or composition leather: driving belts, packings etc.
- shoe-lace, of leather
- horse whips.

Business Requirements

Age

18 and above

Allowed for Nationalities

Bahraini 100%		GCC 100%	
American 100%		Singaporean 100%	
Icelander 100%		Liechtenstein er 100%	
Norwegian 100%		Swiss 100%	

Foreign Allowed up to 100%

Legal Type

It is allowed to register according to the legal forms mentioned below

Allowed for Individual Commercial Registration (ICR) : Yes

Allowed for Company Commercial Registration (CCR) : Yes

- Bahrain Shareholding Company (Public)
- With Limited Liability Company
- Branch of a Foreign Company
- Bahrain Shareholding Company (Closed)
- Partnership Company
- Simple Commandite Company
- Commandite By Shares Company
- Non Profit Company

Required Step of Licenses and Approvals

Ministry / Directorate	License / Approval Requirements	Approval Type
Directorate Of Industrial Developments	Approval by Directorate of Industrial	Pre

	Developments(Pre)	
Supreme Council for Environment	Environmental Approval for Manufacture of leather products and related products - factory activity	Post
Municipality Affairs	Site Approval for manufacturing activities (Type B)	Post
Directorate Of Industrial Developments	Notification Only	Final Site Inspection

Directorate Of Industrial Developments (Pre) (15-2)

Approval Name	Description	Estimated Time
Approval by Directorate of Industrial Developments(Pre)	This is a preliminary approval given by the Directorate of Industrial Development to ensure that the applicant has selected the appropriate activity based on the information provided	5 Days

Fee Details (if any)

There is no Estimated Processing Time (Days) in this license.

License Information

Applicants would have to provide through the system the following information:

General Information:

- Total Amount Invested in the Project (This should include value of machinery and fixed assets)
- Estimated number of workforce (Bahraini and Non-Bahraini)
- Expected utility consumption of electricity, water and natural gas
- Total area of the project

Activity Information:

- Product Information:

1) The products to be manufactured by choosing the appropriate HS codes (HS code list can be downloaded from the application if needed).
2) Product name.
3) Expected production date (The expected date on which the factory will start producing the product).

4) The maximum installed capacity and the expected production capacity per year based on the fixed HS code's unit of measure.

• Main raw materials: The main raw materials to be used in production and its source

• Main Machinery and Equipment: The main machinery and equipment to be used in production and its information.

• Manufacturing process: Brief on the manufacturing process explaining how materials are transformed from one state to another until reaching the final product, mentioning the types of materials used, the operations performed, and the machinery/equipment used in each step (if any) for each product.

Required Documents

•Photos of machinery/ equipment to be used
•Photos of products to be manufactured

Other Documents

•Law No. (81) of 2006 with respect to approving The Common Industrial Law of the GCC
•Ministerial Resolution No. (11) of 2009
•Operational requirements for the directorate of industrial developments activities

Supreme Council for Environment (Post) (15-2)

Approval Name	Description	Estimated Time
Environmental Approval for Manufacture of leather products and related products - factory activity	This service aims to assess the environmental impact and licensing of development, industrial and production projects and activities, in accordance with the standards of protecting the environment and its natural resources	10 Days

Fee Details (if any)

- 30 Bahraini Dinars or 200 Bahraini Dinars for the fast-track procedure (when the data requested within the EA-2 form is sufficient without the need for additional studies)
- 4000 Bahraini Dinars or 6000 Bahraini Dinars for the fast track procedure (when it is necessary to submit an environmental impact assessment study for the project), with an additional payment of 100 Bahraini Dinars when it is necessary to submit a proposal for the scope of the study before submitting it or 500 Bahraini Dinars for a fast track procedure when the proposed scope of the study is being submitted before the study

License Information

To check the requirements for this approval, kindly download the detailed requirements sheet from the other downloadable documents section, which includes the following requirements:

- Building layout engineering and equipment requirements
- Workplace requirements
- Storage requirements
- Material management requirements
- Waste Management Requirements

- Documents and reporting requirements
- General requirements

Other Documents

•Annex to the Minister of Housing, Municipalities and Environment order regarding the project's environmental assessment
•Law No. (2) of 2021 regarding the environmental standards of air as decided by the Chairman of the Supreme Council for Environment
•Law No. (3) of 2021 regarding the environmental standards of water as decided by the Chairman of the Supreme Council for the Environment
•Law No. (5) of 2021 regarding CITES Annexes to the Convention on International Trade in Endangered Fauna and Flora
•Law No. (54) of 2014 regarding the approval of the unified law regarding substances that deplete the ozone layer for the GCC countries
•Law No. (7) of 2022 regarding the environment
•Ministerial Order No. (1) of 1998 regarding Project's Environmental Assessment
•Ministerial Order No. (10) of 2006 regarding the installation of devices for on-line monitoring of atmospheric air pollutants
•Ministerial Order No. (11) of 2019 regarding the issue of technical specification of plastic products
•Ministerial Order No. (3) of 2005 regarding environmental requirements and standards in workplaces, especially regarding workers' exposure to heat and noise, and the provision of tools and protective clothing such as gloves, glasses, face masks and earplugs, with a commitment to use them during work
•Ministerial Order No. (3) of 2006 regarding the management of hazardous waste
•Ministerial Order No. (4) of 2005 regarding the management of used oils
•Ministerial Order No. (4) of 2006 regarding the management of hazardous chemicals
•Ministerial Order No. (4) of 2021 regarding the fees of the licenses and services provided by the Supreme Council for Environment
•Ministerial Order No. (6) of 2013 amending order No. (4) of 2006 regarding the management of hazardous chemicals
•Ministerial Order No. (7) of 2002 regarding the control importation and use of prohibited and severely restricted chemicals, and not to import any chemical compound except after obtaining approvals of all concerned authorities, including the executive body of the Supreme Council for Environment
•Ministerial Order No. (7) of 2013 amending order No. (3) of 2006 regarding the management of hazardous waste
•Ministerial Order No. 4 of 2014 regarding the management of the environmental consulting offices operations in the Kingdom of Bahrain
•Order No. (2) of 2020 determining the categories of fees for licensing refrigeration media, refrigeration units and air conditioning units as decided by the Chairman of the Supreme Council for the Environment
•Requirements for business activities
•law No. (1) of 2020 regarding the management of refrigeration media, refrigeration

units and air conditioning units as decided by the Chairman of the Supreme Council for the Environment
•law No. (2) of 2019 regarding the ban on the import of plastic waste of all kinds as decided by the Chairman of the Supreme Council for the Environment
•law No. (204) of 2018 regarding banning the export of some types of local fishes, shrimps and other aquatic organisms, and coordinating with the Agriculture and Marine Resources at the Ministry of Works, Municipalities and Urban Planning regarding the import and export of some species

Municipality Affairs (Post) (15-2)

Approval Name	Description	Estimated Time
Site Approval for manufacturing activities (Type B)	Municipality Approval for the Commercial Registration address or the site in which the Activity will be practiced	3 Days

Fee Details (if any)

10 BD

License Information

General Conditions:
1. Size of shop/premises must be sufficient for the activity
2. Businesses may not carry out the activity outside the boundaries of the shop/ premises
3. It is prohibited to display or store any items or equipment outside the shop / premises boundary without prior approval from the Municipality. In the event of non-compliance, the Ministry of Municipality Affairs has the right to take necessary action.
4. Maintain cleanliness of the site
5. Comply with the parking space regulations as per the Construction Regulatory Requirements

Activity Specific Conditions:
1. The Commercial Registration for this activity can only be registered in service and industrial streets/areas

Note: Uploading pictures of the site/shop may expedite the process of obtaining approval

Required Documents

- Lease agreement (after obtaining the necessary approvals from other licensing entities)
- Shop photos

Other Documents

- Cabinet's Decision (56) of the year 2022 regarding the Regulatory Requirements of Construction for various areas in the Kingdom of Bahrain

Directorate Of Industrial Developments (Final Site Inspection) (15-2)

Approval Name	Description	Estimated Time
Notification Only	Notification to the Industrial development directorate on obtaining a commercial registration with the license to practice the activity.	There is no License Information in this license. Days

Fee Details (if any)

There is no Estimated Processing Time (Days) in this license.

License Information

The industrial license is automatically issued by the Industrial development Directorate after obtaining the approval of other licensing/approving entities.

Please ensure that the actual production date does no exceed the expected production date.

If actual production will start on or before the expected production date please apply for a “New Industrial Registration” by following the steps below:

1- Visit the Industrial services system (www.industry.bh).
2- Select “Industrial Registration”.
3- Select “New Registration” application.

In the event that the actual production date will exceed the expected production date an “Extension of expected production date” application must be submitted by following the steps below:

1- Visit the Industrial services system (www.industry.bh).

2- Select “Industrial License”.
3- Select “Extension of expected production date” application.

Please note that failure to do so within 60 days from the expected production date will result in a violation to be added.

Other Documents

- Law No. (81) of 2006 with respect to approving The Common Industrial Law of the GCC
- Ministerial Resolution No. (11) of 2009 with respect to promulgating Implementing Regulation
- Operational requirements for the directorate of industrial developments activities

Manufacturing

ISIC4	Business activity
160	Manufacture of wood and of products of wood and cork, except furniture; manufacture of articles of straw and plaiting materials

Description

This activity includes the manufacture of all types of wood products, such as lumber, plywood, veneers, wood containers, wood flooring, wood trusses, and prefabricated wood buildings. The production processes include sawing, planing, shaping, laminating, and assembling of wood products starting from logs that are cut into bolts, or lumber that may then be cut further, or shaped by lathes or other shaping tools. The lumber or other transformed wood shapes may also be subsequently planed or smoothed, and assembled into finished products, such as wood containers.This division does not include the manufacture of furniture (see 31), or the installation of wooden fittings and the like (see 433).

Business Requirements

✔ Age

18 and above

✔ Allowed for Nationalities

Bahraini 100%	GCC 100%
American 100%	Singaporean 100%
Icelander 100%	Liechtenstein er 100%
Norwegian 100%	Swiss 100%

Foreign Allowed up to 100%

Legal Type

It is allowed to register according to the legal forms mentioned below

Allowed for Individual Commercial Registration (ICR) : Yes

Allowed for Company Commercial Registration (CCR) : Yes

- Bahrain Shareholding Company (Public)
- With Limited Liability Company
- Branch of a Foreign Company
- Bahrain Shareholding Company (Closed)
- Partnership Company
- Simple Commandite Company
- Commandite By Shares Company
- Non Profit Company

Required Step of Licenses and Approvals

Ministry / Directorate	License / Approval Requirements	Approval Type
Directorate Of Industrial Developments	Approval by Directorate of Industrial Developments(Pre)	Pre
Municipality Affairs	Site Approval for manufacturing activities (Type B)	Post
Supreme Council for Environment	Environmental Approval for Manufacture of wood and products of wood and cork, except for furniture, manufacture of straw and	Post
Directorate Of Industrial Developments	Notification Only	Final Site Inspection

Directorate Of Industrial Developments (Pre) (160)

Approval Name	Description	Estimated Time
Approval by Directorate of Industrial Developments(Pre)	This is a preliminary approval given by the Directorate of Industrial Development to ensure that the applicant has selected the appropriate activity based on the information provided	5 Days

Fee Details (if any)

There is no Estimated Processing Time (Days) in this license.

License Information

Applicants would have to provide through the system the following information:

General Information:

- Total Amount Invested in the Project (This should include value of machinery and fixed assets)
- Estimated number of workforce (Bahraini and Non-Bahraini)
- Expected utility consumption of electricity, water and natural gas
- Total area of the project

Activity Information:

- Product Information:

1) The products to be manufactured by choosing the appropriate HS codes (HS code list can be downloaded from the application if needed).
2) Product name.
3) Expected production date (The expected date on which the factory will start producing the product).

4) The maximum installed capacity and the expected production capacity per year based on the fixed HS code's unit of measure.

• Main raw materials: The main raw materials to be used in production and its source

• Main Machinery and Equipment: The main machinery and equipment to be used in production and its information.

• Manufacturing process: Brief on the manufacturing process explaining how materials are transformed from one state to another until reaching the final product, mentioning the types of materials used, the operations performed, and the machinery/equipment used in each step (if any) for each product.

Required Documents

•Photos of machinery/ equipment to be used
•Photos of products to be manufactured

Other Documents

•Law No. (81) of 2006 with respect to approving The Common Industrial Law of the GCC
•Ministerial Resolution No. (11) of 2009
•Operational requirements for the directorate of industrial developments activities

Municipality Affairs (Post) (160)

Approval Name	Description	Estimated Time
Site Approval for manufacturing activities (Type B)	Municipality Approval for the Commercial Registration address or the site in which the Activity will be practiced	3 Days

Fee Details (if any)

10 BD

License Information

General Conditions:
1. Size of shop/premises must be sufficient for the activity
2. Businesses may not carry out the activity outside the boundaries of the shop/ premises
3. It is prohibited to display or store any items or equipment outside the shop / premises boundary without prior approval from the Municipality. In the event of non-compliance, the Ministry of Municipality Affairs has the right to take necessary action.
4. Maintain cleanliness of the site
5. Comply with the parking space regulations as per the Construction Regulatory Requirements

Activity Specific Conditions:
1. The Commercial Registration for this activity can only be registered in service and industrial streets/areas

Note: Uploading pictures of the site/shop may expedite the process of obtaining approval

Required Documents

- Lease agreement (after obtaining the necessary approvals from other licensing entities)
- Shop photos

Other Documents

- Cabinet's Decision (56) of the year 2022 regarding the Regulatory Requirements of Construction for various areas in the Kingdom of Bahrain

Supreme Council for Environment (Post) (160)

Approval Name	Description	Estimated Time
Environmental Approval for Manufacture of wood and products of wood and cork, except for furniture, manufacture of straw and	This service aims to assess the environmental impact and licensing of development, industrial and production projects and activities, in accordance with the standards of protecting the environment and its natural resources	10 Days

Fee Details (if any)

- 30 Bahraini Dinars or 200 Bahraini Dinars for the fast-track procedure (when the data requested within the EA-2 form is sufficient without the need for additional studies)
- 4000 Bahraini Dinars or 6000 Bahraini Dinars for the fast track procedure (when it is necessary to submit an environmental impact assessment study for the project), with an additional payment of 100 Bahraini Dinars when it is necessary to submit a proposal for the scope of the study before submitting it or 500 Bahraini Dinars for a fast track procedure when the proposed scope of the study is being submitted before the study

License Information

To check the requirements for this approval, kindly download the detailed requirements sheet from the other downloadable documents section, which includes the following requirements:

- Building layout engineering and equipment requirements
- Workplace requirements
- Storage requirements
- Material management requirements
- Waste Management Requirements

- Documents and reporting requirements
- General requirements

Other Documents

•Annex to the Minister of Housing, Municipalities and Environment order regarding the project's environmental assessment
•Law No. (2) of 2021 regarding the environmental standards of air as decided by the Chairman of the Supreme Council for Environment
•Law No. (3) of 2021 regarding the environmental standards of water as decided by the Chairman of the Supreme Council for the Environment
•Law No. (5) of 2021 regarding CITES Annexes to the Convention on International Trade in Endangered Fauna and Flora
•Law No. (54) of 2014 regarding the approval of the unified law regarding substances that deplete the ozone layer for the GCC countries
•Law No. (7) of 2022 regarding the environment
•Ministerial Order No. (1) of 1998 regarding Project's Environmental Assessment
•Ministerial Order No. (10) of 2006 regarding the installation of devices for on-line monitoring of atmospheric air pollutants
•Ministerial Order No. (11) of 2019 regarding the issue of technical specification of plastic products
•Ministerial Order No. (3) of 2005 regarding environmental requirements and standards in workplaces, especially regarding workers' exposure to heat and noise, and the provision of tools and protective clothing such as gloves, glasses, face masks and earplugs, with a commitment to use them during work
•Ministerial Order No. (3) of 2006 regarding the management of hazardous waste
•Ministerial Order No. (4) of 2005 regarding the management of used oils
•Ministerial Order No. (4) of 2006 regarding the management of hazardous chemicals
•Ministerial Order No. (4) of 2021 regarding the fees of the licenses and services provided by the Supreme Council for Environment
•Ministerial Order No. (6) of 2013 amending order No. (4) of 2006 regarding the management of hazardous chemicals
•Ministerial Order No. (7) of 2002 regarding the control importation and use of prohibited and severely restricted chemicals, and not to import any chemical compound except after obtaining approvals of all concerned authorities, including the executive body of the Supreme Council for Environment
•Ministerial Order No. (7) of 2013 amending order No. (3) of 2006 regarding the management of hazardous waste
•Ministerial Order No. 4 of 2014 regarding the management of the environmental consulting offices operations in the Kingdom of Bahrain
•Order No. (2) of 2020 determining the categories of fees for licensing refrigeration media, refrigeration units and air conditioning units as decided by the Chairman of the Supreme Council for the Environment
•Requirements for business activities
•law No. (1) of 2020 regarding the management of refrigeration media, refrigeration

units and air conditioning units as decided by the Chairman of the Supreme Council for the Environment
•law No. (2) of 2019 regarding the ban on the import of plastic waste of all kinds as decided by the Chairman of the Supreme Council for the Environment

Directorate Of Industrial Developments (Final Site Inspection) (160)

Approval Name	Description	Estimated Time
Notification Only	Notification to the Industrial development directorate on obtaining a commercial registration with the license to practice the activity.	There is no License Information in this license. Days

Fee Details (if any)

There is no Estimated Processing Time (Days) in this license.

License Information

The industrial license is automatically issued by the Industrial development Directorate after obtaining the approval of other licensing/approving entities.

Please ensure that the actual production date does no exceed the expected production date.

If actual production will start on or before the expected production date please apply for a “New Industrial Registration” by following the steps below:

1- Visit the Industrial services system (www.industry.bh).
2- Select “Industrial Registration”.
3- Select “New Registration” application.

In the event that the actual production date will exceed the expected production date an “Extension of expected production date” application must be submitted by following the steps below:

1- Visit the Industrial services system (www.industry.bh).

2- Select “Industrial License”.
3- Select “Extension of expected production date” application.

Please note that failure to do so within 60 days from the expected production date will result in a violation to be added.

Other Documents

- Law No. (81) of 2006 with respect to approving The Common Industrial Law of the GCC
- Ministerial Resolution No. (11) of 2009 with respect to promulgating Implementing Regulation
- Operational requirements for the directorate of industrial developments activities

Manufacturing

ISIC4	Business activity
16225	Carpentry Workshop

Description

Includes carpentry workshops and contractors that provide carpentry works and services for buildings, constructions, as well as manufacture simple wooden products

Business Requirements

Age

18 and above

Allowed for Nationalities

- Bahraini 100%
- American 100%
- GCC 100%

Legal Type

It is allowed to register according to the legal forms mentioned below

Allowed for Individual Commercial Registration (ICR) : Yes

Allowed for Company Commercial Registration (CCR) : Yes

- Bahrain Shareholding Company (Public)
- With Limited Liability Company
- Branch of a Foreign Company
- Bahrain Shareholding Company (Closed)
- Partnership Company
- Simple Commandite Company
- Commandite By Shares Company
- Non Profit Company

Required Step of Licenses and Approvals

Ministry / Directorate	License / Approval Requirements	Approval Type
Municipality Affairs	Site Approval for manufacturing activities (Type B)	Post
Supreme Council for Environment	Environmental Approval for Carpentry workshop work activity	Post

Municipality Affairs (Post) (16225)

Approval Name	Description	Estimated Time
Site Approval for manufacturing activities (Type B)	Municipality Approval for the Commercial Registration address or the site in which the Activity will be practiced	3 Days

Fee Details (if any)

10 BD

License Information

General Conditions:
1. Size of shop/premises must be sufficient for the activity
2. Businesses may not carry out the activity outside the boundaries of the shop/ premises
3. It is prohibited to display or store any items or equipment outside the shop / premises boundary without prior approval from the Municipality. In the event of non-compliance, the Ministry of Municipality Affairs has the right to take necessary action.
4. Maintain cleanliness of the site
5. Comply with the parking space regulations as per the Construction Regulatory Requirements

Activity Specific Conditions:
1. The Commercial Registration for this activity can only be registered in service and industrial streets/areas

Note: Uploading pictures of the site/shop may expedite the process of obtaining approval

Required Documents

- Lease agreement (after obtaining the necessary approvals from other licensing entities)
- Shop photos

Other Documents

- Cabinet's Decision (56) of the year 2022 regarding the Regulatory Requirements of Construction for various areas in the Kingdom of Bahrain

Supreme Council for Environment (Post) (16225)

Approval Name	Description	Estimated Time
Environmental Approval for Carpentry workshop work activity	This service aims to assess the environmental impact and licensing of development, industrial and production projects and activities, in accordance with the standards of protecting the environment and its natural resources	10 Days

Fee Details (if any)

30 Bahraini Dinars

License Information

To check the requirements for this approval, kindly download the detailed requirements sheet from the other downloadable documents section, which includes the following requirements:

- Building layout Engineering and Equipment Requirements
- Work-place Requirements
- Storage Requirements
- Material Management Requirements
- Waste Management Requirements
- Documents and Reporting Requirements
- General Requirements

Other Documents

- Law No. (2) of 2021 regarding the environmental standards of air as decided by the Chairman of the Supreme Council for Environment
- Law No. (3) of 2021 regarding the environmental standards of water as decided by the Chairman of the Supreme Council for the Environment
- Law No. (7) of 2022 regarding the environment
- Ministerial Order No. (10) of 2006 regarding the installation of devices for on-line monitoring of atmospheric air pollutants
- Ministerial Order No. (3) of 2005 regarding environmental requirements and standards in workplaces, especially regarding workers' exposure to heat and noise, and the provision of tools and protective clothing such as gloves, glasses, face masks and earplugs, with a commitment to use them during work
- Ministerial Order No. (3) of 2006 regarding the management of hazardous waste
- Ministerial Order No. (4) of 2005 regarding the management of used oils
- Ministerial Order No. (4) of 2006 regarding the management of hazardous chemicals
- Ministerial Order No. (4) of 2021 regarding the fees of the licenses and services provided by the Supreme Council for Environment
- Ministerial Order No. (6) of 2013 amending order No. (4) of 2006 regarding the management of hazardous chemicals
- Ministerial Order No. (7) of 2002 regarding the control importation and use of prohibited and severely restricted chemicals, and not to import any chemical compound except after obtaining approvals of all concerned authorities, including the executive body of the Supreme Council for Environment
- Ministerial Order No. (7) of 2013 amending order No. (3) of 2006 regarding the management of hazardous waste
- Ministerial Order No. 4 of 2014 regarding the management of the environmental consulting offices operations in the Kingdom of Bahrain
- Requirements for business activities

Manufacturing

ISIC4	Business activity
17-1	Manufacture of paper and paper products - Workshop

Description

This activity includes the manufacture of all types of paper and paper products including:
- Manufacture of pulp, paper, and paperboard
- Manufacture of corrugated paper and paperboard and of containers of paper and paperboard
- Manufacture of household and personal hygiene paper and cellulose wadding products such as cleansing tissues, handkerchiefs, towels, serviettes, toilet paper, sanitary towels and tampons, napkins and napkin liners for babies
- Manufacture of cups, dishes and trays
- Manufacture of printing and writing paper ready for use
- Manufacture of envelopes and letter-cards
- Manufacture of registers, accounting books, binders, albums and similar educational and commercial stationery
- Manufacture of boxes, pouches, wallets and writing compendiums containing an assortment of paper stationery
- Manufacture of wallpaper and similar wall coverings, including vinyl-coated and textile wallpaper
- Manufacture of labels
- Manufacture of filter paper and paperboard
- Manufacture of egg trays and other moulded pulp packaging products etc.

Business Requirements

Age

18 and above

Allowed for Nationalities

Bahraini 100%		GCC 100%	
American 100%		Singaporean 100%	
Icelander 100%		Liechtenstein er 100%	
Norwegian 100%		Swiss 100%	

Foreign Allowed up to 100%

Legal Type

It is allowed to register according to the legal forms mentioned below

Allowed for Individual Commercial Registration (ICR) : Yes

Allowed for Company Commercial Registration (CCR) : Yes

- Bahrain Shareholding Company (Public)
- With Limited Liability Company
- Branch of a Foreign Company
- Bahrain Shareholding Company (Closed)
- Partnership Company
- Simple Commandite Company
- Commandite By Shares Company
- Non Profit Company

Required Step of Licenses and Approvals

Ministry / Directorate	License / Approval Requirements	Approval Type
Supreme Council for Environment	Environmental Approval for Paper and Paper	Post

	Products Making - Workshop activity	
Municipality Affairs	Site Approval for manufacturing activities (Type B)	Post

Supreme Council for Environment (Post) (17-1)

Approval Name	Description	Estimated Time
Environmental Approval for Paper and Paper Products Making - Workshop activity	This service aims to assess the environmental impact and licensing of development, industrial and production projects and activities, in accordance with the standards of protecting the environment and its natural resources	10 Days

Fee Details (if any)

- 30 Bahraini Dinars or 200 Bahraini Dinars for the fast-track procedure (when the data requested within the EA-2 form is sufficient without the need for additional studies)
- 4000 Bahraini Dinars or 6000 Bahraini Dinars for the fast track procedure (when it is necessary to submit an environmental impact assessment study for the project), with an additional payment of 100 Bahraini Dinars when it is necessary to submit a proposal for the scope of the study before submitting it or 500 Bahraini Dinars for a fast track procedure when the proposed scope of the study is being submitted before the study

License Information

To check the requirements for this approval, kindly download the detailed requirements sheet from the other downloadable documents section, which includes the following requirements:

- Building layout engineering and equipment requirements
- Workplace requirements
- Storage requirements
- Material management requirements
- Waste Management Requirements

- Documents and reporting requirements
- General requirements

Other Documents

•Annex to the Minister of Housing, Municipalities and Environment order regarding the project's environmental assessment
•Law No. (2) of 2021 regarding the environmental standards of air as decided by the Chairman of the Supreme Council for Environment
•Law No. (3) of 2021 regarding the environmental standards of water as decided by the Chairman of the Supreme Council for the Environment
•Law No. (5) of 2021 regarding CITES Annexes to the Convention on International Trade in Endangered Fauna and Flora
•Law No. (54) of 2014 regarding the approval of the unified law regarding substances that deplete the ozone layer for the GCC countries
•Law No. (7) of 2022 regarding the environment
•Ministerial Order No. (1) of 1998 regarding Project's Environmental Assessment
•Ministerial Order No. (10) of 2006 regarding the installation of devices for on-line monitoring of atmospheric air pollutants
•Ministerial Order No. (11) of 2019 regarding the issue of technical specification of plastic products
•Ministerial Order No. (11) of 2019 regarding the issue of technical specification of plastic products
•Ministerial Order No. (3) of 2005 regarding environmental requirements and standards in workplaces, especially regarding workers' exposure to heat and noise, and the provision of tools and protective clothing such as gloves, glasses, face masks and earplugs, with a commitment to use them during work
•Ministerial Order No. (3) of 2006 regarding the management of hazardous waste
•Ministerial Order No. (4) of 2005 regarding the management of used oils
•Ministerial Order No. (4) of 2006 regarding the management of hazardous chemicals
•Ministerial Order No. (4) of 2021 regarding the fees of the licenses and services provided by the Supreme Council for Environment
•Ministerial Order No. (6) of 2013 amending order No. (4) of 2006 regarding the management of hazardous chemicals
•Ministerial Order No. (7) of 2002 regarding the control importation and use of prohibited and severely restricted chemicals, and not to import any chemical compound except after obtaining approvals of all concerned authorities, including the executive body of the Supreme Council for Environment
•Ministerial Order No. (7) of 2013 amending order No. (3) of 2006 regarding the management of hazardous waste
•Ministerial Order No. 4 of 2014 regarding the management of the environmental consulting offices operations in the Kingdom of Bahrain
•Order No. (2) of 2020 determining the categories of fees for licensing refrigeration media, refrigeration units and air conditioning units as decided by the Chairman of the Supreme Council for the Environment

•Requirements for business activities
•Requirements for business activities
•law No. (1) of 2020 regarding the management of refrigeration media, refrigeration units and air conditioning units as decided by the Chairman of the Supreme Council for the Environment
•law No. (2) of 2019 regarding the ban on the import of plastic waste of all kinds as decided by the Chairman of the Supreme Council for the Environment
•law No. (2) of 2019 regarding the ban on the import of plastic waste of all kinds as decided by the Chairman of the Supreme Council for the Environment

Municipality Affairs (Post) (17-1)

Approval Name	Description	Estimated Time
Site Approval for manufacturing activities (Type B)	Municipality Approval for the Commercial Registration address or the site in which the Activity will be practiced	3 Days

Fee Details (if any)

10 BD

License Information

General Conditions:
1. Size of shop/premises must be sufficient for the activity
2. Businesses may not carry out the activity outside the boundaries of the shop/ premises
3. It is prohibited to display or store any items or equipment outside the shop / premises boundary without prior approval from the Municipality. In the event of non-compliance, the Ministry of Municipality Affairs has the right to take necessary action.
4. Maintain cleanliness of the site
5. Comply with the parking space regulations as per the Construction Regulatory Requirements

Activity Specific Conditions:
1. The Commercial Registration for this activity can only be registered in service and industrial streets/areas

Note: Uploading pictures of the site/shop may expedite the process of obtaining approval

Required Documents

- Lease agreement (after obtaining the necessary approvals from other licensing entities)
- Shop photos

Other Documents

- Cabinet's Decision (56) of the year 2022 regarding the Regulatory Requirements of Construction for various areas in the Kingdom of Bahrain

Manufacturing

ISIC4	Business activity
17-2	Manufacture of paper and paper products - Factory

Description

This activity includes the manufacture of all types of paper and paper products including:
- Manufacture of pulp, paper, and paperboard
- Manufacture of corrugated paper and paperboard and of containers of paper and paperboard
- Manufacture of household and personal hygiene paper and cellulose wadding products such as cleansing tissues, handkerchiefs, towels, serviettes, toilet paper, sanitary towels and tampons, napkins and napkin liners for babies
- Manufacture of cups, dishes and trays
- Manufacture of printing and writing paper ready for use
- Manufacture of envelopes and letter-cards
- Manufacture of registers, accounting books, binders, albums and similar educational and commercial stationery
- Manufacture of boxes, pouches, wallets and writing compendiums containing an assortment of paper stationery
- Manufacture of wallpaper and similar wall coverings, including vinyl-coated and textile wallpaper
- Manufacture of labels
- Manufacture of filter paper and paperboard
- Manufacture of egg trays and other moulded pulp packaging products etc.

Business Requirements

Age

18 and above

Allowed for Nationalities

Bahraini 100%		GCC 100%	
American 100%		Singaporean 100%	
Icelander 100%		Liechtenstein er 100%	
Norwegian 100%		Swiss 100%	

Foreign Allowed up to 100%

Legal Type

It is allowed to register according to the legal forms mentioned below

Allowed for Individual Commercial Registration (ICR) : Yes

Allowed for Company Commercial Registration (CCR) : Yes

- Bahrain Shareholding Company (Public)
- With Limited Liability Company
- Branch of a Foreign Company
- Bahrain Shareholding Company (Closed)
- Partnership Company
- Simple Commandite Company
- Commandite By Shares Company
- Non Profit Company

Required Step of Licenses and Approvals

Ministry / Directorate	License / Approval Requirements	Approval Type
Directorate Of Industrial Developments	Approval by Directorate of Industrial	Pre

	Developments(Pre)	
Supreme Council for Environment	Environmental Approval for Making paper and paper products - factory activity	Post
Municipality Affairs	Site Approval for manufacturing activities (Type B)	Post
Directorate Of Industrial Developments	Notification Only	Final Site Inspection

Directorate Of Industrial Developments (Pre) (17-2)

Approval Name	Description	Estimated Time
Approval by Directorate of Industrial Developments(Pre)	This is a preliminary approval given by the Directorate of Industrial Development to ensure that the applicant has selected the appropriate activity based on the information provided	5 Days

Fee Details (if any)

There is no Estimated Processing Time (Days) in this license.

License Information

Applicants would have to provide through the system the following information:

General Information:

- Total Amount Invested in the Project (This should include value of machinery and fixed assets)
- Estimated number of workforce (Bahraini and Non-Bahraini)
- Expected utility consumption of electricity, water and natural gas
- Total area of the project

Activity Information:

- Product Information:

1) The products to be manufactured by choosing the appropriate HS codes (HS code list can be downloaded from the application if needed).
2) Product name.
3) Expected production date (The expected date on which the factory will start producing the product).

4) The maximum installed capacity and the expected production capacity per year based on the fixed HS code's unit of measure.

• Main raw materials: The main raw materials to be used in production and its source

• Main Machinery and Equipment: The main machinery and equipment to be used in production and its information.

• Manufacturing process: Brief on the manufacturing process explaining how materials are transformed from one state to another until reaching the final product, mentioning the types of materials used, the operations performed, and the machinery/equipment used in each step (if any) for each product.

Required Documents

•Photos of machinery/ equipment to be used
•Photos of products to be manufactured

Other Documents

•Law No. (81) of 2006 with respect to approving The Common Industrial Law of the GCC
•Ministerial Resolution No. (11) of 2009
•Operational requirements for the directorate of industrial developments activities

Supreme Council for Environment (Post) (17-2)

Approval Name	Description	Estimated Time
Environmental Approval for Making paper and paper products - factory activity	This service aims to assess the environmental impact and licensing of development, industrial and production projects and activities, in accordance with the standards of protecting the environment and its natural resources	10 Days

Fee Details (if any)

- 30 Bahraini Dinars or 200 Bahraini Dinars for the fast-track procedure (when the data requested within the EA-2 form is sufficient without the need for additional studies)
- 4000 Bahraini Dinars or 6000 Bahraini Dinars for the fast track procedure (when it is necessary to submit an environmental impact assessment study for the project), with an additional payment of 100 Bahraini Dinars when it is necessary to submit a proposal for the scope of the study before submitting it or 500 Bahraini Dinars for a fast track procedure when the proposed scope of the study is being submitted before the study

License Information

To check the requirements for this approval, kindly download the detailed requirements sheet from the other downloadable documents section, which includes the following requirements:

- Building layout engineering and equipment requirements
- Workplace requirements
- Storage requirements
- Material management requirements
- Waste Management Requirements

- Documents and reporting requirements
- General requirements

Other Documents

•Annex to the Minister of Housing, Municipalities and Environment order regarding the project's environmental assessment
•Law No. (2) of 2021 regarding the environmental standards of air as decided by the Chairman of the Supreme Council for Environment
•Law No. (3) of 2021 regarding the environmental standards of water as decided by the Chairman of the Supreme Council for the Environment
•Law No. (5) of 2021 regarding CITES Annexes to the Convention on International Trade in Endangered Fauna and Flora
•Law No. (54) of 2014 regarding the approval of the unified law regarding substances that deplete the ozone layer for the GCC countries
•Law No. (7) of 2022 regarding the environment
•Ministerial Order No. (1) of 1998 regarding Project's Environmental Assessment
•Ministerial Order No. (10) of 2006 regarding the installation of devices for on-line monitoring of atmospheric air pollutants
•Ministerial Order No. (11) of 2019 regarding the issue of technical specification of plastic products
•Ministerial Order No. (3) of 2005 regarding environmental requirements and standards in workplaces, especially regarding workers' exposure to heat and noise, and the provision of tools and protective clothing such as gloves, glasses, face masks and earplugs, with a commitment to use them during work
•Ministerial Order No. (3) of 2006 regarding the management of hazardous waste
•Ministerial Order No. (4) of 2005 regarding the management of used oils
•Ministerial Order No. (4) of 2006 regarding the management of hazardous chemicals
•Ministerial Order No. (4) of 2021 regarding the fees of the licenses and services provided by the Supreme Council for Environment
•Ministerial Order No. (6) of 2013 amending order No. (4) of 2006 regarding the management of hazardous chemicals
•Ministerial Order No. (7) of 2002 regarding the control importation and use of prohibited and severely restricted chemicals, and not to import any chemical compound except after obtaining approvals of all concerned authorities, including the executive body of the Supreme Council for Environment
•Ministerial Order No. (7) of 2013 amending order No. (3) of 2006 regarding the management of hazardous waste
•Ministerial Order No. 4 of 2014 regarding the management of the environmental consulting offices operations in the Kingdom of Bahrain
•Order No. (2) of 2020 determining the categories of fees for licensing refrigeration media, refrigeration units and air conditioning units as decided by the Chairman of the Supreme Council for the Environment
•Requirements for business activities
•law No. (1) of 2020 regarding the management of refrigeration media, refrigeration

units and air conditioning units as decided by the Chairman of the Supreme Council for the Environment
•law No. (2) of 2019 regarding the ban on the import of plastic waste of all kinds as decided by the Chairman of the Supreme Council for the Environment

Municipality Affairs (Post) (17-2)

Approval Name	Description	Estimated Time
Site Approval for manufacturing activities (Type B)	Municipality Approval for the Commercial Registration address or the site in which the Activity will be practiced	3 Days

Fee Details (if any)

10 BD

License Information

General Conditions:
1. Size of shop/premises must be sufficient for the activity
2. Businesses may not carry out the activity outside the boundaries of the shop/ premises
3. It is prohibited to display or store any items or equipment outside the shop / premises boundary without prior approval from the Municipality. In the event of non-compliance, the Ministry of Municipality Affairs has the right to take necessary action.
4. Maintain cleanliness of the site
5. Comply with the parking space regulations as per the Construction Regulatory Requirements

Activity Specific Conditions:
1. The Commercial Registration for this activity can only be registered in service and industrial streets/areas

Note: Uploading pictures of the site/shop may expedite the process of obtaining approval

Required Documents

- Lease agreement (after obtaining the necessary approvals from other licensing entities)
- Shop photos

Other Documents

- Cabinet's Decision (56) of the year 2022 regarding the Regulatory Requirements of Construction for various areas in the Kingdom of Bahrain

Directorate Of Industrial Developments (Final Site Inspection) (17-2)

Approval Name	Description	Estimated Time
Notification Only	Notification to the Industrial development directorate on obtaining a commercial registration with the license to practice the activity.	There is no License Information in this license. Days

Fee Details (if any)

There is no Estimated Processing Time (Days) in this license.

License Information

The industrial license is automatically issued by the Industrial development Directorate after obtaining the approval of other licensing/approving entities.

Please ensure that the actual production date does no exceed the expected production date.

If actual production will start on or before the expected production date please apply for a “New Industrial Registration” by following the steps below:

1- Visit the Industrial services system (www.industry.bh).
2- Select “Industrial Registration”.
3- Select “New Registration” application.

In the event that the actual production date will exceed the expected production date an “Extension of expected production date” application must be submitted by following the steps below:

1- Visit the Industrial services system (www.industry.bh).

2- Select “Industrial License”.
3- Select “Extension of expected production date” application.

Please note that failure to do so within 60 days from the expected production date will result in a violation to be added.

Other Documents

- Law No. (81) of 2006 with respect to approving The Common Industrial Law of the GCC
- Ministerial Resolution No. (11) of 2009 with respect to promulgating Implementing Regulation
- Operational requirements for the directorate of industrial developments activities

Manufacturing

ISIC4	Business activity
1811	Printing

Description

This activity includes:
- printing of newspapers, magazines and other periodicals, books and brochures, music and music manuscripts, maps, atlases, posters, advertising catalogues, prospectuses and other printed advertising, postage stamps, taxation stamps, documents of title, cheques and other security papers, diaries, calendars, business forms and other commercial printed matter, personal stationery and other printed matter by letterpress, offset, photogravure, flexographic and other printing presses, duplication machines, computer printers, embossers etc., including quick printing
- printing directly onto textiles, plastic, glass, metal, wood and ceramics
- printing on labels or tags (lithographic, gravure printing, flexographic printing, other)

Business Requirements

Age

18 and above

Allowed for Nationalities

Bahraini
100%

GCC
100%

American
100%

Legal Type

It is allowed to register according to the legal forms mentioned below

Allowed for Individual Commercial Registration (ICR) : Yes

Allowed for Company Commercial Registration (CCR) : Yes

- Bahrain Shareholding Company (Public)
- With Limited Liability Company
- Branch of a Foreign Company
- Bahrain Shareholding Company (Closed)
- Partnership Company
- Simple Commandite Company
- Commandite By Shares Company
- Non Profit Company

Required Step of Licenses and Approvals

Ministry / Directorate	License / Approval Requirements	Approval Type
Directorate of Publication and Press	Notification Only	Notification Only
Municipality Affairs	Site Approval for manufacturing activities (Type B)	Post
Supreme Council for Environment	Environmental Approval for printing activity	Post

Directorate of Publication and Press (Notification Only) (1811)

Approval Name	Description	Estimated Time
Notification Only	Notify license entity that new application is applied.	There is no License Information in this license. Days

Fee Details (if any)

There is no Estimated Processing Time (Days) in this license.

License Information

All Business establishments of audio-visual, print and electronic media in the Kingdom of Bahrain must be comply with the law regulating the press, printing and publishing and other relevant lawsd publishing and other relevant laws

Other Documents

•Resolution No. (1) of 2015 regarding standards for supervision and control of media contents

Municipality Affairs (Post) (1811)

Approval Name	Description	Estimated Time
Site Approval for manufacturing activities (Type B)	Municipality Approval for the Commercial Registration address or the site in which the Activity will be practiced	3 Days

Fee Details (if any)

10 BD

License Information

General Conditions:
1. Size of shop/premises must be sufficient for the activity
2. Businesses may not carry out the activity outside the boundaries of the shop/ premises
3. It is prohibited to display or store any items or equipment outside the shop / premises boundary without prior approval from the Municipality. In the event of non-compliance, the Ministry of Municipality Affairs has the right to take necessary action.
4. Maintain cleanliness of the site
5. Comply with the parking space regulations as per the Construction Regulatory Requirements

Activity Specific Conditions:
1. The Commercial Registration for this activity can only be registered in service and industrial streets/areas

Note: Uploading pictures of the site/shop may expedite the process of obtaining approval

Required Documents

- Lease agreement (after obtaining the necessary approvals from other licensing entities)
- Shop photos

Other Documents

- Cabinet's Decision (56) of the year 2022 regarding the Regulatory Requirements of Construction for various areas in the Kingdom of Bahrain

Supreme Council for Environment (Post) (1811)

Approval Name	Description	Estimated Time
Environmental Approval for printing activity	This service aims to assess the environmental impact and licensing of development, industrial and production projects and activities, in accordance with the standards of protecting the environment and its natural resources	10 Days

Fee Details (if any)

30 Bahraini Dinars

License Information

To check the requirements for this approval, kindly download the detailed requirements sheet from the other downloadable documents section, which includes the following requirements:

- Building layout Engineering and Equipment Requirements
- Work-place Requirements
- Storage Requirements
- Material Management Requirements
- Waste Management Requirements
- Documents and Reporting Requirements
- General Requirements

Other Documents

- Law No. (2) of 2021 regarding the environmental standards of air as decided by the Chairman of the Supreme Council for Environment
- Law No. (3) of 2021 regarding the environmental standards of water as decided by the Chairman of the Supreme Council for the Environment
- Law No. (7) of 2022 regarding the environment
- Law No. (7) of 2022 regarding the environment
- Ministerial Order No. (10) of 2006 regarding the installation of devices for on-line monitoring of atmospheric air pollutants
- Ministerial Order No. (3) of 2005 regarding environmental requirements and standards in workplaces, especially regarding workers' exposure to heat and noise, and the provision of tools and protective clothing such as gloves, glasses, face masks and earplugs, with a commitment to use them during work
- Ministerial Order No. (3) of 2006 regarding the management of hazardous waste
- Ministerial Order No. (4) of 2005 regarding the management of used oils
- Ministerial Order No. (4) of 2006 regarding the management of hazardous chemicals
- Ministerial Order No. (4) of 2021 regarding the fees of the licenses and services provided by the Supreme Council for Environment
- Ministerial Order No. (6) of 2013 amending order No. (4) of 2006 regarding the management of hazardous chemicals
- Ministerial Order No. (7) of 2002 regarding the control importation and use of prohibited and severely restricted chemicals, and not to import any chemical compound except after obtaining approvals of all concerned authorities, including the executive body of the Supreme Council for Environment
- Ministerial Order No. 4 of 2014 regarding the management of the environmental consulting offices operations in the Kingdom of Bahrain
- Requirements for business activities

Manufacturing

ISIC4	Business activity
18119	Other Printing/ Engraving Services

Description

This activity includes printing/engraving directly onto textiles, plastic, glass, metal, wood, ceramics, or any other material.

Business Requirements

Age

18 and above

Allowed for Nationalities

Bahraini 100%	GCC 100%
American 100%	Singaporean 100%
Icelander 100%	Liechtenstein er 100%
Norwegian 100%	Swiss 100%

Foreign Allowed up to 100%

Legal Type

It is allowed to register according to the legal forms mentioned below

Allowed for Individual Commercial Registration (ICR) : Yes

Allowed for Company Commercial Registration (CCR) : Yes

- Bahrain Shareholding Company (Public)
- With Limited Liability Company
- Branch of a Foreign Company
- Bahrain Shareholding Company (Closed)
- Partnership Company
- Simple Commandite Company
- Commandite By Shares Company
- Non Profit Company

Required Step of Licenses and Approvals

Ministry / Directorate	License / Approval Requirements	Approval Type
Municipality Affairs	Site Approval for manufacturing activities (Type A)	Post
Supreme Council for Environment	Environmental Approval for Other printing and engraving activities activity	Post

Municipality Affairs (Post) (18119)

Approval Name	Description	Estimated Time
Site Approval for manufacturing activities (Type A)	Municipality Approval for the Commercial Registration address or the site in which the Activity will be practiced	3 Days

Fee Details (if any)

10 BD

License Information

General Conditions:
1. Size of shop/premises must be sufficient for the activity
2. Businesses may not carry out the activity outside the boundaries of the shop/ premises
3. It is prohibited to display or store any items or equipment outside the shop / premises boundary without prior approval from the Municipality. In the event of non-compliance, the Ministry of Municipality Affairs has the right to take necessary action.
4. Maintain cleanliness of the site
5. Comply with the parking space regulations as per the Construction Regulatory Requirements

Activity Specific Conditions:
1. The commercial address for this activity can be registered in areas classified as commercial, services, or industrial

Note: Uploading pictures of the site/shop may expedite the process of obtaining approval

Required Documents

- Lease agreement (after obtaining the necessary approvals from other licensing entities)
- Shop photos

Other Documents

- Cabinet's Decision (56) of the year 2022 regarding the Regulatory Requirements of Construction for various areas in the Kingdom of Bahrain

Supreme Council for Environment (Post) (18119)

Approval Name	Description	Estimated Time
Environmental Approval for Other printing and engraving activities activity	This service aims to assess the environmental impact and licensing of development, industrial and production projects and activities, in accordance with the standards of protecting the environment and its natural resources	10 Days

Fee Details (if any)

30 Bahraini Dinars

License Information

To check the requirements for this approval, kindly download the detailed requirements sheet from the other downloadable documents section, which includes the following requirements:

- Building layout Engineering and Equipment Requirements
- Work-place Requirements
- Storage Requirements
- Material Management Requirements
- Waste Management Requirements
- Documents and Reporting Requirements
- General Requirements

Other Documents

- Law No. (2) of 2021 regarding the environmental standards of air as decided by the Chairman of the Supreme Council for Environment
- Law No. (3) of 2021 regarding the environmental standards of water as decided by the Chairman of the Supreme Council for the Environment
- Law No. (7) of 2022 regarding the environment
- Ministerial Order No. (10) of 2006 regarding the installation of devices for on-line monitoring of atmospheric air pollutants
- Ministerial Order No. (3) of 2005 regarding environmental requirements and standards in workplaces, especially regarding workers' exposure to heat and noise, and the provision of tools and protective clothing such as gloves, glasses, face masks and earplugs, with a commitment to use them during work
- Ministerial Order No. (3) of 2006 regarding the management of hazardous waste
- Ministerial Order No. (4) of 2005 regarding the management of used oils
- Ministerial Order No. (4) of 2006 regarding the management of hazardous chemicals
- Ministerial Order No. (4) of 2021 regarding the fees of the licenses and services provided by the Supreme Council for Environment
- Ministerial Order No. (6) of 2013 amending order No. (4) of 2006 regarding the management of hazardous chemicals
- Ministerial Order No. (7) of 2002 regarding the control importation and use of prohibited and severely restricted chemicals, and not to import any chemical compound except after obtaining approvals of all concerned authorities, including the executive body of the Supreme Council for Environment
- Ministerial Order No. (7) of 2013 amending order No. (3) of 2006 regarding the management of hazardous waste
- Ministerial Order No. 4 of 2014 regarding the management of the environmental consulting offices operations in the Kingdom of Bahrain
- Requirements for business activities

Manufacturing

ISIC4	Business activity
1812	Service activities related to printing

Description

This activity includes:- binding of printed sheets, e.g. into books, brochures, magazines, catalogues etc., by folding, assembling, stitching, glueing, collating, basting, adhesive binding, trimming, gold stamping
- composition, typesetting, phototypesetting, pre-press data input including scanning and optical character recognition, electronic make-up
- plate-making services including imagesetting and plate-setting (for the printing processes letterpress and offset)
- engraving or etching of cylinders for gravure
- plate processes direct to plate (also photopolymer plates)
- preparation of plates and dies for relief stamping or printing
- production of proofs
- artistic work including preparation of litho stones and prepared woodblocks
- production of reprographic products
- design of printing products e.g. sketches, layouts, dummies etc.
- other graphic activities such as die-sinking or die-stamping, Braille copying, punching and drilling, embossing, varnishing and laminating, collating and insetting, creasing

Business Requirements

Age

18 and above

Allowed for Nationalities

Bahraini
100%

American
100%

GCC
100%

Legal Type

It is allowed to register according to the legal forms mentioned below

Allowed for Individual Commercial Registration (ICR) : Yes

Allowed for Company Commercial Registration (CCR) : Yes

- Bahrain Shareholding Company (Public)
- With Limited Liability Company
- Branch of a Foreign Company
- Bahrain Shareholding Company (Closed)
- Partnership Company
- Simple Commandite Company
- Commandite By Shares Company
- Non Profit Company

Required Step of Licenses and Approvals

Ministry / Directorate	License / Approval Requirements	Approval Type
Municipality Affairs	Site Approval for manufacturing activities (Type A)	Post

Municipality Affairs (Post) (1812)

Approval Name	Description	Estimated Time
Site Approval for manufacturing activities (Type A)	Municipality Approval for the Commercial Registration address or the site in which the Activity will be practiced	3 Days

Fee Details (if any)

10 BD

License Information

General Conditions:
1. Size of shop/premises must be sufficient for the activity
2. Businesses may not carry out the activity outside the boundaries of the shop/ premises
3. It is prohibited to display or store any items or equipment outside the shop / premises boundary without prior approval from the Municipality. In the event of non-compliance, the Ministry of Municipality Affairs has the right to take necessary action.
4. Maintain cleanliness of the site
5. Comply with the parking space regulations as per the Construction Regulatory Requirements

Activity Specific Conditions:
1. The commercial address for this activity can be registered in areas classified as commercial, services, or industrial

Note: Uploading pictures of the site/shop may expedite the process of obtaining approval

Required Documents

- Lease agreement (after obtaining the necessary approvals from other licensing entities)
- Shop photos

Other Documents

- Cabinet's Decision (56) of the year 2022 regarding the Regulatory Requirements of Construction for various areas in the Kingdom of Bahrain

Manufacturing

ISIC4	Business activity
182	Reproduction of recorded media

Description

This activity includes:
- reproduction from master copies of gramophone records, compact discs and tapes with music or other sound recordings
- reproduction from master copies of records, compact discs and tapes with motion pictures and other video recordings
- reproduction from master copies of software and data on discs and tapes

This activity excludes:
- reproduction of printed matter, see 1811
- publishing of software, see 582
- production and distribution of motion pictures, video tapes and movies on DVD or similar media, see 591
- reproduction of motion picture film for theatrical distribution, see 591
- production of master copies for records or audio material, see 592

Business Requirements

✔ Age

18 and above

✔ Allowed for Nationalities

Bahraini
100%

American
100%

GCC
100%

Legal Type

It is allowed to register according to the legal forms mentioned below

Allowed for Individual Commercial Registration (ICR) : Yes

Allowed for Company Commercial Registration (CCR) : Yes

- Bahrain Shareholding Company (Public)
- With Limited Liability Company
- Branch of a Foreign Company
- Bahrain Shareholding Company (Closed)
- Partnership Company
- Simple Commandite Company
- Commandite By Shares Company
- Non Profit Company

Required Step of Licenses and Approvals

Ministry / Directorate	License / Approval Requirements	Approval Type
Directorate of Publication and Press	Reproduction of recorded media	Notification Only
Municipality Affairs	Site Approval for manufacturing activities (Type A)	Post

Directorate of Publication and Press (Notification Only) (182)

Approval Name	Description	Estimated Time
Reproduction of recorded media	Reproduction of recorded media	5 Days

Fee Details (if any)

There is no Estimated Processing Time (Days) in this license.

License Information

To comply with Law No (22) for the year 2006 regarding the protection of copyright and related rights, amended by Law No. (12) for the year 2008

All Business establishments of audio-visual, print and electronic media in the Kingdom of Bahrain must be comply with the law regulating the press, printing and publishing and other relevant laws

Other Documents

•LEGISLATIVE DECREE NO. (22) OF 2006 WITH RESPECT TO THE PROTECTION OF AUTHORS RIGHTS AND ATTENDANT RIGHTS LAW
•Law NO. (12) OF 2008
•Resolution No. (1) of 2015 regarding standards for supervision and control of media contents

Municipality Affairs (Post) (182)

Approval Name	Description	Estimated Time
Site Approval for manufacturing activities (Type A)	Municipality Approval for the Commercial Registration address or the site in which the Activity will be practiced	3 Days

Fee Details (if any)

10 BD

License Information

General Conditions:
1. Size of shop/premises must be sufficient for the activity
2. Businesses may not carry out the activity outside the boundaries of the shop/ premises
3. It is prohibited to display or store any items or equipment outside the shop / premises boundary without prior approval from the Municipality. In the event of non-compliance, the Ministry of Municipality Affairs has the right to take necessary action.
4. Maintain cleanliness of the site
5. Comply with the parking space regulations as per the Construction Regulatory Requirements

Activity Specific Conditions:
1. The commercial address for this activity can be registered in areas classified as commercial, services, or industrial

Note: Uploading pictures of the site/shop may expedite the process of obtaining approval

Required Documents

- Lease agreement (after obtaining the necessary approvals from other licensing entities)
- Shop photos

Other Documents

- Cabinet's Decision (56) of the year 2022 regarding the Regulatory Requirements of Construction for various areas in the Kingdom of Bahrain

Manufacturing

ISIC4	Business activity
191	Manufacture of coke oven products

Description

This activity includes:
- operation of coke ovens
- production of coke and semi-coke
- production of pitch and pitch coke
- production of coke oven gas
- production of crude coal and lignite tars
- agglomeration of coke

Business Requirements

✔ Age

18 and above

✔ Allowed for Nationalities

Bahraini 100%		GCC 100%	
American 100%		Singaporean 100%	
Icelander 100%		Liechtenstein er 100%	
Norwegian 100%		Swiss 100%	

Foreign Allowed up to 100%

Legal Type

It is allowed to register according to the legal forms mentioned below

Allowed for Individual Commercial Registration (ICR) : Yes

Allowed for Company Commercial Registration (CCR) : Yes

- Bahrain Shareholding Company (Public)
- With Limited Liability Company
- Branch of a Foreign Company
- Bahrain Shareholding Company (Closed)
- Partnership Company
- Simple Commandite Company
- Commandite By Shares Company
- Non Profit Company

Required Step of Licenses and Approvals

Ministry / Directorate	License / Approval Requirements	Approval Type
Directorate Of Industrial Developments	Approval by Directorate of Industrial Developments(Pre)	Pre
Municipality Affairs	Site Approval for manufacturing activities (Type B)	Post
Supreme Council for Environment	Environmental Approval for Manufacture of coke oven products activity	Post
Directorate Of Industrial Developments	Notification Only	Final Site Inspection

Directorate Of Industrial Developments (Pre) (191)

Approval Name	Description	Estimated Time
Approval by Directorate of Industrial Developments(Pre)	This is a preliminary approval given by the Directorate of Industrial Development to ensure that the applicant has selected the appropriate activity based on the information provided	5 Days

Fee Details (if any)

There is no Estimated Processing Time (Days) in this license.

License Information

Applicants would have to provide through the system the following information:

General Information:

- Total Amount Invested in the Project (This should include value of machinery and fixed assets)
- Estimated number of workforce (Bahraini and Non-Bahraini)
- Expected utility consumption of electricity, water and natural gas
- Total area of the project

Activity Information:

- Product Information:

1) The products to be manufactured by choosing the appropriate HS codes (HS code list can be downloaded from the application if needed).
2) Product name.
3) Expected production date (The expected date on which the factory will start producing the product).

4) The maximum installed capacity and the expected production capacity per year based on the fixed HS code's unit of measure.

• Main raw materials: The main raw materials to be used in production and its source

• Main Machinery and Equipment: The main machinery and equipment to be used in production and its information.

• Manufacturing process: Brief on the manufacturing process explaining how materials are transformed from one state to another until reaching the final product, mentioning the types of materials used, the operations performed, and the machinery/equipment used in each step (if any) for each product.

Required Documents

•Photos of machinery/ equipment to be used
•Photos of products to be manufactured

Other Documents

•Law No. (81) of 2006 with respect to approving The Common Industrial Law of the GCC
•Ministerial Resolution No. (11) of 2009
•Operational requirements for the directorate of industrial developments activities

Municipality Affairs (Post) (191)

Approval Name	Description	Estimated Time
Site Approval for manufacturing activities (Type B)	Municipality Approval for the Commercial Registration address or the site in which the Activity will be practiced	3 Days

Fee Details (if any)

10 BD

License Information

General Conditions:
1. Size of shop/premises must be sufficient for the activity
2. Businesses may not carry out the activity outside the boundaries of the shop/ premises
3. It is prohibited to display or store any items or equipment outside the shop / premises boundary without prior approval from the Municipality. In the event of non-compliance, the Ministry of Municipality Affairs has the right to take necessary action.
4. Maintain cleanliness of the site
5. Comply with the parking space regulations as per the Construction Regulatory Requirements

Activity Specific Conditions:
1. The Commercial Registration for this activity can only be registered in service and industrial streets/areas

Note: Uploading pictures of the site/shop may expedite the process of obtaining approval

Required Documents

- Lease agreement (after obtaining the necessary approvals from other licensing entities)
- Shop photos

Other Documents

- Cabinet's Decision (56) of the year 2022 regarding the Regulatory Requirements of Construction for various areas in the Kingdom of Bahrain

Supreme Council for Environment (Post) (191)

Approval Name	Description	Estimated Time
Environmental Approval for Manufacture of coke oven products activity	This service aims to assess the environmental impact and licensing of development, industrial and production projects and activities, in accordance with the standards of protecting the environment and its natural resources	10 Days

Fee Details (if any)

- 30 Bahraini Dinars or 200 Bahraini Dinars for the fast-track procedure (when the data requested within the EA-2 form is sufficient without the need for additional studies)
- 4000 Bahraini Dinars or 6000 Bahraini Dinars for the fast track procedure (when it is necessary to submit an environmental impact assessment study for the project), with an additional payment of 100 Bahraini Dinars when it is necessary to submit a proposal for the scope of the study before submitting it or 500 Bahraini Dinars for a fast track procedure when the proposed scope of the study is being submitted before the study

License Information

To check the requirements for this approval, kindly download the detailed requirements sheet from the other downloadable documents section, which includes the following requirements:

- Building layout engineering and equipment requirements
- Workplace requirements
- Storage requirements
- Material management requirements
- Waste Management Requirements

- Documents and reporting requirements
- General requirements

Other Documents

•Annex to the Minister of Housing, Municipalities and Environment order regarding the project's environmental assessment
•Law No. (2) of 2021 regarding the environmental standards of air as decided by the Chairman of the Supreme Council for Environment
•Law No. (3) of 2021 regarding the environmental standards of water as decided by the Chairman of the Supreme Council for the Environment
•Law No. (54) of 2014 regarding the approval of the unified law regarding substances that deplete the ozone layer for the GCC countries
•Law No. (7) of 2022 regarding the environment
•Ministerial Order No. (1) of 1998 regarding Project's Environmental Assessment
•Ministerial Order No. (1) of 1998 regarding Project's Environmental Assessment
•Ministerial Order No. (10) of 2006 regarding the installation of devices for on-line monitoring of atmospheric air pollutants
•Ministerial Order No. (3) of 2005 regarding environmental requirements and standards in workplaces, especially regarding workers' exposure to heat and noise, and the provision of tools and protective clothing such as gloves, glasses, face masks and earplugs, with a commitment to use them during work
•Ministerial Order No. (3) of 2006 regarding the management of hazardous waste
•Ministerial Order No. (4) of 2005 regarding the management of used oils
•Ministerial Order No. (4) of 2006 regarding the management of hazardous chemicals
•Ministerial Order No. (4) of 2021 regarding the fees of the licenses and services provided by the Supreme Council for Environment
•Ministerial Order No. (6) of 2013 amending order No. (4) of 2006 regarding the management of hazardous chemicals
•Ministerial Order No. (7) of 2002 regarding the control importation and use of prohibited and severely restricted chemicals, and not to import any chemical compound except after obtaining approvals of all concerned authorities, including the executive body of the Supreme Council for Environment
•Ministerial Order No. (7) of 2013 amending order No. (3) of 2006 regarding the management of hazardous waste
•Ministerial Order No. 4 of 2014 regarding the management of the environmental consulting offices operations in the Kingdom of Bahrain
•Order No. (2) of 2020 determining the categories of fees for licensing refrigeration media, refrigeration units and air conditioning units as decided by the Chairman of the Supreme Council for the Environment
•Requirements for business activities
•law No. (1) of 2020 regarding the management of refrigeration media, refrigeration units and air conditioning units as decided by the Chairman of the Supreme Council for the Environment
•law No. (1) of 2020 regarding the management of refrigeration media, refrigeration

units and air conditioning units as decided by the Chairman of the Supreme Council for the Environment

Directorate Of Industrial Developments (Final Site Inspection) (191)

Approval Name	Description	Estimated Time
Notification Only	Notification to the Industrial development directorate on obtaining a commercial registration with the license to practice the activity.	There is no License Information in this license. Days

Fee Details (if any)

There is no Estimated Processing Time (Days) in this license.

License Information

The industrial license is automatically issued by the Industrial development Directorate after obtaining the approval of other licensing/approving entities.

Please ensure that the actual production date does no exceed the expected production date.

If actual production will start on or before the expected production date please apply for a “New Industrial Registration” by following the steps below:

1- Visit the Industrial services system (www.industry.bh).
2- Select “Industrial Registration”.
3- Select “New Registration” application.

In the event that the actual production date will exceed the expected production date an “Extension of expected production date” application must be submitted by following the steps below:

1- Visit the Industrial services system (www.industry.bh).

2- Select “Industrial License”.
3- Select “Extension of expected production date” application.

Please note that failure to do so within 60 days from the expected production date will result in a violation to be added.

Other Documents

- Law No. (81) of 2006 with respect to approving The Common Industrial Law of the GCC
- Ministerial Resolution No. (11) of 2009 with respect to promulgating Implementing Regulation
- Operational requirements for the directorate of industrial developments activities

Manufacturing

ISIC4	Business activity
192	Manufacture of refined petroleum products

Description

This activity includes the manufacture of liquid or gaseous fuels or other products from crude petroleum, bituminous minerals or their fractionation products. Petroleum refining involves one or more of the following activities: fractionation, straight distillation of crude oil, and cracking.This activity includes:
- production of motor fuel: gasoline, kerosene etc.
- production of fuel: light, medium and heavy fuel oil, refinery gases such as ethane, propane, butane etc.
- manufacture of oil-based lubricating oils or greases, including from waste oil
- manufacture of products for the petrochemical industry and for the manufacture of road coverings
- manufacture of various products: Vaseline, paraffin wax, petroleum jelly etc.
- manufacture of hard-coal and lignite fuel briquettes
- manufacture of petroleum briquettes
- blending of biofuels, i.e. blending of alcohols with petroleum (e.g. gasohol)

Business Requirements

Age

18 and above

Allowed for Nationalities

Bahraini 100%		GCC 100%	
American 100%		Singaporean 100%	
Icelander 100%		Liechtenstein er 100%	
Norwegian 100%		Swiss 100%	

Foreign Allowed up to 100%

Legal Type

It is allowed to register according to the legal forms mentioned below

Allowed for Individual Commercial Registration (ICR) : Yes

Allowed for Company Commercial Registration (CCR) : Yes

- Bahrain Shareholding Company (Public)
- With Limited Liability Company
- Branch of a Foreign Company
- Bahrain Shareholding Company (Closed)
- Partnership Company
- Simple Commandite Company
- Commandite By Shares Company
- Non Profit Company

Required Step of Licenses and Approvals

Ministry / Directorate	License / Approval Requirements	Approval Type
Directorate Of Industrial Developments	Approval by Directorate of Industrial	Pre

	Developments(Pre)	
Supreme Council for Environment	Environmental Approval for Manufacture of refined petroleum products activity	Post
Municipality Affairs	Site Approval for manufacturing activities (Type C)	Post
Directorate Of Industrial Developments	Notification Only	Final Site Inspection

Directorate Of Industrial Developments (Pre) (192)

Approval Name	Description	Estimated Time
Approval by Directorate of Industrial Developments(Pre)	This is a preliminary approval given by the Directorate of Industrial Development to ensure that the applicant has selected the appropriate activity based on the information provided	5 Days

Fee Details (if any)

There is no Estimated Processing Time (Days) in this license.

License Information

Applicants would have to provide through the system the following information:

General Information:

- Total Amount Invested in the Project (This should include value of machinery and fixed assets)
- Estimated number of workforce (Bahraini and Non-Bahraini)
- Expected utility consumption of electricity, water and natural gas
- Total area of the project

Activity Information:

- Product Information:

1) The products to be manufactured by choosing the appropriate HS codes (HS code list can be downloaded from the application if needed).
2) Product name.
3) Expected production date (The expected date on which the factory will start producing the product).

4) The maximum installed capacity and the expected production capacity per year based on the fixed HS code's unit of measure.

• Main raw materials: The main raw materials to be used in production and its source

• Main Machinery and Equipment: The main machinery and equipment to be used in production and its information.

• Manufacturing process: Brief on the manufacturing process explaining how materials are transformed from one state to another until reaching the final product, mentioning the types of materials used, the operations performed, and the machinery/equipment used in each step (if any) for each product.

Required Documents

•Photos of machinery/ equipment to be used
•Photos of products to be manufactured

Other Documents

•Law No. (81) of 2006 with respect to approving The Common Industrial Law of the GCC
•Ministerial Resolution No. (11) of 2009
•Operational requirements for the directorate of industrial developments activities

Supreme Council for Environment (Post) (192)

Approval Name	Description	Estimated Time
Environmental Approval for Manufacture of refined petroleum products activity	This service aims to assess the environmental impact and licensing of development, industrial and production projects and activities, in accordance with the standards of protecting the environment and its natural resources	10 Days

Fee Details (if any)

- 30 Bahraini Dinars or 200 Bahraini Dinars for the fast-track procedure (when the data requested within the EA-2 form is sufficient without the need for additional studies)
- 4000 Bahraini Dinars or 6000 Bahraini Dinars for the fast track procedure (when it is necessary to submit an environmental impact assessment study for the project), with an additional payment of 100 Bahraini Dinars when it is necessary to submit a proposal for the scope of the study before submitting it or 500 Bahraini Dinars for a fast track procedure when the proposed scope of the study is being submitted before the study

License Information

To check the requirements for this approval, kindly download the detailed requirements sheet from the other downloadable documents section, which includes the following requirements:

- Building layout engineering and equipment requirements
- Workplace requirements
- Storage requirements
- Material management requirements
- Waste Management Requirements

- Documents and reporting requirements
- General requirements

Other Documents

- Annex to the Minister of Housing, Municipalities and Environment order regarding the project's environmental assessment
- Law No. (2) of 2021 regarding the environmental standards of air as decided by the Chairman of the Supreme Council for Environment
- Law No. (3) of 2021 regarding the environmental standards of water as decided by the Chairman of the Supreme Council for the Environment
- Law No. (54) of 2014 regarding the approval of the unified law regarding substances that deplete the ozone layer for the GCC countries
- Law No. (7) of 2022 regarding the environment
- Ministerial Order No. (1) of 1998 regarding Project's Environmental Assessment
- Ministerial Order No. (10) of 2006 regarding the installation of devices for on-line monitoring of atmospheric air pollutants
- Ministerial Order No. (11) of 2019 regarding the issue of technical specification of plastic products
- Ministerial Order No. (3) of 2005 regarding environmental requirements and standards in workplaces, especially regarding workers' exposure to heat and noise, and the provision of tools and protective clothing such as gloves, glasses, face masks and earplugs, with a commitment to use them during work
- Ministerial Order No. (3) of 2006 regarding the management of hazardous waste
- Ministerial Order No. (4) of 2005 regarding the management of used oils
- Ministerial Order No. (4) of 2006 regarding the management of hazardous chemicals
- Ministerial Order No. (4) of 2021 regarding the fees of the licenses and services provided by the Supreme Council for Environment
- Ministerial Order No. (6) of 2013 amending order No. (4) of 2006 regarding the management of hazardous chemicals
- Ministerial Order No. (7) of 2002 regarding the control importation and use of prohibited and severely restricted chemicals, and not to import any chemical compound except after obtaining approvals of all concerned authorities, including the executive body of the Supreme Council for Environment
- Ministerial Order No. (7) of 2013 amending order No. (3) of 2006 regarding the management of hazardous waste
- Ministerial Order No. 4 of 2014 regarding the management of the environmental consulting offices operations in the Kingdom of Bahrain
- Order No. (2) of 2020 determining the categories of fees for licensing refrigeration media, refrigeration units and air conditioning units as decided by the Chairman of the Supreme Council for the Environment
- Requirements for business activities
- law No. (1) of 2020 regarding the management of refrigeration media, refrigeration units and air conditioning units as decided by the Chairman of the Supreme Council for the Environment

•law No. (2) of 2019 regarding the ban on the import of plastic waste of all kinds as decided by the Chairman of the Supreme Council for the Environment

Municipality Affairs (Post) (192)

Approval Name	Description	Estimated Time
Site Approval for manufacturing activities (Type C)	Municipality Approval for the Commercial Registration address or the site in which the Activity will be practiced	3 Days

Fee Details (if any)

10 BD

License Information

General Conditions:
1. Size of shop/premises must be sufficient for the activity
2. Businesses may not carry out the activity outside the boundaries of the shop/ premises
3. It is prohibited to display or store any items or equipment outside the shop / premises boundary without prior approval from the Municipality. In the event of non-compliance, the Ministry of Municipality Affairs has the right to take necessary action.
4. Maintain cleanliness of the site
5. Comply with the parking space regulations as per the Construction Regulatory Requirements

Activity Specific Conditions:
1. The commercial registration for this activity can be registered on Industrial streets/ areas only

Note: Uploading pictures of the site/shop may expedite the process of obtaining approval

Required Documents

- Lease agreement (after obtaining the necessary approvals from other licensing entities)
- Shop photos

Other Documents

- Cabinet's Decision (93) of the year 2023 regarding the Regulatory Requirements of Construction for various areas in the Kingdom of Bahrain

Directorate Of Industrial Developments (Final Site Inspection) (192)

Approval Name	Description	Estimated Time
Notification Only	Notification to the Industrial development directorate on obtaining a commercial registration with the license to practice the activity.	There is no License Information in this license. Days

Fee Details (if any)

There is no Estimated Processing Time (Days) in this license.

License Information

The industrial license is automatically issued by the Industrial development Directorate after obtaining the approval of other licensing/approving entities.

Please ensure that the actual production date does no exceed the expected production date.

If actual production will start on or before the expected production date please apply for a “New Industrial Registration” by following the steps below:

1- Visit the Industrial services system (www.industry.bh).
2- Select “Industrial Registration”.
3- Select “New Registration” application.

In the event that the actual production date will exceed the expected production date an “Extension of expected production date” application must be submitted by following the steps below:

1- Visit the Industrial services system (www.industry.bh).

2- Select “Industrial License”.
3- Select “Extension of expected production date” application.

Please note that failure to do so within 60 days from the expected production date will result in a violation to be added.

Other Documents

- Law No. (81) of 2006 with respect to approving The Common Industrial Law of the GCC
- Ministerial Resolution No. (11) of 2009 with respect to promulgating Implementing Regulation
- Operational requirements for the directorate of industrial developments activities

Manufacturing

ISIC4	Business activity
2011	Manufacture of basic chemicals

Description

This activity includes the manufacture of chemicals using basic processes, such as thermal cracking and distillation. The output of these processes are usually separate chemical elements or separate chemically defined compounds.
This activity includes:
- manufacture of liquefied or compressed inorganic industrial or medical gases
- manufacture of dyes and pigments from any source in basic form or as concentrate
- manufacture of chemical elements
- manufacture of inorganic acids except nitric acid
- manufacture of alkalis, lyes and other inorganic bases except ammonia
- manufacture of other inorganic compounds
- manufacture of basic organic chemicals:
- manufacture of distilled water
- manufacture of synthetic aromatic products
- roasting of iron pyrites
- manufacture of products of a kind used as fluorescent brightening agents or as luminophores
- enrichment of uranium and thorium ores and production of fuel elements for nuclear reactors

Business Requirements

Age

18 and above

Allowed for Nationalities

Bahraini 100%		GCC 100%	
American 100%		Singaporean 100%	
Icelander 100%		Liechtenstein er 100%	
Norwegian 100%		Swiss 100%	

Foreign Allowed up to 100%

Legal Type

It is allowed to register according to the legal forms mentioned below

Allowed for Individual Commercial Registration (ICR) : Yes

Allowed for Company Commercial Registration (CCR) : Yes

- Bahrain Shareholding Company (Public)
- With Limited Liability Company
- Branch of a Foreign Company
- Bahrain Shareholding Company (Closed)
- Partnership Company
- Simple Commandite Company
- Commandite By Shares Company
- Non Profit Company

Required Step of Licenses and Approvals

Ministry / Directorate	License / Approval Requirements	Approval Type
General Directorate Of Criminal Investigation	Approval by General Directorate of Criminal	Pre

	Investigation	
Directorate Of Industrial Developments	Approval by Directorate of Industrial Developments(Pre)	Pre
Supreme Council for Environment	Environmental Approval for Manufacture of basic chemicals activity	Post
Municipality Affairs	Site Approval for manufacturing activities (Type C)	Post
Directorate Of Industrial Developments	Notification Only	Final Site Inspection

General Directorate Of Criminal Investigation (Pre) (2011)

Approval Name	Description	Estimated Time
Approval by General Directorate of Criminal Investigation	General Directorate of Criminal Investigation Approval for the Activity	7 Days

Fee Details (if any)

There is no Estimated Processing Time (Days) in this license.

License Information

- The applicant should not have a criminal record, unless they have been rehabilitated in criminal cases

Directorate Of Industrial Developments (Pre) (2011)

Approval Name	Description	Estimated Time
Approval by Directorate of Industrial Developments(Pre)	This is a preliminary approval given by the Directorate of Industrial Development to ensure that the applicant has selected the appropriate activity based on the information provided	5 Days

Fee Details (if any)

There is no Estimated Processing Time (Days) in this license.

License Information

Applicants would have to provide through the system the following information:

General Information:

- Total Amount Invested in the Project (This should include value of machinery and fixed assets)
- Estimated number of workforce (Bahraini and Non-Bahraini)
- Expected utility consumption of electricity, water and natural gas
- Total area of the project

Activity Information:

- Product Information:

1) The products to be manufactured by choosing the appropriate HS codes (HS code list can be downloaded from the application if needed).
2) Product name.
3) Expected production date (The expected date on which the factory will start producing the product).

4) The maximum installed capacity and the expected production capacity per year based on the fixed HS code's unit of measure.

• Main raw materials: The main raw materials to be used in production and its source

• Main Machinery and Equipment: The main machinery and equipment to be used in production and its information.

• Manufacturing process: Brief on the manufacturing process explaining how materials are transformed from one state to another until reaching the final product, mentioning the types of materials used, the operations performed, and the machinery/equipment used in each step (if any) for each product.

Required Documents

•Photos of machinery/ equipment to be used
•Photos of products to be manufactured

Other Documents

•Law No. (81) of 2006 with respect to approving The Common Industrial Law of the GCC
•Ministerial Resolution No. (11) of 2009
•Operational requirements for the directorate of industrial developments activities

Supreme Council for Environment (Post) (2011)

Approval Name	Description	Estimated Time
Environmental Approval for Manufacture of basic chemicals activity	This service aims to assess the environmental impact and licensing of development, industrial and production projects and activities, in accordance with the standards of protecting the environment and its natural resources	10 Days

Fee Details (if any)

- 30 Bahraini Dinars or 200 Bahraini Dinars for the fast-track procedure (when the data requested within the EA-2 form is sufficient without the need for additional studies)
- 4000 Bahraini Dinars or 6000 Bahraini Dinars for the fast track procedure (when it is necessary to submit an environmental impact assessment study for the project), with an additional payment of 100 Bahraini Dinars when it is necessary to submit a proposal for the scope of the study before submitting it or 500 Bahraini Dinars for a fast track procedure when the proposed scope of the study is being submitted before the study

License Information

To check the requirements for this approval, kindly download the detailed requirements sheet from the other downloadable documents section, which includes the following requirements:

- Building layout engineering and equipment requirements
- Workplace requirements
- Storage requirements
- Material management requirements
- Waste Management Requirements

- Documents and reporting requirements
- General requirements

Other Documents

- Annex to the Minister of Housing, Municipalities and Environment order regarding the project's environmental assessment
- Law No. (2) of 2021 regarding the environmental standards of air as decided by the Chairman of the Supreme Council for Environment
- Law No. (3) of 2021 regarding the environmental standards of water as decided by the Chairman of the Supreme Council for the Environment
- Law No. (54) of 2014 regarding the approval of the unified law regarding substances that deplete the ozone layer for the GCC countries
- Law No. (7) of 2022 regarding the environment
- Ministerial Order No. (1) of 1998 regarding Project's Environmental Assessment
- Ministerial Order No. (10) of 2006 regarding the installation of devices for on-line monitoring of atmospheric air pollutants
- Ministerial Order No. (11) of 2019 regarding the issue of technical specification of plastic products
- Ministerial Order No. (3) of 2005 regarding environmental requirements and standards in workplaces, especially regarding workers' exposure to heat and noise, and the provision of tools and protective clothing such as gloves, glasses, face masks and earplugs, with a commitment to use them during work
- Ministerial Order No. (3) of 2006 regarding the management of hazardous waste
- Ministerial Order No. (4) of 2005 regarding the management of used oils
- Ministerial Order No. (4) of 2006 regarding the management of hazardous chemicals
- Ministerial Order No. (4) of 2021 regarding the fees of the licenses and services provided by the Supreme Council for Environment
- Ministerial Order No. (6) of 2013 amending order No. (4) of 2006 regarding the management of hazardous chemicals
- Ministerial Order No. (7) of 2002 regarding the control importation and use of prohibited and severely restricted chemicals, and not to import any chemical compound except after obtaining approvals of all concerned authorities, including the executive body of the Supreme Council for Environment
- Ministerial Order No. (7) of 2013 amending order No. (3) of 2006 regarding the management of hazardous waste
- Ministerial Order No. 4 of 2014 regarding the management of the environmental consulting offices operations in the Kingdom of Bahrain
- Order No. (2) of 2020 determining the categories of fees for licensing refrigeration media, refrigeration units and air conditioning units as decided by the Chairman of the Supreme Council for the Environment
- Requirements for business activities
- law No. (1) of 2020 regarding the management of refrigeration media, refrigeration units and air conditioning units as decided by the Chairman of the Supreme Council for the Environment

•law No. (2) of 2019 regarding the ban on the import of plastic waste of all kinds as decided by the Chairman of the Supreme Council for the Environment

Municipality Affairs (Post) (2011)

Approval Name	Description	Estimated Time
Site Approval for manufacturing activities (Type C)	Municipality Approval for the Commercial Registration address or the site in which the Activity will be practiced	3 Days

Fee Details (if any)

10 BD

License Information

General Conditions:
1. Size of shop/premises must be sufficient for the activity
2. Businesses may not carry out the activity outside the boundaries of the shop/ premises
3. It is prohibited to display or store any items or equipment outside the shop / premises boundary without prior approval from the Municipality. In the event of non-compliance, the Ministry of Municipality Affairs has the right to take necessary action.
4. Maintain cleanliness of the site
5. Comply with the parking space regulations as per the Construction Regulatory Requirements

Activity Specific Conditions:
1. The commercial registration for this activity can be registered on Industrial streets/ areas only

Note: Uploading pictures of the site/shop may expedite the process of obtaining approval

Required Documents

- Lease agreement (after obtaining the necessary approvals from other licensing entities)
- Shop photos

Other Documents

- Cabinet's Decision (93) of the year 2023 regarding the Regulatory Requirements of Construction for various areas in the Kingdom of Bahrain

Directorate Of Industrial Developments (Final Site Inspection) (2011)

Approval Name	Description	Estimated Time
Notification Only	Notification to the Industrial development directorate on obtaining a commercial registration with the license to practice the activity.	There is no License Information in this license. Days

Fee Details (if any)

There is no Estimated Processing Time (Days) in this license.

License Information

The industrial license is automatically issued by the Industrial development Directorate after obtaining the approval of other licensing/approving entities.

Please ensure that the actual production date does no exceed the expected production date.

If actual production will start on or before the expected production date please apply for a “New Industrial Registration” by following the steps below:

1- Visit the Industrial services system (www.industry.bh).
2- Select “Industrial Registration”.
3- Select “New Registration” application.

In the event that the actual production date will exceed the expected production date an “Extension of expected production date” application must be submitted by following the steps below:

1- Visit the Industrial services system (www.industry.bh).

2- Select “Industrial License”.
3- Select “Extension of expected production date” application.

Please note that failure to do so within 60 days from the expected production date will result in a violation to be added.

Other Documents

- Law No. (81) of 2006 with respect to approving The Common Industrial Law of the GCC
- Ministerial Resolution No. (11) of 2009 with respect to promulgating Implementing Regulation
- Operational requirements for the directorate of industrial developments activities

Manufacturing

ISIC4	Business activity
2012-1	Manufacture of fertilizers and nitrogen compounds - Workshop

Description

This activity includes:
- manufacture of fertilizers:
· straight or complex nitrogenous, phosphatic or potassic fertilizers
· urea, crude natural phosphates and crude natural potassium salts
- manufacture of associated nitrogen products:
· nitric and sulphonitric acids, ammonia, ammonium chloride, ammonium carbonate, nitrites and nitrates of potassium
- manufacture of potting soil with peat as main constituent
- manufacture of potting soil mixtures of natural soil, sand, clays and minerals

Business Requirements

Age

18 and above

Allowed for Nationalities

Bahraini 100%	GCC 100%
American 100%	Singaporean 100%
Icelander 100%	Liechtensteiner 100%
Norwegian 100%	Swiss 100%

Foreign Allowed up to 100%

Legal Type

It is allowed to register according to the legal forms mentioned below

Allowed for Individual Commercial Registration (ICR) : Yes

Allowed for Company Commercial Registration (CCR) : Yes

- Bahrain Shareholding Company (Public)
- With Limited Liability Company
- Branch of a Foreign Company
- Bahrain Shareholding Company (Closed)
- Partnership Company
- Simple Commandite Company
- Commandite By Shares Company
- Non Profit Company

Required Step of Licenses and Approvals

Ministry / Directorate	License / Approval Requirements	Approval Type
Supreme Council for Environment	Environmental Approval for Manufacture of fertilizers and nitrogenous compounds - workshop activity	Post
Municipality Affairs	Site Approval for manufacturing activities (Type C)	Post

Supreme Council for Environment (Post) (2012-1)

Approval Name	Description	Estimated Time
Environmental Approval for Manufacture of fertilizers and nitrogenous compounds - workshop activity	This service aims to assess the environmental impact and licensing of development, industrial and production projects and activities, in accordance with the standards of protecting the environment and its natural resources	10 Days

Fee Details (if any)

- 30 Bahraini Dinars or 200 Bahraini Dinars for the fast-track procedure (when the data requested within the EA-2 form is sufficient without the need for additional studies)
- 4000 Bahraini Dinars or 6000 Bahraini Dinars for the fast track procedure (when it is necessary to submit an environmental impact assessment study for the project), with an additional payment of 100 Bahraini Dinars when it is necessary to submit a proposal for the scope of the study before submitting it or 500 Bahraini Dinars for a fast track procedure when the proposed scope of the study is being submitted before the study

License Information

To check the requirements for this approval, kindly download the detailed requirements sheet from the other downloadable documents section, which includes the following requirements:

- Building layout engineering and equipment requirements
- Workplace requirements
- Storage requirements
- Material management requirements
- Waste Management Requirements

- Documents and reporting requirements
- General requirements

Other Documents

•Annex to the Minister of Housing, Municipalities and Environment order regarding the project's environmental assessment
•Law No. (2) of 2021 regarding the environmental standards of air as decided by the Chairman of the Supreme Council for Environment
•Law No. (3) of 2021 regarding the environmental standards of water as decided by the Chairman of the Supreme Council for the Environment
•Law No. (5) of 2021 regarding CITES Annexes to the Convention on International Trade in Endangered Fauna and Flora
•Law No. (54) of 2014 regarding the approval of the unified law regarding substances that deplete the ozone layer for the GCC countries
•Law No. (7) of 2022 regarding the environment
•Ministerial Order No. (1) of 1998 regarding Project's Environmental Assessment
•Ministerial Order No. (10) of 2006 regarding the installation of devices for on-line monitoring of atmospheric air pollutants
•Ministerial Order No. (11) of 2019 regarding the issue of technical specification of plastic products
•Ministerial Order No. (3) of 2005 regarding environmental requirements and standards in workplaces, especially regarding workers' exposure to heat and noise, and the provision of tools and protective clothing such as gloves, glasses, face masks and earplugs, with a commitment to use them during work
•Ministerial Order No. (3) of 2006 regarding the management of hazardous waste
•Ministerial Order No. (4) of 2005 regarding the management of used oils
•Ministerial Order No. (4) of 2006 regarding the management of hazardous chemicals
•Ministerial Order No. (4) of 2021 regarding the fees of the licenses and services provided by the Supreme Council for Environment
•Ministerial Order No. (6) of 2013 amending order No. (4) of 2006 regarding the management of hazardous chemicals
•Ministerial Order No. (7) of 2002 regarding the control importation and use of prohibited and severely restricted chemicals, and not to import any chemical compound except after obtaining approvals of all concerned authorities, including the executive body of the Supreme Council for Environment
•Ministerial Order No. (7) of 2013 amending order No. (3) of 2006 regarding the management of hazardous waste
•Ministerial Order No. 4 of 2014 regarding the management of the environmental consulting offices operations in the Kingdom of Bahrain
•Order No. (2) of 2020 determining the categories of fees for licensing refrigeration media, refrigeration units and air conditioning units as decided by the Chairman of the Supreme Council for the Environment
•Requirements for business activities
•law No. (1) of 2020 regarding the management of refrigeration media, refrigeration

units and air conditioning units as decided by the Chairman of the Supreme Council for the Environment
•law No. (2) of 2019 regarding the ban on the import of plastic waste of all kinds as decided by the Chairman of the Supreme Council for the Environment
•law No. (204) of 2018 regarding banning the export of some types of local fishes, shrimps and other aquatic organisms, and coordinating with the Agriculture and Marine Resources at the Ministry of Works, Municipalities and Urban Planning regarding the import and export of some species

Municipality Affairs (Post) (2012-1)

Approval Name	Description	Estimated Time
Site Approval for manufacturing activities (Type C)	Municipality Approval for the Commercial Registration address or the site in which the Activity will be practiced	3 Days

Fee Details (if any)

10 BD

License Information

General Conditions:
1. Size of shop/premises must be sufficient for the activity
2. Businesses may not carry out the activity outside the boundaries of the shop/ premises
3. It is prohibited to display or store any items or equipment outside the shop / premises boundary without prior approval from the Municipality. In the event of non-compliance, the Ministry of Municipality Affairs has the right to take necessary action.
4. Maintain cleanliness of the site
5. Comply with the parking space regulations as per the Construction Regulatory Requirements

Activity Specific Conditions:
1. The commercial registration for this activity can be registered on Industrial streets/ areas only

Note: Uploading pictures of the site/shop may expedite the process of obtaining approval

Required Documents

- Lease agreement (after obtaining the necessary approvals from other licensing entities)
- Shop photos

Other Documents

- Cabinet's Decision (93) of the year 2023 regarding the Regulatory Requirements of Construction for various areas in the Kingdom of Bahrain

Manufacturing

ISIC4	Business activity
2012-2	Manufacture of fertilizers and nitrogen compounds - Factory

Description

This activity includes:
- manufacture of fertilizers:
· straight or complex nitrogenous, phosphatic or potassic fertilizers
· urea, crude natural phosphates and crude natural potassium salts
- manufacture of associated nitrogen products:
· nitric and sulphonitric acids, ammonia, ammonium chloride, ammonium carbonate, nitrites and nitrates of potassium
- manufacture of potting soil with peat as main constituent
- manufacture of potting soil mixtures of natural soil, sand, clays and minerals

Business Requirements

Age

18 and above

Allowed for Nationalities

Bahraini 100%	GCC 100%
American 100%	Singaporean 100%
Icelander 100%	Liechtenstein er 100%
Norwegian 100%	Swiss 100%

Foreign Allowed up to 100%

Legal Type

It is allowed to register according to the legal forms mentioned below

Allowed for Individual Commercial Registration (ICR) : Yes

Allowed for Company Commercial Registration (CCR) : Yes

- Bahrain Shareholding Company (Public)
- With Limited Liability Company
- Branch of a Foreign Company
- Bahrain Shareholding Company (Closed)
- Partnership Company
- Simple Commandite Company
- Commandite By Shares Company
- Non Profit Company

Required Step of Licenses and Approvals

Ministry / Directorate	License / Approval Requirements	Approval Type
Directorate Of Industrial Developments	Approval by Directorate of Industrial Developments(Pre)	Pre
Supreme Council for Environment	Environmental Approval for Manufacture of fertilizers and nitrogenous compounds - factory activity	Post
Municipality Affairs	Site Approval for manufacturing activities (Type C)	Post
Directorate Of Industrial Developments	Notification Only	Final Site Inspection

Directorate Of Industrial Developments (Pre) (2012-2)

Approval Name	Description	Estimated Time
Approval by Directorate of Industrial Developments(Pre)	This is a preliminary approval given by the Directorate of Industrial Development to ensure that the applicant has selected the appropriate activity based on the information provided	5 Days

Fee Details (if any)

There is no Estimated Processing Time (Days) in this license.

License Information

Applicants would have to provide through the system the following information:

General Information:

- Total Amount Invested in the Project (This should include value of machinery and fixed assets)
- Estimated number of workforce (Bahraini and Non-Bahraini)
- Expected utility consumption of electricity, water and natural gas
- Total area of the project

Activity Information:

- Product Information:

1) The products to be manufactured by choosing the appropriate HS codes (HS code list can be downloaded from the application if needed).
2) Product name.
3) Expected production date (The expected date on which the factory will start producing the product).

4) The maximum installed capacity and the expected production capacity per year based on the fixed HS code's unit of measure.

• Main raw materials: The main raw materials to be used in production and its source

• Main Machinery and Equipment: The main machinery and equipment to be used in production and its information.

• Manufacturing process: Brief on the manufacturing process explaining how materials are transformed from one state to another until reaching the final product, mentioning the types of materials used, the operations performed, and the machinery/equipment used in each step (if any) for each product.

Required Documents

•Photos of machinery/ equipment to be used
•Photos of products to be manufactured

Other Documents

•Law No. (81) of 2006 with respect to approving The Common Industrial Law of the GCC
•Ministerial Resolution No. (11) of 2009
•Operational requirements for the directorate of industrial developments activities

Supreme Council for Environment (Post) (2012-2)

Approval Name	Description	Estimated Time
Environmental Approval for Manufacture of fertilizers and nitrogenous compounds - factory activity	This service aims to assess the environmental impact and licensing of development, industrial and production projects and activities, in accordance with the standards of protecting the environment and its natural resources	10 Days

Fee Details (if any)

1. 30 or 200 BD for the quick procedure (when the data contained in the environmental assessment form EA-2 suffices without the need for additional studies)
2. 4000 or 6000 BD for the quick procedure (when requesting to submit an environmental impact assessment study for the project) + with the addition of “100 BD when requesting to submit a proposal for the scope of the study before submitting the study or 500 BD for the quick procedure when requesting to submit a proposal for the scope of the study before submitting the study.”

License Information

To check the requirements for this approval, kindly download the detailed requirements sheet from the other downloadable documents section, which includes the following requirements:

- Building layout engineering and equipment requirements
- Workplace requirements
- Storage requirements
- Material management requirements
- Waste Management Requirements
- Documents and reporting requirements

• General requirements

Other Documents

•Annex to the Minister of Housing, Municipalities and Environment order regarding the project's environmental assessment
•Law No. (2) of 2021 regarding the environmental standards of air as decided by the Chairman of the Supreme Council for Environment
•Law No. (3) of 2021 regarding the environmental standards of water as decided by the Chairman of the Supreme Council for the Environment
•Law No. (5) of 2021 regarding CITES Annexes to the Convention on International Trade in Endangered Fauna and Flora
•Law No. (54) of 2014 regarding the approval of the unified law regarding substances that deplete the ozone layer for the GCC countries
•Law No. (7) of 2022 regarding the environment
•Law No. (7) of 2022 regarding the environment
•Ministerial Order No. (1) of 1998 regarding Project's Environmental Assessment
•Ministerial Order No. (10) of 2006 regarding the installation of devices for on-line monitoring of atmospheric air pollutants
•Ministerial Order No. (11) of 2019 regarding the issue of technical specification of plastic products
•Ministerial Order No. (3) of 2005 regarding environmental requirements and standards in workplaces, especially regarding workers' exposure to heat and noise, and the provision of tools and protective clothing such as gloves, glasses, face masks and earplugs, with a commitment to use them during work
•Ministerial Order No. (3) of 2006 regarding the management of hazardous waste
•Ministerial Order No. (4) of 2005 regarding the management of used oils
•Ministerial Order No. (4) of 2006 regarding the management of hazardous chemicals
•Ministerial Order No. (4) of 2021 regarding the fees of the licenses and services provided by the Supreme Council for Environment
•Ministerial Order No. (6) of 2013 amending order No. (4) of 2006 regarding the management of hazardous chemicals
•Ministerial Order No. (7) of 2002 regarding the control importation and use of prohibited and severely restricted chemicals, and not to import any chemical compound except after obtaining approvals of all concerned authorities, including the executive body of the Supreme Council for Environment
•Ministerial Order No. (7) of 2013 amending order No. (3) of 2006 regarding the management of hazardous waste
•Ministerial Order No. 4 of 2014 regarding the management of the environmental consulting offices operations in the Kingdom of Bahrain
•Order No. (2) of 2020 determining the categories of fees for licensing refrigeration media, refrigeration units and air conditioning units as decided by the Chairman of the Supreme Council for the Environment
•Requirements for business activities
•law No. (1) of 2020 regarding the management of refrigeration media, refrigeration

units and air conditioning units as decided by the Chairman of the Supreme Council for the Environment
•law No. (2) of 2019 regarding the ban on the import of plastic waste of all kinds as decided by the Chairman of the Supreme Council for the Environment
•law No. (204) of 2018 regarding banning the export of some types of local fishes, shrimps and other aquatic organisms, and coordinating with the Agriculture and Marine Resources at the Ministry of Works, Municipalities and Urban Planning regarding the import and export of some species

Municipality Affairs (Post) (2012-2)

Approval Name	Description	Estimated Time
Site Approval for manufacturing activities (Type C)	Municipality Approval for the Commercial Registration address or the site in which the Activity will be practiced	3 Days

Fee Details (if any)

10 BD

License Information

General Conditions:
1. Size of shop/premises must be sufficient for the activity
2. Businesses may not carry out the activity outside the boundaries of the shop/ premises
3. It is prohibited to display or store any items or equipment outside the shop / premises boundary without prior approval from the Municipality. In the event of non-compliance, the Ministry of Municipality Affairs has the right to take necessary action.
4. Maintain cleanliness of the site
5. Comply with the parking space regulations as per the Construction Regulatory Requirements

Activity Specific Conditions:
1. The commercial registration for this activity can be registered on Industrial streets/ areas only

Note: Uploading pictures of the site/shop may expedite the process of obtaining approval

Required Documents

- Lease agreement (after obtaining the necessary approvals from other licensing entities)
- Shop photos

Other Documents

- Cabinet's Decision (93) of the year 2023 regarding the Regulatory Requirements of Construction for various areas in the Kingdom of Bahrain

Directorate Of Industrial Developments (Final Site Inspection) (2012-2)

Approval Name	Description	Estimated Time
Notification Only	Notification to the Industrial development directorate on obtaining a commercial registration with the license to practice the activity.	There is no License Information in this license. Days

Fee Details (if any)

There is no Estimated Processing Time (Days) in this license.

License Information

The industrial license is automatically issued by the Industrial development Directorate after obtaining the approval of other licensing/approving entities.

Please ensure that the actual production date does no exceed the expected production date.

If actual production will start on or before the expected production date please apply for a “New Industrial Registration” by following the steps below:

1- Visit the Industrial services system (www.industry.bh).
2- Select “Industrial Registration”.
3- Select “New Registration” application.

In the event that the actual production date will exceed the expected production date an “Extension of expected production date” application must be submitted by following the steps below:

1- Visit the Industrial services system (www.industry.bh).

2- Select “Industrial License”.
3- Select “Extension of expected production date” application.

Please note that failure to do so within 60 days from the expected production date will result in a violation to be added.

Other Documents

- Law No. (81) of 2006 with respect to approving The Common Industrial Law of the GCC
- Ministerial Resolution No. (11) of 2009 with respect to promulgating Implementing Regulation
- Operational requirements for the directorate of industrial developments activities

Manufacturing

ISIC4	Business activity
2013-1	Manufacture of plastics and synthetic rubber in primary forms - Workshop

Description

This activity includes the manufacture of resins, plastics materials and non-vulcanizable thermoplastic elastomers, the mixing and blending of resins on a custom basis, as well as the manufacture of non-customized synthetic resins.
This activity includes:
- manufacture of plastics in primary forms:
· polymers, including those of ethylene, propylene, styrene, vinyl chloride, vinyl acetate and acrylics
· polyamides
· phenolic and epoxide resins and polyurethanes
· alkyd and polyester resins and polyethers
· silicones
· ion-exchangers based on polymers
- manufacture of synthetic rubber in primary forms:
· synthetic rubber
· factice
- manufacture of mixtures of synthetic rubber and natural rubber or rubber-like gums (e.g. balata)
- manufacture of cellulose and its chemical derivatives

Business Requirements

Age

18 and above

Allowed for Nationalities

Bahraini 100%		GCC 100%	
American 100%		Singaporean 100%	
Icelander 100%		Liechtenstein er 100%	
Norwegian 100%		Swiss 100%	

Foreign Allowed up to 100%

Legal Type

It is allowed to register according to the legal forms mentioned below

Allowed for Individual Commercial Registration (ICR) : Yes

Allowed for Company Commercial Registration (CCR) : Yes

- Bahrain Shareholding Company (Public)
- With Limited Liability Company
- Branch of a Foreign Company
- Bahrain Shareholding Company (Closed)
- Partnership Company
- Simple Commandite Company
- Commandite By Shares Company
- Non Profit Company

Required Step of Licenses and Approvals

Ministry / Directorate	License / Approval Requirements	Approval Type
Municipality Affairs	Site Approval for manufacturing activities	Post

	(Type C)	
Supreme Council for Environment	Environmental Approval for Manufacture of plastics and synthetic rubber in their primary forms - workshop activity	Post

Municipality Affairs (Post) (2013-1)

Approval Name	Description	Estimated Time
Site Approval for manufacturing activities (Type C)	Municipality Approval for the Commercial Registration address or the site in which the Activity will be practiced	3 Days

Fee Details (if any)

10 BD

License Information

General Conditions:
1. Size of shop/premises must be sufficient for the activity
2. Businesses may not carry out the activity outside the boundaries of the shop/ premises
3. It is prohibited to display or store any items or equipment outside the shop / premises boundary without prior approval from the Municipality. In the event of non-compliance, the Ministry of Municipality Affairs has the right to take necessary action.
4. Maintain cleanliness of the site
5. Comply with the parking space regulations as per the Construction Regulatory Requirements

Activity Specific Conditions:
1. The commercial registration for this activity can be registered on Industrial streets/ areas only

Note: Uploading pictures of the site/shop may expedite the process of obtaining approval

Required Documents

- Lease agreement (after obtaining the necessary approvals from other licensing entities)
- Shop photos

Other Documents

- Cabinet's Decision (93) of the year 2023 regarding the Regulatory Requirements of Construction for various areas in the Kingdom of Bahrain

Supreme Council for Environment (Post) (2013-1)

Approval Name	Description	Estimated Time
Environmental Approval for Manufacture of plastics and synthetic rubber in their primary forms - workshop activity	This service aims to assess the environmental impact and licensing of development, industrial and production projects and activities, in accordance with the standards of protecting the environment and its natural resources	10 Days

Fee Details (if any)

- 30 Bahraini Dinars or 200 Bahraini Dinars for the fast-track procedure (when the data requested within the EA-2 form is sufficient without the need for additional studies)
- 4000 Bahraini Dinars or 6000 Bahraini Dinars for the fast track procedure (when it is necessary to submit an environmental impact assessment study for the project), with an additional payment of 100 Bahraini Dinars when it is necessary to submit a proposal for the scope of the study before submitting it or 500 Bahraini Dinars for a fast track procedure when the proposed scope of the study is being submitted before the study

License Information

To check the requirements for this approval, kindly download the detailed requirements sheet from the other downloadable documents section, which includes the following requirements:

- Building layout engineering and equipment requirements
- Workplace requirements
- Storage requirements
- Material management requirements
- Waste Management Requirements

- Documents and reporting requirements
- General requirements

Other Documents

- Annex to the Minister of Housing, Municipalities and Environment order regarding the project's environmental assessment
- Law No. (2) of 2021 regarding the environmental standards of air as decided by the Chairman of the Supreme Council for Environment
- Law No. (3) of 2021 regarding the environmental standards of water as decided by the Chairman of the Supreme Council for the Environment
- Law No. (54) of 2014 regarding the approval of the unified law regarding substances that deplete the ozone layer for the GCC countries
- Law No. (7) of 2022 regarding the environment
- Ministerial Order No. (1) of 1998 regarding Project's Environmental Assessment
- Ministerial Order No. (10) of 2006 regarding the installation of devices for on-line monitoring of atmospheric air pollutants
- Ministerial Order No. (11) of 2019 regarding the issue of technical specification of plastic products
- Ministerial Order No. (3) of 2005 regarding environmental requirements and standards in workplaces, especially regarding workers' exposure to heat and noise, and the provision of tools and protective clothing such as gloves, glasses, face masks and earplugs, with a commitment to use them during work
- Ministerial Order No. (3) of 2006 regarding the management of hazardous waste
- Ministerial Order No. (4) of 2005 regarding the management of used oils
- Ministerial Order No. (4) of 2006 regarding the management of hazardous chemicals
- Ministerial Order No. (4) of 2021 regarding the fees of the licenses and services provided by the Supreme Council for Environment
- Ministerial Order No. (6) of 2013 amending order No. (4) of 2006 regarding the management of hazardous chemicals
- Ministerial Order No. (7) of 2002 regarding the control importation and use of prohibited and severely restricted chemicals, and not to import any chemical compound except after obtaining approvals of all concerned authorities, including the executive body of the Supreme Council for Environment
- Ministerial Order No. (7) of 2013 amending order No. (3) of 2006 regarding the management of hazardous waste
- Ministerial Order No. 4 of 2014 regarding the management of the environmental consulting offices operations in the Kingdom of Bahrain
- Order No. (2) of 2020 determining the categories of fees for licensing refrigeration media, refrigeration units and air conditioning units as decided by the Chairman of the Supreme Council for the Environment
- Requirements for business activities
- law No. (1) of 2020 regarding the management of refrigeration media, refrigeration units and air conditioning units as decided by the Chairman of the Supreme Council for the Environment

•law No. (2) of 2019 regarding the ban on the import of plastic waste of all kinds as decided by the Chairman of the Supreme Council for the Environment

Manufacturing

ISIC4	Business activity
2013-2	Manufacture of plastics and synthetic rubber in primary forms - Factory

Description

This activity includes the manufacture of resins, plastics materials and non-vulcanizable thermoplastic elastomers, the mixing and blending of resins on a custom basis, as well as the manufacture of non-customized synthetic resins.
This activity includes:
- manufacture of plastics in primary forms:
· polymers, including those of ethylene, propylene, styrene, vinyl chloride, vinyl acetate and acrylics
· polyamides
· phenolic and epoxide resins and polyurethanes
· alkyd and polyester resins and polyethers
· silicones
· ion-exchangers based on polymers
- manufacture of synthetic rubber in primary forms:
· synthetic rubber
· factice
- manufacture of mixtures of synthetic rubber and natural rubber or rubber-like gums (e.g. balata)
- manufacture of cellulose and its chemical derivatives

Business Requirements

Age

18 and above

Allowed for Nationalities

Bahraini 100%		GCC 100%	
American 100%		Singaporean 100%	
Icelander 100%		Liechtenstein er 100%	
Norwegian 100%		Swiss 100%	

Foreign Allowed up to 100%

Legal Type

It is allowed to register according to the legal forms mentioned below

Allowed for Individual Commercial Registration (ICR) : Yes

Allowed for Company Commercial Registration (CCR) : Yes

- Bahrain Shareholding Company (Public)
- With Limited Liability Company
- Branch of a Foreign Company
- Bahrain Shareholding Company (Closed)
- Partnership Company
- Simple Commandite Company
- Commandite By Shares Company
- Non Profit Company

Required Step of Licenses and Approvals

Ministry / Directorate	License / Approval Requirements	Approval Type
Directorate Of Industrial Developments	Approval by Directorate of Industrial	Pre

	Developments(Pre)	
Supreme Council for Environment	Environmental Approval for Manufacture of plastics and synthetic rubber in their primary forms - factory activity	Post
Municipality Affairs	Site Approval for manufacturing activities (Type C)	Post
Directorate Of Industrial Developments	Notification Only	Final Site Inspection

Directorate Of Industrial Developments (Pre) (2013-2)

Approval Name	Description	Estimated Time
Approval by Directorate of Industrial Developments(Pre)	This is a preliminary approval given by the Directorate of Industrial Development to ensure that the applicant has selected the appropriate activity based on the information provided	5 Days

Fee Details (if any)

There is no Estimated Processing Time (Days) in this license.

License Information

Applicants would have to provide through the system the following information:

General Information:

- Total Amount Invested in the Project (This should include value of machinery and fixed assets)
- Estimated number of workforce (Bahraini and Non-Bahraini)
- Expected utility consumption of electricity, water and natural gas
- Total area of the project

Activity Information:

- Product Information:

1) The products to be manufactured by choosing the appropriate HS codes (HS code list can be downloaded from the application if needed).
2) Product name.
3) Expected production date (The expected date on which the factory will start producing the product).

4) The maximum installed capacity and the expected production capacity per year based on the fixed HS code's unit of measure.

• Main raw materials: The main raw materials to be used in production and its source

• Main Machinery and Equipment: The main machinery and equipment to be used in production and its information.

• Manufacturing process: Brief on the manufacturing process explaining how materials are transformed from one state to another until reaching the final product, mentioning the types of materials used, the operations performed, and the machinery/equipment used in each step (if any) for each product.

Required Documents

•Photos of machinery/ equipment to be used
•Photos of products to be manufactured

Other Documents

•Law No. (81) of 2006 with respect to approving The Common Industrial Law of the GCC
•Ministerial Resolution No. (11) of 2009
•Operational requirements for the directorate of industrial developments activities

Supreme Council for Environment (Post) (2013-2)

Approval Name	Description	Estimated Time
Environmental Approval for Manufacture of plastics and synthetic rubber in their primary forms - factory activity	This service aims to assess the environmental impact and licensing of development, industrial and production projects and activities, in accordance with the standards of protecting the environment and its natural resources	10 Days

Fee Details (if any)

- 30 Bahraini Dinars or 200 Bahraini Dinars for the fast-track procedure (when the data requested within the EA-2 form is sufficient without the need for additional studies)
- 4000 Bahraini Dinars or 6000 Bahraini Dinars for the fast track procedure (when it is necessary to submit an environmental impact assessment study for the project), with an additional payment of 100 Bahraini Dinars when it is necessary to submit a proposal for the scope of the study before submitting it or 500 Bahraini Dinars for a fast track procedure when the proposed scope of the study is being submitted before the study

License Information

To check the requirements for this approval, kindly download the detailed requirements sheet from the other downloadable documents section, which includes the following requirements:

- Building layout engineering and equipment requirements
- Workplace requirements
- Storage requirements
- Material management requirements
- Waste Management Requirements

- Documents and reporting requirements
- General requirements

Other Documents

- Annex to the Minister of Housing, Municipalities and Environment order regarding the project's environmental assessment
- Law No. (2) of 2021 regarding the environmental standards of air as decided by the Chairman of the Supreme Council for Environment
- Law No. (3) of 2021 regarding the environmental standards of water as decided by the Chairman of the Supreme Council for the Environment
- Law No. (54) of 2014 regarding the approval of the unified law regarding substances that deplete the ozone layer for the GCC countries
- Law No. (7) of 2022 regarding the environment
- Ministerial Order No. (1) of 1998 regarding Project's Environmental Assessment
- Ministerial Order No. (10) of 2006 regarding the installation of devices for on-line monitoring of atmospheric air pollutants
- Ministerial Order No. (11) of 2019 regarding the issue of technical specification of plastic products
- Ministerial Order No. (3) of 2005 regarding environmental requirements and standards in workplaces, especially regarding workers' exposure to heat and noise, and the provision of tools and protective clothing such as gloves, glasses, face masks and earplugs, with a commitment to use them during work
- Ministerial Order No. (3) of 2006 regarding the management of hazardous waste
- Ministerial Order No. (4) of 2005 regarding the management of used oils
- Ministerial Order No. (4) of 2006 regarding the management of hazardous chemicals
- Ministerial Order No. (4) of 2021 regarding the fees of the licenses and services provided by the Supreme Council for Environment
- Ministerial Order No. (6) of 2013 amending order No. (4) of 2006 regarding the management of hazardous chemicals
- Ministerial Order No. (7) of 2002 regarding the control importation and use of prohibited and severely restricted chemicals, and not to import any chemical compound except after obtaining approvals of all concerned authorities, including the executive body of the Supreme Council for Environment
- Ministerial Order No. (7) of 2013 amending order No. (3) of 2006 regarding the management of hazardous waste
- Ministerial Order No. 4 of 2014 regarding the management of the environmental consulting offices operations in the Kingdom of Bahrain
- Order No. (2) of 2020 determining the categories of fees for licensing refrigeration media, refrigeration units and air conditioning units as decided by the Chairman of the Supreme Council for the Environment
- Requirements for business activities
- law No. (1) of 2020 regarding the management of refrigeration media, refrigeration units and air conditioning units as decided by the Chairman of the Supreme Council for the Environment

•law No. (2) of 2019 regarding the ban on the import of plastic waste of all kinds as decided by the Chairman of the Supreme Council for the Environment

Municipality Affairs (Post) (2013-2)

Approval Name	Description	Estimated Time
Site Approval for manufacturing activities (Type C)	Municipality Approval for the Commercial Registration address or the site in which the Activity will be practiced	3 Days

Fee Details (if any)

10 BD

License Information

General Conditions:
1. Size of shop/premises must be sufficient for the activity
2. Businesses may not carry out the activity outside the boundaries of the shop/ premises
3. It is prohibited to display or store any items or equipment outside the shop / premises boundary without prior approval from the Municipality. In the event of non-compliance, the Ministry of Municipality Affairs has the right to take necessary action.
4. Maintain cleanliness of the site
5. Comply with the parking space regulations as per the Construction Regulatory Requirements

Activity Specific Conditions:
1. The commercial registration for this activity can be registered on Industrial streets/ areas only

Note: Uploading pictures of the site/shop may expedite the process of obtaining approval

Required Documents

- Lease agreement (after obtaining the necessary approvals from other licensing entities)
- Shop photos

Other Documents

- Cabinet's Decision (93) of the year 2023 regarding the Regulatory Requirements of Construction for various areas in the Kingdom of Bahrain

Directorate Of Industrial Developments (Final Site Inspection) (2013-2)

Approval Name	Description	Estimated Time
Notification Only	Notification to the Industrial development directorate on obtaining a commercial registration with the license to practice the activity.	There is no License Information in this license. Days

Fee Details (if any)

There is no Estimated Processing Time (Days) in this license.

License Information

The industrial license is automatically issued by the Industrial development Directorate after obtaining the approval of other licensing/approving entities.

Please ensure that the actual production date does no exceed the expected production date.

If actual production will start on or before the expected production date please apply for a “New Industrial Registration” by following the steps below:

1- Visit the Industrial services system (www.industry.bh).
2- Select “Industrial Registration”.
3- Select “New Registration” application.

In the event that the actual production date will exceed the expected production date an “Extension of expected production date” application must be submitted by following the steps below:

1- Visit the Industrial services system (www.industry.bh).

2- Select “Industrial License”.
3- Select “Extension of expected production date” application.

Please note that failure to do so within 60 days from the expected production date will result in a violation to be added.

Other Documents

- Law No. (81) of 2006 with respect to approving The Common Industrial Law of the GCC
- Ministerial Resolution No. (11) of 2009 with respect to promulgating Implementing Regulation
- Operational requirements for the directorate of industrial developments activities

Manufacturing

ISIC4	Business activity
2021	Manufacture of pesticides and other agrochemical products

Description

This activity includes:
- manufacture of insecticides, rodenticides, fungicides, herbicides
- manufacture of anti-sprouting products, plant growth regulators
- manufacture of disinfectants (for agricultural and other use)
- manufacture of other agrochemical products

This activity excludes:
- manufacture of fertilizers and nitrogen compounds, see 2012

Business Requirements

✔ Age

18 and above

✔ Allowed for Nationalities

Bahraini 100%	GCC 100%
American 100%	Singaporean 100%
Icelander 100%	Liechtenstein er 100%
Norwegian 100%	Swiss 100%

Foreign Allowed up to 100%

Legal Type

It is allowed to register according to the legal forms mentioned below

Allowed for Individual Commercial Registration (ICR) : Yes

Allowed for Company Commercial Registration (CCR) : Yes

- Bahrain Shareholding Company (Public)
- With Limited Liability Company
- Branch of a Foreign Company
- Bahrain Shareholding Company (Closed)
- Partnership Company
- Simple Commandite Company
- Commandite By Shares Company
- Non Profit Company

Required Step of Licenses and Approvals

Ministry / Directorate	License / Approval Requirements	Approval Type
Directorate Of Industrial Developments	Approval by Directorate of Industrial Developments(Pre)	Pre
Supreme Council for Environment	Environmental Approval for Manufacture of pesticides and other agrochemical products activity	Post
Municipality Affairs	Site Approval for manufacturing activities (Type C)	Post
Directorate Of Industrial Developments	Notification Only	Final Site Inspection

Directorate Of Industrial Developments (Pre) (2021)

Approval Name	Description	Estimated Time
Approval by Directorate of Industrial Developments(Pre)	This is a preliminary approval given by the Directorate of Industrial Development to ensure that the applicant has selected the appropriate activity based on the information provided	5 Days

Fee Details (if any)

There is no Estimated Processing Time (Days) in this license.

License Information

Applicants would have to provide through the system the following information:

General Information:

- Total Amount Invested in the Project (This should include value of machinery and fixed assets)
- Estimated number of workforce (Bahraini and Non-Bahraini)
- Expected utility consumption of electricity, water and natural gas
- Total area of the project

Activity Information:

- Product Information:

1) The products to be manufactured by choosing the appropriate HS codes (HS code list can be downloaded from the application if needed).
2) Product name.
3) Expected production date (The expected date on which the factory will start producing the product).

4) The maximum installed capacity and the expected production capacity per year based on the fixed HS code's unit of measure.

• Main raw materials: The main raw materials to be used in production and its source

• Main Machinery and Equipment: The main machinery and equipment to be used in production and its information.

• Manufacturing process: Brief on the manufacturing process explaining how materials are transformed from one state to another until reaching the final product, mentioning the types of materials used, the operations performed, and the machinery/equipment used in each step (if any) for each product.

Required Documents

•Photos of machinery/ equipment to be used
•Photos of products to be manufactured

Other Documents

•Law No. (81) of 2006 with respect to approving The Common Industrial Law of the GCC
•Ministerial Resolution No. (11) of 2009
•Operational requirements for the directorate of industrial developments activities

Supreme Council for Environment (Post) (2021)

Approval Name	Description	Estimated Time
Environmental Approval for Manufacture of pesticides and other agrochemical products activity	This service aims to assess the environmental impact and licensing of development, industrial and production projects and activities, in accordance with the standards of protecting the environment and its natural resources	10 Days

Fee Details (if any)

- 30 Bahraini Dinars or 200 Bahraini Dinars for the fast-track procedure (when the data requested within the EA-2 form is sufficient without the need for additional studies)
- 4000 Bahraini Dinars or 6000 Bahraini Dinars for the fast track procedure (when it is necessary to submit an environmental impact assessment study for the project), with an additional payment of 100 Bahraini Dinars when it is necessary to submit a proposal for the scope of the study before submitting it or 500 Bahraini Dinars for a fast track procedure when the proposed scope of the study is being submitted before the study

License Information

To check the requirements for this approval, kindly download the detailed requirements sheet from the other downloadable documents section, which includes the following requirements:

- Building layout engineering and equipment requirements
- Workplace requirements
- Storage requirements
- Material management requirements
- Waste Management Requirements

- Documents and reporting requirements
- General requirements

Other Documents

- Annex to the Minister of Housing, Municipalities and Environment order regarding the project's environmental assessment
- Law No. (2) of 2021 regarding the environmental standards of air as decided by the Chairman of the Supreme Council for Environment
- Law No. (3) of 2021 regarding the environmental standards of water as decided by the Chairman of the Supreme Council for the Environment
- Law No. (54) of 2014 regarding the approval of the unified law regarding substances that deplete the ozone layer for the GCC countries
- Law No. (7) of 2022 regarding the environment
- Ministerial Order No. (1) of 1998 regarding Project's Environmental Assessment
- Ministerial Order No. (10) of 2006 regarding the installation of devices for on-line monitoring of atmospheric air pollutants
- Ministerial Order No. (3) of 2005 regarding environmental requirements and standards in workplaces, especially regarding workers' exposure to heat and noise, and the provision of tools and protective clothing such as gloves, glasses, face masks and earplugs, with a commitment to use them during work
- Ministerial Order No. (3) of 2006 regarding the management of hazardous waste
- Ministerial Order No. (4) of 2005 regarding the management of used oils
- Ministerial Order No. (4) of 2006 regarding the management of hazardous chemicals
- Ministerial Order No. (4) of 2021 regarding the fees of the licenses and services provided by the Supreme Council for Environment
- Ministerial Order No. (6) of 2013 amending order No. (4) of 2006 regarding the management of hazardous chemicals
- Ministerial Order No. (7) of 2002 regarding the control importation and use of prohibited and severely restricted chemicals, and not to import any chemical compound except after obtaining approvals of all concerned authorities, including the executive body of the Supreme Council for Environment
- Ministerial Order No. (7) of 2013 amending order No. (3) of 2006 regarding the management of hazardous waste
- Ministerial Order No. 4 of 2014 regarding the management of the environmental consulting offices operations in the Kingdom of Bahrain
- Order No. (2) of 2020 determining the categories of fees for licensing refrigeration media, refrigeration units and air conditioning units as decided by the Chairman of the Supreme Council for the Environment
- Requirements for business activities
- law No. (1) of 2020 regarding the management of refrigeration media, refrigeration units and air conditioning units as decided by the Chairman of the Supreme Council for the Environment

Municipality Affairs (Post) (2021)

Approval Name	Description	Estimated Time
Site Approval for manufacturing activities (Type C)	Municipality Approval for the Commercial Registration address or the site in which the Activity will be practiced	3 Days

Fee Details (if any)

10 BD

License Information

General Conditions:
1. Size of shop/premises must be sufficient for the activity
2. Businesses may not carry out the activity outside the boundaries of the shop/ premises
3. It is prohibited to display or store any items or equipment outside the shop / premises boundary without prior approval from the Municipality. In the event of non-compliance, the Ministry of Municipality Affairs has the right to take necessary action.
4. Maintain cleanliness of the site
5. Comply with the parking space regulations as per the Construction Regulatory Requirements

Activity Specific Conditions:
1. The commercial registration for this activity can be registered on Industrial streets/ areas only

Note: Uploading pictures of the site/shop may expedite the process of obtaining approval

Required Documents

- Lease agreement (after obtaining the necessary approvals from other licensing entities)
- Shop photos

Other Documents

- Cabinet's Decision (93) of the year 2023 regarding the Regulatory Requirements of Construction for various areas in the Kingdom of Bahrain

Directorate Of Industrial Developments (Final Site Inspection) (2021)

Approval Name	Description	Estimated Time
Notification Only	Notification to the Industrial development directorate on obtaining a commercial registration with the license to practice the activity.	There is no License Information in this license. Days

Fee Details (if any)

There is no Estimated Processing Time (Days) in this license.

License Information

The industrial license is automatically issued by the Industrial development Directorate after obtaining the approval of other licensing/approving entities.

Please ensure that the actual production date does no exceed the expected production date.

If actual production will start on or before the expected production date please apply for a “New Industrial Registration” by following the steps below:

1- Visit the Industrial services system (www.industry.bh).
2- Select “Industrial Registration”.
3- Select “New Registration” application.

In the event that the actual production date will exceed the expected production date an “Extension of expected production date” application must be submitted by following the steps below:

1- Visit the Industrial services system (www.industry.bh).

2- Select “Industrial License”.
3- Select “Extension of expected production date” application.

Please note that failure to do so within 60 days from the expected production date will result in a violation to be added.

Other Documents

- Law No. (81) of 2006 with respect to approving The Common Industrial Law of the GCC
- Ministerial Resolution No. (11) of 2009 with respect to promulgating Implementing Regulation
- Operational requirements for the directorate of industrial developments activities

Manufacturing

ISIC4	Business activity
2022-1	Manufacture of paints, varnishes and similar coatings, printing ink and mastics - Workshop

Description

This activity includes:
- manufacture of paints and varnishes, enamels or lacquers
- manufacture of prepared pigments and dyes, opacifiers and colours
- manufacture of vitrifiable enamels and glazes and engobes and similar preparations
- manufacture of mastics
- manufacture of caulking compounds and similar non-refractory filling or surfacing preparations
- manufacture of organic composite solvents and thinners
- manufacture of prepared paint or varnish removers
- manufacture of printing ink

Business Requirements

✔ Age

18 and above

✔ Allowed for Nationalities

Bahraini 100%		GCC 100%	
American 100%		Singaporean 100%	
Icelander 100%		Liechtenstein er 100%	
Norwegian 100%		Swiss 100%	

Foreign Allowed up to 100%

Legal Type

It is allowed to register according to the legal forms mentioned below

Allowed for Individual Commercial Registration (ICR) : Yes

Allowed for Company Commercial Registration (CCR) : Yes

- Bahrain Shareholding Company (Public)
- With Limited Liability Company
- Branch of a Foreign Company
- Bahrain Shareholding Company (Closed)
- Partnership Company
- Simple Commandite Company
- Commandite By Shares Company
- Non Profit Company

Required Step of Licenses and Approvals

Ministry / Directorate	License / Approval Requirements	Approval Type
Supreme Council for Environment	Environmental Approval for Manufacture of paints, varnishes and similar coatings, printing inks and mastic pastes - workshop	Post
Municipality Affairs	Site Approval for manufacturing activities (Type C)	Post

Supreme Council for Environment (Post) (2022-1)

Approval Name	Description	Estimated Time
Environmental Approval for Manufacture of paints, varnishes and similar coatings, printing inks and mastic pastes - workshop	This service aims to assess the environmental impact and licensing of development, industrial and production projects and activities, in accordance with the standards of protecting the environment and its natural resources	10 Days

Fee Details (if any)

- 30 Bahraini Dinars or 200 Bahraini Dinars for the fast-track procedure (when the data requested within the EA-2 form is sufficient without the need for additional studies)
- 4000 Bahraini Dinars or 6000 Bahraini Dinars for the fast track procedure (when it is necessary to submit an environmental impact assessment study for the project), with an additional payment of 100 Bahraini Dinars when it is necessary to submit a proposal for the scope of the study before submitting it or 500 Bahraini Dinars for a fast track procedure when the proposed scope of the study is being submitted before the study

License Information

To check the requirements for this approval, kindly download the detailed requirements sheet from the other downloadable documents section, which includes the following requirements:

- Building layout engineering and equipment requirements
- Workplace requirements
- Storage requirements
- Material management requirements
- Waste Management Requirements

- Documents and reporting requirements
- General requirements

Other Documents

- Annex to the Minister of Housing, Municipalities and Environment order regarding the project's environmental assessment
- Law No. (1) of 2020 regarding the management of refrigeration media, refrigeration units and air conditioning units as decided by the Chairman of the Supreme Council for the Environment
- Law No. (2) of 2019 regarding the ban on the import of plastic waste of all kinds as decided by the Chairman of the Supreme Council for the Environment
- Law No. (2) of 2021 regarding the environmental standards of air as decided by the Chairman of the Supreme Council for Environment
- Law No. (3) of 2021 regarding the environmental standards of water as decided by the Chairman of the Supreme Council for the Environment
- Law No. (54) of 2014 regarding the approval of the unified law regarding substances that deplete the ozone layer for the GCC countries
- Law No. (7) of 2022 regarding the environment
- Ministerial Order No. (1) of 1998 regarding Project's Environmental Assessment
- Ministerial Order No. (10) of 2006 regarding the installation of devices for on-line monitoring of atmospheric air pollutants
- Ministerial Order No. (11) of 2019 regarding the issue of technical specification of plastic products
- Ministerial Order No. (3) of 2005 regarding environmental requirements and standards in workplaces, especially regarding workers' exposure to heat and noise, and the provision of tools and protective clothing such as gloves, glasses, face masks and earplugs, with a commitment to use them during work
- Ministerial Order No. (3) of 2006 regarding the management of hazardous waste
- Ministerial Order No. (4) of 2005 regarding the management of used oils
- Ministerial Order No. (4) of 2006 regarding the management of hazardous chemicals
- Ministerial Order No. (4) of 2021 regarding the fees of the licenses and services provided by the Supreme Council for Environment
- Ministerial Order No. (6) of 2013 amending order No. (4) of 2006 regarding the management of hazardous chemicals
- Ministerial Order No. (7) of 2002 regarding the control importation and use of prohibited and severely restricted chemicals, and not to import any chemical compound except after obtaining approvals of all concerned authorities, including the executive body of the Supreme Council for Environment
- Ministerial Order No. (7) of 2013 amending order No. (3) of 2006 regarding the management of hazardous waste
- Ministerial Order No. 4 of 2014 regarding the management of the environmental consulting offices operations in the Kingdom of Bahrain
- Order No. (2) of 2020 determining the categories of fees for licensing refrigeration media, refrigeration units and air conditioning units as decided by the Chairman of the

Supreme Council for the Environment
•Requirements for business activities

Municipality Affairs (Post) (2022-1)

Approval Name	Description	Estimated Time
Site Approval for manufacturing activities (Type C)	Municipality Approval for the Commercial Registration address or the site in which the Activity will be practiced	3 Days

Fee Details (if any)

10 BD

License Information

General Conditions:
1. Size of shop/premises must be sufficient for the activity
2. Businesses may not carry out the activity outside the boundaries of the shop/ premises
3. It is prohibited to display or store any items or equipment outside the shop / premises boundary without prior approval from the Municipality. In the event of non-compliance, the Ministry of Municipality Affairs has the right to take necessary action.
4. Maintain cleanliness of the site
5. Comply with the parking space regulations as per the Construction Regulatory Requirements

Activity Specific Conditions:
1. The commercial registration for this activity can be registered on Industrial streets/ areas only

Note: Uploading pictures of the site/shop may expedite the process of obtaining approval

Required Documents

- Lease agreement (after obtaining the necessary approvals from other licensing entities)
- Shop photos

Other Documents

- Cabinet's Decision (93) of the year 2023 regarding the Regulatory Requirements of Construction for various areas in the Kingdom of Bahrain

Manufacturing

ISIC4	Business activity
2022-2	Manufacture of paints, varnishes and similar coatings, printing ink and mastics - Factory

Description

This activity includes:
- manufacture of paints and varnishes, enamels or lacquers
- manufacture of prepared pigments and dyes, opacifiers and colours
- manufacture of vitrifiable enamels and glazes and engobes and similar preparations
- manufacture of mastics
- manufacture of caulking compounds and similar non-refractory filling or surfacing preparations
- manufacture of organic composite solvents and thinners
- manufacture of prepared paint or varnish removers
- manufacture of printing ink

Business Requirements

✔ Age

18 and above

✔ Allowed for Nationalities

Bahraini 100%	GCC 100%
American 100%	Singaporean 100%
Icelander 100%	Liechtensteiner 100%
Norwegian 100%	Swiss 100%

Foreign Allowed up to 100%

Legal Type

It is allowed to register according to the legal forms mentioned below

Allowed for Individual Commercial Registration (ICR) : Yes

Allowed for Company Commercial Registration (CCR) : Yes

- Bahrain Shareholding Company (Public)
- With Limited Liability Company
- Branch of a Foreign Company
- Bahrain Shareholding Company (Closed)
- Partnership Company
- Simple Commandite Company
- Commandite By Shares Company
- Non Profit Company

Required Step of Licenses and Approvals

Ministry / Directorate	License / Approval Requirements	Approval Type
Directorate Of Industrial Developments	Approval by Directorate of Industrial Developments(Pre)	Pre
Supreme Council for Environment	Environmental Approval for Manufacture of paints, varnishes and similar coatings, printing inks and mastic pastes - factory	Post
Municipality Affairs	Site Approval for manufacturing activities (Type C)	Post
Directorate Of Industrial Developments	Notification Only	Final Site Inspection

Directorate Of Industrial Developments (Pre) (2022-2)

Approval Name	Description	Estimated Time
Approval by Directorate of Industrial Developments(Pre)	This is a preliminary approval given by the Directorate of Industrial Development to ensure that the applicant has selected the appropriate activity based on the information provided	5 Days

Fee Details (if any)

There is no Estimated Processing Time (Days) in this license.

License Information

Applicants would have to provide through the system the following information:

General Information:

- Total Amount Invested in the Project (This should include value of machinery and fixed assets)
- Estimated number of workforce (Bahraini and Non-Bahraini)
- Expected utility consumption of electricity, water and natural gas
- Total area of the project

Activity Information:

- Product Information:

1) The products to be manufactured by choosing the appropriate HS codes (HS code list can be downloaded from the application if needed).
2) Product name.
3) Expected production date (The expected date on which the factory will start producing the product).

4) The maximum installed capacity and the expected production capacity per year based on the fixed HS code's unit of measure.

• Main raw materials: The main raw materials to be used in production and its source

• Main Machinery and Equipment: The main machinery and equipment to be used in production and its information.

• Manufacturing process: Brief on the manufacturing process explaining how materials are transformed from one state to another until reaching the final product, mentioning the types of materials used, the operations performed, and the machinery/equipment used in each step (if any) for each product.

Required Documents

•Photos of machinery/ equipment to be used
•Photos of products to be manufactured

Other Documents

•Law No. (81) of 2006 with respect to approving The Common Industrial Law of the GCC
•Ministerial Resolution No. (11) of 2009
•Operational requirements for the directorate of industrial developments activities

Supreme Council for Environment (Post) (2022-2)

Approval Name	Description	Estimated Time
Environmental Approval for Manufacture of paints, varnishes and similar coatings, printing inks and mastic pastes - factory	This service aims to assess the environmental impact and licensing of development, industrial and production projects and activities, in accordance with the standards of protecting the environment and its natural resources	10 Days

Fee Details (if any)

- 30 Bahraini Dinars or 200 Bahraini Dinars for the fast-track procedure (when the data requested within the EA-2 form is sufficient without the need for additional studies)
- 4000 Bahraini Dinars or 6000 Bahraini Dinars for the fast track procedure (when it is necessary to submit an environmental impact assessment study for the project), with an additional payment of 100 Bahraini Dinars when it is necessary to submit a proposal for the scope of the study before submitting it or 500 Bahraini Dinars for a fast track procedure when the proposed scope of the study is being submitted before the study

License Information

To check the requirements for this approval, kindly download the detailed requirements sheet from the other downloadable documents section, which includes the following requirements:

- Building layout engineering and equipment requirements
- Workplace requirements
- Storage requirements
- Material management requirements
- Waste Management Requirements

- Documents and reporting requirements
- General requirements

Other Documents

- Annex to the Minister of Housing, Municipalities and Environment order regarding the project's environmental assessment
- Law No. (2) of 2021 regarding the environmental standards of air as decided by the Chairman of the Supreme Council for Environment
- Law No. (3) of 2021 regarding the environmental standards of water as decided by the Chairman of the Supreme Council for the Environment
- Law No. (54) of 2014 regarding the approval of the unified law regarding substances that deplete the ozone layer for the GCC countries
- Law No. (7) of 2022 regarding the environment
- Ministerial Order No. (1) of 1998 regarding Project's Environmental Assessment
- Ministerial Order No. (10) of 2006 regarding the installation of devices for on-line monitoring of atmospheric air pollutants
- Ministerial Order No. (11) of 2019 regarding the issue of technical specification of plastic products
- Ministerial Order No. (3) of 2005 regarding environmental requirements and standards in workplaces, especially regarding workers' exposure to heat and noise, and the provision of tools and protective clothing such as gloves, glasses, face masks and earplugs, with a commitment to use them during work
- Ministerial Order No. (3) of 2006 regarding the management of hazardous waste
- Ministerial Order No. (4) of 2005 regarding the management of used oils
- Ministerial Order No. (4) of 2006 regarding the management of hazardous chemicals
- Ministerial Order No. (4) of 2021 regarding the fees of the licenses and services provided by the Supreme Council for Environment
- Ministerial Order No. (6) of 2013 amending order No. (4) of 2006 regarding the management of hazardous chemicals
- Ministerial Order No. (7) of 2002 regarding the control importation and use of prohibited and severely restricted chemicals, and not to import any chemical compound except after obtaining approvals of all concerned authorities, including the executive body of the Supreme Council for Environment
- Ministerial Order No. (7) of 2013 amending order No. (3) of 2006 regarding the management of hazardous waste
- Ministerial Order No. 4 of 2014 regarding the management of the environmental consulting offices operations in the Kingdom of Bahrain
- Order No. (2) of 2020 determining the categories of fees for licensing refrigeration media, refrigeration units and air conditioning units as decided by the Chairman of the Supreme Council for the Environment
- Requirements for business activities
- law No. (1) of 2020 regarding the management of refrigeration media, refrigeration units and air conditioning units as decided by the Chairman of the Supreme Council for the Environment

•law No. (2) of 2019 regarding the ban on the import of plastic waste of all kinds as decided by the Chairman of the Supreme Council for the Environment

Municipality Affairs (Post) (2022-2)

Approval Name	Description	Estimated Time
Site Approval for manufacturing activities (Type C)	Municipality Approval for the Commercial Registration address or the site in which the Activity will be practiced	3 Days

Fee Details (if any)

10 BD

License Information

General Conditions:
1. Size of shop/premises must be sufficient for the activity
2. Businesses may not carry out the activity outside the boundaries of the shop/ premises
3. It is prohibited to display or store any items or equipment outside the shop / premises boundary without prior approval from the Municipality. In the event of non-compliance, the Ministry of Municipality Affairs has the right to take necessary action.
4. Maintain cleanliness of the site
5. Comply with the parking space regulations as per the Construction Regulatory Requirements

Activity Specific Conditions:
1. The commercial registration for this activity can be registered on Industrial streets/ areas only

Note: Uploading pictures of the site/shop may expedite the process of obtaining approval

Required Documents

- Lease agreement (after obtaining the necessary approvals from other licensing entities)
- Shop photos

Other Documents

- Cabinet's Decision (93) of the year 2023 regarding the Regulatory Requirements of Construction for various areas in the Kingdom of Bahrain

Directorate Of Industrial Developments (Final Site Inspection) (2022-2)

Approval Name	Description	Estimated Time
Notification Only	Notification to the Industrial development directorate on obtaining a commercial registration with the license to practice the activity.	There is no License Information in this license. Days

Fee Details (if any)

There is no Estimated Processing Time (Days) in this license.

License Information

The industrial license is automatically issued by the Industrial development Directorate after obtaining the approval of other licensing/approving entities.

Please ensure that the actual production date does no exceed the expected production date.

If actual production will start on or before the expected production date please apply for a “New Industrial Registration” by following the steps below:

1- Visit the Industrial services system (www.industry.bh).
2- Select “Industrial Registration”.
3- Select “New Registration” application.

In the event that the actual production date will exceed the expected production date an “Extension of expected production date” application must be submitted by following the steps below:

1- Visit the Industrial services system (www.industry.bh).

2- Select “Industrial License”.
3- Select “Extension of expected production date” application.

Please note that failure to do so within 60 days from the expected production date will result in a violation to be added.

Other Documents

- Law No. (81) of 2006 with respect to approving The Common Industrial Law of the GCC
- Ministerial Resolution No. (11) of 2009 with respect to promulgating Implementing Regulation
- Operational requirements for the directorate of industrial developments activities

Manufacturing

ISIC4	Business activity
2023-1	Manufacture of soap and detergents, cleaning and polishing preparations, perfumes and toilet preparations - Workshop

Description

This activity includes:
- manufacture of organic surface-active agents
- manufacture of soap
- manufacture of paper, wadding, felt etc. coated or covered with soap or detergent
- manufacture of crude glycerol
- manufacture of surface-active preparations:
· washing powders in solid or liquid form and detergents
· dish-washing preparations
· textile softeners
- manufacture of cleaning and polishing products:
· preparations for perfuming or deodorizing rooms
· artificial waxes and prepared waxes
· polishes and creams for leather
· polishes and creams for wood
· polishes for coachwork, glass and metal
· scouring pastes and powders, including paper, wadding etc. coated or covered with these
- manufacture of perfumes and toilet preparations:
· perfumes and toilet water
· beauty and make-up preparations
· sunburn prevention and suntan preparations
· manicure and pedicure preparations
· shampoos, hair lacquers, waving and straightening preparations
· dentifrices and preparations for oral hygiene, including denture fixative preparations
· shaving preparations, including pre-shave and aftershave preparations
· deodorants and bath salts
· depilatories

Business Requirements

Age

18 and above

Allowed for Nationalities

Bahraini 100%		GCC 100%	
American 100%		Singaporean 100%	
Icelander 100%		Liechtenstein er 100%	
Norwegian 100%		Swiss 100%	

Foreign Allowed up to 100%

Legal Type

It is allowed to register according to the legal forms mentioned below

Allowed for Individual Commercial Registration (ICR) : Yes

Allowed for Company Commercial Registration (CCR) : Yes

- Bahrain Shareholding Company (Public)
- With Limited Liability Company
- Branch of a Foreign Company
- Bahrain Shareholding Company (Closed)
- Partnership Company
- Simple Commandite Company
- Commandite By Shares Company
- Non Profit Company

Required Step of Licenses and Approvals

Ministry / Directorate	License / Approval Requirements	Approval Type
General Directorate Of Criminal Investigation	Approval by General Directorate of Criminal	Pre

	Investigation	
Supreme Council for Environment	Environmental Approval for Manufacture of soaps, detergents, cleaning, polishing preparations, perfumes, cosmetics – Workshop	Post
Ministry of Health	Health approval for Manufacture of soap and detergents, cleaning and polishing preparations, perfumes and toilet preparations	Post
Municipality Affairs	Site Approval for manufacturing activities (Type B)	Post

General Directorate Of Criminal Investigation (Pre) (2023-1)

Approval Name	Description	Estimated Time
Approval by General Directorate of Criminal Investigation	General Directorate of Criminal Investigation Approval for the Activity	7 Days

Fee Details (if any)

There is no Estimated Processing Time (Days) in this license.

License Information

- The applicant should not have a criminal record, unless they have been rehabilitated in criminal cases

Supreme Council for Environment (Post) (2023-1)

Approval Name	Description	Estimated Time
Environmental Approval for Manufacture of soaps, detergents, cleaning, polishing preparations, perfumes, cosmetics – Workshop	This service aims to assess the environmental impact and licensing of development, industrial and production projects and activities, in accordance with the standards of protecting the environment and its natural resources	10 Days

Fee Details (if any)

- 30 Bahraini Dinars or 200 Bahraini Dinars for the fast-track procedure (when the data requested within the EA-2 form is sufficient without the need for additional studies)
- 4000 Bahraini Dinars or 6000 Bahraini Dinars for the fast track procedure (when it is necessary to submit an environmental impact assessment study for the project), with an additional payment of 100 Bahraini Dinars when it is necessary to submit a proposal for the scope of the study before submitting it or 500 Bahraini Dinars for a fast track procedure when the proposed scope of the study is being submitted before the study

License Information

To check the requirements for this approval, kindly download the detailed requirements sheet from the other downloadable documents section, which includes the following requirements:

- Building layout engineering and equipment requirements
- Workplace requirements
- Storage requirements
- Material management requirements
- Waste Management Requirements

- Documents and reporting requirements
- General requirements

Other Documents

- Annex to the Minister of Housing, Municipalities and Environment order regarding the project's environmental assessment
- Law No. (1) of 2020 regarding the management of refrigeration media, refrigeration units and air conditioning units as decided by the Chairman of the Supreme Council for the Environment
- Law No. (2) of 2019 regarding the ban on the import of plastic waste of all kinds as decided by the Chairman of the Supreme Council for the Environment
- Law No. (2) of 2021 regarding the environmental standards of air as decided by the Chairman of the Supreme Council for Environment
- Law No. (3) of 2021 regarding the environmental standards of water as decided by the Chairman of the Supreme Council for the Environment
- Law No. (54) of 2014 regarding the approval of the unified law regarding substances that deplete the ozone layer for the GCC countries
- Law No. (7) of 2022 regarding the environment
- Ministerial Order No. (1) of 1998 regarding Project's Environmental Assessment
- Ministerial Order No. (10) of 2006 regarding the installation of devices for on-line monitoring of atmospheric air pollutants
- Ministerial Order No. (11) of 2019 regarding the issue of technical specification of plastic products
- Ministerial Order No. (3) of 2005 regarding environmental requirements and standards in workplaces, especially regarding workers' exposure to heat and noise, and the provision of tools and protective clothing such as gloves, glasses, face masks and earplugs, with a commitment to use them during work
- Ministerial Order No. (3) of 2006 regarding the management of hazardous waste
- Ministerial Order No. (4) of 2005 regarding the management of used oils
- Ministerial Order No. (4) of 2006 regarding the management of hazardous chemicals
- Ministerial Order No. (4) of 2021 regarding the fees of the licenses and services provided by the Supreme Council for Environment
- Ministerial Order No. (6) of 2013 amending order No. (4) of 2006 regarding the management of hazardous chemicals
- Ministerial Order No. (7) of 2002 regarding the control importation and use of prohibited and severely restricted chemicals, and not to import any chemical compound except after obtaining approvals of all concerned authorities, including the executive body of the Supreme Council for Environment
- Ministerial Order No. (7) of 2013 amending order No. (3) of 2006 regarding the management of hazardous waste
- Ministerial Order No. 4 of 2014 regarding the management of the environmental consulting offices operations in the Kingdom of Bahrain
- Order No. (2) of 2020 determining the categories of fees for licensing refrigeration media, refrigeration units and air conditioning units as decided by the Chairman of the

Supreme Council for the Environment
•Requirements for business activities

Ministry of Health (Post) (2023-1)

Approval Name	Description	Estimated Time
Health approval for Manufacture of soap and detergents, cleaning and polishing preparations, perfumes and toilet preparations	Health approval for Manufacture of soap and detergents, cleaning and polishing preparations, perfumes and toilet preparations	5 Days

Fee Details (if any)

200 BD

License Information

Please refer to the “Health requirements checklist document in the “other downloadable documents” section for the requirements and specifications for this activity.

You could employ one of the licensed engineering offices listed in the business support organizations list to provide engineering drawings that will be attached when submitting an application via the Sijilat system.

Required Documents

•A list of products to be manufactured a long with Certificate of Composition of each product showing the percentages of the ingredients and their functions according to the Gulf Safety Requirements for Cosmetics “GSO 1943” or equivalent for household detergents.
•Certificate of Conformity for the manufactured products issued by a conformity company accredited by the Ministry of Health to prove that the local manufactured products that are stated in the certificate have been examined, analyzed and assessed in compliance with the Safety Requirements of Cosmetics and Personal Care Products in the Gulf Standardization Organization (GSO 1943), or other equivalent for detergents. Name and information of the pro
•Drawings/ layout of premises (approved by an engineering office).
•Good Manufacture Practice Certificate (GMP) in accordance with ISO 22716:2007 Guidelines for Cosmetics or any other equivalent standard for household detergents, which must be issued by a conformity body accredited by the Ministry of Health and the period of validity of the certificate must be mentioned.
•Requirement Checklist (Stamped by an engineering office)
•drawings/layouts of the premises

Municipality Affairs (Post) (2023-1)

Approval Name	Description	Estimated Time
Site Approval for manufacturing activities (Type B)	Municipality Approval for the Commercial Registration address or the site in which the Activity will be practiced	3 Days

Fee Details (if any)

10 BD

License Information

General Conditions:
1. Size of shop/premises must be sufficient for the activity
2. Businesses may not carry out the activity outside the boundaries of the shop/ premises
3. It is prohibited to display or store any items or equipment outside the shop / premises boundary without prior approval from the Municipality. In the event of non-compliance, the Ministry of Municipality Affairs has the right to take necessary action.
4. Maintain cleanliness of the site
5. Comply with the parking space regulations as per the Construction Regulatory Requirements

Activity Specific Conditions:
1. The Commercial Registration for this activity can only be registered in service and industrial streets/areas

Note: Uploading pictures of the site/shop may expedite the process of obtaining approval

Required Documents

- Lease agreement (after obtaining the necessary approvals from other licensing entities)
- Shop photos

Other Documents

- Cabinet's Decision (56) of the year 2022 regarding the Regulatory Requirements of Construction for various areas in the Kingdom of Bahrain

Manufacturing

ISIC4	Business activity
2023-2	Manufacture of soap and detergents, cleaning and polishing preparations, perfumes and toilet preparations - Factory

Description

This activity includes:
- manufacture of organic surface-active agents
- manufacture of soap
- manufacture of medical disinfectant and sanitizers
- manufacture of paper, wadding, felt etc. coated or covered with soap or detergent
- manufacture of crude glycerol
- manufacture of surface-active preparations:
· washing powders in solid or liquid form and detergents
· dish-washing preparations
· textile softeners
- manufacture of cleaning and polishing products:
· preparations for perfuming or deodorizing rooms
· artificial waxes and prepared waxes
· polishes and creams for leather
· polishes and creams for wood
· polishes for coachwork, glass and metal
· scouring pastes and powders, including paper, wadding etc. coated or covered with these
- manufacture of perfumes and toilet preparations:
· perfumes and toilet water
· beauty and make-up preparations
· sunburn prevention and suntan preparations
· manicure and pedicure preparations
· shampoos, hair lacquers, waving and straightening preparations
· dentifrices and preparations for oral hygiene, including denture fixative preparations
· shaving preparations, including pre-shave and aftershave preparations
· deodorants and bath salts
· depilatories

Business Requirements

Age

18 and above

Allowed for Nationalities

Bahraini 100%		GCC 100%	
American 100%		Singaporean 100%	
Icelander 100%		Liechtenstein er 100%	
Norwegian 100%		Swiss 100%	

Foreign Allowed up to 100%

Legal Type

It is allowed to register according to the legal forms mentioned below

Allowed for Individual Commercial Registration (ICR) : Yes

Allowed for Company Commercial Registration (CCR) : Yes

- Bahrain Shareholding Company (Public)
- With Limited Liability Company
- Branch of a Foreign Company
- Bahrain Shareholding Company (Closed)
- Partnership Company
- Simple Commandite Company
- Commandite By Shares Company
- Non Profit Company

Required Step of Licenses and Approvals

Ministry / Directorate	License / Approval Requirements	Approval Type
General Directorate Of Criminal Investigation	Approval by General Directorate of Criminal	Pre

	Investigation	
Directorate Of Industrial Developments	Approval by Directorate of Industrial Developments(Pre)	Pre
Supreme Council for Environment	Environmental Approval for Manufacture of soaps, detergents, cleaning, polishing preparations, perfumes, cosmetics – Factory	Post
Municipality Affairs	Site Approval for manufacturing activities (Type B)	Post
Ministry of Health	Health approval for Manufacture of soap and detergents, cleaning and polishing preparations, perfumes and toilet preparations	Post
Directorate Of Industrial Developments	Notification Only	Final Site Inspection

General Directorate Of Criminal Investigation (Pre) (2023-2)

Approval Name	Description	Estimated Time
Approval by General Directorate of Criminal Investigation	General Directorate of Criminal Investigation Approval for the Activity	7 Days

Fee Details (if any)

There is no Estimated Processing Time (Days) in this license.

License Information

- The applicant should not have a criminal record, unless they have been rehabilitated in criminal cases

Directorate Of Industrial Developments (Pre) (2023-2)

Approval Name	Description	Estimated Time
Approval by Directorate of Industrial Developments(Pre)	This is a preliminary approval given by the Directorate of Industrial Development to ensure that the applicant has selected the appropriate activity based on the information provided	5 Days

Fee Details (if any)

There is no Estimated Processing Time (Days) in this license.

License Information

Applicants would have to provide through the system the following information:

General Information:

- Total Amount Invested in the Project (This should include value of machinery and fixed assets)
- Estimated number of workforce (Bahraini and Non-Bahraini)
- Expected utility consumption of electricity, water and natural gas
- Total area of the project

Activity Information:

- Product Information:

1) The products to be manufactured by choosing the appropriate HS codes (HS code list can be downloaded from the application if needed).
2) Product name.
3) Expected production date (The expected date on which the factory will start producing the product).

4) The maximum installed capacity and the expected production capacity per year based on the fixed HS code's unit of measure.

• Main raw materials: The main raw materials to be used in production and its source

• Main Machinery and Equipment: The main machinery and equipment to be used in production and its information.

• Manufacturing process: Brief on the manufacturing process explaining how materials are transformed from one state to another until reaching the final product, mentioning the types of materials used, the operations performed, and the machinery/equipment used in each step (if any) for each product.

Required Documents

•Photos of machinery/ equipment to be used
•Photos of products to be manufactured

Other Documents

•Law No. (81) of 2006 with respect to approving The Common Industrial Law of the GCC
•Ministerial Resolution No. (11) of 2009
•Operational requirements for the directorate of industrial developments activities

Supreme Council for Environment (Post) (2023-2)

Approval Name	Description	Estimated Time
Environmental Approval for Manufacture of soaps, detergents, cleaning, polishing preparations, perfumes, cosmetics – Factory	This service aims to assess the environmental impact and licensing of development, industrial and production projects and activities, in accordance with the standards of protecting the environment and its natural resources	10 Days

Fee Details (if any)

- 30 Bahraini Dinars or 200 Bahraini Dinars for the fast-track procedure (when the data requested within the EA-2 form is sufficient without the need for additional studies)
- 4000 Bahraini Dinars or 6000 Bahraini Dinars for the fast track procedure (when it is necessary to submit an environmental impact assessment study for the project), with an additional payment of 100 Bahraini Dinars when it is necessary to submit a proposal for the scope of the study before submitting it or 500 Bahraini Dinars for a fast track procedure when the proposed scope of the study is being submitted before the study

License Information

To check the requirements for this approval, kindly download the detailed requirements sheet from the other downloadable documents section, which includes the following requirements:

- Building layout engineering and equipment requirements
- Workplace requirements
- Storage requirements
- Material management requirements
- Waste Management Requirements

- Documents and reporting requirements
- General requirements

Other Documents

- Annex to the Minister of Housing, Municipalities and Environment order regarding the project's environmental assessment
- Law No. (1) of 2020 regarding the management of refrigeration media, refrigeration units and air conditioning units as decided by the Chairman of the Supreme Council for the Environment
- Law No. (2) of 2019 regarding the ban on the import of plastic waste of all kinds as decided by the Chairman of the Supreme Council for the Environment
- Law No. (2) of 2021 regarding the environmental standards of air as decided by the Chairman of the Supreme Council for Environment
- Law No. (3) of 2021 regarding the environmental standards of water as decided by the Chairman of the Supreme Council for the Environment
- Law No. (54) of 2014 regarding the approval of the unified law regarding substances that deplete the ozone layer for the GCC countries
- Law No. (7) of 2022 regarding the environment
- Ministerial Order No. (1) of 1998 regarding Project's Environmental Assessment
- Ministerial Order No. (10) of 2006 regarding the installation of devices for on-line monitoring of atmospheric air pollutants
- Ministerial Order No. (11) of 2019 regarding the issue of technical specification of plastic products
- Ministerial Order No. (3) of 2005 regarding environmental requirements and standards in workplaces, especially regarding workers' exposure to heat and noise, and the provision of tools and protective clothing such as gloves, glasses, face masks and earplugs, with a commitment to use them during work
- Ministerial Order No. (3) of 2006 regarding the management of hazardous waste
- Ministerial Order No. (4) of 2005 regarding the management of used oils
- Ministerial Order No. (4) of 2006 regarding the management of hazardous chemicals
- Ministerial Order No. (4) of 2021 regarding the fees of the licenses and services provided by the Supreme Council for Environment
- Ministerial Order No. (6) of 2013 amending order No. (4) of 2006 regarding the management of hazardous chemicals
- Ministerial Order No. (7) of 2002 regarding the control importation and use of prohibited and severely restricted chemicals, and not to import any chemical compound except after obtaining approvals of all concerned authorities, including the executive body of the Supreme Council for Environment
- Ministerial Order No. (7) of 2013 amending order No. (3) of 2006 regarding the management of hazardous waste
- Ministerial Order No. 4 of 2014 regarding the management of the environmental consulting offices operations in the Kingdom of Bahrain
- Order No. (2) of 2020 determining the categories of fees for licensing refrigeration media, refrigeration units and air conditioning units as decided by the Chairman of the

Supreme Council for the Environment
•Requirements for business activities

Municipality Affairs (Post) (2023-2)

Approval Name	Description	Estimated Time
Site Approval for manufacturing activities (Type B)	Municipality Approval for the Commercial Registration address or the site in which the Activity will be practiced	3 Days

Fee Details (if any)

10 BD

License Information

General Conditions:
1. Size of shop/premises must be sufficient for the activity
2. Businesses may not carry out the activity outside the boundaries of the shop/ premises
3. It is prohibited to display or store any items or equipment outside the shop / premises boundary without prior approval from the Municipality. In the event of non-compliance, the Ministry of Municipality Affairs has the right to take necessary action.
4. Maintain cleanliness of the site
5. Comply with the parking space regulations as per the Construction Regulatory Requirements

Activity Specific Conditions:
1. The Commercial Registration for this activity can only be registered in service and industrial streets/areas

Note: Uploading pictures of the site/shop may expedite the process of obtaining approval

Required Documents

- Lease agreement (after obtaining the necessary approvals from other licensing entities)
- Shop photos

Other Documents

- Cabinet's Decision (56) of the year 2022 regarding the Regulatory Requirements of Construction for various areas in the Kingdom of Bahrain

Ministry of Health (Post) (2023-2)

Approval Name	Description	Estimated Time
Health approval for Manufacture of soap and detergents, cleaning and polishing preparations, perfumes and toilet preparations	Health approval for Manufacture of soap and detergents, cleaning and polishing preparations, perfumes and toilet preparations	5 Days

Fee Details (if any)

200 BD

License Information

Please refer to the “Health requirements checklist document in the “other downloadable documents” section for the requirements and specifications for this activity.

You could employ one of the licensed engineering offices listed in the business support organizations list to provide engineering drawings that will be attached when submitting an application via the Sijilat system.

Required Documents

•A list of products to be manufactured a long with Certificate of Composition of each product showing the percentages of the ingredients and their functions according to the Gulf Safety Requirements for Cosmetics “GSO 1943” or equivalent for household detergents.
•Certificate of Conformity for the manufactured products issued by a conformity company accredited by the Ministry of Health to prove that the local manufactured products that are stated in the certificate have been examined, analyzed and assessed in compliance with the Safety Requirements of Cosmetics and Personal Care Products in the Gulf Standardization Organization (GSO 1943), or other equivalent for detergents. Name and information of the pro
•Drawings/ layout of premises (approved by an engineering office).
•Good Manufacture Practice Certificate (GMP) in accordance with ISO 22716:2007 Guidelines for Cosmetics or any other equivalent standard for household detergents, which must be issued by a conformity body accredited by the Ministry of Health and the period of validity of the certificate must be mentioned.
•Requirement Checklist (Stamped by an engineering office)
•drawings/layouts of the premises

Directorate Of Industrial Developments (Final Site Inspection) (2023-2)

Approval Name	Description	Estimated Time
Notification Only	Notification to the Industrial development directorate on obtaining a commercial registration with the license to practice the activity.	There is no License Information in this license. Days

Fee Details (if any)

There is no Estimated Processing Time (Days) in this license.

License Information

The industrial license is automatically issued by the Industrial development Directorate after obtaining the approval of other licensing/approving entities.

Please ensure that the actual production date does no exceed the expected production date.

If actual production will start on or before the expected production date please apply for a “New Industrial Registration” by following the steps below:

1- Visit the Industrial services system (www.industry.bh).
2- Select “Industrial Registration”.
3- Select “New Registration” application.

In the event that the actual production date will exceed the expected production date an “Extension of expected production date” application must be submitted by following the steps below:

1- Visit the Industrial services system (www.industry.bh).

2- Select “Industrial License”.
3- Select “Extension of expected production date” application.

Please note that failure to do so within 60 days from the expected production date will result in a violation to be added.

Other Documents

- Law No. (81) of 2006 with respect to approving The Common Industrial Law of the GCC
- Ministerial Resolution No. (11) of 2009 with respect to promulgating Implementing Regulation
- Operational requirements for the directorate of industrial developments activities

Manufacturing

ISIC4	Business activity
2029-1	Manufacture of other chemical products - Workshop

Description

This activity includes:
- manufacture of propellant powders
- manufacture of gelatine and its derivatives, glues and prepared adhesives, including rubber-based glues and adhesives
- manufacture of extracts of natural aromatic products
- manufacture of resinoids
- manufacture of aromatic distilled waters
- manufacture of mixtures of odoriferous products for the manufacture of perfumes or food
- manufacture of photographic plates, films, sensitized paper and other sensitized unexposed materials
- manufacture of chemical preparations for photographic uses
- manufacture of various chemical products:
· peptones, peptone derivatives, other protein substances and their derivatives n.e.c.
· essential oils
· chemically modified oils and fats
· materials used in the finishing of textiles and leather
· powders and pastes used in soldering, brazing or welding
· substances used to pickle metal
· prepared additives for cements
· activated carbon, lubricating oil additives, prepared rubber accelerators, catalysts and other chemical products for industrial use
· anti-knock preparations, antifreeze preparations
· composite diagnostic or laboratory reagents
- manufacture of writing and drawing ink
- manufacture of matches

This activity excludes:
- manufacture of chemically defined products in bulk
- manufacture of distilled water
- manufacture of synthetic aromatic products
- manufacture of printing ink
- manufacture of perfumes and toilet preparations

- manufacture of asphalt-based adhesives

Business Requirements

Age

18 and above

Allowed for Nationalities

Bahraini 100%	GCC 100%
American 100%	Singaporean 100%
Icelander 100%	Liechtensteiner 100%
Norwegian 100%	Swiss 100%

Foreign Allowed up to 100%

Legal Type

It is allowed to register according to the legal forms mentioned below

Allowed for Individual Commercial Registration (ICR) : Yes

Allowed for Company Commercial Registration (CCR) : Yes

- Bahrain Shareholding Company (Public)
- With Limited Liability Company
- Branch of a Foreign Company
- Bahrain Shareholding Company (Closed)
- Partnership Company
- Simple Commandite Company
- Commandite By Shares Company
- Non Profit Company

Required Step of Licenses and Approvals

Ministry / Directorate	License / Approval Requirements	Approval Type
General Directorate Of Criminal Investigation	Approval by General Directorate of Criminal Investigation	Pre
Municipality Affairs	Site Approval for manufacturing activities (Type C)	Post
Supreme Council for Environment	Environmental Approval for Manufacture of other chemical products n.e.c. - Workshop	Post

General Directorate Of Criminal Investigation (Pre) (2029-1)

Approval Name	Description	Estimated Time
Approval by General Directorate of Criminal Investigation	General Directorate of Criminal Investigation Approval for the Activity	7 Days

Fee Details (if any)

There is no Estimated Processing Time (Days) in this license.

License Information

- The applicant should not have a criminal record, unless they have been rehabilitated in criminal cases

Municipality Affairs (Post) (2029-1)

Approval Name	Description	Estimated Time
Site Approval for manufacturing activities (Type C)	Municipality Approval for the Commercial Registration address or the site in which the Activity will be practiced	3 Days

Fee Details (if any)

10 BD

License Information

General Conditions:
1. Size of shop/premises must be sufficient for the activity
2. Businesses may not carry out the activity outside the boundaries of the shop/ premises
3. It is prohibited to display or store any items or equipment outside the shop / premises boundary without prior approval from the Municipality. In the event of non-compliance, the Ministry of Municipality Affairs has the right to take necessary action.
4. Maintain cleanliness of the site
5. Comply with the parking space regulations as per the Construction Regulatory Requirements

Activity Specific Conditions:
1. The commercial registration for this activity can be registered on Industrial streets/ areas only

Note: Uploading pictures of the site/shop may expedite the process of obtaining approval

Required Documents

- Lease agreement (after obtaining the necessary approvals from other licensing entities)
- Shop photos

Other Documents

- Cabinet's Decision (93) of the year 2023 regarding the Regulatory Requirements of Construction for various areas in the Kingdom of Bahrain

Supreme Council for Environment (Post) (2029-1)

Approval Name	Description	Estimated Time
Environmental Approval for Manufacture of other chemical products n.e.c. - Workshop	This service aims to assess the environmental impact and licensing of development, industrial and production projects and activities, in accordance with the standards of protecting the environment and its natural resources	10 Days

Fee Details (if any)

- 30 Bahraini Dinars or 200 Bahraini Dinars for the fast-track procedure (when the data requested within the EA-2 form is sufficient without the need for additional studies)
- 4000 Bahraini Dinars or 6000 Bahraini Dinars for the fast track procedure (when it is necessary to submit an environmental impact assessment study for the project), with an additional payment of 100 Bahraini Dinars when it is necessary to submit a proposal for the scope of the study before submitting it or 500 Bahraini Dinars for a fast track procedure when the proposed scope of the study is being submitted before the study

License Information

To check the requirements for this approval, kindly download the detailed requirements sheet from the other downloadable documents section, which includes the following requirements:

- Building layout engineering and equipment requirements
- Workplace requirements
- Storage requirements
- Material management requirements
- Waste Management Requirements

- Documents and reporting requirements
- General requirements

Other Documents

- Annex to the Minister of Housing, Municipalities and Environment order regarding the project's environmental assessment
- Law No. (1) of 2020 regarding the management of refrigeration media, refrigeration units and air conditioning units as decided by the Chairman of the Supreme Council for the Environment
- Law No. (2) of 2021 regarding the environmental standards of air as decided by the Chairman of the Supreme Council for Environment
- Law No. (3) of 2021 regarding the environmental standards of water as decided by the Chairman of the Supreme Council for the Environment
- Law No. (54) of 2014 regarding the approval of the unified law regarding substances that deplete the ozone layer for the GCC countries
- Law No. (7) of 2022 regarding the environment
- Ministerial Order No. (1) of 1998 regarding Project's Environmental Assessment
- Ministerial Order No. (10) of 2006 regarding the installation of devices for on-line monitoring of atmospheric air pollutants
- Ministerial Order No. (3) of 2005 regarding environmental requirements and standards in workplaces, especially regarding workers' exposure to heat and noise, and the provision of tools and protective clothing such as gloves, glasses, face masks and earplugs, with a commitment to use them during work
- Ministerial Order No. (3) of 2006 regarding the management of hazardous waste
- Ministerial Order No. (4) of 2005 regarding the management of used oils
- Ministerial Order No. (4) of 2006 regarding the management of hazardous chemicals
- Ministerial Order No. (4) of 2021 regarding the fees of the licenses and services provided by the Supreme Council for Environment
- Ministerial Order No. (6) of 2013 amending order No. (4) of 2006 regarding the management of hazardous chemicals
- Ministerial Order No. (7) of 2002 regarding the control importation and use of prohibited and severely restricted chemicals, and not to import any chemical compound except after obtaining approvals of all concerned authorities, including the executive body of the Supreme Council for Environment
- Ministerial Order No. (7) of 2013 amending order No. (3) of 2006 regarding the management of hazardous waste
- Ministerial Order No. 4 of 2014 regarding the management of the environmental consulting offices operations in the Kingdom of Bahrain
- Order No. (2) of 2020 determining the categories of fees for licensing refrigeration media, refrigeration units and air conditioning units as decided by the Chairman of the Supreme Council for the Environment
- Requirements for business activities
- licensing form for the supreme council of the environment

Manufacturing

ISIC4	Business activity
2029-2	Manufacture of other chemical products - Factory

Description

This activity includes:
- manufacture of propellant powders
- manufacture of gelatine and its derivatives, glues and prepared adhesives, including rubber-based glues and adhesives
- manufacture of extracts of natural aromatic products
- manufacture of resinoids
- manufacture of aromatic distilled waters
- manufacture of mixtures of odoriferous products for the manufacture of perfumes or food
- manufacture of photographic plates, films, sensitized paper and other sensitized unexposed materials
- manufacture of chemical preparations for photographic uses
- manufacture of various chemical products:
· peptones, peptone derivatives, other protein substances and their derivatives n.e.c.
· essential oils
· chemically modified oils and fats
· materials used in the finishing of textiles and leather
· powders and pastes used in soldering, brazing or welding
· substances used to pickle metal
· prepared additives for cements
· activated carbon, lubricating oil additives, prepared rubber accelerators, catalysts and other chemical products for industrial use
· anti-knock preparations, antifreeze preparations
· composite diagnostic or laboratory reagents
- manufacture of writing and drawing ink
- manufacture of matches

This activity excludes:
- manufacture of chemically defined products in bulk
- manufacture of distilled water
- manufacture of synthetic aromatic products
- manufacture of printing ink
- manufacture of perfumes and toilet preparations

- manufacture of asphalt-based adhesives

Business Requirements

Age

18 and above

Allowed for Nationalities

Bahraini 100%	GCC 100%
American 100%	Singaporean 100%
Icelander 100%	Liechtensteiner 100%
Norwegian 100%	Swiss 100%

Foreign Allowed up to 100%

Legal Type

It is allowed to register according to the legal forms mentioned below

Allowed for Individual Commercial Registration (ICR) : Yes

Allowed for Company Commercial Registration (CCR) : Yes

- Bahrain Shareholding Company (Public)
- With Limited Liability Company
- Branch of a Foreign Company
- Bahrain Shareholding Company (Closed)
- Partnership Company
- Simple Commandite Company
- Commandite By Shares Company
- Non Profit Company

Required Step of Licenses and Approvals

Ministry / Directorate	License / Approval Requirements	Approval Type
Directorate Of Industrial Developments	Approval by Directorate of Industrial Developments(Pre)	Pre
General Directorate Of Criminal Investigation	Approval by General Directorate of Criminal Investigation	Pre
Supreme Council for Environment	Environmental Approval for Manufacture of other chemical products n.e.c. - factory	Post
Municipality Affairs	Site Approval for manufacturing activities (Type C)	Post
Directorate Of Industrial Developments	Notification Only	Final Site Inspection

Directorate Of Industrial Developments (Pre) (2029-2)

Approval Name	Description	Estimated Time
Approval by Directorate of Industrial Developments(Pre)	This is a preliminary approval given by the Directorate of Industrial Development to ensure that the applicant has selected the appropriate activity based on the information provided	5 Days

Fee Details (if any)

There is no Estimated Processing Time (Days) in this license.

License Information

Applicants would have to provide through the system the following information:

General Information:

- Total Amount Invested in the Project (This should include value of machinery and fixed assets)
- Estimated number of workforce (Bahraini and Non-Bahraini)
- Expected utility consumption of electricity, water and natural gas
- Total area of the project

Activity Information:

- Product Information:

1) The products to be manufactured by choosing the appropriate HS codes (HS code list can be downloaded from the application if needed).
2) Product name.
3) Expected production date (The expected date on which the factory will start producing the product).

4) The maximum installed capacity and the expected production capacity per year based on the fixed HS code's unit of measure.

• Main raw materials: The main raw materials to be used in production and its source

• Main Machinery and Equipment: The main machinery and equipment to be used in production and its information.

• Manufacturing process: Brief on the manufacturing process explaining how materials are transformed from one state to another until reaching the final product, mentioning the types of materials used, the operations performed, and the machinery/equipment used in each step (if any) for each product.

Required Documents

•Photos of machinery/ equipment to be used
•Photos of products to be manufactured

Other Documents

•Law No. (81) of 2006 with respect to approving The Common Industrial Law of the GCC
•Ministerial Resolution No. (11) of 2009
•Operational requirements for the directorate of industrial developments activities

General Directorate Of Criminal Investigation (Pre) (2029-2)

Approval Name	Description	Estimated Time
Approval by General Directorate of Criminal Investigation	General Directorate of Criminal Investigation Approval for the Activity	7 Days

Fee Details (if any)

There is no Estimated Processing Time (Days) in this license.

License Information

- The applicant should not have a criminal record, unless they have been rehabilitated in criminal cases

Supreme Council for Environment (Post) (2029-2)

Approval Name	Description	Estimated Time
Environmental Approval for Manufacture of other chemical products n.e.c. - factory	This service aims to assess the environmental impact and licensing of development, industrial and production projects and activities, in accordance with the standards of protecting the environment and its natural resources	10 Days

Fee Details (if any)

- 30 Bahraini Dinars or 200 Bahraini Dinars for the fast-track procedure (when the data requested within the EA-2 form is sufficient without the need for additional studies)
- 4000 Bahraini Dinars or 6000 Bahraini Dinars for the fast track procedure (when it is necessary to submit an environmental impact assessment study for the project), with an additional payment of 100 Bahraini Dinars when it is necessary to submit a proposal for the scope of the study before submitting it or 500 Bahraini Dinars for a fast track procedure when the proposed scope of the study is being submitted before the study

License Information

To check the requirements for this approval, kindly download the detailed requirements sheet from the other downloadable documents section, which includes the following requirements:

- Building layout engineering and equipment requirements
- Workplace requirements
- Storage requirements
- Material management requirements
- Waste Management Requirements

- Documents and reporting requirements
- General requirements

Other Documents

- Annex to the Minister of Housing, Municipalities and Environment order regarding the project's environmental assessment
- Law No. (1) of 2020 regarding the management of refrigeration media, refrigeration units and air conditioning units as decided by the Chairman of the Supreme Council for the Environment
- Law No. (2) of 2021 regarding the environmental standards of air as decided by the Chairman of the Supreme Council for Environment
- Law No. (3) of 2021 regarding the environmental standards of water as decided by the Chairman of the Supreme Council for the Environment
- Law No. (54) of 2014 regarding the approval of the unified law regarding substances that deplete the ozone layer for the GCC countries
- Law No. (7) of 2022 regarding the environment
- Ministerial Order No. (1) of 1998 regarding Project's Environmental Assessment
- Ministerial Order No. (10) of 2006 regarding the installation of devices for on-line monitoring of atmospheric air pollutants
- Ministerial Order No. (3) of 2005 regarding environmental requirements and standards in workplaces, especially regarding workers' exposure to heat and noise, and the provision of tools and protective clothing such as gloves, glasses, face masks and earplugs, with a commitment to use them during work
- Ministerial Order No. (3) of 2006 regarding the management of hazardous waste
- Ministerial Order No. (4) of 2005 regarding the management of used oils
- Ministerial Order No. (4) of 2006 regarding the management of hazardous chemicals
- Ministerial Order No. (4) of 2021 regarding the fees of the licenses and services provided by the Supreme Council for Environment
- Ministerial Order No. (6) of 2013 amending order No. (4) of 2006 regarding the management of hazardous chemicals
- Ministerial Order No. (7) of 2002 regarding the control importation and use of prohibited and severely restricted chemicals, and not to import any chemical compound except after obtaining approvals of all concerned authorities, including the executive body of the Supreme Council for Environment
- Ministerial Order No. (7) of 2013 amending order No. (3) of 2006 regarding the management of hazardous waste
- Ministerial Order No. 4 of 2014 regarding the management of the environmental consulting offices operations in the Kingdom of Bahrain
- Order No. (2) of 2020 determining the categories of fees for licensing refrigeration media, refrigeration units and air conditioning units as decided by the Chairman of the Supreme Council for the Environment
- Requirements for business activities
- licensing form for the supreme council of the environment

Municipality Affairs (Post) (2029-2)

Approval Name	Description	Estimated Time
Site Approval for manufacturing activities (Type C)	Municipality Approval for the Commercial Registration address or the site in which the Activity will be practiced	3 Days

Fee Details (if any)

10 BD

License Information

General Conditions:
1. Size of shop/premises must be sufficient for the activity
2. Businesses may not carry out the activity outside the boundaries of the shop/ premises
3. It is prohibited to display or store any items or equipment outside the shop / premises boundary without prior approval from the Municipality. In the event of non-compliance, the Ministry of Municipality Affairs has the right to take necessary action.
4. Maintain cleanliness of the site
5. Comply with the parking space regulations as per the Construction Regulatory Requirements

Activity Specific Conditions:
1. The commercial registration for this activity can be registered on Industrial streets/ areas only

Note: Uploading pictures of the site/shop may expedite the process of obtaining approval

Required Documents

- Lease agreement (after obtaining the necessary approvals from other licensing entities)
- Shop photos

Other Documents

- Cabinet's Decision (93) of the year 2023 regarding the Regulatory Requirements of Construction for various areas in the Kingdom of Bahrain

Directorate Of Industrial Developments (Final Site Inspection) (2029-2)

Approval Name	Description	Estimated Time
Notification Only	Notification to the Industrial development directorate on obtaining a commercial registration with the license to practice the activity.	There is no License Information in this license. Days

Fee Details (if any)

There is no Estimated Processing Time (Days) in this license.

License Information

The industrial license is automatically issued by the Industrial development Directorate after obtaining the approval of other licensing/approving entities.

Please ensure that the actual production date does no exceed the expected production date.

If actual production will start on or before the expected production date please apply for a “New Industrial Registration” by following the steps below:

1- Visit the Industrial services system (www.industry.bh).
2- Select “Industrial Registration”.
3- Select “New Registration” application.

In the event that the actual production date will exceed the expected production date an “Extension of expected production date” application must be submitted by following the steps below:

1- Visit the Industrial services system (www.industry.bh).

2- Select “Industrial License”.
3- Select “Extension of expected production date” application.

Please note that failure to do so within 60 days from the expected production date will result in a violation to be added.

Other Documents

- Law No. (81) of 2006 with respect to approving The Common Industrial Law of the GCC
- Ministerial Resolution No. (11) of 2009 with respect to promulgating Implementing Regulation
- Operational requirements for the directorate of industrial developments activities

Manufacturing

ISIC4	Business activity
203	Manufacture of man-made fibres

Description

This activity includes:
- manufacture of synthetic or artificial filament tow
- manufacture of synthetic or artificial staple fibres, not carded, combed or otherwise processed for spinning
- manufacture of synthetic or artificial filament yarn, including high-tenacity yarn
- manufacture of synthetic or artificial monofilament or strip

Business Requirements

Age

18 and above

Allowed for Nationalities

Bahraini 100%	GCC 100%
American 100%	Singaporean 100%
Icelander 100%	Liechtenstein er 100%
Norwegian 100%	Swiss 100%

Foreign Allowed up to 100%

Legal Type

It is allowed to register according to the legal forms mentioned below

Allowed for Individual Commercial Registration (ICR) : Yes

Allowed for Company Commercial Registration (CCR) : Yes

- Bahrain Shareholding Company (Public)
- With Limited Liability Company
- Branch of a Foreign Company
- Bahrain Shareholding Company (Closed)
- Partnership Company
- Simple Commandite Company
- Commandite By Shares Company
- Non Profit Company

Required Step of Licenses and Approvals

Ministry / Directorate	License / Approval Requirements	Approval Type
Directorate Of Industrial Developments	Approval by Directorate of Industrial Developments(Pre)	Pre
Municipality Affairs	Site Approval for manufacturing activities (Type C)	Post
Supreme Council for Environment	Environmental Approval for making fiber Synthetic activity	Post
Directorate Of Industrial Developments	Notification Only	Final Site Inspection

Directorate Of Industrial Developments (Pre) (203)

Approval Name	Description	Estimated Time
Approval by Directorate of Industrial Developments(Pre)	This is a preliminary approval given by the Directorate of Industrial Development to ensure that the applicant has selected the appropriate activity based on the information provided	5 Days

Fee Details (if any)

There is no Estimated Processing Time (Days) in this license.

License Information

Applicants would have to provide through the system the following information:

General Information:

- Total Amount Invested in the Project (This should include value of machinery and fixed assets)
- Estimated number of workforce (Bahraini and Non-Bahraini)
- Expected utility consumption of electricity, water and natural gas
- Total area of the project

Activity Information:

- Product Information:

1) The products to be manufactured by choosing the appropriate HS codes (HS code list can be downloaded from the application if needed).
2) Product name.
3) Expected production date (The expected date on which the factory will start producing the product).

4) The maximum installed capacity and the expected production capacity per year based on the fixed HS code's unit of measure.

• Main raw materials: The main raw materials to be used in production and its source

• Main Machinery and Equipment: The main machinery and equipment to be used in production and its information.

• Manufacturing process: Brief on the manufacturing process explaining how materials are transformed from one state to another until reaching the final product, mentioning the types of materials used, the operations performed, and the machinery/equipment used in each step (if any) for each product.

Required Documents

•Photos of machinery/ equipment to be used
•Photos of products to be manufactured

Other Documents

•Law No. (81) of 2006 with respect to approving The Common Industrial Law of the GCC
•Ministerial Resolution No. (11) of 2009
•Operational requirements for the directorate of industrial developments activities

Municipality Affairs (Post) (203)

Approval Name	Description	Estimated Time
Site Approval for manufacturing activities (Type C)	Municipality Approval for the Commercial Registration address or the site in which the Activity will be practiced	3 Days

Fee Details (if any)

10 BD

License Information

General Conditions:
1. Size of shop/premises must be sufficient for the activity
2. Businesses may not carry out the activity outside the boundaries of the shop/ premises
3. It is prohibited to display or store any items or equipment outside the shop / premises boundary without prior approval from the Municipality. In the event of non-compliance, the Ministry of Municipality Affairs has the right to take necessary action.
4. Maintain cleanliness of the site
5. Comply with the parking space regulations as per the Construction Regulatory Requirements

Activity Specific Conditions:
1. The commercial registration for this activity can be registered on Industrial streets/ areas only

Note: Uploading pictures of the site/shop may expedite the process of obtaining approval

Required Documents

- Lease agreement (after obtaining the necessary approvals from other licensing entities)
- Shop photos

Other Documents

- Cabinet's Decision (93) of the year 2023 regarding the Regulatory Requirements of Construction for various areas in the Kingdom of Bahrain

Supreme Council for Environment (Post) (203)

Approval Name	Description	Estimated Time
Environmental Approval for making fiber Synthetic activity	This service aims to assess the environmental impact and licensing of development, industrial and production projects and activities, in accordance with the standards of protecting the environment and its natural resources	10 Days

Fee Details (if any)

- 30 Bahraini Dinars or 200 Bahraini Dinars for the fast-track procedure (when the data requested within the EA-2 form is sufficient without the need for additional studies)
- 4000 Bahraini Dinars or 6000 Bahraini Dinars for the fast track procedure (when it is necessary to submit an environmental impact assessment study for the project), with an additional payment of 100 Bahraini Dinars when it is necessary to submit a proposal for the scope of the study before submitting it or 500 Bahraini Dinars for a fast track procedure when the proposed scope of the study is being submitted before the study

License Information

To check the requirements for this approval, kindly download the detailed requirements sheet from the other downloadable documents section, which includes the following requirements:

- Building layout engineering and equipment requirements
- Workplace requirements
- Storage requirements
- Material management requirements
- Waste Management Requirements

- Documents and reporting requirements
- General requirements

Other Documents

- Annex to the Minister of Housing, Municipalities and Environment order regarding the project's environmental assessment
- Law No. (2) of 2021 regarding the environmental standards of air as decided by the Chairman of the Supreme Council for Environment
- Law No. (3) of 2021 regarding the environmental standards of water as decided by the Chairman of the Supreme Council for the Environment
- Law No. (54) of 2014 regarding the approval of the unified law regarding substances that deplete the ozone layer for the GCC countries
- Law No. (7) of 2022 regarding the environment
- Ministerial Order No. (1) of 1998 regarding Project's Environmental Assessment
- Ministerial Order No. (10) of 2006 regarding the installation of devices for on-line monitoring of atmospheric air pollutants
- Ministerial Order No. (11) of 2019 regarding the issue of technical specification of plastic products
- Ministerial Order No. (3) of 2005 regarding environmental requirements and standards in workplaces, especially regarding workers' exposure to heat and noise, and the provision of tools and protective clothing such as gloves, glasses, face masks and earplugs, with a commitment to use them during work
- Ministerial Order No. (3) of 2006 regarding the management of hazardous waste
- Ministerial Order No. (4) of 2005 regarding the management of used oils
- Ministerial Order No. (4) of 2006 regarding the management of hazardous chemicals
- Ministerial Order No. (4) of 2021 regarding the fees of the licenses and services provided by the Supreme Council for Environment
- Ministerial Order No. (6) of 2013 amending order No. (4) of 2006 regarding the management of hazardous chemicals
- Ministerial Order No. (7) of 2002 regarding the control importation and use of prohibited and severely restricted chemicals, and not to import any chemical compound except after obtaining approvals of all concerned authorities, including the executive body of the Supreme Council for Environment
- Ministerial Order No. (7) of 2013 amending order No. (3) of 2006 regarding the management of hazardous waste
- Ministerial Order No. 4 of 2014 regarding the management of the environmental consulting offices operations in the Kingdom of Bahrain
- Order No. (2) of 2020 determining the categories of fees for licensing refrigeration media, refrigeration units and air conditioning units as decided by the Chairman of the Supreme Council for the Environment
- Requirements for business activities
- law No. (1) of 2020 regarding the management of refrigeration media, refrigeration units and air conditioning units as decided by the Chairman of the Supreme Council for the Environment

•law No. (2) of 2019 regarding the ban on the import of plastic waste of all kinds as decided by the Chairman of the Supreme Council for the Environment

Directorate Of Industrial Developments (Final Site Inspection) (203)

Approval Name	Description	Estimated Time
Notification Only	Notification to the Industrial development directorate on obtaining a commercial registration with the license to practice the activity.	There is no License Information in this license. Days

Fee Details (if any)

There is no Estimated Processing Time (Days) in this license.

License Information

The industrial license is automatically issued by the Industrial development Directorate after obtaining the approval of other licensing/approving entities.

Please ensure that the actual production date does no exceed the expected production date.

If actual production will start on or before the expected production date please apply for a “New Industrial Registration” by following the steps below:

1- Visit the Industrial services system (www.industry.bh).
2- Select “Industrial Registration”.
3- Select “New Registration” application.

In the event that the actual production date will exceed the expected production date an “Extension of expected production date” application must be submitted by following the steps below:

1- Visit the Industrial services system (www.industry.bh).

2- Select “Industrial License”.
3- Select “Extension of expected production date” application.

Please note that failure to do so within 60 days from the expected production date will result in a violation to be added.

Other Documents

- Law No. (81) of 2006 with respect to approving The Common Industrial Law of the GCC
- Ministerial Resolution No. (11) of 2009 with respect to promulgating Implementing Regulation
- Operational requirements for the directorate of industrial developments activities

Manufacturing

ISIC4	Business activity
21-1	Manufacture of basic pharmaceutical products and pharmaceutical preparations - Workshop

Description

This activity includes the manufacture of basic pharmaceutical products and pharmaceutical preparations. This includes also the manufacture of medicinal chemical and botanical products.
Products manufactured include:
- manufacture of medicinal active substances to be used for their pharmacological properties in the manufacture of medicaments: antibiotics, basic vitamins, salicylic and O-acetylsalicylic acids etc.
- processing of blood
- manufacture of medicaments: antisera and other blood fractions; vaccines; diverse medicaments, including homeopathic preparations
- manufacture of chemical contraceptive products for external use and hormonal contraceptive medicaments
- manufacture of medical diagnostic preparations, including pregnancy tests
- manufacture of radioactive in-vivo diagnostic substances
- manufacture of biotech pharmaceuticals
- manufacture of chemically pure sugars
- processing of glands and manufacture of extracts of glands etc.
- manufacture of medical impregnated wadding, gauze, bandages, dressings etc.
- preparation of botanical products (grinding, grading, milling) for pharmaceutical use

Business Requirements

Age

21 and above

Allowed for Nationalities

Bahraini 100%		GCC 100%	
American 100%		Singaporean 100%	
Icelander 100%		Liechtenstein er 100%	
Norwegian 100%		Swiss 100%	

Foreign Allowed up to 100%

Legal Type

It is allowed to register according to the legal forms mentioned below

Allowed for Individual Commercial Registration (ICR) : Yes

Allowed for Company Commercial Registration (CCR) : Yes

- Bahrain Shareholding Company (Public)
- With Limited Liability Company
- Branch of a Foreign Company
- Bahrain Shareholding Company (Closed)
- Partnership Company
- Simple Commandite Company
- Commandite By Shares Company
- Non Profit Company

Required Step of Licenses and Approvals

Ministry / Directorate	License / Approval Requirements	Approval Type
NHRA-Pharmatical Products Regulation Office	Manufacture of basic pharmaceutical products	Pre

	and pharmaceutical preparations - Pre Approval	
Supreme Council for Environment	Environmental Approval for Pharmaceuticals & Pharmaceuticals Factory - Workshop activity	Post
Municipality Affairs	Site Approval for manufacturing activities (Type B)	Post
NHRA-Pharmatical Products Regulation Office	Manufacture of basic pharmaceutical products and pharmaceutical preparations - Pre Approval	Final Site Inspection

NHRA-Pharmatical Products Regulation Office (Pre) (21-1)

Approval Name	Description	Estimated Time
Manufacture of basic pharmaceutical products and pharmaceutical preparations - Pre Approval	Manufacture of basic pharmaceutical products and pharmaceutical preparations - Pre Approval	5 Days

Fee Details (if any)

Application Fees: 50BD
-Initial Approval for local Pharmaceutical Manufacturing sites: 5000BD.
-Manufacture Site License for Medicine: 5000 per year.
-Manufacture Site License for Pharmaceutical Products: 3000 per year.

License Information

• Filling the Initial Form
• Pay the application fees
• Inspection visit
Requirements
1- Separated from residence building.
2- Availability of adequate parking.
3- The pharmacy has a separated entrance.
4- The pharmacy has a Adequate Area.

•The manufacturing site should be in an area, away from the sources of pollution, vapors, gases, inflammable chemicals and residential area.

•Comply with the manufacturing conditions adopted by the World Health Organization (WHO) as well as other requirements adopted by the NHRA and other concerned official authorities

•The license is subject to Decree No (18) of 1997 with Respect to the Practice of Pharmacists and Pharmaceutical Centers and the amendments made to this law under

Decree Law (20) of 2015, and the Resolution (63) for the Year 2019, to Issue the Regulation of the Requirements and Procedures for the Practice of Pharmacy Professions, Licensing of Pharmaceutical Centers, Medicines and Pharmaceutical Products Factories, and Pharmaceutical Facilities.

• You may visit NHRA's website for the laws applicable to these licenses:http://www.nhra.bh/SitePages/View.aspx?PageId=77

Required Documents

•CPR/ ID copy , passport copy (owner and Partner/s)
•Initial Application Form available on NHRA website
•Lease agreement/ownership (contract)
•Manufacturing site layout/design

Other Documents

•Decree No (18) of 1997 with Respect to the Practice of Pharmacists and Pharmaceutical Centers and the amendments made to this law under Decree Law (20) of 2015
•Resolution (63) for the Year 2019, to Issue the Regulation of the Requirements and Procedures for the Practice of Pharmacy Professions, Licensing of Pharmaceutical Centers, Medicines and Pharmaceutical Products Factories, and Pharmaceutical Facilities.

Supreme Council for Environment (Post) (21-1)

Approval Name	Description	Estimated Time
Environmental Approval for Pharmaceuticals & Pharmaceuticals Factory - Workshop activity	This service aims to assess the environmental impact and licensing of development, industrial and production projects and activities, in accordance with the standards of protecting the environment and its natural resources	10 Days

Fee Details (if any)

- 30 Bahraini Dinars or 200 Bahraini Dinars for the fast-track procedure (when the data requested within the EA-2 form is sufficient without the need for additional studies)
- 4000 Bahraini Dinars or 6000 Bahraini Dinars for the fast track procedure (when it is necessary to submit an environmental impact assessment study for the project), with an additional payment of 100 Bahraini Dinars when it is necessary to submit a proposal for the scope of the study before submitting it or 500 Bahraini Dinars for a fast track procedure when the proposed scope of the study is being submitted before the study

License Information

To check the requirements for this approval, kindly download the detailed requirements sheet from the other downloadable documents section, which includes the following requirements:

- Building layout engineering and equipment requirements
- Workplace requirements
- Storage requirements
- Material management requirements
- Waste Management Requirements

- Documents and reporting requirements
- General requirements

Other Documents

•Annex to the Minister of Housing, Municipalities and Environment order regarding the project's environmental assessment
•Law No. (2) of 2021 regarding the environmental standards of air as decided by the Chairman of the Supreme Council for Environment
•Law No. (3) of 2021 regarding the environmental standards of water as decided by the Chairman of the Supreme Council for the Environment
•Law No. (5) of 2021 regarding CITES Annexes to the Convention on International Trade in Endangered Fauna and Flora
•Law No. (54) of 2014 regarding the approval of the unified law regarding substances that deplete the ozone layer for the GCC countries
•Law No. (7) of 2022 regarding the environment
•Ministerial Order No. (1) of 1998 regarding Project's Environmental Assessment
•Ministerial Order No. (10) of 2006 regarding the installation of devices for on-line monitoring of atmospheric air pollutants
•Ministerial Order No. (11) of 2019 regarding the issue of technical specification of plastic products
•Ministerial Order No. (3) of 2005 regarding environmental requirements and standards in workplaces, especially regarding workers' exposure to heat and noise, and the provision of tools and protective clothing such as gloves, glasses, face masks and earplugs, with a commitment to use them during work
•Ministerial Order No. (3) of 2006 regarding the management of hazardous waste
•Ministerial Order No. (4) of 2005 regarding the management of used oils
•Ministerial Order No. (4) of 2006 regarding the management of hazardous chemicals
•Ministerial Order No. (4) of 2021 regarding the fees of the licenses and services provided by the Supreme Council for Environment
•Ministerial Order No. (6) of 2013 amending order No. (4) of 2006 regarding the management of hazardous chemicals
•Ministerial Order No. (7) of 2002 regarding the control importation and use of prohibited and severely restricted chemicals, and not to import any chemical compound except after obtaining approvals of all concerned authorities, including the executive body of the Supreme Council for Environment
•Ministerial Order No. (7) of 2013 amending order No. (3) of 2006 regarding the management of hazardous waste
•Ministerial Order No. 4 of 2014 regarding the management of the environmental consulting offices operations in the Kingdom of Bahrain
•Order No. (2) of 2020 determining the categories of fees for licensing refrigeration media, refrigeration units and air conditioning units as decided by the Chairman of the Supreme Council for the Environment
•Requirements for business activities
•law No. (1) of 2020 regarding the management of refrigeration media, refrigeration

units and air conditioning units as decided by the Chairman of the Supreme Council for the Environment
•law No. (2) of 2019 regarding the ban on the import of plastic waste of all kinds as decided by the Chairman of the Supreme Council for the Environment
•law No. (204) of 2018 regarding banning the export of some types of local fishes, shrimps and other aquatic organisms, and coordinating with the Agriculture and Marine Resources at the Ministry of Works, Municipalities and Urban Planning regarding the import and export of some species

Municipality Affairs (Post) (21-1)

Approval Name	Description	Estimated Time
Site Approval for manufacturing activities (Type B)	Municipality Approval for the Commercial Registration address or the site in which the Activity will be practiced	3 Days

Fee Details (if any)

10 BD

License Information

General Conditions:
1. Size of shop/premises must be sufficient for the activity
2. Businesses may not carry out the activity outside the boundaries of the shop/ premises
3. It is prohibited to display or store any items or equipment outside the shop / premises boundary without prior approval from the Municipality. In the event of non-compliance, the Ministry of Municipality Affairs has the right to take necessary action.
4. Maintain cleanliness of the site
5. Comply with the parking space regulations as per the Construction Regulatory Requirements

Activity Specific Conditions:
1. The Commercial Registration for this activity can only be registered in service and industrial streets/areas

Note: Uploading pictures of the site/shop may expedite the process of obtaining approval

Required Documents

- Lease agreement (after obtaining the necessary approvals from other licensing entities)
- Shop photos

Other Documents

- Cabinet's Decision (56) of the year 2022 regarding the Regulatory Requirements of Construction for various areas in the Kingdom of Bahrain

NHRA-Pharmatical Products Regulation Office (Final Site Inspection) (21-1)

Approval Name	Description	Estimated Time
Manufacture of basic pharmaceutical products and pharmaceutical preparations - Pre Approval	Manufacture of basic pharmaceutical products and pharmaceutical preparations - Pre Approval	5 Days

Fee Details (if any)

Application Fees: 50BD
-Initial Approval for local Pharmaceutical Manufacturing sites: 5000BD.
-Manufacture Site License for Medicine: 5000 per year.
-Manufacture Site License for Pharmaceutical Products: 3000 per year.

License Information

• Filling the Initial Form
• Pay the application fees
• Inspection visit
Requirements
1- Separated from residence building.
2- Availability of adequate parking.
3- The pharmacy has a separated entrance.
4- The pharmacy has a Adequate Area.

•The manufacturing site should be in an area, away from the sources of pollution, vapors, gases, inflammable chemicals and residential area.

•Comply with the manufacturing conditions adopted by the World Health Organization (WHO) as well as other requirements adopted by the NHRA and other concerned official authorities

•The license is subject to Decree No (18) of 1997 with Respect to the Practice of Pharmacists and Pharmaceutical Centers and the amendments made to this law under Decree Law (20) of 2015, and the Resolution (63) for the Year 2019, to Issue the Regulation of the Requirements and Procedures for the Practice of Pharmacy Professions, Licensing of Pharmaceutical Centers, Medicines and Pharmaceutical Products Factories, and Pharmaceutical Facilities.
• You may visit NHRA's website for the laws applicable to these licenses:http://www.nhra.bh/SitePages/View.aspx?PageId=77

Required Documents

•CPR/ ID copy , passport copy (owner and Partner/s)
•Initial Application Form available on NHRA website
•Lease agreement/ownership (contract)
•Manufacturing site layout/design

Other Documents

•Decree No (18) of 1997 with Respect to the Practice of Pharmacists and Pharmaceutical Centers and the amendments made to this law under Decree Law (20) of 2015
•Resolution (63) for the Year 2019, to Issue the Regulation of the Requirements and Procedures for the Practice of Pharmacy Professions, Licensing of Pharmaceutical Centers, Medicines and Pharmaceutical Products Factories, and Pharmaceutical Facilities.

Manufacturing

ISIC4	Business activity
21-2	Manufacture of basic pharmaceutical products and pharmaceutical preparations - Factory

Description

This activity includes the manufacture of basic pharmaceutical products and pharmaceutical preparations. This includes also the manufacture of medicinal chemical and botanical products.
Products manufactured include:
- manufacture of medicinal active substances to be used for their pharmacological properties in the manufacture of medicaments: antibiotics, basic vitamins, salicylic and O-acetylsalicylic acids etc.
- processing of blood
- manufacture of medicaments: antisera and other blood fractions; vaccines; diverse medicaments, including homeopathic preparations
- manufacture of chemical contraceptive products for external use and hormonal contraceptive medicaments
- manufacture of medical diagnostic preparations, including pregnancy tests
- manufacture of radioactive in-vivo diagnostic substances
- manufacture of biotech pharmaceuticals
- manufacture of chemically pure sugars
- processing of glands and manufacture of extracts of glands etc.
- manufacture of medical impregnated wadding, gauze, bandages, dressings etc.
- preparation of botanical products (grinding, grading, milling) for pharmaceutical use

Business Requirements

Age

21 and above

Allowed for Nationalities

Bahraini 100%		GCC 100%	
American 100%		Singaporean 100%	
Icelander 100%		Liechtenstein er 100%	
Norwegian 100%		Swiss 100%	

Foreign Allowed up to 100%

Legal Type

It is allowed to register according to the legal forms mentioned below

Allowed for Individual Commercial Registration (ICR) : Yes

Allowed for Company Commercial Registration (CCR) : Yes

- Bahrain Shareholding Company (Public)
- With Limited Liability Company
- Branch of a Foreign Company
- Bahrain Shareholding Company (Closed)
- Partnership Company
- Simple Commandite Company
- Commandite By Shares Company
- Non Profit Company

Required Step of Licenses and Approvals

Ministry / Directorate	License / Approval Requirements	Approval Type
NHRA-Pharmatical Products Regulation Office	Manufacture of basic pharmaceutical products	Pre

	and pharmaceutical preparations - Pre Approval	
Directorate Of Industrial Developments	Approval by Directorate of Industrial Developments(Pre)	Pre
Municipality Affairs	Site Approval for manufacturing activities (Type B)	Post
Supreme Council for Environment	Environmental Approval for Pharmaceuticals and Pharmaceuticals Factory - Factory activity	Post
NHRA-Pharmatical Products Regulation Office	Manufacture of basic pharmaceutical products and pharmaceutical preparations - Final Approval	Final Site Inspection
Directorate Of Industrial Developments	Notification Only	Final Site Inspection

NHRA-Pharmatical Products Regulation Office (Pre) (21-2)

Approval Name	Description	Estimated Time
Manufacture of basic pharmaceutical products and pharmaceutical preparations - Pre Approval	Manufacture of basic pharmaceutical products and pharmaceutical preparations - Pre Approval	5 Days

Fee Details (if any)

Application Fees: 50BD
-Initial Approval for local Pharmaceutical Manufacturing sites: 5000BD.
-Manufacture Site License for Medicine: 5000 per year.
-Manufacture Site License for Pharmaceutical Products: 3000 per year.

License Information

• Filling the Initial Form
• Pay the application fees
• Inspection visit
Requirements
1- Separated from residence building.
2- Availability of adequate parking.
3- The pharmacy has a separated entrance.
4- The pharmacy has a Adequate Area.

•The manufacturing site should be in an area, away from the sources of pollution, vapors, gases, inflammable chemicals and residential area.

•Comply with the manufacturing conditions adopted by the World Health Organization (WHO) as well as other requirements adopted by the NHRA and other concerned official authorities

•The license is subject to Decree No (18) of 1997 with Respect to the Practice of Pharmacists and Pharmaceutical Centers and the amendments made to this law under

Decree Law (20) of 2015, and the Resolution (63) for the Year 2019, to Issue the Regulation of the Requirements and Procedures for the Practice of Pharmacy Professions, Licensing of Pharmaceutical Centers, Medicines and Pharmaceutical Products Factories, and Pharmaceutical Facilities.

• You may visit NHRA's website for the laws applicable to these licenses:http://www.nhra.bh/SitePages/View.aspx?PageId=77

Required Documents

•CPR/ ID copy , passport copy (owner and Partner/s)
•Initial Application Form available on NHRA website
•Lease agreement/ownership (contract)
•Manufacturing site layout/design

Other Documents

•Decree No (18) of 1997 with Respect to the Practice of Pharmacists and Pharmaceutical Centers and the amendments made to this law under Decree Law (20) of 2015
•Resolution (63) for the Year 2019, to Issue the Regulation of the Requirements and Procedures for the Practice of Pharmacy Professions, Licensing of Pharmaceutical Centers, Medicines and Pharmaceutical Products Factories, and Pharmaceutical Facilities.

Directorate Of Industrial Developments (Pre) (21-2)

Approval Name	Description	Estimated Time
Approval by Directorate of Industrial Developments(Pre)	This is a preliminary approval given by the Directorate of Industrial Development to ensure that the applicant has selected the appropriate activity based on the information provided	5 Days

Fee Details (if any)

There is no Estimated Processing Time (Days) in this license.

License Information

Applicants would have to provide through the system the following information:

General Information:

- Total Amount Invested in the Project (This should include value of machinery and fixed assets)
- Estimated number of workforce (Bahraini and Non-Bahraini)
- Expected utility consumption of electricity, water and natural gas
- Total area of the project

Activity Information:

- Product Information:

1) The products to be manufactured by choosing the appropriate HS codes (HS code list can be downloaded from the application if needed).
2) Product name.
3) Expected production date (The expected date on which the factory will start producing the product).

4) The maximum installed capacity and the expected production capacity per year based on the fixed HS code's unit of measure.

• Main raw materials: The main raw materials to be used in production and its source

• Main Machinery and Equipment: The main machinery and equipment to be used in production and its information.

• Manufacturing process: Brief on the manufacturing process explaining how materials are transformed from one state to another until reaching the final product, mentioning the types of materials used, the operations performed, and the machinery/equipment used in each step (if any) for each product.

Required Documents

•Photos of machinery/ equipment to be used
•Photos of products to be manufactured

Other Documents

•Law No. (81) of 2006 with respect to approving The Common Industrial Law of the GCC
•Ministerial Resolution No. (11) of 2009
•Operational requirements for the directorate of industrial developments activities

Municipality Affairs (Post) (21-2)

Approval Name	Description	Estimated Time
Site Approval for manufacturing activities (Type B)	Municipality Approval for the Commercial Registration address or the site in which the Activity will be practiced	3 Days

Fee Details (if any)

10 BD

License Information

General Conditions:
1. Size of shop/premises must be sufficient for the activity
2. Businesses may not carry out the activity outside the boundaries of the shop/ premises
3. It is prohibited to display or store any items or equipment outside the shop / premises boundary without prior approval from the Municipality. In the event of non-compliance, the Ministry of Municipality Affairs has the right to take necessary action.
4. Maintain cleanliness of the site
5. Comply with the parking space regulations as per the Construction Regulatory Requirements

Activity Specific Conditions:
1. The Commercial Registration for this activity can only be registered in service and industrial streets/areas

Note: Uploading pictures of the site/shop may expedite the process of obtaining approval

Required Documents

- Lease agreement (after obtaining the necessary approvals from other licensing entities)
- Shop photos

Other Documents

- Cabinet's Decision (56) of the year 2022 regarding the Regulatory Requirements of Construction for various areas in the Kingdom of Bahrain

Supreme Council for Environment (Post) (21-2)

Approval Name	Description	Estimated Time
Environmental Approval for Pharmaceuticals and Pharmaceuticals Factory - Factory activity	This service aims to assess the environmental impact and licensing of development, industrial and production projects and activities, in accordance with the standards of protecting the environment and its natural resources	10 Days

Fee Details (if any)

- 30 Bahraini Dinars or 200 Bahraini Dinars for the fast-track procedure (when the data requested within the EA-2 form is sufficient without the need for additional studies)
- 4000 Bahraini Dinars or 6000 Bahraini Dinars for the fast track procedure (when it is necessary to submit an environmental impact assessment study for the project), with an additional payment of 100 Bahraini Dinars when it is necessary to submit a proposal for the scope of the study before submitting it or 500 Bahraini Dinars for a fast track procedure when the proposed scope of the study is being submitted before the study

License Information

To check the requirements for this approval, kindly download the detailed requirements sheet from the other downloadable documents section, which includes the following requirements:

- Building layout engineering and equipment requirements
- Workplace requirements
- Storage requirements
- Material management requirements
- Waste Management Requirements

- Documents and reporting requirements
- General requirements

Other Documents

- Annex to the Minister of Housing, Municipalities and Environment order regarding the project's environmental assessment
- Law No. (2) of 2021 regarding the environmental standards of air as decided by the Chairman of the Supreme Council for Environment
- Law No. (3) of 2021 regarding the environmental standards of water as decided by the Chairman of the Supreme Council for the Environment
- Law No. (5) of 2021 regarding CITES Annexes to the Convention on International Trade in Endangered Fauna and Flora
- Law No. (54) of 2014 regarding the approval of the unified law regarding substances that deplete the ozone layer for the GCC countries
- Law No. (7) of 2022 regarding the environment
- Ministerial Order No. (1) of 1998 regarding Project's Environmental Assessment
- Ministerial Order No. (10) of 2006 regarding the installation of devices for on-line monitoring of atmospheric air pollutants
- Ministerial Order No. (11) of 2019 regarding the issue of technical specification of plastic products
- Ministerial Order No. (3) of 2005 regarding environmental requirements and standards in workplaces, especially regarding workers' exposure to heat and noise, and the provision of tools and protective clothing such as gloves, glasses, face masks and earplugs, with a commitment to use them during work
- Ministerial Order No. (3) of 2006 regarding the management of hazardous waste
- Ministerial Order No. (4) of 2005 regarding the management of used oils
- Ministerial Order No. (4) of 2006 regarding the management of hazardous chemicals
- Ministerial Order No. (4) of 2021 regarding the fees of the licenses and services provided by the Supreme Council for Environment
- Ministerial Order No. (6) of 2013 amending order No. (4) of 2006 regarding the management of hazardous chemicals
- Ministerial Order No. (6) of 2013 amending order No. (4) of 2006 regarding the management of hazardous chemicals
- Ministerial Order No. (7) of 2002 regarding the control importation and use of prohibited and severely restricted chemicals, and not to import any chemical compound except after obtaining approvals of all concerned authorities, including the executive body of the Supreme Council for Environment
- Ministerial Order No. (7) of 2013 amending order No. (3) of 2006 regarding the management of hazardous waste
- Ministerial Order No. 4 of 2014 regarding the management of the environmental consulting offices operations in the Kingdom of Bahrain
- Order No. (2) of 2020 determining the categories of fees for licensing refrigeration media, refrigeration units and air conditioning units as decided by the Chairman of the Supreme Council for the Environment

•Requirements for business activities
•law No. (1) of 2020 regarding the management of refrigeration media, refrigeration units and air conditioning units as decided by the Chairman of the Supreme Council for the Environment
•law No. (2) of 2019 regarding the ban on the import of plastic waste of all kinds as decided by the Chairman of the Supreme Council for the Environment
•law No. (204) of 2018 regarding banning the export of some types of local fishes, shrimps and other aquatic organisms, and coordinating with the Agriculture and Marine Resources at the Ministry of Works, Municipalities and Urban Planning regarding the import and export of some species

NHRA-Pharmatical Products Regulation Office (Final Site Inspection) (21-2)

Approval Name	Description	Estimated Time
Manufacture of basic pharmaceutical products and pharmaceutical preparations - Final Approval	Manufacture of basic pharmaceutical products and pharmaceutical preparations - Final Approval	5 Days

Fee Details (if any)

Manufacture Site License for Medicine: 5000 per year.
-Manufacture Site License for Pharmaceutical Products: 3000 per year.

License Information

General Requirements:
- Final Site inspection.
- License fees payment
- Site Inspection

1- Area to be sufficient to provide suitable distribution of [shelfs / Stands /showcases]
2- Air-condition
3- provide a suitable distribution and storage of medicines and pharmaceutical products without affecting the flow and movement inside the pharmaceutical center.
4- Fridge
5- Washbasin
6- Adequate storage area
7- Availability of thermometer.

General Requirements:

•The manufacturing site should be in an area, away from the sources of pollution,

vapors, gases, inflammable chemicals and residential area.

•Comply with the manufacturing conditions adopted by the World Health Organization (WHO) as well as other requirements adopted by the NHRA and other concerned official authorities

•The license is subject to Decree No (18) of 1997 with Respect to the Practice of Pharmacists and Pharmaceutical Centers and the amendments made to this law under Decree Law (20) of 2015, and the Resolution (63) for the Year 2019, to Issue the Regulation of the Requirements and Procedures for the Practice of Pharmacy Professions, Licensing of Pharmaceutical Centers, Medicines and Pharmaceutical Products Factories, and Pharmaceutical Facilities.
• You may visit NHRA's website for the laws applicable to these licenses:http://www.nhra.bh/SitePages/View.aspx?PageId=77

Required Documents

•Application form, which is available on the NHRA website, to issue the site manufacturing license.
•Copy of the Site Master File (SMF).
•List of medicines and pharmaceutical products to be manufactured or packaged, and a list of raw materials suppliers.

Other Documents

•Decree No (18) of 1997 with Respect to the Practice of Pharmacists and Pharmaceutical Centers and the amendments made to this law under Decree Law (20) of 2015
•Resolution (63) for the Year 2019, to Issue the Regulation of the Requirements and Procedures for the Practice of Pharmacy Professions, Licensing of Pharmaceutical Centers, Medicines and Pharmaceutical Products Factories, and Pharmaceutical Facilities.

Directorate Of Industrial Developments (Final Site Inspection) (21-2)

Approval Name	Description	Estimated Time
Notification Only	Notification to the Industrial development directorate on obtaining a commercial registration with the license to practice the activity.	There is no License Information in this license. Days

Fee Details (if any)

There is no Estimated Processing Time (Days) in this license.

License Information

The industrial license is automatically issued by the Industrial development Directorate after obtaining the approval of other licensing/approving entities.

Please ensure that the actual production date does no exceed the expected production date.

If actual production will start on or before the expected production date please apply for a “New Industrial Registration” by following the steps below:

1- Visit the Industrial services system (www.industry.bh).
2- Select “Industrial Registration”.
3- Select “New Registration” application.

In the event that the actual production date will exceed the expected production date an “Extension of expected production date” application must be submitted by following the steps below:

1- Visit the Industrial services system (www.industry.bh).

2- Select “Industrial License”.
3- Select “Extension of expected production date” application.

Please note that failure to do so within 60 days from the expected production date will result in a violation to be added.

Other Documents

- Law No. (81) of 2006 with respect to approving The Common Industrial Law of the GCC
- Ministerial Resolution No. (11) of 2009 with respect to promulgating Implementing Regulation
- Operational requirements for the directorate of industrial developments activities

Manufacturing

ISIC4	Business activity
221-1	Manufacture of rubber products - Workshop

Description

This activity includes the manufacture of all types of rubber products including:
- manufacture of rubber tyres for vehicles, equipment, mobile machinery, aircraft, toy, furniture and other uses: manufacture of inner tubes for tyres; tyre rebuilding and retreading
- manufacture of interchangeable tyre treads, tyre flaps, camelback strips for retreading tyres etc.
- manufacture of other products of natural or synthetic rubber, unvulcanized, vulcanized or hardened:
.rubber plates, sheets, strip, rods, profile shapes; tubes, pipes and hoses; rubber conveyor or transmission belts or belting; rubber hygienic articles: sheath contraceptives, teats, hot water bottles etc; rubber articles of apparel (if only sealed together, not sewn); rubber thread and rope; rubberized yarn and fabrics; rubber rings, fittings and seals; rubber roller coverings; inflatable rubber mattresses; inflatable balloons
- manufacture of rubber brushes
- manufacture of hard rubber pipe stems
- manufacture of hard rubber combs, hair pins, hair rollers, and similar
- manufacture of rubber repair materials
- manufacture of textile fabric impregnated, coated, covered or laminated with rubber, where rubber is the chief constituent
- manufacture of rubber waterbed mattresses
- manufacture of rubber bathing caps and aprons
- manufacture of rubber wet suits and diving suits

Business Requirements

Age

18 and above

Allowed for Nationalities

Bahraini 100%		GCC 100%	
American 100%		Singaporean 100%	
Icelander 100%		Liechtenstein er 100%	
Norwegian 100%		Swiss 100%	

Foreign Allowed up to 100%

Legal Type

It is allowed to register according to the legal forms mentioned below

Allowed for Individual Commercial Registration (ICR) : Yes

Allowed for Company Commercial Registration (CCR) : Yes

- Bahrain Shareholding Company (Public)
- With Limited Liability Company
- Branch of a Foreign Company
- Bahrain Shareholding Company (Closed)
- Partnership Company
- Simple Commandite Company
- Commandite By Shares Company
- Non Profit Company

Required Step of Licenses and Approvals

Ministry / Directorate	License / Approval Requirements	Approval Type
Municipality Affairs	Site Approval for manufacturing activities	Post

	(Type C)	
Supreme Council for Environment	Environmental Approval for Rubber Products Making - Workshop activity	Post

Municipality Affairs (Post) (221-1)

Approval Name	Description	Estimated Time
Site Approval for manufacturing activities (Type C)	Municipality Approval for the Commercial Registration address or the site in which the Activity will be practiced	3 Days

Fee Details (if any)

10 BD

License Information

General Conditions:
1. Size of shop/premises must be sufficient for the activity
2. Businesses may not carry out the activity outside the boundaries of the shop/ premises
3. It is prohibited to display or store any items or equipment outside the shop / premises boundary without prior approval from the Municipality. In the event of non-compliance, the Ministry of Municipality Affairs has the right to take necessary action.
4. Maintain cleanliness of the site
5. Comply with the parking space regulations as per the Construction Regulatory Requirements

Activity Specific Conditions:
1. The commercial registration for this activity can be registered on Industrial streets/ areas only

Note: Uploading pictures of the site/shop may expedite the process of obtaining approval

Required Documents

- Lease agreement (after obtaining the necessary approvals from other licensing entities)
- Shop photos

Other Documents

- Cabinet's Decision (93) of the year 2023 regarding the Regulatory Requirements of Construction for various areas in the Kingdom of Bahrain

Supreme Council for Environment (Post) (221-1)

Approval Name	Description	Estimated Time
Environmental Approval for Rubber Products Making - Workshop activity	This service aims to assess the environmental impact and licensing of development, industrial and production projects and activities, in accordance with the standards of protecting the environment and its natural resources	10 Days

Fee Details (if any)

- 30 Bahraini Dinars or 200 Bahraini Dinars for the fast-track procedure (when the data requested within the EA-2 form is sufficient without the need for additional studies)
- 4000 Bahraini Dinars or 6000 Bahraini Dinars for the fast track procedure (when it is necessary to submit an environmental impact assessment study for the project), with an additional payment of 100 Bahraini Dinars when it is necessary to submit a proposal for the scope of the study before submitting it or 500 Bahraini Dinars for a fast track procedure when the proposed scope of the study is being submitted before the study

License Information

To check the requirements for this approval, kindly download the detailed requirements sheet from the other downloadable documents section, which includes the following requirements:

- Building layout engineering and equipment requirements
- Workplace requirements
- Storage requirements
- Material management requirements
- Waste Management Requirements

- Documents and reporting requirements
- General requirements

Other Documents

- Annex to the Minister of Housing, Municipalities and Environment order regarding the project's environmental assessment
- Law No. (2) of 2021 regarding the environmental standards of air as decided by the Chairman of the Supreme Council for Environment
- Law No. (3) of 2021 regarding the environmental standards of water as decided by the Chairman of the Supreme Council for the Environment
- Law No. (54) of 2014 regarding the approval of the unified law regarding substances that deplete the ozone layer for the GCC countries
- Law No. (7) of 2022 regarding the environment
- Ministerial Order No. (1) of 1998 regarding Project's Environmental Assessment
- Ministerial Order No. (10) of 2006 regarding the installation of devices for on-line monitoring of atmospheric air pollutants
- Ministerial Order No. (11) of 2019 regarding the issue of technical specification of plastic products
- Ministerial Order No. (3) of 2005 regarding environmental requirements and standards in workplaces, especially regarding workers' exposure to heat and noise, and the provision of tools and protective clothing such as gloves, glasses, face masks and earplugs, with a commitment to use them during work
- Ministerial Order No. (3) of 2006 regarding the management of hazardous waste
- Ministerial Order No. (4) of 2005 regarding the management of used oils
- Ministerial Order No. (4) of 2006 regarding the management of hazardous chemicals
- Ministerial Order No. (4) of 2021 regarding the fees of the licenses and services provided by the Supreme Council for Environment
- Ministerial Order No. (6) of 2013 amending order No. (4) of 2006 regarding the management of hazardous chemicals
- Ministerial Order No. (7) of 2002 regarding the control importation and use of prohibited and severely restricted chemicals, and not to import any chemical compound except after obtaining approvals of all concerned authorities, including the executive body of the Supreme Council for Environment
- Ministerial Order No. (7) of 2013 amending order No. (3) of 2006 regarding the management of hazardous waste
- Ministerial Order No. 4 of 2014 regarding the management of the environmental consulting offices operations in the Kingdom of Bahrain
- Order No. (2) of 2020 determining the categories of fees for licensing refrigeration media, refrigeration units and air conditioning units as decided by the Chairman of the Supreme Council for the Environment
- Requirements for business activities
- law No. (1) of 2020 regarding the management of refrigeration media, refrigeration units and air conditioning units as decided by the Chairman of the Supreme Council for the Environment

•law No. (2) of 2019 regarding the ban on the import of plastic waste of all kinds as decided by the Chairman of the Supreme Council for the Environment

Manufacturing

ISIC4	Business activity
221-2	Manufacture of rubber products - Factory

Description

This activity includes the manufacture of all types of rubber products including:
- manufacture of rubber tyres for vehicles, equipment, mobile machinery, aircraft, toy, furniture and other uses: manufacture of inner tubes for tyres; tyre rebuilding and retreading
- manufacture of interchangeable tyre treads, tyre flaps, camelback strips for retreading tyres etc.
- manufacture of other products of natural or synthetic rubber, unvulcanized, vulcanized or hardened:
.rubber plates, sheets, strip, rods, profile shapes; tubes, pipes and hoses; rubber conveyor or transmission belts or belting; rubber hygienic articles: sheath contraceptives, teats, hot water bottles etc; rubber articles of apparel (if only sealed together, not sewn); rubber thread and rope; rubberized yarn and fabrics; rubber rings, fittings and seals; rubber roller coverings; inflatable rubber mattresses; inflatable balloons
- manufacture of rubber brushes
- manufacture of hard rubber pipe stems
- manufacture of hard rubber combs, hair pins, hair rollers, and similar
- manufacture of rubber repair materials
- manufacture of textile fabric impregnated, coated, covered or laminated with rubber, where rubber is the chief constituent
- manufacture of rubber waterbed mattresses
- manufacture of rubber bathing caps and aprons
- manufacture of rubber wet suits and diving suits

Business Requirements

Age

18 and above

Allowed for Nationalities

Bahraini 100%		GCC 100%	
American 100%		Singaporean 100%	
Icelander 100%		Liechtenstein er 100%	
Norwegian 100%		Swiss 100%	

Foreign Allowed up to 100%

Legal Type

It is allowed to register according to the legal forms mentioned below

Allowed for Individual Commercial Registration (ICR) : Yes

Allowed for Company Commercial Registration (CCR) : Yes

- Bahrain Shareholding Company (Public)
- With Limited Liability Company
- Branch of a Foreign Company
- Bahrain Shareholding Company (Closed)
- Partnership Company
- Simple Commandite Company
- Commandite By Shares Company
- Non Profit Company

Required Step of Licenses and Approvals

Ministry / Directorate	License / Approval Requirements	Approval Type
Directorate Of Industrial Developments	Approval by Directorate of Industrial	Pre

	Developments(Pre)	
Supreme Council for Environment	Environmental Approval for Rubber Products Manufacture - Factory activity	Post
Municipality Affairs	Site Approval for manufacturing activities (Type C)	Post
Directorate Of Industrial Developments	Notification Only	Final Site Inspection

Directorate Of Industrial Developments (Pre) (221-2)

Approval Name	Description	Estimated Time
Approval by Directorate of Industrial Developments(Pre)	This is a preliminary approval given by the Directorate of Industrial Development to ensure that the applicant has selected the appropriate activity based on the information provided	5 Days

Fee Details (if any)

There is no Estimated Processing Time (Days) in this license.

License Information

Applicants would have to provide through the system the following information:

General Information:

- Total Amount Invested in the Project (This should include value of machinery and fixed assets)
- Estimated number of workforce (Bahraini and Non-Bahraini)
- Expected utility consumption of electricity, water and natural gas
- Total area of the project

Activity Information:

- Product Information:

1) The products to be manufactured by choosing the appropriate HS codes (HS code list can be downloaded from the application if needed).
2) Product name.
3) Expected production date (The expected date on which the factory will start producing the product).

4) The maximum installed capacity and the expected production capacity per year based on the fixed HS code's unit of measure.

• Main raw materials: The main raw materials to be used in production and its source

• Main Machinery and Equipment: The main machinery and equipment to be used in production and its information.

• Manufacturing process: Brief on the manufacturing process explaining how materials are transformed from one state to another until reaching the final product, mentioning the types of materials used, the operations performed, and the machinery/equipment used in each step (if any) for each product.

Required Documents

•Photos of machinery/ equipment to be used
•Photos of products to be manufactured

Other Documents

•Law No. (81) of 2006 with respect to approving The Common Industrial Law of the GCC
•Ministerial Resolution No. (11) of 2009
•Operational requirements for the directorate of industrial developments activities

Supreme Council for Environment (Post) (221-2)

Approval Name	Description	Estimated Time
Environmental Approval for Rubber Products Manufacture - Factory activity	This service aims to assess the environmental impact and licensing of development, industrial and production projects and activities, in accordance with the standards of protecting the environment and its natural resources	10 Days

Fee Details (if any)

- 30 Bahraini Dinars or 200 Bahraini Dinars for the fast-track procedure (when the data requested within the EA-2 form is sufficient without the need for additional studies)
- 4000 Bahraini Dinars or 6000 Bahraini Dinars for the fast track procedure (when it is necessary to submit an environmental impact assessment study for the project), with an additional payment of 100 Bahraini Dinars when it is necessary to submit a proposal for the scope of the study before submitting it or 500 Bahraini Dinars for a fast track procedure when the proposed scope of the study is being submitted before the study

License Information

To check the requirements for this approval, kindly download the detailed requirements sheet from the other downloadable documents section, which includes the following requirements:

- Building layout engineering and equipment requirements
- Workplace requirements
- Storage requirements
- Material management requirements
- Waste Management Requirements

- Documents and reporting requirements
- General requirements

Other Documents

- Law No. (2) of 2021 regarding the environmental standards of air as decided by the Chairman of the Supreme Council for Environment
- Law No. (3) of 2021 regarding the environmental standards of water as decided by the Chairman of the Supreme Council for the Environment
- Law No. (54) of 2014 regarding the approval of the unified law regarding substances that deplete the ozone layer for the GCC countries
- Law No. (7) of 2022 regarding the environment
- Ministerial Order No. (10) of 2006 regarding the installation of devices for on-line monitoring of atmospheric air pollutants
- Ministerial Order No. (11) of 2019 regarding the issue of technical specification of plastic products
- Ministerial Order No. (3) of 2005 regarding environmental requirements and standards in workplaces, especially regarding workers' exposure to heat and noise, and the provision of tools and protective clothing such as gloves, glasses, face masks and earplugs, with a commitment to use them during work
- Ministerial Order No. (3) of 2006 regarding the management of hazardous waste
- Ministerial Order No. (3) of 2006 regarding the management of hazardous waste
- Ministerial Order No. (4) of 2005 regarding the management of used oils
- Ministerial Order No. (4) of 2006 regarding the management of hazardous chemicals
- Ministerial Order No. (7) of 2002 regarding the control importation and use of prohibited and severely restricted chemicals, and not to import any chemical compound except after obtaining approvals of all concerned authorities, including the executive body of the Supreme Council for Environment
- Ministerial Order No. (7) of 2013 amending order No. (3) of 2006 regarding the management of hazardous waste
- Order No. (2) of 2020 determining the categories of fees for licensing refrigeration media, refrigeration units and air conditioning units as decided by the Chairman of the Supreme Council for the Environment
- Requirements for business activities
- law No. (1) of 2020 regarding the management of refrigeration media, refrigeration units and air conditioning units as decided by the Chairman of the Supreme Council for the Environment
- law No. (2) of 2019 regarding the ban on the import of plastic waste of all kinds as decided by the Chairman of the Supreme Council for the Environment

Municipality Affairs (Post) (221-2)

Approval Name	Description	Estimated Time
Site Approval for manufacturing activities (Type C)	Municipality Approval for the Commercial Registration address or the site in which the Activity will be practiced	3 Days

Fee Details (if any)

10 BD

License Information

General Conditions:
1. Size of shop/premises must be sufficient for the activity
2. Businesses may not carry out the activity outside the boundaries of the shop/ premises
3. It is prohibited to display or store any items or equipment outside the shop / premises boundary without prior approval from the Municipality. In the event of non-compliance, the Ministry of Municipality Affairs has the right to take necessary action.
4. Maintain cleanliness of the site
5. Comply with the parking space regulations as per the Construction Regulatory Requirements

Activity Specific Conditions:
1. The commercial registration for this activity can be registered on Industrial streets/ areas only

Note: Uploading pictures of the site/shop may expedite the process of obtaining approval

Required Documents

- Lease agreement (after obtaining the necessary approvals from other licensing entities)
- Shop photos

Other Documents

- Cabinet's Decision (93) of the year 2023 regarding the Regulatory Requirements of Construction for various areas in the Kingdom of Bahrain

Directorate Of Industrial Developments (Final Site Inspection) (221-2)

Approval Name	Description	Estimated Time
Notification Only	Notification to the Industrial development directorate on obtaining a commercial registration with the license to practice the activity.	There is no License Information in this license. Days

Fee Details (if any)

There is no Estimated Processing Time (Days) in this license.

License Information

The industrial license is automatically issued by the Industrial development Directorate after obtaining the approval of other licensing/approving entities.

Please ensure that the actual production date does no exceed the expected production date.

If actual production will start on or before the expected production date please apply for a “New Industrial Registration” by following the steps below:

1- Visit the Industrial services system (www.industry.bh).
2- Select “Industrial Registration”.
3- Select “New Registration” application.

In the event that the actual production date will exceed the expected production date an “Extension of expected production date” application must be submitted by following the steps below:

1- Visit the Industrial services system (www.industry.bh).

2- Select “Industrial License”.
3- Select “Extension of expected production date” application.

Please note that failure to do so within 60 days from the expected production date will result in a violation to be added.

Other Documents

- Law No. (81) of 2006 with respect to approving The Common Industrial Law of the GCC
- Ministerial Resolution No. (11) of 2009 with respect to promulgating Implementing Regulation
- Operational requirements for the directorate of industrial developments activities

Manufacturing

ISIC4	Business activity
222-1	Manufacture of plastics products - Workshop

Description

This activity includes the processing of new or spent (i.e. recycled) plastics resins into intermediate or final products, using such processes as compression molding, extrusion molding, injection molding, blow molding and casting. For most of these, the production process is such that a wide variety of products can be made, including:
- manufacture of semi-manufactures of plastic products:
· plastic plates, sheets, blocks, film, foil, strip etc. (whether self-adhesive or not)
- manufacture of finished plastic products:
· plastic tubes, pipes and hoses; hose and pipe fittings
- manufacture of plastic articles for the packing of goods:
· plastic bags, sacks, containers, boxes, cases, carboys, bottles etc.
- manufacture of builders` plastics ware:
· plastic doors, windows, frames, shutters, blinds, skirting boards
· tanks, reservoirs
· plastic floor, wall or ceiling coverings in rolls or in the form of tiles etc.
· plastic sanitary ware, such as:
· plastic baths, shower baths, washbasins, lavatory pans, flushing cisterns etc.
- manufacture of plastic tableware, kitchenware and toilet articles
- cellophane film or sheet
- manufacture of resilient floor coverings, such as vinyl, linoleum etc.
- manufacture of artificial stone (e.g. cultured marble)
- manufacture of plastic signs (non-electrical)
- manufacture of diverse plastic products:
· plastic headgear, insulating fittings, parts of lighting fittings, office or school supplies, articles of apparel (if only sealed together, not sewn), fittings for furniture, statuettes, transmission and conveyer belts, self-adhesive tapes of plastic, plastic wall paper, plastic shoe lasts, plastic cigar and cigarette holders, combs, plastics hair curlers, plastics novelties, etc.

Business Requirements

Age

18 and above

Allowed for Nationalities

Bahraini 100%		GCC 100%	
American 100%		Singaporean 100%	
Icelander 100%		Liechtenstein er 100%	
Norwegian 100%		Swiss 100%	

Foreign Allowed up to 100%

Legal Type

It is allowed to register according to the legal forms mentioned below

Allowed for Individual Commercial Registration (ICR) : Yes

Allowed for Company Commercial Registration (CCR) : Yes

- Bahrain Shareholding Company (Public)
- With Limited Liability Company
- Branch of a Foreign Company
- Bahrain Shareholding Company (Closed)
- Partnership Company
- Simple Commandite Company
- Commandite By Shares Company
- Non Profit Company

Required Step of Licenses and Approvals

Ministry / Directorate	License / Approval Requirements	Approval Type
Supreme Council for Environment	Environmental Approval for Plastic Products	Post

	Making - Workshop activity	
Municipality Affairs	Site Approval for manufacturing activities (Type C)	Post

Supreme Council for Environment (Post) (222-1)

Approval Name	Description	Estimated Time
Environmental Approval for Plastic Products Making - Workshop activity	This service aims to assess the environmental impact and licensing of development, industrial and production projects and activities, in accordance with the standards of protecting the environment and its natural resources	10 Days

Fee Details (if any)

- 30 Bahraini Dinars or 200 Bahraini Dinars for the fast-track procedure (when the data requested within the EA-2 form is sufficient without the need for additional studies)
- 4000 Bahraini Dinars or 6000 Bahraini Dinars for the fast track procedure (when it is necessary to submit an environmental impact assessment study for the project), with an additional payment of 100 Bahraini Dinars when it is necessary to submit a proposal for the scope of the study before submitting it or 500 Bahraini Dinars for a fast track procedure when the proposed scope of the study is being submitted before the study

License Information

To check the requirements for this approval, kindly download the detailed requirements sheet from the other downloadable documents section, which includes the following requirements:

- Building layout engineering and equipment requirements
- Workplace requirements
- Storage requirements
- Material management requirements
- Waste Management Requirements

• Documents and reporting requirements
• General requirements

Other Documents

•Annex to the Minister of Housing, Municipalities and Environment order regarding the project's environmental assessment
•Law No. (2) of 2021 regarding the environmental standards of air as decided by the Chairman of the Supreme Council for Environment
•Law No. (3) of 2021 regarding the environmental standards of water as decided by the Chairman of the Supreme Council for the Environment
•Law No. (54) of 2014 regarding the approval of the unified law regarding substances that deplete the ozone layer for the GCC countries
•Law No. (7) of 2022 regarding the environment
•Law No. (7) of 2022 regarding the environment
•Ministerial Order No. (1) of 1998 regarding Project's Environmental Assessment
•Ministerial Order No. (10) of 2006 regarding the installation of devices for on-line monitoring of atmospheric air pollutants
•Ministerial Order No. (11) of 2019 regarding the issue of technical specification of plastic products
•Ministerial Order No. (3) of 2005 regarding environmental requirements and standards in workplaces, especially regarding workers' exposure to heat and noise, and the provision of tools and protective clothing such as gloves, glasses, face masks and earplugs, with a commitment to use them during work
•Ministerial Order No. (3) of 2006 regarding the management of hazardous waste
•Ministerial Order No. (4) of 2005 regarding the management of used oils
•Ministerial Order No. (4) of 2006 regarding the management of hazardous chemicals
•Ministerial Order No. (4) of 2021 regarding the fees of the licenses and services provided by the Supreme Council for Environment
•Ministerial Order No. (6) of 2013 amending order No. (4) of 2006 regarding the management of hazardous chemicals
•Ministerial Order No. (7) of 2002 regarding the control importation and use of prohibited and severely restricted chemicals, and not to import any chemical compound except after obtaining approvals of all concerned authorities, including the executive body of the Supreme Council for Environment
•Ministerial Order No. (7) of 2013 amending order No. (3) of 2006 regarding the management of hazardous waste
•Ministerial Order No. 4 of 2014 regarding the management of the environmental consulting offices operations in the Kingdom of Bahrain
•Order No. (2) of 2020 determining the categories of fees for licensing refrigeration media, refrigeration units and air conditioning units as decided by the Chairman of the Supreme Council for the Environment
•Requirements for business activities
•law No. (1) of 2020 regarding the management of refrigeration media, refrigeration units and air conditioning units as decided by the Chairman of the Supreme Council for

the Environment
•law No. (2) of 2019 regarding the ban on the import of plastic waste of all kinds as decided by the Chairman of the Supreme Council for the Environment

Municipality Affairs (Post) (222-1)

Approval Name	Description	Estimated Time
Site Approval for manufacturing activities (Type C)	Municipality Approval for the Commercial Registration address or the site in which the Activity will be practiced	3 Days

Fee Details (if any)

10 BD

License Information

General Conditions:
1. Size of shop/premises must be sufficient for the activity
2. Businesses may not carry out the activity outside the boundaries of the shop/ premises
3. It is prohibited to display or store any items or equipment outside the shop / premises boundary without prior approval from the Municipality. In the event of non-compliance, the Ministry of Municipality Affairs has the right to take necessary action.
4. Maintain cleanliness of the site
5. Comply with the parking space regulations as per the Construction Regulatory Requirements

Activity Specific Conditions:
1. The commercial registration for this activity can be registered on Industrial streets/ areas only

Note: Uploading pictures of the site/shop may expedite the process of obtaining approval

Required Documents

- Lease agreement (after obtaining the necessary approvals from other licensing entities)
- Shop photos

Other Documents

- Cabinet's Decision (93) of the year 2023 regarding the Regulatory Requirements of Construction for various areas in the Kingdom of Bahrain

Manufacturing

ISIC4	Business activity
222-2	Manufacture of plastics products - Factory

Description

This activity includes the processing of new or spent (i.e. recycled) plastics resins into intermediate or final products, using such processes as compression molding, extrusion molding, injection molding, blow molding and casting. For most of these, the production process is such that a wide variety of products can be made, including:
- manufacture of semi-manufactures of plastic products:
· plastic plates, sheets, blocks, film, foil, strip etc. (whether self-adhesive or not)
- manufacture of finished plastic products:
· plastic tubes, pipes and hoses; hose and pipe fittings
- manufacture of plastic articles for the packing of goods:
· plastic bags, sacks, containers, boxes, cases, carboys, bottles etc.
- manufacture of builders` plastics ware:
· plastic doors, windows, frames, shutters, blinds, skirting boards
· tanks, reservoirs
· plastic floor, wall or ceiling coverings in rolls or in the form of tiles etc.
· plastic sanitary ware, such as:
· plastic baths, shower baths, washbasins, lavatory pans, flushing cisterns etc.
- manufacture of plastic tableware, kitchenware and toilet articles
- cellophane film or sheet
- manufacture of resilient floor coverings, such as vinyl, linoleum etc.
- manufacture of artificial stone (e.g. cultured marble)
- manufacture of plastic signs (non-electrical)
- manufacture of diverse plastic products:
· plastic headgear, insulating fittings, parts of lighting fittings, office or school supplies, articles of apparel (if only sealed together, not sewn), fittings for furniture, statuettes, transmission and conveyer belts, self-adhesive tapes of plastic, plastic wall paper, plastic shoe lasts, plastic cigar and cigarette holders, combs, plastics hair curlers, plastics novelties, etc.

Business Requirements

Age

18 and above

Allowed for Nationalities

Bahraini 100%		GCC 100%	
American 100%		Singaporean 100%	
Icelander 100%		Liechtenstein er 100%	
Norwegian 100%		Swiss 100%	

Foreign Allowed up to 100%

Legal Type

It is allowed to register according to the legal forms mentioned below

Allowed for Individual Commercial Registration (ICR) : Yes

Allowed for Company Commercial Registration (CCR) : Yes

- Bahrain Shareholding Company (Public)
- With Limited Liability Company
- Branch of a Foreign Company
- Bahrain Shareholding Company (Closed)
- Partnership Company
- Simple Commandite Company
- Commandite By Shares Company
- Non Profit Company

Required Step of Licenses and Approvals

Ministry / Directorate	License / Approval Requirements	Approval Type
Directorate Of Industrial Developments	Approval by Directorate of Industrial	Pre

	Developments(Pre)	
Municipality Affairs	Site Approval for manufacturing activities (Type C)	Post
Supreme Council for Environment	Environmental Approval for Manufacture of plastic products - factory activity	Post
Directorate Of Industrial Developments	Notification Only	Final Site Inspection

Directorate Of Industrial Developments (Pre) (222-2)

Approval Name	Description	Estimated Time
Approval by Directorate of Industrial Developments(Pre)	This is a preliminary approval given by the Directorate of Industrial Development to ensure that the applicant has selected the appropriate activity based on the information provided	5 Days

Fee Details (if any)

There is no Estimated Processing Time (Days) in this license.

License Information

Applicants would have to provide through the system the following information:

General Information:

- Total Amount Invested in the Project (This should include value of machinery and fixed assets)
- Estimated number of workforce (Bahraini and Non-Bahraini)
- Expected utility consumption of electricity, water and natural gas
- Total area of the project

Activity Information:

- Product Information:

1) The products to be manufactured by choosing the appropriate HS codes (HS code list can be downloaded from the application if needed).
2) Product name.
3) Expected production date (The expected date on which the factory will start producing the product).

4) The maximum installed capacity and the expected production capacity per year based on the fixed HS code's unit of measure.

• Main raw materials: The main raw materials to be used in production and its source

• Main Machinery and Equipment: The main machinery and equipment to be used in production and its information.

• Manufacturing process: Brief on the manufacturing process explaining how materials are transformed from one state to another until reaching the final product, mentioning the types of materials used, the operations performed, and the machinery/equipment used in each step (if any) for each product.

Required Documents

•Photos of machinery/ equipment to be used
•Photos of products to be manufactured

Other Documents

•Law No. (81) of 2006 with respect to approving The Common Industrial Law of the GCC
•Ministerial Resolution No. (11) of 2009
•Operational requirements for the directorate of industrial developments activities

Municipality Affairs (Post) (222-2)

Approval Name	Description	Estimated Time
Site Approval for manufacturing activities (Type C)	Municipality Approval for the Commercial Registration address or the site in which the Activity will be practiced	3 Days

Fee Details (if any)

10 BD

License Information

General Conditions:
1. Size of shop/premises must be sufficient for the activity
2. Businesses may not carry out the activity outside the boundaries of the shop/ premises
3. It is prohibited to display or store any items or equipment outside the shop / premises boundary without prior approval from the Municipality. In the event of non-compliance, the Ministry of Municipality Affairs has the right to take necessary action.
4. Maintain cleanliness of the site
5. Comply with the parking space regulations as per the Construction Regulatory Requirements

Activity Specific Conditions:
1. The commercial registration for this activity can be registered on Industrial streets/ areas only

Note: Uploading pictures of the site/shop may expedite the process of obtaining approval

Required Documents

- Lease agreement (after obtaining the necessary approvals from other licensing entities)
- Shop photos

Other Documents

- Cabinet's Decision (93) of the year 2023 regarding the Regulatory Requirements of Construction for various areas in the Kingdom of Bahrain

Supreme Council for Environment (Post) (222-2)

Approval Name	Description	Estimated Time
Environmental Approval for Manufacture of plastic products - factory activity	This service aims to assess the environmental impact and licensing of development, industrial and production projects and activities, in accordance with the standards of protecting the environment and its natural resources	10 Days

Fee Details (if any)

- 30 Bahraini Dinars or 200 Bahraini Dinars for the fast-track procedure (when the data requested within the EA-2 form is sufficient without the need for additional studies)
- 4000 Bahraini Dinars or 6000 Bahraini Dinars for the fast track procedure (when it is necessary to submit an environmental impact assessment study for the project), with an additional payment of 100 Bahraini Dinars when it is necessary to submit a proposal for the scope of the study before submitting it or 500 Bahraini Dinars for a fast track procedure when the proposed scope of the study is being submitted before the study

License Information

To check the requirements for this approval, kindly download the detailed requirements sheet from the other downloadable documents section, which includes the following requirements:

- Building layout engineering and equipment requirements
- Workplace requirements
- Storage requirements
- Material management requirements
- Waste Management Requirements

- Documents and reporting requirements
- General requirements

Other Documents

- Annex to the Minister of Housing, Municipalities and Environment order regarding the project's environmental assessment
- Law No. (2) of 2021 regarding the environmental standards of air as decided by the Chairman of the Supreme Council for Environment
- Law No. (3) of 2021 regarding the environmental standards of water as decided by the Chairman of the Supreme Council for the Environment
- Law No. (54) of 2014 regarding the approval of the unified law regarding substances that deplete the ozone layer for the GCC countries
- Law No. (7) of 2022 regarding the environment
- Ministerial Order No. (1) of 1998 regarding Project's Environmental Assessment
- Ministerial Order No. (10) of 2006 regarding the installation of devices for on-line monitoring of atmospheric air pollutants
- Ministerial Order No. (11) of 2019 regarding the issue of technical specification of plastic products
- Ministerial Order No. (3) of 2005 regarding environmental requirements and standards in workplaces, especially regarding workers' exposure to heat and noise, and the provision of tools and protective clothing such as gloves, glasses, face masks and earplugs, with a commitment to use them during work
- Ministerial Order No. (3) of 2006 regarding the management of hazardous waste
- Ministerial Order No. (4) of 2005 regarding the management of used oils
- Ministerial Order No. (4) of 2006 regarding the management of hazardous chemicals
- Ministerial Order No. (4) of 2021 regarding the fees of the licenses and services provided by the Supreme Council for Environment
- Ministerial Order No. (6) of 2013 amending order No. (4) of 2006 regarding the management of hazardous chemicals
- Ministerial Order No. (7) of 2002 regarding the control importation and use of prohibited and severely restricted chemicals, and not to import any chemical compound except after obtaining approvals of all concerned authorities, including the executive body of the Supreme Council for Environment
- Ministerial Order No. (7) of 2013 amending order No. (3) of 2006 regarding the management of hazardous waste
- Ministerial Order No. 4 of 2014 regarding the management of the environmental consulting offices operations in the Kingdom of Bahrain
- Order No. (2) of 2020 determining the categories of fees for licensing refrigeration media, refrigeration units and air conditioning units as decided by the Chairman of the Supreme Council for the Environment
- Requirements for business activities
- law No. (1) of 2020 regarding the management of refrigeration media, refrigeration units and air conditioning units as decided by the Chairman of the Supreme Council for the Environment

•law No. (2) of 2019 regarding the ban on the import of plastic waste of all kinds as decided by the Chairman of the Supreme Council for the Environment

Directorate Of Industrial Developments (Final Site Inspection) (222-2)

Approval Name	Description	Estimated Time
Notification Only	Notification to the Industrial development directorate on obtaining a commercial registration with the license to practice the activity.	There is no License Information in this license. Days

Fee Details (if any)

There is no Estimated Processing Time (Days) in this license.

License Information

The industrial license is automatically issued by the Industrial development Directorate after obtaining the approval of other licensing/approving entities.

Please ensure that the actual production date does no exceed the expected production date.

If actual production will start on or before the expected production date please apply for a “New Industrial Registration” by following the steps below:

1- Visit the Industrial services system (www.industry.bh).
2- Select “Industrial Registration”.
3- Select “New Registration” application.

In the event that the actual production date will exceed the expected production date an “Extension of expected production date” application must be submitted by following the steps below:

1- Visit the Industrial services system (www.industry.bh).

2- Select “Industrial License”.
3- Select “Extension of expected production date” application.

Please note that failure to do so within 60 days from the expected production date will result in a violation to be added.

Other Documents

- Law No. (81) of 2006 with respect to approving The Common Industrial Law of the GCC
- Ministerial Resolution No. (11) of 2009 with respect to promulgating Implementing Regulation
- Operational requirements for the directorate of industrial developments activities

Manufacturing

ISIC4	Business activity
231-1	Manufacture of glass, fiberglass and their products - Workshop

Description

This activity includes the manufacture of glass in all forms, made by any process and the manufacture of articles of glass.
This includes:
- manufacture of flat glass, including wired, coloured or tinted flat glass
- manufacture of toughened or laminated flat glass
- manufacture of glass in rods or tubes
- manufacture of glass paving blocks
- manufacture of glass mirrors
- manufacture of multiple-walled insulating units of glass
- manufacture of bottles and other containers of glass or crystal
- manufacture of drinking glasses and other domestic glass or crystal articles
- manufacture of glass fibres, including glass wool and non-woven products thereof
- manufacture of laboratory, hygienic or pharmaceutical glassware
- manufacture of clock or watch glasses, optical glass and optical elements not optically worked
- manufacture of glassware used in imitation jewellery
- manufacture of glass insulators and glass insulating fittings
- manufacture of glass envelopes for lamps
- manufacture of glass figurines
- manufacture of fiberglass products

Business Requirements

Age

18 and above

Allowed for Nationalities

Bahraini 100%		GCC 100%	
American 100%		Singaporean 100%	
Icelander 100%		Liechtenstein er 100%	
Norwegian 100%		Swiss 100%	

Foreign Allowed up to 100%

Legal Type

It is allowed to register according to the legal forms mentioned below

Allowed for Individual Commercial Registration (ICR) : Yes

Allowed for Company Commercial Registration (CCR) : Yes

- Bahrain Shareholding Company (Public)
- With Limited Liability Company
- Branch of a Foreign Company
- Bahrain Shareholding Company (Closed)
- Partnership Company
- Simple Commandite Company
- Commandite By Shares Company
- Non Profit Company

Required Step of Licenses and Approvals

Ministry / Directorate	License / Approval Requirements	Approval Type
Municipality Affairs	Site Approval for manufacturing activities	Post

	(Type C)	
Supreme Council for Environment	Environmental Approval for Manufacture of glass and fiberglassand its products -workshop activity	Post

Municipality Affairs (Post) (231-1)

Approval Name	Description	Estimated Time
Site Approval for manufacturing activities (Type C)	Municipality Approval for the Commercial Registration address or the site in which the Activity will be practiced	3 Days

Fee Details (if any)

10 BD

License Information

General Conditions:
1. Size of shop/premises must be sufficient for the activity
2. Businesses may not carry out the activity outside the boundaries of the shop/ premises
3. It is prohibited to display or store any items or equipment outside the shop / premises boundary without prior approval from the Municipality. In the event of non-compliance, the Ministry of Municipality Affairs has the right to take necessary action.
4. Maintain cleanliness of the site
5. Comply with the parking space regulations as per the Construction Regulatory Requirements

Activity Specific Conditions:
1. The commercial registration for this activity can be registered on Industrial streets/ areas only

Note: Uploading pictures of the site/shop may expedite the process of obtaining approval

Required Documents

- Lease agreement (after obtaining the necessary approvals from other licensing entities)
- Shop photos

Other Documents

- Cabinet's Decision (93) of the year 2023 regarding the Regulatory Requirements of Construction for various areas in the Kingdom of Bahrain

Supreme Council for Environment (Post) (231-1)

Approval Name	Description	Estimated Time
Environmental Approval for Manufacture of glass and fiberglassand its products -workshop activity	This service aims to assess the environmental impact and licensing of development, industrial and production projects and activities, in accordance with the standards of protecting the environment and its natural resources	10 Days

Fee Details (if any)

- 30 Bahraini Dinars or 200 Bahraini Dinars for the fast-track procedure (when the data requested within the EA-2 form is sufficient without the need for additional studies)
- 4000 Bahraini Dinars or 6000 Bahraini Dinars for the fast track procedure (when it is necessary to submit an environmental impact assessment study for the project), with an additional payment of 100 Bahraini Dinars when it is necessary to submit a proposal for the scope of the study before submitting it or 500 Bahraini Dinars for a fast track procedure when the proposed scope of the study is being submitted before the study

License Information

To check the requirements for this approval, kindly download the detailed requirements sheet from the other downloadable documents section, which includes the following requirements:

- Building layout engineering and equipment requirements
- Workplace requirements
- Storage requirements
- Material management requirements
- Waste Management Requirements

- Documents and reporting requirements
- General requirements

Other Documents

- Annex to the Minister of Housing, Municipalities and Environment order regarding the project's environmental assessment
- Law No. (2) of 2021 regarding the environmental standards of air as decided by the Chairman of the Supreme Council for Environment
- Law No. (3) of 2021 regarding the environmental standards of water as decided by the Chairman of the Supreme Council for the Environment
- Law No. (54) of 2014 regarding the approval of the unified law regarding substances that deplete the ozone layer for the GCC countries
- Law No. (7) of 2022 regarding the environment
- Ministerial Order No. (1) of 1998 regarding Project's Environmental Assessment
- Ministerial Order No. (10) of 2006 regarding the installation of devices for on-line monitoring of atmospheric air pollutants
- Ministerial Order No. (11) of 2019 regarding the issue of technical specification of plastic products
- Ministerial Order No. (3) of 2005 regarding environmental requirements and standards in workplaces, especially regarding workers' exposure to heat and noise, and the provision of tools and protective clothing such as gloves, glasses, face masks and earplugs, with a commitment to use them during work
- Ministerial Order No. (3) of 2006 regarding the management of hazardous waste
- Ministerial Order No. (3) of 2006 regarding the management of hazardous waste
- Ministerial Order No. (4) of 2005 regarding the management of used oils
- Ministerial Order No. (4) of 2006 regarding the management of hazardous chemicals
- Ministerial Order No. (4) of 2021 regarding the fees of the licenses and services provided by the Supreme Council for Environment
- Ministerial Order No. (6) of 2013 amending order No. (4) of 2006 regarding the management of hazardous chemicals
- Ministerial Order No. (7) of 2002 regarding the control importation and use of prohibited and severely restricted chemicals, and not to import any chemical compound except after obtaining approvals of all concerned authorities, including the executive body of the Supreme Council for Environment
- Ministerial Order No. 4 of 2014 regarding the management of the environmental consulting offices operations in the Kingdom of Bahrain
- Order No. (2) of 2020 determining the categories of fees for licensing refrigeration media, refrigeration units and air conditioning units as decided by the Chairman of the Supreme Council for the Environment
- Requirements for business activities
- law No. (1) of 2020 regarding the management of refrigeration media, refrigeration units and air conditioning units as decided by the Chairman of the Supreme Council for the Environment
- law No. (2) of 2019 regarding the ban on the import of plastic waste of all kinds as

decided by the Chairman of the Supreme Council for the Environment

Manufacturing

ISIC4	Business activity
231-2	Manufacture of glass, fiberglass and their products - Factory

Description

This activity includes the manufacture of glass in all forms, made by any process and the manufacture of articles of glass.
This includes:
- manufacture of flat glass, including wired, coloured or tinted flat glass
- manufacture of toughened or laminated flat glass
- manufacture of glass in rods or tubes
- manufacture of glass paving blocks
- manufacture of glass mirrors
- manufacture of multiple-walled insulating units of glass
- manufacture of bottles and other containers of glass or crystal
- manufacture of drinking glasses and other domestic glass or crystal articles
- manufacture of glass fibres, including glass wool and non-woven products thereof
- manufacture of laboratory, hygienic or pharmaceutical glassware
- manufacture of clock or watch glasses, optical glass and optical elements not optically worked
- manufacture of glassware used in imitation jewellery
- manufacture of glass insulators and glass insulating fittings
- manufacture of glass envelopes for lamps
- manufacture of glass figurines
- manufacture of fiberglass products

Business Requirements

Age

18 and above

Allowed for Nationalities

Bahraini 100%		GCC 100%	
American 100%		Singaporean 100%	
Icelander 100%		Liechtenstein er 100%	
Norwegian 100%		Swiss 100%	

Foreign Allowed up to 100%

Legal Type

It is allowed to register according to the legal forms mentioned below

Allowed for Individual Commercial Registration (ICR) : Yes

Allowed for Company Commercial Registration (CCR) : Yes

- Bahrain Shareholding Company (Public)
- With Limited Liability Company
- Branch of a Foreign Company
- Bahrain Shareholding Company (Closed)
- Partnership Company
- Simple Commandite Company
- Commandite By Shares Company
- Non Profit Company

Required Step of Licenses and Approvals

Ministry / Directorate	License / Approval Requirements	Approval Type
Directorate Of Industrial Developments	Approval by Directorate of Industrial	Pre

	Developments(Pre)	
Supreme Council for Environment	Environmental Approval for Manufacture of glass and fiberglassand its products -Factory activity	Post
Municipality Affairs	Site Approval for manufacturing activities (Type C)	Post
Directorate Of Industrial Developments	Notification Only	Final Site Inspection

Directorate Of Industrial Developments (Pre) (231-2)

Approval Name	Description	Estimated Time
Approval by Directorate of Industrial Developments(Pre)	This is a preliminary approval given by the Directorate of Industrial Development to ensure that the applicant has selected the appropriate activity based on the information provided	5 Days

Fee Details (if any)

There is no Estimated Processing Time (Days) in this license.

License Information

Applicants would have to provide through the system the following information:

General Information:

- Total Amount Invested in the Project (This should include value of machinery and fixed assets)
- Estimated number of workforce (Bahraini and Non-Bahraini)
- Expected utility consumption of electricity, water and natural gas
- Total area of the project

Activity Information:

- Product Information:

1) The products to be manufactured by choosing the appropriate HS codes (HS code list can be downloaded from the application if needed).
2) Product name.
3) Expected production date (The expected date on which the factory will start producing the product).

4) The maximum installed capacity and the expected production capacity per year based on the fixed HS code's unit of measure.

• Main raw materials: The main raw materials to be used in production and its source

• Main Machinery and Equipment: The main machinery and equipment to be used in production and its information.

• Manufacturing process: Brief on the manufacturing process explaining how materials are transformed from one state to another until reaching the final product, mentioning the types of materials used, the operations performed, and the machinery/equipment used in each step (if any) for each product.

Required Documents

•Photos of machinery/ equipment to be used
•Photos of products to be manufactured

Other Documents

•Law No. (81) of 2006 with respect to approving The Common Industrial Law of the GCC
•Ministerial Resolution No. (11) of 2009
•Operational requirements for the directorate of industrial developments activities

Supreme Council for Environment (Post) (231-2)

Approval Name	Description	Estimated Time
Environmental Approval for Manufacture of glass and fiberglassand its products -Factory activity	This service aims to assess the environmental impact and licensing of development, industrial and production projects and activities, in accordance with the standards of protecting the environment and its natural resources	10 Days

Fee Details (if any)

- 30 Bahraini Dinars or 200 Bahraini Dinars for the fast-track procedure (when the data requested within the EA-2 form is sufficient without the need for additional studies)
- 4000 Bahraini Dinars or 6000 Bahraini Dinars for the fast track procedure (when it is necessary to submit an environmental impact assessment study for the project), with an additional payment of 100 Bahraini Dinars when it is necessary to submit a proposal for the scope of the study before submitting it or 500 Bahraini Dinars for a fast track procedure when the proposed scope of the study is being submitted before the study

License Information

To check the requirements for this approval, kindly download the detailed requirements sheet from the other downloadable documents section, which includes the following requirements:

- Building layout engineering and equipment requirements
- Workplace requirements
- Storage requirements
- Material management requirements
- Waste Management Requirements

- Documents and reporting requirements
- General requirements

Other Documents

- Annex to the Minister of Housing, Municipalities and Environment order regarding the project's environmental assessment
- Law No. (2) of 2021 regarding the environmental standards of air as decided by the Chairman of the Supreme Council for Environment
- Law No. (3) of 2021 regarding the environmental standards of water as decided by the Chairman of the Supreme Council for the Environment
- Law No. (54) of 2014 regarding the approval of the unified law regarding substances that deplete the ozone layer for the GCC countries
- Law No. (7) of 2022 regarding the environment
- Ministerial Order No. (1) of 1998 regarding Project's Environmental Assessment
- Ministerial Order No. (10) of 2006 regarding the installation of devices for on-line monitoring of atmospheric air pollutants
- Ministerial Order No. (11) of 2019 regarding the issue of technical specification of plastic products
- Ministerial Order No. (3) of 2005 regarding environmental requirements and standards in workplaces, especially regarding workers' exposure to heat and noise, and the provision of tools and protective clothing such as gloves, glasses, face masks and earplugs, with a commitment to use them during work
- Ministerial Order No. (3) of 2006 regarding the management of hazardous waste
- Ministerial Order No. (4) of 2005 regarding the management of used oils
- Ministerial Order No. (4) of 2006 regarding the management of hazardous chemicals
- Ministerial Order No. (4) of 2021 regarding the fees of the licenses and services provided by the Supreme Council for Environment
- Ministerial Order No. (6) of 2013 amending order No. (4) of 2006 regarding the management of hazardous chemicals
- Ministerial Order No. (7) of 2002 regarding the control importation and use of prohibited and severely restricted chemicals, and not to import any chemical compound except after obtaining approvals of all concerned authorities, including the executive body of the Supreme Council for Environment
- Ministerial Order No. (7) of 2013 amending order No. (3) of 2006 regarding the management of hazardous waste
- Ministerial Order No. 4 of 2014 regarding the management of the environmental consulting offices operations in the Kingdom of Bahrain
- Order No. (2) of 2020 determining the categories of fees for licensing refrigeration media, refrigeration units and air conditioning units as decided by the Chairman of the Supreme Council for the Environment
- Requirements for business activities
- law No. (1) of 2020 regarding the management of refrigeration media, refrigeration units and air conditioning units as decided by the Chairman of the Supreme Council for the Environment

•law No. (2) of 2019 regarding the ban on the import of plastic waste of all kinds as decided by the Chairman of the Supreme Council for the Environment

Municipality Affairs (Post) (231-2)

Approval Name	Description	Estimated Time
Site Approval for manufacturing activities (Type C)	Municipality Approval for the Commercial Registration address or the site in which the Activity will be practiced	3 Days

Fee Details (if any)

10 BD

License Information

General Conditions:
1. Size of shop/premises must be sufficient for the activity
2. Businesses may not carry out the activity outside the boundaries of the shop/ premises
3. It is prohibited to display or store any items or equipment outside the shop / premises boundary without prior approval from the Municipality. In the event of non-compliance, the Ministry of Municipality Affairs has the right to take necessary action.
4. Maintain cleanliness of the site
5. Comply with the parking space regulations as per the Construction Regulatory Requirements

Activity Specific Conditions:
1. The commercial registration for this activity can be registered on Industrial streets/ areas only

Note: Uploading pictures of the site/shop may expedite the process of obtaining approval

Required Documents

- Lease agreement (after obtaining the necessary approvals from other licensing entities)
- Shop photos

Other Documents

- Cabinet's Decision (93) of the year 2023 regarding the Regulatory Requirements of Construction for various areas in the Kingdom of Bahrain

Directorate Of Industrial Developments (Final Site Inspection) (231-2)

Approval Name	Description	Estimated Time
Notification Only	Notification to the Industrial development directorate on obtaining a commercial registration with the license to practice the activity.	There is no License Information in this license. Days

Fee Details (if any)

There is no Estimated Processing Time (Days) in this license.

License Information

The industrial license is automatically issued by the Industrial development Directorate after obtaining the approval of other licensing/approving entities.

Please ensure that the actual production date does no exceed the expected production date.

If actual production will start on or before the expected production date please apply for a “New Industrial Registration” by following the steps below:

1- Visit the Industrial services system (www.industry.bh).
2- Select “Industrial Registration”.
3- Select “New Registration” application.

In the event that the actual production date will exceed the expected production date an “Extension of expected production date” application must be submitted by following the steps below:

1- Visit the Industrial services system (www.industry.bh).

2- Select “Industrial License”.
3- Select “Extension of expected production date” application.

Please note that failure to do so within 60 days from the expected production date will result in a violation to be added.

Other Documents

- Law No. (81) of 2006 with respect to approving The Common Industrial Law of the GCC
- Ministerial Resolution No. (11) of 2009 with respect to promulgating Implementing Regulation
- Operational requirements for the directorate of industrial developments activities

Manufacturing

ISIC4	Business activity
231052	Cutting of glass and mirrors

Description

This activity includes the cutting of glasses and mirrors for fixing in windows, doors, walls and furniture and for other uses.

Business Requirements

Age

18 and above

Allowed for Nationalities

- Bahraini 100%
- American 100%
- GCC 100%

Legal Type

It is allowed to register according to the legal forms mentioned below

Allowed for Individual Commercial Registration (ICR) : Yes

Allowed for Company Commercial Registration (CCR) : Yes

- Bahrain Shareholding Company (Public)
- With Limited Liability Company
- Branch of a Foreign Company
- Bahrain Shareholding Company (Closed)
- Partnership Company
- Simple Commandite Company
- Commandite By Shares Company
- Non Profit Company

Required Step of Licenses and Approvals

Ministry / Directorate	License / Approval Requirements	Approval Type
Municipality Affairs	Site Approval for manufacturing activities (Type B)	Post
Supreme Council for Environment	Environmental Approval for Ordinary glass cutting and rinsing activity	Post

Municipality Affairs (Post) (231052)

Approval Name	Description	Estimated Time
Site Approval for manufacturing activities (Type B)	Municipality Approval for the Commercial Registration address or the site in which the Activity will be practiced	3 Days

Fee Details (if any)

10 BD

License Information

General Conditions:
1. Size of shop/premises must be sufficient for the activity
2. Businesses may not carry out the activity outside the boundaries of the shop/ premises
3. It is prohibited to display or store any items or equipment outside the shop / premises boundary without prior approval from the Municipality. In the event of non-compliance, the Ministry of Municipality Affairs has the right to take necessary action.
4. Maintain cleanliness of the site
5. Comply with the parking space regulations as per the Construction Regulatory Requirements

Activity Specific Conditions:
1. The Commercial Registration for this activity can only be registered in service and industrial streets/areas

Note: Uploading pictures of the site/shop may expedite the process of obtaining approval

Required Documents

- Lease agreement (after obtaining the necessary approvals from other licensing entities)
- Shop photos

Other Documents

- Cabinet's Decision (56) of the year 2022 regarding the Regulatory Requirements of Construction for various areas in the Kingdom of Bahrain

Supreme Council for Environment (Post) (231052)

Approval Name	Description	Estimated Time
Environmental Approval for Ordinary glass cutting and rinsing activity	This service aims to assess the environmental impact and licensing of development, industrial and production projects and activities, in accordance with the standards of protecting the environment and its natural resources	10 Days

Fee Details (if any)

30 Bahraini Dinars

License Information

To check the requirements for this approval, kindly download the detailed requirements sheet from the other downloadable documents section, which includes the following requirements:

- Building layout Engineering and Equipment Requirements
- Work-place Requirements
- Storage Requirements
- Material Management Requirements
- Waste Management Requirements
- Documents and Reporting Requirements
- General Requirements

Other Documents

- licensing form for the supreme council of the environment

Manufacturing

ISIC4	Business activity
239-1	Manufacture of non-metallic mineral products - Workshop

Description

This activity includes the manufacture of intermediate and final products from mined or quarried non-metallic minerals, such as sand, gravel, stone or clay.
This activity includes:
- Manufacture of refractory products: Refractory mortars, concretes etc; refractory ceramic goods; heat-insulating ceramic goods of siliceous fossil meals; refractory bricks, blocks and tiles etc; retorts, crucibles, muffles, nozzles, tubes, pipes etc; refractory articles containing magnesite, dolomite or chromite.
- Manufacture of clay building materials: non-refractory ceramic hearth or wall tiles, mosaic cubes etc; manufacture of non-refractory ceramic flags and paving; structural non-refractory clay building materials such as ceramic bricks, roofing tiles, chimney pots, pipes, conduits etc; flooring blocks in baked clay; ceramic sanitary fixtures
- Manufacture of cement, lime and plaster: clinkers and hydraulic cements, including Portland, aluminous cement, slag cement and superphosphate cements; quicklime, slaked lime and hydraulic lime; manufacture of plasters of calcined gypsum or calcined sulphate; manufacture of calcined dolomite
- Manufacture of articles of concrete, cement and plaster: precast concrete, cement or artificial stone articles for use in construction; prefabricated structural components for buildings or civil engineering of cement, concrete or artificial stone; plaster articles for use in construction; powdered mortars; ready-mix and dry-mix concrete and mortarsThis activity also includes:
- cutting, shaping and finishing of stone for use in construction, in cemeteries, on roads, as roofing etc.
- manufacture of stone furniture

Business Requirements

Age

18 and above

Allowed for Nationalities

Bahraini 100%		GCC 100%	
American 100%		Singaporean 100%	
Icelander 100%		Liechtenstein er 100%	
Norwegian 100%		Swiss 100%	

Foreign Allowed up to 100%

Legal Type

It is allowed to register according to the legal forms mentioned below

Allowed for Individual Commercial Registration (ICR) : Yes

Allowed for Company Commercial Registration (CCR) : Yes

- Bahrain Shareholding Company (Public)
- With Limited Liability Company
- Branch of a Foreign Company
- Bahrain Shareholding Company (Closed)
- Partnership Company
- Simple Commandite Company
- Commandite By Shares Company
- Non Profit Company

Required Step of Licenses and Approvals

Ministry / Directorate	License / Approval Requirements	Approval Type
Supreme Council for Environment	Environmental Approval for Manufacture of non-	Post

	metallic mineral products not elsewhere classified - workshop activity	
Municipality Affairs	Site Approval for manufacturing activities (Type C)	Post

Supreme Council for Environment (Post) (239-1)

Approval Name	Description	Estimated Time
Environmental Approval for Manufacture of non-metallic mineral products not elsewhere classified - workshop activity	This service aims to assess the environmental impact and licensing of development, industrial and production projects and activities, in accordance with the standards of protecting the environment and its natural resources	10 Days

Fee Details (if any)

- 30 Bahraini Dinars or 200 Bahraini Dinars for the fast-track procedure (when the data requested within the EA-2 form is sufficient without the need for additional studies)
- 4000 Bahraini Dinars or 6000 Bahraini Dinars for the fast track procedure (when it is necessary to submit an environmental impact assessment study for the project), with an additional payment of 100 Bahraini Dinars when it is necessary to submit a proposal for the scope of the study before submitting it or 500 Bahraini Dinars for a fast track procedure when the proposed scope of the study is being submitted before the study

License Information

To check the requirements for this approval, kindly download the detailed requirements sheet from the other downloadable documents section, which includes the following requirements:

- Building layout engineering and equipment requirements
- Workplace requirements
- Storage requirements
- Material management requirements
- Waste Management Requirements

- Documents and reporting requirements
- General requirements

Other Documents

- Annex to the Minister of Housing, Municipalities and Environment order regarding the project's environmental assessment
- Law No. (2) of 2021 regarding the environmental standards of air as decided by the Chairman of the Supreme Council for Environment
- Law No. (3) of 2021 regarding the environmental standards of water as decided by the Chairman of the Supreme Council for the Environment
- Law No. (54) of 2014 regarding the approval of the unified law regarding substances that deplete the ozone layer for the GCC countries
- Law No. (7) of 2022 regarding the environment
- Ministerial Order No. (1) of 1998 regarding Project's Environmental Assessment
- Ministerial Order No. (10) of 2006 regarding the installation of devices for on-line monitoring of atmospheric air pollutants
- Ministerial Order No. (11) of 2019 regarding the issue of technical specification of plastic products
- Ministerial Order No. (3) of 2005 regarding environmental requirements and standards in workplaces, especially regarding workers' exposure to heat and noise, and the provision of tools and protective clothing such as gloves, glasses, face masks and earplugs, with a commitment to use them during work
- Ministerial Order No. (3) of 2006 regarding the management of hazardous waste
- Ministerial Order No. (4) of 2005 regarding the management of used oils
- Ministerial Order No. (4) of 2006 regarding the management of hazardous chemicals
- Ministerial Order No. (4) of 2021 regarding the fees of the licenses and services provided by the Supreme Council for Environment
- Ministerial Order No. (6) of 2013 amending order No. (4) of 2006 regarding the management of hazardous chemicals
- Ministerial Order No. (7) of 2002 regarding the control importation and use of prohibited and severely restricted chemicals, and not to import any chemical compound except after obtaining approvals of all concerned authorities, including the executive body of the Supreme Council for Environment
- Ministerial Order No. (7) of 2013 amending order No. (3) of 2006 regarding the management of hazardous waste
- Ministerial Order No. 4 of 2014 regarding the management of the environmental consulting offices operations in the Kingdom of Bahrain
- Order No. (2) of 2020 determining the categories of fees for licensing refrigeration media, refrigeration units and air conditioning units as decided by the Chairman of the Supreme Council for the Environment
- Requirements for business activities
- law No. (1) of 2020 regarding the management of refrigeration media, refrigeration units and air conditioning units as decided by the Chairman of the Supreme Council for the Environment

•law No. (2) of 2019 regarding the ban on the import of plastic waste of all kinds as decided by the Chairman of the Supreme Council for the Environment

Municipality Affairs (Post) (239-1)

Approval Name	Description	Estimated Time
Site Approval for manufacturing activities (Type C)	Municipality Approval for the Commercial Registration address or the site in which the Activity will be practiced	3 Days

Fee Details (if any)

10 BD

License Information

General Conditions:
1. Size of shop/premises must be sufficient for the activity
2. Businesses may not carry out the activity outside the boundaries of the shop/ premises
3. It is prohibited to display or store any items or equipment outside the shop / premises boundary without prior approval from the Municipality. In the event of non-compliance, the Ministry of Municipality Affairs has the right to take necessary action.
4. Maintain cleanliness of the site
5. Comply with the parking space regulations as per the Construction Regulatory Requirements

Activity Specific Conditions:
1. The commercial registration for this activity can be registered on Industrial streets/ areas only

Note: Uploading pictures of the site/shop may expedite the process of obtaining approval

Required Documents

- Lease agreement (after obtaining the necessary approvals from other licensing entities)
- Shop photos

Other Documents

- Cabinet's Decision (93) of the year 2023 regarding the Regulatory Requirements of Construction for various areas in the Kingdom of Bahrain

Manufacturing

ISIC4	Business activity
239-2	Manufacture of non-metallic mineral products - Factory

Description

This activity includes the manufacture of intermediate and final products from mined or quarried non-metallic minerals, such as sand, gravel, stone or clay.
This activity includes:
- Manufacture of refractory products: Refractory mortars, concretes etc; refractory ceramic goods; heat-insulating ceramic goods of siliceous fossil meals; refractory bricks, blocks and tiles etc; retorts, crucibles, muffles, nozzles, tubes, pipes etc; refractory articles containing magnesite, dolomite or chromite.
- Manufacture of clay building materials: non-refractory ceramic hearth or wall tiles, mosaic cubes etc; manufacture of non-refractory ceramic flags and paving; structural non-refractory clay building materials such as ceramic bricks, roofing tiles, chimney pots, pipes, conduits etc; flooring blocks in baked clay; ceramic sanitary fixtures
- Manufacture of cement, lime and plaster: clinkers and hydraulic cements, including Portland, aluminous cement, slag cement and superphosphate cements; quicklime, slaked lime and hydraulic lime; manufacture of plasters of calcined gypsum or calcined sulphate; manufacture of calcined dolomite
- Manufacture of articles of concrete, cement and plaster: precast concrete, cement or artificial stone articles for use in construction; prefabricated structural components for buildings or civil engineering of cement, concrete or artificial stone; plaster articles for use in construction; powdered mortars; ready-mix and dry-mix concrete and mortarsThis activity also includes:
- cutting, shaping and finishing of stone for use in construction, in cemeteries, on roads, as roofing etc.
- manufacture of stone furniture

Business Requirements

Age

18 and above

Allowed for Nationalities

Bahraini 100%		GCC 100%	
American 100%		Singaporean 100%	
Icelander 100%		Liechtenstein er 100%	
Norwegian 100%		Swiss 100%	

Foreign Allowed up to 100%

Legal Type

It is allowed to register according to the legal forms mentioned below

Allowed for Individual Commercial Registration (ICR) : Yes

Allowed for Company Commercial Registration (CCR) : Yes

- Bahrain Shareholding Company (Public)
- With Limited Liability Company
- Branch of a Foreign Company
- Bahrain Shareholding Company (Closed)
- Partnership Company
- Simple Commandite Company
- Commandite By Shares Company
- Non Profit Company

Required Step of Licenses and Approvals

Ministry / Directorate	License / Approval Requirements	Approval Type
Directorate Of Industrial Developments	Approval by Directorate of Industrial	Pre

	Developments(Pre)	
Municipality Affairs	Site Approval for manufacturing activities (Type C)	Post
Supreme Council for Environment	Environmental Approval for Manufacture of non-metallic mineral products, not elsewhere classified - Factory activity	Post
Directorate Of Industrial Developments	Notification Only	Final Site Inspection

Directorate Of Industrial Developments (Pre) (239-2)

Approval Name	Description	Estimated Time
Approval by Directorate of Industrial Developments(Pre)	This is a preliminary approval given by the Directorate of Industrial Development to ensure that the applicant has selected the appropriate activity based on the information provided	5 Days

Fee Details (if any)

There is no Estimated Processing Time (Days) in this license.

License Information

Applicants would have to provide through the system the following information:

General Information:

- Total Amount Invested in the Project (This should include value of machinery and fixed assets)
- Estimated number of workforce (Bahraini and Non-Bahraini)
- Expected utility consumption of electricity, water and natural gas
- Total area of the project

Activity Information:

- Product Information:

1) The products to be manufactured by choosing the appropriate HS codes (HS code list can be downloaded from the application if needed).
2) Product name.
3) Expected production date (The expected date on which the factory will start producing the product).

4) The maximum installed capacity and the expected production capacity per year based on the fixed HS code's unit of measure.

• Main raw materials: The main raw materials to be used in production and its source

• Main Machinery and Equipment: The main machinery and equipment to be used in production and its information.

• Manufacturing process: Brief on the manufacturing process explaining how materials are transformed from one state to another until reaching the final product, mentioning the types of materials used, the operations performed, and the machinery/equipment used in each step (if any) for each product.

Required Documents

•Photos of machinery/ equipment to be used
•Photos of products to be manufactured

Other Documents

•Law No. (81) of 2006 with respect to approving The Common Industrial Law of the GCC
•Ministerial Resolution No. (11) of 2009
•Operational requirements for the directorate of industrial developments activities

Municipality Affairs (Post) (239-2)

Approval Name	Description	Estimated Time
Site Approval for manufacturing activities (Type C)	Municipality Approval for the Commercial Registration address or the site in which the Activity will be practiced	3 Days

Fee Details (if any)

10 BD

License Information

General Conditions:
1. Size of shop/premises must be sufficient for the activity
2. Businesses may not carry out the activity outside the boundaries of the shop/ premises
3. It is prohibited to display or store any items or equipment outside the shop / premises boundary without prior approval from the Municipality. In the event of non-compliance, the Ministry of Municipality Affairs has the right to take necessary action.
4. Maintain cleanliness of the site
5. Comply with the parking space regulations as per the Construction Regulatory Requirements

Activity Specific Conditions:
1. The commercial registration for this activity can be registered on Industrial streets/ areas only

Note: Uploading pictures of the site/shop may expedite the process of obtaining approval

Required Documents

- Lease agreement (after obtaining the necessary approvals from other licensing entities)
- Shop photos

Other Documents

- Cabinet's Decision (93) of the year 2023 regarding the Regulatory Requirements of Construction for various areas in the Kingdom of Bahrain

Supreme Council for Environment (Post) (239-2)

Approval Name	Description	Estimated Time
Environmental Approval for Manufacture of non-metallic mineral products, not elsewhere classified - Factory activity	This service aims to assess the environmental impact and licensing of development, industrial and production projects and activities, in accordance with the standards of protecting the environment and its natural resources	10 Days

Fee Details (if any)

- 30 Bahraini Dinars or 200 Bahraini Dinars for the fast-track procedure (when the data requested within the EA-2 form is sufficient without the need for additional studies)
- 4000 Bahraini Dinars or 6000 Bahraini Dinars for the fast track procedure (when it is necessary to submit an environmental impact assessment study for the project), with an additional payment of 100 Bahraini Dinars when it is necessary to submit a proposal for the scope of the study before submitting it or 500 Bahraini Dinars for a fast track procedure when the proposed scope of the study is being submitted before the study

License Information

To check the requirements for this approval, kindly download the detailed requirements sheet from the other downloadable documents section, which includes the following requirements:

- Building layout engineering and equipment requirements
- Workplace requirements
- Storage requirements
- Material management requirements

- Waste Management Requirements
- Documents and reporting requirements
- General requirements

Other Documents

- Annex to the Minister of Housing, Municipalities and Environment order regarding the project's environmental assessment
- Law No. (2) of 2021 regarding the environmental standards of air as decided by the Chairman of the Supreme Council for Environment
- Law No. (3) of 2021 regarding the environmental standards of water as decided by the Chairman of the Supreme Council for the Environment
- Law No. (54) of 2014 regarding the approval of the unified law regarding substances that deplete the ozone layer for the GCC countries
- Law No. (7) of 2022 regarding the environment
- Ministerial Order No. (1) of 1998 regarding Project's Environmental Assessment
- Ministerial Order No. (10) of 2006 regarding the installation of devices for on-line monitoring of atmospheric air pollutants
- Ministerial Order No. (11) of 2019 regarding the issue of technical specification of plastic products
- Ministerial Order No. (3) of 2005 regarding environmental requirements and standards in workplaces, especially regarding workers' exposure to heat and noise, and the provision of tools and protective clothing such as gloves, glasses, face masks and earplugs, with a commitment to use them during work
- Ministerial Order No. (3) of 2006 regarding the management of hazardous waste
- Ministerial Order No. (4) of 2005 regarding the management of used oils
- Ministerial Order No. (4) of 2006 regarding the management of hazardous chemicals
- Ministerial Order No. (4) of 2021 regarding the fees of the licenses and services provided by the Supreme Council for Environment
- Ministerial Order No. (6) of 2013 amending order No. (4) of 2006 regarding the management of hazardous chemicals
- Ministerial Order No. (7) of 2002 regarding the control importation and use of prohibited and severely restricted chemicals, and not to import any chemical compound except after obtaining approvals of all concerned authorities, including the executive body of the Supreme Council for Environment
- Ministerial Order No. (7) of 2013 amending order No. (3) of 2006 regarding the management of hazardous waste
- Ministerial Order No. 4 of 2014 regarding the management of the environmental consulting offices operations in the Kingdom of Bahrain
- Order No. (2) of 2020 determining the categories of fees for licensing refrigeration media, refrigeration units and air conditioning units as decided by the Chairman of the Supreme Council for the Environment
- Requirements for business activities
- law No. (1) of 2020 regarding the management of refrigeration media, refrigeration units and air conditioning units as decided by the Chairman of the Supreme Council for

the Environment
•law No. (2) of 2019 regarding the ban on the import of plastic waste of all kinds as decided by the Chairman of the Supreme Council for the Environment

Directorate Of Industrial Developments (Final Site Inspection) (239-2)

Approval Name	Description	Estimated Time
Notification Only	Notification to the Industrial development directorate on obtaining a commercial registration with the license to practice the activity.	There is no License Information in this license. Days

Fee Details (if any)

There is no Estimated Processing Time (Days) in this license.

License Information

The industrial license is automatically issued by the Industrial development Directorate after obtaining the approval of other licensing/approving entities.

Please ensure that the actual production date does no exceed the expected production date.

If actual production will start on or before the expected production date please apply for a “New Industrial Registration” by following the steps below:

1- Visit the Industrial services system (www.industry.bh).
2- Select “Industrial Registration”.
3- Select “New Registration” application.

In the event that the actual production date will exceed the expected production date an “Extension of expected production date” application must be submitted by following the steps below:

1- Visit the Industrial services system (www.industry.bh).

2- Select “Industrial License”.
3- Select “Extension of expected production date” application.

Please note that failure to do so within 60 days from the expected production date will result in a violation to be added.

Other Documents

- Law No. (81) of 2006 with respect to approving The Common Industrial Law of the GCC
- Ministerial Resolution No. (11) of 2009 with respect to promulgating Implementing Regulation
- Operational requirements for the directorate of industrial developments activities

Manufacturing

ISIC4	Business activity
241	Manufacture of basic iron and steel

Description

This activity includes operations of conversion by reduction of iron ore in blast furnaces and oxygen converters or of ferrous waste and scrap in electric arc furnaces or by direct reduction of iron ore without fusion to obtain crude steel which is smelted and refined in a ladle furnace and then poured and solidified in a continuous caster in order to produce semi-finished flat or long products, which are used, after reheating, in rolling, drawing and extruding operations to manufacture finished products such as plate, sheet, strip, bars, rods, wire, tubes, pipes and hollow profiles.
This activity includes:
- operation of blast furnaces, steel converters, rolling and finishing mills
- production of pig iron and spiegeleisen in pigs, blocks or other primary forms
- production of ferro-alloys
- production of ferrous products by direct reduction of iron and other spongy ferrous products
- production of iron of exceptional purity by electrolysis or other chemical processes
- production of granular iron and iron powder
- production of steel in ingots or other primary forms
- remelting of scrap ingots of iron or steel
- production of semi-finished products of steel
- manufacture of hot-rolled and cold-rolled flat-rolled products of steel
- manufacture of hot-rolled bars and rods of steel
- manufacture of hot-rolled open sections of steel
- manufacture of steel bars and solid sections of steel by cold drawing, grinding or turning
- manufacture of open sections by progressive cold forming on a roll mill or folding on a press of flat-rolled products of steel
- manufacture of wire of steel by cold drawing or stretching
- manufacture of sheet piling of steel and welded open sections of steel
- manufacture of railway track materials (unassembled rails) of steel
- manufacture of seamless tubes, pipes and hollow profiles of steel, by hot rolling, hot extrusion or hot drawing, or by cold drawing or cold rolling
- manufacture of welded tubes and pipes of steel, by cold or hot forming and welding, delivered as welded or further processed by cold drawing or cold rolling or manufactured by hot forming, welding and reducing

- manufacture of tube fittings of steel

Business Requirements

Age

18 and above

Allowed for Nationalities

Bahraini 100%	GCC 100%
American 100%	Singaporean 100%
Icelander 100%	Liechtenstein er 100%
Norwegian 100%	Swiss 100%

Foreign Allowed up to 100%

Legal Type

It is allowed to register according to the legal forms mentioned below

Allowed for Individual Commercial Registration (ICR) : Yes

Allowed for Company Commercial Registration (CCR) : Yes

- Bahrain Shareholding Company (Public)
- With Limited Liability Company
- Branch of a Foreign Company
- Bahrain Shareholding Company (Closed)
- Partnership Company
- Simple Commandite Company
- Commandite By Shares Company
- Non Profit Company

Required Step of Licenses and Approvals

Ministry / Directorate	License / Approval Requirements	Approval Type
Directorate Of Industrial Developments	Approval by Directorate of Industrial Developments(Pre)	Pre
Municipality Affairs	Site Approval for manufacturing activities (Type C)	Post
Supreme Council for Environment	Environmental Approval for Making base iron and steel activity	Post
Directorate Of Industrial Developments	Notification Only	Final Site Inspection

Directorate Of Industrial Developments (Pre) (241)

Approval Name	Description	Estimated Time
Approval by Directorate of Industrial Developments(Pre)	This is a preliminary approval given by the Directorate of Industrial Development to ensure that the applicant has selected the appropriate activity based on the information provided	5 Days

Fee Details (if any)

There is no Estimated Processing Time (Days) in this license.

License Information

Applicants would have to provide through the system the following information:

General Information:

- Total Amount Invested in the Project (This should include value of machinery and fixed assets)
- Estimated number of workforce (Bahraini and Non-Bahraini)
- Expected utility consumption of electricity, water and natural gas
- Total area of the project

Activity Information:

- Product Information:

1) The products to be manufactured by choosing the appropriate HS codes (HS code list can be downloaded from the application if needed).
2) Product name.
3) Expected production date (The expected date on which the factory will start producing the product).

4) The maximum installed capacity and the expected production capacity per year based on the fixed HS code's unit of measure.

• Main raw materials: The main raw materials to be used in production and its source

• Main Machinery and Equipment: The main machinery and equipment to be used in production and its information.

• Manufacturing process: Brief on the manufacturing process explaining how materials are transformed from one state to another until reaching the final product, mentioning the types of materials used, the operations performed, and the machinery/equipment used in each step (if any) for each product.

Required Documents

•Photos of machinery/ equipment to be used
•Photos of products to be manufactured

Other Documents

•Law No. (81) of 2006 with respect to approving The Common Industrial Law of the GCC
•Ministerial Resolution No. (11) of 2009
•Operational requirements for the directorate of industrial developments activities

Municipality Affairs (Post) (241)

Approval Name	Description	Estimated Time
Site Approval for manufacturing activities (Type C)	Municipality Approval for the Commercial Registration address or the site in which the Activity will be practiced	3 Days

Fee Details (if any)

10 BD

License Information

General Conditions:
1. Size of shop/premises must be sufficient for the activity
2. Businesses may not carry out the activity outside the boundaries of the shop/ premises
3. It is prohibited to display or store any items or equipment outside the shop / premises boundary without prior approval from the Municipality. In the event of non-compliance, the Ministry of Municipality Affairs has the right to take necessary action.
4. Maintain cleanliness of the site
5. Comply with the parking space regulations as per the Construction Regulatory Requirements

Activity Specific Conditions:
1. The commercial registration for this activity can be registered on Industrial streets/ areas only

Note: Uploading pictures of the site/shop may expedite the process of obtaining approval

Required Documents

- Lease agreement (after obtaining the necessary approvals from other licensing entities)
- Shop photos

Other Documents

- Cabinet's Decision (93) of the year 2023 regarding the Regulatory Requirements of Construction for various areas in the Kingdom of Bahrain

Supreme Council for Environment (Post) (241)

Approval Name	Description	Estimated Time
Environmental Approval for Making base iron and steel activity	This service aims to assess the environmental impact and licensing of development, industrial and production projects and activities, in accordance with the standards of protecting the environment and its natural resources	10 Days

Fee Details (if any)

- 30 Bahraini Dinars or 200 Bahraini Dinars for the fast-track procedure (when the data requested within the EA-2 form is sufficient without the need for additional studies)
- 4000 Bahraini Dinars or 6000 Bahraini Dinars for the fast track procedure (when it is necessary to submit an environmental impact assessment study for the project), with an additional payment of 100 Bahraini Dinars when it is necessary to submit a proposal for the scope of the study before submitting it or 500 Bahraini Dinars for a fast track procedure when the proposed scope of the study is being submitted before the study

License Information

To check the requirements for this approval, kindly download the detailed requirements sheet from the other downloadable documents section, which includes the following requirements:

- Building layout engineering and equipment requirements
- Workplace requirements
- Storage requirements
- Material management requirements
- Waste Management Requirements

- Documents and reporting requirements
- General requirements

Other Documents

- Law No. (2) of 2021 regarding the environmental standards of air as decided by the Chairman of the Supreme Council for Environment
- Law No. (3) of 2021 regarding the environmental standards of water as decided by the Chairman of the Supreme Council for the Environment
- Law No. (7) of 2022 regarding the environment
- Ministerial Order No. (10) of 2006 regarding the installation of devices for on-line monitoring of atmospheric air pollutants
- Ministerial Order No. (3) of 2005 regarding environmental requirements and standards in workplaces, especially regarding workers' exposure to heat and noise, and the provision of tools and protective clothing such as gloves, glasses, face masks and earplugs, with a commitment to use them during work
- Ministerial Order No. (3) of 2006 regarding the management of hazardous waste
- Ministerial Order No. (4) of 2006 regarding the management of hazardous chemicals
- Ministerial Order No. (6) of 2013 amending order No. (4) of 2006 regarding the management of hazardous chemicals
- Ministerial Order No. (7) of 2002 regarding the control importation and use of prohibited and severely restricted chemicals, and not to import any chemical compound except after obtaining approvals of all concerned authorities, including the executive body of the Supreme Council for Environment
- Requirements for business activities

Directorate Of Industrial Developments (Final Site Inspection) (241)

Approval Name	Description	Estimated Time
Notification Only	Notification to the Industrial development directorate on obtaining a commercial registration with the license to practice the activity.	There is no License Information in this license. Days

Fee Details (if any)

There is no Estimated Processing Time (Days) in this license.

License Information

The industrial license is automatically issued by the Industrial development Directorate after obtaining the approval of other licensing/approving entities.

Please ensure that the actual production date does no exceed the expected production date.

If actual production will start on or before the expected production date please apply for a “New Industrial Registration” by following the steps below:

1- Visit the Industrial services system (www.industry.bh).
2- Select “Industrial Registration”.
3- Select “New Registration” application.

In the event that the actual production date will exceed the expected production date an “Extension of expected production date” application must be submitted by following the steps below:

1- Visit the Industrial services system (www.industry.bh).

2- Select “Industrial License”.
3- Select “Extension of expected production date” application.

Please note that failure to do so within 60 days from the expected production date will result in a violation to be added.

Other Documents

- Law No. (81) of 2006 with respect to approving The Common Industrial Law of the GCC
- Ministerial Resolution No. (11) of 2009 with respect to promulgating Implementing Regulation
- Operational requirements for the directorate of industrial developments activities

Manufacturing

ISIC4	Business activity
242-1	Manufacture of basic precious and other non-ferrous metals - Workshop

Description

This activity includes:
- production of basic precious metals: production and refining of unwrought or wrought precious metals: gold, silver, platinum etc. from ore and scrap
- production of precious metal alloys
- production of precious metal semi-products
- production of silver rolled onto base metals
- production of gold rolled onto base metals or silver
- production of platinum and platinum group metals rolled onto gold, silver or base metals
- production of aluminium, aluminium alloys, and semi-manufacturing of aluminium
- production of lead, zinc and tin and semi-manufacturing of lead, zinc and tin
- production of copper from ores or from electrolytic refining of copper waste and scrap
- production of copper alloys, manufacture of fuse wire or strip, and semi-manufacturing of copper
- production of chrome, manganese, nickel etc., production of alloys of chrome, manganese, nickel etc., and semi-manufacturing of chrome, manganese, nickel etc.
- production of mattes of nickel
- production of uranium metal from pitchblende or other ores
- smelting and refining of uranium
- manufacture of wire of these metals by drawing
- production of aluminium oxide (alumina)
- production of aluminium wrapping foil
- manufacture of aluminium (tin) foil laminates made from aluminum (tin) foil as primary component
- manufacture of precious metal foil laminates

Business Requirements

Age

18 and above

Allowed for Nationalities

Bahraini 100%		GCC 100%	
American 100%		Singaporean 100%	
Icelander 100%		Liechtenstein er 100%	
Norwegian 100%		Swiss 100%	

Foreign Allowed up to 100%

Legal Type

It is allowed to register according to the legal forms mentioned below

Allowed for Individual Commercial Registration (ICR) : Yes

Allowed for Company Commercial Registration (CCR) : Yes

- Bahrain Shareholding Company (Public)
- With Limited Liability Company
- Branch of a Foreign Company
- Bahrain Shareholding Company (Closed)
- Partnership Company
- Simple Commandite Company
- Commandite By Shares Company
- Non Profit Company

Required Step of Licenses and Approvals

Ministry / Directorate	License / Approval Requirements	Approval Type
Municipality Affairs	Site Approval for manufacturing activities	Post

	(Type C)	
Supreme Council for Environment	Environmental Approval for Manufacture of base and precious non-ferrous metals - workshop activity	Post

Municipality Affairs (Post) (242-1)

Approval Name	Description	Estimated Time
Site Approval for manufacturing activities (Type C)	Municipality Approval for the Commercial Registration address or the site in which the Activity will be practiced	3 Days

Fee Details (if any)

10 BD

License Information

General Conditions:
1. Size of shop/premises must be sufficient for the activity
2. Businesses may not carry out the activity outside the boundaries of the shop/ premises
3. It is prohibited to display or store any items or equipment outside the shop / premises boundary without prior approval from the Municipality. In the event of non-compliance, the Ministry of Municipality Affairs has the right to take necessary action.
4. Maintain cleanliness of the site
5. Comply with the parking space regulations as per the Construction Regulatory Requirements

Activity Specific Conditions:
1. The commercial registration for this activity can be registered on Industrial streets/ areas only

Note: Uploading pictures of the site/shop may expedite the process of obtaining approval

Required Documents

- Lease agreement (after obtaining the necessary approvals from other licensing entities)
- Shop photos

Other Documents

- Cabinet's Decision (93) of the year 2023 regarding the Regulatory Requirements of Construction for various areas in the Kingdom of Bahrain

Supreme Council for Environment (Post) (242-1)

Approval Name	Description	Estimated Time
Environmental Approval for Manufacture of base and precious non-ferrous metals - workshop activity	This service aims to assess the environmental impact and licensing of development, industrial and production projects and activities, in accordance with the standards of protecting the environment and its natural resources	10 Days

Fee Details (if any)

- 30 Bahraini Dinars or 200 Bahraini Dinars for the fast-track procedure (when the data requested within the EA-2 form is sufficient without the need for additional studies)
- 4000 Bahraini Dinars or 6000 Bahraini Dinars for the fast track procedure (when it is necessary to submit an environmental impact assessment study for the project), with an additional payment of 100 Bahraini Dinars when it is necessary to submit a proposal for the scope of the study before submitting it or 500 Bahraini Dinars for a fast track procedure when the proposed scope of the study is being submitted before the study

License Information

To check the requirements for this approval, kindly download the detailed requirements sheet from the other downloadable documents section, which includes the following requirements:

- Building layout engineering and equipment requirements
- Workplace requirements
- Storage requirements
- Material management requirements
- Waste Management Requirements
- Documents and reporting requirements

• General requirements

Other Documents

•Annex to the Minister of Housing, Municipalities and Environment order regarding the project's environmental assessment
•Law No. (2) of 2021 regarding the environmental standards of air as decided by the Chairman of the Supreme Council for Environment
•Law No. (3) of 2021 regarding the environmental standards of water as decided by the Chairman of the Supreme Council for the Environment
•Law No. (54) of 2014 regarding the approval of the unified law regarding substances that deplete the ozone layer for the GCC countries
•Law No. (7) of 2022 regarding the environment
•Ministerial Order No. (1) of 1998 regarding Project's Environmental Assessment
•Ministerial Order No. (10) of 2006 regarding the installation of devices for on-line monitoring of atmospheric air pollutants
•Ministerial Order No. (11) of 2019 regarding the issue of technical specification of plastic products
•Ministerial Order No. (3) of 2005 regarding environmental requirements and standards in workplaces, especially regarding workers' exposure to heat and noise, and the provision of tools and protective clothing such as gloves, glasses, face masks and earplugs, with a commitment to use them during work
•Ministerial Order No. (3) of 2006 regarding the management of hazardous waste
•Ministerial Order No. (4) of 2005 regarding the management of used oils
•Ministerial Order No. (4) of 2006 regarding the management of hazardous chemicals
•Ministerial Order No. (4) of 2021 regarding the fees of the licenses and services provided by the Supreme Council for Environment
•Ministerial Order No. (6) of 2013 amending order No. (4) of 2006 regarding the management of hazardous chemicals
•Ministerial Order No. (7) of 2002 regarding the control importation and use of prohibited and severely restricted chemicals, and not to import any chemical compound except after obtaining approvals of all concerned authorities, including the executive body of the Supreme Council for Environment
•Ministerial Order No. (7) of 2013 amending order No. (3) of 2006 regarding the management of hazardous waste
•Ministerial Order No. 4 of 2014 regarding the management of the environmental consulting offices operations in the Kingdom of Bahrain
•Order No. (2) of 2020 determining the categories of fees for licensing refrigeration media, refrigeration units and air conditioning units as decided by the Chairman of the Supreme Council for the Environment
•Requirements for business activities
•law No. (1) of 2020 regarding the management of refrigeration media, refrigeration units and air conditioning units as decided by the Chairman of the Supreme Council for the Environment
•law No. (2) of 2019 regarding the ban on the import of plastic waste of all kinds as

decided by the Chairman of the Supreme Council for the Environment

Manufacturing

ISIC4	Business activity
242-2	Manufacture of basic precious and other non-ferrous metals - Factory

Description

This activity includes:
- production of basic precious metals: production and refining of unwrought or wrought precious metals: gold, silver, platinum etc. from ore and scrap
- production of precious metal alloys
- production of precious metal semi-products
- production of silver rolled onto base metals
- production of gold rolled onto base metals or silver
- production of platinum and platinum group metals rolled onto gold, silver or base metals
- production of aluminium, aluminium alloys, and semi-manufacturing of aluminium
- production of lead, zinc and tin and semi-manufacturing of lead, zinc and tin
- production of copper from ores or from electrolytic refining of copper waste and scrap
- production of copper alloys, manufacture of fuse wire or strip, and semi-manufacturing of copper
- production of chrome, manganese, nickel etc., production of alloys of chrome, manganese, nickel etc., and semi-manufacturing of chrome, manganese, nickel etc.
- production of mattes of nickel
- production of uranium metal from pitchblende or other ores
- smelting and refining of uranium
- manufacture of wire of these metals by drawing
- production of aluminium oxide (alumina)
- production of aluminium wrapping foil
- manufacture of aluminium (tin) foil laminates made from aluminum (tin) foil as primary component
- manufacture of precious metal foil laminates

Business Requirements

Age

18 and above

Allowed for Nationalities

Bahraini 100%		GCC 100%	
American 100%		Singaporean 100%	
Icelander 100%		Liechtenstein er 100%	
Norwegian 100%		Swiss 100%	

Foreign Allowed up to 100%

Legal Type

It is allowed to register according to the legal forms mentioned below

Allowed for Individual Commercial Registration (ICR) : Yes

Allowed for Company Commercial Registration (CCR) : Yes

- Bahrain Shareholding Company (Public)
- With Limited Liability Company
- Branch of a Foreign Company
- Bahrain Shareholding Company (Closed)
- Partnership Company
- Simple Commandite Company
- Commandite By Shares Company
- Non Profit Company

Required Step of Licenses and Approvals

Ministry / Directorate	License / Approval Requirements	Approval Type
Directorate Of Industrial Developments	Approval by Directorate of Industrial	Pre

	Developments(Pre)	
Municipality Affairs	Site Approval for manufacturing activities (Type C)	Post
Supreme Council for Environment	Environmental Approval for Manufacture of precious and non-ferrous base metals- Factory activity	Post
Directorate Of Industrial Developments	Notification Only	Final Site Inspection

Directorate Of Industrial Developments (Pre) (242-2)

Approval Name	Description	Estimated Time
Approval by Directorate of Industrial Developments(Pre)	This is a preliminary approval given by the Directorate of Industrial Development to ensure that the applicant has selected the appropriate activity based on the information provided	5 Days

Fee Details (if any)

There is no Estimated Processing Time (Days) in this license.

License Information

Applicants would have to provide through the system the following information:

General Information:

- Total Amount Invested in the Project (This should include value of machinery and fixed assets)
- Estimated number of workforce (Bahraini and Non-Bahraini)
- Expected utility consumption of electricity, water and natural gas
- Total area of the project

Activity Information:

- Product Information:

1) The products to be manufactured by choosing the appropriate HS codes (HS code list can be downloaded from the application if needed).
2) Product name.
3) Expected production date (The expected date on which the factory will start producing the product).

4) The maximum installed capacity and the expected production capacity per year based on the fixed HS code's unit of measure.

• Main raw materials: The main raw materials to be used in production and its source

• Main Machinery and Equipment: The main machinery and equipment to be used in production and its information.

• Manufacturing process: Brief on the manufacturing process explaining how materials are transformed from one state to another until reaching the final product, mentioning the types of materials used, the operations performed, and the machinery/equipment used in each step (if any) for each product.

Required Documents

•Photos of machinery/ equipment to be used
•Photos of products to be manufactured

Other Documents

•Law No. (81) of 2006 with respect to approving The Common Industrial Law of the GCC
•Ministerial Resolution No. (11) of 2009
•Operational requirements for the directorate of industrial developments activities

Municipality Affairs (Post) (242-2)

Approval Name	Description	Estimated Time
Site Approval for manufacturing activities (Type C)	Municipality Approval for the Commercial Registration address or the site in which the Activity will be practiced	3 Days

Fee Details (if any)

10 BD

License Information

General Conditions:
1. Size of shop/premises must be sufficient for the activity
2. Businesses may not carry out the activity outside the boundaries of the shop/ premises
3. It is prohibited to display or store any items or equipment outside the shop / premises boundary without prior approval from the Municipality. In the event of non-compliance, the Ministry of Municipality Affairs has the right to take necessary action.
4. Maintain cleanliness of the site
5. Comply with the parking space regulations as per the Construction Regulatory Requirements

Activity Specific Conditions:
1. The commercial registration for this activity can be registered on Industrial streets/ areas only

Note: Uploading pictures of the site/shop may expedite the process of obtaining approval

Required Documents

- Lease agreement (after obtaining the necessary approvals from other licensing entities)
- Shop photos

Other Documents

- Cabinet's Decision (93) of the year 2023 regarding the Regulatory Requirements of Construction for various areas in the Kingdom of Bahrain

Supreme Council for Environment (Post) (242-2)

Approval Name	Description	Estimated Time
Environmental Approval for Manufacture of precious and non-ferrous base metals-Factory activity	This service aims to assess the environmental impact and licensing of development, industrial and production projects and activities, in accordance with the standards of protecting the environment and its natural resources	10 Days

Fee Details (if any)

- 30 Bahraini Dinars or 200 Bahraini Dinars for the fast-track procedure (when the data requested within the EA-2 form is sufficient without the need for additional studies)
- 4000 Bahraini Dinars or 6000 Bahraini Dinars for the fast track procedure (when it is necessary to submit an environmental impact assessment study for the project), with an additional payment of 100 Bahraini Dinars when it is necessary to submit a proposal for the scope of the study before submitting it or 500 Bahraini Dinars for a fast track procedure when the proposed scope of the study is being submitted before the study

License Information

To check the requirements for this approval, kindly download the detailed requirements sheet from the other downloadable documents section, which includes the following requirements:

- Building layout engineering and equipment requirements
- Workplace requirements
- Storage requirements
- Material management requirements
- Waste Management Requirements
- Documents and reporting requirements

• General requirements

Other Documents

•Annex to the Minister of Housing, Municipalities and Environment order regarding the project's environmental assessment
•Law No. (2) of 2021 regarding the environmental standards of air as decided by the Chairman of the Supreme Council for Environment
•Law No. (3) of 2021 regarding the environmental standards of water as decided by the Chairman of the Supreme Council for the Environment
•Law No. (54) of 2014 regarding the approval of the unified law regarding substances that deplete the ozone layer for the GCC countries
•Law No. (7) of 2022 regarding the environment
•Ministerial Order No. (1) of 1998 regarding Project's Environmental Assessment
•Ministerial Order No. (10) of 2006 regarding the installation of devices for on-line monitoring of atmospheric air pollutants
•Ministerial Order No. (11) of 2019 regarding the issue of technical specification of plastic products
•Ministerial Order No. (3) of 2005 regarding environmental requirements and standards in workplaces, especially regarding workers' exposure to heat and noise, and the provision of tools and protective clothing such as gloves, glasses, face masks and earplugs, with a commitment to use them during work
•Ministerial Order No. (3) of 2006 regarding the management of hazardous waste
•Ministerial Order No. (4) of 2005 regarding the management of used oils
•Ministerial Order No. (4) of 2006 regarding the management of hazardous chemicals
•Ministerial Order No. (4) of 2006 regarding the management of hazardous chemicals
•Ministerial Order No. (4) of 2021 regarding the fees of the licenses and services provided by the Supreme Council for Environment
•Ministerial Order No. (6) of 2013 amending order No. (4) of 2006 regarding the management of hazardous chemicals
•Ministerial Order No. (7) of 2002 regarding the control importation and use of prohibited and severely restricted chemicals, and not to import any chemical compound except after obtaining approvals of all concerned authorities, including the executive body of the Supreme Council for Environment
•Ministerial Order No. (7) of 2013 amending order No. (3) of 2006 regarding the management of hazardous waste
•Ministerial Order No. 4 of 2014 regarding the management of the environmental consulting offices operations in the Kingdom of Bahrain
•Requirements for business activities
•law No. (1) of 2020 regarding the management of refrigeration media, refrigeration units and air conditioning units as decided by the Chairman of the Supreme Council for the Environment
•law No. (2) of 2019 regarding the ban on the import of plastic waste of all kinds as decided by the Chairman of the Supreme Council for the Environment
•قرار رئيس المجلس الأعلى للبيئة رقم (2) لسنة 2020 بتحديد فئات رسوم تراخيص وسائط التبريد

Directorate Of Industrial Developments (Final Site Inspection) (242-2)

Approval Name	Description	Estimated Time
Notification Only	Notification to the Industrial development directorate on obtaining a commercial registration with the license to practice the activity.	There is no License Information in this license. Days

Fee Details (if any)

There is no Estimated Processing Time (Days) in this license.

License Information

The industrial license is automatically issued by the Industrial development Directorate after obtaining the approval of other licensing/approving entities.

Please ensure that the actual production date does no exceed the expected production date.

If actual production will start on or before the expected production date please apply for a “New Industrial Registration” by following the steps below:

1- Visit the Industrial services system (www.industry.bh).
2- Select “Industrial Registration”.
3- Select “New Registration” application.

In the event that the actual production date will exceed the expected production date an “Extension of expected production date” application must be submitted by following the steps below:

1- Visit the Industrial services system (www.industry.bh).

2- Select “Industrial License”.
3- Select “Extension of expected production date” application.

Please note that failure to do so within 60 days from the expected production date will result in a violation to be added.

Other Documents

- Law No. (81) of 2006 with respect to approving The Common Industrial Law of the GCC
- Ministerial Resolution No. (11) of 2009 with respect to promulgating Implementing Regulation
- Operational requirements for the directorate of industrial developments activities

Manufacturing

ISIC4	Business activity
243-1	Casting of metals - Workshop

Description

This activity includes the manufacture of semi-finished products and various castings by a casting process including the casting of iron and steel and casting of non-ferrous metals.
This activity includes:
- casting of semi-finished iron products
- casting of grey iron castings
- casting of spheroidal graphite iron castings
- casting of malleable cast-iron products
- casting of semi-finished steel products
- casting of steel castings
- manufacture of tubes, pipes and hollow profiles and of tube or pipe fittings of cast-iron
- manufacture of seamless tubes and pipes of steel
- manufacture of tube or pipe fittings of cast-steel
- casting of semi-finished products of aluminium, magnesium, titanium, zinc etc.
- casting of light metal castings
- casting of heavy metal castings
- casting of precious metal castings
- die-casting of non-ferrous metal castings

Business Requirements

Age

18 and above

Allowed for Nationalities

Bahraini 100%		GCC 100%	
American 100%		Singaporean 100%	
Icelander 100%		Liechtenstein er 100%	
Norwegian 100%		Swiss 100%	

Foreign Allowed up to 100%

Legal Type

It is allowed to register according to the legal forms mentioned below

Allowed for Individual Commercial Registration (ICR) : Yes

Allowed for Company Commercial Registration (CCR) : Yes

- Bahrain Shareholding Company (Public)
- With Limited Liability Company
- Branch of a Foreign Company
- Bahrain Shareholding Company (Closed)
- Partnership Company
- Simple Commandite Company
- Commandite By Shares Company
- Non Profit Company

Required Step of Licenses and Approvals

Ministry / Directorate	License / Approval Requirements	Approval Type
Supreme Council for Environment	Environmental Approval for Casting of metals –	Post

	Workshop activity	
Municipality Affairs	Site Approval for manufacturing activities (Type C)	Post

Supreme Council for Environment (Post) (243-1)

Approval Name	Description	Estimated Time
Environmental Approval for Casting of metals – Workshop activity	This service aims to assess the environmental impact and licensing of development, industrial and production projects and activities, in accordance with the standards of protecting the environment and its natural resources	10 Days

Fee Details (if any)

- 30 Bahraini Dinars or 200 Bahraini Dinars for the fast-track procedure (when the data requested within the EA-2 form is sufficient without the need for additional studies)
- 4000 Bahraini Dinars or 6000 Bahraini Dinars for the fast track procedure (when it is necessary to submit an environmental impact assessment study for the project), with an additional payment of 100 Bahraini Dinars when it is necessary to submit a proposal for the scope of the study before submitting it or 500 Bahraini Dinars for a fast track procedure when the proposed scope of the study is being submitted before the study

License Information

To check the requirements for this approval, kindly download the detailed requirements sheet from the other downloadable documents section, which includes the following requirements:

- Building layout engineering and equipment requirements
- Workplace requirements
- Storage requirements
- Material management requirements
- Waste Management Requirements

- Documents and reporting requirements
- General requirements

Other Documents

- Annex to the Minister of Housing, Municipalities and Environment order regarding the project's environmental assessment
- Law No. (2) of 2021 regarding the environmental standards of air as decided by the Chairman of the Supreme Council for Environment
- Law No. (3) of 2021 regarding the environmental standards of water as decided by the Chairman of the Supreme Council for the Environment
- Law No. (54) of 2014 regarding the approval of the unified law regarding substances that deplete the ozone layer for the GCC countries
- Law No. (7) of 2022 regarding the environment
- Ministerial Order No. (1) of 1998 regarding Project's Environmental Assessment
- Ministerial Order No. (10) of 2006 regarding the installation of devices for on-line monitoring of atmospheric air pollutants
- Ministerial Order No. (11) of 2019 regarding the issue of technical specification of plastic products
- Ministerial Order No. (3) of 2005 regarding environmental requirements and standards in workplaces, especially regarding workers' exposure to heat and noise, and the provision of tools and protective clothing such as gloves, glasses, face masks and earplugs, with a commitment to use them during work
- Ministerial Order No. (3) of 2006 regarding the management of hazardous waste
- Ministerial Order No. (4) of 2005 regarding the management of used oils
- Ministerial Order No. (4) of 2006 regarding the management of hazardous chemicals
- Ministerial Order No. (4) of 2021 regarding the fees of the licenses and services provided by the Supreme Council for Environment
- Ministerial Order No. (6) of 2013 amending order No. (4) of 2006 regarding the management of hazardous chemicals
- Ministerial Order No. (7) of 2002 regarding the control importation and use of prohibited and severely restricted chemicals, and not to import any chemical compound except after obtaining approvals of all concerned authorities, including the executive body of the Supreme Council for Environment
- Ministerial Order No. (7) of 2013 amending order No. (3) of 2006 regarding the management of hazardous waste
- Ministerial Order No. 4 of 2014 regarding the management of the environmental consulting offices operations in the Kingdom of Bahrain
- Order No. (2) of 2020 determining the categories of fees for licensing refrigeration media, refrigeration units and air conditioning units as decided by the Chairman of the Supreme Council for the Environment
- Requirements for business activities
- law No. (1) of 2020 regarding the management of refrigeration media, refrigeration units and air conditioning units as decided by the Chairman of the Supreme Council for the Environment

•law No. (2) of 2019 regarding the ban on the import of plastic waste of all kinds as decided by the Chairman of the Supreme Council for the Environment

Municipality Affairs (Post) (243-1)

Approval Name	Description	Estimated Time
Site Approval for manufacturing activities (Type C)	Municipality Approval for the Commercial Registration address or the site in which the Activity will be practiced	3 Days

Fee Details (if any)

10 BD

License Information

General Conditions:
1. Size of shop/premises must be sufficient for the activity
2. Businesses may not carry out the activity outside the boundaries of the shop/ premises
3. It is prohibited to display or store any items or equipment outside the shop / premises boundary without prior approval from the Municipality. In the event of non-compliance, the Ministry of Municipality Affairs has the right to take necessary action.
4. Maintain cleanliness of the site
5. Comply with the parking space regulations as per the Construction Regulatory Requirements

Activity Specific Conditions:
1. The commercial registration for this activity can be registered on Industrial streets/ areas only

Note: Uploading pictures of the site/shop may expedite the process of obtaining approval

Required Documents

- Lease agreement (after obtaining the necessary approvals from other licensing entities)
- Shop photos

Other Documents

- Cabinet's Decision (93) of the year 2023 regarding the Regulatory Requirements of Construction for various areas in the Kingdom of Bahrain

Manufacturing

ISIC4	Business activity
243-2	Casting of metals - Factory

Description

This activity includes the manufacture of semi-finished products and various castings by a casting process including the casting of iron and steel and casting of non-ferrous metals.
This activity includes:
- casting of semi-finished iron products
- casting of grey iron castings
- casting of spheroidal graphite iron castings
- casting of malleable cast-iron products
- casting of semi-finished steel products
- casting of steel castings
- manufacture of tubes, pipes and hollow profiles and of tube or pipe fittings of cast-iron
- manufacture of seamless tubes and pipes of steel
- manufacture of tube or pipe fittings of cast-steel
- casting of semi-finished products of aluminium, magnesium, titanium, zinc etc.
- casting of light metal castings
- casting of heavy metal castings
- casting of precious metal castings
- die-casting of non-ferrous metal castings

Business Requirements

Age

18 and above

Allowed for Nationalities

Bahraini 100%		GCC 100%	
American 100%		Singaporean 100%	
Icelander 100%		Liechtenstein er 100%	
Norwegian 100%		Swiss 100%	

Foreign Allowed up to 100%

Legal Type

It is allowed to register according to the legal forms mentioned below

Allowed for Individual Commercial Registration (ICR) : Yes

Allowed for Company Commercial Registration (CCR) : Yes

- Bahrain Shareholding Company (Public)
- With Limited Liability Company
- Branch of a Foreign Company
- Bahrain Shareholding Company (Closed)
- Partnership Company
- Simple Commandite Company
- Commandite By Shares Company
- Non Profit Company

Required Step of Licenses and Approvals

Ministry / Directorate	License / Approval Requirements	Approval Type
Directorate Of Industrial Developments	Approval by Directorate of Industrial	Pre

	Developments(Pre)	
Supreme Council for Environment	Environmental Approval for Casting of metals – Factory activity	Post
Municipality Affairs	Site Approval for manufacturing activities (Type C)	Post
Directorate Of Industrial Developments	Notification Only	Final Site Inspection

Directorate Of Industrial Developments (Pre) (243-2)

Approval Name	Description	Estimated Time
Approval by Directorate of Industrial Developments(Pre)	This is a preliminary approval given by the Directorate of Industrial Development to ensure that the applicant has selected the appropriate activity based on the information provided	5 Days

Fee Details (if any)

There is no Estimated Processing Time (Days) in this license.

License Information

Applicants would have to provide through the system the following information:

General Information:

- Total Amount Invested in the Project (This should include value of machinery and fixed assets)
- Estimated number of workforce (Bahraini and Non-Bahraini)
- Expected utility consumption of electricity, water and natural gas
- Total area of the project

Activity Information:

- Product Information:

1) The products to be manufactured by choosing the appropriate HS codes (HS code list can be downloaded from the application if needed).
2) Product name.
3) Expected production date (The expected date on which the factory will start producing the product).

4) The maximum installed capacity and the expected production capacity per year based on the fixed HS code's unit of measure.

• Main raw materials: The main raw materials to be used in production and its source

• Main Machinery and Equipment: The main machinery and equipment to be used in production and its information.

• Manufacturing process: Brief on the manufacturing process explaining how materials are transformed from one state to another until reaching the final product, mentioning the types of materials used, the operations performed, and the machinery/equipment used in each step (if any) for each product.

Required Documents

•Photos of machinery/ equipment to be used
•Photos of products to be manufactured

Other Documents

•Law No. (81) of 2006 with respect to approving The Common Industrial Law of the GCC
•Ministerial Resolution No. (11) of 2009
•Operational requirements for the directorate of industrial developments activities

Supreme Council for Environment (Post) (243-2)

Approval Name	Description	Estimated Time
Environmental Approval for Casting of metals – Factory activity	This service aims to assess the environmental impact and licensing of development, industrial and production projects and activities, in accordance with the standards of protecting the environment and its natural resources	10 Days

Fee Details (if any)

- 30 Bahraini Dinars or 200 Bahraini Dinars for the fast-track procedure (when the data requested within the EA-2 form is sufficient without the need for additional studies)
- 4000 Bahraini Dinars or 6000 Bahraini Dinars for the fast track procedure (when it is necessary to submit an environmental impact assessment study for the project), with an additional payment of 100 Bahraini Dinars when it is necessary to submit a proposal for the scope of the study before submitting it or 500 Bahraini Dinars for a fast track procedure when the proposed scope of the study is being submitted before the study

License Information

To check the requirements for this approval, kindly download the detailed requirements sheet from the other downloadable documents section, which includes the following requirements:

- Building layout engineering and equipment requirements
- Workplace requirements
- Storage requirements
- Material management requirements
- Waste Management Requirements

- Documents and reporting requirements
- General requirements

Other Documents

- Annex to the Minister of Housing, Municipalities and Environment order regarding the project's environmental assessment
- Law No. (2) of 2021 regarding the environmental standards of air as decided by the Chairman of the Supreme Council for Environment
- Law No. (3) of 2021 regarding the environmental standards of water as decided by the Chairman of the Supreme Council for the Environment
- Law No. (54) of 2014 regarding the approval of the unified law regarding substances that deplete the ozone layer for the GCC countries
- Law No. (7) of 2022 regarding the environment
- Ministerial Order No. (1) of 1998 regarding Project's Environmental Assessment
- Ministerial Order No. (10) of 2006 regarding the installation of devices for on-line monitoring of atmospheric air pollutants
- Ministerial Order No. (11) of 2019 regarding the issue of technical specification of plastic products
- Ministerial Order No. (3) of 2005 regarding environmental requirements and standards in workplaces, especially regarding workers' exposure to heat and noise, and the provision of tools and protective clothing such as gloves, glasses, face masks and earplugs, with a commitment to use them during work
- Ministerial Order No. (3) of 2006 regarding the management of hazardous waste
- Ministerial Order No. (4) of 2005 regarding the management of used oils
- Ministerial Order No. (4) of 2006 regarding the management of hazardous chemicals
- Ministerial Order No. (4) of 2021 regarding the fees of the licenses and services provided by the Supreme Council for Environment
- Ministerial Order No. (6) of 2013 amending order No. (4) of 2006 regarding the management of hazardous chemicals
- Ministerial Order No. (7) of 2002 regarding the control importation and use of prohibited and severely restricted chemicals, and not to import any chemical compound except after obtaining approvals of all concerned authorities, including the executive body of the Supreme Council for Environment
- Ministerial Order No. (7) of 2013 amending order No. (3) of 2006 regarding the management of hazardous waste
- Ministerial Order No. 4 of 2014 regarding the management of the environmental consulting offices operations in the Kingdom of Bahrain
- Order No. (2) of 2020 determining the categories of fees for licensing refrigeration media, refrigeration units and air conditioning units as decided by the Chairman of the Supreme Council for the Environment
- Requirements for business activities
- law No. (1) of 2020 regarding the management of refrigeration media, refrigeration units and air conditioning units as decided by the Chairman of the Supreme Council for the Environment

•law No. (2) of 2019 regarding the ban on the import of plastic waste of all kinds as decided by the Chairman of the Supreme Council for the Environment

Municipality Affairs (Post) (243-2)

Approval Name	Description	Estimated Time
Site Approval for manufacturing activities (Type C)	Municipality Approval for the Commercial Registration address or the site in which the Activity will be practiced	3 Days

Fee Details (if any)

10 BD

License Information

General Conditions:
1. Size of shop/premises must be sufficient for the activity
2. Businesses may not carry out the activity outside the boundaries of the shop/ premises
3. It is prohibited to display or store any items or equipment outside the shop / premises boundary without prior approval from the Municipality. In the event of non-compliance, the Ministry of Municipality Affairs has the right to take necessary action.
4. Maintain cleanliness of the site
5. Comply with the parking space regulations as per the Construction Regulatory Requirements

Activity Specific Conditions:
1. The commercial registration for this activity can be registered on Industrial streets/ areas only

Note: Uploading pictures of the site/shop may expedite the process of obtaining approval

Required Documents

- Lease agreement (after obtaining the necessary approvals from other licensing entities)
- Shop photos

Other Documents

- Cabinet's Decision (93) of the year 2023 regarding the Regulatory Requirements of Construction for various areas in the Kingdom of Bahrain

Directorate Of Industrial Developments (Final Site Inspection) (243-2)

Approval Name	Description	Estimated Time
Notification Only	Notification to the Industrial development directorate on obtaining a commercial registration with the license to practice the activity.	There is no License Information in this license. Days

Fee Details (if any)

There is no Estimated Processing Time (Days) in this license.

License Information

The industrial license is automatically issued by the Industrial development Directorate after obtaining the approval of other licensing/approving entities.

Please ensure that the actual production date does no exceed the expected production date.

If actual production will start on or before the expected production date please apply for a “New Industrial Registration” by following the steps below:

1- Visit the Industrial services system (www.industry.bh).
2- Select “Industrial Registration”.
3- Select “New Registration” application.

In the event that the actual production date will exceed the expected production date an “Extension of expected production date” application must be submitted by following the steps below:

1- Visit the Industrial services system (www.industry.bh).

2- Select “Industrial License”.
3- Select “Extension of expected production date” application.

Please note that failure to do so within 60 days from the expected production date will result in a violation to be added.

Other Documents

- Law No. (81) of 2006 with respect to approving The Common Industrial Law of the GCC
- Ministerial Resolution No. (11) of 2009 with respect to promulgating Implementing Regulation
- Operational requirements for the directorate of industrial developments activities

Manufacturing

ISIC4	Business activity
2511-1	Manufacture of structural metal products - Workshop

Description

This activity includes:
- manufacture of metal frameworks or skeletons for construction and parts thereof (towers, masts, trusses, bridges etc.)
- manufacture of industrial frameworks in metal (frameworks for blast furnaces, lifting and handling equipment etc.)
- manufacture of prefabricated buildings mainly of metal:
· site huts, modular exhibition elements etc.
- manufacture of metal doors, windows and their frames, shutters and gates
- metal room partitions for floor attachment

Business Requirements

Age

18 and above

Allowed for Nationalities

Bahraini 100%		GCC 100%	
American 100%		Singaporean 100%	
Icelander 100%		Liechtenstein er 100%	
Norwegian 100%		Swiss 100%	

Foreign Allowed up to 100%

Legal Type

It is allowed to register according to the legal forms mentioned below

Allowed for Individual Commercial Registration (ICR) : Yes

Allowed for Company Commercial Registration (CCR) : Yes

- Bahrain Shareholding Company (Public)
- With Limited Liability Company
- Branch of a Foreign Company
- Bahrain Shareholding Company (Closed)
- Partnership Company
- Simple Commandite Company
- Commandite By Shares Company
- Non Profit Company

Required Step of Licenses and Approvals

Ministry / Directorate	License / Approval Requirements	Approval Type
Supreme Council for Environment	Environmental Approval for Manufacture of structural metal products - workshop	Post
Municipality Affairs	Site Approval for manufacturing activities (Type C)	Post

Supreme Council for Environment (Post) (2511-1)

Approval Name	Description	Estimated Time
Environmental Approval for Manufacture of structural metal products - workshop	This service aims to assess the environmental impact and licensing of development, industrial and production projects and activities, in accordance with the standards of protecting the environment and its natural resources	10 Days

Fee Details (if any)

- 30 Bahraini Dinars or 200 Bahraini Dinars for the fast-track procedure (when the data requested within the EA-2 form is sufficient without the need for additional studies)
- 4000 Bahraini Dinars or 6000 Bahraini Dinars for the fast track procedure (when it is necessary to submit an environmental impact assessment study for the project), with an additional payment of 100 Bahraini Dinars when it is necessary to submit a proposal for the scope of the study before submitting it or 500 Bahraini Dinars for a fast track procedure when the proposed scope of the study is being submitted before the study

License Information

To check the requirements for this approval, kindly download the detailed requirements sheet from the other downloadable documents section, which includes the following requirements:

- Building layout engineering and equipment requirements
- Workplace requirements
- Storage requirements
- Material management requirements
- Waste Management Requirements

- Documents and reporting requirements
- General requirements

Other Documents

- Annex to the Minister of Housing, Municipalities and Environment order regarding the project's environmental assessment
- Law No. (1) of 2020 regarding the management of refrigeration media, refrigeration units and air conditioning units as decided by the Chairman of the Supreme Council for the Environment
- Law No. (2) of 2019 regarding the ban on the import of plastic waste of all kinds as decided by the Chairman of the Supreme Council for the Environment
- Law No. (2) of 2021 regarding the environmental standards of air as decided by the Chairman of the Supreme Council for Environment
- Law No. (3) of 2021 regarding the environmental standards of water as decided by the Chairman of the Supreme Council for the Environment
- Law No. (54) of 2014 regarding the approval of the unified law regarding substances that deplete the ozone layer for the GCC countries
- Law No. (7) of 2022 regarding the environment
- Ministerial Order No. (1) of 1998 regarding Project's Environmental Assessment
- Ministerial Order No. (10) of 2006 regarding the installation of devices for on-line monitoring of atmospheric air pollutants
- Ministerial Order No. (11) of 2019 regarding the issue of technical specification of plastic products
- Ministerial Order No. (3) of 2005 regarding environmental requirements and standards in workplaces, especially regarding workers' exposure to heat and noise, and the provision of tools and protective clothing such as gloves, glasses, face masks and earplugs, with a commitment to use them during work
- Ministerial Order No. (3) of 2006 regarding the management of hazardous waste
- Ministerial Order No. (4) of 2005 regarding the management of used oils
- Ministerial Order No. (4) of 2006 regarding the management of hazardous chemicals
- Ministerial Order No. (4) of 2021 regarding the fees of the licenses and services provided by the Supreme Council for Environment
- Ministerial Order No. (6) of 2013 amending order No. (4) of 2006 regarding the management of hazardous chemicals
- Ministerial Order No. (7) of 2002 regarding the control importation and use of prohibited and severely restricted chemicals, and not to import any chemical compound except after obtaining approvals of all concerned authorities, including the executive body of the Supreme Council for Environment
- Ministerial Order No. (7) of 2013 amending order No. (3) of 2006 regarding the management of hazardous waste
- Ministerial Order No. 4 of 2014 regarding the management of the environmental consulting offices operations in the Kingdom of Bahrain
- Order No. (2) of 2020 determining the categories of fees for licensing refrigeration media, refrigeration units and air conditioning units as decided by the Chairman of the

Supreme Council for the Environment
•Requirements for business activities

Municipality Affairs (Post) (2511-1)

Approval Name	Description	Estimated Time
Site Approval for manufacturing activities (Type C)	Municipality Approval for the Commercial Registration address or the site in which the Activity will be practiced	3 Days

Fee Details (if any)

10 BD

License Information

General Conditions:
1. Size of shop/premises must be sufficient for the activity
2. Businesses may not carry out the activity outside the boundaries of the shop/ premises
3. It is prohibited to display or store any items or equipment outside the shop / premises boundary without prior approval from the Municipality. In the event of non-compliance, the Ministry of Municipality Affairs has the right to take necessary action.
4. Maintain cleanliness of the site
5. Comply with the parking space regulations as per the Construction Regulatory Requirements

Activity Specific Conditions:
1. The commercial registration for this activity can be registered on Industrial streets/ areas only

Note: Uploading pictures of the site/shop may expedite the process of obtaining approval

Required Documents

- Lease agreement (after obtaining the necessary approvals from other licensing entities)
- Shop photos

Other Documents

- Cabinet's Decision (93) of the year 2023 regarding the Regulatory Requirements of Construction for various areas in the Kingdom of Bahrain

Manufacturing

ISIC4	Business activity
2511-2	Manufacture of structural metal products - Factory

Description

This activity includes:
- manufacture of metal frameworks or skeletons for construction and parts thereof (towers, masts, trusses, bridges etc.)
- manufacture of industrial frameworks in metal (frameworks for blast furnaces, lifting and handling equipment etc.)
- manufacture of prefabricated buildings mainly of metal:
· site huts, modular exhibition elements etc.
- manufacture of metal doors, windows and their frames, shutters and gates
- metal room partitions for floor attachment

Business Requirements

Age

18 and above

Allowed for Nationalities

Bahraini 100%		GCC 100%	
American 100%		Singaporean 100%	
Icelander 100%		Liechtenstein er 100%	
Norwegian 100%		Swiss 100%	

Foreign Allowed up to 100%

Legal Type

It is allowed to register according to the legal forms mentioned below

Allowed for Individual Commercial Registration (ICR) : Yes

Allowed for Company Commercial Registration (CCR) : Yes

- Bahrain Shareholding Company (Public)
- With Limited Liability Company
- Branch of a Foreign Company
- Bahrain Shareholding Company (Closed)
- Partnership Company
- Simple Commandite Company
- Commandite By Shares Company
- Non Profit Company

Required Step of Licenses and Approvals

Ministry / Directorate	License / Approval Requirements	Approval Type
Directorate Of Industrial Developments	Approval by Directorate of Industrial Developments(Pre)	Pre
Supreme Council for Environment	Environmental Approval for Manufacture of structural metal products - factory	Post
Municipality Affairs	Site Approval for manufacturing activities (Type C)	Post
Directorate Of Industrial Developments	Notification Only	Final Site Inspection

Directorate Of Industrial Developments (Pre) (2511-2)

Approval Name	Description	Estimated Time
Approval by Directorate of Industrial Developments(Pre)	This is a preliminary approval given by the Directorate of Industrial Development to ensure that the applicant has selected the appropriate activity based on the information provided	5 Days

Fee Details (if any)

There is no Estimated Processing Time (Days) in this license.

License Information

Applicants would have to provide through the system the following information:

General Information:

- Total Amount Invested in the Project (This should include value of machinery and fixed assets)
- Estimated number of workforce (Bahraini and Non-Bahraini)
- Expected utility consumption of electricity, water and natural gas
- Total area of the project

Activity Information:

- Product Information:

1) The products to be manufactured by choosing the appropriate HS codes (HS code list can be downloaded from the application if needed).
2) Product name.
3) Expected production date (The expected date on which the factory will start producing the product).

4) The maximum installed capacity and the expected production capacity per year based on the fixed HS code's unit of measure.

• Main raw materials: The main raw materials to be used in production and its source

• Main Machinery and Equipment: The main machinery and equipment to be used in production and its information.

• Manufacturing process: Brief on the manufacturing process explaining how materials are transformed from one state to another until reaching the final product, mentioning the types of materials used, the operations performed, and the machinery/equipment used in each step (if any) for each product.

Required Documents

•Photos of machinery/ equipment to be used
•Photos of products to be manufactured

Other Documents

•Law No. (81) of 2006 with respect to approving The Common Industrial Law of the GCC
•Ministerial Resolution No. (11) of 2009
•Operational requirements for the directorate of industrial developments activities

Supreme Council for Environment (Post) (2511-2)

Approval Name	Description	Estimated Time
Environmental Approval for Manufacture of structural metal products - factory	This service aims to assess the environmental impact and licensing of development, industrial and production projects and activities, in accordance with the standards of protecting the environment and its natural resources	10 Days

Fee Details (if any)

- 30 Bahraini Dinars or 200 Bahraini Dinars for the fast-track procedure (when the data requested within the EA-2 form is sufficient without the need for additional studies)
- 4000 Bahraini Dinars or 6000 Bahraini Dinars for the fast track procedure (when it is necessary to submit an environmental impact assessment study for the project), with an additional payment of 100 Bahraini Dinars when it is necessary to submit a proposal for the scope of the study before submitting it or 500 Bahraini Dinars for a fast track procedure when the proposed scope of the study is being submitted before the study

License Information

To check the requirements for this approval, kindly download the detailed requirements sheet from the other downloadable documents section, which includes the following requirements:

- Building layout engineering and equipment requirements
- Workplace requirements
- Storage requirements
- Material management requirements
- Waste Management Requirements
- Documents and reporting requirements

• General requirements

Other Documents

•Law No. (2) of 2021 regarding the environmental standards of air as decided by the Chairman of the Supreme Council for Environment
•Law No. (3) of 2021 regarding the environmental standards of water as decided by the Chairman of the Supreme Council for the Environment
•Law No. (7) of 2022 regarding the environment
•Ministerial Order No. (10) of 2006 regarding the installation of devices for on-line monitoring of atmospheric air pollutants
•Ministerial Order No. (3) of 2005 regarding environmental requirements and standards in workplaces, especially regarding workers' exposure to heat and noise, and the provision of tools and protective clothing such as gloves, glasses, face masks and earplugs, with a commitment to use them during work
•Ministerial Order No. (3) of 2006 regarding the management of hazardous waste
•Ministerial Order No. (4) of 2006 regarding the management of hazardous chemicals
•Ministerial Order No. (6) of 2013 amending order No. (4) of 2006 regarding the management of hazardous chemicals
•Ministerial Order No. (7) of 2002 regarding the control importation and use of prohibited and severely restricted chemicals, and not to import any chemical compound except after obtaining approvals of all concerned authorities, including the executive body of the Supreme Council for Environment
•Requirements for business activities
•licensing form for the supreme council of the environment

Municipality Affairs (Post) (2511-2)

Approval Name	Description	Estimated Time
Site Approval for manufacturing activities (Type C)	Municipality Approval for the Commercial Registration address or the site in which the Activity will be practiced	3 Days

Fee Details (if any)

10 BD

License Information

General Conditions:
1. Size of shop/premises must be sufficient for the activity
2. Businesses may not carry out the activity outside the boundaries of the shop/ premises
3. It is prohibited to display or store any items or equipment outside the shop / premises boundary without prior approval from the Municipality. In the event of non-compliance, the Ministry of Municipality Affairs has the right to take necessary action.
4. Maintain cleanliness of the site
5. Comply with the parking space regulations as per the Construction Regulatory Requirements

Activity Specific Conditions:
1. The commercial registration for this activity can be registered on Industrial streets/ areas only

Note: Uploading pictures of the site/shop may expedite the process of obtaining approval

Required Documents

- Lease agreement (after obtaining the necessary approvals from other licensing entities)
- Shop photos

Other Documents

- Cabinet's Decision (93) of the year 2023 regarding the Regulatory Requirements of Construction for various areas in the Kingdom of Bahrain

Directorate Of Industrial Developments (Final Site Inspection) (2511-2)

Approval Name	Description	Estimated Time
Notification Only	Notification to the Industrial development directorate on obtaining a commercial registration with the license to practice the activity.	There is no License Information in this license. Days

Fee Details (if any)

There is no Estimated Processing Time (Days) in this license.

License Information

The industrial license is automatically issued by the Industrial development Directorate after obtaining the approval of other licensing/approving entities.

Please ensure that the actual production date does no exceed the expected production date.

If actual production will start on or before the expected production date please apply for a “New Industrial Registration” by following the steps below:

1- Visit the Industrial services system (www.industry.bh).
2- Select “Industrial Registration”.
3- Select “New Registration” application.

In the event that the actual production date will exceed the expected production date an “Extension of expected production date” application must be submitted by following the steps below:

1- Visit the Industrial services system (www.industry.bh).

2- Select “Industrial License”.
3- Select “Extension of expected production date” application.

Please note that failure to do so within 60 days from the expected production date will result in a violation to be added.

Other Documents

- Law No. (81) of 2006 with respect to approving The Common Industrial Law of the GCC
- Ministerial Resolution No. (11) of 2009 with respect to promulgating Implementing Regulation
- Operational requirements for the directorate of industrial developments activities

Manufacturing

ISIC4	Business activity
2512-1	Manufacture of tanks, reservoirs and containers of metal - Workshop

Description

This activity includes:
- manufacture of reservoirs, tanks and similar containers of metal, of types normally installed as fixtures for storage or manufacturing use
- manufacture of metal containers for compressed or liquefied gas
- manufacture of central heating boilers and radiators

Business Requirements

Age

18 and above

Allowed for Nationalities

Bahraini 100%		GCC 100%	
American 100%		Singaporean 100%	
Icelander 100%		Liechtensteiner 100%	
Norwegian 100%		Swiss 100%	

Foreign Allowed up to 100%

Legal Type

It is allowed to register according to the legal forms mentioned below

Allowed for Individual Commercial Registration (ICR) : Yes

Allowed for Company Commercial Registration (CCR) : Yes

- Bahrain Shareholding Company (Public)
- With Limited Liability Company
- Branch of a Foreign Company
- Bahrain Shareholding Company (Closed)
- Partnership Company
- Simple Commandite Company
- Commandite By Shares Company
- Non Profit Company

Required Step of Licenses and Approvals

Ministry / Directorate	License / Approval Requirements	Approval Type
Supreme Council for Environment	Manufacture of metal tanks, tanks and vessels - workshop	Post
Municipality Affairs	Site Approval for manufacturing activities (Type C)	Post

Supreme Council for Environment (Post) (2512-1)

Approval Name	Description	Estimated Time
Manufacture of metal tanks, tanks and vessels - workshop	This service aims to assess the environmental impact and licensing of development, industrial and production projects and activities, in accordance with the standards of protecting the environment and its natural resources	10 Days

Fee Details (if any)

- 30 Bahraini Dinars or 200 Bahraini Dinars for the fast-track procedure (when the data requested within the EA-2 form is sufficient without the need for additional studies)
- 4000 Bahraini Dinars or 6000 Bahraini Dinars for the fast track procedure (when it is necessary to submit an environmental impact assessment study for the project), with an additional payment of 100 Bahraini Dinars when it is necessary to submit a proposal for the scope of the study before submitting it or 500 Bahraini Dinars for a fast track procedure when the proposed scope of the study is being submitted before the study

License Information

To check the requirements for this approval, kindly download the detailed requirements sheet from the other downloadable documents section, which includes the following requirements:

- Building layout engineering and equipment requirements
- Workplace requirements
- Storage Requirements
- Material management requirements
- Waste Management Requirements

• Documents and reporting requirements
• General requirements

Other Documents

•Annex to the Minister of Housing, Municipalities and Environment order regarding the project's environmental assessment
•Law No. (2) of 2021 regarding the environmental standards of air as decided by the Chairman of the Supreme Council for Environment
•Law No. (3) of 2021 regarding the environmental standards of water as decided by the Chairman of the Supreme Council for the Environment
•Law No. (54) of 2014 regarding the approval of the unified law regarding substances that deplete the ozone layer for the GCC countries
•Law No. (7) of 2022 regarding the environment
•Ministerial Order No. (1) of 1998 regarding Project's Environmental Assessment
•Ministerial Order No. (10) of 2006 regarding the installation of devices for on-line monitoring of atmospheric air pollutants
•Ministerial Order No. (11) of 2019 regarding the issue of technical specification of plastic products
•Ministerial Order No. (3) of 2005 regarding environmental requirements and standards in workplaces, especially regarding workers' exposure to heat and noise, and the provision of tools and protective clothing such as gloves, glasses, face masks and earplugs, with a commitment to use them during work
•Ministerial Order No. (3) of 2006 regarding the management of hazardous waste
•Ministerial Order No. (4) of 2005 regarding the management of used oils
•Ministerial Order No. (4) of 2006 regarding the management of hazardous chemicals
•Ministerial Order No. (4) of 2021 regarding the fees of the licenses and services provided by the Supreme Council for Environment
•Ministerial Order No. (6) of 2013 amending order No. (4) of 2006 regarding the management of hazardous chemicals
•Ministerial Order No. (7) of 2002 regarding the control importation and use of prohibited and severely restricted chemicals, and not to import any chemical compound except after obtaining approvals of all concerned authorities, including the executive body of the Supreme Council for Environment
•Ministerial Order No. (7) of 2013 amending order No. (3) of 2006 regarding the management of hazardous waste
•Ministerial Order No. 4 of 2014 regarding the management of the environmental consulting offices operations in the Kingdom of Bahrain
•Order No. (2) of 2020 determining the categories of fees for licensing refrigeration media, refrigeration units and air conditioning units as decided by the Chairman of the Supreme Council for the Environment
•Requirements for business activities
•aw No. (2) of 2019 regarding the ban on the import of plastic waste of all kinds as decided by the Chairman of the Supreme Council for the Environment
•law No. (1) of 2020 regarding the management of refrigeration media, refrigeration

units and air conditioning units as decided by the Chairman of the Supreme Council for the Environment

Municipality Affairs (Post) (2512-1)

Approval Name	Description	Estimated Time
Site Approval for manufacturing activities (Type C)	Municipality Approval for the Commercial Registration address or the site in which the Activity will be practiced	3 Days

Fee Details (if any)

10 BD

License Information

General Conditions:
1. Size of shop/premises must be sufficient for the activity
2. Businesses may not carry out the activity outside the boundaries of the shop/ premises
3. It is prohibited to display or store any items or equipment outside the shop / premises boundary without prior approval from the Municipality. In the event of non-compliance, the Ministry of Municipality Affairs has the right to take necessary action.
4. Maintain cleanliness of the site
5. Comply with the parking space regulations as per the Construction Regulatory Requirements

Activity Specific Conditions:
1. The commercial registration for this activity can be registered on Industrial streets/ areas only

Note: Uploading pictures of the site/shop may expedite the process of obtaining approval

Required Documents

- Lease agreement (after obtaining the necessary approvals from other licensing entities)
- Shop photos

Other Documents

- Cabinet's Decision (93) of the year 2023 regarding the Regulatory Requirements of Construction for various areas in the Kingdom of Bahrain

Manufacturing

ISIC4	Business activity
2512-2	Manufacture of tanks, reservoirs and containers of metal - Factory

Description

This activity includes:
- manufacture of reservoirs, tanks and similar containers of metal, of types normally installed as fixtures for storage or manufacturing use
- manufacture of metal containers for compressed or liquefied gas
- manufacture of central heating boilers and radiators

Business Requirements

✔ Age

18 and above

✔ Allowed for Nationalities

Bahraini 100%		GCC 100%	
American 100%		Singaporean 100%	
Icelander 100%		Liechtensteiner 100%	
Norwegian 100%		Swiss 100%	

Foreign Allowed up to 100%

Legal Type

It is allowed to register according to the legal forms mentioned below

Allowed for Individual Commercial Registration (ICR) : Yes

Allowed for Company Commercial Registration (CCR) : Yes

- Bahrain Shareholding Company (Public)
- With Limited Liability Company
- Branch of a Foreign Company
- Bahrain Shareholding Company (Closed)
- Partnership Company
- Simple Commandite Company
- Commandite By Shares Company
- Non Profit Company

Required Step of Licenses and Approvals

Ministry / Directorate	License / Approval Requirements	Approval Type
Directorate Of Industrial Developments	Approval by Directorate of Industrial Developments(Pre)	Pre
Supreme Council for Environment	Manufacture of metal tanks, tanks and vessels - Factory	Post
Municipality Affairs	Site Approval for manufacturing activities (Type C)	Post
Directorate Of Industrial Developments	Notification Only	Final Site Inspection

Directorate Of Industrial Developments (Pre) (2512-2)

Approval Name	Description	Estimated Time
Approval by Directorate of Industrial Developments(Pre)	This is a preliminary approval given by the Directorate of Industrial Development to ensure that the applicant has selected the appropriate activity based on the information provided	5 Days

Fee Details (if any)

There is no Estimated Processing Time (Days) in this license.

License Information

Applicants would have to provide through the system the following information:

General Information:

- Total Amount Invested in the Project (This should include value of machinery and fixed assets)
- Estimated number of workforce (Bahraini and Non-Bahraini)
- Expected utility consumption of electricity, water and natural gas
- Total area of the project

Activity Information:

- Product Information:

1) The products to be manufactured by choosing the appropriate HS codes (HS code list can be downloaded from the application if needed).
2) Product name.
3) Expected production date (The expected date on which the factory will start producing the product).

4) The maximum installed capacity and the expected production capacity per year based on the fixed HS code's unit of measure.

• Main raw materials: The main raw materials to be used in production and its source

• Main Machinery and Equipment: The main machinery and equipment to be used in production and its information.

• Manufacturing process: Brief on the manufacturing process explaining how materials are transformed from one state to another until reaching the final product, mentioning the types of materials used, the operations performed, and the machinery/equipment used in each step (if any) for each product.

Required Documents

•Photos of machinery/ equipment to be used
•Photos of products to be manufactured

Other Documents

•Law No. (81) of 2006 with respect to approving The Common Industrial Law of the GCC
•Ministerial Resolution No. (11) of 2009
•Operational requirements for the directorate of industrial developments activities

Supreme Council for Environment (Post) (2512-2)

Approval Name	Description	Estimated Time
Manufacture of metal tanks, tanks and vessels - Factory	This service aims to assess the environmental impact and licensing of development, industrial and production projects and activities, in accordance with the standards of protecting the environment and its natural resources	10 Days

Fee Details (if any)

- 30 Bahraini Dinars or 200 Bahraini Dinars for the fast-track procedure (when the data requested within the EA-2 form is sufficient without the need for additional studies)
- 4000 Bahraini Dinars or 6000 Bahraini Dinars for the fast track procedure (when it is necessary to submit an environmental impact assessment study for the project), with an additional payment of 100 Bahraini Dinars when it is necessary to submit a proposal for the scope of the study before submitting it or 500 Bahraini Dinars for a fast track procedure when the proposed scope of the study is being submitted before the study

License Information

To check the requirements for this approval, kindly download the detailed requirements sheet from the other downloadable documents section, which includes the following requirements:

- Building layout engineering and equipment requirements
- Workplace requirements
- Storage requirements
- Material management requirements
- Waste management requirements

- Documents and reporting requirements
- General requirements

Other Documents

- Annex to the Minister of Housing, Municipalities and Environment order regarding the project's environmental assessment
- Law No. (2) of 2021 regarding the environmental standards of air as decided by the Chairman of the Supreme Council for Environment
- Law No. (3) of 2021 regarding the environmental standards of water as decided by the Chairman of the Supreme Council for the Environment
- Law No. (54) of 2014 regarding the approval of the unified law regarding substances that deplete the ozone layer for the GCC countries
- Law No. (7) of 2022 regarding the environment
- Ministerial Order No. (1) of 1998 regarding Project's Environmental Assessment
- Ministerial Order No. (10) of 2006 regarding the installation of devices for on-line monitoring of atmospheric air pollutants
- Ministerial Order No. (11) of 2019 regarding the issue of technical specification of plastic products
- Ministerial Order No. (3) of 2005 regarding environmental requirements and standards in workplaces, especially regarding workers' exposure to heat and noise, and the provision of tools and protective clothing such as gloves, glasses, face masks and earplugs, with a commitment to use them during work
- Ministerial Order No. (3) of 2006 regarding the management of hazardous waste
- Ministerial Order No. (4) of 2005 regarding the management of used oils
- Ministerial Order No. (4) of 2006 regarding the management of hazardous chemicals
- Ministerial Order No. (4) of 2021 regarding the fees of the licenses and services provided by the Supreme Council for Environment
- Ministerial Order No. (6) of 2013 amending order No. (4) of 2006 regarding the management of hazardous chemicals
- Ministerial Order No. (7) of 2002 regarding the control importation and use of prohibited and severely restricted chemicals, and not to import any chemical compound except after obtaining approvals of all concerned authorities, including the executive body of the Supreme Council for Environment
- Ministerial Order No. (7) of 2013 amending order No. (3) of 2006 regarding the management of hazardous waste
- Ministerial Order No. 4 of 2014 regarding the management of the environmental consulting offices operations in the Kingdom of Bahrain
- Order No. (2) of 2020 determining the categories of fees for licensing refrigeration media, refrigeration units and air conditioning units as decided by the Chairman of the Supreme Council for the Environment
- Requirements for business activities
- law No. (1) of 2020 regarding the management of refrigeration media, refrigeration units and air conditioning units as decided by the Chairman of the Supreme Council for the Environment

•law No. (2) of 2019 regarding the ban on the import of plastic waste of all kinds as decided by the Chairman of the Supreme Council for the Environment

Municipality Affairs (Post) (2512-2)

Approval Name	Description	Estimated Time
Site Approval for manufacturing activities (Type C)	Municipality Approval for the Commercial Registration address or the site in which the Activity will be practiced	3 Days

Fee Details (if any)

10 BD

License Information

General Conditions:
1. Size of shop/premises must be sufficient for the activity
2. Businesses may not carry out the activity outside the boundaries of the shop/ premises
3. It is prohibited to display or store any items or equipment outside the shop / premises boundary without prior approval from the Municipality. In the event of non-compliance, the Ministry of Municipality Affairs has the right to take necessary action.
4. Maintain cleanliness of the site
5. Comply with the parking space regulations as per the Construction Regulatory Requirements

Activity Specific Conditions:
1. The commercial registration for this activity can be registered on Industrial streets/ areas only

Note: Uploading pictures of the site/shop may expedite the process of obtaining approval

Required Documents

- Lease agreement (after obtaining the necessary approvals from other licensing entities)
- Shop photos

Other Documents

- Cabinet's Decision (93) of the year 2023 regarding the Regulatory Requirements of Construction for various areas in the Kingdom of Bahrain

Directorate Of Industrial Developments (Final Site Inspection) (2512-2)

Approval Name	Description	Estimated Time
Notification Only	Notification to the Industrial development directorate on obtaining a commercial registration with the license to practice the activity.	There is no License Information in this license. Days

Fee Details (if any)

There is no Estimated Processing Time (Days) in this license.

License Information

The industrial license is automatically issued by the Industrial development Directorate after obtaining the approval of other licensing/approving entities.

Please ensure that the actual production date does no exceed the expected production date.

If actual production will start on or before the expected production date please apply for a “New Industrial Registration” by following the steps below:

1- Visit the Industrial services system (www.industry.bh).
2- Select “Industrial Registration”.
3- Select “New Registration” application.

In the event that the actual production date will exceed the expected production date an “Extension of expected production date” application must be submitted by following the steps below:

1- Visit the Industrial services system (www.industry.bh).

2- Select “Industrial License”.
3- Select “Extension of expected production date” application.

Please note that failure to do so within 60 days from the expected production date will result in a violation to be added.

Other Documents

- Law No. (81) of 2006 with respect to approving The Common Industrial Law of the GCC
- Ministerial Resolution No. (11) of 2009 with respect to promulgating Implementing Regulation
- Operational requirements for the directorate of industrial developments activities

Manufacturing

ISIC4	Business activity
2513	Manufacture of steam generators, except central heating hot water boilers

Description

This activity includes:
- manufacture of steam or other vapour generators
- manufacture of auxiliary plant for use with steam generators:
· condensers, economizers, superheaters, steam collectors and accumulators
- manufacture of nuclear reactors, except isotope separators
- manufacture of parts for marine or power boilers

Business Requirements

✔ Age

18 and above

✔ Allowed for Nationalities

Bahraini 100%	GCC 100%
American 100%	Singaporean 100%
Icelander 100%	Liechtenstein er 100%
Norwegian 100%	Swiss 100%

Foreign Allowed up to 100%

Legal Type

It is allowed to register according to the legal forms mentioned below

Allowed for Individual Commercial Registration (ICR) : Yes

Allowed for Company Commercial Registration (CCR) : Yes

- Bahrain Shareholding Company (Public)
- With Limited Liability Company
- Branch of a Foreign Company
- Bahrain Shareholding Company (Closed)
- Partnership Company
- Simple Commandite Company
- Commandite By Shares Company
- Non Profit Company

Required Step of Licenses and Approvals

Ministry / Directorate	License / Approval Requirements	Approval Type
Directorate Of Industrial Developments	Approval by Directorate of Industrial Developments(Pre)	Pre
Municipality Affairs	Site Approval for manufacturing activities (Type C)	Post
Supreme Council for Environment	Environmental Approval for Manufacture of steam generators, excluding central heating boilers with hot water activity	Post
Directorate Of Industrial Developments	Notification Only	Final Site Inspection

Directorate Of Industrial Developments (Pre) (2513)

Approval Name	Description	Estimated Time
Approval by Directorate of Industrial Developments(Pre)	This is a preliminary approval given by the Directorate of Industrial Development to ensure that the applicant has selected the appropriate activity based on the information provided	5 Days

Fee Details (if any)

There is no Estimated Processing Time (Days) in this license.

License Information

Applicants would have to provide through the system the following information:

General Information:

- Total Amount Invested in the Project (This should include value of machinery and fixed assets)
- Estimated number of workforce (Bahraini and Non-Bahraini)
- Expected utility consumption of electricity, water and natural gas
- Total area of the project

Activity Information:

- Product Information:

1) The products to be manufactured by choosing the appropriate HS codes (HS code list can be downloaded from the application if needed).
2) Product name.
3) Expected production date (The expected date on which the factory will start producing the product).

4) The maximum installed capacity and the expected production capacity per year based on the fixed HS code's unit of measure.

• Main raw materials: The main raw materials to be used in production and its source

• Main Machinery and Equipment: The main machinery and equipment to be used in production and its information.

• Manufacturing process: Brief on the manufacturing process explaining how materials are transformed from one state to another until reaching the final product, mentioning the types of materials used, the operations performed, and the machinery/equipment used in each step (if any) for each product.

Required Documents

•Photos of machinery/ equipment to be used
•Photos of products to be manufactured

Other Documents

•Law No. (81) of 2006 with respect to approving The Common Industrial Law of the GCC
•Ministerial Resolution No. (11) of 2009
•Operational requirements for the directorate of industrial developments activities

Municipality Affairs (Post) (2513)

Approval Name	Description	Estimated Time
Site Approval for manufacturing activities (Type C)	Municipality Approval for the Commercial Registration address or the site in which the Activity will be practiced	3 Days

Fee Details (if any)

10 BD

License Information

General Conditions:
1. Size of shop/premises must be sufficient for the activity
2. Businesses may not carry out the activity outside the boundaries of the shop/ premises
3. It is prohibited to display or store any items or equipment outside the shop / premises boundary without prior approval from the Municipality. In the event of non-compliance, the Ministry of Municipality Affairs has the right to take necessary action.
4. Maintain cleanliness of the site
5. Comply with the parking space regulations as per the Construction Regulatory Requirements

Activity Specific Conditions:
1. The commercial registration for this activity can be registered on Industrial streets/ areas only

Note: Uploading pictures of the site/shop may expedite the process of obtaining approval

Required Documents

- Lease agreement (after obtaining the necessary approvals from other licensing entities)
- Shop photos

Other Documents

- Cabinet's Decision (93) of the year 2023 regarding the Regulatory Requirements of Construction for various areas in the Kingdom of Bahrain

Supreme Council for Environment (Post) (2513)

Approval Name	Description	Estimated Time
Environmental Approval for Manufacture of steam generators, excluding central heating boilers with hot water activity	This service aims to assess the environmental impact and licensing of development, industrial and production projects and activities, in accordance with the standards of protecting the environment and its natural resources	10 Days

Fee Details (if any)

- 30 Bahraini Dinars or 200 Bahraini Dinars for the fast-track procedure (when the data requested within the EA-2 form is sufficient without the need for additional studies)
- 4000 Bahraini Dinars or 6000 Bahraini Dinars for the fast track procedure (when it is necessary to submit an environmental impact assessment study for the project), with an additional payment of 100 Bahraini Dinars when it is necessary to submit a proposal for the scope of the study before submitting it or 500 Bahraini Dinars for a fast track procedure when the proposed scope of the study is being submitted before the study

License Information

To check the requirements for this approval, kindly download the detailed requirements sheet from the other downloadable documents section, which includes the following requirements:

- Building layout engineering and equipment requirements
- Workplace requirements
- Storage requirements
- Material management requirements
- Waste Management Requirements
- Documents and reporting requirements

• General requirements

Other Documents

•Annex to the Minister of Housing, Municipalities and Environment order regarding the project's environmental assessment
•Law No. (2) of 2021 regarding the environmental standards of air as decided by the Chairman of the Supreme Council for Environment
•Law No. (3) of 2021 regarding the environmental standards of water as decided by the Chairman of the Supreme Council for the Environment
•Law No. (54) of 2014 regarding the approval of the unified law regarding substances that deplete the ozone layer for the GCC countries
•Law No. (7) of 2022 regarding the environment
•Ministerial Order No. (1) of 1998 regarding Project's Environmental Assessment
•Ministerial Order No. (10) of 2006 regarding the installation of devices for on-line monitoring of atmospheric air pollutants
•Ministerial Order No. (3) of 2005 regarding environmental requirements and standards in workplaces, especially regarding workers' exposure to heat and noise, and the provision of tools and protective clothing such as gloves, glasses, face masks and earplugs, with a commitment to use them during work
•Ministerial Order No. (3) of 2006 regarding the management of hazardous waste
•Ministerial Order No. (4) of 2005 regarding the management of used oils
•Ministerial Order No. (4) of 2006 regarding the management of hazardous chemicals
•Ministerial Order No. (4) of 2021 regarding the fees of the licenses and services provided by the Supreme Council for Environment
•Ministerial Order No. (6) of 2013 amending order No. (4) of 2006 regarding the management of hazardous chemicals
•Ministerial Order No. (7) of 2002 regarding the control importation and use of prohibited and severely restricted chemicals, and not to import any chemical compound except after obtaining approvals of all concerned authorities, including the executive body of the Supreme Council for Environment
•Ministerial Order No. (7) of 2013 amending order No. (3) of 2006 regarding the management of hazardous waste
•Ministerial Order No. 4 of 2014 regarding the management of the environmental consulting offices operations in the Kingdom of Bahrain
•Order No. (2) of 2020 determining the categories of fees for licensing refrigeration media, refrigeration units and air conditioning units as decided by the Chairman of the Supreme Council for the Environment
•Requirements for business activities
•law No. (1) of 2020 regarding the management of refrigeration media, refrigeration units and air conditioning units as decided by the Chairman of the Supreme Council for the Environment

Directorate Of Industrial Developments (Final Site Inspection) (2513)

Approval Name	Description	Estimated Time
Notification Only	Notification to the Industrial development directorate on obtaining a commercial registration with the license to practice the activity.	There is no License Information in this license. Days

Fee Details (if any)

There is no Estimated Processing Time (Days) in this license.

License Information

The industrial license is automatically issued by the Industrial development Directorate after obtaining the approval of other licensing/approving entities.

Please ensure that the actual production date does no exceed the expected production date.

If actual production will start on or before the expected production date please apply for a “New Industrial Registration” by following the steps below:

1- Visit the Industrial services system (www.industry.bh).
2- Select “Industrial Registration”.
3- Select “New Registration” application.

In the event that the actual production date will exceed the expected production date an “Extension of expected production date” application must be submitted by following the steps below:

1- Visit the Industrial services system (www.industry.bh).

2- Select “Industrial License”.
3- Select “Extension of expected production date” application.

Please note that failure to do so within 60 days from the expected production date will result in a violation to be added.

Other Documents

- Law No. (81) of 2006 with respect to approving The Common Industrial Law of the GCC
- Ministerial Resolution No. (11) of 2009 with respect to promulgating Implementing Regulation
- Operational requirements for the directorate of industrial developments activities

Manufacturing

ISIC4	Business activity
2591-1	Forging, pressing, stamping and roll-forming of metal; powder metallurgy - Workshop

Description

This activity includes:
- forging, pressing, stamping and roll-forming of metal
- powder metallurgy: production of metal objects directly from metal powders by heat treatment (sintering) or under pressure

Business Requirements

Age

18 and above

Allowed for Nationalities

Bahraini 100%	GCC 100%
American 100%	Singaporean 100%
Icelander 100%	Liechtensteiner 100%
Norwegian 100%	Swiss 100%

Foreign Allowed up to 100%

Legal Type

It is allowed to register according to the legal forms mentioned below

Allowed for Individual Commercial Registration (ICR) : Yes

Allowed for Company Commercial Registration (CCR) : Yes

- Bahrain Shareholding Company (Public)
- With Limited Liability Company
- Branch of a Foreign Company
- Bahrain Shareholding Company (Closed)
- Partnership Company
- Simple Commandite Company
- Commandite By Shares Company
- Non Profit Company

Required Step of Licenses and Approvals

Ministry / Directorate	License / Approval Requirements	Approval Type
Supreme Council for Environment	Environmental Approval for Metal forming by forging, pressing, casting and rolling, powder metallurgy - workshop	Post
Municipality Affairs	Site Approval for manufacturing activities (Type C)	Post

Supreme Council for Environment (Post) (2591-1)

Approval Name	Description	Estimated Time
Environmental Approval for Metal forming by forging, pressing, casting and rolling, powder metallurgy - workshop	This service aims to assess the environmental impact and licensing of development, industrial and production projects and activities, in accordance with the standards of protecting the environment and its natural resources	10 Days

Fee Details (if any)

- 30 Bahraini Dinars or 200 Bahraini Dinars for the fast-track procedure (when the data requested within the EA-2 form is sufficient without the need for additional studies)
- 4000 Bahraini Dinars or 6000 Bahraini Dinars for the fast track procedure (when it is necessary to submit an environmental impact assessment study for the project), with an additional payment of 100 Bahraini Dinars when it is necessary to submit a proposal for the scope of the study before submitting it or 500 Bahraini Dinars for a fast track procedure when the proposed scope of the study is being submitted before the study

License Information

To check the requirements for this approval, kindly download the detailed requirements sheet from the other downloadable documents section, which includes the following requirements:

- Building layout engineering and equipment requirements
- Workplace requirements
- Storage requirements
- Material management requirements
- Waste Management Requirements

- Documents and reporting requirements
- General requirements

Municipality Affairs (Post) (2591-1)

Approval Name	Description	Estimated Time
Site Approval for manufacturing activities (Type C)	Municipality Approval for the Commercial Registration address or the site in which the Activity will be practiced	3 Days

Fee Details (if any)

10 BD

License Information

General Conditions:
1. Size of shop/premises must be sufficient for the activity
2. Businesses may not carry out the activity outside the boundaries of the shop/ premises
3. It is prohibited to display or store any items or equipment outside the shop / premises boundary without prior approval from the Municipality. In the event of non-compliance, the Ministry of Municipality Affairs has the right to take necessary action.
4. Maintain cleanliness of the site
5. Comply with the parking space regulations as per the Construction Regulatory Requirements

Activity Specific Conditions:
1. The commercial registration for this activity can be registered on Industrial streets/ areas only

Note: Uploading pictures of the site/shop may expedite the process of obtaining approval

Required Documents

- Lease agreement (after obtaining the necessary approvals from other licensing entities)
- Shop photos

Other Documents

- Cabinet's Decision (93) of the year 2023 regarding the Regulatory Requirements of Construction for various areas in the Kingdom of Bahrain

Manufacturing

ISIC4	Business activity
2591-2	Forging, pressing, stamping and roll-forming of metal; powder metallurgy - Factory

Description

This activity includes:
- forging, pressing, stamping and roll-forming of metal
- powder metallurgy: production of metal objects directly from metal powders by heat treatment (sintering) or under pressure

Business Requirements

Age

18 and above

Allowed for Nationalities

Bahraini 100%		GCC 100%	
American 100%		Singaporean 100%	
Icelander 100%		Liechtenstein er 100%	
Norwegian 100%		Swiss 100%	

Foreign Allowed up to 100%

Legal Type

It is allowed to register according to the legal forms mentioned below

Allowed for Individual Commercial Registration (ICR) : Yes

Allowed for Company Commercial Registration (CCR) : Yes

- Bahrain Shareholding Company (Public)
- With Limited Liability Company
- Branch of a Foreign Company
- Bahrain Shareholding Company (Closed)
- Partnership Company
- Simple Commandite Company
- Commandite By Shares Company
- Non Profit Company

Required Step of Licenses and Approvals

Ministry / Directorate	License / Approval Requirements	Approval Type
Directorate Of Industrial Developments	Approval by Directorate of Industrial Developments(Pre)	Pre
Supreme Council for Environment	Environmental Approval for Metal forming by forging, pressing, casting and rolling, powder metallurgy - factory	Post
Municipality Affairs	Site Approval for manufacturing activities (Type C)	Post
Directorate Of Industrial Developments	Notification Only	Final Site Inspection

Directorate Of Industrial Developments (Pre) (2591-2)

Approval Name	Description	Estimated Time
Approval by Directorate of Industrial Developments(Pre)	This is a preliminary approval given by the Directorate of Industrial Development to ensure that the applicant has selected the appropriate activity based on the information provided	5 Days

Fee Details (if any)

There is no Estimated Processing Time (Days) in this license.

License Information

Applicants would have to provide through the system the following information:

General Information:

- Total Amount Invested in the Project (This should include value of machinery and fixed assets)
- Estimated number of workforce (Bahraini and Non-Bahraini)
- Expected utility consumption of electricity, water and natural gas
- Total area of the project

Activity Information:

- Product Information:

1) The products to be manufactured by choosing the appropriate HS codes (HS code list can be downloaded from the application if needed).
2) Product name.
3) Expected production date (The expected date on which the factory will start producing the product).

4) The maximum installed capacity and the expected production capacity per year based on the fixed HS code's unit of measure.

• Main raw materials: The main raw materials to be used in production and its source

• Main Machinery and Equipment: The main machinery and equipment to be used in production and its information.

• Manufacturing process: Brief on the manufacturing process explaining how materials are transformed from one state to another until reaching the final product, mentioning the types of materials used, the operations performed, and the machinery/equipment used in each step (if any) for each product.

Required Documents

•Photos of machinery/ equipment to be used
•Photos of products to be manufactured

Other Documents

•Law No. (81) of 2006 with respect to approving The Common Industrial Law of the GCC
•Ministerial Resolution No. (11) of 2009
•Operational requirements for the directorate of industrial developments activities

Supreme Council for Environment (Post) (2591-2)

Approval Name	Description	Estimated Time
Environmental Approval for Metal forming by forging, pressing, casting and rolling, powder metallurgy - factory	This service aims to assess the environmental impact and licensing of development, industrial and production projects and activities, in accordance with the standards of protecting the environment and its natural resources	10 Days

Fee Details (if any)

- 30 Bahraini Dinars or 200 Bahraini Dinars for the fast-track procedure (when the data requested within the EA-2 form is sufficient without the need for additional studies)
- 4000 Bahraini Dinars or 6000 Bahraini Dinars for the fast track procedure (when it is necessary to submit an environmental impact assessment study for the project), with an additional payment of 100 Bahraini Dinars when it is necessary to submit a proposal for the scope of the study before submitting it or 500 Bahraini Dinars for a fast track procedure when the proposed scope of the study is being submitted before the study

License Information

To check the requirements for this approval, kindly download the detailed requirements sheet from the other downloadable documents section, which includes the following requirements:

- Building layout engineering and equipment requirements
- Workplace requirements
- Storage requirements
- Material management requirements
- Waste Management Requirements

- Documents and reporting requirements
- General requirements

Other Documents

- Annex to the Minister of Housing, Municipalities and Environment order regarding the project's environmental assessment
- Law No. (2) of 2021 regarding the environmental standards of air as decided by the Chairman of the Supreme Council for Environment
- Law No. (3) of 2021 regarding the environmental standards of water as decided by the Chairman of the Supreme Council for the Environment
- Law No. (54) of 2014 regarding the approval of the unified law regarding substances that deplete the ozone layer for the GCC countries
- Law No. (7) of 2022 regarding the environment
- Ministerial Order No. (1) of 1998 regarding Project's Environmental Assessment
- Ministerial Order No. (10) of 2006 regarding the installation of devices for on-line monitoring of atmospheric air pollutants
- Ministerial Order No. (3) of 2005 regarding environmental requirements and standards in workplaces, especially regarding workers' exposure to heat and noise, and the provision of tools and protective clothing such as gloves, glasses, face masks and earplugs, with a commitment to use them during work
- Ministerial Order No. (3) of 2006 regarding the management of hazardous waste
- Ministerial Order No. (4) of 2005 regarding the management of used oils
- Ministerial Order No. (4) of 2006 regarding the management of hazardous chemicals
- Ministerial Order No. (4) of 2021 regarding the fees of the licenses and services provided by the Supreme Council for Environment
- Ministerial Order No. (6) of 2013 amending order No. (4) of 2006 regarding the management of hazardous chemicals
- Ministerial Order No. (7) of 2002 regarding the control importation and use of prohibited and severely restricted chemicals, and not to import any chemical compound except after obtaining approvals of all concerned authorities, including the executive body of the Supreme Council for Environment
- Ministerial Order No. (7) of 2013 amending order No. (3) of 2006 regarding the management of hazardous waste
- Ministerial Order No. 4 of 2014 regarding the management of the environmental consulting offices operations in the Kingdom of Bahrain
- Order No. (2) of 2020 determining the categories of fees for licensing refrigeration media, refrigeration units and air conditioning units as decided by the Chairman of the Supreme Council for the Environment
- Requirements for business activities
- law No. (1) of 2020 regarding the management of refrigeration media, refrigeration units and air conditioning units as decided by the Chairman of the Supreme Council for the Environment

Municipality Affairs (Post) (2591-2)

Approval Name	Description	Estimated Time
Site Approval for manufacturing activities (Type C)	Municipality Approval for the Commercial Registration address or the site in which the Activity will be practiced	3 Days

Fee Details (if any)

10 BD

License Information

General Conditions:
1. Size of shop/premises must be sufficient for the activity
2. Businesses may not carry out the activity outside the boundaries of the shop/ premises
3. It is prohibited to display or store any items or equipment outside the shop / premises boundary without prior approval from the Municipality. In the event of non-compliance, the Ministry of Municipality Affairs has the right to take necessary action.
4. Maintain cleanliness of the site
5. Comply with the parking space regulations as per the Construction Regulatory Requirements

Activity Specific Conditions:
1. The commercial registration for this activity can be registered on Industrial streets/ areas only

Note: Uploading pictures of the site/shop may expedite the process of obtaining approval

Required Documents

- Lease agreement (after obtaining the necessary approvals from other licensing entities)
- Shop photos

Other Documents

- Cabinet's Decision (93) of the year 2023 regarding the Regulatory Requirements of Construction for various areas in the Kingdom of Bahrain

Directorate Of Industrial Developments (Final Site Inspection) (2591-2)

Approval Name	Description	Estimated Time
Notification Only	Notification to the Industrial development directorate on obtaining a commercial registration with the license to practice the activity.	There is no License Information in this license. Days

Fee Details (if any)

There is no Estimated Processing Time (Days) in this license.

License Information

The industrial license is automatically issued by the Industrial development Directorate after obtaining the approval of other licensing/approving entities.

Please ensure that the actual production date does no exceed the expected production date.

If actual production will start on or before the expected production date please apply for a “New Industrial Registration” by following the steps below:

1- Visit the Industrial services system (www.industry.bh).
2- Select “Industrial Registration”.
3- Select “New Registration” application.

In the event that the actual production date will exceed the expected production date an “Extension of expected production date” application must be submitted by following the steps below:

1- Visit the Industrial services system (www.industry.bh).

2- Select “Industrial License”.
3- Select “Extension of expected production date” application.

Please note that failure to do so within 60 days from the expected production date will result in a violation to be added.

Other Documents

- Law No. (81) of 2006 with respect to approving The Common Industrial Law of the GCC
- Ministerial Resolution No. (11) of 2009 with respect to promulgating Implementing Regulation
- Operational requirements for the directorate of industrial developments activities

Manufacturing

ISIC4	Business activity
259190	Welding, Blacksmith, and Fabrication Workshop

Description

Workshops specialized in welding, fabrication, and blacksmith works using different kinds of metals such as Iron, Aluminum, etc. for making doors, windows, frames, etc.

Business Requirements

Age

18 and above

Allowed for Nationalities

- Bahraini 100%
- American 100%
- GCC 100%

Legal Type

It is allowed to register according to the legal forms mentioned below

Allowed for Individual Commercial Registration (ICR) : Yes

Allowed for Company Commercial Registration (CCR) : Yes

- Bahrain Shareholding Company (Public)
- With Limited Liability Company
- Branch of a Foreign Company
- Bahrain Shareholding Company (Closed)
- Partnership Company
- Simple Commandite Company
- Commandite By Shares Company
- Non Profit Company

Required Step of Licenses and Approvals

Ministry / Directorate	License / Approval Requirements	Approval Type
Supreme Council for Environment	Environmental Approval for Welding, blacksmithing and fabrication workshop activity	Post
Municipality Affairs	Site Approval for manufacturing activities (Type B)	Post

Supreme Council for Environment (Post) (259190)

Approval Name	Description	Estimated Time
Environmental Approval for Welding, blacksmithing and fabrication workshop activity	This service aims to assess the environmental impact and licensing of development, industrial and production projects and activities, in accordance with the standards of protecting the environment and its natural resources	10 Days

Fee Details (if any)

- 30 Bahraini Dinars

License Information

To check the requirements for this approval, kindly download the detailed requirements sheet from the other downloadable documents section, which includes the following requirements:

- Building layout Engineering and Equipment Requirements
- Work-place Requirements
- Storage Requirements
- Material Management Requirements
- Waste Management Requirements
- Documents and Reporting Requirements
- General Requirements

Other Documents

- licensing form for the supreme council of the environment

Municipality Affairs (Post) (259190)

Approval Name	Description	Estimated Time
Site Approval for manufacturing activities (Type B)	Municipality Approval for the Commercial Registration address or the site in which the Activity will be practiced	3 Days

Fee Details (if any)

10 BD

License Information

General Conditions:
1. Size of shop/premises must be sufficient for the activity
2. Businesses may not carry out the activity outside the boundaries of the shop/ premises
3. It is prohibited to display or store any items or equipment outside the shop / premises boundary without prior approval from the Municipality. In the event of non-compliance, the Ministry of Municipality Affairs has the right to take necessary action.
4. Maintain cleanliness of the site
5. Comply with the parking space regulations as per the Construction Regulatory Requirements

Activity Specific Conditions:
1. The Commercial Registration for this activity can only be registered in service and industrial streets/areas

Note: Uploading pictures of the site/shop may expedite the process of obtaining approval

Required Documents

- Lease agreement (after obtaining the necessary approvals from other licensing entities)
- Shop photos

Other Documents

- Cabinet's Decision (56) of the year 2022 regarding the Regulatory Requirements of Construction for various areas in the Kingdom of Bahrain

Manufacturing

ISIC4	Business activity
2592-1	Treatment and coating of metals; machining - Workshop

Description

This activity includes:
- plating, anodizing etc. of metals
- heat treatment of metals
- deburring, sandblasting, tumbling, cleaning of metals
- colouring and engraving of metals
- non-metallic coating of metals:
· plasticizing, enamelling, lacquering etc.
- hardening, buffing of metals
- boring, turning, milling, eroding, planing, lapping, broaching, levelling, sawing, grinding, sharpening, polishing, welding, splicing etc. of metalwork pieces
- cutting of and writing on metals by means of laser beams

Business Requirements

Age

18 and above

Allowed for Nationalities

Bahraini 100%		GCC 100%	
American 100%		Singaporean 100%	
Icelander 100%		Liechtenstein er 100%	
Norwegian 100%		Swiss 100%	

Foreign Allowed up to 100%

Legal Type

It is allowed to register according to the legal forms mentioned below

Allowed for Individual Commercial Registration (ICR) : Yes

Allowed for Company Commercial Registration (CCR) : Yes

- Bahrain Shareholding Company (Public)
- With Limited Liability Company
- Branch of a Foreign Company
- Bahrain Shareholding Company (Closed)
- Partnership Company
- Simple Commandite Company
- Commandite By Shares Company
- Non Profit Company

Required Step of Licenses and Approvals

Ministry / Directorate	License / Approval Requirements	Approval Type
Municipality Affairs	Site Approval for manufacturing activities	Post

	(Type C)	
Supreme Council for Environment	Environmental Approval for Treatment and coating of metals; machining – Workshop activity	Post

Municipality Affairs (Post) (2592-1)

Approval Name	Description	Estimated Time
Site Approval for manufacturing activities (Type C)	Municipality Approval for the Commercial Registration address or the site in which the Activity will be practiced	3 Days

Fee Details (if any)

10 BD

License Information

General Conditions:
1. Size of shop/premises must be sufficient for the activity
2. Businesses may not carry out the activity outside the boundaries of the shop/ premises
3. It is prohibited to display or store any items or equipment outside the shop / premises boundary without prior approval from the Municipality. In the event of non-compliance, the Ministry of Municipality Affairs has the right to take necessary action.
4. Maintain cleanliness of the site
5. Comply with the parking space regulations as per the Construction Regulatory Requirements

Activity Specific Conditions:
1. The commercial registration for this activity can be registered on Industrial streets/ areas only

Note: Uploading pictures of the site/shop may expedite the process of obtaining approval

Required Documents

- Lease agreement (after obtaining the necessary approvals from other licensing entities)
- Shop photos

Other Documents

- Cabinet's Decision (93) of the year 2023 regarding the Regulatory Requirements of Construction for various areas in the Kingdom of Bahrain

Supreme Council for Environment (Post) (2592-1)

Approval Name	Description	Estimated Time
Environmental Approval for Treatment and coating of metals; machining – Workshop activity	This service aims to assess the environmental impact and licensing of development, industrial and production projects and activities, in accordance with the standards of protecting the environment and its natural resources	10 Days

Fee Details (if any)

- 30 Bahraini Dinars or 200 Bahraini Dinars for the fast-track procedure (when the data requested within the EA-2 form is sufficient without the need for additional studies)
- 4000 Bahraini Dinars or 6000 Bahraini Dinars for the fast track procedure (when it is necessary to submit an environmental impact assessment study for the project), with an additional payment of 100 Bahraini Dinars when it is necessary to submit a proposal for the scope of the study before submitting it or 500 Bahraini Dinars for a fast track procedure when the proposed scope of the study is being submitted before the study

License Information

To check the requirements for this approval, kindly download the detailed requirements sheet from the other downloadable documents section, which includes the following requirements:

- Building layout engineering and equipment requirements
- Workplace requirements
- Storage requirements
- Material management requirements
- Waste management requirements

- Documents and reporting requirements
- General requirements

Other Documents

- Annex to the Minister of Housing, Municipalities and Environment order regarding the project's environmental assessment
- Annex to the Minister of Housing, Municipalities and Environment order regarding the project's environmental assessment
- Law No. (2) of 2021 regarding the environmental standards of air as decided by the Chairman of the Supreme Council for Environment
- Law No. (3) of 2021 regarding the environmental standards of water as decided by the Chairman of the Supreme Council for the Environment
- Law No. (54) of 2014 regarding the approval of the unified law regarding substances that deplete the ozone layer for the GCC countries
- Law No. (7) of 2022 regarding the environment
- Ministerial Order No. (1) of 1998 regarding Project's Environmental Assessment
- Ministerial Order No. (10) of 2006 regarding the installation of devices for on-line monitoring of atmospheric air pollutants
- Ministerial Order No. (3) of 2005 regarding environmental requirements and standards in workplaces, especially regarding workers' exposure to heat and noise, and the provision of tools and protective clothing such as gloves, glasses, face masks and earplugs, with a commitment to use them during work
- Ministerial Order No. (3) of 2006 regarding the management of hazardous waste
- Ministerial Order No. (4) of 2005 regarding the management of used oils
- Ministerial Order No. (4) of 2006 regarding the management of hazardous chemicals
- Ministerial Order No. (4) of 2021 regarding the fees of the licenses and services provided by the Supreme Council for Environment
- Ministerial Order No. (6) of 2013 amending order No. (4) of 2006 regarding the management of hazardous chemicals
- Ministerial Order No. (7) of 2002 regarding the control importation and use of prohibited and severely restricted chemicals, and not to import any chemical compound except after obtaining approvals of all concerned authorities, including the executive body of the Supreme Council for Environment
- Ministerial Order No. (7) of 2013 amending order No. (3) of 2006 regarding the management of hazardous waste
- Ministerial Order No. 4 of 2014 regarding the management of the environmental consulting offices operations in the Kingdom of Bahrain
- Order No. (2) of 2020 determining the categories of fees for licensing refrigeration media, refrigeration units and air conditioning units as decided by the Chairman of the Supreme Council for the Environment
- Requirements for business activities
- law No. (1) of 2020 regarding the management of refrigeration media, refrigeration units and air conditioning units as decided by the Chairman of the Supreme Council for the Environment

Manufacturing

ISIC4	Business activity
2592-2	Treatment and coating of metals; machining - Factory

Description

This activity includes:
- plating, anodizing etc. of metals
- heat treatment of metals
- deburring, sandblasting, tumbling, cleaning of metals
- colouring and engraving of metals
- non-metallic coating of metals:
· plasticizing, enamelling, lacquering etc.
- hardening, buffing of metals
- boring, turning, milling, eroding, planing, lapping, broaching, levelling, sawing, grinding, sharpening, polishing, welding, splicing etc. of metalwork pieces
- cutting of and writing on metals by means of laser beams

Business Requirements

Age

18 and above

Allowed for Nationalities

Bahraini 100%		GCC 100%	
American 100%		Singaporean 100%	
Icelander 100%		Liechtenstein er 100%	
Norwegian 100%		Swiss 100%	

Foreign Allowed up to 100%

Legal Type

It is allowed to register according to the legal forms mentioned below

Allowed for Individual Commercial Registration (ICR) : Yes

Allowed for Company Commercial Registration (CCR) : Yes

- Bahrain Shareholding Company (Public)
- With Limited Liability Company
- Branch of a Foreign Company
- Bahrain Shareholding Company (Closed)
- Partnership Company
- Simple Commandite Company
- Commandite By Shares Company
- Non Profit Company

Required Step of Licenses and Approvals

Ministry / Directorate	License / Approval Requirements	Approval Type
Directorate Of Industrial Developments	Approval by Directorate of Industrial	Pre

	Developments(Pre)	
Municipality Affairs	Site Approval for manufacturing activities (Type C)	Post
Supreme Council for Environment	Environmental Approval for Treatment and coating of metals; machining - Factory	Post
Directorate Of Industrial Developments	Notification Only	Final Site Inspection

Directorate Of Industrial Developments (Pre) (2592-2)

Approval Name	Description	Estimated Time
Approval by Directorate of Industrial Developments(Pre)	This is a preliminary approval given by the Directorate of Industrial Development to ensure that the applicant has selected the appropriate activity based on the information provided	5 Days

Fee Details (if any)

There is no Estimated Processing Time (Days) in this license.

License Information

Applicants would have to provide through the system the following information:

General Information:

- Total Amount Invested in the Project (This should include value of machinery and fixed assets)
- Estimated number of workforce (Bahraini and Non-Bahraini)
- Expected utility consumption of electricity, water and natural gas
- Total area of the project

Activity Information:

- Product Information:

1) The products to be manufactured by choosing the appropriate HS codes (HS code list can be downloaded from the application if needed).
2) Product name.
3) Expected production date (The expected date on which the factory will start producing the product).

4) The maximum installed capacity and the expected production capacity per year based on the fixed HS code's unit of measure.

• Main raw materials: The main raw materials to be used in production and its source

• Main Machinery and Equipment: The main machinery and equipment to be used in production and its information.

• Manufacturing process: Brief on the manufacturing process explaining how materials are transformed from one state to another until reaching the final product, mentioning the types of materials used, the operations performed, and the machinery/equipment used in each step (if any) for each product.

Required Documents

•Photos of machinery/ equipment to be used
•Photos of products to be manufactured

Other Documents

•Law No. (81) of 2006 with respect to approving The Common Industrial Law of the GCC
•Ministerial Resolution No. (11) of 2009
•Operational requirements for the directorate of industrial developments activities

Municipality Affairs (Post) (2592-2)

Approval Name	Description	Estimated Time
Site Approval for manufacturing activities (Type C)	Municipality Approval for the Commercial Registration address or the site in which the Activity will be practiced	3 Days

Fee Details (if any)

10 BD

License Information

General Conditions:
1. Size of shop/premises must be sufficient for the activity
2. Businesses may not carry out the activity outside the boundaries of the shop/ premises
3. It is prohibited to display or store any items or equipment outside the shop / premises boundary without prior approval from the Municipality. In the event of non-compliance, the Ministry of Municipality Affairs has the right to take necessary action.
4. Maintain cleanliness of the site
5. Comply with the parking space regulations as per the Construction Regulatory Requirements

Activity Specific Conditions:
1. The commercial registration for this activity can be registered on Industrial streets/ areas only

Note: Uploading pictures of the site/shop may expedite the process of obtaining approval

Required Documents

- Lease agreement (after obtaining the necessary approvals from other licensing entities)
- Shop photos

Other Documents

- Cabinet's Decision (93) of the year 2023 regarding the Regulatory Requirements of Construction for various areas in the Kingdom of Bahrain

Supreme Council for Environment (Post) (2592-2)

Approval Name	Description	Estimated Time
Environmental Approval for Treatment and coating of metals; machining - Factory	This service aims to assess the environmental impact and licensing of development, industrial and production projects and activities, in accordance with the standards of protecting the environment and its natural resources	10 Days

Fee Details (if any)

- 30 Bahraini Dinars or 200 Bahraini Dinars for the fast-track procedure (when the data requested within the EA-2 form is sufficient without the need for additional studies)
- 4000 Bahraini Dinars or 6000 Bahraini Dinars for the fast track procedure (when it is necessary to submit an environmental impact assessment study for the project), with an additional payment of 100 Bahraini Dinars when it is necessary to submit a proposal for the scope of the study before submitting it or 500 Bahraini Dinars for a fast track procedure when the proposed scope of the study is being submitted before the study

License Information

To check the requirements for this approval, kindly download the detailed requirements sheet from the other downloadable documents section, which includes the following requirements:

- Building layout engineering and equipment requirements
- Workplace requirements
- Storage requirements
- Material management requirements
- Waste Management Requirements

- Documents and reporting requirements
- General requirements

Other Documents

- Annex to the Minister of Housing, Municipalities and Environment order regarding the project's environmental assessment
- Law No. (2) of 2021 regarding the environmental standards of air as decided by the Chairman of the Supreme Council for Environment
- Law No. (3) of 2021 regarding the environmental standards of water as decided by the Chairman of the Supreme Council for the Environment
- Law No. (54) of 2014 regarding the approval of the unified law regarding substances that deplete the ozone layer for the GCC countries
- Law No. (7) of 2022 regarding the environment
- Ministerial Order No. (1) of 1998 regarding Project's Environmental Assessment
- Ministerial Order No. (10) of 2006 regarding the installation of devices for on-line monitoring of atmospheric air pollutants
- Ministerial Order No. (3) of 2005 regarding environmental requirements and standards in workplaces, especially regarding workers' exposure to heat and noise, and the provision of tools and protective clothing such as gloves, glasses, face masks and earplugs, with a commitment to use them during work
- Ministerial Order No. (3) of 2006 regarding the management of hazardous waste
- Ministerial Order No. (4) of 2005 regarding the management of used oils
- Ministerial Order No. (4) of 2006 regarding the management of hazardous chemicals
- Ministerial Order No. (4) of 2021 regarding the fees of the licenses and services provided by the Supreme Council for Environment
- Ministerial Order No. (6) of 2013 amending order No. (4) of 2006 regarding the management of hazardous chemicals
- Ministerial Order No. (7) of 2002 regarding the control importation and use of prohibited and severely restricted chemicals, and not to import any chemical compound except after obtaining approvals of all concerned authorities, including the executive body of the Supreme Council for Environment
- Ministerial Order No. (7) of 2013 amending order No. (3) of 2006 regarding the management of hazardous waste
- Ministerial Order No. 4 of 2014 regarding the management of the environmental consulting offices operations in the Kingdom of Bahrain
- Order No. (2) of 2020 determining the categories of fees for licensing refrigeration media, refrigeration units and air conditioning units as decided by the Chairman of the Supreme Council for the Environment
- Requirements for business activities
- law No. (1) of 2020 regarding the management of refrigeration media, refrigeration units and air conditioning units as decided by the Chairman of the Supreme Council for the Environment

Directorate Of Industrial Developments (Final Site Inspection) (2592-2)

Approval Name	Description	Estimated Time
Notification Only	Notification to the Industrial development directorate on obtaining a commercial registration with the license to practice the activity.	There is no License Information in this license. Days

Fee Details (if any)

There is no Estimated Processing Time (Days) in this license.

License Information

The industrial license is automatically issued by the Industrial development Directorate after obtaining the approval of other licensing/approving entities.

Please ensure that the actual production date does no exceed the expected production date.

If actual production will start on or before the expected production date please apply for a “New Industrial Registration” by following the steps below:

1- Visit the Industrial services system (www.industry.bh).
2- Select “Industrial Registration”.
3- Select “New Registration” application.

In the event that the actual production date will exceed the expected production date an “Extension of expected production date” application must be submitted by following the steps below:

1- Visit the Industrial services system (www.industry.bh).

2- Select “Industrial License”.
3- Select “Extension of expected production date” application.

Please note that failure to do so within 60 days from the expected production date will result in a violation to be added.

Other Documents

- Law No. (81) of 2006 with respect to approving The Common Industrial Law of the GCC
- Ministerial Resolution No. (11) of 2009 with respect to promulgating Implementing Regulation
- Operational requirements for the directorate of industrial developments activities

Manufacturing

ISIC4	Business activity
2599-1	Manufacture of other fabricated metal products - Workshop

Description

This activity includes the manufacture if cutlery, handt tools, and general hardware and other fabricated metal products, such as:
- manufacture of pails, cans, drums, buckets, boxes
- manufacture of tins and cans for food products, collapsible tubes and boxes
- manufacture of metallic closures
- manufacture of metal cable, plaited bands and similar articles
- manufacture of uninsulated metal cable or insulated cable not capable of being used as a conductor of electricity
- manufacture of articles made of wire: barbed wire, wire fencing, grill, netting, cloth etc.
- manufacture of nails and pins
- manufacture of rivets, washers and similar non-threaded products
- manufacture of screw machine products
- manufacture of bolts, screws, nuts and similar threaded products
- manufacture of springs (except watch springs):
· leaf springs, helical springs, torsion bar springs
· leaves for springs
- manufacture of chain, except power transmission chain
- manufacture of metal household articles:
· flatware: plates, saucers etc.
· hollowware: pots, kettles etc.
· dinnerware: bowls, platters etc.
· saucepans, frying pans and other non-electrical utensils for use at the table or in the kitchen
· small hand-operated kitchen appliances and accessories
· metal scouring pads
- manufacture of baths, sinks, washbasins and similar articles
- manufacture of metal goods for office use, except furniture
- manufacture of safes, strongboxes, armoured doors etc.
- manufacture of various metal articles:
· ship propellers and blades thereof
· anchors
· bells
· assembled railway track fixtures

· clasps, buckles, hooks
- manufacture of foil bags
- manufacture of permanent metallic magnets
- manufacture of metal vacuum jugs and bottles
- manufacture of metal signs (non-electrical)
- manufacture of metal badges and metal military insignia
- manufacture of metal hair curlers, metal umbrella handles and frames, combs

Business Requirements

Age

18 and above

Allowed for Nationalities

Bahraini 100%		GCC 100%	
American 100%		Singaporean 100%	
Icelander 100%		Liechtenstein er 100%	
Norwegian 100%		Swiss 100%	

Foreign Allowed up to 100%

Legal Type

It is allowed to register according to the legal forms mentioned below

Allowed for Individual Commercial Registration (ICR) : Yes

Allowed for Company Commercial Registration (CCR) : Yes

- Bahrain Shareholding Company (Public)
- With Limited Liability Company
- Branch of a Foreign Company
- Bahrain Shareholding Company (Closed)
- Partnership Company
- Simple Commandite Company
- Commandite By Shares Company
- Non Profit Company

Required Step of Licenses and Approvals

Ministry / Directorate	License / Approval Requirements	Approval Type
Municipality Affairs	Site Approval for manufacturing activities (Type C)	Post
Supreme Council for Environment	Environmental Approval for Manufacture of other formed metal products - workshop activity	Post

Municipality Affairs (Post) (2599-1)

Approval Name	Description	Estimated Time
Site Approval for manufacturing activities (Type C)	Municipality Approval for the Commercial Registration address or the site in which the Activity will be practiced	3 Days

Fee Details (if any)

10 BD

License Information

General Conditions:
1. Size of shop/premises must be sufficient for the activity
2. Businesses may not carry out the activity outside the boundaries of the shop/ premises
3. It is prohibited to display or store any items or equipment outside the shop / premises boundary without prior approval from the Municipality. In the event of non-compliance, the Ministry of Municipality Affairs has the right to take necessary action.
4. Maintain cleanliness of the site
5. Comply with the parking space regulations as per the Construction Regulatory Requirements

Activity Specific Conditions:
1. The commercial registration for this activity can be registered on Industrial streets/ areas only

Note: Uploading pictures of the site/shop may expedite the process of obtaining approval

Required Documents

- Lease agreement (after obtaining the necessary approvals from other licensing entities)
- Shop photos

Other Documents

- Cabinet's Decision (93) of the year 2023 regarding the Regulatory Requirements of Construction for various areas in the Kingdom of Bahrain

Supreme Council for Environment (Post) (2599-1)

Approval Name	Description	Estimated Time
Environmental Approval for Manufacture of other formed metal products - workshop activity	This service aims to assess the environmental impact and licensing of development, industrial and production projects and activities, in accordance with the standards of protecting the environment and its natural resources	10 Days

Fee Details (if any)

- 30 Bahraini Dinars or 200 Bahraini Dinars for the fast-track procedure (when the data requested within the EA-2 form is sufficient without the need for additional studies)
- 4000 Bahraini Dinars or 6000 Bahraini Dinars for the fast track procedure (when it is necessary to submit an environmental impact assessment study for the project), with an additional payment of 100 Bahraini Dinars when it is necessary to submit a proposal for the scope of the study before submitting it or 500 Bahraini Dinars for a fast track procedure when the proposed scope of the study is being submitted before the study

License Information

To check the requirements for this approval, kindly download the detailed requirements sheet from the other downloadable documents section, which includes the following requirements:

- Building layout engineering and equipment requirements
- Workplace requirements
- Storage Requirements
- Material Management Requirements
- Waste Management Requirements

- Documents and reporting requirements
- General requirements

Other Documents

- Annex to the Minister of Housing, Municipalities and Environment order regarding the project's environmental assessment
- Law No. (2) of 2021 regarding the environmental standards of air as decided by the Chairman of the Supreme Council for Environment
- Law No. (3) of 2021 regarding the environmental standards of water as decided by the Chairman of the Supreme Council for the Environment
- Law No. (54) of 2014 regarding the approval of the unified law regarding substances that deplete the ozone layer for the GCC countries
- Law No. (7) of 2022 regarding the environment
- Ministerial Order No. (1) of 1998 regarding Project's Environmental Assessment
- Ministerial Order No. (10) of 2006 regarding the installation of devices for on-line monitoring of atmospheric air pollutants
- Ministerial Order No. (11) of 2019 regarding the issue of technical specification of plastic products
- Ministerial Order No. (3) of 2005 regarding environmental requirements and standards in workplaces, especially regarding workers' exposure to heat and noise, and the provision of tools and protective clothing such as gloves, glasses, face masks and earplugs, with a commitment to use them during work
- Ministerial Order No. (3) of 2006 regarding the management of hazardous waste
- Ministerial Order No. (4) of 2005 regarding the management of used oils
- Ministerial Order No. (4) of 2006 regarding the management of hazardous chemicals
- Ministerial Order No. (4) of 2021 regarding the fees of the licenses and services provided by the Supreme Council for Environment
- Ministerial Order No. (6) of 2013 amending order No. (4) of 2006 regarding the management of hazardous chemicals
- Ministerial Order No. (7) of 2002 regarding the control importation and use of prohibited and severely restricted chemicals, and not to import any chemical compound except after obtaining approvals of all concerned authorities, including the executive body of the Supreme Council for Environment
- Ministerial Order No. (7) of 2013 amending order No. (3) of 2006 regarding the management of hazardous waste
- Ministerial Order No. 4 of 2014 regarding the management of the environmental consulting offices operations in the Kingdom of Bahrain
- Order No. (2) of 2020 determining the categories of fees for licensing refrigeration media, refrigeration units and air conditioning units as decided by the Chairman of the Supreme Council for the Environment
- Requirements for business activities
- law No. (1) of 2020 regarding the management of refrigeration media, refrigeration units and air conditioning units as decided by the Chairman of the Supreme Council for the Environment

•law No. (2) of 2019 regarding the ban on the import of plastic waste of all kinds as decided by the Chairman of the Supreme Council for the Environment

Manufacturing

ISIC4	Business activity
2599-2	Manufacture of other fabricated metal products - Factory

Description

This activity includes the manufacture of cutlery, handt tools, and general hardware and other fabricated metal products, such as:
- manufacture of pails, cans, drums, buckets
- manufacture of tins and cans for food products, collapsible tubes and boxes
- manufacture of metallic closures
- manufacture of metal cable, plaited bands and similar articles
- manufacture of uninsulated metal cable or insulated cable not capable of being used as a conductor of electricity
- manufacture of articles made of wire: barbed wire, wire fencing, grill, netting, cloth etc.
- manufacture of nails and pins
- manufacture of rivets, washers and similar non-threaded products
- manufacture of screw machine products
- manufacture of bolts, screws, nuts and similar threaded products
- manufacture of springs (except watch springs):
· leaf springs, helical springs, torsion bar springs
· leaves for springs
- manufacture of chain, except power transmission chain
- manufacture of metal household articles:
· flatware: plates, saucers etc.
· hollowware: pots, kettles etc.
· dinnerware: bowls, platters etc.
· saucepans, frying pans and other non-electrical utensils for use at the table or in the kitchen
· small hand-operated kitchen appliances and accessories
· metal scouring pads
- manufacture of baths, sinks, washbasins and similar articles
- manufacture of metal goods for office use, except furniture
- manufacture of safes, strongboxes, armoured doors etc.
- manufacture of various metal articles:
· ship propellers and blades thereof
· anchors
· bells
· assembled railway track fixtures

· clasps, buckles, hooks
- manufacture of foil bags
- manufacture of permanent metallic magnets
- manufacture of metal vacuum jugs and bottles
- manufacture of metal signs (non-electrical)
- manufacture of metal badges and metal military insignia
- manufacture of metal hair curlers, metal umbrella handles and frames, combs

Business Requirements

Age

18 and above

Allowed for Nationalities

Bahraini 100%		GCC 100%	
American 100%		Singaporean 100%	
Icelander 100%		Liechtenstein er 100%	
Norwegian 100%		Swiss 100%	

Foreign Allowed up to 100%

Legal Type

It is allowed to register according to the legal forms mentioned below

Allowed for Individual Commercial Registration (ICR) : Yes

Allowed for Company Commercial Registration (CCR) : Yes

- Bahrain Shareholding Company (Public)
- With Limited Liability Company
- Branch of a Foreign Company
- Bahrain Shareholding Company (Closed)
- Partnership Company
- Simple Commandite Company
- Commandite By Shares Company
- Non Profit Company

Required Step of Licenses and Approvals

Ministry / Directorate	License / Approval Requirements	Approval Type
Directorate Of Industrial Developments	Approval by Directorate of Industrial Developments(Pre)	Pre
Municipality Affairs	Site Approval for manufacturing activities (Type C)	Post
Supreme Council for Environment	Environmental Approval for Manufacture of other formed metal products – factory activity	Post
Directorate Of Industrial Developments	Notification Only	Final Site Inspection

Directorate Of Industrial Developments (Pre) (2599-2)

Approval Name	Description	Estimated Time
Approval by Directorate of Industrial Developments(Pre)	This is a preliminary approval given by the Directorate of Industrial Development to ensure that the applicant has selected the appropriate activity based on the information provided	5 Days

Fee Details (if any)

There is no Estimated Processing Time (Days) in this license.

License Information

Applicants would have to provide through the system the following information:

General Information:

- Total Amount Invested in the Project (This should include value of machinery and fixed assets)
- Estimated number of workforce (Bahraini and Non-Bahraini)
- Expected utility consumption of electricity, water and natural gas
- Total area of the project

Activity Information:

- Product Information:

1) The products to be manufactured by choosing the appropriate HS codes (HS code list can be downloaded from the application if needed).
2) Product name.
3) Expected production date (The expected date on which the factory will start producing the product).

4) The maximum installed capacity and the expected production capacity per year based on the fixed HS code's unit of measure.

• Main raw materials: The main raw materials to be used in production and its source

• Main Machinery and Equipment: The main machinery and equipment to be used in production and its information.

• Manufacturing process: Brief on the manufacturing process explaining how materials are transformed from one state to another until reaching the final product, mentioning the types of materials used, the operations performed, and the machinery/equipment used in each step (if any) for each product.

Required Documents

•Photos of machinery/ equipment to be used
•Photos of products to be manufactured

Other Documents

•Law No. (81) of 2006 with respect to approving The Common Industrial Law of the GCC
•Ministerial Resolution No. (11) of 2009
•Operational requirements for the directorate of industrial developments activities

Municipality Affairs (Post) (2599-2)

Approval Name	Description	Estimated Time
Site Approval for manufacturing activities (Type C)	Municipality Approval for the Commercial Registration address or the site in which the Activity will be practiced	3 Days

Fee Details (if any)

10 BD

License Information

General Conditions:
1. Size of shop/premises must be sufficient for the activity
2. Businesses may not carry out the activity outside the boundaries of the shop/ premises
3. It is prohibited to display or store any items or equipment outside the shop / premises boundary without prior approval from the Municipality. In the event of non-compliance, the Ministry of Municipality Affairs has the right to take necessary action.
4. Maintain cleanliness of the site
5. Comply with the parking space regulations as per the Construction Regulatory Requirements

Activity Specific Conditions:
1. The commercial registration for this activity can be registered on Industrial streets/ areas only

Note: Uploading pictures of the site/shop may expedite the process of obtaining approval

Required Documents

- Lease agreement (after obtaining the necessary approvals from other licensing entities)
- Shop photos

Other Documents

- Cabinet's Decision (93) of the year 2023 regarding the Regulatory Requirements of Construction for various areas in the Kingdom of Bahrain

Supreme Council for Environment (Post) (2599-2)

Approval Name	Description	Estimated Time
Environmental Approval for Manufacture of other formed metal products – factory activity	This service aims to assess the environmental impact and licensing of development, industrial and production projects and activities, in accordance with the standards of protecting the environment and its natural resources	10 Days

Fee Details (if any)

- 30 Bahraini Dinars or 200 Bahraini Dinars for the fast-track procedure (when the data requested within the EA-2 form is sufficient without the need for additional studies)
- 4000 Bahraini Dinars or 6000 Bahraini Dinars for the fast track procedure (when it is necessary to submit an environmental impact assessment study for the project), with an additional payment of 100 Bahraini Dinars when it is necessary to submit a proposal for the scope of the study before submitting it or 500 Bahraini Dinars for a fast track procedure when the proposed scope of the study is being submitted before the study

License Information

To check the requirements for this approval, kindly download the detailed requirements sheet from the other downloadable documents section, which includes the following requirements:

- Building layout engineering and equipment requirements
- Workplace requirements
- Storage requirements
- Material management requirements
- Waste Management Requirements

• Documents and reporting requirements
• General requirements

Other Documents

•Annex to the Minister of Housing, Municipalities and Environment order regarding the project's environmental assessment
•Law No. (2) of 2021 regarding the environmental standards of air as decided by the Chairman of the Supreme Council for Environment
•Law No. (3) of 2021 regarding the environmental standards of water as decided by the Chairman of the Supreme Council for the Environment
•Law No. (54) of 2014 regarding the approval of the unified law regarding substances that deplete the ozone layer for the GCC countries
•Law No. (7) of 2022 regarding the environment
•Law No. (7) of 2022 regarding the environment
•Ministerial Order No. (1) of 1998 regarding Project's Environmental Assessment
•Ministerial Order No. (10) of 2006 regarding the installation of devices for on-line monitoring of atmospheric air pollutants
•Ministerial Order No. (11) of 2019 regarding the issue of technical specification of plastic products
•Ministerial Order No. (3) of 2005 regarding environmental requirements and standards in workplaces, especially regarding workers' exposure to heat and noise, and the provision of tools and protective clothing such as gloves, glasses, face masks and earplugs, with a commitment to use them during work
•Ministerial Order No. (3) of 2006 regarding the management of hazardous waste
•Ministerial Order No. (4) of 2005 regarding the management of used oils
•Ministerial Order No. (4) of 2006 regarding the management of hazardous chemicals
•Ministerial Order No. (4) of 2021 regarding the fees of the licenses and services provided by the Supreme Council for Environment
•Ministerial Order No. (6) of 2013 amending order No. (4) of 2006 regarding the management of hazardous chemicals
•Ministerial Order No. (7) of 2002 regarding the control importation and use of prohibited and severely restricted chemicals, and not to import any chemical compound except after obtaining approvals of all concerned authorities, including the executive body of the Supreme Council for Environment
•Ministerial Order No. (7) of 2013 amending order No. (3) of 2006 regarding the management of hazardous waste
•Ministerial Order No. 4 of 2014 regarding the management of the environmental consulting offices operations in the Kingdom of Bahrain
•Order No. (2) of 2020 determining the categories of fees for licensing refrigeration media, refrigeration units and air conditioning units as decided by the Chairman of the Supreme Council for the Environment
•Requirements for business activities
•law No. (1) of 2020 regarding the management of refrigeration media, refrigeration units and air conditioning units as decided by the Chairman of the Supreme Council for

the Environment
•law No. (2) of 2019 regarding the ban on the import of plastic waste of all kinds as decided by the Chairman of the Supreme Council for the Environment

Directorate Of Industrial Developments (Final Site Inspection) (2599-2)

Approval Name	Description	Estimated Time
Notification Only	Notification to the Industrial development directorate on obtaining a commercial registration with the license to practice the activity.	There is no License Information in this license. Days

Fee Details (if any)

There is no Estimated Processing Time (Days) in this license.

License Information

The industrial license is automatically issued by the Industrial development Directorate after obtaining the approval of other licensing/approving entities.

Please ensure that the actual production date does no exceed the expected production date.

If actual production will start on or before the expected production date please apply for a “New Industrial Registration” by following the steps below:

1- Visit the Industrial services system (www.industry.bh).
2- Select “Industrial Registration”.
3- Select “New Registration” application.

In the event that the actual production date will exceed the expected production date an “Extension of expected production date” application must be submitted by following the steps below:

1- Visit the Industrial services system (www.industry.bh).

2- Select “Industrial License”.
3- Select “Extension of expected production date” application.

Please note that failure to do so within 60 days from the expected production date will result in a violation to be added.

Other Documents

- Law No. (81) of 2006 with respect to approving The Common Industrial Law of the GCC
- Ministerial Resolution No. (11) of 2009 with respect to promulgating Implementing Regulation
- Operational requirements for the directorate of industrial developments activities

Manufacturing

ISIC4	Business activity
26-1	Manufacture of computer, electronic and optical products - Workshop

Description

This activity includes the manufacture of computers, computer peripherals, communications equipment, and similar electronic products, as well as the manufacture of components for such products. Production processes of this division are characterized by the design and use of integrated circuits and the application of highly specialized miniaturization technologies.The activity also contains the manufacture of consumer electronics, measuring, testing, navigating, and control equipment, watches and clocks, irradiation, electromedical and electrotherapeutic equipment, optical instruments and equipment, and the manufacture of magnetic and optical media.

Business Requirements

Age

18 and above

Allowed for Nationalities

Bahraini 100%		GCC 100%	
American 100%		Singaporean 100%	
Icelander 100%		Liechtenstein er 100%	
Norwegian 100%		Swiss 100%	

Foreign Allowed up to 100%

Legal Type

It is allowed to register according to the legal forms mentioned below

Allowed for Individual Commercial Registration (ICR) : Yes

Allowed for Company Commercial Registration (CCR) : Yes

- Bahrain Shareholding Company (Public)
- With Limited Liability Company
- Branch of a Foreign Company
- Bahrain Shareholding Company (Closed)
- Partnership Company
- Simple Commandite Company
- Commandite By Shares Company
- Non Profit Company

Required Step of Licenses and Approvals

Ministry / Directorate	License / Approval Requirements	Approval Type
Supreme Council for Environment	Environmental Approval for Manufacture of computers, electronic and optical products - workshop activity	Post
Municipality Affairs	Site Approval for manufacturing activities (Type C)	Post

Supreme Council for Environment (Post) (26-1)

Approval Name	Description	Estimated Time
Environmental Approval for Manufacture of computers, electronic and optical products - workshop activity	This service aims to assess the environmental impact and licensing of development, industrial and production projects and activities, in accordance with the standards of protecting the environment and its natural resources	10 Days

Fee Details (if any)

- 30 Bahraini Dinars or 200 Bahraini Dinars for the fast-track procedure (when the data requested within the EA-2 form is sufficient without the need for additional studies)
- 4000 Bahraini Dinars or 6000 Bahraini Dinars for the fast track procedure (when it is necessary to submit an environmental impact assessment study for the project), with an additional payment of 100 Bahraini Dinars when it is necessary to submit a proposal for the scope of the study before submitting it or 500 Bahraini Dinars for a fast track procedure when the proposed scope of the study is being submitted before the study

License Information

To check the requirements for this approval, kindly download the detailed requirements sheet from the other downloadable documents section, which includes the following requirements:

- Building layout engineering and equipment requirements
- Workplace requirements
- Storage requirements
- Material management requirements
- Waste Management Requirements

• Documents and reporting requirements
• General requirements

Other Documents

•Annex to the Minister of Housing, Municipalities and Environment order regarding the project's environmental assessment
•Law No. (2) of 2021 regarding the environmental standards of air as decided by the Chairman of the Supreme Council for Environment
•Law No. (3) of 2021 regarding the environmental standards of water as decided by the Chairman of the Supreme Council for the Environment
•Law No. (54) of 2014 regarding the approval of the unified law regarding substances that deplete the ozone layer for the GCC countries
•Law No. (7) of 2022 regarding the environment
•Law No. (7) of 2022 regarding the environment
•Ministerial Order No. (1) of 1998 regarding Project's Environmental Assessment
•Ministerial Order No. (10) of 2006 regarding the installation of devices for on-line monitoring of atmospheric air pollutants
•Ministerial Order No. (11) of 2019 regarding the issue of technical specification of plastic products
•Ministerial Order No. (3) of 2005 regarding environmental requirements and standards in workplaces, especially regarding workers' exposure to heat and noise, and the provision of tools and protective clothing such as gloves, glasses, face masks and earplugs, with a commitment to use them during work
•Ministerial Order No. (3) of 2006 regarding the management of hazardous waste
•Ministerial Order No. (4) of 2005 regarding the management of used oils
•Ministerial Order No. (4) of 2006 regarding the management of hazardous chemicals
•Ministerial Order No. (4) of 2021 regarding the fees of the licenses and services provided by the Supreme Council for Environment
•Ministerial Order No. (6) of 2013 amending order No. (4) of 2006 regarding the management of hazardous chemicals
•Ministerial Order No. (7) of 2002 regarding the control importation and use of prohibited and severely restricted chemicals, and not to import any chemical compound except after obtaining approvals of all concerned authorities, including the executive body of the Supreme Council for Environment
•Ministerial Order No. (7) of 2013 amending order No. (3) of 2006 regarding the management of hazardous waste
•Ministerial Order No. 4 of 2014 regarding the management of the environmental consulting offices operations in the Kingdom of Bahrain
•Order No. (2) of 2020 determining the categories of fees for licensing refrigeration media, refrigeration units and air conditioning units as decided by the Chairman of the Supreme Council for the Environment
•Requirements for business activities
•law No. (1) of 2020 regarding the management of refrigeration media, refrigeration units and air conditioning units as decided by the Chairman of the Supreme Council for

the Environment
•law No. (1) of 2020 regarding the management of refrigeration media, refrigeration units and air conditioning units as decided by the Chairman of the Supreme Council for the Environment
•law No. (2) of 2019 regarding the ban on the import of plastic waste of all kinds as decided by the Chairman of the Supreme Council for the Environment

Municipality Affairs (Post) (26-1)

Approval Name	Description	Estimated Time
Site Approval for manufacturing activities (Type C)	Municipality Approval for the Commercial Registration address or the site in which the Activity will be practiced	3 Days

Fee Details (if any)

10 BD

License Information

General Conditions:
1. Size of shop/premises must be sufficient for the activity
2. Businesses may not carry out the activity outside the boundaries of the shop/ premises
3. It is prohibited to display or store any items or equipment outside the shop / premises boundary without prior approval from the Municipality. In the event of non-compliance, the Ministry of Municipality Affairs has the right to take necessary action.
4. Maintain cleanliness of the site
5. Comply with the parking space regulations as per the Construction Regulatory Requirements

Activity Specific Conditions:
1. The commercial registration for this activity can be registered on Industrial streets/ areas only

Note: Uploading pictures of the site/shop may expedite the process of obtaining approval

Required Documents

- Lease agreement (after obtaining the necessary approvals from other licensing entities)
- Shop photos

Other Documents

- Cabinet's Decision (93) of the year 2023 regarding the Regulatory Requirements of Construction for various areas in the Kingdom of Bahrain

Manufacturing

ISIC4	Business activity
26-2	Manufacture of computer, electronic and optical products - Factory

Description

This activity includes the manufacture of computers, computer peripherals, communications equipment, and similar electronic products, as well as the manufacture of components for such products. Production processes of this division are characterized by the design and use of integrated circuits and the application of highly specialized miniaturization technologies.The activity also contains the manufacture of consumer electronics, measuring, testing, navigating, and control equipment, watches and clocks, irradiation, electromedical and electrotherapeutic equipment, optical instruments and equipment, and the manufacture of magnetic and optical media.

Business Requirements

Age

18 and above

Allowed for Nationalities

Bahraini 100%	GCC 100%
American 100%	Singaporean 100%
Icelander 100%	Liechtenstein er 100%
Norwegian 100%	Swiss 100%

Foreign Allowed up to 100%

Legal Type

It is allowed to register according to the legal forms mentioned below

Allowed for Individual Commercial Registration (ICR) : Yes

Allowed for Company Commercial Registration (CCR) : Yes

- Bahrain Shareholding Company (Public)
- With Limited Liability Company
- Branch of a Foreign Company
- Bahrain Shareholding Company (Closed)
- Partnership Company
- Simple Commandite Company
- Commandite By Shares Company
- Non Profit Company

Required Step of Licenses and Approvals

Ministry / Directorate	License / Approval Requirements	Approval Type
Directorate Of Industrial Developments	Approval by Directorate of Industrial Developments(Pre)	Pre
Supreme Council for Environment	Environmental Approval for Manufacture of computer, electronic and optical products - Factory activity	Post
Municipality Affairs	Site Approval for manufacturing activities (Type C)	Post
Directorate Of Industrial Developments	Notification Only	Final Site Inspection

Directorate Of Industrial Developments (Pre) (26-2)

Approval Name	Description	Estimated Time
Approval by Directorate of Industrial Developments(Pre)	This is a preliminary approval given by the Directorate of Industrial Development to ensure that the applicant has selected the appropriate activity based on the information provided	5 Days

Fee Details (if any)

There is no Estimated Processing Time (Days) in this license.

License Information

Applicants would have to provide through the system the following information:

General Information:

- Total Amount Invested in the Project (This should include value of machinery and fixed assets)
- Estimated number of workforce (Bahraini and Non-Bahraini)
- Expected utility consumption of electricity, water and natural gas
- Total area of the project

Activity Information:

- Product Information:

1) The products to be manufactured by choosing the appropriate HS codes (HS code list can be downloaded from the application if needed).
2) Product name.
3) Expected production date (The expected date on which the factory will start producing the product).

4) The maximum installed capacity and the expected production capacity per year based on the fixed HS code's unit of measure.

• Main raw materials: The main raw materials to be used in production and its source

• Main Machinery and Equipment: The main machinery and equipment to be used in production and its information.

• Manufacturing process: Brief on the manufacturing process explaining how materials are transformed from one state to another until reaching the final product, mentioning the types of materials used, the operations performed, and the machinery/equipment used in each step (if any) for each product.

Required Documents

•Photos of machinery/ equipment to be used
•Photos of products to be manufactured

Other Documents

•Law No. (81) of 2006 with respect to approving The Common Industrial Law of the GCC
•Ministerial Resolution No. (11) of 2009
•Operational requirements for the directorate of industrial developments activities

Supreme Council for Environment (Post) (26-2)

Approval Name	Description	Estimated Time
Environmental Approval for Manufacture of computer, electronic and optical products - Factory activity	This service aims to assess the environmental impact and licensing of development, industrial and production projects and activities, in accordance with the standards of protecting the environment and its natural resources	10 Days

Fee Details (if any)

- 30 Bahraini Dinars or 200 Bahraini Dinars for the fast-track procedure (when the data requested within the EA-2 form is sufficient without the need for additional studies)
- 4000 Bahraini Dinars or 6000 Bahraini Dinars for the fast track procedure (when it is necessary to submit an environmental impact assessment study for the project), with an additional payment of 100 Bahraini Dinars when it is necessary to submit a proposal for the scope of the study before submitting it or 500 Bahraini Dinars for a fast track procedure when the proposed scope of the study is being submitted before the study

License Information

To check the requirements for this approval, kindly download the detailed requirements sheet from the other downloadable documents section, which includes the following requirements:

- Building layout engineering and equipment requirements
- Workplace requirements
- Storage requirements
- Material management requirements
- Waste Management Requirements

• Documents and reporting requirements
• General requirements

Other Documents

•Annex to the Minister of Housing, Municipalities and Environment order regarding the project's environmental assessment
•Law No. (2) of 2021 regarding the environmental standards of air as decided by the Chairman of the Supreme Council for Environment
•Law No. (3) of 2021 regarding the environmental standards of water as decided by the Chairman of the Supreme Council for the Environment
•Law No. (54) of 2014 regarding the approval of the unified law regarding substances that deplete the ozone layer for the GCC countries
•Law No. (7) of 2022 regarding the environment
•Law No. (7) of 2022 regarding the environment
•Ministerial Order No. (1) of 1998 regarding Project's Environmental Assessment
•Ministerial Order No. (10) of 2006 regarding the installation of devices for on-line monitoring of atmospheric air pollutants
•Ministerial Order No. (11) of 2019 regarding the issue of technical specification of plastic products
•Ministerial Order No. (3) of 2005 regarding environmental requirements and standards in workplaces, especially regarding workers' exposure to heat and noise, and the provision of tools and protective clothing such as gloves, glasses, face masks and earplugs, with a commitment to use them during work
•Ministerial Order No. (3) of 2006 regarding the management of hazardous waste
•Ministerial Order No. (4) of 2005 regarding the management of used oils
•Ministerial Order No. (4) of 2006 regarding the management of hazardous chemicals
•Ministerial Order No. (4) of 2021 regarding the fees of the licenses and services provided by the Supreme Council for Environment
•Ministerial Order No. (6) of 2013 amending order No. (4) of 2006 regarding the management of hazardous chemicals
•Ministerial Order No. (7) of 2002 regarding the control importation and use of prohibited and severely restricted chemicals, and not to import any chemical compound except after obtaining approvals of all concerned authorities, including the executive body of the Supreme Council for Environment
•Ministerial Order No. (7) of 2013 amending order No. (3) of 2006 regarding the management of hazardous waste
•Ministerial Order No. 4 of 2014 regarding the management of the environmental consulting offices operations in the Kingdom of Bahrain
•Order No. (2) of 2020 determining the categories of fees for licensing refrigeration media, refrigeration units and air conditioning units as decided by the Chairman of the Supreme Council for the Environment
•Requirements for business activities
•law No. (1) of 2020 regarding the management of refrigeration media, refrigeration units and air conditioning units as decided by the Chairman of the Supreme Council for

the Environment
•law No. (2) of 2019 regarding the ban on the import of plastic waste of all kinds as decided by the Chairman of the Supreme Council for the Environment

Municipality Affairs (Post) (26-2)

Approval Name	Description	Estimated Time
Site Approval for manufacturing activities (Type C)	Municipality Approval for the Commercial Registration address or the site in which the Activity will be practiced	3 Days

Fee Details (if any)

10 BD

License Information

General Conditions:
1. Size of shop/premises must be sufficient for the activity
2. Businesses may not carry out the activity outside the boundaries of the shop/ premises
3. It is prohibited to display or store any items or equipment outside the shop / premises boundary without prior approval from the Municipality. In the event of non-compliance, the Ministry of Municipality Affairs has the right to take necessary action.
4. Maintain cleanliness of the site
5. Comply with the parking space regulations as per the Construction Regulatory Requirements

Activity Specific Conditions:
1. The commercial registration for this activity can be registered on Industrial streets/ areas only

Note: Uploading pictures of the site/shop may expedite the process of obtaining approval

Required Documents

- Lease agreement (after obtaining the necessary approvals from other licensing entities)
- Shop photos

Other Documents

- Cabinet's Decision (93) of the year 2023 regarding the Regulatory Requirements of Construction for various areas in the Kingdom of Bahrain

Directorate Of Industrial Developments (Final Site Inspection) (26-2)

Approval Name	Description	Estimated Time
Notification Only	Notification to the Industrial development directorate on obtaining a commercial registration with the license to practice the activity.	There is no License Information in this license. Days

Fee Details (if any)

There is no Estimated Processing Time (Days) in this license.

License Information

The industrial license is automatically issued by the Industrial development Directorate after obtaining the approval of other licensing/approving entities.

Please ensure that the actual production date does no exceed the expected production date.

If actual production will start on or before the expected production date please apply for a “New Industrial Registration” by following the steps below:

1- Visit the Industrial services system (www.industry.bh).
2- Select “Industrial Registration”.
3- Select “New Registration” application.

In the event that the actual production date will exceed the expected production date an “Extension of expected production date” application must be submitted by following the steps below:

1- Visit the Industrial services system (www.industry.bh).

2- Select “Industrial License”.
3- Select “Extension of expected production date” application.

Please note that failure to do so within 60 days from the expected production date will result in a violation to be added.

Other Documents

- Law No. (81) of 2006 with respect to approving The Common Industrial Law of the GCC
- Ministerial Resolution No. (11) of 2009 with respect to promulgating Implementing Regulation
- Operational requirements for the directorate of industrial developments activities

Manufacturing

ISIC4	Business activity
271	Manufacture of electric motors, generators, transformers and electricity distribution and control apparatus

Description

This activity includes the manufacture of power, distribution and specialty transformers; electric motors, generators and motor generator sets; switch-gear and switchboard apparatus; relays and industrial controls. The electrical equipment manufactured in this class is for distribution level voltages.

Examples include:

- manufacture of distribution transformers, electric
- manufacture of arc-welding transformers
- manufacture of fluorescent ballasts (i.e. transformers)
- manufacture of substation transformers for electric power distribution
- manufacture of transmission and distribution voltage regulators
- manufacture of electric motors (except internal combustion engine starting motors)
- manufacture of power generators (except battery charging alternators for internal combustion engines)
- manufacture of motor generator sets (except turbine generator set units)
- manufacture of prime mover generator sets
- rewinding of armatures on a factory basis
- manufacture of power circuit breakers
- manufacture of surge suppressors (for distribution level voltage)
- manufacture of control panels for electric power distribution
- manufacture of electrical relays
- manufacture of duct for electrical switchboard apparatus
- manufacture of electric fuses
- manufacture of power switching equipment
- manufacture of electric power switches (except push-button, snap, solenoid, tumbler)

Business Requirements

Age

18 and above

Allowed for Nationalities

Bahraini 100%		GCC 100%	
American 100%		Singaporean 100%	
Icelander 100%		Liechtenstein er 100%	
Norwegian 100%		Swiss 100%	

Foreign Allowed up to 100%

Legal Type

It is allowed to register according to the legal forms mentioned below

Allowed for Individual Commercial Registration (ICR) : Yes

Allowed for Company Commercial Registration (CCR) : Yes

- Bahrain Shareholding Company (Public)
- With Limited Liability Company
- Branch of a Foreign Company
- Bahrain Shareholding Company (Closed)
- Partnership Company
- Simple Commandite Company
- Commandite By Shares Company
- Non Profit Company

Required Step of Licenses and Approvals

Ministry / Directorate	License / Approval Requirements	Approval Type
Directorate Of Industrial Developments	Approval by Directorate of Industrial	Pre

	Developments(Pre)	
Municipality Affairs	Site Approval for manufacturing activities (Type C)	Post
Supreme Council for Environment	Environmental Approval for Manufacture of electric motors, generators, transformers and electricity distribution and control	Post
Directorate Of Industrial Developments	Notification Only	Final Site Inspection

Directorate Of Industrial Developments (Pre) (271)

Approval Name	Description	Estimated Time
Approval by Directorate of Industrial Developments(Pre)	This is a preliminary approval given by the Directorate of Industrial Development to ensure that the applicant has selected the appropriate activity based on the information provided	5 Days

Fee Details (if any)

There is no Estimated Processing Time (Days) in this license.

License Information

Applicants would have to provide through the system the following information:

General Information:

- Total Amount Invested in the Project (This should include value of machinery and fixed assets)
- Estimated number of workforce (Bahraini and Non-Bahraini)
- Expected utility consumption of electricity, water and natural gas
- Total area of the project

Activity Information:

- Product Information:

1) The products to be manufactured by choosing the appropriate HS codes (HS code list can be downloaded from the application if needed).
2) Product name.
3) Expected production date (The expected date on which the factory will start producing the product).

4) The maximum installed capacity and the expected production capacity per year based on the fixed HS code's unit of measure.

• Main raw materials: The main raw materials to be used in production and its source

• Main Machinery and Equipment: The main machinery and equipment to be used in production and its information.

• Manufacturing process: Brief on the manufacturing process explaining how materials are transformed from one state to another until reaching the final product, mentioning the types of materials used, the operations performed, and the machinery/equipment used in each step (if any) for each product.

Required Documents

•Photos of machinery/ equipment to be used
•Photos of products to be manufactured

Other Documents

•Law No. (81) of 2006 with respect to approving The Common Industrial Law of the GCC
•Ministerial Resolution No. (11) of 2009
•Operational requirements for the directorate of industrial developments activities

Municipality Affairs (Post) (271)

Approval Name	Description	Estimated Time
Site Approval for manufacturing activities (Type C)	Municipality Approval for the Commercial Registration address or the site in which the Activity will be practiced	3 Days

Fee Details (if any)

10 BD

License Information

General Conditions:
1. Size of shop/premises must be sufficient for the activity
2. Businesses may not carry out the activity outside the boundaries of the shop/ premises
3. It is prohibited to display or store any items or equipment outside the shop / premises boundary without prior approval from the Municipality. In the event of non-compliance, the Ministry of Municipality Affairs has the right to take necessary action.
4. Maintain cleanliness of the site
5. Comply with the parking space regulations as per the Construction Regulatory Requirements

Activity Specific Conditions:
1. The commercial registration for this activity can be registered on Industrial streets/ areas only

Note: Uploading pictures of the site/shop may expedite the process of obtaining approval

Required Documents

- Lease agreement (after obtaining the necessary approvals from other licensing entities)
- Shop photos

Other Documents

- Cabinet's Decision (93) of the year 2023 regarding the Regulatory Requirements of Construction for various areas in the Kingdom of Bahrain

Supreme Council for Environment (Post) (271)

Approval Name	Description	Estimated Time
Environmental Approval for Manufacture of electric motors, generators, transformers and electricity distribution and control	This service aims to assess the environmental impact and licensing of development, industrial and production projects and activities, in accordance with the standards of protecting the environment and its natural resources	10 Days

Fee Details (if any)

- 30 Bahraini Dinars or 200 Bahraini Dinars for the fast-track procedure (when the data requested within the EA-2 form is sufficient without the need for additional studies)
- 4000 Bahraini Dinars or 6000 Bahraini Dinars for the fast track procedure (when it is necessary to submit an environmental impact assessment study for the project), with an additional payment of 100 Bahraini Dinars when it is necessary to submit a proposal for the scope of the study before submitting it or 500 Bahraini Dinars for a fast track procedure when the proposed scope of the study is being submitted before the study

License Information

To check the requirements for this approval, kindly download the detailed requirements sheet from the other downloadable documents section, which includes the following requirements:

- Building layout engineering and equipment requirements
- Workplace requirements
- Storage requirements
- Material management requirements
- Waste Management Requirements

- Documents and reporting requirements
- General requirements

Other Documents

- Annex to the Minister of Housing, Municipalities and Environment order regarding the project's environmental assessment
- Law No. (2) of 2021 regarding the environmental standards of air as decided by the Chairman of the Supreme Council for Environment
- Law No. (3) of 2021 regarding the environmental standards of water as decided by the Chairman of the Supreme Council for the Environment
- Law No. (54) of 2014 regarding the approval of the unified law regarding substances that deplete the ozone layer for the GCC countries
- Law No. (7) of 2022 regarding the environment
- Ministerial Order No. (1) of 1998 regarding Project's Environmental Assessment
- Ministerial Order No. (10) of 2006 regarding the installation of devices for on-line monitoring of atmospheric air pollutants
- Ministerial Order No. (11) of 2019 regarding the issue of technical specification of plastic products
- Ministerial Order No. (3) of 2005 regarding environmental requirements and standards in workplaces, especially regarding workers' exposure to heat and noise, and the provision of tools and protective clothing such as gloves, glasses, face masks and earplugs, with a commitment to use them during work
- Ministerial Order No. (3) of 2006 regarding the management of hazardous waste
- Ministerial Order No. (4) of 2005 regarding the management of used oils
- Ministerial Order No. (4) of 2006 regarding the management of hazardous chemicals
- Ministerial Order No. (4) of 2021 regarding the fees of the licenses and services provided by the Supreme Council for Environment
- Ministerial Order No. (6) of 2013 amending order No. (4) of 2006 regarding the management of hazardous chemicals
- Ministerial Order No. (7) of 2002 regarding the control importation and use of prohibited and severely restricted chemicals, and not to import any chemical compound except after obtaining approvals of all concerned authorities, including the executive body of the Supreme Council for Environment
- Ministerial Order No. (7) of 2013 amending order No. (3) of 2006 regarding the management of hazardous waste
- Ministerial Order No. 4 of 2014 regarding the management of the environmental consulting offices operations in the Kingdom of Bahrain
- Order No. (2) of 2020 determining the categories of fees for licensing refrigeration media, refrigeration units and air conditioning units as decided by the Chairman of the Supreme Council for the Environment
- Requirements for business activities
- law No. (1) of 2020 regarding the management of refrigeration media, refrigeration units and air conditioning units as decided by the Chairman of the Supreme Council for the Environment

•law No. (2) of 2019 regarding the ban on the import of plastic waste of all kinds as decided by the Chairman of the Supreme Council for the Environment

Directorate Of Industrial Developments (Final Site Inspection) (271)

Approval Name	Description	Estimated Time
Notification Only	Notification to the Industrial development directorate on obtaining a commercial registration with the license to practice the activity.	There is no License Information in this license. Days

Fee Details (if any)

There is no Estimated Processing Time (Days) in this license.

License Information

The industrial license is automatically issued by the Industrial development Directorate after obtaining the approval of other licensing/approving entities.

Please ensure that the actual production date does no exceed the expected production date.

If actual production will start on or before the expected production date please apply for a “New Industrial Registration” by following the steps below:

1- Visit the Industrial services system (www.industry.bh).
2- Select “Industrial Registration”.
3- Select “New Registration” application.

In the event that the actual production date will exceed the expected production date an “Extension of expected production date” application must be submitted by following the steps below:

1- Visit the Industrial services system (www.industry.bh).

2- Select “Industrial License”.
3- Select “Extension of expected production date” application.

Please note that failure to do so within 60 days from the expected production date will result in a violation to be added.

Other Documents

- Law No. (81) of 2006 with respect to approving The Common Industrial Law of the GCC
- Ministerial Resolution No. (11) of 2009 with respect to promulgating Implementing Regulation
- Operational requirements for the directorate of industrial developments activities

Manufacturing

ISIC4	Business activity
272	Manufacture of batteries and accumulators

Description

This activity includes the manufacture of non-rechargeable and rechargeable batteries, such as:
- manufacture of primary cells and primary batteries
· cells containing manganese dioxide, mercuric dioxide, silver oxide etc.
- manufacture of electric accumulators, including parts thereof:
· separators, containers, covers
- manufacture of lead acid batteries
- manufacture of NiCad batteries
- manufacture of NiMH batteries
- manufacture of lithium batteries
- manufacture of dry cell batteries
- manufacture of wet cell batteries

Business Requirements

Age

18 and above

Allowed for Nationalities

Bahraini 100%		GCC 100%	
American 100%		Singaporean 100%	
Icelander 100%		Liechtenstein er 100%	
Norwegian 100%		Swiss 100%	

Foreign Allowed up to 100%

Legal Type

It is allowed to register according to the legal forms mentioned below

Allowed for Individual Commercial Registration (ICR) : Yes

Allowed for Company Commercial Registration (CCR) : Yes

- Bahrain Shareholding Company (Public)
- With Limited Liability Company
- Branch of a Foreign Company
- Bahrain Shareholding Company (Closed)
- Partnership Company
- Simple Commandite Company
- Commandite By Shares Company
- Non Profit Company

Required Step of Licenses and Approvals

Ministry / Directorate	License / Approval Requirements	Approval Type
Directorate Of Industrial Developments	Approval by Directorate of Industrial	Pre

	Developments(Pre)	
Supreme Council for Environment	Environmental Approval for Manufacture of batteries and accumulators activity	Post
Municipality Affairs	Site Approval for manufacturing activities (Type C)	Post
Directorate Of Industrial Developments	Notification Only	Final Site Inspection

Directorate Of Industrial Developments (Pre) (272)

Approval Name	Description	Estimated Time
Approval by Directorate of Industrial Developments(Pre)	This is a preliminary approval given by the Directorate of Industrial Development to ensure that the applicant has selected the appropriate activity based on the information provided	5 Days

Fee Details (if any)

There is no Estimated Processing Time (Days) in this license.

License Information

Applicants would have to provide through the system the following information:

General Information:

- Total Amount Invested in the Project (This should include value of machinery and fixed assets)
- Estimated number of workforce (Bahraini and Non-Bahraini)
- Expected utility consumption of electricity, water and natural gas
- Total area of the project

Activity Information:

- Product Information:

1) The products to be manufactured by choosing the appropriate HS codes (HS code list can be downloaded from the application if needed).
2) Product name.
3) Expected production date (The expected date on which the factory will start producing the product).

4) The maximum installed capacity and the expected production capacity per year based on the fixed HS code's unit of measure.

• Main raw materials: The main raw materials to be used in production and its source

• Main Machinery and Equipment: The main machinery and equipment to be used in production and its information.

• Manufacturing process: Brief on the manufacturing process explaining how materials are transformed from one state to another until reaching the final product, mentioning the types of materials used, the operations performed, and the machinery/equipment used in each step (if any) for each product.

Required Documents

•Photos of machinery/ equipment to be used
•Photos of products to be manufactured

Other Documents

•Law No. (81) of 2006 with respect to approving The Common Industrial Law of the GCC
•Ministerial Resolution No. (11) of 2009
•Operational requirements for the directorate of industrial developments activities

Supreme Council for Environment (Post) (272)

Approval Name	Description	Estimated Time
Environmental Approval for Manufacture of batteries and accumulators activity	This service aims to assess the environmental impact and licensing of development, industrial and production projects and activities, in accordance with the standards of protecting the environment and its natural resources	10 Days

Fee Details (if any)

- 30 Bahraini Dinars or 200 Bahraini Dinars for the fast-track procedure (when the data requested within the EA-2 form is sufficient without the need for additional studies)
- 4000 Bahraini Dinars or 6000 Bahraini Dinars for the fast track procedure (when it is necessary to submit an environmental impact assessment study for the project), with an additional payment of 100 Bahraini Dinars when it is necessary to submit a proposal for the scope of the study before submitting it or 500 Bahraini Dinars for a fast track procedure when the proposed scope of the study is being submitted before the study

License Information

To check the requirements for this approval, kindly download the detailed requirements sheet from the other downloadable documents section, which includes the following requirements:

- Building layout engineering and equipment requirements
- Workplace requirements
- Storage requirements
- Material management requirements
- Waste Management Requirements

- Documents and reporting requirements
- General requirements

Required Documents

- Requirements for business activities

Other Documents

- Annex to the Minister of Housing, Municipalities and Environment order regarding the project's environmental assessment
- Law No. (2) of 2021 regarding the environmental standards of air as decided by the Chairman of the Supreme Council for Environment
- Law No. (3) of 2021 regarding the environmental standards of water as decided by the Chairman of the Supreme Council for the Environment
- Law No. (54) of 2014 regarding the approval of the unified law regarding substances that deplete the ozone layer for the GCC countries
- Law No. (7) of 2022 regarding the environment
- Ministerial Order No. (1) of 1998 regarding Project's Environmental Assessment
- Ministerial Order No. (10) of 2006 regarding the installation of devices for on-line monitoring of atmospheric air pollutants
- Ministerial Order No. (11) of 2019 regarding the issue of technical specification of plastic products
- Ministerial Order No. (3) of 2005 regarding environmental requirements and standards in workplaces, especially regarding workers' exposure to heat and noise, and the provision of tools and protective clothing such as gloves, glasses, face masks and earplugs, with a commitment to use them during work
- Ministerial Order No. (3) of 2006 regarding the management of hazardous waste
- Ministerial Order No. (4) of 2005 regarding the management of used oils
- Ministerial Order No. (4) of 2006 regarding the management of hazardous chemicals
- Ministerial Order No. (4) of 2021 regarding the fees of the licenses and services provided by the Supreme Council for Environment
- Ministerial Order No. (6) of 2013 amending order No. (4) of 2006 regarding the management of hazardous chemicals
- Ministerial Order No. (7) of 2002 regarding the control importation and use of prohibited and severely restricted chemicals, and not to import any chemical compound except after obtaining approvals of all concerned authorities, including the executive body of the Supreme Council for Environment
- Ministerial Order No. (7) of 2013 amending order No. (3) of 2006 regarding the management of hazardous waste
- Ministerial Order No. 4 of 2014 regarding the management of the environmental consulting offices operations in the Kingdom of Bahrain
- Order No. (2) of 2020 determining the categories of fees for licensing refrigeration

media, refrigeration units and air conditioning units as decided by the Chairman of the Supreme Council for the Environment
•law No. (1) of 2020 regarding the management of refrigeration media, refrigeration units and air conditioning units as decided by the Chairman of the Supreme Council for the Environment
•law No. (2) of 2019 regarding the ban on the import of plastic waste of all kinds as decided by the Chairman of the Supreme Council for the Environment

Municipality Affairs (Post) (272)

Approval Name	Description	Estimated Time
Site Approval for manufacturing activities (Type C)	Municipality Approval for the Commercial Registration address or the site in which the Activity will be practiced	3 Days

Fee Details (if any)

10 BD

License Information

General Conditions:
1. Size of shop/premises must be sufficient for the activity
2. Businesses may not carry out the activity outside the boundaries of the shop/ premises
3. It is prohibited to display or store any items or equipment outside the shop / premises boundary without prior approval from the Municipality. In the event of non-compliance, the Ministry of Municipality Affairs has the right to take necessary action.
4. Maintain cleanliness of the site
5. Comply with the parking space regulations as per the Construction Regulatory Requirements

Activity Specific Conditions:
1. The commercial registration for this activity can be registered on Industrial streets/ areas only

Note: Uploading pictures of the site/shop may expedite the process of obtaining approval

Required Documents

- Lease agreement (after obtaining the necessary approvals from other licensing entities)
- Shop photos

Other Documents

- Cabinet's Decision (93) of the year 2023 regarding the Regulatory Requirements of Construction for various areas in the Kingdom of Bahrain

Directorate Of Industrial Developments (Final Site Inspection) (272)

Approval Name	Description	Estimated Time
Notification Only	Notification to the Industrial development directorate on obtaining a commercial registration with the license to practice the activity.	There is no License Information in this license. Days

Fee Details (if any)

There is no Estimated Processing Time (Days) in this license.

License Information

The industrial license is automatically issued by the Industrial development Directorate after obtaining the approval of other licensing/approving entities.

Please ensure that the actual production date does no exceed the expected production date.

If actual production will start on or before the expected production date please apply for a “New Industrial Registration” by following the steps below:

1- Visit the Industrial services system (www.industry.bh).
2- Select “Industrial Registration”.
3- Select “New Registration” application.

In the event that the actual production date will exceed the expected production date an “Extension of expected production date” application must be submitted by following the steps below:

1- Visit the Industrial services system (www.industry.bh).

2- Select “Industrial License”.
3- Select “Extension of expected production date” application.

Please note that failure to do so within 60 days from the expected production date will result in a violation to be added.

Other Documents

- Law No. (81) of 2006 with respect to approving The Common Industrial Law of the GCC
- Ministerial Resolution No. (11) of 2009 with respect to promulgating Implementing Regulation
- Operational requirements for the directorate of industrial developments activities

Manufacturing

ISIC4	Business activity
273	Manufacture of wiring and wiring devices

Description

This activity includes manufacture of fiber optic cable for data transmission or live transmission of images as well as manufacture of insulated wire and cable, made of steel, copper, aluminium.

Business Requirements

Age

18 and above

Allowed for Nationalities

Bahraini 100%	GCC 100%
American 100%	Singaporean 100%
Icelander 100%	Liechtenstein er 100%
Norwegian 100%	Swiss 100%

Foreign Allowed up to 100%

Legal Type

It is allowed to register according to the legal forms mentioned below

Allowed for Individual Commercial Registration (ICR) : Yes

Allowed for Company Commercial Registration (CCR) : Yes

- Bahrain Shareholding Company (Public)
- With Limited Liability Company
- Branch of a Foreign Company
- Bahrain Shareholding Company (Closed)
- Partnership Company
- Simple Commandite Company
- Commandite By Shares Company
- Non Profit Company

Required Step of Licenses and Approvals

Ministry / Directorate	License / Approval Requirements	Approval Type
Directorate Of Industrial Developments	Approval by Directorate of Industrial Developments(Pre)	Pre
Municipality Affairs	Site Approval for manufacturing activities (Type C)	Post
Supreme Council for Environment	Environmental Approval for Manufacture of wiring and wiring devices activity	Post
Directorate Of Industrial Developments	Notification Only	Final Site Inspection

Directorate Of Industrial Developments (Pre) (273)

Approval Name	Description	Estimated Time
Approval by Directorate of Industrial Developments(Pre)	This is a preliminary approval given by the Directorate of Industrial Development to ensure that the applicant has selected the appropriate activity based on the information provided	5 Days

Fee Details (if any)

There is no Estimated Processing Time (Days) in this license.

License Information

Applicants would have to provide through the system the following information:

General Information:

- Total Amount Invested in the Project (This should include value of machinery and fixed assets)
- Estimated number of workforce (Bahraini and Non-Bahraini)
- Expected utility consumption of electricity, water and natural gas
- Total area of the project

Activity Information:

- Product Information:

1) The products to be manufactured by choosing the appropriate HS codes (HS code list can be downloaded from the application if needed).
2) Product name.
3) Expected production date (The expected date on which the factory will start producing the product).

4) The maximum installed capacity and the expected production capacity per year based on the fixed HS code's unit of measure.

• Main raw materials: The main raw materials to be used in production and its source

• Main Machinery and Equipment: The main machinery and equipment to be used in production and its information.

• Manufacturing process: Brief on the manufacturing process explaining how materials are transformed from one state to another until reaching the final product, mentioning the types of materials used, the operations performed, and the machinery/equipment used in each step (if any) for each product.

Required Documents

•Photos of machinery/ equipment to be used
•Photos of products to be manufactured

Other Documents

•Law No. (81) of 2006 with respect to approving The Common Industrial Law of the GCC
•Ministerial Resolution No. (11) of 2009
•Operational requirements for the directorate of industrial developments activities

Municipality Affairs (Post) (273)

Approval Name	Description	Estimated Time
Site Approval for manufacturing activities (Type C)	Municipality Approval for the Commercial Registration address or the site in which the Activity will be practiced	3 Days

Fee Details (if any)

10 BD

License Information

General Conditions:
1. Size of shop/premises must be sufficient for the activity
2. Businesses may not carry out the activity outside the boundaries of the shop/ premises
3. It is prohibited to display or store any items or equipment outside the shop / premises boundary without prior approval from the Municipality. In the event of non-compliance, the Ministry of Municipality Affairs has the right to take necessary action.
4. Maintain cleanliness of the site
5. Comply with the parking space regulations as per the Construction Regulatory Requirements

Activity Specific Conditions:
1. The commercial registration for this activity can be registered on Industrial streets/ areas only

Note: Uploading pictures of the site/shop may expedite the process of obtaining approval

Required Documents

- Lease agreement (after obtaining the necessary approvals from other licensing entities)
- Shop photos

Other Documents

- Cabinet's Decision (93) of the year 2023 regarding the Regulatory Requirements of Construction for various areas in the Kingdom of Bahrain

Supreme Council for Environment (Post) (273)

Approval Name	Description	Estimated Time
Environmental Approval for Manufacture of wiring and wiring devices activity	This service aims to assess the environmental impact and licensing of development, industrial and production projects and activities, in accordance with the standards of protecting the environment and its natural resources	10 Days

Fee Details (if any)

- 30 Bahraini Dinars or 200 Bahraini Dinars for the fast-track procedure (when the data requested within the EA-2 form is sufficient without the need for additional studies)
- 4000 Bahraini Dinars or 6000 Bahraini Dinars for the fast track procedure (when it is necessary to submit an environmental impact assessment study for the project), with an additional payment of 100 Bahraini Dinars when it is necessary to submit a proposal for the scope of the study before submitting it or 500 Bahraini Dinars for a fast track procedure when the proposed scope of the study is being submitted before the study

License Information

To check the requirements for this approval, kindly download the detailed requirements sheet from the other downloadable documents section, which includes the following requirements:

- Building layout engineering and equipment requirements
- Workplace requirements
- Storage requirements
- Material management requirements
- Waste Management Requirements

- Documents and reporting requirements
- General requirements

Other Documents

- Annex to the Minister of Housing, Municipalities and Environment order regarding the project's environmental assessment
- Law No. (2) of 2021 regarding the environmental standards of air as decided by the Chairman of the Supreme Council for Environment
- Law No. (3) of 2021 regarding the environmental standards of water as decided by the Chairman of the Supreme Council for the Environment
- Law No. (54) of 2014 regarding the approval of the unified law regarding substances that deplete the ozone layer for the GCC countries
- Law No. (7) of 2022 regarding the environment
- Ministerial Order No. (1) of 1998 regarding Project's Environmental Assessment
- Ministerial Order No. (10) of 2006 regarding the installation of devices for on-line monitoring of atmospheric air pollutants
- Ministerial Order No. (11) of 2019 regarding the issue of technical specification of plastic products
- Ministerial Order No. (3) of 2005 regarding environmental requirements and standards in workplaces, especially regarding workers' exposure to heat and noise, and the provision of tools and protective clothing such as gloves, glasses, face masks and earplugs, with a commitment to use them during work
- Ministerial Order No. (3) of 2006 regarding the management of hazardous waste
- Ministerial Order No. (4) of 2005 regarding the management of used oils
- Ministerial Order No. (4) of 2006 regarding the management of hazardous chemicals
- Ministerial Order No. (4) of 2021 regarding the fees of the licenses and services provided by the Supreme Council for Environment
- Ministerial Order No. (6) of 2013 amending order No. (4) of 2006 regarding the management of hazardous chemicals
- Ministerial Order No. (7) of 2002 regarding the control importation and use of prohibited and severely restricted chemicals, and not to import any chemical compound except after obtaining approvals of all concerned authorities, including the executive body of the Supreme Council for Environment
- Ministerial Order No. (7) of 2013 amending order No. (3) of 2006 regarding the management of hazardous waste
- Ministerial Order No. 4 of 2014 regarding the management of the environmental consulting offices operations in the Kingdom of Bahrain
- Order No. (2) of 2020 determining the categories of fees for licensing refrigeration media, refrigeration units and air conditioning units as decided by the Chairman of the Supreme Council for the Environment
- Requirements for business activities
- law No. (1) of 2020 regarding the management of refrigeration media, refrigeration units and air conditioning units as decided by the Chairman of the Supreme Council for the Environment

•law No. (2) of 2019 regarding the ban on the import of plastic waste of all kinds as decided by the Chairman of the Supreme Council for the Environment

Directorate Of Industrial Developments (Final Site Inspection) (273)

Approval Name	Description	Estimated Time
Notification Only	Notification to the Industrial development directorate on obtaining a commercial registration with the license to practice the activity.	There is no License Information in this license. Days

Fee Details (if any)

There is no Estimated Processing Time (Days) in this license.

License Information

The industrial license is automatically issued by the Industrial development Directorate after obtaining the approval of other licensing/approving entities.

Please ensure that the actual production date does no exceed the expected production date.

If actual production will start on or before the expected production date please apply for a “New Industrial Registration” by following the steps below:

1- Visit the Industrial services system (www.industry.bh).
2- Select “Industrial Registration”.
3- Select “New Registration” application.

In the event that the actual production date will exceed the expected production date an “Extension of expected production date” application must be submitted by following the steps below:

1- Visit the Industrial services system (www.industry.bh).

2- Select “Industrial License”.
3- Select “Extension of expected production date” application.

Please note that failure to do so within 60 days from the expected production date will result in a violation to be added.

Other Documents

- Law No. (81) of 2006 with respect to approving The Common Industrial Law of the GCC
- Ministerial Resolution No. (11) of 2009 with respect to promulgating Implementing Regulation
- Operational requirements for the directorate of industrial developments activities

Manufacturing

ISIC4	Business activity
2733	Manufacture of wiring devices

Description

This activity includes the manufacture of current-carrying and non current-carrying wiring devices for electrical circuits regardless of material, such as:
- manufacture of bus bars, electrical conductors (except switchgear-type)
- manufacture of GFCI (ground fault circuit interrupters)
- manufacture of lamp holders
- manufacture of lightning arrestors and coils
- manufacture of switches for electrical wiring (e.g. pressure, pushbutton, snap, tumbler switches)
- manufacture of electrical outlets and sockets
- manufacture of boxes for electrical wiring (e.g. junction, outlet, switch boxes)
- manufacture of electrical conduit and fitting
- manufacture of transmission pole and line hardware
- manufacture of plastic non current-carrying wiring devices including plastic junction boxes, face plates, and similar, plastic pole line fittings

Business Requirements

Age

18 and above

Allowed for Nationalities

Bahraini 100%		GCC 100%	
American 100%		Singaporean 100%	
Icelander 100%		Liechtenstein er 100%	
Norwegian 100%		Swiss 100%	

Foreign Allowed up to 100%

Legal Type

It is allowed to register according to the legal forms mentioned below

Allowed for Individual Commercial Registration (ICR) : Yes

Allowed for Company Commercial Registration (CCR) : Yes

- Bahrain Shareholding Company (Public)
- With Limited Liability Company
- Branch of a Foreign Company
- Bahrain Shareholding Company (Closed)
- Partnership Company
- Simple Commandite Company
- Commandite By Shares Company
- Non Profit Company

Required Step of Licenses and Approvals

Ministry / Directorate	License / Approval Requirements	Approval Type
Directorate Of Industrial Developments	Approval by Directorate of Industrial	Pre

	Developments(Pre)	
Supreme Council for Environment	Environmental Approval for Manufacture of wiring devices activity	Post
Municipality Affairs	Site Approval for manufacturing activities (Type C)	Post
Directorate Of Industrial Developments	Notification Only	Final Site Inspection

Directorate Of Industrial Developments (Pre) (2733)

Approval Name	Description	Estimated Time
Approval by Directorate of Industrial Developments(Pre)	This is a preliminary approval given by the Directorate of Industrial Development to ensure that the applicant has selected the appropriate activity based on the information provided	5 Days

Fee Details (if any)

There is no Estimated Processing Time (Days) in this license.

License Information

Applicants would have to provide through the system the following information:

General Information:

- Total Amount Invested in the Project (This should include value of machinery and fixed assets)
- Estimated number of workforce (Bahraini and Non-Bahraini)
- Expected utility consumption of electricity, water and natural gas
- Total area of the project

Activity Information:

- Product Information:

1) The products to be manufactured by choosing the appropriate HS codes (HS code list can be downloaded from the application if needed).
2) Product name.
3) Expected production date (The expected date on which the factory will start producing the product).

4) The maximum installed capacity and the expected production capacity per year based on the fixed HS code's unit of measure.

• Main raw materials: The main raw materials to be used in production and its source

• Main Machinery and Equipment: The main machinery and equipment to be used in production and its information.

• Manufacturing process: Brief on the manufacturing process explaining how materials are transformed from one state to another until reaching the final product, mentioning the types of materials used, the operations performed, and the machinery/equipment used in each step (if any) for each product.

Required Documents

•Photos of machinery/ equipment to be used
•Photos of products to be manufactured

Other Documents

•Law No. (81) of 2006 with respect to approving The Common Industrial Law of the GCC
•Ministerial Resolution No. (11) of 2009
•Operational requirements for the directorate of industrial developments activities

Supreme Council for Environment (Post) (2733)

Approval Name	Description	Estimated Time
Environmental Approval for Manufacture of wiring devices activity	This service aims to assess the environmental impact and licensing of development, industrial and production projects and activities, in accordance with the standards of protecting the environment and its natural resources	10 Days

Fee Details (if any)

- 30 Bahraini Dinars or 200 Bahraini Dinars for the fast-track procedure (when the data requested within the EA-2 form is sufficient without the need for additional studies)
- 4000 Bahraini Dinars or 6000 Bahraini Dinars for the fast track procedure (when it is necessary to submit an environmental impact assessment study for the project), with an additional payment of 100 Bahraini Dinars when it is necessary to submit a proposal for the scope of the study before submitting it or 500 Bahraini Dinars for a fast track procedure when the proposed scope of the study is being submitted before the study

License Information

To check the requirements for this approval, kindly download the detailed requirements sheet from the other downloadable documents section, which includes the following requirements:

- Building layout engineering and equipment requirements
- Workplace requirements
- Storage requirements
- Material management requirements
- Waste Management Requirements

• Documents and reporting requirements
• General requirements

Other Documents

•Annex to the Minister of Housing, Municipalities and Environment order regarding the project's environmental assessment
•Law No. (2) of 2021 regarding the environmental standards of air as decided by the Chairman of the Supreme Council for Environment
•Law No. (3) of 2021 regarding the environmental standards of water as decided by the Chairman of the Supreme Council for the Environment
•Law No. (54) of 2014 regarding the approval of the unified law regarding substances that deplete the ozone layer for the GCC countries
•Law No. (7) of 2022 regarding the environment
•Ministerial Order No. (1) of 1998 regarding Project's Environmental Assessment
•Ministerial Order No. (10) of 2006 regarding the installation of devices for on-line monitoring of atmospheric air pollutants
•Ministerial Order No. (11) of 2019 regarding the issue of technical specification of plastic products
•Ministerial Order No. (3) of 2005 regarding environmental requirements and standards in workplaces, especially regarding workers' exposure to heat and noise, and the provision of tools and protective clothing such as gloves, glasses, face masks and earplugs, with a commitment to use them during work
•Ministerial Order No. (3) of 2006 regarding the management of hazardous waste
•Ministerial Order No. (4) of 2005 regarding the management of used oils
•Ministerial Order No. (4) of 2006 regarding the management of hazardous chemicals
•Ministerial Order No. (4) of 2021 regarding the fees of the licenses and services provided by the Supreme Council for Environment
•Ministerial Order No. (4) of 2021 regarding the fees of the licenses and services provided by the Supreme Council for Environment
•Ministerial Order No. (6) of 2013 amending order No. (4) of 2006 regarding the management of hazardous chemicals
•Ministerial Order No. (7) of 2002 regarding the control importation and use of prohibited and severely restricted chemicals, and not to import any chemical compound except after obtaining approvals of all concerned authorities, including the executive body of the Supreme Council for Environment
•Ministerial Order No. (7) of 2013 amending order No. (3) of 2006 regarding the management of hazardous waste
•Ministerial Order No. 4 of 2014 regarding the management of the environmental consulting offices operations in the Kingdom of Bahrain
•Order No. (2) of 2020 determining the categories of fees for licensing refrigeration media, refrigeration units and air conditioning units as decided by the Chairman of the Supreme Council for the Environment
•Requirements for business activities
•law No. (1) of 2020 regarding the management of refrigeration media, refrigeration

units and air conditioning units as decided by the Chairman of the Supreme Council for the Environment
•law No. (2) of 2019 regarding the ban on the import of plastic waste of all kinds as decided by the Chairman of the Supreme Council for the Environment

Municipality Affairs (Post) (2733)

Approval Name	Description	Estimated Time
Site Approval for manufacturing activities (Type C)	Municipality Approval for the Commercial Registration address or the site in which the Activity will be practiced	3 Days

Fee Details (if any)

10 BD

License Information

General Conditions:
1. Size of shop/premises must be sufficient for the activity
2. Businesses may not carry out the activity outside the boundaries of the shop/ premises
3. It is prohibited to display or store any items or equipment outside the shop / premises boundary without prior approval from the Municipality. In the event of non-compliance, the Ministry of Municipality Affairs has the right to take necessary action.
4. Maintain cleanliness of the site
5. Comply with the parking space regulations as per the Construction Regulatory Requirements

Activity Specific Conditions:
1. The commercial registration for this activity can be registered on Industrial streets/ areas only

Note: Uploading pictures of the site/shop may expedite the process of obtaining approval

Required Documents

- Lease agreement (after obtaining the necessary approvals from other licensing entities)
- Shop photos

Other Documents

- Cabinet's Decision (93) of the year 2023 regarding the Regulatory Requirements of Construction for various areas in the Kingdom of Bahrain

Directorate Of Industrial Developments (Final Site Inspection) (2733)

Approval Name	Description	Estimated Time
Notification Only	Notification to the Industrial development directorate on obtaining a commercial registration with the license to practice the activity.	There is no License Information in this license. Days

Fee Details (if any)

There is no Estimated Processing Time (Days) in this license.

License Information

The industrial license is automatically issued by the Industrial development Directorate after obtaining the approval of other licensing/approving entities.

Please ensure that the actual production date does no exceed the expected production date.

If actual production will start on or before the expected production date please apply for a “New Industrial Registration” by following the steps below:

1- Visit the Industrial services system (www.industry.bh).
2- Select “Industrial Registration”.
3- Select “New Registration” application.

In the event that the actual production date will exceed the expected production date an “Extension of expected production date” application must be submitted by following the steps below:

1- Visit the Industrial services system (www.industry.bh).

2- Select “Industrial License”.
3- Select “Extension of expected production date” application.

Please note that failure to do so within 60 days from the expected production date will result in a violation to be added.

Other Documents

- Law No. (81) of 2006 with respect to approving The Common Industrial Law of the GCC
- Ministerial Resolution No. (11) of 2009 with respect to promulgating Implementing Regulation
- Operational requirements for the directorate of industrial developments activities

Manufacturing

ISIC4	Business activity
274	Manufacture of electric lighting equipment

Description

This activity includes the manufacture of electric light bulbs and tubes and parts and components thereof (except glass blanks for electric light bulbs), electric lighting fixtures and lighting fixture components (except current-carrying wiring devices), such as:
- manufacture of discharge, incandescent, fluorescent, ultra-violet, infra-red etc. lamps, fixtures and bulbs
- manufacture of ceiling lighting fixtures
- manufacture of chandeliers
- manufacture of table lamps (i.e. lighting fixture)
- manufacture of electric fireplace logs
- manufacture of flashlights
- manufacture of electric insect lamps
- manufacture of lanterns (e.g. carbide, electric, gas, gasoline, kerosene)
- manufacture of spotlight
- manufacture of street lighting fixtures (except traffic signals)
- manufacture of lighting equipment for transportation equipment (e.g. for motor vehicles, aircraft, boats)
- manufacture of non-electrical lighting equipment

Business Requirements

Age

18 and above

Allowed for Nationalities

Bahraini 100%		GCC 100%	
American 100%		Singaporean 100%	
Icelander 100%		Liechtenstein er 100%	
Norwegian 100%		Swiss 100%	

Foreign Allowed up to 100%

Legal Type

It is allowed to register according to the legal forms mentioned below

Allowed for Individual Commercial Registration (ICR) : Yes

Allowed for Company Commercial Registration (CCR) : Yes

- Bahrain Shareholding Company (Public)
- With Limited Liability Company
- Branch of a Foreign Company
- Bahrain Shareholding Company (Closed)
- Partnership Company
- Simple Commandite Company
- Commandite By Shares Company
- Non Profit Company

Required Step of Licenses and Approvals

Ministry / Directorate	License / Approval Requirements	Approval Type
Directorate Of Industrial Developments	Approval by Directorate of Industrial	Pre

	Developments(Pre)	
Municipality Affairs	Site Approval for manufacturing activities (Type C)	Post
Supreme Council for Environment	Environmental Approval for Manufacture of electric lighting equipment activity	Post
Directorate Of Industrial Developments	Notification Only	Final Site Inspection

Directorate Of Industrial Developments (Pre) (274)

Approval Name	Description	Estimated Time
Approval by Directorate of Industrial Developments(Pre)	This is a preliminary approval given by the Directorate of Industrial Development to ensure that the applicant has selected the appropriate activity based on the information provided	5 Days

Fee Details (if any)

There is no Estimated Processing Time (Days) in this license.

License Information

Applicants would have to provide through the system the following information:

General Information:

- Total Amount Invested in the Project (This should include value of machinery and fixed assets)
- Estimated number of workforce (Bahraini and Non-Bahraini)
- Expected utility consumption of electricity, water and natural gas
- Total area of the project

Activity Information:

- Product Information:

1) The products to be manufactured by choosing the appropriate HS codes (HS code list can be downloaded from the application if needed).
2) Product name.
3) Expected production date (The expected date on which the factory will start producing the product).

4) The maximum installed capacity and the expected production capacity per year based on the fixed HS code's unit of measure.

• Main raw materials: The main raw materials to be used in production and its source

• Main Machinery and Equipment: The main machinery and equipment to be used in production and its information.

• Manufacturing process: Brief on the manufacturing process explaining how materials are transformed from one state to another until reaching the final product, mentioning the types of materials used, the operations performed, and the machinery/equipment used in each step (if any) for each product.

Required Documents

•Photos of machinery/ equipment to be used
•Photos of products to be manufactured

Other Documents

•Law No. (81) of 2006 with respect to approving The Common Industrial Law of the GCC
•Ministerial Resolution No. (11) of 2009
•Operational requirements for the directorate of industrial developments activities

Municipality Affairs (Post) (274)

Approval Name	Description	Estimated Time
Site Approval for manufacturing activities (Type C)	Municipality Approval for the Commercial Registration address or the site in which the Activity will be practiced	3 Days

Fee Details (if any)

10 BD

License Information

General Conditions:
1. Size of shop/premises must be sufficient for the activity
2. Businesses may not carry out the activity outside the boundaries of the shop/ premises
3. It is prohibited to display or store any items or equipment outside the shop / premises boundary without prior approval from the Municipality. In the event of non-compliance, the Ministry of Municipality Affairs has the right to take necessary action.
4. Maintain cleanliness of the site
5. Comply with the parking space regulations as per the Construction Regulatory Requirements

Activity Specific Conditions:
1. The commercial registration for this activity can be registered on Industrial streets/ areas only

Note: Uploading pictures of the site/shop may expedite the process of obtaining approval

Required Documents

- Lease agreement (after obtaining the necessary approvals from other licensing entities)
- Shop photos

Other Documents

- Cabinet's Decision (93) of the year 2023 regarding the Regulatory Requirements of Construction for various areas in the Kingdom of Bahrain

Supreme Council for Environment (Post) (274)

Approval Name	Description	Estimated Time
Environmental Approval for Manufacture of electric lighting equipment activity	This service aims to assess the environmental impact and licensing of development, industrial and production projects and activities, in accordance with the standards of protecting the environment and its natural resources	10 Days

Fee Details (if any)

- 30 Bahraini Dinars or 200 Bahraini Dinars for the fast-track procedure (when the data requested within the EA-2 form is sufficient without the need for additional studies)
- 4000 Bahraini Dinars or 6000 Bahraini Dinars for the fast track procedure (when it is necessary to submit an environmental impact assessment study for the project), with an additional payment of 100 Bahraini Dinars when it is necessary to submit a proposal for the scope of the study before submitting it or 500 Bahraini Dinars for a fast track procedure when the proposed scope of the study is being submitted before the study

License Information

To check the requirements for this approval, kindly download the detailed requirements sheet from the other downloadable documents section, which includes the following requirements:

- Building layout engineering and equipment requirements
- Workplace requirements
- Storage requirements
- Material management requirements
- Waste Management Requirements

- Documents and reporting requirements
- General requirements

Other Documents

- Annex to the Minister of Housing, Municipalities and Environment order regarding the project's environmental assessment
- Law No. (2) of 2021 regarding the environmental standards of air as decided by the Chairman of the Supreme Council for Environment
- Law No. (3) of 2021 regarding the environmental standards of water as decided by the Chairman of the Supreme Council for the Environment
- Law No. (54) of 2014 regarding the approval of the unified law regarding substances that deplete the ozone layer for the GCC countries
- Law No. (7) of 2022 regarding the environment
- Ministerial Order No. (1) of 1998 regarding Project's Environmental Assessment
- Ministerial Order No. (10) of 2006 regarding the installation of devices for on-line monitoring of atmospheric air pollutants
- Ministerial Order No. (11) of 2019 regarding the issue of technical specification of plastic products
- Ministerial Order No. (3) of 2005 regarding environmental requirements and standards in workplaces, especially regarding workers' exposure to heat and noise, and the provision of tools and protective clothing such as gloves, glasses, face masks and earplugs, with a commitment to use them during work
- Ministerial Order No. (3) of 2006 regarding the management of hazardous waste
- Ministerial Order No. (4) of 2005 regarding the management of used oils
- Ministerial Order No. (4) of 2006 regarding the management of hazardous chemicals
- Ministerial Order No. (4) of 2021 regarding the fees of the licenses and services provided by the Supreme Council for Environment
- Ministerial Order No. (6) of 2013 amending order No. (4) of 2006 regarding the management of hazardous chemicals
- Ministerial Order No. (7) of 2002 regarding the control importation and use of prohibited and severely restricted chemicals, and not to import any chemical compound except after obtaining approvals of all concerned authorities, including the executive body of the Supreme Council for Environment
- Ministerial Order No. (7) of 2013 amending order No. (3) of 2006 regarding the management of hazardous waste
- Ministerial Order No. 4 of 2014 regarding the management of the environmental consulting offices operations in the Kingdom of Bahrain
- Order No. (2) of 2020 determining the categories of fees for licensing refrigeration media, refrigeration units and air conditioning units as decided by the Chairman of the Supreme Council for the Environment
- Requirements for business activities
- law No. (1) of 2020 regarding the management of refrigeration media, refrigeration units and air conditioning units as decided by the Chairman of the Supreme Council for the Environment

•law No. (2) of 2019 regarding the ban on the import of plastic waste of all kinds as decided by the Chairman of the Supreme Council for the Environment

Directorate Of Industrial Developments (Final Site Inspection) (274)

Approval Name	Description	Estimated Time
Notification Only	Notification to the Industrial development directorate on obtaining a commercial registration with the license to practice the activity.	There is no License Information in this license. Days

Fee Details (if any)

There is no Estimated Processing Time (Days) in this license.

License Information

The industrial license is automatically issued by the Industrial development Directorate after obtaining the approval of other licensing/approving entities.

Please ensure that the actual production date does no exceed the expected production date.

If actual production will start on or before the expected production date please apply for a “New Industrial Registration” by following the steps below:

1- Visit the Industrial services system (www.industry.bh).
2- Select “Industrial Registration”.
3- Select “New Registration” application.

In the event that the actual production date will exceed the expected production date an “Extension of expected production date” application must be submitted by following the steps below:

1- Visit the Industrial services system (www.industry.bh).

2- Select “Industrial License”.
3- Select “Extension of expected production date” application.

Please note that failure to do so within 60 days from the expected production date will result in a violation to be added.

Other Documents

- Law No. (81) of 2006 with respect to approving The Common Industrial Law of the GCC
- Ministerial Resolution No. (11) of 2009 with respect to promulgating Implementing Regulation
- Operational requirements for the directorate of industrial developments activities

Manufacturing

ISIC4	Business activity
275	Manufacture of domestic appliances

Description

This activity includes the manufacture of small electric appliances and electric housewares, household-type fans, household-type vacuum cleaners, electric household-type floor care machines, household-type cooking appliances, household-type laundry equipment, household-type refrigerators, upright and chest freezers and other electrical and non-electrical household appliances, such as dishwashers, water heaters and garbage disposal units. It also includes the manufacture of appliances with electric, gas or other fuel sources.
such appliances include:

- manufacture of domestic electric appliances: refrigerators; freezers; dishwashers; washing and drying machines; vacuum cleaners; floor polishers; waste disposers; grinders, blenders, juice squeezers; tin openers; electric shavers, electric toothbrushes and other electric personal care device; knife sharpeners; ventilating or recycling hoods.

- manufacture of domestic electrothermic appliances: electric water heaters; electric blankets; electric dryers, combs, brushes, curlers; electric smoothing irons; space heaters and household-type fans, portable; electric ovens; microwave ovens; cookers, hotplates; toasters; coffee or tea makers; fry pans, roasters, grills, hoods; electric heating resistors etc.

- manufacture of domestic non-electric cooking and heating equipment: non-electric space heaters, cooking ranges, grates, stoves, water heaters, cooking appliances, plate warmers

Business Requirements

Age

18 and above

Allowed for Nationalities

Bahraini 100%		GCC 100%	
American 100%		Singaporean 100%	
Icelander 100%		Liechtenstein er 100%	
Norwegian 100%		Swiss 100%	

Foreign Allowed up to 100%

Legal Type

It is allowed to register according to the legal forms mentioned below

Allowed for Individual Commercial Registration (ICR) : Yes

Allowed for Company Commercial Registration (CCR) : Yes

- Bahrain Shareholding Company (Public)
- With Limited Liability Company
- Branch of a Foreign Company
- Bahrain Shareholding Company (Closed)
- Partnership Company
- Simple Commandite Company
- Commandite By Shares Company
- Non Profit Company

Required Step of Licenses and Approvals

Ministry / Directorate	License / Approval Requirements	Approval Type
Directorate Of Industrial Developments	Approval by Directorate of Industrial	Pre

	Developments(Pre)	
Supreme Council for Environment	Environmental Approval for Manufacture of domestic appliances activity	Post
Municipality Affairs	Site Approval for manufacturing activities (Type C)	Post
Directorate Of Industrial Developments	Notification Only	Final Site Inspection

Directorate Of Industrial Developments (Pre) (275)

Approval Name	Description	Estimated Time
Approval by Directorate of Industrial Developments(Pre)	This is a preliminary approval given by the Directorate of Industrial Development to ensure that the applicant has selected the appropriate activity based on the information provided	5 Days

Fee Details (if any)

There is no Estimated Processing Time (Days) in this license.

License Information

Applicants would have to provide through the system the following information:

General Information:

- Total Amount Invested in the Project (This should include value of machinery and fixed assets)
- Estimated number of workforce (Bahraini and Non-Bahraini)
- Expected utility consumption of electricity, water and natural gas
- Total area of the project

Activity Information:

- Product Information:

1) The products to be manufactured by choosing the appropriate HS codes (HS code list can be downloaded from the application if needed).
2) Product name.
3) Expected production date (The expected date on which the factory will start producing the product).

4) The maximum installed capacity and the expected production capacity per year based on the fixed HS code's unit of measure.

• Main raw materials: The main raw materials to be used in production and its source

• Main Machinery and Equipment: The main machinery and equipment to be used in production and its information.

• Manufacturing process: Brief on the manufacturing process explaining how materials are transformed from one state to another until reaching the final product, mentioning the types of materials used, the operations performed, and the machinery/equipment used in each step (if any) for each product.

Required Documents

•Photos of machinery/ equipment to be used
•Photos of products to be manufactured

Other Documents

•Law No. (81) of 2006 with respect to approving The Common Industrial Law of the GCC
•Ministerial Resolution No. (11) of 2009
•Operational requirements for the directorate of industrial developments activities

Supreme Council for Environment (Post) (275)

Approval Name	Description	Estimated Time
Environmental Approval for Manufacture of domestic appliances activity	This service aims to assess the environmental impact and licensing of development, industrial and production projects and activities, in accordance with the standards of protecting the environment and its natural resources	10 Days

Fee Details (if any)

- 30 Bahraini Dinars or 200 Bahraini Dinars for the fast-track procedure (when the data requested within the EA-2 form is sufficient without the need for additional studies)
- 4000 Bahraini Dinars or 6000 Bahraini Dinars for the fast track procedure (when it is necessary to submit an environmental impact assessment study for the project), with an additional payment of 100 Bahraini Dinars when it is necessary to submit a proposal for the scope of the study before submitting it or 500 Bahraini Dinars for a fast track procedure when the proposed scope of the study is being submitted before the study

License Information

To check the requirements for this approval, kindly download the detailed requirements sheet from the other downloadable documents section, which includes the following requirements:

- Building layout engineering and equipment requirements
- Workplace requirements
- Storage requirements
- Material management requirements
- Waste Management Requirements

- Documents and reporting requirements
- General requirements

Other Documents

- Annex to the Minister of Housing, Municipalities and Environment order regarding the project's environmental assessment
- Law No. (2) of 2021 regarding the environmental standards of air as decided by the Chairman of the Supreme Council for Environment
- Law No. (3) of 2021 regarding the environmental standards of water as decided by the Chairman of the Supreme Council for the Environment
- Law No. (54) of 2014 regarding the approval of the unified law regarding substances that deplete the ozone layer for the GCC countries
- Law No. (7) of 2022 regarding the environment
- Ministerial Order No. (1) of 1998 regarding Project's Environmental Assessment
- Ministerial Order No. (10) of 2006 regarding the installation of devices for on-line monitoring of atmospheric air pollutants
- Ministerial Order No. (11) of 2019 regarding the issue of technical specification of plastic products
- Ministerial Order No. (3) of 2005 regarding environmental requirements and standards in workplaces, especially regarding workers' exposure to heat and noise, and the provision of tools and protective clothing such as gloves, glasses, face masks and earplugs, with a commitment to use them during work
- Ministerial Order No. (3) of 2006 regarding the management of hazardous waste
- Ministerial Order No. (4) of 2005 regarding the management of used oils
- Ministerial Order No. (4) of 2006 regarding the management of hazardous chemicals
- Ministerial Order No. (4) of 2021 regarding the fees of the licenses and services provided by the Supreme Council for Environment
- Ministerial Order No. (6) of 2013 amending order No. (4) of 2006 regarding the management of hazardous chemicals
- Ministerial Order No. (7) of 2002 regarding the control importation and use of prohibited and severely restricted chemicals, and not to import any chemical compound except after obtaining approvals of all concerned authorities, including the executive body of the Supreme Council for Environment
- Ministerial Order No. (7) of 2013 amending order No. (3) of 2006 regarding the management of hazardous waste
- Ministerial Order No. 4 of 2014 regarding the management of the environmental consulting offices operations in the Kingdom of Bahrain
- Order No. (2) of 2020 determining the categories of fees for licensing refrigeration media, refrigeration units and air conditioning units as decided by the Chairman of the Supreme Council for the Environment
- Requirements for business activities
- law No. (1) of 2020 regarding the management of refrigeration media, refrigeration units and air conditioning units as decided by the Chairman of the Supreme Council for the Environment

•law No. (2) of 2019 regarding the ban on the import of plastic waste of all kinds as decided by the Chairman of the Supreme Council for the Environment

Municipality Affairs (Post) (275)

Approval Name	Description	Estimated Time
Site Approval for manufacturing activities (Type C)	Municipality Approval for the Commercial Registration address or the site in which the Activity will be practiced	3 Days

Fee Details (if any)

10 BD

License Information

General Conditions:
1. Size of shop/premises must be sufficient for the activity
2. Businesses may not carry out the activity outside the boundaries of the shop/ premises
3. It is prohibited to display or store any items or equipment outside the shop / premises boundary without prior approval from the Municipality. In the event of non-compliance, the Ministry of Municipality Affairs has the right to take necessary action.
4. Maintain cleanliness of the site
5. Comply with the parking space regulations as per the Construction Regulatory Requirements

Activity Specific Conditions:
1. The commercial registration for this activity can be registered on Industrial streets/ areas only

Note: Uploading pictures of the site/shop may expedite the process of obtaining approval

Required Documents

- Lease agreement (after obtaining the necessary approvals from other licensing entities)
- Shop photos

Other Documents

- Cabinet's Decision (93) of the year 2023 regarding the Regulatory Requirements of Construction for various areas in the Kingdom of Bahrain

Directorate Of Industrial Developments (Final Site Inspection) (275)

Approval Name	Description	Estimated Time
Notification Only	Notification to the Industrial development directorate on obtaining a commercial registration with the license to practice the activity.	There is no License Information in this license. Days

Fee Details (if any)

There is no Estimated Processing Time (Days) in this license.

License Information

The industrial license is automatically issued by the Industrial development Directorate after obtaining the approval of other licensing/approving entities.

Please ensure that the actual production date does no exceed the expected production date.

If actual production will start on or before the expected production date please apply for a “New Industrial Registration” by following the steps below:

1- Visit the Industrial services system (www.industry.bh).
2- Select “Industrial Registration”.
3- Select “New Registration” application.

In the event that the actual production date will exceed the expected production date an “Extension of expected production date” application must be submitted by following the steps below:

1- Visit the Industrial services system (www.industry.bh).

2- Select “Industrial License”.
3- Select “Extension of expected production date” application.

Please note that failure to do so within 60 days from the expected production date will result in a violation to be added.

Other Documents

- Law No. (81) of 2006 with respect to approving The Common Industrial Law of the GCC
- Ministerial Resolution No. (11) of 2009 with respect to promulgating Implementing Regulation
- Operational requirements for the directorate of industrial developments activities

ISIC4	Business activity
279	Manufacture of other electrical equipment

Description

This activity includes the manufacture of miscellaneous electrical equipment other than motors, generators and transformers, batteries and accumulators, wires and wiring devices, lighting equipment or domestic appliances, such as:
- manufacture of battery chargers, solid-state
- manufacture of door opening and closing devices, electrical
- manufacture of electric bells
- manufacture of ultrasonic cleaning machines (except laboratory and dental)
- manufacture of tanning beds
- manufacture of solid state inverters, rectifying apparatus, fuel cells, regulated and unregulated power supplies
- manufacture of uninterruptible power supplies (UPS)
- manufacture of surge suppressors (except for distribution level voltage)
- manufacture of appliance cords, extension cords, and other electrical cord sets with insulated wire and connectors
- manufacture of carbon and graphite electrodes, contacts, and other electrical carbon and graphite products
- manufacture of particle accelerators
- manufacture of electrical capacitors, resistors, condensers and similar components
- manufacture of electromagnets
- manufacture of sirens
- manufacture of electronic scoreboards
- manufacture of electrical signs
- manufacture of electrical signalling equipment such as traffic lights and pedestrian signalling equipment
- manufacture of electrical insulators (except glass or porcelain)
- manufacture of electrical welding and soldering equipment, including hand-held soldering irons

This activity excludes:
- manufacture of non-electrical signs, see class according to material (plastic signs 222, metal signs 2599)
- manufacture of porcelain electrical insulators, see 239
- manufacture of carbon and graphite fibers and products (except electrodes and

electrical applications), see 239
- manufacture of electronic component-type rectifiers, voltage regulating integrated circuits, power converting integrated circuits, electronic capacitors, electronic resistors and similar devices, see 26
- manufacture of transformers, motors, generators, switch-gear, relays and industrial controls, see 271
- manufacture of batteries, see 272
- manufacture of communication and energy wire, current-carrying and non current-carrying wiring devices, see 2733
- manufacture of lighting equipment, see 274
- manufacture of household-type appliances, see 275
- manufacture of non-electrical welding and soldering equipment, see 28
- manufacture of motor vehicle electrical equipment, such as generators, alternators, spark plugs, ignition wiring harnesses, power window and door systems, voltage regulators, see 293
- manufacture of mechanical and electromagnetically signalling, safety and traffic control equipment for railways, tramways, inland waterways, roads, parking facilities, airfields, see 302

Business Requirements

Age

18 and above

Allowed for Nationalities

Bahraini 100%		GCC 100%	
American 100%		Singaporean 100%	
Icelander 100%		Liechtenstein er 100%	
Norwegian 100%		Swiss 100%	

Foreign Allowed up to 100%

Legal Type

It is allowed to register according to the legal forms mentioned below

Allowed for Individual Commercial Registration (ICR) : Yes

Allowed for Company Commercial Registration (CCR) : Yes

- Bahrain Shareholding Company (Public)
- With Limited Liability Company
- Branch of a Foreign Company
- Bahrain Shareholding Company (Closed)
- Partnership Company
- Simple Commandite Company
- Commandite By Shares Company
- Non Profit Company

Required Step of Licenses and Approvals

Ministry / Directorate	License / Approval Requirements	Approval Type
Directorate Of Industrial Developments	Approval by Directorate of Industrial Developments(Pre)	Pre
Municipality Affairs	Site Approval for manufacturing activities (Type C)	Post
Supreme Council for Environment	Environmental Approval for Manufacture of other electrical equipment activity	Post
Directorate Of Industrial Developments	Notification Only	Final Site Inspection

Directorate Of Industrial Developments (Pre) (279)

Approval Name	Description	Estimated Time
Approval by Directorate of Industrial Developments(Pre)	This is a preliminary approval given by the Directorate of Industrial Development to ensure that the applicant has selected the appropriate activity based on the information provided	5 Days

Fee Details (if any)

There is no Estimated Processing Time (Days) in this license.

License Information

Applicants would have to provide through the system the following information:

General Information:

- Total Amount Invested in the Project (This should include value of machinery and fixed assets)
- Estimated number of workforce (Bahraini and Non-Bahraini)
- Expected utility consumption of electricity, water and natural gas
- Total area of the project

Activity Information:

- Product Information:

1) The products to be manufactured by choosing the appropriate HS codes (HS code list can be downloaded from the application if needed).
2) Product name.
3) Expected production date (The expected date on which the factory will start producing the product).

4) The maximum installed capacity and the expected production capacity per year based on the fixed HS code's unit of measure.

• Main raw materials: The main raw materials to be used in production and its source

• Main Machinery and Equipment: The main machinery and equipment to be used in production and its information.

• Manufacturing process: Brief on the manufacturing process explaining how materials are transformed from one state to another until reaching the final product, mentioning the types of materials used, the operations performed, and the machinery/equipment used in each step (if any) for each product.

Required Documents

•Photos of machinery/ equipment to be used
•Photos of products to be manufactured

Other Documents

•Law No. (81) of 2006 with respect to approving The Common Industrial Law of the GCC
•Ministerial Resolution No. (11) of 2009
•Operational requirements for the directorate of industrial developments activities

Municipality Affairs (Post) (279)

Approval Name	Description	Estimated Time
Site Approval for manufacturing activities (Type C)	Municipality Approval for the Commercial Registration address or the site in which the Activity will be practiced	3 Days

Fee Details (if any)

10 BD

License Information

General Conditions:
1. Size of shop/premises must be sufficient for the activity
2. Businesses may not carry out the activity outside the boundaries of the shop/ premises
3. It is prohibited to display or store any items or equipment outside the shop / premises boundary without prior approval from the Municipality. In the event of non-compliance, the Ministry of Municipality Affairs has the right to take necessary action.
4. Maintain cleanliness of the site
5. Comply with the parking space regulations as per the Construction Regulatory Requirements

Activity Specific Conditions:
1. The commercial registration for this activity can be registered on Industrial streets/ areas only

Note: Uploading pictures of the site/shop may expedite the process of obtaining approval

Required Documents

- Lease agreement (after obtaining the necessary approvals from other licensing entities)
- Shop photos

Other Documents

- Cabinet's Decision (93) of the year 2023 regarding the Regulatory Requirements of Construction for various areas in the Kingdom of Bahrain

Supreme Council for Environment (Post) (279)

Approval Name	Description	Estimated Time
Environmental Approval for Manufacture of other electrical equipment activity	This service aims to assess the environmental impact and licensing of development, industrial and production projects and activities, in accordance with the standards of protecting the environment and its natural resources	10 Days

Fee Details (if any)

- 30 Bahraini Dinars or 200 Bahraini Dinars for the fast-track procedure (when the data requested within the EA-2 form is sufficient without the need for additional studies)
- 4000 Bahraini Dinars or 6000 Bahraini Dinars for the fast track procedure (when it is necessary to submit an environmental impact assessment study for the project), with an additional payment of 100 Bahraini Dinars when it is necessary to submit a proposal for the scope of the study before submitting it or 500 Bahraini Dinars for a fast track procedure when the proposed scope of the study is being submitted before the study

License Information

To check the requirements for this approval, kindly download the detailed requirements sheet from the other downloadable documents section, which includes the following requirements:

- Building layout engineering and equipment requirements
- Workplace requirements
- Storage requirements
- Material management requirements
- Waste Management Requirements
- Documents and reporting requirements

• General requirements

Other Documents

•Annex to the Minister of Housing, Municipalities and Environment order regarding the project's environmental assessment
•Law No. (2) of 2021 regarding the environmental standards of air as decided by the Chairman of the Supreme Council for Environment
•Law No. (3) of 2021 regarding the environmental standards of water as decided by the Chairman of the Supreme Council for the Environment
•Law No. (54) of 2014 regarding the approval of the unified law regarding substances that deplete the ozone layer for the GCC countries
•Law No. (7) of 2022 regarding the environment
•Ministerial Order No. (1) of 1998 regarding Project's Environmental Assessment
•Ministerial Order No. (10) of 2006 regarding the installation of devices for on-line monitoring of atmospheric air pollutants
•Ministerial Order No. (3) of 2005 regarding environmental requirements and standards in workplaces, especially regarding workers' exposure to heat and noise, and the provision of tools and protective clothing such as gloves, glasses, face masks and earplugs, with a commitment to use them during work
•Ministerial Order No. (3) of 2006 regarding the management of hazardous waste
•Ministerial Order No. (4) of 2005 regarding the management of used oils
•Ministerial Order No. (4) of 2006 regarding the management of hazardous chemicals
•Ministerial Order No. (4) of 2021 regarding the fees of the licenses and services provided by the Supreme Council for Environment
•Ministerial Order No. (6) of 2013 amending order No. (4) of 2006 regarding the management of hazardous chemicals
•Ministerial Order No. (7) of 2002 regarding the control importation and use of prohibited and severely restricted chemicals, and not to import any chemical compound except after obtaining approvals of all concerned authorities, including the executive body of the Supreme Council for Environment
•Ministerial Order No. (7) of 2013 amending order No. (3) of 2006 regarding the management of hazardous waste
•Ministerial Order No. 4 of 2014 regarding the management of the environmental consulting offices operations in the Kingdom of Bahrain
•Order No. (2) of 2020 determining the categories of fees for licensing refrigeration media, refrigeration units and air conditioning units as decided by the Chairman of the Supreme Council for the Environment
•Requirements for business activities
•law No. (1) of 2020 regarding the management of refrigeration media, refrigeration units and air conditioning units as decided by the Chairman of the Supreme Council for the Environment
•law No. (2) of 2019 regarding the ban on the import of plastic waste of all kinds as decided by the Chairman of the Supreme Council for the Environment

Directorate Of Industrial Developments (Final Site Inspection) (279)

Approval Name	Description	Estimated Time
Notification Only	Notification to the Industrial development directorate on obtaining a commercial registration with the license to practice the activity.	There is no License Information in this license. Days

Fee Details (if any)

There is no Estimated Processing Time (Days) in this license.

License Information

The industrial license is automatically issued by the Industrial development Directorate after obtaining the approval of other licensing/approving entities.

Please ensure that the actual production date does no exceed the expected production date.

If actual production will start on or before the expected production date please apply for a “New Industrial Registration” by following the steps below:

1- Visit the Industrial services system (www.industry.bh).
2- Select “Industrial Registration”.
3- Select “New Registration” application.

In the event that the actual production date will exceed the expected production date an “Extension of expected production date” application must be submitted by following the steps below:

1- Visit the Industrial services system (www.industry.bh).

2- Select “Industrial License”.
3- Select “Extension of expected production date” application.

Please note that failure to do so within 60 days from the expected production date will result in a violation to be added.

Other Documents

- Law No. (81) of 2006 with respect to approving The Common Industrial Law of the GCC
- Ministerial Resolution No. (11) of 2009 with respect to promulgating Implementing Regulation
- Operational requirements for the directorate of industrial developments activities

Manufacturing

ISIC4	Business activity
28	Manufacture of machinery and equipment

Description

This activity includes the manufacture of machinery and equipment that act independently on materials either mechanically or thermally or perform operations on materials (such as handling, spraying, weighing or packing), including their mechanical components that produce and apply force, and any specially manufactured primary parts.
This includes the manufacture of fixed and mobile or hand-held devices, regardless of whether they are designed for industrial, building and civil engineering, agricultural or home use. The manufacture of special equipment for passenger or freight transport within demarcated premises also belongs within this activity.

This activity includes the manufacture of general-purpose machinery and special purpose machinery.

- Manufacture of general purpose machinery includes: Manufacture of engines and turbines, except aircraft, vehicle and cycle engines; Manufacture of fluid power equipment; Manufacture of other pumps, compressors, taps and valves; Manufacture of bearings, gears, gearing and driving element; Manufacture of ovens, furnaces and furnace burners; Manufacture of lifting and handling equipment; Manufacture of office machinery and equipment (except computers and peripheral equipment); Manufacture of power-driven hand tools

- Manufacture of special purpose machinery: Manufacture of agricultural and forestry machinery; Manufacture of metal-forming machinery and machine tools; Manufacture of machinery for metallurgy; Manufacture of machinery for mining, quarrying and construction; Manufacture of machinery for food, beverage and tobacco processing; Manufacture of machinery for textile, apparel and leather production

Business Requirements

Age

18 and above

Allowed for Nationalities

Bahraini 100%		GCC 100%	
American 100%		Singaporean 100%	
Icelander 100%		Liechtenstein er 100%	
Norwegian 100%		Swiss 100%	

Foreign Allowed up to 100%

Legal Type

It is allowed to register according to the legal forms mentioned below

Allowed for Individual Commercial Registration (ICR) : Yes

Allowed for Company Commercial Registration (CCR) : Yes

- Bahrain Shareholding Company (Public)
- With Limited Liability Company
- Branch of a Foreign Company
- Bahrain Shareholding Company (Closed)
- Partnership Company
- Simple Commandite Company
- Commandite By Shares Company
- Non Profit Company

Required Step of Licenses and Approvals

Ministry / Directorate	License / Approval Requirements	Approval Type
Directorate Of Industrial Developments	Approval by Directorate of Industrial	Pre

	Developments(Pre)	
Municipality Affairs	Site Approval for manufacturing activities (Type C)	Post
Supreme Council for Environment	Environmental Approval for Manufacture of machinery and equipment activity	Post
Directorate Of Industrial Developments	Notification Only	Final Site Inspection

Directorate Of Industrial Developments (Pre) (28)

Approval Name	Description	Estimated Time
Approval by Directorate of Industrial Developments(Pre)	This is a preliminary approval given by the Directorate of Industrial Development to ensure that the applicant has selected the appropriate activity based on the information provided	5 Days

Fee Details (if any)

There is no Estimated Processing Time (Days) in this license.

License Information

Applicants would have to provide through the system the following information:

General Information:

- Total Amount Invested in the Project (This should include value of machinery and fixed assets)
- Estimated number of workforce (Bahraini and Non-Bahraini)
- Expected utility consumption of electricity, water and natural gas
- Total area of the project

Activity Information:

- Product Information:

1) The products to be manufactured by choosing the appropriate HS codes (HS code list can be downloaded from the application if needed).
2) Product name.
3) Expected production date (The expected date on which the factory will start producing the product).

4) The maximum installed capacity and the expected production capacity per year based on the fixed HS code's unit of measure.

• Main raw materials: The main raw materials to be used in production and its source

• Main Machinery and Equipment: The main machinery and equipment to be used in production and its information.

• Manufacturing process: Brief on the manufacturing process explaining how materials are transformed from one state to another until reaching the final product, mentioning the types of materials used, the operations performed, and the machinery/equipment used in each step (if any) for each product.

Required Documents

•Photos of machinery/ equipment to be used
•Photos of products to be manufactured

Other Documents

•Law No. (81) of 2006 with respect to approving The Common Industrial Law of the GCC
•Ministerial Resolution No. (11) of 2009
•Operational requirements for the directorate of industrial developments activities

Municipality Affairs (Post) (28)

Approval Name	Description	Estimated Time
Site Approval for manufacturing activities (Type C)	Municipality Approval for the Commercial Registration address or the site in which the Activity will be practiced	3 Days

Fee Details (if any)

10 BD

License Information

General Conditions:
1. Size of shop/premises must be sufficient for the activity
2. Businesses may not carry out the activity outside the boundaries of the shop/ premises
3. It is prohibited to display or store any items or equipment outside the shop / premises boundary without prior approval from the Municipality. In the event of non-compliance, the Ministry of Municipality Affairs has the right to take necessary action.
4. Maintain cleanliness of the site
5. Comply with the parking space regulations as per the Construction Regulatory Requirements

Activity Specific Conditions:
1. The commercial registration for this activity can be registered on Industrial streets/ areas only

Note: Uploading pictures of the site/shop may expedite the process of obtaining approval

Required Documents

- Lease agreement (after obtaining the necessary approvals from other licensing entities)
- Shop photos

Other Documents

- Cabinet's Decision (93) of the year 2023 regarding the Regulatory Requirements of Construction for various areas in the Kingdom of Bahrain

Supreme Council for Environment (Post) (28)

Approval Name	Description	Estimated Time
Environmental Approval for Manufacture of machinery and equipment activity	This service aims to assess the environmental impact and licensing of development, industrial and production projects and activities, in accordance with the standards of protecting the environment and its natural resources	10 Days

Fee Details (if any)

- 30 Bahraini Dinars or 200 Bahraini Dinars for the fast-track procedure (when the data requested within the EA-2 form is sufficient without the need for additional studies)
- 4000 Bahraini Dinars or 6000 Bahraini Dinars for the fast track procedure (when it is necessary to submit an environmental impact assessment study for the project), with an additional payment of 100 Bahraini Dinars when it is necessary to submit a proposal for the scope of the study before submitting it or 500 Bahraini Dinars for a fast track procedure when the proposed scope of the study is being submitted before the study

License Information

To check the requirements for this approval, kindly download the detailed requirements sheet from the other downloadable documents section, which includes the following requirements:

- Building layout engineering and equipment requirements
- Workplace requirements
- Storage requirements
- Material management requirements
- Waste Management Requirements

- Documents and reporting requirements
- General requirements

Other Documents

- Annex to the Minister of Housing, Municipalities and Environment order regarding the project's environmental assessment
- Law No. (2) of 2021 regarding the environmental standards of air as decided by the Chairman of the Supreme Council for Environment
- Law No. (2) of 2021 regarding the environmental standards of air as decided by the Chairman of the Supreme Council for Environment
- Law No. (3) of 2021 regarding the environmental standards of water as decided by the Chairman of the Supreme Council for the Environment
- Law No. (54) of 2014 regarding the approval of the unified law regarding substances that deplete the ozone layer for the GCC countries
- Law No. (7) of 2022 regarding the environment
- Ministerial Order No. (1) of 1998 regarding Project's Environmental Assessment
- Ministerial Order No. (10) of 2006 regarding the installation of devices for on-line monitoring of atmospheric air pollutants
- Ministerial Order No. (11) of 2019 regarding the issue of technical specification of plastic products
- Ministerial Order No. (3) of 2005 regarding environmental requirements and standards in workplaces, especially regarding workers' exposure to heat and noise, and the provision of tools and protective clothing such as gloves, glasses, face masks and earplugs, with a commitment to use them during work
- Ministerial Order No. (3) of 2006 regarding the management of hazardous waste
- Ministerial Order No. (4) of 2005 regarding the management of used oils
- Ministerial Order No. (4) of 2006 regarding the management of hazardous chemicals
- Ministerial Order No. (4) of 2021 regarding the fees of the licenses and services provided by the Supreme Council for Environment
- Ministerial Order No. (6) of 2013 amending order No. (4) of 2006 regarding the management of hazardous chemicals
- Ministerial Order No. (7) of 2002 regarding the control importation and use of prohibited and severely restricted chemicals, and not to import any chemical compound except after obtaining approvals of all concerned authorities, including the executive body of the Supreme Council for Environment
- Ministerial Order No. (7) of 2013 amending order No. (3) of 2006 regarding the management of hazardous waste
- Ministerial Order No. 4 of 2014 regarding the management of the environmental consulting offices operations in the Kingdom of Bahrain
- Order No. (2) of 2020 determining the categories of fees for licensing refrigeration media, refrigeration units and air conditioning units as decided by the Chairman of the Supreme Council for the Environment
- Requirements for business activities
- law No. (1) of 2020 regarding the management of refrigeration media, refrigeration

units and air conditioning units as decided by the Chairman of the Supreme Council for the Environment
•law No. (2) of 2019 regarding the ban on the import of plastic waste of all kinds as decided by the Chairman of the Supreme Council for the Environment

Directorate Of Industrial Developments (Final Site Inspection) (28)

Approval Name	Description	Estimated Time
Notification Only	Notification to the Industrial development directorate on obtaining a commercial registration with the license to practice the activity.	There is no License Information in this license. Days

Fee Details (if any)

There is no Estimated Processing Time (Days) in this license.

License Information

The industrial license is automatically issued by the Industrial development Directorate after obtaining the approval of other licensing/approving entities.

Please ensure that the actual production date does no exceed the expected production date.

If actual production will start on or before the expected production date please apply for a “New Industrial Registration” by following the steps below:

1- Visit the Industrial services system (www.industry.bh).
2- Select “Industrial Registration”.
3- Select “New Registration” application.

In the event that the actual production date will exceed the expected production date an “Extension of expected production date” application must be submitted by following the steps below:

1- Visit the Industrial services system (www.industry.bh).

2- Select “Industrial License”.
3- Select “Extension of expected production date” application.

Please note that failure to do so within 60 days from the expected production date will result in a violation to be added.

Other Documents

- Law No. (81) of 2006 with respect to approving The Common Industrial Law of the GCC
- Ministerial Resolution No. (11) of 2009 with respect to promulgating Implementing Regulation
- Operational requirements for the directorate of industrial developments activities

Manufacturing

ISIC4	Business activity
291	Manufacture of motor vehicles

Description

This Activity includes:
- manufacture of passenger cars
- manufacture of commercial vehicles: vans, lorries, over-the-road tractors for semi-trailers etc.
- manufacture of buses, trolley-buses and coaches
- manufacture of motor vehicle engines
- manufacture of chassis fitted with engines
- manufacture of other motor vehicles: snowmobiles, golf carts, amphibious vehicles
. fire engines, street sweepers, travelling libraries, armoured cars etc.
.concrete-mixer lorries
- ATVs, go-carts and similar including race cars
- factory rebuilding of motor vehicle engines

Business Requirements

Age

18 and above

Allowed for Nationalities

Bahraini 100%		GCC 100%	
American 100%		Singaporean 100%	
Icelander 100%		Liechtenstein er 100%	
Norwegian 100%		Swiss 100%	

Foreign Allowed up to 100%

Legal Type

It is allowed to register according to the legal forms mentioned below

Allowed for Individual Commercial Registration (ICR) : Yes

Allowed for Company Commercial Registration (CCR) : Yes

- Bahrain Shareholding Company (Public)
- With Limited Liability Company
- Branch of a Foreign Company
- Bahrain Shareholding Company (Closed)
- Partnership Company
- Simple Commandite Company
- Commandite By Shares Company
- Non Profit Company

Required Step of Licenses and Approvals

Ministry / Directorate	License / Approval Requirements	Approval Type
Directorate Of Industrial Developments	Approval by Directorate of Industrial	Pre

	Developments(Pre)	
Supreme Council for Environment	Environmental Approval for Manufacture of motor vehicles activity	Post
Municipality Affairs	Site Approval for manufacturing activities (Type C)	Post
Directorate Of Industrial Developments	Notification Only	Final Site Inspection

Directorate Of Industrial Developments (Pre) (291)

Approval Name	Description	Estimated Time
Approval by Directorate of Industrial Developments(Pre)	This is a preliminary approval given by the Directorate of Industrial Development to ensure that the applicant has selected the appropriate activity based on the information provided	5 Days

Fee Details (if any)

There is no Estimated Processing Time (Days) in this license.

License Information

Applicants would have to provide through the system the following information:

General Information:

- Total Amount Invested in the Project (This should include value of machinery and fixed assets)
- Estimated number of workforce (Bahraini and Non-Bahraini)
- Expected utility consumption of electricity, water and natural gas
- Total area of the project

Activity Information:

- Product Information:

1) The products to be manufactured by choosing the appropriate HS codes (HS code list can be downloaded from the application if needed).
2) Product name.
3) Expected production date (The expected date on which the factory will start producing the product).

4) The maximum installed capacity and the expected production capacity per year based on the fixed HS code's unit of measure.

• Main raw materials: The main raw materials to be used in production and its source

• Main Machinery and Equipment: The main machinery and equipment to be used in production and its information.

• Manufacturing process: Brief on the manufacturing process explaining how materials are transformed from one state to another until reaching the final product, mentioning the types of materials used, the operations performed, and the machinery/equipment used in each step (if any) for each product.

Required Documents

•Photos of machinery/ equipment to be used
•Photos of products to be manufactured

Other Documents

•Law No. (81) of 2006 with respect to approving The Common Industrial Law of the GCC
•Ministerial Resolution No. (11) of 2009
•Operational requirements for the directorate of industrial developments activities

Supreme Council for Environment (Post) (291)

Approval Name	Description	Estimated Time
Environmental Approval for Manufacture of motor vehicles activity	This service aims to assess the environmental impact and licensing of development, industrial and production projects and activities, in accordance with the standards of protecting the environment and its natural resources	10 Days

Fee Details (if any)

30 BD

License Information

To check the requirements for this approval, kindly download the detailed requirements sheet from the other downloadable documents section, which includes the following requirements:

- Building layout engineering and equipment requirements
- Workplace requirements
- Storage requirements
- Material management requirements
- Waste Management Requirements
- Documents and reporting requirements
- General requirements

Other Documents

- Annex to the Minister of Housing, Municipalities and Environment order regarding the project's environmental assessment
- Law No. (2) of 2021 regarding the environmental standards of air as decided by the Chairman of the Supreme Council for Environment
- Law No. (3) of 2021 regarding the environmental standards of water as decided by the Chairman of the Supreme Council for the Environment
- Law No. (54) of 2014 regarding the approval of the unified law regarding substances that deplete the ozone layer for the GCC countries
- Law No. (7) of 2022 regarding the environment
- Ministerial Order No. (1) of 1998 regarding Project's Environmental Assessment
- Ministerial Order No. (10) of 2006 regarding the installation of devices for on-line monitoring of atmospheric air pollutants
- Ministerial Order No. (11) of 2019 regarding the issue of technical specification of plastic products
- Ministerial Order No. (3) of 2005 regarding environmental requirements and standards in workplaces, especially regarding workers' exposure to heat and noise, and the provision of tools and protective clothing such as gloves, glasses, face masks and earplugs, with a commitment to use them during work
- Ministerial Order No. (3) of 2006 regarding the management of hazardous waste
- Ministerial Order No. (4) of 2005 regarding the management of used oils
- Ministerial Order No. (4) of 2006 regarding the management of hazardous chemicals
- Ministerial Order No. (4) of 2021 regarding the fees of the licenses and services provided by the Supreme Council for Environment
- Ministerial Order No. (6) of 2013 amending order No. (4) of 2006 regarding the management of hazardous chemicals
- Ministerial Order No. (7) of 2002 regarding the control importation and use of prohibited and severely restricted chemicals, and not to import any chemical compound except after obtaining approvals of all concerned authorities, including the executive body of the Supreme Council for Environment
- Ministerial Order No. (7) of 2002 regarding the control importation and use of prohibited and severely restricted chemicals, and not to import any chemical compound except after obtaining approvals of all concerned authorities, including the executive body of the Supreme Council for Environment
- Ministerial Order No. (7) of 2013 amending order No. (3) of 2006 regarding the management of hazardous waste
- Order No. (2) of 2020 determining the categories of fees for licensing refrigeration media, refrigeration units and air conditioning units as decided by the Chairman of the Supreme Council for the Environment
- Requirements for business activities
- law No. (1) of 2020 regarding the management of refrigeration media, refrigeration units and air conditioning units as decided by the Chairman of the Supreme Council for the Environment
- law No. (2) of 2019 regarding the ban on the import of plastic waste of all kinds as decided by the Chairman of the Supreme Council for the Environment

Municipality Affairs (Post) (291)

Approval Name	Description	Estimated Time
Site Approval for manufacturing activities (Type C)	Municipality Approval for the Commercial Registration address or the site in which the Activity will be practiced	3 Days

Fee Details (if any)

10 BD

License Information

General Conditions:
1. Size of shop/premises must be sufficient for the activity
2. Businesses may not carry out the activity outside the boundaries of the shop/ premises
3. It is prohibited to display or store any items or equipment outside the shop / premises boundary without prior approval from the Municipality. In the event of non-compliance, the Ministry of Municipality Affairs has the right to take necessary action.
4. Maintain cleanliness of the site
5. Comply with the parking space regulations as per the Construction Regulatory Requirements

Activity Specific Conditions:
1. The commercial registration for this activity can be registered on Industrial streets/ areas only

Note: Uploading pictures of the site/shop may expedite the process of obtaining approval

Required Documents

- Lease agreement (after obtaining the necessary approvals from other licensing entities)
- Shop photos

Other Documents

- Cabinet's Decision (93) of the year 2023 regarding the Regulatory Requirements of Construction for various areas in the Kingdom of Bahrain

Directorate Of Industrial Developments (Final Site Inspection) (291)

Approval Name	Description	Estimated Time
Notification Only	Notification to the Industrial development directorate on obtaining a commercial registration with the license to practice the activity.	There is no License Information in this license. Days

Fee Details (if any)

There is no Estimated Processing Time (Days) in this license.

License Information

The industrial license is automatically issued by the Industrial development Directorate after obtaining the approval of other licensing/approving entities.

Please ensure that the actual production date does no exceed the expected production date.

If actual production will start on or before the expected production date please apply for a “New Industrial Registration” by following the steps below:

1- Visit the Industrial services system (www.industry.bh).
2- Select “Industrial Registration”.
3- Select “New Registration” application.

In the event that the actual production date will exceed the expected production date an “Extension of expected production date” application must be submitted by following the steps below:

1- Visit the Industrial services system (www.industry.bh).

2- Select “Industrial License”.
3- Select “Extension of expected production date” application.

Please note that failure to do so within 60 days from the expected production date will result in a violation to be added.

Other Documents

- Law No. (81) of 2006 with respect to approving The Common Industrial Law of the GCC
- Ministerial Resolution No. (11) of 2009 with respect to promulgating Implementing Regulation
- Operational requirements for the directorate of industrial developments activities

Manufacturing

ISIC4	Business activity
292	Manufacture of bodies (coachwork) for motor vehicles; manufacture of trailers and semi-trailers

Description

This Activity includes:
- manufacture of bodies, including cabs for motor vehicles
- outfitting of all types of motor vehicles, trailers and semi-trailers
- manufacture of trailers and semi-trailers:
. for transport of goods: tankers, removal trailers etc.
. for transport of passengers: caravan trailers etc.
- manufacture of containers for carriage by one or more modes of transport

Business Requirements

✔ Age

18 and above

✔ Allowed for Nationalities

Bahraini 100%		GCC 100%	
American 100%		Singaporean 100%	
Icelander 100%		Liechtenstein er 100%	
Norwegian 100%		Swiss 100%	

Foreign Allowed up to 100%

Legal Type

It is allowed to register according to the legal forms mentioned below

Allowed for Individual Commercial Registration (ICR) : Yes

Allowed for Company Commercial Registration (CCR) : Yes

- Bahrain Shareholding Company (Public)
- With Limited Liability Company
- Branch of a Foreign Company
- Bahrain Shareholding Company (Closed)
- Partnership Company
- Simple Commandite Company
- Commandite By Shares Company
- Non Profit Company

Required Step of Licenses and Approvals

Ministry / Directorate	License / Approval Requirements	Approval Type
Directorate Of Industrial Developments	Approval by Directorate of Industrial Developments(Pre)	Pre
Supreme Council for Environment	Environmental Approval for Manufacture of bodies (coachwork) for motor vehicles; manufacture of trailers and semi-trailers ac	Post
Municipality Affairs	Site Approval for manufacturing activities (Type B)	Post
Directorate Of Industrial Developments	Notification Only	Final Site Inspection

Directorate Of Industrial Developments (Pre) (292)

Approval Name	Description	Estimated Time
Approval by Directorate of Industrial Developments(Pre)	This is a preliminary approval given by the Directorate of Industrial Development to ensure that the applicant has selected the appropriate activity based on the information provided	5 Days

Fee Details (if any)

There is no Estimated Processing Time (Days) in this license.

License Information

Applicants would have to provide through the system the following information:

General Information:

- Total Amount Invested in the Project (This should include value of machinery and fixed assets)
- Estimated number of workforce (Bahraini and Non-Bahraini)
- Expected utility consumption of electricity, water and natural gas
- Total area of the project

Activity Information:

- Product Information:

1) The products to be manufactured by choosing the appropriate HS codes (HS code list can be downloaded from the application if needed).
2) Product name.
3) Expected production date (The expected date on which the factory will start producing the product).

4) The maximum installed capacity and the expected production capacity per year based on the fixed HS code's unit of measure.

• Main raw materials: The main raw materials to be used in production and its source

• Main Machinery and Equipment: The main machinery and equipment to be used in production and its information.

• Manufacturing process: Brief on the manufacturing process explaining how materials are transformed from one state to another until reaching the final product, mentioning the types of materials used, the operations performed, and the machinery/equipment used in each step (if any) for each product.

Required Documents

•Photos of machinery/ equipment to be used
•Photos of products to be manufactured

Other Documents

•Law No. (81) of 2006 with respect to approving The Common Industrial Law of the GCC
•Ministerial Resolution No. (11) of 2009
•Operational requirements for the directorate of industrial developments activities

Supreme Council for Environment (Post) (292)

Approval Name	Description	Estimated Time
Environmental Approval for Manufacture of bodies (coachwork) for motor vehicles; manufacture of trailers and semi-trailers ac	This service aims to assess the environmental impact and licensing of development, industrial and production projects and activities, in accordance with the standards of protecting the environment and its natural resources	10 Days

Fee Details (if any)

- 30 Bahraini Dinars or 200 Bahraini Dinars for the fast-track procedure (when the data requested within the EA-2 form is sufficient without the need for additional studies)
- 4000 Bahraini Dinars or 6000 Bahraini Dinars for the fast track procedure (when it is necessary to submit an environmental impact assessment study for the project), with an additional payment of 100 Bahraini Dinars when it is necessary to submit a proposal for the scope of the study before submitting it or 500 Bahraini Dinars for a fast track procedure when the proposed scope of the study is being submitted before the study

License Information

To check the requirements for this approval, kindly download the detailed requirements sheet from the other downloadable documents section, which includes the following requirements:

- Building layout engineering and equipment requirements
- Workplace requirements
- Storage requirements
- Material management requirements
- Waste Management Requirements

- Documents and reporting requirements
- General requirements

Other Documents

- Annex to the Minister of Housing, Municipalities and Environment order regarding the project's environmental assessment
- Law No. (2) of 2021 regarding the environmental standards of air as decided by the Chairman of the Supreme Council for Environment
- Law No. (3) of 2021 regarding the environmental standards of water as decided by the Chairman of the Supreme Council for the Environment
- Law No. (54) of 2014 regarding the approval of the unified law regarding substances that deplete the ozone layer for the GCC countries
- Law No. (7) of 2022 regarding the environment
- Ministerial Order No. (1) of 1998 regarding Project's Environmental Assessment
- Ministerial Order No. (10) of 2006 regarding the installation of devices for on-line monitoring of atmospheric air pollutants
- Ministerial Order No. (11) of 2019 regarding the issue of technical specification of plastic products
- Ministerial Order No. (3) of 2005 regarding environmental requirements and standards in workplaces, especially regarding workers' exposure to heat and noise, and the provision of tools and protective clothing such as gloves, glasses, face masks and earplugs, with a commitment to use them during work
- Ministerial Order No. (3) of 2006 regarding the management of hazardous waste
- Ministerial Order No. (4) of 2005 regarding the management of used oils
- Ministerial Order No. (4) of 2006 regarding the management of hazardous chemicals
- Ministerial Order No. (4) of 2021 regarding the fees of the licenses and services provided by the Supreme Council for Environment
- Ministerial Order No. (6) of 2013 amending order No. (4) of 2006 regarding the management of hazardous chemicals
- Ministerial Order No. (7) of 2002 regarding the control importation and use of prohibited and severely restricted chemicals, and not to import any chemical compound except after obtaining approvals of all concerned authorities, including the executive body of the Supreme Council for Environment
- Ministerial Order No. (7) of 2013 amending order No. (3) of 2006 regarding the management of hazardous waste
- Ministerial Order No. 4 of 2014 regarding the management of the environmental consulting offices operations in the Kingdom of Bahrain
- Order No. (2) of 2020 determining the categories of fees for licensing refrigeration media, refrigeration units and air conditioning units as decided by the Chairman of the Supreme Council for the Environment
- Requirements for business activities
- law No. (1) of 2020 regarding the management of refrigeration media, refrigeration units and air conditioning units as decided by the Chairman of the Supreme Council for the Environment

•law No. (2) of 2019 regarding the ban on the import of plastic waste of all kinds as decided by the Chairman of the Supreme Council for the Environment

Municipality Affairs (Post) (292)

Approval Name	Description	Estimated Time
Site Approval for manufacturing activities (Type B)	Municipality Approval for the Commercial Registration address or the site in which the Activity will be practiced	3 Days

Fee Details (if any)

10 BD

License Information

General Conditions:
1. Size of shop/premises must be sufficient for the activity
2. Businesses may not carry out the activity outside the boundaries of the shop/ premises
3. It is prohibited to display or store any items or equipment outside the shop / premises boundary without prior approval from the Municipality. In the event of non-compliance, the Ministry of Municipality Affairs has the right to take necessary action.
4. Maintain cleanliness of the site
5. Comply with the parking space regulations as per the Construction Regulatory Requirements

Activity Specific Conditions:
1. The Commercial Registration for this activity can only be registered in service and industrial streets/areas

Note: Uploading pictures of the site/shop may expedite the process of obtaining approval

Required Documents

- Lease agreement (after obtaining the necessary approvals from other licensing entities)
- Shop photos

Other Documents

- Cabinet's Decision (56) of the year 2022 regarding the Regulatory Requirements of Construction for various areas in the Kingdom of Bahrain

Directorate Of Industrial Developments (Final Site Inspection) (292)

Approval Name	Description	Estimated Time
Notification Only	Notification to the Industrial development directorate on obtaining a commercial registration with the license to practice the activity.	There is no License Information in this license. Days

Fee Details (if any)

There is no Estimated Processing Time (Days) in this license.

License Information

The industrial license is automatically issued by the Industrial development Directorate after obtaining the approval of other licensing/approving entities.

Please ensure that the actual production date does no exceed the expected production date.

If actual production will start on or before the expected production date please apply for a “New Industrial Registration” by following the steps below:

1- Visit the Industrial services system (www.industry.bh).
2- Select “Industrial Registration”.
3- Select “New Registration” application.

In the event that the actual production date will exceed the expected production date an “Extension of expected production date” application must be submitted by following the steps below:

1- Visit the Industrial services system (www.industry.bh).

2- Select “Industrial License”.
3- Select “Extension of expected production date” application.

Please note that failure to do so within 60 days from the expected production date will result in a violation to be added.

Other Documents

- Law No. (81) of 2006 with respect to approving The Common Industrial Law of the GCC
- Ministerial Resolution No. (11) of 2009 with respect to promulgating Implementing Regulation
- Operational requirements for the directorate of industrial developments activities

Manufacturing

ISIC4	Business activity
293	Manufacture of parts and accessories for motor vehicles

Description

This Activity includes:
- manufacture of diverse parts and accessories for motor vehicles: brakes, gearboxes, axles, road wheels, suspension shock absorbers, radiators, silencers, exhaust pipes, catalytic converters, clutches, steering wheels, steering columns and steering boxes
- manufacture of parts and accessories of bodies for motor vehicles: safety belts, airbags, doors, bumpers
- manufacture of car seats
- manufacture of motor vehicle electrical equipment, such as generators, alternators, spark plugs, ignition wiring harnesses, power window and door systems, assembly of purchased gauges into instrument panels, voltage regulators, etc.

This activity excludes:
- manufacture of tyres, see 221
- manufacture of rubber hoses and belts and other rubber products, see 221
- manufacture of plastic hoses and belts and other plastic products, see 222
- manufacture of batteries for vehicles, see 272
- manufacture of lighting equipment for motor vehicles, see 274
- manufacture of pistons, piston rings and carburetors, see 28
- manufacture of pumps for motor vehicles and engines, see 28
- maintenance, repair and alteration of motor vehicles, see 452

Business Requirements

Age

18 and above

Allowed for Nationalities

Bahraini 100%		GCC 100%	
American 100%		Singaporean 100%	
Icelander 100%		Liechtenstein er 100%	
Norwegian 100%		Swiss 100%	

Foreign Allowed up to 100%

Legal Type

It is allowed to register according to the legal forms mentioned below

Allowed for Individual Commercial Registration (ICR) : Yes

Allowed for Company Commercial Registration (CCR) : Yes

- Bahrain Shareholding Company (Public)
- With Limited Liability Company
- Branch of a Foreign Company
- Bahrain Shareholding Company (Closed)
- Partnership Company
- Simple Commandite Company
- Commandite By Shares Company
- Non Profit Company

Required Step of Licenses and Approvals

Ministry / Directorate	License / Approval Requirements	Approval Type
Directorate Of Industrial Developments	Approval by Directorate of Industrial	Pre

	Developments(Pre)	
Supreme Council for Environment	Environmental Approval for Manufacture of parts and accessories for motor vehicles activity	Post
Municipality Affairs	Site Approval for manufacturing activities (Type C)	Post
Directorate Of Industrial Developments	Notification Only	Final Site Inspection

Directorate Of Industrial Developments (Pre) (293)

Approval Name	Description	Estimated Time
Approval by Directorate of Industrial Developments(Pre)	This is a preliminary approval given by the Directorate of Industrial Development to ensure that the applicant has selected the appropriate activity based on the information provided	5 Days

Fee Details (if any)

There is no Estimated Processing Time (Days) in this license.

License Information

Applicants would have to provide through the system the following information:

General Information:

- Total Amount Invested in the Project (This should include value of machinery and fixed assets)
- Estimated number of workforce (Bahraini and Non-Bahraini)
- Expected utility consumption of electricity, water and natural gas
- Total area of the project

Activity Information:

- Product Information:

1) The products to be manufactured by choosing the appropriate HS codes (HS code list can be downloaded from the application if needed).
2) Product name.
3) Expected production date (The expected date on which the factory will start producing the product).

4) The maximum installed capacity and the expected production capacity per year based on the fixed HS code's unit of measure.

• Main raw materials: The main raw materials to be used in production and its source

• Main Machinery and Equipment: The main machinery and equipment to be used in production and its information.

• Manufacturing process: Brief on the manufacturing process explaining how materials are transformed from one state to another until reaching the final product, mentioning the types of materials used, the operations performed, and the machinery/equipment used in each step (if any) for each product.

Required Documents

•Photos of machinery/ equipment to be used
•Photos of products to be manufactured

Other Documents

•Law No. (81) of 2006 with respect to approving The Common Industrial Law of the GCC
•Ministerial Resolution No. (11) of 2009
•Operational requirements for the directorate of industrial developments activities

Supreme Council for Environment (Post) (293)

Approval Name	Description	Estimated Time
Environmental Approval for Manufacture of parts and accessories for motor vehicles activity	This service aims to assess the environmental impact and licensing of development, industrial and production projects and activities, in accordance with the standards of protecting the environment and its natural resources	10 Days

Fee Details (if any)

- 30 Bahraini Dinars or 200 Bahraini Dinars for the fast-track procedure (when the data requested within the EA-2 form is sufficient without the need for additional studies)
- 4000 Bahraini Dinars or 6000 Bahraini Dinars for the fast track procedure (when it is necessary to submit an environmental impact assessment study for the project), with an additional payment of 100 Bahraini Dinars when it is necessary to submit a proposal for the scope of the study before submitting it or 500 Bahraini Dinars for a fast track procedure when the proposed scope of the study is being submitted before the study

License Information

To check the requirements for this approval, kindly download the detailed requirements sheet from the other downloadable documents section, which includes the following requirements:

- Building layout engineering and equipment requirements
- Workplace requirements
- Storage requirements
- Material management requirements
- Waste Management Requirements

- Documents and reporting requirements
- General requirements

Other Documents

- Annex to the Minister of Housing, Municipalities and Environment order regarding the project's environmental assessment
- Law No. (2) of 2021 regarding the environmental standards of air as decided by the Chairman of the Supreme Council for Environment
- Law No. (3) of 2021 regarding the environmental standards of water as decided by the Chairman of the Supreme Council for the Environment
- Law No. (54) of 2014 regarding the approval of the unified law regarding substances that deplete the ozone layer for the GCC countries
- Law No. (7) of 2022 regarding the environment
- Ministerial Order No. (1) of 1998 regarding Project's Environmental Assessment
- Ministerial Order No. (10) of 2006 regarding the installation of devices for on-line monitoring of atmospheric air pollutants
- Ministerial Order No. (11) of 2019 regarding the issue of technical specification of plastic products
- Ministerial Order No. (3) of 2005 regarding environmental requirements and standards in workplaces, especially regarding workers' exposure to heat and noise, and the provision of tools and protective clothing such as gloves, glasses, face masks and earplugs, with a commitment to use them during work
- Ministerial Order No. (3) of 2006 regarding the management of hazardous waste
- Ministerial Order No. (4) of 2005 regarding the management of used oils
- Ministerial Order No. (4) of 2006 regarding the management of hazardous chemicals
- Ministerial Order No. (4) of 2021 regarding the fees of the licenses and services provided by the Supreme Council for Environment
- Ministerial Order No. (6) of 2013 amending order No. (4) of 2006 regarding the management of hazardous chemicals
- Ministerial Order No. (7) of 2002 regarding the control importation and use of prohibited and severely restricted chemicals, and not to import any chemical compound except after obtaining approvals of all concerned authorities, including the executive body of the Supreme Council for Environment
- Ministerial Order No. (7) of 2013 amending order No. (3) of 2006 regarding the management of hazardous waste
- Ministerial Order No. 4 of 2014 regarding the management of the environmental consulting offices operations in the Kingdom of Bahrain
- Order No. (2) of 2020 determining the categories of fees for licensing refrigeration media, refrigeration units and air conditioning units as decided by the Chairman of the Supreme Council for the Environment
- Requirements for business activities
- law No. (1) of 2020 regarding the management of refrigeration media, refrigeration units and air conditioning units as decided by the Chairman of the Supreme Council for the Environment

•law No. (2) of 2019 regarding the ban on the import of plastic waste of all kinds as decided by the Chairman of the Supreme Council for the Environment

Municipality Affairs (Post) (293)

Approval Name	Description	Estimated Time
Site Approval for manufacturing activities (Type C)	Municipality Approval for the Commercial Registration address or the site in which the Activity will be practiced	3 Days

Fee Details (if any)

10 BD

License Information

General Conditions:
1. Size of shop/premises must be sufficient for the activity
2. Businesses may not carry out the activity outside the boundaries of the shop/ premises
3. It is prohibited to display or store any items or equipment outside the shop / premises boundary without prior approval from the Municipality. In the event of non-compliance, the Ministry of Municipality Affairs has the right to take necessary action.
4. Maintain cleanliness of the site
5. Comply with the parking space regulations as per the Construction Regulatory Requirements

Activity Specific Conditions:
1. The commercial registration for this activity can be registered on Industrial streets/ areas only

Note: Uploading pictures of the site/shop may expedite the process of obtaining approval

Required Documents

- Lease agreement (after obtaining the necessary approvals from other licensing entities)
- Shop photos

Other Documents

- Cabinet's Decision (93) of the year 2023 regarding the Regulatory Requirements of Construction for various areas in the Kingdom of Bahrain

Directorate Of Industrial Developments (Final Site Inspection) (293)

Approval Name	Description	Estimated Time
Notification Only	Notification to the Industrial development directorate on obtaining a commercial registration with the license to practice the activity.	There is no License Information in this license. Days

Fee Details (if any)

There is no Estimated Processing Time (Days) in this license.

License Information

The industrial license is automatically issued by the Industrial development Directorate after obtaining the approval of other licensing/approving entities.

Please ensure that the actual production date does no exceed the expected production date.

If actual production will start on or before the expected production date please apply for a “New Industrial Registration” by following the steps below:

1- Visit the Industrial services system (www.industry.bh).
2- Select “Industrial Registration”.
3- Select “New Registration” application.

In the event that the actual production date will exceed the expected production date an “Extension of expected production date” application must be submitted by following the steps below:

1- Visit the Industrial services system (www.industry.bh).

2- Select “Industrial License”.
3- Select “Extension of expected production date” application.

Please note that failure to do so within 60 days from the expected production date will result in a violation to be added.

Other Documents

- Law No. (81) of 2006 with respect to approving The Common Industrial Law of the GCC
- Ministerial Resolution No. (11) of 2009 with respect to promulgating Implementing Regulation
- Operational requirements for the directorate of industrial developments activities

Manufacturing

ISIC4	Business activity
293093	Auto-Upholstery

Description

This activity Includes all kinds of auto-upholstery such as seats covers or steering wheel, gear covers, car covers.. etc. It also includes mats and similar products made of fabric, leather, plastic, or other natural or artificial fibers, which are prepared by means of cutting, tailoring and adhesion.

Business Requirements

Age

18 and above

Allowed for Nationalities

Bahraini 100%	GCC 100%
American 100%	Singaporean 100%
Icelander 100%	Liechtenstein er 100%
Norwegian 100%	Swiss 100%

Foreign Allowed up to 100%

Legal Type

It is allowed to register according to the legal forms mentioned below

Allowed for Individual Commercial Registration (ICR) : Yes

Allowed for Company Commercial Registration (CCR) : Yes

- Bahrain Shareholding Company (Public)
- With Limited Liability Company
- Branch of a Foreign Company
- Bahrain Shareholding Company (Closed)
- Partnership Company
- Simple Commandite Company
- Commandite By Shares Company
- Non Profit Company

Required Step of Licenses and Approvals

Ministry / Directorate	License / Approval Requirements	Approval Type
Municipality Affairs	Site Approval for manufacturing activities (Type B)	Post

Municipality Affairs (Post) (293093)

Approval Name	Description	Estimated Time
Site Approval for manufacturing activities (Type B)	Municipality Approval for the Commercial Registration address or the site in which the Activity will be practiced	3 Days

Fee Details (if any)

10 BD

License Information

General Conditions:
1. Size of shop/premises must be sufficient for the activity
2. Businesses may not carry out the activity outside the boundaries of the shop/ premises
3. It is prohibited to display or store any items or equipment outside the shop / premises boundary without prior approval from the Municipality. In the event of non-compliance, the Ministry of Municipality Affairs has the right to take necessary action.
4. Maintain cleanliness of the site
5. Comply with the parking space regulations as per the Construction Regulatory Requirements

Activity Specific Conditions:
1. The Commercial Registration for this activity can only be registered in service and industrial streets/areas

Note: Uploading pictures of the site/shop may expedite the process of obtaining approval

Required Documents

- Lease agreement (after obtaining the necessary approvals from other licensing entities)
- Shop photos

Other Documents

- Cabinet's Decision (56) of the year 2022 regarding the Regulatory Requirements of Construction for various areas in the Kingdom of Bahrain

Manufacturing

ISIC4	Business activity
30111	Ship Building and Repair Services

Description

This activity includes the building and repair of ships, except vessels for sports or recreation.
This includes:
- building of commercial vessels: passenger vessels, ferry boats, cargo ships, tankers, tugs etc.
- building of fishing boats and fish-processing factory vessels

This activity includes docks and jetties, and specialized workshops Equipped with all the necessary cranes and equipment's capable of construction and repair, conversion and alteration of prefabricated ship sections including repairing engines, generators, and welding of iron, pipes fitting, electric motors and reservoirs.

Business Requirements

Age

18 and above

Allowed for Nationalities

Bahraini 100%		GCC 100%	
American 100%		Singaporean 100%	
Icelander 100%		Liechtenstein er 100%	
Norwegian 100%		Swiss 100%	

Foreign Allowed up to 100%

Legal Type

It is allowed to register according to the legal forms mentioned below

Allowed for Individual Commercial Registration (ICR) : Yes

Allowed for Company Commercial Registration (CCR) : Yes

- Bahrain Shareholding Company (Public)
- With Limited Liability Company
- Branch of a Foreign Company
- Bahrain Shareholding Company (Closed)
- Partnership Company
- Simple Commandite Company
- Commandite By Shares Company
- Non Profit Company

Required Step of Licenses and Approvals

Ministry / Directorate	License / Approval Requirements	Approval Type
Directorate Of Industrial Developments	Approval by Directorate of Industrial	Pre

	Developments(Pre)	
Ports and Maritime Affairs	Ship Building and Repair Services	Post
Supreme Council for Environment	Environmental Approval for Ship Building and Repair Service activity	Post
Municipality Affairs	Site Approval for manufacturing activities (Type B)	Post
Directorate Of Industrial Developments	Notification Only	Final Site Inspection

Directorate Of Industrial Developments (Pre) (30111)

Approval Name	Description	Estimated Time
Approval by Directorate of Industrial Developments(Pre)	This is a preliminary approval given by the Directorate of Industrial Development to ensure that the applicant has selected the appropriate activity based on the information provided	5 Days

Fee Details (if any)

There is no Estimated Processing Time (Days) in this license.

License Information

Applicants would have to provide through the system the following information:

General Information:

- Total Amount Invested in the Project (This should include value of machinery and fixed assets)
- Estimated number of workforce (Bahraini and Non-Bahraini)
- Expected utility consumption of electricity, water and natural gas
- Total area of the project

Activity Information:

- Product Information:

1) The products to be manufactured by choosing the appropriate HS codes (HS code list can be downloaded from the application if needed).
2) Product name.
3) Expected production date (The expected date on which the factory will start producing the product).

4) The maximum installed capacity and the expected production capacity per year based on the fixed HS code's unit of measure.

• Main raw materials: The main raw materials to be used in production and its source

• Main Machinery and Equipment: The main machinery and equipment to be used in production and its information.

• Manufacturing process: Brief on the manufacturing process explaining how materials are transformed from one state to another until reaching the final product, mentioning the types of materials used, the operations performed, and the machinery/equipment used in each step (if any) for each product.

Required Documents

•Photos of machinery/ equipment to be used
•Photos of products to be manufactured

Other Documents

•Law No. (81) of 2006 with respect to approving The Common Industrial Law of the GCC
•Ministerial Resolution No. (11) of 2009
•Operational requirements for the directorate of industrial developments activities

Ports and Maritime Affairs (Post) (30111)

Approval Name	Description	Estimated Time
Ship Building and Repair Services	Ship Building and Repair Services	3 Days

Fee Details (if any)

2000 BD

License Information

Application/License related information:
- The license is valid for 1 years
- Renewal of the license is 50% of the initial fee
- In addition to the license fee, applicants must pay a non-refundable application fee of BD100

For further license specific requirements please refer to the document below (Ship Repair Requirements

Required Documents

- Business Plan
- Documents proving the educational qualifications of executives in (Port and Maritime studies, Nautical Science, Engineering, Business Management, Logistics, IT, Law) or professional experience in the sector of no less than 5 years.

Other Documents

- Ministerial Regulation No. 15 for the year 2017 regarding PMA Tariff
- Ministerial Regulation No.9 for the year 2017 regarding licensing of Marine Services
- Ship Repair Requirements

Supreme Council for Environment (Post) (30111)

Approval Name	Description	Estimated Time
Environmental Approval for Ship Building and Repair Service activity	This service aims to assess the environmental impact and licensing of development, industrial and production projects and activities, in accordance with the standards of protecting the environment and its natural resources	10 Days

Fee Details (if any)

- 30 Bahraini Dinars or 200 Bahraini Dinars for the fast-track procedure (when the data requested within the EA-2 form is sufficient without the need for additional studies)
- 4000 Bahraini Dinars or 6000 Bahraini Dinars for the fast track procedure (when it is necessary to submit an environmental impact assessment study for the project), with an additional payment of 100 Bahraini Dinars when it is necessary to submit a proposal for the scope of the study before submitting it or 500 Bahraini Dinars for a fast track procedure when the proposed scope of the study is being submitted before the study

License Information

To check the requirements for this approval, kindly download the detailed requirements sheet from the other downloadable documents section, which includes the following requirements:

- Building layout engineering and equipment requirements
- Workplace requirements
- Storage requirements
- Material management requirements
- Waste Management Requirements

- Documents and reporting requirements
- General requirements

Other Documents

•Annex to the Minister of Housing, Municipalities and Environment order regarding the project's environmental assessment
•Law No. (2) of 2021 regarding the environmental standards of air as decided by the Chairman of the Supreme Council for Environment
•Law No. (3) of 2021 regarding the environmental standards of water as decided by the Chairman of the Supreme Council for the Environment
•Law No. (5) of 2021 regarding CITES Annexes to the Convention on International Trade in Endangered Fauna and Flora
•Law No. (54) of 2014 regarding the approval of the unified law regarding substances that deplete the ozone layer for the GCC countries
•Law No. (7) of 2022 regarding the environment
•Ministerial Order No. (1) of 1998 regarding Project's Environmental Assessment
•Ministerial Order No. (10) of 2006 regarding the installation of devices for on-line monitoring of atmospheric air pollutants
•Ministerial Order No. (11) of 2019 regarding the issue of technical specification of plastic products
•Ministerial Order No. (3) of 2005 regarding environmental requirements and standards in workplaces, especially regarding workers' exposure to heat and noise, and the provision of tools and protective clothing such as gloves, glasses, face masks and earplugs, with a commitment to use them during work
•Ministerial Order No. (3) of 2006 regarding the management of hazardous waste
•Ministerial Order No. (4) of 2005 regarding the management of used oils
•Ministerial Order No. (4) of 2006 regarding the management of hazardous chemicals
•Ministerial Order No. (4) of 2021 regarding the fees of the licenses and services provided by the Supreme Council for Environment
•Ministerial Order No. (6) of 2013 amending order No. (4) of 2006 regarding the management of hazardous chemicals
•Ministerial Order No. (7) of 2002 regarding the control importation and use of prohibited and severely restricted chemicals, and not to import any chemical compound except after obtaining approvals of all concerned authorities, including the executive body of the Supreme Council for Environment
•Ministerial Order No. (7) of 2013 amending order No. (3) of 2006 regarding the management of hazardous waste
•Ministerial Order No. 4 of 2014 regarding the management of the environmental consulting offices operations in the Kingdom of Bahrain
•Order No. (2) of 2020 determining the categories of fees for licensing refrigeration media, refrigeration units and air conditioning units as decided by the Chairman of the Supreme Council for the Environment
•Requirements for business activities
•law No. (1) of 2020 regarding the management of refrigeration media, refrigeration

units and air conditioning units as decided by the Chairman of the Supreme Council for the Environment
•law No. (2) of 2019 regarding the ban on the import of plastic waste of all kinds as decided by the Chairman of the Supreme Council for the Environment
•law No. (204) of 2018 regarding banning the export of some types of local fishes, shrimps and other aquatic organisms, and coordinating with the Agriculture and Marine Resources at the Ministry of Works, Municipalities and Urban Planning regarding the import and export of some species

Municipality Affairs (Post) (30111)

Approval Name	Description	Estimated Time
Site Approval for manufacturing activities (Type B)	Municipality Approval for the Commercial Registration address or the site in which the Activity will be practiced	3 Days

Fee Details (if any)

10 BD

License Information

General Conditions:
1. Size of shop/premises must be sufficient for the activity
2. Businesses may not carry out the activity outside the boundaries of the shop/ premises
3. It is prohibited to display or store any items or equipment outside the shop / premises boundary without prior approval from the Municipality. In the event of non-compliance, the Ministry of Municipality Affairs has the right to take necessary action.
4. Maintain cleanliness of the site
5. Comply with the parking space regulations as per the Construction Regulatory Requirements

Activity Specific Conditions:
1. The Commercial Registration for this activity can only be registered in service and industrial streets/areas

Note: Uploading pictures of the site/shop may expedite the process of obtaining approval

Required Documents

- Lease agreement (after obtaining the necessary approvals from other licensing entities)
- Shop photos

Other Documents

- Cabinet's Decision (56) of the year 2022 regarding the Regulatory Requirements of Construction for various areas in the Kingdom of Bahrain

Directorate Of Industrial Developments (Final Site Inspection) (30111)

Approval Name	Description	Estimated Time
Notification Only	Notification to the Industrial development directorate on obtaining a commercial registration with the license to practice the activity.	There is no License Information in this license. Days

Fee Details (if any)

There is no Estimated Processing Time (Days) in this license.

License Information

The industrial license is automatically issued by the Industrial development Directorate after obtaining the approval of other licensing/approving entities.

Please ensure that the actual production date does no exceed the expected production date.

If actual production will start on or before the expected production date please apply for a “New Industrial Registration” by following the steps below:

1- Visit the Industrial services system (www.industry.bh).
2- Select “Industrial Registration”.
3- Select “New Registration” application.

In the event that the actual production date will exceed the expected production date an “Extension of expected production date” application must be submitted by following the steps below:

1- Visit the Industrial services system (www.industry.bh).

2- Select “Industrial License”.
3- Select “Extension of expected production date” application.

Please note that failure to do so within 60 days from the expected production date will result in a violation to be added.

Other Documents

- Law No. (81) of 2006 with respect to approving The Common Industrial Law of the GCC
- Ministerial Resolution No. (11) of 2009 with respect to promulgating Implementing Regulation
- Operational requirements for the directorate of industrial developments activities

Manufacturing

ISIC4	Business activity
30112	Construction of Floating structures

Description

This activity includes:
- building of hovercraft (except recreation-type hovercraft)
- construction of drilling platforms, floating or submersible
- construction of floating structures: floating docks, pontoons, coffer-dams, floating landing stages, buoys, floating tanks, barges, lighters, floating cranes, non-recreational inflatable rafts etc.
- manufacture of sections for ships and floating structures

This activity excludes:
- manufacture of inflatable boats or rafts for recreation, see 3012
- specialized repair and maintenance of ships and floating structures, see 3315

Business Requirements

Age

18 and above

Allowed for Nationalities

Bahraini 100%		GCC 100%	
American 100%		Singaporean 100%	
Icelander 100%		Liechtenstein er 100%	
Norwegian 100%		Swiss 100%	

Foreign Allowed up to 100%

Legal Type

It is allowed to register according to the legal forms mentioned below

Allowed for Individual Commercial Registration (ICR) : Yes

Allowed for Company Commercial Registration (CCR) : Yes

- Bahrain Shareholding Company (Public)
- With Limited Liability Company
- Branch of a Foreign Company
- Bahrain Shareholding Company (Closed)
- Partnership Company
- Simple Commandite Company
- Commandite By Shares Company
- Non Profit Company

Required Step of Licenses and Approvals

Ministry / Directorate	License / Approval Requirements	Approval Type
Municipality Affairs	Site Approval for manufacturing activities	Post

	(Type B)	

Municipality Affairs (Post) (30112)

Approval Name	Description	Estimated Time
Site Approval for manufacturing activities (Type B)	Municipality Approval for the Commercial Registration address or the site in which the Activity will be practiced	3 Days

Fee Details (if any)

10 BD

License Information

General Conditions:
1. Size of shop/premises must be sufficient for the activity
2. Businesses may not carry out the activity outside the boundaries of the shop/ premises
3. It is prohibited to display or store any items or equipment outside the shop / premises boundary without prior approval from the Municipality. In the event of non-compliance, the Ministry of Municipality Affairs has the right to take necessary action.
4. Maintain cleanliness of the site
5. Comply with the parking space regulations as per the Construction Regulatory Requirements

Activity Specific Conditions:
1. The Commercial Registration for this activity can only be registered in service and industrial streets/areas

Note: Uploading pictures of the site/shop may expedite the process of obtaining approval

Required Documents

- Lease agreement (after obtaining the necessary approvals from other licensing entities)
- Shop photos

Other Documents

- Cabinet's Decision (56) of the year 2022 regarding the Regulatory Requirements of Construction for various areas in the Kingdom of Bahrain

Manufacturing

ISIC4	Business activity
3012	Building of Pleasure and sporting boats

Description

This activity includes:
- manufacture of inflatable boats and rafts
- building of sailboats with or without auxiliary motor
- building of motor boats
- building of recreation-type hovercraft
- manufacture of personal watercraft
- manufacture of other pleasure and sporting boats:
. canoes, kayaks, rowing boats, skiffs

Business Requirements

Age

18 and above

Allowed for Nationalities

Bahraini 100%		GCC 100%	
American 100%		Singaporean 100%	
Icelander 100%		Liechtenstein er 100%	
Norwegian 100%		Swiss 100%	

Foreign Allowed up to 100%

Legal Type

It is allowed to register according to the legal forms mentioned below

Allowed for Individual Commercial Registration (ICR) : Yes

Allowed for Company Commercial Registration (CCR) : Yes

- Bahrain Shareholding Company (Public)
- With Limited Liability Company
- Branch of a Foreign Company
- Bahrain Shareholding Company (Closed)
- Partnership Company
- Simple Commandite Company
- Commandite By Shares Company
- Non Profit Company

Required Step of Licenses and Approvals

Ministry / Directorate	License / Approval Requirements	Approval Type
Directorate Of Industrial Developments	Approval by Directorate of Industrial Developments(Pre)	Pre
Supreme Council for Environment	Environmental Approval for Industrial activity	Post
Municipality Affairs	Site Approval for manufacturing activities (Type B)	Post
Directorate Of Industrial Developments	Notification Only	Final Site Inspection

Directorate Of Industrial Developments (Pre) (3012)

Approval Name	Description	Estimated Time
Approval by Directorate of Industrial Developments(Pre)	This is a preliminary approval given by the Directorate of Industrial Development to ensure that the applicant has selected the appropriate activity based on the information provided	5 Days

Fee Details (if any)

There is no Estimated Processing Time (Days) in this license.

License Information

Applicants would have to provide through the system the following information:

General Information:

- Total Amount Invested in the Project (This should include value of machinery and fixed assets)
- Estimated number of workforce (Bahraini and Non-Bahraini)
- Expected utility consumption of electricity, water and natural gas
- Total area of the project

Activity Information:

- Product Information:

1) The products to be manufactured by choosing the appropriate HS codes (HS code list can be downloaded from the application if needed).
2) Product name.
3) Expected production date (The expected date on which the factory will start producing the product).

4) The maximum installed capacity and the expected production capacity per year based on the fixed HS code's unit of measure.

• Main raw materials: The main raw materials to be used in production and its source

• Main Machinery and Equipment: The main machinery and equipment to be used in production and its information.

• Manufacturing process: Brief on the manufacturing process explaining how materials are transformed from one state to another until reaching the final product, mentioning the types of materials used, the operations performed, and the machinery/equipment used in each step (if any) for each product.

Required Documents

•Photos of machinery/ equipment to be used
•Photos of products to be manufactured

Other Documents

•Law No. (81) of 2006 with respect to approving The Common Industrial Law of the GCC
•Ministerial Resolution No. (11) of 2009
•Operational requirements for the directorate of industrial developments activities

Supreme Council for Environment (Post) (3012)

Approval Name	Description	Estimated Time
Environmental Approval for Industrial activity	Environmental Approval for Industrial Activity	There is no License Information in this license. Days

Fee Details (if any)

30 Bahraini Dinars or 200 Bahraini Dinars for the fast-track procedure (when the data requested within the EA-2 form is sufficient without the need for additional studies) 4000 Bahraini Dinars or 6000 Bahraini Dinars for the fast-track procedure (when it is required to submit an environmental impact assessment study for the project) + with the additional payment amount of “100 Bahraini Dinars when it is required to submit a proposal for the scope of study before submitting it or 500 Bahraini Dinars for a fast-track procedure when the proposed scope of the study is being submitted before study submitting stage”

License Information

To check the requirements for this approval, kindly download the detailed requirements sheet from the other downloadable documents section, which includes the following requirements:

- Building layout Engineering and Equipment Requirements
- Work-place Requirements
- Storage Requirements
- Material Management Requirements
- Waste Management Requirements
- Documents and Reporting Requirements
- General Requirements

Subject to the information provided in the (EA-2) electronic form, some projects may require preparation and submission of an Environmental Impact Assessment Study that must be prepared by an environmental consultancy office “accredited by the Supreme Council for Environment”; where the scope of the study shall be agreed upon in writing between the Council, the Investor, and the Consultant. Each consultant office shall determine its fees for preparing the study.

Other Documents

- Requirements for business activities

Municipality Affairs (Post) (3012)

Approval Name	Description	Estimated Time
Site Approval for manufacturing activities (Type B)	Municipality Approval for the Commercial Registration address or the site in which the Activity will be practiced	3 Days

Fee Details (if any)

10 BD

License Information

General Conditions:
1. Size of shop/premises must be sufficient for the activity
2. Businesses may not carry out the activity outside the boundaries of the shop/ premises
3. It is prohibited to display or store any items or equipment outside the shop / premises boundary without prior approval from the Municipality. In the event of non-compliance, the Ministry of Municipality Affairs has the right to take necessary action.
4. Maintain cleanliness of the site
5. Comply with the parking space regulations as per the Construction Regulatory Requirements

Activity Specific Conditions:
1. The Commercial Registration for this activity can only be registered in service and industrial streets/areas

Note: Uploading pictures of the site/shop may expedite the process of obtaining approval

Required Documents

- Lease agreement (after obtaining the necessary approvals from other licensing entities)
- Shop photos

Other Documents

- Cabinet's Decision (56) of the year 2022 regarding the Regulatory Requirements of Construction for various areas in the Kingdom of Bahrain

Directorate Of Industrial Developments (Final Site Inspection) (3012)

Approval Name	Description	Estimated Time
Notification Only	Notification to the Industrial development directorate on obtaining a commercial registration with the license to practice the activity.	There is no License Information in this license. Days

Fee Details (if any)

There is no Estimated Processing Time (Days) in this license.

License Information

The industrial license is automatically issued by the Industrial development Directorate after obtaining the approval of other licensing/approving entities.

Please ensure that the actual production date does no exceed the expected production date.

If actual production will start on or before the expected production date please apply for a “New Industrial Registration” by following the steps below:

1- Visit the Industrial services system (www.industry.bh).
2- Select “Industrial Registration”.
3- Select “New Registration” application.

In the event that the actual production date will exceed the expected production date an “Extension of expected production date” application must be submitted by following the steps below:

1- Visit the Industrial services system (www.industry.bh).

2- Select “Industrial License”.
3- Select “Extension of expected production date” application.

Please note that failure to do so within 60 days from the expected production date will result in a violation to be added.

Other Documents

- Law No. (81) of 2006 with respect to approving The Common Industrial Law of the GCC
- Ministerial Resolution No. (11) of 2009 with respect to promulgating Implementing Regulation
- Operational requirements for the directorate of industrial developments activities

Manufacturing

ISIC4	Business activity
302	Manufacture of railway locomotives and rolling stock

Description

This activity includes:
- manufacture of electric, diesel, steam and other rail locomotives
- manufacture of self-propelled railway or tramway coaches, vans and trucks, maintenance or service vehicles
- manufacture of railway or tramway rolling stock, not self-propelled: passenger coaches, goods vans, tank wagons, self-discharging vans and wagons, workshop vans, crane vans, tenders etc.
- manufacture of specialized parts of railway or tramway locomotives or of rolling stock: bogies, axles and wheels, brakes and parts of brakes; hooks and coupling devices, buffers and buffer parts; shock absorbers; wagon and locomotive frames; bodies; corridor connections etc.
- manufacture of mechanical and electromechanical signalling, safety and traffic control equipment for railways, tramways, inland waterways, roads, parking facilities, airfields etc.
- manufacture of mining locomotives and mining rail cars
- manufacture of railway car seats

This class excludes:
- manufacture of unassembled rails, see 241
- manufacture of assembled railway track fixtures, see 2599
- manufacture of electric motors, see 271
- manufacture of electrical signalling, safety or traffic-control equipment, see 279
- manufacture of engines and turbines, see 28

Business Requirements

Age

18 and above

Allowed for Nationalities

Bahraini 100%		GCC 100%	
American 100%		Singaporean 100%	
Icelander 100%		Liechtenstein er 100%	
Norwegian 100%		Swiss 100%	

Foreign Allowed up to 100%

Legal Type

It is allowed to register according to the legal forms mentioned below

Allowed for Individual Commercial Registration (ICR) : Yes

Allowed for Company Commercial Registration (CCR) : Yes

- Bahrain Shareholding Company (Public)
- With Limited Liability Company
- Branch of a Foreign Company
- Bahrain Shareholding Company (Closed)
- Partnership Company
- Simple Commandite Company
- Commandite By Shares Company
- Non Profit Company

Required Step of Licenses and Approvals

Ministry / Directorate	License / Approval Requirements	Approval Type
Directorate Of Industrial Developments	Approval by Directorate of Industrial	Pre

	Developments(Pre)	
Supreme Council for Environment	Environmental Approval for Manufacture of railway locomotives and rolling stock activity	Post
Municipality Affairs	Site Approval for manufacturing activities (Type C)	Post
Directorate Of Industrial Developments	Notification Only	Final Site Inspection

Directorate Of Industrial Developments (Pre) (302)

Approval Name	Description	Estimated Time
Approval by Directorate of Industrial Developments(Pre)	This is a preliminary approval given by the Directorate of Industrial Development to ensure that the applicant has selected the appropriate activity based on the information provided	5 Days

Fee Details (if any)

There is no Estimated Processing Time (Days) in this license.

License Information

Applicants would have to provide through the system the following information:

General Information:

- Total Amount Invested in the Project (This should include value of machinery and fixed assets)
- Estimated number of workforce (Bahraini and Non-Bahraini)
- Expected utility consumption of electricity, water and natural gas
- Total area of the project

Activity Information:

- Product Information:

1) The products to be manufactured by choosing the appropriate HS codes (HS code list can be downloaded from the application if needed).
2) Product name.
3) Expected production date (The expected date on which the factory will start producing the product).

4) The maximum installed capacity and the expected production capacity per year based on the fixed HS code's unit of measure.

• Main raw materials: The main raw materials to be used in production and its source

• Main Machinery and Equipment: The main machinery and equipment to be used in production and its information.

• Manufacturing process: Brief on the manufacturing process explaining how materials are transformed from one state to another until reaching the final product, mentioning the types of materials used, the operations performed, and the machinery/equipment used in each step (if any) for each product.

Required Documents

•Photos of machinery/ equipment to be used
•Photos of products to be manufactured

Other Documents

•Law No. (81) of 2006 with respect to approving The Common Industrial Law of the GCC
•Ministerial Resolution No. (11) of 2009
•Operational requirements for the directorate of industrial developments activities

Supreme Council for Environment (Post) (302)

Approval Name	Description	Estimated Time
Environmental Approval for Manufacture of railway locomotives and rolling stock activity	This service aims to assess the environmental impact and licensing of development, industrial and production projects and activities, in accordance with the standards of protecting the environment and its natural resources	10 Days

Fee Details (if any)

- 30 Bahraini Dinars or 200 Bahraini Dinars for the fast-track procedure (when the data requested within the EA-2 form is sufficient without the need for additional studies)
- 4000 Bahraini Dinars or 6000 Bahraini Dinars for the fast track procedure (when it is necessary to submit an environmental impact assessment study for the project), with an additional payment of 100 Bahraini Dinars when it is necessary to submit a proposal for the scope of the study before submitting it or 500 Bahraini Dinars for a fast track procedure when the proposed scope of the study is being submitted before the study

License Information

To check the requirements for this approval, kindly download the detailed requirements sheet from the other downloadable documents section, which includes the following requirements:

- Building layout engineering and equipment requirements
- Workplace requirements
- Storage requirements
- Material management requirements
- Waste Management Requirements

- Documents and reporting requirements
- General requirements

Other Documents

- Annex to the Minister of Housing, Municipalities and Environment order regarding the project's environmental assessment
- Law No. (2) of 2021 regarding the environmental standards of air as decided by the Chairman of the Supreme Council for Environment
- Law No. (3) of 2021 regarding the environmental standards of water as decided by the Chairman of the Supreme Council for the Environment
- Law No. (54) of 2014 regarding the approval of the unified law regarding substances that deplete the ozone layer for the GCC countries
- Law No. (7) of 2022 regarding the environment
- Ministerial Order No. (1) of 1998 regarding Project's Environmental Assessment
- Ministerial Order No. (10) of 2006 regarding the installation of devices for on-line monitoring of atmospheric air pollutants
- Ministerial Order No. (11) of 2019 regarding the issue of technical specification of plastic products
- Ministerial Order No. (3) of 2005 regarding environmental requirements and standards in workplaces, especially regarding workers' exposure to heat and noise, and the provision of tools and protective clothing such as gloves, glasses, face masks and earplugs, with a commitment to use them during work
- Ministerial Order No. (3) of 2006 regarding the management of hazardous waste
- Ministerial Order No. (4) of 2005 regarding the management of used oils
- Ministerial Order No. (4) of 2006 regarding the management of hazardous chemicals
- Ministerial Order No. (4) of 2021 regarding the fees of the licenses and services provided by the Supreme Council for Environment
- Ministerial Order No. (6) of 2013 amending order No. (4) of 2006 regarding the management of hazardous chemicals
- Ministerial Order No. (7) of 2002 regarding the control importation and use of prohibited and severely restricted chemicals, and not to import any chemical compound except after obtaining approvals of all concerned authorities, including the executive body of the Supreme Council for Environment
- Ministerial Order No. (7) of 2013 amending order No. (3) of 2006 regarding the management of hazardous waste
- Ministerial Order No. 4 of 2014 regarding the management of the environmental consulting offices operations in the Kingdom of Bahrain
- Order No. (2) of 2020 determining the categories of fees for licensing refrigeration media, refrigeration units and air conditioning units as decided by the Chairman of the Supreme Council for the Environment
- Requirements for business activities
- law No. (1) of 2020 regarding the management of refrigeration media, refrigeration units and air conditioning units as decided by the Chairman of the Supreme Council for the Environment

•law No. (2) of 2019 regarding the ban on the import of plastic waste of all kinds as decided by the Chairman of the Supreme Council for the Environment

Municipality Affairs (Post) (302)

Approval Name	Description	Estimated Time
Site Approval for manufacturing activities (Type C)	Municipality Approval for the Commercial Registration address or the site in which the Activity will be practiced	3 Days

Fee Details (if any)

10 BD

License Information

General Conditions:
1. Size of shop/premises must be sufficient for the activity
2. Businesses may not carry out the activity outside the boundaries of the shop/ premises
3. It is prohibited to display or store any items or equipment outside the shop / premises boundary without prior approval from the Municipality. In the event of non-compliance, the Ministry of Municipality Affairs has the right to take necessary action.
4. Maintain cleanliness of the site
5. Comply with the parking space regulations as per the Construction Regulatory Requirements

Activity Specific Conditions:
1. The commercial registration for this activity can be registered on Industrial streets/ areas only

Note: Uploading pictures of the site/shop may expedite the process of obtaining approval

Required Documents

- Lease agreement (after obtaining the necessary approvals from other licensing entities)
- Shop photos

Other Documents

- Cabinet's Decision (93) of the year 2023 regarding the Regulatory Requirements of Construction for various areas in the Kingdom of Bahrain

Directorate Of Industrial Developments (Final Site Inspection) (302)

Approval Name	Description	Estimated Time
Notification Only	Notification to the Industrial development directorate on obtaining a commercial registration with the license to practice the activity.	There is no License Information in this license. Days

Fee Details (if any)

There is no Estimated Processing Time (Days) in this license.

License Information

The industrial license is automatically issued by the Industrial development Directorate after obtaining the approval of other licensing/approving entities.

Please ensure that the actual production date does no exceed the expected production date.

If actual production will start on or before the expected production date please apply for a “New Industrial Registration” by following the steps below:

1- Visit the Industrial services system (www.industry.bh).
2- Select “Industrial Registration”.
3- Select “New Registration” application.

In the event that the actual production date will exceed the expected production date an “Extension of expected production date” application must be submitted by following the steps below:

1- Visit the Industrial services system (www.industry.bh).

2- Select “Industrial License”.
3- Select “Extension of expected production date” application.

Please note that failure to do so within 60 days from the expected production date will result in a violation to be added.

Other Documents

- Law No. (81) of 2006 with respect to approving The Common Industrial Law of the GCC
- Ministerial Resolution No. (11) of 2009 with respect to promulgating Implementing Regulation
- Operational requirements for the directorate of industrial developments activities

ISIC4	Business activity
303	Manufacture of air and spacecraft and related machinery

Description

This activity includes:
- manufacture of airplanes for the transport of goods or passengers, for use by the defence forces, for sport or other purposes
- manufacture of helicopters
- manufacture of gliders, hang-gliders
- manufacture of dirigibles and hot air balloons
- manufacture of parts and accessories of the aircraft of this class: major assemblies such as fuselages, wings, doors, control surfaces, landing gear, fuel tanks, nacelles etc.; airscrews, helicopter rotors and propelled rotor blades; motors and engines of a kind typically found on aircraft; parts of turbojets and turboprops for aircraft
- manufacture of ground flying trainers
- manufacture of spacecraft and launch vehicles, satellites, planetary probes, orbital stations, shuttles
- overhaul and conversion of aircraft or aircraft engines
- manufacture of aircraft seats

This activity excludes:
- manufacture of parachutes, see 13
- manufacture of telecommunication equipment for satellites, see 26
- manufacture of aircraft instrumentation and aeronautical instruments, see 26
- manufacture of air navigation systems, see 26
- manufacture of lighting equipment for aircraft, see 274
- manufacture of ignition parts and other electrical parts for internal combustion engines, see 279
- manufacture of pistons, piston rings and carburetors, see 28
- manufacture of aircraft launching gear, aircraft carrier catapults and related equipment, see 28

Business Requirements

Age

18 and above

Allowed for Nationalities

Bahraini 100%		GCC 100%	
American 100%		Singaporean 100%	
Icelander 100%		Liechtenstein er 100%	
Norwegian 100%		Swiss 100%	

Foreign Allowed up to 100%

Legal Type

It is allowed to register according to the legal forms mentioned below

Allowed for Individual Commercial Registration (ICR) : Yes

Allowed for Company Commercial Registration (CCR) : Yes

- Bahrain Shareholding Company (Public)
- With Limited Liability Company
- Branch of a Foreign Company
- Bahrain Shareholding Company (Closed)
- Partnership Company
- Simple Commandite Company
- Commandite By Shares Company
- Non Profit Company

Required Step of Licenses and Approvals

Ministry / Directorate	License / Approval Requirements	Approval Type
Directorate Of Industrial Developments	Approval by Directorate of Industrial	Pre

	Developments(Pre)	
Supreme Council for Environment	Environmental Approval for Manufacture of air and spacecraft and related machinery activity	Post
Municipality Affairs	Site Approval for manufacturing activities (Type C)	Post
Directorate Of Industrial Developments	Notification Only	Final Site Inspection

Directorate Of Industrial Developments (Pre) (303)

Approval Name	Description	Estimated Time
Approval by Directorate of Industrial Developments(Pre)	This is a preliminary approval given by the Directorate of Industrial Development to ensure that the applicant has selected the appropriate activity based on the information provided	5 Days

Fee Details (if any)

There is no Estimated Processing Time (Days) in this license.

License Information

Applicants would have to provide through the system the following information:

General Information:

- Total Amount Invested in the Project (This should include value of machinery and fixed assets)
- Estimated number of workforce (Bahraini and Non-Bahraini)
- Expected utility consumption of electricity, water and natural gas
- Total area of the project

Activity Information:

- Product Information:

1) The products to be manufactured by choosing the appropriate HS codes (HS code list can be downloaded from the application if needed).
2) Product name.
3) Expected production date (The expected date on which the factory will start producing the product).

4) The maximum installed capacity and the expected production capacity per year based on the fixed HS code's unit of measure.

• Main raw materials: The main raw materials to be used in production and its source

• Main Machinery and Equipment: The main machinery and equipment to be used in production and its information.

• Manufacturing process: Brief on the manufacturing process explaining how materials are transformed from one state to another until reaching the final product, mentioning the types of materials used, the operations performed, and the machinery/equipment used in each step (if any) for each product.

Required Documents

•Photos of machinery/ equipment to be used
•Photos of products to be manufactured

Other Documents

•Law No. (81) of 2006 with respect to approving The Common Industrial Law of the GCC
•Ministerial Resolution No. (11) of 2009
•Operational requirements for the directorate of industrial developments activities

Supreme Council for Environment (Post) (303)

Approval Name	Description	Estimated Time
Environmental Approval for Manufacture of air and spacecraft and related machinery activity	This service aims to assess the environmental impact and licensing of development, industrial and production projects and activities, in accordance with the standards of protecting the environment and its natural resources	10 Days

Fee Details (if any)

- 30 Bahraini Dinars or 200 Bahraini Dinars for the fast-track procedure (when the data requested within the EA-2 form is sufficient without the need for additional studies)
- 4000 Bahraini Dinars or 6000 Bahraini Dinars for the fast track procedure (when it is necessary to submit an environmental impact assessment study for the project), with an additional payment of 100 Bahraini Dinars when it is necessary to submit a proposal for the scope of the study before submitting it or 500 Bahraini Dinars for a fast track procedure when the proposed scope of the study is being submitted before the study

License Information

To check the requirements for this approval, kindly download the detailed requirements sheet from the other downloadable documents section, which includes the following requirements:

- Building layout engineering and equipment requirements
- Workplace requirements
- Storage requirements
- Material management requirements
- Waste Management Requirements

- Documents and reporting requirements
- General requirements

Other Documents

- Annex to the Minister of Housing, Municipalities and Environment order regarding the project's environmental assessment
- Law No. (2) of 2021 regarding the environmental standards of air as decided by the Chairman of the Supreme Council for Environment
- Law No. (3) of 2021 regarding the environmental standards of water as decided by the Chairman of the Supreme Council for the Environment
- Law No. (54) of 2014 regarding the approval of the unified law regarding substances that deplete the ozone layer for the GCC countries
- Law No. (7) of 2022 regarding the environment
- Ministerial Order No. (1) of 1998 regarding Project's Environmental Assessment
- Ministerial Order No. (10) of 2006 regarding the installation of devices for on-line monitoring of atmospheric air pollutants
- Ministerial Order No. (11) of 2019 regarding the issue of technical specification of plastic products
- Ministerial Order No. (3) of 2005 regarding environmental requirements and standards in workplaces, especially regarding workers' exposure to heat and noise, and the provision of tools and protective clothing such as gloves, glasses, face masks and earplugs, with a commitment to use them during work
- Ministerial Order No. (3) of 2006 regarding the management of hazardous waste
- Ministerial Order No. (4) of 2005 regarding the management of used oils
- Ministerial Order No. (4) of 2006 regarding the management of hazardous chemicals
- Ministerial Order No. (4) of 2021 regarding the fees of the licenses and services provided by the Supreme Council for Environment
- Ministerial Order No. (6) of 2013 amending order No. (4) of 2006 regarding the management of hazardous chemicals
- Ministerial Order No. (7) of 2002 regarding the control importation and use of prohibited and severely restricted chemicals, and not to import any chemical compound except after obtaining approvals of all concerned authorities, including the executive body of the Supreme Council for Environment
- Ministerial Order No. (7) of 2013 amending order No. (3) of 2006 regarding the management of hazardous waste
- Ministerial Order No. 4 of 2014 regarding the management of the environmental consulting offices operations in the Kingdom of Bahrain
- Order No. (2) of 2020 determining the categories of fees for licensing refrigeration media, refrigeration units and air conditioning units as decided by the Chairman of the Supreme Council for the Environment
- Requirements for business activities
- law No. (1) of 2020 regarding the management of refrigeration media, refrigeration units and air conditioning units as decided by the Chairman of the Supreme Council for the Environment

•law No. (2) of 2019 regarding the ban on the import of plastic waste of all kinds as decided by the Chairman of the Supreme Council for the Environment

Municipality Affairs (Post) (303)

Approval Name	Description	Estimated Time
Site Approval for manufacturing activities (Type C)	Municipality Approval for the Commercial Registration address or the site in which the Activity will be practiced	3 Days

Fee Details (if any)

10 BD

License Information

General Conditions:
1. Size of shop/premises must be sufficient for the activity
2. Businesses may not carry out the activity outside the boundaries of the shop/ premises
3. It is prohibited to display or store any items or equipment outside the shop / premises boundary without prior approval from the Municipality. In the event of non-compliance, the Ministry of Municipality Affairs has the right to take necessary action.
4. Maintain cleanliness of the site
5. Comply with the parking space regulations as per the Construction Regulatory Requirements

Activity Specific Conditions:
1. The commercial registration for this activity can be registered on Industrial streets/ areas only

Note: Uploading pictures of the site/shop may expedite the process of obtaining approval

Required Documents

- Lease agreement (after obtaining the necessary approvals from other licensing entities)
- Shop photos

Other Documents

- Cabinet's Decision (93) of the year 2023 regarding the Regulatory Requirements of Construction for various areas in the Kingdom of Bahrain

Directorate Of Industrial Developments (Final Site Inspection) (303)

Approval Name	Description	Estimated Time
Notification Only	Notification to the Industrial development directorate on obtaining a commercial registration with the license to practice the activity.	There is no License Information in this license. Days

Fee Details (if any)

There is no Estimated Processing Time (Days) in this license.

License Information

The industrial license is automatically issued by the Industrial development Directorate after obtaining the approval of other licensing/approving entities.

Please ensure that the actual production date does no exceed the expected production date.

If actual production will start on or before the expected production date please apply for a “New Industrial Registration” by following the steps below:

1- Visit the Industrial services system (www.industry.bh).
2- Select “Industrial Registration”.
3- Select “New Registration” application.

In the event that the actual production date will exceed the expected production date an “Extension of expected production date” application must be submitted by following the steps below:

1- Visit the Industrial services system (www.industry.bh).

2- Select “Industrial License”.
3- Select “Extension of expected production date” application.

Please note that failure to do so within 60 days from the expected production date will result in a violation to be added.

Other Documents

- Law No. (81) of 2006 with respect to approving The Common Industrial Law of the GCC
- Ministerial Resolution No. (11) of 2009 with respect to promulgating Implementing Regulation
- Operational requirements for the directorate of industrial developments activities

Manufacturing

ISIC4	Business activity
3091	Manufacture of motorcycles

Description

This activity includes:
- manufacture of motorcycles, mopeds and cycles fitted with an auxiliary engine
- manufacture of engines for motorcycles
- manufacture of sidecars
- manufacture of parts and accessories for motorcycles

This activity excludes:
- manufacture of bicycles, see 3092
- manufacture of invalid carriages, see 3092

Business Requirements

Age

18 and above

Allowed for Nationalities

Bahraini 100%	GCC 100%
American 100%	Singaporean 100%
Icelander 100%	Liechtensteiner 100%
Norwegian 100%	Swiss 100%

Foreign Allowed up to 100%

Legal Type

It is allowed to register according to the legal forms mentioned below

Allowed for Individual Commercial Registration (ICR) : Yes

Allowed for Company Commercial Registration (CCR) : Yes

- Bahrain Shareholding Company (Public)
- With Limited Liability Company
- Branch of a Foreign Company
- Bahrain Shareholding Company (Closed)
- Partnership Company
- Simple Commandite Company
- Commandite By Shares Company
- Non Profit Company

Required Step of Licenses and Approvals

Ministry / Directorate	License / Approval Requirements	Approval Type
Directorate Of Industrial Developments	Approval by Directorate of Industrial Developments(Pre)	Pre
Supreme Council for Environment	Environmental Approval for Manufacture of motorcycles activity	Post
Municipality Affairs	Site Approval for manufacturing activities (Type C)	Post
Directorate Of Industrial Developments	Notification Only	Final Site Inspection

Directorate Of Industrial Developments (Pre) (3091)

Approval Name	Description	Estimated Time
Approval by Directorate of Industrial Developments(Pre)	This is a preliminary approval given by the Directorate of Industrial Development to ensure that the applicant has selected the appropriate activity based on the information provided	5 Days

Fee Details (if any)

There is no Estimated Processing Time (Days) in this license.

License Information

Applicants would have to provide through the system the following information:

General Information:

- Total Amount Invested in the Project (This should include value of machinery and fixed assets)
- Estimated number of workforce (Bahraini and Non-Bahraini)
- Expected utility consumption of electricity, water and natural gas
- Total area of the project

Activity Information:

- Product Information:

1) The products to be manufactured by choosing the appropriate HS codes (HS code list can be downloaded from the application if needed).
2) Product name.
3) Expected production date (The expected date on which the factory will start producing the product).

4) The maximum installed capacity and the expected production capacity per year based on the fixed HS code's unit of measure.

• Main raw materials: The main raw materials to be used in production and its source

• Main Machinery and Equipment: The main machinery and equipment to be used in production and its information.

• Manufacturing process: Brief on the manufacturing process explaining how materials are transformed from one state to another until reaching the final product, mentioning the types of materials used, the operations performed, and the machinery/equipment used in each step (if any) for each product.

Required Documents

•Photos of machinery/ equipment to be used
•Photos of products to be manufactured

Other Documents

•Law No. (81) of 2006 with respect to approving The Common Industrial Law of the GCC
•Ministerial Resolution No. (11) of 2009
•Operational requirements for the directorate of industrial developments activities

Supreme Council for Environment (Post) (3091)

Approval Name	Description	Estimated Time
Environmental Approval for Manufacture of motorcycles activity	This service aims to assess the environmental impact and licensing of development, industrial and production projects and activities, in accordance with the standards of protecting the environment and its natural resources	10 Days

Fee Details (if any)

- 30 Bahraini Dinars or 200 Bahraini Dinars for the fast-track procedure (when the data requested within the EA-2 form is sufficient without the need for additional studies)
- 4000 Bahraini Dinars or 6000 Bahraini Dinars for the fast track procedure (when it is necessary to submit an environmental impact assessment study for the project), with an additional payment of 100 Bahraini Dinars when it is necessary to submit a proposal for the scope of the study before submitting it or 500 Bahraini Dinars for a fast track procedure when the proposed scope of the study is being submitted before the study

License Information

To check the requirements for this approval, kindly download the detailed requirements sheet from the other downloadable documents section, which includes the following requirements:

- Building layout engineering and equipment requirements
- Workplace requirements
- Storage requirements
- Material management requirements
- Waste Management Requirements

• Documents and reporting requirements
• General requirements

Other Documents

•Annex to the Minister of Housing, Municipalities and Environment order regarding the project's environmental assessment
•Law No. (2) of 2021 regarding the environmental standards of air as decided by the Chairman of the Supreme Council for Environment
•Law No. (3) of 2021 regarding the environmental standards of water as decided by the Chairman of the Supreme Council for the Environment
•Law No. (54) of 2014 regarding the approval of the unified law regarding substances that deplete the ozone layer for the GCC countries
•Law No. (7) of 2022 regarding the environment
•Ministerial Order No. (1) of 1998 regarding Project's Environmental Assessment
•Ministerial Order No. (10) of 2006 regarding the installation of devices for on-line monitoring of atmospheric air pollutants
•Ministerial Order No. (11) of 2019 regarding the issue of technical specification of plastic products
•Ministerial Order No. (3) of 2005 regarding environmental requirements and standards in workplaces, especially regarding workers' exposure to heat and noise, and the provision of tools and protective clothing such as gloves, glasses, face masks and earplugs, with a commitment to use them during work
•Ministerial Order No. (3) of 2006 regarding the management of hazardous waste
•Ministerial Order No. (4) of 2005 regarding the management of used oils
•Ministerial Order No. (4) of 2006 regarding the management of hazardous chemicals
•Ministerial Order No. (4) of 2021 regarding the fees of the licenses and services provided by the Supreme Council for Environment
•Ministerial Order No. (4) of 2021 regarding the fees of the licenses and services provided by the Supreme Council for Environment
•Ministerial Order No. (6) of 2013 amending order No. (4) of 2006 regarding the management of hazardous chemicals
•Ministerial Order No. (7) of 2002 regarding the control importation and use of prohibited and severely restricted chemicals, and not to import any chemical compound except after obtaining approvals of all concerned authorities, including the executive body of the Supreme Council for Environment
•Ministerial Order No. (7) of 2013 amending order No. (3) of 2006 regarding the management of hazardous waste
•Ministerial Order No. 4 of 2014 regarding the management of the environmental consulting offices operations in the Kingdom of Bahrain
•Order No. (2) of 2020 determining the categories of fees for licensing refrigeration media, refrigeration units and air conditioning units as decided by the Chairman of the Supreme Council for the Environment
•Requirements for business activities
•law No. (1) of 2020 regarding the management of refrigeration media, refrigeration

units and air conditioning units as decided by the Chairman of the Supreme Council for the Environment
•law No. (2) of 2019 regarding the ban on the import of plastic waste of all kinds as decided by the Chairman of the Supreme Council for the Environment

Municipality Affairs (Post) (3091)

Approval Name	Description	Estimated Time
Site Approval for manufacturing activities (Type C)	Municipality Approval for the Commercial Registration address or the site in which the Activity will be practiced	3 Days

Fee Details (if any)

10 BD

License Information

General Conditions:
1. Size of shop/premises must be sufficient for the activity
2. Businesses may not carry out the activity outside the boundaries of the shop/ premises
3. It is prohibited to display or store any items or equipment outside the shop / premises boundary without prior approval from the Municipality. In the event of non-compliance, the Ministry of Municipality Affairs has the right to take necessary action.
4. Maintain cleanliness of the site
5. Comply with the parking space regulations as per the Construction Regulatory Requirements

Activity Specific Conditions:
1. The commercial registration for this activity can be registered on Industrial streets/ areas only

Note: Uploading pictures of the site/shop may expedite the process of obtaining approval

Required Documents

- Lease agreement (after obtaining the necessary approvals from other licensing entities)
- Shop photos

Other Documents

- Cabinet's Decision (93) of the year 2023 regarding the Regulatory Requirements of Construction for various areas in the Kingdom of Bahrain

Directorate Of Industrial Developments (Final Site Inspection) (3091)

Approval Name	Description	Estimated Time
Notification Only	Notification to the Industrial development directorate on obtaining a commercial registration with the license to practice the activity.	There is no License Information in this license. Days

Fee Details (if any)

There is no Estimated Processing Time (Days) in this license.

License Information

The industrial license is automatically issued by the Industrial development Directorate after obtaining the approval of other licensing/approving entities.

Please ensure that the actual production date does no exceed the expected production date.

If actual production will start on or before the expected production date please apply for a “New Industrial Registration” by following the steps below:

1- Visit the Industrial services system (www.industry.bh).
2- Select “Industrial Registration”.
3- Select “New Registration” application.

In the event that the actual production date will exceed the expected production date an “Extension of expected production date” application must be submitted by following the steps below:

1- Visit the Industrial services system (www.industry.bh).

2- Select “Industrial License”.
3- Select “Extension of expected production date” application.

Please note that failure to do so within 60 days from the expected production date will result in a violation to be added.

Other Documents

- Law No. (81) of 2006 with respect to approving The Common Industrial Law of the GCC
- Ministerial Resolution No. (11) of 2009 with respect to promulgating Implementing Regulation
- Operational requirements for the directorate of industrial developments activities

Manufacturing

ISIC4	Business activity
3092	Manufacture of bicycles and invalid carriages

Description

This activity includes:
- manufacture of non-motorized bicycles and other cycles, including (delivery) tricycles, tandems, children`s bicycles and tricycles
- manufacture of parts and accessories of bicycles
- manufacture of invalid carriages with or without motor
- manufacture of parts and accessories of invalid carriages
- manufacture of baby carriages

This activity excludes:
- manufacture of bicycles with auxiliary motor, see 3091
- manufacture of wheeled toys designed to be ridden, including plastic bicycles and tricycles, see 324

Business Requirements

Age

18 and above

Allowed for Nationalities

Bahraini 100%		GCC 100%	
American 100%		Singaporean 100%	
Icelander 100%		Liechtenstein er 100%	
Norwegian 100%		Swiss 100%	

Foreign Allowed up to 100%

Legal Type

It is allowed to register according to the legal forms mentioned below

Allowed for Individual Commercial Registration (ICR) : Yes

Allowed for Company Commercial Registration (CCR) : Yes

- Bahrain Shareholding Company (Public)
- With Limited Liability Company
- Branch of a Foreign Company
- Bahrain Shareholding Company (Closed)
- Partnership Company
- Simple Commandite Company
- Commandite By Shares Company
- Non Profit Company

Required Step of Licenses and Approvals

Ministry / Directorate	License / Approval Requirements	Approval Type
Directorate Of Industrial Developments	Approval by Directorate of Industrial	Pre

	Developments(Pre)	
Municipality Affairs	Site Approval for manufacturing activities (Type B)	Post
Supreme Council for Environment	Environmental Approval for Manufacture of bicycles and invalid carriages activity	Post
Directorate Of Industrial Developments	Notification Only	Final Site Inspection

Directorate Of Industrial Developments (Pre) (3092)

Approval Name	Description	Estimated Time
Approval by Directorate of Industrial Developments(Pre)	This is a preliminary approval given by the Directorate of Industrial Development to ensure that the applicant has selected the appropriate activity based on the information provided	5 Days

Fee Details (if any)

There is no Estimated Processing Time (Days) in this license.

License Information

Applicants would have to provide through the system the following information:

General Information:

- Total Amount Invested in the Project (This should include value of machinery and fixed assets)
- Estimated number of workforce (Bahraini and Non-Bahraini)
- Expected utility consumption of electricity, water and natural gas
- Total area of the project

Activity Information:

- Product Information:

1) The products to be manufactured by choosing the appropriate HS codes (HS code list can be downloaded from the application if needed).
2) Product name.
3) Expected production date (The expected date on which the factory will start producing the product).

4) The maximum installed capacity and the expected production capacity per year based on the fixed HS code's unit of measure.

• Main raw materials: The main raw materials to be used in production and its source

• Main Machinery and Equipment: The main machinery and equipment to be used in production and its information.

• Manufacturing process: Brief on the manufacturing process explaining how materials are transformed from one state to another until reaching the final product, mentioning the types of materials used, the operations performed, and the machinery/equipment used in each step (if any) for each product.

Required Documents

•Photos of machinery/ equipment to be used
•Photos of products to be manufactured

Other Documents

•Law No. (81) of 2006 with respect to approving The Common Industrial Law of the GCC
•Ministerial Resolution No. (11) of 2009
•Operational requirements for the directorate of industrial developments activities

Municipality Affairs (Post) (3092)

Approval Name	Description	Estimated Time
Site Approval for manufacturing activities (Type B)	Municipality Approval for the Commercial Registration address or the site in which the Activity will be practiced	3 Days

Fee Details (if any)

10 BD

License Information

General Conditions:
1. Size of shop/premises must be sufficient for the activity
2. Businesses may not carry out the activity outside the boundaries of the shop/ premises
3. It is prohibited to display or store any items or equipment outside the shop / premises boundary without prior approval from the Municipality. In the event of non-compliance, the Ministry of Municipality Affairs has the right to take necessary action.
4. Maintain cleanliness of the site
5. Comply with the parking space regulations as per the Construction Regulatory Requirements

Activity Specific Conditions:
1. The Commercial Registration for this activity can only be registered in service and industrial streets/areas

Note: Uploading pictures of the site/shop may expedite the process of obtaining approval

Required Documents

- Lease agreement (after obtaining the necessary approvals from other licensing entities)
- Shop photos

Other Documents

- Cabinet's Decision (56) of the year 2022 regarding the Regulatory Requirements of Construction for various areas in the Kingdom of Bahrain

Supreme Council for Environment (Post) (3092)

Approval Name	Description	Estimated Time
Environmental Approval for Manufacture of bicycles and invalid carriages activity	This service aims to assess the environmental impact and licensing of development, industrial and production projects and activities, in accordance with the standards of protecting the environment and its natural resources	10 Days

Fee Details (if any)

- 30 Bahraini Dinars or 200 Bahraini Dinars for the fast-track procedure (when the data requested within the EA-2 form is sufficient without the need for additional studies)
- 4000 Bahraini Dinars or 6000 Bahraini Dinars for the fast track procedure (when it is necessary to submit an environmental impact assessment study for the project), with an additional payment of 100 Bahraini Dinars when it is necessary to submit a proposal for the scope of the study before submitting it or 500 Bahraini Dinars for a fast track procedure when the proposed scope of the study is being submitted before the study

License Information

To check the requirements for this approval, kindly download the detailed requirements sheet from the other downloadable documents section, which includes the following requirements:

- Building layout engineering and equipment requirements
- Workplace requirements
- Storage requirements
- Material management requirements
- Waste Management Requirements

• Documents and reporting requirements
• General requirements

Other Documents

•Annex to the Minister of Housing, Municipalities and Environment order regarding the project's environmental assessment
•Law No. (2) of 2021 regarding the environmental standards of air as decided by the Chairman of the Supreme Council for Environment
•Law No. (3) of 2021 regarding the environmental standards of water as decided by the Chairman of the Supreme Council for the Environment
•Law No. (54) of 2014 regarding the approval of the unified law regarding substances that deplete the ozone layer for the GCC countries
•Law No. (7) of 2022 regarding the environment
•Ministerial Order No. (1) of 1998 regarding Project's Environmental Assessment
•Ministerial Order No. (10) of 2006 regarding the installation of devices for on-line monitoring of atmospheric air pollutants
•Ministerial Order No. (11) of 2019 regarding the issue of technical specification of plastic products
•Ministerial Order No. (3) of 2005 regarding environmental requirements and standards in workplaces, especially regarding workers' exposure to heat and noise, and the provision of tools and protective clothing such as gloves, glasses, face masks and earplugs, with a commitment to use them during work
•Ministerial Order No. (3) of 2006 regarding the management of hazardous waste
•Ministerial Order No. (4) of 2005 regarding the management of used oils
•Ministerial Order No. (4) of 2006 regarding the management of hazardous chemicals
•Ministerial Order No. (4) of 2021 regarding the fees of the licenses and services provided by the Supreme Council for Environment
•Ministerial Order No. (6) of 2013 amending order No. (4) of 2006 regarding the management of hazardous chemicals
•Ministerial Order No. (7) of 2002 regarding the control importation and use of prohibited and severely restricted chemicals, and not to import any chemical compound except after obtaining approvals of all concerned authorities, including the executive body of the Supreme Council for Environment
•Ministerial Order No. (7) of 2013 amending order No. (3) of 2006 regarding the management of hazardous waste
•Ministerial Order No. (7) of 2013 amending order No. (3) of 2006 regarding the management of hazardous waste
•Ministerial Order No. 4 of 2014 regarding the management of the environmental consulting offices operations in the Kingdom of Bahrain
•Order No. (2) of 2020 determining the categories of fees for licensing refrigeration media, refrigeration units and air conditioning units as decided by the Chairman of the Supreme Council for the Environment
•Requirements for business activities
•law No. (1) of 2020 regarding the management of refrigeration media, refrigeration

units and air conditioning units as decided by the Chairman of the Supreme Council for the Environment
•law No. (2) of 2019 regarding the ban on the import of plastic waste of all kinds as decided by the Chairman of the Supreme Council for the Environment

Directorate Of Industrial Developments (Final Site Inspection) (3092)

Approval Name	Description	Estimated Time
Notification Only	Notification to the Industrial development directorate on obtaining a commercial registration with the license to practice the activity.	There is no License Information in this license. Days

Fee Details (if any)

There is no Estimated Processing Time (Days) in this license.

License Information

The industrial license is automatically issued by the Industrial development Directorate after obtaining the approval of other licensing/approving entities.

Please ensure that the actual production date does no exceed the expected production date.

If actual production will start on or before the expected production date please apply for a “New Industrial Registration” by following the steps below:

1- Visit the Industrial services system (www.industry.bh).
2- Select “Industrial Registration”.
3- Select “New Registration” application.

In the event that the actual production date will exceed the expected production date an “Extension of expected production date” application must be submitted by following the steps below:

1- Visit the Industrial services system (www.industry.bh).

2- Select “Industrial License”.
3- Select “Extension of expected production date” application.

Please note that failure to do so within 60 days from the expected production date will result in a violation to be added.

Other Documents

- Law No. (81) of 2006 with respect to approving The Common Industrial Law of the GCC
- Ministerial Resolution No. (11) of 2009 with respect to promulgating Implementing Regulation
- Operational requirements for the directorate of industrial developments activities

Manufacturing

ISIC4	Business activity
3099	Manufacture of other transport equipment

Description

This activity includes:
- manufacture of hand-propelled vehicles: luggage trucks, handcarts, sledges, shopping carts etc.
- manufacture of vehicles drawn by animals: sulkies, donkey-carts, hearses etc.

This activity excludes:
- works trucks, whether or not fitted with lifting or handling equipment, whether or not self-propelled, of the type used in factories (including hand trucks and wheelbarrows), see 28
- decorative restaurant carts, such as a desert cart, food wagons, see 31

Business Requirements

Age

18 and above

Allowed for Nationalities

Bahraini 100%		GCC 100%	
American 100%		Singaporean 100%	
Icelander 100%		Liechtensteiner 100%	
Norwegian 100%		Swiss 100%	

Foreign Allowed up to 100%

Legal Type

It is allowed to register according to the legal forms mentioned below

Allowed for Individual Commercial Registration (ICR) : Yes

Allowed for Company Commercial Registration (CCR) : Yes

- Bahrain Shareholding Company (Public)
- With Limited Liability Company
- Branch of a Foreign Company
- Bahrain Shareholding Company (Closed)
- Partnership Company
- Simple Commandite Company
- Commandite By Shares Company
- Non Profit Company

Required Step of Licenses and Approvals

Ministry / Directorate	License / Approval Requirements	Approval Type
Directorate Of Industrial Developments	Approval by Directorate of Industrial Developments(Pre)	Pre
Municipality Affairs	Site Approval for manufacturing activities (Type B)	Post
Supreme Council for Environment	Environmental Approval for Manufacture of other transport equipment activity	Post
Directorate Of Industrial Developments	Notification Only	Final Site Inspection

Directorate Of Industrial Developments (Pre) (3099)

Approval Name	Description	Estimated Time
Approval by Directorate of Industrial Developments(Pre)	This is a preliminary approval given by the Directorate of Industrial Development to ensure that the applicant has selected the appropriate activity based on the information provided	5 Days

Fee Details (if any)

There is no Estimated Processing Time (Days) in this license.

License Information

Applicants would have to provide through the system the following information:

General Information:

- Total Amount Invested in the Project (This should include value of machinery and fixed assets)
- Estimated number of workforce (Bahraini and Non-Bahraini)
- Expected utility consumption of electricity, water and natural gas
- Total area of the project

Activity Information:

- Product Information:

1) The products to be manufactured by choosing the appropriate HS codes (HS code list can be downloaded from the application if needed).
2) Product name.
3) Expected production date (The expected date on which the factory will start producing the product).

4) The maximum installed capacity and the expected production capacity per year based on the fixed HS code's unit of measure.

• Main raw materials: The main raw materials to be used in production and its source

• Main Machinery and Equipment: The main machinery and equipment to be used in production and its information.

• Manufacturing process: Brief on the manufacturing process explaining how materials are transformed from one state to another until reaching the final product, mentioning the types of materials used, the operations performed, and the machinery/equipment used in each step (if any) for each product.

Required Documents

•Photos of machinery/ equipment to be used
•Photos of products to be manufactured

Other Documents

•Law No. (81) of 2006 with respect to approving The Common Industrial Law of the GCC
•Ministerial Resolution No. (11) of 2009
•Operational requirements for the directorate of industrial developments activities

Municipality Affairs (Post) (3099)

Approval Name	Description	Estimated Time
Site Approval for manufacturing activities (Type B)	Municipality Approval for the Commercial Registration address or the site in which the Activity will be practiced	3 Days

Fee Details (if any)

10 BD

License Information

General Conditions:
1. Size of shop/premises must be sufficient for the activity
2. Businesses may not carry out the activity outside the boundaries of the shop/ premises
3. It is prohibited to display or store any items or equipment outside the shop / premises boundary without prior approval from the Municipality. In the event of non-compliance, the Ministry of Municipality Affairs has the right to take necessary action.
4. Maintain cleanliness of the site
5. Comply with the parking space regulations as per the Construction Regulatory Requirements

Activity Specific Conditions:
1. The Commercial Registration for this activity can only be registered in service and industrial streets/areas

Note: Uploading pictures of the site/shop may expedite the process of obtaining approval

Required Documents

- Lease agreement (after obtaining the necessary approvals from other licensing entities)
- Shop photos

Other Documents

- Cabinet's Decision (56) of the year 2022 regarding the Regulatory Requirements of Construction for various areas in the Kingdom of Bahrain

Supreme Council for Environment (Post) (3099)

Approval Name	Description	Estimated Time
Environmental Approval for Manufacture of other transport equipment activity	This service aims to assess the environmental impact and licensing of development, industrial and production projects and activities, in accordance with the standards of protecting the environment and its natural resources	10 Days

Fee Details (if any)

- 30 دينار أو 200 دينار للإجراء السريع (عند الاكتفاء بما ورد من بيانات في استمارة التقييم البيئي الـ EA-2 بدون الحاجة لدراسات إضافية)
- 4000 + دينار أو 6000 دينار للإجراء السريع (عند طلب تقديم دراسة تقويم أثر بيئي للمشروع) مع إضافة " 100 دينار عند طلب تقديم مقترح نطاق الدراسة قبل تقديم الدراسة أو 500 دينار للإجراء السريع عند طلب تقديم مقترح نطاق الدراسة قبل تقديم الدراسة "

- 30 Bahraini Dinars or 200 Bahraini Dinars for the fast-track procedure (when the data requested within the EA-2 form is sufficient without the need for additional studies)
- 4000 Bahraini Dinars or 6000 Bahraini Dinars for the fast track procedure (when it is necessary to submit an environmental impact assessment study for the project), with an additional payment of 100 Bahraini Dinars when it is necessary to submit a proposal for the scope of the study before submitting it or 500 Bahraini Dinars for a fast track procedure when the proposed scope of the study is being submitted before the study

License Information

To check the requirements for this approval, kindly download the detailed requirements sheet from the other downloadable documents section, which includes the following

requirements:
- Building layout engineering and equipment requirements
- Workplace requirements
- Storage requirements
- Material management requirements
- Waste Management Requirements
- Documents and reporting requirements
- General requirements

Other Documents

- Annex to the Minister of Housing, Municipalities and Environment order regarding the project's environmental assessment
- Law No. (2) of 2021 regarding the environmental standards of air as decided by the Chairman of the Supreme Council for Environment
- Law No. (3) of 2021 regarding the environmental standards of water as decided by the Chairman of the Supreme Council for the Environment
- Law No. (5) of 2021 regarding CITES Annexes to the Convention on International Trade in Endangered Fauna and Flora
- Law No. (54) of 2014 regarding the approval of the unified law regarding substances that deplete the ozone layer for the GCC countries
- Law No. (7) of 2022 regarding the environment
- Ministerial Order No. (1) of 1998 regarding Project's Environmental Assessment
- Ministerial Order No. (10) of 2006 regarding the installation of devices for on-line monitoring of atmospheric air pollutants
- Ministerial Order No. (11) of 2019 regarding the issue of technical specification of plastic products
- Ministerial Order No. (3) of 2005 regarding environmental requirements and standards in workplaces, especially regarding workers' exposure to heat and noise, and the provision of tools and protective clothing such as gloves, glasses, face masks and earplugs, with a commitment to use them during work
- Ministerial Order No. (3) of 2006 regarding the management of hazardous waste
- Ministerial Order No. (4) of 2005 regarding the management of used oils
- Ministerial Order No. (4) of 2006 regarding the management of hazardous chemicals
- Ministerial Order No. (4) of 2021 regarding the fees of the licenses and services provided by the Supreme Council for Environment
- Ministerial Order No. (6) of 2013 amending order No. (4) of 2006 regarding the management of hazardous chemicals
- Ministerial Order No. (7) of 2002 regarding the control importation and use of prohibited and severely restricted chemicals, and not to import any chemical compound except after obtaining approvals of all concerned authorities, including the executive body of the Supreme Council for Environment
- Ministerial Order No. (7) of 2013 amending order No. (3) of 2006 regarding the management of hazardous waste
- Ministerial Order No. 4 of 2014 regarding the management of the environmental

consulting offices operations in the Kingdom of Bahrain
•Order No. (2) of 2020 determining the categories of fees for licensing refrigeration media, refrigeration units and air conditioning units as decided by the Chairman of the Supreme Council for the Environment
•Requirements for business activities
•law No. (1) of 2020 regarding the management of refrigeration media, refrigeration units and air conditioning units as decided by the Chairman of the Supreme Council for the Environment
•law No. (2) of 2019 regarding the ban on the import of plastic waste of all kinds as decided by the Chairman of the Supreme Council for the Environment

Directorate Of Industrial Developments (Final Site Inspection) (3099)

Approval Name	Description	Estimated Time
Notification Only	Notification to the Industrial development directorate on obtaining a commercial registration with the license to practice the activity.	There is no License Information in this license. Days

Fee Details (if any)

There is no Estimated Processing Time (Days) in this license.

License Information

The industrial license is automatically issued by the Industrial development Directorate after obtaining the approval of other licensing/approving entities.

Please ensure that the actual production date does no exceed the expected production date.

If actual production will start on or before the expected production date please apply for a “New Industrial Registration” by following the steps below:

1- Visit the Industrial services system (www.industry.bh).
2- Select “Industrial Registration”.
3- Select “New Registration” application.

In the event that the actual production date will exceed the expected production date an “Extension of expected production date” application must be submitted by following the steps below:

1- Visit the Industrial services system (www.industry.bh).

2- Select “Industrial License”.
3- Select “Extension of expected production date” application.

Please note that failure to do so within 60 days from the expected production date will result in a violation to be added.

Other Documents

- Law No. (81) of 2006 with respect to approving The Common Industrial Law of the GCC
- Ministerial Resolution No. (11) of 2009 with respect to promulgating Implementing Regulation
- Operational requirements for the directorate of industrial developments activities

Manufacturing

ISIC4	Business activity
310-1	Manufacture of furniture - Workshop

Description

This activity includes the manufacture of furniture of any kind, any material (except stone, concrete or ceramic) for any place and various purposes.This includes:
- manufacture of chairs and seats for offices, workrooms, hotels, restaurants, public and domestic premises
- manufacture of chairs and seats for theatres, cinemas and the like
- manufacture of sofas, sofa beds and sofa sets
- manufacture of garden chairs and seats
- manufacture of special furniture for shops: counters, display cases, shelves etc.
- manufacture of furniture for churches, schools, restaurants
- manufacture of office furniture
- manufacture of kitchen furniture
- manufacture of furniture for bedrooms, living rooms, gardens etc.
- manufacture of cabinets for sewing machines, televisions etc.
- manufacture of laboratory benches, stools and other laboratory seating, laboratory furniture (e.g. cabinets and tables)
- finishing such as upholstery of chairs and seats
- finishing of furniture such as spraying, painting, French polishing and upholstering
- manufacture of mattress supports
- manufacture of mattresses: mattresses fitted with springs or stuffed or internally fitted with a supporting material; uncovered cellular rubber or plastic mattresses
- decorative restaurant carts, such as dessert carts, food wagonsThis activity excludes:
- manufacture of furniture of ceramics, concrete and stone, see 2393, 2395, 2396
- manufacture of car seats, railway seats, aircraft seats, see 2930, 3020, 3030
- modular furniture attachment and installation, partition installation, laboratory equipment furniture installation, see 4330

Business Requirements

Age

18 and above

Allowed for Nationalities

Bahraini 100%		GCC 100%	
American 100%		Singaporean 100%	
Icelander 100%		Liechtenstein er 100%	
Norwegian 100%		Swiss 100%	

Foreign Allowed up to 100%

Legal Type

It is allowed to register according to the legal forms mentioned below

Allowed for Individual Commercial Registration (ICR) : Yes

Allowed for Company Commercial Registration (CCR) : Yes

- Bahrain Shareholding Company (Public)
- With Limited Liability Company
- Branch of a Foreign Company
- Bahrain Shareholding Company (Closed)
- Partnership Company
- Simple Commandite Company
- Commandite By Shares Company
- Non Profit Company

Required Step of Licenses and Approvals

Ministry / Directorate	License / Approval Requirements	Approval Type
Supreme Council for Environment	Environmental Approval for Manufacture of	Post

	furniture - Workshop activity	
Municipality Affairs	Site Approval for manufacturing activities (Type B)	Post

Supreme Council for Environment (Post) (310-1)

Approval Name	Description	Estimated Time
Environmental Approval for Manufacture of furniture - Workshop activity	This service aims to assess the environmental impact and licensing of development, industrial and production projects and activities, in accordance with the standards of protecting the environment and its natural resources	10 Days

Fee Details (if any)

- 30 Bahraini Dinars or 200 Bahraini Dinars for the fast-track procedure (when the data requested within the EA-2 form is sufficient without the need for additional studies)
- 4000 Bahraini Dinars or 6000 Bahraini Dinars for the fast track procedure (when it is necessary to submit an environmental impact assessment study for the project), with an additional payment of 100 Bahraini Dinars when it is necessary to submit a proposal for the scope of the study before submitting it or 500 Bahraini Dinars for a fast track procedure when the proposed scope of the study is being submitted before the study

License Information

To check the requirements for this approval, kindly download the detailed requirements sheet from the other downloadable documents section, which includes the following requirements:

- Building layout engineering and equipment requirements
- Workplace requirements
- Storage requirements
- Material management requirements
- Waste Management Requirements

- Documents and reporting requirements
- General requirements

Other Documents

- Annex to the Minister of Housing, Municipalities and Environment order regarding the project's environmental assessment
- Law No. (2) of 2021 regarding the environmental standards of air as decided by the Chairman of the Supreme Council for Environment
- Law No. (3) of 2021 regarding the environmental standards of water as decided by the Chairman of the Supreme Council for the Environment
- Law No. (5) of 2021 regarding CITES Annexes to the Convention on International Trade in Endangered Fauna and Flora
- Law No. (54) of 2014 regarding the approval of the unified law regarding substances that deplete the ozone layer for the GCC countries
- Law No. (7) of 2022 regarding the environment
- Ministerial Order No. (1) of 1998 regarding Project's Environmental Assessment
- Ministerial Order No. (10) of 2006 regarding the installation of devices for on-line monitoring of atmospheric air pollutants
- Ministerial Order No. (11) of 2019 regarding the issue of technical specification of plastic products
- Ministerial Order No. (3) of 2005 regarding environmental requirements and standards in workplaces, especially regarding workers' exposure to heat and noise, and the provision of tools and protective clothing such as gloves, glasses, face masks and earplugs, with a commitment to use them during work
- Ministerial Order No. (3) of 2006 regarding the management of hazardous waste
- Ministerial Order No. (4) of 2005 regarding the management of used oils
- Ministerial Order No. (4) of 2006 regarding the management of hazardous chemicals
- Ministerial Order No. (4) of 2021 regarding the fees of the licenses and services provided by the Supreme Council for Environment
- Ministerial Order No. (6) of 2013 amending order No. (4) of 2006 regarding the management of hazardous chemicals
- Ministerial Order No. (6) of 2013 amending order No. (4) of 2006 regarding the management of hazardous chemicals
- Ministerial Order No. (7) of 2002 regarding the control importation and use of prohibited and severely restricted chemicals, and not to import any chemical compound except after obtaining approvals of all concerned authorities, including the executive body of the Supreme Council for Environment
- Ministerial Order No. (7) of 2013 amending order No. (3) of 2006 regarding the management of hazardous waste
- Ministerial Order No. 4 of 2014 regarding the management of the environmental consulting offices operations in the Kingdom of Bahrain
- Order No. (2) of 2020 determining the categories of fees for licensing refrigeration media, refrigeration units and air conditioning units as decided by the Chairman of the Supreme Council for the Environment

- Requirements for business activities
- law No. (1) of 2020 regarding the management of refrigeration media, refrigeration units and air conditioning units as decided by the Chairman of the Supreme Council for the Environment
- law No. (2) of 2019 regarding the ban on the import of plastic waste of all kinds as decided by the Chairman of the Supreme Council for the Environment

Municipality Affairs (Post) (310-1)

Approval Name	Description	Estimated Time
Site Approval for manufacturing activities (Type B)	Municipality Approval for the Commercial Registration address or the site in which the Activity will be practiced	3 Days

Fee Details (if any)

10 BD

License Information

General Conditions:
1. Size of shop/premises must be sufficient for the activity
2. Businesses may not carry out the activity outside the boundaries of the shop/ premises
3. It is prohibited to display or store any items or equipment outside the shop / premises boundary without prior approval from the Municipality. In the event of non-compliance, the Ministry of Municipality Affairs has the right to take necessary action.
4. Maintain cleanliness of the site
5. Comply with the parking space regulations as per the Construction Regulatory Requirements

Activity Specific Conditions:
1. The Commercial Registration for this activity can only be registered in service and industrial streets/areas

Note: Uploading pictures of the site/shop may expedite the process of obtaining approval

Required Documents

- Lease agreement (after obtaining the necessary approvals from other licensing entities)
- Shop photos

Other Documents

- Cabinet's Decision (56) of the year 2022 regarding the Regulatory Requirements of Construction for various areas in the Kingdom of Bahrain

Manufacturing

ISIC4	Business activity
310-2	Manufacture of furniture - Factory

Description

This activity includes the manufacture of furniture of any kind, any material (except stone, concrete or ceramic) for any place and various purposes.This includes:
- manufacture of chairs and seats for offices, workrooms, hotels, restaurants, public and domestic premises
- manufacture of chairs and seats for theatres, cinemas and the like
- manufacture of sofas, sofa beds and sofa sets
- manufacture of garden chairs and seats
- manufacture of special furniture for shops: counters, display cases, shelves etc.
- manufacture of furniture for churches, schools, restaurants
- manufacture of office furniture
- manufacture of kitchen furniture
- manufacture of furniture for bedrooms, living rooms, gardens etc.
- manufacture of cabinets for sewing machines, televisions etc.
- manufacture of laboratory benches, stools and other laboratory seating, laboratory furniture (e.g. cabinets and tables)
- finishing such as upholstery of chairs and seats
- finishing of furniture such as spraying, painting, French polishing and upholstering
- manufacture of mattress supports
- manufacture of mattresses: mattresses fitted with springs or stuffed or internally fitted with a supporting material; uncovered cellular rubber or plastic mattresses
- decorative restaurant carts, such as dessert carts, food wagonsThis activity excludes:
- manufacture of furniture of ceramics, concrete and stone, see 2393, 2395, 2396
- manufacture of car seats, railway seats, aircraft seats, see 2930, 3020, 3030
- modular furniture attachment and installation, partition installation, laboratory equipment furniture installation, see 4330

Business Requirements

Age

18 and above

Allowed for Nationalities

Bahraini 100%		GCC 100%	
American 100%		Singaporean 100%	
Icelander 100%		Liechtenstein er 100%	
Norwegian 100%		Swiss 100%	

Foreign Allowed up to 100%

Legal Type

It is allowed to register according to the legal forms mentioned below

Allowed for Individual Commercial Registration (ICR) : Yes

Allowed for Company Commercial Registration (CCR) : Yes

- Bahrain Shareholding Company (Public)
- With Limited Liability Company
- Branch of a Foreign Company
- Bahrain Shareholding Company (Closed)
- Partnership Company
- Simple Commandite Company
- Commandite By Shares Company
- Non Profit Company

Required Step of Licenses and Approvals

Ministry / Directorate	License / Approval Requirements	Approval Type
Directorate Of Industrial Developments	Approval by Directorate of Industrial	Pre

	Developments(Pre)	
Supreme Council for Environment	Environmental Approval for Manufacture of furniture - Factoryactivity	Post
Municipality Affairs	Site Approval for manufacturing activities (Type B)	Post
Directorate Of Industrial Developments	Notification Only	Final Site Inspection

Directorate Of Industrial Developments (Pre) (310-2)

Approval Name	Description	Estimated Time
Approval by Directorate of Industrial Developments(Pre)	This is a preliminary approval given by the Directorate of Industrial Development to ensure that the applicant has selected the appropriate activity based on the information provided	5 Days

Fee Details (if any)

There is no Estimated Processing Time (Days) in this license.

License Information

Applicants would have to provide through the system the following information:

General Information:

- Total Amount Invested in the Project (This should include value of machinery and fixed assets)
- Estimated number of workforce (Bahraini and Non-Bahraini)
- Expected utility consumption of electricity, water and natural gas
- Total area of the project

Activity Information:

- Product Information:

1) The products to be manufactured by choosing the appropriate HS codes (HS code list can be downloaded from the application if needed).
2) Product name.
3) Expected production date (The expected date on which the factory will start producing the product).

4) The maximum installed capacity and the expected production capacity per year based on the fixed HS code's unit of measure.

• Main raw materials: The main raw materials to be used in production and its source

• Main Machinery and Equipment: The main machinery and equipment to be used in production and its information.

• Manufacturing process: Brief on the manufacturing process explaining how materials are transformed from one state to another until reaching the final product, mentioning the types of materials used, the operations performed, and the machinery/equipment used in each step (if any) for each product.

Required Documents

•Photos of machinery/ equipment to be used
•Photos of products to be manufactured

Other Documents

•Law No. (81) of 2006 with respect to approving The Common Industrial Law of the GCC
•Ministerial Resolution No. (11) of 2009
•Operational requirements for the directorate of industrial developments activities

Supreme Council for Environment (Post) (310-2)

Approval Name	Description	Estimated Time
Environmental Approval for Manufacture of furniture - Factoryactivity	This service aims to assess the environmental impact and licensing of development, industrial and production projects and activities, in accordance with the standards of protecting the environment and its natural resources	10 Days

Fee Details (if any)

- 30 Bahraini Dinars or 200 Bahraini Dinars for the fast-track procedure (when the data requested within the EA-2 form is sufficient without the need for additional studies)
- 4000 Bahraini Dinars or 6000 Bahraini Dinars for the fast track procedure (when it is necessary to submit an environmental impact assessment study for the project), with an additional payment of 100 Bahraini Dinars when it is necessary to submit a proposal for the scope of the study before submitting it or 500 Bahraini Dinars for a fast track procedure when the proposed scope of the study is being submitted before the study

License Information

To check the requirements for this approval, kindly download the detailed requirements sheet from the other downloadable documents section, which includes the following requirements:

- Building layout engineering and equipment requirements
- Workplace requirements
- Storage requirements
- Material management requirements
- Waste Management Requirements

- Documents and reporting requirements
- General requirements

Other Documents

- Annex to the Minister of Housing, Municipalities and Environment order regarding the project's environmental assessment
- Law No. (2) of 2021 regarding the environmental standards of air as decided by the Chairman of the Supreme Council for Environment
- Law No. (3) of 2021 regarding the environmental standards of water as decided by the Chairman of the Supreme Council for the Environment
- Law No. (5) of 2021 regarding CITES Annexes to the Convention on International Trade in Endangered Fauna and Flora
- Law No. (54) of 2014 regarding the approval of the unified law regarding substances that deplete the ozone layer for the GCC countries
- Law No. (7) of 2022 regarding the environment
- Law No. (7) of 2022 regarding the environment
- Ministerial Order No. (1) of 1998 regarding Project's Environmental Assessment
- Ministerial Order No. (10) of 2006 regarding the installation of devices for on-line monitoring of atmospheric air pollutants
- Ministerial Order No. (11) of 2019 regarding the issue of technical specification of plastic products
- Ministerial Order No. (3) of 2005 regarding environmental requirements and standards in workplaces, especially regarding workers' exposure to heat and noise, and the provision of tools and protective clothing such as gloves, glasses, face masks and earplugs, with a commitment to use them during work
- Ministerial Order No. (3) of 2006 regarding the management of hazardous waste
- Ministerial Order No. (4) of 2005 regarding the management of used oils
- Ministerial Order No. (4) of 2006 regarding the management of hazardous chemicals
- Ministerial Order No. (4) of 2021 regarding the fees of the licenses and services provided by the Supreme Council for Environment
- Ministerial Order No. (6) of 2013 amending order No. (4) of 2006 regarding the management of hazardous chemicals
- Ministerial Order No. (7) of 2002 regarding the control importation and use of prohibited and severely restricted chemicals, and not to import any chemical compound except after obtaining approvals of all concerned authorities, including the executive body of the Supreme Council for Environment
- Ministerial Order No. (7) of 2013 amending order No. (3) of 2006 regarding the management of hazardous waste
- Ministerial Order No. 4 of 2014 regarding the management of the environmental consulting offices operations in the Kingdom of Bahrain
- Order No. (2) of 2020 determining the categories of fees for licensing refrigeration media, refrigeration units and air conditioning units as decided by the Chairman of the Supreme Council for the Environment
- Requirements for business activities

- law No. (1) of 2020 regarding the management of refrigeration media, refrigeration units and air conditioning units as decided by the Chairman of the Supreme Council for the Environment
- law No. (2) of 2019 regarding the ban on the import of plastic waste of all kinds as decided by the Chairman of the Supreme Council for the Environment

Municipality Affairs (Post) (310-2)

Approval Name	Description	Estimated Time
Site Approval for manufacturing activities (Type B)	Municipality Approval for the Commercial Registration address or the site in which the Activity will be practiced	3 Days

Fee Details (if any)

10 BD

License Information

General Conditions:
1. Size of shop/premises must be sufficient for the activity
2. Businesses may not carry out the activity outside the boundaries of the shop/ premises
3. It is prohibited to display or store any items or equipment outside the shop / premises boundary without prior approval from the Municipality. In the event of non-compliance, the Ministry of Municipality Affairs has the right to take necessary action.
4. Maintain cleanliness of the site
5. Comply with the parking space regulations as per the Construction Regulatory Requirements

Activity Specific Conditions:
1. The Commercial Registration for this activity can only be registered in service and industrial streets/areas

Note: Uploading pictures of the site/shop may expedite the process of obtaining approval

Required Documents

- Lease agreement (after obtaining the necessary approvals from other licensing entities)
- Shop photos

Other Documents

- Cabinet's Decision (56) of the year 2022 regarding the Regulatory Requirements of Construction for various areas in the Kingdom of Bahrain

Directorate Of Industrial Developments (Final Site Inspection) (310-2)

Approval Name	Description	Estimated Time
Notification Only	Notification to the Industrial development directorate on obtaining a commercial registration with the license to practice the activity.	There is no License Information in this license. Days

Fee Details (if any)

There is no Estimated Processing Time (Days) in this license.

License Information

The industrial license is automatically issued by the Industrial development Directorate after obtaining the approval of other licensing/approving entities.

Please ensure that the actual production date does no exceed the expected production date.

If actual production will start on or before the expected production date please apply for a “New Industrial Registration” by following the steps below:

1- Visit the Industrial services system (www.industry.bh).
2- Select “Industrial Registration”.
3- Select “New Registration” application.

In the event that the actual production date will exceed the expected production date an “Extension of expected production date” application must be submitted by following the steps below:

1- Visit the Industrial services system (www.industry.bh).

2- Select “Industrial License”.
3- Select “Extension of expected production date” application.

Please note that failure to do so within 60 days from the expected production date will result in a violation to be added.

Other Documents

- Law No. (81) of 2006 with respect to approving The Common Industrial Law of the GCC
- Ministerial Resolution No. (11) of 2009 with respect to promulgating Implementing Regulation
- Operational requirements for the directorate of industrial developments activities

Manufacturing

ISIC4	Business activity
31004	Furniture upholstery and curtain making

Description

This activity includes the making of all kinds of furniture upholstery such as for Sofa`s, chairs, beds, as well as the tailoring and fixing of all types of curtains.

Business Requirements

Age

18 and above

Allowed for Nationalities

- Bahraini 100%
- American 100%
- GCC 100%

Legal Type

It is allowed to register according to the legal forms mentioned below

Allowed for Individual Commercial Registration (ICR) : Yes

Allowed for Company Commercial Registration (CCR) : Yes

- Bahrain Shareholding Company (Public)
- With Limited Liability Company
- Branch of a Foreign Company
- Bahrain Shareholding Company (Closed)
- Partnership Company
- Simple Commandite Company
- Commandite By Shares Company
- Non Profit Company

Required Step of Licenses and Approvals

Ministry / Directorate	License / Approval Requirements	Approval Type
Municipality Affairs	Site Approval for furniture upholstery and curtain making	Post

Municipality Affairs (Post) (31004)

Approval Name	Description	Estimated Time
Site Approval for furniture upholstery and curtain making	This activity includes the making of all kinds of furniture upholstery such as for Sofa`s, chairs, beds, as well as the tailoring and fixing of all types of curtains.	3 Days

Fee Details (if any)

10 BD

License Information

General Conditions:
1. Size of shop/premises must be sufficient for the activity
2. Businesses may not carry out the activity outside the boundaries of the shop/ premises
3. It is prohibited to display or store any items or equipment outside the shop / premises boundary without prior approval from the Municipality. In the event of non-compliance, the Ministry of Municipality Affairs has the right to take necessary action.
4. Maintain cleanliness of the site
5. Comply with the parking space regulations as per the Construction Regulatory Requirements

Activity Specific Conditions:
1. Making and installation of curtains is allowed in commercial and service streets/areas
2. Furniture Upholstery is not allowed in commercial areas

Note: Uploading pictures of the site/shop may expedite the process of obtaining approval

Required Documents

- Lease agreement (after obtaining the necessary approvals from other licensing entities)
- Shop photos

Other Documents

- Cabinet's Decision (56) of the year 2022 regarding the Regulatory Requirements of Construction for various areas in the Kingdom of Bahrain

Manufacturing

ISIC4	Business activity
321-1	Manufacture of jewellery, bijouterie and related articles - Workshop

Description

This activity includes the manufacture of jewellery and imitation jewellery.Manufacture of jewellery and related articles:
- production of worked pearls
- production of precious and semi-precious stones in the worked state, including the working of industrial quality stones and synthetic or reconstructed precious or semi-precious stones
- working of diamonds
- manufacture of jewellery of precious metal or of base metals clad with precious metals, or precious or semi-precious stones, or of combinations of precious metal and precious or semi-precious stones or of other materials
- manufacture of goldsmiths` articles of precious metals or of base metals clad with precious metals: dinnerware, flatware, hollowware, toilet articles, office or desk articles, articles for religious use etc.
- manufacture of technical or laboratory articles of precious metal (except instruments and parts thereof): crucibles, spatulas, electroplating anodes etc.
- manufacture of precious metal watch bands, wristbands, watch straps and cigarette cases
- This activity also includes engraving of personal precious metal products

Business Requirements

Age

18 and above

Allowed for Nationalities

Bahraini 100%		GCC 100%	
American 100%		Singaporean 100%	
Icelander 100%		Liechtenstein er 100%	
Norwegian 100%		Swiss 100%	

Foreign Allowed up to 100%

Legal Type

It is allowed to register according to the legal forms mentioned below

Allowed for Individual Commercial Registration (ICR) : Yes

Allowed for Company Commercial Registration (CCR) : Yes

- Bahrain Shareholding Company (Public)
- With Limited Liability Company
- Branch of a Foreign Company
- Bahrain Shareholding Company (Closed)
- Partnership Company
- Simple Commandite Company
- Commandite By Shares Company
- Non Profit Company

Required Step of Licenses and Approvals

Ministry / Directorate	License / Approval Requirements	Approval Type
Supreme Council for Environment	Environmental Approval for Manufacture of	Post

	jewellery, bijouterie and related articles – Workshop activity	
Municipality Affairs	Site Approval for manufacturing activities (Type B)	Post

Supreme Council for Environment (Post) (321-1)

Approval Name	Description	Estimated Time
Environmental Approval for Manufacture of jewellery, bijouterie and related articles – Workshop activity	This service aims to assess the environmental impact and licensing of development, industrial and production projects and activities, in accordance with the standards of protecting the environment and its natural resources	10 Days

Fee Details (if any)

- 30 Bahraini Dinars or 200 Bahraini Dinars for the fast-track procedure (when the data requested within the EA-2 form is sufficient without the need for additional studies)
- 4000 Bahraini Dinars or 6000 Bahraini Dinars for the fast track procedure (when it is necessary to submit an environmental impact assessment study for the project), with an additional payment of 100 Bahraini Dinars when it is necessary to submit a proposal for the scope of the study before submitting it or 500 Bahraini Dinars for a fast track procedure when the proposed scope of the study is being submitted before the study

License Information

To check the requirements for this approval, kindly download the detailed requirements sheet from the other downloadable documents section, which includes the following requirements:

- Building layout engineering and equipment requirements
- Workplace requirements
- Storage requirements
- Material management requirements

- Waste Management Requirements
- Documents and reporting requirements
- General requirements

Other Documents

•Annex to the Minister of Housing, Municipalities and Environment order regarding the project's environmental assessment
•Law No. (2) of 2021 regarding the environmental standards of air as decided by the Chairman of the Supreme Council for Environment
•Law No. (3) of 2021 regarding the environmental standards of water as decided by the Chairman of the Supreme Council for the Environment
•Law No. (5) of 2021 regarding CITES Annexes to the Convention on International Trade in Endangered Fauna and Flora
•Law No. (54) of 2014 regarding the approval of the unified law regarding substances that deplete the ozone layer for the GCC countries
•Law No. (54) of 2014 regarding the approval of the unified law regarding substances that deplete the ozone layer for the GCC countries
•Law No. (7) of 2022 regarding the environment
•Ministerial Order No. (1) of 1998 regarding Project's Environmental Assessment
•Ministerial Order No. (10) of 2006 regarding the installation of devices for on-line monitoring of atmospheric air pollutants
•Ministerial Order No. (11) of 2019 regarding the issue of technical specification of plastic products
•Ministerial Order No. (3) of 2005 regarding environmental requirements and standards in workplaces, especially regarding workers' exposure to heat and noise, and the provision of tools and protective clothing such as gloves, glasses, face masks and earplugs, with a commitment to use them during work
•Ministerial Order No. (3) of 2006 regarding the management of hazardous waste
•Ministerial Order No. (4) of 2005 regarding the management of used oils
•Ministerial Order No. (4) of 2006 regarding the management of hazardous chemicals
•Ministerial Order No. (4) of 2021 regarding the fees of the licenses and services provided by the Supreme Council for Environment
•Ministerial Order No. (6) of 2013 amending order No. (4) of 2006 regarding the management of hazardous chemicals
•Ministerial Order No. (7) of 2002 regarding the control importation and use of prohibited and severely restricted chemicals, and not to import any chemical compound except after obtaining approvals of all concerned authorities, including the executive body of the Supreme Council for Environment
•Ministerial Order No. (7) of 2013 amending order No. (3) of 2006 regarding the management of hazardous waste
•Ministerial Order No. 4 of 2014 regarding the management of the environmental consulting offices operations in the Kingdom of Bahrain
•Order No. (2) of 2020 determining the categories of fees for licensing refrigeration media, refrigeration units and air conditioning units as decided by the Chairman of the

Supreme Council for the Environment
•Requirements for business activities
•law No. (1) of 2020 regarding the management of refrigeration media, refrigeration units and air conditioning units as decided by the Chairman of the Supreme Council for the Environment
•law No. (2) of 2019 regarding the ban on the import of plastic waste of all kinds as decided by the Chairman of the Supreme Council for the Environment

Municipality Affairs (Post) (321-1)

Approval Name	Description	Estimated Time
Site Approval for manufacturing activities (Type B)	Municipality Approval for the Commercial Registration address or the site in which the Activity will be practiced	3 Days

Fee Details (if any)

10 BD

License Information

General Conditions:
1. Size of shop/premises must be sufficient for the activity
2. Businesses may not carry out the activity outside the boundaries of the shop/ premises
3. It is prohibited to display or store any items or equipment outside the shop / premises boundary without prior approval from the Municipality. In the event of non-compliance, the Ministry of Municipality Affairs has the right to take necessary action.
4. Maintain cleanliness of the site
5. Comply with the parking space regulations as per the Construction Regulatory Requirements

Activity Specific Conditions:
1. The Commercial Registration for this activity can only be registered in service and industrial streets/areas

Note: Uploading pictures of the site/shop may expedite the process of obtaining approval

Required Documents

- Lease agreement (after obtaining the necessary approvals from other licensing entities)
- Shop photos

Other Documents

- Cabinet's Decision (56) of the year 2022 regarding the Regulatory Requirements of Construction for various areas in the Kingdom of Bahrain

Manufacturing

ISIC4	Business activity
321-2	Manufacture of jewellery, bijouterie and related articles - Factory

Description

This activity includes the manufacture of jewellery and imitation jewellery.Manufacture of jewellery and related articles:
- production of worked pearls
- production of precious and semi-precious stones in the worked state, including the working of industrial quality stones and synthetic or reconstructed precious or semi-precious stones
- working of diamonds
- manufacture of jewellery of precious metal or of base metals clad with precious metals, or precious or semi-precious stones, or of combinations of precious metal and precious or semi-precious stones or of other materials
- manufacture of goldsmiths` articles of precious metals or of base metals clad with precious metals: dinnerware, flatware, hollowware, toilet articles, office or desk articles, articles for religious use etc.
- manufacture of technical or laboratory articles of precious metal (except instruments and parts thereof): crucibles, spatulas, electroplating anodes etc.
- manufacture of precious metal watch bands, wristbands, watch straps and cigarette cases
- This activity also includes engraving of personal precious metal products

Business Requirements

Age

18 and above

Allowed for Nationalities

Bahraini 100%		GCC 100%	
American 100%		Singaporean 100%	
Icelander 100%		Liechtenstein er 100%	
Norwegian 100%		Swiss 100%	

Foreign Allowed up to 100%

Legal Type

It is allowed to register according to the legal forms mentioned below

Allowed for Individual Commercial Registration (ICR) : Yes

Allowed for Company Commercial Registration (CCR) : Yes

- Bahrain Shareholding Company (Public)
- With Limited Liability Company
- Branch of a Foreign Company
- Bahrain Shareholding Company (Closed)
- Partnership Company
- Simple Commandite Company
- Commandite By Shares Company
- Non Profit Company

Required Step of Licenses and Approvals

Ministry / Directorate	License / Approval Requirements	Approval Type
Directorate Of Industrial Developments	Approval by Directorate of Industrial	Pre

	Developments(Pre)	
Municipality Affairs	Site Approval for manufacturing activities (Type B)	Post
Supreme Council for Environment	Environmental Approval for Manufacture of jewellery, bijouterie and related articles - Factory activity	Post
Directorate Of Industrial Developments	Notification Only	Final Site Inspection

Directorate Of Industrial Developments (Pre) (321-2)

Approval Name	Description	Estimated Time
Approval by Directorate of Industrial Developments(Pre)	This is a preliminary approval given by the Directorate of Industrial Development to ensure that the applicant has selected the appropriate activity based on the information provided	5 Days

Fee Details (if any)

There is no Estimated Processing Time (Days) in this license.

License Information

Applicants would have to provide through the system the following information:

General Information:

- Total Amount Invested in the Project (This should include value of machinery and fixed assets)
- Estimated number of workforce (Bahraini and Non-Bahraini)
- Expected utility consumption of electricity, water and natural gas
- Total area of the project

Activity Information:

- Product Information:

1) The products to be manufactured by choosing the appropriate HS codes (HS code list can be downloaded from the application if needed).
2) Product name.
3) Expected production date (The expected date on which the factory will start producing the product).

4) The maximum installed capacity and the expected production capacity per year based on the fixed HS code's unit of measure.

• Main raw materials: The main raw materials to be used in production and its source

• Main Machinery and Equipment: The main machinery and equipment to be used in production and its information.

• Manufacturing process: Brief on the manufacturing process explaining how materials are transformed from one state to another until reaching the final product, mentioning the types of materials used, the operations performed, and the machinery/equipment used in each step (if any) for each product.

Required Documents

•Photos of machinery/ equipment to be used
•Photos of products to be manufactured

Other Documents

•Law No. (81) of 2006 with respect to approving The Common Industrial Law of the GCC
•Ministerial Resolution No. (11) of 2009
•Operational requirements for the directorate of industrial developments activities

Municipality Affairs (Post) (321-2)

Approval Name	Description	Estimated Time
Site Approval for manufacturing activities (Type B)	Municipality Approval for the Commercial Registration address or the site in which the Activity will be practiced	3 Days

Fee Details (if any)

10 BD

License Information

General Conditions:
1. Size of shop/premises must be sufficient for the activity
2. Businesses may not carry out the activity outside the boundaries of the shop/ premises
3. It is prohibited to display or store any items or equipment outside the shop / premises boundary without prior approval from the Municipality. In the event of non-compliance, the Ministry of Municipality Affairs has the right to take necessary action.
4. Maintain cleanliness of the site
5. Comply with the parking space regulations as per the Construction Regulatory Requirements

Activity Specific Conditions:
1. The Commercial Registration for this activity can only be registered in service and industrial streets/areas

Note: Uploading pictures of the site/shop may expedite the process of obtaining approval

Required Documents

- Lease agreement (after obtaining the necessary approvals from other licensing entities)
- Shop photos

Other Documents

- Cabinet's Decision (56) of the year 2022 regarding the Regulatory Requirements of Construction for various areas in the Kingdom of Bahrain

Supreme Council for Environment (Post) (321-2)

Approval Name	Description	Estimated Time
Environmental Approval for Manufacture of jewellery, bijouterie and related articles - Factory activity	This service aims to assess the environmental impact and licensing of development, industrial and production projects and activities, in accordance with the standards of protecting the environment and its natural resources	10 Days

Fee Details (if any)

- 30 Bahraini Dinars or 200 Bahraini Dinars for the fast-track procedure (when the data requested within the EA-2 form is sufficient without the need for additional studies)
- 4000 Bahraini Dinars or 6000 Bahraini Dinars for the fast track procedure (when it is necessary to submit an environmental impact assessment study for the project), with an additional payment of 100 Bahraini Dinars when it is necessary to submit a proposal for the scope of the study before submitting it or 500 Bahraini Dinars for a fast track procedure when the proposed scope of the study is being submitted before the study

License Information

To check the requirements for this approval, kindly download the detailed requirements sheet from the other downloadable documents section, which includes the following requirements:

- Building layout engineering and equipment requirements
- Workplace requirements
- Storage requirements
- Material management requirements
- Waste Management Requirements

• Documents and reporting requirements
• General requirements

Other Documents

•Annex to the Minister of Housing, Municipalities and Environment order regarding the project's environmental assessment
•Law No. (2) of 2021 regarding the environmental standards of air as decided by the Chairman of the Supreme Council for Environment
•Law No. (3) of 2021 regarding the environmental standards of water as decided by the Chairman of the Supreme Council for the Environment
•Law No. (54) of 2014 regarding the approval of the unified law regarding substances that deplete the ozone layer for the GCC countries
•Law No. (7) of 2022 regarding the environment
•Ministerial Order No. (1) of 1998 regarding Project's Environmental Assessment
•Ministerial Order No. (10) of 2006 regarding the installation of devices for on-line monitoring of atmospheric air pollutants
•Ministerial Order No. (11) of 2019 regarding the issue of technical specification of plastic products
•Ministerial Order No. (3) of 2005 regarding environmental requirements and standards in workplaces, especially regarding workers' exposure to heat and noise, and the provision of tools and protective clothing such as gloves, glasses, face masks and earplugs, with a commitment to use them during work
•Ministerial Order No. (3) of 2006 regarding the management of hazardous waste
•Ministerial Order No. (4) of 2005 regarding the management of used oils
•Ministerial Order No. (4) of 2006 regarding the management of hazardous chemicals
•Ministerial Order No. (4) of 2021 regarding the fees of the licenses and services provided by the Supreme Council for Environment
•Ministerial Order No. (6) of 2013 amending order No. (4) of 2006 regarding the management of hazardous chemicals
•Ministerial Order No. (7) of 2002 regarding the control importation and use of prohibited and severely restricted chemicals, and not to import any chemical compound except after obtaining approvals of all concerned authorities, including the executive body of the Supreme Council for Environment
•Ministerial Order No. (7) of 2013 amending order No. (3) of 2006 regarding the management of hazardous waste
•Ministerial Order No. 4 of 2014 regarding the management of the environmental consulting offices operations in the Kingdom of Bahrain
•Order No. (2) of 2020 determining the categories of fees for licensing refrigeration media, refrigeration units and air conditioning units as decided by the Chairman of the Supreme Council for the Environment
•Requirements for business activities
•aw No. (5) of 2021 regarding CITES Annexes to the Convention on International Trade in Endangered Fauna and Flora
•law No. (1) of 2020 regarding the management of refrigeration media, refrigeration

units and air conditioning units as decided by the Chairman of the Supreme Council for the Environment
•law No. (2) of 2019 regarding the ban on the import of plastic waste of all kinds as decided by the Chairman of the Supreme Council for the Environment

Directorate Of Industrial Developments (Final Site Inspection) (321-2)

Approval Name	Description	Estimated Time
Notification Only	Notification to the Industrial development directorate on obtaining a commercial registration with the license to practice the activity.	There is no License Information in this license. Days

Fee Details (if any)

There is no Estimated Processing Time (Days) in this license.

License Information

The industrial license is automatically issued by the Industrial development Directorate after obtaining the approval of other licensing/approving entities.

Please ensure that the actual production date does no exceed the expected production date.

If actual production will start on or before the expected production date please apply for a “New Industrial Registration” by following the steps below:

1- Visit the Industrial services system (www.industry.bh).
2- Select “Industrial Registration”.
3- Select “New Registration” application.

In the event that the actual production date will exceed the expected production date an “Extension of expected production date” application must be submitted by following the steps below:

1- Visit the Industrial services system (www.industry.bh).

2- Select “Industrial License”.
3- Select “Extension of expected production date” application.

Please note that failure to do so within 60 days from the expected production date will result in a violation to be added.

Other Documents

- Law No. (81) of 2006 with respect to approving The Common Industrial Law of the GCC
- Ministerial Resolution No. (11) of 2009 with respect to promulgating Implementing Regulation
- Operational requirements for the directorate of industrial developments activities

Manufacturing

ISIC4	Business activity
322-1	Manufacture of musical instruments - Workshop

Description

This activity includes:
- manufacture of stringed instruments
- manufacture of keyboard stringed instruments, including automatic pianos
- manufacture of keyboard pipe organs, including harmoniums and similar keyboard instruments with free metal reeds
- manufacture of accordions and similar instruments, including mouth organs
- manufacture of wind instruments
- manufacture of percussion musical instruments
- manufacture of musical instruments, the sound of which is produced electronically
- manufacture of musical boxes, fairground organs, calliopes etc.
- manufacture of instrument parts and accessories:
. metronomes, tuning forks, pitch pipes, cards, discs and rolls for automatic mechanical instruments etc.
- This activity also includes manufacture of whistles, call horns and other mouth-blown sound signalling instruments

Business Requirements

Age

18 and above

Allowed for Nationalities

Bahraini 100%		GCC 100%	
American 100%		Singaporean 100%	
Icelander 100%		Liechtenstein er 100%	
Norwegian 100%		Swiss 100%	

Foreign Allowed up to 100%

Legal Type

It is allowed to register according to the legal forms mentioned below

Allowed for Individual Commercial Registration (ICR) : Yes

Allowed for Company Commercial Registration (CCR) : Yes

- Bahrain Shareholding Company (Public)
- With Limited Liability Company
- Branch of a Foreign Company
- Bahrain Shareholding Company (Closed)
- Partnership Company
- Simple Commandite Company
- Commandite By Shares Company
- Non Profit Company

Required Step of Licenses and Approvals

Ministry / Directorate	License / Approval Requirements	Approval Type
Municipality Affairs	Site Approval for manufacturing activities	Post

	(Type B)	
Supreme Council for Environment	Environmental Approval for Manufacture of musical instruments - Workshop activity	Post

Municipality Affairs (Post) (322-1)

Approval Name	Description	Estimated Time
Site Approval for manufacturing activities (Type B)	Municipality Approval for the Commercial Registration address or the site in which the Activity will be practiced	3 Days

Fee Details (if any)

10 BD

License Information

General Conditions:
1. Size of shop/premises must be sufficient for the activity
2. Businesses may not carry out the activity outside the boundaries of the shop/ premises
3. It is prohibited to display or store any items or equipment outside the shop / premises boundary without prior approval from the Municipality. In the event of non-compliance, the Ministry of Municipality Affairs has the right to take necessary action.
4. Maintain cleanliness of the site
5. Comply with the parking space regulations as per the Construction Regulatory Requirements

Activity Specific Conditions:
1. The Commercial Registration for this activity can only be registered in service and industrial streets/areas

Note: Uploading pictures of the site/shop may expedite the process of obtaining approval

Required Documents

- Lease agreement (after obtaining the necessary approvals from other licensing entities)
- Shop photos

Other Documents

- Cabinet's Decision (56) of the year 2022 regarding the Regulatory Requirements of Construction for various areas in the Kingdom of Bahrain

Supreme Council for Environment (Post) (322-1)

Approval Name	Description	Estimated Time
Environmental Approval for Manufacture of musical instruments - Workshop activity	This service aims to assess the environmental impact and licensing of development, industrial and production projects and activities, in accordance with the standards of protecting the environment and its natural resources	10 Days

Fee Details (if any)

- 30 Bahraini Dinars or 200 Bahraini Dinars for the fast-track procedure (when the data requested within the EA-2 form is sufficient without the need for additional studies)
- 4000 Bahraini Dinars or 6000 Bahraini Dinars for the fast track procedure (when it is necessary to submit an environmental impact assessment study for the project), with an additional payment of 100 Bahraini Dinars when it is necessary to submit a proposal for the scope of the study before submitting it or 500 Bahraini Dinars for a fast track procedure when the proposed scope of the study is being submitted before the study

License Information

To check the requirements for this approval, kindly download the detailed requirements sheet from the other downloadable documents section, which includes the following requirements:

- Building layout engineering and equipment requirements
- Workplace requirements
- Storage requirements
- Material management requirements
- Waste Management Requirements

• Documents and reporting requirements
• General requirements

Required Documents

•Requirements for business activities

Other Documents

•Annex to the Minister of Housing, Municipalities and Environment order regarding the project's environmental assessment
•Law No. (2) of 2021 regarding the environmental standards of air as decided by the Chairman of the Supreme Council for Environment
•Law No. (3) of 2021 regarding the environmental standards of water as decided by the Chairman of the Supreme Council for the Environment
•Law No. (5) of 2021 regarding CITES Annexes to the Convention on International Trade in Endangered Fauna and Flora
•Law No. (54) of 2014 regarding the approval of the unified law regarding substances that deplete the ozone layer for the GCC countries
•Law No. (7) of 2022 regarding the environment
•Ministerial Order No. (1) of 1998 regarding Project's Environmental Assessment
•Ministerial Order No. (10) of 2006 regarding the installation of devices for on-line monitoring of atmospheric air pollutants
•Ministerial Order No. (11) of 2019 regarding the issue of technical specification of plastic products
•Ministerial Order No. (3) of 2005 regarding environmental requirements and standards in workplaces, especially regarding workers' exposure to heat and noise, and the provision of tools and protective clothing such as gloves, glasses, face masks and earplugs, with a commitment to use them during work
•Ministerial Order No. (3) of 2006 regarding the management of hazardous waste
•Ministerial Order No. (4) of 2005 regarding the management of used oils
•Ministerial Order No. (4) of 2006 regarding the management of hazardous chemicals
•Ministerial Order No. (4) of 2021 regarding the fees of the licenses and services provided by the Supreme Council for Environment
•Ministerial Order No. (6) of 2013 amending order No. (4) of 2006 regarding the management of hazardous chemicals
•Ministerial Order No. (7) of 2002 regarding the control importation and use of prohibited and severely restricted chemicals, and not to import any chemical compound except after obtaining approvals of all concerned authorities, including the executive body of the Supreme Council for Environment
•Ministerial Order No. (7) of 2013 amending order No. (3) of 2006 regarding the management of hazardous waste
•Ministerial Order No. 4 of 2014 regarding the management of the environmental

consulting offices operations in the Kingdom of Bahrain
•Order No. (2) of 2020 determining the categories of fees for licensing refrigeration media, refrigeration units and air conditioning units as decided by the Chairman of the Supreme Council for the Environment
•law No. (1) of 2020 regarding the management of refrigeration media, refrigeration units and air conditioning units as decided by the Chairman of the Supreme Council for the Environment
•law No. (2) of 2019 regarding the ban on the import of plastic waste of all kinds as decided by the Chairman of the Supreme Council for the Environment

Manufacturing

ISIC4	Business activity
322-2	Manufacture of musical instruments - Factory

Description

This activity includes:
- manufacture of stringed instruments
- manufacture of keyboard stringed instruments, including automatic pianos
- manufacture of keyboard pipe organs, including harmoniums and similar keyboard instruments with free metal reeds
- manufacture of accordions and similar instruments, including mouth organs
- manufacture of wind instruments
- manufacture of percussion musical instruments
- manufacture of musical instruments, the sound of which is produced electronically
- manufacture of musical boxes, fairground organs, calliopes etc.
- manufacture of instrument parts and accessories:
. metronomes, tuning forks, pitch pipes, cards, discs and rolls for automatic mechanical instruments etc.
- This activity also includes manufacture of whistles, call horns and other mouth-blown sound signalling instruments

Business Requirements

Age

18 and above

Allowed for Nationalities

Bahraini 100%		GCC 100%	
American 100%		Singaporean 100%	
Icelander 100%		Liechtenstein er 100%	
Norwegian 100%		Swiss 100%	

Foreign Allowed up to 100%

Legal Type

It is allowed to register according to the legal forms mentioned below

Allowed for Individual Commercial Registration (ICR) : Yes

Allowed for Company Commercial Registration (CCR) : Yes

- Bahrain Shareholding Company (Public)
- With Limited Liability Company
- Branch of a Foreign Company
- Bahrain Shareholding Company (Closed)
- Partnership Company
- Simple Commandite Company
- Commandite By Shares Company
- Non Profit Company

Required Step of Licenses and Approvals

Ministry / Directorate	License / Approval Requirements	Approval Type
Directorate Of Industrial Developments	Approval by Directorate of Industrial	Pre

	Developments(Pre)	
Municipality Affairs	Site Approval for manufacturing activities (Type B)	Post
Supreme Council for Environment	Environmental Approval for Manufacture of musical instruments - Factory activity	Post
Directorate Of Industrial Developments	Notification Only	Final Site Inspection

Directorate Of Industrial Developments (Pre) (322-2)

Approval Name	Description	Estimated Time
Approval by Directorate of Industrial Developments(Pre)	This is a preliminary approval given by the Directorate of Industrial Development to ensure that the applicant has selected the appropriate activity based on the information provided	5 Days

Fee Details (if any)

There is no Estimated Processing Time (Days) in this license.

License Information

Applicants would have to provide through the system the following information:

General Information:

- Total Amount Invested in the Project (This should include value of machinery and fixed assets)
- Estimated number of workforce (Bahraini and Non-Bahraini)
- Expected utility consumption of electricity, water and natural gas
- Total area of the project

Activity Information:

- Product Information:

1) The products to be manufactured by choosing the appropriate HS codes (HS code list can be downloaded from the application if needed).
2) Product name.
3) Expected production date (The expected date on which the factory will start producing the product).

4) The maximum installed capacity and the expected production capacity per year based on the fixed HS code's unit of measure.

• Main raw materials: The main raw materials to be used in production and its source

• Main Machinery and Equipment: The main machinery and equipment to be used in production and its information.

• Manufacturing process: Brief on the manufacturing process explaining how materials are transformed from one state to another until reaching the final product, mentioning the types of materials used, the operations performed, and the machinery/equipment used in each step (if any) for each product.

Required Documents

•Photos of machinery/ equipment to be used
•Photos of products to be manufactured

Other Documents

•Law No. (81) of 2006 with respect to approving The Common Industrial Law of the GCC
•Ministerial Resolution No. (11) of 2009
•Operational requirements for the directorate of industrial developments activities

Municipality Affairs (Post) (322-2)

Approval Name	Description	Estimated Time
Site Approval for manufacturing activities (Type B)	Municipality Approval for the Commercial Registration address or the site in which the Activity will be practiced	3 Days

Fee Details (if any)

10 BD

License Information

General Conditions:
1. Size of shop/premises must be sufficient for the activity
2. Businesses may not carry out the activity outside the boundaries of the shop/ premises
3. It is prohibited to display or store any items or equipment outside the shop / premises boundary without prior approval from the Municipality. In the event of non-compliance, the Ministry of Municipality Affairs has the right to take necessary action.
4. Maintain cleanliness of the site
5. Comply with the parking space regulations as per the Construction Regulatory Requirements

Activity Specific Conditions:
1. The Commercial Registration for this activity can only be registered in service and industrial streets/areas

Note: Uploading pictures of the site/shop may expedite the process of obtaining approval

Required Documents

- Lease agreement (after obtaining the necessary approvals from other licensing entities)
- Shop photos

Other Documents

- Cabinet's Decision (56) of the year 2022 regarding the Regulatory Requirements of Construction for various areas in the Kingdom of Bahrain

Supreme Council for Environment (Post) (322-2)

Approval Name	Description	Estimated Time
Environmental Approval for Manufacture of musical instruments - Factory activity	This service aims to assess the environmental impact and licensing of development, industrial and production projects and activities, in accordance with the standards of protecting the environment and its natural resources	10 Days

Fee Details (if any)

- 30 Bahraini Dinars or 200 Bahraini Dinars for the fast-track procedure (when the data requested within the EA-2 form is sufficient without the need for additional studies)
- 4000 Bahraini Dinars or 6000 Bahraini Dinars for the fast track procedure (when it is necessary to submit an environmental impact assessment study for the project), with an additional payment of 100 Bahraini Dinars when it is necessary to submit a proposal for the scope of the study before submitting it or 500 Bahraini Dinars for a fast track procedure when the proposed scope of the study is being submitted before the study

License Information

To check the requirements for this approval, kindly download the detailed requirements sheet from the other downloadable documents section, which includes the following requirements:

- Building layout engineering and equipment requirements
- Workplace requirements
- Storage requirements
- Material management requirements
- Waste Management Requirements

• Documents and reporting requirements
• General requirements

Required Documents

•Requirements for business activities

Other Documents

•Annex to the Minister of Housing, Municipalities and Environment order regarding the project's environmental assessment
•Law No. (2) of 2021 regarding the environmental standards of air as decided by the Chairman of the Supreme Council for Environment
•Law No. (3) of 2021 regarding the environmental standards of water as decided by the Chairman of the Supreme Council for the Environment
•Law No. (5) of 2021 regarding CITES Annexes to the Convention on International Trade in Endangered Fauna and Flora
•Law No. (54) of 2014 regarding the approval of the unified law regarding substances that deplete the ozone layer for the GCC countries
•Law No. (7) of 2022 regarding the environment
•Ministerial Order No. (1) of 1998 regarding Project's Environmental Assessment
•Ministerial Order No. (10) of 2006 regarding the installation of devices for on-line monitoring of atmospheric air pollutants
•Ministerial Order No. (11) of 2019 regarding the issue of technical specification of plastic products
•Ministerial Order No. (3) of 2005 regarding environmental requirements and standards in workplaces, especially regarding workers' exposure to heat and noise, and the provision of tools and protective clothing such as gloves, glasses, face masks and earplugs, with a commitment to use them during work
•Ministerial Order No. (3) of 2006 regarding the management of hazardous waste
•Ministerial Order No. (4) of 2005 regarding the management of used oils
•Ministerial Order No. (4) of 2006 regarding the management of hazardous chemicals
•Ministerial Order No. (4) of 2021 regarding the fees of the licenses and services provided by the Supreme Council for Environment
•Ministerial Order No. (6) of 2013 amending order No. (4) of 2006 regarding the management of hazardous chemicals
•Ministerial Order No. (7) of 2002 regarding the control importation and use of prohibited and severely restricted chemicals, and not to import any chemical compound except after obtaining approvals of all concerned authorities, including the executive body of the Supreme Council for Environment
•Ministerial Order No. (7) of 2013 amending order No. (3) of 2006 regarding the management of hazardous waste
•Ministerial Order No. 4 of 2014 regarding the management of the environmental

consulting offices operations in the Kingdom of Bahrain
•Order No. (2) of 2020 determining the categories of fees for licensing refrigeration media, refrigeration units and air conditioning units as decided by the Chairman of the Supreme Council for the Environment
•law No. (1) of 2020 regarding the management of refrigeration media, refrigeration units and air conditioning units as decided by the Chairman of the Supreme Council for the Environment
•law No. (2) of 2019 regarding the ban on the import of plastic waste of all kinds as decided by the Chairman of the Supreme Council for the Environment

Directorate Of Industrial Developments (Final Site Inspection) (322-2)

Approval Name	Description	Estimated Time
Notification Only	Notification to the Industrial development directorate on obtaining a commercial registration with the license to practice the activity.	There is no License Information in this license. Days

Fee Details (if any)

There is no Estimated Processing Time (Days) in this license.

License Information

The industrial license is automatically issued by the Industrial development Directorate after obtaining the approval of other licensing/approving entities.

Please ensure that the actual production date does no exceed the expected production date.

If actual production will start on or before the expected production date please apply for a “New Industrial Registration” by following the steps below:

1- Visit the Industrial services system (www.industry.bh).
2- Select “Industrial Registration”.
3- Select “New Registration” application.

In the event that the actual production date will exceed the expected production date an “Extension of expected production date” application must be submitted by following the steps below:

1- Visit the Industrial services system (www.industry.bh).

2- Select “Industrial License”.
3- Select “Extension of expected production date” application.

Please note that failure to do so within 60 days from the expected production date will result in a violation to be added.

Other Documents

- Law No. (81) of 2006 with respect to approving The Common Industrial Law of the GCC
- Ministerial Resolution No. (11) of 2009 with respect to promulgating Implementing Regulation
- Operational requirements for the directorate of industrial developments activities

Manufacturing

ISIC4	Business activity
323	Manufacture of sports goods

Description

This activity includes the manufacture of sporting and athletic goods (except apparel and footwear) such as:
- manufacture of articles and equipment for sports, outdoor and indoor games, of any material:
. hard, soft and inflatable balls
. rackets, bats and clubs
. skis, bindings and poles
. ski-boots
. sailboards and surfboards
. requisites for sport fishing, including landing nets
. requisites for hunting, mountain climbing etc.
. leather sports gloves and sports headgear
. ice skates, roller skates etc.
. bows and crossbows
. gymnasium, fitness center or athletic equipment

This activity excludes:
- manufacture of boat sails, see 13
- manufacture of sports apparel, see 140
- manufacture of saddlery and harness, see 15
- manufacture of whips and riding crops, see 15
- manufacture of sports footwear, see 15
- manufacture of metal weights as used for weightlifting, see 2599
- manufacture of automatic bowling alley equipment (e.g. pin-setters), see 28
- manufacture of sports vehicles other than toboggans and the like, see activities under 29 and 30
- manufacture of boats, see 3012
- manufacture of billiard tables, see 324
- manufacture of ear and noise plugs (e.g. for swimming and noise protection), see 32907

Business Requirements

Age

18 and above

Allowed for Nationalities

Bahraini 100%		GCC 100%	
American 100%		Singaporean 100%	
Icelander 100%		Liechtenstein er 100%	
Norwegian 100%		Swiss 100%	

Foreign Allowed up to 100%

Legal Type

It is allowed to register according to the legal forms mentioned below

Allowed for Individual Commercial Registration (ICR) : Yes

Allowed for Company Commercial Registration (CCR) : Yes

- Bahrain Shareholding Company (Public)
- With Limited Liability Company
- Branch of a Foreign Company
- Bahrain Shareholding Company (Closed)
- Partnership Company
- Simple Commandite Company
- Commandite By Shares Company
- Non Profit Company

Required Step of Licenses and Approvals

Ministry / Directorate	License / Approval Requirements	Approval Type
Directorate Of Industrial Developments	Approval by Directorate of Industrial	Pre

	Developments(Pre)	
Supreme Council for Environment	Environmental Approval for Manufacture of sports goods activity	Post
Municipality Affairs	Site Approval for manufacturing activities (Type B)	Post
Directorate Of Industrial Developments	Notification Only	Final Site Inspection

Directorate Of Industrial Developments (Pre) (323)

Approval Name	Description	Estimated Time
Approval by Directorate of Industrial Developments(Pre)	This is a preliminary approval given by the Directorate of Industrial Development to ensure that the applicant has selected the appropriate activity based on the information provided	5 Days

Fee Details (if any)

There is no Estimated Processing Time (Days) in this license.

License Information

Applicants would have to provide through the system the following information:

General Information:

- Total Amount Invested in the Project (This should include value of machinery and fixed assets)
- Estimated number of workforce (Bahraini and Non-Bahraini)
- Expected utility consumption of electricity, water and natural gas
- Total area of the project

Activity Information:

- Product Information:

1) The products to be manufactured by choosing the appropriate HS codes (HS code list can be downloaded from the application if needed).
2) Product name.
3) Expected production date (The expected date on which the factory will start producing the product).

4) The maximum installed capacity and the expected production capacity per year based on the fixed HS code's unit of measure.

• Main raw materials: The main raw materials to be used in production and its source

• Main Machinery and Equipment: The main machinery and equipment to be used in production and its information.

• Manufacturing process: Brief on the manufacturing process explaining how materials are transformed from one state to another until reaching the final product, mentioning the types of materials used, the operations performed, and the machinery/equipment used in each step (if any) for each product.

Required Documents

•Photos of machinery/ equipment to be used
•Photos of products to be manufactured

Other Documents

•Law No. (81) of 2006 with respect to approving The Common Industrial Law of the GCC
•Ministerial Resolution No. (11) of 2009
•Operational requirements for the directorate of industrial developments activities

Supreme Council for Environment (Post) (323)

Approval Name	Description	Estimated Time
Environmental Approval for Manufacture of sports goods activity	This service aims to assess the environmental impact and licensing of development, industrial and production projects and activities, in accordance with the standards of protecting the environment and its natural resources	10 Days

Fee Details (if any)

- 30 Bahraini Dinars or 200 Bahraini Dinars for the fast-track procedure (when the data requested within the EA-2 form is sufficient without the need for additional studies)
- 4000 Bahraini Dinars or 6000 Bahraini Dinars for the fast track procedure (when it is necessary to submit an environmental impact assessment study for the project), with an additional payment of 100 Bahraini Dinars when it is necessary to submit a proposal for the scope of the study before submitting it or 500 Bahraini Dinars for a fast track procedure when the proposed scope of the study is being submitted before the study

License Information

To check the requirements for this approval, kindly download the detailed requirements sheet from the other downloadable documents section, which includes the following requirements:

- Building layout engineering and equipment requirements
- Workplace requirements
- Storage requirements
- Material management requirements
- Waste Management Requirements
- Documents and reporting requirements

• General requirements

Other Documents

•Annex to the Minister of Housing, Municipalities and Environment order regarding the project's environmental assessment
•Law No. (2) of 2021 regarding the environmental standards of air as decided by the Chairman of the Supreme Council for Environment
•Law No. (3) of 2021 regarding the environmental standards of water as decided by the Chairman of the Supreme Council for the Environment
•Law No. (5) of 2021 regarding CITES Annexes to the Convention on International Trade in Endangered Fauna and Flora
•Law No. (54) of 2014 regarding the approval of the unified law regarding substances that deplete the ozone layer for the GCC countries
•Law No. (7) of 2022 regarding the environment
•Ministerial Order No. (1) of 1998 regarding Project's Environmental Assessment
•Ministerial Order No. (10) of 2006 regarding the installation of devices for on-line monitoring of atmospheric air pollutants
•Ministerial Order No. (11) of 2019 regarding the issue of technical specification of plastic products
•Ministerial Order No. (3) of 2005 regarding environmental requirements and standards in workplaces, especially regarding workers' exposure to heat and noise, and the provision of tools and protective clothing such as gloves, glasses, face masks and earplugs, with a commitment to use them during work
•Ministerial Order No. (3) of 2006 regarding the management of hazardous waste
•Ministerial Order No. (4) of 2005 regarding the management of used oils
•Ministerial Order No. (4) of 2006 regarding the management of hazardous chemicals
•Ministerial Order No. (4) of 2021 regarding the fees of the licenses and services provided by the Supreme Council for Environment
•Ministerial Order No. (6) of 2013 amending order No. (4) of 2006 regarding the management of hazardous chemicals
•Ministerial Order No. (7) of 2002 regarding the control importation and use of prohibited and severely restricted chemicals, and not to import any chemical compound except after obtaining approvals of all concerned authorities, including the executive body of the Supreme Council for Environment
•Ministerial Order No. (7) of 2013 amending order No. (3) of 2006 regarding the management of hazardous waste
•Ministerial Order No. 4 of 2014 regarding the management of the environmental consulting offices operations in the Kingdom of Bahrain
•Order No. (2) of 2020 determining the categories of fees for licensing refrigeration media, refrigeration units and air conditioning units as decided by the Chairman of the Supreme Council for the Environment
•law No. (1) of 2020 regarding the management of refrigeration media, refrigeration units and air conditioning units as decided by the Chairman of the Supreme Council for the Environment

•law No. (2) of 2019 regarding the ban on the import of plastic waste of all kinds as decided by the Chairman of the Supreme Council for the Environment
•licensing form for the supreme council of the environment

Municipality Affairs (Post) (323)

Approval Name	Description	Estimated Time
Site Approval for manufacturing activities (Type B)	Municipality Approval for the Commercial Registration address or the site in which the Activity will be practiced	3 Days

Fee Details (if any)

10 BD

License Information

General Conditions:
1. Size of shop/premises must be sufficient for the activity
2. Businesses may not carry out the activity outside the boundaries of the shop/ premises
3. It is prohibited to display or store any items or equipment outside the shop / premises boundary without prior approval from the Municipality. In the event of non-compliance, the Ministry of Municipality Affairs has the right to take necessary action.
4. Maintain cleanliness of the site
5. Comply with the parking space regulations as per the Construction Regulatory Requirements

Activity Specific Conditions:
1. The Commercial Registration for this activity can only be registered in service and industrial streets/areas

Note: Uploading pictures of the site/shop may expedite the process of obtaining approval

Required Documents

- Lease agreement (after obtaining the necessary approvals from other licensing entities)
- Shop photos

Other Documents

- Cabinet's Decision (56) of the year 2022 regarding the Regulatory Requirements of Construction for various areas in the Kingdom of Bahrain

Directorate Of Industrial Developments (Final Site Inspection) (323)

Approval Name	Description	Estimated Time
Notification Only	Notification to the Industrial development directorate on obtaining a commercial registration with the license to practice the activity.	There is no License Information in this license. Days

Fee Details (if any)

There is no Estimated Processing Time (Days) in this license.

License Information

The industrial license is automatically issued by the Industrial development Directorate after obtaining the approval of other licensing/approving entities.

Please ensure that the actual production date does no exceed the expected production date.

If actual production will start on or before the expected production date please apply for a “New Industrial Registration” by following the steps below:

1- Visit the Industrial services system (www.industry.bh).
2- Select “Industrial Registration”.
3- Select “New Registration” application.

In the event that the actual production date will exceed the expected production date an “Extension of expected production date” application must be submitted by following the steps below:

1- Visit the Industrial services system (www.industry.bh).

2- Select “Industrial License”.
3- Select “Extension of expected production date” application.

Please note that failure to do so within 60 days from the expected production date will result in a violation to be added.

Other Documents

- Law No. (81) of 2006 with respect to approving The Common Industrial Law of the GCC
- Ministerial Resolution No. (11) of 2009 with respect to promulgating Implementing Regulation
- Operational requirements for the directorate of industrial developments activities

Manufacturing

ISIC4	Business activity
324-1	Manufacture of games and toys - Workshop

Description

This activity includes the manufacture of dolls, toys and games (including electronic games), scale models and children`s vehicles (except metal bicycles and tricycles). This includes:
- manufacture of dolls and doll garments, parts and accessories
- manufacture of action figures
- manufacture of toy animals
- manufacture of toy musical instruments
- manufacture of playing cards
- manufacture of board games and similar games
- manufacture of electronic games: chess etc.
- manufacture of coin-operated games, billiards , etc.
- manufacture of articles for funfair, table or parlour games
- manufacture of wheeled toys designed to be ridden, including plastic bicycles and tricycles
- manufacture of puzzles and similar articles

This activity excludes:
- manufacture of video game consoles, see 26
- manufacture of bicycles, see 3092
- writing and publishing of software for video game consoles, see 582, 6201

Business Requirements

Age

18 and above

Allowed for Nationalities

Bahraini 100%		GCC 100%	
American 100%		Singaporean 100%	
Icelander 100%		Liechtenstein er 100%	
Norwegian 100%		Swiss 100%	

Foreign Allowed up to 100%

Legal Type

It is allowed to register according to the legal forms mentioned below

Allowed for Individual Commercial Registration (ICR) : Yes

Allowed for Company Commercial Registration (CCR) : Yes

- Bahrain Shareholding Company (Public)
- With Limited Liability Company
- Branch of a Foreign Company
- Bahrain Shareholding Company (Closed)
- Partnership Company
- Simple Commandite Company
- Commandite By Shares Company
- Non Profit Company

Required Step of Licenses and Approvals

Ministry / Directorate	License / Approval Requirements	Approval Type
Municipality Affairs	Site Approval for manufacturing activities	Post

	(Type B)	
Supreme Council for Environment	Environmental Approval for Manufacture of games and toys - Workshop activity	Post

Municipality Affairs (Post) (324-1)

Approval Name	Description	Estimated Time
Site Approval for manufacturing activities (Type B)	Municipality Approval for the Commercial Registration address or the site in which the Activity will be practiced	3 Days

Fee Details (if any)

10 BD

License Information

General Conditions:
1. Size of shop/premises must be sufficient for the activity
2. Businesses may not carry out the activity outside the boundaries of the shop/ premises
3. It is prohibited to display or store any items or equipment outside the shop / premises boundary without prior approval from the Municipality. In the event of non-compliance, the Ministry of Municipality Affairs has the right to take necessary action.
4. Maintain cleanliness of the site
5. Comply with the parking space regulations as per the Construction Regulatory Requirements

Activity Specific Conditions:
1. The Commercial Registration for this activity can only be registered in service and industrial streets/areas

Note: Uploading pictures of the site/shop may expedite the process of obtaining approval

Required Documents

- Lease agreement (after obtaining the necessary approvals from other licensing entities)
- Shop photos

Other Documents

- Cabinet's Decision (56) of the year 2022 regarding the Regulatory Requirements of Construction for various areas in the Kingdom of Bahrain

Supreme Council for Environment (Post) (324-1)

Approval Name	Description	Estimated Time
Environmental Approval for Manufacture of games and toys - Workshop activity	This service aims to assess the environmental impact and licensing of development, industrial and production projects and activities, in accordance with the standards of protecting the environment and its natural resources	10 Days

Fee Details (if any)

- 30 Bahraini Dinars or 200 Bahraini Dinars for the fast-track procedure (when the data requested within the EA-2 form is sufficient without the need for additional studies)
- 4000 Bahraini Dinars or 6000 Bahraini Dinars for the fast track procedure (when it is necessary to submit an environmental impact assessment study for the project), with an additional payment of 100 Bahraini Dinars when it is necessary to submit a proposal for the scope of the study before submitting it or 500 Bahraini Dinars for a fast track procedure when the proposed scope of the study is being submitted before the study

License Information

To check the requirements for this approval, kindly download the detailed requirements sheet from the other downloadable documents section, which includes the following requirements:

- Building layout engineering and equipment requirements
- Workplace requirements
- Storage requirements
- Material management requirements
- Waste Management Requirements

• Documents and reporting requirements
• General requirements

Required Documents

•Requirements for business activities

Other Documents

•Annex to the Minister of Housing, Municipalities and Environment order regarding the project's environmental assessment
•Law No. (2) of 2021 regarding the environmental standards of air as decided by the Chairman of the Supreme Council for Environment
•Law No. (3) of 2021 regarding the environmental standards of water as decided by the Chairman of the Supreme Council for the Environment
•Law No. (5) of 2021 regarding CITES Annexes to the Convention on International Trade in Endangered Fauna and Flora
•Law No. (54) of 2014 regarding the approval of the unified law regarding substances that deplete the ozone layer for the GCC countries
•Law No. (7) of 2022 regarding the environment
•Ministerial Order No. (1) of 1998 regarding Project's Environmental Assessment
•Ministerial Order No. (10) of 2006 regarding the installation of devices for on-line monitoring of atmospheric air pollutants
•Ministerial Order No. (11) of 2019 regarding the issue of technical specification of plastic products
•Ministerial Order No. (3) of 2005 regarding environmental requirements and standards in workplaces, especially regarding workers' exposure to heat and noise, and the provision of tools and protective clothing such as gloves, glasses, face masks and earplugs, with a commitment to use them during work
•Ministerial Order No. (3) of 2006 regarding the management of hazardous waste
•Ministerial Order No. (4) of 2005 regarding the management of used oils
•Ministerial Order No. (4) of 2006 regarding the management of hazardous chemicals
•Ministerial Order No. (4) of 2021 regarding the fees of the licenses and services provided by the Supreme Council for Environment
•Ministerial Order No. (6) of 2013 amending order No. (4) of 2006 regarding the management of hazardous chemicals
•Ministerial Order No. (7) of 2002 regarding the control importation and use of prohibited and severely restricted chemicals, and not to import any chemical compound except after obtaining approvals of all concerned authorities, including the executive body of the Supreme Council for Environment
•Ministerial Order No. (7) of 2013 amending order No. (3) of 2006 regarding the management of hazardous waste
•Ministerial Order No. 4 of 2014 regarding the management of the environmental

consulting offices operations in the Kingdom of Bahrain
•Order No. (2) of 2020 determining the categories of fees for licensing refrigeration media, refrigeration units and air conditioning units as decided by the Chairman of the Supreme Council for the Environment
•law No. (1) of 2020 regarding the management of refrigeration media, refrigeration units and air conditioning units as decided by the Chairman of the Supreme Council for the Environment
•law No. (2) of 2019 regarding the ban on the import of plastic waste of all kinds as decided by the Chairman of the Supreme Council for the Environment

Manufacturing

ISIC4	Business activity
324-2	Manufacture of games and toys - Factory

Description

This activity includes the manufacture of dolls, toys and games (including electronic games), scale models and children`s vehicles (except metal bicycles and tricycles). This includes:
- manufacture of dolls and doll garments, parts and accessories
- manufacture of action figures
- manufacture of toy animals
- manufacture of toy musical instruments
- manufacture of playing cards
- manufacture of board games and similar games
- manufacture of electronic games: chess etc.
- manufacture of coin-operated games, billiards , etc.
- manufacture of articles for funfair, table or parlour games
- manufacture of wheeled toys designed to be ridden, including plastic bicycles and tricycles
- manufacture of puzzles and similar articles

This activity excludes:
- manufacture of video game consoles, see 26
- manufacture of bicycles, see 3092
- writing and publishing of software for video game consoles, see 582, 6201

Business Requirements

Age

18 and above

Allowed for Nationalities

Bahraini 100%		GCC 100%	
American 100%		Singaporean 100%	
Icelander 100%		Liechtenstein er 100%	
Norwegian 100%		Swiss 100%	

Foreign Allowed up to 100%

Legal Type

It is allowed to register according to the legal forms mentioned below

Allowed for Individual Commercial Registration (ICR) : Yes

Allowed for Company Commercial Registration (CCR) : Yes

- Bahrain Shareholding Company (Public)
- With Limited Liability Company
- Branch of a Foreign Company
- Bahrain Shareholding Company (Closed)
- Partnership Company
- Simple Commandite Company
- Commandite By Shares Company
- Non Profit Company

Required Step of Licenses and Approvals

Ministry / Directorate	License / Approval Requirements	Approval Type
Directorate Of Industrial Developments	Approval by Directorate of Industrial	Pre

	Developments(Pre)	
Supreme Council for Environment	Environmental Approval for Manufacture of games and toys - Factory activity	Post
Municipality Affairs	Site Approval for manufacturing activities (Type B)	Post
Directorate Of Industrial Developments	Notification Only	Final Site Inspection

Directorate Of Industrial Developments (Pre) (324-2)

Approval Name	Description	Estimated Time
Approval by Directorate of Industrial Developments(Pre)	This is a preliminary approval given by the Directorate of Industrial Development to ensure that the applicant has selected the appropriate activity based on the information provided	5 Days

Fee Details (if any)

There is no Estimated Processing Time (Days) in this license.

License Information

Applicants would have to provide through the system the following information:

General Information:

- Total Amount Invested in the Project (This should include value of machinery and fixed assets)
- Estimated number of workforce (Bahraini and Non-Bahraini)
- Expected utility consumption of electricity, water and natural gas
- Total area of the project

Activity Information:

- Product Information:

1) The products to be manufactured by choosing the appropriate HS codes (HS code list can be downloaded from the application if needed).
2) Product name.
3) Expected production date (The expected date on which the factory will start producing the product).

4) The maximum installed capacity and the expected production capacity per year based on the fixed HS code's unit of measure.

• Main raw materials: The main raw materials to be used in production and its source

• Main Machinery and Equipment: The main machinery and equipment to be used in production and its information.

• Manufacturing process: Brief on the manufacturing process explaining how materials are transformed from one state to another until reaching the final product, mentioning the types of materials used, the operations performed, and the machinery/equipment used in each step (if any) for each product.

Required Documents

•Photos of machinery/ equipment to be used
•Photos of products to be manufactured

Other Documents

•Law No. (81) of 2006 with respect to approving The Common Industrial Law of the GCC
•Ministerial Resolution No. (11) of 2009
•Operational requirements for the directorate of industrial developments activities

Supreme Council for Environment (Post) (324-2)

Approval Name	Description	Estimated Time
Environmental Approval for Manufacture of games and toys - Factory activity	This service aims to assess the environmental impact and licensing of development, industrial and production projects and activities, in accordance with the standards of protecting the environment and its natural resources	10 Days

Fee Details (if any)

- 30 Bahraini Dinars or 200 Bahraini Dinars for the fast-track procedure (when the data requested within the EA-2 form is sufficient without the need for additional studies)
- 4000 Bahraini Dinars or 6000 Bahraini Dinars for the fast track procedure (when it is necessary to submit an environmental impact assessment study for the project), with an additional payment of 100 Bahraini Dinars when it is necessary to submit a proposal for the scope of the study before submitting it or 500 Bahraini Dinars for a fast track procedure when the proposed scope of the study is being submitted before the study

License Information

To check the requirements for this approval, kindly download the detailed requirements sheet from the other downloadable documents section, which includes the following requirements:

- Building layout engineering and equipment requirements
- Workplace requirements
- Storage requirements
- Material management requirements
- Waste Management Requirements

- Documents and reporting requirements
- General requirements

Required Documents

- Requirements for business activities

Other Documents

- Annex to the Minister of Housing, Municipalities and Environment order regarding the project's environmental assessment
- Law No. (2) of 2021 regarding the environmental standards of air as decided by the Chairman of the Supreme Council for Environment
- Law No. (3) of 2021 regarding the environmental standards of water as decided by the Chairman of the Supreme Council for the Environment
- Law No. (5) of 2021 regarding CITES Annexes to the Convention on International Trade in Endangered Fauna and Flora
- Law No. (54) of 2014 regarding the approval of the unified law regarding substances that deplete the ozone layer for the GCC countries
- Law No. (7) of 2022 regarding the environment
- Ministerial Order No. (1) of 1998 regarding Project's Environmental Assessment
- Ministerial Order No. (10) of 2006 regarding the installation of devices for on-line monitoring of atmospheric air pollutants
- Ministerial Order No. (3) of 2005 regarding environmental requirements and standards in workplaces, especially regarding workers' exposure to heat and noise, and the provision of tools and protective clothing such as gloves, glasses, face masks and earplugs, with a commitment to use them during work
- Ministerial Order No. (3) of 2006 regarding the management of hazardous waste
- Ministerial Order No. (4) of 2005 regarding the management of used oils
- Ministerial Order No. (4) of 2006 regarding the management of hazardous chemicals
- Ministerial Order No. (4) of 2021 regarding the fees of the licenses and services provided by the Supreme Council for Environment
- Ministerial Order No. (6) of 2013 amending order No. (4) of 2006 regarding the management of hazardous chemicals
- Ministerial Order No. (7) of 2002 regarding the control importation and use of prohibited and severely restricted chemicals, and not to import any chemical compound except after obtaining approvals of all concerned authorities, including the executive body of the Supreme Council for Environment
- Ministerial Order No. (7) of 2013 amending order No. (3) of 2006 regarding the management of hazardous waste
- Ministerial Order No. 4 of 2014 regarding the management of the environmental consulting offices operations in the Kingdom of Bahrain
- Order No. (2) of 2020 determining the categories of fees for licensing refrigeration

media, refrigeration units and air conditioning units as decided by the Chairman of the Supreme Council for the Environment
•law No. (1) of 2020 regarding the management of refrigeration media, refrigeration units and air conditioning units as decided by the Chairman of the Supreme Council for the Environmentunits as decided by the Chairman of the Supreme Council for the Environmentding the management of refrigeration media, refrigeration units and air conditioning units as decided by the Chairman of the Supreme Council for the Environment
•law No. (2) of 2019 regarding the ban on the import of plastic waste of all kinds as decided by the Chairman of the Supreme Council for the Environment

Municipality Affairs (Post) (324-2)

Approval Name	Description	Estimated Time
Site Approval for manufacturing activities (Type B)	Municipality Approval for the Commercial Registration address or the site in which the Activity will be practiced	3 Days

Fee Details (if any)

10 BD

License Information

General Conditions:
1. Size of shop/premises must be sufficient for the activity
2. Businesses may not carry out the activity outside the boundaries of the shop/ premises
3. It is prohibited to display or store any items or equipment outside the shop / premises boundary without prior approval from the Municipality. In the event of non-compliance, the Ministry of Municipality Affairs has the right to take necessary action.
4. Maintain cleanliness of the site
5. Comply with the parking space regulations as per the Construction Regulatory Requirements

Activity Specific Conditions:
1. The Commercial Registration for this activity can only be registered in service and industrial streets/areas

Note: Uploading pictures of the site/shop may expedite the process of obtaining approval

Required Documents

- Lease agreement (after obtaining the necessary approvals from other licensing entities)
- Shop photos

Other Documents

- Cabinet's Decision (56) of the year 2022 regarding the Regulatory Requirements of Construction for various areas in the Kingdom of Bahrain

Directorate Of Industrial Developments (Final Site Inspection) (324-2)

Approval Name	Description	Estimated Time
Notification Only	Notification to the Industrial development directorate on obtaining a commercial registration with the license to practice the activity.	There is no License Information in this license. Days

Fee Details (if any)

There is no Estimated Processing Time (Days) in this license.

License Information

The industrial license is automatically issued by the Industrial development Directorate after obtaining the approval of other licensing/approving entities.

Please ensure that the actual production date does no exceed the expected production date.

If actual production will start on or before the expected production date please apply for a “New Industrial Registration” by following the steps below:

1- Visit the Industrial services system (www.industry.bh).
2- Select “Industrial Registration”.
3- Select “New Registration” application.

In the event that the actual production date will exceed the expected production date an “Extension of expected production date” application must be submitted by following the steps below:

1- Visit the Industrial services system (www.industry.bh).

2- Select “Industrial License”.
3- Select “Extension of expected production date” application.

Please note that failure to do so within 60 days from the expected production date will result in a violation to be added.

Other Documents

- Law No. (81) of 2006 with respect to approving The Common Industrial Law of the GCC
- Ministerial Resolution No. (11) of 2009 with respect to promulgating Implementing Regulation
- Operational requirements for the directorate of industrial developments activities

Manufacturing

ISIC4	Business activity
32405-1	Manufacture of "scale" models and similar recreational models - Workshop

Description

This activity includes:
- Manufacturing models of airplane, car, train, etc
- Making of Architectural models
- Production of scientific display devices

Business Requirements

Age

18 and above

Allowed for Nationalities

Bahraini 100%	GCC 100%
American 100%	Singaporean 100%
Icelander 100%	Liechtensteiner 100%
Norwegian 100%	Swiss 100%

Foreign Allowed up to 100%

Legal Type

It is allowed to register according to the legal forms mentioned below

Allowed for Individual Commercial Registration (ICR) : Yes

Allowed for Company Commercial Registration (CCR) : Yes

- Bahrain Shareholding Company (Public)
- With Limited Liability Company
- Branch of a Foreign Company
- Bahrain Shareholding Company (Closed)
- Partnership Company
- Simple Commandite Company
- Commandite By Shares Company
- Non Profit Company

Required Step of Licenses and Approvals

Ministry / Directorate	License / Approval Requirements	Approval Type
Supreme Council for Environment	Environmental Approval for Manufacture of "scale" models and similar recreational models - Workshop activity	Post
Municipality Affairs	Site Approval for manufacturing activities (Type B)	Post

Supreme Council for Environment (Post) (32405-1)

Approval Name	Description	Estimated Time
Environmental Approval for Manufacture of "scale" models and similar recreational models - Workshop activity	This service aims to assess the environmental impact and licensing of development, industrial and production projects and activities, in accordance with the standards of protecting the environment and its natural resources	10 Days

Fee Details (if any)

- 30 Bahraini Dinars or 200 Bahraini Dinars for the fast-track procedure (when the data requested within the EA-2 form is sufficient without the need for additional studies)
- 4000 Bahraini Dinars or 6000 Bahraini Dinars for the fast track procedure (when it is necessary to submit an environmental impact assessment study for the project), with an additional payment of 100 Bahraini Dinars when it is necessary to submit a proposal for the scope of the study before submitting it or 500 Bahraini Dinars for a fast track procedure when the proposed scope of the study is being submitted before the study

License Information

To check the requirements for this approval, kindly download the detailed requirements sheet from the other downloadable documents section, which includes the following requirements:

- Building layout engineering and equipment requirements
- Workplace requirements
- Storage requirements
- Material management requirements
- Waste Management Requirements

• Documents and reporting requirements
• General requirements

Required Documents

•Requirements for business activities

Other Documents

•Annex to the Minister of Housing, Municipalities and Environment order regarding the project's environmental assessment
•Law No. (2) of 2021 regarding the environmental standards of air as decided by the Chairman of the Supreme Council for Environment
•Law No. (3) of 2021 regarding the environmental standards of water as decided by the Chairman of the Supreme Council for the Environment
•Law No. (5) of 2021 regarding CITES Annexes to the Convention on International Trade in Endangered Fauna and Flora
•Law No. (54) of 2014 regarding the approval of the unified law regarding substances that deplete the ozone layer for the GCC countries
•Law No. (7) of 2022 regarding the environment
•Ministerial Order No. (1) of 1998 regarding Project's Environmental Assessment
•Ministerial Order No. (10) of 2006 regarding the installation of devices for on-line monitoring of atmospheric air pollutants
•Ministerial Order No. (11) of 2019 regarding the issue of technical specification of plastic products
•Ministerial Order No. (3) of 2005 regarding environmental requirements and standards in workplaces, especially regarding workers' exposure to heat and noise, and the provision of tools and protective clothing such as gloves, glasses, face masks and earplugs, with a commitment to use them during work
•Ministerial Order No. (3) of 2006 regarding the management of hazardous waste
•Ministerial Order No. (4) of 2005 regarding the management of used oils
•Ministerial Order No. (4) of 2006 regarding the management of hazardous chemicals
•Ministerial Order No. (4) of 2021 regarding the fees of the licenses and services provided by the Supreme Council for Environment
•Ministerial Order No. (6) of 2013 amending order No. (4) of 2006 regarding the management of hazardous chemicals
•Ministerial Order No. (7) of 2002 regarding the control importation and use of prohibited and severely restricted chemicals, and not to import any chemical compound except after obtaining approvals of all concerned authorities, including the executive body of the Supreme Council for Environment
•Ministerial Order No. (7) of 2013 amending order No. (3) of 2006 regarding the management of hazardous waste
•Ministerial Order No. 4 of 2014 regarding the management of the environmental

consulting offices operations in the Kingdom of Bahrain
•Order No. (2) of 2020 determining the categories of fees for licensing refrigeration media, refrigeration units and air conditioning units as decided by the Chairman of the Supreme Council for the Environment
•law No. (1) of 2020 regarding the management of refrigeration media, refrigeration units and air conditioning units as decided by the Chairman of the Supreme Council for the Environment
•law No. (2) of 2019 regarding the ban on the import of plastic waste of all kinds as decided by the Chairman of the Supreme Council for the Environment

Municipality Affairs (Post) (32405-1)

Approval Name	Description	Estimated Time
Site Approval for manufacturing activities (Type B)	Municipality Approval for the Commercial Registration address or the site in which the Activity will be practiced	3 Days

Fee Details (if any)

10 BD

License Information

General Conditions:
1. Size of shop/premises must be sufficient for the activity
2. Businesses may not carry out the activity outside the boundaries of the shop/ premises
3. It is prohibited to display or store any items or equipment outside the shop / premises boundary without prior approval from the Municipality. In the event of non-compliance, the Ministry of Municipality Affairs has the right to take necessary action.
4. Maintain cleanliness of the site
5. Comply with the parking space regulations as per the Construction Regulatory Requirements

Activity Specific Conditions:
1. The Commercial Registration for this activity can only be registered in service and industrial streets/areas

Note: Uploading pictures of the site/shop may expedite the process of obtaining approval

Required Documents

- Lease agreement (after obtaining the necessary approvals from other licensing entities)
- Shop photos

Other Documents

- Cabinet's Decision (56) of the year 2022 regarding the Regulatory Requirements of Construction for various areas in the Kingdom of Bahrain

Manufacturing

ISIC4	Business activity
32405-2	Manufacture of "scale" models and similar recreational models - Factory

Description

This activity includes:
- Manufacturing models of airplane, car, train, etc
- Making of Architectural models
- Production of scientific display devices

Business Requirements

Age

18 and above

Allowed for Nationalities

Bahraini 100%	GCC 100%
American 100%	Singaporean 100%
Icelander 100%	Liechtenstein er 100%
Norwegian 100%	Swiss 100%

Foreign Allowed up to 100%

Legal Type

It is allowed to register according to the legal forms mentioned below

Allowed for Individual Commercial Registration (ICR) : Yes

Allowed for Company Commercial Registration (CCR) : Yes

- Bahrain Shareholding Company (Public)
- With Limited Liability Company
- Branch of a Foreign Company
- Bahrain Shareholding Company (Closed)
- Partnership Company
- Simple Commandite Company
- Commandite By Shares Company
- Non Profit Company

Required Step of Licenses and Approvals

Ministry / Directorate	License / Approval Requirements	Approval Type
Directorate Of Industrial Developments	Approval by Directorate of Industrial Developments(Pre)	Pre
Supreme Council for Environment	Environmental Approval for Manufacture of "scale" models and similar recreational models - Factory activity	Post
Municipality Affairs	Site Approval for manufacturing activities (Type B)	Post
Directorate Of Industrial Developments	Notification Only	Final Site Inspection

Directorate Of Industrial Developments (Pre) (32405-2)

Approval Name	Description	Estimated Time
Approval by Directorate of Industrial Developments(Pre)	This is a preliminary approval given by the Directorate of Industrial Development to ensure that the applicant has selected the appropriate activity based on the information provided	5 Days

Fee Details (if any)

There is no Estimated Processing Time (Days) in this license.

License Information

Applicants would have to provide through the system the following information:

General Information:

- Total Amount Invested in the Project (This should include value of machinery and fixed assets)
- Estimated number of workforce (Bahraini and Non-Bahraini)
- Expected utility consumption of electricity, water and natural gas
- Total area of the project

Activity Information:

- Product Information:

1) The products to be manufactured by choosing the appropriate HS codes (HS code list can be downloaded from the application if needed).
2) Product name.
3) Expected production date (The expected date on which the factory will start producing the product).

4) The maximum installed capacity and the expected production capacity per year based on the fixed HS code's unit of measure.

• Main raw materials: The main raw materials to be used in production and its source

• Main Machinery and Equipment: The main machinery and equipment to be used in production and its information.

• Manufacturing process: Brief on the manufacturing process explaining how materials are transformed from one state to another until reaching the final product, mentioning the types of materials used, the operations performed, and the machinery/equipment used in each step (if any) for each product.

Required Documents

•Photos of machinery/ equipment to be used
•Photos of products to be manufactured

Other Documents

•Law No. (81) of 2006 with respect to approving The Common Industrial Law of the GCC
•Ministerial Resolution No. (11) of 2009
•Operational requirements for the directorate of industrial developments activities

Supreme Council for Environment (Post) (32405-2)

Approval Name	Description	Estimated Time
Environmental Approval for Manufacture of "scale" models and similar recreational models - Factory activity	This service aims to assess the environmental impact and licensing of development, industrial and production projects and activities, in accordance with the standards of protecting the environment and its natural resources	10 Days

Fee Details (if any)

- 30 Bahraini Dinars or 200 Bahraini Dinars for the fast-track procedure (when the data requested within the EA-2 form is sufficient without the need for additional studies)
- 4000 Bahraini Dinars or 6000 Bahraini Dinars for the fast track procedure (when it is necessary to submit an environmental impact assessment study for the project), with an additional payment of 100 Bahraini Dinars when it is necessary to submit a proposal for the scope of the study before submitting it or 500 Bahraini Dinars for a fast track procedure when the proposed scope of the study is being submitted before the study

License Information

To check the requirements for this approval, kindly download the detailed requirements sheet from the other downloadable documents section, which includes the following requirements:

- Building layout engineering and equipment requirements
- Workplace requirements
- Storage requirements
- Material management requirements
- Waste Management Requirements

• Documents and reporting requirements
• General requirements

Required Documents

•Requirements for business activities

Other Documents

•Annex to the Minister of Housing, Municipalities and Environment order regarding the project's environmental assessment
•Law No. (2) of 2021 regarding the environmental standards of air as decided by the Chairman of the Supreme Council for Environment
•Law No. (3) of 2021 regarding the environmental standards of water as decided by the Chairman of the Supreme Council for the Environment
•Law No. (5) of 2021 regarding CITES Annexes to the Convention on International Trade in Endangered Fauna and Flora
•Law No. (54) of 2014 regarding the approval of the unified law regarding substances that deplete the ozone layer for the GCC countries
•Law No. (7) of 2022 regarding the environment
•Ministerial Order No. (1) of 1998 regarding Project's Environmental Assessment
•Ministerial Order No. (10) of 2006 regarding the installation of devices for on-line monitoring of atmospheric air pollutants
•Ministerial Order No. (11) of 2019 regarding the issue of technical specification of plastic products
•Ministerial Order No. (3) of 2005 regarding environmental requirements and standards in workplaces, especially regarding workers' exposure to heat and noise, and the provision of tools and protective clothing such as gloves, glasses, face masks and earplugs, with a commitment to use them during work
•Ministerial Order No. (3) of 2006 regarding the management of hazardous waste
•Ministerial Order No. (4) of 2005 regarding the management of used oils
•Ministerial Order No. (4) of 2006 regarding the management of hazardous chemicals
•Ministerial Order No. (4) of 2021 regarding the fees of the licenses and services provided by the Supreme Council for Environment
•Ministerial Order No. (6) of 2013 amending order No. (4) of 2006 regarding the management of hazardous chemicals
•Ministerial Order No. (7) of 2002 regarding the control importation and use of prohibited and severely restricted chemicals, and not to import any chemical compound except after obtaining approvals of all concerned authorities, including the executive body of the Supreme Council for Environment
•Ministerial Order No. (7) of 2013 amending order No. (3) of 2006 regarding the management of hazardous waste
•Ministerial Order No. 4 of 2014 regarding the management of the environmental

consulting offices operations in the Kingdom of Bahrain
•Order No. (2) of 2020 determining the categories of fees for licensing refrigeration media, refrigeration units and air conditioning units as decided by the Chairman of the Supreme Council for the Environment
•law No. (1) of 2020 regarding the management of refrigeration media, refrigeration units and air conditioning units as decided by the Chairman of the Supreme Council for the Environment
•law No. (2) of 2019 regarding the ban on the import of plastic waste of all kinds as decided by the Chairman of the Supreme Council for the Environment

Municipality Affairs (Post) (32405-2)

Approval Name	Description	Estimated Time
Site Approval for manufacturing activities (Type B)	Municipality Approval for the Commercial Registration address or the site in which the Activity will be practiced	3 Days

Fee Details (if any)

10 BD

License Information

General Conditions:
1. Size of shop/premises must be sufficient for the activity
2. Businesses may not carry out the activity outside the boundaries of the shop/ premises
3. It is prohibited to display or store any items or equipment outside the shop / premises boundary without prior approval from the Municipality. In the event of non-compliance, the Ministry of Municipality Affairs has the right to take necessary action.
4. Maintain cleanliness of the site
5. Comply with the parking space regulations as per the Construction Regulatory Requirements

Activity Specific Conditions:
1. The Commercial Registration for this activity can only be registered in service and industrial streets/areas

Note: Uploading pictures of the site/shop may expedite the process of obtaining approval

Required Documents

- Lease agreement (after obtaining the necessary approvals from other licensing entities)
- Shop photos

Other Documents

- Cabinet's Decision (56) of the year 2022 regarding the Regulatory Requirements of Construction for various areas in the Kingdom of Bahrain

Directorate Of Industrial Developments (Final Site Inspection) (32405-2)

Approval Name	Description	Estimated Time
Notification Only	Notification to the Industrial development directorate on obtaining a commercial registration with the license to practice the activity.	There is no License Information in this license. Days

Fee Details (if any)

There is no Estimated Processing Time (Days) in this license.

License Information

The industrial license is automatically issued by the Industrial development Directorate after obtaining the approval of other licensing/approving entities.

Please ensure that the actual production date does no exceed the expected production date.

If actual production will start on or before the expected production date please apply for a “New Industrial Registration” by following the steps below:

1- Visit the Industrial services system (www.industry.bh).
2- Select “Industrial Registration”.
3- Select “New Registration” application.

In the event that the actual production date will exceed the expected production date an “Extension of expected production date” application must be submitted by following the steps below:

1- Visit the Industrial services system (www.industry.bh).

2- Select “Industrial License”.
3- Select “Extension of expected production date” application.

Please note that failure to do so within 60 days from the expected production date will result in a violation to be added.

Other Documents

- Law No. (81) of 2006 with respect to approving The Common Industrial Law of the GCC
- Ministerial Resolution No. (11) of 2009 with respect to promulgating Implementing Regulation
- Operational requirements for the directorate of industrial developments activities

Manufacturing

ISIC4	Business activity
325-1	Manufacture of medical and dental instruments and supplies - Workshop

Description

This activity includes the manufacture of laboratory apparatus, surgical and medical instruments, surgical appliances and supplies, dental equipment and supplies, orthodontic goods, dentures and orthodontic appliances. Included is the manufacture of medical, dental and similar furniture, where the additional specific functions determine the purpose of the product, such as dentist`s chairs with built-in hydraulic functions.

This includes:
- manufacture of surgical drapes and sterile string and tissue
- manufacture of dental fillings and cements (except denture adhesives), dental wax and other dental plaster preparations
- manufacture of bone reconstruction cements
- manufacture of dental laboratory furnaces
- manufacture of laboratory ultrasonic cleaning machinery
- manufacture of laboratory sterilizers
- manufacture of laboratory type distilling apparatus, laboratory centrifuges
- manufacture of medical, surgical, dental or veterinary furniture, such as: operating tables; examination tables; hospital beds with mechanical fittings; dentists` chairs
- manufacture of bone plates and screws, syringes, needles, catheters, cannulae, etc.
- manufacture of dental instruments (including dentists` chairs incorporating dental equipment)
- manufacture of artificial teeth, bridges, etc., made in dental labs
- manufacture of orthopedic and prosthetic devices
- manufacture of glass eyes
- manufacture of medical thermometers
- manufacture of ophthalmic goods, eyeglasses, sunglasses, lenses ground to prescription, contact lenses, safety goggles

Business Requirements

Age

18 and above

Allowed for Nationalities

Bahraini 100%		GCC 100%	
American 100%		Singaporean 100%	
Icelander 100%		Liechtenstein er 100%	
Norwegian 100%		Swiss 100%	

Foreign Allowed up to 100%

Legal Type

It is allowed to register according to the legal forms mentioned below

Allowed for Individual Commercial Registration (ICR) : Yes

Allowed for Company Commercial Registration (CCR) : Yes

- Bahrain Shareholding Company (Public)
- With Limited Liability Company
- Branch of a Foreign Company
- Bahrain Shareholding Company (Closed)
- Partnership Company
- Simple Commandite Company
- Commandite By Shares Company
- Non Profit Company

Required Step of Licenses and Approvals

Ministry / Directorate	License / Approval Requirements	Approval Type
NHRA- Medical Devices Regulation Section	License of manufacturing medical devices and	Pre

	supplies - Pre Approval	
Supreme Council for Environment	Environmental Approval for Manufacture of medical and dental instruments and supplies - Workshop activity	Post
Municipality Affairs	Site Approval for manufacturing activities (Type B)	Post
NHRA- Medical Devices Regulation Section	License of manufacturing medical devices and supplies - Final Approval	Final Site Inspection

NHRA- Medical Devices Regulation Section (Pre) (325-1)

Approval Name	Description	Estimated Time
License of manufacturing medical devices and supplies - Pre Approval	License of manufacturing medical devices and supplies - Pre Approval	3 Days

Fee Details (if any)

Application fee: 50 BD
License fee: 5,000 BD

License Information

1. The specifications related to ISO 13485 must be adhered to when preparing the engineering drawings for the manufactory, taking into account the product to be manufactured (please see the attached document in the other documents section.)
2. Establishing a policy related to a user tracking system in the establishment, provided that it includes clarification and tracking of the manufacturing process of raw materials until the production of final products.
3. Providing safety data for all raw materials to be used (safety data can be obtained from the supplier in the country of origin.)
4. Establishing internal policies and procedures for all procedures including, but not limited to, manufacturing, warehousing, inspection and quality, distribution, etc.
Operational Requirements That Must Be Adhered to After Licensing:
1. Providing labels on products that show their location within the production stage.
2. Complying with the regulations of the National Health Regulatory Authority (NHRA) found in the "Other Documents" section.
3. Providing a record related to the destroyed materials and products.

Required Documents

- 50 bd application fees payment receipt
- A Material Safety Data Sheet (MSDS)
- Captures from the tracing system used in the facility
- Facility material used in the site (for example, ventilation, paint flooring, etc.).
- Manufacture internal policies and procedure
- Medical Devices Local Manufacturing facility application Form
- Product Identification Label
- Signed and stamped terms and conditions form.
- Site Engineering drawing showing the following areas (receiving, storage, production, labelling and packaging, quality check, dispatch).
- Storing facility CR, if external

Other Documents

- Medical Devices Factory Requirements
- Medical Devices Registration Guideline

Supreme Council for Environment (Post) (325-1)

Approval Name	Description	Estimated Time
Environmental Approval for Manufacture of medical and dental instruments and supplies - Workshop activity	This service aims to assess the environmental impact and licensing of development, industrial and production projects and activities, in accordance with the standards of protecting the environment and its natural resources	10 Days

Fee Details (if any)

- 30 Bahraini Dinars or 200 Bahraini Dinars for the fast-track procedure (when the data requested within the EA-2 form is sufficient without the need for additional studies)
- 4000 Bahraini Dinars or 6000 Bahraini Dinars for the fast track procedure (when it is necessary to submit an environmental impact assessment study for the project), with an additional payment of 100 Bahraini Dinars when it is necessary to submit a proposal for the scope of the study before submitting it or 500 Bahraini Dinars for a fast track procedure when the proposed scope of the study is being submitted before the study

License Information

To check the requirements for this approval, kindly download the detailed requirements sheet from the other downloadable documents section, which includes the following requirements:

- Building layout engineering and equipment requirements
- Workplace requirements
- Storage requirements
- Material management requirements
- Waste Management Requirements

• Documents and reporting requirements
• General requirements

Required Documents

•Requirements for business activities

Other Documents

•Annex to the Minister of Housing, Municipalities and Environment order regarding the project's environmental assessment
•Law No. (2) of 2021 regarding the environmental standards of air as decided by the Chairman of the Supreme Council for Environment
•Law No. (3) of 2021 regarding the environmental standards of water as decided by the Chairman of the Supreme Council for the Environment
•Law No. (5) of 2021 regarding CITES Annexes to the Convention on International Trade in Endangered Fauna and Flora
•Law No. (54) of 2014 regarding the approval of the unified law regarding substances that deplete the ozone layer for the GCC countries
•Law No. (7) of 2022 regarding the environment
•Ministerial Order No. (1) of 1998 regarding Project's Environmental Assessment
•Ministerial Order No. (10) of 2006 regarding the installation of devices for on-line monitoring of atmospheric air pollutants
•Ministerial Order No. (11) of 2019 regarding the issue of technical specification of plastic products
•Ministerial Order No. (3) of 2005 regarding environmental requirements and standards in workplaces, especially regarding workers' exposure to heat and noise, and the provision of tools and protective clothing such as gloves, glasses, face masks and earplugs, with a commitment to use them during work
•Ministerial Order No. (3) of 2006 regarding the management of hazardous waste
•Ministerial Order No. (4) of 2005 regarding the management of used oils
•Ministerial Order No. (4) of 2006 regarding the management of hazardous chemicals
•Ministerial Order No. (4) of 2021 regarding the fees of the licenses and services provided by the Supreme Council for Environment
•Ministerial Order No. (6) of 2013 amending order No. (4) of 2006 regarding the management of hazardous chemicals
•Ministerial Order No. (7) of 2002 regarding the control importation and use of prohibited and severely restricted chemicals, and not to import any chemical compound except after obtaining approvals of all concerned authorities, including the executive body of the Supreme Council for Environment
•Ministerial Order No. (7) of 2013 amending order No. (3) of 2006 regarding the management of hazardous waste
•Ministerial Order No. 4 of 2014 regarding the management of the environmental

consulting offices operations in the Kingdom of Bahrain
•Order No. (2) of 2020 determining the categories of fees for licensing refrigeration media, refrigeration units and air conditioning units as decided by the Chairman of the Supreme Council for the Environment
•law No. (1) of 2020 regarding the management of refrigeration media, refrigeration units and air conditioning units as decided by the Chairman of the Supreme Council for the Environment
•law No. (2) of 2019 regarding the ban on the import of plastic waste of all kinds as decided by the Chairman of the Supreme Council for the Environment

Municipality Affairs (Post) (325-1)

Approval Name	Description	Estimated Time
Site Approval for manufacturing activities (Type B)	Municipality Approval for the Commercial Registration address or the site in which the Activity will be practiced	3 Days

Fee Details (if any)

10 BD

License Information

General Conditions:
1. Size of shop/premises must be sufficient for the activity
2. Businesses may not carry out the activity outside the boundaries of the shop/ premises
3. It is prohibited to display or store any items or equipment outside the shop / premises boundary without prior approval from the Municipality. In the event of non-compliance, the Ministry of Municipality Affairs has the right to take necessary action.
4. Maintain cleanliness of the site
5. Comply with the parking space regulations as per the Construction Regulatory Requirements

Activity Specific Conditions:
1. The Commercial Registration for this activity can only be registered in service and industrial streets/areas

Note: Uploading pictures of the site/shop may expedite the process of obtaining approval

Required Documents

- Lease agreement (after obtaining the necessary approvals from other licensing entities)
- Shop photos

Other Documents

- Cabinet's Decision (56) of the year 2022 regarding the Regulatory Requirements of Construction for various areas in the Kingdom of Bahrain

NHRA- Medical Devices Regulation Section (Final Site Inspection) (325-1)

Approval Name	Description	Estimated Time
License of manufacturing medical devices and supplies - Final Approval	License of manufacturing medical devices and supplies - Final Approval	3 Days

Fee Details (if any)

(24)https://www.nhra.bh/Departments/MDR/MediaHandler/GenericHandler/documents/departments/MDR/Circulars/Resolution%20No.%20

License Information

The Requirements That Must Be Met to Obtain the Final Approval:
1. In the case of contracting with a storage company, the storage company must be licensed to practice the activity of “Medical Devices Storage” (ISIC code 521.)
2. Using building materials for medical use when manufacturing sterile products, and it is preferable to use them in all cases, including those involving non-sterile products.
3. In the case of manufacturing products that require special storage conditions, a secondary power source must be provided to ensure the continuity of energy availability.
4. Cooling methods must be provided if products that require this are manufactured.
5. Providing a security system to manage the entry and exit process.
6. Providing guidelines.
7. Providing labels on the factory sections that show the production stage.
8. Providing fire extinguishers.
9. Providing a sign displaying working hours at the main entrance.
Operational Requirements That Must Be Adhered to After Licensing:
1. Providing labels on products that show their location within the production stage.
2. Complying with the regulations of the National Health Regulatory Authority (NHRA) found in the "Other Documents" section.
3. Providing a record related to the destroyed materials and products.

Other Documents

- Medical Devices Registration Guideline

Manufacturing

ISIC4	Business activity
325-2	Manufacture of medical and dental instruments and supplies - Factory

Description

This activity includes the manufacture of laboratory apparatus, surgical and medical instruments, surgical appliances and supplies, dental equipment and supplies, orthodontic goods, dentures and orthodontic appliances. Included is the manufacture of medical, dental and similar furniture, where the additional specific functions determine the purpose of the product, such as dentist`s chairs with built-in hydraulic functions.

This includes:
- manufacture of surgical drapes and sterile string and tissue
- manufacture of dental fillings and cements (except denture adhesives), dental wax and other dental plaster preparations
- manufacture of bone reconstruction cements
- manufacture of dental laboratory furnaces
- manufacture of laboratory ultrasonic cleaning machinery
- manufacture of laboratory sterilizers
- manufacture of laboratory type distilling apparatus, laboratory centrifuges
- manufacture of medical, surgical, dental or veterinary furniture, such as: operating tables; examination tables; hospital beds with mechanical fittings; dentists` chairs
- manufacture of bone plates and screws, syringes, needles, catheters, cannulae, etc.
- manufacture of dental instruments (including dentists` chairs incorporating dental equipment)
- manufacture of artificial teeth, bridges, etc., made in dental labs
- manufacture of orthopedic and prosthetic devices
- manufacture of glass eyes
- manufacture of medical thermometers
- manufacture of ophthalmic goods, eyeglasses, sunglasses, lenses ground to prescription, contact lenses, safety goggles

Business Requirements

Age

18 and above

Allowed for Nationalities

Bahraini 100%		GCC 100%	
American 100%		Singaporean 100%	
Icelander 100%		Liechtenstein er 100%	
Norwegian 100%		Swiss 100%	

Foreign Allowed up to 100%

Legal Type

It is allowed to register according to the legal forms mentioned below

Allowed for Individual Commercial Registration (ICR) : Yes

Allowed for Company Commercial Registration (CCR) : Yes

- Bahrain Shareholding Company (Public)
- With Limited Liability Company
- Branch of a Foreign Company
- Bahrain Shareholding Company (Closed)
- Partnership Company
- Simple Commandite Company
- Commandite By Shares Company
- Non Profit Company

Required Step of Licenses and Approvals

Ministry / Directorate	License / Approval Requirements	Approval Type
Directorate Of Industrial Developments	Approval by Directorate of Industrial	Pre

	Developments(Pre)	
NHRA- Medical Devices Regulation Section	License of manufacturing medical devices and supplies - Pre Approval	Pre
Supreme Council for Environment	Environmental Approval for Manufacture of medical and dental instruments and supplies - Factory activity	Post
Municipality Affairs	Site Approval for manufacturing activities (Type B)	Post
NHRA- Medical Devices Regulation Section	License of manufacturing medical devices and supplies - Final Approval	Final Site Inspection
Directorate Of Industrial Developments	Notification Only	Final Site Inspection

Directorate Of Industrial Developments (Pre) (325-2)

Approval Name	Description	Estimated Time
Approval by Directorate of Industrial Developments(Pre)	This is a preliminary approval given by the Directorate of Industrial Development to ensure that the applicant has selected the appropriate activity based on the information provided	5 Days

Fee Details (if any)

There is no Estimated Processing Time (Days) in this license.

License Information

Applicants would have to provide through the system the following information:

General Information:

- Total Amount Invested in the Project (This should include value of machinery and fixed assets)
- Estimated number of workforce (Bahraini and Non-Bahraini)
- Expected utility consumption of electricity, water and natural gas
- Total area of the project

Activity Information:

- Product Information:

1) The products to be manufactured by choosing the appropriate HS codes (HS code list can be downloaded from the application if needed).
2) Product name.
3) Expected production date (The expected date on which the factory will start producing the product).

4) The maximum installed capacity and the expected production capacity per year based on the fixed HS code's unit of measure.

• Main raw materials: The main raw materials to be used in production and its source

• Main Machinery and Equipment: The main machinery and equipment to be used in production and its information.

• Manufacturing process: Brief on the manufacturing process explaining how materials are transformed from one state to another until reaching the final product, mentioning the types of materials used, the operations performed, and the machinery/equipment used in each step (if any) for each product.

Required Documents

•Photos of machinery/ equipment to be used
•Photos of products to be manufactured

Other Documents

•Law No. (81) of 2006 with respect to approving The Common Industrial Law of the GCC
•Ministerial Resolution No. (11) of 2009
•Operational requirements for the directorate of industrial developments activities

NHRA- Medical Devices Regulation Section (Pre) (325-2)

Approval Name	Description	Estimated Time
License of manufacturing medical devices and supplies - Pre Approval	License of manufacturing medical devices and supplies - Pre Approval	3 Days

Fee Details (if any)

Application fee: 50 BD
License fee: 5,000 BD

License Information

1. The specifications related to ISO 13485 must be adhered to when preparing the engineering drawings for the manufactory, taking into account the product to be manufactured (please see the attached document in the other documents section.)
2. Establishing a policy related to a user tracking system in the establishment, provided that it includes clarification and tracking of the manufacturing process of raw materials until the production of final products.
3. Providing safety data for all raw materials to be used (safety data can be obtained from the supplier in the country of origin.)
4. Establishing internal policies and procedures for all procedures including, but not limited to, manufacturing, warehousing, inspection and quality, distribution, etc.
Operational Requirements That Must Be Adhered to After Licensing:
1. Providing labels on products that show their location within the production stage.
2. Complying with the regulations of the National Health Regulatory Authority (NHRA) found in the "Other Documents" section.
3. Providing a record related to the destroyed materials and products.

Required Documents

- 50 bd application fees payment receipt
- A Material Safety Data Sheet (MSDS)
- Captures from the tracing system used in the facility
- Facility material used in the site (for example, ventilation, paint flooring, etc.).
- Manufacture internal policies and procedure
- Medical Devices Local Manufacturing facility application Form
- Product Identification Label
- Signed and stamped terms and conditions form.
- Site Engineering drawing showing the following areas (receiving, storage, production, labelling and packaging, quality check, dispatch).
- Storing facility CR, if external

Other Documents

- Medical Devices Factory Requirements
- Medical Devices Registration Guideline

Supreme Council for Environment (Post) (325-2)

Approval Name	Description	Estimated Time
Environmental Approval for Manufacture of medical and dental instruments and supplies - Factory activity	This service aims to assess the environmental impact and licensing of development, industrial and production projects and activities, in accordance with the standards of protecting the environment and its natural resources	10 Days

Fee Details (if any)

- 30 Bahraini Dinars or 200 Bahraini Dinars for the fast-track procedure (when the data requested within the EA-2 form is sufficient without the need for additional studies)
- 4000 Bahraini Dinars or 6000 Bahraini Dinars for the fast track procedure (when it is necessary to submit an environmental impact assessment study for the project), with an additional payment of 100 Bahraini Dinars when it is necessary to submit a proposal for the scope of the study before submitting it or 500 Bahraini Dinars for a fast track procedure when the proposed scope of the study is being submitted before the study

License Information

To check the requirements for this approval, kindly download the detailed requirements sheet from the other downloadable documents section, which includes the following requirements:

- Building layout engineering and equipment requirements
- Workplace requirements
- Storage requirements
- Material management requirements
- Waste Management Requirements

- Documents and reporting requirements
- General requirements

Required Documents

- Requirements for business activities

Other Documents

- Annex to the Minister of Housing, Municipalities and Environment order regarding the project's environmental assessment
- Law No. (2) of 2021 regarding the environmental standards of air as decided by the Chairman of the Supreme Council for Environment
- Law No. (3) of 2021 regarding the environmental standards of water as decided by the Chairman of the Supreme Council for the Environment
- Law No. (5) of 2021 regarding CITES Annexes to the Convention on International Trade in Endangered Fauna and Flora
- Law No. (54) of 2014 regarding the approval of the unified law regarding substances that deplete the ozone layer for the GCC countries
- Law No. (7) of 2022 regarding the environment
- Law No. (7) of 2022 regarding the environment
- Ministerial Order No. (1) of 1998 regarding Project's Environmental Assessment
- Ministerial Order No. (10) of 2006 regarding the installation of devices for on-line monitoring of atmospheric air pollutants
- Ministerial Order No. (11) of 2019 regarding the issue of technical specification of plastic products
- Ministerial Order No. (3) of 2005 regarding environmental requirements and standards in workplaces, especially regarding workers' exposure to heat and noise, and the provision of tools and protective clothing such as gloves, glasses, face masks and earplugs, with a commitment to use them during work
- Ministerial Order No. (3) of 2006 regarding the management of hazardous waste
- Ministerial Order No. (4) of 2005 regarding the management of used oils
- Ministerial Order No. (4) of 2006 regarding the management of hazardous chemicals
- Ministerial Order No. (4) of 2021 regarding the fees of the licenses and services provided by the Supreme Council for Environment
- Ministerial Order No. (6) of 2013 amending order No. (4) of 2006 regarding the management of hazardous chemicals
- Ministerial Order No. (7) of 2002 regarding the control importation and use of prohibited and severely restricted chemicals, and not to import any chemical compound except after obtaining approvals of all concerned authorities, including the executive body of the Supreme Council for Environment
- Ministerial Order No. (7) of 2013 amending order No. (3) of 2006 regarding the management of hazardous waste

•Ministerial Order No. 4 of 2014 regarding the management of the environmental consulting offices operations in the Kingdom of Bahrain
•Order No. (2) of 2020 determining the categories of fees for licensing refrigeration media, refrigeration units and air conditioning units as decided by the Chairman of the Supreme Council for the Environment
•law No. (1) of 2020 regarding the management of refrigeration media, refrigeration units and air conditioning units as decided by the Chairman of the Supreme Council for the Environment
•law No. (2) of 2019 regarding the ban on the import of plastic waste of all kinds as decided by the Chairman of the Supreme Council for the Environment

Municipality Affairs (Post) (325-2)

Approval Name	Description	Estimated Time
Site Approval for manufacturing activities (Type B)	Municipality Approval for the Commercial Registration address or the site in which the Activity will be practiced	3 Days

Fee Details (if any)

10 BD

License Information

General Conditions:
1. Size of shop/premises must be sufficient for the activity
2. Businesses may not carry out the activity outside the boundaries of the shop/ premises
3. It is prohibited to display or store any items or equipment outside the shop / premises boundary without prior approval from the Municipality. In the event of non-compliance, the Ministry of Municipality Affairs has the right to take necessary action.
4. Maintain cleanliness of the site
5. Comply with the parking space regulations as per the Construction Regulatory Requirements

Activity Specific Conditions:
1. The Commercial Registration for this activity can only be registered in service and industrial streets/areas

Note: Uploading pictures of the site/shop may expedite the process of obtaining approval

Required Documents

- Lease agreement (after obtaining the necessary approvals from other licensing entities)
- Shop photos

Other Documents

- Cabinet's Decision (56) of the year 2022 regarding the Regulatory Requirements of Construction for various areas in the Kingdom of Bahrain

NHRA- Medical Devices Regulation Section (Final Site Inspection) (325-2)

Approval Name	Description	Estimated Time
License of manufacturing medical devices and supplies - Final Approval	License of manufacturing medical devices and supplies - Final Approval	3 Days

Fee Details (if any)

(24)https://www.nhra.bh/Departments/MDR/MediaHandler/GenericHandler/documents/departments/MDR/Circulars/Resolution%20No.%20

License Information

The Requirements That Must Be Met to Obtain the Final Approval:
1. In the case of contracting with a storage company, the storage company must be licensed to practice the activity of “Medical Devices Storage” (ISIC code 521.)
2. Using building materials for medical use when manufacturing sterile products, and it is preferable to use them in all cases, including those involving non-sterile products.
3. In the case of manufacturing products that require special storage conditions, a secondary power source must be provided to ensure the continuity of energy availability.
4. Cooling methods must be provided if products that require this are manufactured.
5. Providing a security system to manage the entry and exit process.
6. Providing guidelines.
7. Providing labels on the factory sections that show the production stage.
8. Providing fire extinguishers.
9. Providing a sign displaying working hours at the main entrance.
Operational Requirements That Must Be Adhered to After Licensing:
1. Providing labels on products that show their location within the production stage.
2. Complying with the regulations of the National Health Regulatory Authority (NHRA) found in the "Other Documents" section.
3. Providing a record related to the destroyed materials and products.

Other Documents

- Medical Devices Registration Guideline

Directorate Of Industrial Developments (Final Site Inspection) (325-2)

Approval Name	Description	Estimated Time
Notification Only	Notification to the Industrial development directorate on obtaining a commercial registration with the license to practice the activity.	There is no License Information in this license. Days

Fee Details (if any)

There is no Estimated Processing Time (Days) in this license.

License Information

The industrial license is automatically issued by the Industrial development Directorate after obtaining the approval of other licensing/approving entities.

Please ensure that the actual production date does no exceed the expected production date.

If actual production will start on or before the expected production date please apply for a “New Industrial Registration” by following the steps below:

1- Visit the Industrial services system (www.industry.bh).
2- Select “Industrial Registration”.
3- Select “New Registration” application.

In the event that the actual production date will exceed the expected production date an “Extension of expected production date” application must be submitted by following the steps below:

1- Visit the Industrial services system (www.industry.bh).

2- Select “Industrial License”.
3- Select “Extension of expected production date” application.

Please note that failure to do so within 60 days from the expected production date will result in a violation to be added.

Other Documents

- Law No. (81) of 2006 with respect to approving The Common Industrial Law of the GCC
- Ministerial Resolution No. (11) of 2009 with respect to promulgating Implementing Regulation
- Operational requirements for the directorate of industrial developments activities

Manufacturing

ISIC4	Business activity
32901-1	Manufacture of stationary, art and handcraft tools - Workshop

Description

This activity incluldes the manufacture of all kinds of stationary including:
- manufacture of pens and pencils of all kinds whether or not mechanical
- manufacture of pencil leads
- manufacture of date, sealing or numbering stamps, hand-operated devices for printing, or embossing labels, hand printing sets, prepared typewriter ribbons and inked pads, Pens, pencils, etc
- Painting tools for artists
- Different types of files, folders, binders, etc
- Staples and paper clips, etc
- all types of Office stationary

Business Requirements

Age

18 and above

Allowed for Nationalities

Bahraini 100%		GCC 100%	
American 100%		Singaporean 100%	
Icelander 100%		Liechtenstein er 100%	
Norwegian 100%		Swiss 100%	

Foreign Allowed up to 100%

Legal Type

It is allowed to register according to the legal forms mentioned below

Allowed for Individual Commercial Registration (ICR) : Yes

Allowed for Company Commercial Registration (CCR) : Yes

- Bahrain Shareholding Company (Public)
- With Limited Liability Company
- Branch of a Foreign Company
- Bahrain Shareholding Company (Closed)
- Partnership Company
- Simple Commandite Company
- Commandite By Shares Company
- Non Profit Company

Required Step of Licenses and Approvals

Ministry / Directorate	License / Approval Requirements	Approval Type
Municipality Affairs	Site Approval for manufacturing activities	Post

	(Type B)	
Supreme Council for Environment	Environmental Approval for Manufacture of stationary, art and handcraft tools - Workshop activity	Post

Municipality Affairs (Post) (32901-1)

Approval Name	Description	Estimated Time
Site Approval for manufacturing activities (Type B)	Municipality Approval for the Commercial Registration address or the site in which the Activity will be practiced	3 Days

Fee Details (if any)

10 BD

License Information

General Conditions:
1. Size of shop/premises must be sufficient for the activity
2. Businesses may not carry out the activity outside the boundaries of the shop/ premises
3. It is prohibited to display or store any items or equipment outside the shop / premises boundary without prior approval from the Municipality. In the event of non-compliance, the Ministry of Municipality Affairs has the right to take necessary action.
4. Maintain cleanliness of the site
5. Comply with the parking space regulations as per the Construction Regulatory Requirements

Activity Specific Conditions:
1. The Commercial Registration for this activity can only be registered in service and industrial streets/areas

Note: Uploading pictures of the site/shop may expedite the process of obtaining approval

Required Documents

- Lease agreement (after obtaining the necessary approvals from other licensing entities)
- Shop photos

Other Documents

- Cabinet's Decision (56) of the year 2022 regarding the Regulatory Requirements of Construction for various areas in the Kingdom of Bahrain

Supreme Council for Environment (Post) (32901-1)

Approval Name	Description	Estimated Time
Environmental Approval for Manufacture of stationary, art and handcraft tools - Workshop activity	This service aims to assess the environmental impact and licensing of development, industrial and production projects and activities, in accordance with the standards of protecting the environment and its natural resources	10 Days

Fee Details (if any)

- 30 Bahraini Dinars or 200 Bahraini Dinars for the fast-track procedure (when the data requested within the EA-2 form is sufficient without the need for additional studies)
- 4000 Bahraini Dinars or 6000 Bahraini Dinars for the fast track procedure (when it is necessary to submit an environmental impact assessment study for the project), with an additional payment of 100 Bahraini Dinars when it is necessary to submit a proposal for the scope of the study before submitting it or 500 Bahraini Dinars for a fast track procedure when the proposed scope of the study is being submitted before the study

License Information

To check the requirements for this approval, kindly download the detailed requirements sheet from the other downloadable documents section, which includes the following requirements:

- Building layout engineering and equipment requirements
- Workplace requirements
- Storage requirements
- Material management requirements
- Waste Management Requirements

• Documents and reporting requirements
• General requirements

Required Documents

•Requirements for business activities

Other Documents

•Annex to the Minister of Housing, Municipalities and Environment order regarding the project's environmental assessment
•Law No. (2) of 2021 regarding the environmental standards of air as decided by the Chairman of the Supreme Council for Environment
•Law No. (3) of 2021 regarding the environmental standards of water as decided by the Chairman of the Supreme Council for the Environment
•Law No. (5) of 2021 regarding CITES Annexes to the Convention on International Trade in Endangered Fauna and Flora
•Law No. (54) of 2014 regarding the approval of the unified law regarding substances that deplete the ozone layer for the GCC countries
•Law No. (7) of 2022 regarding the environment
•Ministerial Order No. (1) of 1998 regarding Project's Environmental Assessment
•Ministerial Order No. (10) of 2006 regarding the installation of devices for on-line monitoring of atmospheric air pollutants
•Ministerial Order No. (11) of 2019 regarding the issue of technical specification of plastic products
•Ministerial Order No. (3) of 2005 regarding environmental requirements and standards in workplaces, especially regarding workers' exposure to heat and noise, and the provision of tools and protective clothing such as gloves, glasses, face masks and earplugs, with a commitment to use them during work
•Ministerial Order No. (3) of 2006 regarding the management of hazardous waste
•Ministerial Order No. (4) of 2005 regarding the management of used oils
•Ministerial Order No. (4) of 2006 regarding the management of hazardous chemicals
•Ministerial Order No. (4) of 2021 regarding the fees of the licenses and services provided by the Supreme Council for Environment
•Ministerial Order No. (6) of 2013 amending order No. (4) of 2006 regarding the management of hazardous chemicals
•Ministerial Order No. (7) of 2002 regarding the control importation and use of prohibited and severely restricted chemicals, and not to import any chemical compound except after obtaining approvals of all concerned authorities, including the executive body of the Supreme Council for Environment
•Ministerial Order No. (7) of 2013 amending order No. (3) of 2006 regarding the management of hazardous waste
•Ministerial Order No. 4 of 2014 regarding the management of the environmental

consulting offices operations in the Kingdom of Bahrain
•Order No. (2) of 2020 determining the categories of fees for licensing refrigeration media, refrigeration units and air conditioning units as decided by the Chairman of the Supreme Council for the Environment
•law No. (1) of 2020 regarding the management of refrigeration media, refrigeration units and air conditioning units as decided by the Chairman of the Supreme Council for the Environment
•law No. (2) of 2019 regarding the ban on the import of plastic waste of all kinds as decided by the Chairman of the Supreme Council for the Environment

Manufacturing

ISIC4	Business activity
32901-2	Manufacture of stationary, art and handcraft tools - Factory

Description

This activity incluldes the manufacture of all kinds of stationary including:
- manufacture of pens and pencils of all kinds whether or not mechanical
- manufacture of pencil leads
- manufacture of date, sealing or numbering stamps, hand-operated devices for printing, or embossing labels, hand printing sets, prepared typewriter ribbons and inked pads, Pens, pencils, etc
- Painting tools for artists
- Different types of files, folders, binders, etc
- Staples and paper clips, etc
- all types of Office stationary

Business Requirements

Age

18 and above

Allowed for Nationalities

Bahraini 100%		GCC 100%	
American 100%		Singaporean 100%	
Icelander 100%		Liechtenstein er 100%	
Norwegian 100%		Swiss 100%	

Foreign Allowed up to 100%

Legal Type

It is allowed to register according to the legal forms mentioned below

Allowed for Individual Commercial Registration (ICR) : Yes

Allowed for Company Commercial Registration (CCR) : Yes

- Bahrain Shareholding Company (Public)
- With Limited Liability Company
- Branch of a Foreign Company
- Bahrain Shareholding Company (Closed)
- Partnership Company
- Simple Commandite Company
- Commandite By Shares Company
- Non Profit Company

Required Step of Licenses and Approvals

Ministry / Directorate	License / Approval Requirements	Approval Type
Directorate Of Industrial Developments	Approval by Directorate of Industrial	Pre

	Developments(Pre)	
Supreme Council for Environment	Environmental Approval for Manufacture of stationary, art and handcraft tools - Factory activity	Post
Municipality Affairs	Site Approval for manufacturing activities (Type B)	Post
Directorate Of Industrial Developments	Notification Only	Final Site Inspection

Directorate Of Industrial Developments (Pre) (32901-2)

Approval Name	Description	Estimated Time
Approval by Directorate of Industrial Developments(Pre)	This is a preliminary approval given by the Directorate of Industrial Development to ensure that the applicant has selected the appropriate activity based on the information provided	5 Days

Fee Details (if any)

There is no Estimated Processing Time (Days) in this license.

License Information

Applicants would have to provide through the system the following information:

General Information:

- Total Amount Invested in the Project (This should include value of machinery and fixed assets)
- Estimated number of workforce (Bahraini and Non-Bahraini)
- Expected utility consumption of electricity, water and natural gas
- Total area of the project

Activity Information:

- Product Information:

1) The products to be manufactured by choosing the appropriate HS codes (HS code list can be downloaded from the application if needed).
2) Product name.
3) Expected production date (The expected date on which the factory will start producing the product).

4) The maximum installed capacity and the expected production capacity per year based on the fixed HS code's unit of measure.

• Main raw materials: The main raw materials to be used in production and its source

• Main Machinery and Equipment: The main machinery and equipment to be used in production and its information.

• Manufacturing process: Brief on the manufacturing process explaining how materials are transformed from one state to another until reaching the final product, mentioning the types of materials used, the operations performed, and the machinery/equipment used in each step (if any) for each product.

Required Documents

•Photos of machinery/ equipment to be used
•Photos of products to be manufactured

Other Documents

•Law No. (81) of 2006 with respect to approving The Common Industrial Law of the GCC
•Ministerial Resolution No. (11) of 2009
•Operational requirements for the directorate of industrial developments activities

Supreme Council for Environment (Post) (32901-2)

Approval Name	Description	Estimated Time
Environmental Approval for Manufacture of stationary, art and handcraft tools - Factory activity	This service aims to assess the environmental impact and licensing of development, industrial and production projects and activities, in accordance with the standards of protecting the environment and its natural resources	10 Days

Fee Details (if any)

- 30 Bahraini Dinars or 200 Bahraini Dinars for the fast-track procedure (when the data requested within the EA-2 form is sufficient without the need for additional studies)
- 4000 Bahraini Dinars or 6000 Bahraini Dinars for the fast track procedure (when it is necessary to submit an environmental impact assessment study for the project), with an additional payment of 100 Bahraini Dinars when it is necessary to submit a proposal for the scope of the study before submitting it or 500 Bahraini Dinars for a fast track procedure when the proposed scope of the study is being submitted before the study

License Information

To check the requirements for this approval, kindly download the detailed requirements sheet from the other downloadable documents section, which includes the following requirements:

- Building layout engineering and equipment requirements
- Workplace requirements
- Storage requirements
- Material management requirements
- Waste Management Requirements

• Documents and reporting requirements
• General requirements

Required Documents

•Requirements for business activities

Other Documents

•Annex to the Minister of Housing, Municipalities and Environment order regarding the project's environmental assessment
•Law No. (2) of 2021 regarding the environmental standards of air as decided by the Chairman of the Supreme Council for Environment
•Law No. (3) of 2021 regarding the environmental standards of water as decided by the Chairman of the Supreme Council for the Environment
•Law No. (5) of 2021 regarding CITES Annexes to the Convention on International Trade in Endangered Fauna and Flora
•Law No. (54) of 2014 regarding the approval of the unified law regarding substances that deplete the ozone layer for the GCC countries
•Law No. (7) of 2022 regarding the environment
•Ministerial Order No. (1) of 1998 regarding Project's Environmental Assessment
•Ministerial Order No. (10) of 2006 regarding the installation of devices for on-line monitoring of atmospheric air pollutants
•Ministerial Order No. (11) of 2019 regarding the issue of technical specification of plastic products
•Ministerial Order No. (3) of 2005 regarding environmental requirements and standards in workplaces, especially regarding workers' exposure to heat and noise, and the provision of tools and protective clothing such as gloves, glasses, face masks and earplugs, with a commitment to use them during work
•Ministerial Order No. (3) of 2006 regarding the management of hazardous waste
•Ministerial Order No. (4) of 2005 regarding the management of used oils
•Ministerial Order No. (4) of 2006 regarding the management of hazardous chemicals
•Ministerial Order No. (4) of 2021 regarding the fees of the licenses and services provided by the Supreme Council for Environment
•Ministerial Order No. (6) of 2013 amending order No. (4) of 2006 regarding the management of hazardous chemicals
•Ministerial Order No. (7) of 2002 regarding the control importation and use of prohibited and severely restricted chemicals, and not to import any chemical compound except after obtaining approvals of all concerned authorities, including the executive body of the Supreme Council for Environment
•Ministerial Order No. (7) of 2013 amending order No. (3) of 2006 regarding the management of hazardous waste
•Ministerial Order No. 4 of 2014 regarding the management of the environmental

consulting offices operations in the Kingdom of Bahrain
•Order No. (2) of 2020 determining the categories of fees for licensing refrigeration media, refrigeration units and air conditioning units as decided by the Chairman of the Supreme Council for the Environment
•law No. (1) of 2020 regarding the management of refrigeration media, refrigeration units and air conditioning units as decided by the Chairman of the Supreme Council for the Environment
•law No. (2) of 2019 regarding the ban on the import of plastic waste of all kinds as decided by the Chairman of the Supreme Council for the Environment

Municipality Affairs (Post) (32901-2)

Approval Name	Description	Estimated Time
Site Approval for manufacturing activities (Type B)	Municipality Approval for the Commercial Registration address or the site in which the Activity will be practiced	3 Days

Fee Details (if any)

10 BD

License Information

General Conditions:
1. Size of shop/premises must be sufficient for the activity
2. Businesses may not carry out the activity outside the boundaries of the shop/ premises
3. It is prohibited to display or store any items or equipment outside the shop / premises boundary without prior approval from the Municipality. In the event of non-compliance, the Ministry of Municipality Affairs has the right to take necessary action.
4. Maintain cleanliness of the site
5. Comply with the parking space regulations as per the Construction Regulatory Requirements

Activity Specific Conditions:
1. The Commercial Registration for this activity can only be registered in service and industrial streets/areas

Note: Uploading pictures of the site/shop may expedite the process of obtaining approval

Required Documents

- Lease agreement (after obtaining the necessary approvals from other licensing entities)
- Shop photos

Other Documents

- Cabinet's Decision (56) of the year 2022 regarding the Regulatory Requirements of Construction for various areas in the Kingdom of Bahrain

Directorate Of Industrial Developments (Final Site Inspection) (32901-2)

Approval Name	Description	Estimated Time
Notification Only	Notification to the Industrial development directorate on obtaining a commercial registration with the license to practice the activity.	There is no License Information in this license. Days

Fee Details (if any)

There is no Estimated Processing Time (Days) in this license.

License Information

The industrial license is automatically issued by the Industrial development Directorate after obtaining the approval of other licensing/approving entities.

Please ensure that the actual production date does no exceed the expected production date.

If actual production will start on or before the expected production date please apply for a “New Industrial Registration” by following the steps below:

1- Visit the Industrial services system (www.industry.bh).
2- Select “Industrial Registration”.
3- Select “New Registration” application.

In the event that the actual production date will exceed the expected production date an “Extension of expected production date” application must be submitted by following the steps below:

1- Visit the Industrial services system (www.industry.bh).

2- Select “Industrial License”.
3- Select “Extension of expected production date” application.

Please note that failure to do so within 60 days from the expected production date will result in a violation to be added.

Other Documents

- Law No. (81) of 2006 with respect to approving The Common Industrial Law of the GCC
- Ministerial Resolution No. (11) of 2009 with respect to promulgating Implementing Regulation
- Operational requirements for the directorate of industrial developments activities

Manufacturing

ISIC4	Business activity
32906	Manufacture of protective safety equipment

Description

This activity includes:
- manufacture of fire-resistant and protective safety clothing
- manufacture of linemen`s safety belts and other belts for occupational use
- manufacture of cork life preservers
- manufacture of plastics hard hats and other personal safety equipment of plastics (e.g. athletic helmets)
- manufacture of fire-fighting protection suits
- manufacture of metal safety headgear and other metal personal safety devices
- manufacture of ear and noise plugs (e.g. for swimming and noise protection)
- manufacture of gas masks

Business Requirements

Age

18 and above

Allowed for Nationalities

Bahraini 100%		GCC 100%	
American 100%		Singaporean 100%	
Icelander 100%		Liechtenstein er 100%	
Norwegian 100%		Swiss 100%	

Foreign Allowed up to 100%

Legal Type

It is allowed to register according to the legal forms mentioned below

Allowed for Individual Commercial Registration (ICR) : Yes

Allowed for Company Commercial Registration (CCR) : Yes

- Bahrain Shareholding Company (Public)
- With Limited Liability Company
- Branch of a Foreign Company
- Bahrain Shareholding Company (Closed)
- Partnership Company
- Simple Commandite Company
- Commandite By Shares Company
- Non Profit Company

Required Step of Licenses and Approvals

Ministry / Directorate	License / Approval Requirements	Approval Type
Directorate Of Industrial Developments	Approval by Directorate of Industrial Developments(Pre)	Pre
Municipality Affairs	Site Approval for manufacturing activities (Type B)	Post
Supreme Council for Environment	Environmental Approval for Manufacture of protective safety equipment activity	Post
Directorate Of Industrial Developments	Notification Only	Final Site Inspection

Directorate Of Industrial Developments (Pre) (32906)

Approval Name	Description	Estimated Time
Approval by Directorate of Industrial Developments(Pre)	This is a preliminary approval given by the Directorate of Industrial Development to ensure that the applicant has selected the appropriate activity based on the information provided	5 Days

Fee Details (if any)

There is no Estimated Processing Time (Days) in this license.

License Information

Applicants would have to provide through the system the following information:

General Information:

- Total Amount Invested in the Project (This should include value of machinery and fixed assets)
- Estimated number of workforce (Bahraini and Non-Bahraini)
- Expected utility consumption of electricity, water and natural gas
- Total area of the project

Activity Information:

- Product Information:

1) The products to be manufactured by choosing the appropriate HS codes (HS code list can be downloaded from the application if needed).
2) Product name.
3) Expected production date (The expected date on which the factory will start producing the product).

4) The maximum installed capacity and the expected production capacity per year based on the fixed HS code's unit of measure.

• Main raw materials: The main raw materials to be used in production and its source

• Main Machinery and Equipment: The main machinery and equipment to be used in production and its information.

• Manufacturing process: Brief on the manufacturing process explaining how materials are transformed from one state to another until reaching the final product, mentioning the types of materials used, the operations performed, and the machinery/equipment used in each step (if any) for each product.

Required Documents

•Photos of machinery/ equipment to be used
•Photos of products to be manufactured

Other Documents

•Law No. (81) of 2006 with respect to approving The Common Industrial Law of the GCC
•Ministerial Resolution No. (11) of 2009
•Operational requirements for the directorate of industrial developments activities

Municipality Affairs (Post) (32906)

Approval Name	Description	Estimated Time
Site Approval for manufacturing activities (Type B)	Municipality Approval for the Commercial Registration address or the site in which the Activity will be practiced	3 Days

Fee Details (if any)

10 BD

License Information

General Conditions:
1. Size of shop/premises must be sufficient for the activity
2. Businesses may not carry out the activity outside the boundaries of the shop/ premises
3. It is prohibited to display or store any items or equipment outside the shop / premises boundary without prior approval from the Municipality. In the event of non-compliance, the Ministry of Municipality Affairs has the right to take necessary action.
4. Maintain cleanliness of the site
5. Comply with the parking space regulations as per the Construction Regulatory Requirements

Activity Specific Conditions:
1. The Commercial Registration for this activity can only be registered in service and industrial streets/areas

Note: Uploading pictures of the site/shop may expedite the process of obtaining approval

Required Documents

- Lease agreement (after obtaining the necessary approvals from other licensing entities)
- Shop photos

Other Documents

- Cabinet's Decision (56) of the year 2022 regarding the Regulatory Requirements of Construction for various areas in the Kingdom of Bahrain

Supreme Council for Environment (Post) (32906)

Approval Name	Description	Estimated Time
Environmental Approval for Manufacture of protective safety equipment activity	This service aims to assess the environmental impact and licensing of development, industrial and production projects and activities, in accordance with the standards of protecting the environment and its natural resources	10 Days

Fee Details (if any)

- 30 Bahraini Dinars or 200 Bahraini Dinars for the fast-track procedure (when the data requested within the EA-2 form is sufficient without the need for additional studies)
- 4000 Bahraini Dinars or 6000 Bahraini Dinars for the fast track procedure (when it is necessary to submit an environmental impact assessment study for the project), with an additional payment of 100 Bahraini Dinars when it is necessary to submit a proposal for the scope of the study before submitting it or 500 Bahraini Dinars for a fast track procedure when the proposed scope of the study is being submitted before the study

License Information

To check the requirements for this approval, kindly download the detailed requirements sheet from the other downloadable documents section, which includes the following requirements:

- Building layout engineering and equipment requirements
- Workplace requirements
- Storage requirements
- Material management requirements
- Waste Management Requirements

• Documents and reporting requirements
• General requirements

Required Documents

•Requirements for business activities

Other Documents

•Annex to the Minister of Housing, Municipalities and Environment order regarding the project's environmental assessment
•Law No. (2) of 2021 regarding the environmental standards of air as decided by the Chairman of the Supreme Council for Environment
•Law No. (3) of 2021 regarding the environmental standards of water as decided by the Chairman of the Supreme Council for the Environment
•Law No. (5) of 2021 regarding CITES Annexes to the Convention on International Trade in Endangered Fauna and Flora
•Law No. (54) of 2014 regarding the approval of the unified law regarding substances that deplete the ozone layer for the GCC countries
•Law No. (7) of 2022 regarding the environment
•Ministerial Order No. (1) of 1998 regarding Project's Environmental Assessment
•Ministerial Order No. (10) of 2006 regarding the installation of devices for on-line monitoring of atmospheric air pollutants
•Ministerial Order No. (11) of 2019 regarding the issue of technical specification of plastic products
•Ministerial Order No. (3) of 2005 regarding environmental requirements and standards in workplaces, especially regarding workers' exposure to heat and noise, and the provision of tools and protective clothing such as gloves, glasses, face masks and earplugs, with a commitment to use them during work
•Ministerial Order No. (3) of 2006 regarding the management of hazardous waste
•Ministerial Order No. (4) of 2005 regarding the management of used oils
•Ministerial Order No. (4) of 2006 regarding the management of hazardous chemicals
•Ministerial Order No. (4) of 2021 regarding the fees of the licenses and services provided by the Supreme Council for Environment
•Ministerial Order No. (6) of 2013 amending order No. (4) of 2006 regarding the management of hazardous chemicals
•Ministerial Order No. (7) of 2002 regarding the control importation and use of prohibited and severely restricted chemicals, and not to import any chemical compound except after obtaining approvals of all concerned authorities, including the executive body of the Supreme Council for Environment
•Ministerial Order No. (7) of 2013 amending order No. (3) of 2006 regarding the management of hazardous waste
•Ministerial Order No. 4 of 2014 regarding the management of the environmental

consulting offices operations in the Kingdom of Bahrain
•Order No. (2) of 2020 determining the categories of fees for licensing refrigeration media, refrigeration units and air conditioning units as decided by the Chairman of the Supreme Council for the Environment
•law No. (1) of 2020 regarding the management of refrigeration media, refrigeration units and air conditioning units as decided by the Chairman of the Supreme Council for the Environment
•law No. (2) of 2019 regarding the ban on the import of plastic waste of all kinds as decided by the Chairman of the Supreme Council for the Environment

Directorate Of Industrial Developments (Final Site Inspection) (32906)

Approval Name	Description	Estimated Time
Notification Only	Notification to the Industrial development directorate on obtaining a commercial registration with the license to practice the activity.	There is no License Information in this license. Days

Fee Details (if any)

There is no Estimated Processing Time (Days) in this license.

License Information

The industrial license is automatically issued by the Industrial development Directorate after obtaining the approval of other licensing/approving entities.

Please ensure that the actual production date does no exceed the expected production date.

If actual production will start on or before the expected production date please apply for a “New Industrial Registration” by following the steps below:

1- Visit the Industrial services system (www.industry.bh).
2- Select “Industrial Registration”.
3- Select “New Registration” application.

In the event that the actual production date will exceed the expected production date an “Extension of expected production date” application must be submitted by following the steps below:

1- Visit the Industrial services system (www.industry.bh).

2- Select “Industrial License”.
3- Select “Extension of expected production date” application.

Please note that failure to do so within 60 days from the expected production date will result in a violation to be added.

Other Documents

- Law No. (81) of 2006 with respect to approving The Common Industrial Law of the GCC
- Ministerial Resolution No. (11) of 2009 with respect to promulgating Implementing Regulation
- Operational requirements for the directorate of industrial developments activities

Manufacturing

ISIC4	Business activity
32907-1	Manufacture of miscellaneous articles - Workshop

Description

- manufacture of brooms and brushes, including brushes constituting parts of machines, hand-operated mechanical floor sweepers, mops and feather dusters, paint brushes, paint pads and rollers, squeegees and other brushes, brooms, mops etc.
- manufacture of shoe and clothes brushes
- manufacture of globes
- manufacture of umbrellas, sun-umbrellas, walking sticks, seat-sticks
- manufacture of buttons, press-fasteners, snap-fasteners, press-studs, slide fasteners
- manufacture of cigarette lighters
- manufacture of articles of personal use: smoking pipes, scent sprays, vacuum flasks and other vacuum vessels for personal or household use, wigs, false beards, eyebrows
- manufacture of miscellaneous articles: candles, tapers and the like; bouquets, wreaths and floral baskets; artificial flowers, fruit and foliage; jokes and novelties; hand sieves and hand riddles; tailors` dummies; burial caskets etc.
- taxidermy activities
- Manufacture of other miscellaneous articles not mentioned elsewhere

Manufacture of imitation jewellery:
- Rings, bracelets, necklaces, and similar articles of jewellery made from base metals plated with precious metals
- Jewellery containing imitation stones such as imitation gems stones, imitation diamonds, and similar
- manufacture of metal watch bands (except precious metal)

Business Requirements

Age

18 and above

Allowed for Nationalities

Bahraini 100%		GCC 100%	
American 100%		Singaporean 100%	
Icelander 100%		Liechtenstein er 100%	
Norwegian 100%		Swiss 100%	

Foreign Allowed up to 100%

Legal Type

It is allowed to register according to the legal forms mentioned below

Allowed for Individual Commercial Registration (ICR) : Yes

Allowed for Company Commercial Registration (CCR) : Yes

- Bahrain Shareholding Company (Public)
- With Limited Liability Company
- Branch of a Foreign Company
- Bahrain Shareholding Company (Closed)
- Partnership Company
- Simple Commandite Company
- Commandite By Shares Company
- Non Profit Company

Required Step of Licenses and Approvals

Ministry / Directorate	License / Approval Requirements	Approval Type
Municipality Affairs	Site Approval for manufacturing activities	Post

	(Type B)	
Supreme Council for Environment	Environmental Approval for Manufacture of miscellaneous articles - Workshop activity	Post

Municipality Affairs (Post) (32907-1)

Approval Name	Description	Estimated Time
Site Approval for manufacturing activities (Type B)	Municipality Approval for the Commercial Registration address or the site in which the Activity will be practiced	3 Days

Fee Details (if any)

10 BD

License Information

General Conditions:
1. Size of shop/premises must be sufficient for the activity
2. Businesses may not carry out the activity outside the boundaries of the shop/ premises
3. It is prohibited to display or store any items or equipment outside the shop / premises boundary without prior approval from the Municipality. In the event of non-compliance, the Ministry of Municipality Affairs has the right to take necessary action.
4. Maintain cleanliness of the site
5. Comply with the parking space regulations as per the Construction Regulatory Requirements

Activity Specific Conditions:
1. The Commercial Registration for this activity can only be registered in service and industrial streets/areas

Note: Uploading pictures of the site/shop may expedite the process of obtaining approval

Required Documents

- Lease agreement (after obtaining the necessary approvals from other licensing entities)
- Shop photos

Other Documents

- Cabinet's Decision (56) of the year 2022 regarding the Regulatory Requirements of Construction for various areas in the Kingdom of Bahrain

Supreme Council for Environment (Post) (32907-1)

Approval Name	Description	Estimated Time
Environmental Approval for Manufacture of miscellaneous articles - Workshop activity	This service aims to assess the environmental impact and licensing of development, industrial and production projects and activities, in accordance with the standards of protecting the environment and its natural resources	10 Days

Fee Details (if any)

- 30 Bahraini Dinars or 200 Bahraini Dinars for the fast-track procedure (when the data requested within the EA-2 form is sufficient without the need for additional studies)
- 4000 Bahraini Dinars or 6000 Bahraini Dinars for the fast track procedure (when it is necessary to submit an environmental impact assessment study for the project), with an additional payment of 100 Bahraini Dinars when it is necessary to submit a proposal for the scope of the study before submitting it or 500 Bahraini Dinars for a fast track procedure when the proposed scope of the study is being submitted before the study

License Information

To check the requirements for this approval, kindly download the detailed requirements sheet from the other downloadable documents section, which includes the following requirements:

- Building layout engineering and equipment requirements
- Workplace requirements
- Storage requirements
- Material management requirements
- Waste Management Requirements

• Documents and reporting requirements
• General requirements

Required Documents

•Requirements for business activities

Other Documents

•Annex to the Minister of Housing, Municipalities and Environment order regarding the project's environmental assessment
•Law No. (2) of 2021 regarding the environmental standards of air as decided by the Chairman of the Supreme Council for Environment
•Law No. (3) of 2021 regarding the environmental standards of water as decided by the Chairman of the Supreme Council for the Environment
•Law No. (5) of 2021 regarding CITES Annexes to the Convention on International Trade in Endangered Fauna and Flora
•Law No. (54) of 2014 regarding the approval of the unified law regarding substances that deplete the ozone layer for the GCC countries
•Law No. (7) of 2022 regarding the environment
•Ministerial Order No. (1) of 1998 regarding Project's Environmental Assessment
•Ministerial Order No. (10) of 2006 regarding the installation of devices for on-line monitoring of atmospheric air pollutants
•Ministerial Order No. (11) of 2019 regarding the issue of technical specification of plastic products
•Ministerial Order No. (3) of 2005 regarding environmental requirements and standards in workplaces, especially regarding workers' exposure to heat and noise, and the provision of tools and protective clothing such as gloves, glasses, face masks and earplugs, with a commitment to use them during work
•Ministerial Order No. (3) of 2006 regarding the management of hazardous waste
•Ministerial Order No. (4) of 2005 regarding the management of used oils
•Ministerial Order No. (4) of 2006 regarding the management of hazardous chemicals
•Ministerial Order No. (4) of 2021 regarding the fees of the licenses and services provided by the Supreme Council for Environment
•Ministerial Order No. (6) of 2013 amending order No. (4) of 2006 regarding the management of hazardous chemicals
•Ministerial Order No. (7) of 2002 regarding the control importation and use of prohibited and severely restricted chemicals, and not to import any chemical compound except after obtaining approvals of all concerned authorities, including the executive body of the Supreme Council for Environment
•Ministerial Order No. (7) of 2013 amending order No. (3) of 2006 regarding the management of hazardous waste
•Ministerial Order No. 4 of 2014 regarding the management of the environmental

consulting offices operations in the Kingdom of Bahrain
•Order No. (2) of 2020 determining the categories of fees for licensing refrigeration media, refrigeration units and air conditioning units as decided by the Chairman of the Supreme Council for the Environment
•law No. (1) of 2020 regarding the management of refrigeration media, refrigeration units and air conditioning units as decided by the Chairman of the Supreme Council for the Environment
•law No. (2) of 2019 regarding the ban on the import of plastic waste of all kinds as decided by the Chairman of the Supreme Council for the Environment
•law No. (204) of 2018 regarding banning the export of some types of local fishes, shrimps and other aquatic organisms, and coordinating with the Agriculture and Marine Resources at the Ministry of Works, Municipalities and Urban Planning regarding the import and export of some species

Manufacturing

ISIC4	Business activity
32907-2	Manufacture of miscellaneous articles - Factory

Description

- manufacture of brooms and brushes, including brushes constituting parts of machines, hand-operated mechanical floor sweepers, mops and feather dusters, paint brushes, paint pads and rollers, squeegees and other brushes, brooms, mops etc.
- manufacture of shoe and clothes brushes
- manufacture of globes
- manufacture of umbrellas, sun-umbrellas, walking sticks, seat-sticks
- manufacture of buttons, press-fasteners, snap-fasteners, press-studs, slide fasteners
- manufacture of cigarette lighters
- manufacture of articles of personal use: smoking pipes, scent sprays, vacuum flasks and other vacuum vessels for personal or household use, wigs, false beards, eyebrows
- manufacture of miscellaneous articles: candles, tapers and the like; bouquets, wreaths and floral baskets; artificial flowers, fruit and foliage; jokes and novelties; hand sieves and hand riddles; tailors` dummies; burial caskets etc.
- taxidermy activities
- Manufacture of other miscellaneous articles not mentioned elsewhere

Manufacture of imitation jewellery:
- Rings, bracelets, necklaces, and similar articles of jewellery made from base metals plated with precious metals
- Jewellery containing imitation stones such as imitation gems stones, imitation diamonds, and similar
- manufacture of metal watch bands (except precious metal)

Business Requirements

Age

18 and above

Allowed for Nationalities

Bahraini 100%		GCC 100%	
American 100%		Singaporean 100%	
Icelander 100%		Liechtenstein er 100%	
Norwegian 100%		Swiss 100%	

Foreign Allowed up to 100%

Legal Type

It is allowed to register according to the legal forms mentioned below

Allowed for Individual Commercial Registration (ICR) : Yes

Allowed for Company Commercial Registration (CCR) : Yes

- Bahrain Shareholding Company (Public)
- With Limited Liability Company
- Branch of a Foreign Company
- Bahrain Shareholding Company (Closed)
- Partnership Company
- Simple Commandite Company
- Commandite By Shares Company
- Non Profit Company

Required Step of Licenses and Approvals

Ministry / Directorate	License / Approval Requirements	Approval Type
Directorate Of Industrial Developments	Approval by Directorate of Industrial	Pre

	Developments(Pre)	
Supreme Council for Environment	Environmental Approval for Manufacture of miscellaneous articles - Factory activity	Post
Municipality Affairs	Site Approval for manufacturing activities (Type B)	Post
Directorate Of Industrial Developments	Notification Only	Final Site Inspection

Directorate Of Industrial Developments (Pre) (32907-2)

Approval Name	Description	Estimated Time
Approval by Directorate of Industrial Developments(Pre)	This is a preliminary approval given by the Directorate of Industrial Development to ensure that the applicant has selected the appropriate activity based on the information provided	5 Days

Fee Details (if any)

There is no Estimated Processing Time (Days) in this license.

License Information

Applicants would have to provide through the system the following information:

General Information:

- Total Amount Invested in the Project (This should include value of machinery and fixed assets)
- Estimated number of workforce (Bahraini and Non-Bahraini)
- Expected utility consumption of electricity, water and natural gas
- Total area of the project

Activity Information:

- Product Information:

1) The products to be manufactured by choosing the appropriate HS codes (HS code list can be downloaded from the application if needed).
2) Product name.
3) Expected production date (The expected date on which the factory will start producing the product).

4) The maximum installed capacity and the expected production capacity per year based on the fixed HS code's unit of measure.

• Main raw materials: The main raw materials to be used in production and its source

• Main Machinery and Equipment: The main machinery and equipment to be used in production and its information.

• Manufacturing process: Brief on the manufacturing process explaining how materials are transformed from one state to another until reaching the final product, mentioning the types of materials used, the operations performed, and the machinery/equipment used in each step (if any) for each product.

Required Documents

•Photos of machinery/ equipment to be used
•Photos of products to be manufactured

Other Documents

•Law No. (81) of 2006 with respect to approving The Common Industrial Law of the GCC
•Ministerial Resolution No. (11) of 2009
•Operational requirements for the directorate of industrial developments activities

Supreme Council for Environment (Post) (32907-2)

Approval Name	Description	Estimated Time
Environmental Approval for Manufacture of miscellaneous articles - Factory activity	This service aims to assess the environmental impact and licensing of development, industrial and production projects and activities, in accordance with the standards of protecting the environment and its natural resources	10 Days

Fee Details (if any)

- 30 Bahraini Dinars or 200 Bahraini Dinars for the fast-track procedure (when the data requested within the EA-2 form is sufficient without the need for additional studies)
- 4000 Bahraini Dinars or 6000 Bahraini Dinars for the fast track procedure (when it is necessary to submit an environmental impact assessment study for the project), with an additional payment of 100 Bahraini Dinars when it is necessary to submit a proposal for the scope of the study before submitting it or 500 Bahraini Dinars for a fast track procedure when the proposed scope of the study is being submitted before the study

License Information

To check the requirements for this approval, kindly download the detailed requirements sheet from the other downloadable documents section, which includes the following requirements:

- Building layout engineering and equipment requirements
- Workplace requirements
- Storage requirements
- Material management requirements
- Waste Management Requirements

• Documents and reporting requirements
• General requirements

Required Documents

•Requirements for business activities

Other Documents

•Annex to the Minister of Housing, Municipalities and Environment order regarding the project's environmental assessment
•Law No. (2) of 2021 regarding the environmental standards of air as decided by the Chairman of the Supreme Council for Environment
•Law No. (3) of 2021 regarding the environmental standards of water as decided by the Chairman of the Supreme Council for the Environment
•Law No. (5) of 2021 regarding CITES Annexes to the Convention on International Trade in Endangered Fauna and Flora
•Law No. (54) of 2014 regarding the approval of the unified law regarding substances that deplete the ozone layer for the GCC countries
•Law No. (7) of 2022 regarding the environment
•Ministerial Order No. (1) of 1998 regarding Project's Environmental Assessment
•Ministerial Order No. (10) of 2006 regarding the installation of devices for on-line monitoring of atmospheric air pollutants
•Ministerial Order No. (11) of 2019 regarding the issue of technical specification of plastic products
•Ministerial Order No. (3) of 2005 regarding environmental requirements and standards in workplaces, especially regarding workers' exposure to heat and noise, and the provision of tools and protective clothing such as gloves, glasses, face masks and earplugs, with a commitment to use them during work
•Ministerial Order No. (3) of 2006 regarding the management of hazardous waste
•Ministerial Order No. (4) of 2005 regarding the management of used oils
•Ministerial Order No. (4) of 2006 regarding the management of hazardous chemicals
•Ministerial Order No. (4) of 2021 regarding the fees of the licenses and services provided by the Supreme Council for Environment
•Ministerial Order No. (6) of 2013 amending order No. (4) of 2006 regarding the management of hazardous chemicals
•Ministerial Order No. (7) of 2002 regarding the control importation and use of prohibited and severely restricted chemicals, and not to import any chemical compound except after obtaining approvals of all concerned authorities, including the executive body of the Supreme Council for Environment
•Ministerial Order No. (7) of 2013 amending order No. (3) of 2006 regarding the management of hazardous waste
•Ministerial Order No. 4 of 2014 regarding the management of the environmental

consulting offices operations in the Kingdom of Bahrain
•Order No. (2) of 2020 determining the categories of fees for licensing refrigeration media, refrigeration units and air conditioning units as decided by the Chairman of the Supreme Council for the Environment
•law No. (1) of 2020 regarding the management of refrigeration media, refrigeration units and air conditioning units as decided by the Chairman of the Supreme Council for the Environment
•law No. (2) of 2019 regarding the ban on the import of plastic waste of all kinds as decided by the Chairman of the Supreme Council for the Environment
•law No. (204) of 2018 regarding banning the export of some types of local fishes, shrimps and other aquatic organisms, and coordinating with the Agriculture and Marine Resources at the Ministry of Works, Municipalities and Urban Planning regarding the import and export of some species

Municipality Affairs (Post) (32907-2)

Approval Name	Description	Estimated Time
Site Approval for manufacturing activities (Type B)	Municipality Approval for the Commercial Registration address or the site in which the Activity will be practiced	3 Days

Fee Details (if any)

10 BD

License Information

General Conditions:
1. Size of shop/premises must be sufficient for the activity
2. Businesses may not carry out the activity outside the boundaries of the shop/ premises
3. It is prohibited to display or store any items or equipment outside the shop / premises boundary without prior approval from the Municipality. In the event of non-compliance, the Ministry of Municipality Affairs has the right to take necessary action.
4. Maintain cleanliness of the site
5. Comply with the parking space regulations as per the Construction Regulatory Requirements

Activity Specific Conditions:
1. The Commercial Registration for this activity can only be registered in service and industrial streets/areas

Note: Uploading pictures of the site/shop may expedite the process of obtaining approval

Required Documents

- Lease agreement (after obtaining the necessary approvals from other licensing entities)
- Shop photos

Other Documents

- Cabinet's Decision (56) of the year 2022 regarding the Regulatory Requirements of Construction for various areas in the Kingdom of Bahrain

Directorate Of Industrial Developments (Final Site Inspection) (32907-2)

Approval Name	Description	Estimated Time
Notification Only	Notification to the Industrial development directorate on obtaining a commercial registration with the license to practice the activity.	There is no License Information in this license. Days

Fee Details (if any)

There is no Estimated Processing Time (Days) in this license.

License Information

The industrial license is automatically issued by the Industrial development Directorate after obtaining the approval of other licensing/approving entities.

Please ensure that the actual production date does no exceed the expected production date.

If actual production will start on or before the expected production date please apply for a “New Industrial Registration” by following the steps below:

1- Visit the Industrial services system (www.industry.bh).
2- Select “Industrial Registration”.
3- Select “New Registration” application.

In the event that the actual production date will exceed the expected production date an “Extension of expected production date” application must be submitted by following the steps below:

1- Visit the Industrial services system (www.industry.bh).

2- Select “Industrial License”.
3- Select “Extension of expected production date” application.

Please note that failure to do so within 60 days from the expected production date will result in a violation to be added.

Other Documents

- Law No. (81) of 2006 with respect to approving The Common Industrial Law of the GCC
- Ministerial Resolution No. (11) of 2009 with respect to promulgating Implementing Regulation
- Operational requirements for the directorate of industrial developments activities

Manufacturing

ISIC4	Business activity
3311	Repair of fabricated metal products

Description

This activity includes the repair and maintenance of fabricated metal products.
This includes:
- repair of metal tanks, reservoirs and containers
- repair and maintenance for pipes and pipelines
- mobile welding repair
- repair of steel shipping drums
- repair and maintenance of steam or other vapour generators
- repair and maintenance of auxiliary plant for use with steam generators: condensers, economizers, superheaters, steam collectors and accumulators
- repair and maintenance of parts for marine or power boilers
- platework repair of central heating boilers and radiators

This class excludes:
- repair of central heating systems etc.
- repair of mechanical locking devices, safes etc.

Business Requirements

Age

18 and above

Allowed for Nationalities

Bahraini 100%		GCC 100%	
American 100%		Singaporean 100%	
Icelander 100%		Liechtenstein er 100%	
Norwegian 100%		Swiss 100%	

Foreign Allowed up to 100%

Legal Type

It is allowed to register according to the legal forms mentioned below

Allowed for Individual Commercial Registration (ICR) : Yes

Allowed for Company Commercial Registration (CCR) : Yes

- Bahrain Shareholding Company (Public)
- With Limited Liability Company
- Branch of a Foreign Company
- Bahrain Shareholding Company (Closed)
- Partnership Company
- Simple Commandite Company
- Commandite By Shares Company
- Non Profit Company

Required Step of Licenses and Approvals

Ministry / Directorate	License / Approval Requirements	Approval Type
Supreme Council for Environment	Environmental Approval for Repair of fabricated	Post

	metal products activity	
Municipality Affairs	Site Approval for manufacturing activities (Type B)	Post

Supreme Council for Environment (Post) (3311)

Approval Name	Description	Estimated Time
Environmental Approval for Repair of fabricated metal products activity	This service aims to assess the environmental impact and licensing of development, industrial and production projects and activities, in accordance with the standards of protecting the environment and its natural resources	10 Days

Fee Details (if any)

30 Bahraini Dinars

License Information

To check the requirements for this approval, kindly download the detailed requirements sheet from the other downloadable documents section, which includes the following requirements:

- Building layout Engineering and Equipment Requirements
- Work-place Requirements
- Storage Requirements
- Material Management Requirements
- Waste Management Requirements
- Documents and Reporting Requirements
- General Requirements

Other Documents

- Law No. (2) of 2021 regarding the environmental standards of air as decided by the Chairman of the Supreme Council for Environment
- Law No. (3) of 2021 regarding the environmental standards of water as decided by the Chairman of the Supreme Council for the Environment
- Law No. (7) of 2022 regarding the environment
- Ministerial Order No. (10) of 2006 regarding the installation of devices for on-line monitoring of atmospheric air pollutants
- Ministerial Order No. (3) of 2005 regarding environmental requirements and standards in workplaces, especially regarding workers' exposure to heat and noise, and the provision of tools and protective clothing such as gloves, glasses, face masks and earplugs, with a commitment to use them during work
- Ministerial Order No. (3) of 2006 regarding the management of hazardous waste
- Ministerial Order No. (4) of 2005 regarding the management of used oils
- Ministerial Order No. (4) of 2006 regarding the management of hazardous chemicals
- Ministerial Order No. (6) of 2013 amending order No. (4) of 2006 regarding the management of hazardous chemicals
- Ministerial Order No. (7) of 2002 regarding the control importation and use of prohibited and severely restricted chemicals, and not to import any chemical compound except after obtaining approvals of all concerned authorities, including the executive body of the Supreme Council for Environment
- Ministerial Order No. (7) of 2013 amending order No. (3) of 2006 regarding the management of hazardous waste
- Requirements for business activities

Municipality Affairs (Post) (3311)

Approval Name	Description	Estimated Time
Site Approval for manufacturing activities (Type B)	Municipality Approval for the Commercial Registration address or the site in which the Activity will be practiced	3 Days

Fee Details (if any)

10 BD

License Information

General Conditions:
1. Size of shop/premises must be sufficient for the activity
2. Businesses may not carry out the activity outside the boundaries of the shop/ premises
3. It is prohibited to display or store any items or equipment outside the shop / premises boundary without prior approval from the Municipality. In the event of non-compliance, the Ministry of Municipality Affairs has the right to take necessary action.
4. Maintain cleanliness of the site
5. Comply with the parking space regulations as per the Construction Regulatory Requirements

Activity Specific Conditions:
1. The Commercial Registration for this activity can only be registered in service and industrial streets/areas

Note: Uploading pictures of the site/shop may expedite the process of obtaining approval

Required Documents

- Lease agreement (after obtaining the necessary approvals from other licensing entities)
- Shop photos

Other Documents

- Cabinet's Decision (56) of the year 2022 regarding the Regulatory Requirements of Construction for various areas in the Kingdom of Bahrain

Manufacturing

ISIC4	Business activity
3312	Repair of Machinery and equipment

Description

This activity includes the repair and maintenance of industrial machinery and equipment like sharpening or installing commercial and industrial machinery blades and saws; the provision of welding (e.g. automotive, general) repair services; the repair of agricultural and other heavy and industrial machinery and equipment (e.g. forklifts and other materials handling equipment, machine tools, construction equipment and mining machinery).

This activity includes:
- repair and maintenance of non-automotive engines, e.g. ship or rail engines
- repair and maintenance of pumps and related equipment
- repair and maintenance of fluid power equipment
- repair of valves
- repair of gearing and driving elements
- repair and maintenance of industrial process furnaces
- repair and maintenance of materials handling equipment
- repair and maintenance of commercial-type general-purpose machinery
- repair of other power-driven hand-tools
- repair and maintenance of metal cutting and metal forming machine tools and accessories
- repair and maintenance of other machine tools
- repair and maintenance of agricultural tractors
- repair and maintenance of agricultural machinery and forestry and logging machinery
- repair and maintenance of metallurgy machinery
- repair and maintenance of mining, construction, and oil and gas field machinery
- repair and maintenance of food, beverage, and tobacco processing machinery
- repair and maintenance of textile apparel, and leather production machinery
- repair and maintenance of papermaking machinery
- repair and maintenance of other special-purpose machinery of division 28
- repair and maintenance of weighing equipment
- repair and maintenance of vending machines
- repair and maintenance of cash registers
- repair and maintenance of photocopy machines
- repair of calculators, electronic or not

- repair of typewriters
- repair on site

Business Requirements

Age

18 and above

Allowed for Nationalities

Bahraini 100%		GCC 100%	
American 100%		Singaporean 100%	
Icelander 100%		Liechtenstein er 100%	
Norwegian 100%		Swiss 100%	

Foreign Allowed up to 100%

Legal Type

It is allowed to register according to the legal forms mentioned below

Allowed for Individual Commercial Registration (ICR) : Yes

Allowed for Company Commercial Registration (CCR) : Yes

- Bahrain Shareholding Company (Public)
- With Limited Liability Company
- Branch of a Foreign Company
- Bahrain Shareholding Company (Closed)
- Partnership Company
- Simple Commandite Company
- Commandite By Shares Company
- Non Profit Company

Required Step of Licenses and Approvals

Ministry / Directorate	License / Approval Requirements	Approval Type
Supreme Council for Environment	Environmental Approval for Repair of Machinery and equipment activity	Post
Municipality Affairs	Site Approval for manufacturing activities (Type B)	Post

Supreme Council for Environment (Post) (3312)

Approval Name	Description	Estimated Time
Environmental Approval for Repair of Machinery and equipment activity	This service aims to assess the environmental impact and licensing of development, industrial and production projects and activities, in accordance with the standards of protecting the environment and its natural resources	10 Days

Fee Details (if any)

30 Bahraini Dinars

License Information

To check the requirements for this approval, kindly download the detailed requirements sheet from the other downloadable documents section, which includes the following requirements:

- Building layout Engineering and Equipment Requirements
- Work-place Requirements
- Storage Requirements
- Material Management Requirements
- Waste Management Requirements
- Documents and Reporting Requirements
- General Requirements

Other Documents

- Annex to the Minister of Housing, Municipalities and Environment order regarding the project's environmental assessment
- Law No. (2) of 2021 regarding the environmental standards of air as decided by the Chairman of the Supreme Council for Environment
- Law No. (3) of 2021 regarding the environmental standards of water as decided by the Chairman of the Supreme Council for the Environment
- Law No. (54) of 2014 regarding the approval of the unified law regarding substances that deplete the ozone layer for the GCC countries
- Law No. (7) of 2022 regarding the environment
- Ministerial Order No. (1) of 1998 regarding Project's Environmental Assessment
- Ministerial Order No. (10) of 2006 regarding the installation of devices for on-line monitoring of atmospheric air pollutants
- Ministerial Order No. (3) of 2005 regarding environmental requirements and standards in workplaces, especially regarding workers' exposure to heat and noise, and the provision of tools and protective clothing such as gloves, glasses, face masks and earplugs, with a commitment to use them during work
- Ministerial Order No. (3) of 2006 regarding the management of hazardous waste
- Ministerial Order No. (4) of 2005 regarding the management of used oils
- Ministerial Order No. (4) of 2006 regarding the management of hazardous chemicals
- Ministerial Order No. (4) of 2021 regarding the fees of the licenses and services provided by the Supreme Council for Environment
- Ministerial Order No. (6) of 2013 amending order No. (4) of 2006 regarding the management of hazardous chemicals
- Ministerial Order No. (7) of 2002 regarding the control importation and use of prohibited and severely restricted chemicals, and not to import any chemical compound except after obtaining approvals of all concerned authorities, including the executive body of the Supreme Council for Environment
- Ministerial Order No. (7) of 2013 amending order No. (3) of 2006 regarding the management of hazardous waste
- Ministerial Order No. 4 of 2014 regarding the management of the environmental consulting offices operations in the Kingdom of Bahrain
- Order No. (2) of 2020 determining the categories of fees for licensing refrigeration media, refrigeration units and air conditioning units as decided by the Chairman of the Supreme Council for the Environment
- Requirements for business activities
- law No. (1) of 2020 regarding the management of refrigeration media, refrigeration units and air conditioning units as decided by the Chairman of the Supreme Council for the Environment

Municipality Affairs (Post) (3312)

Approval Name	Description	Estimated Time
Site Approval for manufacturing activities (Type B)	Municipality Approval for the Commercial Registration address or the site in which the Activity will be practiced	3 Days

Fee Details (if any)

10 BD

License Information

General Conditions:
1. Size of shop/premises must be sufficient for the activity
2. Businesses may not carry out the activity outside the boundaries of the shop/ premises
3. It is prohibited to display or store any items or equipment outside the shop / premises boundary without prior approval from the Municipality. In the event of non-compliance, the Ministry of Municipality Affairs has the right to take necessary action.
4. Maintain cleanliness of the site
5. Comply with the parking space regulations as per the Construction Regulatory Requirements

Activity Specific Conditions:
1. The Commercial Registration for this activity can only be registered in service and industrial streets/areas

Note: Uploading pictures of the site/shop may expedite the process of obtaining approval

Required Documents

- Lease agreement (after obtaining the necessary approvals from other licensing entities)
- Shop photos

Other Documents

- Cabinet's Decision (56) of the year 2022 regarding the Regulatory Requirements of Construction for various areas in the Kingdom of Bahrain

ISIC4	Business activity
3313	Repair of electronic, electrical, and optical equipment

Description

This activity includes the repair and maintenance of electronic, electrical, and optical equipment except those that are considered household goods.

This includes:
- repair and maintenance of the measuring, testing, navigating and control equipment such as: aircraft engine instruments; automotive emissions testing equipment; meteorological instruments; physical, electrical and chemical properties testing and inspection equipment; surveying instruments; radiation detection and monitoring instruments

- repair and maintenance of optical instruments and equipment, such as: binoculars; microscopes (except electron and proton microscopes); telescopes; prisms and lenses (except ophthalmic); photographic equipment

This activity excludes:
- repair and maintenance of photocopy machines, see 3312
- repair and maintenance of computers and peripheral equipment, see 9511
- repair and maintenance of computer projectors, see 9511
- repair and maintenance of communication equipment, see 9512
- repair and maintenance of commercial TV and video cameras, see 9512
- repair of household-type video cameras, see 9521
- repair of watches and clocks, see 9529

Business Requirements

Age

18 and above

Allowed for Nationalities

Bahraini 100%		GCC 100%	
American 100%		Singaporean 100%	
Icelander 100%		Liechtenstein er 100%	
Norwegian 100%		Swiss 100%	

Foreign Allowed up to 100%

Legal Type

It is allowed to register according to the legal forms mentioned below

Allowed for Individual Commercial Registration (ICR) : Yes

Allowed for Company Commercial Registration (CCR) : Yes

- Bahrain Shareholding Company (Public)
- With Limited Liability Company
- Branch of a Foreign Company
- Bahrain Shareholding Company (Closed)
- Partnership Company
- Simple Commandite Company
- Commandite By Shares Company
- Non Profit Company

Required Step of Licenses and Approvals

Ministry / Directorate	License / Approval Requirements	Approval Type
Municipality Affairs	Site Approval for manufacturing activities	Post

	(Type A)	

Municipality Affairs (Post) (3313)

Approval Name	Description	Estimated Time
Site Approval for manufacturing activities (Type A)	Municipality Approval for the Commercial Registration address or the site in which the Activity will be practiced	3 Days

Fee Details (if any)

10 BD

License Information

General Conditions:
1. Size of shop/premises must be sufficient for the activity
2. Businesses may not carry out the activity outside the boundaries of the shop/ premises
3. It is prohibited to display or store any items or equipment outside the shop / premises boundary without prior approval from the Municipality. In the event of non-compliance, the Ministry of Municipality Affairs has the right to take necessary action.
4. Maintain cleanliness of the site
5. Comply with the parking space regulations as per the Construction Regulatory Requirements

Activity Specific Conditions:
1. The commercial address for this activity can be registered in areas classified as commercial, services, or industrial

Note: Uploading pictures of the site/shop may expedite the process of obtaining approval

Required Documents

- Lease agreement (after obtaining the necessary approvals from other licensing entities)
- Shop photos

Other Documents

- Cabinet's Decision (56) of the year 2022 regarding the Regulatory Requirements of Construction for various areas in the Kingdom of Bahrain

Manufacturing

ISIC4	Business activity
331501-1	Repair and routine maintenance of ships

Description

This activity includes the repair and full maintenance of ships including the refitting or replacement of motors, as well as mechanical and electrical maintenance and fixing of parts.

If diving would be involved to perform repairs and maintenance, then the applicant must select Diving Services related to Marine Activities.

Business Requirements

Age

18 and above

Allowed for Nationalities

Bahraini 100%	GCC 100%
American 100%	Singaporean 100%
Icelander 100%	Liechtenstein er 100%
Norwegian 100%	Swiss 100%

Foreign Allowed up to 100%

Legal Type

It is allowed to register according to the legal forms mentioned below

Allowed for Individual Commercial Registration (ICR) : Yes

Allowed for Company Commercial Registration (CCR) : Yes

- Bahrain Shareholding Company (Public)
- With Limited Liability Company
- Branch of a Foreign Company
- Bahrain Shareholding Company (Closed)
- Partnership Company
- Simple Commandite Company
- Commandite By Shares Company
- Non Profit Company

Required Step of Licenses and Approvals

Ministry / Directorate	License / Approval Requirements	Approval Type
Municipality Affairs	Site Approval for manufacturing activities (Type C)	Post
Supreme Council for Environment	Environmental Approval for Repair and routine maintenance of ships activity	Post

Municipality Affairs (Post) (331501-1)

Approval Name	Description	Estimated Time
Site Approval for manufacturing activities (Type C)	Municipality Approval for the Commercial Registration address or the site in which the Activity will be practiced	3 Days

Fee Details (if any)

10 BD

License Information

General Conditions:
1. Size of shop/premises must be sufficient for the activity
2. Businesses may not carry out the activity outside the boundaries of the shop/ premises
3. It is prohibited to display or store any items or equipment outside the shop / premises boundary without prior approval from the Municipality. In the event of non-compliance, the Ministry of Municipality Affairs has the right to take necessary action.
4. Maintain cleanliness of the site
5. Comply with the parking space regulations as per the Construction Regulatory Requirements

Activity Specific Conditions:
1. The commercial registration for this activity can be registered on Industrial streets/ areas only

Note: Uploading pictures of the site/shop may expedite the process of obtaining approval

Required Documents

- Lease agreement (after obtaining the necessary approvals from other licensing entities)
- Shop photos

Other Documents

- Cabinet's Decision (93) of the year 2023 regarding the Regulatory Requirements of Construction for various areas in the Kingdom of Bahrain

Supreme Council for Environment (Post) (331501-1)

Approval Name	Description	Estimated Time
Environmental Approval for Repair and routine maintenance of ships activity	This service aims to assess the environmental impact and licensing of development, industrial and production projects and activities, in accordance with the standards of protecting the environment and its natural resources	10 Days

Fee Details (if any)

- 30 Bahraini Dinars or 200 Bahraini Dinars for the fast-track procedure (when the data requested within the EA-2 form is sufficient without the need for additional studies)
- 4000 Bahraini Dinars or 6000 Bahraini Dinars for the fast-track procedure (when it is required to submit an environmental impact assessment study for the project) + with the additional payment amount of “100 Bahraini Dinars when it is required to submit a proposal for the scope of study before submitting it or 500 Bahraini Dinars for a fast-track procedure when the proposed scope of the study is being submitted before study submitting stage”

License Information

To check the requirements for this approval, kindly download the detailed requirements sheet from the other downloadable documents section, which includes the following requirements:

- Building layout Engineering and Equipment Requirements
- Work-place Requirements
- Storage Requirements
- Material Management Requirements

• Waste Management Requirements
• Documents and Reporting Requirements
• General Requirements

Other Documents

•10. Ministerial Order No. (7) of 2013 amending order No. (3) of 2006 regarding the management of hazardous waste
•Annex to the Minister of Housing, Municipalities and Environment order regarding the project's environmental assessment
•Law No. (2) of 2021 regarding the environmental standards of air as decided by the Chairman of the Supreme Council for Environment
•Law No. (3) of 2021 regarding the environmental standards of water as decided by the Chairman of the Supreme Council for the Environment
•Law No. (54) of 2014 regarding the approval of the unified law regarding substances that deplete the ozone layer for the GCC countries
•Law No. (7) of 2022 regarding the environment
•Ministerial Order No. (1) of 1998 regarding Project's Environmental Assessment
•Ministerial Order No. (10) of 2006 regarding the installation of devices for on-line monitoring of atmospheric air pollutants
•Ministerial Order No. (3) of 2005 regarding environmental requirements and standards in workplaces, especially regarding workers' exposure to heat and noise, and the provision of tools and protective clothing such as gloves, glasses, face masks and earplugs, with a commitment to use them during work
•Ministerial Order No. (3) of 2006 regarding the management of hazardous waste
•Ministerial Order No. (4) of 2005 regarding the management of used oils
•Ministerial Order No. (4) of 2006 regarding the management of hazardous chemicals
•Ministerial Order No. (4) of 2021 regarding the fees of the licenses and services provided by the Supreme Council for Environment
•Ministerial Order No. (6) of 2013 amending order No. (4) of 2006 regarding the management of hazardous chemicals
•Ministerial Order No. (7) of 2002 regarding the control importation and use of prohibited and severely restricted chemicals, and not to import any chemical compound except after obtaining approvals of all concerned authorities, including the executive body of the Supreme Council for Environment
•Ministerial Order No. 4 of 2014 regarding the management of the environmental consulting offices operations in the Kingdom of Bahrain
•Order No. (2) of 2020 determining the categories of fees for licensing refrigeration media, refrigeration units and air conditioning units as decided by the Chairman of the Supreme Council for the Environment
•Requirements for business activities
•law No. (1) of 2020 regarding the management of refrigeration media, refrigeration units and air conditioning units as decided by the Chairman of the Supreme Council for the Environment

Manufacturing

ISIC4	Business activity
331501-2	Repair and routine maintenance of ships - Diving Services related to Marine Activities

Description

This options must be selected to perform underwater examination and works relating to the repair and maintenance of ships

Business Requirements

✔ Age

18 and above

✔ Allowed for Nationalities

Bahraini 100%	GCC 100%
American 100%	Singaporean 100%
Icelander 100%	Liechtenstein er 100%
Norwegian 100%	Swiss 100%

Foreign Allowed up to 100%

Legal Type

It is allowed to register according to the legal forms mentioned below

Allowed for Individual Commercial Registration (ICR) : Yes

Allowed for Company Commercial Registration (CCR) : Yes

- Bahrain Shareholding Company (Public)
- With Limited Liability Company
- Branch of a Foreign Company
- Bahrain Shareholding Company (Closed)
- Partnership Company
- Simple Commandite Company
- Commandite By Shares Company
- Non Profit Company

Required Step of Licenses and Approvals

Ministry / Directorate	License / Approval Requirements	Approval Type
Municipality Affairs	Site Approval for manufacturing activities (Type C)	Post

Municipality Affairs (Post) (331501-2)

Approval Name	Description	Estimated Time
Site Approval for manufacturing activities (Type C)	Municipality Approval for the Commercial Registration address or the site in which the Activity will be practiced	3 Days

Fee Details (if any)

10 BD

License Information

General Conditions:
1. Size of shop/premises must be sufficient for the activity
2. Businesses may not carry out the activity outside the boundaries of the shop/ premises
3. It is prohibited to display or store any items or equipment outside the shop / premises boundary without prior approval from the Municipality. In the event of non-compliance, the Ministry of Municipality Affairs has the right to take necessary action.
4. Maintain cleanliness of the site
5. Comply with the parking space regulations as per the Construction Regulatory Requirements

Activity Specific Conditions:
1. The commercial registration for this activity can be registered on Industrial streets/ areas only

Note: Uploading pictures of the site/shop may expedite the process of obtaining approval

Required Documents

- Lease agreement (after obtaining the necessary approvals from other licensing entities)
- Shop photos

Other Documents

- Cabinet's Decision (93) of the year 2023 regarding the Regulatory Requirements of Construction for various areas in the Kingdom of Bahrain

Manufacturing

ISIC4	Business activity
331502	Repair and routine maintenance pleasure boats

Description

This activity includes the repair and maintenance of pleasure boats including the refitting or replacement of motors, as well as mechanical and electrical maintenance and fixing of parts.

Business Requirements

Age

18 and above

Allowed for Nationalities

- Bahraini 100%
- American 100%
- GCC 100%

Legal Type

It is allowed to register according to the legal forms mentioned below

Allowed for Individual Commercial Registration (ICR) : Yes

Allowed for Company Commercial Registration (CCR) : Yes

- Bahrain Shareholding Company (Public)
- With Limited Liability Company
- Branch of a Foreign Company
- Bahrain Shareholding Company (Closed)
- Partnership Company
- Simple Commandite Company
- Commandite By Shares Company
- Non Profit Company

Required Step of Licenses and Approvals

Ministry / Directorate	License / Approval Requirements	Approval Type
Supreme Council for Environment	Environmental Approval for Repair and routine maintenance pleasure boats activity	Post
Municipality Affairs	Site Approval for manufacturing activities (Type B)	Post

Supreme Council for Environment (Post) (331502)

Approval Name	Description	Estimated Time
Environmental Approval for Repair and routine maintenance pleasure boats activity	This service aims to assess the environmental impact and licensing of development, industrial and production projects and activities, in accordance with the standards of protecting the environment and its natural resources	10 Days

Fee Details (if any)

30 Bahraini Dinars

License Information

To check the requirements for this approval, kindly download the detailed requirements sheet from the other downloadable documents section, which includes the following requirements:

- Building layout Engineering and Equipment Requirements
- Work-place Requirements
- Storage Requirements
- Material Management Requirements
- Waste Management Requirements
- Documents and Reporting Requirements
- General Requirements

Other Documents

- Annex to the Minister of Housing, Municipalities and Environment order regarding the project's environmental assessment
- Law No. (2) of 2021 regarding the environmental standards of air as decided by the Chairman of the Supreme Council for Environment
- Law No. (3) of 2021 regarding the environmental standards of water as decided by the Chairman of the Supreme Council for the Environment
- Law No. (54) of 2014 regarding the approval of the unified law regarding substances that deplete the ozone layer for the GCC countries
- Law No. (7) of 2022 regarding the environment
- Ministerial Order No. (1) of 1998 regarding Project's Environmental Assessment
- Ministerial Order No. (10) of 2006 regarding the installation of devices for on-line monitoring of atmospheric air pollutants
- Ministerial Order No. (3) of 2005 regarding environmental requirements and standards in workplaces, especially regarding workers' exposure to heat and noise, and the provision of tools and protective clothing such as gloves, glasses, face masks and earplugs, with a commitment to use them during work
- Ministerial Order No. (3) of 2006 regarding the management of hazardous waste
- Ministerial Order No. (4) of 2005 regarding the management of used oils
- Ministerial Order No. (4) of 2006 regarding the management of hazardous chemicals
- Ministerial Order No. (4) of 2021 regarding the fees of the licenses and services provided by the Supreme Council for Environment
- Ministerial Order No. (6) of 2013 amending order No. (4) of 2006 regarding the management of hazardous chemicals
- Ministerial Order No. (7) of 2002 regarding the control importation and use of prohibited and severely restricted chemicals, and not to import any chemical compound except after obtaining approvals of all concerned authorities, including the executive body of the Supreme Council for Environment
- Ministerial Order No. (7) of 2013 amending order No. (3) of 2006 regarding the management of hazardous waste
- Ministerial Order No. 4 of 2014 regarding the management of the environmental consulting offices operations in the Kingdom of Bahrain
- Order No. (2) of 2020 determining the categories of fees for licensing refrigeration media, refrigeration units and air conditioning units as decided by the Chairman of the Supreme Council for the Environment
- Requirements for business activities
- law No. (1) of 2020 regarding the management of refrigeration media, refrigeration units and air conditioning units as decided by the Chairman of the Supreme Council for the Environment

Municipality Affairs (Post) (331502)

Approval Name	Description	Estimated Time
Site Approval for manufacturing activities (Type B)	Municipality Approval for the Commercial Registration address or the site in which the Activity will be practiced	3 Days

Fee Details (if any)

10 BD

License Information

General Conditions:
1. Size of shop/premises must be sufficient for the activity
2. Businesses may not carry out the activity outside the boundaries of the shop/ premises
3. It is prohibited to display or store any items or equipment outside the shop / premises boundary without prior approval from the Municipality. In the event of non-compliance, the Ministry of Municipality Affairs has the right to take necessary action.
4. Maintain cleanliness of the site
5. Comply with the parking space regulations as per the Construction Regulatory Requirements

Activity Specific Conditions:
1. The Commercial Registration for this activity can only be registered in service and industrial streets/areas

Note: Uploading pictures of the site/shop may expedite the process of obtaining approval

Required Documents

- Lease agreement (after obtaining the necessary approvals from other licensing entities)
- Shop photos

Other Documents

- Cabinet's Decision (56) of the year 2022 regarding the Regulatory Requirements of Construction for various areas in the Kingdom of Bahrain

Manufacturing

ISIC4	Business activity
331504-1	Repair and maintenance of aircraft and aircraft engines - Aircraft Line Maintenance Services

Description

Line maintenance services provided to aircraft including repair, replacement of spare parts and maintenance of aircraft engines but not including overhaul maintenance of aircraft and its engines.

Business Requirements

Age

18 and above

Allowed for Nationalities

Bahraini 100%		GCC 100%	
American 100%		Singaporean 100%	
Icelander 100%		Liechtenstein er 100%	
Norwegian 100%		Swiss 100%	

Foreign Allowed up to 100%

Legal Type

It is allowed to register according to the legal forms mentioned below

Allowed for Individual Commercial Registration (ICR) : Yes

Allowed for Company Commercial Registration (CCR) : Yes

- Bahrain Shareholding Company (Public)
- With Limited Liability Company
- Branch of a Foreign Company
- Bahrain Shareholding Company (Closed)
- Partnership Company
- Simple Commandite Company
- Commandite By Shares Company
- Non Profit Company

Required Step of Licenses and Approvals

Ministry / Directorate	License / Approval Requirements	Approval Type
Civil Aviation Affairs	Aircraft Line Maintenance Services	Pre
General Directorate Of Criminal Investigation	Approval by General Directorate of Criminal Investigation	Pre
Municipality Affairs	Site Approval for manufacturing activities (Type C)	Post
Civil Aviation Affairs	Aircraft Line Maintenance Services	Post
Civil Aviation Affairs	Aircraft Line Maintenance Services	Final Site Inspection

Civil Aviation Affairs (Pre) (331504-1)

Approval Name	Description	Estimated Time
Aircraft Line Maintenance Services	Line maintenance services provided to aircraft including repair, replacement of spare parts and maintenance of aircraft engines but not including overhaul maintenance of aircraft and its engines.	10 Days

Fee Details (if any)

• Application fees: BD 100 (non-refundable in cases where the application is not approved).
• Visibility study: BD 1,000 (deducted from the license fee in case of approval).
• License fees: BD 5,000.
• Annual renewal fees 50% of the license fees.

License Information

• The capital of the company must not be less than 100,000.
• The license is valid for one year and renewal application must be submitted 2 months before expiry
• Adhere to standards and regulatory requirements set out in the Civil Aviation Law issued by virtue of Law No. 14 of 2013.
• The location must be in the airport.

Required Documents

- Feasibility, technical, economic and financial studies
- Fill application Form ATD/ATCL/OF04
- Memorandum of Association

Other Documents

- Chicago Convention and its Annexes.
- Civil Aviation Law No.14 of 2013
- Minister of Transportation and Telecommunication Decree No. 25 of 2016 of CAA fees and departure fees.
- Minster of Transportation and Telecommunication Decree No. 21 of 2013 issuing the regulations under the Civil Aviation Law.

General Directorate Of Criminal Investigation (Pre) (331504-1)

Approval Name	Description	Estimated Time
Approval by General Directorate of Criminal Investigation	General Directorate of Criminal Investigation Approval for the Activity	7 Days

Fee Details (if any)

There is no Estimated Processing Time (Days) in this license.

License Information

- The applicant should not have a criminal record, unless they have been rehabilitated in criminal cases

Municipality Affairs (Post) (331504-1)

Approval Name	Description	Estimated Time
Site Approval for manufacturing activities (Type C)	Municipality Approval for the Commercial Registration address or the site in which the Activity will be practiced	3 Days

Fee Details (if any)

10 BD

License Information

General Conditions:
1. Size of shop/premises must be sufficient for the activity
2. Businesses may not carry out the activity outside the boundaries of the shop/ premises
3. It is prohibited to display or store any items or equipment outside the shop / premises boundary without prior approval from the Municipality. In the event of non-compliance, the Ministry of Municipality Affairs has the right to take necessary action.
4. Maintain cleanliness of the site
5. Comply with the parking space regulations as per the Construction Regulatory Requirements

Activity Specific Conditions:
1. The commercial registration for this activity can be registered on Industrial streets/ areas only

Note: Uploading pictures of the site/shop may expedite the process of obtaining approval

Required Documents

- Lease agreement (after obtaining the necessary approvals from other licensing entities)
- Shop photos

Other Documents

- Cabinet's Decision (93) of the year 2023 regarding the Regulatory Requirements of Construction for various areas in the Kingdom of Bahrain

Civil Aviation Affairs (Post) (331504-1)

Approval Name	Description	Estimated Time
Aircraft Line Maintenance Services	Line maintenance services provided to aircraft including repair, replacement of spare parts and maintenance of aircraft engines but not including overhaul maintenance of aircraft and its engines.	10 Days

Fee Details (if any)

- Application fees: BD 100 (non-refundable in cases where the application is not approved).
- Visibility study: BD 1,000 (deducted from the license fee in case of approval).
- License fees: BD 5,000.
- Annual renewal fees 50% of the license fees.

License Information

- The capital of the company must not be less than 100,000.
- The license is valid for one year and renewal application must be submitted 2 months before expiry
- Adhere to standards and regulatory requirements set out in the Civil Aviation Law issued by virtue of Law No. 14 of 2013.
- The location must be in the airport.

Required Documents

- Feasibility, technical, economic and financial studies
- Fill application Form ATD/ATCL/OF04
- Memorandum of Association

Other Documents

- Chicago Convention and its Annexes.
- Civil Aviation Law No.14 of 2013
- Minister of Transportation and Telecommunication Decree No. 25 of 2016 of CAA fees and departure fees.
- Minster of Transportation and Telecommunication Decree No. 21 of 2013 issuing the regulations under the Civil Aviation Law.

Civil Aviation Affairs (Final Site Inspection) (331504-1)

Approval Name	Description	Estimated Time
Aircraft Line Maintenance Services	Line maintenance services provided to aircraft including repair, replacement of spare parts and maintenance of aircraft engines but not including overhaul maintenance of aircraft and its engines.	10 Days

Fee Details (if any)

- Application fees: BD 100 (non-refundable in cases where the application is not approved).
- Visibility study: BD 1,000 (deducted from the license fee in case of approval).
- License fees: BD 5,000.
- Annual renewal fees 50% of the license fees.

License Information

- The capital of the company must not be less than 100,000.
- The license is valid for one year and renewal application must be submitted 2 months before expiry
- Adhere to standards and regulatory requirements set out in the Civil Aviation Law issued by virtue of Law No. 14 of 2013.
- The location must be in the airport.

Required Documents

- Feasibility, technical, economic and financial studies
- Fill application Form ATD/ATCL/OF04
- Memorandum of Association

Other Documents

- Chicago Convention and its Annexes.
- Civil Aviation Law No.14 of 2013
- Minister of Transportation and Telecommunication Decree No. 25 of 2016 of CAA fees and departure fees.
- Minster of Transportation and Telecommunication Decree No. 21 of 2013 issuing the regulations under the Civil Aviation Law.

Manufacturing

ISIC4	Business activity
331504-2	Repair and maintenance of aircraft and aircraft engines - Aircraft Heavy Maintenance Services

Description

Overhead maintenance of aircraft and engines

Business Requirements

Age

18 and above

Allowed for Nationalities

Bahraini 100%	GCC 100%
American 100%	Singaporean 100%
Icelander 100%	Liechtensteiner 100%
Norwegian 100%	Swiss 100%

Foreign Allowed up to 100%

Legal Type

It is allowed to register according to the legal forms mentioned below

Allowed for Individual Commercial Registration (ICR) : Yes

Allowed for Company Commercial Registration (CCR) : Yes

- Bahrain Shareholding Company (Public)
- With Limited Liability Company
- Branch of a Foreign Company
- Bahrain Shareholding Company (Closed)
- Partnership Company
- Simple Commandite Company
- Commandite By Shares Company
- Non Profit Company

Required Step of Licenses and Approvals

Ministry / Directorate	License / Approval Requirements	Approval Type
General Directorate Of Criminal Investigation	Approval by General Directorate of Criminal Investigation	Pre
Civil Aviation Affairs	Aircraft Heavy Maintenance Services	Pre
Civil Aviation Affairs	Aircraft Heavy Maintenance Services	Post
Municipality Affairs	Site Approval for manufacturing activities (Type C)	Post
Civil Aviation Affairs	Aircraft Heavy Maintenance Services	Final Site Inspection

General Directorate Of Criminal Investigation (Pre) (331504-2)

Approval Name	Description	Estimated Time
Approval by General Directorate of Criminal Investigation	General Directorate of Criminal Investigation Approval for the Activity	7 Days

Fee Details (if any)

There is no Estimated Processing Time (Days) in this license.

License Information

- The applicant should not have a criminal record, unless they have been rehabilitated in criminal cases

Civil Aviation Affairs (Pre) (331504-2)

Approval Name	Description	Estimated Time
Aircraft Heavy Maintenance Services	Overhead maintenance of aircraft and engines.	10 Days

Fee Details (if any)

• Application fees: BD 100 (non-refundable in cases where the application is not approved).
• Visibility study: BD 1,000 (deducted from the license fee in case of approval).
• License fees BD10,000.
• Annual renewal fees 50% of the license fees.

License Information

• The capital of the company must not be less than 100,000.
• The license is valid for one year and renewal application must be submitted 2 months before expiry
• Adhere to standards and regulatory requirements set out in the Civil Aviation Law issued by virtue of Law No. 14 of 2013
• The location must be in the airport.

Required Documents

•Feasibility, technical, economic and financial studies
•Fill application Form ATD/ATCL/OF04
•Memorandum of Association

Other Documents

- Chicago Convention and its Annexes.
- Civil Aviation Law No.14 of 2013
- Minister of Transportation and Telecommunication Decree No. 25 of 2016 of CAA fees and departure fees.
- Minster of Transportation and Telecommunication Decree No. 21 of 2013 issuing the regulations under the Civil Aviation Law.

Civil Aviation Affairs (Post) (331504-2)

Approval Name	Description	Estimated Time
Aircraft Heavy Maintenance Services	Overhead maintenance of aircraft and engines.	10 Days

Fee Details (if any)

• Application fees: BD 100 (non-refundable in cases where the application is not approved).
• Visibility study: BD 1,000 (deducted from the license fee in case of approval).
• License fees BD10,000.
• Annual renewal fees 50% of the license fees.

License Information

• The capital of the company must not be less than 100,000.
• The license is valid for one year and renewal application must be submitted 2 months before expiry
• Adhere to standards and regulatory requirements set out in the Civil Aviation Law issued by virtue of Law No. 14 of 2013
• The location must be in the airport.

Required Documents

•Feasibility, technical, economic and financial studies
•Fill application Form ATD/ATCL/OF04
•Memorandum of Association

Other Documents

- Chicago Convention and its Annexes.
- Civil Aviation Law No.14 of 2013
- Minister of Transportation and Telecommunication Decree No. 25 of 2016 of CAA fees and departure fees.
- Minster of Transportation and Telecommunication Decree No. 21 of 2013 issuing the regulations under the Civil Aviation Law.

Municipality Affairs (Post) (331504-2)

Approval Name	Description	Estimated Time
Site Approval for manufacturing activities (Type C)	Municipality Approval for the Commercial Registration address or the site in which the Activity will be practiced	3 Days

Fee Details (if any)

10 BD

License Information

General Conditions:
1. Size of shop/premises must be sufficient for the activity
2. Businesses may not carry out the activity outside the boundaries of the shop/ premises
3. It is prohibited to display or store any items or equipment outside the shop / premises boundary without prior approval from the Municipality. In the event of non-compliance, the Ministry of Municipality Affairs has the right to take necessary action.
4. Maintain cleanliness of the site
5. Comply with the parking space regulations as per the Construction Regulatory Requirements

Activity Specific Conditions:
1. The commercial registration for this activity can be registered on Industrial streets/ areas only

Note: Uploading pictures of the site/shop may expedite the process of obtaining approval

Required Documents

- Lease agreement (after obtaining the necessary approvals from other licensing entities)
- Shop photos

Other Documents

- Cabinet's Decision (93) of the year 2023 regarding the Regulatory Requirements of Construction for various areas in the Kingdom of Bahrain

Civil Aviation Affairs (Final Site Inspection) (331504-2)

Approval Name	Description	Estimated Time
Aircraft Heavy Maintenance Services	Overhead maintenance of aircraft and engines.	10 Days

Fee Details (if any)

• Application fees: BD 100 (non-refundable in cases where the application is not approved).
• Visibility study: BD 1,000 (deducted from the license fee in case of approval).
• License fees BD10,000.
• Annual renewal fees 50% of the license fees.

License Information

• The capital of the company must not be less than 100,000.
• The license is valid for one year and renewal application must be submitted 2 months before expiry
• Adhere to standards and regulatory requirements set out in the Civil Aviation Law issued by virtue of Law No. 14 of 2013
• The location must be in the airport.

Required Documents

•Feasibility, technical, economic and financial studies
•Fill application Form ATD/ATCL/OF04
•Memorandum of Association

Other Documents

- Chicago Convention and its Annexes.
- Civil Aviation Law No.14 of 2013
- Minister of Transportation and Telecommunication Decree No. 25 of 2016 of CAA fees and departure fees.
- Minster of Transportation and Telecommunication Decree No. 21 of 2013 issuing the regulations under the Civil Aviation Law.

Manufacturing

ISIC4	Business activity
331504-3	Repair and maintenance of aircraft and aircraft engines - Aircraft Washing Services

Description

Includes internal and external washing of aircraft

Business Requirements

Age

18 and above

Allowed for Nationalities

Bahraini 100%	GCC 100%
American 100%	Singaporean 100%
Icelander 100%	Liechtensteiner 100%
Norwegian 100%	Swiss 100%

Foreign Allowed up to 100%

Legal Type

It is allowed to register according to the legal forms mentioned below

Allowed for Individual Commercial Registration (ICR) : Yes

Allowed for Company Commercial Registration (CCR) : Yes

- Bahrain Shareholding Company (Public)
- With Limited Liability Company
- Branch of a Foreign Company
- Bahrain Shareholding Company (Closed)
- Partnership Company
- Simple Commandite Company
- Commandite By Shares Company
- Non Profit Company

Required Step of Licenses and Approvals

Ministry / Directorate	License / Approval Requirements	Approval Type
Civil Aviation Affairs	Aircraft Washing Services	Pre
General Directorate Of Criminal Investigation	Approval by General Directorate of Criminal Investigation	Pre
Municipality Affairs	Site Approval for manufacturing activities (Type C)	Post
Civil Aviation Affairs	Aircraft Washing Services	Post
Civil Aviation Affairs	Aircraft Washing Services	Final Site Inspection

Civil Aviation Affairs (Pre) (331504-3)

Approval Name	Description	Estimated Time
Aircraft Washing Services	Including internal and external washing of aircraft	10 Days

Fee Details (if any)

• Application fees: BD 100 (non-refundable in cases where the application is not approved).
• License fees: BD 2,000.
• Annual renewal fees 50% of the license fees.

License Information

• The capital of the company must not be less than 60,000.
• The license is valid for one year and renewal application must be submitted 2 months before expiry
• Adhere to standards and regulatory requirements set out in the Civil Aviation Law issued by virtue of Law No. 14 of 2013

Required Documents

•Feasibility, technical, economic and financial studies
•Fill application Form ATD/ATCL/OF04
•Memorandum of Association

Other Documents

- Chicago Convention and its Annexes.
- Civil Aviation Law No.14 of 2013
- Minister of Transportation and Telecommunication Decree No. 25 of 2016 of CAA fees and departure fees.
- Minster of Transportation and Telecommunication Decree No. 21 of 2013 issuing the regulations under the Civil Aviation Law.

General Directorate Of Criminal Investigation (Pre) (331504-3)

Approval Name	Description	Estimated Time
Approval by General Directorate of Criminal Investigation	General Directorate of Criminal Investigation Approval for the Activity	7 Days

Fee Details (if any)

There is no Estimated Processing Time (Days) in this license.

License Information

- The applicant should not have a criminal record, unless they have been rehabilitated in criminal cases

Municipality Affairs (Post) (331504-3)

Approval Name	Description	Estimated Time
Site Approval for manufacturing activities (Type C)	Municipality Approval for the Commercial Registration address or the site in which the Activity will be practiced	3 Days

Fee Details (if any)

10 BD

License Information

General Conditions:
1. Size of shop/premises must be sufficient for the activity
2. Businesses may not carry out the activity outside the boundaries of the shop/ premises
3. It is prohibited to display or store any items or equipment outside the shop / premises boundary without prior approval from the Municipality. In the event of non-compliance, the Ministry of Municipality Affairs has the right to take necessary action.
4. Maintain cleanliness of the site
5. Comply with the parking space regulations as per the Construction Regulatory Requirements

Activity Specific Conditions:
1. The commercial registration for this activity can be registered on Industrial streets/ areas only

Note: Uploading pictures of the site/shop may expedite the process of obtaining approval

Required Documents

- Lease agreement (after obtaining the necessary approvals from other licensing entities)
- Shop photos

Other Documents

- Cabinet's Decision (93) of the year 2023 regarding the Regulatory Requirements of Construction for various areas in the Kingdom of Bahrain

Civil Aviation Affairs (Post) (331504-3)

Approval Name	Description	Estimated Time
Aircraft Washing Services	Including internal and external washing of aircraft	10 Days

Fee Details (if any)

• Application fees: BD 100 (non-refundable in cases where the application is not approved).
• License fees: BD 2,000.
• Annual renewal fees 50% of the license fees.

License Information

• The capital of the company must not be less than 60,000.
• The license is valid for one year and renewal application must be submitted 2 months before expiry
• Adhere to standards and regulatory requirements set out in the Civil Aviation Law issued by virtue of Law No. 14 of 2013

Required Documents

•Feasibility, technical, economic and financial studies
•Fill application Form ATD/ATCL/OF04
•Memorandum of Association

Other Documents

- Chicago Convention and its Annexes.
- Civil Aviation Law No.14 of 2013
- Minister of Transportation and Telecommunication Decree No. 25 of 2016 of CAA fees and departure fees.
- Minster of Transportation and Telecommunication Decree No. 21 of 2013 issuing the regulations under the Civil Aviation Law.

Civil Aviation Affairs (Final Site Inspection) (331504-3)

Approval Name	Description	Estimated Time
Aircraft Washing Services	Including internal and external washing of aircraft	10 Days

Fee Details (if any)

• Application fees: BD 100 (non-refundable in cases where the application is not approved).
• License fees: BD 2,000.
• Annual renewal fees 50% of the license fees.

License Information

• The capital of the company must not be less than 60,000.
• The license is valid for one year and renewal application must be submitted 2 months before expiry
• Adhere to standards and regulatory requirements set out in the Civil Aviation Law issued by virtue of Law No. 14 of 2013

Required Documents

•Feasibility, technical, economic and financial studies
•Fill application Form ATD/ATCL/OF04
•Memorandum of Association

Other Documents

- Chicago Convention and its Annexes.
- Civil Aviation Law No.14 of 2013
- Minister of Transportation and Telecommunication Decree No. 25 of 2016 of CAA fees and departure fees.
- Minster of Transportation and Telecommunication Decree No. 21 of 2013 issuing the regulations under the Civil Aviation Law.

Manufacturing

ISIC4	Business activity
3319	Repair and maintenance of other Industrial equipment

Description

This activity includes the repair and maintenance of equipment not covered in other activities.
This includes:
- repair of fishing nets, including mending
- repair or ropes, riggings, canvas and tarps
- repair of fertilizer and chemical storage bags
- repair or reconditioning of wooden pallets, shipping drums or barrels, and similar items
- repair of pinball machines and other coin-operated games
- restoring of organs and other historical musical instruments

This class excludes:
- repair of household and office type furniture, furniture restoration, see 9524
- repair of bicycles and invalid carriages, see 9529
- repair and alteration of clothing, see 9529

Business Requirements

Age

18 and above

Allowed for Nationalities

Bahraini 100%		GCC 100%	
American 100%		Singaporean 100%	
Icelander 100%		Liechtenstein er 100%	
Norwegian 100%		Swiss 100%	

Foreign Allowed up to 100%

Legal Type

It is allowed to register according to the legal forms mentioned below

Allowed for Individual Commercial Registration (ICR) : Yes

Allowed for Company Commercial Registration (CCR) : Yes

- Bahrain Shareholding Company (Public)
- With Limited Liability Company
- Branch of a Foreign Company
- Bahrain Shareholding Company (Closed)
- Partnership Company
- Simple Commandite Company
- Commandite By Shares Company
- Non Profit Company

Required Step of Licenses and Approvals

Ministry / Directorate	License / Approval Requirements	Approval Type
Supreme Council for Environment	Environmental Approval for Repair and routine	Post

	maintenance pleasure boats activity	
Municipality Affairs	Site Approval for manufacturing activities (Type C)	Post

Supreme Council for Environment (Post) (3319)

Approval Name	Description	Estimated Time
Environmental Approval for Repair and routine maintenance pleasure boats activity	This service aims to assess the environmental impact and licensing of development, industrial and production projects and activities, in accordance with the standards of protecting the environment and its natural resources	10 Days

Fee Details (if any)

30 Bahraini Dinars

License Information

To check the requirements for this approval, kindly download the detailed requirements sheet from the other downloadable documents section, which includes the following requirements:

- Building layout Engineering and Equipment Requirements
- Work-place Requirements
- Storage Requirements
- Material Management Requirements
- Waste Management Requirements
- Documents and Reporting Requirements
- General Requirements

Other Documents

- Annex to the Minister of Housing, Municipalities and Environment order regarding the project's environmental assessment
- Law No. (2) of 2021 regarding the environmental standards of air as decided by the Chairman of the Supreme Council for Environment
- Law No. (3) of 2021 regarding the environmental standards of water as decided by the Chairman of the Supreme Council for the Environment
- Law No. (54) of 2014 regarding the approval of the unified law regarding substances that deplete the ozone layer for the GCC countries
- Law No. (7) of 2022 regarding the environment
- Ministerial Order No. (1) of 1998 regarding Project's Environmental Assessment
- Ministerial Order No. (10) of 2006 regarding the installation of devices for on-line monitoring of atmospheric air pollutants
- Ministerial Order No. (3) of 2005 regarding environmental requirements and standards in workplaces, especially regarding workers' exposure to heat and noise, and the provision of tools and protective clothing such as gloves, glasses, face masks and earplugs, with a commitment to use them during work
- Ministerial Order No. (3) of 2006 regarding the management of hazardous waste
- Ministerial Order No. (4) of 2005 regarding the management of used oils
- Ministerial Order No. (4) of 2006 regarding the management of hazardous chemicals
- Ministerial Order No. (4) of 2021 regarding the fees of the licenses and services provided by the Supreme Council for Environment
- Ministerial Order No. (6) of 2013 amending order No. (4) of 2006 regarding the management of hazardous chemicals
- Ministerial Order No. (7) of 2002 regarding the control importation and use of prohibited and severely restricted chemicals, and not to import any chemical compound except after obtaining approvals of all concerned authorities, including the executive body of the Supreme Council for Environment
- Ministerial Order No. (7) of 2013 amending order No. (3) of 2006 regarding the management of hazardous waste
- Ministerial Order No. 4 of 2014 regarding the management of the environmental consulting offices operations in the Kingdom of Bahrain
- Order No. (2) of 2020 determining the categories of fees for licensing refrigeration media, refrigeration units and air conditioning units as decided by the Chairman of the Supreme Council for the Environment
- Requirements for business activities
- law No. (1) of 2020 regarding the management of refrigeration media, refrigeration units and air conditioning units as decided by the Chairman of the Supreme Council for the Environment

Municipality Affairs (Post) (3319)

Approval Name	Description	Estimated Time
Site Approval for manufacturing activities (Type C)	Municipality Approval for the Commercial Registration address or the site in which the Activity will be practiced	3 Days

Fee Details (if any)

10 BD

License Information

General Conditions:
1. Size of shop/premises must be sufficient for the activity
2. Businesses may not carry out the activity outside the boundaries of the shop/ premises
3. It is prohibited to display or store any items or equipment outside the shop / premises boundary without prior approval from the Municipality. In the event of non-compliance, the Ministry of Municipality Affairs has the right to take necessary action.
4. Maintain cleanliness of the site
5. Comply with the parking space regulations as per the Construction Regulatory Requirements

Activity Specific Conditions:
1. The commercial registration for this activity can be registered on Industrial streets/ areas only

Note: Uploading pictures of the site/shop may expedite the process of obtaining approval

Required Documents

- Lease agreement (after obtaining the necessary approvals from other licensing entities)
- Shop photos

Other Documents

- Cabinet's Decision (93) of the year 2023 regarding the Regulatory Requirements of Construction for various areas in the Kingdom of Bahrain

ISIC4	Business activity
332	Installation of industrial machinery and equipment

Description

This activity includes the specialized installation of machinery. However, the installation of equipment that forms an integral part of buildings or similar structures, such as installation of escalators, electrical wiring, burglar alarm systems or air-conditioning systems, is classified as construction.

This activity includes:
- installation of industrial machinery in industrial plant
- installation of industrial process control equipment
- installation of other industrial equipment, e.g.:
. communications equipment
. mainframe and similar computers
. irradiation and electromedical equipment etc.
- dismantling large-scale machinery and equipment
- activities of millwrights
- machine rigging
- installation of bowling alley equipment

This activity excludes:
- installation of electrical wiring, burglar alarm systems, see 4321
- installation of air-conditioning systems, see 43221
- installation of elevators, escalators, automated doors, vacuum cleaning systems etc., see 4329
- installation of doors, staircases, shop fittings, furniture etc., see 4330
- installation (setting-up) of personal computers, see 6209

Business Requirements

Age

18 and above

Allowed for Nationalities

Bahraini 100%		GCC 100%	
American 100%		Singaporean 100%	
Icelander 100%		Liechtenstein er 100%	
Norwegian 100%		Swiss 100%	

Foreign Allowed up to 100%

Legal Type

It is allowed to register according to the legal forms mentioned below

Allowed for Individual Commercial Registration (ICR) : Yes

Allowed for Company Commercial Registration (CCR) : Yes

- Bahrain Shareholding Company (Public)
- With Limited Liability Company
- Branch of a Foreign Company
- Bahrain Shareholding Company (Closed)
- Partnership Company
- Simple Commandite Company
- Commandite By Shares Company
- Non Profit Company

Required Step of Licenses and Approvals

Ministry / Directorate	License / Approval Requirements	Approval Type
Municipality Affairs	Site Approval for manufacturing activities	Post

	(Type C)	

Municipality Affairs (Post) (332)

Approval Name	Description	Estimated Time
Site Approval for manufacturing activities (Type C)	Municipality Approval for the Commercial Registration address or the site in which the Activity will be practiced	3 Days

Fee Details (if any)

10 BD

License Information

General Conditions:
1. Size of shop/premises must be sufficient for the activity
2. Businesses may not carry out the activity outside the boundaries of the shop/ premises
3. It is prohibited to display or store any items or equipment outside the shop / premises boundary without prior approval from the Municipality. In the event of non-compliance, the Ministry of Municipality Affairs has the right to take necessary action.
4. Maintain cleanliness of the site
5. Comply with the parking space regulations as per the Construction Regulatory Requirements

Activity Specific Conditions:
1. The commercial registration for this activity can be registered on Industrial streets/ areas only

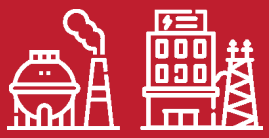
Note: Uploading pictures of the site/shop may expedite the process of obtaining approval

Required Documents

- Lease agreement (after obtaining the necessary approvals from other licensing entities)
- Shop photos

Other Documents

- Cabinet's Decision (93) of the year 2023 regarding the Regulatory Requirements of Construction for various areas in the Kingdom of Bahrain



Electricity, gas, steam and air conditioning supply

سجلات
SIJILAT
نظام السجلات التجارية
COMMERCIAL REGISTRATION PORTAL

Electricity, gas, steam and air conditioning supply

ISIC4	Business activity
351001	Electric Power Generation

Description

This Activity includes the electric power generation, transmission from generating facilities to the transmission and distribution centers.
This class includes :
1- Construction the independent electric power generation facilities through system (Built , Owns , Operate) which is including thermal, nuclear, hydroelectric, gas turbine, diesel and renewable energy.
2- Construction the electric power generation facilities for captive load usage for an Factories and private industrial companies.
3- Operation and Maintenance to the electric power generation facilities.
4- Sale the electricity to the offtaker through the power purchase agreement .

Business Requirements

Age

18 and above

Allowed for Nationalities

Bahraini
100%

GCC
100%

Legal Type

It is allowed to register according to the legal forms mentioned below

Allowed for Individual Commercial Registration (ICR) : Yes

Allowed for Company Commercial Registration (CCR) : Yes

- Bahrain Shareholding Company (Public)
- Bahrain Shareholding Company (Closed)
- Simple Commandite Company
- Non Profit Company
- With Limited Liability Company
- Partnership Company
- Commandite By Shares Company

Required Step of Licenses and Approvals

Ministry / Directorate	License / Approval Requirements	Approval Type
Electricity And Water Authority	EWA's approval for electric power generation	Pre
Supreme Council for Environment	Environmental Approval for Electric power generation, transmission and distribution activity	Post
Municipality Affairs	Site Approval for electricity, gas, steam and air conditioning supply	Post

Electricity And Water Authority (Pre) (351001)

Approval Name	Description	Estimated Time
EWA’s approval for electric power generation	EWA’s approval for electric power generation	3 Days

Fee Details (if any)

There is no Estimated Processing Time (Days) in this license.

License Information

An official letter addressed to the Electricity and Water Authority, with the following attachments :
• A copy of the company's registration certificate
• A comprehensive report on the company's facilities
• The organizational structure of the company and the functional competencies of the departments of the structure
• The financial solvency of the company with an attachment of the company's financial statements for the last 3 years
• Financial expertise to practice this type of commercial activity, and provide all evidence of successful financing experiences for similar projects.
• Technical expertise in the field of electric power generation projects, provided that the applicant for commercial activity has the necessary experience in conducting the necessary operational tests in electric power plants that operate with a thermal, nuclear, and hydropower system, gas turbine generators through the combined cycle system, diesel and renewable energy in the process of electricity production.
• Documents showing the company's ability to develop electricity generation projects (building - operation - ownership) or (building - operation - ownership - conversion) with mentioning the geographical area on which these projects were built.

The Electricity and Water Authority has the right to instruct the company applying for a license to provide it with any data or documents it deems necessary to issue its decision on the submitted application.

Required Documents

•A comprehensive report on the company's facilities The service provided by the company and the geographical area in which this service is located
•A copy of the company's registration certificate
•A technical and financial feasibility study for the project, including, for example, capital costs, sources and type of financing for the activity
•Report of previous experience in electric power generation
•The approved financial statements in case of multiple activities of the company
•The organizational structure of the company and the functional competencies of the departments of the structure

Supreme Council for Environment (Post) (351001)

Approval Name	Description	Estimated Time
Environmental Approval for Electric power generation, transmission and distribution activity	This service aims to assess the environmental impact and licensing of development, industrial and production projects and activities, in accordance with the standards of protecting the environment and its natural resources	10 Days

Fee Details (if any)

- 100 Bahraini Dinars or 200 Bahraini Dinars for the fast-track procedure (when the data requested within the EA-2 form is sufficient without the need for additional studies)
- 4000 Bahraini Dinars or 6000 Bahraini Dinars for the fast track procedure (when it is necessary to submit an environmental impact assessment study for the project), with an additional payment of 100 Bahraini Dinars when it is necessary to submit a proposal for the scope of the study before submitting it or 500 Bahraini Dinars for a fast track procedure when the proposed scope of the study is being submitted before the study

License Information

To check the requirements for this approval, kindly download the detailed requirements sheet from the other downloadable documents section, which includes the following requirements:

- Building layout engineering and equipment requirements
- Workplace requirements
- Storage requirements
- Material management requirements
- Waste Management Requirements

- Documents and reporting requirements
- General requirements

Required Documents

- Requirements for business activities

Other Documents

- Annex to the Minister of Housing, Municipalities and Environment order regarding the project's environmental assessment
- Law No. (2) of 2021 regarding the environmental standards of air as decided by the Chairman of the Supreme Council for Environment
- Law No. (3) of 2021 regarding the environmental standards of water as decided by the Chairman of the Supreme Council for the Environment
- Law No. (54) of 2014 regarding the approval of the unified law regarding substances that deplete the ozone layer for the GCC countries
- Law No. (7) of 2022 regarding the environment
- Ministerial Order No. (1) of 1998 regarding Project's Environmental Assessment
- Ministerial Order No. (10) of 2006 regarding the installation of devices for on-line monitoring of atmospheric air pollutants
- Ministerial Order No. (3) of 2005 regarding environmental requirements and standards in workplaces, especially regarding workers' exposure to heat and noise, and the provision of tools and protective clothing such as gloves, glasses, face masks and earplugs, with a commitment to use them during work
- Ministerial Order No. (3) of 2006 regarding the management of hazardous waste
- Ministerial Order No. (4) of 2005 regarding the management of used oils
- Ministerial Order No. (4) of 2006 regarding the management of hazardous chemicals
- Ministerial Order No. (4) of 2021 regarding the fees of the licenses and services provided by the Supreme Council for Environment
- Ministerial Order No. (6) of 2013 amending order No. (4) of 2006 regarding the management of hazardous chemicals
- Ministerial Order No. (7) of 2002 regarding the control importation and use of prohibited and severely restricted chemicals, and not to import any chemical compound except after obtaining approvals of all concerned authorities, including the executive body of the Supreme Council for Environment
- Ministerial Order No. (7) of 2013 amending order No. (3) of 2006 regarding the management of hazardous waste
- Ministerial Order No. 4 of 2014 regarding the management of the environmental consulting offices operations in the Kingdom of Bahrain
- Order No. (2) of 2020 determining the categories of fees for licensing refrigeration media, refrigeration units and air conditioning units as decided by the Chairman of the Supreme Council for the Environment

•law No. (1) of 2020 regarding the management of refrigeration media, refrigeration units and air conditioning units as decided by the Chairman of the Supreme Council for the Environment

Municipality Affairs (Post) (351001)

Approval Name	Description	Estimated Time
Site Approval for electricity, gas, steam and air conditioning supply	Municipality Approval for the Commercial Registration address or the site in which the Activity will be practiced	3 Days

Fee Details (if any)

10 BD

License Information

General Conditions:
1. Size of shop/premises must be sufficient for the activity
2. Businesses may not carry out the activity outside the boundaries of the shop/ premises
3. It is prohibited to display or store any items or equipment outside the shop / premises boundary without prior approval from the Municipality
4. Provide garbage containers based on the size and quantity of the garbage disposed
5. Maintain cleanliness of the site

Activity Specific Conditions:
1. The Commercial Registration for this activity can only be registered in service and industrial streets/areas
2. The commercial address of the Commercial Registration for this activity can an office address only if the operations shall be of an administrative nature.

Note: Uploading pictures of the site/shop may expedite the process of obtaining approval

Required Documents

- Lease agreement (after obtaining the necessary approvals from other licensing entities)
- Shop photos

Other Documents

- Cabinet's Decision (56) of the year 2022 regarding the Regulatory Requirements of Construction for various areas in the Kingdom of Bahrain

Electricity, gas, steam and air conditioning supply

ISIC4	Business activity
351002	Electric Power Transmission and Distribution

Description

This Activity includes the electric power transmission and distribution networks summarized below:
- Planning & Construction of primary & secondary stations that transform the high voltage in to medium and low voltage
- Lay and Energize underground Transmission/Distribution cables from substations till customer premises.
- Operate & Maintain Primary & Secondary stations & its Equipment's including cables.
- Connect and maintain Fuses and protection devices in all transmission and distribution network.
- Internal customer installation inspection including tariff Meter installation & Replacement.
- Reinforcement for Transmission and distribution networks to ensure the capability to supply the customers.

Business Requirements

Age

18 and above

Allowed for Nationalities

Bahraini
100%

GCC
100%

Legal Type

It is allowed to register according to the legal forms mentioned below

Allowed for Individual Commercial Registration (ICR) : Yes

Allowed for Company Commercial Registration (CCR) : Yes

- Bahrain Shareholding Company (Public)
- Bahrain Shareholding Company (Closed)
- Simple Commandite Company
- Non Profit Company
- With Limited Liability Company
- Partnership Company
- Commandite By Shares Company

Required Step of Licenses and Approvals

Ministry / Directorate	License / Approval Requirements	Approval Type
Electricity And Water Authority	Electric power transmission and distribution	Pre
Supreme Council for Environment	Environmental Approval for Electric power generation, transmission and distribution activity	Post
Municipality Affairs	Site Approval for electricity, gas, steam and air conditioning supply	Post

Electricity And Water Authority (Pre) (351002)

Approval Name	Description	Estimated Time
Electric power transmission and distribution	Electric power transmission and distribution	3 Days

Fee Details (if any)

There is no Estimated Processing Time (Days) in this license.

License Information

An official letter addressed to the Electricity and Water Authority, attached to it:
A copy of the company's registration certificate
A comprehensive report on the company's facilities The service provided by the company and the geographical area in which this service is located
The organizational structure and the company and the functional competencies of the departments of the structure
Report of previous experience in the activity of transmission and distribution of electrical energy
A technical and financial feasibility study for the project, including, for example, capital costs, sources and type of financing for the activity
The approved financial statements in case of multiple activities of the company
A letter with the prices of selling electric energy to customer of all categories
The Electricity and Water Authority may assign the company requesting the document to provide it, with any documents it deems appropriate, the information table regarding the request

Required Documents

•A comprehensive report on the company's facilities The service provided by the company and the geographical area in which this service is located
•A copy of the company's registration certificate
•A letter with the prices of selling electric energy to customer of all categories
•A technical and financial feasibility study for the project, including, for example, capital costs, sources and type of financing for the activity
•Report of previous experience in the activity of transmission and distribution of electrical energy
•The approved financial statements in case of multiple activities of the company
•The organizational structure of the company and the functional competencies of the departments of the structure

Supreme Council for Environment (Post) (351002)

Approval Name	Description	Estimated Time
Environmental Approval for Electric power generation, transmission and distribution activity	This service aims to assess the environmental impact and licensing of development, industrial and production projects and activities, in accordance with the standards of protecting the environment and its natural resources	10 Days

Fee Details (if any)

- 100 Bahraini Dinars or 200 Bahraini Dinars for the fast-track procedure (when the data requested within the EA-2 form is sufficient without the need for additional studies)
- 4000 Bahraini Dinars or 6000 Bahraini Dinars for the fast track procedure (when it is necessary to submit an environmental impact assessment study for the project), with an additional payment of 100 Bahraini Dinars when it is necessary to submit a proposal for the scope of the study before submitting it or 500 Bahraini Dinars for a fast track procedure when the proposed scope of the study is being submitted before the study

License Information

To check the requirements for this approval, kindly download the detailed requirements sheet from the other downloadable documents section, which includes the following requirements:

- Building layout engineering and equipment requirements
- Workplace requirements
- Storage requirements
- Material management requirements
- Waste Management Requirements

- Documents and reporting requirements
- General requirements

Required Documents

- Requirements for business activities

Other Documents

- Annex to the Minister of Housing, Municipalities and Environment order regarding the project's environmental assessment
- Law No. (2) of 2021 regarding the environmental standards of air as decided by the Chairman of the Supreme Council for Environment
- Law No. (3) of 2021 regarding the environmental standards of water as decided by the Chairman of the Supreme Council for the Environment
- Law No. (54) of 2014 regarding the approval of the unified law regarding substances that deplete the ozone layer for the GCC countries
- Law No. (7) of 2022 regarding the environment
- Ministerial Order No. (1) of 1998 regarding Project's Environmental Assessment
- Ministerial Order No. (10) of 2006 regarding the installation of devices for on-line monitoring of atmospheric air pollutants
- Ministerial Order No. (3) of 2005 regarding environmental requirements and standards in workplaces, especially regarding workers' exposure to heat and noise, and the provision of tools and protective clothing such as gloves, glasses, face masks and earplugs, with a commitment to use them during work
- Ministerial Order No. (3) of 2006 regarding the management of hazardous waste
- Ministerial Order No. (4) of 2005 regarding the management of used oils
- Ministerial Order No. (4) of 2006 regarding the management of hazardous chemicals
- Ministerial Order No. (4) of 2021 regarding the fees of the licenses and services provided by the Supreme Council for Environment
- Ministerial Order No. (6) of 2013 amending order No. (4) of 2006 regarding the management of hazardous chemicals
- Ministerial Order No. (7) of 2002 regarding the control importation and use of prohibited and severely restricted chemicals, and not to import any chemical compound except after obtaining approvals of all concerned authorities, including the executive body of the Supreme Council for Environment
- Ministerial Order No. (7) of 2013 amending order No. (3) of 2006 regarding the management of hazardous waste
- Ministerial Order No. 4 of 2014 regarding the management of the environmental consulting offices operations in the Kingdom of Bahrain
- Order No. (2) of 2020 determining the categories of fees for licensing refrigeration media, refrigeration units and air conditioning units as decided by the Chairman of the Supreme Council for the Environment

•law No. (1) of 2020 regarding the management of refrigeration media, refrigeration units and air conditioning units as decided by the Chairman of the Supreme Council for the Environment

Municipality Affairs (Post) (351002)

Approval Name	Description	Estimated Time
Site Approval for electricity, gas, steam and air conditioning supply	Municipality Approval for the Commercial Registration address or the site in which the Activity will be practiced	3 Days

Fee Details (if any)

10 BD

License Information

General Conditions:
1. Size of shop/premises must be sufficient for the activity
2. Businesses may not carry out the activity outside the boundaries of the shop/ premises
3. It is prohibited to display or store any items or equipment outside the shop / premises boundary without prior approval from the Municipality
4. Provide garbage containers based on the size and quantity of the garbage disposed
5. Maintain cleanliness of the site

Activity Specific Conditions:
1. The Commercial Registration for this activity can only be registered in service and industrial streets/areas
2. The commercial address of the Commercial Registration for this activity can an office address only if the operations shall be of an administrative nature.

Note: Uploading pictures of the site/shop may expedite the process of obtaining approval

Required Documents

- Lease agreement (after obtaining the necessary approvals from other licensing entities)
- Shop photos

Other Documents

- Cabinet's Decision (56) of the year 2022 regarding the Regulatory Requirements of Construction for various areas in the Kingdom of Bahrain

Electricity, gas, steam and air conditioning supply

ISIC4	Business activity
352	Production & Distribution of Natural Gas

Description

Includes natural gas production plants and distribution through gas networks. This does not include LPG bottling and distribution activities.

Business Requirements

Age

18 and above

Allowed for Nationalities

Bahraini
100%

GCC
100%

Legal Type

It is allowed to register according to the legal forms mentioned below

Allowed for Individual Commercial Registration (ICR) : Yes

Allowed for Company Commercial Registration (CCR) : Yes

- Bahrain Shareholding Company (Public)
- Bahrain Shareholding Company (Closed)
- Simple Commandite Company
- Non Profit Company
- With Limited Liability Company
- Partnership Company
- Commandite By Shares Company

Required Step of Licenses and Approvals

Ministry / Directorate	License / Approval Requirements	Approval Type
Ministry of Oil and Environment	Approval for Manufacture of gas; distribution of gaseous fuels through mains	Pre
Municipality Affairs	Site Approval for electricity, gas, steam and air conditioning supply	Post
Supreme Council for Environment	Environmental Approval for Manufacture of gas; distribution of gaseous fuels through mains activity	Post

Ministry of Oil and Environment (Pre) (352)

Approval Name	Description	Estimated Time
Approval for Manufacture of gas; distribution of gaseous fuels through mains	Approval for Manufacture of gas; distribution of gaseous fuels through mains	3 Days

Fee Details (if any)

There is no Estimated Processing Time (Days) in this license.

License Information

A company profile must be provided to the Ministry of Oil and Environment including a detailed description of the intended activities to be practiced.

Required Documents

•Copy of the contract statement with the Government of the Kingdom of Bahrain

Municipality Affairs (Post) (352)

Approval Name	Description	Estimated Time
Site Approval for electricity, gas, steam and air conditioning supply	Municipality Approval for the Commercial Registration address or the site in which the Activity will be practiced	3 Days

Fee Details (if any)

10 BD

License Information

General Conditions:
1. Size of shop/premises must be sufficient for the activity
2. Businesses may not carry out the activity outside the boundaries of the shop/ premises
3. It is prohibited to display or store any items or equipment outside the shop / premises boundary without prior approval from the Municipality
4. Provide garbage containers based on the size and quantity of the garbage disposed
5. Maintain cleanliness of the site

Activity Specific Conditions:
1. The Commercial Registration for this activity can only be registered in service and industrial streets/areas
2. The commercial address of the Commercial Registration for this activity can an office address only if the operations shall be of an administrative nature.

Note: Uploading pictures of the site/shop may expedite the process of obtaining approval

Required Documents

- Lease agreement (after obtaining the necessary approvals from other licensing entities)
- Shop photos

Other Documents

- Cabinet's Decision (56) of the year 2022 regarding the Regulatory Requirements of Construction for various areas in the Kingdom of Bahrain

Supreme Council for Environment (Post) (352)

Approval Name	Description	Estimated Time
Environmental Approval for Manufacture of gas; distribution of gaseous fuels through mains activity	This service aims to assess the environmental impact and licensing of development, industrial and production projects and activities, in accordance with the standards of protecting the environment and its natural resources	10 Days

Fee Details (if any)

- 30 or 100 Bahraini Dinars (depends on the activity which will be practiced) ; or 200 Bahraini Dinars for the fast-track procedure (when the data requested within the EA-2 form is sufficient without the need for additional studies)
- 4000 Bahraini Dinars or 6000 Bahraini Dinars for the fast track procedure (when it is necessary to submit an environmental impact assessment study for the project), with an additional payment of 100 Bahraini Dinars when it is necessary to submit a proposal for the scope of the study before submitting it or 500 Bahraini Dinars for a fast track procedure when the proposed scope of the study is being submitted before the study

License Information

To check the requirements for this approval, kindly download the detailed requirements sheet from the other downloadable documents section, which includes the following requirements:

- Building layout engineering and equipment requirements
- Workplace requirements
- Storage requirements
- Material management requirements

- Waste Management Requirements
- Documents and reporting requirements
- General requirements

Required Documents

- Requirements for business activities

Other Documents

- Annex to the Minister of Housing, Municipalities and Environment order regarding the project's environmental assessment
- Law No. (2) of 2021 regarding the environmental standards of air as decided by the Chairman of the Supreme Council for Environment
- Law No. (3) of 2021 regarding the environmental standards of water as decided by the Chairman of the Supreme Council for the Environment
- Law No. (54) of 2014 regarding the approval of the unified law regarding substances that deplete the ozone layer for the GCC countries
- Law No. (7) of 2022 regarding the environment
- Ministerial Order No. (1) of 1998 regarding Project's Environmental Assessment
- Ministerial Order No. (10) of 2006 regarding the installation of devices for on-line monitoring of atmospheric air pollutants
- Ministerial Order No. (3) of 2005 regarding environmental requirements and standards in workplaces, especially regarding workers' exposure to heat and noise, and the provision of tools and protective clothing such as gloves, glasses, face masks and earplugs, with a commitment to use them during work
- Ministerial Order No. (3) of 2006 regarding the management of hazardous waste
- Ministerial Order No. (4) of 2005 regarding the management of used oils
- Ministerial Order No. (4) of 2006 regarding the management of hazardous chemicals
- Ministerial Order No. (4) of 2021 regarding the fees of the licenses and services provided by the Supreme Council for Environment
- Ministerial Order No. (6) of 2013 amending order No. (4) of 2006 regarding the management of hazardous chemicals
- Ministerial Order No. (7) of 2002 regarding the control importation and use of prohibited and severely restricted chemicals, and not to import any chemical compound except after obtaining approvals of all concerned authorities, including the executive body of the Supreme Council for Environment
- Ministerial Order No. (7) of 2013 amending order No. (3) of 2006 regarding the management of hazardous waste
- Ministerial Order No. 4 of 2014 regarding the management of the environmental consulting offices operations in the Kingdom of Bahrain
- Order No. (2) of 2020 determining the categories of fees for licensing refrigeration media, refrigeration units and air conditioning units as decided by the Chairman of the

Supreme Council for the Environment

- law No. (1) of 2020 regarding the management of refrigeration media, refrigeration units and air conditioning units as decided by the Chairman of the Supreme Council for the Environment

Electricity, gas, steam and air conditioning supply

ISIC4	Business activity
353	Steam and air conditioning supply

Description

This activity includes:
- production, collection and distribution of steam and hot water for heating, power and other purposes
- production and distribution of cooled air

Business Requirements

Age

18 and above

Allowed for Nationalities

Bahraini
100%

GCC
100%

Legal Type

It is allowed to register according to the legal forms mentioned below

Allowed for Individual Commercial Registration (ICR) : Yes

Allowed for Company Commercial Registration (CCR) : Yes

- Bahrain Shareholding Company (Public)
- Bahrain Shareholding Company (Closed)
- Simple Commandite Company
- Non Profit Company
- With Limited Liability Company
- Partnership Company
- Commandite By Shares Company

Required Step of Licenses and Approvals

Ministry / Directorate	License / Approval Requirements	Approval Type
Municipality Affairs	Site Approval for electricity, gas, steam and air conditioning supply	Post
Supreme Council for Environment	Environmental Approval for Steam and air conditioning supply activity	Post

Municipality Affairs (Post) (353)

Approval Name	Description	Estimated Time
Site Approval for electricity, gas, steam and air conditioning supply	Municipality Approval for the Commercial Registration address or the site in which the Activity will be practiced	3 Days

Fee Details (if any)

10 BD

License Information

General Conditions:
1. Size of shop/premises must be sufficient for the activity
2. Businesses may not carry out the activity outside the boundaries of the shop/ premises
3. It is prohibited to display or store any items or equipment outside the shop / premises boundary without prior approval from the Municipality
4. Provide garbage containers based on the size and quantity of the garbage disposed
5. Maintain cleanliness of the site

Activity Specific Conditions:
1. The Commercial Registration for this activity can only be registered in service and industrial streets/areas
2. The commercial address of the Commercial Registration for this activity can an office address only if the operations shall be of an administrative nature.

Note: Uploading pictures of the site/shop may expedite the process of obtaining approval

Required Documents

- Lease agreement (after obtaining the necessary approvals from other licensing entities)
- Shop photos

Other Documents

- Cabinet's Decision (56) of the year 2022 regarding the Regulatory Requirements of Construction for various areas in the Kingdom of Bahrain

Supreme Council for Environment (Post) (353)

Approval Name	Description	Estimated Time
Environmental Approval for Steam and air conditioning supply activity	This service aims to assess the environmental impact and licensing of development, industrial and production projects and activities, in accordance with the standards of protecting the environment and its natural resources	10 Days

Fee Details (if any)

100 BD

License Information

To check the requirements for this approval, kindly download the detailed requirements sheet from the other downloadable documents section, which includes the following requirements:

- Building layout Engineering and Equipment Requirements
- Work-place Requirements
- Storage Requirements
- Material Management Requirements
- Waste Management Requirements
- Documents and Reporting Requirements
- General Requirements

Other Documents

- Annex to the Minister of Housing, Municipalities and Environment order regarding the project's environmental assessment
- Law No. (2) of 2021 regarding the environmental standards of air as decided by the Chairman of the Supreme Council for Environment
- Law No. (3) of 2021 regarding the environmental standards of water as decided by the Chairman of the Supreme Council for the Environment
- Law No. (54) of 2014 regarding the approval of the unified law regarding substances that deplete the ozone layer for the GCC countries
- Law No. (7) of 2022 regarding the environment
- Ministerial Order No. (1) of 1998 regarding Project's Environmental Assessment
- Ministerial Order No. (10) of 2006 regarding the installation of devices for on-line monitoring of atmospheric air pollutants
- Ministerial Order No. (10) of 2006 regarding the installation of devices for on-line monitoring of atmospheric air pollutants
- Ministerial Order No. (3) of 2005 regarding environmental requirements and standards in workplaces, especially regarding workers' exposure to heat and noise, and the provision of tools and protective clothing such as gloves, glasses, face masks and earplugs, with a commitment to use them during work
- Ministerial Order No. (3) of 2006 regarding the management of hazardous waste
- Ministerial Order No. (4) of 2005 regarding the management of used oils
- Ministerial Order No. (4) of 2006 regarding the management of hazardous chemicals
- Ministerial Order No. (4) of 2021 regarding the fees of the licenses and services provided by the Supreme Council for Environment
- Ministerial Order No. (6) of 2013 amending order No. (4) of 2006 regarding the management of hazardous chemicals
- Ministerial Order No. (7) of 2002 regarding the control importation and use of prohibited and severely restricted chemicals, and not to import any chemical compound except after obtaining approvals of all concerned authorities, including the executive body of the Supreme Council for Environment
- Ministerial Order No. (7) of 2013 amending order No. (3) of 2006 regarding the management of hazardous waste
- Ministerial Order No. 4 of 2014 regarding the management of the environmental consulting offices operations in the Kingdom of Bahrain
- Order No. (2) of 2020 determining the categories of fees for licensing refrigeration media, refrigeration units and air conditioning units as decided by the Chairman of the Supreme Council for the Environment
- Requirements for business activities
- law No. (1) of 2020 regarding the management of refrigeration media, refrigeration units and air conditioning units as decided by the Chairman of the Supreme Council for the Environment

Water supply; sewerage, waste management and remediation activities

سجلات
SIJILAT
نظام السجلات التجارية
COMMERCIAL REGISTRATION PORTAL

Water supply; sewerage, waste management and remediation activities

ISIC4	Business activity
36-1	Water collection, treatment and supply

Description

This activity includes water collection, treatment and distribution activities for domestic and industrial needs. Collection of water from various sources, as well as distribution by various means is included. The operation of irrigation canals is also included; however the provision of irrigation services through sprinklers, and similar agricultural support services, is not included.

This activity includes:
- collection of water from wells etc.
- collection of rain water
- purification of water for water supply purposes
- treatment of water for industrial and other purposes
- desalting of sea or ground water to produce water as the principal product of interest
- distribution of water through mains, by trucks or other means

If the drilling of artesian water wells shall be practiced, then the applicant must select the option Drilling of Artesian Water Wells

This activity excludes:
- operation of irrigation equipment for agricultural purposes, see 0161
- treatment of wastewater in order to prevent pollution, see 37

Business Requirements

Age

18 and above

Allowed for Nationalities

Bahraini 100%		GCC 100%	
Icelander 100%		Liechtensteiner 100%	
Norwegian 100%		Swiss 100%	

Legal Type

It is allowed to register according to the legal forms mentioned below

Allowed for Individual Commercial Registration (ICR) : Yes

Allowed for Company Commercial Registration (CCR) : Yes

- Bahrain Shareholding Company (Public)
- With Limited Liability Company
- Branch of a Foreign Company
- Bahrain Shareholding Company (Closed)
- Partnership Company
- Simple Commandite Company
- Commandite By Shares Company
- Non Profit Company

Required Step of Licenses and Approvals

Ministry / Directorate	License / Approval Requirements	Approval Type
Supreme Council for Environment	Environmental Approval for Water collection, treatment and supply activity	Post
Municipality Affairs	Site Approval for water supply, sewerage, waste management, remediation	Post

	activities	

Supreme Council for Environment (Post) (36-1)

Approval Name	Description	Estimated Time
Environmental Approval for Water collection, treatment and supply activity	This service aims to assess the environmental impact and licensing of development, industrial and production projects and activities, in accordance with the standards of protecting the environment and its natural resources	10 Days

Fee Details (if any)

- 30 or 100 Bahraini Dinars (depends on the activity which will be practiced) ; or 200 Bahraini Dinars for the fast-track procedure (when the data requested within the EA-2 form is sufficient without the need for additional studies)
- 4000 Bahraini Dinars or 6000 Bahraini Dinars for the fast track procedure (when it is necessary to submit an environmental impact assessment study for the project), with an additional payment of 100 Bahraini Dinars when it is necessary to submit a proposal for the scope of the study before submitting it or 500 Bahraini Dinars for a fast track procedure when the proposed scope of the study is being submitted before the study

License Information

To check the requirements for this approval, kindly download the detailed requirements sheet from the other downloadable documents section, which includes the following requirements:

- Building layout engineering and equipment requirements
- Workplace requirements
- Storage requirements
- Material management requirements

- Waste Management Requirements
- Documents and reporting requirements
- General requirements

Municipality Affairs (Post) (36-1)

Approval Name	Description	Estimated Time
Site Approval for water supply, sewerage, waste management, remediation activities	Municipality Approval for the Commercial Registration address or the site in which the Activity will be practiced	3 Days

Fee Details (if any)

BD10

License Information

General Conditions:
1. Size of shop/premises must be sufficient for the activity
2. Businesses may not carry out the activity outside the boundaries of the shop/ premises
3. It is prohibited to display or store any items or equipment outside the shop / premises boundary without prior approval from the Municipality
4. Provide garbage containers based on the size and quantity of the garbage disposed
5. Maintain cleanliness of the site

Activity Specific Conditions:
1. The Commercial Registration for this activity can only be registered in service and industrial streets/areas
2. The commercial address of the Commercial Registration for this activity can an office address only if the operations shall be of an administrative nature.

Note: Uploading pictures of the site/shop may expedite the process of obtaining approval

Required Documents

- Shop photos

Other Documents

- Cabinet's Decision (56) of the year 2022 regarding the Regulatory Requirements of Construction for various areas in the Kingdom of Bahrain

Water supply; sewerage, waste management and remediation activities

ISIC4	Business activity
36-2	Water collection, treatment and supply - Drilling of Artesian Water Wells

Description

This activity includes the drilling of artesian water wells and installing piping systems to extract the water or management and operation of desalination plants

Business Requirements

Age

18 and above

Allowed for Nationalities

- Bahraini 100%
- American 100%
- GCC 100%

Legal Type

It is allowed to register according to the legal forms mentioned below

Allowed for Individual Commercial Registration (ICR) : Yes

Allowed for Company Commercial Registration (CCR) : Yes

- Bahrain Shareholding Company (Public)
- With Limited Liability Company
- Branch of a Foreign Company
- Bahrain Shareholding Company (Closed)
- Partnership Company
- Simple Commandite Company
- Commandite By Shares Company
- Non Profit Company

Required Step of Licenses and Approvals

Ministry / Directorate	License / Approval Requirements	Approval Type
Agricultural Engineering and Resources Directorate	Drilling of Groundwater Wells	Pre
Municipality Affairs	Site Approval for water supply, sewerage, waste management, remediation activities	Post
Supreme Council for Environment	Environmental Approval for Water collection, treatment and supply - Drilling of Artesian Water Wells activity	Post

Agricultural Engineering and Resources Directorate (Pre) (36-2)

Approval Name	Description	Estimated Time
Drilling of Groundwater Wells	This activity includes the drilling of groundwater wells and installing piping systems to extract the water.	5 Days

Fee Details (if any)

There is no Estimated Processing Time (Days) in this license.

License Information

Please refer to the Decree of Law No. (12) of the year 1980 regulating the use of ground water in the (other downloadable documents) for further clarification.

Note:
• The applicant must fill “Well Drilling Permit” application form in case drilling of wells is desired
• The applicant must fill “Groundwater use Permit” application form to be able to utilize the water

Required Documents

•Copy of Well Registration/Well Drill Permit
•Copy of the lease agreement in case of leased title deed
•Copy of title deed and location map
•Power of attorney from the owner if the property is leased
•• Copy of CPR & Passport for Applicant

Other Documents

- Application Form for Groundwater Use Permit
- Application for water well drilling
- Decree No. (12) of 1980 regulating the use of ground water
- Decree No. (12) of 1997 amending some provisions of Decree No. (12) of 1980 regulating the use of ground water
- Decree No. (9) of 1999 amending some provisions of Decree No. (12) of 1980 regulating the use of ground water

Municipality Affairs (Post) (36-2)

Approval Name	Description	Estimated Time
Site Approval for water supply, sewerage, waste management, remediation activities	Municipality Approval for the Commercial Registration address or the site in which the Activity will be practiced	3 Days

Fee Details (if any)

BD10

License Information

General Conditions:
1. Size of shop/premises must be sufficient for the activity
2. Businesses may not carry out the activity outside the boundaries of the shop/ premises
3. It is prohibited to display or store any items or equipment outside the shop / premises boundary without prior approval from the Municipality
4. Provide garbage containers based on the size and quantity of the garbage disposed
5. Maintain cleanliness of the site

Activity Specific Conditions:
1. The Commercial Registration for this activity can only be registered in service and industrial streets/areas
2. The commercial address of the Commercial Registration for this activity can an office address only if the operations shall be of an administrative nature.

Note: Uploading pictures of the site/shop may expedite the process of obtaining approval

Required Documents

- Shop photos

Other Documents

- Cabinet's Decision (56) of the year 2022 regarding the Regulatory Requirements of Construction for various areas in the Kingdom of Bahrain

Supreme Council for Environment (Post) (36-2)

Approval Name	Description	Estimated Time
Environmental Approval for Water collection, treatment and supply - Drilling of Artesian Water Wells activity	This service aims to assess the environmental impact and licensing of development, industrial and production projects and activities, in accordance with the standards of protecting the environment and its natural resources	10 Days

Fee Details (if any)

- 30 or 100 Bahraini Dinars (depends on the activity which will be practiced) ; or 200 Bahraini Dinars for the fast-track procedure (when the data requested within the EA-2 form is sufficient without the need for additional studies)
- 4000 Bahraini Dinars or 6000 Bahraini Dinars for the fast track procedure (when it is necessary to submit an environmental impact assessment study for the project), with an additional payment of 100 Bahraini Dinars when it is necessary to submit a proposal for the scope of the study before submitting it or 500 Bahraini Dinars for a fast track procedure when the proposed scope of the study is being submitted before the study

License Information

To check the requirements for this approval, kindly download the detailed requirements sheet from the other downloadable documents section, which includes the following requirements:

- Building layout engineering and equipment requirements
- Workplace requirements
- Storage requirements
- Material Management Requirements

- Waste management requirements
- Documents and reporting requirements
- General requirements

Required Documents

- Requirements for business activities

Other Documents

- Annex to the Minister of Housing, Municipalities and Environment order regarding the project's environmental assessment
- Law No. (2) of 2021 regarding the environmental standards of air as decided by the Chairman of the Supreme Council for Environment
- Law No. (3) of 2021 regarding the environmental standards of water as decided by the Chairman of the Supreme Council for the Environment
- Law No. (54) of 2014 regarding the approval of the unified law regarding substances that deplete the ozone layer for the GCC countries
- Law No. (7) of 2022 regarding the environment
- Ministerial Order No. (1) of 1998 regarding Project's Environmental Assessment
- Ministerial Order No. (10) of 2006 regarding the installation of devices for on-line monitoring of atmospheric air pollutants
- Ministerial Order No. (11) of 2019 regarding the issue of technical specification of plastic products
- Ministerial Order No. (3) of 2005 regarding environmental requirements and standards in workplaces, especially regarding workers' exposure to heat and noise, and the provision of tools and protective clothing such as gloves, glasses, face masks and earplugs, with a commitment to use them during work
- Ministerial Order No. (3) of 2006 regarding the management of hazardous waste
- Ministerial Order No. (4) of 2005 regarding the management of used oils
- Ministerial Order No. (4) of 2006 regarding the management of hazardous chemicals
- Ministerial Order No. (4) of 2021 regarding the fees of the licenses and services provided by the Supreme Council for Environment
- Ministerial Order No. (6) of 2013 amending order No. (4) of 2006 regarding the management of hazardous chemicals
- Ministerial Order No. (7) of 2002 regarding the control importation and use of prohibited and severely restricted chemicals, and not to import any chemical compound except after obtaining approvals of all concerned authorities, including the executive body of the Supreme Council for Environment
- Ministerial Order No. (7) of 2013 amending order No. (3) of 2006 regarding the management of hazardous waste
- Ministerial Order No. 4 of 2014 regarding the management of the environmental consulting offices operations in the Kingdom of Bahrain

•Order No. (2) of 2020 determining the categories of fees for licensing refrigeration media, refrigeration units and air conditioning units as decided by the Chairman of the Supreme Council for the Environment
•Order No. (2) of 2020 determining the categories of fees for licensing refrigeration media, refrigeration units and air conditioning units as decided by the Chairman of the Supreme Council for the Environment
•law No. (1) of 2020 regarding the management of refrigeration media, refrigeration units and air conditioning units as decided by the Chairman of the Supreme Council for the Environment
•law No. (2) of 2019 regarding the ban on the import of plastic waste of all kinds as decided by the Chairman of the Supreme Council for the Environment

Water supply; sewerage, waste management and remediation activities

ISIC4	Business activity
37	Sewerage

Description

This activity includes:
- operation of sewer systems or sewer treatment facilities
- collecting and transporting of human or industrial wastewater from one or several users, as well as rain water by means of sewerage networks, collectors, tanks and other means of transport (sewage vehicles etc.)
- emptying and cleaning of cesspools and septic tanks, sinks and pits from sewage; servicing of chemical toilets
- maintenance and cleaning of sewers and drains, including sewer rodding

Business Requirements

Age

18 and above

Allowed for Nationalities

Bahraini
100%

American
100%

GCC
100%

Legal Type

It is allowed to register according to the legal forms mentioned below

Allowed for Individual Commercial Registration (ICR) : Yes

Allowed for Company Commercial Registration (CCR) : Yes

- Bahrain Shareholding Company (Public)
- With Limited Liability Company
- Branch of a Foreign Company
- Bahrain Shareholding Company (Closed)
- Partnership Company
- Simple Commandite Company
- Commandite By Shares Company
- Non Profit Company

Required Step of Licenses and Approvals

Ministry / Directorate	License / Approval Requirements	Approval Type
Municipality Affairs	Site Approval for water supply, sewerage, waste management, remediation activities	Post
Supreme Council for Environment	Environment Approval for Sewerage	Post

Municipality Affairs (Post) (37)

Approval Name	Description	Estimated Time
Site Approval for water supply, sewerage, waste management, remediation activities	Municipality Approval for the Commercial Registration address or the site in which the Activity will be practiced	3 Days

Fee Details (if any)

BD10

License Information

General Conditions:
1. Size of shop/premises must be sufficient for the activity
2. Businesses may not carry out the activity outside the boundaries of the shop/ premises
3. It is prohibited to display or store any items or equipment outside the shop / premises boundary without prior approval from the Municipality
4. Provide garbage containers based on the size and quantity of the garbage disposed
5. Maintain cleanliness of the site

Activity Specific Conditions:
1. The Commercial Registration for this activity can only be registered in service and industrial streets/areas
2. The commercial address of the Commercial Registration for this activity can an office address only if the operations shall be of an administrative nature.

Note: Uploading pictures of the site/shop may expedite the process of obtaining approval

Required Documents

- Shop photos

Other Documents

- Cabinet's Decision (56) of the year 2022 regarding the Regulatory Requirements of Construction for various areas in the Kingdom of Bahrain

Supreme Council for Environment (Post) (37)

Approval Name	Description	Estimated Time
Environment Approval for Sewerage	Environment Approval for Sewerage	10 Days

Fee Details (if any)

8 BD

License Information

All environmental requirements below must be complied with. In case of violation, the Supreme Council for the Environment shall have the right to take all the legal measures stipulated in the Legislative Decree (21) of 1996 regarding the environment, and the ministerial decisions that it implements, including suspension of the project through coordination with concerned authorities:

• Adhering to Ministerial Decision No. (3) of 2005 on environmental requirements and standards in the workplace, especially with regard to workers' exposure to heat and noise, providing tools and protective clothing such as gloves and glasses with commitment to use them during work.
• Use the shop as an administrative office only and engage in activity at the work site
• Compliance with Ministerial Resolution No. (10) of 1999 and its amendments on environmental standards (air and water)
• Not to import or use any radioactive materials or devices issued for radiation only after the review of the Department of Evaluation and Environmental Control and the written approval of it
• Compliance with Ministerial Decision No. (3) of 2006 on hazardous waste management
• This activity allows the carrying out of cleaning activities of sewage networks only, and you must be contracted with one of the companies licensed to transfer environmentally waste from the cleaning operations of the approved sewage treatment sites licensed in the Kingdom, in accordance with Ministerial Resolution No. (3) of 2006 on hazardous waste management. Should you wish to engage in the transfer of hazardous waste, a license for the transport of hazardous wastes should be obtained from the Supreme Council for the Environment as stipulated in the above resolution.

You cannot carry out the transport of sewage waste by tankers from any site until this license is obtained.
• It is prohibited to engage in wastewater treatment or any other treatment. If so desired, the approval of the Supreme Council for the Environment shall be obtained.
• It is prohibited to import or use any material of a chemical nature without obtaining the approval of the Supreme Council for Environment
• Do not throw any residues into the soil and the marine environment and disposed of them in environmentally sound ways through coordination with the Department of Environmental Assessment and Control
• Do not discharge any liquid waste into the soil or the marine environment. Do not discharge any waste to the wastewater network until after obtaining permission from the concerned authorities.
• In case you desire to expand or do any additions you must refer to the Supreme Council for the Environment to take the necessary license.

Required Documents

•Sewage Disclaimer

Other Documents

•Law (21) 1996 on the Environment
•Resolution (10) 1999 Environmental Standards (Air and Water)
•Resolution (3) 2005 requirements and environmental standards
•Resolution (3) 2006 Hazardous Waste Management

Water supply; sewerage, waste management and remediation activities

ISIC4	Business activity
381	Waste collection, treatment and disposal activities

Description

This activity includes the collection, treatment, and dispotal of hazardous or non-hazardous waste material.

Examples of Non-hazardous waste collection include:
- collection of non-hazardous solid waste (i.e. garbage) within a local area, such as collection of waste from households and businesses by means of refuse bins, wheeled bins, containers etc may include mixed recoverable materials; collection of recyclable materials; collection of used cooking oils and fats; collection of refuse in litter-bins in public places; collection of construction and demolition waste; collection and removal of debris such as brush and rubble; collection of waste output of textile mills; operation of waste transfer stations for non-hazardous waste is also included

Examples of Hazardous waste collection includes:
- collection of solid and non-solid hazardous waste, i.e. explosive, oxidizing, flammable, toxic, irritant, carcinogenic, corrosive, infectious and other substances and preparations harmful for human health and environment; It may also entail identification, treatment, packaging and labeling of waste for the purposes of transport; Collection of used oil from shipment or garages; collection of bio-hazardous waste; collection of used batteries; operation of waste transfer stations for hazardous waste

Business Requirements

Age

18 and above

Allowed for Nationalities

- Bahraini 100%
- American 100%
- Liechtenstein er 100%
- Swiss 100%
- GCC 100%
- Icelander 100%
- Norwegian 100%

Legal Type

It is allowed to register according to the legal forms mentioned below

Allowed for Individual Commercial Registration (ICR) : Yes

Allowed for Company Commercial Registration (CCR) : Yes

- Bahrain Shareholding Company (Public)
- With Limited Liability Company
- Branch of a Foreign Company
- Bahrain Shareholding Company (Closed)
- Partnership Company
- Simple Commandite Company
- Commandite By Shares Company
- Non Profit Company

Required Step of Licenses and Approvals

Ministry / Directorate	License / Approval Requirements	Approval Type
Municipality Affairs	Site Approval for water supply, sewerage, waste management, remediation activities	Post
Supreme Council for	Environmental Approval	Post

Environment	for Waste collection, treatment and disposal activities activity	
General Directrate Of Civil Defence	Waste collection, treatment and disposal activities	Post

Municipality Affairs (Post) (381)

Approval Name	Description	Estimated Time
Site Approval for water supply, sewerage, waste management, remediation activities	Municipality Approval for the Commercial Registration address or the site in which the Activity will be practiced	3 Days

Fee Details (if any)

BD10

License Information

General Conditions:
1. Size of shop/premises must be sufficient for the activity
2. Businesses may not carry out the activity outside the boundaries of the shop/ premises
3. It is prohibited to display or store any items or equipment outside the shop / premises boundary without prior approval from the Municipality
4. Provide garbage containers based on the size and quantity of the garbage disposed
5. Maintain cleanliness of the site

Activity Specific Conditions:
1. The Commercial Registration for this activity can only be registered in service and industrial streets/areas
2. The commercial address of the Commercial Registration for this activity can an office address only if the operations shall be of an administrative nature.

Note: Uploading pictures of the site/shop may expedite the process of obtaining approval

Required Documents

- Shop photos

Other Documents

- Cabinet's Decision (56) of the year 2022 regarding the Regulatory Requirements of Construction for various areas in the Kingdom of Bahrain

Supreme Council for Environment (Post) (381)

Approval Name	Description	Estimated Time
Environmental Approval for Waste collection, treatment and disposal activities activity	This service aims to assess the environmental impact and licensing of development, industrial and production projects and activities, in accordance with the standards of protecting the environment and its natural resources	10 Days

Fee Details (if any)

- 100 Bahraini Dinars or 200 Bahraini Dinars for the fast-track procedure (when the data requested within the EA-2 form is sufficient without the need for additional studies)
- 4000 Bahraini Dinars or 6000 Bahraini Dinars for the fast track procedure (when it is necessary to submit an environmental impact assessment study for the project), with an additional payment of 100 Bahraini Dinars when it is necessary to submit a proposal for the scope of the study before submitting it or 500 Bahraini Dinars for a fast track procedure when the proposed scope of the study is being submitted before the study

License Information

To check the requirements for this approval, kindly download the detailed requirements sheet from the other downloadable documents section, which includes the following requirements:

- Building layout engineering and equipment requirements
- Workplace requirements
- Storage requirements
- Material Management Requirements
- Waste management requirements

- Documents and reporting requirements
- General requirements

Required Documents

- Requirements for business activities

Other Documents

- Annex to the Minister of Housing, Municipalities and Environment order regarding the project's environmental assessment
- Law No. (2) of 2021 regarding the environmental standards of air as decided by the Chairman of the Supreme Council for Environment
- Law No. (3) of 2021 regarding the environmental standards of water as decided by the Chairman of the Supreme Council for the Environment
- Law No. (54) of 2014 regarding the approval of the unified law regarding substances that deplete the ozone layer for the GCC countries
- Law No. (7) of 2022 regarding the environment
- Ministerial Order No. (1) of 1998 regarding Project's Environmental Assessment
- Ministerial Order No. (10) of 2006 regarding the installation of devices for on-line monitoring of atmospheric air pollutants
- Ministerial Order No. (3) of 2005 regarding environmental requirements and standards in workplaces, especially regarding workers' exposure to heat and noise, and the provision of tools and protective clothing such as gloves, glasses, face masks and earplugs, with a commitment to use them during work
- Ministerial Order No. (3) of 2006 regarding the management of hazardous waste
- Ministerial Order No. (4) of 2005 regarding the management of used oils
- Ministerial Order No. (4) of 2006 regarding the management of hazardous chemicals
- Ministerial Order No. (4) of 2021 regarding the fees of the licenses and services provided by the Supreme Council for Environment
- Ministerial Order No. (6) of 2013 amending order No. (4) of 2006 regarding the management of hazardous chemicals
- Ministerial Order No. (7) of 2002 regarding the control importation and use of prohibited and severely restricted chemicals, and not to import any chemical compound except after obtaining approvals of all concerned authorities, including the executive body of the Supreme Council for Environment
- Ministerial Order No. (7) of 2013 amending order No. (3) of 2006 regarding the management of hazardous waste
- Ministerial Order No. 4 of 2014 regarding the management of the environmental consulting offices operations in the Kingdom of Bahrain
- Order No. (2) of 2020 determining the categories of fees for licensing refrigeration media, refrigeration units and air conditioning units as decided by the Chairman of the Supreme Council for the Environment

•law No. (1) of 2020 regarding the management of refrigeration media, refrigeration units and air conditioning units as decided by the Chairman of the Supreme Council for the Environment

General Directrate Of Civil Defence (Post) (381)

Approval Name	Description	Estimated Time
Waste collection, treatment and disposal activities	checking the approval requirements of the general directorate of civil defense	5 Days

Fee Details (if any)

30 BD Fire prevention and protection certificate fees

License Information

1. Provide the documents mentioned in the “Required Documents” section
2. Comply with the requirements listed in the inspection checklist found in the “Other Downloadable Documents” section
3. Provide proof to the General Directorate of Civil Defense that an alarm and firefighting equipment have been installed within 6 months of obtaining a Commercial Registration and license

If a warehouse is used: A safety certificate must be obtained viaBahrain.bh

Required Documents

•No-objection letter for alarm and extinguisher installation from Civil Defense, or purchasing receipt of alarm equipment and extinguishers along with an annual maintenance contract from a company certified by Civil defense
•Photos required for civil defense activities
•Purchasing invoice of security camera system with specifying the type and storage capacity.

Other Documents

- Sample pictures of the general directorate of civil defense requirements
- licencing requirments of the general directorat of civil defense for activity number "381"

Water supply; sewerage, waste management and remediation activities

ISIC4	Business activity
383-1	Materials recovery - Workshop

Description

This activity includes:
- processing of metal and non-metal waste and scrap and other articles into secondary raw materials, usually involving a mechanical or chemical transformation process
- recovery of materials from waste streams in the form of: separating and sorting recoverable materials from non-hazardous waste streams (i.e. garbage); separating and sorting of commingled recoverable materials, such as paper, plastics, used beverage cans and metals, into distinct categories

Examples of the mechanical or chemical transformation processes that are undertaken are:
- mechanical crushing of metal waste such as used cars, washing machines, bikes etc. with subsequent sorting and separation
- dismantling of automobiles, computers, televisions and other equipment for materials recovery
- mechanical reduction of large iron pieces such as railway wagons
- shredding of metal waste, end-of-life vehicles etc.
- other methods of mechanical treatment as cutting, pressing to reduce the volume
- reclaiming metals out of photographic waste, e.g. fixer solution or photographic films and paper
- reclaiming of rubber such as used tires to produce secondary raw material
- sorting and pelleting of plastics to produce secondary raw material for tubes, flower pots, pallets and the like
- processing (cleaning, melting, grinding) of plastic or rubber waste to granulates
- crushing, cleaning and sorting of glass
- crushing, cleaning and sorting of other waste such as demolition waste to obtain secondary raw material
- processing of used cooking oils and fats into secondary raw materials
- processing of other food, beverage and tobacco waste and residual substances into secondary raw materials

Business Requirements

Age

18 and above

Allowed for Nationalities

Bahraini 100%		GCC 100%	
American 100%		Singaporean 100%	
Icelander 100%		Liechtenstein er 100%	
Norwegian 100%		Swiss 100%	

Foreign Allowed up to 100%

Legal Type

It is allowed to register according to the legal forms mentioned below

Allowed for Individual Commercial Registration (ICR) : Yes

Allowed for Company Commercial Registration (CCR) : Yes

- Bahrain Shareholding Company (Public)
- With Limited Liability Company
- Branch of a Foreign Company
- Bahrain Shareholding Company (Closed)
- Partnership Company
- Simple Commandite Company
- Commandite By Shares Company
- Non Profit Company

Required Step of Licenses and Approvals

Ministry / Directorate	License / Approval Requirements	Approval Type
Municipality Affairs	Site Approval for manufacturing activities	Post

	(Type B)	
Supreme Council for Environment	Environmental Approval for Materials recovery - Workshop activity	Post

Municipality Affairs (Post) (383-1)

Approval Name	Description	Estimated Time
Site Approval for manufacturing activities (Type B)	Municipality Approval for the Commercial Registration address or the site in which the Activity will be practiced	3 Days

Fee Details (if any)

10 BD

License Information

General Conditions:
1. Size of shop/premises must be sufficient for the activity
2. Businesses may not carry out the activity outside the boundaries of the shop/ premises
3. It is prohibited to display or store any items or equipment outside the shop / premises boundary without prior approval from the Municipality. In the event of non-compliance, the Ministry of Municipality Affairs has the right to take necessary action.
4. Maintain cleanliness of the site
5. Comply with the parking space regulations as per the Construction Regulatory Requirements

Activity Specific Conditions:
1. The Commercial Registration for this activity can only be registered in service and industrial streets/areas

Note: Uploading pictures of the site/shop may expedite the process of obtaining approval

Required Documents

- Lease agreement (after obtaining the necessary approvals from other licensing entities)
- Shop photos

Other Documents

- Cabinet's Decision (56) of the year 2022 regarding the Regulatory Requirements of Construction for various areas in the Kingdom of Bahrain

Supreme Council for Environment (Post) (383-1)

Approval Name	Description	Estimated Time
Environmental Approval for Materials recovery - Workshop activity	This service aims to assess the environmental impact and licensing of development, industrial and production projects and activities, in accordance with the standards of protecting the environment and its natural resources	10 Days

Fee Details (if any)

- 30 Bahraini Dinars or 200 Bahraini Dinars for the fast-track procedure (when the data requested within the EA-2 form is sufficient without the need for additional studies)
- 4000 Bahraini Dinars or 6000 Bahraini Dinars for the fast track procedure (when it is necessary to submit an environmental impact assessment study for the project), with an additional payment of 100 Bahraini Dinars when it is necessary to submit a proposal for the scope of the study before submitting it or 500 Bahraini Dinars for a fast track procedure when the proposed scope of the study is being submitted before the study

License Information

To check the requirements for this approval, kindly download the detailed requirements sheet from the other downloadable documents section, which includes the following requirements:

- Building layout engineering and equipment requirements
- Workplace requirements
- Storage requirements
- Material management requirements
- Waste Management Requirements

- Documents and reporting requirements
- General requirements

Required Documents

- Requirements for business activities

Other Documents

- Annex to the Minister of Housing, Municipalities and Environment order regarding the project's environmental assessment
- Law No. (2) of 2021 regarding the environmental standards of air as decided by the Chairman of the Supreme Council for Environment
- Law No. (3) of 2021 regarding the environmental standards of water as decided by the Chairman of the Supreme Council for the Environment
- Law No. (5) of 2021 regarding CITES Annexes to the Convention on International Trade in Endangered Fauna and Flora
- Law No. (54) of 2014 regarding the approval of the unified law regarding substances that deplete the ozone layer for the GCC countries
- Law No. (7) of 2022 regarding the environment
- Ministerial Order No. (1) of 1998 regarding Project's Environmental Assessment
- Ministerial Order No. (10) of 2006 regarding the installation of devices for on-line monitoring of atmospheric air pollutants
- Ministerial Order No. (11) of 2019 regarding the issue of technical specification of plastic products
- Ministerial Order No. (3) of 2005 regarding environmental requirements and standards in workplaces, especially regarding workers' exposure to heat and noise, and the provision of tools and protective clothing such as gloves, glasses, face masks and earplugs, with a commitment to use them during work
- Ministerial Order No. (3) of 2006 regarding the management of hazardous waste
- Ministerial Order No. (4) of 2005 regarding the management of used oils
- Ministerial Order No. (4) of 2006 regarding the management of hazardous chemicals
- Ministerial Order No. (4) of 2021 regarding the fees of the licenses and services provided by the Supreme Council for Environment
- Ministerial Order No. (6) of 2013 amending order No. (4) of 2006 regarding the management of hazardous chemicals
- Ministerial Order No. (7) of 2002 regarding the control importation and use of prohibited and severely restricted chemicals, and not to import any chemical compound except after obtaining approvals of all concerned authorities, including the executive body of the Supreme Council for Environment
- Ministerial Order No. (7) of 2013 amending order No. (3) of 2006 regarding the management of hazardous waste
- Ministerial Order No. 4 of 2014 regarding the management of the environmental

consulting offices operations in the Kingdom of Bahrain
•Order No. (2) of 2020 determining the categories of fees for licensing refrigeration media, refrigeration units and air conditioning units as decided by the Chairman of the Supreme Council for the Environment
•law No. (1) of 2020 regarding the management of refrigeration media, refrigeration units and air conditioning units as decided by the Chairman of the Supreme Council for the Environment
•law No. (2) of 2019 regarding the ban on the import of plastic waste of all kinds as decided by the Chairman of the Supreme Council for the Environment
•law No. (204) of 2018 regarding banning the export of some types of local fishes, shrimps and other aquatic organisms, and coordinating with the Agriculture and Marine Resources at the Ministry of Works, Municipalities and Urban Planning regarding the import and export of some species

Water supply; sewerage, waste management and remediation activities

ISIC4	Business activity
383-2	Materials recovery - Factory

Description

This activity includes:
- processing of metal and non-metal waste and scrap and other articles into secondary raw materials, usually involving a mechanical or chemical transformation process
- recovery of materials from waste streams in the form of: separating and sorting recoverable materials from non-hazardous waste streams (i.e. garbage); separating and sorting of commingled recoverable materials, such as paper, plastics, used beverage cans and metals, into distinct categories

Examples of the mechanical or chemical transformation processes that are undertaken are:
- mechanical crushing of metal waste such as used cars, washing machines, bikes etc. with subsequent sorting and separation
- dismantling of automobiles, computers, televisions and other equipment for materials recovery
- mechanical reduction of large iron pieces such as railway wagons
- shredding of metal waste, end-of-life vehicles etc.
- other methods of mechanical treatment as cutting, pressing to reduce the volume
- reclaiming metals out of photographic waste, e.g. fixer solution or photographic films and paper
- reclaiming of rubber such as used tires to produce secondary raw material
- sorting and pelleting of plastics to produce secondary raw material for tubes, flower pots, pallets and the like
- processing (cleaning, melting, grinding) of plastic or rubber waste to granulates
- crushing, cleaning and sorting of glass
- crushing, cleaning and sorting of other waste such as demolition waste to obtain secondary raw material
- processing of used cooking oils and fats into secondary raw materials
- processing of other food, beverage and tobacco waste and residual substances into secondary raw materials

Business Requirements

Age

18 and above

Allowed for Nationalities

Bahraini 100%		GCC 100%	
American 100%		Singaporean 100%	
Icelander 100%		Liechtenstein er 100%	
Norwegian 100%		Swiss 100%	

Foreign Allowed up to 100%

Legal Type

It is allowed to register according to the legal forms mentioned below

Allowed for Individual Commercial Registration (ICR) : Yes

Allowed for Company Commercial Registration (CCR) : Yes

- Bahrain Shareholding Company (Public)
- With Limited Liability Company
- Branch of a Foreign Company
- Bahrain Shareholding Company (Closed)
- Partnership Company
- Simple Commandite Company
- Commandite By Shares Company
- Non Profit Company

Required Step of Licenses and Approvals

Ministry / Directorate	License / Approval Requirements	Approval Type
Directorate Of Industrial Developments	Approval by Directorate of Industrial	Pre

	Developments(Pre)	
Municipality Affairs	Site Approval for manufacturing activities (Type B)	Post
Supreme Council for Environment	Environmental Approval for Industrial Activity	Post
Directorate Of Industrial Developments	Notification Only	Final Site Inspection

Directorate Of Industrial Developments (Pre) (383-2)

Approval Name	Description	Estimated Time
Approval by Directorate of Industrial Developments(Pre)	This is a preliminary approval given by the Directorate of Industrial Development to ensure that the applicant has selected the appropriate activity based on the information provided	5 Days

Fee Details (if any)

There is no Estimated Processing Time (Days) in this license.

License Information

Applicants would have to provide through the system the following information:

General Information:

- Total Amount Invested in the Project (This should include value of machinery and fixed assets)
- Estimated number of workforce (Bahraini and Non-Bahraini)
- Expected utility consumption of electricity, water and natural gas
- Total area of the project

Activity Information:

- Product Information:

1) The products to be manufactured by choosing the appropriate HS codes (HS code list can be downloaded from the application if needed).
2) Product name.
3) Expected production date (The expected date on which the factory will start producing the product).

4) The maximum installed capacity and the expected production capacity per year based on the fixed HS code's unit of measure.

• Main raw materials: The main raw materials to be used in production and its source

• Main Machinery and Equipment: The main machinery and equipment to be used in production and its information.

• Manufacturing process: Brief on the manufacturing process explaining how materials are transformed from one state to another until reaching the final product, mentioning the types of materials used, the operations performed, and the machinery/equipment used in each step (if any) for each product.

Required Documents

•Photos of machinery/ equipment to be used
•Photos of products to be manufactured

Other Documents

•Law No. (81) of 2006 with respect to approving The Common Industrial Law of the GCC
•Ministerial Resolution No. (11) of 2009
•Operational requirements for the directorate of industrial developments activities

Municipality Affairs (Post) (383-2)

Approval Name	Description	Estimated Time
Site Approval for manufacturing activities (Type B)	Municipality Approval for the Commercial Registration address or the site in which the Activity will be practiced	3 Days

Fee Details (if any)

10 BD

License Information

General Conditions:
1. Size of shop/premises must be sufficient for the activity
2. Businesses may not carry out the activity outside the boundaries of the shop/ premises
3. It is prohibited to display or store any items or equipment outside the shop / premises boundary without prior approval from the Municipality. In the event of non-compliance, the Ministry of Municipality Affairs has the right to take necessary action.
4. Maintain cleanliness of the site
5. Comply with the parking space regulations as per the Construction Regulatory Requirements

Activity Specific Conditions:
1. The Commercial Registration for this activity can only be registered in service and industrial streets/areas

Note: Uploading pictures of the site/shop may expedite the process of obtaining approval

Required Documents

- Lease agreement (after obtaining the necessary approvals from other licensing entities)
- Shop photos

Other Documents

- Cabinet's Decision (56) of the year 2022 regarding the Regulatory Requirements of Construction for various areas in the Kingdom of Bahrain

Supreme Council for Environment (Post) (383-2)

Approval Name	Description	Estimated Time
Environmental Approval for Industrial Activity	Environmental Approval for Industrial Activity	10 Days

Fee Details (if any)

30 Bahraini Dinars or 200 Bahraini Dinars for the fast-track procedure (when the data requested within the EA-2 form is sufficient without the need for additional studies) 4000 Bahraini Dinars or 6000 Bahraini Dinars for the fast-track procedure (when it is required to submit an environmental impact assessment study for the project) + with the additional payment amount of “100 Bahraini Dinars when it is required to submit a proposal for the scope of study before submitting it or 500 Bahraini Dinars for a fast-track procedure when the proposed scope of the study is being submitted before study submitting stage”

License Information

• Assessment Procedures:
- An “Environmental Impact Assessment” form (EA-2) must be filled and submitted as part of the environmental licensing procedures, to identify the environmental impacts associated with the require activity/activities, in order to specify the needed requirements to prevent or mitigate the negative impacts.

- Subject to the information provided in the)EA-2(form, some projects may require preparation and submission of an Environmental Impact Assessment Study that must be prepared by an environmental consultancy office “accredited by the Supreme Council for Environment”; where the scope of the study shall be agreed upon in writing between the Council, the Investor and the Consultant. Each consultant office shall determine its fees for preparing the study.

Required Documents

- Completed Environmental Impact Assessment from (EA-2)

Other Documents

- Law (21) 1996 on the Environment
- Resolution (1) 1998 - Environmental Assessment for Projects
- Resolution (10) 1998 - license fees
- Resolution (4) 2014 concerning the accreditation and organizing the work of the environmental consulting offices

Directorate Of Industrial Developments (Final Site Inspection) (383-2)

Approval Name	Description	Estimated Time
Notification Only	Notification to the Industrial development directorate on obtaining a commercial registration with the license to practice the activity.	There is no License Information in this license. Days

Fee Details (if any)

There is no Estimated Processing Time (Days) in this license.

License Information

The industrial license is automatically issued by the Industrial development Directorate after obtaining the approval of other licensing/approving entities.

Please ensure that the actual production date does no exceed the expected production date.

If actual production will start on or before the expected production date please apply for a “New Industrial Registration” by following the steps below:

1- Visit the Industrial services system (www.industry.bh).
2- Select “Industrial Registration”.
3- Select “New Registration” application.

In the event that the actual production date will exceed the expected production date an “Extension of expected production date” application must be submitted by following the steps below:

1- Visit the Industrial services system (www.industry.bh).

2- Select “Industrial License”.
3- Select “Extension of expected production date” application.

Please note that failure to do so within 60 days from the expected production date will result in a violation to be added.

Other Documents

- Law No. (81) of 2006 with respect to approving The Common Industrial Law of the GCC
- Ministerial Resolution No. (11) of 2009 with respect to promulgating Implementing Regulation
- Operational requirements for the directorate of industrial developments activities

Water supply; sewerage, waste management and remediation activities

ISIC4	Business activity
383-3	Materials recovery - Refrigerant Reclamation

Description

This activity includes recovery of refrigerants from existing units, recycle it and reclaim it to its original form.

Business Requirements

✔ Age

18 and above

✔ Allowed for Nationalities

Bahraini 100%		GCC 100%	
American 100%		Singaporean 100%	
Icelander 100%		Liechtenstein er 100%	
Norwegian 100%		Swiss 100%	

Foreign Allowed up to 100%

Legal Type

It is allowed to register according to the legal forms mentioned below

Allowed for Individual Commercial Registration (ICR) : Yes

Allowed for Company Commercial Registration (CCR) : Yes

- Bahrain Shareholding Company (Public)
- With Limited Liability Company
- Branch of a Foreign Company
- Bahrain Shareholding Company (Closed)
- Partnership Company
- Simple Commandite Company
- Commandite By Shares Company
- Non Profit Company

Required Step of Licenses and Approvals

Ministry / Directorate	License / Approval Requirements	Approval Type
Supreme Council for Environment	Environmental Approval for Refrigerant Reclamation Activity	Post
Municipality Affairs	Site Approval for manufacturing activities (Type B)	Post

Supreme Council for Environment (Post) (383-3)

Approval Name	Description	Estimated Time
Environmental Approval for Refrigerant Reclamation Activity	Environmental Approval for Refrigerant Reclamation Activity	10 Days

Fee Details (if any)

500 Bahraini Dinars
4000 Bahraini Dinars or 6000 Bahraini Dinars for the fast track procedure (when it is necessary to submit an environmental impact assessment study for the project), with an additional payment of 100 Bahraini Dinars when it is necessary to submit a proposal for the scope of the study before submitting it or 500 Bahraini Dinars for a fast track procedure when the proposed scope of the study is being submitted before the study

License Information

To check the requirements for this approval, kindly download the detailed requirements sheet from the other downloadable documents section, which includes the following requirements:

- Building layout engineering and equipment requirements
- Workplace requirements
- Storage requirements
- Material management requirements
- Waste Management Requirements
- Documents and reporting requirements
- General requirements

Other Documents

- Environmental Approval for Refrigerant Reclamation Activity

Municipality Affairs (Post) (383-3)

Approval Name	Description	Estimated Time
Site Approval for manufacturing activities (Type B)	Municipality Approval for the Commercial Registration address or the site in which the Activity will be practiced	3 Days

Fee Details (if any)

10 BD

License Information

General Conditions:
1. Size of shop/premises must be sufficient for the activity
2. Businesses may not carry out the activity outside the boundaries of the shop/ premises
3. It is prohibited to display or store any items or equipment outside the shop / premises boundary without prior approval from the Municipality. In the event of non-compliance, the Ministry of Municipality Affairs has the right to take necessary action.
4. Maintain cleanliness of the site
5. Comply with the parking space regulations as per the Construction Regulatory Requirements

Activity Specific Conditions:
1. The Commercial Registration for this activity can only be registered in service and industrial streets/areas

Note: Uploading pictures of the site/shop may expedite the process of obtaining approval

Required Documents

- Lease agreement (after obtaining the necessary approvals from other licensing entities)
- Shop photos

Other Documents

- Cabinet's Decision (56) of the year 2022 regarding the Regulatory Requirements of Construction for various areas in the Kingdom of Bahrain

Water supply; sewerage, waste management and remediation activities

ISIC4	Business activity
383003	Ship Recycling Services

Description

This activity includes the dismantling process and cutting various ships hardware parts in order to turn them into scrap. The company practicing such an activity should own the jetty, workshops, equipment, and necessary fixtures such as cranes, hacking devices, anti-marine pollution equipment, and warehouse.

Business Requirements

Age

18 and above

Allowed for Nationalities

- Bahraini 100%
- American 100%
- GCC 100%

Legal Type

It is allowed to register according to the legal forms mentioned below

Allowed for Individual Commercial Registration (ICR) : Yes

Allowed for Company Commercial Registration (CCR) : Yes

- Bahrain Shareholding Company (Public)
- With Limited Liability Company
- Branch of a Foreign Company
- Bahrain Shareholding Company (Closed)
- Partnership Company
- Simple Commandite Company
- Commandite By Shares Company
- Non Profit Company

Required Step of Licenses and Approvals

Ministry / Directorate	License / Approval Requirements	Approval Type
Ports and Maritime Affairs	Ship Recycling	Pre
Municipality Affairs	Site Approval for water supply, sewerage, waste management, remediation activities	Post
Supreme Council for Environment	Environmental Approval for Ship Recycling Services activity	Post

Ports and Maritime Affairs (Pre) (383003)

Approval Name	Description	Estimated Time
Ship Recycling	Ship Recycling	10 Days

Fee Details (if any)

2000 BD

License Information

Application/ License related information:
- The license is valid for 1 year
- Renewal of the license is 50% of initial fee
- In addition to the license fee applicants must pay a non-refundable application fee of 100 BD.

Activity Specific Requirements:
- Suitable and adequate seafront that doesn't affect the passage of ships

- Operational manual certified by the Ports and Maritime affairs demonstrating safety and ship recycling procedures.

Required Documents

•A document specifying all type of equipment to be used, and ship recycling facility details, drawings, ship recycling and etc. and are to be complied with international standards.
•A general layout plan certified by the Ports and Maritime Affairs for the jetty in which the ship recycling will take place highlighting the location of emergency exists, cutting workshop, and firefighting equipment.
•Detailed Business Plan
•Documents proving the educational qualifications of executives in (Port and Maritime studies, Nautical Science, Engineering, Business Management, Logistics, IT, Law) or professional experience in the sector of no less than 5 years.
•Safety and Security plan approved by the Civil Defense
•Waste management plan certified by the Supreme Council of Environment

Other Documents

•Law (46) for the year 2012
•Ministerial Regulation No. 15 for the year 2017 regarding PMA Tariff
•Ministerial Regulation No.9 for the year 2017 regarding licensing of Marine Services
•Regulation (6) for the year 2010

Municipality Affairs (Post) (383003)

Approval Name	Description	Estimated Time
Site Approval for water supply, sewerage, waste management, remediation activities	Municipality Approval for the Commercial Registration address or the site in which the Activity will be practiced	3 Days

Fee Details (if any)

BD10

License Information

General Conditions:
1. Size of shop/premises must be sufficient for the activity
2. Businesses may not carry out the activity outside the boundaries of the shop/ premises
3. It is prohibited to display or store any items or equipment outside the shop / premises boundary without prior approval from the Municipality
4. Provide garbage containers based on the size and quantity of the garbage disposed
5. Maintain cleanliness of the site

Activity Specific Conditions:
1. The Commercial Registration for this activity can only be registered in service and industrial streets/areas
2. The commercial address of the Commercial Registration for this activity can an office address only if the operations shall be of an administrative nature.

Note: Uploading pictures of the site/shop may expedite the process of obtaining approval

Required Documents

- Shop photos

Other Documents

- Cabinet's Decision (56) of the year 2022 regarding the Regulatory Requirements of Construction for various areas in the Kingdom of Bahrain

Supreme Council for Environment (Post) (383003)

Approval Name	Description	Estimated Time
Environmental Approval for Ship Recycling Services activity	This service aims to assess the environmental impact and licensing of development, industrial and production projects and activities, in accordance with the standards of protecting the environment and its natural resources	10 Days

Fee Details (if any)

- 30 Bahraini Dinars or 200 Bahraini Dinars for the fast-track procedure (when the data requested within the EA-2 form is sufficient without the need for additional studies)
- 4000 Bahraini Dinars or 6000 Bahraini Dinars for the fast track procedure (when it is necessary to submit an environmental impact assessment study for the project), with an additional payment of 100 Bahraini Dinars when it is necessary to submit a proposal for the scope of the study before submitting it or 500 Bahraini Dinars for a fast track procedure when the proposed scope of the study is being submitted before the study

License Information

To check the requirements for this approval, kindly download the detailed requirements sheet from the other downloadable documents section, which includes the following requirements:

- Building layout engineering and equipment requirements
- Workplace requirements
- Storage requirements
- Material management requirements
- Waste Management Requirements

- Documents and reporting requirements
- General requirements

Required Documents

- Requirements for business activities

Other Documents

- Annex to the Minister of Housing, Municipalities and Environment order regarding the project's environmental assessment
- Law No. (2) of 2021 regarding the environmental standards of air as decided by the Chairman of the Supreme Council for Environment
- Law No. (3) of 2021 regarding the environmental standards of water as decided by the Chairman of the Supreme Council for the Environment
- Law No. (5) of 2021 regarding CITES Annexes to the Convention on International Trade in Endangered Fauna and Flora
- Law No. (54) of 2014 regarding the approval of the unified law regarding substances that deplete the ozone layer for the GCC countries
- Law No. (7) of 2022 regarding the environment
- Ministerial Order No. (1) of 1998 regarding Project's Environmental Assessment
- Ministerial Order No. (10) of 2006 regarding the installation of devices for on-line monitoring of atmospheric air pollutants
- Ministerial Order No. (11) of 2019 regarding the issue of technical specification of plastic products
- Ministerial Order No. (3) of 2005 regarding environmental requirements and standards in workplaces, especially regarding workers' exposure to heat and noise, and the provision of tools and protective clothing such as gloves, glasses, face masks and earplugs, with a commitment to use them during work
- Ministerial Order No. (3) of 2006 regarding the management of hazardous waste
- Ministerial Order No. (4) of 2005 regarding the management of used oils
- Ministerial Order No. (4) of 2006 regarding the management of hazardous chemicals
- Ministerial Order No. (4) of 2021 regarding the fees of the licenses and services provided by the Supreme Council for Environment
- Ministerial Order No. (6) of 2013 amending order No. (4) of 2006 regarding the management of hazardous chemicals
- Ministerial Order No. (7) of 2002 regarding the control importation and use of prohibited and severely restricted chemicals, and not to import any chemical compound except after obtaining approvals of all concerned authorities, including the executive body of the Supreme Council for Environment
- Ministerial Order No. (7) of 2013 amending order No. (3) of 2006 regarding the management of hazardous waste
- Ministerial Order No. 4 of 2014 regarding the management of the environmental

consulting offices operations in the Kingdom of Bahrain
•Order No. (2) of 2020 determining the categories of fees for licensing refrigeration media, refrigeration units and air conditioning units as decided by the Chairman of the Supreme Council for the Environment
•law No. (1) of 2020 regarding the management of refrigeration media, refrigeration units and air conditioning units as decided by the Chairman of the Supreme Council for the Environment
•law No. (2) of 2019 regarding the ban on the import of plastic waste of all kinds as decided by the Chairman of the Supreme Council for the Environment
•law No. (204) of 2018 regarding banning the export of some types of local fishes, shrimps and other aquatic organisms, and coordinating with the Agriculture and Marine Resources at the Ministry of Works, Municipalities and Urban Planning regarding the import and export of some species

Water supply; sewerage, waste management and remediation activities

ISIC4	Business activity
383009	Treatment of Oil Waste

Description

This activity includes the treatment of oil waste, such as lubricant residues, by means of refining, processing, purifying etc.

Business Requirements

Age

18 and above

Allowed for Nationalities

Bahraini 100%	GCC 100%
American 100%	Singaporean 100%
Icelander 100%	Liechtensteiner 100%
Norwegian 100%	Swiss 100%

Foreign Allowed up to 100%

Legal Type

It is allowed to register according to the legal forms mentioned below

Allowed for Individual Commercial Registration (ICR) : Yes

Allowed for Company Commercial Registration (CCR) : Yes

- Bahrain Shareholding Company (Public)
- With Limited Liability Company
- Branch of a Foreign Company
- Bahrain Shareholding Company (Closed)
- Partnership Company
- Simple Commandite Company
- Commandite By Shares Company
- Non Profit Company

Required Step of Licenses and Approvals

Ministry / Directorate	License / Approval Requirements	Approval Type
Directorate Of Industrial Developments	Approval by Directorate of Industrial Developments(Pre)	Pre
Supreme Council for Environment	Environmental Approval for Treatment of Oil Waste activity	Post
Municipality Affairs	Site Approval for water supply, sewerage, waste management, remediation activities	Post
Directorate Of Industrial Developments	Notification Only	Final Site Inspection

Directorate Of Industrial Developments (Pre) (383009)

Approval Name	Description	Estimated Time
Approval by Directorate of Industrial Developments(Pre)	This is a preliminary approval given by the Directorate of Industrial Development to ensure that the applicant has selected the appropriate activity based on the information provided	5 Days

Fee Details (if any)

There is no Estimated Processing Time (Days) in this license.

License Information

Applicants would have to provide through the system the following information:

General Information:

- Total Amount Invested in the Project (This should include value of machinery and fixed assets)
- Estimated number of workforce (Bahraini and Non-Bahraini)
- Expected utility consumption of electricity, water and natural gas
- Total area of the project

Activity Information:

- Product Information:

1) The products to be manufactured by choosing the appropriate HS codes (HS code list can be downloaded from the application if needed).
2) Product name.
3) Expected production date (The expected date on which the factory will start producing the product).

4) The maximum installed capacity and the expected production capacity per year based on the fixed HS code's unit of measure.

• Main raw materials: The main raw materials to be used in production and its source

• Main Machinery and Equipment: The main machinery and equipment to be used in production and its information.

• Manufacturing process: Brief on the manufacturing process explaining how materials are transformed from one state to another until reaching the final product, mentioning the types of materials used, the operations performed, and the machinery/equipment used in each step (if any) for each product.

Required Documents

•Photos of machinery/ equipment to be used
•Photos of products to be manufactured

Other Documents

•Law No. (81) of 2006 with respect to approving The Common Industrial Law of the GCC
•Ministerial Resolution No. (11) of 2009
•Operational requirements for the directorate of industrial developments activities

Supreme Council for Environment (Post) (383009)

Approval Name	Description	Estimated Time
Environmental Approval for Treatment of Oil Waste activity	This service aims to assess the environmental impact and licensing of development, industrial and production projects and activities, in accordance with the standards of protecting the environment and its natural resources	10 Days

Fee Details (if any)

- 100 Bahraini Dinars or 200 Bahraini Dinars for the fast-track procedure (when the data requested within the EA-2 form is sufficient without the need for additional studies)
- 4000 Bahraini Dinars or 6000 Bahraini Dinars for the fast track procedure (when it is necessary to submit an environmental impact assessment study for the project), with an additional payment of 100 Bahraini Dinars when it is necessary to submit a proposal for the scope of the study before submitting it or 500 Bahraini Dinars for a fast track procedure when the proposed scope of the study is being submitted before the study

License Information

To check the requirements for this approval, kindly download the detailed requirements sheet from the other downloadable documents section, which includes the following requirements:

- Building layout engineering and equipment requirements
- Workplace requirements
- Storage requirements
- Material management requirements
- Waste Management Requirements

- Documents and reporting requirements
- General requirements

Required Documents

- Requirements for business activities

Other Documents

- Annex to the Minister of Housing, Municipalities and Environment order regarding the project's environmental assessment
- Law No. (2) of 2021 regarding the environmental standards of air as decided by the Chairman of the Supreme Council for Environment
- Law No. (3) of 2021 regarding the environmental standards of water as decided by the Chairman of the Supreme Council for the Environment
- Law No. (54) of 2014 regarding the approval of the unified law regarding substances that deplete the ozone layer for the GCC countries
- Law No. (7) of 2022 regarding the environment
- Ministerial Order No. (1) of 1998 regarding Project's Environmental Assessment
- Ministerial Order No. (10) of 2006 regarding the installation of devices for on-line monitoring of atmospheric air pollutants
- Ministerial Order No. (3) of 2005 regarding environmental requirements and standards in workplaces, especially regarding workers' exposure to heat and noise, and the provision of tools and protective clothing such as gloves, glasses, face masks and earplugs, with a commitment to use them during work
- Ministerial Order No. (3) of 2006 regarding the management of hazardous waste
- Ministerial Order No. (4) of 2005 regarding the management of used oils
- Ministerial Order No. (4) of 2006 regarding the management of hazardous chemicals
- Ministerial Order No. (4) of 2021 regarding the fees of the licenses and services provided by the Supreme Council for Environment
- Ministerial Order No. (6) of 2013 amending order No. (4) of 2006 regarding the management of hazardous chemicals
- Ministerial Order No. (7) of 2002 regarding the control importation and use of prohibited and severely restricted chemicals, and not to import any chemical compound except after obtaining approvals of all concerned authorities, including the executive body of the Supreme Council for Environment
- Ministerial Order No. (7) of 2013 amending order No. (3) of 2006 regarding the management of hazardous waste
- Ministerial Order No. 4 of 2014 regarding the management of the environmental consulting offices operations in the Kingdom of Bahrain
- Order No. (2) of 2020 determining the categories of fees for licensing refrigeration media, refrigeration units and air conditioning units as decided by the Chairman of the Supreme Council for the Environment

•law No. (1) of 2020 regarding the management of refrigeration media, refrigeration units and air conditioning units as decided by the Chairman of the Supreme Council for the Environment

Municipality Affairs (Post) (383009)

Approval Name	Description	Estimated Time
Site Approval for water supply, sewerage, waste management, remediation activities	Municipality Approval for the Commercial Registration address or the site in which the Activity will be practiced	3 Days

Fee Details (if any)

BD10

License Information

General Conditions:
1. Size of shop/premises must be sufficient for the activity
2. Businesses may not carry out the activity outside the boundaries of the shop/ premises
3. It is prohibited to display or store any items or equipment outside the shop / premises boundary without prior approval from the Municipality
4. Provide garbage containers based on the size and quantity of the garbage disposed
5. Maintain cleanliness of the site

Activity Specific Conditions:
1. The Commercial Registration for this activity can only be registered in service and industrial streets/areas
2. The commercial address of the Commercial Registration for this activity can an office address only if the operations shall be of an administrative nature.

Note: Uploading pictures of the site/shop may expedite the process of obtaining approval

Required Documents

- Shop photos

Other Documents

- Cabinet's Decision (56) of the year 2022 regarding the Regulatory Requirements of Construction for various areas in the Kingdom of Bahrain

Directorate Of Industrial Developments (Final Site Inspection) (383009)

Approval Name	Description	Estimated Time
Notification Only	Notification to the Industrial development directorate on obtaining a commercial registration with the license to practice the activity.	There is no License Information in this license. Days

Fee Details (if any)

There is no Estimated Processing Time (Days) in this license.

License Information

The industrial license is automatically issued by the Industrial development Directorate after obtaining the approval of other licensing/approving entities.

Please ensure that the actual production date does no exceed the expected production date.

If actual production will start on or before the expected production date please apply for a “New Industrial Registration” by following the steps below:

1- Visit the Industrial services system (www.industry.bh).
2- Select “Industrial Registration”.
3- Select “New Registration” application.

In the event that the actual production date will exceed the expected production date an “Extension of expected production date” application must be submitted by following the steps below:

1- Visit the Industrial services system (www.industry.bh).

2- Select “Industrial License”.
3- Select “Extension of expected production date” application.

Please note that failure to do so within 60 days from the expected production date will result in a violation to be added.

Other Documents

- Law No. (81) of 2006 with respect to approving The Common Industrial Law of the GCC
- Ministerial Resolution No. (11) of 2009 with respect to promulgating Implementing Regulation
- Operational requirements for the directorate of industrial developments activities

Water supply; sewerage, waste management and remediation activities

ISIC4	Business activity
39-1	Remediation activities and other waste management services

Description

This activity includes:
- decontamination of soils and groundwater at the place of pollution, either in situ or ex situ, using e.g. mechanical, chemical or biological methods
- cleaning up of oil spills and other pollutions on land, in surface water, in ocean and seas, including coastal areas
- asbestos, lead paint, and other toxic material abatement
- other specialized pollution-control activities

Business Requirements

Age

18 and above

Allowed for Nationalities

Bahraini 100%		GCC 100%	
American 100%		Singaporean 100%	
Icelander 100%		Liechtenstein er 100%	
Norwegian 100%		Swiss 100%	

Legal Type

It is allowed to register according to the legal forms mentioned below

Allowed for Individual Commercial Registration (ICR) : Yes

Allowed for Company Commercial Registration (CCR) : Yes

- Bahrain Shareholding Company (Public)
- With Limited Liability Company
- Branch of a Foreign Company
- Bahrain Shareholding Company (Closed)
- Partnership Company
- Simple Commandite Company
- Commandite By Shares Company
- Non Profit Company

Required Step of Licenses and Approvals

Ministry / Directorate	License / Approval Requirements	Approval Type
Supreme Council for Environment	Environmental Approval for Remediation activities and other waste management services activity	Post
Municipality Affairs	Site Approval for water supply, sewerage, waste management, remediation activities	Post

Supreme Council for Environment (Post) (39-1)

Approval Name	Description	Estimated Time
Environmental Approval for Remediation activities and other waste management services activity	This service aims to assess the environmental impact and licensing of development, industrial and production projects and activities, in accordance with the standards of protecting the environment and its natural resources	10 Days

Fee Details (if any)

- 100 Bahraini Dinars or 200 Bahraini Dinars for the fast-track procedure (when the data requested within the EA-2 form is sufficient without the need for additional studies)
- 4000 Bahraini Dinars or 6000 Bahraini Dinars for the fast track procedure (when it is necessary to submit an environmental impact assessment study for the project), with an additional payment of 100 Bahraini Dinars when it is necessary to submit a proposal for the scope of the study before submitting it or 500 Bahraini Dinars for a fast track procedure when the proposed scope of the study is being submitted before the study

License Information

To check the requirements for this approval, kindly download the detailed requirements sheet from the other downloadable documents section, which includes the following requirements:

- Building layout engineering and equipment requirements
- Workplace requirements
- Storage requirements
- Material management requirements
- Waste Management Requirements

• Documents and reporting requirements
• General requirements

Other Documents

•Annex to the Minister of Housing, Municipalities and Environment order regarding the project's environmental assessment
•Law No. (2) of 2021 regarding the environmental standards of air as decided by the Chairman of the Supreme Council for Environment
•Law No. (3) of 2021 regarding the environmental standards of water as decided by the Chairman of the Supreme Council for the Environment
•Law No. (54) of 2014 regarding the approval of the unified law regarding substances that deplete the ozone layer for the GCC countries
•Law No. (7) of 2022 regarding the environment
•Ministerial Order No. (1) of 1998 regarding Project's Environmental Assessment
•Ministerial Order No. (10) of 2006 regarding the installation of devices for on-line monitoring of atmospheric air pollutants
•Ministerial Order No. (11) of 2019 regarding the issue of technical specification of plastic products
•Ministerial Order No. (3) of 2005 regarding environmental requirements and standards in workplaces, especially regarding workers' exposure to heat and noise, and the provision of tools and protective clothing such as gloves, glasses, face masks and earplugs, with a commitment to use them during work
•Ministerial Order No. (3) of 2006 regarding the management of hazardous waste
•Ministerial Order No. (4) of 2005 regarding the management of used oils
•Ministerial Order No. (4) of 2006 regarding the management of hazardous chemicals
•Ministerial Order No. (4) of 2021 regarding the fees of the licenses and services provided by the Supreme Council for Environment
•Ministerial Order No. (6) of 2013 amending order No. (4) of 2006 regarding the management of hazardous chemicals
•Ministerial Order No. (7) of 2002 regarding the control importation and use of prohibited and severely restricted chemicals, and not to import any chemical compound except after obtaining approvals of all concerned authorities, including the executive body of the Supreme Council for Environment
•Ministerial Order No. (7) of 2013 amending order No. (3) of 2006 regarding the management of hazardous waste
•Ministerial Order No. 4 of 2014 regarding the management of the environmental consulting offices operations in the Kingdom of Bahrain
•Order No. (2) of 2020 determining the categories of fees for licensing refrigeration media, refrigeration units and air conditioning units as decided by the Chairman of the Supreme Council for the Environment
•Requirements for business activities
•law No. (1) of 2020 regarding the management of refrigeration media, refrigeration units and air conditioning units as decided by the Chairman of the Supreme Council for the Environment

•law No. (2) of 2019 regarding the ban on the import of plastic waste of all kinds as decided by the Chairman of the Supreme Council for the Environment

Municipality Affairs (Post) (39-1)

Approval Name	Description	Estimated Time
Site Approval for water supply, sewerage, waste management, remediation activities	Municipality Approval for the Commercial Registration address or the site in which the Activity will be practiced	3 Days

Fee Details (if any)

BD10

License Information

General Conditions:
1. Size of shop/premises must be sufficient for the activity
2. Businesses may not carry out the activity outside the boundaries of the shop/ premises
3. It is prohibited to display or store any items or equipment outside the shop / premises boundary without prior approval from the Municipality
4. Provide garbage containers based on the size and quantity of the garbage disposed
5. Maintain cleanliness of the site

Activity Specific Conditions:
1. The Commercial Registration for this activity can only be registered in service and industrial streets/areas
2. The commercial address of the Commercial Registration for this activity can an office address only if the operations shall be of an administrative nature.

Note: Uploading pictures of the site/shop may expedite the process of obtaining approval

Required Documents

- Shop photos

Other Documents

- Cabinet's Decision (56) of the year 2022 regarding the Regulatory Requirements of Construction for various areas in the Kingdom of Bahrain

Water supply; sewerage, waste management and remediation activities

ISIC4	Business activity
39-2	Remediation activities and other waste management services - Oil spills cleaning Service

Description

This activity includes:
- decontamination of industrial plants or sites, including nuclear plants and sites
- decontamination and cleaning up of surface water following accidental pollution, e.g. through collection of pollutants or through application of chemicals

Business Requirements

Age

18 and above

Allowed for Nationalities

Bahraini 100%		GCC 100%	
American 100%		Singaporean 100%	
Icelander 100%		Liechtenstein er 100%	
Norwegian 100%		Swiss 100%	

Foreign Allowed up to 100%

Legal Type

It is allowed to register according to the legal forms mentioned below

Allowed for Individual Commercial Registration (ICR) : Yes

Allowed for Company Commercial Registration (CCR) : Yes

- Bahrain Shareholding Company (Public)
- With Limited Liability Company
- Branch of a Foreign Company
- Bahrain Shareholding Company (Closed)
- Partnership Company
- Simple Commandite Company
- Commandite By Shares Company
- Non Profit Company

Required Step of Licenses and Approvals

Ministry / Directorate	License / Approval Requirements	Approval Type
Municipality Affairs	Site Approval for water supply, sewerage, waste management, remediation activities	Post
Supreme Council for Environment	Environmental Approval for Remediation activities and other waste management services - Oil spills cleaning Service activity	Post

Municipality Affairs (Post) (39-2)

Approval Name	Description	Estimated Time
Site Approval for water supply, sewerage, waste management, remediation activities	Municipality Approval for the Commercial Registration address or the site in which the Activity will be practiced	3 Days

Fee Details (if any)

BD10

License Information

General Conditions:
1. Size of shop/premises must be sufficient for the activity
2. Businesses may not carry out the activity outside the boundaries of the shop/ premises
3. It is prohibited to display or store any items or equipment outside the shop / premises boundary without prior approval from the Municipality
4. Provide garbage containers based on the size and quantity of the garbage disposed
5. Maintain cleanliness of the site

Activity Specific Conditions:
1. The Commercial Registration for this activity can only be registered in service and industrial streets/areas
2. The commercial address of the Commercial Registration for this activity can an office address only if the operations shall be of an administrative nature.

Note: Uploading pictures of the site/shop may expedite the process of obtaining approval

Required Documents

- Shop photos

Other Documents

- Cabinet's Decision (56) of the year 2022 regarding the Regulatory Requirements of Construction for various areas in the Kingdom of Bahrain

Supreme Council for Environment (Post) (39-2)

Approval Name	Description	Estimated Time
Environmental Approval for Remediation activities and other waste management services - Oil spills cleaning Service activity	This service aims to assess the environmental impact and licensing of development, industrial and production projects and activities, in accordance with the standards of protecting the environment and its natural resources	10 Days

Fee Details (if any)

- 100 Bahraini Dinars or 200 Bahraini Dinars for the fast-track procedure (when the data requested within the EA-2 form is sufficient without the need for additional studies)
- 4000 Bahraini Dinars or 6000 Bahraini Dinars for the fast track procedure (when it is necessary to submit an environmental impact assessment study for the project), with an additional payment of 100 Bahraini Dinars when it is necessary to submit a proposal for the scope of the study before submitting it or 500 Bahraini Dinars for a fast track procedure when the proposed scope of the study is being submitted before the study

License Information

To check the requirements for this approval, kindly download the detailed requirements sheet from the other downloadable documents section, which includes the following requirements:

- Building layout engineering and equipment requirements
- Workplace requirements
- Storage requirements
- Material management requirements
- Waste Management Requirements

• Documents and reporting requirements
• General requirements

Other Documents

•Annex to the Minister of Housing, Municipalities and Environment order regarding the project's environmental assessment
•Law No. (2) of 2021 regarding the environmental standards of air as decided by the Chairman of the Supreme Council for Environment
•Law No. (3) of 2021 regarding the environmental standards of water as decided by the Chairman of the Supreme Council for the Environment
•Law No. (54) of 2014 regarding the approval of the unified law regarding substances that deplete the ozone layer for the GCC countries
•Law No. (7) of 2022 regarding the environment
•Law No. (7) of 2022 regarding the environment
•Ministerial Order No. (1) of 1998 regarding Project's Environmental Assessment
•Ministerial Order No. (10) of 2006 regarding the installation of devices for on-line monitoring of atmospheric air pollutants
•Ministerial Order No. (11) of 2019 regarding the issue of technical specification of plastic products
•Ministerial Order No. (3) of 2005 regarding environmental requirements and standards in workplaces, especially regarding workers' exposure to heat and noise, and the provision of tools and protective clothing such as gloves, glasses, face masks and earplugs, with a commitment to use them during work
•Ministerial Order No. (3) of 2006 regarding the management of hazardous waste
•Ministerial Order No. (4) of 2005 regarding the management of used oils
•Ministerial Order No. (4) of 2006 regarding the management of hazardous chemicals
•Ministerial Order No. (4) of 2021 regarding the fees of the licenses and services provided by the Supreme Council for Environment
•Ministerial Order No. (6) of 2013 amending order No. (4) of 2006 regarding the management of hazardous chemicals
•Ministerial Order No. (7) of 2002 regarding the control importation and use of prohibited and severely restricted chemicals, and not to import any chemical compound except after obtaining approvals of all concerned authorities, including the executive body of the Supreme Council for Environment
•Ministerial Order No. (7) of 2013 amending order No. (3) of 2006 regarding the management of hazardous waste
•Ministerial Order No. 4 of 2014 regarding the management of the environmental consulting offices operations in the Kingdom of Bahrain
•Order No. (2) of 2020 determining the categories of fees for licensing refrigeration media, refrigeration units and air conditioning units as decided by the Chairman of the Supreme Council for the Environment
•Requirements for business activities
•law No. (1) of 2020 regarding the management of refrigeration media, refrigeration units and air conditioning units as decided by the Chairman of the Supreme Council for

the Environment
•law No. (2) of 2019 regarding the ban on the import of plastic waste of all kinds as decided by the Chairman of the Supreme Council for the Environment

Construction

سجلات
SIJILAT
نظام السجلات التجارية
COMMERCIAL REGISTRATION PORTAL

Construction

ISIC4	Business activity
41	Construction of buildings

Description

This activity includes the construction of complete residential or non-residential buildings. outsourcing parts or even the whole construction process is possible.

Examples include:
- construction of all types of residential buildings: single-family houses; multi-family buildings, garden residential areas, and villas.
- construction of all types of non-residential buildings: buildings for industrial production, e.g. factories, workshops, assembly plants, etc.; hospitals, schools, office buildings; hotels, stores, shopping malls, restaurants; airport buildings; indoor sports facilities; parking garages, including underground parking garages; warehouses; religious buildings.
- assembly and erection of prefabricated constructions on the site.
- remodeling or renovating existing residential structures.

Business Requirements

Age

18 and above

Allowed for Nationalities

Bahraini 100%		GCC 100%	
American 100%		Singaporean Allowed up to 49% (a minimum Bahraini ownership of 51% is required)	
Icelander 100%		Liechtenstein er 100%	
Norwegian 100%		Swiss 100%	

Foreign Allowed up to Allowed up to 49% (a minimum Bahraini ownership of 51% is required)

Legal Type

It is allowed to register according to the legal forms mentioned below

Allowed for Individual Commercial Registration (ICR) : Yes

Allowed for Company Commercial Registration (CCR) : Yes

- Bahrain Shareholding Company (Public)
- With Limited Liability Company
- Branch of a Foreign Company
- Bahrain Shareholding Company (Closed)
- Partnership Company
- Simple Commandite Company
- Commandite By Shares Company
- Non Profit Company

Required Step of Licenses and Approvals

Ministry / Directorate	License / Approval Requirements	Approval Type
Municipality Affairs	Site Approval for Construction related activities	Post

Municipality Affairs (Post) (41)

Approval Name	Description	Estimated Time
Site Approval for Construction related activities	Municipality Approval for the Commercial Registration address or the site in which the Activity will be practiced	3 Days

Fee Details (if any)

10 BD

License Information

General Conditions:
1. Size of shop/premises must be sufficient for the activity
2. Businesses may not carry out the activity outside the boundaries of the shop/ premises
3. It is prohibited to display or store any items or equipment outside the shop / premises boundary without prior approval from the Municipality
4. Provide garbage containers based on the size and quantity of the garbage disposed
5. Maintain cleanliness of the site

Activity Specific Conditions:
1. The commercial address of the Commercial Registration for this activity can an office address provided that the site is used for administrative purposes and is not located in a residential area

Note: Uploading pictures of the site/shop may expedite the process of obtaining approval

Required Documents

- Lease agreement (after obtaining the necessary approvals from other licensing entities)
- Shop photos

Other Documents

- Cabinet's Decision (56) of the year 2022 regarding the Regulatory Requirements of Construction for various areas in the Kingdom of Bahrain

Construction

ISIC4	Business activity
421	Construction of roads and railways

Description

This activity includes:
- construction of motorways, streets, roads, bicycle lanes, horse lanes, and other vehicular and pedestrian ways.
- surface work on streets, roads, highways, bridges, and tunnels: asphalt paving of roads; road painting and other marking. installation of crash barriers, traffic signs, and the like.
- construction of bridges, including those for elevated highways.
- construction of tunnels.
- construction of railways and subways.
- construction of airfield runways.

Business Requirements

Age

18 and above

Allowed for Nationalities

Bahraini 100%		GCC 100%	
American 100%		Singaporean Allowed up to 49% (a minimum Bahraini ownership of 51% is required)	
Icelander 100%		Liechtenstein er 100%	
Norwegian 100%		Swiss 100%	

Foreign Allowed up to Allowed up to 49% (a minimum Bahraini ownership of 51% is required)

Legal Type

It is allowed to register according to the legal forms mentioned below

Allowed for Individual Commercial Registration (ICR) : Yes

Allowed for Company Commercial Registration (CCR) : Yes

- Bahrain Shareholding Company (Public)
- With Limited Liability Company
- Branch of a Foreign Company
- Bahrain Shareholding Company (Closed)
- Partnership Company
- Simple Commandite Company
- Commandite By Shares Company
- Non Profit Company

Required Step of Licenses and Approvals

Ministry / Directorate	License / Approval Requirements	Approval Type
Municipality Affairs	Site Approval for Construction related activities	Post

Municipality Affairs (Post) (421)

Approval Name	Description	Estimated Time
Site Approval for Construction related activities	Municipality Approval for the Commercial Registration address or the site in which the Activity will be practiced	3 Days

Fee Details (if any)

10 BD

License Information

General Conditions:
1. Size of shop/premises must be sufficient for the activity
2. Businesses may not carry out the activity outside the boundaries of the shop/ premises
3. It is prohibited to display or store any items or equipment outside the shop / premises boundary without prior approval from the Municipality
4. Provide garbage containers based on the size and quantity of the garbage disposed
5. Maintain cleanliness of the site

Activity Specific Conditions:
1. The commercial address of the Commercial Registration for this activity can an office address provided that the site is used for administrative purposes and is not located in a residential area

Note: Uploading pictures of the site/shop may expedite the process of obtaining approval

Required Documents

- Lease agreement (after obtaining the necessary approvals from other licensing entities)
- Shop photos

Other Documents

- Cabinet's Decision (56) of the year 2022 regarding the Regulatory Requirements of Construction for various areas in the Kingdom of Bahrain

Construction

ISIC4	Business activity
422	Construction of utility projects

Description

This activity includes the construction of distribution lines and related buildings and structures that are integral part of these systems.
Examples include:
- construction of civil engineering constructions for:
. long-distance pipelines, communication and power lines
. urban pipelines, urban communication and power lines; ancillary urban works
. water main and line construction
. irrigation systems (canals)
. reservoirs

- construction of:
. sewer systems, including repair
. sewage disposal plants
. pumping stations
. power plants

Business Requirements

Age

18 and above

Allowed for Nationalities

Bahraini 100%	GCC 100%
American 100%	Singaporean Allowed up to 49% (a minimum Bahraini ownership of 51% is required)
Icelander Allowed up to 49% (a minimum Bahraini ownership of 51% is required)	Liechtenstein er Allowed up to 49% (a minimum Bahraini ownership of 51% is required)
Norwegian Allowed up to 49% (a minimum Bahraini ownership of 51% is required)	Swiss Allowed up to 49% (a minimum Bahraini ownership of 51% is required)

Foreign Allowed up to Allowed up to 49% (a minimum Bahraini ownership of 51% is required)

Legal Type

It is allowed to register according to the legal forms mentioned below

Allowed for Individual Commercial Registration (ICR) : Yes

Allowed for Company Commercial Registration (CCR) : Yes

- Bahrain Shareholding Company (Public)
- With Limited Liability Company
- Branch of a Foreign Company
- Bahrain Shareholding Company (Closed)
- Partnership Company
- Simple Commandite Company
- Commandite By Shares Company
- Non Profit Company

Required Step of Licenses and Approvals

Ministry / Directorate	License / Approval Requirements	Approval Type
Municipality Affairs	Site Approval for Construction related activities	Post

Municipality Affairs (Post) (422)

Approval Name	Description	Estimated Time
Site Approval for Construction related activities	Municipality Approval for the Commercial Registration address or the site in which the Activity will be practiced	3 Days

Fee Details (if any)

10 BD

License Information

General Conditions:
1. Size of shop/premises must be sufficient for the activity
2. Businesses may not carry out the activity outside the boundaries of the shop/ premises
3. It is prohibited to display or store any items or equipment outside the shop / premises boundary without prior approval from the Municipality
4. Provide garbage containers based on the size and quantity of the garbage disposed
5. Maintain cleanliness of the site

Activity Specific Conditions:
1. The commercial address of the Commercial Registration for this activity can an office address provided that the site is used for administrative purposes and is not located in a residential area

Note: Uploading pictures of the site/shop may expedite the process of obtaining approval

Required Documents

- Lease agreement (after obtaining the necessary approvals from other licensing entities)
- Shop photos

Other Documents

- Cabinet's Decision (56) of the year 2022 regarding the Regulatory Requirements of Construction for various areas in the Kingdom of Bahrain

Construction

ISIC4	Business activity
429	Construction of other civil engineering projects

Description

This activity includes:
- construction of industrial facilities, except buildings, such as: refineries, chemical plants
- construction of: waterways, harbour and river works, pleasure ports (marinas), locks, etc.; construction of dams and dykes
- dredging of waterways
- construction work, other than buildings, such as: outdoor sports facilities

This activity also includes:
- land subdivision with land improvement (e.g. adding of roads, utility infrastructure etc.)

Business Requirements

Age

18 and above

Allowed for Nationalities

Bahraini 100%	GCC 100%
American 100%	Singaporean Allowed up to 49% (a minimum Bahraini ownership of 51% is required)
Icelander Allowed up to 49% (a minimum Bahraini ownership of 51% is required)	Liechtenstein er Allowed up to 49% (a minimum Bahraini ownership of 51% is required)
Norwegian Allowed up to 49% (a minimum Bahraini ownership of 51% is required)	Swiss Allowed up to 49% (a minimum Bahraini ownership of 51% is required)

Foreign Allowed up to Allowed up to 49% (a minimum Bahraini ownership of 51% is required)

Legal Type

It is allowed to register according to the legal forms mentioned below

Allowed for Individual Commercial Registration (ICR) : Yes

Allowed for Company Commercial Registration (CCR) : Yes

- Bahrain Shareholding Company (Public)
- With Limited Liability Company
- Branch of a Foreign Company
- Bahrain Shareholding Company (Closed)
- Partnership Company
- Simple Commandite Company
- Commandite By Shares Company
- Non Profit Company

Required Step of Licenses and Approvals

Ministry / Directorate	License / Approval Requirements	Approval Type
Municipality Affairs	Site Approval for Construction related activities	Post

Municipality Affairs (Post) (429)

Approval Name	Description	Estimated Time
Site Approval for Construction related activities	Municipality Approval for the Commercial Registration address or the site in which the Activity will be practiced	3 Days

Fee Details (if any)

10 BD

License Information

General Conditions:
1. Size of shop/premises must be sufficient for the activity
2. Businesses may not carry out the activity outside the boundaries of the shop/ premises
3. It is prohibited to display or store any items or equipment outside the shop / premises boundary without prior approval from the Municipality
4. Provide garbage containers based on the size and quantity of the garbage disposed
5. Maintain cleanliness of the site

Activity Specific Conditions:
1. The commercial address of the Commercial Registration for this activity can an office address provided that the site is used for administrative purposes and is not located in a residential area

Note: Uploading pictures of the site/shop may expedite the process of obtaining approval

Required Documents

- Lease agreement (after obtaining the necessary approvals from other licensing entities)
- Shop photos

Other Documents

- Cabinet's Decision (56) of the year 2022 regarding the Regulatory Requirements of Construction for various areas in the Kingdom of Bahrain

Construction

ISIC4	Business activity
431	Demolition and site preparation

Description

This activity includes activities of preparing a site for subsequent construction activities, including the removal of previously existing structures.

Demolition Activities include: demolition or wrecking of buildings and other structures

Site preparation Activities include:
-clearing of building sites
- earth moving: excavation, landfill, levelling and grading of construction sites, trench digging, rock removal, blasting, etc.
- drilling, boring and core sampling for construction, geophysical, geological or similar purposes
- overburden removal and other development and preparation of mineral properties and sites, except oil and gas sites
- building site drainage
- drainage of agricultural land
-Building foundations and base structures

Business Requirements

Age

18 and above

Allowed for Nationalities

Bahraini 100%		GCC 100%	
American 100%		Singaporean Allowed up to 49% (a minimum Bahraini ownership of 51% is required)	
Icelander 100%		Liechtenstein er 100%	
Norwegian 100%		Swiss 100%	

Foreign Allowed up to Allowed up to 49% (a minimum Bahraini ownership of 51% is required)

Legal Type

It is allowed to register according to the legal forms mentioned below

Allowed for Individual Commercial Registration (ICR) : Yes

Allowed for Company Commercial Registration (CCR) : Yes

- Bahrain Shareholding Company (Public)
- With Limited Liability Company
- Branch of a Foreign Company
- Bahrain Shareholding Company (Closed)
- Partnership Company
- Simple Commandite Company
- Commandite By Shares Company
- Non Profit Company

Required Step of Licenses and Approvals

Ministry / Directorate	License / Approval Requirements	Approval Type
Municipality Affairs	Site Approval for Construction related activities	Post

Municipality Affairs (Post) (431)

Approval Name	Description	Estimated Time
Site Approval for Construction related activities	Municipality Approval for the Commercial Registration address or the site in which the Activity will be practiced	3 Days

Fee Details (if any)

10 BD

License Information

General Conditions:
1. Size of shop/premises must be sufficient for the activity
2. Businesses may not carry out the activity outside the boundaries of the shop/ premises
3. It is prohibited to display or store any items or equipment outside the shop / premises boundary without prior approval from the Municipality
4. Provide garbage containers based on the size and quantity of the garbage disposed
5. Maintain cleanliness of the site

Activity Specific Conditions:
1. The commercial address of the Commercial Registration for this activity can an office address provided that the site is used for administrative purposes and is not located in a residential area

Note: Uploading pictures of the site/shop may expedite the process of obtaining approval

Required Documents

- Lease agreement (after obtaining the necessary approvals from other licensing entities)
- Shop photos

Other Documents

- Cabinet's Decision (56) of the year 2022 regarding the Regulatory Requirements of Construction for various areas in the Kingdom of Bahrain

Construction

ISIC4	Business activity
43129	Offshore Reclamation

Description

This activity includes the drainage of marshes and coastal land by filling them up with sand and rock materials or using maritime dredging residues. This activity also includes the reclamation of land its leveling and preparing for various purposes.

Business Requirements

Age

18 and above

Allowed for Nationalities

Bahraini 100%	GCC 100%
American 100%	Singaporean Allowed up to 49% (a minimum Bahraini ownership of 51% is required)
Icelander Allowed up to 49% (a minimum Bahraini ownership of 51% is required)	Liechtenstein er Allowed up to 49% (a minimum Bahraini ownership of 51% is required)
Norwegian Allowed up to 49% (a minimum Bahraini ownership of 51% is required)	Swiss Allowed up to 49% (a minimum Bahraini ownership of 51% is required)

Foreign Allowed up to Allowed up to 49% (a minimum Bahraini ownership of 51% is required)

Legal Type

It is allowed to register according to the legal forms mentioned below

Allowed for Individual Commercial Registration (ICR) : Yes

Allowed for Company Commercial Registration (CCR) : Yes

- Bahrain Shareholding Company (Public)
- With Limited Liability Company
- Branch of a Foreign Company
- Bahrain Shareholding Company (Closed)
- Partnership Company
- Simple Commandite Company
- Commandite By Shares Company
- Non Profit Company

Required Step of Licenses and Approvals

Ministry / Directorate	License / Approval Requirements	Approval Type
Municipality Affairs	Site Approval for Construction related activities	Post
Supreme Council for Environment	Environmental Approval for Offshore Reclamation activity	Post

Municipality Affairs (Post) (43129)

Approval Name	Description	Estimated Time
Site Approval for Construction related activities	Municipality Approval for the Commercial Registration address or the site in which the Activity will be practiced	3 Days

Fee Details (if any)

10 BD

License Information

General Conditions:
1. Size of shop/premises must be sufficient for the activity
2. Businesses may not carry out the activity outside the boundaries of the shop/ premises
3. It is prohibited to display or store any items or equipment outside the shop / premises boundary without prior approval from the Municipality
4. Provide garbage containers based on the size and quantity of the garbage disposed
5. Maintain cleanliness of the site

Activity Specific Conditions:
1. The commercial address of the Commercial Registration for this activity can an office address provided that the site is used for administrative purposes and is not located in a residential area

Note: Uploading pictures of the site/shop may expedite the process of obtaining approval

Required Documents

- Lease agreement (after obtaining the necessary approvals from other licensing entities)
- Shop photos

Other Documents

- Cabinet's Decision (56) of the year 2022 regarding the Regulatory Requirements of Construction for various areas in the Kingdom of Bahrain

Supreme Council for Environment (Post) (43129)

Approval Name	Description	Estimated Time
Environmental Approval for Offshore Reclamation activity	This service aims to assess the environmental impact and licensing of development, industrial and production projects and activities, in accordance with the standards of protecting the environment and its natural resources	10 Days

Fee Details (if any)

- 100 Bahraini Dinars or 200 Bahraini Dinars for the fast-track procedure (when the data requested within the EA-2 form is sufficient without the need for additional studies)
- 4000 Bahraini Dinars or 6000 Bahraini Dinars for the fast-track procedure (when it is required to submit an environmental impact assessment study for the project) + with the additional payment amount of “100 Bahraini Dinars when it is required to submit a proposal for the scope of study before submitting it or 500 Bahraini Dinars for a fast-track procedure when the proposed scope of the study is being submitted before study submitting stage”

License Information

To check the requirements for this approval, kindly download the detailed requirements sheet from the other downloadable documents section, which includes the following requirements:

- Building layout Engineering and Equipment Requirements
- Work-place Requirements
- Storage Requirements
- Material Management Requirements

- Waste Management Requirements
- Documents and Reporting Requirements
- General Requirements

Other Documents

•Annex to the Minister of Housing, Municipalities and Environment order regarding the project's environmental assessment
•Law No. (2) of 2021 regarding the environmental standards of air as decided by the Chairman of the Supreme Council for Environment
•Law No. (3) of 2021 regarding the environmental standards of water as decided by the Chairman of the Supreme Council for the Environment
•Law No. (7) of 2022 regarding the environment
•Law No. (7) of 2022 regarding the environment
•Ministerial Order No. (1) of 1998 regarding Project's Environmental Assessment
•Ministerial Order No. (10) of 2006 regarding the installation of devices for on-line monitoring of atmospheric air pollutants
•Ministerial Order No. (3) of 2005 regarding environmental requirements and standards in workplaces, especially regarding workers' exposure to heat and noise, and the provision of tools and protective clothing such as gloves, glasses, face masks and earplugs, with a commitment to use them during work
•Ministerial Order No. (3) of 2006 regarding the management of hazardous waste
•Ministerial Order No. (4) of 2005 regarding the management of used oils
•Ministerial Order No. (4) of 2006 regarding the management of hazardous chemicals
•Ministerial Order No. (4) of 2021 regarding the fees of the licenses and services provided by the Supreme Council for Environment
•Ministerial Order No. (6) of 2013 amending order No. (4) of 2006 regarding the management of hazardous chemicals
•Ministerial Order No. (7) of 2002 regarding the control importation and use of prohibited and severely restricted chemicals, and not to import any chemical compound except after obtaining approvals of all concerned authorities, including the executive body of the Supreme Council for Environment
•Ministerial Order No. (7) of 2013 amending order No. (3) of 2006 regarding the management of hazardous waste
•Ministerial Order No. 4 of 2014 regarding the management of the environmental consulting offices operations in the Kingdom of Bahrain
•Requirements for business activities

Construction

ISIC4	Business activity
4321	Electrical Installation

Description

This activity includes the installation of electrical systems in all kinds of buildings and civil engineering structures.

Examples include installation of:
- electrical wiring and fittings
- telecommunications wiring
- computer network and cable television wiring, including fiber optic
- satellite dishes
- lighting systems
- burglar alarm systems
- street lighting and electrical signals
- airport runway lighting
- connecting of electric appliances and household equipment, including baseboard heating

This activity excludes:
- construction of communications and power transmission lines, see 422
- monitoring or remote monitoring of electronic security alarm systems, such as burglar and fire alarms, including their maintenance, see 802

Business Requirements

Age

18 and above

Allowed for Nationalities

Bahraini 100%	GCC 100%
American 100%	Singaporean Allowed up to 49% (a minimum Bahraini ownership of 51% is required)
Icelander Allowed up to 49% (a minimum Bahraini ownership of 51% is required)	Liechtenstein er Allowed up to 49% (a minimum Bahraini ownership of 51% is required)
Norwegian Allowed up to 49% (a minimum Bahraini ownership of 51% is required)	Swiss Allowed up to 49% (a minimum Bahraini ownership of 51% is required)

Foreign Allowed up to Allowed up to 49% (a minimum Bahraini ownership of 51% is required)

Legal Type

It is allowed to register according to the legal forms mentioned below

Allowed for Individual Commercial Registration (ICR) : Yes

Allowed for Company Commercial Registration (CCR) : Yes

Allowed for Sijilli : Yes

- Bahrain Shareholding Company (Public)
- With Limited Liability Company
- Branch of a Foreign Company
- Bahrain Shareholding Company (Closed)
- Partnership Company
- Simple Commandite Company
- Commandite By Shares Company
- Non Profit Company

Required Step of Licenses and Approvals

Ministry / Directorate	License / Approval Requirements	Approval Type
Electricity And Water Authority	Electrical Installation	Notification Only
Municipality Affairs	Site Approval for Construction related activities	Post

Electricity And Water Authority (Notification Only) (4321)

Approval Name	Description	Estimated Time
Electrical Installation	Electrical Installation	There is no License Information in this license. Days

Fee Details (if any)

There is no Estimated Processing Time (Days) in this license.

License Information

• After obtaining the commercial registration and required licensed for this activity, investors must approach the Electricity and Water Authority (EWA) and provide staff, equipment, and material details using the forms found in the “other downloadable documents” section.
• EWA will assign a grade for the Electrical Contracting License depending on the criteria mentioned in the “Types of Electrical Contracting Licenses” document found in the “other downloadable documents” section.
• Investors must not carry out any electrical works without first obtaining an approval for the electrical individuals/personal from EWA.
• For more details please refer to Ministerial Decision No. 1 of 2005 regarding the regulation of work in the field of electrical wiring found in the “other downloadable documents” section

Other Documents

•Application for electrical contractor license (Arabic)
•Application for electrical contractor license (English)
•Ministerial Decision No. 1 of 2005 regarding the regulation of work in the field of electrical wiring
•Types of Electrical Contracting Licenses (Arabic)
•Types of Electrical Contracting Licenses (English)

Municipality Affairs (Post) (4321)

Approval Name	Description	Estimated Time
Site Approval for Construction related activities	Municipality Approval for the Commercial Registration address or the site in which the Activity will be practiced	3 Days

Fee Details (if any)

10 BD

License Information

General Conditions:
1. Size of shop/premises must be sufficient for the activity
2. Businesses may not carry out the activity outside the boundaries of the shop/ premises
3. It is prohibited to display or store any items or equipment outside the shop / premises boundary without prior approval from the Municipality
4. Provide garbage containers based on the size and quantity of the garbage disposed
5. Maintain cleanliness of the site

Activity Specific Conditions:
1. The commercial address of the Commercial Registration for this activity can an office address provided that the site is used for administrative purposes and is not located in a residential area

Note: Uploading pictures of the site/shop may expedite the process of obtaining approval

Required Documents

- Lease agreement (after obtaining the necessary approvals from other licensing entities)
- Shop photos

Other Documents

- Cabinet's Decision (56) of the year 2022 regarding the Regulatory Requirements of Construction for various areas in the Kingdom of Bahrain

Construction

ISIC4	Business activity
43221	Heat, Air-Conditioning and Refrigeration Installation and Maintenance

Description

This activity includes the installation of heating, air-conditioning and refrigeration systems, including additions, alterations, maintenance and repair.

Examples include installation and maintenance in buildings or other construction projects of:
- heating systems (electric, gas and oil)
- furnaces, cooling towers
- ventilation, refrigeration or air-conditioning equipment and ducts
- duct work installation
- repair and maintain of commercial refrigeration equipment and air purifying equipment
- repair and maintain of air conditioners and refrigerators

Business Requirements

Age

18 and above

Allowed for Nationalities

Bahraini 100%		GCC 100%	
American 100%		Singaporean Allowed up to 49% (a minimum Bahraini ownership of 51% is required)	
Icelander 100%		Liechtenstein er 100%	
Norwegian 100%		Swiss 100%	

Foreign Allowed up to Allowed up to 49% (a minimum Bahraini ownership of 51% is required)

Legal Type

It is allowed to register according to the legal forms mentioned below

Allowed for Individual Commercial Registration (ICR) : Yes

Allowed for Company Commercial Registration (CCR) : Yes

Allowed for Sijilli : Yes

- Bahrain Shareholding Company (Public)
- With Limited Liability Company
- Branch of a Foreign Company
- Bahrain Shareholding Company (Closed)
- Partnership Company
- Simple Commandite Company
- Commandite By Shares Company
- Non Profit Company

Required Step of Licenses and Approvals

Ministry / Directorate	License / Approval Requirements	Approval Type
Supreme Council for Environment	Environmental Approval for Heat, Air-Conditioning and Refrigeration Installation and Maintenance activity	Post
Municipality Affairs	Site Approval for Construction related activities	Post

Supreme Council for Environment (Post) (43221)

Approval Name	Description	Estimated Time
Environmental Approval for Heat, Air-Conditioning and Refrigeration Installation and Maintenance activity	This service aims to assess the environmental impact and licensing of development, industrial and production projects and activities, in accordance with the standards of protecting the environment and its natural resources	10 Days

Fee Details (if any)

- 100 Bahraini Dinars

License Information

To check the requirements for this approval, kindly download the detailed requirements sheet from the other downloadable documents section, which includes the following requirements:

- Building layout Engineering and Equipment Requirements
- Work-place Requirements
- Storage Requirements
- Material Management Requirements
- Waste Management Requirements
- Documents and Reporting Requirements
- General Requirements

Other Documents

- Annex to the Minister of Housing, Municipalities and Environment order regarding the project's environmental assessment
- Law No. (2) of 2021 regarding the environmental standards of air as decided by the Chairman of the Supreme Council for Environment
- Law No. (3) of 2021 regarding the environmental standards of water as decided by the Chairman of the Supreme Council for the Environment
- Law No. (54) of 2014 regarding the approval of the unified law regarding substances that deplete the ozone layer for the GCC countries
- Law No. (7) of 2022 regarding the environment
- Law No. (7) of 2022 regarding the environment
- Ministerial Order No. (1) of 1998 regarding Project's Environmental Assessment
- Ministerial Order No. (10) of 2006 regarding the installation of devices for on-line monitoring of atmospheric air pollutants
- Ministerial Order No. (3) of 2005 regarding environmental requirements and standards in workplaces, especially regarding workers' exposure to heat and noise, and the provision of tools and protective clothing such as gloves, glasses, face masks and earplugs, with a commitment to use them during work
- Ministerial Order No. (3) of 2006 regarding the management of hazardous waste
- Ministerial Order No. (4) of 2005 regarding the management of used oils
- Ministerial Order No. (4) of 2006 regarding the management of hazardous chemicals
- Ministerial Order No. (4) of 2021 regarding the fees of the licenses and services provided by the Supreme Council for Environment
- Ministerial Order No. (6) of 2013 amending order No. (4) of 2006 regarding the management of hazardous chemicals
- Ministerial Order No. (7) of 2002 regarding the control importation and use of prohibited and severely restricted chemicals, and not to import any chemical compound except after obtaining approvals of all concerned authorities, including the executive body of the Supreme Council for Environment
- Ministerial Order No. (7) of 2013 amending order No. (3) of 2006 regarding the management of hazardous waste
- Ministerial Order No. 4 of 2014 regarding the management of the environmental consulting offices operations in the Kingdom of Bahrain
- Order No. (2) of 2020 determining the categories of fees for licensing refrigeration media, refrigeration units and air conditioning units as decided by the Chairman of the Supreme Council for the Environment
- Requirements for business activities
- law No. (1) of 2020 regarding the management of refrigeration media, refrigeration units and air conditioning units as decided by the Chairman of the Supreme Council for the Environment
- law No. (204) of 2018 regarding banning the export of some types of local fishes, shrimps and other aquatic organisms, and coordinating with the Agriculture and Marine Resources at the Ministry of Works, Municipalities and Urban Planning regarding the import and export of some species

Municipality Affairs (Post) (43221)

Approval Name	Description	Estimated Time
Site Approval for Construction related activities	Municipality Approval for the Commercial Registration address or the site in which the Activity will be practiced	3 Days

Fee Details (if any)

10 BD

License Information

General Conditions:
1. Size of shop/premises must be sufficient for the activity
2. Businesses may not carry out the activity outside the boundaries of the shop/ premises
3. It is prohibited to display or store any items or equipment outside the shop / premises boundary without prior approval from the Municipality
4. Provide garbage containers based on the size and quantity of the garbage disposed
5. Maintain cleanliness of the site

Activity Specific Conditions:
1. The commercial address of the Commercial Registration for this activity can an office address provided that the site is used for administrative purposes and is not located in a residential area

Note: Uploading pictures of the site/shop may expedite the process of obtaining approval

Required Documents

- Lease agreement (after obtaining the necessary approvals from other licensing entities)
- Shop photos

Other Documents

- Cabinet's Decision (56) of the year 2022 regarding the Regulatory Requirements of Construction for various areas in the Kingdom of Bahrain

Construction

ISIC4	Business activity
43223	Plumbing and Sanitary ware fixing

Description

This activity includes the installation of plumbing systems, including additions, alterations, maintenance and repair.

Examples include installation in buildings or other construction projects of:
- plumbing and sanitary equipment
- gas fittings
- steam piping
- sprinkler systems
- lawn sprinkler systems

Business Requirements

Age

18 and above

Allowed for Nationalities

Bahraini 100%	GCC 100%
American 100%	Singaporean Allowed up to 49% (a minimum Bahraini ownership of 51% is required)
Icelander Allowed up to 49% (a minimum Bahraini ownership of 51% is required)	Liechtenstein er Allowed up to 49% (a minimum Bahraini ownership of 51% is required)
Norwegian Allowed up to 49% (a minimum Bahraini ownership of 51% is required)	Swiss Allowed up to 49% (a minimum Bahraini ownership of 51% is required)

Foreign Allowed up to Allowed up to 49% (a minimum Bahraini ownership of 51% is required)

Legal Type

It is allowed to register according to the legal forms mentioned below

Allowed for Individual Commercial Registration (ICR) : Yes

Allowed for Company Commercial Registration (CCR) : Yes

Allowed for Sijilli : Yes

- Bahrain Shareholding Company (Public)
- With Limited Liability Company
- Branch of a Foreign Company
- Bahrain Shareholding Company (Closed)
- Partnership Company
- Simple Commandite Company
- Commandite By Shares Company
- Non Profit Company

Required Step of Licenses and Approvals

Ministry / Directorate	License / Approval Requirements	Approval Type
Municipality Affairs	Site Approval for Construction related activities	Post

Municipality Affairs (Post) (43223)

Approval Name	Description	Estimated Time
Site Approval for Construction related activities	Municipality Approval for the Commercial Registration address or the site in which the Activity will be practiced	3 Days

Fee Details (if any)

10 BD

License Information

General Conditions:
1. Size of shop/premises must be sufficient for the activity
2. Businesses may not carry out the activity outside the boundaries of the shop/ premises
3. It is prohibited to display or store any items or equipment outside the shop / premises boundary without prior approval from the Municipality
4. Provide garbage containers based on the size and quantity of the garbage disposed
5. Maintain cleanliness of the site

Activity Specific Conditions:
1. The commercial address of the Commercial Registration for this activity can an office address provided that the site is used for administrative purposes and is not located in a residential area

Note: Uploading pictures of the site/shop may expedite the process of obtaining approval

Required Documents

- Lease agreement (after obtaining the necessary approvals from other licensing entities)
- Shop photos

Other Documents

- Cabinet's Decision (56) of the year 2022 regarding the Regulatory Requirements of Construction for various areas in the Kingdom of Bahrain

Construction

ISIC4	Business activity
4329	Other construction installation

Description

This activity includes the installation of equipment other than electrical, plumbing, heating and air-conditioning systems or industrial machinery in buildings and civil engineering structures, including maintenance and repair.

Examples include installation in buildings or other construction projects of:
- elevators, escalators (for persons, goods or vehicles)
- automated and revolving doors
- lightning conductors
- vacuum cleaning systems
- thermal, sound or vibration insulation

This activity excludes:
- installation of industrial machinery, see 332

Business Requirements

Age

18 and above

Allowed for Nationalities

Bahraini 100%	GCC 100%
American 100%	Singaporean Allowed up to 49% (a minimum Bahraini ownership of 51% is required)
Icelander Allowed up to 49% (a minimum Bahraini ownership of 51% is required)	Liechtenstein er Allowed up to 49% (a minimum Bahraini ownership of 51% is required)
Norwegian Allowed up to 49% (a minimum Bahraini ownership of 51% is required)	Swiss Allowed up to 49% (a minimum Bahraini ownership of 51% is required)

Foreign Allowed up to Allowed up to 49% (a minimum Bahraini ownership of 51% is required)

Legal Type

It is allowed to register according to the legal forms mentioned below

Allowed for Individual Commercial Registration (ICR) : Yes

Allowed for Company Commercial Registration (CCR) : Yes

- Bahrain Shareholding Company (Public)
- With Limited Liability Company
- Branch of a Foreign Company
- Bahrain Shareholding Company (Closed)
- Partnership Company
- Simple Commandite Company
- Commandite By Shares Company
- Non Profit Company

Required Step of Licenses and Approvals

Ministry / Directorate	License / Approval Requirements	Approval Type
Municipality Affairs	Site Approval for Construction related activities	Post

Municipality Affairs (Post) (4329)

Approval Name	Description	Estimated Time
Site Approval for Construction related activities	Municipality Approval for the Commercial Registration address or the site in which the Activity will be practiced	3 Days

Fee Details (if any)

10 BD

License Information

General Conditions:
1. Size of shop/premises must be sufficient for the activity
2. Businesses may not carry out the activity outside the boundaries of the shop/ premises
3. It is prohibited to display or store any items or equipment outside the shop / premises boundary without prior approval from the Municipality
4. Provide garbage containers based on the size and quantity of the garbage disposed
5. Maintain cleanliness of the site

Activity Specific Conditions:
1. The commercial address of the Commercial Registration for this activity can an office address provided that the site is used for administrative purposes and is not located in a residential area

Note: Uploading pictures of the site/shop may expedite the process of obtaining approval

Required Documents

- Lease agreement (after obtaining the necessary approvals from other licensing entities)
- Shop photos

Other Documents

- Cabinet's Decision (56) of the year 2022 regarding the Regulatory Requirements of Construction for various areas in the Kingdom of Bahrain

Construction

ISIC4	Business activity
433	Building completion, finishing, and decor

Description

This activity includes:
- application in maintenance or other buildings completion construction projects of interior and exterior plaster or stucco, including related lathing materials
- installation of doors (except automated and revolving), windows, door and window frames, of wood or other materials
- installation of fitted kitchens, staircases, shop fittings and the like
- installation of furniture
- interior completion such as ceilings, wooden wall coverings, movable partitions, etc.
- laying, tiling, hanging or fitting in buildings or other construction projects of:
. ceramic, concrete or cut stone wall or floor tiles, ceramic stove fitting
. parquet and other wooden floor coverings
. carpets and linoleum floor coverings, including of rubber or plastic
. terrazzo, marble, granite or slate floor or wall coverings
. wallpaper
- interior and exterior painting of buildings
- installation of glass, mirrors, etc.
- cleaning of new buildings after construction
- other building completion work

This activity also includes:
- interior installation of shops, mobile homes, boats etc.

This activity excludes:
- Construction of buildings, see 41
- painting of roads, see 421
- installation of automated and revolving doors, see 4329
- general interior cleaning of buildings and other structures, see 8121
- specialized interior and exterior cleaning of buildings, see 8129

Business Requirements

Age

18 and above

Allowed for Nationalities

Bahraini 100%		GCC 100%	
American 100%		Singaporean Allowed up to 49% (a minimum Bahraini ownership of 51% is required)	
Icelander 100%		Liechtenstein er 100%	
Norwegian 100%		Swiss 100%	

Foreign Allowed up to Allowed up to 49% (a minimum Bahraini ownership of 51% is required)

Legal Type

It is allowed to register according to the legal forms mentioned below

Allowed for Individual Commercial Registration (ICR) : Yes

Allowed for Company Commercial Registration (CCR) : Yes

- Bahrain Shareholding Company (Public)
- With Limited Liability Company
- Branch of a Foreign Company
- Bahrain Shareholding Company (Closed)
- Partnership Company
- Simple Commandite Company
- Commandite By Shares Company
- Non Profit Company

Required Step of Licenses and Approvals

Ministry / Directorate	License / Approval Requirements	Approval Type
Municipality Affairs	Site Approval for Construction related activities	Post

Municipality Affairs (Post) (433)

Approval Name	Description	Estimated Time
Site Approval for Construction related activities	Municipality Approval for the Commercial Registration address or the site in which the Activity will be practiced	3 Days

Fee Details (if any)

10 BD

License Information

General Conditions:
1. Size of shop/premises must be sufficient for the activity
2. Businesses may not carry out the activity outside the boundaries of the shop/ premises
3. It is prohibited to display or store any items or equipment outside the shop / premises boundary without prior approval from the Municipality
4. Provide garbage containers based on the size and quantity of the garbage disposed
5. Maintain cleanliness of the site

Activity Specific Conditions:
1. The commercial address of the Commercial Registration for this activity can an office address provided that the site is used for administrative purposes and is not located in a residential area

Note: Uploading pictures of the site/shop may expedite the process of obtaining approval

Required Documents

- Lease agreement (after obtaining the necessary approvals from other licensing entities)
- Shop photos

Other Documents

- Cabinet's Decision (56) of the year 2022 regarding the Regulatory Requirements of Construction for various areas in the Kingdom of Bahrain

Construction

ISIC4	Business activity
439	Other specialized construction activities

Description

This activity includes:
- construction activities specializing in one aspect common to different kinds of structures, requiring specialized skill or equipment:
. construction of foundations, including pile driving
. damp proofing and waterproofing works
. de-humidification of buildings
. shaft sinking
. erection of non-self-manufactured steel elements
. steel bending
. bricklaying and stone setting
. roof covering for residential buildings
. scaffolds and work platform erecting and dismantling, excluding renting of scaffolds and work platforms
. erection of chimneys and industrial ovens
. work with specialist access requirements necessitating climbing skills and the use of related equipment, e.g. working at height on tall structures
- subsurface work
- construction of outdoor swimming pools
- steam cleaning, sandblasting, and similar activities for building exteriors
- renting of cranes with an operator
- mechanical contracts
- Three-dimensional construction printing

This activity excludes:
- renting of construction machinery and equipment without an operator, see 77301

Business Requirements

Age

18 and above

Allowed for Nationalities

Bahraini 100%	GCC 100%
American 100%	Singaporean Allowed up to 49% (a minimum Bahraini ownership of 51% is required)
Icelander Allowed up to 49% (a minimum Bahraini ownership of 51% is required)	Liechtenstein er Allowed up to 49% (a minimum Bahraini ownership of 51% is required)
Norwegian Allowed up to 49% (a minimum Bahraini ownership of 51% is required)	Swiss Allowed up to 49% (a minimum Bahraini ownership of 51% is required)

Foreign Allowed up to Allowed up to 49% (a minimum Bahraini ownership of 51% is required)

Legal Type

It is allowed to register according to the legal forms mentioned below

Allowed for Individual Commercial Registration (ICR) : Yes

Allowed for Company Commercial Registration (CCR) : Yes

- Bahrain Shareholding Company (Public)
- With Limited Liability Company
- Branch of a Foreign Company
- Bahrain Shareholding Company (Closed)
- Partnership Company
- Simple Commandite Company
- Commandite By Shares Company
- Non Profit Company

Required Step of Licenses and Approvals

Ministry / Directorate	License / Approval Requirements	Approval Type
Municipality Affairs	Site Approval for Construction related activities	Post

Municipality Affairs (Post) (439)

Approval Name	Description	Estimated Time
Site Approval for Construction related activities	Municipality Approval for the Commercial Registration address or the site in which the Activity will be practiced	3 Days

Fee Details (if any)

10 BD

License Information

General Conditions:
1. Size of shop/premises must be sufficient for the activity
2. Businesses may not carry out the activity outside the boundaries of the shop/ premises
3. It is prohibited to display or store any items or equipment outside the shop / premises boundary without prior approval from the Municipality
4. Provide garbage containers based on the size and quantity of the garbage disposed
5. Maintain cleanliness of the site

Activity Specific Conditions:
1. The commercial address of the Commercial Registration for this activity can an office address provided that the site is used for administrative purposes and is not located in a residential area

Note: Uploading pictures of the site/shop may expedite the process of obtaining approval

Required Documents

- Lease agreement (after obtaining the necessary approvals from other licensing entities)
- Shop photos

Other Documents

- Cabinet's Decision (56) of the year 2022 regarding the Regulatory Requirements of Construction for various areas in the Kingdom of Bahrain

Sale/Trading Activities; repair of motor vehicles and motorcycles

سجلات
SIJILAT
نظام السجلات التجارية
COMMERCIAL REGISTRATION PORTAL

Sale/Trading Activities; repair of motor vehicles and motorcycles

ISIC4	Business activity
451	Sale/Trade of motor vehicles

Description

This activity includes wholesale and/or retail and sale of new and used vehicles such as:
- passenger motor vehicles, including specialized passenger motor vehicles such as ambulances and minibuses, etc.
- lorries, trailers and semi-trailers
- camping vehicles such as caravans and motor homes
- Off-road motor vehicles (jeeps, etc.)
- heavy equipment and machinery such as lifting equipment and loading machinery and supplies, marine engines

Business Requirements

Age

18 and above

Allowed for Nationalities

Bahraini 100%	GCC 100%
American 100%	Icelander 100%
Liechtenstein er 100%	Norwegian 100%
Swiss 100%	

Legal Type

It is allowed to register according to the legal forms mentioned below

Allowed for Individual Commercial Registration (ICR) : Yes

Allowed for Company Commercial Registration (CCR) : Yes

- Bahrain Shareholding Company (Public)
- With Limited Liability Company
- Branch of a Foreign Company
- Bahrain Shareholding Company (Closed)
- Partnership Company
- Simple Commandite Company
- Commandite By Shares Company
- Non Profit Company

Required Step of Licenses and Approvals

Ministry / Directorate	License / Approval Requirements	Approval Type
Municipality Affairs	Site Approval for Sale/ Trade of motor vehicles	Post

Municipality Affairs (Post) (451)

Approval Name	Description	Estimated Time
Site Approval for Sale/Trade of motor vehicles	Municipality Approval for the Commercial Registration address or the site in which the Activity will be practiced	3 Days

Fee Details (if any)

10

License Information

General Conditions:
1. Size of shop/premises must be sufficient for the activity
2. Businesses may not carry out the activity outside the boundaries of the shop/ premises
3. It is prohibited to display or store any items or equipment outside the shop / premises boundary without prior approval from the Municipality. In the event of non-compliance, the Ministry of Municipality Affairs has the right to take necessary action.
4. Maintain cleanliness of the site
5. Comply with the parking space regulations as per the Construction Regulatory Requirements

Activity Specific Conditions:
1. The commercial address of the Commercial Registration for this activity can an office address provided that the motor vehicles are not parked in a manner that block roads and walkways, and provided that an official yard is made available if necessary.

Note: Uploading pictures of the site/shop may expedite the process of obtaining approval

Required Documents

- Lease agreement (after obtaining the necessary approvals from other licensing entities)
- Shop photos

Other Documents

- Cabinet's Decision (56) of the year 2022 regarding the Regulatory Requirements of Construction for various areas in the Kingdom of Bahrain

Sale/Trading Activities; repair of motor vehicles and motorcycles

ISIC4	Business activity
452	Maintenance and repair of motor vehicles

Description

This activity includes:
- maintenance and repair of motor vehicles:
. mechanical repairs
. electrical repairs
. electronic injection systems repair
. ordinary servicing
. bodywork repair
. repair of motor vehicle parts
. spraying and painting
. repair of screens and windows
. repair of motor vehicle seats
- tyre and tube repair, fitting or replacement
- anti-rust treatment
- installation of parts and accessories not as part of the manufacturing process

Business Requirements

Age

18 and above

Allowed for Nationalities

Bahraini 100%	GCC 100%
American 100%	

Legal Type

It is allowed to register according to the legal forms mentioned below

Allowed for Individual Commercial Registration (ICR) : Yes

Allowed for Company Commercial Registration (CCR) : Yes

- Bahrain Shareholding Company (Public)
- With Limited Liability Company
- Branch of a Foreign Company
- Bahrain Shareholding Company (Closed)
- Partnership Company
- Simple Commandite Company
- Commandite By Shares Company
- Non Profit Company

Required Step of Licenses and Approvals

Ministry / Directorate	License / Approval Requirements	Approval Type
Municipality Affairs	Site Approval for maintenance and repair of motor vehicles	Post
Supreme Council for Environment	Environmental Approval for Manufacture of motor vehicles activity	Post

Municipality Affairs (Post) (452)

Approval Name	Description	Estimated Time
Site Approval for maintenance and repair of motor vehicles	Municipality Approval for the Commercial Registration address or the site in which the Activity will be practiced	3 Days

Fee Details (if any)

10

License Information

General Conditions:
1. Size of shop/premises must be sufficient for the activity
2. Businesses may not carry out the activity outside the boundaries of the shop/ premises
3. It is prohibited to display or store any items or equipment outside the shop / premises boundary without prior approval from the Municipality. In the event of non-compliance, the Ministry of Municipality Affairs has the right to take necessary action.
4. Maintain cleanliness of the site
5. Comply with the parking space regulations as per the Construction Regulatory Requirements

Activity Specific Conditions:
1. The Commercial Registration for this activity can only be registered in service and industrial streets/areas
2. Size of shop/premises is sufficient for the activity. Below are suggestions for the size of the shop:
• Service Areas: Shop should be at least 30sqm and 7m in depth
• Workshop and Industrial service areas: Shop should be at least 50sqm and 7m in depth
• Light Industrial areas: Shop should be at least 100sqm and 7m in depth

(These suggested sizes are guidelines and are not mandatory)

Note: Uploading pictures of the site/shop may expedite the process of obtaining approval

Required Documents

- Lease agreement (after obtaining the necessary approvals from other licensing entities)
- Shop photos

Other Documents

- Cabinet's Decision (56) of the year 2022 regarding the Regulatory Requirements of Construction for various areas in the Kingdom of Bahrain

Supreme Council for Environment (Post) (452)

Approval Name	Description	Estimated Time
Environmental Approval for Manufacture of motor vehicles activity	This service aims to assess the environmental impact and licensing of development, industrial and production projects and activities, in accordance with the standards of protecting the environment and its natural resources	10 Days

Fee Details (if any)

30 BD

License Information

To check the requirements for this approval, kindly download the detailed requirements sheet from the other downloadable documents section, which includes the following requirements:

- Building layout engineering and equipment requirements
- Workplace requirements
- Storage requirements
- Material management requirements
- Waste Management Requirements
- Documents and reporting requirements
- General requirements

Other Documents

- Annex to the Minister of Housing, Municipalities and Environment order regarding the project's environmental assessment
- Law No. (2) of 2021 regarding the environmental standards of air as decided by the Chairman of the Supreme Council for Environment
- Law No. (3) of 2021 regarding the environmental standards of water as decided by the Chairman of the Supreme Council for the Environment
- Law No. (54) of 2014 regarding the approval of the unified law regarding substances that deplete the ozone layer for the GCC countries
- Law No. (7) of 2022 regarding the environment
- Ministerial Order No. (1) of 1998 regarding Project's Environmental Assessment
- Ministerial Order No. (10) of 2006 regarding the installation of devices for on-line monitoring of atmospheric air pollutants
- Ministerial Order No. (11) of 2019 regarding the issue of technical specification of plastic products
- Ministerial Order No. (3) of 2005 regarding environmental requirements and standards in workplaces, especially regarding workers' exposure to heat and noise, and the provision of tools and protective clothing such as gloves, glasses, face masks and earplugs, with a commitment to use them during work
- Ministerial Order No. (3) of 2006 regarding the management of hazardous waste
- Ministerial Order No. (4) of 2005 regarding the management of used oils
- Ministerial Order No. (4) of 2006 regarding the management of hazardous chemicals
- Ministerial Order No. (4) of 2021 regarding the fees of the licenses and services provided by the Supreme Council for Environment
- Ministerial Order No. (6) of 2013 amending order No. (4) of 2006 regarding the management of hazardous chemicals
- Ministerial Order No. (7) of 2002 regarding the control importation and use of prohibited and severely restricted chemicals, and not to import any chemical compound except after obtaining approvals of all concerned authorities, including the executive body of the Supreme Council for Environment
- Ministerial Order No. (7) of 2002 regarding the control importation and use of prohibited and severely restricted chemicals, and not to import any chemical compound except after obtaining approvals of all concerned authorities, including the executive body of the Supreme Council for Environment
- Ministerial Order No. (7) of 2013 amending order No. (3) of 2006 regarding the management of hazardous waste
- Order No. (2) of 2020 determining the categories of fees for licensing refrigeration media, refrigeration units and air conditioning units as decided by the Chairman of the Supreme Council for the Environment
- Requirements for business activities
- law No. (1) of 2020 regarding the management of refrigeration media, refrigeration units and air conditioning units as decided by the Chairman of the Supreme Council for the Environment
- law No. (2) of 2019 regarding the ban on the import of plastic waste of all kinds as decided by the Chairman of the Supreme Council for the Environment

Sale/Trading Activities; repair of motor vehicles and motorcycles

ISIC4	Business activity
45205	Car Washing and Polishing

Description

This activity includes the washing and/or polishing of all kinds of transportation vehicles except airplanes

Business Requirements

Age

18 and above

Allowed for Nationalities

- Bahraini 100%
- American 100%
- GCC 100%

Legal Type

It is allowed to register according to the legal forms mentioned below

Allowed for Individual Commercial Registration (ICR) : Yes

Allowed for Company Commercial Registration (CCR) : Yes

Allowed for Sijilli : Yes

- Bahrain Shareholding Company (Public)
- With Limited Liability Company
- Branch of a Foreign Company
- Bahrain Shareholding Company (Closed)
- Partnership Company
- Simple Commandite Company
- Commandite By Shares Company
- Non Profit Company

Required Step of Licenses and Approvals

Ministry / Directorate	License / Approval Requirements	Approval Type
Municipality Affairs	Site Approval for Car Washing and Polishing	Post

Municipality Affairs (Post) (45205)

Approval Name	Description	Estimated Time
Site Approval for Car Washing and Polishing	Municipality Approval for the Commercial Registration address or the site in which the Activity will be practiced	3 Days

Fee Details (if any)

10

License Information

General Conditions:
1. Size of shop/premises must be sufficient for the activity
2. Businesses may not carry out the activity outside the boundaries of the shop/ premises
3. It is prohibited to display or store any items or equipment outside the shop / premises boundary without prior approval from the Municipality. In the event of non-compliance, the Ministry of Municipality Affairs has the right to take necessary action.
4. Maintain cleanliness of the site
5. Comply with the parking space regulations as per the Construction Regulatory Requirements

Activity Specific Conditions:
1. The Commercial Registration for this activity can only be registered in service and industrial streets/areas
2. The commercial address of the Commercial Registration for this activity can an office address only if the operations shall be of an administrative nature. For example: manual/ hand car wash offices
3. Washing/polishing motor vehicles on the address site of the offices
4. Washing/polishing motor vehicles in public streets is not allowed
5. Suggested size for the shop: At least 30sqm and 7m in depth

(The suggested size is a guideline and is not mandatory)

Note: Uploading pictures of the site/shop may expedite the process of obtaining approval

Required Documents

- Lease agreement (after obtaining the necessary approvals from other licensing entities)
- Shop photos

Other Documents

- Cabinet's Decision (56) of the year 2022 regarding the Regulatory Requirements of Construction for various areas in the Kingdom of Bahrain

Sale/Trading Activities; repair of motor vehicles and motorcycles

ISIC4	Business activity
453	Sale/Trade of motor vehicle parts and accessories

Description

This activity includes:
- wholesale and/or retail sale of all kinds of parts, components, supplies, tools and accessories for motor vehicles, such as:
. rubber tires and inner tubes for tires
. spark plugs, batteries, lighting equipment and electrical parts
. batteries, oils and radiators

It also includes the sale and fixing of Car Window Films

Business Requirements

Age

18 and above

Allowed for Nationalities

- Bahraini 100%
- American 100%
- Liechtenstein er 100%
- Swiss 100%
- GCC 100%
- Icelander 100%
- Norwegian 100%

Legal Type

It is allowed to register according to the legal forms mentioned below

Allowed for Individual Commercial Registration (ICR) : Yes

Allowed for Company Commercial Registration (CCR) : Yes

- Bahrain Shareholding Company (Public)
- With Limited Liability Company
- Branch of a Foreign Company
- Bahrain Shareholding Company (Closed)
- Partnership Company
- Simple Commandite Company
- Commandite By Shares Company
- Non Profit Company

Required Step of Licenses and Approvals

Ministry / Directorate	License / Approval Requirements	Approval Type
Municipality Affairs	Municipality Site Approval	Post

Municipality Affairs (Post) (453)

Approval Name	Description	Estimated Time
Municipality Site Approval	Municipality approval of the business location (site) is required for all types of business activities. Municipalities verify that the proposed location / zone are appropriate for the proposed business activity. Site approval is issued automatically for pre-approved commercial areas, such as commercial malls and commercial buildings.	15 Days

Fee Details (if any)

Company application registration form
1. Copy of applicant's CPR card (passport for non-Bahrainis)
2. Two copies of property deed or rental agreement
3. If application is for relocation from one area to another, certificate of relocation by previous Municipality
4. Copy of electricity bill or electricity account number for new premises
5. Copy of sale agreement, if CR is purchased from another person
6. Copy of power of attorney, if required

License Information

There is no License Information in this license.

Required Documents

- Lease agreement (after obtaining the necessary approvals from other licensing entities)
- Photos of the premises

Other Documents

- قرار رقم (56) لسنة 2022 بإصدار الاشتراطات التنظيمية للتعمير بمختلف المناطق في المملكة

Sale/Trading Activities; repair of motor vehicles and motorcycles

ISIC4	Business activity
45401	Sale/Trade of motorcycles, including mopeds

Description

This activity includes wholesale and/or retail sale of:
- motorcycles and mopeds
- Parts and accessories for motorcycles and mopeds
- maintenance and repair of motorcycles and mopeds

Business Requirements

Age

18 and above

Allowed for Nationalities

- Bahraini 100%
- American 100%
- GCC 100%

Legal Type

It is allowed to register according to the legal forms mentioned below

Allowed for Individual Commercial Registration (ICR) : Yes

Allowed for Company Commercial Registration (CCR) : Yes

- Bahrain Shareholding Company (Public)
- With Limited Liability Company
- Branch of a Foreign Company
- Bahrain Shareholding Company (Closed)
- Partnership Company
- Simple Commandite Company
- Commandite By Shares Company
- Non Profit Company

Required Step of Licenses and Approvals

Ministry / Directorate	License / Approval Requirements	Approval Type
Municipality Affairs	Site Approval for Sale/ Trade of motorcycles, including mopeds	Post

Municipality Affairs (Post) (45401)

Approval Name	Description	Estimated Time
Site Approval for Sale/Trade of motorcycles, including mopeds	Municipality Approval for the Commercial Registration address or the site in which the Activity will be practiced	3 Days

Fee Details (if any)

10

License Information

General Conditions:
1. Size of shop/premises must be sufficient for the activity
2. Businesses may not carry out the activity outside the boundaries of the shop/ premises
3. It is prohibited to display or store any items or equipment outside the shop / premises boundary without prior approval from the Municipality. In the event of non-compliance, the Ministry of Municipality Affairs has the right to take necessary action.
4. Maintain cleanliness of the site
5. Comply with the parking space regulations as per the Construction Regulatory Requirements

Activity Specific Conditions:
1. The commercial address of the Commercial Registration for this activity can an office address provided that the motor cycles are not parked in a manner that block roads and walkways, and provided that an official yard is made available if necessary.

Note: Uploading pictures of the site/shop may expedite the process of obtaining approval

Required Documents

- Lease agreement (after obtaining the necessary approvals from other licensing entities)
- Shop photos

Other Documents

- Cabinet's Decision (56) of the year 2022 regarding the Regulatory Requirements of Construction for various areas in the Kingdom of Bahrain

Sale/Trading Activities; repair of motor vehicles and motorcycles

ISIC4	Business activity
45402	Sale/Trade of parts and accessories for motorcycles

Description

This activity includes wholesale and/or retail sale of parts and accessories for motorcycles and mopeds

Business Requirements

Age

18 and above

Allowed for Nationalities

Bahraini
100%

American
100%

GCC
100%

Legal Type

It is allowed to register according to the legal forms mentioned below

Allowed for Individual Commercial Registration (ICR) : Yes

Allowed for Company Commercial Registration (CCR) : Yes

- Bahrain Shareholding Company (Public)
- With Limited Liability Company
- Branch of a Foreign Company
- Bahrain Shareholding Company (Closed)
- Partnership Company
- Simple Commandite Company
- Commandite By Shares Company
- Non Profit Company

Required Step of Licenses and Approvals

Ministry / Directorate	License / Approval Requirements	Approval Type
Municipality Affairs	Site Approval for Trading related activities	Post

Municipality Affairs (Post) (45402)

Approval Name	Description	Estimated Time
Site Approval for Trading related activities	Municipality Approval for the Commercial Registration address or the site in which the Activity will be practiced	3 Days

Fee Details (if any)

10

License Information

General Conditions:
1. Size of shop/premises must be sufficient for the activity
2. Businesses may not carry out the activity outside the boundaries of the shop/ premises
3. It is prohibited to display or store any items or equipment outside the shop / premises boundary without prior approval from the Municipality
4. Maintain cleanliness of the site
5. Comply with the parking space regulations as per the Construction Regulatory Requirements

Activity Specific Conditions:
1. The commercial address for this activity can be registered in areas classified as commercial, services, or industrial
2. The commercial address of the Commercial Registration for this activity can an office address provided that the site is used for administrative purposes and not physical selling, and that the office is not located in a residential area

Required Documents

- Lease agreement (after obtaining the necessary approvals from other licensing entities)
- Shop photos

Other Documents

- Cabinet's Decision (56) of the year 2022 regarding the Regulatory Requirements of Construction for various areas in the Kingdom of Bahrain

Sale/Trading Activities; repair of motor vehicles and motorcycles

ISIC4	Business activity
45403	Maintenance and repair of motorcycles

Description

This activity includes the maintenance and repair of motorcyles and mopeds

Business Requirements

Age

18 and above

Allowed for Nationalities

- Bahraini 100%
- American 100%
- GCC 100%

Legal Type

It is allowed to register according to the legal forms mentioned below

Allowed for Individual Commercial Registration (ICR) : Yes

Allowed for Company Commercial Registration (CCR) : Yes

- Bahrain Shareholding Company (Public)
- With Limited Liability Company
- Branch of a Foreign Company
- Bahrain Shareholding Company (Closed)
- Partnership Company
- Simple Commandite Company
- Commandite By Shares Company
- Non Profit Company

Required Step of Licenses and Approvals

Ministry / Directorate	License / Approval Requirements	Approval Type
Municipality Affairs	Site Approval for Sale/ Trade of motorcycles, including mopeds	Post
Supreme Council for Environment	Environmental Approval for Maintenance and repair of motorcycles activity	Post

Municipality Affairs (Post) (45403)

Approval Name	Description	Estimated Time
Site Approval for Sale/Trade of motorcycles, including mopeds	Municipality Approval for the Commercial Registration address or the site in which the Activity will be practiced	3 Days

Fee Details (if any)

10

License Information

General Conditions:
1. Size of shop/premises must be sufficient for the activity
2. Businesses may not carry out the activity outside the boundaries of the shop/ premises
3. It is prohibited to display or store any items or equipment outside the shop / premises boundary without prior approval from the Municipality. In the event of non-compliance, the Ministry of Municipality Affairs has the right to take necessary action.
4. Maintain cleanliness of the site
5. Comply with the parking space regulations as per the Construction Regulatory Requirements

Activity Specific Conditions:
1. The commercial address of the Commercial Registration for this activity can an office address provided that the motor cycles are not parked in a manner that block roads and walkways, and provided that an official yard is made available if necessary.

Note: Uploading pictures of the site/shop may expedite the process of obtaining approval

Required Documents

- Lease agreement (after obtaining the necessary approvals from other licensing entities)
- Shop photos

Other Documents

- Cabinet's Decision (56) of the year 2022 regarding the Regulatory Requirements of Construction for various areas in the Kingdom of Bahrain

Supreme Council for Environment (Post) (45403)

Approval Name	Description	Estimated Time
Environmental Approval for Maintenance and repair of motorcycles activity	This service aims to assess the environmental impact and licensing of development, industrial and production projects and activities, in accordance with the standards of protecting the environment and its natural resources	10 Days

Fee Details (if any)

30 Bahraini Dinars

License Information

To check the requirements for this approval, kindly download the detailed requirements sheet from the other downloadable documents section, which includes the following requirements:

- Building layout Engineering and Equipment Requirements
- Work-place Requirements
- Storage Requirements
- Material Management Requirements
- Waste Management Requirements
- Documents and Reporting Requirements
- General Requirements

Other Documents

- Law No. (2) of 2021 regarding the environmental standards of air as decided by the Chairman of the Supreme Council for Environment
- Law No. (3) of 2021 regarding the environmental standards of water as decided by the Chairman of the Supreme Council for the Environment
- Law No. (7) of 2022 regarding the environment
- Ministerial Order No. (10) of 2006 regarding the installation of devices for on-line monitoring of atmospheric air pollutants
- Ministerial Order No. (3) of 2005 regarding environmental requirements and standards in workplaces, especially regarding workers' exposure to heat and noise, and the provision of tools and protective clothing such as gloves, glasses, face masks and earplugs, with a commitment to use them during work
- Ministerial Order No. (3) of 2006 regarding the management of hazardous waste
- Ministerial Order No. (4) of 2005 regarding the management of used oils
- Ministerial Order No. (4) of 2006 regarding the management of hazardous chemicals
- Ministerial Order No. (4) of 2021 regarding the fees of the licenses and services provided by the Supreme Council for Environment
- Ministerial Order No. (6) of 2013 amending order No. (4) of 2006 regarding the management of hazardous chemicals
- Ministerial Order No. (7) of 2002 regarding the control importation and use of prohibited and severely restricted chemicals, and not to import any chemical compound except after obtaining approvals of all concerned authorities, including the executive body of the Supreme Council for Environment
- Ministerial Order No. (7) of 2013 amending order No. (3) of 2006 regarding the management of hazardous waste
- Ministerial Order No. 4 of 2014 regarding the management of the environmental consulting offices operations in the Kingdom of Bahrain
- Requirements for business activities

Sale/Trading Activities; repair of motor vehicles and motorcycles

ISIC4	Business activity
461	Trading on a fee or exchange or on contract basis or auctions

Description

This activity includes:
- activities of commission agents and all other wholesalers who trade on behalf and on the account of others
- activities of those involved in bringing sellers and buyers together or undertaking commercial transactions on behalf of a principal, including on the internet
- activities of wholesale and retail auctioneering houses

Business Requirements

Age

18 and above

Allowed for Nationalities

- Bahraini 100%
- GCC 100%
- American 100%

Legal Type

It is allowed to register according to the legal forms mentioned below

Allowed for Individual Commercial Registration (ICR) : Yes

Allowed for Company Commercial Registration (CCR) : Yes

- Bahrain Shareholding Company (Public)
- With Limited Liability Company
- Branch of a Foreign Company
- Bahrain Shareholding Company (Closed)
- Partnership Company
- Simple Commandite Company
- Commandite By Shares Company
- Non Profit Company

Required Step of Licenses and Approvals

Ministry / Directorate	License / Approval Requirements	Approval Type
Municipality Affairs	Site Approval for trading on a fee or contract basis	Post

Municipality Affairs (Post) (461)

Approval Name	Description	Estimated Time
Site Approval for trading on a fee or contract basis	Municipality Approval for the Commercial Registration address or the site in which the Activity will be practiced	3 Days

Fee Details (if any)

10

License Information

General Conditions:
1. Size of shop/premises must be sufficient for the activity
2. Businesses may not carry out the activity outside the boundaries of the shop/ premises
3. It is prohibited to display or store any items or equipment outside the shop / premises boundary without prior approval from the Municipality. In the event of non-compliance, the Ministry of Municipality Affairs has the right to take necessary action.
4. Maintain cleanliness of the site
5. Comply with the parking space regulations as per the Construction Regulatory Requirements

Activity Specific Conditions:
1. The commercial registration for this activity can be registered on an office address

Note: Uploading pictures of the site/shop may expedite the process of obtaining approval

Required Documents

- Lease agreement (after obtaining the necessary approvals from other licensing entities)
- Shop photos

Other Documents

- Cabinet's Decision (56) of the year 2022 regarding the Regulatory Requirements of Construction for various areas in the Kingdom of Bahrain

Sale/Trading Activities; repair of motor vehicles and motorcycles

ISIC4	Business activity
46201	Sale/Trade of agricultural raw materials

Description

This activity includes the wholesale and/or retail of:
- grains and seeds
- oleaginous fruits
- flowers and plants
- wholesale of agricultural material, waste, residues and by-products used for animal feed

Business Requirements

Age

18 and above

Allowed for Nationalities

- Bahraini 100%
- American 100%
- GCC 100%

Legal Type

It is allowed to register according to the legal forms mentioned below

Allowed for Individual Commercial Registration (ICR) : Yes

Allowed for Company Commercial Registration (CCR) : Yes

- Bahrain Shareholding Company (Public)
- With Limited Liability Company
- Branch of a Foreign Company
- Bahrain Shareholding Company (Closed)
- Partnership Company
- Simple Commandite Company
- Commandite By Shares Company
- Non Profit Company

Required Step of Licenses and Approvals

Ministry / Directorate	License / Approval Requirements	Approval Type
Agricultural Health Directorate	Notification Only	Notification Only
Municipality Affairs	Site Approval for Sale/ Trade of animals	Post

Agricultural Health Directorate (Notification Only) (46201)

Approval Name	Description	Estimated Time
Notification Only	Notify license entity that new application is applied.	There is no License Information in this license. Days

Fee Details (if any)

There is no Estimated Processing Time (Days) in this license.

License Information

There is no License Information in this license.

Municipality Affairs (Post) (46201)

Approval Name	Description	Estimated Time
Site Approval for Sale/Trade of animals	Municipality Approval for the Commercial Registration address or the site in which the Activity will be practiced	3 Days

Fee Details (if any)

10

License Information

General Conditions:
1. Size of shop/premises must be sufficient for the activity
2. Businesses may not carry out the activity outside the boundaries of the shop/ premises
3. It is prohibited to display or store any items or equipment outside the shop / premises boundary without prior approval from the Municipality. In the event of non-compliance, the Ministry of Municipality Affairs has the right to take necessary action.
4. Maintain cleanliness of the site
5. Comply with the parking space regulations as per the Construction Regulatory Requirements

Activity Specific Conditions:
1. The commercial registration for this activity can be registered on trading streets/areas
2. The commercial registration can be registered under an administration office provided the availability of an official farm or plantation nursery that is in compliant to the construction regulatory requirements

Note: Uploading pictures of the site/shop may expedite the process of obtaining approval

Required Documents

- Lease agreement (after obtaining the necessary approvals from other licensing entities)
- Shop photos

Other Documents

- Cabinet's Decision (56) of the year 2022 regarding the Regulatory Requirements of Construction for various areas in the Kingdom of Bahrain

Sale/Trading Activities; repair of motor vehicles and motorcycles

ISIC4	Business activity
46205-1	Sale/Trade of animals

Description

This activity includes the wholesale and/or retail sale of live animals.

This activity does not include
selling live fish/marine species, activity 46205-2 should be selected

Business Requirements

Age

18 and above

Allowed for Nationalities

- Bahraini 100%
- American 100%
- GCC 100%

Legal Type

It is allowed to register according to the legal forms mentioned below

Allowed for Individual Commercial Registration (ICR) : Yes

Allowed for Company Commercial Registration (CCR) : Yes

- Bahrain Shareholding Company (Public)
- With Limited Liability Company
- Branch of a Foreign Company
- Bahrain Shareholding Company (Closed)
- Partnership Company
- Simple Commandite Company
- Commandite By Shares Company
- Non Profit Company

Required Step of Licenses and Approvals

Ministry / Directorate	License / Approval Requirements	Approval Type
Control And Animal Health Directorate	Sale/Trade of animals	Post
Municipality Affairs	Site Approval for Sale/ Trade of animals	Post
Control And Animal Health Directorate	Sale/Trade of animals	Final Site Inspection

Control And Animal Health Directorate (Post) (46205-1)

Approval Name	Description	Estimated Time
Sale/Trade of animals	Sale/Trade of animals	5 Days

Fee Details (if any)

There is no Estimated Processing Time (Days) in this license.

License Information

The license application to display animals in zoos, bird parks, children's gardens, animal rental places, circuses or the like must be accompanied by a plan of the facility's location and another detailing its various buildings and facilities along with an operation plan that includes employment
Please refer to the standards of animal welfare practices
o Cruelty to animals
o Animal owner duties
o Conditions for dealing with animals
o Conditions for establishing animal facilities
o Animal transport
o The use of animals for scientific purposes
o Disposal of animals

Operational requirements after obtaining the Business license
1. Each commercial animal facility must appoint a veterinarian permanently, and he must be licensed by the competent authority to practice the veterinary profession, except for the temporary commercial or recreational facilities where the supervision of a veterinarian, a veterinary clinic, or a veterinary hospital is sufficient.
2. The competent authority issues a license for each animal observer in any commercial animal facility by the competent authority after the following conditions are met:
* Conducting a competency test in dealing with animals.
* Animal observers must submit scientific certificates that are duly documented and equivalent in the field of animal care.
* Animal observers are required to have duly documented experience certificates of no less than (5) five years in the same field.
* A duly documented (2) two-year experience certificate for animal observers in the

same field is sufficient.
A- The term of the license shall be according to the type and size of the facility, provided that it does not exceed one year;
3. The license granted to operate the animal facility shall be withdrawn if the license owner violates the Animal Welfare Law of the GCC countries or the regulations issued thereof, or if they violate the license terms issued by the competent authority.

Required Documents

- Lease agreement/ ownership certificate of a farm/ stockyard

Other Documents

- Minister of Works, Municipalities Affairs and Urban Planning Decision No. (37) of 2020 issuing the executive regulations of the Animal Welfare Law for the Gulf Cooperation Council states issued by Law No. (52) of 2014
- Standards of animal welfare practices

Municipality Affairs (Post) (46205-1)

Approval Name	Description	Estimated Time
Site Approval for Sale/Trade of animals	Municipality Approval for the Commercial Registration address or the site in which the Activity will be practiced	3 Days

Fee Details (if any)

10

License Information

General Conditions:
1. Size of shop/premises must be sufficient for the activity
2. Businesses may not carry out the activity outside the boundaries of the shop/ premises
3. It is prohibited to display or store any items or equipment outside the shop / premises boundary without prior approval from the Municipality. In the event of non-compliance, the Ministry of Municipality Affairs has the right to take necessary action.
4. Maintain cleanliness of the site
5. Comply with the parking space regulations as per the Construction Regulatory Requirements

Activity Specific Conditions:
1. The commercial registration for this activity can be registered on trading streets/areas
2. The commercial registration can be registered under an administration office provided the availability of an official farm or plantation nursery that is in compliant to the construction regulatory requirements

Note: Uploading pictures of the site/shop may expedite the process of obtaining approval

Required Documents

- Lease agreement (after obtaining the necessary approvals from other licensing entities)
- Shop photos

Other Documents

- Cabinet's Decision (56) of the year 2022 regarding the Regulatory Requirements of Construction for various areas in the Kingdom of Bahrain

Control And Animal Health Directorate (Final Site Inspection) (46205-1)

Approval Name	Description	Estimated Time
Sale/Trade of animals	Sale/Trade of animals	5 Days

Fee Details (if any)

There is no Estimated Processing Time (Days) in this license.

License Information

The license application to display animals in zoos, bird parks, children's gardens, animal rental places, circuses or the like must be accompanied by a plan of the facility's location and another detailing its various buildings and facilities along with an operation plan that includes employment
Please refer to the standards of animal welfare practices
o Cruelty to animals
o Animal owner duties
o Conditions for dealing with animals
o Conditions for establishing animal facilities
o Animal transport
o The use of animals for scientific purposes
o Disposal of animals

Operational requirements after obtaining the Business license
1. Each commercial animal facility must appoint a veterinarian permanently, and he must be licensed by the competent authority to practice the veterinary profession, except for the temporary commercial or recreational facilities where the supervision of a veterinarian, a veterinary clinic, or a veterinary hospital is sufficient.
2. The competent authority issues a license for each animal observer in any commercial animal facility by the competent authority after the following conditions are met:
* Conducting a competency test in dealing with animals.
* Animal observers must submit scientific certificates that are duly documented and equivalent in the field of animal care.
* Animal observers are required to have duly documented experience certificates of no

less than (5) five years in the same field.
* A duly documented (2) two-year experience certificate for animal observers in the same field is sufficient.
A- The term of the license shall be according to the type and size of the facility, provided that it does not exceed one year;
3. The license granted to operate the animal facility shall be withdrawn if the license owner violates the Animal Welfare Law of the GCC countries or the regulations issued thereof, or if they violate the license terms issued by the competent authority.

Required Documents

•Lease agreement/ ownership certificate of a farm/ stockyard

Other Documents

•Minister of Works, Municipalities Affairs and Urban Planning Decision No. (37) of 2020 issuing the executive regulations of the Animal Welfare Law for the Gulf Cooperation Council states issued by Law No. (52) of 2014
•Standards of animal welfare practices

Sale/Trading Activities; repair of motor vehicles and motorcycles

ISIC4	Business activity
46205-2	Sale/Trade of animals - Fish/Marine species

Description

This activity includes the wholesale and/or retail sale of live fish/ marine species

Business Requirements

Age

18 and above

Allowed for Nationalities

- Bahraini 100%
- GCC 100%
- American 100%

Legal Type

It is allowed to register according to the legal forms mentioned below

Allowed for Individual Commercial Registration (ICR) : Yes

Allowed for Company Commercial Registration (CCR) : Yes

- Bahrain Shareholding Company (Public)
- With Limited Liability Company
- Branch of a Foreign Company
- Bahrain Shareholding Company (Closed)
- Partnership Company
- Simple Commandite Company
- Commandite By Shares Company
- Non Profit Company

Required Step of Licenses and Approvals

Ministry / Directorate	License / Approval Requirements	Approval Type
Directorate of Fisheries	Notification Only	Notification Only
Municipality Affairs	Site Approval for Trading related activities	Post

Directorate of Fisheries (Notification Only) (46205-2)

Approval Name	Description	Estimated Time
Notification Only	Notify license entity that new application is applied.	There is no License Information in this license. Days

Fee Details (if any)

There is no Estimated Processing Time (Days) in this license.

License Information

There is no License Information in this license.

Municipality Affairs (Post) (46205-2)

Approval Name	Description	Estimated Time
Site Approval for Trading related activities	Municipality Approval for the Commercial Registration address or the site in which the Activity will be practiced	3 Days

Fee Details (if any)

10

License Information

General Conditions:
1. Size of shop/premises must be sufficient for the activity
2. Businesses may not carry out the activity outside the boundaries of the shop/ premises
3. It is prohibited to display or store any items or equipment outside the shop / premises boundary without prior approval from the Municipality
4. Maintain cleanliness of the site
5. Comply with the parking space regulations as per the Construction Regulatory Requirements

Activity Specific Conditions:
1. The commercial address for this activity can be registered in areas classified as commercial, services, or industrial
2. The commercial address of the Commercial Registration for this activity can an office address provided that the site is used for administrative purposes and not physical selling, and that the office is not located in a residential area

Required Documents

- Lease agreement (after obtaining the necessary approvals from other licensing entities)
- Shop photos

Other Documents

- Cabinet's Decision (56) of the year 2022 regarding the Regulatory Requirements of Construction for various areas in the Kingdom of Bahrain

Sale/Trading Activities; repair of motor vehicles and motorcycles

ISIC4	Business activity
46206	Sale/Trade of leather (untanned amimal skin)

Description

This activity includes the wholesale and/or retail of leather, hides, and skins.

Business Requirements

Age

18 and above

Allowed for Nationalities

- Bahraini 100%
- American 100%
- GCC 100%

Legal Type

It is allowed to register according to the legal forms mentioned below

Allowed for Individual Commercial Registration (ICR) : Yes

Allowed for Company Commercial Registration (CCR) : Yes

- Bahrain Shareholding Company (Public)
- With Limited Liability Company
- Branch of a Foreign Company
- Bahrain Shareholding Company (Closed)
- Partnership Company
- Simple Commandite Company
- Commandite By Shares Company
- Non Profit Company

Required Step of Licenses and Approvals

Ministry / Directorate	License / Approval Requirements	Approval Type
Supreme Council for Environment	Notification Only	Notification Only
Municipality Affairs	Site Approval for Trading related activities	Post

Supreme Council for Environment (Notification Only) (46206)

Approval Name	Description	Estimated Time
Notification Only	Notify license entity that new application is applied.	There is no License Information in this license. Days

Fee Details (if any)

There is no Estimated Processing Time (Days) in this license.

License Information

There is no License Information in this license.

Municipality Affairs (Post) (46206)

Approval Name	Description	Estimated Time
Site Approval for Trading related activities	Municipality Approval for the Commercial Registration address or the site in which the Activity will be practiced	3 Days

Fee Details (if any)

10

License Information

General Conditions:
1. Size of shop/premises must be sufficient for the activity
2. Businesses may not carry out the activity outside the boundaries of the shop/ premises
3. It is prohibited to display or store any items or equipment outside the shop / premises boundary without prior approval from the Municipality
4. Maintain cleanliness of the site
5. Comply with the parking space regulations as per the Construction Regulatory Requirements

Activity Specific Conditions:
1. The commercial address for this activity can be registered in areas classified as commercial, services, or industrial
2. The commercial address of the Commercial Registration for this activity can an office address provided that the site is used for administrative purposes and not physical selling, and that the office is not located in a residential area

Required Documents

- Lease agreement (after obtaining the necessary approvals from other licensing entities)
- Shop photos

Other Documents

- Cabinet's Decision (56) of the year 2022 regarding the Regulatory Requirements of Construction for various areas in the Kingdom of Bahrain

Sale/Trading Activities; repair of motor vehicles and motorcycles

ISIC4	Business activity
4649511	Sale/ Veterinary Medicines

Description

This includes the wholesale and/or retail sale of veterinary products and medical supplies (tools, equipment, and surgery material) and veterinary disinfectants: The owners are responsible for ensuring that the products are stored appropriately as per municipality regulations.

Business Requirements

Age

18 and above

Allowed for Nationalities

- Bahraini 100%
- GCC 100%
- American 100%

Legal Type

It is allowed to register according to the legal forms mentioned below

Allowed for Individual Commercial Registration (ICR) : Yes

Allowed for Company Commercial Registration (CCR) : Yes

- Bahrain Shareholding Company (Public)
- With Limited Liability Company
- Branch of a Foreign Company
- Bahrain Shareholding Company (Closed)
- Partnership Company
- Simple Commandite Company
- Commandite By Shares Company
- Non Profit Company

Required Step of Licenses and Approvals

Ministry / Directorate	License / Approval Requirements	Approval Type
Municipality Affairs	Site Approval for Trading related activities	Post
Control And Animal Health Directorate	Approval by Control and Animal Health Directorate	Post
Control And Animal Health Directorate	Approval by Control and Animal Health Directorate	Final Site Inspection

Municipality Affairs (Post) (4649511)

Approval Name	Description	Estimated Time
Site Approval for Trading related activities	Municipality Approval for the Commercial Registration address or the site in which the Activity will be practiced	3 Days

Fee Details (if any)

10

License Information

General Conditions:
1. Size of shop/premises must be sufficient for the activity
2. Businesses may not carry out the activity outside the boundaries of the shop/ premises
3. It is prohibited to display or store any items or equipment outside the shop / premises boundary without prior approval from the Municipality
4. Maintain cleanliness of the site
5. Comply with the parking space regulations as per the Construction Regulatory Requirements

Activity Specific Conditions:
1. The commercial address for this activity can be registered in areas classified as commercial, services, or industrial
2. The commercial address of the Commercial Registration for this activity can an office address provided that the site is used for administrative purposes and not physical selling, and that the office is not located in a residential area

Required Documents

- Lease agreement (after obtaining the necessary approvals from other licensing entities)
- Shop photos

Other Documents

- Cabinet's Decision (56) of the year 2022 regarding the Regulatory Requirements of Construction for various areas in the Kingdom of Bahrain

Control And Animal Health Directorate (Post) (4649511)

Approval Name	Description	Estimated Time
Approval by Control and Animal Health Directorate	Please refer to the “GCC’s Unified Standards for Veterinary Facilities” document in the “other downloadable documents” section	5 Days

Fee Details (if any)

There is no Estimated Processing Time (Days) in this license.

License Information

Please refer to the standards of animal welfare practices
o Cruelty to animals
o Animal owner duties
o Conditions for dealing with animals
o Conditions for establishing animal facilities
o Animal transport
o The use of animals for scientific purposes
o Disposal of animals

Other Documents

•GCC’s Unified Standards for Veterinary Facilities
•Standards of animal welfare practices

Control And Animal Health Directorate (Final Site Inspection) (4649511)

Approval Name	Description	Estimated Time
Approval by Control and Animal Health Directorate	Please refer to the “GCC’s Unified Standards for Veterinary Facilities” document in the “other downloadable documents” section	5 Days

Fee Details (if any)

There is no Estimated Processing Time (Days) in this license.

License Information

Please refer to the standards of animal welfare practices
o Cruelty to animals
o Animal owner duties
o Conditions for dealing with animals
o Conditions for establishing animal facilities
o Animal transport
o The use of animals for scientific purposes
o Disposal of animals

Other Documents

•GCC’s Unified Standards for Veterinary Facilities
•Standards of animal welfare practices

Sale/Trading Activities; repair of motor vehicles and motorcycles

ISIC4	Business activity
4652	Sale and installation of telecommunications equipment and parts

Description

This activity allows the holder to deal (import, export, sale and maintenance) with wireless equipment to private networks, such as private mobile radio service (PMR), fixed links (microwave), which provides for the ministries, establishments and private companies etc. in order to accomplish its functions, as well as allows the holder dealing in marine service equipment for telecommunications devices used on board ships and operations of seaports, as well as dealing in wireless equipment used on board aircrafts, airports operations and that are used in the amateur radio service etc.

Business Requirements

Age

18 and above

Allowed for Nationalities

- Bahraini 100%
- GCC 100%
- American 100%

Legal Type

It is allowed to register according to the legal forms mentioned below

Allowed for Individual Commercial Registration (ICR) : Yes

Allowed for Company Commercial Registration (CCR) : Yes

- Bahrain Shareholding Company (Public)
- With Limited Liability Company
- Branch of a Foreign Company
- Bahrain Shareholding Company (Closed)
- Partnership Company
- Simple Commandite Company
- Commandite By Shares Company
- Non Profit Company

Required Step of Licenses and Approvals

Ministry / Directorate	License / Approval Requirements	Approval Type
Directorate Of Wireless Licensing And Frequency Monitoring	Notification For Actvitiy Companies dealing in wireless equipment License	Notification Only
General Directorate Of Criminal Investigation	Approval by General Directorate of Criminal Investigation	Pre
Municipality Affairs	Site Approval for Trading related activities	Post

Directorate Of Wireless Licensing And Frequency Monitoring (Notification Only) (4652)

Approval Name	Description	Estimated Time
Notification For Actvitiy Companies dealing in wireless equipment License	Notification For Actvitiy Companies dealing in wireless equipment License	There is no License Information in this license. Days

Fee Details (if any)

There is no Estimated Processing Time (Days) in this license.

License Information

Requirements after obtaining the commercial license :

• The holder of a commercial registration with this activity should, under no circumstance, program or reprogram the radio-communication equipment without approval from the TRA.

• The applicant must obtain a “Type Approval” Certificate for all radio-communication equipment from the TRA prior to importing the equipment and making them available in the local market.

• A log record for the radios equipment to be sold must be maintained during the year, and the records shall be checked by the TRA prior to the issuance of the renewal license

Other Documents

- APPLICATION FOR MARITIME STATION
- Application for Amateur License Station Form
- Frequency Data Entry Form
- IMPORTATION OF WIERLESS RADIO APPLICATION FORM
- TRA - Frequencies License Modification Request_Final (1)_22092022
- TRA - Frequencies License and the Microwave Frequencies Link Request_Final_22092022
- TRA - Frequency License Cancelation and Microwave Frequencies Link Reque_Final_22092022
- TRA - Import Installation Use of Wireless Network Request_Final_22092022
- TRA - Maritime Wireless Communication Licenses Request_Final_22092022
- TRA - Type Approval Certificate Request and the Short Range_Final_22092022
- TRA - Wireless Amateurs License Request_Final_22092022
- Telecom Law

General Directorate Of Criminal Investigation (Pre) (4652)

Approval Name	Description	Estimated Time
Approval by General Directorate of Criminal Investigation	General Directorate of Criminal Investigation Approval for the Activity	7 Days

Fee Details (if any)

There is no Estimated Processing Time (Days) in this license.

License Information

- The applicant should not have a criminal record, unless they have been rehabilitated in criminal cases

Municipality Affairs (Post) (4652)

Approval Name	Description	Estimated Time
Site Approval for Trading related activities	Municipality Approval for the Commercial Registration address or the site in which the Activity will be practiced	3 Days

Fee Details (if any)

10

License Information

General Conditions:
1. Size of shop/premises must be sufficient for the activity
2. Businesses may not carry out the activity outside the boundaries of the shop/ premises
3. It is prohibited to display or store any items or equipment outside the shop / premises boundary without prior approval from the Municipality
4. Maintain cleanliness of the site
5. Comply with the parking space regulations as per the Construction Regulatory Requirements

Activity Specific Conditions:
1. The commercial address for this activity can be registered in areas classified as commercial, services, or industrial
2. The commercial address of the Commercial Registration for this activity can an office address provided that the site is used for administrative purposes and not physical selling, and that the office is not located in a residential area

Required Documents

- Lease agreement (after obtaining the necessary approvals from other licensing entities)
- Shop photos

Other Documents

- Cabinet's Decision (56) of the year 2022 regarding the Regulatory Requirements of Construction for various areas in the Kingdom of Bahrain

Sale/Trading Activities; repair of motor vehicles and motorcycles

ISIC4	Business activity
4653	Sale/Trade of agricultural machinery, equipment and supplies

Description

This activity includes:
- wholesale and/or retail of agricultural machinery and equipment:
· ploughs, manure spreaders, seeders
· harvesters
· threshers
· milking machines
· poultry-keeping machines, bee-keeping machines
· tractors used in agriculture and forestry· lawn mowersNotes: The owners are responsible for ensuring that the products are stored appropriately as per municipality regulations.

Business Requirements

Age

18 and above

Allowed for Nationalities

- Bahraini 100%
- GCC 100%
- American 100%

Legal Type

It is allowed to register according to the legal forms mentioned below

Allowed for Individual Commercial Registration (ICR) : Yes

Allowed for Company Commercial Registration (CCR) : Yes

- Bahrain Shareholding Company (Public)
- With Limited Liability Company
- Branch of a Foreign Company
- Bahrain Shareholding Company (Closed)
- Partnership Company
- Simple Commandite Company
- Commandite By Shares Company
- Non Profit Company

Required Step of Licenses and Approvals

Ministry / Directorate	License / Approval Requirements	Approval Type
Municipality Affairs	Site Approval for Trading related activities	Post

Municipality Affairs (Post) (4653)

Approval Name	Description	Estimated Time
Site Approval for Trading related activities	Municipality Approval for the Commercial Registration address or the site in which the Activity will be practiced	3 Days

Fee Details (if any)

10

License Information

General Conditions:
1. Size of shop/premises must be sufficient for the activity
2. Businesses may not carry out the activity outside the boundaries of the shop/ premises
3. It is prohibited to display or store any items or equipment outside the shop / premises boundary without prior approval from the Municipality
4. Maintain cleanliness of the site
5. Comply with the parking space regulations as per the Construction Regulatory Requirements

Activity Specific Conditions:
1. The commercial address for this activity can be registered in areas classified as commercial, services, or industrial
2. The commercial address of the Commercial Registration for this activity can an office address provided that the site is used for administrative purposes and not physical selling, and that the office is not located in a residential area

Required Documents

- Lease agreement (after obtaining the necessary approvals from other licensing entities)
- Shop photos

Other Documents

- Cabinet's Decision (56) of the year 2022 regarding the Regulatory Requirements of Construction for various areas in the Kingdom of Bahrain

Sale/Trading Activities; repair of motor vehicles and motorcycles

ISIC4	Business activity
4659-1	Sale/Trade in other machinery and equipment and parts

Description

This activity includes the wholesale and/or retail of all kind of machinery and equipment not specified elsewhere, such as:
- Office machinery and equipment, except computers and computer peripheral equipment
- Office furniture
- Renewable Energy equipment, tools, and parts, such as solar panels.
- Transport equipment except motor vehicles, motorcycles and bicycles
- Production-line robots
- Wires and switches and other installation equipment for industrial use
- Electrical material such as electrical motors, transformers
- Machine tools of any type and for any material
- other machinery for use in industry, trade and navigation and other services
- computer-controlled machine tools
- computer-controlled machinery for the textile industry and of computer-controlled sewing and knitting machines
- measuring instruments and equipment

Business Requirements

Age

18 and above

Allowed for Nationalities

Bahraini
100%

GCC
100%

American
100%

Legal Type

It is allowed to register according to the legal forms mentioned below

Allowed for Individual Commercial Registration (ICR) : Yes

Allowed for Company Commercial Registration (CCR) : Yes

- Bahrain Shareholding Company (Public)
- With Limited Liability Company
- Branch of a Foreign Company
- Bahrain Shareholding Company (Closed)
- Partnership Company
- Simple Commandite Company
- Commandite By Shares Company
- Non Profit Company

Required Step of Licenses and Approvals

Ministry / Directorate	License / Approval Requirements	Approval Type
Municipality Affairs	Site Approval for Trading related activities	Post

Municipality Affairs (Post) (4659-1)

Approval Name	Description	Estimated Time
Site Approval for Trading related activities	Municipality Approval for the Commercial Registration address or the site in which the Activity will be practiced	3 Days

Fee Details (if any)

10

License Information

General Conditions:
1. Size of shop/premises must be sufficient for the activity
2. Businesses may not carry out the activity outside the boundaries of the shop/ premises
3. It is prohibited to display or store any items or equipment outside the shop / premises boundary without prior approval from the Municipality
4. Maintain cleanliness of the site
5. Comply with the parking space regulations as per the Construction Regulatory Requirements

Activity Specific Conditions:
1. The commercial address for this activity can be registered in areas classified as commercial, services, or industrial
2. The commercial address of the Commercial Registration for this activity can an office address provided that the site is used for administrative purposes and not physical selling, and that the office is not located in a residential area

Required Documents

- Lease agreement (after obtaining the necessary approvals from other licensing entities)
- Shop photos

Other Documents

- Cabinet's Decision (56) of the year 2022 regarding the Regulatory Requirements of Construction for various areas in the Kingdom of Bahrain

Sale/Trading Activities; repair of motor vehicles and motorcycles

ISIC4	Business activity
4659-2	Sale/Trade in other machinery and equipment and parts - Medical Devices, Supplies and Related Spare Parts

Description

- Includes the Import, export and sale of systems and equipment used in hospitals and clinics for disease diagnosis, treatment and surgical operations, as well as medicine and blood preservation and Xray check up, sterilization and harmful waste disposal, physical therapy and rehabilitation equipment This also includes manual its and instruments used for check up, surgical operations and bandaging Also, it will includes import, export and sale of simple articles used in medical treatment such as cotton, bandage, gloves, blood bags, scissors, syringes, plasters, etc

- repair and maintenance of irradiation, electromedical and electrotherapeutic equipment, such as: magnetic resonance imaging equipment; medical ultrasound equipment; pacemakers; hearing aids; electrocardiographs; electromedical endoscopic equipment; irradiation apparatus

Business Requirements

Age

18 and above

Allowed for Nationalities

Bahraini 100%		GCC 100%	
American 100%		Singaporean 100%	
Icelander 100%		Liechtenstein er 100%	
Norwegian 100%		Swiss 100%	

Legal Type

It is allowed to register according to the legal forms mentioned below

Allowed for Individual Commercial Registration (ICR) : Yes

Allowed for Company Commercial Registration (CCR) : Yes

- Bahrain Shareholding Company (Public)
- With Limited Liability Company
- Branch of a Foreign Company
- Bahrain Shareholding Company (Closed)
- Partnership Company
- Simple Commandite Company
- Commandite By Shares Company
- Non Profit Company

Required Step of Licenses and Approvals

Ministry / Directorate	License / Approval Requirements	Approval Type
NHRA- Medical Devices Regulation Section	License of Import and export and sale of Medical devices supplies and related spare parts - Pre Approval	Pre

Municipality Affairs	Site Approval for Trading related activities	Post
NHRA- Medical Devices Regulation Section	License of Import and export and sale of Medical devices supplies and related spare parts - Final Approval	Final Site Inspection

NHRA- Medical Devices Regulation Section (Pre) (4659-2)

Approval Name	Description	Estimated Time
License of Import and export and sale of Medical devices supplies and related spare parts - Pre Approval	License of Import and export and sale of Medical devices supplies and related spare parts - Pre Approval	3 Days

Fee Details (if any)

(24)https://www.nhra.bh/Departments/MDR/MediaHandler/GenericHandler/documents/departments/MDR/Circulars/Resolution%20No.%20

License Information

Requirements for obtaining initial approval :
1- To Provide a local policy and procedure guideline which includes (importing,distribution ,complains), and logging all of them in a tracking system.

2- To comply with the medical storing facility guidelines of the NHRA, which may be found in the 'other documents' section.

Requirements after obtaining the license :
1- To comply with the guidelines of NHRA in the other downloadable documents section.
2- To keep track of all the local policies and procedures.
Note: this activity can't be at the same address as other activities that serve medical services to patients.

Required Documents

- 50 bd application fees payment receipt
- Captures from Storing Facility system (Software).
- Copy of Authorized Representative internal Policies
- Copy of Authorized Representative internal forms
- Medica device Authorized representative registration Form
- Storage if external (CR, contact agreement, inventory record capture), if any

Other Documents

- Medical Device Company Registration Check List
- Medical Devices Company Registration Form

Municipality Affairs (Post) (4659-2)

Approval Name	Description	Estimated Time
Site Approval for Trading related activities	Municipality Approval for the Commercial Registration address or the site in which the Activity will be practiced	3 Days

Fee Details (if any)

10

License Information

General Conditions:
1. Size of shop/premises must be sufficient for the activity
2. Businesses may not carry out the activity outside the boundaries of the shop/ premises
3. It is prohibited to display or store any items or equipment outside the shop / premises boundary without prior approval from the Municipality
4. Maintain cleanliness of the site
5. Comply with the parking space regulations as per the Construction Regulatory Requirements

Activity Specific Conditions:
1. The commercial address for this activity can be registered in areas classified as commercial, services, or industrial
2. The commercial address of the Commercial Registration for this activity can an office address provided that the site is used for administrative purposes and not physical selling, and that the office is not located in a residential area

Required Documents

- Lease agreement (after obtaining the necessary approvals from other licensing entities)
- Shop photos

Other Documents

- Cabinet's Decision (56) of the year 2022 regarding the Regulatory Requirements of Construction for various areas in the Kingdom of Bahrain

NHRA- Medical Devices Regulation Section (Final Site Inspection) (4659-2)

Approval Name	Description	Estimated Time
License of Import and export and sale of Medical devices supplies and related spare parts - Final Approval	License of Import and export and sale of Medical devices supplies and related spare parts - Final Approval	3 Days

Fee Details (if any)

(24)https://www.nhra.bh/Departments/MDR/MediaHandler/GenericHandler/documents/departments/MDR/Circulars/Resolution%20No.%20

License Information

There is no License Information in this license.

Required Documents

- Inspection request form

Sale/Trading Activities; repair of motor vehicles and motorcycles

ISIC4	Business activity
46593-1	Sale/Trade of Transportation spare parts and equipment except for Motor Vehicles, Motor cycles.

Description

This activity includes the wholesale and/or retail sale of transportation spare parts and equipment except for Motor Vehicles, Motor cycles.

Business Requirements

Age

18 and above

Allowed for Nationalities

- Bahraini 100%
- American 100%
- GCC 100%

Legal Type

It is allowed to register according to the legal forms mentioned below

Allowed for Individual Commercial Registration (ICR) : Yes

Allowed for Company Commercial Registration (CCR) : Yes

- Bahrain Shareholding Company (Public)
- With Limited Liability Company
- Branch of a Foreign Company
- Bahrain Shareholding Company (Closed)
- Partnership Company
- Simple Commandite Company
- Commandite By Shares Company
- Non Profit Company

Required Step of Licenses and Approvals

Ministry / Directorate	License / Approval Requirements	Approval Type
Municipality Affairs	Site Approval for Trading related activities	Post

Municipality Affairs (Post) (46593-1)

Approval Name	Description	Estimated Time
Site Approval for Trading related activities	Municipality Approval for the Commercial Registration address or the site in which the Activity will be practiced	3 Days

Fee Details (if any)

10

License Information

General Conditions:
1. Size of shop/premises must be sufficient for the activity
2. Businesses may not carry out the activity outside the boundaries of the shop/ premises
3. It is prohibited to display or store any items or equipment outside the shop / premises boundary without prior approval from the Municipality
4. Maintain cleanliness of the site
5. Comply with the parking space regulations as per the Construction Regulatory Requirements

Activity Specific Conditions:
1. The commercial address for this activity can be registered in areas classified as commercial, services, or industrial
2. The commercial address of the Commercial Registration for this activity can an office address provided that the site is used for administrative purposes and not physical selling, and that the office is not located in a residential area

Required Documents

- Lease agreement (after obtaining the necessary approvals from other licensing entities)
- Shop photos

Other Documents

- Cabinet's Decision (56) of the year 2022 regarding the Regulatory Requirements of Construction for various areas in the Kingdom of Bahrain

Sale/Trading Activities; repair of motor vehicles and motorcycles

ISIC4	Business activity
46593-2	Sale/Trade of Transportation spare parts and equipment except for Motor Vehicles, Motor cycles. - Import, export and sale of aircraft spare parts

Description

This license is required to import, export, and sell aircraft spare parts

Business Requirements

Age

18 and above

Allowed for Nationalities

- Bahraini 100%
- American 100%
- GCC 100%

Legal Type

It is allowed to register according to the legal forms mentioned below

Allowed for Individual Commercial Registration (ICR) : Yes

Allowed for Company Commercial Registration (CCR) : Yes

- Bahrain Shareholding Company (Public)
- With Limited Liability Company
- Branch of a Foreign Company
- Bahrain Shareholding Company (Closed)
- Partnership Company
- Simple Commandite Company
- Commandite By Shares Company
- Non Profit Company

Required Step of Licenses and Approvals

Ministry / Directorate	License / Approval Requirements	Approval Type
Civil Aviation Affairs	Import, Export and Sale of Aircraft Spare Parts	Pre
General Directorate Of Criminal Investigation	Approval by General Directorate of Criminal Investigation	Pre
Civil Aviation Affairs	Import, Export and Sale of Aircraft Spare Parts	Post
Municipality Affairs	Site Approval for Trading related activities	Post
Civil Aviation Affairs	Import, Export and Sale of Aircraft Spare Parts	Final Site Inspection

Civil Aviation Affairs (Pre) (46593-2)

Approval Name	Description	Estimated Time
Import, Export and Sale of Aircraft Spare Parts	Providing import, export and sales of aircraft spare parts.	10 Days

Fee Details (if any)

• Application fees: BD 100 (non-refundable in cases where the application is not approved).
• License fees BD1,000.
• Annual renewal 50% of the license fees.

License Information

• The capital of the company must not be less than BD100,000.
• The license is valid for one year and renewal application must be submitted 2 months before expiry
• Adherence to the standards and regulatory requirements contained in the regulations under the Civil Aviation Law issued by virtue of Law No. 14 of 2013

Required Documents

•Feasibility, technical, economic and financial studies
•Fill application Form ATD/ATCL/OF04
•Memorandum of Association

Other Documents

- Civil Aviation Law No.14 of 2013
- Minister of Transportation and Telecommunication Decree No. 25 of 2016 of CAA fees and departure fees.
- Minster of Transportation and Telecommunication Decree No. 21 of 2013 issuing the regulations under the Civil Aviation Law.

General Directorate Of Criminal Investigation (Pre) (46593-2)

Approval Name	Description	Estimated Time
Approval by General Directorate of Criminal Investigation	General Directorate of Criminal Investigation Approval for the Activity	7 Days

Fee Details (if any)

There is no Estimated Processing Time (Days) in this license.

License Information

- The applicant should not have a criminal record, unless they have been rehabilitated in criminal cases

Civil Aviation Affairs (Post) (46593-2)

Approval Name	Description	Estimated Time
Import, Export and Sale of Aircraft Spare Parts	Providing import, export and sales of aircraft spare parts.	10 Days

Fee Details (if any)

• Application fees: BD 100 (non-refundable in cases where the application is not approved).
• License fees BD1,000.
• Annual renewal 50% of the license fees.

License Information

• The capital of the company must not be less than BD100,000.
• The license is valid for one year and renewal application must be submitted 2 months before expiry
• Adherence to the standards and regulatory requirements contained in the regulations under the Civil Aviation Law issued by virtue of Law No. 14 of 2013

Required Documents

•Feasibility, technical, economic and financial studies
•Fill application Form ATD/ATCL/OF04
•Memorandum of Association

Other Documents

- Civil Aviation Law No.14 of 2013
- Minister of Transportation and Telecommunication Decree No. 25 of 2016 of CAA fees and departure fees.
- Minster of Transportation and Telecommunication Decree No. 21 of 2013 issuing the regulations under the Civil Aviation Law.

Municipality Affairs (Post) (46593-2)

Approval Name	Description	Estimated Time
Site Approval for Trading related activities	Municipality Approval for the Commercial Registration address or the site in which the Activity will be practiced	3 Days

Fee Details (if any)

10

License Information

General Conditions:
1. Size of shop/premises must be sufficient for the activity
2. Businesses may not carry out the activity outside the boundaries of the shop/ premises
3. It is prohibited to display or store any items or equipment outside the shop / premises boundary without prior approval from the Municipality
4. Maintain cleanliness of the site
5. Comply with the parking space regulations as per the Construction Regulatory Requirements

Activity Specific Conditions:
1. The commercial address for this activity can be registered in areas classified as commercial, services, or industrial
2. The commercial address of the Commercial Registration for this activity can an office address provided that the site is used for administrative purposes and not physical selling, and that the office is not located in a residential area

Required Documents

- Lease agreement (after obtaining the necessary approvals from other licensing entities)
- Shop photos

Other Documents

- Cabinet's Decision (56) of the year 2022 regarding the Regulatory Requirements of Construction for various areas in the Kingdom of Bahrain

Civil Aviation Affairs (Final Site Inspection) (46593-2)

Approval Name	Description	Estimated Time
Import, Export and Sale of Aircraft Spare Parts	Providing import, export and sales of aircraft spare parts.	10 Days

Fee Details (if any)

• Application fees: BD 100 (non-refundable in cases where the application is not approved).
• License fees BD1,000.
• Annual renewal 50% of the license fees.

License Information

• The capital of the company must not be less than BD100,000.
• The license is valid for one year and renewal application must be submitted 2 months before expiry
• Adherence to the standards and regulatory requirements contained in the regulations under the Civil Aviation Law issued by virtue of Law No. 14 of 2013

Required Documents

•Feasibility, technical, economic and financial studies
•Fill application Form ATD/ATCL/OF04
•Memorandum of Association

Other Documents

- Civil Aviation Law No.14 of 2013
- Minister of Transportation and Telecommunication Decree No. 25 of 2016 of CAA fees and departure fees.
- Minster of Transportation and Telecommunication Decree No. 21 of 2013 issuing the regulations under the Civil Aviation Law.

Sale/Trading Activities; repair of motor vehicles and motorcycles

ISIC4	Business activity
4661-1	Sale/Trade of solid, liquid and gaseous fuels and related products - Collecting used oil and waste lubricating oils

Description

Collecting used oil and waste lubricating oils

Business Requirements

Age

18 and above

Allowed for Nationalities

Bahraini
100%

GCC
100%

Legal Type

It is allowed to register according to the legal forms mentioned below

Allowed for Individual Commercial Registration (ICR) : Yes

Allowed for Company Commercial Registration (CCR) : Yes

- Bahrain Shareholding Company (Public)
- Bahrain Shareholding Company (Closed)
- Simple Commandite Company
- Non Profit Company
- With Limited Liability Company
- Partnership Company
- Commandite By Shares Company

Required Step of Licenses and Approvals

Ministry / Directorate	License / Approval Requirements	Approval Type
Supreme Council for Environment	Environmental Approval for Sale/Trade of solid, liquid and gaseous fuels and related products - Collecting used oil and waste	Post
Municipality Affairs	Site Approval for Trading related activities	Post
General Directrate Of Civil Defence	Collecting used oil and waste lubricating oils	Post

Supreme Council for Environment (Post) (4661-1)

Approval Name	Description	Estimated Time
Environmental Approval for Sale/ Trade of solid, liquid and gaseous fuels and related products - Collecting used oil and waste	This service aims to assess the environmental impact and licensing of development, industrial and production projects and activities, in accordance with the standards of protecting the environment and its natural resources	10 Days

Fee Details (if any)

- 30 Bahraini Dinars or 200 Bahraini Dinars for the fast-track procedure (when the data requested within the EA-9 form is sufficient without the need for additional studies)
- 4000 Bahraini Dinars or 6000 Bahraini Dinars for the fast track procedure (when it is necessary to submit an environmental impact assessment study for the project), with an additional payment of 100 Bahraini Dinars when it is necessary to submit a proposal for the scope of the study before submitting it or 500 Bahraini Dinars for a fast track procedure when the proposed scope of the study is being submitted before the study

License Information

To check the requirements for this approval, kindly download the detailed requirements sheet from the other downloadable documents section, which includes the following requirements:

- Building layout engineering and equipment requirements
- Workplace requirements
- Storage requirements
- Material management requirements
- Waste Management Requirements

- Documents and reporting requirements
- General requirements

Other Documents

- Annex to the Minister of Housing, Municipalities and Environment order regarding the project's environmental assessment
- Law No. (2) of 2021 regarding the environmental standards of air as decided by the Chairman of the Supreme Council for Environment
- Law No. (3) of 2021 regarding the environmental standards of water as decided by the Chairman of the Supreme Council for the Environment
- Law No. (7) of 2022 regarding the environment
- Ministerial Order No. (1) of 1998 regarding Project's Environmental Assessment
- Ministerial Order No. (10) of 2006 regarding the installation of devices for on-line monitoring of atmospheric air pollutants
- Ministerial Order No. (3) of 2005 regarding environmental requirements and standards in workplaces, especially regarding workers' exposure to heat and noise, and the provision of tools and protective clothing such as gloves, glasses, face masks and earplugs, with a commitment to use them during work
- Ministerial Order No. (3) of 2006 regarding the management of hazardous waste
- Ministerial Order No. (4) of 2005 regarding the management of used oils
- Ministerial Order No. (4) of 2006 regarding the management of hazardous chemicals
- Ministerial Order No. (4) of 2021 regarding the fees of the licenses and services provided by the Supreme Council for Environment
- Ministerial Order No. (6) of 2013 amending order No. (4) of 2006 regarding the management of hazardous chemicals
- Ministerial Order No. (7) of 2002 regarding the control importation and use of prohibited and severely restricted chemicals, and not to import any chemical compound except after obtaining approvals of all concerned authorities, including the executive body of the Supreme Council for Environment
- Ministerial Order No. (7) of 2013 amending order No. (3) of 2006 regarding the management of hazardous waste
- Ministerial Order No. 4 of 2014 regarding the management of the environmental consulting offices operations in the Kingdom of Bahrain
- Requirements for business activities

Municipality Affairs (Post) (4661-1)

Approval Name	Description	Estimated Time
Site Approval for Trading related activities	Municipality Approval for the Commercial Registration address or the site in which the Activity will be practiced	3 Days

Fee Details (if any)

10

License Information

General Conditions:
1. Size of shop/premises must be sufficient for the activity
2. Businesses may not carry out the activity outside the boundaries of the shop/ premises
3. It is prohibited to display or store any items or equipment outside the shop / premises boundary without prior approval from the Municipality
4. Maintain cleanliness of the site
5. Comply with the parking space regulations as per the Construction Regulatory Requirements

Activity Specific Conditions:
1. The commercial address for this activity can be registered in areas classified as commercial, services, or industrial
2. The commercial address of the Commercial Registration for this activity can an office address provided that the site is used for administrative purposes and not physical selling, and that the office is not located in a residential area

Required Documents

- Lease agreement (after obtaining the necessary approvals from other licensing entities)
- Shop photos

Other Documents

- Cabinet's Decision (56) of the year 2022 regarding the Regulatory Requirements of Construction for various areas in the Kingdom of Bahrain

General Directrate Of Civil Defence (Post) (4661-1)

Approval Name	Description	Estimated Time
Collecting used oil and waste lubricating oils	This Approval is required to insure compliance with the fire prevention and protection requirements of General Directorate of Civil Defense	5 Days

Fee Details (if any)

30 BD Fire prevention and protection certificate fees

License Information

1. Provide the documents mentioned in the “Required Documents” section
2. Comply with the requirements listed in the inspection checklist found in the “Other Downloadable Documents” section
3. Provide proof to the General Directorate of Civil Defense that an alarm and firefighting equipment have been installed within 6 months of obtaining a Commercial Registration and license

If a warehouse is used: A safety certificate must be obtained viaBahrain.bhA safety certificate must be attached, if available.

Required Documents

•No-objection letter for alarm and extinguisher installation from Civil Defense, or purchasing receipt of alarm equipment and extinguishers along with an annual maintenance contract from a company certified by Civil defense
•Photos required for civil defense activities
•Purchasing invoice of security camera system with specifying the type and storage capacity.

Other Documents

- Sample pictures of the general directorate of civil defense requirements
- licencing requirments of the general directorat of civil defense for activity number "4661-1"

Sale/Trading Activities; repair of motor vehicles and motorcycles

ISIC4	Business activity
4661-2	Sale/Trade of solid, liquid and gaseous fuels and related products - Specialty petroleum products import

Description

This activity includes the import and re-export of racing fuel in its various types specially designed for high-performance engines and racing vehicle.

Business Requirements

Age

18 and above

Allowed for Nationalities

Bahraini
100%

Legal Type

It is allowed to register according to the legal forms mentioned below

Allowed for Individual Commercial Registration (ICR) : Yes

Allowed for Company Commercial Registration (CCR) : Yes

- Bahrain Shareholding Company (Public)
- Bahrain Shareholding Company (Closed)
- Simple Commandite Company
- Non Profit Company
- With Limited Liability Company
- Partnership Company
- Commandite By Shares Company

Required Step of Licenses and Approvals

Ministry / Directorate	License / Approval Requirements	Approval Type
Municipality Affairs	Site Approval for Trading related activities	Post

Municipality Affairs (Post) (4661-2)

Approval Name	Description	Estimated Time
Site Approval for Trading related activities	Municipality Approval for the Commercial Registration address or the site in which the Activity will be practiced	3 Days

Fee Details (if any)

10

License Information

General Conditions:
1. Size of shop/premises must be sufficient for the activity
2. Businesses may not carry out the activity outside the boundaries of the shop/ premises
3. It is prohibited to display or store any items or equipment outside the shop / premises boundary without prior approval from the Municipality
4. Maintain cleanliness of the site
5. Comply with the parking space regulations as per the Construction Regulatory Requirements

Activity Specific Conditions:
1. The commercial address for this activity can be registered in areas classified as commercial, services, or industrial
2. The commercial address of the Commercial Registration for this activity can an office address provided that the site is used for administrative purposes and not physical selling, and that the office is not located in a residential area

Required Documents

- Lease agreement (after obtaining the necessary approvals from other licensing entities)
- Shop photos

Other Documents

- Cabinet's Decision (56) of the year 2022 regarding the Regulatory Requirements of Construction for various areas in the Kingdom of Bahrain

Sale/Trading Activities; repair of motor vehicles and motorcycles

ISIC4	Business activity
4661-5	Sale/Trade of solid, liquid and gaseous fuels and related products - Exporting blended petroleum products.

Description

This includes the export of blended petroleum products that incorporate supported petroleum products such as diesel and/or kerosene, or derivatives thereof. Please note that this activity does not involve used oils, lubricant waste, or non-petroleum lubricating oils.

Business Requirements

✔ Age

18 and above

✔ Allowed for Nationalities

Bahraini
100%

✔ Legal Type

It is allowed to register according to the legal forms mentioned below

Allowed for Individual Commercial Registration (ICR) : Yes

Allowed for Company Commercial Registration (CCR) : Yes

- Bahrain Shareholding Company (Public)
- Bahrain Shareholding Company (Closed)
- Simple Commandite Company
- Non Profit Company
- With Limited Liability Company
- Partnership Company
- Commandite By Shares Company

Required Step of Licenses and Approvals

Ministry / Directorate	License / Approval Requirements	Approval Type
Ministry of Oil and Environment	Notification for Exporting blended petroleum products.	Notification Only
Municipality Affairs	Site Approval for Trading related activities	Post
General Directrate Of Civil Defence	Sale/Trade of solid, liquid and gaseous fuels and related products - Petroleum products additives (treated) export	Post

Ministry of Oil and Environment (Notification Only) (4661-5)

Approval Name	Description	Estimated Time
Notification for Exporting blended petroleum products.	Notify the Monitoring & Licensing Directorate on obtaining a commercial registration with the license to practice the activity	There is no License Information in this license. Days

Fee Details (if any)

There is no Estimated Processing Time (Days) in this license.

License Information

Operational Requirements:
Please consider the following requirements after obtaining the license:

To establish a unit to produce blended petroleum products on the lands of the Kingdom of Bahrain, the following requirements must be met:
- Obtain licenses from the relevant government authorities: Ministry of Municipalities, Ministry of Industry, Commerce, Supreme Council for the Environment, and General Directorate of Civil Defense.
- Provide a detailed description of the production processes involved.
- Specify the types of blended petroleum products and provide relevant product data sheets.
- Laboratory analysis of the products (optional).
- Provide the blending ratios of the products.
- Submit documentation that proves the quantity and source of supported petroleum products used in the production, which should be sourced from Bahrain Petroleum Company (BAPCO) or an approved petroleum company recognized by the Ministry.
- Quantities of the products should be in bulk, non-divisible quantities, such as barrels of 20 liters or more, containers, etc.
- Request field inspection and schedule an inspection appointment with the Inspection and Control Department of the Ministry before commencing production.

- Comply with the requirements for pre-export inspection.
- Comply with the requirements for pre-declaration of exports through the Horizon customs system.

Municipality Affairs (Post) (4661-5)

Approval Name	Description	Estimated Time
Site Approval for Trading related activities	Municipality Approval for the Commercial Registration address or the site in which the Activity will be practiced	3 Days

Fee Details (if any)

10

License Information

General Conditions:
1. Size of shop/premises must be sufficient for the activity
2. Businesses may not carry out the activity outside the boundaries of the shop/ premises
3. It is prohibited to display or store any items or equipment outside the shop / premises boundary without prior approval from the Municipality
4. Maintain cleanliness of the site
5. Comply with the parking space regulations as per the Construction Regulatory Requirements

Activity Specific Conditions:
1. The commercial address for this activity can be registered in areas classified as commercial, services, or industrial
2. The commercial address of the Commercial Registration for this activity can an office address provided that the site is used for administrative purposes and not physical selling, and that the office is not located in a residential area

Required Documents

- Lease agreement (after obtaining the necessary approvals from other licensing entities)
- Shop photos

Other Documents

- Cabinet's Decision (56) of the year 2022 regarding the Regulatory Requirements of Construction for various areas in the Kingdom of Bahrain

General Directrate Of Civil Defence (Post) (4661-5)

Approval Name	Description	Estimated Time
Sale/Trade of solid, liquid and gaseous fuels and related products - Petroleum products additives (treated) export	This Approval is required to insure compliance with the fire prevention and protection requirements of General Directorate of Civil Defense	5 Days

Fee Details (if any)

30 BD Fire prevention and protection certificate fees

License Information

1. Provide the documents mentioned in the “Required Documents” section
2. Comply with the requirements listed in the inspection checklist found in the “Other Downloadable Documents” section
3. Provide proof to the General Directorate of Civil Defense that an alarm and firefighting equipment have been installed within 6 months of obtaining a Commercial Registration and license

If a warehouse is used: A safety certificate must be obtained viaBahrain.bhA safety certificate must be attached, if available.

Other Documents

•Sample pictures of the general directorate of civil defense requirements
•licencing requirments of the general directorat of civil defense for activity number "4661-5"

Sale/Trading Activities; repair of motor vehicles and motorcycles

ISIC4	Business activity
4661-6	Sale/Trade of solid, liquid and gaseous fuels and related products - Exporting recycled used oils, lubricants, and greases

Description

The export of the following petroleum oils is included:
- Recycled used oils that produce base oils in various grades.
- Lubricating oils derived from recycled base oils.
- Lubricating oils derived from virgin base oils.
- Lubricating oils derived from recycled base oils or virgin base oils.
- Please note that this activity does not include used oils, non-petroleum-based lubricating oils, or waste lubricating oils.

Business Requirements

Age

18 and above

Allowed for Nationalities

Bahraini
100%

Legal Type

It is allowed to register according to the legal forms mentioned below

Allowed for Individual Commercial Registration (ICR) : Yes

Allowed for Company Commercial Registration (CCR) : Yes

- Bahrain Shareholding Company (Public)
- Bahrain Shareholding Company (Closed)
- Simple Commandite Company
- Non Profit Company
- With Limited Liability Company
- Partnership Company
- Commandite By Shares Company

Required Step of Licenses and Approvals

Ministry / Directorate	License / Approval Requirements	Approval Type
Ministry of Oil and Environment	Notification for Exporting recycled used oils, lubricants, and greases	Notification Only
General Directrate Of Civil Defence	Sale/Trade of solid, liquid and gaseous fuels and related products - Lubricants and greases export	Post
Municipality Affairs	Site Approval for Trading related activities	Post

Ministry of Oil and Environment (Notification Only) (4661-6)

Approval Name	Description	Estimated Time
Notification for Exporting recycled used oils, lubricants, and greases	Notify the Monitoring & Licensing Directorate on obtaining a commercial registration with the license to practice the activity	3 Days

Fee Details (if any)

There is no Estimated Processing Time (Days) in this license.

License Information

Operational Requirements:
Please consider the following requirements after obtaining the license:

- Providing a production/recycling unit for oils located within the Kingdom of Bahrain, licensed by the relevant government authorities: Ministry of Municipalities, Ministry of Industry and Commerce, Supreme Council for the Environment, and the General Directorate of Civil Defense.
- Providing a description of the production or recycling processes.
- Statement of the product types and their specific data:
* Product Data Sheet.
* Laboratory analysis (optional)
* The quantities of the products should be in large, non-fragmented quantities (20 liters or more).
- Field inspection request and scheduling of the inspection should be done through the Control and Inspection Department of the Ministry before commencing production.
- Compliance with the requirements of pre-shipment inspection.
- Compliance with the requirements of pre-export declaration through the Horizon Customs System.

Required Documents

- Company profile
- Feasibility Study (if applicable)
- Name of factory, purchase contract, Material Safety Data Sheet (MSDS), product specification certified by the seller and audited by a third party (if applicable)
- Petroleum Products Export Licenses Form (Arabic)
- Petroleum Products Export Licenses Form (English)
- Proof of the existence of a repackaging site (if applicable)

Other Documents

- Petroleum Products Export Licenses Form (Arabic)
- Petroleum Products Export Licenses Form (English)

General Directrate Of Civil Defence (Post) (4661-6)

Approval Name	Description	Estimated Time
Sale/Trade of solid, liquid and gaseous fuels and related products - Lubricants and greases export	This Approval is required to insure compliance with the fire prevention and protection requirements of General Directorate of Civil Defense	5 Days

Fee Details (if any)

30 BD Fire prevention and protection certificate fees

License Information

1. Provide the documents mentioned in the “Required Documents” section
2. Comply with the requirements listed in the inspection checklist found in the “Other Downloadable Documents” section
3. Provide proof to the General Directorate of Civil Defense that an alarm and firefighting equipment have been installed within 6 months of obtaining a Commercial Registration and license

If a warehouse is used: A safety certificate must be obtained viaBahrain.bhA safety certificate must be attached, if available.

Required Documents

•No-objection letter for alarm and extinguisher installation from Civil Defense, or purchasing receipt of alarm equipment and extinguishers along with an annual maintenance contract from a company certified by Civil defense
•Photos required for civil defense activities
•Purchasing invoice of security camera system with specifying the type and storage capacity.

Other Documents

- Sample pictures of the general directorate of civil defense requirements
- licencing requirments of the general directorat of civil defense for activity number "4661-6"

Municipality Affairs (Post) (4661-6)

Approval Name	Description	Estimated Time
Site Approval for Trading related activities	Municipality Approval for the Commercial Registration address or the site in which the Activity will be practiced	3 Days

Fee Details (if any)

10

License Information

General Conditions:
1. Size of shop/premises must be sufficient for the activity
2. Businesses may not carry out the activity outside the boundaries of the shop/ premises
3. It is prohibited to display or store any items or equipment outside the shop / premises boundary without prior approval from the Municipality
4. Maintain cleanliness of the site
5. Comply with the parking space regulations as per the Construction Regulatory Requirements

Activity Specific Conditions:
1. The commercial address for this activity can be registered in areas classified as commercial, services, or industrial
2. The commercial address of the Commercial Registration for this activity can an office address provided that the site is used for administrative purposes and not physical selling, and that the office is not located in a residential area

Required Documents

- Lease agreement (after obtaining the necessary approvals from other licensing entities)
- Shop photos

Other Documents

- Cabinet's Decision (56) of the year 2022 regarding the Regulatory Requirements of Construction for various areas in the Kingdom of Bahrain

Sale/Trading Activities; repair of motor vehicles and motorcycles

ISIC4	Business activity
4661-7	Sale/Trade of solid, liquid and gaseous fuels and related products - Direct export of petroleum products

Description

This activity includes purchasing petroleum products directly from Bahrain Petroleum Company (BAPCO) and exporting them according to the supplier's requirements. The petroleum products can be exported directly from the company's dedicated marine berth, such as Sitra International wharf or another approved berth. Additionally, the bitumen/asphalt product can be exported directly from BAPCO's refinery, specifically the refining refinery, to destinations outside Bahrain through the designated land customs outlet, King Fahd Causeway, as per the supplier's requirements.

Prior to commencing this activity, obtaining approval from Bahrain Petroleum Company (BAPCO) is a requirement.

Business Requirements

Age

18 and above

Allowed for Nationalities

Bahraini
100%

Legal Type

It is allowed to register according to the legal forms mentioned below

Allowed for Individual Commercial Registration (ICR) : Yes

Allowed for Company Commercial Registration (CCR) : Yes

- Bahrain Shareholding Company (Public)
- Bahrain Shareholding Company (Closed)
- Simple Commandite Company
- Non Profit Company
- With Limited Liability Company
- Partnership Company
- Commandite By Shares Company

Required Step of Licenses and Approvals

Ministry / Directorate	License / Approval Requirements	Approval Type
Ministry of Oil and Environment	Notification for Direct export of petroleum products	Notification Only
Municipality Affairs	Site Approval for Trading related activities	Post
General Directrate Of Civil Defence	Sale/Trade of solid, liquid and gaseous fuels and related products - Direct export of petroleum products	Post

Ministry of Oil and Environment (Notification Only) (4661-7)

Approval Name	Description	Estimated Time
Notification for Direct export of petroleum products	Notify the Monitoring & Licensing Directorate on obtaining a commercial registration with the license to practice the activity	There is no License Information in this license. Days

Fee Details (if any)

There is no Estimated Processing Time (Days) in this license.

License Information

Operational Requirements:
Please consider the following requirements after obtaining the license:
Providing what is helpful in obtaining a contract with Bahrain Petroleum Company (BAPCO)

Municipality Affairs (Post) (4661-7)

Approval Name	Description	Estimated Time
Site Approval for Trading related activities	Municipality Approval for the Commercial Registration address or the site in which the Activity will be practiced	3 Days

Fee Details (if any)

10

License Information

General Conditions:
1. Size of shop/premises must be sufficient for the activity
2. Businesses may not carry out the activity outside the boundaries of the shop/ premises
3. It is prohibited to display or store any items or equipment outside the shop / premises boundary without prior approval from the Municipality
4. Maintain cleanliness of the site
5. Comply with the parking space regulations as per the Construction Regulatory Requirements

Activity Specific Conditions:
1. The commercial address for this activity can be registered in areas classified as commercial, services, or industrial
2. The commercial address of the Commercial Registration for this activity can an office address provided that the site is used for administrative purposes and not physical selling, and that the office is not located in a residential area

Required Documents

- Lease agreement (after obtaining the necessary approvals from other licensing entities)
- Shop photos

Other Documents

- Cabinet's Decision (56) of the year 2022 regarding the Regulatory Requirements of Construction for various areas in the Kingdom of Bahrain

General Directrate Of Civil Defence (Post) (4661-7)

Approval Name	Description	Estimated Time
Sale/Trade of solid, liquid and gaseous fuels and related products - Direct export of petroleum products	This Approval is required to insure compliance with the fire prevention and protection requirements of General Directorate of Civil Defense	5 Days

Fee Details (if any)

30 BD Fire prevention and protection certificate fees

License Information

1. Provide the documents mentioned in the “Required Documents” section
2. Comply with the requirements listed in the inspection checklist found in the “Other Downloadable Documents” section
3. Provide proof to the General Directorate of Civil Defense that an alarm and firefighting equipment have been installed within 6 months of obtaining a Commercial Registration and license

If a warehouse is used: A safety certificate must be obtained viaBahrain.bhMust attach safety certificate, if available.

Required Documents

•No-objection letter for alarm and extinguisher installation from Civil Defense, or purchasing receipt of alarm equipment and extinguishers along with an annual maintenance contract from a company certified by Civil defense
•Photos required for civil defense activities
•Purchasing invoice of security camera system with specifying the type and storage capacity.

Other Documents

- Sample pictures of the general directorate of civil defense requirements
- licencing requirments of the general directorat of civil defense for activity number "4661-7"

Sale/Trading Activities; repair of motor vehicles and motorcycles

ISIC4	Business activity
4661-8	Sale/Trade of solid, liquid and gaseous fuels and related products - Aircraft Refueling Services

Description

This license is required to provide aircraft refuelling services

Business Requirements

Age

18 and above

Allowed for Nationalities

Bahraini
100%

GCC
100%

Legal Type

It is allowed to register according to the legal forms mentioned below

Allowed for Individual Commercial Registration (ICR) : Yes

Allowed for Company Commercial Registration (CCR) : Yes

- Bahrain Shareholding Company (Public)
- Bahrain Shareholding Company (Closed)
- Simple Commandite Company
- Non Profit Company
- With Limited Liability Company
- Partnership Company
- Commandite By Shares Company

Required Step of Licenses and Approvals

Ministry / Directorate	License / Approval Requirements	Approval Type
Civil Aviation Affairs	Aircraft Refueling Services	Pre
General Directrate Of Civil Defence	Sale/Trade of solid, liquid and gaseous fuels and related products - Aircraft Refueling Services	Post
Civil Aviation Affairs	Aircraft Refueling Services	Post
Municipality Affairs	Site Approval for Trading related activities	Post
Civil Aviation Affairs	Aircraft Refueling Services	Final Site Inspection

Civil Aviation Affairs (Pre) (4661-8)

Approval Name	Description	Estimated Time
Aircraft Refueling Services	Providing aircraft refueling services	10 Days

Fee Details (if any)

• Application fees: BD 100 (non-refundable in cases where the application is not approved).
• Visibility study: BD 1,000 (deducted from the license fee in case of approval).
• License fees BD 10,000.
• Annual renewal fees 50% of the license fees.

License Information

• The license is valid for one year and renewal application must be submitted 2 months before expiry
• Adherence to the standards and regulatory requirements contained in the regulations under the Civil Aviation Law issued by virtue of Law No. 14 of 2013
• The location must be in the airport.

Required Documents

•Feasibility, technical, economic and financial studies
•Fill application Form ATD/ATCL/OF04
•Memorandum of Association

Other Documents

- Chicago Convention and its Annexes.
- Civil Aviation Law No.14 of 2013
- Minister of Transportation and Telecommunication Decree No. 25 of 2016 of CAA fees and departure fees.
- Minster of Transportation and Telecommunication Decree No. 21 of 2013 issuing the regulations under the Civil Aviation Law.

General Directrate Of Civil Defence (Post) (4661-8)

Approval Name	Description	Estimated Time
Sale/Trade of solid, liquid and gaseous fuels and related products - Aircraft Refueling Services	This Approval is required to insure compliance with the fire prevention and protection requirements of General Directorate of Civil Defense	5 Days

Fee Details (if any)

30 BD Fire prevention and protection certificate fees

License Information

1. Provide the documents mentioned in the “Required Documents” section
2. Comply with the requirements listed in the inspection checklist found in the “Other Downloadable Documents” section
3. Provide proof to the General Directorate of Civil Defense that an alarm and firefighting equipment have been installed within 6 months of obtaining a Commercial Registration and license

If a warehouse is used: A safety certificate must be obtained viaBahrain.bhA safety certificate must be attached, if available.

Required Documents

•No-objection letter for alarm and extinguisher installation from Civil Defense, or purchasing receipt of alarm equipment and extinguishers along with an annual maintenance contract from a company certified by Civil defense
•Photos required for civil defense activities
•Purchasing invoice of security camera system with specifying the type and storage capacity.

Other Documents

- Sample pictures of the general directorate of civil defense requirements
- licencing requirments of the general directorat of civil defense for activity number "4661-8"

Civil Aviation Affairs (Post) (4661-8)

Approval Name	Description	Estimated Time
Aircraft Refueling Services	Providing aircraft refueling services	10 Days

Fee Details (if any)

• Application fees: BD 100 (non-refundable in cases where the application is not approved).
• Visibility study: BD 1,000 (deducted from the license fee in case of approval).
• License fees BD 10,000.
• Annual renewal fees 50% of the license fees.

License Information

• The license is valid for one year and renewal application must be submitted 2 months before expiry
• Adherence to the standards and regulatory requirements contained in the regulations under the Civil Aviation Law issued by virtue of Law No. 14 of 2013
• The location must be in the airport.

Required Documents

•Feasibility, technical, economic and financial studies
•Fill application Form ATD/ATCL/OF04
•Memorandum of Association

Other Documents

- Chicago Convention and its Annexes.
- Civil Aviation Law No.14 of 2013
- Minister of Transportation and Telecommunication Decree No. 25 of 2016 of CAA fees and departure fees.
- Minster of Transportation and Telecommunication Decree No. 21 of 2013 issuing the regulations under the Civil Aviation Law.

Municipality Affairs (Post) (4661-8)

Approval Name	Description	Estimated Time
Site Approval for Trading related activities	Municipality Approval for the Commercial Registration address or the site in which the Activity will be practiced	3 Days

Fee Details (if any)

10

License Information

General Conditions:
1. Size of shop/premises must be sufficient for the activity
2. Businesses may not carry out the activity outside the boundaries of the shop/ premises
3. It is prohibited to display or store any items or equipment outside the shop / premises boundary without prior approval from the Municipality
4. Maintain cleanliness of the site
5. Comply with the parking space regulations as per the Construction Regulatory Requirements

Activity Specific Conditions:
1. The commercial address for this activity can be registered in areas classified as commercial, services, or industrial
2. The commercial address of the Commercial Registration for this activity can an office address provided that the site is used for administrative purposes and not physical selling, and that the office is not located in a residential area

Required Documents

- Lease agreement (after obtaining the necessary approvals from other licensing entities)
- Shop photos

Other Documents

- Cabinet's Decision (56) of the year 2022 regarding the Regulatory Requirements of Construction for various areas in the Kingdom of Bahrain

Civil Aviation Affairs (Final Site Inspection) (4661-8)

Approval Name	Description	Estimated Time
Aircraft Refueling Services	Providing aircraft refueling services	10 Days

Fee Details (if any)

• Application fees: BD 100 (non-refundable in cases where the application is not approved).
• Visibility study: BD 1,000 (deducted from the license fee in case of approval).
• License fees BD 10,000.
• Annual renewal fees 50% of the license fees.

License Information

• The license is valid for one year and renewal application must be submitted 2 months before expiry
• Adherence to the standards and regulatory requirements contained in the regulations under the Civil Aviation Law issued by virtue of Law No. 14 of 2013
• The location must be in the airport.

Required Documents

•Feasibility, technical, economic and financial studies
•Fill application Form ATD/ATCL/OF04
•Memorandum of Association

Other Documents

- Chicago Convention and its Annexes.
- Civil Aviation Law No.14 of 2013
- Minister of Transportation and Telecommunication Decree No. 25 of 2016 of CAA fees and departure fees.
- Minster of Transportation and Telecommunication Decree No. 21 of 2013 issuing the regulations under the Civil Aviation Law.

Sale/Trading Activities; repair of motor vehicles and motorcycles

ISIC4	Business activity
4662	Sale/Trade in metals and metal ores

Description

This activity includes wholesale and/or retail trade of:
- ferrous and non-ferrous metal ores
- ferrous and non-ferrous metals in primary forms
- ferrous and non-ferrous semi-finished metal products

Business Requirements

Age

18 and above

Allowed for Nationalities

Bahraini	100%
American	100%
GCC	100%

Legal Type

It is allowed to register according to the legal forms mentioned below

Allowed for Individual Commercial Registration (ICR) : Yes

Allowed for Company Commercial Registration (CCR) : Yes

- Bahrain Shareholding Company (Public)
- With Limited Liability Company
- Branch of a Foreign Company
- Bahrain Shareholding Company (Closed)
- Partnership Company
- Simple Commandite Company
- Commandite By Shares Company
- Non Profit Company

Required Step of Licenses and Approvals

Ministry / Directorate	License / Approval Requirements	Approval Type
Municipality Affairs	Site Approval for Trading related activities	Post

Municipality Affairs (Post) (4662)

Approval Name	Description	Estimated Time
Site Approval for Trading related activities	Municipality Approval for the Commercial Registration address or the site in which the Activity will be practiced	3 Days

Fee Details (if any)

10

License Information

General Conditions:
1. Size of shop/premises must be sufficient for the activity
2. Businesses may not carry out the activity outside the boundaries of the shop/ premises
3. It is prohibited to display or store any items or equipment outside the shop / premises boundary without prior approval from the Municipality
4. Maintain cleanliness of the site
5. Comply with the parking space regulations as per the Construction Regulatory Requirements

Activity Specific Conditions:
1. The commercial address for this activity can be registered in areas classified as commercial, services, or industrial
2. The commercial address of the Commercial Registration for this activity can an office address provided that the site is used for administrative purposes and not physical selling, and that the office is not located in a residential area

Required Documents

- Lease agreement (after obtaining the necessary approvals from other licensing entities)
- Shop photos

Other Documents

- Cabinet's Decision (56) of the year 2022 regarding the Regulatory Requirements of Construction for various areas in the Kingdom of Bahrain

Sale/Trading Activities; repair of motor vehicles and motorcycles

ISIC4	Business activity
4663	Sale/Trade of construction materials, hardware, plumbing and heating equipment and supplies

Description

This activity includes the wholesale and/or retail of kinds of construction materials, hardware, plumbing and heating equipment and supplies, such as:
- wood in the rough
- products of primary processing of wood
- paint and varnish
- construction materials:
. sand, gravel
- wallpaper and floor coverings
- flat glass
- hardware and locks
- fittings and fixtures
- hot water heaters
- sanitary equipment:
. baths, washbasins, toilets and other sanitary porcelain
- sanitary installation equipment:
. tubes, pipes, fittings, taps, T-pieces, connections, rubber pipes etc.
- tools such as hammers, saws, screwdrivers and other hand tools
- sale of swimming pools, bath tubs and their accessories

Business Requirements

Age

18 and above

Allowed for Nationalities

Bahraini
100%

GCC
100%

American
100%

Legal Type

It is allowed to register according to the legal forms mentioned below

Allowed for Individual Commercial Registration (ICR) : Yes

Allowed for Company Commercial Registration (CCR) : Yes

- Bahrain Shareholding Company (Public)
- With Limited Liability Company
- Branch of a Foreign Company
- Bahrain Shareholding Company (Closed)
- Partnership Company
- Simple Commandite Company
- Commandite By Shares Company
- Non Profit Company

Required Step of Licenses and Approvals

Ministry / Directorate	License / Approval Requirements	Approval Type
Municipality Affairs	Site Approval for Trading related activities	Post

Municipality Affairs (Post) (4663)

Approval Name	Description	Estimated Time
Site Approval for Trading related activities	Municipality Approval for the Commercial Registration address or the site in which the Activity will be practiced	3 Days

Fee Details (if any)

10

License Information

General Conditions:
1. Size of shop/premises must be sufficient for the activity
2. Businesses may not carry out the activity outside the boundaries of the shop/ premises
3. It is prohibited to display or store any items or equipment outside the shop / premises boundary without prior approval from the Municipality
4. Maintain cleanliness of the site
5. Comply with the parking space regulations as per the Construction Regulatory Requirements

Activity Specific Conditions:
1. The commercial address for this activity can be registered in areas classified as commercial, services, or industrial
2. The commercial address of the Commercial Registration for this activity can an office address provided that the site is used for administrative purposes and not physical selling, and that the office is not located in a residential area

Required Documents

- Lease agreement (after obtaining the necessary approvals from other licensing entities)
- Shop photos

Other Documents

- Cabinet's Decision (56) of the year 2022 regarding the Regulatory Requirements of Construction for various areas in the Kingdom of Bahrain

Sale/Trading Activities; repair of motor vehicles and motorcycles

ISIC4	Business activity
46691-1	Sale/Trading in industrial chemicals

Description

This activity includes wholesale and/or retail sale of industrial chemicals such as:
. aniline, printing ink, essential oils, industrial gases, chemical glues, colouring matter, synthetic resin, methanol, paraffin, scents and flavourings, soda, industrial salt, acids and sulphurs, starch derivates etc.

Business Requirements

Age

18 and above

Allowed for Nationalities

- Bahraini 100%
- American 100%
- GCC 100%

Legal Type

It is allowed to register according to the legal forms mentioned below

Allowed for Individual Commercial Registration (ICR) : Yes

Allowed for Company Commercial Registration (CCR) : Yes

- Bahrain Shareholding Company (Public)
- With Limited Liability Company
- Branch of a Foreign Company
- Bahrain Shareholding Company (Closed)
- Partnership Company
- Simple Commandite Company
- Commandite By Shares Company
- Non Profit Company

Required Step of Licenses and Approvals

Ministry / Directorate	License / Approval Requirements	Approval Type
General Directorate Of Criminal Investigation	Approval by General Directorate of Criminal Investigation	Pre
Supreme Council for Environment	Environmental Approval For Sale/Trading in Industrial Chemicals Activities	Post
Municipality Affairs	Site Approval for Trading related activities	Post

General Directorate Of Criminal Investigation (Pre) (46691-1)

Approval Name	Description	Estimated Time
Approval by General Directorate of Criminal Investigation	General Directorate of Criminal Investigation Approval for the Activity	7 Days

Fee Details (if any)

There is no Estimated Processing Time (Days) in this license.

License Information

- The applicant should not have a criminal record, unless they have been rehabilitated in criminal cases

Supreme Council for Environment (Post) (46691-1)

Approval Name	Description	Estimated Time
Environmental Approval For Sale/ Trading in Industrial Chemicals Activities	Environmental Conditions For Sale/ Trading in Industrial Chemicals Activities	10 Days

Fee Details (if any)

50 BD

License Information

- Compliance with environmental conditions contained in Decree Law No. (21) of 1996 on the environment. The Supreme Council for the Environment reserves the right to halt any activity that does not abide by the law.
- Import, purchase, use or store chemicals related to the activity is prohibited without obtaining the necessary approvals from the Supreme Council for the Environment
- Use the shop as an administrative office only and exercise activity in the workplace

Required Documents

•Sale/Trade of industrial chemicals disclaimer

Other Documents

•Decree Law No. (21) of 1996 on the environment

Municipality Affairs (Post) (46691-1)

Approval Name	Description	Estimated Time
Site Approval for Trading related activities	Municipality Approval for the Commercial Registration address or the site in which the Activity will be practiced	3 Days

Fee Details (if any)

10

License Information

General Conditions:
1. Size of shop/premises must be sufficient for the activity
2. Businesses may not carry out the activity outside the boundaries of the shop/ premises
3. It is prohibited to display or store any items or equipment outside the shop / premises boundary without prior approval from the Municipality
4. Maintain cleanliness of the site
5. Comply with the parking space regulations as per the Construction Regulatory Requirements

Activity Specific Conditions:
1. The commercial address for this activity can be registered in areas classified as commercial, services, or industrial
2. The commercial address of the Commercial Registration for this activity can an office address provided that the site is used for administrative purposes and not physical selling, and that the office is not located in a residential area

Required Documents

- Lease agreement (after obtaining the necessary approvals from other licensing entities)
- Shop photos

Other Documents

- Cabinet's Decision (56) of the year 2022 regarding the Regulatory Requirements of Construction for various areas in the Kingdom of Bahrain

Sale/Trading Activities; repair of motor vehicles and motorcycles

ISIC4	Business activity
46691-2	Sale/Trading in industrial chemicals - Substances subject to the convention on the prohibition of Chemical Weapons

Description

This activity includes wholesale and/or retail of industrial chemicals such as Aniline, Printing Ink, Aromatic Oils, Industrial Gases, Chemical Adhesives, Coloring Matters, Synthetic Resins, Methanol, Paraffin, Aromas and Flavors, Starch Derivatives as well as schedule 2 and 3 substances in the sense of Convention on the Prohibition of Chemical Weapons

Business Requirements

Age

18 and above

Allowed for Nationalities

- Bahraini 100%
- GCC 100%
- American 100%

Legal Type

It is allowed to register according to the legal forms mentioned below

Allowed for Individual Commercial Registration (ICR) : Yes

Allowed for Company Commercial Registration (CCR) : Yes

- Bahrain Shareholding Company (Public)
- With Limited Liability Company
- Branch of a Foreign Company
- Bahrain Shareholding Company (Closed)
- Partnership Company
- Simple Commandite Company
- Commandite By Shares Company
- Non Profit Company

Required Step of Licenses and Approvals

Ministry / Directorate	License / Approval Requirements	Approval Type
General Directorate Of Criminal Investigation	Approval by General Directorate of Criminal Investigation	Pre
Supreme Council for Environment	Environmental Approval For Sale/Trading in Industrial Chemicals Activities	Post
Municipality Affairs	Site Approval for Trading related activities	Post

General Directorate Of Criminal Investigation (Pre) (46691-2)

Approval Name	Description	Estimated Time
Approval by General Directorate of Criminal Investigation	General Directorate of Criminal Investigation Approval for the Activity	7 Days

Fee Details (if any)

There is no Estimated Processing Time (Days) in this license.

License Information

- The applicant should not have a criminal record, unless they have been rehabilitated in criminal cases

Supreme Council for Environment (Post) (46691-2)

Approval Name	Description	Estimated Time
Environmental Approval For Sale/ Trading in Industrial Chemicals Activities	Environmental Conditions For Sale/ Trading in Industrial Chemicals Activities	10 Days

Fee Details (if any)

50 BD

License Information

- Compliance with environmental conditions contained in Decree Law No. (21) of 1996 on the environment. The Supreme Council for the Environment reserves the right to halt any activity that does not abide by the law.
- Import, purchase, use or store chemicals related to the activity is prohibited without obtaining the necessary approvals from the Supreme Council for the Environment
- Use the shop as an administrative office only and exercise activity in the workplace

Required Documents

•Sale/Trade of industrial chemicals disclaimer

Other Documents

•Decree Law No. (21) of 1996 on the environment

Municipality Affairs (Post) (46691-2)

Approval Name	Description	Estimated Time
Site Approval for Trading related activities	Municipality Approval for the Commercial Registration address or the site in which the Activity will be practiced	3 Days

Fee Details (if any)

10

License Information

General Conditions:
1. Size of shop/premises must be sufficient for the activity
2. Businesses may not carry out the activity outside the boundaries of the shop/ premises
3. It is prohibited to display or store any items or equipment outside the shop / premises boundary without prior approval from the Municipality
4. Maintain cleanliness of the site
5. Comply with the parking space regulations as per the Construction Regulatory Requirements

Activity Specific Conditions:
1. The commercial address for this activity can be registered in areas classified as commercial, services, or industrial
2. The commercial address of the Commercial Registration for this activity can an office address provided that the site is used for administrative purposes and not physical selling, and that the office is not located in a residential area

Required Documents

- Lease agreement (after obtaining the necessary approvals from other licensing entities)
- Shop photos

Other Documents

- Cabinet's Decision (56) of the year 2022 regarding the Regulatory Requirements of Construction for various areas in the Kingdom of Bahrain

Sale/Trading Activities; repair of motor vehicles and motorcycles

ISIC4	Business activity
46691-3	Sale/Trading in industrial chemicals - Sales/Trading in Refrigerants

Description

This activity includes importation, exportation, and sales of Refrigerants only

Business Requirements

Age

18 and above

Allowed for Nationalities

- Bahraini 100%
- GCC 100%
- American 100%

Legal Type

It is allowed to register according to the legal forms mentioned below

Allowed for Individual Commercial Registration (ICR) : Yes

Allowed for Company Commercial Registration (CCR) : Yes

- Bahrain Shareholding Company (Public)
- With Limited Liability Company
- Branch of a Foreign Company
- Bahrain Shareholding Company (Closed)
- Partnership Company
- Simple Commandite Company
- Commandite By Shares Company
- Non Profit Company

Required Step of Licenses and Approvals

Ministry / Directorate	License / Approval Requirements	Approval Type
Supreme Council for Environment	Environmental Approval for Sale/Trading in industrial chemicals - Sales/Trading in Refrigerants activity	Post
Municipality Affairs	Site Approval for Trading related activities	Post

Supreme Council for Environment (Post) (46691-3)

Approval Name	Description	Estimated Time
Environmental Approval for Sale/ Trading in industrial chemicals - Sales/ Trading in Refrigerants activity	This service aims to assess the environmental impact and licensing of development, industrial and production projects and activities, in accordance with the standards of protecting the environment and its natural resources	10 Days

Fee Details (if any)

200 Bahraini Dinars

License Information

To check the requirements for this approval, kindly download the detailed requirements sheet from the other downloadable documents section, which includes the following requirements:

- Building layout Engineering and Equipment Requirements
- Work-place Requirements
- Storage Requirements
- Material Management Requirements
- Waste Management Requirements
- Documents and Reporting Requirements
- General Requirements

Required Documents

•Requirements for business activities

Other Documents

•Annex to the Minister of Housing, Municipalities and Environment order regarding the project's environmental assessment
•Law No. (2) of 2021 regarding the environmental standards of air as decided by the Chairman of the Supreme Council for Environment
•Law No. (3) of 2021 regarding the environmental standards of water as decided by the Chairman of the Supreme Council for the Environment
•Law No. (54) of 2014 regarding the approval of the unified law regarding substances that deplete the ozone layer for the GCC countries
•Law No. (54) of 2014 regarding the approval of the unified law regarding substances that deplete the ozone layer for the GCC countries
•Law No. (7) of 2022 regarding the environment
•Ministerial Order No. (1) of 1998 regarding Project's Environmental Assessment
•Ministerial Order No. (10) of 2006 regarding the installation of devices for on-line monitoring of atmospheric air pollutants
•Ministerial Order No. (3) of 2005 regarding environmental requirements and standards in workplaces, especially regarding workers' exposure to heat and noise, and the provision of tools and protective clothing such as gloves, glasses, face masks and earplugs, with a commitment to use them during work
•Ministerial Order No. (3) of 2006 regarding the management of hazardous waste
•Ministerial Order No. (4) of 2005 regarding the management of used oils
•Ministerial Order No. (4) of 2006 regarding the management of hazardous chemicals
•Ministerial Order No. (4) of 2021 regarding the fees of the licenses and services provided by the Supreme Council for Environment
•Ministerial Order No. (6) of 2013 amending order No. (4) of 2006 regarding the management of hazardous chemicals
•Ministerial Order No. (7) of 2002 regarding the control importation and use of prohibited and severely restricted chemicals, and not to import any chemical compound except after obtaining approvals of all concerned authorities, including the executive body of the Supreme Council for Environment
•Ministerial Order No. (7) of 2013 amending order No. (3) of 2006 regarding the management of hazardous waste
•Ministerial Order No. 4 of 2014 regarding the management of the environmental consulting offices operations in the Kingdom of Bahrain
•law No. (1) of 2020 regarding the management of refrigeration media, refrigeration units and air conditioning units as decided by the Chairman of the Supreme Council for the Environment
•law No. (204) of 2018 regarding banning the export of some types of local fishes, shrimps and other aquatic organisms, and coordinating with the Agriculture and Marine

Resources at the Ministry of Works, Municipalities and Urban Planning regarding the import and export of some species

Municipality Affairs (Post) (46691-3)

Approval Name	Description	Estimated Time
Site Approval for Trading related activities	Municipality Approval for the Commercial Registration address or the site in which the Activity will be practiced	3 Days

Fee Details (if any)

10

License Information

General Conditions:
1. Size of shop/premises must be sufficient for the activity
2. Businesses may not carry out the activity outside the boundaries of the shop/ premises
3. It is prohibited to display or store any items or equipment outside the shop / premises boundary without prior approval from the Municipality
4. Maintain cleanliness of the site
5. Comply with the parking space regulations as per the Construction Regulatory Requirements

Activity Specific Conditions:
1. The commercial address for this activity can be registered in areas classified as commercial, services, or industrial
2. The commercial address of the Commercial Registration for this activity can an office address provided that the site is used for administrative purposes and not physical selling, and that the office is not located in a residential area

Required Documents

- Lease agreement (after obtaining the necessary approvals from other licensing entities)
- Shop photos

Other Documents

- Cabinet's Decision (56) of the year 2022 regarding the Regulatory Requirements of Construction for various areas in the Kingdom of Bahrain

Sale/Trading Activities; repair of motor vehicles and motorcycles

ISIC4	Business activity
46692	Sale/Trading in fertilizers,Soil Conditioners and Pesticides

Description

This activity includes wholesale and/or retail sale of fertilizers and agrochemical products

Business Requirements

Age

18 and above

Allowed for Nationalities

- Bahraini 100%
- GCC 100%
- American 100%

Legal Type

It is allowed to register according to the legal forms mentioned below

Allowed for Individual Commercial Registration (ICR) : Yes

Allowed for Company Commercial Registration (CCR) : Yes

- Bahrain Shareholding Company (Public)
- With Limited Liability Company
- Branch of a Foreign Company
- Bahrain Shareholding Company (Closed)
- Partnership Company
- Simple Commandite Company
- Commandite By Shares Company
- Non Profit Company

Required Step of Licenses and Approvals

Ministry / Directorate	License / Approval Requirements	Approval Type
General Directorate Of Criminal Investigation	Approval by General Directorate of Criminal Investigation	Pre
Municipality Affairs	Site Approval for Trading related activities	Post
Agricultural Health Directorate	Approval of the activity of Sale/Trading in fertilizers, soil conditioners, and pesticides	Post

General Directorate Of Criminal Investigation (Pre) (46692)

Approval Name	Description	Estimated Time
Approval by General Directorate of Criminal Investigation	General Directorate of Criminal Investigation Approval for the Activity	7 Days

Fee Details (if any)

There is no Estimated Processing Time (Days) in this license.

License Information

- The applicant should not have a criminal record, unless they have been rehabilitated in criminal cases

Municipality Affairs (Post) (46692)

Approval Name	Description	Estimated Time
Site Approval for Trading related activities	Municipality Approval for the Commercial Registration address or the site in which the Activity will be practiced	3 Days

Fee Details (if any)

10

License Information

General Conditions:
1. Size of shop/premises must be sufficient for the activity
2. Businesses may not carry out the activity outside the boundaries of the shop/ premises
3. It is prohibited to display or store any items or equipment outside the shop / premises boundary without prior approval from the Municipality
4. Maintain cleanliness of the site
5. Comply with the parking space regulations as per the Construction Regulatory Requirements

Activity Specific Conditions:
1. The commercial address for this activity can be registered in areas classified as commercial, services, or industrial
2. The commercial address of the Commercial Registration for this activity can an office address provided that the site is used for administrative purposes and not physical selling, and that the office is not located in a residential area

Required Documents

- Lease agreement (after obtaining the necessary approvals from other licensing entities)
- Shop photos

Other Documents

- Cabinet's Decision (56) of the year 2022 regarding the Regulatory Requirements of Construction for various areas in the Kingdom of Bahrain

Agricultural Health Directorate (Post) (46692)

Approval Name	Description	Estimated Time
Approval of the activity of Sale/ Trading in fertilizers, soil conditioners, and pesticides	Approval of the activity of Sale/ Trading in fertilizers, soil conditioners, and pesticides	5 Days

Fee Details (if any)

There is no Estimated Processing Time (Days) in this license.

License Information

Requirements: To sign a commitment to abide by the following conditions when wanting to start practicing the activity:
1- Notify the Plant Wealth Directorate in written about the wish to start practicing the activity.
2- A separate section should be devoted for handling and storing fertilizers, soil conditioners and pesticides inside the place designated for selling agricultural inputs, fulfilling all safety and security requirements.
3- It is not allowed to sell unauthorized fertilizers, soil conditioners and pesticides in Bahrain
4- The company should have a qualified person to handle fertilizers, soil conditioners and pesticides.
5- The company should provide the buyer with a pamphlet regarding the correct use and safety precautions to be taken when using pesticides.
6- Preserving, storing, and handling fertilizers, soil conditioners and pesticides in its original packages (without opening).
7- Fertilizers, soil conditioners and pesticides should be transported in means of transportation that comply with technical and environmental specifications and requirements, with the availability of documents indicating purchase.
8- The expired and damaged fertilizers, soil conditioners and pesticides should be disposed in compliance with the environmentally recommended methods, in coordination with the Supreme Council for the Environment, while preserving the supporting documents that indicate that.
9- The company should keep records for handling and the name and address of buyer.

10- For importing fertilizers, soil conditioners and pesticides, the company should review the relevant section in the Plant Wealth Directorate to obtain the necessary permits and adhere to the conditions mentioned in it before import.
Requirements of pesticides warehouse are as following:
- Good lighting
- Suitable air conditioner
- Exhaust fan
- Placing warning signs on the outside door or gate of the warehouse indicating that the place contains dangerous and toxic materials.
- Emergency hand wash basin.
- Insulation for floors / ceiling / walls
- Valid fire extinguishing cylinder.
- Emergency door.
- Protective clothing and masks for warehouse workers

Other Documents

•GCC regulations regarding fertilizers and soil conditioners issued under law (38) of 2005
•GCC regulations regarding pesticides issued under law (37) of 2005

Sale/Trading Activities; repair of motor vehicles and motorcycles

ISIC4	Business activity
46693	Sale/Trading in cleaning materials

Description

This activity includes wholesale and/or retail sale of cleaning materials

Business Requirements

Age

18 and above

Allowed for Nationalities

- Bahraini 100%
- GCC 100%
- American 100%

Legal Type

It is allowed to register according to the legal forms mentioned below

Allowed for Individual Commercial Registration (ICR) : Yes

Allowed for Company Commercial Registration (CCR) : Yes

- Bahrain Shareholding Company (Public)
- With Limited Liability Company
- Branch of a Foreign Company
- Bahrain Shareholding Company (Closed)
- Partnership Company
- Simple Commandite Company
- Commandite By Shares Company
- Non Profit Company

Required Step of Licenses and Approvals

Ministry / Directorate	License / Approval Requirements	Approval Type
Municipality Affairs	Site Approval for Trading related activities	Post

Municipality Affairs (Post) (46693)

Approval Name	Description	Estimated Time
Site Approval for Trading related activities	Municipality Approval for the Commercial Registration address or the site in which the Activity will be practiced	3 Days

Fee Details (if any)

10

License Information

General Conditions:
1. Size of shop/premises must be sufficient for the activity
2. Businesses may not carry out the activity outside the boundaries of the shop/ premises
3. It is prohibited to display or store any items or equipment outside the shop / premises boundary without prior approval from the Municipality
4. Maintain cleanliness of the site
5. Comply with the parking space regulations as per the Construction Regulatory Requirements

Activity Specific Conditions:
1. The commercial address for this activity can be registered in areas classified as commercial, services, or industrial
2. The commercial address of the Commercial Registration for this activity can an office address provided that the site is used for administrative purposes and not physical selling, and that the office is not located in a residential area

Required Documents

- Lease agreement (after obtaining the necessary approvals from other licensing entities)
- Shop photos

Other Documents

- Cabinet's Decision (56) of the year 2022 regarding the Regulatory Requirements of Construction for various areas in the Kingdom of Bahrain

Sale/Trading Activities; repair of motor vehicles and motorcycles

ISIC4	Business activity
46694	Sale/Trading in plastic material and rubber products

Description

This activity includes wholesale and/or retail sale of all kinds of products made from plastic or rubber

Business Requirements

Age

18 and above

Allowed for Nationalities

- Bahraini 100%
- American 100%
- GCC 100%

Legal Type

It is allowed to register according to the legal forms mentioned below

Allowed for Individual Commercial Registration (ICR) : Yes

Allowed for Company Commercial Registration (CCR) : Yes

- Bahrain Shareholding Company (Public)
- With Limited Liability Company
- Branch of a Foreign Company
- Bahrain Shareholding Company (Closed)
- Partnership Company
- Simple Commandite Company
- Commandite By Shares Company
- Non Profit Company

Required Step of Licenses and Approvals

Ministry / Directorate	License / Approval Requirements	Approval Type
Municipality Affairs	Site Approval for Trading related activities	Post

Municipality Affairs (Post) (46694)

Approval Name	Description	Estimated Time
Site Approval for Trading related activities	Municipality Approval for the Commercial Registration address or the site in which the Activity will be practiced	3 Days

Fee Details (if any)

10

License Information

General Conditions:
1. Size of shop/premises must be sufficient for the activity
2. Businesses may not carry out the activity outside the boundaries of the shop/ premises
3. It is prohibited to display or store any items or equipment outside the shop / premises boundary without prior approval from the Municipality
4. Maintain cleanliness of the site
5. Comply with the parking space regulations as per the Construction Regulatory Requirements

Activity Specific Conditions:
1. The commercial address for this activity can be registered in areas classified as commercial, services, or industrial
2. The commercial address of the Commercial Registration for this activity can an office address provided that the site is used for administrative purposes and not physical selling, and that the office is not located in a residential area

Required Documents

- Lease agreement (after obtaining the necessary approvals from other licensing entities)
- Shop photos

Other Documents

- Cabinet's Decision (56) of the year 2022 regarding the Regulatory Requirements of Construction for various areas in the Kingdom of Bahrain

Sale/Trading Activities; repair of motor vehicles and motorcycles

ISIC4	Business activity
46695	Sale/Trading in paper and cardboard products

Description

This activity includes wholesale and/or retail sale of all kinds of products made from paper or cardboard

Business Requirements

Age

18 and above

Allowed for Nationalities

- Bahraini 100%
- American 100%
- GCC 100%

Legal Type

It is allowed to register according to the legal forms mentioned below

Allowed for Individual Commercial Registration (ICR) : Yes

Allowed for Company Commercial Registration (CCR) : Yes

- Bahrain Shareholding Company (Public)
- With Limited Liability Company
- Branch of a Foreign Company
- Bahrain Shareholding Company (Closed)
- Partnership Company
- Simple Commandite Company
- Commandite By Shares Company
- Non Profit Company

Required Step of Licenses and Approvals

Ministry / Directorate	License / Approval Requirements	Approval Type
Municipality Affairs	Site Approval for Trading related activities	Post

Municipality Affairs (Post) (46695)

Approval Name	Description	Estimated Time
Site Approval for Trading related activities	Municipality Approval for the Commercial Registration address or the site in which the Activity will be practiced	3 Days

Fee Details (if any)

10

License Information

General Conditions:
1. Size of shop/premises must be sufficient for the activity
2. Businesses may not carry out the activity outside the boundaries of the shop/ premises
3. It is prohibited to display or store any items or equipment outside the shop / premises boundary without prior approval from the Municipality
4. Maintain cleanliness of the site
5. Comply with the parking space regulations as per the Construction Regulatory Requirements

Activity Specific Conditions:
1. The commercial address for this activity can be registered in areas classified as commercial, services, or industrial
2. The commercial address of the Commercial Registration for this activity can an office address provided that the site is used for administrative purposes and not physical selling, and that the office is not located in a residential area

Required Documents

- Lease agreement (after obtaining the necessary approvals from other licensing entities)
- Shop photos

Other Documents

- Cabinet's Decision (56) of the year 2022 regarding the Regulatory Requirements of Construction for various areas in the Kingdom of Bahrain

Sale/Trading Activities; repair of motor vehicles and motorcycles

ISIC4	Business activity
46699	Sale/Trading in waste and scrap

Description

This activity includes wholesale and/or retail sale of metal and non-metal waste and scrap and materials for recycling, including collecting, sorting, separating, stripping of used goods such as cars in order to obtain reusable parts, packing and repacking, storage and delivery, but without a real transformation process. Additionally, the purchased and sold waste has a remaining value.
This activity also includes:
dismantling of automobiles, computers, televisions and other equipment to obtain and re-sell usable parts

Business Requirements

Age

18 and above

Allowed for Nationalities

Bahraini
100%

American
100%

GCC
100%

Legal Type

It is allowed to register according to the legal forms mentioned below

Allowed for Individual Commercial Registration (ICR) : Yes

Allowed for Company Commercial Registration (CCR) : Yes

- Bahrain Shareholding Company (Public)
- With Limited Liability Company
- Branch of a Foreign Company
- Bahrain Shareholding Company (Closed)
- Partnership Company
- Simple Commandite Company
- Commandite By Shares Company
- Non Profit Company

Required Step of Licenses and Approvals

Ministry / Directorate	License / Approval Requirements	Approval Type
General Directorate Of Criminal Investigation	Approval for Sale/Trading in waste and scrap	Pre
Municipality Affairs	Site Approval for Trading related activities	Post
General Directrate Of Civil Defence	Sale/Trading in waste and scrap	Post
Supreme Council for Environment	Environmental Approval for Sale/Trading in waste and scrap activity	Post

General Directorate Of Criminal Investigation (Pre) (46699)

Approval Name	Description	Estimated Time
Approval for Sale/ Trading in waste and scrap	This License for wholesale or retail sale of metal and non-metal waste and scrap	7 Days

Fee Details (if any)

There is no Estimated Processing Time (Days) in this license.

License Information

- The applicant should not have a criminal record, unless they have been rehabilitated in criminal cases

Municipality Affairs (Post) (46699)

Approval Name	Description	Estimated Time
Site Approval for Trading related activities	Municipality Approval for the Commercial Registration address or the site in which the Activity will be practiced	3 Days

Fee Details (if any)

10

License Information

General Conditions:
1. Size of shop/premises must be sufficient for the activity
2. Businesses may not carry out the activity outside the boundaries of the shop/ premises
3. It is prohibited to display or store any items or equipment outside the shop / premises boundary without prior approval from the Municipality
4. Maintain cleanliness of the site
5. Comply with the parking space regulations as per the Construction Regulatory Requirements

Activity Specific Conditions:
1. The commercial address for this activity can be registered in areas classified as commercial, services, or industrial
2. The commercial address of the Commercial Registration for this activity can an office address provided that the site is used for administrative purposes and not physical selling, and that the office is not located in a residential area

Required Documents

- Lease agreement (after obtaining the necessary approvals from other licensing entities)
- Shop photos

Other Documents

- Cabinet's Decision (56) of the year 2022 regarding the Regulatory Requirements of Construction for various areas in the Kingdom of Bahrain

General Directrate Of Civil Defence (Post) (46699)

Approval Name	Description	Estimated Time
Sale/Trading in waste and scrap	This Approval is required to insure compliance with the fire prevention and protection requirements of General Directorate of Civil Defense	5 Days

Fee Details (if any)

30 BD Fire prevention and protection certificate fees

License Information

1. Provide the documents mentioned in the “Required Documents” section
2. Comply with the requirements listed in the inspection checklist found in the “Other Downloadable Documents” section
3. Provide proof to the General Directorate of Civil Defense that an alarm and firefighting equipment have been installed within 6 months of obtaining a Commercial Registration and license

If a warehouse is used: A safety certificate must be obtained viaBahrain.bh

Other Documents

•Sample pictures of the general directorate of civil defense requirements
•licencing requirments of the general directorat of civil defense for activity number "46699"

Supreme Council for Environment (Post) (46699)

Approval Name	Description	Estimated Time
Environmental Approval for Sale/ Trading in waste and scrap activity	This service aims to assess the environmental impact and licensing of development, industrial and production projects and activities, in accordance with the standards of protecting the environment and its natural resources	10 Days

Fee Details (if any)

30 Bahraini Dinars

License Information

To check the requirements for this approval, kindly download the detailed requirements sheet from the other downloadable documents section, which includes the following requirements:

- Building layout Engineering and Equipment Requirements
- Work-place Requirements
- Storage Requirements
- Material Management Requirements
- Waste Management Requirements
- Documents and Reporting Requirements
- General Requirements

Other Documents

•Annex to the Minister of Housing, Municipalities and Environment order regarding the project's environmental assessment
•Law No. (2) of 2021 regarding the environmental standards of air as decided by the Chairman of the Supreme Council for Environment
•Law No. (3) of 2021 regarding the environmental standards of water as decided by the Chairman of the Supreme Council for the Environment
•Law No. (54) of 2014 regarding the approval of the unified law regarding substances that deplete the ozone layer for the GCC countries
•Law No. (7) of 2022 regarding the environment
•Ministerial Order No. (1) of 1998 regarding Project's Environmental Assessment
•Ministerial Order No. (10) of 2006 regarding the installation of devices for on-line monitoring of atmospheric air pollutants
•Ministerial Order No. (11) of 2019 regarding the issue of technical specification of plastic products
•Ministerial Order No. (3) of 2005 regarding environmental requirements and standards in workplaces, especially regarding workers' exposure to heat and noise, and the provision of tools and protective clothing such as gloves, glasses, face masks and earplugs, with a commitment to use them during work
•Ministerial Order No. (3) of 2006 regarding the management of hazardous waste
•Ministerial Order No. (4) of 2005 regarding the management of used oils
•Ministerial Order No. (4) of 2006 regarding the management of hazardous chemicals
•Ministerial Order No. (4) of 2021 regarding the fees of the licenses and services provided by the Supreme Council for Environment
•Ministerial Order No. (6) of 2013 amending order No. (4) of 2006 regarding the management of hazardous chemicals
•Ministerial Order No. (7) of 2002 regarding the control importation and use of prohibited and severely restricted chemicals, and not to import any chemical compound except after obtaining approvals of all concerned authorities, including the executive body of the Supreme Council for Environment
•Ministerial Order No. (7) of 2013 amending order No. (3) of 2006 regarding the management of hazardous waste
•Ministerial Order No. 4 of 2014 regarding the management of the environmental consulting offices operations in the Kingdom of Bahrain
•Order No. (2) of 2020 determining the categories of fees for licensing refrigeration media, refrigeration units and air conditioning units as decided by the Chairman of the Supreme Council for the Environment
•Order No. (2) of 2020 determining the categories of fees for licensing refrigeration media, refrigeration units and air conditioning units as decided by the Chairman of the Supreme Council for the Environment
•Requirements for business activities
•law No. (1) of 2020 regarding the management of refrigeration media, refrigeration units and air conditioning units as decided by the Chairman of the Supreme Council for the Environment
•law No. (2) of 2019 regarding the ban on the import of plastic waste of all kinds as

decided by the Chairman of the Supreme Council for the Environment

Sale/Trading Activities; repair of motor vehicles and motorcycles

ISIC4	Business activity
466999	Sale/Trading in other industrial products/ raw material

Description

This activity includes wholesale and/or retail sale of industrial raw material not specified in other activities

This activity does not include Sale/Trading in industrial chemicals

Business Requirements

Age

18 and above

Allowed for Nationalities

- Bahraini 100%
- GCC 100%
- American 100%

Legal Type

It is allowed to register according to the legal forms mentioned below

Allowed for Individual Commercial Registration (ICR) : Yes

Allowed for Company Commercial Registration (CCR) : Yes

- Bahrain Shareholding Company (Public)
- With Limited Liability Company
- Branch of a Foreign Company
- Bahrain Shareholding Company (Closed)
- Partnership Company
- Simple Commandite Company
- Commandite By Shares Company
- Non Profit Company

Required Step of Licenses and Approvals

Ministry / Directorate	License / Approval Requirements	Approval Type
Municipality Affairs	Site Approval for Trading related activities	Post

Municipality Affairs (Post) (466999)

Approval Name	Description	Estimated Time
Site Approval for Trading related activities	Municipality Approval for the Commercial Registration address or the site in which the Activity will be practiced	3 Days

Fee Details (if any)

10

License Information

General Conditions:
1. Size of shop/premises must be sufficient for the activity
2. Businesses may not carry out the activity outside the boundaries of the shop/ premises
3. It is prohibited to display or store any items or equipment outside the shop / premises boundary without prior approval from the Municipality
4. Maintain cleanliness of the site
5. Comply with the parking space regulations as per the Construction Regulatory Requirements

Activity Specific Conditions:
1. The commercial address for this activity can be registered in areas classified as commercial, services, or industrial
2. The commercial address of the Commercial Registration for this activity can an office address provided that the site is used for administrative purposes and not physical selling, and that the office is not located in a residential area

Required Documents

- Lease agreement (after obtaining the necessary approvals from other licensing entities)
- Shop photos

Other Documents

- Cabinet's Decision (56) of the year 2022 regarding the Regulatory Requirements of Construction for various areas in the Kingdom of Bahrain

Sale/Trading Activities; repair of motor vehicles and motorcycles

ISIC4	Business activity
469-1	General Trade

Description

This activity includes wholesale and/or retail of a variety of goods without any particular specialization.

It also includes the import, export and sale of Paints, Glue and Silicon

This activity does not include wholesale/retail of heavy machinery, vehicles, weapons, alcoholic drinks, pesticides, precious metals/Jewelry, food and beverages, tobacco products, and/or electronic nicotine products for not less than 18 years old and/or other activities that require approval from other official authorities.

Business Requirements

Age

18 and above

Allowed for Nationalities

- Bahraini 100%
- American 100%
- GCC 100%

Legal Type

It is allowed to register according to the legal forms mentioned below

Allowed for Individual Commercial Registration (ICR) : Yes

Allowed for Company Commercial Registration (CCR) : Yes

- Bahrain Shareholding Company (Public)
- With Limited Liability Company
- Branch of a Foreign Company
- Bahrain Shareholding Company (Closed)
- Partnership Company
- Simple Commandite Company
- Commandite By Shares Company
- Non Profit Company

Required Step of Licenses and Approvals

Ministry / Directorate	License / Approval Requirements	Approval Type
Municipality Affairs	Site Approval for Trading related activities	Post

Municipality Affairs (Post) (469-1)

Approval Name	Description	Estimated Time
Site Approval for Trading related activities	Municipality Approval for the Commercial Registration address or the site in which the Activity will be practiced	3 Days

Fee Details (if any)

10

License Information

General Conditions:
1. Size of shop/premises must be sufficient for the activity
2. Businesses may not carry out the activity outside the boundaries of the shop/ premises
3. It is prohibited to display or store any items or equipment outside the shop / premises boundary without prior approval from the Municipality
4. Maintain cleanliness of the site
5. Comply with the parking space regulations as per the Construction Regulatory Requirements

Activity Specific Conditions:
1. The commercial address for this activity can be registered in areas classified as commercial, services, or industrial
2. The commercial address of the Commercial Registration for this activity can an office address provided that the site is used for administrative purposes and not physical selling, and that the office is not located in a residential area

Required Documents

- Lease agreement (after obtaining the necessary approvals from other licensing entities)
- Shop photos

Other Documents

- Cabinet's Decision (56) of the year 2022 regarding the Regulatory Requirements of Construction for various areas in the Kingdom of Bahrain

Sale/Trading Activities; repair of motor vehicles and motorcycles

ISIC4	Business activity
469-2	General Trade - including sale/trade of Food and Beverages

Description

This activity includes wholesale and/or retail of a variety of goods without any particular specialization including the sale of food and beverages such as:

- fresh or preserved fruit and vegetables
- dairy products and eggs
- meat and meat products (including poultry)
- fish, other seafood and products thereof
- bakery products
- sugar confectionery
- other food products

This activity does not include wholesale/retail of heavy machinery, vehicles, weapons, alcoholic drinks, pesticides, precious metals/Jewelry, tobacco products and/or electronic nicotine products for not less than 18 years old and/or other activities that require approval from other official authorities.

Business Requirements

Age

18 and above

Allowed for Nationalities

Bahraini 100%	GCC 100%
American 100%	

Legal Type

It is allowed to register according to the legal forms mentioned below

Allowed for Individual Commercial Registration (ICR) : Yes

Allowed for Company Commercial Registration (CCR) : Yes

- Bahrain Shareholding Company (Public)
- With Limited Liability Company
- Branch of a Foreign Company
- Bahrain Shareholding Company (Closed)
- Partnership Company
- Simple Commandite Company
- Commandite By Shares Company
- Non Profit Company

Required Step of Licenses and Approvals

Ministry / Directorate	License / Approval Requirements	Approval Type
Municipality Affairs	Site Approval for Trading related activities	Post
Ministry of Health	Health approval for Sale/ Trade of Food and Beverages	Post

Municipality Affairs (Post) (469-2)

Approval Name	Description	Estimated Time
Site Approval for Trading related activities	Municipality Approval for the Commercial Registration address or the site in which the Activity will be practiced	3 Days

Fee Details (if any)

10

License Information

General Conditions:
1. Size of shop/premises must be sufficient for the activity
2. Businesses may not carry out the activity outside the boundaries of the shop/ premises
3. It is prohibited to display or store any items or equipment outside the shop / premises boundary without prior approval from the Municipality
4. Maintain cleanliness of the site
5. Comply with the parking space regulations as per the Construction Regulatory Requirements

Activity Specific Conditions:
1. The commercial address for this activity can be registered in areas classified as commercial, services, or industrial
2. The commercial address of the Commercial Registration for this activity can an office address provided that the site is used for administrative purposes and not physical selling, and that the office is not located in a residential area

Required Documents

- Lease agreement (after obtaining the necessary approvals from other licensing entities)
- Shop photos

Other Documents

- Cabinet's Decision (56) of the year 2022 regarding the Regulatory Requirements of Construction for various areas in the Kingdom of Bahrain

Ministry of Health (Post) (469-2)

Approval Name	Description	Estimated Time
Health approval for Sale/Trade of Food and Beverages	Health approval for Sale/Trade of Food and Beverages	5 Days

Fee Details (if any)

100 BD

License Information

Please refer to the “Activity License Checklist – Ministry of Health“ document under the “other downloadable documents” section for the licensing requirements.

For faster processing, you may engage any of the licensed engineering offices listed under the “Service Providers Directory” to provide drawings/layout of the premises, which should then be attached to the application that you will submit online. To access the list of licensed engineering offices follow the below steps:
1- Click on “Public Service” on the main navigation bar
2- Click on “Service Providers Directory”
3- Click on “Click Here” button adjacent to “List of Engineering Offices for Ministry of Health related activities”

Required Documents

- Drawings/ layout of premises (approved by an engineering office).
- Requirement Checklist (Stamped by an engineering office)
- drawings/layouts of the premises

Other Documents

- Operational requirements for the activity of Sale/Trade of Food and
- Sale & trade of Food and Beverages SaleTrade of Food and Beverages Licensing Form

Sale/Trading Activities; repair of motor vehicles and motorcycles

ISIC4	Business activity
469-3	General Trade - including sale/trade of tobacco products

Description

This activity includes wholesale and/or retail of a variety of goods without any particular specialization including the sale of tobacco products.and/or electronic nicotine products for not less than 18 years old

This activity does not include wholesale/retail of heavy machinery, vehicles, weapons, alcoholic drinks, pesticides, precious metals/Jewelry, food and beverages, and/or other activities that require approval from other official authorities.

Business Requirements

Age

18 and above

Allowed for Nationalities

Bahraini 100%	GCC 100%
American 100%	

Legal Type

It is allowed to register according to the legal forms mentioned below

Allowed for Individual Commercial Registration (ICR) : Yes

Allowed for Company Commercial Registration (CCR) : Yes

- Bahrain Shareholding Company (Public)
- With Limited Liability Company
- Branch of a Foreign Company
- Bahrain Shareholding Company (Closed)
- Partnership Company
- Simple Commandite Company
- Commandite By Shares Company
- Non Profit Company

Required Step of Licenses and Approvals

Ministry / Directorate	License / Approval Requirements	Approval Type
Ministry of Health	Notification Only	Notification Only
Municipality Affairs	Site Approval for Trading related activities	Post

Ministry of Health (Notification Only) (469-3)

Approval Name	Description	Estimated Time
Notification Only	After obtaining the Commercial Registration with license for this activity, please visit the Registration Office at the Public Health Directorate (Ministry of Health in Al Salmaniya) to pay for and obtain your Health Certificate. The fee to issue a health certificate is BD5. (Note: A health certificate must be obtained before practicing the activity. Failure to do so would result in a violation on the Commercial Registration. To obtain your health ser)	There is no License Information in this license. Days

Fee Details (if any)

300 BD

License Information

There is no License Information in this license.

Other Documents

- Operational requirements for trade/sale of tobacco products

Municipality Affairs (Post) (469-3)

Approval Name	Description	Estimated Time
Site Approval for Trading related activities	Municipality Approval for the Commercial Registration address or the site in which the Activity will be practiced	3 Days

Fee Details (if any)

10

License Information

General Conditions:
1. Size of shop/premises must be sufficient for the activity
2. Businesses may not carry out the activity outside the boundaries of the shop/ premises
3. It is prohibited to display or store any items or equipment outside the shop / premises boundary without prior approval from the Municipality
4. Maintain cleanliness of the site
5. Comply with the parking space regulations as per the Construction Regulatory Requirements

Activity Specific Conditions:
1. The commercial address for this activity can be registered in areas classified as commercial, services, or industrial
2. The commercial address of the Commercial Registration for this activity can an office address provided that the site is used for administrative purposes and not physical selling, and that the office is not located in a residential area

Required Documents

- Lease agreement (after obtaining the necessary approvals from other licensing entities)
- Shop photos

Other Documents

- Cabinet's Decision (56) of the year 2022 regarding the Regulatory Requirements of Construction for various areas in the Kingdom of Bahrain

Sale/Trading Activities; repair of motor vehicles and motorcycles

ISIC4	Business activity
469-4	General Trade - including sale/trade of Food, Beverages, and tobacco products

Description

This activity includes wholesale and/or retail of a variety of goods without any particular specialization including the sale of tobacco products and/or electronic nicotine products for not less than 18 years old as well as the sale of food and beverages such as:

- fresh or preserved fruit and vegetables
- dairy products and eggs
- meat and meat products (including poultry)
- fish, other seafood and products thereof
- bakery products
- sugar confectionery
- other food products

This activity does not include wholesale/retail of heavy machinery, vehicles, weapons, alcoholic drinks, pesticides, precious metals/Jewelry, and/or other activities that require approval from other official authorities.

Business Requirements

✔ Age

18 and above

✔ Allowed for Nationalities

Bahraini
100%

American
100%

GCC
100%

Legal Type

It is allowed to register according to the legal forms mentioned below

Allowed for Individual Commercial Registration (ICR) : Yes

Allowed for Company Commercial Registration (CCR) : Yes

- Bahrain Shareholding Company (Public)
- With Limited Liability Company
- Branch of a Foreign Company
- Bahrain Shareholding Company (Closed)
- Partnership Company
- Simple Commandite Company
- Commandite By Shares Company
- Non Profit Company

Required Step of Licenses and Approvals

Ministry / Directorate	License / Approval Requirements	Approval Type
Municipality Affairs	Site Approval for Trading related activities	Post
Ministry of Health	Health approval for Sale of tobacco products	Post

Municipality Affairs (Post) (469-4)

Approval Name	Description	Estimated Time
Site Approval for Trading related activities	Municipality Approval for the Commercial Registration address or the site in which the Activity will be practiced	3 Days

Fee Details (if any)

10

License Information

General Conditions:
1. Size of shop/premises must be sufficient for the activity
2. Businesses may not carry out the activity outside the boundaries of the shop/ premises
3. It is prohibited to display or store any items or equipment outside the shop / premises boundary without prior approval from the Municipality
4. Maintain cleanliness of the site
5. Comply with the parking space regulations as per the Construction Regulatory Requirements

Activity Specific Conditions:
1. The commercial address for this activity can be registered in areas classified as commercial, services, or industrial
2. The commercial address of the Commercial Registration for this activity can an office address provided that the site is used for administrative purposes and not physical selling, and that the office is not located in a residential area

Required Documents

- Lease agreement (after obtaining the necessary approvals from other licensing entities)
- Shop photos

Other Documents

- Cabinet's Decision (56) of the year 2022 regarding the Regulatory Requirements of Construction for various areas in the Kingdom of Bahrain

Ministry of Health (Post) (469-4)

Approval Name	Description	Estimated Time
Health approval for Sale of tobacco products	Health approval for Sale of tobacco products	5 Days

Fee Details (if any)

300 BD

License Information

Please refer to the “Health requirements for the sale or trade of tobacco products” document in the “other downloadable documents” section below for the requirements and specifications for this activity.

No need for Site Inspection before issuing the license

Please refer to the “Health requirements checklist document in the “other downloadable documents” section for the requirements and specifications for this activity.

You could employ one of the licensed engineering offices listed in the business support organizations list to provide engineering drawings that will be attached when submitting an application via the Sijilat system.

Required Documents

- Drawings/ layout of premises (approved by an engineering office).
- Photos of the shop and tobacco display section
- Requirement Checklist (Stamped by an engineering office)

Other Documents

- Operational requirements for trade/sale of tobacco products

Sale/Trading Activities; repair of motor vehicles and motorcycles

ISIC4	Business activity
4699	Authorised Distributor

Description

This activity includes practicing authorized distributor activities according to an agreement/contract with the principal company that owns the trademark This activity also includes wholesale and/or retail of a variety of goods and services related to the agreement/contract which may require the approval from other official authorities.

Note: The authorized distributor agreement/contract and any amendments thereof must be registered in the expert commercial agency/authorized distributor system in the commercial registration portal (Sijilat).

Business Requirements

Age

18 and above

Allowed for Nationalities

Bahraini 100%	GCC Allowed up to 49% (a minimum Bahraini ownership of 51% is required)
American Allowed up to 49% (a minimum Bahraini ownership of 51% is required)	Singaporean Allowed up to 49% (a minimum Bahraini ownership of 51% is required)
Icelander Allowed up to 49% (a minimum Bahraini ownership of 51% is required)	Liechtensteiner Allowed up to 49% (a minimum Bahraini ownership of 51% is required)
Norwegian Allowed up to 49% (a minimum Bahraini ownership of 51% is required)	Swiss Allowed up to 49% (a minimum Bahraini ownership of 51% is required)

Foreign Allowed up to Allowed up to 49% (a minimum Bahraini ownership of 51% is required)

Legal Type

It is allowed to register according to the legal forms mentioned below

Allowed for Individual Commercial Registration (ICR) : Yes

Allowed for Company Commercial Registration (CCR) : Yes

- Bahrain Shareholding Company (Public)
- With Limited Liability Company
- Bahrain Shareholding Company (Closed)
- Partnership Company
- Commandite By Shares Company

Required Step of Licenses and Approvals

Ministry / Directorate	License / Approval Requirements	Approval Type
Ministry of Industry and Commerce	Approval for Authorised Distributor	Pre
Municipality Affairs	Site Approval for Trading related activities	Post

Ministry of Industry and Commerce (Pre) (4699)

Approval Name	Description	Estimated Time
Approval for Authorised Distributor	This is an approval to practice Authorised Distributor Activity	5 Days

Fee Details (if any)

There is no Estimated Processing Time (Days) in this license.

License Information

1. The applicant seeking a license to practice an authorised distributor activity must have an active commercial registration with the Ministry of Industry and Commerce in general trade activity or retail or wholesale trade activities.
If the license applicant is an individual establishment, it must be owned by a Bahraini.
2. If the license applicant is a company, the percentage of what is owned by Bahraini partners (whether individuals or companies 100% owned by Bahrainis) in its capital must not be less than 51%, and the percentage owned by other nationalities must not exceed 49%, and its head office must be in the Kingdom of Bahrain.
3. Documents proving the existence of an authorised distribution agreement/contract for products and services with the Trademark owner company must be submitted and includes the following data:
a) The name of the authorized distributor, the company that owns the trademark, and the nationality of each.
b) The goods and services included in the distribution agreement/contract, and the rights and obligations of both the authorized distributor and the company that owns the trademark.
c) The authorized distributor's work area/territory.
d) The duration of the agreement/contract if it is for a fixed period.
e) The main business location of the authorized distributor and the company that owns the trademark.
f) The trade name of the goods or trademarks.
g) Any other conditions agreed upon between the authorized distributor and the company that owns the trademark, provided that they do not conflict with the provisions of the laws in force in the Kingdom of Bahrain.

Required Documents

•Agreement/Contract of authorized distributorship with principal company (Trademark owner).

Other Documents

•Prime Minister Edict No. (40) of 2021 specifying the commercial activities that companies with foreign capital may practice and its amendment.
•• Ministerial Resolution No. (29) of 2024 regarding the terms and conditions for practicing the activity of the authorised distributor

Municipality Affairs (Post) (4699)

Approval Name	Description	Estimated Time
Site Approval for Trading related activities	Municipality Approval for the Commercial Registration address or the site in which the Activity will be practiced	3 Days

Fee Details (if any)

10

License Information

General Conditions:
1. Size of shop/premises must be sufficient for the activity
2. Businesses may not carry out the activity outside the boundaries of the shop/ premises
3. It is prohibited to display or store any items or equipment outside the shop / premises boundary without prior approval from the Municipality
4. Maintain cleanliness of the site
5. Comply with the parking space regulations as per the Construction Regulatory Requirements

Activity Specific Conditions:
1. The commercial address for this activity can be registered in areas classified as commercial, services, or industrial
2. The commercial address of the Commercial Registration for this activity can an office address provided that the site is used for administrative purposes and not physical selling, and that the office is not located in a residential area

Required Documents

- Lease agreement (after obtaining the necessary approvals from other licensing entities)
- Shop photos

Other Documents

- Cabinet's Decision (56) of the year 2022 regarding the Regulatory Requirements of Construction for various areas in the Kingdom of Bahrain

Sale/Trading Activities; repair of motor vehicles and motorcycles

ISIC4	Business activity
4721-1	Sale/Trade of Food and Beverages

Description

This activity includes wholesale and/or retail of any of the following types of goods:
- fresh or preserved fruit and vegetables
- dairy products and eggs
- meat and meat products (including poultry)
- fish, other seafood and products thereof
- bakery products
- sugar confectionery
- other food products

Notes:
- To sell seafood products applicants must select "Fish/Marine products" option
- To sell health food products applicants must select "health food" option

Business Requirements

Age

18 and above

Allowed for Nationalities

- Bahraini 100%
- American 100%
- Liechtenstein er 100%
- Swiss 100%
- GCC 100%
- Icelander 100%
- Norwegian 100%

Legal Type

It is allowed to register according to the legal forms mentioned below

Allowed for Individual Commercial Registration (ICR) : Yes

Allowed for Company Commercial Registration (CCR) : Yes

- Bahrain Shareholding Company (Public)
- With Limited Liability Company
- Branch of a Foreign Company
- Bahrain Shareholding Company (Closed)
- Partnership Company
- Simple Commandite Company
- Commandite By Shares Company
- Non Profit Company

Required Step of Licenses and Approvals

Ministry / Directorate	License / Approval Requirements	Approval Type
Ministry of Health	Health approval for Sale/ Trade of Food and Beverages	Post
Municipality Affairs	Site Approval for Trading related activities	Post

Ministry of Health (Post) (4721-1)

Approval Name	Description	Estimated Time
Health approval for Sale/Trade of Food and Beverages	Health approval for Sale/Trade of Food and Beverages	5 Days

Fee Details (if any)

100 BD

License Information

Please refer to the “Activity License Checklist – Ministry of Health“ document under the “other downloadable documents” section for the licensing requirements.

For faster processing, you may engage any of the licensed engineering offices listed under the “Service Providers Directory” to provide drawings/layout of the premises, which should then be attached to the application that you will submit online. To access the list of licensed engineering offices follow the below steps:
1- Click on “Public Service” on the main navigation bar
2- Click on “Service Providers Directory”
3- Click on “Click Here” button adjacent to “List of Engineering Offices for Ministry of Health related activities”

Required Documents

- Drawings/ layout of premises (approved by an engineering office).
- Requirement Checklist (Stamped by an engineering office)
- drawings/layouts of the premises

Other Documents

- Operational requirements for the activity of Sale/Trade of Food and
- Sale & trade of Food and Beverages SaleTrade of Food and Beverages Licensing Form

Municipality Affairs (Post) (4721-1)

Approval Name	Description	Estimated Time
Site Approval for Trading related activities	Municipality Approval for the Commercial Registration address or the site in which the Activity will be practiced	3 Days

Fee Details (if any)

10

License Information

General Conditions:
1. Size of shop/premises must be sufficient for the activity
2. Businesses may not carry out the activity outside the boundaries of the shop/ premises
3. It is prohibited to display or store any items or equipment outside the shop / premises boundary without prior approval from the Municipality
4. Maintain cleanliness of the site
5. Comply with the parking space regulations as per the Construction Regulatory Requirements

Activity Specific Conditions:
1. The commercial address for this activity can be registered in areas classified as commercial, services, or industrial
2. The commercial address of the Commercial Registration for this activity can an office address provided that the site is used for administrative purposes and not physical selling, and that the office is not located in a residential area

Required Documents

- Lease agreement (after obtaining the necessary approvals from other licensing entities)
- Shop photos

Other Documents

- Cabinet's Decision (56) of the year 2022 regarding the Regulatory Requirements of Construction for various areas in the Kingdom of Bahrain

Sale/Trading Activities; repair of motor vehicles and motorcycles

ISIC4	Business activity
4721-2	Sale/Trade of Food and Beverages - Fish/Marine species

Description

This option includes wholesale and/or retail sale of Fish/Marine products

Business Requirements

Age

18 and above

Allowed for Nationalities

- Bahraini 100%
- American 100%
- Liechtenstein er 100%
- Swiss 100%
- GCC 100%
- Icelander 100%
- Norwegian 100%

Legal Type

It is allowed to register according to the legal forms mentioned below

Allowed for Individual Commercial Registration (ICR) : Yes

Allowed for Company Commercial Registration (CCR) : Yes

- Bahrain Shareholding Company (Public)
- With Limited Liability Company
- Branch of a Foreign Company
- Bahrain Shareholding Company (Closed)
- Partnership Company
- Simple Commandite Company
- Commandite By Shares Company
- Non Profit Company

Required Step of Licenses and Approvals

Ministry / Directorate	License / Approval Requirements	Approval Type
Directorate of Fisheries	Notification Only	Notification Only
Ministry of Health	Health approval for Sale/ Trade of Food and Beverages	Post
Municipality Affairs	Site Approval for Trading related activities	Post

Directorate of Fisheries (Notification Only) (4721-2)

Approval Name	Description	Estimated Time
Notification Only	Notify license entity that new application is applied.	There is no License Information in this license. Days

Fee Details (if any)

There is no Estimated Processing Time (Days) in this license.

License Information

There is no License Information in this license.

Ministry of Health (Post) (4721-2)

Approval Name	Description	Estimated Time
Health approval for Sale/Trade of Food and Beverages	Health approval for Sale/Trade of Food and Beverages	5 Days

Fee Details (if any)

100 BD

License Information

Please refer to the “Activity License Checklist – Ministry of Health“ document under the “other downloadable documents” section for the licensing requirements.

For faster processing, you may engage any of the licensed engineering offices listed under the “Service Providers Directory” to provide drawings/layout of the premises, which should then be attached to the application that you will submit online. To access the list of licensed engineering offices follow the below steps:
1- Click on “Public Service” on the main navigation bar
2- Click on “Service Providers Directory”
3- Click on “Click Here” button adjacent to “List of Engineering Offices for Ministry of Health related activities”

Required Documents

- Drawings/ layout of premises (approved by an engineering office).
- Requirement Checklist (Stamped by an engineering office)
- drawings/layouts of the premises

Other Documents

- Operational requirements for the activity of Sale/Trade of Food and
- Sale & trade of Food and Beverages SaleTrade of Food and Beverages Licensing Form

Municipality Affairs (Post) (4721-2)

Approval Name	Description	Estimated Time
Site Approval for Trading related activities	Municipality Approval for the Commercial Registration address or the site in which the Activity will be practiced	3 Days

Fee Details (if any)

10

License Information

General Conditions:
1. Size of shop/premises must be sufficient for the activity
2. Businesses may not carry out the activity outside the boundaries of the shop/ premises
3. It is prohibited to display or store any items or equipment outside the shop / premises boundary without prior approval from the Municipality
4. Maintain cleanliness of the site
5. Comply with the parking space regulations as per the Construction Regulatory Requirements

Activity Specific Conditions:
1. The commercial address for this activity can be registered in areas classified as commercial, services, or industrial
2. The commercial address of the Commercial Registration for this activity can an office address provided that the site is used for administrative purposes and not physical selling, and that the office is not located in a residential area

Required Documents

- Lease agreement (after obtaining the necessary approvals from other licensing entities)
- Shop photos

Other Documents

- Cabinet's Decision (56) of the year 2022 regarding the Regulatory Requirements of Construction for various areas in the Kingdom of Bahrain

Sale/Trading Activities; repair of motor vehicles and motorcycles

ISIC4	Business activity
4721-3	Sale/Trade of Food and Beverages - Health Food

Description

This option includes wholesale and/or retail sale of Healthy Food

Business Requirements

Age

18 and above

Allowed for Nationalities

- Bahraini 100%
- American 100%
- GCC 100%

Legal Type

It is allowed to register according to the legal forms mentioned below

Allowed for Individual Commercial Registration (ICR) : Yes

Allowed for Company Commercial Registration (CCR) : Yes

- Bahrain Shareholding Company (Public)
- With Limited Liability Company
- Branch of a Foreign Company
- Bahrain Shareholding Company (Closed)
- Partnership Company
- Simple Commandite Company
- Commandite By Shares Company
- Non Profit Company

Required Step of Licenses and Approvals

Ministry / Directorate	License / Approval Requirements	Approval Type
Municipality Affairs	Site Approval for Trading related activities	Post
Ministry of Health	Health approval for Sale/ Trade of Food and Beverages	Post

Municipality Affairs (Post) (4721-3)

Approval Name	Description	Estimated Time
Site Approval for Trading related activities	Municipality Approval for the Commercial Registration address or the site in which the Activity will be practiced	3 Days

Fee Details (if any)

10

License Information

General Conditions:
1. Size of shop/premises must be sufficient for the activity
2. Businesses may not carry out the activity outside the boundaries of the shop/ premises
3. It is prohibited to display or store any items or equipment outside the shop / premises boundary without prior approval from the Municipality
4. Maintain cleanliness of the site
5. Comply with the parking space regulations as per the Construction Regulatory Requirements

Activity Specific Conditions:
1. The commercial address for this activity can be registered in areas classified as commercial, services, or industrial
2. The commercial address of the Commercial Registration for this activity can an office address provided that the site is used for administrative purposes and not physical selling, and that the office is not located in a residential area

Required Documents

- Lease agreement (after obtaining the necessary approvals from other licensing entities)
- Shop photos

Other Documents

- Cabinet's Decision (56) of the year 2022 regarding the Regulatory Requirements of Construction for various areas in the Kingdom of Bahrain

Ministry of Health (Post) (4721-3)

Approval Name	Description	Estimated Time
Health approval for Sale/Trade of Food and Beverages	Health approval for Sale/Trade of Food and Beverages	5 Days

Fee Details (if any)

100 BD

License Information

Please refer to the “Activity License Checklist – Ministry of Health“ document under the “other downloadable documents” section for the licensing requirements.

For faster processing, you may engage any of the licensed engineering offices listed under the “Service Providers Directory” to provide drawings/layout of the premises, which should then be attached to the application that you will submit online. To access the list of licensed engineering offices follow the below steps:
1- Click on “Public Service” on the main navigation bar
2- Click on “Service Providers Directory”
3- Click on “Click Here” button adjacent to “List of Engineering Offices for Ministry of Health related activities”

Required Documents

- Drawings/ layout of premises (approved by an engineering office).
- Requirement Checklist (Stamped by an engineering office)
- drawings/layouts of the premises

Other Documents

- Operational requirements for the activity of Sale/Trade of Food and
- Sale & trade of Food and Beverages SaleTrade of Food and Beverages Licensing Form

Sale/Trading Activities; repair of motor vehicles and motorcycles

ISIC4	Business activity
4723	Sale of tobacco products

Description

This activity include wholesale and/or retail sale of tobacco products and/or electronic nicotine products for not less than 18 years old

Business Requirements

Age

18 and above

Allowed for Nationalities

- Bahraini 100%
- American 100%
- GCC 100%

Legal Type

It is allowed to register according to the legal forms mentioned below

Allowed for Individual Commercial Registration (ICR) : Yes

Allowed for Company Commercial Registration (CCR) : Yes

- Bahrain Shareholding Company (Public)
- With Limited Liability Company
- Branch of a Foreign Company
- Bahrain Shareholding Company (Closed)
- Partnership Company
- Simple Commandite Company
- Commandite By Shares Company
- Non Profit Company

Required Step of Licenses and Approvals

Ministry / Directorate	License / Approval Requirements	Approval Type
Ministry of Health	Notification Only	Notification Only
Municipality Affairs	Site Approval for Trading related activities	Post

Ministry of Health (Notification Only) (4723)

Approval Name	Description	Estimated Time
Notification Only	After obtaining the Commercial Registration with license for this activity, please visit the Registration Office at the Public Health Directorate (Ministry of Health in Al Salmaniya) to pay for and obtain your Health Certificate. The fee to issue a health certificate is BD5. (Note: A health certificate must be obtained before practicing the activity. Failure to do so would result in a violation on the Commercial Registration. To obtain your health ser)	There is no License Information in this license. Days

Fee Details (if any)

300 BD

License Information

There is no License Information in this license.

Other Documents

- Operational requirements for trade/sale of tobacco products

Municipality Affairs (Post) (4723)

Approval Name	Description	Estimated Time
Site Approval for Trading related activities	Municipality Approval for the Commercial Registration address or the site in which the Activity will be practiced	3 Days

Fee Details (if any)

10

License Information

General Conditions:
1. Size of shop/premises must be sufficient for the activity
2. Businesses may not carry out the activity outside the boundaries of the shop/ premises
3. It is prohibited to display or store any items or equipment outside the shop / premises boundary without prior approval from the Municipality
4. Maintain cleanliness of the site
5. Comply with the parking space regulations as per the Construction Regulatory Requirements

Activity Specific Conditions:
1. The commercial address for this activity can be registered in areas classified as commercial, services, or industrial
2. The commercial address of the Commercial Registration for this activity can an office address provided that the site is used for administrative purposes and not physical selling, and that the office is not located in a residential area

Required Documents

- Lease agreement (after obtaining the necessary approvals from other licensing entities)
- Shop photos

Other Documents

- Cabinet's Decision (56) of the year 2022 regarding the Regulatory Requirements of Construction for various areas in the Kingdom of Bahrain

Sale/Trading Activities; repair of motor vehicles and motorcycles

ISIC4	Business activity
473-1	Sale of fuel in specialized stores - Land Service Station

Description

The activity covers the management and operation of public land-based fuel stations specialized in retail sales only for fuel types such as gasoline, diesel, kerosene, and other approved petroleum fuels.

Business Requirements

Age

18 and above

Allowed for Nationalities

Bahraini
100%

Legal Type

It is allowed to register according to the legal forms mentioned below

Allowed for Individual Commercial Registration (ICR) : Yes

Allowed for Company Commercial Registration (CCR) : Yes

- Bahrain Shareholding Company (Public)
- Bahrain Shareholding Company (Closed)
- Simple Commandite Company
- Non Profit Company
- With Limited Liability Company
- Partnership Company
- Commandite By Shares Company

Required Step of Licenses and Approvals

Ministry / Directorate	License / Approval Requirements	Approval Type
Supreme Council for Environment	Notification Only	Notification Only
Supreme Council for Environment-License for Fuel Service Stations	Approval of the Supreme Council For Environment on Service Station Activity	Notification Only
Urban Planning & Development Authority - License for Fuel Service Stations	Approval of Urban Planning & Development Authority on Service Station Activity	Pre
Roads Planning and Design Directorate -License for Fuel Service Stations	Approval of Roads Planning and Design on Service Station Activity	Pre
Ministry of Oil and Environment- License for Fuel Service Stations	Approval of Ministry Oil and Environment on Service Station Activity	Pre
Traffic Operation And Control Department- License for Fuel Service Stations	Approval of Traffic Operation And Control Department on Service Station Activity	Pre
Roads Planning and Design Directorate	Land Fuel Service Station	Post
Municipality Affairs	Site Approval for Trading related activities	Post
Traffic Operation And Control Department	Traffic Site Approval	Post
General Directrate Of Civil Defence	Sale of fuel in specialized stores - Land Service Station	Post
Ministry of Oil and Environment	Sale of Fuel in specialized stores	Final Site Inspection

Supreme Council for Environment (Notification Only) (473-1)

Approval Name	Description	Estimated Time
Notification Only	Notify license entity that new application is applied.	There is no License Information in this license. Days

Fee Details (if any)

There is no Estimated Processing Time (Days) in this license.

License Information

There is no License Information in this license.

Supreme Council for Environment-License for Fuel Service Stations (Notification Only) (473-1)

Approval Name	Description	Estimated Time
Approval of the Supreme Council For Environment on Service Station Activity	Approval of the Supreme Council For Environment on Service Station Activity	30 Days

Fee Details (if any)

There is no Estimated Processing Time (Days) in this license.

License Information

There is no License Information in this license.

Urban Planning & Development Authority -License for Fuel Service Stations (Pre) (473-1)

Approval Name	Description	Estimated Time
Approval of Urban Planning & Development Authority on Service Station Activity	Approval of Urban Planning & Development Authority on Service Station Activity	30 Days

Fee Details (if any)

There is no Estimated Processing Time (Days) in this license.

License Information

• In the case of government fueling stations, the allocation contained in the ownership document must be consistent with the project to be established.

• In the case of refueling stations for individuals or private companies:
Approval of Urban Planning & Development Authority on Service Station Activity

Case No. (1)
Refueling station areas (PTR)
• It requires designing the project's engineering maps in accordance with the requirements for gas station areas contained in Articles No. (314-315-316-317-318-319 - 390) of Resolution No. (93) of 2023 issuing regulatory requirements for construction in various regions in the Kingdom of Bahrain and the issued guideline. From Bapco Refining Company to design, construct and operate gas stations and their facilities.
• In cases where the proposed engineering maps do not meet the requirements stipulated in the above-mentioned articles, it is required to obtain planning approval on the suitability of the site for reconstruction from the Urban Planning Affairs and obtain approval from the Oil Affairs and Bapco Refining Company.
•The project is required to be studied from a traffic perspective by the Urban Planning Affairs, and they must prepare specialized studies such as a study of the traffic impacts on the existing road network at various levels or any other studies according to the

following: - In the event that there is no need to prepare a traffic study, it does not require presenting the subject to Special Projects Committee. - If there is a need to prepare a traffic study, it will require presenting the subject to the Special Nature Projects Committee, specifying its type.

Case No. (2)
Project areas of a special nature (SP)
• It is necessary to present the project to the Special Nature Projects (SP) Committee in order to license the project, obtain the necessary approvals, and determine the type of traffic or planning studies (if any).

Case No. (3)
Other classifications
• It is necessary to present the project to the Special Nature Projects (SP) Committee in order to license the project, obtain the necessary approvals, and determine the type of traffic or planning studies (if any).
• It will require changing the classification of the property to a refueling station area (PTR) via the electronic platform for urban planning services “Tatreet”, provided that all required documents and engineering maps for the project are provided. The request will be studied, taking into account all planning aspects of the property and the surrounding area, and changing the classification may require obtaining a Approval of the relevant official authorities, if necessary.

Required Documents

•Copy of Title Deed
•The engineering plan and area table showing the uses, entrances and exits of the proposed station, parking lots, internal traffic, the route of the fuel tanker, building heights, the opening direction of the buildings, shops, and fuel pumps and their proposed number
•Valid Property Survey Document

Roads Planning and Design Directorate -License for Fuel Service Stations (Pre) (473-1)

Approval Name	Description	Estimated Time
Approval of Roads Planning and Design on Service Station Activity	Approval of Roads Planning and Design on Service Station Activity	30 Days

Fee Details (if any)

There is no Estimated Processing Time (Days) in this license.

License Information

The available right-of-way must not be less than 20 metres
- The length of cars queuing does not negatively affect the intersections in the area
- It should not conflict with future development of the road network
- It does not negatively affect traffic in the area
- It should not interfere with traffic safety inside and outside the property in question

Required Documents

- Copy of Title Deed
- Proposed engineering plan.

Ministry of Oil and Environment- License for Fuel Service Stations (Pre) (473-1)

Approval Name	Description	Estimated Time
Approval of Ministry Oil and Environment on Service Station Activity	Approval of Ministry Oil and Environment on Service Station Activity	30 Days

Fee Details (if any)

There is no Estimated Processing Time (Days) in this license.

License Information

• The suitability of the site in terms of flow for the passage of fuel tanks, in coordination with the fuel supplying company.

Required Documents

•Property deed or rental agreement
•Proposed engineering plan.

Traffic Operation And Control Department-License for Fuel Service Stations (Pre) (473-1)

Approval Name	Description	Estimated Time
Approval of Traffic Operation And Control Department on Service Station Activity	Approval of Traffic Operation And Control Department on Service Station Activity	30 Days

Fee Details (if any)

There is no Estimated Processing Time (Days) in this license.

License Information

? Study the plan in terms of the suitability of the property, including its interior design, entrances, exits, surrounding streets, and nearby services, in a way that does not disrupt the security of the road or disrupt or hinder others' use of it or expose them to danger.
? Study the plan in terms of the property's suitability for regular traffic and ensuring its safety to face emergency circumstances.
? Study the plan and route of fuel transport tanks in terms of suitability of the plan and route to achieve traffic security.
? Providing sufficient parking for the station and commercial activities (4 parking spaces for each pumping station, in addition to parking for additional commercial activities, if any).

Required Documents

•Engineering maps of the station, if any.
•Plan showing the fuel tanker's coming and going route, approved by the Bapco Distribution Department, and specifying the station's entrance and exit.
•Property map and property number.

Roads Planning and Design Directorate (Post) (473-1)

Approval Name	Description	Estimated Time
Land Fuel Service Station	Land Fuel Service Station	3 Days

Fee Details (if any)

There is no Estimated Processing Time (Days) in this license.

License Information

To get the approval the following conditions should be satisfied

- The station should not be in residential or agricultural areas and should be far from factories

- The station should have a suitable route for the fuel tanker

- The station’s entrance and exit should not cause traffic congestion

Municipality Affairs (Post) (473-1)

Approval Name	Description	Estimated Time
Site Approval for Trading related activities	Municipality Approval for the Commercial Registration address or the site in which the Activity will be practiced	3 Days

Fee Details (if any)

10

License Information

General Conditions:
1. Size of shop/premises must be sufficient for the activity
2. Businesses may not carry out the activity outside the boundaries of the shop/ premises
3. It is prohibited to display or store any items or equipment outside the shop / premises boundary without prior approval from the Municipality
4. Maintain cleanliness of the site
5. Comply with the parking space regulations as per the Construction Regulatory Requirements

Activity Specific Conditions:
1. The commercial address for this activity can be registered in areas classified as commercial, services, or industrial
2. The commercial address of the Commercial Registration for this activity can an office address provided that the site is used for administrative purposes and not physical selling, and that the office is not located in a residential area

Required Documents

- Lease agreement (after obtaining the necessary approvals from other licensing entities)
- Shop photos

Other Documents

- Cabinet's Decision (56) of the year 2022 regarding the Regulatory Requirements of Construction for various areas in the Kingdom of Bahrain

Traffic Operation And Control Department (Post) (473-1)

Approval Name	Description	Estimated Time
Traffic Site Approval	The objective of this approval is to ensure that there is ample parking space and road accessibility to the premise operating a particular business activity	7 Days

Fee Details (if any)

There is no Estimated Processing Time (Days) in this license.

License Information

There is no License Information in this license.

Required Documents

- Architecture drawings for restaurant and Blueprints for parking
- Copy of CPR card
- Copy of Passport
- Project description

General Directrate Of Civil Defence (Post) (473-1)

Approval Name	Description	Estimated Time
Sale of fuel in specialized stores - Land Service Station	This Approval is required to insure compliance with the fire prevention and protection requirements of General Directorate of Civil Defense	5 Days

Fee Details (if any)

No Fees

License Information

1. Provide the documents mentioned in the “Required Documents” section
2. Comply with the requirements listed in the inspection checklist found in the “Other Downloadable Documents” section
3. Provide proof to the General Directorate of Civil Defense that an alarm and firefighting equipment have been installed within 6 months of obtaining a Commercial Registration and license

If a warehouse is used: A safety certificate must be obtained viaBahrain.bh

Required Documents

•No-objection letter for alarm and extinguisher installation from Civil Defense, or purchasing receipt of alarm equipment and extinguishers along with an annual maintenance contract from a company certified by Civil defense
•Photos required for civil defense activities
•Purchasing invoice of security camera system with specifying the type and storage capacity.

Other Documents

- Sample pictures of the general directorate of civil defense requirements
- licencing requirments of the general directorat of civil defense for activity number "473-1"

Ministry of Oil and Environment (Final Site Inspection) (473-1)

Approval Name	Description	Estimated Time
Sale of Fuel in specialized stores	Sale of Fuel in specialized stores	3 Days

Fee Details (if any)

There is no Estimated Processing Time (Days) in this license.

License Information

- The issuance, cancellation, renewal, and modification procedures are carried out according to the licensing procedures in the registry system.
- In case of relocation to another site, the license must be canceled, and a new license must be obtained.
- Commencing operations without a license is prohibited.
- The activity is prohibited from being conducted on sidewalks, public roads, and setback areas.
- A documented proof of land ownership or a registered lease agreement or a right to use government land must be provided for the construction of the project on the specified land (projects of a special nature).
- The proposed site to be licensed must meet the requirements of safety, security, technical, planning, and environmental aspects as determined by the relevant authorities.
- Approval from the specialized technical committee for fuel stations or an approved specialized company is required for the establishment of the project.
- Submission of proposed engineering technical maps for the project prepared by the approved engineering consultancy office, subject to review, approval, or rejection by the relevant technical parties (in BENAYAT system) .
- A technical certificate indicating the suitability of the fuel station for operation, issued by the supplying company or an approved specialized company, must be provided. The issuance of the suitability certificate should not exceed three months from the time of submitting the commercial registration application; otherwise, a new technical inspection and a new certificate of operational suitability are required.
- A qualification certificate for the management and operation of the fuel station from a

specialized and approved entity must be provided.
- A valid insurance document covering the fuel station, its facilities, maintenance costs, rehabilitation costs, and others is required.
- Station Classification: The area of the project should be suitable for the purpose and type of services provided. The following approximate areas can be used as a guideline:
  - Small station: Area of 2,000 square meters or less.
  - Medium station: Area greater than 2,000 and less than 4,000 square meters.
  - Large station: Area greater than 4,000 square meters.
  Note: The mentioned areas are relative and depend on the type of services provided.
- General criteria for the project site:
  - The site address should have an approved classification (projects of a special nature) and should not conflict with future development plans of the area.
  - The network of streets and roads leading to the station should be prepared (paved) and allow for the safe entry and exit of fuel tankers.
  - The site should be at a safe and sufficient distance from intersections, traffic signals, and roundabouts.
  - The station site should be at a suitable and safe distance from densely populated areas.
  - The number of existing stations near the site, located on the same street or in the opposite direction, should be taken into consideration.
  - If necessary, depending on the site, a risk assessment study may be required as determined by the relevant authorities.

Required Documents

- Attach the station's data form
- If possible, indicate the type of fuel to be offered and other services at the station.
- Land survey certificate for the project’s land
- Obtain a document confirming the fulfillment of the fuel station's requirements for commercial operation from the fuel provider company (BAPCO)
- Ownership contract or lease contract for the land of the project describing the purpose of the lease
- Proposed location map of the station showing entry and exit points.
- Provide the final approved engineering maps of the station

Sale/Trading Activities; repair of motor vehicles and motorcycles

ISIC4	Business activity
473-2	Sale of fuel in specialized stores - Marine Service Station

Description

The license is required if the investor intends to start up and operate new marine service stations that sell fuel such as gasoline, diesel and kerosene. This license is for retail selling only.

Business Requirements

Age

18 and above

Allowed for Nationalities

Bahraini
100%

Legal Type

It is allowed to register according to the legal forms mentioned below

Allowed for Individual Commercial Registration (ICR) : Yes

Allowed for Company Commercial Registration (CCR) : Yes

- Bahrain Shareholding Company (Public)
- Bahrain Shareholding Company (Closed)
- Simple Commandite Company
- Non Profit Company
- With Limited Liability Company
- Partnership Company
- Commandite By Shares Company

Required Step of Licenses and Approvals

Ministry / Directorate	License / Approval Requirements	Approval Type
Supreme Council for Environment	Notification Only	Notification Only
General Directrate Of Civil Defence	Sale of fuel in specialized stores - Marine Service Station	Post
Municipality Affairs	Site Approval for Trading related activities	Post
Roads Planning and Design Directorate	Marine Fuel Service Station	Post
Ministry of Oil and Environment	Sale of Fuel in specialized stores	Final Site Inspection

Supreme Council for Environment (Notification Only) (473-2)

Approval Name	Description	Estimated Time
Notification Only	Notify license entity that new application is applied.	There is no License Information in this license. Days

Fee Details (if any)

There is no Estimated Processing Time (Days) in this license.

License Information

There is no License Information in this license.

General Directrate Of Civil Defence (Post) (473-2)

Approval Name	Description	Estimated Time
Sale of fuel in specialized stores - Marine Service Station	This Approval is required to insure compliance with the fire prevention and protection requirements of General Directorate of Civil Defense	5 Days

Fee Details (if any)

No Fees

License Information

1. Provide the documents mentioned in the “Required Documents” section
2. Comply with the requirements listed in the inspection checklist found in the “Other Downloadable Documents” section
3. Provide proof to the General Directorate of Civil Defense that an alarm and firefighting equipment have been installed within 6 months of obtaining a Commercial Registration and license

If a warehouse is used: A safety certificate must be obtained viaBahrain.bh

Required Documents

•No-objection letter for alarm and extinguisher installation from Civil Defense, or purchasing receipt of alarm equipment and extinguishers along with an annual maintenance contract from a company certified by Civil defense
•Photos required for civil defense activities
•Purchasing invoice of security camera system with specifying the type and storage capacity.

Other Documents

- Sample pictures of the general directorate of civil defense requirements
- licencing requirments of the general directorat of civil defense for activity number "473-2"

Municipality Affairs (Post) (473-2)

Approval Name	Description	Estimated Time
Site Approval for Trading related activities	Municipality Approval for the Commercial Registration address or the site in which the Activity will be practiced	3 Days

Fee Details (if any)

10

License Information

General Conditions:
1. Size of shop/premises must be sufficient for the activity
2. Businesses may not carry out the activity outside the boundaries of the shop/ premises
3. It is prohibited to display or store any items or equipment outside the shop / premises boundary without prior approval from the Municipality
4. Maintain cleanliness of the site
5. Comply with the parking space regulations as per the Construction Regulatory Requirements

Activity Specific Conditions:
1. The commercial address for this activity can be registered in areas classified as commercial, services, or industrial
2. The commercial address of the Commercial Registration for this activity can an office address provided that the site is used for administrative purposes and not physical selling, and that the office is not located in a residential area

Required Documents

- Lease agreement (after obtaining the necessary approvals from other licensing entities)
- Shop photos

Other Documents

- Cabinet's Decision (56) of the year 2022 regarding the Regulatory Requirements of Construction for various areas in the Kingdom of Bahrain

Roads Planning and Design Directorate (Post) (473-2)

Approval Name	Description	Estimated Time
Marine Fuel Service Station	Marine Fuel Service Station	3 Days

Fee Details (if any)

There is no Estimated Processing Time (Days) in this license.

License Information

To get the approval the following conditions should be satisfied

- The station should not be in residential or agricultural areas and should be far from factories

- The station should have a suitable route for the fuel tanker

- The station’s entrance and exit should not cause traffic congestion

Ministry of Oil and Environment (Final Site Inspection) (473-2)

Approval Name	Description	Estimated Time
Sale of Fuel in specialized stores	Sale of Fuel in specialized stores	3 Days

Fee Details (if any)

There is no Estimated Processing Time (Days) in this license.

License Information

- The issuance, cancellation, renewal, and modification procedures are carried out according to the licensing procedures in the registry system.
- In case of relocation to another site, the license must be canceled, and a new license must be obtained.
- Commencing operations without a license is prohibited.
- The activity is prohibited from being conducted on sidewalks, public roads, and setback areas.
- A documented proof of land ownership or a registered lease agreement or a right to use government land must be provided for the construction of the project on the specified land (projects of a special nature).
- The proposed site to be licensed must meet the requirements of safety, security, technical, planning, and environmental aspects as determined by the relevant authorities.
- Approval from the specialized technical committee for fuel stations or an approved specialized company is required for the establishment of the project.
- Submission of proposed engineering technical maps for the project prepared by the approved engineering consultancy office, subject to review, approval, or rejection by the relevant technical parties (in BENAYAT system) .
- A technical certificate indicating the suitability of the fuel station for operation, issued by the supplying company or an approved specialized company, must be provided. The issuance of the suitability certificate should not exceed three months from the time of submitting the commercial registration application; otherwise, a new technical inspection and a new certificate of operational suitability are required.
- A qualification certificate for the management and operation of the fuel station from a

specialized and approved entity must be provided.
- A valid insurance document covering the fuel station, its facilities, maintenance costs, rehabilitation costs, and others is required.
- Station Classification: The area of the project should be suitable for the purpose and type of services provided. The following approximate areas can be used as a guideline:
  - Small station: Area of 2,000 square meters or less.
  - Medium station: Area greater than 2,000 and less than 4,000 square meters.
  - Large station: Area greater than 4,000 square meters.
  Note: The mentioned areas are relative and depend on the type of services provided.
- General criteria for the project site:
  - The site address should have an approved classification (projects of a special nature) and should not conflict with future development plans of the area.
  - The network of streets and roads leading to the station should be prepared (paved) and allow for the safe entry and exit of fuel tankers.
  - The site should be at a safe and sufficient distance from intersections, traffic signals, and roundabouts.
  - The station site should be at a suitable and safe distance from densely populated areas.
  - The number of existing stations near the site, located on the same street or in the opposite direction, should be taken into consideration.
  - If necessary, depending on the site, a risk assessment study may be required as determined by the relevant authorities.

Required Documents

- Attach the station's data form
- If possible, indicate the type of fuel to be offered and other services at the station.
- Land survey certificate for the project’s land
- Obtain a document confirming the fulfillment of the fuel station's requirements for commercial operation from the fuel provider company (BAPCO)
- Ownership contract or lease contract for the land of the project describing the purpose of the lease
- Proposed location map of the station showing entry and exit points.
- Provide the final approved engineering maps of the station

Sale/Trading Activities; repair of motor vehicles and motorcycles

ISIC4	Business activity
474	Sale/Trade of information, and communications equipment and related software

Description

This activity includes wholesale and/or retail sale of information and communications equipment, such as computers and peripheral equipment, telecommunications equipment and consumer electronics.
Example of products Include:
- computers
- computer peripheral equipment
- video game consoles
- non-customized software, including video games
- radio and television equipment
- stereo equipment
- CD and DVD players and recorders

Business Requirements

Age

18 and above

Allowed for Nationalities

Bahraini
100%

American
100%

GCC
100%

Legal Type

It is allowed to register according to the legal forms mentioned below

Allowed for Individual Commercial Registration (ICR) : Yes

Allowed for Company Commercial Registration (CCR) : Yes

- Bahrain Shareholding Company (Public)
- With Limited Liability Company
- Branch of a Foreign Company
- Bahrain Shareholding Company (Closed)
- Partnership Company
- Simple Commandite Company
- Commandite By Shares Company
- Non Profit Company

Required Step of Licenses and Approvals

Ministry / Directorate	License / Approval Requirements	Approval Type
Municipality Affairs	Site Approval for Trading related activities	Post

Municipality Affairs (Post) (474)

Approval Name	Description	Estimated Time
Site Approval for Trading related activities	Municipality Approval for the Commercial Registration address or the site in which the Activity will be practiced	3 Days

Fee Details (if any)

10

License Information

General Conditions:
1. Size of shop/premises must be sufficient for the activity
2. Businesses may not carry out the activity outside the boundaries of the shop/ premises
3. It is prohibited to display or store any items or equipment outside the shop / premises boundary without prior approval from the Municipality
4. Maintain cleanliness of the site
5. Comply with the parking space regulations as per the Construction Regulatory Requirements

Activity Specific Conditions:
1. The commercial address for this activity can be registered in areas classified as commercial, services, or industrial
2. The commercial address of the Commercial Registration for this activity can an office address provided that the site is used for administrative purposes and not physical selling, and that the office is not located in a residential area

Required Documents

- Lease agreement (after obtaining the necessary approvals from other licensing entities)
- Shop photos

Other Documents

- Cabinet's Decision (56) of the year 2022 regarding the Regulatory Requirements of Construction for various areas in the Kingdom of Bahrain

Sale/Trading Activities; repair of motor vehicles and motorcycles

ISIC4	Business activity
47412	Sale/Trade of Video Games

Description

This activity includes wholesale and/or retail sale of video games

Business Requirements

Age

18 and above

Allowed for Nationalities

- Bahraini 100%
- American 100%
- GCC 100%

Legal Type

It is allowed to register according to the legal forms mentioned below

Allowed for Individual Commercial Registration (ICR) : Yes

Allowed for Company Commercial Registration (CCR) : Yes

- Bahrain Shareholding Company (Public)
- With Limited Liability Company
- Branch of a Foreign Company
- Bahrain Shareholding Company (Closed)
- Partnership Company
- Simple Commandite Company
- Commandite By Shares Company
- Non Profit Company

Required Step of Licenses and Approvals

Ministry / Directorate	License / Approval Requirements	Approval Type
Directorate of Publication and Press	Sale/Trade of Video Games	Notification Only
General Directorate Of Criminal Investigation	Approval by General Directorate of Criminal Investigation	Pre
Municipality Affairs	Site Approval for Trading related activities	Post

Directorate of Publication and Press (Notification Only) (47412)

Approval Name	Description	Estimated Time
Sale/Trade of Video Games	Sale/Trade of Video Games	5 Days

Fee Details (if any)

There is no Estimated Processing Time (Days) in this license.

License Information

All Business establishments of audio-visual, print and electronic media in the Kingdom of Bahrain must be comply with the law regulating the press, printing and publishing and other relevant laws

Other Documents

•Resolution No. (1) of 2015 regarding standards for supervision and control of media contents

General Directorate Of Criminal Investigation (Pre) (47412)

Approval Name	Description	Estimated Time
Approval by General Directorate of Criminal Investigation	General Directorate of Criminal Investigation Approval for the Activity	7 Days

Fee Details (if any)

There is no Estimated Processing Time (Days) in this license.

License Information

- The applicant should not have a criminal record, unless they have been rehabilitated in criminal cases

Municipality Affairs (Post) (47412)

Approval Name	Description	Estimated Time
Site Approval for Trading related activities	Municipality Approval for the Commercial Registration address or the site in which the Activity will be practiced	3 Days

Fee Details (if any)

10

License Information

General Conditions:
1. Size of shop/premises must be sufficient for the activity
2. Businesses may not carry out the activity outside the boundaries of the shop/ premises
3. It is prohibited to display or store any items or equipment outside the shop / premises boundary without prior approval from the Municipality
4. Maintain cleanliness of the site
5. Comply with the parking space regulations as per the Construction Regulatory Requirements

Activity Specific Conditions:
1. The commercial address for this activity can be registered in areas classified as commercial, services, or industrial
2. The commercial address of the Commercial Registration for this activity can an office address provided that the site is used for administrative purposes and not physical selling, and that the office is not located in a residential area

Required Documents

- Lease agreement (after obtaining the necessary approvals from other licensing entities)
- Shop photos

Other Documents

- Cabinet's Decision (56) of the year 2022 regarding the Regulatory Requirements of Construction for various areas in the Kingdom of Bahrain

Sale/Trading Activities; repair of motor vehicles and motorcycles

ISIC4	Business activity
4751	Sale/Trade of textiles

Description

This activity includes wholesale and/or retail sale of:
- fabrics
- knitting yarn
- basic materials for rug, tapestry or embroidery making
- textiles
- haberdashery: needles, sewing thread etc.

Business Requirements

Age

18 and above

Allowed for Nationalities

- Bahraini 100%
- American 100%
- GCC 100%

Legal Type

It is allowed to register according to the legal forms mentioned below

Allowed for Individual Commercial Registration (ICR) : Yes

Allowed for Company Commercial Registration (CCR) : Yes

- Bahrain Shareholding Company (Public)
- With Limited Liability Company
- Branch of a Foreign Company
- Bahrain Shareholding Company (Closed)
- Partnership Company
- Simple Commandite Company
- Commandite By Shares Company
- Non Profit Company

Required Step of Licenses and Approvals

Ministry / Directorate	License / Approval Requirements	Approval Type
Municipality Affairs	Site Approval for Trading related activities	Post

Municipality Affairs (Post) (4751)

Approval Name	Description	Estimated Time
Site Approval for Trading related activities	Municipality Approval for the Commercial Registration address or the site in which the Activity will be practiced	3 Days

Fee Details (if any)

10

License Information

General Conditions:
1. Size of shop/premises must be sufficient for the activity
2. Businesses may not carry out the activity outside the boundaries of the shop/ premises
3. It is prohibited to display or store any items or equipment outside the shop / premises boundary without prior approval from the Municipality
4. Maintain cleanliness of the site
5. Comply with the parking space regulations as per the Construction Regulatory Requirements

Activity Specific Conditions:
1. The commercial address for this activity can be registered in areas classified as commercial, services, or industrial
2. The commercial address of the Commercial Registration for this activity can an office address provided that the site is used for administrative purposes and not physical selling, and that the office is not located in a residential area

Required Documents

- Lease agreement (after obtaining the necessary approvals from other licensing entities)
- Shop photos

Other Documents

- Cabinet's Decision (56) of the year 2022 regarding the Regulatory Requirements of Construction for various areas in the Kingdom of Bahrain

Sale/Trading Activities; repair of motor vehicles and motorcycles

ISIC4	Business activity
4753	Sale/Trade of carpets, rugs, wall and floor coverings

Description

This activity includes wholesale and/or retail sale of:
- carpets and rugs
- curtains and net curtains
- wallpaper and floor coverings

Business Requirements

Age

18 and above

Allowed for Nationalities

Bahraini
100%

American
100%

GCC
100%

Legal Type

It is allowed to register according to the legal forms mentioned below

Allowed for Individual Commercial Registration (ICR) : Yes

Allowed for Company Commercial Registration (CCR) : Yes

- Bahrain Shareholding Company (Public)
- With Limited Liability Company
- Branch of a Foreign Company
- Bahrain Shareholding Company (Closed)
- Partnership Company
- Simple Commandite Company
- Commandite By Shares Company
- Non Profit Company

Required Step of Licenses and Approvals

Ministry / Directorate	License / Approval Requirements	Approval Type
Municipality Affairs	Site Approval for Trading related activities	Post

Municipality Affairs (Post) (4753)

Approval Name	Description	Estimated Time
Site Approval for Trading related activities	Municipality Approval for the Commercial Registration address or the site in which the Activity will be practiced	3 Days

Fee Details (if any)

10

License Information

General Conditions:
1. Size of shop/premises must be sufficient for the activity
2. Businesses may not carry out the activity outside the boundaries of the shop/ premises
3. It is prohibited to display or store any items or equipment outside the shop / premises boundary without prior approval from the Municipality
4. Maintain cleanliness of the site
5. Comply with the parking space regulations as per the Construction Regulatory Requirements

Activity Specific Conditions:
1. The commercial address for this activity can be registered in areas classified as commercial, services, or industrial
2. The commercial address of the Commercial Registration for this activity can an office address provided that the site is used for administrative purposes and not physical selling, and that the office is not located in a residential area

Required Documents

- Lease agreement (after obtaining the necessary approvals from other licensing entities)
- Shop photos

Other Documents

- Cabinet's Decision (56) of the year 2022 regarding the Regulatory Requirements of Construction for various areas in the Kingdom of Bahrain

Sale/Trading Activities; repair of motor vehicles and motorcycles

ISIC4	Business activity
47591	Sale/Trade of Furniture and all household articles

Description

This activity includes wholesale and/or retail sale of all kinds of household and office furniture and articles

Business Requirements

Age

18 and above

Allowed for Nationalities

- Bahraini 100%
- American 100%
- Liechtenstein er 100%
- Swiss 100%
- GCC 100%
- Icelander 100%
- Norwegian 100%

Legal Type

It is allowed to register according to the legal forms mentioned below

Allowed for Individual Commercial Registration (ICR) : Yes

Allowed for Company Commercial Registration (CCR) : Yes

- Bahrain Shareholding Company (Public)
- With Limited Liability Company
- Branch of a Foreign Company
- Bahrain Shareholding Company (Closed)
- Partnership Company
- Simple Commandite Company
- Commandite By Shares Company
- Non Profit Company

Required Step of Licenses and Approvals

Ministry / Directorate	License / Approval Requirements	Approval Type
Municipality Affairs	Site Approval for Trading related activities	Post

Municipality Affairs (Post) (47591)

Approval Name	Description	Estimated Time
Site Approval for Trading related activities	Municipality Approval for the Commercial Registration address or the site in which the Activity will be practiced	3 Days

Fee Details (if any)

10

License Information

General Conditions:
1. Size of shop/premises must be sufficient for the activity
2. Businesses may not carry out the activity outside the boundaries of the shop/ premises
3. It is prohibited to display or store any items or equipment outside the shop / premises boundary without prior approval from the Municipality
4. Maintain cleanliness of the site
5. Comply with the parking space regulations as per the Construction Regulatory Requirements

Activity Specific Conditions:
1. The commercial address for this activity can be registered in areas classified as commercial, services, or industrial
2. The commercial address of the Commercial Registration for this activity can an office address provided that the site is used for administrative purposes and not physical selling, and that the office is not located in a residential area

Required Documents

- Lease agreement (after obtaining the necessary approvals from other licensing entities)
- Shop photos

Other Documents

- Cabinet's Decision (56) of the year 2022 regarding the Regulatory Requirements of Construction for various areas in the Kingdom of Bahrain

Sale/Trading Activities; repair of motor vehicles and motorcycles

ISIC4	Business activity
47592	Sale/Trade of Electrical and electronic Household appliances

Description

This activity includes wholesale and/or retail trade of all kinds of electrical and electronic household appliances (Radio,TVs, Fridges...etc) It also includes the sale of light batteries used in toys and watches

Business Requirements

Age

18 and above

Allowed for Nationalities

- Bahraini 100%
- American 100%
- GCC 100%

Legal Type

It is allowed to register according to the legal forms mentioned below

Allowed for Individual Commercial Registration (ICR) : Yes

Allowed for Company Commercial Registration (CCR) : Yes

- Bahrain Shareholding Company (Public)
- With Limited Liability Company
- Branch of a Foreign Company
- Bahrain Shareholding Company (Closed)
- Partnership Company
- Simple Commandite Company
- Commandite By Shares Company
- Non Profit Company

Required Step of Licenses and Approvals

Ministry / Directorate	License / Approval Requirements	Approval Type
Municipality Affairs	Site Approval for Trading related activities	Post

Municipality Affairs (Post) (47592)

Approval Name	Description	Estimated Time
Site Approval for Trading related activities	Municipality Approval for the Commercial Registration address or the site in which the Activity will be practiced	3 Days

Fee Details (if any)

10

License Information

General Conditions:
1. Size of shop/premises must be sufficient for the activity
2. Businesses may not carry out the activity outside the boundaries of the shop/ premises
3. It is prohibited to display or store any items or equipment outside the shop / premises boundary without prior approval from the Municipality
4. Maintain cleanliness of the site
5. Comply with the parking space regulations as per the Construction Regulatory Requirements

Activity Specific Conditions:
1. The commercial address for this activity can be registered in areas classified as commercial, services, or industrial
2. The commercial address of the Commercial Registration for this activity can an office address provided that the site is used for administrative purposes and not physical selling, and that the office is not located in a residential area

Required Documents

- Lease agreement (after obtaining the necessary approvals from other licensing entities)
- Shop photos

Other Documents

- Cabinet's Decision (56) of the year 2022 regarding the Regulatory Requirements of Construction for various areas in the Kingdom of Bahrain

Sale/Trading Activities; repair of motor vehicles and motorcycles

ISIC4	Business activity
47593	Sale/Trade of household utensils, cutlery, glassware, and related items

Description

This activity includes wholesale and/or retail sale of household utensils and cutlery, crockery, glassware, china and pottery, as well as wooden, cork and wickerwork goods

Business Requirements

Age

18 and above

Allowed for Nationalities

- Bahraini 100%
- GCC 100%
- American 100%

Legal Type

It is allowed to register according to the legal forms mentioned below

Allowed for Individual Commercial Registration (ICR) : Yes

Allowed for Company Commercial Registration (CCR) : Yes

- Bahrain Shareholding Company (Public)
- With Limited Liability Company
- Branch of a Foreign Company
- Bahrain Shareholding Company (Closed)
- Partnership Company
- Simple Commandite Company
- Commandite By Shares Company
- Non Profit Company

Required Step of Licenses and Approvals

Ministry / Directorate	License / Approval Requirements	Approval Type
Municipality Affairs	Site Approval for Trading related activities	Post

Municipality Affairs (Post) (47593)

Approval Name	Description	Estimated Time
Site Approval for Trading related activities	Municipality Approval for the Commercial Registration address or the site in which the Activity will be practiced	3 Days

Fee Details (if any)

10

License Information

General Conditions:
1. Size of shop/premises must be sufficient for the activity
2. Businesses may not carry out the activity outside the boundaries of the shop/ premises
3. It is prohibited to display or store any items or equipment outside the shop / premises boundary without prior approval from the Municipality
4. Maintain cleanliness of the site
5. Comply with the parking space regulations as per the Construction Regulatory Requirements

Activity Specific Conditions:
1. The commercial address for this activity can be registered in areas classified as commercial, services, or industrial
2. The commercial address of the Commercial Registration for this activity can an office address provided that the site is used for administrative purposes and not physical selling, and that the office is not located in a residential area

Required Documents

- Lease agreement (after obtaining the necessary approvals from other licensing entities)
- Shop photos

Other Documents

- Cabinet's Decision (56) of the year 2022 regarding the Regulatory Requirements of Construction for various areas in the Kingdom of Bahrain

Sale/Trading Activities; repair of motor vehicles and motorcycles

ISIC4	Business activity
47594	Sale/Trade of lighting equipment and articles of lighting

Description

This activity includes wholesale and/or retail sale of lighting equipment and articles of lighting

Business Requirements

Age

18 and above

Allowed for Nationalities

- Bahraini 100%
- American 100%
- GCC 100%

Legal Type

It is allowed to register according to the legal forms mentioned below

Allowed for Individual Commercial Registration (ICR) : Yes

Allowed for Company Commercial Registration (CCR) : Yes

- Bahrain Shareholding Company (Public)
- With Limited Liability Company
- Branch of a Foreign Company
- Bahrain Shareholding Company (Closed)
- Partnership Company
- Simple Commandite Company
- Commandite By Shares Company
- Non Profit Company

Required Step of Licenses and Approvals

Ministry / Directorate	License / Approval Requirements	Approval Type
Municipality Affairs	Site Approval for Trading related activities	Post

Municipality Affairs (Post) (47594)

Approval Name	Description	Estimated Time
Site Approval for Trading related activities	Municipality Approval for the Commercial Registration address or the site in which the Activity will be practiced	3 Days

Fee Details (if any)

10

License Information

General Conditions:
1. Size of shop/premises must be sufficient for the activity
2. Businesses may not carry out the activity outside the boundaries of the shop/ premises
3. It is prohibited to display or store any items or equipment outside the shop / premises boundary without prior approval from the Municipality
4. Maintain cleanliness of the site
5. Comply with the parking space regulations as per the Construction Regulatory Requirements

Activity Specific Conditions:
1. The commercial address for this activity can be registered in areas classified as commercial, services, or industrial
2. The commercial address of the Commercial Registration for this activity can an office address provided that the site is used for administrative purposes and not physical selling, and that the office is not located in a residential area

Required Documents

- Lease agreement (after obtaining the necessary approvals from other licensing entities)
- Shop photos

Other Documents

- Cabinet's Decision (56) of the year 2022 regarding the Regulatory Requirements of Construction for various areas in the Kingdom of Bahrain

Sale/Trading Activities; repair of motor vehicles and motorcycles

ISIC4	Business activity
47595	Sale/Trade of Musical Instruments

Description

This activity includes wholesale and/or retail sale of mȍusical instruments

Business Requirements

Age

18 and above

Allowed for Nationalities

- Bahraini 100%
- American 100%
- GCC 100%

Legal Type

It is allowed to register according to the legal forms mentioned below

Allowed for Individual Commercial Registration (ICR) : Yes

Allowed for Company Commercial Registration (CCR) : Yes

- Bahrain Shareholding Company (Public)
- With Limited Liability Company
- Branch of a Foreign Company
- Bahrain Shareholding Company (Closed)
- Partnership Company
- Simple Commandite Company
- Commandite By Shares Company
- Non Profit Company

Required Step of Licenses and Approvals

Ministry / Directorate	License / Approval Requirements	Approval Type
Municipality Affairs	Site Approval for Trading related activities	Post

Municipality Affairs (Post) (47595)

Approval Name	Description	Estimated Time
Site Approval for Trading related activities	Municipality Approval for the Commercial Registration address or the site in which the Activity will be practiced	3 Days

Fee Details (if any)

10

License Information

General Conditions:
1. Size of shop/premises must be sufficient for the activity
2. Businesses may not carry out the activity outside the boundaries of the shop/ premises
3. It is prohibited to display or store any items or equipment outside the shop / premises boundary without prior approval from the Municipality
4. Maintain cleanliness of the site
5. Comply with the parking space regulations as per the Construction Regulatory Requirements

Activity Specific Conditions:
1. The commercial address for this activity can be registered in areas classified as commercial, services, or industrial
2. The commercial address of the Commercial Registration for this activity can an office address provided that the site is used for administrative purposes and not physical selling, and that the office is not located in a residential area

Required Documents

- Lease agreement (after obtaining the necessary approvals from other licensing entities)
- Shop photos

Other Documents

- Cabinet's Decision (56) of the year 2022 regarding the Regulatory Requirements of Construction for various areas in the Kingdom of Bahrain

Sale/Trading Activities; repair of motor vehicles and motorcycles

ISIC4	Business activity
47596	Sale/Trade of Safety Systems

Description

This activity includes wholesale and/or retail sale of security systems, such as locking devices, safes, and vaults, without installation or maintenance services

Business Requirements

Age

18 and above

Allowed for Nationalities

- Bahraini 100%
- American 100%
- GCC 100%

Legal Type

It is allowed to register according to the legal forms mentioned below

Allowed for Individual Commercial Registration (ICR) : Yes

Allowed for Company Commercial Registration (CCR) : Yes

- Bahrain Shareholding Company (Public)
- With Limited Liability Company
- Branch of a Foreign Company
- Bahrain Shareholding Company (Closed)
- Partnership Company
- Simple Commandite Company
- Commandite By Shares Company
- Non Profit Company

Required Step of Licenses and Approvals

Ministry / Directorate	License / Approval Requirements	Approval Type
Municipality Affairs	Site Approval for Trading related activities	Post

Municipality Affairs (Post) (47596)

Approval Name	Description	Estimated Time
Site Approval for Trading related activities	Municipality Approval for the Commercial Registration address or the site in which the Activity will be practiced	3 Days

Fee Details (if any)

10

License Information

General Conditions:
1. Size of shop/premises must be sufficient for the activity
2. Businesses may not carry out the activity outside the boundaries of the shop/ premises
3. It is prohibited to display or store any items or equipment outside the shop / premises boundary without prior approval from the Municipality
4. Maintain cleanliness of the site
5. Comply with the parking space regulations as per the Construction Regulatory Requirements

Activity Specific Conditions:
1. The commercial address for this activity can be registered in areas classified as commercial, services, or industrial
2. The commercial address of the Commercial Registration for this activity can an office address provided that the site is used for administrative purposes and not physical selling, and that the office is not located in a residential area

Required Documents

- Lease agreement (after obtaining the necessary approvals from other licensing entities)
- Shop photos

Other Documents

- Cabinet's Decision (56) of the year 2022 regarding the Regulatory Requirements of Construction for various areas in the Kingdom of Bahrain

Sale/Trading Activities; repair of motor vehicles and motorcycles

ISIC4	Business activity
47611	Sale/Trade of books, magazines, newspapers

Description

This includes wholesale and/or retail sale of:
- books of all kinds
- newspapers and stationery

Business Requirements

Age

18 and above

Allowed for Nationalities

Bahraini	100%
American	100%
GCC	100%

Legal Type

It is allowed to register according to the legal forms mentioned below

Allowed for Individual Commercial Registration (ICR) : Yes

Allowed for Company Commercial Registration (CCR) : Yes

- Bahrain Shareholding Company (Public)
- With Limited Liability Company
- Branch of a Foreign Company
- Bahrain Shareholding Company (Closed)
- Partnership Company
- Simple Commandite Company
- Commandite By Shares Company
- Non Profit Company

Required Step of Licenses and Approvals

Ministry / Directorate	License / Approval Requirements	Approval Type
Municipality Affairs	Site Approval for Trading related activities	Post
Directorate of Publication and Press	Trade in all printed materials, audio and audiovisual materials, computer software and systems, electronic video games and related media items	Post

Municipality Affairs (Post) (47611)

Approval Name	Description	Estimated Time
Site Approval for Trading related activities	Municipality Approval for the Commercial Registration address or the site in which the Activity will be practiced	3 Days

Fee Details (if any)

10

License Information

General Conditions:
1. Size of shop/premises must be sufficient for the activity
2. Businesses may not carry out the activity outside the boundaries of the shop/ premises
3. It is prohibited to display or store any items or equipment outside the shop / premises boundary without prior approval from the Municipality
4. Maintain cleanliness of the site
5. Comply with the parking space regulations as per the Construction Regulatory Requirements

Activity Specific Conditions:
1. The commercial address for this activity can be registered in areas classified as commercial, services, or industrial
2. The commercial address of the Commercial Registration for this activity can an office address provided that the site is used for administrative purposes and not physical selling, and that the office is not located in a residential area

Required Documents

- Lease agreement (after obtaining the necessary approvals from other licensing entities)
- Shop photos

Other Documents

- Cabinet's Decision (56) of the year 2022 regarding the Regulatory Requirements of Construction for various areas in the Kingdom of Bahrain

Directorate of Publication and Press (Post) (47611)

Approval Name	Description	Estimated Time
Trade in all printed materials, audio and audiovisual materials, computer software and systems, electronic video games and related media items	The approval is required if the investor intends to trade in all printed materials, audio and audiovisual materials, computer software and systems, electronic video games and related media items	5 Days

Fee Details (if any)

There is no Estimated Processing Time (Days) in this license.

License Information

All business establishments producing audio-visual, print and electronic media in the Kingdom of Bahrain must comply with the law regulating the press, printing and publishing and other relevant laws

Other Documents

•Resolution No. (1) of 2015 regarding standards for supervision and control of media contents

Sale/Trading Activities; repair of motor vehicles and motorcycles

ISIC4	Business activity
47612	Sale/Trade of Stationary, arts and crafts, and office/ professional tools and apparatus

Description

Sale/Trade of Stationary, arts and crafts, and office/professional tools and apparatus, such as:
- pens and pencils of all kinds whether or not mechanical
- pencil leads
- date, sealing or numbering stamps, hand-operated devices for printing, or embossing labels, hand printing sets, prepared typewriter ribbons and inked pads
- Painting tools for artists
- Different types of files, folders, binders, etc
- Staples and paper clips, etc
- all types of Office stationary

Business Requirements

Age

18 and above

Allowed for Nationalities

Bahraini
100%

American
100%

GCC
100%

Legal Type

It is allowed to register according to the legal forms mentioned below

Allowed for Individual Commercial Registration (ICR) : Yes

Allowed for Company Commercial Registration (CCR) : Yes

- Bahrain Shareholding Company (Public)
- With Limited Liability Company
- Branch of a Foreign Company
- Bahrain Shareholding Company (Closed)
- Partnership Company
- Simple Commandite Company
- Commandite By Shares Company
- Non Profit Company

Required Step of Licenses and Approvals

Ministry / Directorate	License / Approval Requirements	Approval Type
Municipality Affairs	Site Approval for Trading related activities	Post

Municipality Affairs (Post) (47612)

Approval Name	Description	Estimated Time
Site Approval for Trading related activities	Municipality Approval for the Commercial Registration address or the site in which the Activity will be practiced	3 Days

Fee Details (if any)

10

License Information

General Conditions:
1. Size of shop/premises must be sufficient for the activity
2. Businesses may not carry out the activity outside the boundaries of the shop/ premises
3. It is prohibited to display or store any items or equipment outside the shop / premises boundary without prior approval from the Municipality
4. Maintain cleanliness of the site
5. Comply with the parking space regulations as per the Construction Regulatory Requirements

Activity Specific Conditions:
1. The commercial address for this activity can be registered in areas classified as commercial, services, or industrial
2. The commercial address of the Commercial Registration for this activity can an office address provided that the site is used for administrative purposes and not physical selling, and that the office is not located in a residential area

Required Documents

- Lease agreement (after obtaining the necessary approvals from other licensing entities)
- Shop photos

Other Documents

- Cabinet's Decision (56) of the year 2022 regarding the Regulatory Requirements of Construction for various areas in the Kingdom of Bahrain

Sale/Trading Activities; repair of motor vehicles and motorcycles

ISIC4	Business activity
4762	Sale/Tradeof music and video recordings, and cinematographic films

Description

This activity includes wholesale and/or retail sale of
- retail sale of musical records, audio tapes, compact discs and cassettes
- retail sale of video tapes and DVDs
- sale of music recordings and digital video recordings through the digital space and applications

Business Requirements

Age

18 and above

Allowed for Nationalities

- Bahraini 100%
- American 100%
- GCC 100%

Legal Type

It is allowed to register according to the legal forms mentioned below

Allowed for Individual Commercial Registration (ICR) : Yes

Allowed for Company Commercial Registration (CCR) : Yes

- Bahrain Shareholding Company (Public)
- With Limited Liability Company
- Branch of a Foreign Company
- Bahrain Shareholding Company (Closed)
- Partnership Company
- Simple Commandite Company
- Commandite By Shares Company
- Non Profit Company

Required Step of Licenses and Approvals

Ministry / Directorate	License / Approval Requirements	Approval Type
Directorate of Publication and Press	Sale/Tradeof music and video recordings, and cinematographic films	Notification Only
General Directorate Of Criminal Investigation	Approval by General Directorate of Criminal Investigation	Pre
Municipality Affairs	Site Approval for Trading related activities	Post

Directorate of Publication and Press (Notification Only) (4762)

Approval Name	Description	Estimated Time
Sale/Tradeof music and video recordings, and cinematographic films	Sale/Tradeof music and video recordings, and cinematographic films	5 Days

Fee Details (if any)

There is no Estimated Processing Time (Days) in this license.

License Information

All Business establishments of audio-visual, print and electronic media in the Kingdom of Bahrain must be comply with the law regulating the press, printing and publishing and other relevant laws

Other Documents

•Resolution No. (1) of 2015 regarding standards for supervision and control of media contents

General Directorate Of Criminal Investigation (Pre) (4762)

Approval Name	Description	Estimated Time
Approval by General Directorate of Criminal Investigation	General Directorate of Criminal Investigation Approval for the Activity	7 Days

Fee Details (if any)

There is no Estimated Processing Time (Days) in this license.

License Information

- The applicant should not have a criminal record, unless they have been rehabilitated in criminal cases

Municipality Affairs (Post) (4762)

Approval Name	Description	Estimated Time
Site Approval for Trading related activities	Municipality Approval for the Commercial Registration address or the site in which the Activity will be practiced	3 Days

Fee Details (if any)

10

License Information

General Conditions:
1. Size of shop/premises must be sufficient for the activity
2. Businesses may not carry out the activity outside the boundaries of the shop/ premises
3. It is prohibited to display or store any items or equipment outside the shop / premises boundary without prior approval from the Municipality
4. Maintain cleanliness of the site
5. Comply with the parking space regulations as per the Construction Regulatory Requirements

Activity Specific Conditions:
1. The commercial address for this activity can be registered in areas classified as commercial, services, or industrial
2. The commercial address of the Commercial Registration for this activity can an office address provided that the site is used for administrative purposes and not physical selling, and that the office is not located in a residential area

Required Documents

- Lease agreement (after obtaining the necessary approvals from other licensing entities)
- Shop photos

Other Documents

- Cabinet's Decision (56) of the year 2022 regarding the Regulatory Requirements of Construction for various areas in the Kingdom of Bahrain

Sale/Trading Activities; repair of motor vehicles and motorcycles

ISIC4	Business activity
4763	Sale/Trade of sporting equipment

Description

Includes wholesale and/or retail sale of all kinds of sports goods, fishing gear, camping goods, boats and bicycles, etc

Business Requirements

Age

18 and above

Allowed for Nationalities

- Bahraini 100%
- American 100%
- GCC 100%

Legal Type

It is allowed to register according to the legal forms mentioned below

Allowed for Individual Commercial Registration (ICR) : Yes

Allowed for Company Commercial Registration (CCR) : Yes

- Bahrain Shareholding Company (Public)
- With Limited Liability Company
- Branch of a Foreign Company
- Bahrain Shareholding Company (Closed)
- Partnership Company
- Simple Commandite Company
- Commandite By Shares Company
- Non Profit Company

Required Step of Licenses and Approvals

Ministry / Directorate	License / Approval Requirements	Approval Type
Municipality Affairs	Site Approval for Trading related activities	Post

Municipality Affairs (Post) (4763)

Approval Name	Description	Estimated Time
Site Approval for Trading related activities	Municipality Approval for the Commercial Registration address or the site in which the Activity will be practiced	3 Days

Fee Details (if any)

10

License Information

General Conditions:
1. Size of shop/premises must be sufficient for the activity
2. Businesses may not carry out the activity outside the boundaries of the shop/ premises
3. It is prohibited to display or store any items or equipment outside the shop / premises boundary without prior approval from the Municipality
4. Maintain cleanliness of the site
5. Comply with the parking space regulations as per the Construction Regulatory Requirements

Activity Specific Conditions:
1. The commercial address for this activity can be registered in areas classified as commercial, services, or industrial
2. The commercial address of the Commercial Registration for this activity can an office address provided that the site is used for administrative purposes and not physical selling, and that the office is not located in a residential area

Required Documents

- Lease agreement (after obtaining the necessary approvals from other licensing entities)
- Shop photos

Other Documents

- Cabinet's Decision (56) of the year 2022 regarding the Regulatory Requirements of Construction for various areas in the Kingdom of Bahrain

Sale/Trading Activities; repair of motor vehicles and motorcycles

ISIC4	Business activity
4764	Sale/Trade of games and toys

Description

Includes wholesale and/or retail sale of games and toys, made of all materials

Business Requirements

Age

18 and above

Allowed for Nationalities

- Bahraini 100%
- GCC 100%
- American 100%

Legal Type

It is allowed to register according to the legal forms mentioned below

Allowed for Individual Commercial Registration (ICR) : Yes

Allowed for Company Commercial Registration (CCR) : Yes

- Bahrain Shareholding Company (Public)
- With Limited Liability Company
- Branch of a Foreign Company
- Bahrain Shareholding Company (Closed)
- Partnership Company
- Simple Commandite Company
- Commandite By Shares Company
- Non Profit Company

Required Step of Licenses and Approvals

Ministry / Directorate	License / Approval Requirements	Approval Type
Municipality Affairs	Site Approval for Trading related activities	Post

Municipality Affairs (Post) (4764)

Approval Name	Description	Estimated Time
Site Approval for Trading related activities	Municipality Approval for the Commercial Registration address or the site in which the Activity will be practiced	3 Days

Fee Details (if any)

10

License Information

General Conditions:
1. Size of shop/premises must be sufficient for the activity
2. Businesses may not carry out the activity outside the boundaries of the shop/ premises
3. It is prohibited to display or store any items or equipment outside the shop / premises boundary without prior approval from the Municipality
4. Maintain cleanliness of the site
5. Comply with the parking space regulations as per the Construction Regulatory Requirements

Activity Specific Conditions:
1. The commercial address for this activity can be registered in areas classified as commercial, services, or industrial
2. The commercial address of the Commercial Registration for this activity can an office address provided that the site is used for administrative purposes and not physical selling, and that the office is not located in a residential area

Required Documents

- Lease agreement (after obtaining the necessary approvals from other licensing entities)
- Shop photos

Other Documents

- Cabinet's Decision (56) of the year 2022 regarding the Regulatory Requirements of Construction for various areas in the Kingdom of Bahrain

Sale/Trading Activities; repair of motor vehicles and motorcycles

ISIC4	Business activity
4771	Sale/Trade of clothing, footwear, apparel accessories, and leather articles

Description

This activity includes wholesale and/or retail sale of:
- articles of clothing
- articles of fur
- clothing accessories such as gloves, ties, watches, Non-medical Sun glasses etc.
- umbrellas
- footwear
- leather goods
- travel accessories of leather and leather substitutes

Business Requirements

Age

18 and above

Allowed for Nationalities

Bahraini	100%
American	100%
GCC	100%

Legal Type

It is allowed to register according to the legal forms mentioned below

Allowed for Individual Commercial Registration (ICR) : Yes

Allowed for Company Commercial Registration (CCR) : Yes

- Bahrain Shareholding Company (Public)
- With Limited Liability Company
- Branch of a Foreign Company
- Bahrain Shareholding Company (Closed)
- Partnership Company
- Simple Commandite Company
- Commandite By Shares Company
- Non Profit Company

Required Step of Licenses and Approvals

Ministry / Directorate	License / Approval Requirements	Approval Type
Municipality Affairs	Site Approval for Trading related activities	Post

Municipality Affairs (Post) (4771)

Approval Name	Description	Estimated Time
Site Approval for Trading related activities	Municipality Approval for the Commercial Registration address or the site in which the Activity will be practiced	3 Days

Fee Details (if any)

10

License Information

General Conditions:
1. Size of shop/premises must be sufficient for the activity
2. Businesses may not carry out the activity outside the boundaries of the shop/ premises
3. It is prohibited to display or store any items or equipment outside the shop / premises boundary without prior approval from the Municipality
4. Maintain cleanliness of the site
5. Comply with the parking space regulations as per the Construction Regulatory Requirements

Activity Specific Conditions:
1. The commercial address for this activity can be registered in areas classified as commercial, services, or industrial
2. The commercial address of the Commercial Registration for this activity can an office address provided that the site is used for administrative purposes and not physical selling, and that the office is not located in a residential area

Required Documents

- Lease agreement (after obtaining the necessary approvals from other licensing entities)
- Shop photos

Other Documents

- Cabinet's Decision (56) of the year 2022 regarding the Regulatory Requirements of Construction for various areas in the Kingdom of Bahrain

Sale/Trading Activities; repair of motor vehicles and motorcycles

ISIC4	Business activity
4772-1	Sale/Trade of pharmaceutical and medical goods - Pharmacy (Importing)

Description

This license/option is required to sell pharmaceutical and medical goods

Business Requirements

Age

21 and above

Allowed for Nationalities

Bahraini 100%	GCC 100%
American 100%	Singaporean 100%
Icelander 100%	Liechtensteiner 100%
Norwegian 100%	Swiss 100%

Foreign Allowed up to 100%

Legal Type

It is allowed to register according to the legal forms mentioned below

Allowed for Individual Commercial Registration (ICR) : Yes

Allowed for Company Commercial Registration (CCR) : Yes

- Bahrain Shareholding Company (Public)
- With Limited Liability Company
- Branch of a Foreign Company
- Bahrain Shareholding Company (Closed)
- Partnership Company
- Simple Commandite Company
- Commandite By Shares Company
- Non Profit Company

Required Step of Licenses and Approvals

Ministry / Directorate	License / Approval Requirements	Approval Type
NHRA-Pharmatical Products Regulation Office	Pharmacy (importer) - Pre Approval	Pre
General Directrate Of Civil Defence	Sale/Trade of pharmaceutical and medical goods - Pharmacy (Importing)	Post
Municipality Affairs	Site Approval for Trading related activities	Post
NHRA-Pharmatical Products Regulation Office	Pharmacy (importer) - Final Approval	Final Site Inspection

NHRA-Pharmatical Products Regulation Office (Pre) (4772-1)

Approval Name	Description	Estimated Time
Pharmacy (importer) - Pre Approval	The license is required if the investor intends to start up a pharmacy in Bahrain that sells pharmaceutical products and any other items included as activity in the CR, and can be an agent if will import pharmaceutical products from outside Bahrain.	5 Days

Fee Details (if any)

There is an application of fee of BD50

License Information

1- Requirements:
- No contact with a private dwelling.
- Proper parking area.
- Has a separate entrance.
- Surface-area should be sufficient to provide suitable corridors for the distribution of medicines and pharmaceutical products, and to facilitate their dispensing and storage movement. The center should be well-lit and ventilated

2- The application form to apply for this license can be obtained from: (www.nhra.bh)

3- The license is subject to Decree No (18) of 1997 with Respect to the Practice of Pharmacists and Pharmaceutical Centers and the amendments made to this law under

Decree Law (20) of 2015, & Resolution (63) for the Year 2019, to Issue the Regulation of the Requirements and Procedures for the Practice of Pharmacy Professions, Licensing of Pharmaceutical Centers, Medicines and Pharmaceutical Products Factories, and Pharmaceutical Facilities

4- You may visit NHRA's website for the laws applicable to these licenses: http://http://www.nhra.bh/SitePages/View.aspx?PageId=77/SitePages/View.aspx?PageId=77

Required Documents

- Pharmacy interior layout.
- Completed application form of Pharmacy and/or Pharmaceutical facilities license
- Good conduct certificate
- Signed lease agreement or Ownership certificate.

Other Documents

- Decree No (18) of 1997 with Respect to the Practice of Pharmacists and Pharmaceutical Centers and the amendments made to this law under Decree Law (20) of 2015
- Resolution (63) for the Year 2019, to Issue the Regulation of the Requirements and Procedures for the Practice of Pharmacy Professions, Licensing of Pharmaceutical Centers, Medicines and Pharmaceutical Products Factories, and Pharmaceutical Facilities.

General Directrate Of Civil Defence (Post) (4772-1)

Approval Name	Description	Estimated Time
Sale/Trade of pharmaceutical and medical goods - Pharmacy (Importing)	This Approval is required to insure compliance with the fire prevention and protection requirements of General Directorate of Civil Defense	5 Days

Fee Details (if any)

30 BD Fire prevention and protection certificate fees

License Information

1. Provide the documents mentioned in the “Required Documents” section
2. Comply with the requirements listed in the inspection checklist found in the “Other Downloadable Documents” section
3. Provide proof to the General Directorate of Civil Defense that an alarm and firefighting equipment have been installed within 6 months of obtaining a Commercial Registration and license

If a warehouse is used: A safety certificate must be obtained viaBahrain.bh

Required Documents

•No-objection letter for alarm and extinguisher installation from Civil Defense, or purchasing receipt of alarm equipment and extinguishers along with an annual maintenance contract from a company certified by Civil defense
•Photos required for civil defense activities
•Purchasing invoice of security camera system with specifying the type and storage capacity.

Other Documents

- Sample pictures of the general directorate of civil defense requirements
- licencing requirments of the general directorat of civil defense for activity number "4772-1"

Municipality Affairs (Post) (4772-1)

Approval Name	Description	Estimated Time
Site Approval for Trading related activities	Municipality Approval for the Commercial Registration address or the site in which the Activity will be practiced	3 Days

Fee Details (if any)

10

License Information

General Conditions:
1. Size of shop/premises must be sufficient for the activity
2. Businesses may not carry out the activity outside the boundaries of the shop/ premises
3. It is prohibited to display or store any items or equipment outside the shop / premises boundary without prior approval from the Municipality
4. Maintain cleanliness of the site
5. Comply with the parking space regulations as per the Construction Regulatory Requirements

Activity Specific Conditions:
1. The commercial address for this activity can be registered in areas classified as commercial, services, or industrial
2. The commercial address of the Commercial Registration for this activity can an office address provided that the site is used for administrative purposes and not physical selling, and that the office is not located in a residential area

Required Documents

- Lease agreement (after obtaining the necessary approvals from other licensing entities)
- Shop photos

Other Documents

- Cabinet's Decision (56) of the year 2022 regarding the Regulatory Requirements of Construction for various areas in the Kingdom of Bahrain

NHRA-Pharmatical Products Regulation Office (Final Site Inspection) (4772-1)

Approval Name	Description	Estimated Time
Pharmacy (importer) - Final Approval	The license is required if the investor intends to start up a pharmacy in Bahrain that sells pharmaceutical products and any other items included as activity in the CR, and can be an agent if will import pharmaceutical products from outside Bahrain.	5 Days

Fee Details (if any)

License issued for 3 years, Total Fee: BD 1500

License Information

1- Requirements:
- Proper interior (shelves, counter,).
- AC.
- Fridge.
- Washbasin.
- Proper storing area.
- Thermometers.

2- The license is subject to Decree No (18) of 1997 with Respect to the Practice of Pharmacists and Pharmaceutical Centers and the amendments made to this law under Decree Law (20) of 2015, & Resolution (63) for the Year 2019, to Issue the Regulation of

the Requirements and Procedures for the Practice of Pharmacy Professions, Licensing of Pharmaceutical Centers, Medicines and Pharmaceutical Products Factories, and Pharmaceutical Facilities

3- You may visit NHRA's website for the laws applicable to these licenses:http://www.nhra.bh/SitePages/View.aspx?PageId=77

Other Documents

- Decree No (18) of 1997 with Respect to the Practice of Pharmacists and Pharmaceutical Centers and the amendments made to this law under Decree Law (20) of 2015
- Resolution (63) for the Year 2019, to Issue the Regulation of the Requirements and Procedures for the Practice of Pharmacy Professions, Licensing of Pharmaceutical Centers, Medicines and Pharmaceutical Products Factories, and Pharmaceutical Facilities.

Sale/Trading Activities; repair of motor vehicles and motorcycles

ISIC4	Business activity
4772-2	Sale/Trade of pharmaceutical and medical goods - Pharmacy (non- importing)

Description

It is an institution established for preparing, composing, producing, partitioning or possessing, for the purpose of sale, any medicine, drug, medical plant or pharmaceutical substance used internally or externally or by injection for protecting or curing people from diseases, which has a physiological impact on the body or prescribed as having these benefits. It is established for the purpose of selling medicine and producing and selling prescriptions to the public. In terms of the conditions and procedures of license, it shall be subject to Legislative Decree No (18) for 1997 with Respect to the Practice of Pharmacists and Pharmaceutical Centers.

Business Requirements

Age

21 and above

Allowed for Nationalities

Bahraini 100%		GCC 100%	
American 100%		Singaporean 100%	
Icelander 100%		Liechtenstein er 100%	
Norwegian 100%		Swiss 100%	

Foreign Allowed up to 100%

Legal Type

It is allowed to register according to the legal forms mentioned below

Allowed for Individual Commercial Registration (ICR) : Yes

Allowed for Company Commercial Registration (CCR) : Yes

- Bahrain Shareholding Company (Public)
- With Limited Liability Company
- Branch of a Foreign Company
- Bahrain Shareholding Company (Closed)
- Partnership Company
- Simple Commandite Company
- Commandite By Shares Company
- Non Profit Company

Required Step of Licenses and Approvals

Ministry / Directorate	License / Approval Requirements	Approval Type
NHRA-Pharmatical Products Regulation Office	Pharmacy (non-importer)	Pre
General Directrate Of Civil Defence	Sale/Trade of pharmaceutical and medical goods - Pharmacy (non- importing)	Post
Municipality Affairs	Site Approval for Trading related activities	Post
NHRA-Pharmatical Products Regulation Office	Pharmacy (non-importer)	Final Site Inspection

NHRA-Pharmatical Products Regulation Office (Pre) (4772-2)

Approval Name	Description	Estimated Time
Pharmacy (non-importer)	The licence is required if the investor intends to start up a pharmacy in Bahrain that sells drugs that were manufactured in Bahrain	5 Days

Fee Details (if any)

BD300

License Information

- There is an application of fee of BD50
- The application form to apply for this license can be obtained from (www.nhra.bh) or by visiting NHRA offices
- The license is subject to Decree No (18) of 1997 with Respect to the Practice of Pharmacists and Pharmaceutical Centers and the amendments made to this law under Decree Law (20) of 2015
- You may visit NHRA's website for the laws applicable to these licenses: http://http://www.nhra.bh/SitePages/View.aspx?PageId=77/SitePages/View.aspx?PageId=77

General Directrate Of Civil Defence (Post) (4772-2)

Approval Name	Description	Estimated Time
Sale/Trade of pharmaceutical and medical goods - Pharmacy (non-importing)	This Approval is required to insure compliance with the fire prevention and protection requirements of General Directorate of Civil Defense	5 Days

Fee Details (if any)

30 BD Fire prevention and protection certificate fees

License Information

1. Provide the documents mentioned in the “Required Documents” section
2. Comply with the requirements listed in the inspection checklist found in the “Other Downloadable Documents” section
3. Provide proof to the General Directorate of Civil Defense that an alarm and firefighting equipment have been installed within 6 months of obtaining a Commercial Registration and license

If a warehouse is used: A safety certificate must be obtained viaBahrain.bh

Required Documents

•No-objection letter for alarm and extinguisher installation from Civil Defense, or purchasing receipt of alarm equipment and extinguishers along with an annual maintenance contract from a company certified by Civil defense
•Photos required for civil defense activities
•Purchasing invoice of security camera system with specifying the type and storage capacity.

Other Documents

- Sample pictures of the general directorate of civil defense requirements
- licencing requirments of the general directorat of civil defense for activity number "4772-2"

Municipality Affairs (Post) (4772-2)

Approval Name	Description	Estimated Time
Site Approval for Trading related activities	Municipality Approval for the Commercial Registration address or the site in which the Activity will be practiced	3 Days

Fee Details (if any)

10

License Information

General Conditions:
1. Size of shop/premises must be sufficient for the activity
2. Businesses may not carry out the activity outside the boundaries of the shop/ premises
3. It is prohibited to display or store any items or equipment outside the shop / premises boundary without prior approval from the Municipality
4. Maintain cleanliness of the site
5. Comply with the parking space regulations as per the Construction Regulatory Requirements

Activity Specific Conditions:
1. The commercial address for this activity can be registered in areas classified as commercial, services, or industrial
2. The commercial address of the Commercial Registration for this activity can an office address provided that the site is used for administrative purposes and not physical selling, and that the office is not located in a residential area

Required Documents

- Lease agreement (after obtaining the necessary approvals from other licensing entities)
- Shop photos

Other Documents

- Cabinet's Decision (56) of the year 2022 regarding the Regulatory Requirements of Construction for various areas in the Kingdom of Bahrain

NHRA-Pharmatical Products Regulation Office (Final Site Inspection) (4772-2)

Approval Name	Description	Estimated Time
Pharmacy (non-importer)	The licence is required if the investor intends to start up a pharmacy in Bahrain that sells drugs that were manufactured in Bahrain	5 Days

Fee Details (if any)

BD300

License Information

- There is an application of fee of BD50
- The application form to apply for this license can be obtained from (www.nhra.bh) or by visiting NHRA offices
- The license is subject to Decree No (18) of 1997 with Respect to the Practice of Pharmacists and Pharmaceutical Centers and the amendments made to this law under Decree Law (20) of 2015
- You may visit NHRA's website for the laws applicable to these licenses: http://http://www.nhra.bh/SitePages/View.aspx?PageId=77/SitePages/View.aspx?PageId=77

Sale/Trading Activities; repair of motor vehicles and motorcycles

ISIC4	Business activity
4772-3	Sale/Trade of pharmaceutical and medical goods - Hospital Pharmacy

Description

It is an institution having the same characteristics of a public pharmacy except that it is affiliated to a medical foundation, body or certain group of people. In terms of the conditions and procedures of license, it shall be subject to Legislative Decree No (18) for 1997 with Respect to the Practice of Pharmacists and Pharmaceutical Centers.

Business Requirements

Age

21 and above

Allowed for Nationalities

Bahraini 100%	GCC 100%
American 100%	Singaporean 100%
Icelander 100%	Liechtensteiner 100%
Norwegian 100%	Swiss 100%

Foreign Allowed up to 100%

Legal Type

It is allowed to register according to the legal forms mentioned below

Allowed for Individual Commercial Registration (ICR) : Yes

Allowed for Company Commercial Registration (CCR) : Yes

- Bahrain Shareholding Company (Public)
- With Limited Liability Company
- Branch of a Foreign Company
- Bahrain Shareholding Company (Closed)
- Partnership Company
- Simple Commandite Company
- Commandite By Shares Company
- Non Profit Company

Required Step of Licenses and Approvals

Ministry / Directorate	License / Approval Requirements	Approval Type
NHRA-Pharmatical Products Regulation Office	Hospital Pharmacy - Pre Approval	Pre
General Directrate Of Civil Defence	Sale/Trade of pharmaceutical and medical goods - Hospital Pharmacy	Post
Municipality Affairs	Site Approval for Trading related activities	Post
NHRA-Pharmatical Products Regulation Office	Hospital Pharmacy - Final Approval	Final Site Inspection

NHRA-Pharmatical Products Regulation Office (Pre) (4772-3)

Approval Name	Description	Estimated Time
Hospital Pharmacy - Pre Approval	The license is required if the investor intends to start up a pharmacy in Bahrain inside a hospital or medical Center, it can be importing or non-importing according to the applicant request	5 Days

Fee Details (if any)

License issued for 3 years:
1- In case of importing pharmacy: Total Fee is BD 1500.
2- In case of non-importing pharmacy: Total Fee is BD 900

License Information

1- Requirements:
• Final Site Inspection

2- The license is subject to Decree No (18) of 1997 with Respect to the Practice of Pharmacists and Pharmaceutical Centers and the amendments made to this law under Decree Law (20) of 2015, & Resolution (63) for the Year 2019, to Issue the Regulation of the Requirements and Procedures for the Practice of Pharmacy Professions, Licensing of Pharmaceutical Centers, Medicines and Pharmaceutical Products Factories, and Pharmaceutical Facilities

3- You may visit NHRA's website for the laws applicable to these licenses:http://www.nhra.bh/SitePages/View.aspx?PageId=77

Other Documents

- Decree No (18) of 1997 with Respect to the Practice of Pharmacists and Pharmaceutical Centers and the amendments made to this law under Decree Law (20) of 2015
- Resolution (63) for the Year 2019, to Issue the Regulation of the Requirements and Procedures for the Practice of Pharmacy Professions, Licensing of Pharmaceutical Centers, Medicines and Pharmaceutical Products Factories, and Pharmaceutical Facilities.

General Directrate Of Civil Defence (Post) (4772-3)

Approval Name	Description	Estimated Time
Sale/Trade of pharmaceutical and medical goods - Hospital Pharmacy	This Approval is required to insure compliance with the fire prevention and protection requirements of General Directorate of Civil Defense	5 Days

Fee Details (if any)

30 BD Fire prevention and protection certificate fees

License Information

1. Provide the documents mentioned in the “Required Documents” section
2. Comply with the requirements listed in the inspection checklist found in the “Other Downloadable Documents” section
3. Provide proof to the General Directorate of Civil Defense that an alarm and firefighting equipment have been installed within 6 months of obtaining a Commercial Registration and license

If a warehouse is used: A safety certificate must be obtained viaBahrain.bh

Required Documents

•No-objection letter for alarm and extinguisher installation from Civil Defense, or purchasing receipt of alarm equipment and extinguishers along with an annual maintenance contract from a company certified by Civil defense
•Photos required for civil defense activities
•Purchasing invoice of security camera system with specifying the type and storage capacity.

Other Documents

- Sample pictures of the general directorate of civil defense requirements
- licencing requirments of the general directorat of civil defense for activity number "4772-3"

Municipality Affairs (Post) (4772-3)

Approval Name	Description	Estimated Time
Site Approval for Trading related activities	Municipality Approval for the Commercial Registration address or the site in which the Activity will be practiced	3 Days

Fee Details (if any)

10

License Information

General Conditions:
1. Size of shop/premises must be sufficient for the activity
2. Businesses may not carry out the activity outside the boundaries of the shop/ premises
3. It is prohibited to display or store any items or equipment outside the shop / premises boundary without prior approval from the Municipality
4. Maintain cleanliness of the site
5. Comply with the parking space regulations as per the Construction Regulatory Requirements

Activity Specific Conditions:
1. The commercial address for this activity can be registered in areas classified as commercial, services, or industrial
2. The commercial address of the Commercial Registration for this activity can an office address provided that the site is used for administrative purposes and not physical selling, and that the office is not located in a residential area

Required Documents

- Lease agreement (after obtaining the necessary approvals from other licensing entities)
- Shop photos

Other Documents

- Cabinet's Decision (56) of the year 2022 regarding the Regulatory Requirements of Construction for various areas in the Kingdom of Bahrain

NHRA-Pharmatical Products Regulation Office (Final Site Inspection) (4772-3)

Approval Name	Description	Estimated Time
Hospital Pharmacy - Final Approval	The license is required if the investor intends to start up a pharmacy in Bahrain inside a hospital or medical Center, it can be importing or non-importing according to the applicant request	5 Days

Fee Details (if any)

License issued for 3 years:
1- In case of importing pharmacy: Total Fee is BD 1500.
2- In case of non-importing pharmacy: Total Fee is BD 900.

License Information

1- Requirements:
• Final Site Inspection

2- The license is subject to Decree No (18) of 1997 with Respect to the Practice of Pharmacists and Pharmaceutical Centers and the amendments made to this law under Decree Law (20) of 2015, & Resolution (63) for the Year 2019, to Issue the Regulation of the Requirements and Procedures for the Practice of Pharmacy Professions, Licensing of Pharmaceutical Centers, Medicines and Pharmaceutical Products Factories, and Pharmaceutical Facilities

3- You may visit NHRA's website for the laws applicable to these licenses:http://www.nhra.bh/SitePages/View.aspx?PageId=77

Other Documents

- Decree No (18) of 1997 with Respect to the Practice of Pharmacists and Pharmaceutical Centers and the amendments made to this law under Decree Law (20) of 2015
- Resolution (63) for the Year 2019, to Issue the Regulation of the Requirements and Procedures for the Practice of Pharmacy Professions, Licensing of Pharmaceutical Centers, Medicines and Pharmaceutical Products Factories, and Pharmaceutical Facilities.

Sale/Trading Activities; repair of motor vehicles and motorcycles

ISIC4	Business activity
4772-4	Sale/Trade of pharmaceutical and medical goods - Sale of Simple Medicine

Description

It is an institution having the same characteristics of a public pharmacy except that it is affiliated to a medical foundation, body or certain group of people. In terms of the conditions and procedures of license, it shall be subject to Legislative Decree No (18) for 1997 with Respect to the Practice of Pharmacists and Pharmaceutical Centers.

Business Requirements

Age

21 and above

Allowed for Nationalities

Bahraini 100%	GCC 100%
American 100%	Singaporean 100%
Icelander 100%	Liechtensteiner 100%
Norwegian 100%	Swiss 100%

Foreign Allowed up to 100%

Legal Type

It is allowed to register according to the legal forms mentioned below

Allowed for Individual Commercial Registration (ICR) : Yes

Allowed for Company Commercial Registration (CCR) : Yes

- Bahrain Shareholding Company (Public)
- With Limited Liability Company
- Branch of a Foreign Company
- Bahrain Shareholding Company (Closed)
- Partnership Company
- Simple Commandite Company
- Commandite By Shares Company
- Non Profit Company

Required Step of Licenses and Approvals

Ministry / Directorate	License / Approval Requirements	Approval Type
NHRA-Pharmatical Products Regulation Office	Sale of Simple Medicine	Pre
Municipality Affairs	Site Approval for Trading related activities	Post
General Directrate Of Civil Defence	Sale/Trade of pharmaceutical and medical goods - Sale of Simple Medicine	Post
NHRA-Pharmatical Products Regulation Office	Sale of Simple Medicine	Final Site Inspection

NHRA-Pharmatical Products Regulation Office (Pre) (4772-4)

Approval Name	Description	Estimated Time
Sale of Simple Medicine	Sale of Simple Medicine	5 Days

Fee Details (if any)

There is no Estimated Processing Time (Days) in this license.

License Information

- There is an application of fee of BD50
- The application form to apply for this license can be obtained from (www.nhra.bh) or by visiting NHRA offices
- The license is subject to Decree No (18) of 1997 with Respect to the Practice of Pharmacists and Pharmaceutical Centers and the amendments made to this law under Decree Law (20) of 2015
- You may visit NHRA's website for the laws applicable to these licenses: http://http://www.nhra.bh/SitePages/View.aspx?PageId=77/SitePages/View.aspx?PageId=77

Municipality Affairs (Post) (4772-4)

Approval Name	Description	Estimated Time
Site Approval for Trading related activities	Municipality Approval for the Commercial Registration address or the site in which the Activity will be practiced	3 Days

Fee Details (if any)

10

License Information

General Conditions:
1. Size of shop/premises must be sufficient for the activity
2. Businesses may not carry out the activity outside the boundaries of the shop/ premises
3. It is prohibited to display or store any items or equipment outside the shop / premises boundary without prior approval from the Municipality
4. Maintain cleanliness of the site
5. Comply with the parking space regulations as per the Construction Regulatory Requirements

Activity Specific Conditions:
1. The commercial address for this activity can be registered in areas classified as commercial, services, or industrial
2. The commercial address of the Commercial Registration for this activity can an office address provided that the site is used for administrative purposes and not physical selling, and that the office is not located in a residential area

Required Documents

- Lease agreement (after obtaining the necessary approvals from other licensing entities)
- Shop photos

Other Documents

- Cabinet's Decision (56) of the year 2022 regarding the Regulatory Requirements of Construction for various areas in the Kingdom of Bahrain

General Directrate Of Civil Defence (Post) (4772-4)

Approval Name	Description	Estimated Time
Sale/Trade of pharmaceutical and medical goods - Sale of Simple Medicine	This Approval is required to insure compliance with the fire prevention and protection requirements of General Directorate of Civil Defense	5 Days

Fee Details (if any)

30 BD Fire prevention and protection certificate fees

License Information

1. Provide the documents mentioned in the “Required Documents” section
2. Comply with the requirements listed in the inspection checklist found in the “Other Downloadable Documents” section
3. Provide proof to the General Directorate of Civil Defense that an alarm and firefighting equipment have been installed within 6 months of obtaining a Commercial Registration and license

If a warehouse is used: A safety certificate must be obtained viaBahrain.bh

Required Documents

•No-objection letter for alarm and extinguisher installation from Civil Defense, or purchasing receipt of alarm equipment and extinguishers along with an annual maintenance contract from a company certified by Civil defense
•Photos required for civil defense activities
•Purchasing invoice of security camera system with specifying the type and storage capacity.

Other Documents

- Sample pictures of the general directorate of civil defense requirements
- licencing requirments of the general directorat of civil defense for activity number "4772-4"

NHRA-Pharmatical Products Regulation Office (Final Site Inspection) (4772-4)

Approval Name	Description	Estimated Time
Sale of Simple Medicine	Sale of Simple Medicine	5 Days

Fee Details (if any)

There is no Estimated Processing Time (Days) in this license.

License Information

- There is an application of fee of BD50
- The application form to apply for this license can be obtained from (www.nhra.bh) or by visiting NHRA offices
- The license is subject to Decree No (18) of 1997 with Respect to the Practice of Pharmacists and Pharmaceutical Centers and the amendments made to this law under Decree Law (20) of 2015
- You may visit NHRA's website for the laws applicable to these licenses: http://http://www.nhra.bh/SitePages/View.aspx?PageId=77/SitePages/View.aspx?PageId=77

Sale/Trading Activities; repair of motor vehicles and motorcycles

ISIC4	Business activity
4772-5	Sale/Trade of pharmaceutical and medical goods - Sale of Alternative medicine products

Description

This license/option is required to sell alternative medicince

Business Requirements

Age

18 and above

Allowed for Nationalities

- Bahraini 100%
- American 100%
- GCC 100%

Legal Type

It is allowed to register according to the legal forms mentioned below

Allowed for Individual Commercial Registration (ICR) : Yes

Allowed for Company Commercial Registration (CCR) : Yes

- Bahrain Shareholding Company (Public)
- With Limited Liability Company
- Branch of a Foreign Company
- Bahrain Shareholding Company (Closed)
- Partnership Company
- Simple Commandite Company
- Commandite By Shares Company
- Non Profit Company

Required Step of Licenses and Approvals

Ministry / Directorate	License / Approval Requirements	Approval Type
NHRA-Pharmatical Products Regulation Office	Sale of Alternative medicine products	Pre
Municipality Affairs	Site Approval for Trading related activities	Post
NHRA-Pharmatical Products Regulation Office	Sale of Alternative medicine products	Final Site Inspection

NHRA-Pharmatical Products Regulation Office (Pre) (4772-5)

Approval Name	Description	Estimated Time
Sale of Alternative medicine products	Sale of Alternative medicine products	5 Days

Fee Details (if any)

BD100

License Information

- There is an application of fee of BD50
- The application form to apply for this license can be obtained from (www.nhra.bh) or by visiting NHRA offices
- The license is subject to Decree No (18) of 1997 with Respect to the Practice of Pharmacists and Pharmaceutical Centers and the amendments made to this law under Decree Law (20) of 2015
- You may visit NHRA's website for the laws applicable to these licenses: http://http://www.nhra.bh/SitePages/View.aspx?PageId=77/SitePages/View.aspx?PageId=77
- No need for Site Inspection before issuing the license

Municipality Affairs (Post) (4772-5)

Approval Name	Description	Estimated Time
Site Approval for Trading related activities	Municipality Approval for the Commercial Registration address or the site in which the Activity will be practiced	3 Days

Fee Details (if any)

10

License Information

General Conditions:
1. Size of shop/premises must be sufficient for the activity
2. Businesses may not carry out the activity outside the boundaries of the shop/ premises
3. It is prohibited to display or store any items or equipment outside the shop / premises boundary without prior approval from the Municipality
4. Maintain cleanliness of the site
5. Comply with the parking space regulations as per the Construction Regulatory Requirements

Activity Specific Conditions:
1. The commercial address for this activity can be registered in areas classified as commercial, services, or industrial
2. The commercial address of the Commercial Registration for this activity can an office address provided that the site is used for administrative purposes and not physical selling, and that the office is not located in a residential area

Required Documents

- Lease agreement (after obtaining the necessary approvals from other licensing entities)
- Shop photos

Other Documents

- Cabinet's Decision (56) of the year 2022 regarding the Regulatory Requirements of Construction for various areas in the Kingdom of Bahrain

NHRA-Pharmatical Products Regulation Office (Final Site Inspection) (4772-5)

Approval Name	Description	Estimated Time
Sale of Alternative medicine products	Sale of Alternative medicine products	5 Days

Fee Details (if any)

BD100

License Information

- There is an application of fee of BD50
- The application form to apply for this license can be obtained from (www.nhra.bh) or by visiting NHRA offices
- The license is subject to Decree No (18) of 1997 with Respect to the Practice of Pharmacists and Pharmaceutical Centers and the amendments made to this law under Decree Law (20) of 2015
- You may visit NHRA's website for the laws applicable to these licenses: http://http://www.nhra.bh/SitePages/View.aspx?PageId=77/SitePages/View.aspx?PageId=77
- No need for Site Inspection before issuing the license

Sale/Trading Activities; repair of motor vehicles and motorcycles

ISIC4	Business activity
4772-6	Sale/Trade of pharmaceutical and medical goods - Scientific Office or Pharmaceutical Services Center

Description

The Activity includes:

Following up the registration of medicines and pharmaceutical products for the companies that affiliated to the office.
Providing accurate pharmaceutical information about the company's products - traded in the Kingdom - to the beneficiaries, healthcare sector employees, and regulatory authorities, according to the scientific basis.
Ensure the accuracy of the information used in marketing the registered products and its conformity with the information recorded with the Authority.
Follow up on updating the registered product leaflet and the outer pack, and ensure it conforms with what is approved by the Authority.
Following up the company's products after registration and marketing, and immediately report to the Authority any observations concerning the quality and efficacy of the product, or any new post-marketing side effects.
Providing free medical samples of registered medicines and pharmaceutical products, if possible, and storing them according to the approved storage conditions, and it is prohibited to sell the free medical samples or distribute them to the public, and each sample should be stamped that it is free and not for sale.
Contribute to the scientific pharmaceutical studies and research in cooperation with the specialized scientific centers in accordance with the rules and ethics of scientific research.
Supporting scientific activities in the fields related to the company's products, participating in the activities of scientific societies, and contributing to continuous medical education programs.
Training the company's employees to be familiar with the activities of the marketing facility.
Contribute to raise the health awareness and medical education.
Support the attendance of healthcare sector employees to the scientific conferences.
Follow up on the protection of patents and manufacturing rights of the company's products.
Implement the decisions and instructions issued by The Council.
Providing pharmaceutical consultations.
Pharmaceutical development studies for medicines and pharmaceutical products.

Management and assessment of bioavailability and bioequivalence studies.
Stability studies of medicines during their shelf-life.
Medicines quality control.
Determine the levels of medicines in biological fluids.
Preparation of medicines dossiers (eCTD).
Pharmaceutical and toxicological studies.

Business Requirements

Age

21 and above

Allowed for Nationalities

Bahraini 100%		GCC 100%	
American 100%		Singaporean 100%	
Icelander 100%		Liechtenstein er 100%	
Norwegian 100%		Swiss 100%	

Foreign Allowed up to 100%

Legal Type

It is allowed to register according to the legal forms mentioned below

Allowed for Individual Commercial Registration (ICR) : Yes

Allowed for Company Commercial Registration (CCR) : Yes

- Bahrain Shareholding Company (Public)
- With Limited Liability Company
- Branch of a Foreign Company
- Bahrain Shareholding Company (Closed)
- Partnership Company
- Simple Commandite Company
- Commandite By Shares Company
- Non Profit Company

Required Step of Licenses and Approvals

Ministry / Directorate	License / Approval Requirements	Approval Type
Municipality Affairs	Site Approval for Trading related activities	Post
NHRA-Pharmatical Products Regulation Office	Pharmacy (importer) - Pre Approval	Post

Municipality Affairs (Post) (4772-6)

Approval Name	Description	Estimated Time
Site Approval for Trading related activities	Municipality Approval for the Commercial Registration address or the site in which the Activity will be practiced	3 Days

Fee Details (if any)

10

License Information

General Conditions:
1. Size of shop/premises must be sufficient for the activity
2. Businesses may not carry out the activity outside the boundaries of the shop/ premises
3. It is prohibited to display or store any items or equipment outside the shop / premises boundary without prior approval from the Municipality
4. Maintain cleanliness of the site
5. Comply with the parking space regulations as per the Construction Regulatory Requirements

Activity Specific Conditions:
1. The commercial address for this activity can be registered in areas classified as commercial, services, or industrial
2. The commercial address of the Commercial Registration for this activity can an office address provided that the site is used for administrative purposes and not physical selling, and that the office is not located in a residential area

Required Documents

- Lease agreement (after obtaining the necessary approvals from other licensing entities)
- Shop photos

Other Documents

- Cabinet's Decision (56) of the year 2022 regarding the Regulatory Requirements of Construction for various areas in the Kingdom of Bahrain

NHRA-Pharmatical Products Regulation Office (Post) (4772-6)

Approval Name	Description	Estimated Time
Pharmacy (importer) - Pre Approval	The license is required if the investor intends to start up a pharmacy in Bahrain that sells pharmaceutical products and any other items included as activity in the CR, and can be an agent if will import pharmaceutical products from outside Bahrain.	5 Days

Fee Details (if any)

There is an application of fee of BD50

License Information

1- Requirements:
• No contact with a private dwelling.
• Proper parking area.
• Has a separate entrance.
• Surface-area should be sufficient to provide suitable corridors for the distribution of medicines and pharmaceutical products, and to facilitate their dispensing and storage movement. The center should be well-lit and ventilated

2- The application form to apply for this license can be obtained from: (www.nhra.bh)

3- The license is subject to Decree No (18) of 1997 with Respect to the Practice of Pharmacists and Pharmaceutical Centers and the amendments made to this law under

Decree Law (20) of 2015, & Resolution (63) for the Year 2019, to Issue the Regulation of the Requirements and Procedures for the Practice of Pharmacy Professions, Licensing of Pharmaceutical Centers, Medicines and Pharmaceutical Products Factories, and Pharmaceutical Facilities

4- You may visit NHRA's website for the laws applicable to these licenses: http://http://www.nhra.bh/SitePages/View.aspx?PageId=77/SitePages/View.aspx?PageId=77

Required Documents

- Pharmacy interior layout.
- Completed application form of Pharmacy and/or Pharmaceutical facilities license
- Good conduct certificate
- Signed lease agreement or Ownership certificate.

Other Documents

- Decree No (18) of 1997 with Respect to the Practice of Pharmacists and Pharmaceutical Centers and the amendments made to this law under Decree Law (20) of 2015
- Resolution (63) for the Year 2019, to Issue the Regulation of the Requirements and Procedures for the Practice of Pharmacy Professions, Licensing of Pharmaceutical Centers, Medicines and Pharmaceutical Products Factories, and Pharmaceutical Facilities.

Sale/Trading Activities; repair of motor vehicles and motorcycles

ISIC4	Business activity
47723	Sale/Tradeof perfumery, cosmetic and toiletries

Description

Includes wholesale and/or retail sale of perfumery and cosmetic articles

Business Requirements

Age

18 and above

Allowed for Nationalities

- Bahraini 100%
- GCC 100%
- American 100%

Legal Type

It is allowed to register according to the legal forms mentioned below

Allowed for Individual Commercial Registration (ICR) : Yes

Allowed for Company Commercial Registration (CCR) : Yes

- Bahrain Shareholding Company (Public)
- With Limited Liability Company
- Branch of a Foreign Company
- Bahrain Shareholding Company (Closed)
- Partnership Company
- Simple Commandite Company
- Commandite By Shares Company
- Non Profit Company

Required Step of Licenses and Approvals

Ministry / Directorate	License / Approval Requirements	Approval Type
Ministry of Health	Notification Only For Sale/Tradeof perfumery, cosmetic and toiletries	Notification Only
Municipality Affairs	Site Approval for Trading related activities	Post

Ministry of Health (Notification Only) (47723)

Approval Name	Description	Estimated Time
Notification Only For Sale/Tradeof perfumery, cosmetic and toiletries	Notification Only For Sale/Tradeof perfumery, cosmetic and toiletries	There is no License Information in this license. Days

Fee Details (if any)

100 BD

License Information

There is no License Information in this license.

Municipality Affairs (Post) (47723)

Approval Name	Description	Estimated Time
Site Approval for Trading related activities	Municipality Approval for the Commercial Registration address or the site in which the Activity will be practiced	3 Days

Fee Details (if any)

10

License Information

General Conditions:
1. Size of shop/premises must be sufficient for the activity
2. Businesses may not carry out the activity outside the boundaries of the shop/ premises
3. It is prohibited to display or store any items or equipment outside the shop / premises boundary without prior approval from the Municipality
4. Maintain cleanliness of the site
5. Comply with the parking space regulations as per the Construction Regulatory Requirements

Activity Specific Conditions:
1. The commercial address for this activity can be registered in areas classified as commercial, services, or industrial
2. The commercial address of the Commercial Registration for this activity can an office address provided that the site is used for administrative purposes and not physical selling, and that the office is not located in a residential area

Required Documents

- Lease agreement (after obtaining the necessary approvals from other licensing entities)
- Shop photos

Other Documents

- Cabinet's Decision (56) of the year 2022 regarding the Regulatory Requirements of Construction for various areas in the Kingdom of Bahrain

Sale/Trading Activities; repair of motor vehicles and motorcycles

ISIC4	Business activity
47731	Sale/Trade of photographic, optical and precision equipment

Description

Includes wholesale and/or retail sale of photographic, optical and precision equipment

Business Requirements

Age

18 and above

Allowed for Nationalities

- Bahraini 100%
- American 100%
- GCC 100%

Legal Type

It is allowed to register according to the legal forms mentioned below

Allowed for Individual Commercial Registration (ICR) : Yes

Allowed for Company Commercial Registration (CCR) : Yes

- Bahrain Shareholding Company (Public)
- With Limited Liability Company
- Branch of a Foreign Company
- Bahrain Shareholding Company (Closed)
- Partnership Company
- Simple Commandite Company
- Commandite By Shares Company
- Non Profit Company

Required Step of Licenses and Approvals

Ministry / Directorate	License / Approval Requirements	Approval Type
Municipality Affairs	Site Approval for Trading related activities	Post

Municipality Affairs (Post) (47731)

Approval Name	Description	Estimated Time
Site Approval for Trading related activities	Municipality Approval for the Commercial Registration address or the site in which the Activity will be practiced	3 Days

Fee Details (if any)

10

License Information

General Conditions:
1. Size of shop/premises must be sufficient for the activity
2. Businesses may not carry out the activity outside the boundaries of the shop/ premises
3. It is prohibited to display or store any items or equipment outside the shop / premises boundary without prior approval from the Municipality
4. Maintain cleanliness of the site
5. Comply with the parking space regulations as per the Construction Regulatory Requirements

Activity Specific Conditions:
1. The commercial address for this activity can be registered in areas classified as commercial, services, or industrial
2. The commercial address of the Commercial Registration for this activity can an office address provided that the site is used for administrative purposes and not physical selling, and that the office is not located in a residential area

Required Documents

- Lease agreement (after obtaining the necessary approvals from other licensing entities)
- Shop photos

Other Documents

- Cabinet's Decision (56) of the year 2022 regarding the Regulatory Requirements of Construction for various areas in the Kingdom of Bahrain

Sale/Trading Activities; repair of motor vehicles and motorcycles

ISIC4	Business activity
47732	Sale/Trade of optical goods; Activities of Opticians

Description

Includes wholesale and/or retail sale of optical goods, as well as the activities of Opticians

Business Requirements

Age

18 and above

Allowed for Nationalities

- Bahraini 100%
- American 100%
- GCC 100%

Legal Type

It is allowed to register according to the legal forms mentioned below

Allowed for Individual Commercial Registration (ICR) : Yes

Allowed for Company Commercial Registration (CCR) : Yes

- Bahrain Shareholding Company (Public)
- With Limited Liability Company
- Bahrain Shareholding Company (Closed)
- Partnership Company
- Simple Commandite Company

Required Step of Licenses and Approvals

Ministry / Directorate	License / Approval Requirements	Approval Type
General Directrate Of Civil Defence	Sale/Trade of optical goods; Activities of Opticians	Post
NHRA-Health Care Facilities	Trade in health products and alternative medication and products	Post
Municipality Affairs	Site Approval for Trading related activities	Post
NHRA-Health Care Facilities	Trade in health products and alternative medication and products	Final Site Inspection

General Directrate Of Civil Defence (Post) (47732)

Approval Name	Description	Estimated Time
Sale/Trade of optical goods; Activities of Opticians	This Approval is required to insure compliance with the fire prevention and protection requirements of General Directorate of Civil Defense	5 Days

Fee Details (if any)

30 BD Fire prevention and protection certificate fees

License Information

1. Provide the documents mentioned in the “Required Documents” section
2. Comply with the requirements listed in the inspection checklist found in the “Other Downloadable Documents” section
3. Provide proof to the General Directorate of Civil Defense that an alarm and firefighting equipment have been installed within 6 months of obtaining a Commercial Registration and license

If a warehouse is used: A safety certificate must be obtained viaBahrain.bh

Required Documents

•No-objection letter for alarm and extinguisher installation from Civil Defense, or purchasing receipt of alarm equipment and extinguishers along with an annual maintenance contract from a company certified by Civil defense
•Photos required for civil defense activities
•Purchasing invoice of security camera system with specifying the type and storage capacity.

Other Documents

- Sample pictures of the general directorate of civil defense requirements
- licencing requirments of the general directorat of civil defense for activity number "47732"

NHRA-Health Care Facilities (Post) (47732)

Approval Name	Description	Estimated Time
Trade in health products and alternative medication and products	It is the institution established for preparing, composing, producing or partitioning medicine for the purpose of sale. A license shall be given only if the manufacturing conditions adopted by the World Health Organization (WHO) are met and the other requirements adopted by the NHRA and other competent official authorities subject to the conditions and procedures set out in the Legislative Decree No (18) for 1997 with Respect to the Practice of Pharmacists and Pharmaceutical Centers.	5 Days

Fee Details (if any)

Application fees 50 BD
Preliminary approval fees 50 BD
first license 400 BD.
Renewal 300 BD.

License Information

1.Apply for authorization letter.
2. Apply for project proposal.
3. Apply for project engineering drawings.
4. Apply for copy of passport or CPR for all partners
5. Apply for NHRA Application form
6. Apply for copy of the Commercial Registration (CR) “inactive”.

Other Documents

•NHRA Application form

Municipality Affairs (Post) (47732)

Approval Name	Description	Estimated Time
Site Approval for Trading related activities	Municipality Approval for the Commercial Registration address or the site in which the Activity will be practiced	3 Days

Fee Details (if any)

10

License Information

General Conditions:
1. Size of shop/premises must be sufficient for the activity
2. Businesses may not carry out the activity outside the boundaries of the shop/ premises
3. It is prohibited to display or store any items or equipment outside the shop / premises boundary without prior approval from the Municipality
4. Maintain cleanliness of the site
5. Comply with the parking space regulations as per the Construction Regulatory Requirements

Activity Specific Conditions:
1. The commercial address for this activity can be registered in areas classified as commercial, services, or industrial
2. The commercial address of the Commercial Registration for this activity can an office address provided that the site is used for administrative purposes and not physical selling, and that the office is not located in a residential area

Required Documents

- Lease agreement (after obtaining the necessary approvals from other licensing entities)
- Shop photos

Other Documents

- Cabinet's Decision (56) of the year 2022 regarding the Regulatory Requirements of Construction for various areas in the Kingdom of Bahrain

NHRA-Health Care Facilities (Final Site Inspection) (47732)

Approval Name	Description	Estimated Time
Trade in health products and alternative medication and products	It is the institution established for preparing, composing, producing or partitioning medicine for the purpose of sale. A license shall be given only if the manufacturing conditions adopted by the World Health Organization (WHO) are met and the other requirements adopted by the NHRA and other competent official authorities subject to the conditions and procedures set out in the Legislative Decree No (18) for 1997 with Respect to the Practice of Pharmacists and Pharmaceutical Centers.	5 Days

Fee Details (if any)

Application fees 50 BD
Preliminary approval fees 50 BD
first license 400 BD.
Renewal 300 BD.

License Information

1.Apply for authorization letter.
2. Apply for project proposal.
3. Apply for project engineering drawings.
4. Apply for copy of passport or CPR for all partners
5. Apply for NHRA Application form
6. Apply for copy of the Commercial Registration (CR) “inactive”.

Other Documents

•NHRA Application form

Sale/Trading Activities; repair of motor vehicles and motorcycles

ISIC4	Business activity
47733-1	Sale/Trade of jewellery and related articles - Gold and Precious Jewellery

Description

This activity includes wholesale and/or retail sale, import and export of,gold, platinum, and diamonds.

Sale/trade of jewellery, gold, platinum, diamonds, pearls and related materials:
- Sale/Trade of gold bars.
- Sale/Trade of gold or platinum jewellery such as bracelets, necklaces, earrings, gold sets, and other gold and platinum jewellery.
- Sale/trade of watches made of precious metals such as gold, encrusted with diamonds
- Sale/Trade of loose, strung and mounted pearls in precious metals.
- Sale/Trade of precious stones mounted in precious metals.
- Sale/Trade of diamonds.
- Sale/Trade of jewellery of precious metal or of base metals plated with precious metals, or of combinations of precious metal and precious stones or of other materials.
- Sale/Trade o products made of precious metals such as gold or platinum: dinnerware, flatware, hollowware, office articles and articles for religious use etc.

This activity does not include the sale of silver and other accessories.
This activity is subject to anti-money laundering requirements determined by the concerned department.

Business Requirements

Age

18 and above

Allowed for Nationalities

- Bahraini 100%
- GCC 100%
- American 100%

Legal Type

It is allowed to register according to the legal forms mentioned below

Allowed for Individual Commercial Registration (ICR) : Yes

Allowed for Company Commercial Registration (CCR) : Yes

- Bahrain Shareholding Company (Public)
- With Limited Liability Company
- Branch of a Foreign Company
- Bahrain Shareholding Company (Closed)
- Partnership Company
- Simple Commandite Company
- Commandite By Shares Company
- Non Profit Company

Required Step of Licenses and Approvals

Ministry / Directorate	License / Approval Requirements	Approval Type
Precious Metals Gemstones Directorate Moic	Notification Only For Sale/ Trade of jewelry and related articles Activity	Notification Only
Municipality Affairs	Site Approval for Trading related activities	Post

Precious Metals Gemstones Directorate Moic (Notification Only) (47733-1)

Approval Name	Description	Estimated Time
Notification Only For Sale/Trade of jewelry and related articles Activity	Notify license entity that new application is applied for Sale/ Trade of jewelry and related articles Activity	There is no License Information in this license. Days

Fee Details (if any)

MOIC's activity fees apply (BD100 for the first 3 Activities)

License Information

- The shop must not to display or sell precious metal articles without the Hallmark sign of the Kingdom of Bahrain.
- All precious metal articles must satisfy the technical requirements including testing and hallmark stamping, using welding materials of the same Caratage fineness of precious metals, and that jewellery articles do not have other non-precious metals that exceed the weight of the precious metals content.
- Upon completion of the sale process, the shop must give the buyer a sales invoice/ receipt that contains information including shop details, the buyer's information, as well as information pertaining to the jewelry articles including precious metals' Caratage, weight, and price, and the weight and type of gemstones or diamonds

Other Documents

- Decree by Law no. 6 of 1990 with Respect to the Control over Precious Metals articles.
- Decree by Law no. 65 of 2014 with respect to the amending of the Decree by law no. 10 of 1990 concerning the control over Pearls and Gemstones.
- Decree by law no. 10 of 1990 with respect to the control over Pearls and Gemstones.
- Ministerial Order no. 10 of 1999 with respect to the Hallmarking Signs for Precious Metals Articles.
- Ministerial Order no. 12 of 2004 with respect to the amending of Ministerial order no. 20 of 1994 concerning the Technical Requirements of Precious Metals articles.
- Ministerial Order no. 162 of 2016 With respect to the executive regulations of the decree by law no. 10 of 1990 concerning control over Pearls and Gemstones.
- Ministerial Order no. 163 of 2016 with respect to the Determination of the Regulations Required to be Complied with by the Companies Licensed to Test Pearls and Gemstones.
- Ministerial Order no. 177 of 2017 with respect to the Fees of Assaying and Hallmarking Precious Metals and Other Relevant Services.
- Ministerial Order no. 20 of 1994 with respect to the Technical Requirements for Precious Metals Articles.
- Ministerial Order no. 58 of 2016 with respect to the accreditation of Precious Metals special Hallmarks signs.
- Ministerial order no. 25 of 2007 with respect to the Hallmarks signs of Imported Precious Metals Articles.

Municipality Affairs (Post) (47733-1)

Approval Name	Description	Estimated Time
Site Approval for Trading related activities	Municipality Approval for the Commercial Registration address or the site in which the Activity will be practiced	3 Days

Fee Details (if any)

10

License Information

General Conditions:
1. Size of shop/premises must be sufficient for the activity
2. Businesses may not carry out the activity outside the boundaries of the shop/ premises
3. It is prohibited to display or store any items or equipment outside the shop / premises boundary without prior approval from the Municipality
4. Maintain cleanliness of the site
5. Comply with the parking space regulations as per the Construction Regulatory Requirements

Activity Specific Conditions:
1. The commercial address for this activity can be registered in areas classified as commercial, services, or industrial
2. The commercial address of the Commercial Registration for this activity can an office address provided that the site is used for administrative purposes and not physical selling, and that the office is not located in a residential area

Required Documents

- Lease agreement (after obtaining the necessary approvals from other licensing entities)
- Shop photos

Other Documents

- Cabinet's Decision (56) of the year 2022 regarding the Regulatory Requirements of Construction for various areas in the Kingdom of Bahrain

Sale/Trading Activities; repair of motor vehicles and motorcycles

ISIC4	Business activity
47733-2	Sale/Trade of jewellery and related articles - Silver and Related Articles

Description

This activity includes wholesale and/or retail sale, import and export of silver and accessories made or plated with silver

This activity includes sale/trade of the following:
- jewellery made of silver or plated with silver, such as bracelets, necklaces, earrings and other silver products.
- Rings made of silver or plated with it.
- Watches made of or plated precious metal.
- Sale/Trade of rosaries and their accessories.
- Accessories made of non-precious metals.
- Stones installed in rings made of silver or non-precious metals.

This activity does not include sale/trade of precious jewellery, gold bars, gold and platinum jewellery, , pearls, or diamonds.

Business Requirements

Age

18 and above

Allowed for Nationalities

Bahraini
100%

American
100%

GCC
100%

Legal Type

It is allowed to register according to the legal forms mentioned below

Allowed for Individual Commercial Registration (ICR) : Yes

Allowed for Company Commercial Registration (CCR) : Yes

- Bahrain Shareholding Company (Public)
- With Limited Liability Company
- Branch of a Foreign Company
- Bahrain Shareholding Company (Closed)
- Partnership Company
- Simple Commandite Company
- Commandite By Shares Company
- Non Profit Company

Required Step of Licenses and Approvals

Ministry / Directorate	License / Approval Requirements	Approval Type
Precious Metals Gemstones Directorate Moic	Notification Only For Sale/ Trade of jewelry and related articles Activity	Notification Only
Municipality Affairs	Site Approval for Trading related activities	Post

Precious Metals Gemstones Directorate Moic (Notification Only) (47733-2)

Approval Name	Description	Estimated Time
Notification Only For Sale/Trade of jewelry and related articles Activity	Notify license entity that new application is applied for Sale/ Trade of jewelry and related articles Activity	There is no License Information in this license. Days

Fee Details (if any)

MOIC's activity fees apply (BD100 for the first 3 Activities)

License Information

- The shop must not to display or sell precious metal articles without the Hallmark sign of the Kingdom of Bahrain.
- All precious metal articles must satisfy the technical requirements including testing and hallmark stamping, using welding materials of the same Caratage fineness of precious metals, and that jewellery articles do not have other non-precious metals that exceed the weight of the precious metals content.
- Upon completion of the sale process, the shop must give the buyer a sales invoice/ receipt that contains information including shop details, the buyer's information, as well as information pertaining to the jewelry articles including precious metals' Caratage, weight, and price, and the weight and type of gemstones or diamonds

Other Documents

- Decree by Law no. 6 of 1990 with Respect to the Control over Precious Metals articles.
- Decree by Law no. 65 of 2014 with respect to the amending of the Decree by law no. 10 of 1990 concerning the control over Pearls and Gemstones.
- Decree by law no. 10 of 1990 with respect to the control over Pearls and Gemstones.
- Ministerial Order no. 10 of 1999 with respect to the Hallmarking Signs for Precious Metals Articles.
- Ministerial Order no. 12 of 2004 with respect to the amending of Ministerial order no. 20 of 1994 concerning the Technical Requirements of Precious Metals articles.
- Ministerial Order no. 162 of 2016 With respect to the executive regulations of the decree by law no. 10 of 1990 concerning control over Pearls and Gemstones.
- Ministerial Order no. 163 of 2016 with respect to the Determination of the Regulations Required to be Complied with by the Companies Licensed to Test Pearls and Gemstones.
- Ministerial Order no. 177 of 2017 with respect to the Fees of Assaying and Hallmarking Precious Metals and Other Relevant Services.
- Ministerial Order no. 20 of 1994 with respect to the Technical Requirements for Precious Metals Articles.
- Ministerial Order no. 58 of 2016 with respect to the accreditation of Precious Metals special Hallmarks signs.
- Ministerial order no. 25 of 2007 with respect to the Hallmarks signs of Imported Precious Metals Articles.

Municipality Affairs (Post) (47733-2)

Approval Name	Description	Estimated Time
Site Approval for Trading related activities	Municipality Approval for the Commercial Registration address or the site in which the Activity will be practiced	3 Days

Fee Details (if any)

10

License Information

General Conditions:
1. Size of shop/premises must be sufficient for the activity
2. Businesses may not carry out the activity outside the boundaries of the shop/ premises
3. It is prohibited to display or store any items or equipment outside the shop / premises boundary without prior approval from the Municipality
4. Maintain cleanliness of the site
5. Comply with the parking space regulations as per the Construction Regulatory Requirements

Activity Specific Conditions:
1. The commercial address for this activity can be registered in areas classified as commercial, services, or industrial
2. The commercial address of the Commercial Registration for this activity can an office address provided that the site is used for administrative purposes and not physical selling, and that the office is not located in a residential area

Required Documents

- Lease agreement (after obtaining the necessary approvals from other licensing entities)
- Shop photos

Other Documents

- Cabinet's Decision (56) of the year 2022 regarding the Regulatory Requirements of Construction for various areas in the Kingdom of Bahrain

Sale/Trading Activities; repair of motor vehicles and motorcycles

ISIC4	Business activity
477341	Sale/Trade Pet/ Animal food and accessories

Description

Includes wholesale and/or retail sale of pet/ animal food and accessories

Business Requirements

Age

18 and above

Allowed for Nationalities

- Bahraini 100%
- American 100%
- GCC 100%

Legal Type

It is allowed to register according to the legal forms mentioned below

Allowed for Individual Commercial Registration (ICR) : Yes

Allowed for Company Commercial Registration (CCR) : Yes

- Bahrain Shareholding Company (Public)
- With Limited Liability Company
- Branch of a Foreign Company
- Bahrain Shareholding Company (Closed)
- Partnership Company
- Simple Commandite Company
- Commandite By Shares Company
- Non Profit Company

Required Step of Licenses and Approvals

Ministry / Directorate	License / Approval Requirements	Approval Type
Municipality Affairs	Site Approval for Trading related activities	Post

Municipality Affairs (Post) (477341)

Approval Name	Description	Estimated Time
Site Approval for Trading related activities	Municipality Approval for the Commercial Registration address or the site in which the Activity will be practiced	3 Days

Fee Details (if any)

10

License Information

General Conditions:
1. Size of shop/premises must be sufficient for the activity
2. Businesses may not carry out the activity outside the boundaries of the shop/ premises
3. It is prohibited to display or store any items or equipment outside the shop / premises boundary without prior approval from the Municipality
4. Maintain cleanliness of the site
5. Comply with the parking space regulations as per the Construction Regulatory Requirements

Activity Specific Conditions:
1. The commercial address for this activity can be registered in areas classified as commercial, services, or industrial
2. The commercial address of the Commercial Registration for this activity can an office address provided that the site is used for administrative purposes and not physical selling, and that the office is not located in a residential area

Required Documents

- Lease agreement (after obtaining the necessary approvals from other licensing entities)
- Shop photos

Other Documents

- Cabinet's Decision (56) of the year 2022 regarding the Regulatory Requirements of Construction for various areas in the Kingdom of Bahrain

Sale/Trading Activities; repair of motor vehicles and motorcycles

ISIC4	Business activity
47735-1	Sale/Trade of flowers, plants,and seeds

Description

Includes wholesale and/or retail sale of flowers, plants,and seeds

Note: To sell fertilizars applicants must select "Sale/Trade of flowers, plants, seeds, and fertilizers - Fertilizer"

Business Requirements

Age

18 and above

Allowed for Nationalities

- Bahraini 100%
- American 100%
- GCC 100%

Legal Type

It is allowed to register according to the legal forms mentioned below

Allowed for Individual Commercial Registration (ICR) : Yes

Allowed for Company Commercial Registration (CCR) : Yes

- Bahrain Shareholding Company (Public)
- With Limited Liability Company
- Branch of a Foreign Company
- Bahrain Shareholding Company (Closed)
- Partnership Company
- Simple Commandite Company
- Commandite By Shares Company
- Non Profit Company

Required Step of Licenses and Approvals

Ministry / Directorate	License / Approval Requirements	Approval Type
Agricultural Health Directorate	Notification Only	Notification Only
Municipality Affairs	Site Approval for Trading related activities	Post

Agricultural Health Directorate (Notification Only) (47735-1)

Approval Name	Description	Estimated Time
Notification Only	Notify license entity that new application is applied.	There is no License Information in this license. Days

Fee Details (if any)

There is no Estimated Processing Time (Days) in this license.

License Information

There is no License Information in this license.

Municipality Affairs (Post) (47735-1)

Approval Name	Description	Estimated Time
Site Approval for Trading related activities	Municipality Approval for the Commercial Registration address or the site in which the Activity will be practiced	3 Days

Fee Details (if any)

10

License Information

General Conditions:
1. Size of shop/premises must be sufficient for the activity
2. Businesses may not carry out the activity outside the boundaries of the shop/ premises
3. It is prohibited to display or store any items or equipment outside the shop / premises boundary without prior approval from the Municipality
4. Maintain cleanliness of the site
5. Comply with the parking space regulations as per the Construction Regulatory Requirements

Activity Specific Conditions:
1. The commercial address for this activity can be registered in areas classified as commercial, services, or industrial
2. The commercial address of the Commercial Registration for this activity can an office address provided that the site is used for administrative purposes and not physical selling, and that the office is not located in a residential area

Required Documents

- Lease agreement (after obtaining the necessary approvals from other licensing entities)
- Shop photos

Other Documents

- Cabinet's Decision (56) of the year 2022 regarding the Regulatory Requirements of Construction for various areas in the Kingdom of Bahrain

Sale/Trading Activities; repair of motor vehicles and motorcycles

ISIC4	Business activity
47736-1	Sale/Trade of souvenirs, craft work, religious articles, stamps and coins; Activities of commercial art galleries

Description

IIncludes wholesale and/or retail sale of souvenirs, craftwork, religious articles, stamps and coins; Activities of commercial art galleries

Business Requirements

Age

18 and above

Allowed for Nationalities

- Bahraini 100%
- American 100%
- GCC 100%

Legal Type

It is allowed to register according to the legal forms mentioned below

Allowed for Individual Commercial Registration (ICR) : Yes

Allowed for Company Commercial Registration (CCR) : Yes

Allowed for Sijilli : Yes

- Bahrain Shareholding Company (Public)
- With Limited Liability Company
- Branch of a Foreign Company
- Bahrain Shareholding Company (Closed)
- Partnership Company
- Simple Commandite Company
- Commandite By Shares Company
- Non Profit Company

Required Step of Licenses and Approvals

Ministry / Directorate	License / Approval Requirements	Approval Type
Municipality Affairs	Site Approval for Trading related activities	Post

Municipality Affairs (Post) (47736-1)

Approval Name	Description	Estimated Time
Site Approval for Trading related activities	Municipality Approval for the Commercial Registration address or the site in which the Activity will be practiced	3 Days

Fee Details (if any)

10

License Information

General Conditions:
1. Size of shop/premises must be sufficient for the activity
2. Businesses may not carry out the activity outside the boundaries of the shop/ premises
3. It is prohibited to display or store any items or equipment outside the shop / premises boundary without prior approval from the Municipality
4. Maintain cleanliness of the site
5. Comply with the parking space regulations as per the Construction Regulatory Requirements

Activity Specific Conditions:
1. The commercial address for this activity can be registered in areas classified as commercial, services, or industrial
2. The commercial address of the Commercial Registration for this activity can an office address provided that the site is used for administrative purposes and not physical selling, and that the office is not located in a residential area

Required Documents

- Lease agreement (after obtaining the necessary approvals from other licensing entities)
- Shop photos

Other Documents

- Cabinet's Decision (56) of the year 2022 regarding the Regulatory Requirements of Construction for various areas in the Kingdom of Bahrain

Sale/Trading Activities; repair of motor vehicles and motorcycles

ISIC4	Business activity
47736-2	Sale/Trade of souvenirs, craft work, religious articles, stamps and coins; Activities of commercial art galleries - Crafts activities

Description

Includes wholesale and/or retail sale of souvenirs, craftwork, religious articles, stamps and coins

Business Requirements

Age

18 and above

Allowed for Nationalities

Bahraini 100%	GCC 100%
American 100%	Singaporean Allowed up to 49% (a minimum Bahraini ownership of 51% is required)
Icelander Allowed up to 49% (a minimum Bahraini ownership of 51% is required)	Liechtenstein er Allowed up to 49% (a minimum Bahraini ownership of 51% is required)
Norwegian Allowed up to 49% (a minimum Bahraini ownership of 51% is required)	Swiss Allowed up to 49% (a minimum Bahraini ownership of 51% is required)

Foreign Allowed up to Allowed up to 49% (a minimum Bahraini ownership of 51% is required)

Legal Type

It is allowed to register according to the legal forms mentioned below

Allowed for Individual Commercial Registration (ICR) : Yes

Allowed for Company Commercial Registration (CCR) : Yes

Allowed for Sijilli : Yes

- Bahrain Shareholding Company (Public)
- With Limited Liability Company
- Branch of a Foreign Company
- Bahrain Shareholding Company (Closed)
- Partnership Company
- Simple Commandite Company
- Commandite By Shares Company
- Non Profit Company

Required Step of Licenses and Approvals

Ministry / Directorate	License / Approval Requirements	Approval Type
Municipality Affairs	Site Approval for Trading related activities	Post

Municipality Affairs (Post) (47736-2)

Approval Name	Description	Estimated Time
Site Approval for Trading related activities	Municipality Approval for the Commercial Registration address or the site in which the Activity will be practiced	3 Days

Fee Details (if any)

10

License Information

General Conditions:
1. Size of shop/premises must be sufficient for the activity
2. Businesses may not carry out the activity outside the boundaries of the shop/ premises
3. It is prohibited to display or store any items or equipment outside the shop / premises boundary without prior approval from the Municipality
4. Maintain cleanliness of the site
5. Comply with the parking space regulations as per the Construction Regulatory Requirements

Activity Specific Conditions:
1. The commercial address for this activity can be registered in areas classified as commercial, services, or industrial
2. The commercial address of the Commercial Registration for this activity can an office address provided that the site is used for administrative purposes and not physical selling, and that the office is not located in a residential area

Required Documents

- Lease agreement (after obtaining the necessary approvals from other licensing entities)
- Shop photos

Other Documents

- Cabinet's Decision (56) of the year 2022 regarding the Regulatory Requirements of Construction for various areas in the Kingdom of Bahrain

Sale/Trading Activities; repair of motor vehicles and motorcycles

ISIC4	Business activity
47736-3	Sale/Trade of souvenirs, craft work, religious articles, stamps and coins; Activities of commercial art galleries - Sale/Trade of artwork in art galleries

Description

Includes wholesale and/or retail sale of artworks through commercial art galleries

Business Requirements

Age

18 and above

Allowed for Nationalities

Bahraini 100%	GCC 100%
American 100%	Singaporean 100%
Icelander 100%	Liechtensteiner 100%
Norwegian 100%	Swiss 100%

Foreign Allowed up to 100%

Legal Type

It is allowed to register according to the legal forms mentioned below

- Bahrain Shareholding Company (Public)
- With Limited Liability Company
- Branch of a Foreign Company
- Bahrain Shareholding Company (Closed)
- Partnership Company
- Simple Commandite Company
- Commandite By Shares Company

Required Step of Licenses and Approvals

Ministry / Directorate	License / Approval Requirements	Approval Type
Bahrain Authority for Culture and Antiquities	Notification Only	Notification Only
Bahrain Tourim and Exibitions Authority	Approval for Sale/Trade of artwork in art galleries	Notification Only
Municipality Affairs	Site Approval for Trading related activities	Post

Bahrain Authority for Culture and Antiquities (Notification Only) (47736-3)

Approval Name	Description	Estimated Time
Notification Only	Notification Only	There is no License Information in this license. Days

Fee Details (if any)

There is no Estimated Processing Time (Days) in this license.

License Information

There is no License Information in this license.

Bahrain Tourim and Exibitions Authority (Notification Only) (47736-3)

Approval Name	Description	Estimated Time
Approval for Sale/ Trade of artwork in art galleries	Approval for Sale/ Trade of artwork in art galleries	There is no License Information in this license. Days

Fee Details (if any)

There is no Estimated Processing Time (Days) in this license.

License Information

There is no License Information in this license.

Municipality Affairs (Post) (47736-3)

Approval Name	Description	Estimated Time
Site Approval for Trading related activities	Municipality Approval for the Commercial Registration address or the site in which the Activity will be practiced	3 Days

Fee Details (if any)

10

License Information

General Conditions:
1. Size of shop/premises must be sufficient for the activity
2. Businesses may not carry out the activity outside the boundaries of the shop/ premises
3. It is prohibited to display or store any items or equipment outside the shop / premises boundary without prior approval from the Municipality
4. Maintain cleanliness of the site
5. Comply with the parking space regulations as per the Construction Regulatory Requirements

Activity Specific Conditions:
1. The commercial address for this activity can be registered in areas classified as commercial, services, or industrial
2. The commercial address of the Commercial Registration for this activity can an office address provided that the site is used for administrative purposes and not physical selling, and that the office is not located in a residential area

Required Documents

- Lease agreement (after obtaining the necessary approvals from other licensing entities)
- Shop photos

Other Documents

- Cabinet's Decision (56) of the year 2022 regarding the Regulatory Requirements of Construction for various areas in the Kingdom of Bahrain

Sale/Trading Activities; repair of motor vehicles and motorcycles

ISIC4	Business activity
47737-1	Sale of household fuel oil, coal and fuel wood - (excluding gas cylinders)

Description

Retail sale of household fuel oil, coal and fuel wood
Notes: This activity does not include sale of gas cylinders

Business Requirements

Age

18 and above

Allowed for Nationalities

- Bahraini 100%
- American 100%
- GCC 100%

Legal Type

It is allowed to register according to the legal forms mentioned below

Allowed for Individual Commercial Registration (ICR) : Yes

Allowed for Company Commercial Registration (CCR) : Yes

- Bahrain Shareholding Company (Public)
- With Limited Liability Company
- Branch of a Foreign Company
- Bahrain Shareholding Company (Closed)
- Partnership Company
- Simple Commandite Company
- Commandite By Shares Company
- Non Profit Company

Required Step of Licenses and Approvals

Ministry / Directorate	License / Approval Requirements	Approval Type
Municipality Affairs	Site Approval for Trading related activities	Post

Municipality Affairs (Post) (47737-1)

Approval Name	Description	Estimated Time
Site Approval for Trading related activities	Municipality Approval for the Commercial Registration address or the site in which the Activity will be practiced	3 Days

Fee Details (if any)

10

License Information

General Conditions:
1. Size of shop/premises must be sufficient for the activity
2. Businesses may not carry out the activity outside the boundaries of the shop/ premises
3. It is prohibited to display or store any items or equipment outside the shop / premises boundary without prior approval from the Municipality
4. Maintain cleanliness of the site
5. Comply with the parking space regulations as per the Construction Regulatory Requirements

Activity Specific Conditions:
1. The commercial address for this activity can be registered in areas classified as commercial, services, or industrial
2. The commercial address of the Commercial Registration for this activity can an office address provided that the site is used for administrative purposes and not physical selling, and that the office is not located in a residential area

Required Documents

- Lease agreement (after obtaining the necessary approvals from other licensing entities)
- Shop photos

Other Documents

- Cabinet's Decision (56) of the year 2022 regarding the Regulatory Requirements of Construction for various areas in the Kingdom of Bahrain

Sale/Trading Activities; repair of motor vehicles and motorcycles

ISIC4	Business activity
47737-2	Sale of household fuel oil, coal and fuel wood - LPG Bottling Stations

Description

This activity covers the management, operation, and maintenance of main liquefied petroleum gas (LPG) filling stations. It includes the filling of LPG cylinders or specialized tanks and selling them to customers. The sales are limited to residential and commercial sectors only.

Business Requirements

Age

18 and above

Allowed for Nationalities

- Bahraini 100%
- American 100%
- GCC 100%

Legal Type

It is allowed to register according to the legal forms mentioned below

Allowed for Individual Commercial Registration (ICR) : Yes

Allowed for Company Commercial Registration (CCR) : Yes

- Bahrain Shareholding Company (Public)
- With Limited Liability Company
- Branch of a Foreign Company
- Bahrain Shareholding Company (Closed)
- Partnership Company
- Simple Commandite Company
- Commandite By Shares Company
- Non Profit Company

Required Step of Licenses and Approvals

Ministry / Directorate	License / Approval Requirements	Approval Type
General Directrate Of Civil Defence	Sale of household fuel oil, coal and fuel wood - LPG Cylinder Bottling	Post
Municipality Affairs	Site Approval for Trading related activities	Post
Ministry of Oil and Environment	LPG Bottling Stations	Final Site Inspection

General Directrate Of Civil Defence (Post) (47737-2)

Approval Name	Description	Estimated Time
Sale of household fuel oil, coal and fuel wood - LPG Cylinder Bottling	checking the approval requirements of the general directorate of civil defense	5 Days

Fee Details (if any)

30 BD Fire prevention and protection certificate fees

License Information

To obtain conditional approval, must:
1. Attach required documents and comply to implement detailed obligations listed in the inspection instructions.
2. Pay allocated fees.
3. Signe the undertaken to implement the obligations and do not practice the activity until receiving the final approval.

Note:
Civil defense in irresponsible if owner is not aware of the mentioned above.

Required Documents

•No-objection letter for alarm and extinguisher installation from Civil Defense, or purchasing receipt of alarm equipment and extinguishers along with an annual maintenance contract from a company certified by Civil defense
•Photos required for civil defense activities
•Purchasing invoice of security camera system with specifying the type and storage capacity.

Other Documents

- Sample pictures of the general directorate of civil defense requirements
- licencing requirments of the general directorat of civil defense for activity number "47737-2"

Municipality Affairs (Post) (47737-2)

Approval Name	Description	Estimated Time
Site Approval for Trading related activities	Municipality Approval for the Commercial Registration address or the site in which the Activity will be practiced	3 Days

Fee Details (if any)

10

License Information

General Conditions:
1. Size of shop/premises must be sufficient for the activity
2. Businesses may not carry out the activity outside the boundaries of the shop/ premises
3. It is prohibited to display or store any items or equipment outside the shop / premises boundary without prior approval from the Municipality
4. Maintain cleanliness of the site
5. Comply with the parking space regulations as per the Construction Regulatory Requirements

Activity Specific Conditions:
1. The commercial address for this activity can be registered in areas classified as commercial, services, or industrial
2. The commercial address of the Commercial Registration for this activity can an office address provided that the site is used for administrative purposes and not physical selling, and that the office is not located in a residential area

Required Documents

- Lease agreement (after obtaining the necessary approvals from other licensing entities)
- Shop photos

Other Documents

- Cabinet's Decision (56) of the year 2022 regarding the Regulatory Requirements of Construction for various areas in the Kingdom of Bahrain

Ministry of Oil and Environment (Final Site Inspection) (47737-2)

Approval Name	Description	Estimated Time
LPG Bottling Stations	This activity covers the management, operation, and maintenance of main liquefied petroleum gas (LPG) filling stations. It includes the filling of LPG cylinders or specialized tanks and selling them to customers. The sales are limited to residential and commercial sectors only.	3 Days

Fee Details (if any)

There is no Estimated Processing Time (Days) in this license.

License Information

- The issuance, cancellation, renewal, and modification procedures are carried out according to the licensing procedures in the Sijilat System.
- In case of relocating the facility to another site, the license must be canceled and a new license must be obtained.
- Commencing operations without a license is strictly prohibited.
- Engaging in the activity is prohibited on sidewalks, public roads, and rebound areas.
- Compliance with the approved requirements and specifications for the distribution and filling of liquefied petroleum gas (LPG).
- Submission of a documented proof of ownership for the land plot on which the project will be established, or being a registered tenant with a lease contract or having the right

to use government-owned land, provided that it is designated for industrial use and located near the Bahrain Petroleum Company (BAPCO) refinery, according to the technical, engineering, and planning requirements and specifications of the LPG supplier company.
- The proposed site to be licensed must meet the requirements of safety, security, technical, planning, and environmental aspects as determined by the relevant authorities.
- Technical Approvals from the specialized government parties or a specialized companies is required for project establishment (in BENAYAT system).
- Submission of an economic and technical feasibility study (including, but not limited to, production methods and catalogs of machinery and equipment) that must be prepared by an accredited specialized engineering and technical consultancy offices.
- Submission of a proposal with the technical engineering drawings for the project, prepared by the accredited engineering consultancy office, to be reviewed, approved, or rejected by the relevant technical parties.
- Retail sales are limited to residential and commercial sectors only.
- Submission of a contract for the supply of liquefied petroleum gas (LPG) with the gas supplier company (Bahrain Petroleum Company - BAPCO) or an approved gas supplier.
- Submission of a technical certificate verifying the suitability of the LPG filling station for operation (fit of operation), issued by the supplier (Bahrain Petroleum Company - BAPCO) or an accredited specialized company. The technical certificate should not be older than three months from the time of submitting the commercial registration application. If more than three months have elapsed, a new technical inspection and a new certificate of operational suitability must be obtained.
- Submission of a qualification certificate for the management and operation of the LPG filling station from a specialized and accredited entity.
- Submission of an insurance document for the filling station (covering, among others, the filling station, facilities, maintenance costs, rehabilitation costs, etc.), valid and in effect.

Operational Requirements:
Please consider the following requirements after obtaining the license:
- Provision of an operational suitability certificate from the supplier company or an accredited specialized company.
- Provision of approval from the Ministry of Oil for granting the license.
- Submission of a supply contract for liquefied petroleum gas (LPG) with the supplier company.
- Provision of an economic and technical feasibility study for the project.
- Acknowledgment of the applicant's agreement to comply with the approved requirements for filling and distributing gas cylinders as specified by the Ministry of Oil.
- Provision of a modern, valid, safe, and compliant LPG cylinder transportation vehicle designed according to Decision No. 21 of 2021 regarding the requirements for transporting LPG cylinder vehicles issued by the Ministry of Industry, Commerce

Required Documents

•A document confirming the fulfillment of the commercial operation requirements for the station, issued by the gas supplier (Bahrain Petroleum Company (BAPCO)
•Attachment of the LPG Bottling Station data form
•Electricity bill
•Ownership contract or lease contract
•Provide the final approved engineering maps of the station
•The Liquefied Petroleum Gas (LPG) supply contract with the gas supplier company (Bahrain Petroleum Company - BAPCO) or with an authorized gas supplier

Other Documents

•Decision No. 21 of 2021 regarding the requirements for transporting LPG cylinder vehicles issued by the Ministry of Industry & Commerce
•Resolution No. (3) of the year 1989 “bottling and trading of gas cylinders” issued by the Ministry of Development and industry

Sale/Trading Activities; repair of motor vehicles and motorcycles

ISIC4	Business activity
47737-4	Sale of household fuel oil, coal and fuel wood - LPG Cylinder Distribution

Description

This is an office for receiving customer orders, and it is responsible for distributing LPG cylinders to consumers using approved transport vehicles. The distribution includes residential and commercial sectors only. Storage in any form is prohibited, and direct sales at facades, public roads, or sidewalks are also prohibited.

Business Requirements

Age

18 and above

Allowed for Nationalities

- Bahraini 100%
- GCC 100%
- American 100%

Legal Type

It is allowed to register according to the legal forms mentioned below

Allowed for Individual Commercial Registration (ICR) : Yes

Allowed for Company Commercial Registration (CCR) : Yes

- Bahrain Shareholding Company (Public)
- With Limited Liability Company
- Branch of a Foreign Company
- Bahrain Shareholding Company (Closed)
- Partnership Company
- Simple Commandite Company
- Commandite By Shares Company
- Non Profit Company

Required Step of Licenses and Approvals

Ministry / Directorate	License / Approval Requirements	Approval Type
Municipality Affairs	Site Approval for Trading related activities	Post
General Directrate Of Civil Defence	Sale of household fuel oil, coal and fuel wood - LPG Cylinder Distribution	Post
Ministry of Oil and Environment	LPG Cylinder Distribution	Final Site Inspection

Municipality Affairs (Post) (47737-4)

Approval Name	Description	Estimated Time
Site Approval for Trading related activities	Municipality Approval for the Commercial Registration address or the site in which the Activity will be practiced	3 Days

Fee Details (if any)

10

License Information

General Conditions:
1. Size of shop/premises must be sufficient for the activity
2. Businesses may not carry out the activity outside the boundaries of the shop/ premises
3. It is prohibited to display or store any items or equipment outside the shop / premises boundary without prior approval from the Municipality
4. Maintain cleanliness of the site
5. Comply with the parking space regulations as per the Construction Regulatory Requirements

Activity Specific Conditions:
1. The commercial address for this activity can be registered in areas classified as commercial, services, or industrial
2. The commercial address of the Commercial Registration for this activity can an office address provided that the site is used for administrative purposes and not physical selling, and that the office is not located in a residential area

Required Documents

- Lease agreement (after obtaining the necessary approvals from other licensing entities)
- Shop photos

Other Documents

- Cabinet's Decision (56) of the year 2022 regarding the Regulatory Requirements of Construction for various areas in the Kingdom of Bahrain

General Directrate Of Civil Defence (Post) (47737-4)

Approval Name	Description	Estimated Time
Sale of household fuel oil, coal and fuel wood - LPG Cylinder Distribution	التأكد من اشتراطات الترخيص للإدارة العامة للدفاع المدني	5 Days

Fee Details (if any)

30 BD Fire prevention and protection certificate fees

License Information

- - Acknowledgement of the applicant's commitment to complying with the approved regulations for the distribution of LPG cylinders by the Ministry of Oil.
- - Provision of two modern, valid, safe, and designed LPG cylinder transport vehicles, in accordance with Decision No. 21 of 2021 regarding the requirements for transporting LPG cylinders issued by the Ministry of Industry, Commerce, and Tourism. (The age of the vehicle should not be less than four years)
- - Provision of a contract for the supply of LPG with one of the licensed main LPG bottling stations.
- - Provision of photos of the LPG reception office (interior and exterior).
- - Copy of ownership certificate for the LPG cylinder transport vehicle.
- - Provision of a minimum of 80 new LPG cylinders for each vehicle, approved by the Inspection and Metrology Directorate, along with a factory certificate for each cylinder confirming its compliance with the requirements of the authorized entity in the Kingdom of Bahrain.
- - Letter of no objection from the Civil Defense Administration for the use of the vehicle for the transportation and distribution of LPG cylinders.

Required Documents

•Declaration of consent from the applicant regarding compliance with the approved regulations for the distribution of LPG cylinders as issued by the Ministry of Oil.
•Letter of no objection from the Civil Defense Administration for the use of the vehicle for the transportation and distribution of LPG cylinders.
•No-objection letter for alarm and extinguisher installation from Civil Defense, or purchasing receipt of alarm equipment and extinguishers along with an annual maintenance contract from a company certified by Civil defense
•Ownership certificate for the LPG cylinder transport vehicle.
•Photos required for civil defense activities
•Purchasing invoice of security camera system with specifying the type and storage capacity.
•contract for the supply of LPG with one of the licensed main LPG bottling stations.

Other Documents

•Sample pictures of the general directorate of civil defense requirements
•licencing requirments of the general directorat of civil defense for activity number "47737-4"

Ministry of Oil and Environment (Final Site Inspection) (47737-4)

Approval Name	Description	Estimated Time
LPG Cylinder Distribution	This is an office for receiving customer orders, and it is responsible for distributing LPG cylinders to consumers using approved transport vehicles. The distribution includes residential and commercial sectors only. Storage in any form is prohibited, and direct sales at facades, public roads, or sidewalks are also prohibited.	3 Days

Fee Details (if any)

There is no Estimated Processing Time (Days) in this license.

License Information

-Acknowledgement of the applicant's commitment to complying with the approved regulations for the distribution of LPG cylinders by the Ministry of Oil.
-Provision of two modern, valid, safe, and designed LPG cylinder transport vehicles, in accordance with Decision No. 21 of 2021 regarding the requirements for transporting LPG cylinders issued by the Ministry of Industry, Commerce, and Tourism. (The age of the vehicle should not be less than four years)
-Provision of a contract for the supply of LPG with one of the licensed main LPG bottling stations.

-Provision of photos of the LPG reception office (interior and exterior).
-Copy of ownership certificate for the LPG cylinder transport vehicle.
-Provision of a minimum of 80 new LPG cylinders for each vehicle, approved by the Inspection and Metrology Directorate, along with a factory certificate for each cylinder confirming its compliance with the requirements of the authorized entity in the Kingdom of Bahrain.
-Letter of no objection from the Civil Defense Administration for the use of the vehicle for the transportation and distribution of LPG cylinders

Required Documents

•- Letter of no objection from the Civil Defense Administration for the use of the vehicle for the transportation and distribution of LPG cylinders.
•Declaration of consent from the applicant regarding compliance with the approved regulations for the distribution of LPG cylinders as issued by the Ministry of Oil.
•Ownership certificate for the LPG cylinder transport vehicle.
•contract for the supply of LPG with one of the licensed main LPG bottling stations.

Sale/Trading Activities; repair of motor vehicles and motorcycles

ISIC4	Business activity
47737-5	Sale of household fuel oil, coal and fuel wood - Refilling of Refrigerant Cylinders

Description

This activity includes Refrigerants Refilling Centers in cylinders; virgin or reclaimed

Business Requirements

✔ Age

✔ Allowed for Nationalities

- Bahraini 100%
- GCC 100%
- American 100%

✔ Legal Type

It is allowed to register according to the legal forms mentioned below

Allowed for Individual Commercial Registration (ICR) : Yes

Allowed for Company Commercial Registration (CCR) : Yes

- Bahrain Shareholding Company (Public)
- With Limited Liability Company
- Branch of a Foreign Company
- Bahrain Shareholding Company (Closed)
- Partnership Company
- Simple Commandite Company
- Commandite By Shares Company
- Non Profit Company

Required Step of Licenses and Approvals

Ministry / Directorate	License / Approval Requirements	Approval Type
Municipality Affairs	Site Approval for Trading related activities	Post
Supreme Council for Environment	Environmental Approval for Refilling of Refrigerant Cylinders Activity	Post

Municipality Affairs (Post) (47737-5)

Approval Name	Description	Estimated Time
Site Approval for Trading related activities	Municipality Approval for the Commercial Registration address or the site in which the Activity will be practiced	3 Days

Fee Details (if any)

10

License Information

General Conditions:
1. Size of shop/premises must be sufficient for the activity
2. Businesses may not carry out the activity outside the boundaries of the shop/ premises
3. It is prohibited to display or store any items or equipment outside the shop / premises boundary without prior approval from the Municipality
4. Maintain cleanliness of the site
5. Comply with the parking space regulations as per the Construction Regulatory Requirements

Activity Specific Conditions:
1. The commercial address for this activity can be registered in areas classified as commercial, services, or industrial
2. The commercial address of the Commercial Registration for this activity can an office address provided that the site is used for administrative purposes and not physical selling, and that the office is not located in a residential area

Required Documents

- Lease agreement (after obtaining the necessary approvals from other licensing entities)
- Shop photos

Other Documents

- Cabinet's Decision (56) of the year 2022 regarding the Regulatory Requirements of Construction for various areas in the Kingdom of Bahrain

Supreme Council for Environment (Post) (47737-5)

Approval Name	Description	Estimated Time
Environmental Approval for Refilling of Refrigerant Cylinders Activity	Environmental Approval for Refilling of Refrigerant Cylinders Activity	10 Days

Fee Details (if any)

500 BD

License Information

To check the requirements for this approval, kindly download the detailed requirements sheet from the other downloadable documents section, which includes the following requirements:

- Building layout engineering and equipment requirements
- Workplace requirements
- Storage requirements
- Material management requirements
- Waste Management Requirements
- Documents and reporting requirements
- General requirements

Other Documents

- Requirements for Activity of Refilling Cylinders with Refrigerants
- Requirements for business activities

Sale/Trading Activities; repair of motor vehicles and motorcycles

ISIC4	Business activity
4774	Sale of second-hand goods

Description

This activity includes:
- retail sale of second-hand books
- retail sale of other second-hand goods
- retail sale of antiques

Business Requirements

Age

18 and above

Allowed for Nationalities

Bahraini 100%	GCC 100%
American 100%	

Legal Type

It is allowed to register according to the legal forms mentioned below

Allowed for Individual Commercial Registration (ICR) : Yes

Allowed for Company Commercial Registration (CCR) : Yes

- Bahrain Shareholding Company (Public)
- With Limited Liability Company
- Branch of a Foreign Company
- Bahrain Shareholding Company (Closed)
- Partnership Company
- Simple Commandite Company
- Commandite By Shares Company
- Non Profit Company

Required Step of Licenses and Approvals

Ministry / Directorate	License / Approval Requirements	Approval Type
Municipality Affairs	Site Approval for Sale of second-hand goods	Post

Municipality Affairs (Post) (4774)

Approval Name	Description	Estimated Time
Site Approval for Sale of second-hand goods	Municipality Approval for the Commercial Registration address or the site in which the Activity will be practiced	3 Days

Fee Details (if any)

10

License Information

General Conditions:
1. Size of shop/premises must be sufficient for the activity
2. Businesses may not carry out the activity outside the boundaries of the shop/ premises
3. It is prohibited to display or store any items or equipment outside the shop / premises boundary without prior approval from the Municipality. In the event of non-compliance, the Ministry of Municipality Affairs has the right to take necessary action.
4. Maintain cleanliness of the site
5. Comply with the parking space regulations as per the Construction Regulatory Requirements

Activity Specific Conditions:
1. The commercial registration for this activity can be registered on trading, service, and industrial streets/areas
2. Size of the shop should be at least 50sqm

Note: Uploading pictures of the site/shop may expedite the process of obtaining approval

Required Documents

- Lease agreement (after obtaining the necessary approvals from other licensing entities)
- Shop photos

Other Documents

- Cabinet's Decision (56) of the year 2022 regarding the Regulatory Requirements of Construction for various areas in the Kingdom of Bahrain

Sale/Trading Activities; repair of motor vehicles and motorcycles

ISIC4	Business activity
4791	Retail sale via Internet

Description

This activity includes retail sale activities carried out through the internet, in which consumers make choices based on information provided in an electronic store, as well as perform the selection and payment online.

Business Requirements

Age

18 and above

Allowed for Nationalities

- Bahraini 100%
- American 100%
- GCC 100%

Legal Type

It is allowed to register according to the legal forms mentioned below

Allowed for Individual Commercial Registration (ICR) : Yes

Allowed for Company Commercial Registration (CCR) : Yes

Allowed for Sijilli : Yes

- Bahrain Shareholding Company (Public)
- With Limited Liability Company
- Branch of a Foreign Company
- Bahrain Shareholding Company (Closed)
- Partnership Company
- Simple Commandite Company
- Commandite By Shares Company
- Non Profit Company

Required Step of Licenses and Approvals

Ministry / Directorate	License / Approval Requirements	Approval Type
Information Systems Directorate	Notification For Retail sale via Internet Activity	Notification Only
Municipality Affairs	Site Approval for Trading related activities	Post

Information Systems Directorate (Notification Only) (4791)

Approval Name	Description	Estimated Time
Notification For Retail sale via Internet Activity	Notify the Information Systems Directorate on obtaining a commercial registration with the license to practice the activity retail sale via internet	There is no License Information in this license. Days

Fee Details (if any)

There is no Estimated Processing Time (Days) in this license.

License Information

1. Provide a domain URL (Up and running Website) for the commercial registration and the link of the eStore must be provided in “eStore/eMarketplace Address” field in Sijilat system before commencing any business operations

2. Have in place a Returns & refund policy, terms of use policy and user data protection policy

3. Provide a secured online payment method

4. Provide an active shopping cart

5. Provide goods delivery service to the consumers

6. Products offered for sale must not include heavy machinery, vehicles, weapons, alcoholic drinks, pesticides and other products that require approvals from other official authorities.

If the activity is practiced as a virtual CR “Sijili” the following shall apply:

Licensing requirements for Retail sale via Internet activity through a virtual CR “Sijili”:

1. The applicant shall be a Bahraini National

2. The applicant shall neither be the owner of a sole proprietorship or single-person company nor a director or member of any business

3. The applicant shall conduct business through the form of sole proprietorship only

4. A permanent mailing address shall be provided

5. The applicant shall have an active website for the virtual commercial store.

Trading in the following products is prohibited for those practicing retail sale via internet through a virtual CR “Sijili”:

1. Food and beverages

2. Medical equipment and products

3. Pharmaceutical and medical goods

4. Industrial chemicals

5. Oil and gas products

6. Tobacco products

7. Fertilizers, soil amendments and pesticides

8. Selling live animals

9. Waste and scrap

10. Heavy machinery

11. Weapons

12. Other products that require approvals from the related entities

Other Documents

- Ministerial Order No. (12) for the year 2021 regarding the regulation of Retail Sale via Internet through a virtual commercial registration
- Ministerial Order No. (6) for the year 2021 regarding practicing Retail Sale via Internet activity for companies with foreign capital
- Ministerial Order No. (61) for the year 2021 amending the Order No. (12) for the year 2021 regarding the regulation of Retail Sale via Internet through a virtual commercial registration
- Retail sale via Internet Activity Approval Process

Municipality Affairs (Post) (4791)

Approval Name	Description	Estimated Time
Site Approval for Trading related activities	Municipality Approval for the Commercial Registration address or the site in which the Activity will be practiced	3 Days

Fee Details (if any)

10

License Information

General Conditions:
1. Size of shop/premises must be sufficient for the activity
2. Businesses may not carry out the activity outside the boundaries of the shop/ premises
3. It is prohibited to display or store any items or equipment outside the shop / premises boundary without prior approval from the Municipality
4. Maintain cleanliness of the site
5. Comply with the parking space regulations as per the Construction Regulatory Requirements

Activity Specific Conditions:
1. The commercial address for this activity can be registered in areas classified as commercial, services, or industrial
2. The commercial address of the Commercial Registration for this activity can an office address provided that the site is used for administrative purposes and not physical selling, and that the office is not located in a residential area

Required Documents

- Lease agreement (after obtaining the necessary approvals from other licensing entities)
- Shop photos

Other Documents

- Cabinet's Decision (56) of the year 2022 regarding the Regulatory Requirements of Construction for various areas in the Kingdom of Bahrain

Sale/Trading Activities; repair of motor vehicles and motorcycles

ISIC4	Business activity
479991	In flight sales services

Description

Selling and marketing of merchandise on board the aircraft

Business Requirements

Age

18 and above

Allowed for Nationalities

Bahraini 100%	GCC 100%
American 100%	Singaporean 100%
Icelander 100%	Liechtensteiner 100%
Norwegian 100%	Swiss 100%

Foreign Allowed up to 100%

Legal Type

It is allowed to register according to the legal forms mentioned below

Allowed for Individual Commercial Registration (ICR) : Yes

Allowed for Company Commercial Registration (CCR) : Yes

- Bahrain Shareholding Company (Public)
- With Limited Liability Company
- Branch of a Foreign Company
- Bahrain Shareholding Company (Closed)
- Partnership Company
- Simple Commandite Company
- Commandite By Shares Company
- Non Profit Company

Required Step of Licenses and Approvals

Ministry / Directorate	License / Approval Requirements	Approval Type
General Directorate Of Criminal Investigation	Approval by General Directorate of Criminal Investigation	Pre
Civil Aviation Affairs	In Flight Sales Services	Pre
Civil Aviation Affairs	In Flight Sales Services	Post
Municipality Affairs	Site Approval for Trading related activities	Post
Civil Aviation Affairs	In Flight Sales Services	Final Site Inspection

General Directorate Of Criminal Investigation (Pre) (479991)

Approval Name	Description	Estimated Time
Approval by General Directorate of Criminal Investigation	General Directorate of Criminal Investigation Approval for the Activity	7 Days

Fee Details (if any)

There is no Estimated Processing Time (Days) in this license.

License Information

- The applicant should not have a criminal record, unless they have been rehabilitated in criminal cases

Civil Aviation Affairs (Pre) (479991)

Approval Name	Description	Estimated Time
In Flight Sales Services	Selling and marketing of merchandise on board the aircraft.	10 Days

Fee Details (if any)

• Application fees: BD 100 (non-refundable in cases where the application is not approved).
• License fees: BD 2,000.
• Annual renewal 50% of the license fees.

License Information

• The capital of the company must not be less than BD100,000
• The license is valid for one year and renewal application must be submitted 2 months before expiry
• Adherence to the standards and regulatory requirements contained in the regulations under the Civil Aviation Law issued by virtue of Law No. 14 of 2013

Required Documents

•Feasibility, technical, economic and financial studies
•Fill application Form ATD/ATCL/OF04
•Memorandum of Association

Other Documents

- Chicago Convention and its Annexes.
- Civil Aviation Law No.14 of 2013
- Minister of Transport and Telecommunication Decree No. 12 of 2016 amending some provisions of the Regulation under the Civil Aviation Law.
- Minister of Transportation and Telecommunication Decree No. 25 of 2016 of CAA fees and departure fees.
- Minster of Transportation and Telecommunication Decree No. 21 of 2013 issuing the regulations under the Civil Aviation Law.

Civil Aviation Affairs (Post) (479991)

Approval Name	Description	Estimated Time
In Flight Sales Services	Selling and marketing of merchandise on board the aircraft.	10 Days

Fee Details (if any)

• Application fees: BD 100 (non-refundable in cases where the application is not approved).
• License fees: BD 2,000.
• Annual renewal 50% of the license fees.

License Information

• The capital of the company must not be less than BD100,000
• The license is valid for one year and renewal application must be submitted 2 months before expiry
• Adherence to the standards and regulatory requirements contained in the regulations under the Civil Aviation Law issued by virtue of Law No. 14 of 2013

Required Documents

•Feasibility, technical, economic and financial studies
•Fill application Form ATD/ATCL/OF04
•Memorandum of Association

Other Documents

- Chicago Convention and its Annexes.
- Civil Aviation Law No.14 of 2013
- Minister of Transport and Telecommunication Decree No. 12 of 2016 amending some provisions of the Regulation under the Civil Aviation Law.
- Minister of Transportation and Telecommunication Decree No. 25 of 2016 of CAA fees and departure fees.
- Minster of Transportation and Telecommunication Decree No. 21 of 2013 issuing the regulations under the Civil Aviation Law.

Municipality Affairs (Post) (479991)

Approval Name	Description	Estimated Time
Site Approval for Trading related activities	Municipality Approval for the Commercial Registration address or the site in which the Activity will be practiced	3 Days

Fee Details (if any)

10

License Information

General Conditions:
1. Size of shop/premises must be sufficient for the activity
2. Businesses may not carry out the activity outside the boundaries of the shop/ premises
3. It is prohibited to display or store any items or equipment outside the shop / premises boundary without prior approval from the Municipality
4. Maintain cleanliness of the site
5. Comply with the parking space regulations as per the Construction Regulatory Requirements

Activity Specific Conditions:
1. The commercial address for this activity can be registered in areas classified as commercial, services, or industrial
2. The commercial address of the Commercial Registration for this activity can an office address provided that the site is used for administrative purposes and not physical selling, and that the office is not located in a residential area

Required Documents

- Lease agreement (after obtaining the necessary approvals from other licensing entities)
- Shop photos

Other Documents

- Cabinet's Decision (56) of the year 2022 regarding the Regulatory Requirements of Construction for various areas in the Kingdom of Bahrain

Civil Aviation Affairs (Final Site Inspection) (479991)

Approval Name	Description	Estimated Time
In Flight Sales Services	Selling and marketing of merchandise on board the aircraft.	10 Days

Fee Details (if any)

• Application fees: BD 100 (non-refundable in cases where the application is not approved).
• License fees: BD 2,000.
• Annual renewal 50% of the license fees.

License Information

• The capital of the company must not be less than BD100,000
• The license is valid for one year and renewal application must be submitted 2 months before expiry
• Adherence to the standards and regulatory requirements contained in the regulations under the Civil Aviation Law issued by virtue of Law No. 14 of 2013

Required Documents

•Feasibility, technical, economic and financial studies
•Fill application Form ATD/ATCL/OF04
•Memorandum of Association

Other Documents

- Chicago Convention and its Annexes.
- Civil Aviation Law No.14 of 2013
- Minister of Transport and Telecommunication Decree No. 12 of 2016 amending some provisions of the Regulation under the Civil Aviation Law.
- Minister of Transportation and Telecommunication Decree No. 25 of 2016 of CAA fees and departure fees.
- Minster of Transportation and Telecommunication Decree No. 21 of 2013 issuing the regulations under the Civil Aviation Law.

Transportation and storage

سجلات
SIJILAT
نظام السجلات التجارية
COMMERCIAL REGISTRATION PORTAL

Transportation and storage

ISIC4	Business activity
4911	Passenger rail transport, interurban

Description

This activity includes:
- passenger transport by inter-urban railways
- operation of sleeping cars or dining cars as an integrated operation of railway companies

Business Requirements

Age

18 and above

Allowed for Nationalities

Bahraini
100%

GCC
100%

American
100%

Legal Type

It is allowed to register according to the legal forms mentioned below

Allowed for Individual Commercial Registration (ICR) : Yes

Allowed for Company Commercial Registration (CCR) : Yes

- Bahrain Shareholding Company (Public)
- With Limited Liability Company
- Branch of a Foreign Company
- Bahrain Shareholding Company (Closed)
- Partnership Company
- Simple Commandite Company
- Commandite By Shares Company
- Non Profit Company

Required Step of Licenses and Approvals

Ministry / Directorate	License / Approval Requirements	Approval Type
Land Transportation Regulation Directorate	Public Transport (Individuals & Establishments)	Pre
Municipality Affairs	Site Approval for rail transport activities	Post
Land Transportation Regulation Directorate	Public Transport (Individuals & Establishments)	Final Site Inspection

Land Transportation Regulation Directorate (Pre) (4911)

Approval Name	Description	Estimated Time
Public Transport (Individuals & Establishments)	The licence is required if the investor intends to start a business that would charge customers a fee for any form of public land transportation.	15 Days

Fee Details (if any)

Annual renewal - fees for the annual renewal for the public vehicles transport (individuals) will be 10BD, fees for the public vehicles transport (institutions) will be 20BD

License Information

A company profile must be provided to the directorate of land transportation including a detailed description of the intended activities to be practiced

Municipality Affairs (Post) (4911)

Approval Name	Description	Estimated Time
Site Approval for rail transport activities	Municipality Approval for the Commercial Registration address or the site in which the Activity will be practiced	3 Days

Fee Details (if any)

10

License Information

General Conditions:
1. Size of shop/premises must be sufficient for the activity
2. Businesses may not carry out the activity outside the boundaries of the shop/ premises
3. It is prohibited to display or store any items or equipment outside the shop / premises boundary without prior approval from the Municipality. In the event of non-compliance, the Ministry of Municipality Affairs has the right to take necessary action.
4. Maintain cleanliness of the site
5. Comply with the parking space regulations as per the Construction Regulatory Requirements

Activity Specific Conditions:
1. The commercial address of the Commercial Registration for this activity can an office address

Note: Uploading pictures of the site/shop may expedite the process of obtaining approval

Required Documents

- Lease agreement (after obtaining the necessary approvals from other licensing entities)
- Shop photos

Other Documents

- Cabinet's Decision (56) of the year 2022 regarding the Regulatory Requirements of Construction for various areas in the Kingdom of Bahrain

Land Transportation Regulation Directorate (Final Site Inspection) (4911)

Approval Name	Description	Estimated Time
Public Transport (Individuals & Establishments)	The licence is required if the investor intends to start a business that would charge customers a fee for any form of public land transportation.	15 Days

Fee Details (if any)

Annual renewal - fees for the annual renewal for the public vehicles transport (individuals) will be 10BD, fees for the public vehicles transport (institutions) will be 20BD

License Information

A company profile must be provided to the directorate of land transportation including a detailed description of the intended activities to be practiced

Transportation and storage

ISIC4	Business activity
4912	Freight rail transport

Description

This activity includes:
- freight transport on mainline rail networks as well as short-line freight railroads

Business Requirements

Age

18 and above

Allowed for Nationalities

- Bahraini 100%
- GCC 100%
- American 100%

Legal Type

It is allowed to register according to the legal forms mentioned below

Allowed for Individual Commercial Registration (ICR) : Yes

Allowed for Company Commercial Registration (CCR) : Yes

- Bahrain Shareholding Company (Public)
- With Limited Liability Company
- Branch of a Foreign Company
- Bahrain Shareholding Company (Closed)
- Partnership Company
- Simple Commandite Company
- Commandite By Shares Company
- Non Profit Company

Required Step of Licenses and Approvals

Ministry / Directorate	License / Approval Requirements	Approval Type
Land Transportation Regulation Directorate	Public Goods Vehicle	Pre
Municipality Affairs	Site Approval for rail transport activities	Post
Land Transportation Regulation Directorate	Public Goods Vehicle	Final Site Inspection

Land Transportation Regulation Directorate (Pre) (4912)

Approval Name	Description	Estimated Time
Public Goods Vehicle	The licence is required if the investor intends to start a business that provides transportation of Goods (e.g. freight delivery services, etc)	15 Days

Fee Details (if any)

There is no Estimated Processing Time (Days) in this license.

License Information

A company profile must be provided to the directorate of land transportation including a detailed description of the intended activities to be practiced

Municipality Affairs (Post) (4912)

Approval Name	Description	Estimated Time
Site Approval for rail transport activities	Municipality Approval for the Commercial Registration address or the site in which the Activity will be practiced	3 Days

Fee Details (if any)

10

License Information

General Conditions:
1. Size of shop/premises must be sufficient for the activity
2. Businesses may not carry out the activity outside the boundaries of the shop/ premises
3. It is prohibited to display or store any items or equipment outside the shop / premises boundary without prior approval from the Municipality. In the event of non-compliance, the Ministry of Municipality Affairs has the right to take necessary action.
4. Maintain cleanliness of the site
5. Comply with the parking space regulations as per the Construction Regulatory Requirements

Activity Specific Conditions:
1. The commercial address of the Commercial Registration for this activity can an office address

Note: Uploading pictures of the site/shop may expedite the process of obtaining approval

Required Documents

- Lease agreement (after obtaining the necessary approvals from other licensing entities)
- Shop photos

Other Documents

- Cabinet's Decision (56) of the year 2022 regarding the Regulatory Requirements of Construction for various areas in the Kingdom of Bahrain

Land Transportation Regulation Directorate (Final Site Inspection) (4912)

Approval Name	Description	Estimated Time
Public Goods Vehicle	The licence is required if the investor intends to start a business that provides transportation of Goods (e.g. freight delivery services, etc)	15 Days

Fee Details (if any)

There is no Estimated Processing Time (Days) in this license.

License Information

A company profile must be provided to the directorate of land transportation including a detailed description of the intended activities to be practiced

Transportation and storage

ISIC4	Business activity
49211-1	Passenger land transport - Transport of passengers (Domestic)

Description

Providing passengers transport services within the Kingdom; utilizing buses with pre-determined specifications; through a signed contract between the parties involved. This activity also allows leasing buses that accommodate more than 16 passengers; either with a driver or without.

Business Requirements

Age

18 and above

Allowed for Nationalities

Bahraini 100%	GCC 100%
American 100%	

Legal Type

It is allowed to register according to the legal forms mentioned below

Allowed for Individual Commercial Registration (ICR) : Yes

Allowed for Company Commercial Registration (CCR) : Yes

- Bahrain Shareholding Company (Public)
- With Limited Liability Company
- Branch of a Foreign Company
- Bahrain Shareholding Company (Closed)
- Partnership Company
- Simple Commandite Company
- Commandite By Shares Company
- Non Profit Company

Required Step of Licenses and Approvals

Ministry / Directorate	License / Approval Requirements	Approval Type
General Directorate Of Criminal Investigation	Approval by General Directorate of Criminal Investigation	Pre
Land Transportation Regulation Directorate	Internal Transport for Passengers - Pre	Pre
Municipality Affairs	Site Approval for Passenger Land Transport Activities	Post
Land Transportation Regulation Directorate	Final site inspection Transport of Passengers (Domestic)	Final Site Inspection

General Directorate Of Criminal Investigation (Pre) (49211-1)

Approval Name	Description	Estimated Time
Approval by General Directorate of Criminal Investigation	General Directorate of Criminal Investigation Approval for the Activity	7 Days

Fee Details (if any)

There is no Estimated Processing Time (Days) in this license.

License Information

- The applicant should not have a criminal record, unless they have been rehabilitated in criminal cases

Land Transportation Regulation Directorate (Pre) (49211-1)

Approval Name	Description	Estimated Time
Internal Transport for Passengers - Pre	Internal Transport for Passengers - Pre	15 Days

Fee Details (if any)

Other Fees include:
- Application Fee: BD100
- License Fee : BD500
- Yard Site Visit: BD50 (for each yard)
- Issuance of each operating card (per vehicle): BD 40
- Renewal of each operating card (per vehicle): BD 40

License Information

1. The yard must be located in an area classified as industrial or a service area

2. The yard size should accommodate 100% of the vehicles that will be used in operating the licensed activity

3. The yard site should be fenced and have an emergency exit as well as security and safety facilities.

4. Erecting a metal fence or wall around the yard with a height of at least 1.2 meters.

5. The exits leading to the area must be suitable and safe.

6. The exists leading to the yard cannot face main roads with heavy traffic activity.
7. The exits leading to the yard cannot directly face major or minor crossroads and intersections.
8. Both the entrance and the exits to the yard must be suitably sized ,and must be lockable.

- The requirements of the placard:

1. Must place a placard in the rest area for vehicles showing the commercial registrations name and number (made from metal of any other suitable materials that have been approved by the Directorate).
2. The placard must be at least 1 m x 60 cm and contains the name of the approved company or institute in a clear text.
3. Erecting a sign showing the rest area belonging to the company / Individual establishment if the yard is located near a warehouse.

• Comply with other requirements specified by the Land Transportation Regulation Directorate

• If the licensee wishes to add a branch with the same license, the licensee must comply with the requirements of the headquarters without prejudice to the requirements of the vehicles yard.

Required Documents

•A list with the names of the drivers and details of their driving permits (if any)
•Audited financial statements (only in the case of companies that have been established three years or more)
•Business Plan
•List of proposed vehicles
•List of vehicles used for the current land transport activity indicating the type of vehicle, model, and year of manufacture (only for existing entities practicing any land transportation activity)
•Photos showing the location of the headquarters from different angles, with pictures showing availability of customer parking
•Statement with the proposed address of the car yard

Other Documents

•Ministerial Order No. 11 for the year 2015
•Ministerial order No. (22) of 2016 regarding regulation of Public Transport Activities Internal, International & Tourist
•Ministerial order number (12) for the year 2017 regarding amendment for Ministerial order number (11) for the year 2015
•Ministerial order number (8) for the year 2017 regarding amendment for Ministerial order number (22) of year 2016 regulation of Public Transport Activities Internal, International & Tourist

Municipality Affairs (Post) (49211-1)

Approval Name	Description	Estimated Time
Site Approval for Passenger Land Transport Activities	Municipality Approval for the Commercial Registration address or the site in which the Activity will be practiced	3 Days

Fee Details (if any)

10

License Information

General Conditions:
1. Size of shop/premises must be sufficient for the activity
2. Businesses may not carry out the activity outside the boundaries of the shop/ premises
3. It is prohibited to display or store any items or equipment outside the shop / premises boundary without prior approval from the Municipality. In the event of non-compliance, the Ministry of Municipality Affairs has the right to take necessary action.
4. Maintain cleanliness of the site
5. Comply with the parking space regulations as per the Construction Regulatory Requirements

Activity Specific Conditions:
1. The commercial address of the Commercial Registration for this activity can an office address
2. Vehicle yard should be in service or industrial areas
3. Yard size should be enough to accommodate 100% of the vehicles used for the activity
4. Yard should be fenced

Note: Uploading pictures of the site/shop may expedite the process of obtaining

approval

Required Documents

- Lease agreement (after obtaining the necessary approvals from other licensing entities)
- Shop photos

Land Transportation Regulation Directorate (Final Site Inspection) (49211-1)

Approval Name	Description	Estimated Time
Final site inspection Transport of Passengers (Domestic)	Final site inspection Transport of Passengers (Domestic)	15 Days

Fee Details (if any)

There is no Estimated Processing Time (Days) in this license.

License Information

1. The yard must be located in an area classified as industrial or a service area

2. The yard size should accommodate 100% of the vehicles that will be used in operating the licensed activity

3. The yard site should be fenced and have an emergency exit as well as security and safety facilities.

4. Erecting a metal fence or wall around the yard with a height of at least 1.2 meters.
5. The exists leading to the area must be suitable and safe.

6. The exists leading to the yard cannot face main roads with heavy traffic activity.
7. The exits leading to the yard cannot directly face major or minor crossroads and intersections.
8. Both the entrance and the exits to the yard must be suitably sized ,and must be lockable.

• The requirements of the placard:
1. Must place a placard in the rest area for vehicles showing the commercial registrations name and number (made from metal of any other suitable materials that have been approved by the Directorate).

2. The placard must be at least 1 m x 60 cm and contains the name of the approved company or institute in a clear text.
3. Erecting a sign showing the rest area belonging to the company / Individual establishment if the yard is located near a warehouse.

• Comply with other requirements specified by the Land Transportation Regulation Directorate

• If the licensee wishes to add a branch with the same license, the licensee must comply with the requirements of the headquarters without prejudice to the requirements of the vehicles yard.

Required Documents

•Copy of survey certificate or title deed of the proposed yard
•Yard agreement between the owner and the lessee, if the agreement is a sub-lease a no objection letter should be submitted by the owner

Other Documents

•Ministerial order number (11) for the year 2015 regarding Issuing the list of Public Transportation licenses
•Ministerial order number (12) for the year 2017 regarding amendment for Ministerial order number (11) for the year 2015
•Ministerial order number (22) for the year 2016 regarding regulation of Public Transport Activities Internal, International & Tourist
•Ministerial order number (8) for the year 2017 regarding amendment for Ministerial order number (22) of year 2016 regulation of Public Transport Activities Internal, International & Tourist

Transportation and storage

ISIC4	Business activity
49211-2	Passenger land transport - Transport of passengers (International)

Description

Providing passengers transport services via King Fahad Causeway; utilizing vehicles with pre-determined specifications; for a specified fee.

Business Requirements

Age

18 and above

Allowed for Nationalities

- Bahraini 100%
- GCC 100%
- American 100%
- Singaporean 100%

Legal Type

It is allowed to register according to the legal forms mentioned below

Allowed for Individual Commercial Registration (ICR) : Yes

Allowed for Company Commercial Registration (CCR) : Yes

- Bahrain Shareholding Company (Public)
- With Limited Liability Company
- Branch of a Foreign Company
- Bahrain Shareholding Company (Closed)
- Partnership Company
- Simple Commandite Company
- Commandite By Shares Company
- Non Profit Company

Required Step of Licenses and Approvals

Ministry / Directorate	License / Approval Requirements	Approval Type
Land Transportation Regulation Directorate	International Transport for Passengers - Pre	Pre
General Directorate Of Criminal Investigation	Approval by General Directorate of Criminal Investigation	Pre
Municipality Affairs	Site Approval for Passenger Land Transport Activities	Post
Land Transportation Regulation Directorate	Final site inspection Transport of Passengers (International)	Final Site Inspection

Land Transportation Regulation Directorate (Pre) (49211-2)

Approval Name	Description	Estimated Time
International Transport for Passengers - Pre	International Transport for Passengers - Pre	15 Days

Fee Details (if any)

Other Fees include:
- Application Fee: BD100
- License Fee : BD1000
- Yard Site Visit: BD50 (for each yard)
- Issuance of each operating card (per vehicle): BD 40
- Renewal of each operating card (per vehicle): BD 40

License Information

- The requirements for the vehicles that will be used in practicing the licensed activity

1. The minimum number of vehicles is 10 with the condition that the passenger capacity for each vehicle is not less than 25 passengers.

2. The vehicles must be in a good condition throughout their usage. The vehicles must not have been used for more than 9 years at the time the operating card for the vehicle is requested, and in any case must not exceed 10 years from the date of manufacture upon the renewal of the operating card.

3. Bus color must not be similar to the same color used by the public transport Buses.

4. The investor shall bear any liability resulting from the purchase of the vehicles before obtaining the final approval (license) from the Ministry of Transportation and Telecommunications.

- The requirements for the vehicles yard address:

1. The yard must be located in an area classified as industrial or a service area

2. The yard size must accommodate 100% of the vehicles that will be used in operating the licensed activity

3. Comply with other requirements specified by the Land Transportation Regulation Directorate

• If the licensee wishes to add a branch for the same license, the licensee must comply with the requirements of the headquarters without prejudice to the requirements of the vehicles yard.

Required Documents

•A list with the names of the drivers and details of their driving permits (if any)
•Audited financial statements (only in the case of companies that have been established three years or more)
•Business Plan
•List of proposed vehicles
•List of vehicles used for the current land transport activity indicating the type of vehicle, model, and year of manufacture (only for existing entities practicing any land transportation activity)
•Photos showing the location of the headquarters from different angles, with pictures showing availability of customer parking
•Statement with the proposed address of the car yard

Other Documents

•Ministerial Order No. 11 for the year 2015
•Ministerial Order No. 22 of 2016 regarding regulation of Public Transport Activities, Internal, International & Tourist
•Ministerial order number (22) for the year 2016 regarding regulation of Public Transport Activities Internal, International & Tourist
•Ministerial order number (8) for the year 2017 regarding amendment for Ministerial order number (22) of year 2016 regulation of Public Transport Activities Internal, International & Tourist

General Directorate Of Criminal Investigation (Pre) (49211-2)

Approval Name	Description	Estimated Time
Approval by General Directorate of Criminal Investigation	General Directorate of Criminal Investigation Approval for the Activity	7 Days

Fee Details (if any)

There is no Estimated Processing Time (Days) in this license.

License Information

- The applicant should not have a criminal record, unless they have been rehabilitated in criminal cases

Municipality Affairs (Post) (49211-2)

Approval Name	Description	Estimated Time
Site Approval for Passenger Land Transport Activities	Municipality Approval for the Commercial Registration address or the site in which the Activity will be practiced	3 Days

Fee Details (if any)

10

License Information

General Conditions:
1. Size of shop/premises must be sufficient for the activity
2. Businesses may not carry out the activity outside the boundaries of the shop/ premises
3. It is prohibited to display or store any items or equipment outside the shop / premises boundary without prior approval from the Municipality. In the event of non-compliance, the Ministry of Municipality Affairs has the right to take necessary action.
4. Maintain cleanliness of the site
5. Comply with the parking space regulations as per the Construction Regulatory Requirements

Activity Specific Conditions:
1. The commercial address of the Commercial Registration for this activity can an office address
2. Vehicle yard should be in service or industrial areas
3. Yard size should be enough to accommodate 100% of the vehicles used for the activity
4. Yard should be fenced

Note: Uploading pictures of the site/shop may expedite the process of obtaining

approval

Required Documents

- Lease agreement (after obtaining the necessary approvals from other licensing entities)
- Shop photos

Land Transportation Regulation Directorate (Final Site Inspection) (49211-2)

Approval Name	Description	Estimated Time
Final site inspection Transport of Passengers (International)	Final site inspection Transport of Passengers (International)	15 Days

Fee Details (if any)

There is no Estimated Processing Time (Days) in this license.

License Information

• The requirements for the vehicles yard address:

1. The yard must be located in an area classified as industrial or a service area.

2. The yard size should accommodate 100% of the vehicles that will be used in operating the licensed activity.
3. The yard site should be fenced and have an emergency exit as well as security and safety facilities.

4. Erecting a metal fence or wall around the yard with a height of at least 1.2 meters.
5. The exist leading to the area must be suitable and safe.

6. The exists leading to the yard cannot face main roads with heavy traffic activity.
7. The exits leading to the yard cannot directly face major or minor crossroads and intersections.
8. Both the entrance and the exits to the yard must be suitably sized ,and must be lockable.

• The requirements of the placard:
1. Must place a placard in the rest area for vehicles showing the commercial registrations name and number (made from metal of any other suitable materials that have been approved by the Directorate).

2. The placard must be at least 1 m x 60 cm and contains the name of the approved company / Individual establishment in a clear text.
3. Erecting a sign showing the rest area belonging to the company / the individual establishment if the yard is located near a warehouse.
• Comply with other requirements specified by the Land Transportation Regulation Directorate

• If the licensee wishes to add a branch for the same license, the licensee must comply with the requirements of the headquarters without prejudice to the requirements of the vehicles yard.

Required Documents

•Copy of survey certificate or title deed of the proposed yard
•Yard agreement between the owner and the lessee, if the agreement is a sub-lease a no objection letter should be submitted by the owner

Other Documents

•Ministerial order number (11) for the year 2015 regarding Issuing the list of Public Transportation licenses
•Ministerial order number (12) for the year 2017 regarding amendment for Ministerial order number (11) for the year 2015
•Ministerial order number (22) for the year 2016 regarding regulation of Public Transport Activities Internal, International & Tourist
•Ministerial order number 8 for the year 2017 regarding amendment for Ministerial order number (22) of year 2016 regulation of Public Transport Activities Internal, International & Tourist

Transportation and storage

ISIC4	Business activity
49211-3	Passenger land transport - Public Transportation

Description

Providing public bus transportation services within the Kingdom of Bahrain.

Business Requirements

Age

18 and above

Allowed for Nationalities

Bahraini
100%

Legal Type

It is allowed to register according to the legal forms mentioned below

Allowed for Individual Commercial Registration (ICR) : Yes

Allowed for Company Commercial Registration (CCR) : Yes

- Bahrain Shareholding Company (Public)
- Bahrain Shareholding Company (Closed)
- Simple Commandite Company
- Non Profit Company
- With Limited Liability Company
- Partnership Company
- Commandite By Shares Company

Required Step of Licenses and Approvals

Ministry / Directorate	License / Approval Requirements	Approval Type
General Directorate Of Criminal Investigation	Approval by General Directorate of Criminal Investigation	Pre
Land Transportation Regulation Directorate	Public Transportation - Pre	Pre
Municipality Affairs	Site Approval for Passenger Land Transport Activities	Post
Land Transportation Regulation Directorate	Final site inspection Public Transportation	Final Site Inspection

General Directorate Of Criminal Investigation (Pre) (49211-3)

Approval Name	Description	Estimated Time
Approval by General Directorate of Criminal Investigation	General Directorate of Criminal Investigation Approval for the Activity	7 Days

Fee Details (if any)

There is no Estimated Processing Time (Days) in this license.

License Information

- The applicant should not have a criminal record, unless they have been rehabilitated in criminal cases

Land Transportation Regulation Directorate (Pre) (49211-3)

Approval Name	Description	Estimated Time
Public Transportation - Pre	Public Transportation - Pre	15 Days

Fee Details (if any)

There is no Estimated Processing Time (Days) in this license.

License Information

- This license can only obtained through a tender.
- Please refer to Ministerial order No. (11) of 2015 regarding issuing the list of Public Transportation licenses, which can be found in the “Other Downloadable Documents” section.

Other Documents

- Ministerial Order No. 11 for the year 2015

Municipality Affairs (Post) (49211-3)

Approval Name	Description	Estimated Time
Site Approval for Passenger Land Transport Activities	Municipality Approval for the Commercial Registration address or the site in which the Activity will be practiced	3 Days

Fee Details (if any)

10

License Information

General Conditions:
1. Size of shop/premises must be sufficient for the activity
2. Businesses may not carry out the activity outside the boundaries of the shop/ premises
3. It is prohibited to display or store any items or equipment outside the shop / premises boundary without prior approval from the Municipality. In the event of non-compliance, the Ministry of Municipality Affairs has the right to take necessary action.
4. Maintain cleanliness of the site
5. Comply with the parking space regulations as per the Construction Regulatory Requirements

Activity Specific Conditions:
1. The commercial address of the Commercial Registration for this activity can an office address
2. Vehicle yard should be in service or industrial areas
3. Yard size should be enough to accommodate 100% of the vehicles used for the activity
4. Yard should be fenced

Note: Uploading pictures of the site/shop may expedite the process of obtaining

approval

Required Documents

- Lease agreement (after obtaining the necessary approvals from other licensing entities)
- Shop photos

Land Transportation Regulation Directorate (Final Site Inspection) (49211-3)

Approval Name	Description	Estimated Time
Final site inspection Public Transportation	Final site inspection Public Transportation	15 Days

Fee Details (if any)

There is no Estimated Processing Time (Days) in this license.

License Information

• This license can only be obtained through a tender.

• Please refer to Ministerial order No. (11) of 2015 regarding issuing the list of Public Transportation licenses, which can be found in the “Other Downloadable Documents” section.

Other Documents

•Ministerial order number (11) for the year 2015 regarding Issuing the list of Public Transportation licenses

Transportation and storage

ISIC4	Business activity
49221-1	Taxi - Taxi

Description

Providing taxi services via roaming around the Kingdom or by picking up / dropping off passengers from designated taxi parking areas; for the purpose of transporting passengers to their desired destinations; utilizing a fleet of vehicles with pre-determined specifications including a taxi meter; utilizing sets tarrif rates that are approved by the relevant authorities.

Business Requirements

✔ Age

18 and above

✔ Allowed for Nationalities

Bahraini
100%

✔ Legal Type

It is allowed to register according to the legal forms mentioned below

Allowed for Individual Commercial Registration (ICR) : Yes

Allowed for Company Commercial Registration (CCR) : Yes

- Bahrain Shareholding Company (Public)
- Bahrain Shareholding Company (Closed)
- Simple Commandite Company
- Non Profit Company
- With Limited Liability Company
- Partnership Company
- Commandite By Shares Company

Required Step of Licenses and Approvals

Ministry / Directorate	License / Approval Requirements	Approval Type
Land Transportation Regulation Directorate	Taxi - Pre	Pre
General Directorate Of Criminal Investigation	Approval by General Directorate of Criminal Investigation	Pre
Municipality Affairs	Site Approval for Taxi activities	Post
Land Transportation Regulation Directorate	Taxi - Final site inspection	Final Site Inspection

Land Transportation Regulation Directorate (Pre) (49221-1)

Approval Name	Description	Estimated Time
Taxi - Pre	Taxi	15 Days

Fee Details (if any)

Other Fees include:
- Yard Site Visit: BD50 (for each yard)
- License Fee : BD500
- Issuance of each operating card (per vehicle): BD 40
- Renewal of each operating card (per vehicle): BD 40

License Information

As per clause No (3) from Ministerial order number 1 for the year 2017 for Taxi and call taxi, license issuance is via an auction

The requirements for the vehicles that will be used in practicing the licensed activity:
1. The minimum number of vehicles required to practice Taxi activity is 50 vehicles and the maximum is 300 vehicles.
2.The vehicles must be in a good condition throughout their usage. The vehicles must not have been used for more than 2 years at the time the operating card is requested, and in any case must not have exceed 7 years from the date of manufacture upon the renewal of the operating card.
3. The investor shall bear any liability resulting from the purchase of the vehicles before obtaining the final approval (license) from the Ministry of Transportation and Telecommunications.

- The requirements for the vehicles yard address:

1. The yard must not be located in an area classified as a residential area.

2. The yard size must accommodate 30% of the vehicles that will be used in operating the licensed activity.

3. Comply with other requirements specified by the Land Transportation Regulation

Directorate.

• If the licensee wishes to add a branch with the same license, the licensee must comply with the requirements of the headquarters without prejudice to the requirements of the vehicles yard.

Required Documents

•List of proposed vehicles to be used in the activity, indicating the vehicle type, model, and year of manufacture
•Statement with the proposed address of the car vehicles yard

Other Documents

•Ministerial Order No. 1 for the year 2017
•Ministerial Order No. 11 for the year 2015

General Directorate Of Criminal Investigation (Pre) (49221-1)

Approval Name	Description	Estimated Time
Approval by General Directorate of Criminal Investigation	General Directorate of Criminal Investigation Approval for the Activity	7 Days

Fee Details (if any)

There is no Estimated Processing Time (Days) in this license.

License Information

- The applicant should not have a criminal record, unless they have been rehabilitated in criminal cases

Municipality Affairs (Post) (49221-1)

Approval Name	Description	Estimated Time
Site Approval for Taxi activities	Municipality Approval for the Commercial Registration address or the site in which the Activity will be practiced	3 Days

Fee Details (if any)

10

License Information

General Conditions:
1. Size of shop/premises must be sufficient for the activity
2. Businesses may not carry out the activity outside the boundaries of the shop/ premises
3. It is prohibited to display or store any items or equipment outside the shop / premises boundary without prior approval from the Municipality. In the event of non-compliance, the Ministry of Municipality Affairs has the right to take necessary action.
4. Maintain cleanliness of the site
5. Comply with the parking space regulations as per the Construction Regulatory Requirements

Activity Specific Conditions:
1. The commercial address of the Commercial Registration for this activity can an office address

Note: Uploading pictures of the site/shop may expedite the process of obtaining approval

Required Documents

- Lease agreement (after obtaining the necessary approvals from other licensing entities)
- Shop photos

Other Documents

- Cabinet's Decision (56) of the year 2022 regarding the Regulatory Requirements of Construction for various areas in the Kingdom of Bahrain

Land Transportation Regulation Directorate (Final Site Inspection) (49221-1)

Approval Name	Description	Estimated Time
Taxi - Final site inspection	Taxi - Final site inspection	15 Days

Fee Details (if any)

500 دينار بحريني

License Information

As per clause No (3) from Ministerial order number 1 for the year 2017 for Taxi and call taxi, license issuance is via an auction

The requirements for the vehicles yard address:

1. The yard must be located in an area classified as industrial or a service area.

2. The yard size should accommodate 30% of the vehicles that will be used in operating the licensed activity.

3. The yard site should be fenced and have an emergency exit as well as security and safety facilities.

4. Erecting a metal fence or wall around the yard with a height of at least 1.2 meters.
5. The exits leading to the area must be suitable and safe.
6. The exits leading to the yard cannot face main roads with heavy traffic activity.
7. The exits leading to the yard cannot directly face major or minor crossroads and intersections.
8. Both the entrance and the exits to the yard must be suitably sized ,and must be lockable.

• The requirements of the placard:
1. Must place a placard in the rest area for vehicles showing the commercial

registrations name and number (made from metal of any other suitable materials that have been approved by the Directorate).
2. The placard must be at least 1 m x 60 cm and contains the name of the approved company/ individual establishment in a clear text.
3. Erecting a sign showing the rest area belonging to the company/individual establishment if the yard is located near a warehouse.
- Comply with other requirements specified by the Land Transportation Regulation Directorate

• If the licensee wishes to add a branch with the same license, the licensee must comply with the requirements of the headquarters without prejudice to the requirements of the vehicles yard.

Required Documents

•Copy of survey certificate or title deed of the proposed yard
•Yard agreement between the owner and the lessee, if the agreement is a sub-lease a no objection letter should be submitted by the owner

Other Documents

•Ministerial order number 1 for the year 2017 for taxi & call taxi
•Ministerial order number 11 for the year 2015 for the licenses of public transport activities
•Ministerial order number 12 for the year 2017 regarding amendment for Ministerial order number 11 for the year 2015

Transportation and storage

ISIC4	Business activity
49221-2	Taxi - Call Taxi

Description

Providing a pre-booking call taxi service for the purpose of transporting passengers to their desired destinations; utilizing a fleet of vehicles with pre-determined specifications including a taxi meter; utilizing sets tarrif fares that are approved by the relevant authorities.

Business Requirements

✔ Age

18 and above

✔ Allowed for Nationalities

Bahraini
100%

✔ Legal Type

It is allowed to register according to the legal forms mentioned below

Allowed for Individual Commercial Registration (ICR) : Yes

Allowed for Company Commercial Registration (CCR) : Yes

- Bahrain Shareholding Company (Public)
- Bahrain Shareholding Company (Closed)
- Simple Commandite Company
- Non Profit Company
- With Limited Liability Company
- Partnership Company
- Commandite By Shares Company

Required Step of Licenses and Approvals

Ministry / Directorate	License / Approval Requirements	Approval Type
Land Transportation Regulation Directorate	Call Taxi - Pre	Pre
General Directorate Of Criminal Investigation	Approval by General Directorate of Criminal Investigation	Pre
Municipality Affairs	Site Approval for Taxi activities	Post
Land Transportation Regulation Directorate	Call Taxi - Final site inspection	Final Site Inspection

Land Transportation Regulation Directorate (Pre) (49221-2)

Approval Name	Description	Estimated Time
Call Taxi - Pre	Call Taxi - Pre	15 Days

Fee Details (if any)

Other Fees include:
- Yard Site Visit: BD50 (for each yard)
- License Fee : BD500
- Issuance of each operating card (per vehicle): BD 40
- Renewal of each operating card (per vehicle): BD 40

License Information

As per clause No (3) from Ministerial order number 1 for the year 2017 for Taxi and call taxi, tlicense issuance is via an auction
The requirements for the vehicles that will be used in practicing the licensed activity:
1. The minimum number of vehicles required is 15 vehicles and the maximum is 200 vehicles
2.The vehicles must be in a good condition throughout their usage. The vehicles must not have been used for more than 2 years at the time the operating card is requested, and in any case must not have exceed 7 years from the date of manufacture upon the renewal of the operating card.
3. The investor shall bear any liability resulting from the purchase of the vehicles before obtaining the final approval from the Ministry of Transportation and Telecommunications (license).

- The requirements for the vehicles yard address:

1. The yard must be in an area classified as industrial or a service area.

2. The yard size should accommodate 30% of the vehicles that will be used in operating the licensed activity.

3. Comply with other requirements specified by the Land Transportation Regulation Directorate.

• If the licensee wishes to add a branch with the same license, the licensee must comply with the requirements of the headquarters without prejudice to the requirements of the vehicles yard.

Required Documents

•List of proposed vehicles to be used in the activity, indicating the vehicle type, model, and year of manufacture
•Statement with the proposed address of the car vehicles yard

Other Documents

•Ministerial Order No. 1 for the year 2017
•Ministerial Order No. 11 for the year 2015
•Ministerial order number 12 for the year 2017 regarding amendment for Ministerial order number 11 for the year 2015

General Directorate Of Criminal Investigation (Pre) (49221-2)

Approval Name	Description	Estimated Time
Approval by General Directorate of Criminal Investigation	General Directorate of Criminal Investigation Approval for the Activity	7 Days

Fee Details (if any)

There is no Estimated Processing Time (Days) in this license.

License Information

- The applicant should not have a criminal record, unless they have been rehabilitated in criminal cases

Municipality Affairs (Post) (49221-2)

Approval Name	Description	Estimated Time
Site Approval for Taxi activities	Municipality Approval for the Commercial Registration address or the site in which the Activity will be practiced	3 Days

Fee Details (if any)

10

License Information

General Conditions:
1. Size of shop/premises must be sufficient for the activity
2. Businesses may not carry out the activity outside the boundaries of the shop/ premises
3. It is prohibited to display or store any items or equipment outside the shop / premises boundary without prior approval from the Municipality. In the event of non-compliance, the Ministry of Municipality Affairs has the right to take necessary action.
4. Maintain cleanliness of the site
5. Comply with the parking space regulations as per the Construction Regulatory Requirements

Activity Specific Conditions:
1. The commercial address of the Commercial Registration for this activity can an office address

Note: Uploading pictures of the site/shop may expedite the process of obtaining approval

Required Documents

- Lease agreement (after obtaining the necessary approvals from other licensing entities)
- Shop photos

Other Documents

- Cabinet's Decision (56) of the year 2022 regarding the Regulatory Requirements of Construction for various areas in the Kingdom of Bahrain

Land Transportation Regulation Directorate (Final Site Inspection) (49221-2)

Approval Name	Description	Estimated Time
Call Taxi - Final site inspection	Call Taxi - Final site inspection	15 Days

Fee Details (if any)

There is no Estimated Processing Time (Days) in this license.

License Information

As per clause No (3) from Ministerial order number 1 for the year 2017 for Taxi and call taxi, license issuance is via an auction

The requirements for the vehicles yard address:

1. The yard must be located in an area classified as industrial or a service area.

2. The yard size should accommodate 30% of the vehicles that will be used in operating the licensed activity.

3. The yard site should be fenced and have an emergency exit as well as security and safety facilities.
4. Erecting a metal fence or wall around the yard with a height of at least 1.2 meters.
5. The exits leading to the area must be suitable and safe.
6. The exits leading to the yard cannot face main roads (with) heavy traffic activity.
7. The exits leading to the yard cannot directly face major or minor crossroads and intersections.
8. Both the entrance and the exits to the yard must be suitably sized, and must be lockable.

• The requirements of the placard:
1. A placard must be placed in the rest area for vehicles showing the commercial registrations name and CR number (made from metal or any other suitable materials that

have been approved by the Directorate).
2. The placard must be at least 1 m x 60 cm and contain the name of the approved company/individual establishment in clear text.
3. A sign must be erected, showing the rest area belonging to the company/individual establishment if the yard is located near a warehouse.
- Comply with other requirements specified by the Land Transportation Regulation Directorate.

- If the licensee wishes to add a branch with the same license, the licensee must comply with the requirements of the headquarters without prejudice to the requirements of the vehicles yard.

Required Documents

- Copy of survey certificate or title deed of the proposed yard
- Yard agreement between the owner and the lessee, if the agreement is a sub-lease a no objection letter should be submitted by the owner

Other Documents

- Ministerial order number 1 for the year 2017 for Taxi & call taxi
- Ministerial order number 11 for the year 2015 for the licenses of public transport activities
- Ministerial order number 12 for the year 2017 regarding amendment for Ministerial order number 11 for the year 2015

Transportation and storage

ISIC4	Business activity
4923-1	Freight transport by road - Internal Transport of goods

Description

Providing the service of transporting goods within the Kingdom; utilizing a fleet of vehicles with pre-determined specifications; through a signed contract between the parties involved.

Business Requirements

Age

18 and above

Allowed for Nationalities

- Bahraini 100%
- American 100%
- GCC 100%

Legal Type

It is allowed to register according to the legal forms mentioned below

Allowed for Individual Commercial Registration (ICR) : Yes

Allowed for Company Commercial Registration (CCR) : Yes

- Bahrain Shareholding Company (Public)
- With Limited Liability Company
- Branch of a Foreign Company
- Bahrain Shareholding Company (Closed)
- Partnership Company
- Simple Commandite Company
- Commandite By Shares Company
- Non Profit Company

Required Step of Licenses and Approvals

Ministry / Directorate	License / Approval Requirements	Approval Type
General Directorate Of Criminal Investigation	Approval by General Directorate of Criminal Investigation	Pre
Land Transportation Regulation Directorate	Internal Transport of goods - Pre	Pre
Municipality Affairs	Site Approval for Freight Land Transportation	Post
Land Transportation Regulation Directorate	Final site inspection for Internal Transport of Goods	Final Site Inspection

General Directorate Of Criminal Investigation (Pre) (4923-1)

Approval Name	Description	Estimated Time
Approval by General Directorate of Criminal Investigation	General Directorate of Criminal Investigation Approval for the Activity	7 Days

Fee Details (if any)

There is no Estimated Processing Time (Days) in this license.

License Information

- The applicant should not have a criminal record, unless they have been rehabilitated in criminal cases

Land Transportation Regulation Directorate (Pre) (4923-1)

Approval Name	Description	Estimated Time
Internal Transport of goods - Pre	Internal Transport of goods	15 Days

Fee Details (if any)

Other Fees include:
- Application Fee: BD100
- License Fee : BD500
- License Renewal Fee : BD100
- Yard Site Visit: BD50 (for each yard)
- Yard Site Re-Visit: BD10 (for each yard)
- Issuance of each operating card (per vehicle): BD 40
- Renewal of each operating card (per vehicle): BD 40

License Information

The requirements for the vehicles that will be used in practicing the licensed activity

1. The minimum number of vehicles is5 vehicles.

2. The vehicles must be in a good condition throughout their usage, the vehicles must comply with the requirements mentioned in Ministerial order No. 7 for the year 2017, and requirements from General Directorate of Traffic as mentioned in Other Downloadable Documents

3. The investor shall bear any liability resulting from the purchase of the vehicles before obtaining the final approval (license) from the Ministry of Transportation and Telecommunications.

- The requirements for the vehicles yard address:

1. The yard must be located in an area classified as industrial or a service area.

2. The yard size mustshould accommodate 100% of the vehicles that will be used to operate the licensed activity.

3. Comply with other requirements specified by the Land Transportation Regulation Directorate.

• If the licensee wishes to add a branch with the same license, the licensee must comply with the requirements of the headquarters without prejudice to the requirements of the vehicles yard.

Required Documents

•A list with the names of the drivers and details of their driving permits (if any)
•Audited financial statements (only in the case of companies that have been established three years or more)
•Business Plan
•List of proposed vehicles
•List of proposed vehicles to be used in the activity, indicating the vehicle type, model, and year of manufacture
•Photos showing the location of the headquarters from different angles, with pictures showing availability of customer parking
•Statement with the proposed address of the car yard

Other Documents

•Ministerial Order No. 11 for the year 2015
•Ministerial Order No. 7 for the year 2018
•Ministerial order number (12) for the year 2017 regarding amendment for Ministerial order number (11) for the year 2015
•Ministerial order number (7) for the year 2018 for goods transportation licenses

Municipality Affairs (Post) (4923-1)

Approval Name	Description	Estimated Time
Site Approval for Freight Land Transportation	Municipality Approval for the Commercial Registration address or the site in which the Activity will be practiced	3 Days

Fee Details (if any)

10

License Information

General Conditions:
1. Size of shop/premises must be sufficient for the activity
2. Businesses may not carry out the activity outside the boundaries of the shop/ premises
3. It is prohibited to display or store any items or equipment outside the shop / premises boundary without prior approval from the Municipality. In the event of non-compliance, the Ministry of Municipality Affairs has the right to take necessary action.
4. Maintain cleanliness of the site
5. Comply with the parking space regulations as per the Construction Regulatory Requirements

Activity Specific Conditions:
1. The commercial address of the Commercial Registration for this activity can an office address
2. Have in place parking lot or yard for the vehicles

Note: Uploading pictures of the site/shop may expedite the process of obtaining approval

Required Documents

- Lease agreement (after obtaining the necessary approvals from other licensing entities)
- Shop photos

Other Documents

- Cabinet's Decision (56) of the year 2022 regarding the Regulatory Requirements of Construction for various areas in the Kingdom of Bahrain

Land Transportation Regulation Directorate (Final Site Inspection) (4923-1)

Approval Name	Description	Estimated Time
Final site inspection for Internal Transport of Goods	Final site inspection for Internal Transport of Goods	15 Days

Fee Details (if any)

There is no Estimated Processing Time (Days) in this license.

License Information

• The requirements for the vehicles yard address:

1. The yard must be located in an area classified as industrial or a service area.

2. The yard size should accommodate 100% of the vehicles that will be used to operate the licensed activity.

3. The yard site should be fenced and have an emergency exit as well as security and safety facilities.

4. Erecting a metal fence or wall around the yard with a height of at least 1.2 meters.
1. 5. The exits leading to the area must be suitable and safe.

2. 6. The exits leading to the yard cannot face main roads with heavy traffic activity.
3. 7. The exits leading to the yard cannot directly face major or minor crossroads and intersections.
8. Both the entrance and the exist to the yard must be suitably sized,and can be locked.

• The requirements of the placard:

1. Must place a placard in the rest area for vehicles showing the commercial registrations name and number (made from metal of any other suitable materials that have been approved by the Directorate).
2. The placard must be at least 1 m x 60 cm and contains the name of the approved company/ Individual establishment in a clear text.
3. Erecting a sign showing the rest area belonging to the company/ the individual establishment if the yard is located near a warehouse.
• Comply with other requirements specified by the Land Transportation Regulation Directorate

• If the licensee wishes to add a branch with the same license, the licensee must comply with the requirements of the headquarters without prejudice to the requirements of the vehicles yard.

Required Documents

•Copy of survey certificate or title deed of the proposed yard
•Yard agreement between the owner and the lessee, if the agreement is a sub-lease a no objection letter should be submitted by the owner

Other Documents

•Ministerial order number 11 for the year 2015 for the licenses of public transport activities
•Ministerial order number 12 for the year 2017 regarding amendment for Ministerial order number 11 for the year 2015
•Ministerial order number 7 for the year 2018 for goods transportation licenses

Transportation and storage

ISIC4	Business activity
4923-2	Freight transport by road - International Transport of goods

Description

Providing the service of transporting goods via King Fahad Causeway utilizing a fleet of vehicles with pre-determined specifications; through a signed contract between the parties involved.

Business Requirements

Age

18 and above

Allowed for Nationalities

- Bahraini 100%
- GCC 100%
- American 100%
- Singaporean 100%

Legal Type

It is allowed to register according to the legal forms mentioned below

Allowed for Individual Commercial Registration (ICR) : Yes

Allowed for Company Commercial Registration (CCR) : Yes

- Bahrain Shareholding Company (Public)
- With Limited Liability Company
- Branch of a Foreign Company
- Bahrain Shareholding Company (Closed)
- Partnership Company
- Simple Commandite Company
- Commandite By Shares Company
- Non Profit Company

Required Step of Licenses and Approvals

Ministry / Directorate	License / Approval Requirements	Approval Type
General Directorate Of Criminal Investigation	Approval by General Directorate of Criminal Investigation	Pre
Land Transportation Regulation Directorate	International Transport of goods - Pre	Pre
Municipality Affairs	Site Approval for Freight Land Transportation	Post
Land Transportation Regulation Directorate	Final site inspection for International Transport of Goods	Final Site Inspection

General Directorate Of Criminal Investigation (Pre) (4923-2)

Approval Name	Description	Estimated Time
Approval by General Directorate of Criminal Investigation	General Directorate of Criminal Investigation Approval for the Activity	7 Days

Fee Details (if any)

There is no Estimated Processing Time (Days) in this license.

License Information

- The applicant should not have a criminal record, unless they have been rehabilitated in criminal cases

Land Transportation Regulation Directorate (Pre) (4923-2)

Approval Name	Description	Estimated Time
International Transport of goods - Pre	International Transport of goods	15 Days

Fee Details (if any)

Other Fees include:
- Application Fee: BD100
- License Fee : BD1000
- License Renewal Fee : BD100
- Yard Site Visit: BD50 (for each yard)
- Yard Site Re-Visit: BD10 (for each yard)
- Issuance of each operating card (per vehicle): BD 40
- Renewal of each operating card (per vehicle): BD 40

License Information

The requirements for the vehicles that will be used in practicing the licensed activity

1. The minimum number of vehicles required to practice this activity is 5 vehicles.

2. The vehicles must be in a good condition throughout their usage, the vehicles must comply with the requirements mentioned in Ministerial order No. 7 for the year 2017, and requirements from General Directorate of Traffic as mentioned in Other Downloadable Documents.

3. The investor shall bear any liability resulting from the purchase of the vehicles before obtaining the final approval (license) from the Ministry of Transportation and Telecommunications.

- The requirements for the vehicles yard address:

1. The yard must be located in an area classified as industrial or a service area.

2. The yard size must accommodate 30% of the vehicles that will be used in operate the licensed activity.

3. Comply with other requirements specified by the Land Transportation Regulation Directorate.

• If the licensee wishes to add a branch with the same license, the licensee must comply with the requirements of the headquarters without prejudice to the requirements of the vehicles yard.

Required Documents

•A list with the names of the drivers and details of their driving permits (if any)
•Audited financial statements (only in the case of companies that have been established three years or more)
•Business Plan
•List of proposed vehicles
•List of vehicles used for the current land transport activity indicating the type of vehicle, model, and year of manufacture (only for existing entities practicing any land transportation activity)
•Photos showing the location of the headquarters from different angles, with pictures showing availability of customer parking
•Statement with the proposed address of the car yard

Other Documents

•Ministerial Order No. 11 for the year 2015
•Ministerial Order No. 7 for the year 2018
•Ministerial order number (12) for the year 2017 regarding amendment for Ministerial order number (11) for the year 2015

Municipality Affairs (Post) (4923-2)

Approval Name	Description	Estimated Time
Site Approval for Freight Land Transportation	Municipality Approval for the Commercial Registration address or the site in which the Activity will be practiced	3 Days

Fee Details (if any)

10

License Information

General Conditions:
1. Size of shop/premises must be sufficient for the activity
2. Businesses may not carry out the activity outside the boundaries of the shop/ premises
3. It is prohibited to display or store any items or equipment outside the shop / premises boundary without prior approval from the Municipality. In the event of non-compliance, the Ministry of Municipality Affairs has the right to take necessary action.
4. Maintain cleanliness of the site
5. Comply with the parking space regulations as per the Construction Regulatory Requirements

Activity Specific Conditions:
1. The commercial address of the Commercial Registration for this activity can an office address
2. Have in place parking lot or yard for the vehicles

Note: Uploading pictures of the site/shop may expedite the process of obtaining approval

Required Documents

- Lease agreement (after obtaining the necessary approvals from other licensing entities)
- Shop photos

Other Documents

- Cabinet's Decision (56) of the year 2022 regarding the Regulatory Requirements of Construction for various areas in the Kingdom of Bahrain

Land Transportation Regulation Directorate (Final Site Inspection) (4923-2)

Approval Name	Description	Estimated Time
Final site inspection for International Transport of Goods	Final site inspection for International Transport of Goods	15 Days

Fee Details (if any)

There is no Estimated Processing Time (Days) in this license.

License Information

• The requirements for the vehicles yard address:

1. The yard must be located in an area classified as industrial or a service area.

2. The yard size should accommodate 30% of the vehicles that will be used to operate the licensed activity.

3. The yard site should be fenced and have an emergency exit as well as security and safety facilities.
4. Erecting a metal fence or wall around the yard with a height of at least 1.2 meters.
5. The exits leading to the area must be suitable and safe.
6. The exits leading to the yard cannot face main roads which see with heavy traffic activity.
7. The exits leading to the yard cannot directly face major or minor crossroads and intersections.
8. Both the entrance and the exist to the yard must be suitably sized, that can as well as being able to be locked .

• The requirements of the placard:
1. Must place a placard in the rest area for vehicles showing the commercial registrations name and number (made from metal of any other suitable materials that have been approved by the Directorate).
2. The placard must be at least 1 m x 60 cm and contains the name of the approved

company/ individual establishment in a clear text.
3. Erecting a sign showing the rest area belonging to the company or the individual establishment if the yard is located near a warehouse.
• Comply with other requirements specified by the Land Transportation Regulation Directorate.

• If the licensee wishes to add a branch with the same license, the licensee must comply with the requirements of the headquarters without prejudice to the requirements of the vehicles yard

Required Documents

•Copy of survey certificate or title deed of the proposed yard
•Yard agreement between the owner and the lessee, if the agreement is a sub-lease a no objection letter should be submitted by the owner

Other Documents

•Ministerial order number (11) for the year 2015 for the licenses of public transport activities
•Ministerial order number (12) for the year 2017 regarding amendment for Ministerial order number (11) for the year 2015
•Ministerial order number (7) for the year 2018 for goods transportation licenses

Transportation and storage

ISIC4	Business activity
5011	Sea and coastal passenger water transport

Description

This activity includes:
- transport of passengers over seas and coastal waters, whether scheduled or not:
. operation of ferries
. water taxis etc.

Business Requirements

Age

18 and above

Allowed for Nationalities

Bahraini 100%	GCC 100%
American 100%	Singaporean 100%
Icelander 100%	Liechtensteiner 100%
Norwegian 100%	Swiss 100%

Foreign Allowed up to 100%

Legal Type

It is allowed to register according to the legal forms mentioned below

Allowed for Individual Commercial Registration (ICR) : Yes

Allowed for Company Commercial Registration (CCR) : Yes

- Bahrain Shareholding Company (Public)
- With Limited Liability Company
- Branch of a Foreign Company
- Bahrain Shareholding Company (Closed)
- Partnership Company
- Simple Commandite Company
- Commandite By Shares Company
- Non Profit Company

Required Step of Licenses and Approvals

Ministry / Directorate	License / Approval Requirements	Approval Type
Ports and Maritime Affairs	Sea Passenger Transport	Pre
Municipality Affairs	Site Approval for Transportation and Logistics Activities	Post
Ports and Maritime Affairs	Sea Passenger Transport	Final Site Inspection

Ports and Maritime Affairs (Pre) (5011)

Approval Name	Description	Estimated Time
Sea Passenger Transport	Sea Passenger Transport	3 Days

Fee Details (if any)

550 BD

License Information

Application/License related information:
- The license is valid for 1 years
- Renewal of the license is 50% of the initial fee
- In addition to the license fee, applicants must pay a non-refundable application fee of BD100

For further license specific requirements please refer to the document below (Sea Passenger Transport Requirements)

Required Documents

- Approval from other concerned authorities if license will be used for tourism purposes.
- Business Plan
- Documents proving the educational qualifications of executives in (Port and Maritime studies, Nautical Science, Engineering, Business Management, Logistics, IT, Law) or professional experience in the sector of no less than 5 years.
- Information of all vessels to be used and their registration certificate issued by the Ports and Maritime Affairs or the Coast Guard.
- Maintenance plan for the vessels and boats used to prove the service.
- Proof of Full insurance covering passengers on deck and all other embarkation/ disembarkation facilities
- Reporting plan stating different communication methods
- Rescue and Safety plan

Other Documents

- Ministerial Regulation No. 15 for the year 2017 regarding PMA Tariff
- Sea Passenger Transport Requirements
- قرار رقم 9 لسنة 2017 بشأن تراخيص لائحة تراخيص الخدمات البحرية

Municipality Affairs (Post) (5011)

Approval Name	Description	Estimated Time
Site Approval for Transportation and Logistics Activities	Municipality Approval for the Commercial Registration address or the site in which the Activity will be practiced	3 Days

Fee Details (if any)

10

License Information

General Conditions:
1. Size of shop/premises must be sufficient for the activity
2. Businesses may not carry out the activity outside the boundaries of the shop/ premises
3. It is prohibited to display or store any items or equipment outside the shop / premises boundary without prior approval from the Municipality. In the event of non-compliance, the Ministry of Municipality Affairs has the right to take necessary action.
4. Maintain cleanliness of the site
5. Comply with the parking space regulations as per the Construction Regulatory Requirements

Activity Specific Conditions:
1. The commercial address of the Commercial Registration for this activity can an office address

Note: Uploading pictures of the site/shop may expedite the process of obtaining approval

Required Documents

- Lease agreement (after obtaining the necessary approvals from other licensing entities)
- Pictures of site/shop (optional)
- Shop photos

Other Documents

- Cabinet's Decision (56) of the year 2022 regarding the Regulatory Requirements of Construction for various areas in the Kingdom of Bahrain

Ports and Maritime Affairs (Final Site Inspection) (5011)

Approval Name	Description	Estimated Time
Sea Passenger Transport	Sea Passenger Transport	3 Days

Fee Details (if any)

550 BD

License Information

Application/License related information:
- The license is valid for 1 years
- Renewal of the license is 50% of the initial fee
- In addition to the license fee, applicants must pay a non-refundable application fee of BD100

For further license specific requirements please refer to the document below (Sea Passenger Transport Requirements)

Required Documents

- Approval from other concerned authorities if license will be used for tourism purposes.
- Business Plan
- Documents proving the educational qualifications of executives in (Port and Maritime studies, Nautical Science, Engineering, Business Management, Logistics, IT, Law) or professional experience in the sector of no less than 5 years.
- Information of all vessels to be used and their registration certificate issued by the Ports and Maritime Affairs or the Coast Guard.
- Maintenance plan for the vessels and boats used to prove the service.
- Proof of Full insurance covering passengers on deck and all other embarkation/ disembarkation facilities
- Reporting plan stating different communication methods
- Rescue and Safety plan

Other Documents

- Ministerial Regulation No. 15 for the year 2017 regarding PMA Tariff
- Sea Passenger Transport Requirements
- قرار رقم 9 لسنة 2017 بشأن تراخيص لائحة تراخيص الخدمات البحرية

Transportation and storage

ISIC4	Business activity
5012-1	Sea and coastal freight water transport - Ship Management and operation Services

Description

This license/option includes the operation and the preperation and management of ship operations

Business Requirements

Age

18 and above

Allowed for Nationalities

Bahraini 100%	GCC 100%
American 100%	Singaporean 100%
Icelander 100%	Liechtenstein er 100%
Norwegian 100%	Swiss 100%

Foreign Allowed up to 100%

Legal Type

It is allowed to register according to the legal forms mentioned below

Allowed for Individual Commercial Registration (ICR) : Yes

Allowed for Company Commercial Registration (CCR) : Yes

- Bahrain Shareholding Company (Public)
- With Limited Liability Company
- Branch of a Foreign Company
- Bahrain Shareholding Company (Closed)
- Partnership Company
- Simple Commandite Company
- Commandite By Shares Company
- Non Profit Company

Required Step of Licenses and Approvals

Ministry / Directorate	License / Approval Requirements	Approval Type
Ports and Maritime Affairs	Ship Management and operation Services	Pre
Municipality Affairs	Site Approval for Transportation and Logistics Activities	Post

Ports and Maritime Affairs (Pre) (5012-1)

Approval Name	Description	Estimated Time
Ship Management and operation Services	Ship Management and operation Services	7 Days

Fee Details (if any)

1200 BD

License Information

Application/ License related information:
- The license is valid for 1 years
- Renewal of the license is 50% of initial fee
- In addition to the license fee applicants must pay a non-refundable application fee of 100 BD

Activity Specific Pre-requirements:
- Hiring a designated Person Ashore who is responsible of safe operations, whose name must appear on the Document of Compliance submitted as stated in Ministerial Order No. (9) for the year (2017).

Required Documents

•A document specifying the operations, operation mechanism, and equipment to be used.
•Detailed business plan.
•Documents proving the educational qualifications of executives in (Port and Maritime studies, Nautical Science, Engineering, Business Management, Logistics, IT, Law) or professional experience in the sector of no less than 5 years.
•Written rules governing the annual and periodic evaluation of the safety management system in accordance with the International Safety Code (ISM Code

Other Documents

- Ministerial Regulation No. 15 for the year 2017 regarding PMA Tariff
- Ministerial Regulation No.9 for the year 2017 regarding licensing of Marine Services

Municipality Affairs (Post) (5012-1)

Approval Name	Description	Estimated Time
Site Approval for Transportation and Logistics Activities	Municipality Approval for the Commercial Registration address or the site in which the Activity will be practiced	3 Days

Fee Details (if any)

10

License Information

General Conditions:
1. Size of shop/premises must be sufficient for the activity
2. Businesses may not carry out the activity outside the boundaries of the shop/ premises
3. It is prohibited to display or store any items or equipment outside the shop / premises boundary without prior approval from the Municipality. In the event of non-compliance, the Ministry of Municipality Affairs has the right to take necessary action.
4. Maintain cleanliness of the site
5. Comply with the parking space regulations as per the Construction Regulatory Requirements

Activity Specific Conditions:
1. The commercial address of the Commercial Registration for this activity can an office address

Note: Uploading pictures of the site/shop may expedite the process of obtaining approval

Required Documents

- Lease agreement (after obtaining the necessary approvals from other licensing entities)
- Pictures of site/shop (optional)
- Shop photos

Other Documents

- Cabinet's Decision (56) of the year 2022 regarding the Regulatory Requirements of Construction for various areas in the Kingdom of Bahrain

Transportation and storage

ISIC4	Business activity
5012-2	Sea and coastal freight water transport - Ports, Maritime and/or Logistics Service in Ports and Private Jetties

Description

This license/option includes the provision of marine Services to the ports and Terminals

Business Requirements

Age

18 and above

Allowed for Nationalities

Bahraini 100%	GCC 100%
American 100%	Singaporean 100%
Icelander 100%	Liechtensteiner 100%
Norwegian 100%	Swiss 100%

Foreign Allowed up to 100%

Legal Type

It is allowed to register according to the legal forms mentioned below

Allowed for Individual Commercial Registration (ICR) : Yes

Allowed for Company Commercial Registration (CCR) : Yes

- Bahrain Shareholding Company (Public)
- With Limited Liability Company
- Branch of a Foreign Company
- Bahrain Shareholding Company (Closed)
- Partnership Company
- Simple Commandite Company
- Commandite By Shares Company
- Non Profit Company

Required Step of Licenses and Approvals

Ministry / Directorate	License / Approval Requirements	Approval Type
Ports and Maritime Affairs	Ports and Maritime Affairs Approval	Post
Municipality Affairs	Site Approval for Transportation and Logistics Activities	Post

Ports and Maritime Affairs (Post) (5012-2)

Approval Name	Description	Estimated Time
Ports and Maritime Affairs Approval	Ports and Maritime Affairs Approval	10 Days

Fee Details (if any)

There is no Estimated Processing Time (Days) in this license.

License Information

There is no License Information in this license.

Municipality Affairs (Post) (5012-2)

Approval Name	Description	Estimated Time
Site Approval for Transportation and Logistics Activities	Municipality Approval for the Commercial Registration address or the site in which the Activity will be practiced	3 Days

Fee Details (if any)

10

License Information

General Conditions:
1. Size of shop/premises must be sufficient for the activity
2. Businesses may not carry out the activity outside the boundaries of the shop/ premises
3. It is prohibited to display or store any items or equipment outside the shop / premises boundary without prior approval from the Municipality. In the event of non-compliance, the Ministry of Municipality Affairs has the right to take necessary action.
4. Maintain cleanliness of the site
5. Comply with the parking space regulations as per the Construction Regulatory Requirements

Activity Specific Conditions:
1. The commercial address of the Commercial Registration for this activity can an office address

Note: Uploading pictures of the site/shop may expedite the process of obtaining approval

Required Documents

- Lease agreement (after obtaining the necessary approvals from other licensing entities)
- Pictures of site/shop (optional)
- Shop photos

Other Documents

- Cabinet's Decision (56) of the year 2022 regarding the Regulatory Requirements of Construction for various areas in the Kingdom of Bahrain

Transportation and storage

ISIC4	Business activity
502103	Renting of barge, tug boats and ships

Description

This includes offices which rent barges, tug and vessels for the purposes of goods transportation, whether owned by such office or leased in order to be rented.This activity also includes renting necessary equipments and tools for such barges and tugs.

Business Requirements

Age

18 and above

Allowed for Nationalities

- Bahraini 100%
- American 100%
- GCC 100%

Legal Type

It is allowed to register according to the legal forms mentioned below

Allowed for Individual Commercial Registration (ICR) : Yes

Allowed for Company Commercial Registration (CCR) : Yes

- Bahrain Shareholding Company (Public)
- With Limited Liability Company
- Branch of a Foreign Company
- Bahrain Shareholding Company (Closed)
- Partnership Company
- Simple Commandite Company
- Commandite By Shares Company
- Non Profit Company

Required Step of Licenses and Approvals

Ministry / Directorate	License / Approval Requirements	Approval Type
Municipality Affairs	Site Approval for Transportation and Logistics Activities	Post

Municipality Affairs (Post) (502103)

Approval Name	Description	Estimated Time
Site Approval for Transportation and Logistics Activities	Municipality Approval for the Commercial Registration address or the site in which the Activity will be practiced	3 Days

Fee Details (if any)

10

License Information

General Conditions:
1. Size of shop/premises must be sufficient for the activity
2. Businesses may not carry out the activity outside the boundaries of the shop/ premises
3. It is prohibited to display or store any items or equipment outside the shop / premises boundary without prior approval from the Municipality. In the event of non-compliance, the Ministry of Municipality Affairs has the right to take necessary action.
4. Maintain cleanliness of the site
5. Comply with the parking space regulations as per the Construction Regulatory Requirements

Activity Specific Conditions:
1. The commercial address of the Commercial Registration for this activity can an office address

Note: Uploading pictures of the site/shop may expedite the process of obtaining approval

Required Documents

- Lease agreement (after obtaining the necessary approvals from other licensing entities)
- Pictures of site/shop (optional)
- Shop photos

Other Documents

- Cabinet's Decision (56) of the year 2022 regarding the Regulatory Requirements of Construction for various areas in the Kingdom of Bahrain

Transportation and storage

ISIC4	Business activity
5110-1	Passenger Air Transport - Schedule Passengers airline services

Description

Providing airport transport services for the passengers according to published timetable. The sales of services through the issuance of tickets or internet.

Business Requirements

Age

18 and above

Allowed for Nationalities

Bahraini 100%	GCC 100%
American 100%	Singaporean Allowed up to 49% (a minimum Bahraini ownership of 51% is required)
Icelander Allowed up to 49% (a minimum Bahraini ownership of 51% is required)	Liechtenstein er Allowed up to 49% (a minimum Bahraini ownership of 51% is required)
Norwegian Allowed up to 49% (a minimum Bahraini ownership of 51% is required)	Swiss Allowed up to 49% (a minimum Bahraini ownership of 51% is required)

Foreign Allowed up to Allowed up to 49% (a minimum Bahraini ownership of 51% is required)

Legal Type

It is allowed to register according to the legal forms mentioned below

Allowed for Individual Commercial Registration (ICR) : Yes

Allowed for Company Commercial Registration (CCR) : Yes

- Bahrain Shareholding Company (Public)
- With Limited Liability Company
- Branch of a Foreign Company
- Bahrain Shareholding Company (Closed)
- Partnership Company
- Simple Commandite Company
- Commandite By Shares Company
- Non Profit Company

Required Step of Licenses and Approvals

Ministry / Directorate	License / Approval Requirements	Approval Type
Civil Aviation Affairs	Schedule Passnegers Airline Services	Pre
General Directorate Of Criminal Investigation	Approval by General Directorate of Criminal Investigation	Pre
Civil Aviation Affairs	Schedule Passnegers Airline Services	Post
Municipality Affairs	Site Approval for Transportation and Logistics Activities	Post
Civil Aviation Affairs	Schedule Passnegers Airline Services	Final Site Inspection

Civil Aviation Affairs (Pre) (5110-1)

Approval Name	Description	Estimated Time
Schedule Passnegers Airline Services	Providing airport transport services for the passengers according to published timetable. The sales of services through the issuance of tickets or internet.	10 Days

Fee Details (if any)

• Application fees: BD 100 (non-refundable in cases where the application is not approved).
• Visibility study: BD 1,000 (deducted from the license fee in case of approval).
• AOC (1–3 Aircraft) BD10,000
• AOC (4-7 Aircraft) BD15,000
• AOC (8-11 Aircraft) BD 20,000
• AOC (12-15 Aircraft) BD 25,000
• AOC (16-19 Aircraft) BD 30,000
• AOC (20-23 Aircraft) BD 35,000
• AOC (24 and more) BD 40,000
• Annual renewal 50% of the license fees.
• Changing activity BD1,000

License Information

• Capital of the company should not be less than 50,000,000.
• Fulfil and adhere to the commitments of airline operations.
• The license is valid for one year and renewal application must be submitted 2 months before expiry
• No scheduled international air services may operate from, to and across the territory of the State except by obtaining a permanent or temporary flight authorization.
• Adherence to the standards and regulatory requirements contained in the regulations under the Civil Aviation Law issued by virtue of Law No. 14 of 2013

• Fulfil all AOC and airworthiness requirement, Civil Aviation Law and Chicago Convention and its Annexes.
• Fulfil all aviation safety and security requirements.

Required Documents

•Feasibility, technical, economic and financial studies
•Fill application Form ATD/ATCL/OF04
•Memorandum of Association

Other Documents

•Chicago Convention and its Annexes.
•Civil Aviation Law No.14 of 2013
•Minister of Transport and Telecommunication Decree No. 12 of 2016 amending some provisions of the Regulation under the Civil Aviation Law.
•Minister of Transportation and Telecommunication Decree No. 25 of 2016 of CAA fees and departure fees.
•Minster of Transportation and Telecommunication Decree No. 21 of 2013 issuing the regulations under the Civil Aviation Law.

General Directorate Of Criminal Investigation (Pre) (5110-1)

Approval Name	Description	Estimated Time
Approval by General Directorate of Criminal Investigation	General Directorate of Criminal Investigation Approval for the Activity	7 Days

Fee Details (if any)

There is no Estimated Processing Time (Days) in this license.

License Information

- The applicant should not have a criminal record, unless they have been rehabilitated in criminal cases

Civil Aviation Affairs (Post) (5110-1)

Approval Name	Description	Estimated Time
Schedule Passnegers Airline Services	Providing airport transport services for the passengers according to published timetable. The sales of services through the issuance of tickets or internet.	10 Days

Fee Details (if any)

• Application fees: BD 100 (non-refundable in cases where the application is not approved).
• Visibility study: BD 1,000 (deducted from the license fee in case of approval).
• AOC (1–3 Aircraft) BD10,000
• AOC (4-7 Aircraft) BD15,000
• AOC (8-11 Aircraft) BD 20,000
• AOC (12-15 Aircraft) BD 25,000
• AOC (16-19 Aircraft) BD 30,000
• AOC (20-23 Aircraft) BD 35,000
• AOC (24 and more) BD 40,000
• Annual renewal 50% of the license fees.
• Changing activity BD1,000

License Information

• Capital of the company should not be less than 50,000,000.
• Fulfil and adhere to the commitments of airline operations.
• The license is valid for one year and renewal application must be submitted 2 months before expiry
• No scheduled international air services may operate from, to and across the territory of the State except by obtaining a permanent or temporary flight authorization.
• Adherence to the standards and regulatory requirements contained in the regulations under the Civil Aviation Law issued by virtue of Law No. 14 of 2013

• Fulfil all AOC and airworthiness requirement, Civil Aviation Law and Chicago Convention and its Annexes.
• Fulfil all aviation safety and security requirements.

Required Documents

•Feasibility, technical, economic and financial studies
•Fill application Form ATD/ATCL/OF04
•Memorandum of Association

Other Documents

•Chicago Convention and its Annexes.
•Civil Aviation Law No.14 of 2013
•Minister of Transport and Telecommunication Decree No. 12 of 2016 amending some provisions of the Regulation under the Civil Aviation Law.
•Minister of Transportation and Telecommunication Decree No. 25 of 2016 of CAA fees and departure fees.
•Minster of Transportation and Telecommunication Decree No. 21 of 2013 issuing the regulations under the Civil Aviation Law.

Municipality Affairs (Post) (5110-1)

Approval Name	Description	Estimated Time
Site Approval for Transportation and Logistics Activities	Municipality Approval for the Commercial Registration address or the site in which the Activity will be practiced	3 Days

Fee Details (if any)

10

License Information

General Conditions:
1. Size of shop/premises must be sufficient for the activity
2. Businesses may not carry out the activity outside the boundaries of the shop/ premises
3. It is prohibited to display or store any items or equipment outside the shop / premises boundary without prior approval from the Municipality. In the event of non-compliance, the Ministry of Municipality Affairs has the right to take necessary action.
4. Maintain cleanliness of the site
5. Comply with the parking space regulations as per the Construction Regulatory Requirements

Activity Specific Conditions:
1. The commercial address of the Commercial Registration for this activity can an office address

Note: Uploading pictures of the site/shop may expedite the process of obtaining approval

Required Documents

- Lease agreement (after obtaining the necessary approvals from other licensing entities)
- Pictures of site/shop (optional)
- Shop photos

Other Documents

- Cabinet's Decision (56) of the year 2022 regarding the Regulatory Requirements of Construction for various areas in the Kingdom of Bahrain

Civil Aviation Affairs (Final Site Inspection) (5110-1)

Approval Name	Description	Estimated Time
Schedule Passnegers Airline Services	Providing airport transport services for the passengers according to published timetable. The sales of services through the issuance of tickets or internet.	10 Days

Fee Details (if any)

• Application fees: BD 100 (non-refundable in cases where the application is not approved).
• Visibility study: BD 1,000 (deducted from the license fee in case of approval).
• AOC (1–3 Aircraft) BD10,000
• AOC (4-7 Aircraft) BD15,000
• AOC (8-11 Aircraft) BD 20,000
• AOC (12-15 Aircraft) BD 25,000
• AOC (16-19 Aircraft) BD 30,000
• AOC (20-23 Aircraft) BD 35,000
• AOC (24 and more) BD 40,000
• Annual renewal 50% of the license fees.
• Changing activity BD1,000

License Information

• Capital of the company should not be less than 50,000,000.
• Fulfil and adhere to the commitments of airline operations.
• The license is valid for one year and renewal application must be submitted 2 months before expiry
• No scheduled international air services may operate from, to and across the territory of the State except by obtaining a permanent or temporary flight authorization.
• Adherence to the standards and regulatory requirements contained in the regulations under the Civil Aviation Law issued by virtue of Law No. 14 of 2013

• Fulfil all AOC and airworthiness requirement, Civil Aviation Law and Chicago Convention and its Annexes.
• Fulfil all aviation safety and security requirements.

Required Documents

•Feasibility, technical, economic and financial studies
•Fill application Form ATD/ATCL/OF04
•Memorandum of Association

Other Documents

•Chicago Convention and its Annexes.
•Civil Aviation Law No.14 of 2013
•Minister of Transport and Telecommunication Decree No. 12 of 2016 amending some provisions of the Regulation under the Civil Aviation Law.
•Minister of Transportation and Telecommunication Decree No. 25 of 2016 of CAA fees and departure fees.
•Minster of Transportation and Telecommunication Decree No. 21 of 2013 issuing the regulations under the Civil Aviation Law.

Transportation and storage

ISIC4	Business activity
5110-2	Passenger Air Transport - Non-schedule passengers operators services

Description

Providing nonscheduled air transport services for passengers I.E. omra flights, charter flights, teachers flights and haj flights, etc

Business Requirements

✔ Age

18 and above

✔ Allowed for Nationalities

Bahraini 100%	GCC 100%
American 100%	Singaporean 100%
Icelander 100%	Liechtenstein er 100%
Norwegian 100%	Swiss 100%

Foreign Allowed up to 100%

Legal Type

It is allowed to register according to the legal forms mentioned below

Allowed for Individual Commercial Registration (ICR) : Yes

Allowed for Company Commercial Registration (CCR) : Yes

- Bahrain Shareholding Company (Public)
- With Limited Liability Company
- Branch of a Foreign Company
- Bahrain Shareholding Company (Closed)
- Partnership Company
- Simple Commandite Company
- Commandite By Shares Company
- Non Profit Company

Required Step of Licenses and Approvals

Ministry / Directorate	License / Approval Requirements	Approval Type
Civil Aviation Affairs	Non Schedule Passengers Operators Services	Pre
General Directorate Of Criminal Investigation	Approval by General Directorate of Criminal Investigation	Pre
Civil Aviation Affairs	Non Schedule Passengers Operators Services	Post
Municipality Affairs	Site Approval for Transportation and Logistics Activities	Post
Civil Aviation Affairs	Non Schedule Passengers Operators Services	Final Site Inspection

Civil Aviation Affairs (Pre) (5110-2)

Approval Name	Description	Estimated Time
Non Schedule Passengers Operators Services	Providing nonschdeduled air transport services for passengers I.E. omra flights, charter flights, teachers flights and haj flights,....etc	10 Days

Fee Details (if any)

• Application fees: BD 100 (non-refundable in cases where the application is not approved).
• Visibility study: BD 1,000 (deducted from the license fee in case of approval).
• Issue AOC : BD 5,000.
• Annual renewal 50% of the license fees.

License Information

• The capital of the company must not be less than BD5,000,000.
• Fulfil and adhere to the commitments of airline operations.
• The license is valid for one year and renewal application must be submitted 2 months before expiry
• No scheduled international air services may operate from, to and across the territory of the State except by obtaining a permanent or temporary flight authorization.
• Adherence to the standards and regulatory requirements contained in the regulations under the Civil Aviation Law issued by virtue of Law No. 14 of 2013
• Fulfil all AOC and airworthiness requirement, Civil Aviation Law and Chicago Convention and its Annexes.
• Fulfil all aviation safety and security requirements.

Required Documents

- Feasibility, technical, economic and financial studies
- Fill application Form ATD/ATCL/OF04
- Memorandum of Association

Other Documents

- Chicago Convention and its Annexes.
- Civil Aviation Law No.14 of 2013
- Minister of Transport and Telecommunication Decree No. 12 of 2016 amending some provisions of the Regulation under the Civil Aviation Law.
- Minister of Transportation and Telecommunication Decree No. 25 of 2016 of CAA fees and departure fees.
- Minster of Transportation and Telecommunication Decree No. 21 of 2013 issuing the regulations under the Civil Aviation Law.

General Directorate Of Criminal Investigation (Pre) (5110-2)

Approval Name	Description	Estimated Time
Approval by General Directorate of Criminal Investigation	General Directorate of Criminal Investigation Approval for the Activity	7 Days

Fee Details (if any)

There is no Estimated Processing Time (Days) in this license.

License Information

- The applicant should not have a criminal record, unless they have been rehabilitated in criminal cases

Civil Aviation Affairs (Post) (5110-2)

Approval Name	Description	Estimated Time
Non Schedule Passengers Operators Services	Providing nonschdeduled air transport services for passengers I.E. omra flights, charter flights, teachers flights and haj flights,....etc	10 Days

Fee Details (if any)

• Application fees: BD 100 (non-refundable in cases where the application is not approved).
• Visibility study: BD 1,000 (deducted from the license fee in case of approval).
• Issue AOC : BD 5,000.
• Annual renewal 50% of the license fees.

License Information

• The capital of the company must not be less than BD5,000,000.
• Fulfil and adhere to the commitments of airline operations.
• The license is valid for one year and renewal application must be submitted 2 months before expiry
• No scheduled international air services may operate from, to and across the territory of the State except by obtaining a permanent or temporary flight authorization.
• Adherence to the standards and regulatory requirements contained in the regulations under the Civil Aviation Law issued by virtue of Law No. 14 of 2013
• Fulfil all AOC and airworthiness requirement, Civil Aviation Law and Chicago Convention and its Annexes.
• Fulfil all aviation safety and security requirements.

Required Documents

- Feasibility, technical, economic and financial studies
- Fill application Form ATD/ATCL/OF04
- Memorandum of Association

Other Documents

- Chicago Convention and its Annexes.
- Civil Aviation Law No.14 of 2013
- Minister of Transport and Telecommunication Decree No. 12 of 2016 amending some provisions of the Regulation under the Civil Aviation Law.
- Minister of Transportation and Telecommunication Decree No. 25 of 2016 of CAA fees and departure fees.
- Minster of Transportation and Telecommunication Decree No. 21 of 2013 issuing the regulations under the Civil Aviation Law.

Municipality Affairs (Post) (5110-2)

Approval Name	Description	Estimated Time
Site Approval for Transportation and Logistics Activities	Municipality Approval for the Commercial Registration address or the site in which the Activity will be practiced	3 Days

Fee Details (if any)

10

License Information

General Conditions:
1. Size of shop/premises must be sufficient for the activity
2. Businesses may not carry out the activity outside the boundaries of the shop/ premises
3. It is prohibited to display or store any items or equipment outside the shop / premises boundary without prior approval from the Municipality. In the event of non-compliance, the Ministry of Municipality Affairs has the right to take necessary action.
4. Maintain cleanliness of the site
5. Comply with the parking space regulations as per the Construction Regulatory Requirements

Activity Specific Conditions:
1. The commercial address of the Commercial Registration for this activity can an office address

Note: Uploading pictures of the site/shop may expedite the process of obtaining approval

Required Documents

- Lease agreement (after obtaining the necessary approvals from other licensing entities)
- Pictures of site/shop (optional)
- Shop photos

Other Documents

- Cabinet's Decision (56) of the year 2022 regarding the Regulatory Requirements of Construction for various areas in the Kingdom of Bahrain

Civil Aviation Affairs (Final Site Inspection) (5110-2)

Approval Name	Description	Estimated Time
Non Schedule Passengers Operators Services	Providing nonschdeduled air transport services for passengers I.E. omra flights, charter flights, teachers flights and haj flights,....etc	10 Days

Fee Details (if any)

• Application fees: BD 100 (non-refundable in cases where the application is not approved).
• Visibility study: BD 1,000 (deducted from the license fee in case of approval).
• Issue AOC : BD 5,000.
• Annual renewal 50% of the license fees.

License Information

• The capital of the company must not be less than BD5,000,000.
• Fulfil and adhere to the commitments of airline operations.
• The license is valid for one year and renewal application must be submitted 2 months before expiry
• No scheduled international air services may operate from, to and across the territory of the State except by obtaining a permanent or temporary flight authorization.
• Adherence to the standards and regulatory requirements contained in the regulations under the Civil Aviation Law issued by virtue of Law No. 14 of 2013
• Fulfil all AOC and airworthiness requirement, Civil Aviation Law and Chicago Convention and its Annexes.
• Fulfil all aviation safety and security requirements.

Required Documents

- Feasibility, technical, economic and financial studies
- Fill application Form ATD/ATCL/OF04
- Memorandum of Association

Other Documents

- Chicago Convention and its Annexes.
- Civil Aviation Law No.14 of 2013
- Minister of Transport and Telecommunication Decree No. 12 of 2016 amending some provisions of the Regulation under the Civil Aviation Law.
- Minister of Transportation and Telecommunication Decree No. 25 of 2016 of CAA fees and departure fees.
- Minster of Transportation and Telecommunication Decree No. 21 of 2013 issuing the regulations under the Civil Aviation Law.

Transportation and storage

ISIC4	Business activity
5110-3	Passenger Air Transport - Private Executive Operators Services

Description

Providing handling services for private aircraft only

Business Requirements

Age

18 and above

Allowed for Nationalities

Bahraini 100%	GCC 100%
American 100%	Singaporean 100%
Icelander 100%	Liechtenstein er 100%
Norwegian 100%	Swiss 100%

Foreign Allowed up to 100%

Legal Type

It is allowed to register according to the legal forms mentioned below

Allowed for Individual Commercial Registration (ICR) : Yes

Allowed for Company Commercial Registration (CCR) : Yes

- Bahrain Shareholding Company (Public)
- With Limited Liability Company
- Branch of a Foreign Company
- Bahrain Shareholding Company (Closed)
- Partnership Company
- Simple Commandite Company
- Commandite By Shares Company
- Non Profit Company

Required Step of Licenses and Approvals

Ministry / Directorate	License / Approval Requirements	Approval Type
General Directorate Of Criminal Investigation	Approval by General Directorate of Criminal Investigation	Pre
Civil Aviation Affairs	Private Executive Operator Services	Pre
Civil Aviation Affairs	Private Executive Operator Services	Post
Municipality Affairs	Site Approval for Transportation and Logistics Activities	Post
Civil Aviation Affairs	Private Executive Operator Services	Final Site Inspection

General Directorate Of Criminal Investigation (Pre) (5110-3)

Approval Name	Description	Estimated Time
Approval by General Directorate of Criminal Investigation	General Directorate of Criminal Investigation Approval for the Activity	7 Days

Fee Details (if any)

There is no Estimated Processing Time (Days) in this license.

License Information

- The applicant should not have a criminal record, unless they have been rehabilitated in criminal cases

Civil Aviation Affairs (Pre) (5110-3)

Approval Name	Description	Estimated Time
Private Executive Operator Services	- Providing air transport services for VIP, Business men and others on request. - It is not opened for public. -Ticket is not permitted.	10 Days

Fee Details (if any)

• Application fees: BD 100 (non-refundable in cases where the application is not approved).
• Visibility study: BD 1,000 (deducted from the license fee in case of approval).
• Issue AOC : BD 5,000.
• Annual renewal 50% of the license fees.

License Information

• Capital of the company should not be less than BD 1,000,000.
• Fulfil and adhere to the commitments of airline operations.
• The license is valid for one year and renewal application must be submitted 2 months before expiry
• No scheduled international air services may operate from, to and across the territory of the State except by obtaining a permanent or temporary flight authorization.
• Adherence to the standards and regulatory requirements contained in the regulations under the Civil Aviation Law issued by virtue of Law No. 14 of 2013
• Fulfil all AOC and airworthiness requirement, Civil Aviation Law and Chicago Convention and its Annexes.
• Fulfil all aviation safety and security requirements.

Required Documents

- Copy of Passport & ID for the owners
- Feasibility, technical, economic and financial studies
- Fill application Form ATD/ATCL/OF04
- Memorandum of Association

Other Documents

- Chicago Convention and its Annexes.
- Civil Aviation Law No.14 of 2013
- Minister of Transport and Telecommunication Decree No. 12 of 2016 amending some provisions of the Regulation under the Civil Aviation Law.
- Minister of Transportation and Telecommunication Decree No. 25 of 2016 of CAA fees and departure fees.
- Minster of Transportation and Telecommunication Decree No. 21 of 2013 issuing the regulations under the Civil Aviation Law.

Civil Aviation Affairs (Post) (5110-3)

Approval Name	Description	Estimated Time
Private Executive Operator Services	- Providing air transport services for VIP, Business men and others on request. - It is not opened for public. -Ticket is not permitted.	10 Days

Fee Details (if any)

• Application fees: BD 100 (non-refundable in cases where the application is not approved).
• Visibility study: BD 1,000 (deducted from the license fee in case of approval).
• Issue AOC : BD 5,000.
• Annual renewal 50% of the license fees.

License Information

• Capital of the company should not be less than BD 1,000,000.
• Fulfil and adhere to the commitments of airline operations.
• The license is valid for one year and renewal application must be submitted 2 months before expiry
• No scheduled international air services may operate from, to and across the territory of the State except by obtaining a permanent or temporary flight authorization.
• Adherence to the standards and regulatory requirements contained in the regulations under the Civil Aviation Law issued by virtue of Law No. 14 of 2013
• Fulfil all AOC and airworthiness requirement, Civil Aviation Law and Chicago Convention and its Annexes.
• Fulfil all aviation safety and security requirements.

Required Documents

- Copy of Passport & ID for the owners
- Feasibility, technical, economic and financial studies
- Fill application Form ATD/ATCL/OF04
- Memorandum of Association

Other Documents

- Chicago Convention and its Annexes.
- Civil Aviation Law No.14 of 2013
- Minister of Transport and Telecommunication Decree No. 12 of 2016 amending some provisions of the Regulation under the Civil Aviation Law.
- Minister of Transportation and Telecommunication Decree No. 25 of 2016 of CAA fees and departure fees.
- Minster of Transportation and Telecommunication Decree No. 21 of 2013 issuing the regulations under the Civil Aviation Law.

Municipality Affairs (Post) (5110-3)

Approval Name	Description	Estimated Time
Site Approval for Transportation and Logistics Activities	Municipality Approval for the Commercial Registration address or the site in which the Activity will be practiced	3 Days

Fee Details (if any)

10

License Information

General Conditions:
1. Size of shop/premises must be sufficient for the activity
2. Businesses may not carry out the activity outside the boundaries of the shop/ premises
3. It is prohibited to display or store any items or equipment outside the shop / premises boundary without prior approval from the Municipality. In the event of non-compliance, the Ministry of Municipality Affairs has the right to take necessary action.
4. Maintain cleanliness of the site
5. Comply with the parking space regulations as per the Construction Regulatory Requirements

Activity Specific Conditions:
1. The commercial address of the Commercial Registration for this activity can an office address

Note: Uploading pictures of the site/shop may expedite the process of obtaining approval

Required Documents

- Lease agreement (after obtaining the necessary approvals from other licensing entities)
- Pictures of site/shop (optional)
- Shop photos

Other Documents

- Cabinet's Decision (56) of the year 2022 regarding the Regulatory Requirements of Construction for various areas in the Kingdom of Bahrain

Civil Aviation Affairs (Final Site Inspection) (5110-3)

Approval Name	Description	Estimated Time
Private Executive Operator Services	- Providing air transport services for VIP, Business men and others on request. - It is not opened for public. -Ticket is not permitted.	10 Days

Fee Details (if any)

• Application fees: BD 100 (non-refundable in cases where the application is not approved).
• Visibility study: BD 1,000 (deducted from the license fee in case of approval).
• Issue AOC : BD 5,000.
• Annual renewal 50% of the license fees.

License Information

• Capital of the company should not be less than BD 1,000,000.
• Fulfil and adhere to the commitments of airline operations.
• The license is valid for one year and renewal application must be submitted 2 months before expiry
• No scheduled international air services may operate from, to and across the territory of the State except by obtaining a permanent or temporary flight authorization.
• Adherence to the standards and regulatory requirements contained in the regulations under the Civil Aviation Law issued by virtue of Law No. 14 of 2013
• Fulfil all AOC and airworthiness requirement, Civil Aviation Law and Chicago Convention and its Annexes.
• Fulfil all aviation safety and security requirements.

Required Documents

- Copy of Passport & ID for the owners
- Feasibility, technical, economic and financial studies
- Fill application Form ATD/ATCL/OF04
- Memorandum of Association

Other Documents

- Chicago Convention and its Annexes.
- Civil Aviation Law No.14 of 2013
- Minister of Transport and Telecommunication Decree No. 12 of 2016 amending some provisions of the Regulation under the Civil Aviation Law.
- Minister of Transportation and Telecommunication Decree No. 25 of 2016 of CAA fees and departure fees.
- Minster of Transportation and Telecommunication Decree No. 21 of 2013 issuing the regulations under the Civil Aviation Law.

Transportation and storage

ISIC4	Business activity
5110-4	Passenger Air Transport - Low Cost Carrier services

Description

Providing airport transport services for passengers, cargo and mail

Business Requirements

Age

18 and above

Allowed for Nationalities

Bahraini 100%	GCC 100%
American 100%	Singaporean 100%
Icelander 100%	Liechtensteiner 100%
Norwegian 100%	Swiss 100%

Foreign Allowed up to 100%

Legal Type

It is allowed to register according to the legal forms mentioned below

Allowed for Individual Commercial Registration (ICR) : Yes

Allowed for Company Commercial Registration (CCR) : Yes

- Bahrain Shareholding Company (Public)
- With Limited Liability Company
- Branch of a Foreign Company
- Bahrain Shareholding Company (Closed)
- Partnership Company
- Simple Commandite Company
- Commandite By Shares Company
- Non Profit Company

Required Step of Licenses and Approvals

Ministry / Directorate	License / Approval Requirements	Approval Type
Civil Aviation Affairs	Low Cost Carrier Services	Pre
General Directorate Of Criminal Investigation	Approval by General Directorate of Criminal Investigation	Pre
Civil Aviation Affairs	Low Cost Carrier Services	Post
Municipality Affairs	Site Approval for Transportation and Logistics Activities	Post
Civil Aviation Affairs	Low Cost Carrier Services	Final Site Inspection

Civil Aviation Affairs (Pre) (5110-4)

Approval Name	Description	Estimated Time
Low Cost Carrier Services	Providing airport transport services for passengers, cargo and mail.	10 Days

Fee Details (if any)

• Application fees: BD 100 (non-refundable in cases where the application is not approved).
• Feasibility study fees: BD 1000 (deducted from the license fee in case of approval)
• AOC (1–3 Aircraft) BD10,000
• AOC (4-7 Aircraft) BD15,000
• AOC (8-11 Aircraft) BD 20,000
• AOC (12-15 Aircraft) BD 25,000
• AOC (16-19 Aircraft) BD 30,000
• AOC (20-23 Aircraft) BD 35,000
• AOC (24 and more) BD 40,000
• Annual renewal 50% of the license fees

License Information

• The capital of the company must not be less than BD 10,000,000.
• Fulfil and adhere to the commitments of airline operations.
• The license is valid for one year and renewal application must be submitted 2 months before expiry
• No scheduled international air services may operate from, to and across the territory of the State except by obtaining a permanent or temporary flight authorization.
• Adherence to the standards and regulatory requirements contained in the regulations under the Civil Aviation Law issued by virtue of Law No. 14 of 2013
• Fulfil all AOC and airworthiness requirement, Civil Aviation Law and Chicago Convention and its Annexes.
• Fulfil all aviation safety and security requirements.

Required Documents

- Feasibility, technical, economic and financial studies
- Fill application Form ATD/ATCL/OF04
- Memorandum of Association

Other Documents

- Chicago Convention and its Annexes.
- Civil Aviation Law No.14 of 2013
- Minister of Transport and Telecommunication Decree No. 12 of 2016 amending some provisions of the Regulation under the Civil Aviation Law.
- Minister of Transportation and Telecommunication Decree No. 25 of 2016 of CAA fees and departure fees.
- Minster of Transportation and Telecommunication Decree No. 21 of 2013 issuing the regulations under the Civil Aviation Law.

General Directorate Of Criminal Investigation (Pre) (5110-4)

Approval Name	Description	Estimated Time
Approval by General Directorate of Criminal Investigation	General Directorate of Criminal Investigation Approval for the Activity	7 Days

Fee Details (if any)

There is no Estimated Processing Time (Days) in this license.

License Information

- The applicant should not have a criminal record, unless they have been rehabilitated in criminal cases

Civil Aviation Affairs (Post) (5110-4)

Approval Name	Description	Estimated Time
Low Cost Carrier Services	Providing airport transport services for passengers, cargo and mail.	10 Days

Fee Details (if any)

• Application fees: BD 100 (non-refundable in cases where the application is not approved).
• Feasibility study fees: BD 1000 (deducted from the license fee in case of approval)
• AOC (1–3 Aircraft) BD10,000
• AOC (4-7 Aircraft) BD15,000
• AOC (8-11 Aircraft) BD 20,000
• AOC (12-15 Aircraft) BD 25,000
• AOC (16-19 Aircraft) BD 30,000
• AOC (20-23 Aircraft) BD 35,000
• AOC (24 and more) BD 40,000
• Annual renewal 50% of the license fees

License Information

• The capital of the company must not be less than BD 10,000,000.
• Fulfil and adhere to the commitments of airline operations.
• The license is valid for one year and renewal application must be submitted 2 months before expiry
• No scheduled international air services may operate from, to and across the territory of the State except by obtaining a permanent or temporary flight authorization.
• Adherence to the standards and regulatory requirements contained in the regulations under the Civil Aviation Law issued by virtue of Law No. 14 of 2013
• Fulfil all AOC and airworthiness requirement, Civil Aviation Law and Chicago Convention and its Annexes.
• Fulfil all aviation safety and security requirements.

Required Documents

- Feasibility, technical, economic and financial studies
- Fill application Form ATD/ATCL/OF04
- Memorandum of Association

Other Documents

- Chicago Convention and its Annexes.
- Civil Aviation Law No.14 of 2013
- Minister of Transport and Telecommunication Decree No. 12 of 2016 amending some provisions of the Regulation under the Civil Aviation Law.
- Minister of Transportation and Telecommunication Decree No. 25 of 2016 of CAA fees and departure fees.
- Minster of Transportation and Telecommunication Decree No. 21 of 2013 issuing the regulations under the Civil Aviation Law.

Municipality Affairs (Post) (5110-4)

Approval Name	Description	Estimated Time
Site Approval for Transportation and Logistics Activities	Municipality Approval for the Commercial Registration address or the site in which the Activity will be practiced	3 Days

Fee Details (if any)

10

License Information

General Conditions:
1. Size of shop/premises must be sufficient for the activity
2. Businesses may not carry out the activity outside the boundaries of the shop/ premises
3. It is prohibited to display or store any items or equipment outside the shop / premises boundary without prior approval from the Municipality. In the event of non-compliance, the Ministry of Municipality Affairs has the right to take necessary action.
4. Maintain cleanliness of the site
5. Comply with the parking space regulations as per the Construction Regulatory Requirements

Activity Specific Conditions:
1. The commercial address of the Commercial Registration for this activity can an office address

Note: Uploading pictures of the site/shop may expedite the process of obtaining approval

Required Documents

- Lease agreement (after obtaining the necessary approvals from other licensing entities)
- Pictures of site/shop (optional)
- Shop photos

Other Documents

- Cabinet's Decision (56) of the year 2022 regarding the Regulatory Requirements of Construction for various areas in the Kingdom of Bahrain

Civil Aviation Affairs (Final Site Inspection) (5110-4)

Approval Name	Description	Estimated Time
Low Cost Carrier Services	Providing airport transport services for passengers, cargo and mail.	10 Days

Fee Details (if any)

• Application fees: BD 100 (non-refundable in cases where the application is not approved).
• Feasibility study fees: BD 1000 (deducted from the license fee in case of approval)
• AOC (1–3 Aircraft) BD10,000
• AOC (4-7 Aircraft) BD15,000
• AOC (8-11 Aircraft) BD 20,000
• AOC (12-15 Aircraft) BD 25,000
• AOC (16-19 Aircraft) BD 30,000
• AOC (20-23 Aircraft) BD 35,000
• AOC (24 and more) BD 40,000
• Annual renewal 50% of the license fees

License Information

• The capital of the company must not be less than BD 10,000,000.
• Fulfil and adhere to the commitments of airline operations.
• The license is valid for one year and renewal application must be submitted 2 months before expiry
• No scheduled international air services may operate from, to and across the territory of the State except by obtaining a permanent or temporary flight authorization.
• Adherence to the standards and regulatory requirements contained in the regulations under the Civil Aviation Law issued by virtue of Law No. 14 of 2013
• Fulfil all AOC and airworthiness requirement, Civil Aviation Law and Chicago Convention and its Annexes.
• Fulfil all aviation safety and security requirements.

Required Documents

- Feasibility, technical, economic and financial studies
- Fill application Form ATD/ATCL/OF04
- Memorandum of Association

Other Documents

- Chicago Convention and its Annexes.
- Civil Aviation Law No.14 of 2013
- Minister of Transport and Telecommunication Decree No. 12 of 2016 amending some provisions of the Regulation under the Civil Aviation Law.
- Minister of Transportation and Telecommunication Decree No. 25 of 2016 of CAA fees and departure fees.
- Minster of Transportation and Telecommunication Decree No. 21 of 2013 issuing the regulations under the Civil Aviation Law.

Transportation and storage

ISIC4	Business activity
5110-5	Passenger Air Transport - Air Taxi Services

Description

Providing airport transport services with small aircraft not exceeding 30 seats and operating on low density route

Business Requirements

✔ Age

18 and above

✔ Allowed for Nationalities

Bahraini 100%	GCC 100%
American 100%	Singaporean 100%
Icelander 100%	Liechtenstein er 100%
Norwegian 100%	Swiss 100%

Foreign Allowed up to 100%

Legal Type

It is allowed to register according to the legal forms mentioned below

Allowed for Individual Commercial Registration (ICR) : Yes

Allowed for Company Commercial Registration (CCR) : Yes

- Bahrain Shareholding Company (Public)
- With Limited Liability Company
- Branch of a Foreign Company
- Bahrain Shareholding Company (Closed)
- Partnership Company
- Simple Commandite Company
- Commandite By Shares Company
- Non Profit Company

Required Step of Licenses and Approvals

Ministry / Directorate	License / Approval Requirements	Approval Type
Civil Aviation Affairs	Air Taxi Services	Pre
General Directorate Of Criminal Investigation	Approval by General Directorate of Criminal Investigation	Pre
Municipality Affairs	Site Approval for Transportation and Logistics Activities	Post
Civil Aviation Affairs	Air Taxi Services	Post
Civil Aviation Affairs	Air Taxi Services	Final Site Inspection

Civil Aviation Affairs (Pre) (5110-5)

Approval Name	Description	Estimated Time
Air Taxi Services	Providing airport transport services with small aircraft not exceeding 30 seats and operating on low density route.	10 Days

Fee Details (if any)

• Application fees: BD 100 (non-refundable in cases where the application is not approved).
• Visibility study: BD 1,000 (deducted from the license fee in case of approval).
• Issue AOC : BD 5,000.
• Annual renewal fees 50% of the license fees.

License Information

• Capital of the company should not be less than BD2,000,000
• The license is valid for one year and renewal application must be submitted 2 months before expiry
• Fulfill and adhere to airline operations
• No scheduled international air services may operate from, to, and across the territory of the country except by obtaining permanent or temporary flight authorization.
• Adherence to the standards and regulatory requirements contained in the regulations under the Civil Aviation Law issued by virtue of Law No. 14 of 2013
• Fulfil all AOC and airworthiness requirement, Civil Aviation Law and Chicago Convention and its Annexes
• Fulfil all aviation safety and security requirements

Required Documents

- Feasibility, technical, economic and financial studies
- Fill application Form ATD/ATCL/OF04
- Memorandum of Association

Other Documents

- Chicago Convention and its Annexes.
- Civil Aviation Law No.14 of 2013
- Minister of Transportation and Telecommunication Decree No. 25 of 2016 of CAA fees and departure fees.
- Minster of Transportation and Telecommunication Decree No. 21 of 2013 issuing the regulations under the Civil Aviation Law.

General Directorate Of Criminal Investigation (Pre) (5110-5)

Approval Name	Description	Estimated Time
Approval by General Directorate of Criminal Investigation	General Directorate of Criminal Investigation Approval for the Activity	7 Days

Fee Details (if any)

There is no Estimated Processing Time (Days) in this license.

License Information

- The applicant should not have a criminal record, unless they have been rehabilitated in criminal cases

Municipality Affairs (Post) (5110-5)

Approval Name	Description	Estimated Time
Site Approval for Transportation and Logistics Activities	Municipality Approval for the Commercial Registration address or the site in which the Activity will be practiced	3 Days

Fee Details (if any)

10

License Information

General Conditions:
1. Size of shop/premises must be sufficient for the activity
2. Businesses may not carry out the activity outside the boundaries of the shop/ premises
3. It is prohibited to display or store any items or equipment outside the shop / premises boundary without prior approval from the Municipality. In the event of non-compliance, the Ministry of Municipality Affairs has the right to take necessary action.
4. Maintain cleanliness of the site
5. Comply with the parking space regulations as per the Construction Regulatory Requirements

Activity Specific Conditions:
1. The commercial address of the Commercial Registration for this activity can an office address

Note: Uploading pictures of the site/shop may expedite the process of obtaining approval

Required Documents

- Lease agreement (after obtaining the necessary approvals from other licensing entities)
- Pictures of site/shop (optional)
- Shop photos

Other Documents

- Cabinet's Decision (56) of the year 2022 regarding the Regulatory Requirements of Construction for various areas in the Kingdom of Bahrain

Civil Aviation Affairs (Post) (5110-5)

Approval Name	Description	Estimated Time
Air Taxi Services	Providing airport transport services with small aircraft not exceeding 30 seats and operating on low density route.	10 Days

Fee Details (if any)

• Application fees: BD 100 (non-refundable in cases where the application is not approved).
• Visibility study: BD 1,000 (deducted from the license fee in case of approval).
• Issue AOC : BD 5,000.
• Annual renewal fees 50% of the license fees.

License Information

• Capital of the company should not be less than BD2,000,000
• The license is valid for one year and renewal application must be submitted 2 months before expiry
• Fulfill and adhere to airline operations
• No scheduled international air services may operate from, to, and across the territory of the country except by obtaining permanent or temporary flight authorization.
• Adherence to the standards and regulatory requirements contained in the regulations under the Civil Aviation Law issued by virtue of Law No. 14 of 2013
• Fulfil all AOC and airworthiness requirement, Civil Aviation Law and Chicago Convention and its Annexes
• Fulfil all aviation safety and security requirements

Required Documents

- Feasibility, technical, economic and financial studies
- Fill application Form ATD/ATCL/OF04
- Memorandum of Association

Other Documents

- Chicago Convention and its Annexes.
- Civil Aviation Law No.14 of 2013
- Minister of Transportation and Telecommunication Decree No. 25 of 2016 of CAA fees and departure fees.
- Minster of Transportation and Telecommunication Decree No. 21 of 2013 issuing the regulations under the Civil Aviation Law.

Civil Aviation Affairs (Final Site Inspection) (5110-5)

Approval Name	Description	Estimated Time
Air Taxi Services	Providing airport transport services with small aircraft not exceeding 30 seats and operating on low density route.	10 Days

Fee Details (if any)

• Application fees: BD 100 (non-refundable in cases where the application is not approved).
• Visibility study: BD 1,000 (deducted from the license fee in case of approval).
• Issue AOC : BD 5,000.
• Annual renewal fees 50% of the license fees.

License Information

• Capital of the company should not be less than BD2,000,000
• The license is valid for one year and renewal application must be submitted 2 months before expiry
• Fulfill and adhere to airline operations
• No scheduled international air services may operate from, to, and across the territory of the country except by obtaining permanent or temporary flight authorization.
• Adherence to the standards and regulatory requirements contained in the regulations under the Civil Aviation Law issued by virtue of Law No. 14 of 2013
• Fulfil all AOC and airworthiness requirement, Civil Aviation Law and Chicago Convention and its Annexes
• Fulfil all aviation safety and security requirements

Required Documents

- Feasibility, technical, economic and financial studies
- Fill application Form ATD/ATCL/OF04
- Memorandum of Association

Other Documents

- Chicago Convention and its Annexes.
- Civil Aviation Law No.14 of 2013
- Minister of Transportation and Telecommunication Decree No. 25 of 2016 of CAA fees and departure fees.
- Minster of Transportation and Telecommunication Decree No. 21 of 2013 issuing the regulations under the Civil Aviation Law.

Transportation and storage

ISIC4	Business activity
5120-1	Freight air transport - Schedule cargo airline services

Description

Providing airport transport services for cargo according to a published timetable

Business Requirements

Age

18 and above

Allowed for Nationalities

Bahraini 100%	GCC 100%
American 100%	Singaporean 100%
Icelander 100%	Liechtensteiner 100%
Norwegian 100%	Swiss 100%

Foreign Allowed up to 100%

Legal Type

It is allowed to register according to the legal forms mentioned below

Allowed for Individual Commercial Registration (ICR) : Yes

Allowed for Company Commercial Registration (CCR) : Yes

- Bahrain Shareholding Company (Public)
- With Limited Liability Company
- Branch of a Foreign Company
- Bahrain Shareholding Company (Closed)
- Partnership Company
- Simple Commandite Company
- Commandite By Shares Company
- Non Profit Company

Required Step of Licenses and Approvals

Ministry / Directorate	License / Approval Requirements	Approval Type
Civil Aviation Affairs	Schedule Cargo Airline Service	Pre
General Directorate Of Criminal Investigation	Approval by General Directorate of Criminal Investigation	Pre
Municipality Affairs	Site Approval for Transportation and Logistics Activities	Post
Civil Aviation Affairs	Schedule Cargo Airline Service	Post
Civil Aviation Affairs	Schedule Cargo Airline Service	Final Site Inspection

Civil Aviation Affairs (Pre) (5120-1)

Approval Name	Description	Estimated Time
Schedule Cargo Airline Service	Providing airport transport services for cargo according to a published timetable.	10 Days

Fee Details (if any)

• Application fees: BD 100 (non-refundable in cases where the application is not approved).
• Visibility study: BD 1,000 (deducted from the license fee in case of approval).
• AOC (1–3 Aircraft) BD10,000
• AOC (4-7 Aircraft) BD15,000
• AOC (8-11 Aircraft) BD 20,000
• AOC (12-15 Aircraft) BD 25,000
• AOC (16-19 Aircraft) BD 30,000
• AOC (20-23 Aircraft) BD 35,000
• AOC (24 and more) BD 40,000
• Annual renewal 50% of the license fees.
• Changing activity BD1,000.

License Information

• Capital of the company should not be less than BD10,000,000.
• Fulfil and adhere to the commitments of airline operations.
• The license is valid for one year and renewal application must be submitted 2 months before expiry
• No scheduled international air services may operate from, to and across the territory of the State except by obtaining a permanent or temporary flight authorization.
• requirements
• Fulfil all AOC and airworthiness requirement, Civil Aviation Law and Chicago Convention and its Annexes.
• Fulfil all aviation safety and security requirements.

Required Documents

- Feasibility, technical, economic and financial studies
- Fill application Form ATD/ATCL/OF04
- Memorandum of Association

Other Documents

- Chicago Convention and its Annexes.
- Civil Aviation Law No.14 of 2013
- Minister of Transport and Telecommunication Decree No. 12 of 2016 amending some provisions of the Regulation under the Civil Aviation Law.
- Minister of Transportation and Telecommunication Decree No. 25 of 2016 of CAA fees and departure fees.
- Minster of Transportation and Telecommunication Decree No. 21 of 2013 issuing the regulations under the Civil Aviation Law.

General Directorate Of Criminal Investigation (Pre) (5120-1)

Approval Name	Description	Estimated Time
Approval by General Directorate of Criminal Investigation	General Directorate of Criminal Investigation Approval for the Activity	7 Days

Fee Details (if any)

There is no Estimated Processing Time (Days) in this license.

License Information

- The applicant should not have a criminal record, unless they have been rehabilitated in criminal cases

Municipality Affairs (Post) (5120-1)

Approval Name	Description	Estimated Time
Site Approval for Transportation and Logistics Activities	Municipality Approval for the Commercial Registration address or the site in which the Activity will be practiced	3 Days

Fee Details (if any)

10

License Information

General Conditions:
1. Size of shop/premises must be sufficient for the activity
2. Businesses may not carry out the activity outside the boundaries of the shop/ premises
3. It is prohibited to display or store any items or equipment outside the shop / premises boundary without prior approval from the Municipality. In the event of non-compliance, the Ministry of Municipality Affairs has the right to take necessary action.
4. Maintain cleanliness of the site
5. Comply with the parking space regulations as per the Construction Regulatory Requirements

Activity Specific Conditions:
1. The commercial address of the Commercial Registration for this activity can an office address

Note: Uploading pictures of the site/shop may expedite the process of obtaining approval

Required Documents

- Lease agreement (after obtaining the necessary approvals from other licensing entities)
- Pictures of site/shop (optional)
- Shop photos

Other Documents

- Cabinet's Decision (56) of the year 2022 regarding the Regulatory Requirements of Construction for various areas in the Kingdom of Bahrain

Civil Aviation Affairs (Post) (5120-1)

Approval Name	Description	Estimated Time
Schedule Cargo Airline Service	Providing airport transport services for cargo according to a published timetable.	10 Days

Fee Details (if any)

• Application fees: BD 100 (non-refundable in cases where the application is not approved).
• Visibility study: BD 1,000 (deducted from the license fee in case of approval).
• AOC (1–3 Aircraft) BD10,000
• AOC (4-7 Aircraft) BD15,000
• AOC (8-11 Aircraft) BD 20,000
• AOC (12-15 Aircraft) BD 25,000
• AOC (16-19 Aircraft) BD 30,000
• AOC (20-23 Aircraft) BD 35,000
• AOC (24 and more) BD 40,000
• Annual renewal 50% of the license fees.
• Changing activity BD1,000.

License Information

• Capital of the company should not be less than BD10,000,000.
• Fulfil and adhere to the commitments of airline operations.
• The license is valid for one year and renewal application must be submitted 2 months before expiry
• No scheduled international air services may operate from, to and across the territory of the State except by obtaining a permanent or temporary flight authorization.
• requirements
• Fulfil all AOC and airworthiness requirement, Civil Aviation Law and Chicago Convention and its Annexes.
• Fulfil all aviation safety and security requirements.

Required Documents

- Feasibility, technical, economic and financial studies
- Fill application Form ATD/ATCL/OF04
- Memorandum of Association

Other Documents

- Chicago Convention and its Annexes.
- Civil Aviation Law No.14 of 2013
- Minister of Transport and Telecommunication Decree No. 12 of 2016 amending some provisions of the Regulation under the Civil Aviation Law.
- Minister of Transportation and Telecommunication Decree No. 25 of 2016 of CAA fees and departure fees.
- Minster of Transportation and Telecommunication Decree No. 21 of 2013 issuing the regulations under the Civil Aviation Law.

Civil Aviation Affairs (Final Site Inspection) (5120-1)

Approval Name	Description	Estimated Time
Schedule Cargo Airline Service	Providing airport transport services for cargo according to a published timetable.	10 Days

Fee Details (if any)

• Application fees: BD 100 (non-refundable in cases where the application is not approved).
• Visibility study: BD 1,000 (deducted from the license fee in case of approval).
• AOC (1–3 Aircraft) BD10,000
• AOC (4-7 Aircraft) BD15,000
• AOC (8-11 Aircraft) BD 20,000
• AOC (12-15 Aircraft) BD 25,000
• AOC (16-19 Aircraft) BD 30,000
• AOC (20-23 Aircraft) BD 35,000
• AOC (24 and more) BD 40,000
• Annual renewal 50% of the license fees.
• Changing activity BD1,000.

License Information

• Capital of the company should not be less than BD10,000,000.
• Fulfil and adhere to the commitments of airline operations.
• The license is valid for one year and renewal application must be submitted 2 months before expiry
• No scheduled international air services may operate from, to and across the territory of the State except by obtaining a permanent or temporary flight authorization.
• requirements
• Fulfil all AOC and airworthiness requirement, Civil Aviation Law and Chicago Convention and its Annexes.
• Fulfil all aviation safety and security requirements.

Required Documents

- Feasibility, technical, economic and financial studies
- Fill application Form ATD/ATCL/OF04
- Memorandum of Association

Other Documents

- Chicago Convention and its Annexes.
- Civil Aviation Law No.14 of 2013
- Minister of Transport and Telecommunication Decree No. 12 of 2016 amending some provisions of the Regulation under the Civil Aviation Law.
- Minister of Transportation and Telecommunication Decree No. 25 of 2016 of CAA fees and departure fees.
- Minster of Transportation and Telecommunication Decree No. 21 of 2013 issuing the regulations under the Civil Aviation Law.

Transportation and storage

ISIC4	Business activity
5120-2	Freight air transport - Non schedule cargo operators services

Description

Providing nonscheduled air transport services for cargo

Business Requirements

Age

18 and above

Allowed for Nationalities

Bahraini 100%	GCC 100%
American 100%	Singaporean 100%
Icelander 100%	Liechtensteiner 100%
Norwegian 100%	Swiss 100%

Foreign Allowed up to 100%

Legal Type

It is allowed to register according to the legal forms mentioned below

Allowed for Individual Commercial Registration (ICR) : Yes

Allowed for Company Commercial Registration (CCR) : Yes

- Bahrain Shareholding Company (Public)
- With Limited Liability Company
- Branch of a Foreign Company
- Bahrain Shareholding Company (Closed)
- Partnership Company
- Simple Commandite Company
- Commandite By Shares Company
- Non Profit Company

Required Step of Licenses and Approvals

Ministry / Directorate	License / Approval Requirements	Approval Type
Civil Aviation Affairs	Non Schdule Cargo Operators Services	Pre
General Directorate Of Criminal Investigation	Approval by General Directorate of Criminal Investigation	Pre
Civil Aviation Affairs	Non Schdule Cargo Operators Services	Post
Municipality Affairs	Site Approval for Transportation and Logistics Activities	Post
Civil Aviation Affairs	Non Schdule Cargo Operators Services	Final Site Inspection

Civil Aviation Affairs (Pre) (5120-2)

Approval Name	Description	Estimated Time
Non Schdule Cargo Operators Services	Providing nonscheduled air transport services for cargo.	10 Days

Fee Details (if any)

• Application fees: BD 100 (non-refundable in cases where the application is not approved).
• Visibility study: BD 1,000 (deducted from the license fee in case of approval).
• Issue AOC : BD 5,000.
• Annual renewal 50% of the license fees.

License Information

• The capital of the company must not be less than BD20,000,000.
• Fulfil and adhere to the commitments of airline operations.
• The license is valid for one year and renewal application must be submitted 2 months before expiry
• No scheduled international air services may operate from, to and across the territory of the State except by obtaining a permanent or temporary flight authorization.
• Adherence to the standards and regulatory requirements contained in the regulations under the Civil Aviation Law issued by virtue of Law No. 14 of 2013
• Fulfil all AOC and airworthiness requirement, Civil Aviation Law and Chicago Convention and its Annexes.
• Fulfil all aviation safety and security requirements.

Required Documents

- Feasibility, technical, economic and financial studies
- Fill application Form ATD/ATCL/OF04
- Memorandum of Association

Other Documents

- Chicago Convention and its Annexes.
- Civil Aviation Law No.14 of 2013
- Minister of Transport and Telecommunication Decree No. 12 of 2016 amending some provisions of the Regulation under the Civil Aviation Law.
- Minister of Transportation and Telecommunication Decree No. 25 of 2016 of CAA fees and departure fees.
- Minster of Transportation and Telecommunication Decree No. 21 of 2013 issuing the regulations under the Civil Aviation Law.

General Directorate Of Criminal Investigation (Pre) (5120-2)

Approval Name	Description	Estimated Time
Approval by General Directorate of Criminal Investigation	General Directorate of Criminal Investigation Approval for the Activity	7 Days

Fee Details (if any)

There is no Estimated Processing Time (Days) in this license.

License Information

- The applicant should not have a criminal record, unless they have been rehabilitated in criminal cases

Civil Aviation Affairs (Post) (5120-2)

Approval Name	Description	Estimated Time
Non Schdule Cargo Operators Services	Providing nonscheduled air transport services for cargo.	10 Days

Fee Details (if any)

• Application fees: BD 100 (non-refundable in cases where the application is not approved).
• Visibility study: BD 1,000 (deducted from the license fee in case of approval).
• Issue AOC : BD 5,000.
• Annual renewal 50% of the license fees.

License Information

• The capital of the company must not be less than BD20,000,000.
• Fulfil and adhere to the commitments of airline operations.
• The license is valid for one year and renewal application must be submitted 2 months before expiry
• No scheduled international air services may operate from, to and across the territory of the State except by obtaining a permanent or temporary flight authorization.
• Adherence to the standards and regulatory requirements contained in the regulations under the Civil Aviation Law issued by virtue of Law No. 14 of 2013
• Fulfil all AOC and airworthiness requirement, Civil Aviation Law and Chicago Convention and its Annexes.
• Fulfil all aviation safety and security requirements.

Required Documents

- Feasibility, technical, economic and financial studies
- Fill application Form ATD/ATCL/OF04
- Memorandum of Association

Other Documents

- Chicago Convention and its Annexes.
- Civil Aviation Law No.14 of 2013
- Minister of Transport and Telecommunication Decree No. 12 of 2016 amending some provisions of the Regulation under the Civil Aviation Law.
- Minister of Transportation and Telecommunication Decree No. 25 of 2016 of CAA fees and departure fees.
- Minster of Transportation and Telecommunication Decree No. 21 of 2013 issuing the regulations under the Civil Aviation Law.

Municipality Affairs (Post) (5120-2)

Approval Name	Description	Estimated Time
Site Approval for Transportation and Logistics Activities	Municipality Approval for the Commercial Registration address or the site in which the Activity will be practiced	3 Days

Fee Details (if any)

10

License Information

General Conditions:
1. Size of shop/premises must be sufficient for the activity
2. Businesses may not carry out the activity outside the boundaries of the shop/ premises
3. It is prohibited to display or store any items or equipment outside the shop / premises boundary without prior approval from the Municipality. In the event of non-compliance, the Ministry of Municipality Affairs has the right to take necessary action.
4. Maintain cleanliness of the site
5. Comply with the parking space regulations as per the Construction Regulatory Requirements

Activity Specific Conditions:
1. The commercial address of the Commercial Registration for this activity can an office address

Note: Uploading pictures of the site/shop may expedite the process of obtaining approval

Required Documents

- Lease agreement (after obtaining the necessary approvals from other licensing entities)
- Pictures of site/shop (optional)
- Shop photos

Other Documents

- Cabinet's Decision (56) of the year 2022 regarding the Regulatory Requirements of Construction for various areas in the Kingdom of Bahrain

Civil Aviation Affairs (Final Site Inspection) (5120-2)

Approval Name	Description	Estimated Time
Non Schdule Cargo Operators Services	Providing nonscheduled air transport services for cargo.	10 Days

Fee Details (if any)

• Application fees: BD 100 (non-refundable in cases where the application is not approved).
• Visibility study: BD 1,000 (deducted from the license fee in case of approval).
• Issue AOC : BD 5,000.
• Annual renewal 50% of the license fees.

License Information

• The capital of the company must not be less than BD20,000,000.
• Fulfil and adhere to the commitments of airline operations.
• The license is valid for one year and renewal application must be submitted 2 months before expiry
• No scheduled international air services may operate from, to and across the territory of the State except by obtaining a permanent or temporary flight authorization.
• Adherence to the standards and regulatory requirements contained in the regulations under the Civil Aviation Law issued by virtue of Law No. 14 of 2013
• Fulfil all AOC and airworthiness requirement, Civil Aviation Law and Chicago Convention and its Annexes.
• Fulfil all aviation safety and security requirements.

Required Documents

- Feasibility, technical, economic and financial studies
- Fill application Form ATD/ATCL/OF04
- Memorandum of Association

Other Documents

- Chicago Convention and its Annexes.
- Civil Aviation Law No.14 of 2013
- Minister of Transport and Telecommunication Decree No. 12 of 2016 amending some provisions of the Regulation under the Civil Aviation Law.
- Minister of Transportation and Telecommunication Decree No. 25 of 2016 of CAA fees and departure fees.
- Minster of Transportation and Telecommunication Decree No. 21 of 2013 issuing the regulations under the Civil Aviation Law.

Transportation and storage

ISIC4	Business activity
521-1	Warehousing and storage

Description

This includes:
- operation of storage and warehouse facilities for all kind of goods:
· operation of grain silos, general merchandise warehouses, refrigerated warehouses, storage tanks etc.
- storage of goods in foreign trade zones
- blast freezing

Business Requirements

Age

18 and above

Allowed for Nationalities

Bahraini 100%	GCC 100%
American 100%	Singaporean 100%
Icelander 100%	Liechtenstein er 100%
Norwegian 100%	Swiss 100%

Foreign Allowed up to 100%

Legal Type

It is allowed to register according to the legal forms mentioned below

Allowed for Individual Commercial Registration (ICR) : Yes

Allowed for Company Commercial Registration (CCR) : Yes

- Bahrain Shareholding Company (Public)
- With Limited Liability Company
- Branch of a Foreign Company
- Bahrain Shareholding Company (Closed)
- Partnership Company
- Simple Commandite Company
- Commandite By Shares Company
- Non Profit Company

Required Step of Licenses and Approvals

Ministry / Directorate	License / Approval Requirements	Approval Type
Municipality Affairs	Site Approval for warehousing and storage	Post

Municipality Affairs (Post) (521-1)

Approval Name	Description	Estimated Time
Site Approval for warehousing and storage	Municipality Approval for the Commercial Registration address or the site in which the Activity will be practiced	3 Days

Fee Details (if any)

10

License Information

General Conditions:
1. Size of shop/premises must be sufficient for the activity
2. Businesses may not carry out the activity outside the boundaries of the shop/ premises
3. It is prohibited to display or store any items or equipment outside the shop / premises boundary without prior approval from the Municipality. In the event of non-compliance, the Ministry of Municipality Affairs has the right to take necessary action.
4. Maintain cleanliness of the site
5. Comply with the parking space regulations as per the Construction Regulatory Requirements

Activity Specific Conditions:
1. The commercial address of the Commercial Registration for this activity can an office address provided the availability of warehousing units in Industrial and/or service areas

Note: Uploading pictures of the site/shop may expedite the process of obtaining approval

Required Documents

- Lease agreement (after obtaining the necessary approvals from other licensing entities)
- Shop photos

Other Documents

- Cabinet's Decision (56) of the year 2022 regarding the Regulatory Requirements of Construction for various areas in the Kingdom of Bahrain

Transportation and storage

ISIC4	Business activity
521-2	Warehousing and storage - Storage of Food Items

Description

This license/options is required if food products will be stored

Business Requirements

Age

18 and above

Allowed for Nationalities

Bahraini 100%	GCC 100%
American 100%	Singaporean 100%
Icelander 100%	Liechtensteiner 100%
Norwegian 100%	Swiss 100%

Foreign Allowed up to 100%

Legal Type

It is allowed to register according to the legal forms mentioned below

Allowed for Individual Commercial Registration (ICR) : Yes

Allowed for Company Commercial Registration (CCR) : Yes

- Bahrain Shareholding Company (Public)
- With Limited Liability Company
- Branch of a Foreign Company
- Bahrain Shareholding Company (Closed)
- Partnership Company
- Simple Commandite Company
- Commandite By Shares Company
- Non Profit Company

Required Step of Licenses and Approvals

Ministry / Directorate	License / Approval Requirements	Approval Type
Ministry of Health	Health approval for Storage of Food Items	Post
Municipality Affairs	Site Approval for warehousing and storage	Post

Ministry of Health (Post) (521-2)

Approval Name	Description	Estimated Time
Health approval for Storage of Food Items	Health approval for Storage of Food Items	5 Days

Fee Details (if any)

150 BD

License Information

Please refer to the “Activity License Checklist – Ministry of Health“ document under the “other downloadable documents” section for the licensing requirements.

For faster processing, you may engage any of the licensed engineering offices listed under the “Service Providers Directory” to provide drawings/layout of the premises, which should then be attached to the application that you will submit online. To access the list of licensed engineering offices follow the below steps:
1- Click on “Public Service” on the main navigation bar
2- Click on “Service Providers Directory”
3- Click on “Click Here” button adjacent to “List of Engineering Offices for Ministry of Health related activities”

Required Documents

- Drawings/ layout of premises (approved by an engineering office).
- Requirement Checklist (Stamped by an engineering office)
- drawings/layouts of the premises

Other Documents

- Activity License Checklist - Ministry of Health
- Operational Requirements for Storage of Food Items

Municipality Affairs (Post) (521-2)

Approval Name	Description	Estimated Time
Site Approval for warehousing and storage	Municipality Approval for the Commercial Registration address or the site in which the Activity will be practiced	3 Days

Fee Details (if any)

10

License Information

General Conditions:
1. Size of shop/premises must be sufficient for the activity
2. Businesses may not carry out the activity outside the boundaries of the shop/ premises
3. It is prohibited to display or store any items or equipment outside the shop / premises boundary without prior approval from the Municipality. In the event of non-compliance, the Ministry of Municipality Affairs has the right to take necessary action.
4. Maintain cleanliness of the site
5. Comply with the parking space regulations as per the Construction Regulatory Requirements

Activity Specific Conditions:
1. The commercial address of the Commercial Registration for this activity can an office address provided the availability of warehousing units in Industrial and/or service areas

Note: Uploading pictures of the site/shop may expedite the process of obtaining approval

Required Documents

- Lease agreement (after obtaining the necessary approvals from other licensing entities)
- Shop photos

Other Documents

- Cabinet's Decision (56) of the year 2022 regarding the Regulatory Requirements of Construction for various areas in the Kingdom of Bahrain

Transportation and storage

ISIC4	Business activity
521-3	Warehousing and storage - Storage of Pharmaceutical products

Description

This license/option is required if Pharmaceutical products will be stored

Business Requirements

✔ Age

18 and above

✔ Allowed for Nationalities

Bahraini 100%	GCC 100%
American 100%	Singaporean 100%
Icelander 100%	Liechtenstein er 100%
Norwegian 100%	Swiss 100%

Foreign Allowed up to 100%

Legal Type

It is allowed to register according to the legal forms mentioned below

Allowed for Individual Commercial Registration (ICR) : Yes

Allowed for Company Commercial Registration (CCR) : Yes

- Bahrain Shareholding Company (Public)
- With Limited Liability Company
- Branch of a Foreign Company
- Bahrain Shareholding Company (Closed)
- Partnership Company
- Simple Commandite Company
- Commandite By Shares Company
- Non Profit Company

Required Step of Licenses and Approvals

Ministry / Directorate	License / Approval Requirements	Approval Type
NHRA-Pharmatical Products Regulation Office	Storage of Pharmaceutical Products - Pre Approval	Pre
Municipality Affairs	Site Approval for warehousing and storage	Post
NHRA-Pharmatical Products Regulation Office	Storage of Pharmaceutical Products - Pre Approval	Final Site Inspection

NHRA-Pharmatical Products Regulation Office (Pre) (521-3)

Approval Name	Description	Estimated Time
Storage of Pharmaceutical Products - Pre Approval	1- The license is required if the investor intends to start up a warehouse to store medicines & pharmaceutical products and if wants to start up a wholesale only without retail sale outlet. 2- can be an agent if will import pharmaceutical products from outside Bahrain.	5 Days

Fee Details (if any)

Application Fee 50 BHD

License Information

1- Requirements:
• Kindly refer to the checklist.

2- The application form to apply for this license can be obtained from: (www.nhra.bh)

3- The license is subject to Decree No (18) of 1997 with Respect to the Practice of Pharmacists and Pharmaceutical Centers and the amendments made to this law under Decree Law (20) of 2015, & Resolution (63) for the Year 2019, to Issue the Regulation of the Requirements and Procedures for the Practice of Pharmacy Professions, Licensing of

Pharmaceutical Centers, Medicines and Pharmaceutical Products Factories, and Pharmaceutical Facilities

4- You may visit NHRA's website for the laws applicable to these licenses:

Other Documents

- Decree No (18) of 1997 with Respect to the Practice of Pharmacists and Pharmaceutical Centers and the amendments made to this law under Decree Law (20) of 2015
- Resolution (63) for the Year 2019, to Issue the Regulation of the Requirements and Procedures for the Practice of Pharmacy Professions, Licensing of Pharmaceutical Centers, Medicines and Pharmaceutical Products Factories, and Pharmaceutical Facilities.

Municipality Affairs (Post) (521-3)

Approval Name	Description	Estimated Time
Site Approval for warehousing and storage	Municipality Approval for the Commercial Registration address or the site in which the Activity will be practiced	3 Days

Fee Details (if any)

10

License Information

General Conditions:
1. Size of shop/premises must be sufficient for the activity
2. Businesses may not carry out the activity outside the boundaries of the shop/ premises
3. It is prohibited to display or store any items or equipment outside the shop / premises boundary without prior approval from the Municipality. In the event of non-compliance, the Ministry of Municipality Affairs has the right to take necessary action.
4. Maintain cleanliness of the site
5. Comply with the parking space regulations as per the Construction Regulatory Requirements

Activity Specific Conditions:
1. The commercial address of the Commercial Registration for this activity can an office address provided the availability of warehousing units in Industrial and/or service areas

Note: Uploading pictures of the site/shop may expedite the process of obtaining approval

Required Documents

- Lease agreement (after obtaining the necessary approvals from other licensing entities)
- Shop photos

Other Documents

- Cabinet's Decision (56) of the year 2022 regarding the Regulatory Requirements of Construction for various areas in the Kingdom of Bahrain

NHRA-Pharmatical Products Regulation Office (Final Site Inspection) (521-3)

Approval Name	Description	Estimated Time
Storage of Pharmaceutical Products - Pre Approval	1- The license is required if the investor intends to start up a warehouse to store medicines & pharmaceutical products and if wants to start up a wholesale only without retail sale outlet. 2- can be an agent if will import pharmaceutical products from outside Bahrain.	5 Days

Fee Details (if any)

Application Fee 50 BHD

License Information

1- Requirements:
• Kindly refer to the checklist.

2- The application form to apply for this license can be obtained from: (www.nhra.bh)

3- The license is subject to Decree No (18) of 1997 with Respect to the Practice of Pharmacists and Pharmaceutical Centers and the amendments made to this law under

Decree Law (20) of 2015, & Resolution (63) for the Year 2019, to Issue the Regulation of the Requirements and Procedures for the Practice of Pharmacy Professions, Licensing of Pharmaceutical Centers, Medicines and Pharmaceutical Products Factories, and Pharmaceutical Facilities

4- You may visit NHRA's website for the laws applicable to these licenses:

Other Documents

- Decree No (18) of 1997 with Respect to the Practice of Pharmacists and Pharmaceutical Centers and the amendments made to this law under Decree Law (20) of 2015
- Resolution (63) for the Year 2019, to Issue the Regulation of the Requirements and Procedures for the Practice of Pharmacy Professions, Licensing of Pharmaceutical Centers, Medicines and Pharmaceutical Products Factories, and Pharmaceutical Facilities.

Transportation and storage

ISIC4	Business activity
521-4	Warehousing and storage - Storage of Medical Devices

Description

This activity includes storing medical devices and supplies

Business Requirements

✔ Age

18 and above

✔ Allowed for Nationalities

Bahraini 100%	GCC 100%
American 100%	Singaporean 100%
Icelander 100%	Liechtensteiner 100%
Norwegian 100%	Swiss 100%

Foreign Allowed up to 100%

Legal Type

It is allowed to register according to the legal forms mentioned below

Allowed for Individual Commercial Registration (ICR) : Yes

Allowed for Company Commercial Registration (CCR) : Yes

- Bahrain Shareholding Company (Public)
- With Limited Liability Company
- Branch of a Foreign Company
- Bahrain Shareholding Company (Closed)
- Partnership Company
- Simple Commandite Company
- Commandite By Shares Company
- Non Profit Company

Required Step of Licenses and Approvals

Ministry / Directorate	License / Approval Requirements	Approval Type
NHRA- Medical Devices Regulation Section	License of storing medical devices and supplies - Pre Approval	Pre
Municipality Affairs	Site Approval for warehousing and storage	Post
NHRA- Medical Devices Regulation Section	License of storing medical devices and supplies - Final Approval	Final Site Inspection

NHRA- Medical Devices Regulation Section (Pre) (521-4)

Approval Name	Description	Estimated Time
License of storing medical devices and supplies - Pre Approval	License of storing medical devices and supplies - Pre Approval	3 Days

Fee Details (if any)

(24)https://www.nhra.bh/Departments/MDR/MediaHandler/GenericHandler/documents/departments/MDR/Circulars/Resolution%20No.%20

License Information

Requirements for obtaining initial approval :
1- To Provide a local policy and procedure guideline which includes (importing,distribution ,complains), and logging all of them in a tracking system.

2- To comply with the medical storing facility guidelines of the NHRA, which may be found in the 'other documents' section.

Requirements after obtaining the license :
1- To comply with the guidelines of NHRA in the other downloadable documents section.
2- To keep track of all the local policies and procedures.
Note: this activity can't be at the same address as other activities that serve medical services to patients.

Required Documents

- 50 bd application fees payment receipt
- Captures from Storing Facility system (Software).
- Copy of storage facility internal policies.
- List of equipment and vehicles to be used for medical devices transportation
- List of equipment and vehicles to be used inside the storing facility.
- Medical devices storage facility application form
- Technical drawing showing the following : (receiving area, storage area, delivery area, quarantine area).

Other Documents

- Medical Devices Storing Facility Registration guideline
- Medical Devices Storing Facility Requirements checklist

Municipality Affairs (Post) (521-4)

Approval Name	Description	Estimated Time
Site Approval for warehousing and storage	Municipality Approval for the Commercial Registration address or the site in which the Activity will be practiced	3 Days

Fee Details (if any)

10

License Information

General Conditions:
1. Size of shop/premises must be sufficient for the activity
2. Businesses may not carry out the activity outside the boundaries of the shop/ premises
3. It is prohibited to display or store any items or equipment outside the shop / premises boundary without prior approval from the Municipality. In the event of non-compliance, the Ministry of Municipality Affairs has the right to take necessary action.
4. Maintain cleanliness of the site
5. Comply with the parking space regulations as per the Construction Regulatory Requirements

Activity Specific Conditions:
1. The commercial address of the Commercial Registration for this activity can an office address provided the availability of warehousing units in Industrial and/or service areas

Note: Uploading pictures of the site/shop may expedite the process of obtaining approval

Required Documents

- Lease agreement (after obtaining the necessary approvals from other licensing entities)
- Shop photos

Other Documents

- Cabinet's Decision (56) of the year 2022 regarding the Regulatory Requirements of Construction for various areas in the Kingdom of Bahrain

NHRA- Medical Devices Regulation Section (Final Site Inspection) (521-4)

Approval Name	Description	Estimated Time
License of storing medical devices and supplies - Final Approval	License of storing medical devices and supplies - Final Approval	3 Days

Fee Details (if any)

(24)https://www.nhra.bh/Departments/MDR/MediaHandler/GenericHandler/documents/departments/MDR/Circulars/Resolution%20No.%20

License Information

There is no License Information in this license.

Other Documents

- Inspection Form
- Medical Devices Storing Facility Registration guideline
- Medical Devices Storing Facility Requirements checklist

Transportation and storage

ISIC4	Business activity
52210	Other service activities incidental to land transportation- Provision of smart applications for public transport activities

Description

Provision of smart phone applications for any specified public Transport activities via specified public transport vehicles.

Business Requirements

✔ Age

18 and above

✔ Allowed for Nationalities

Bahraini 100%	GCC 100%
American 100%	Singaporean 100%
Icelander 100%	Liechtenstein er 100%
Norwegian 100%	Swiss 100%

Foreign Allowed up to 100%

Legal Type

It is allowed to register according to the legal forms mentioned below

Allowed for Individual Commercial Registration (ICR) : Yes

Allowed for Company Commercial Registration (CCR) : Yes

- Bahrain Shareholding Company (Public)
- With Limited Liability Company
- Branch of a Foreign Company
- Bahrain Shareholding Company (Closed)
- Partnership Company
- Simple Commandite Company
- Commandite By Shares Company
- Non Profit Company

Required Step of Licenses and Approvals

Ministry / Directorate	License / Approval Requirements	Approval Type
Land Transportation Regulation Directorate	Provision of smart applications for public transport activities - Pre	Pre
Municipality Affairs	Site Approval for Transportation and Logistics Activities	Post
Land Transportation Regulation Directorate	Final site inspection for Provision of Smart Applications for Public Transport Activities	Final Site Inspection

Land Transportation Regulation Directorate (Pre) (52210)

Approval Name	Description	Estimated Time
Provision of smart applications for public transport activities - Pre	Provision of smart applications for public transport activities - Pre	15 Days

Fee Details (if any)

There is no Estimated Processing Time (Days) in this license.

License Information

License Information
1- The registration of vehicles under this activity is not permitted.
2- Licensee shall work with registered companies for public transport activities such as Taxi and Call Taxi companies; companies offering luxury car rentals with drivers; and licensed individual Taxis.
3- Licensee shall obtain Ministry approval before working with any public transport company.

Required Documents

•Business Plan

Other Documents

•Ministerial order number (1) for the year 2017 regarding Taxi & Call Taxi Companies
•Ministerial order number (11) for the year 2015 regarding Issuing the list of Public Transportation licenses
•Ministerial order number (12) for the year 2017 regarding amendment for Ministerial order number (11) for the year 2015

Municipality Affairs (Post) (52210)

Approval Name	Description	Estimated Time
Site Approval for Transportation and Logistics Activities	Municipality Approval for the Commercial Registration address or the site in which the Activity will be practiced	3 Days

Fee Details (if any)

10

License Information

General Conditions:
1. Size of shop/premises must be sufficient for the activity
2. Businesses may not carry out the activity outside the boundaries of the shop/ premises
3. It is prohibited to display or store any items or equipment outside the shop / premises boundary without prior approval from the Municipality. In the event of non-compliance, the Ministry of Municipality Affairs has the right to take necessary action.
4. Maintain cleanliness of the site
5. Comply with the parking space regulations as per the Construction Regulatory Requirements

Activity Specific Conditions:
1. The commercial address of the Commercial Registration for this activity can an office address

Note: Uploading pictures of the site/shop may expedite the process of obtaining approval

Required Documents

- Lease agreement (after obtaining the necessary approvals from other licensing entities)
- Pictures of site/shop (optional)
- Shop photos

Other Documents

- Cabinet's Decision (56) of the year 2022 regarding the Regulatory Requirements of Construction for various areas in the Kingdom of Bahrain

Land Transportation Regulation Directorate (Final Site Inspection) (52210)

Approval Name	Description	Estimated Time
Final site inspection for Provision of Smart Applications for Public Transport Activities	Final site inspection for Provision of Smart Applications for Public Transport Activities	15 Days

Fee Details (if any)

There is no Estimated Processing Time (Days) in this license.

License Information

1- The registration of vehicles under this activity is not permitted.
2- Licensee shall work with registered companies for public transport activities such as Taxi and Call Taxi companies; companies offering luxury car rentals with drivers; and licensed individual Taxis.
3- Licensee shall obtain Ministry approval before working with any public transport company.

Other Documents

•Ministerial order number (1) for the year 2017 regarding Taxi & Call Taxi Companies
•Ministerial order number (11) for the year 2015 regarding Issuing the list of Public Transportation licenses
•Ministerial order number (12) for the year 2017 regarding amendment for Ministerial order number (11) for the year 2015

Transportation and storage

ISIC4	Business activity
522103	Operating of Car Parks

Description

This activity includes operating car parks

Business Requirements

Age

18 and above

Allowed for Nationalities

- Bahraini 100%
- American 100%
- GCC 100%

Legal Type

It is allowed to register according to the legal forms mentioned below

Allowed for Individual Commercial Registration (ICR) : Yes

Allowed for Company Commercial Registration (CCR) : Yes

- Bahrain Shareholding Company (Public)
- With Limited Liability Company
- Branch of a Foreign Company
- Bahrain Shareholding Company (Closed)
- Partnership Company
- Simple Commandite Company
- Commandite By Shares Company
- Non Profit Company

Required Step of Licenses and Approvals

Ministry / Directorate	License / Approval Requirements	Approval Type
Municipality Affairs	Site Approval for Transportation and Logistics Activities	Post

Municipality Affairs (Post) (522103)

Approval Name	Description	Estimated Time
Site Approval for Transportation and Logistics Activities	Municipality Approval for the Commercial Registration address or the site in which the Activity will be practiced	3 Days

Fee Details (if any)

10

License Information

General Conditions:
1. Size of shop/premises must be sufficient for the activity
2. Businesses may not carry out the activity outside the boundaries of the shop/ premises
3. It is prohibited to display or store any items or equipment outside the shop / premises boundary without prior approval from the Municipality. In the event of non-compliance, the Ministry of Municipality Affairs has the right to take necessary action.
4. Maintain cleanliness of the site
5. Comply with the parking space regulations as per the Construction Regulatory Requirements

Activity Specific Conditions:
1. The commercial address of the Commercial Registration for this activity can an office address

Note: Uploading pictures of the site/shop may expedite the process of obtaining approval

Required Documents

- Lease agreement (after obtaining the necessary approvals from other licensing entities)
- Pictures of site/shop (optional)
- Shop photos

Other Documents

- Cabinet's Decision (56) of the year 2022 regarding the Regulatory Requirements of Construction for various areas in the Kingdom of Bahrain

Transportation and storage

ISIC4	Business activity
522105	Towing and Road Side Assistance

Description

Includes all activities relating to towing and road side assistance activities

Business Requirements

Age

18 and above

Allowed for Nationalities

- Bahraini 100%
- American 100%
- GCC 100%

Legal Type

It is allowed to register according to the legal forms mentioned below

Allowed for Individual Commercial Registration (ICR) : Yes

Allowed for Company Commercial Registration (CCR) : Yes

- Bahrain Shareholding Company (Public)
- With Limited Liability Company
- Branch of a Foreign Company
- Bahrain Shareholding Company (Closed)
- Partnership Company
- Simple Commandite Company
- Commandite By Shares Company
- Non Profit Company

Required Step of Licenses and Approvals

Ministry / Directorate	License / Approval Requirements	Approval Type
Traffic Operation And Control Department	Traffic approval for Towing and Road Side Assistance	Post
Municipality Affairs	Site Approval for Transportation and Logistics Activities	Post

Traffic Operation And Control Department (Post) (522105)

Approval Name	Description	Estimated Time
Traffic approval for Towing and Road Side Assistance	Traffic approval for Towing and Road Side Assistance	7 Days

Fee Details (if any)

There is no Estimated Processing Time (Days) in this license.

License Information

1-To provide a private Yard containing at least 3 parking spaces for towing and road assistance vehicles, with adequate space to prevent traffic congestion outside the yard.
2-This activity is allowed in Industrial (light industry) or Services zones.

Municipality Affairs (Post) (522105)

Approval Name	Description	Estimated Time
Site Approval for Transportation and Logistics Activities	Municipality Approval for the Commercial Registration address or the site in which the Activity will be practiced	3 Days

Fee Details (if any)

10

License Information

General Conditions:
1. Size of shop/premises must be sufficient for the activity
2. Businesses may not carry out the activity outside the boundaries of the shop/ premises
3. It is prohibited to display or store any items or equipment outside the shop / premises boundary without prior approval from the Municipality. In the event of non-compliance, the Ministry of Municipality Affairs has the right to take necessary action.
4. Maintain cleanliness of the site
5. Comply with the parking space regulations as per the Construction Regulatory Requirements

Activity Specific Conditions:
1. The commercial address of the Commercial Registration for this activity can an office address

Note: Uploading pictures of the site/shop may expedite the process of obtaining approval

Required Documents

- Lease agreement (after obtaining the necessary approvals from other licensing entities)
- Pictures of site/shop (optional)
- Shop photos

Other Documents

- Cabinet's Decision (56) of the year 2022 regarding the Regulatory Requirements of Construction for various areas in the Kingdom of Bahrain

Transportation and storage

ISIC4	Business activity
522110	Valet Parking Services

Description

Includes providing valet car park services

Business Requirements

Age

18 and above

Allowed for Nationalities

- Bahraini 100%
- American 100%
- GCC 100%

Legal Type

It is allowed to register according to the legal forms mentioned below

Allowed for Individual Commercial Registration (ICR) : Yes

Allowed for Company Commercial Registration (CCR) : Yes

- Bahrain Shareholding Company (Public)
- With Limited Liability Company
- Branch of a Foreign Company
- Bahrain Shareholding Company (Closed)
- Partnership Company
- Simple Commandite Company
- Commandite By Shares Company
- Non Profit Company

Required Step of Licenses and Approvals

Ministry / Directorate	License / Approval Requirements	Approval Type
Municipality Affairs	Site Approval for Transportation and Logistics Activities	Post

Municipality Affairs (Post) (522110)

Approval Name	Description	Estimated Time
Site Approval for Transportation and Logistics Activities	Municipality Approval for the Commercial Registration address or the site in which the Activity will be practiced	3 Days

Fee Details (if any)

10

License Information

General Conditions:
1. Size of shop/premises must be sufficient for the activity
2. Businesses may not carry out the activity outside the boundaries of the shop/ premises
3. It is prohibited to display or store any items or equipment outside the shop / premises boundary without prior approval from the Municipality. In the event of non-compliance, the Ministry of Municipality Affairs has the right to take necessary action.
4. Maintain cleanliness of the site
5. Comply with the parking space regulations as per the Construction Regulatory Requirements

Activity Specific Conditions:
1. The commercial address of the Commercial Registration for this activity can an office address

Note: Uploading pictures of the site/shop may expedite the process of obtaining approval

Required Documents

- Lease agreement (after obtaining the necessary approvals from other licensing entities)
- Pictures of site/shop (optional)
- Shop photos

Other Documents

- Cabinet's Decision (56) of the year 2022 regarding the Regulatory Requirements of Construction for various areas in the Kingdom of Bahrain

Transportation and storage

ISIC4	Business activity
52220-1	Service activities incidental to water transportation - Management and Operation of Ports and Private Jetties

Description

This activity includes management and operating of the jetty, movement of ships, loading and unloading of the ships container and cargo, as well as storage

Business Requirements

Age

18 and above

Allowed for Nationalities

- Bahraini 100%
- American 100%
- GCC 100%

Legal Type

It is allowed to register according to the legal forms mentioned below

Allowed for Individual Commercial Registration (ICR) : Yes

Allowed for Company Commercial Registration (CCR) : Yes

- Bahrain Shareholding Company (Public)
- With Limited Liability Company
- Branch of a Foreign Company
- Bahrain Shareholding Company (Closed)
- Partnership Company
- Simple Commandite Company
- Commandite By Shares Company
- Non Profit Company

Required Step of Licenses and Approvals

Ministry / Directorate	License / Approval Requirements	Approval Type
Ports and Maritime Affairs	Management and Operation of Ports and Private Jetties	Pre
Municipality Affairs	Site Approval for Transportation and Logistics Activities	Post

Ports and Maritime Affairs (Pre) (52220-1)

Approval Name	Description	Estimated Time
Management and Operation of Ports and Private Jetties	Management and Operation of Ports and Private Jetties	10 Days

Fee Details (if any)

Depends on area size

License Information

Application/ License related information:
- License Fee:
o 0-50 meters = BD550
o 51-100 meters = BD800
o 101-150 meters = BD1000
o Above 150 meters = BD 1000 (Plus BD3 per each additional meter)
- The license is valid for 2 years
- Renewal of the license is same as License Fee
- In addition to the license fee applicants must pay a non-refundable application fee of 100BD

Activity Specific Requirements:
- Submission of a consent form from any specified governmental entity if required by the PMA.
- Submit all information regarding the Harbor Master/ Port Manager including contact details.
- Jetty assessment staff charge (400 BD) per visit
- Jetty insurance, it must have comprehensive coverage that includes but not limited to:
o Fire
o Physical property/ construction damage
o Third Party Liability
- The waste management plan must include the following:
a) Mechanism to receive ship's garbage as per (MARPOL Annex V) requirements for all ports and jetties.
b) A reception facility allowing the visiting ships to deliver the operational waste as

required by (MARPOL Annexes I and II), for ports or jetties connected to international shipping designed to handle and perform loading and discharging operations of oil in bulk and/or noxious liquid substances in bulk as identified by International Bulk Chemical Code (IBC Code)

Required Documents

- A copy of the land lease agreement.
- A waste management plan approved by the Supreme Council of Environment for the disposal of wastes
- Bollard safe working load (SWL) test report if required by PMA
- Business Plan including all equipment that will be used and abiding to the requirement of the PMA.
- Cathodic Protection system drawings if applicable
- Disaster/Emergency Plan
- Fire fighting and lifesaving plan approved by the (MOI) Civil Defense.
- Hot work permit
- Master plan drawings for the jetty/ port.
- Sounding survey for a distance of 40 meters from the sea front.
- Spill Contingency plan endorsed by the Supreme Council of Environment.
- Submission of the certification for the International Ship and Port Facility Security Code (ISPS).
- Underwater structural survey report if required by PMA
- Valid Property Survey Document

Other Documents

- Decree Law 46 of 2012 regarding the amendment of Law 61 of 2006
- Ministerial Decision (4) of 2014 regarding the fees of Ports and Maritime
- Ministerial Decision (6) of 2010 regarding Executive Schedule for Law 61 of 2006

Municipality Affairs (Post) (52220-1)

Approval Name	Description	Estimated Time
Site Approval for Transportation and Logistics Activities	Municipality Approval for the Commercial Registration address or the site in which the Activity will be practiced	3 Days

Fee Details (if any)

10

License Information

General Conditions:
1. Size of shop/premises must be sufficient for the activity
2. Businesses may not carry out the activity outside the boundaries of the shop/ premises
3. It is prohibited to display or store any items or equipment outside the shop / premises boundary without prior approval from the Municipality. In the event of non-compliance, the Ministry of Municipality Affairs has the right to take necessary action.
4. Maintain cleanliness of the site
5. Comply with the parking space regulations as per the Construction Regulatory Requirements

Activity Specific Conditions:
1. The commercial address of the Commercial Registration for this activity can an office address

Note: Uploading pictures of the site/shop may expedite the process of obtaining approval

Required Documents

- Lease agreement (after obtaining the necessary approvals from other licensing entities)
- Pictures of site/shop (optional)
- Shop photos

Other Documents

- Cabinet's Decision (56) of the year 2022 regarding the Regulatory Requirements of Construction for various areas in the Kingdom of Bahrain

Transportation and storage

ISIC4	Business activity
52220-2	Service activities incidental to water transportation - Management and Operation of Dry Dock

Description

This activity includes the operation of Dry Docks

Business Requirements

Age

18 and above

Allowed for Nationalities

- Bahraini 100%
- American 100%
- GCC 100%

Legal Type

It is allowed to register according to the legal forms mentioned below

Allowed for Individual Commercial Registration (ICR) : Yes

Allowed for Company Commercial Registration (CCR) : Yes

- Bahrain Shareholding Company (Public)
- With Limited Liability Company
- Branch of a Foreign Company
- Bahrain Shareholding Company (Closed)
- Partnership Company
- Simple Commandite Company
- Commandite By Shares Company
- Non Profit Company

Required Step of Licenses and Approvals

Ministry / Directorate	License / Approval Requirements	Approval Type
Ports and Maritime Affairs	Ports and Maritime Affairs Approval	Pre
Municipality Affairs	Site Approval for Transportation and Logistics Activities	Post

Ports and Maritime Affairs (Pre) (52220-2)

Approval Name	Description	Estimated Time
Ports and Maritime Affairs Approval	Ports and Maritime Affairs Approval	10 Days

Fee Details (if any)

There is no Estimated Processing Time (Days) in this license.

License Information

There is no License Information in this license.

Municipality Affairs (Post) (52220-2)

Approval Name	Description	Estimated Time
Site Approval for Transportation and Logistics Activities	Municipality Approval for the Commercial Registration address or the site in which the Activity will be practiced	3 Days

Fee Details (if any)

10

License Information

General Conditions:
1. Size of shop/premises must be sufficient for the activity
2. Businesses may not carry out the activity outside the boundaries of the shop/ premises
3. It is prohibited to display or store any items or equipment outside the shop / premises boundary without prior approval from the Municipality. In the event of non-compliance, the Ministry of Municipality Affairs has the right to take necessary action.
4. Maintain cleanliness of the site
5. Comply with the parking space regulations as per the Construction Regulatory Requirements

Activity Specific Conditions:
1. The commercial address of the Commercial Registration for this activity can an office address

Note: Uploading pictures of the site/shop may expedite the process of obtaining approval

Required Documents

- Lease agreement (after obtaining the necessary approvals from other licensing entities)
- Pictures of site/shop (optional)
- Shop photos

Other Documents

- Cabinet's Decision (56) of the year 2022 regarding the Regulatory Requirements of Construction for various areas in the Kingdom of Bahrain

Transportation and storage

ISIC4	Business activity
52220-3	Service activities incidental to water transportation - Towage

Description

This activity includes towing, Guiding, pulling, pushing and maneuvering long ships, vessel from the anchorage to port vice versa

Business Requirements

Age

18 and above

Allowed for Nationalities

Bahraini 100%	GCC 100%
American 100%	Singaporean 100%
Icelander 100%	Liechtenstein er 100%
Norwegian 100%	Swiss 100%

Foreign Allowed up to 100%

Legal Type

It is allowed to register according to the legal forms mentioned below

Allowed for Individual Commercial Registration (ICR) : Yes

Allowed for Company Commercial Registration (CCR) : Yes

- Bahrain Shareholding Company (Public)
- With Limited Liability Company
- Branch of a Foreign Company
- Bahrain Shareholding Company (Closed)
- Partnership Company
- Simple Commandite Company
- Commandite By Shares Company
- Non Profit Company

Required Step of Licenses and Approvals

Ministry / Directorate	License / Approval Requirements	Approval Type
Ports and Maritime Affairs	Towage	Pre
Municipality Affairs	Site Approval for Transportation and Logistics Activities	Post

Ports and Maritime Affairs (Pre) (52220-3)

Approval Name	Description	Estimated Time
Towage	Towage	7 Days

Fee Details (if any)

1000 BD

License Information

Application/ License related information:
- The license is valid for 1 year
- License renewal is 50% of initial fee
- In addition to the license fee applicants must pay a non-refundable application fee of 100 BD

Municipality Affairs (Post) (52220-3)

Approval Name	Description	Estimated Time
Site Approval for Transportation and Logistics Activities	Municipality Approval for the Commercial Registration address or the site in which the Activity will be practiced	3 Days

Fee Details (if any)

10

License Information

General Conditions:
1. Size of shop/premises must be sufficient for the activity
2. Businesses may not carry out the activity outside the boundaries of the shop/ premises
3. It is prohibited to display or store any items or equipment outside the shop / premises boundary without prior approval from the Municipality. In the event of non-compliance, the Ministry of Municipality Affairs has the right to take necessary action.
4. Maintain cleanliness of the site
5. Comply with the parking space regulations as per the Construction Regulatory Requirements

Activity Specific Conditions:
1. The commercial address of the Commercial Registration for this activity can an office address

Note: Uploading pictures of the site/shop may expedite the process of obtaining approval

Required Documents

- Lease agreement (after obtaining the necessary approvals from other licensing entities)
- Pictures of site/shop (optional)
- Shop photos

Other Documents

- Cabinet's Decision (56) of the year 2022 regarding the Regulatory Requirements of Construction for various areas in the Kingdom of Bahrain

Transportation and storage

ISIC4	Business activity
52220-4	Service activities incidental to water transportation - Navigational Aid Services

Description

This activity includes instalation and maintains network of buoys, lighthouses and navigational aids to be used in marine operation

Business Requirements

Age

18 and above

Allowed for Nationalities

- Bahraini 100%
- American 100%
- GCC 100%

Legal Type

It is allowed to register according to the legal forms mentioned below

Allowed for Individual Commercial Registration (ICR) : Yes

Allowed for Company Commercial Registration (CCR) : Yes

- Bahrain Shareholding Company (Public)
- With Limited Liability Company
- Branch of a Foreign Company
- Bahrain Shareholding Company (Closed)
- Partnership Company
- Simple Commandite Company
- Commandite By Shares Company
- Non Profit Company

Required Step of Licenses and Approvals

Ministry / Directorate	License / Approval Requirements	Approval Type
Ports and Maritime Affairs	Navigational Aid Services	Pre
Municipality Affairs	Site Approval for Transportation and Logistics Activities	Post

Ports and Maritime Affairs (Pre) (52220-4)

Approval Name	Description	Estimated Time
Navigational Aid Services	Navigational Aid Services	7 Days

Fee Details (if any)

1000 BD

License Information

Application/ License related information:
- The license is valid for 1 year
- Renewal of the license is 50% of initial fee
- In addition to the license fee applicants must pay a non-refundable application fee of 100 BD

Activity Specific Requirements:
- All systems and rules used identical to IALA regulations and shall include the equipment to be used and the methods of installation and maintenance.

Required Documents

•Detailed Business Plan
•Documents proving the educational qualifications of executives in (Port and Maritime studies, Nautical Science, Engineering, Business Management, Logistics, IT, Law) or professional experience in the sector of no less than 5 years.

Other Documents

•Ministerial Regulation No. 15 for the year 2017 regarding PMA Tariff
•Ministerial Regulation No.9 for the year 2017 regarding licensing of Marine Services

Municipality Affairs (Post) (52220-4)

Approval Name	Description	Estimated Time
Site Approval for Transportation and Logistics Activities	Municipality Approval for the Commercial Registration address or the site in which the Activity will be practiced	3 Days

Fee Details (if any)

10

License Information

General Conditions:
1. Size of shop/premises must be sufficient for the activity
2. Businesses may not carry out the activity outside the boundaries of the shop/ premises
3. It is prohibited to display or store any items or equipment outside the shop / premises boundary without prior approval from the Municipality. In the event of non-compliance, the Ministry of Municipality Affairs has the right to take necessary action.
4. Maintain cleanliness of the site
5. Comply with the parking space regulations as per the Construction Regulatory Requirements

Activity Specific Conditions:
1. The commercial address of the Commercial Registration for this activity can an office address

Note: Uploading pictures of the site/shop may expedite the process of obtaining approval

Required Documents

- Lease agreement (after obtaining the necessary approvals from other licensing entities)
- Pictures of site/shop (optional)
- Shop photos

Other Documents

- Cabinet's Decision (56) of the year 2022 regarding the Regulatory Requirements of Construction for various areas in the Kingdom of Bahrain

Transportation and storage

ISIC4	Business activity
52220-5	Service activities incidental to water transportation - Bunkering Services

Description

This activity includes selling of fuel, from specialized vessels designed for that particular task and transferring fuel from one ship to another

Business Requirements

Age

18 and above

Allowed for Nationalities

- Bahraini 100%
- American 100%
- GCC 100%

Legal Type

It is allowed to register according to the legal forms mentioned below

Allowed for Individual Commercial Registration (ICR) : Yes

Allowed for Company Commercial Registration (CCR) : Yes

- Bahrain Shareholding Company (Public)
- With Limited Liability Company
- Branch of a Foreign Company
- Bahrain Shareholding Company (Closed)
- Partnership Company
- Simple Commandite Company
- Commandite By Shares Company
- Non Profit Company

Required Step of Licenses and Approvals

Ministry / Directorate	License / Approval Requirements	Approval Type
Ports and Maritime Affairs	Bunkering Services	Pre
Municipality Affairs	Site Approval for Transportation and Logistics Activities	Post

Ports and Maritime Affairs (Pre) (52220-5)

Approval Name	Description	Estimated Time
Bunkering Services	Bunkering Services	3 Days

Fee Details (if any)

2000 BD

License Information

Application/ License related information:
- The license is valid for 1 years
- Renewal of the license is 50% of initial fee
- In addition to the license fee applicants must pay a non-refundable application fee of 100 BD

Activity Specific Requirements:
- All equipment used should be licensed and certified.
- All vessels used for bunkering are to operate under the Bahraini flag and of double haul.

Required Documents

•Detailed Business Plan
•Document specifying the operations mechanism, including a list of all equipment to be used in the operation and must be accredited to international standards and approved by the PMA.
•Documents proving the educational qualifications of executives in (Port and Maritime studies, Nautical Science, Engineering, Business Management, Logistics, IT, Law) or professional experience in the sector of no less than 5 years.
•Insurance against marine pollution
•Spill Contingency plan endorsed by the Supreme Council of Environment.

Other Documents

- Ministerial Regulation No. 15 for the year 2017 regarding PMA Tariff
- Ministerial Regulation No.9 for the year 2017 regarding licensing of Marine Services

Municipality Affairs (Post) (52220-5)

Approval Name	Description	Estimated Time
Site Approval for Transportation and Logistics Activities	Municipality Approval for the Commercial Registration address or the site in which the Activity will be practiced	3 Days

Fee Details (if any)

10

License Information

General Conditions:
1. Size of shop/premises must be sufficient for the activity
2. Businesses may not carry out the activity outside the boundaries of the shop/ premises
3. It is prohibited to display or store any items or equipment outside the shop / premises boundary without prior approval from the Municipality. In the event of non-compliance, the Ministry of Municipality Affairs has the right to take necessary action.
4. Maintain cleanliness of the site
5. Comply with the parking space regulations as per the Construction Regulatory Requirements

Activity Specific Conditions:
1. The commercial address of the Commercial Registration for this activity can an office address

Note: Uploading pictures of the site/shop may expedite the process of obtaining approval

Required Documents

- Lease agreement (after obtaining the necessary approvals from other licensing entities)
- Pictures of site/shop (optional)
- Shop photos

Other Documents

- Cabinet's Decision (56) of the year 2022 regarding the Regulatory Requirements of Construction for various areas in the Kingdom of Bahrain

Transportation and storage

ISIC4	Business activity
52220-6	Service activities incidental to water transportation - Pilotage

Description

This activity includes the guidance operation for the visiting ships from the pilot station (at sea) to the nominated berth or vice versa.

Business Requirements

✔ Age

18 and above

✔ Allowed for Nationalities

Bahraini 100%	GCC 100%
American 100%	Singaporean 100%
Icelander 100%	Liechtenstein er 100%
Norwegian 100%	Swiss 100%

Foreign Allowed up to 100%

Legal Type

It is allowed to register according to the legal forms mentioned below

Allowed for Individual Commercial Registration (ICR) : Yes

Allowed for Company Commercial Registration (CCR) : Yes

- Bahrain Shareholding Company (Public)
- With Limited Liability Company
- Branch of a Foreign Company
- Bahrain Shareholding Company (Closed)
- Partnership Company
- Simple Commandite Company
- Commandite By Shares Company
- Non Profit Company

Required Step of Licenses and Approvals

Ministry / Directorate	License / Approval Requirements	Approval Type
Ports and Maritime Affairs	Pilotage	Pre
Municipality Affairs	Site Approval for Transportation and Logistics Activities	Post

Ports and Maritime Affairs (Pre) (52220-6)

Approval Name	Description	Estimated Time
Pilotage	Pilotage	7 Days

Fee Details (if any)

1000 BD

License Information

Application/ License related information:
- The license is valid for 1 year
- License renewal is 50% of initial fee
- In addition to the license fee applicants must pay a non-refundable application fee of 100 BD

Required Documents

•A document specifying all type of equipment, tugs and boats that will be used along with their license certificates.
•Detailed business plan.
•Documents proving that the Marine Pilot is conformed to the qualifications set by decree number (1) for the year 1988.
•Documents proving the educational qualifications of executives in (Port and Maritime studies, Nautical Science, Engineering, Business Management, Logistics, IT, Law) or professional experience in the sector of no less than 5 years.

Other Documents

•Ministerial Regulation No. 15 for the year 2017 regarding PMA Tariff
•Ministerial Regulation No.9 for the year 2017 regarding licensing of Marine Services

Municipality Affairs (Post) (52220-6)

Approval Name	Description	Estimated Time
Site Approval for Transportation and Logistics Activities	Municipality Approval for the Commercial Registration address or the site in which the Activity will be practiced	3 Days

Fee Details (if any)

10

License Information

General Conditions:
1. Size of shop/premises must be sufficient for the activity
2. Businesses may not carry out the activity outside the boundaries of the shop/ premises
3. It is prohibited to display or store any items or equipment outside the shop / premises boundary without prior approval from the Municipality. In the event of non-compliance, the Ministry of Municipality Affairs has the right to take necessary action.
4. Maintain cleanliness of the site
5. Comply with the parking space regulations as per the Construction Regulatory Requirements

Activity Specific Conditions:
1. The commercial address of the Commercial Registration for this activity can an office address

Note: Uploading pictures of the site/shop may expedite the process of obtaining approval

Required Documents

- Lease agreement (after obtaining the necessary approvals from other licensing entities)
- Pictures of site/shop (optional)
- Shop photos

Other Documents

- Cabinet's Decision (56) of the year 2022 regarding the Regulatory Requirements of Construction for various areas in the Kingdom of Bahrain

Transportation and storage

ISIC4	Business activity
522209	Operating parks for Boats and Yachts

Description

This activity involves operating parks for boats and yachts

Business Requirements

Age

18 and above

Allowed for Nationalities

Bahraini 100%	GCC 100%
American 100%	Singaporean 100%
Icelander 100%	Liechtensteiner 100%
Norwegian 100%	Swiss 100%

Foreign Allowed up to 100%

Legal Type

It is allowed to register according to the legal forms mentioned below

Allowed for Individual Commercial Registration (ICR) : Yes

Allowed for Company Commercial Registration (CCR) : Yes

- Bahrain Shareholding Company (Public)
- With Limited Liability Company
- Branch of a Foreign Company
- Bahrain Shareholding Company (Closed)
- Partnership Company
- Simple Commandite Company
- Commandite By Shares Company
- Non Profit Company

Required Step of Licenses and Approvals

Ministry / Directorate	License / Approval Requirements	Approval Type
Municipality Affairs	Site Approval for Transportation and Logistics Activities	Post

Municipality Affairs (Post) (522209)

Approval Name	Description	Estimated Time
Site Approval for Transportation and Logistics Activities	Municipality Approval for the Commercial Registration address or the site in which the Activity will be practiced	3 Days

Fee Details (if any)

10

License Information

General Conditions:
1. Size of shop/premises must be sufficient for the activity
2. Businesses may not carry out the activity outside the boundaries of the shop/ premises
3. It is prohibited to display or store any items or equipment outside the shop / premises boundary without prior approval from the Municipality. In the event of non-compliance, the Ministry of Municipality Affairs has the right to take necessary action.
4. Maintain cleanliness of the site
5. Comply with the parking space regulations as per the Construction Regulatory Requirements

Activity Specific Conditions:
1. The commercial address of the Commercial Registration for this activity can an office address

Note: Uploading pictures of the site/shop may expedite the process of obtaining approval

Required Documents

- Lease agreement (after obtaining the necessary approvals from other licensing entities)
- Pictures of site/shop (optional)
- Shop photos

Other Documents

- Cabinet's Decision (56) of the year 2022 regarding the Regulatory Requirements of Construction for various areas in the Kingdom of Bahrain

Transportation and storage

ISIC4	Business activity
5223-1	Service activities incidental to air transportation - Airport Operator

Description

Providing airport facilities and operation management airport services

Business Requirements

Age

18 and above

Allowed for Nationalities

- Bahraini 100%
- American 100%
- GCC 100%

Legal Type

It is allowed to register according to the legal forms mentioned below

Allowed for Individual Commercial Registration (ICR) : Yes

Allowed for Company Commercial Registration (CCR) : Yes

- Bahrain Shareholding Company (Public)
- With Limited Liability Company
- Branch of a Foreign Company
- Bahrain Shareholding Company (Closed)
- Partnership Company
- Simple Commandite Company
- Commandite By Shares Company
- Non Profit Company

Required Step of Licenses and Approvals

Ministry / Directorate	License / Approval Requirements	Approval Type
General Directorate Of Criminal Investigation	Approval by General Directorate of Criminal Investigation	Pre
Civil Aviation Affairs	Airport Operator	Pre
Municipality Affairs	Site Approval for Transportation and Logistics Activities	Post
Civil Aviation Affairs	Airport Operator	Post
Civil Aviation Affairs	Airport Operator	Final Site Inspection

General Directorate Of Criminal Investigation (Pre) (5223-1)

Approval Name	Description	Estimated Time
Approval by General Directorate of Criminal Investigation	General Directorate of Criminal Investigation Approval for the Activity	7 Days

Fee Details (if any)

There is no Estimated Processing Time (Days) in this license.

License Information

- The applicant should not have a criminal record, unless they have been rehabilitated in criminal cases

Civil Aviation Affairs (Pre) (5223-1)

Approval Name	Description	Estimated Time
Airport Operator	Providing airport facilities and operation management airport services.	10 Days

Fee Details (if any)

• Application fees: BD 100 (non-refundable in cases where the application is not approved).
• License fees for the first year BD 65,000.
• Annual inspection and auditing fees BD. 100,000.
• License renewal fees for every 5 years BD6,000.
• Modification of Airport License BD20,000.
• Transfer of the airport license BD4,000.
• Any extra auditing BD15,000

License Information

• The capital of the company must not be less than BD100,000,000
• The license is valid for 5 years and renewal application must be submitted 2 months before expiry
• Adherence to the standards and regulatory requirements contained in the regulations under the Civil Aviation Law issued by virtue of Law No. 14 of 2013
• Fulfil obligations set out in the Civil Aviation Law, as well as the Chicago Convention and its annexes
• Fulfil all aviation safety and security requirements.

Required Documents

- Feasibility, technical, economic and financial studies
- Fill application Form ATD/ATCL/OF04
- Memorandum of Association

Other Documents

- Chicago Convention and its Annexes.
- Civil Aviation Law No.14 of 2013
- Minister of Transport and Telecommunication Decree No. 12 of 2016 amending some provisions of the Regulation under the Civil Aviation Law.
- Minister of Transportation and Telecommunication Decree No. 25 of 2016 of CAA fees and departure fees.
- Minster of Transportation and Telecommunication Decree No. 21 of 2013 issuing the regulations under the Civil Aviation Law.

Municipality Affairs (Post) (5223-1)

Approval Name	Description	Estimated Time
Site Approval for Transportation and Logistics Activities	Municipality Approval for the Commercial Registration address or the site in which the Activity will be practiced	3 Days

Fee Details (if any)

10

License Information

General Conditions:
1. Size of shop/premises must be sufficient for the activity
2. Businesses may not carry out the activity outside the boundaries of the shop/ premises
3. It is prohibited to display or store any items or equipment outside the shop / premises boundary without prior approval from the Municipality. In the event of non-compliance, the Ministry of Municipality Affairs has the right to take necessary action.
4. Maintain cleanliness of the site
5. Comply with the parking space regulations as per the Construction Regulatory Requirements

Activity Specific Conditions:
1. The commercial address of the Commercial Registration for this activity can an office address

Note: Uploading pictures of the site/shop may expedite the process of obtaining approval

Required Documents

- Lease agreement (after obtaining the necessary approvals from other licensing entities)
- Pictures of site/shop (optional)
- Shop photos

Other Documents

- Cabinet's Decision (56) of the year 2022 regarding the Regulatory Requirements of Construction for various areas in the Kingdom of Bahrain

Civil Aviation Affairs (Post) (5223-1)

Approval Name	Description	Estimated Time
Airport Operator	Providing airport facilities and operation management airport services.	10 Days

Fee Details (if any)

• Application fees: BD 100 (non-refundable in cases where the application is not approved).
• License fees for the first year BD 65,000.
• Annual inspection and auditing fees BD. 100,000.
• License renewal fees for every 5 years BD6,000.
• Modification of Airport License BD20,000.
• Transfer of the airport license BD4,000.
• Any extra auditing BD15,000

License Information

• The capital of the company must not be less than BD100,000,000
• The license is valid for 5 years and renewal application must be submitted 2 months before expiry
• Adherence to the standards and regulatory requirements contained in the regulations under the Civil Aviation Law issued by virtue of Law No. 14 of 2013
• Fulfil obligations set out in the Civil Aviation Law, as well as the Chicago Convention and its annexes
• Fulfil all aviation safety and security requirements.

Required Documents

- Feasibility, technical, economic and financial studies
- Fill application Form ATD/ATCL/OF04
- Memorandum of Association

Other Documents

- Chicago Convention and its Annexes.
- Civil Aviation Law No.14 of 2013
- Minister of Transport and Telecommunication Decree No. 12 of 2016 amending some provisions of the Regulation under the Civil Aviation Law.
- Minister of Transportation and Telecommunication Decree No. 25 of 2016 of CAA fees and departure fees.
- Minster of Transportation and Telecommunication Decree No. 21 of 2013 issuing the regulations under the Civil Aviation Law.

Civil Aviation Affairs (Final Site Inspection) (5223-1)

Approval Name	Description	Estimated Time
Airport Operator	Providing airport facilities and operation management airport services.	10 Days

Fee Details (if any)

• Application fees: BD 100 (non-refundable in cases where the application is not approved).
• License fees for the first year BD 65,000.
• Annual inspection and auditing fees BD. 100,000.
• License renewal fees for every 5 years BD6,000.
• Modification of Airport License BD20,000.
• Transfer of the airport license BD4,000.
• Any extra auditing BD15,000

License Information

• The capital of the company must not be less than BD100,000,000
• The license is valid for 5 years and renewal application must be submitted 2 months before expiry
• Adherence to the standards and regulatory requirements contained in the regulations under the Civil Aviation Law issued by virtue of Law No. 14 of 2013
• Fulfil obligations set out in the Civil Aviation Law, as well as the Chicago Convention and its annexes
• Fulfil all aviation safety and security requirements.

Required Documents

- Feasibility, technical, economic and financial studies
- Fill application Form ATD/ATCL/OF04
- Memorandum of Association

Other Documents

- Chicago Convention and its Annexes.
- Civil Aviation Law No.14 of 2013
- Minister of Transport and Telecommunication Decree No. 12 of 2016 amending some provisions of the Regulation under the Civil Aviation Law.
- Minister of Transportation and Telecommunication Decree No. 25 of 2016 of CAA fees and departure fees.
- Minster of Transportation and Telecommunication Decree No. 21 of 2013 issuing the regulations under the Civil Aviation Law.

Transportation and storage

ISIC4	Business activity
5223-2	Service activities incidental to air transportation - Aircraft Handling Services Airlines

Description

Providing handling services for scheduled airlines including passengers services, Aircraft cleaning, baggage and all services from time of arrival till take off of Aircraft

Business Requirements

Age

18 and above

Allowed for Nationalities

- Bahraini 100%
- American 100%
- GCC 100%

Legal Type

It is allowed to register according to the legal forms mentioned below

Allowed for Individual Commercial Registration (ICR) : Yes

Allowed for Company Commercial Registration (CCR) : Yes

- Bahrain Shareholding Company (Public)
- With Limited Liability Company
- Branch of a Foreign Company
- Bahrain Shareholding Company (Closed)
- Partnership Company
- Simple Commandite Company
- Commandite By Shares Company
- Non Profit Company

Required Step of Licenses and Approvals

Ministry / Directorate	License / Approval Requirements	Approval Type
Civil Aviation Affairs	Aircraft Handling Services for Airlines	Pre
General Directorate Of Criminal Investigation	Approval by General Directorate of Criminal Investigation	Pre
Civil Aviation Affairs	Aircraft Handling Services for Airlines	Post
Municipality Affairs	Site Approval for Transportation and Logistics Activities	Post
Civil Aviation Affairs	Aircraft Handling Services for Airlines	Final Site Inspection

Civil Aviation Affairs (Pre) (5223-2)

Approval Name	Description	Estimated Time
Aircraft Handling Services for Airlines	Providing handling services for scheduled airlines including passengers services, Aircraft cleaning, baggage and all services from time of arrival till take off of Aircraft.	10 Days

Fee Details (if any)

- Application fees: BD 100 (non-refundable in cases where the application is not approved).
- Visibility study: BD 1,000 (deducted from the license fee in case of approval).
- License fees BD 30,000.
- Annual renewal fees 50% of the license fees.

License Information

- The capital of the company must not be less than 5,000,000.
- The license is valid for one year and renewal application must be submitted 2 months before expiry
- Adherence to the standards and regulatory requirements contained in the regulations under the Civil Aviation Law issued by virtue of Law No. 14 of 2013
- Fulfil obligations set out in the Civil Aviation Law, as well as the Chicago Convention and its annexes
- Fulfil all aviation safety and security requirements.
- The location must be safe and secure.
- The company should be located within the airport.

Required Documents

- Feasibility, technical, economic and financial studies
- Fill application Form ATD/ATCL/OF04
- Memorandum of Association

Other Documents

- Chicago Convention and its Annexes.
- Civil Aviation Law No.14 of 2013
- Minister of Transportation and Telecommunication Decree No. 25 of 2016 of CAA fees and departure fees.
- Minster of Transportation and Telecommunication Decree No. 21 of 2013 issuing the regulations under the Civil Aviation Law.

General Directorate Of Criminal Investigation (Pre) (5223-2)

Approval Name	Description	Estimated Time
Approval by General Directorate of Criminal Investigation	General Directorate of Criminal Investigation Approval for the Activity	7 Days

Fee Details (if any)

There is no Estimated Processing Time (Days) in this license.

License Information

- The applicant should not have a criminal record, unless they have been rehabilitated in criminal cases

Civil Aviation Affairs (Post) (5223-2)

Approval Name	Description	Estimated Time
Aircraft Handling Services for Airlines	Providing handling services for scheduled airlines including passengers services, Aircraft cleaning, baggage and all services from time of arrival till take off of Aircraft.	10 Days

Fee Details (if any)

- Application fees: BD 100 (non-refundable in cases where the application is not approved).
- Visibility study: BD 1,000 (deducted from the license fee in case of approval).
- License fees BD 30,000.
- Annual renewal fees 50% of the license fees.

License Information

- The capital of the company must not be less than 5,000,000.
- The license is valid for one year and renewal application must be submitted 2 months before expiry
- Adherence to the standards and regulatory requirements contained in the regulations under the Civil Aviation Law issued by virtue of Law No. 14 of 2013
- Fulfil obligations set out in the Civil Aviation Law, as well as the Chicago Convention and its annexes
- Fulfil all aviation safety and security requirements.
- The location must be safe and secure.
- The company should be located within the airport.

Required Documents

- Feasibility, technical, economic and financial studies
- Fill application Form ATD/ATCL/OF04
- Memorandum of Association

Other Documents

- Chicago Convention and its Annexes.
- Civil Aviation Law No.14 of 2013
- Minister of Transportation and Telecommunication Decree No. 25 of 2016 of CAA fees and departure fees.
- Minster of Transportation and Telecommunication Decree No. 21 of 2013 issuing the regulations under the Civil Aviation Law.

Municipality Affairs (Post) (5223-2)

Approval Name	Description	Estimated Time
Site Approval for Transportation and Logistics Activities	Municipality Approval for the Commercial Registration address or the site in which the Activity will be practiced	3 Days

Fee Details (if any)

10

License Information

General Conditions:
1. Size of shop/premises must be sufficient for the activity
2. Businesses may not carry out the activity outside the boundaries of the shop/ premises
3. It is prohibited to display or store any items or equipment outside the shop / premises boundary without prior approval from the Municipality. In the event of non-compliance, the Ministry of Municipality Affairs has the right to take necessary action.
4. Maintain cleanliness of the site
5. Comply with the parking space regulations as per the Construction Regulatory Requirements

Activity Specific Conditions:
1. The commercial address of the Commercial Registration for this activity can an office address

Note: Uploading pictures of the site/shop may expedite the process of obtaining approval

Required Documents

- Lease agreement (after obtaining the necessary approvals from other licensing entities)
- Pictures of site/shop (optional)
- Shop photos

Other Documents

- Cabinet's Decision (56) of the year 2022 regarding the Regulatory Requirements of Construction for various areas in the Kingdom of Bahrain

Civil Aviation Affairs (Final Site Inspection) (5223-2)

Approval Name	Description	Estimated Time
Aircraft Handling Services for Airlines	Providing handling services for scheduled airlines including passengers services, Aircraft cleaning, baggage and all services from time of arrival till take off of Aircraft.	10 Days

Fee Details (if any)

- Application fees: BD 100 (non-refundable in cases where the application is not approved).
- Visibility study: BD 1,000 (deducted from the license fee in case of approval).
- License fees BD 30,000.
- Annual renewal fees 50% of the license fees.

License Information

- The capital of the company must not be less than 5,000,000.
- The license is valid for one year and renewal application must be submitted 2 months before expiry
- Adherence to the standards and regulatory requirements contained in the regulations under the Civil Aviation Law issued by virtue of Law No. 14 of 2013
- Fulfil obligations set out in the Civil Aviation Law, as well as the Chicago Convention and its annexes
- Fulfil all aviation safety and security requirements.
- The location must be safe and secure.
- The company should be located within the airport.

Required Documents

- Feasibility, technical, economic and financial studies
- Fill application Form ATD/ATCL/OF04
- Memorandum of Association

Other Documents

- Chicago Convention and its Annexes.
- Civil Aviation Law No.14 of 2013
- Minister of Transportation and Telecommunication Decree No. 25 of 2016 of CAA fees and departure fees.
- Minster of Transportation and Telecommunication Decree No. 21 of 2013 issuing the regulations under the Civil Aviation Law.

Transportation and storage

ISIC4	Business activity
5223-3	Service activities incidental to air transportation - Aircraft Handling Services for Cargo

Description

Providing handling services for cargo airline only

Business Requirements

Age

18 and above

Allowed for Nationalities

- Bahraini 100%
- American 100%
- GCC 100%

Legal Type

It is allowed to register according to the legal forms mentioned below

Allowed for Individual Commercial Registration (ICR) : Yes

Allowed for Company Commercial Registration (CCR) : Yes

- Bahrain Shareholding Company (Public)
- With Limited Liability Company
- Branch of a Foreign Company
- Bahrain Shareholding Company (Closed)
- Partnership Company
- Simple Commandite Company
- Commandite By Shares Company
- Non Profit Company

Required Step of Licenses and Approvals

Ministry / Directorate	License / Approval Requirements	Approval Type
Civil Aviation Affairs	Aircraft handling service for cargo	Pre
General Directorate Of Criminal Investigation	Approval by General Directorate of Criminal Investigation	Pre
Civil Aviation Affairs	Aircraft handling service for cargo	Post
Municipality Affairs	Site Approval for Transportation and Logistics Activities	Post
Civil Aviation Affairs	Aircraft handling service for cargo	Final Site Inspection

Civil Aviation Affairs (Pre) (5223-3)

Approval Name	Description	Estimated Time
Aircraft handling service for cargo	Aircraft handling service for cargo	10 Days

Fee Details (if any)

• Application fees: BD 100 (non-refundable in cases where the application is not approved).
• Visibility study: BD 1,000 (deducted from the license fee in case of approval).
• License fees BD 10,000.
• Annual renewal fees 50% of the license fees.

License Information

• The capital of the company must not be less than 500,000.
• The license is valid for one year and renewal application must be submitted 2 months before expiry
• Adherence to the standards and regulatory requirements contained in the regulations under the Civil Aviation Law issued by virtue of Law No. 14 of 2013
• Fulfil obligations set out in the Civil Aviation Law, as well as the Chicago Convention and its annexes
• Fulfil all aviation safety and security requirements.
• The location must be safe and secure.
• The company should be located within the airport.

Required Documents

•Feasibility, technical, economic and financial studies
•Fill application Form ATD/ATCL/OF04
•Memorandum of Association

Other Documents

- Chicago Convention and its Annexes.
- Civil Aviation Law No.14 of 2013
- Minister of Transportation and Telecommunication Decree No. 25 of 2016 of CAA fees and departure fees.
- Minster of Transportation and Telecommunication Decree No. 21 of 2013 issuing the regulations under the Civil Aviation Law.

General Directorate Of Criminal Investigation (Pre) (5223-3)

Approval Name	Description	Estimated Time
Approval by General Directorate of Criminal Investigation	General Directorate of Criminal Investigation Approval for the Activity	7 Days

Fee Details (if any)

There is no Estimated Processing Time (Days) in this license.

License Information

- The applicant should not have a criminal record, unless they have been rehabilitated in criminal cases

Civil Aviation Affairs (Post) (5223-3)

Approval Name	Description	Estimated Time
Aircraft handling service for cargo	Aircraft handling service for cargo	10 Days

Fee Details (if any)

• Application fees: BD 100 (non-refundable in cases where the application is not approved).
• Visibility study: BD 1,000 (deducted from the license fee in case of approval).
• License fees BD 10,000.
• Annual renewal fees 50% of the license fees.

License Information

• The capital of the company must not be less than 500,000.
• The license is valid for one year and renewal application must be submitted 2 months before expiry
• Adherence to the standards and regulatory requirements contained in the regulations under the Civil Aviation Law issued by virtue of Law No. 14 of 2013
• Fulfil obligations set out in the Civil Aviation Law, as well as the Chicago Convention and its annexes
• Fulfil all aviation safety and security requirements.
• The location must be safe and secure.
• The company should be located within the airport.

Required Documents

•Feasibility, technical, economic and financial studies
•Fill application Form ATD/ATCL/OF04
•Memorandum of Association

Other Documents

- Chicago Convention and its Annexes.
- Civil Aviation Law No.14 of 2013
- Minister of Transportation and Telecommunication Decree No. 25 of 2016 of CAA fees and departure fees.
- Minster of Transportation and Telecommunication Decree No. 21 of 2013 issuing the regulations under the Civil Aviation Law.

Municipality Affairs (Post) (5223-3)

Approval Name	Description	Estimated Time
Site Approval for Transportation and Logistics Activities	Municipality Approval for the Commercial Registration address or the site in which the Activity will be practiced	3 Days

Fee Details (if any)

10

License Information

General Conditions:
1. Size of shop/premises must be sufficient for the activity
2. Businesses may not carry out the activity outside the boundaries of the shop/ premises
3. It is prohibited to display or store any items or equipment outside the shop / premises boundary without prior approval from the Municipality. In the event of non-compliance, the Ministry of Municipality Affairs has the right to take necessary action.
4. Maintain cleanliness of the site
5. Comply with the parking space regulations as per the Construction Regulatory Requirements

Activity Specific Conditions:
1. The commercial address of the Commercial Registration for this activity can an office address

Note: Uploading pictures of the site/shop may expedite the process of obtaining approval

Required Documents

- Lease agreement (after obtaining the necessary approvals from other licensing entities)
- Pictures of site/shop (optional)
- Shop photos

Other Documents

- Cabinet's Decision (56) of the year 2022 regarding the Regulatory Requirements of Construction for various areas in the Kingdom of Bahrain

Civil Aviation Affairs (Final Site Inspection) (5223-3)

Approval Name	Description	Estimated Time
Aircraft handling service for cargo	Aircraft handling service for cargo	10 Days

Fee Details (if any)

• Application fees: BD 100 (non-refundable in cases where the application is not approved).
• Visibility study: BD 1,000 (deducted from the license fee in case of approval).
• License fees BD 10,000.
• Annual renewal fees 50% of the license fees.

License Information

• The capital of the company must not be less than 500,000.
• The license is valid for one year and renewal application must be submitted 2 months before expiry
• Adherence to the standards and regulatory requirements contained in the regulations under the Civil Aviation Law issued by virtue of Law No. 14 of 2013
• Fulfil obligations set out in the Civil Aviation Law, as well as the Chicago Convention and its annexes
• Fulfil all aviation safety and security requirements.
• The location must be safe and secure.
• The company should be located within the airport.

Required Documents

•Feasibility, technical, economic and financial studies
•Fill application Form ATD/ATCL/OF04
•Memorandum of Association

Other Documents

- Chicago Convention and its Annexes.
- Civil Aviation Law No.14 of 2013
- Minister of Transportation and Telecommunication Decree No. 25 of 2016 of CAA fees and departure fees.
- Minster of Transportation and Telecommunication Decree No. 21 of 2013 issuing the regulations under the Civil Aviation Law.

Transportation and storage

ISIC4	Business activity
5223-4	Service activities incidental to air transportation - Private Aircraft Handling Services

Description

Providing handling services for private aircraft only

Business Requirements

Age

18 and above

Allowed for Nationalities

- Bahraini 100%
- American 100%
- GCC 100%

Legal Type

It is allowed to register according to the legal forms mentioned below

Allowed for Individual Commercial Registration (ICR) : Yes

Allowed for Company Commercial Registration (CCR) : Yes

- Bahrain Shareholding Company (Public)
- With Limited Liability Company
- Branch of a Foreign Company
- Bahrain Shareholding Company (Closed)
- Partnership Company
- Simple Commandite Company
- Commandite By Shares Company
- Non Profit Company

Required Step of Licenses and Approvals

Ministry / Directorate	License / Approval Requirements	Approval Type
Civil Aviation Affairs	Private Aircraft Handling Services	Pre
General Directorate Of Criminal Investigation	Approval by General Directorate of Criminal Investigation	Pre
Civil Aviation Affairs	Private Aircraft Handling Services	Post
Municipality Affairs	Site Approval for Transportation and Logistics Activities	Post
Civil Aviation Affairs	Private Aircraft Handling Services	Final Site Inspection

Civil Aviation Affairs (Pre) (5223-4)

Approval Name	Description	Estimated Time
Private Aircraft Handling Services	Providing handling services for private aircraft only.	10 Days

Fee Details (if any)

• Application fees: BD 100 (non-refundable in cases where the application is not approved).
• Visibility study: BD 1,000 (deducted from the license fee in case of approval).
• License fees BD 5,000.
• Annual renewal 50% of the license fees.

License Information

• The capital of the company must not be less than BD100,000.
• The license is valid for one year and renewal application must be submitted 2 months before expiry
• by obtaining a permanent or temporary flight authorization.
• Adherence to the standards and regulatory requirements contained in the regulations under the Civil Aviation Law issued by virtue of Law No. 14 of 2013
• Fulfil obligations set out in the Civil Aviation Law, as well as the Chicago Convention and its annexes
• Fulfil all aviation safety and security requirements.
• The location must be safe and secure.
• The company should be located within the airport.

Required Documents

•Feasibility, technical, economic and financial studies
•Fill application Form ATD/ATCL/OF04
•Memorandum of Association

Other Documents

- Chicago Convention and its Annexes.
- Civil Aviation Law No.14 of 2013
- Minister of Transport and Telecommunication Decree No. 12 of 2016 amending some provisions of the Regulation under the Civil Aviation Law.
- Minister of Transportation and Telecommunication Decree No. 25 of 2016 of CAA fees and departure fees.
- Minster of Transportation and Telecommunication Decree No. 21 of 2013 issuing the regulations under the Civil Aviation Law.

General Directorate Of Criminal Investigation (Pre) (5223-4)

Approval Name	Description	Estimated Time
Approval by General Directorate of Criminal Investigation	General Directorate of Criminal Investigation Approval for the Activity	7 Days

Fee Details (if any)

There is no Estimated Processing Time (Days) in this license.

License Information

- The applicant should not have a criminal record, unless they have been rehabilitated in criminal cases

Civil Aviation Affairs (Post) (5223-4)

Approval Name	Description	Estimated Time
Private Aircraft Handling Services	Providing handling services for private aircraft only.	10 Days

Fee Details (if any)

• Application fees: BD 100 (non-refundable in cases where the application is not approved).
• Visibility study: BD 1,000 (deducted from the license fee in case of approval).
• License fees BD 5,000.
• Annual renewal 50% of the license fees.

License Information

• The capital of the company must not be less than BD100,000.
• The license is valid for one year and renewal application must be submitted 2 months before expiry
• by obtaining a permanent or temporary flight authorization.
• Adherence to the standards and regulatory requirements contained in the regulations under the Civil Aviation Law issued by virtue of Law No. 14 of 2013
• Fulfil obligations set out in the Civil Aviation Law, as well as the Chicago Convention and its annexes
• Fulfil all aviation safety and security requirements.
• The location must be safe and secure.
• The company should be located within the airport.

Required Documents

•Feasibility, technical, economic and financial studies
•Fill application Form ATD/ATCL/OF04
•Memorandum of Association

Other Documents

- Chicago Convention and its Annexes.
- Civil Aviation Law No.14 of 2013
- Minister of Transport and Telecommunication Decree No. 12 of 2016 amending some provisions of the Regulation under the Civil Aviation Law.
- Minister of Transportation and Telecommunication Decree No. 25 of 2016 of CAA fees and departure fees.
- Minster of Transportation and Telecommunication Decree No. 21 of 2013 issuing the regulations under the Civil Aviation Law.

Municipality Affairs (Post) (5223-4)

Approval Name	Description	Estimated Time
Site Approval for Transportation and Logistics Activities	Municipality Approval for the Commercial Registration address or the site in which the Activity will be practiced	3 Days

Fee Details (if any)

10

License Information

General Conditions:
1. Size of shop/premises must be sufficient for the activity
2. Businesses may not carry out the activity outside the boundaries of the shop/ premises
3. It is prohibited to display or store any items or equipment outside the shop / premises boundary without prior approval from the Municipality. In the event of non-compliance, the Ministry of Municipality Affairs has the right to take necessary action.
4. Maintain cleanliness of the site
5. Comply with the parking space regulations as per the Construction Regulatory Requirements

Activity Specific Conditions:
1. The commercial address of the Commercial Registration for this activity can an office address

Note: Uploading pictures of the site/shop may expedite the process of obtaining approval

Required Documents

- Lease agreement (after obtaining the necessary approvals from other licensing entities)
- Pictures of site/shop (optional)
- Shop photos

Other Documents

- Cabinet's Decision (56) of the year 2022 regarding the Regulatory Requirements of Construction for various areas in the Kingdom of Bahrain

Civil Aviation Affairs (Final Site Inspection) (5223-4)

Approval Name	Description	Estimated Time
Private Aircraft Handling Services	Providing handling services for private aircraft only.	10 Days

Fee Details (if any)

• Application fees: BD 100 (non-refundable in cases where the application is not approved).
• Visibility study: BD 1,000 (deducted from the license fee in case of approval).
• License fees BD 5,000.
• Annual renewal 50% of the license fees.

License Information

• The capital of the company must not be less than BD100,000.
• The license is valid for one year and renewal application must be submitted 2 months before expiry
• by obtaining a permanent or temporary flight authorization.
• Adherence to the standards and regulatory requirements contained in the regulations under the Civil Aviation Law issued by virtue of Law No. 14 of 2013
• Fulfil obligations set out in the Civil Aviation Law, as well as the Chicago Convention and its annexes
• Fulfil all aviation safety and security requirements.
• The location must be safe and secure.
• The company should be located within the airport.

Required Documents

•Feasibility, technical, economic and financial studies
•Fill application Form ATD/ATCL/OF04
•Memorandum of Association

Other Documents

- Chicago Convention and its Annexes.
- Civil Aviation Law No.14 of 2013
- Minister of Transport and Telecommunication Decree No. 12 of 2016 amending some provisions of the Regulation under the Civil Aviation Law.
- Minister of Transportation and Telecommunication Decree No. 25 of 2016 of CAA fees and departure fees.
- Minster of Transportation and Telecommunication Decree No. 21 of 2013 issuing the regulations under the Civil Aviation Law.

Transportation and storage

ISIC4	Business activity
5223-5	Service activities incidental to air transportation - Passenger Services

Description

Including meet and assists, checks in services, Hotel and car booking and any services need it for arrivals and departures passengers

Business Requirements

Age

18 and above

Allowed for Nationalities

- Bahraini 100%
- American 100%
- Liechtenstein er 100%
- Swiss 100%
- GCC 100%
- Icelander 100%
- Norwegian 100%

Legal Type

It is allowed to register according to the legal forms mentioned below

Allowed for Individual Commercial Registration (ICR) : Yes

Allowed for Company Commercial Registration (CCR) : Yes

- Bahrain Shareholding Company (Public)
- With Limited Liability Company
- Branch of a Foreign Company
- Bahrain Shareholding Company (Closed)
- Partnership Company
- Simple Commandite Company
- Commandite By Shares Company
- Non Profit Company

Required Step of Licenses and Approvals

Ministry / Directorate	License / Approval Requirements	Approval Type
General Directorate Of Criminal Investigation	Approval by General Directorate of Criminal Investigation	Pre
Civil Aviation Affairs	Passengers Services	Pre
Civil Aviation Affairs	Passengers Services	Post
Municipality Affairs	Site Approval for Transportation and Logistics Activities	Post
Civil Aviation Affairs	Passengers Services	Final Site Inspection

General Directorate Of Criminal Investigation (Pre) (5223-5)

Approval Name	Description	Estimated Time
Approval by General Directorate of Criminal Investigation	General Directorate of Criminal Investigation Approval for the Activity	7 Days

Fee Details (if any)

There is no Estimated Processing Time (Days) in this license.

License Information

- The applicant should not have a criminal record, unless they have been rehabilitated in criminal cases

Civil Aviation Affairs (Pre) (5223-5)

Approval Name	Description	Estimated Time
Passengers Services	Including meet and assists, checks in services, Hotel & car booking and any services need it for arrivals and departures passengers.	10 Days

Fee Details (if any)

• Application fees: BD 100 (non-refundable in cases where the application is not approved).
• License fees: BD 2,000.
• Annual renewal 50% of the license fees.

License Information

• The capital of the company must not be less than BD20,000.
• The license is valid for one year and renewal application must be submitted 2 months before expiry
• Adherence to the standards and regulatory requirements contained in the regulations under the Civil Aviation Law issued by virtue of Law No. 14 of 2013

Required Documents

•Feasibility, technical, economic and financial studies
•Fill application Form ATD/ATCL/OF04
•Memorandum of Association

Other Documents

- Chicago Convention and its Annexes.
- Civil Aviation Law No.14 of 2013
- Minister of Transport and Telecommunication Decree No. 12 of 2016 amending some provisions of the Regulation under the Civil Aviation Law.
- Minister of Transportation and Telecommunication Decree No. 25 of 2016 of CAA fees and departure fees.
- Minster of Transportation and Telecommunication Decree No. 21 of 2013 issuing the regulations under the Civil Aviation Law.

Civil Aviation Affairs (Post) (5223-5)

Approval Name	Description	Estimated Time
Passengers Services	Including meet and assists, checks in services, Hotel & car booking and any services need it for arrivals and departures passengers.	10 Days

Fee Details (if any)

• Application fees: BD 100 (non-refundable in cases where the application is not approved).
• License fees: BD 2,000.
• Annual renewal 50% of the license fees.

License Information

• The capital of the company must not be less than BD20,000.
• The license is valid for one year and renewal application must be submitted 2 months before expiry
• Adherence to the standards and regulatory requirements contained in the regulations under the Civil Aviation Law issued by virtue of Law No. 14 of 2013

Required Documents

•Feasibility, technical, economic and financial studies
•Fill application Form ATD/ATCL/OF04
•Memorandum of Association

Other Documents

- Chicago Convention and its Annexes.
- Civil Aviation Law No.14 of 2013
- Minister of Transport and Telecommunication Decree No. 12 of 2016 amending some provisions of the Regulation under the Civil Aviation Law.
- Minister of Transportation and Telecommunication Decree No. 25 of 2016 of CAA fees and departure fees.
- Minster of Transportation and Telecommunication Decree No. 21 of 2013 issuing the regulations under the Civil Aviation Law.

Municipality Affairs (Post) (5223-5)

Approval Name	Description	Estimated Time
Site Approval for Transportation and Logistics Activities	Municipality Approval for the Commercial Registration address or the site in which the Activity will be practiced	3 Days

Fee Details (if any)

10

License Information

General Conditions:
1. Size of shop/premises must be sufficient for the activity
2. Businesses may not carry out the activity outside the boundaries of the shop/ premises
3. It is prohibited to display or store any items or equipment outside the shop / premises boundary without prior approval from the Municipality. In the event of non-compliance, the Ministry of Municipality Affairs has the right to take necessary action.
4. Maintain cleanliness of the site
5. Comply with the parking space regulations as per the Construction Regulatory Requirements

Activity Specific Conditions:
1. The commercial address of the Commercial Registration for this activity can an office address

Note: Uploading pictures of the site/shop may expedite the process of obtaining approval

Required Documents

- Lease agreement (after obtaining the necessary approvals from other licensing entities)
- Pictures of site/shop (optional)
- Shop photos

Other Documents

- Cabinet's Decision (56) of the year 2022 regarding the Regulatory Requirements of Construction for various areas in the Kingdom of Bahrain

Civil Aviation Affairs (Final Site Inspection) (5223-5)

Approval Name	Description	Estimated Time
Passengers Services	Including meet and assists, checks in services, Hotel & car booking and any services need it for arrivals and departures passengers.	10 Days

Fee Details (if any)

• Application fees: BD 100 (non-refundable in cases where the application is not approved).
• License fees: BD 2,000.
• Annual renewal 50% of the license fees.

License Information

• The capital of the company must not be less than BD20,000.
• The license is valid for one year and renewal application must be submitted 2 months before expiry
• Adherence to the standards and regulatory requirements contained in the regulations under the Civil Aviation Law issued by virtue of Law No. 14 of 2013

Required Documents

•Feasibility, technical, economic and financial studies
•Fill application Form ATD/ATCL/OF04
•Memorandum of Association

Other Documents

- Chicago Convention and its Annexes.
- Civil Aviation Law No.14 of 2013
- Minister of Transport and Telecommunication Decree No. 12 of 2016 amending some provisions of the Regulation under the Civil Aviation Law.
- Minister of Transportation and Telecommunication Decree No. 25 of 2016 of CAA fees and departure fees.
- Minster of Transportation and Telecommunication Decree No. 21 of 2013 issuing the regulations under the Civil Aviation Law.

Transportation and storage

ISIC4	Business activity
5223-6	Service activities incidental to air transportation - Airport Lounge Operations

Description

Provide services for first-class travelers and business class and lounges administration allocated to it

Business Requirements

Age

18 and above

Allowed for Nationalities

- Bahraini 100%
- American 100%
- GCC 100%

Legal Type

It is allowed to register according to the legal forms mentioned below

Allowed for Individual Commercial Registration (ICR) : Yes

Allowed for Company Commercial Registration (CCR) : Yes

- Bahrain Shareholding Company (Public)
- With Limited Liability Company
- Branch of a Foreign Company
- Bahrain Shareholding Company (Closed)
- Partnership Company
- Simple Commandite Company
- Commandite By Shares Company
- Non Profit Company

Required Step of Licenses and Approvals

Ministry / Directorate	License / Approval Requirements	Approval Type
Civil Aviation Affairs	Airport Lounge Operations	Pre
General Directorate Of Criminal Investigation	Approval by General Directorate of Criminal Investigation	Pre
Civil Aviation Affairs	Airport Lounge Operations	Post
Municipality Affairs	Site Approval for Transportation and Logistics Activities	Post
Civil Aviation Affairs	Airport Lounge Operations	Final Site Inspection

Civil Aviation Affairs (Pre) (5223-6)

Approval Name	Description	Estimated Time
Airport Lounge Operations	Provide services for first-class travelers and business class and lounges administration allocated to it.	10 Days

Fee Details (if any)

• Application fees: BD 100 (non-refundable in cases where the application is not approved).
• License fees: BD 2,000.
• Annual renewal 50% of the license fees.

License Information

• The capital of the company must not be less than 100,000.
• The license is valid for one year and renewal application must be submitted 2 months before expiry
• Adherence to the standards and regulatory requirements contained in the regulations under the Civil Aviation Law issued by virtue of Law No. 14 of 2013

Required Documents

•Feasibility, technical, economic and financial studies
•Fill application Form ATD/ATCL/OF04
•Memorandum of Association

Other Documents

- Chicago Convention and its Annexes.
- Civil Aviation Law No.14 of 2013
- Minister of Transport and Telecommunication Decree No. 12 of 2016 amending some provisions of the Regulation under the Civil Aviation Law.
- Minister of Transportation and Telecommunication Decree No. 25 of 2016 of CAA fees and departure fees.
- Minster of Transportation and Telecommunication Decree No. 21 of 2013 issuing the regulations under the Civil Aviation Law.

General Directorate Of Criminal Investigation (Pre) (5223-6)

Approval Name	Description	Estimated Time
Approval by General Directorate of Criminal Investigation	General Directorate of Criminal Investigation Approval for the Activity	7 Days

Fee Details (if any)

There is no Estimated Processing Time (Days) in this license.

License Information

- The applicant should not have a criminal record, unless they have been rehabilitated in criminal cases

Civil Aviation Affairs (Post) (5223-6)

Approval Name	Description	Estimated Time
Airport Lounge Operations	Provide services for first-class travelers and business class and lounges administration allocated to it.	10 Days

Fee Details (if any)

• Application fees: BD 100 (non-refundable in cases where the application is not approved).
• License fees: BD 2,000.
• Annual renewal 50% of the license fees.

License Information

• The capital of the company must not be less than 100,000.
• The license is valid for one year and renewal application must be submitted 2 months before expiry
• Adherence to the standards and regulatory requirements contained in the regulations under the Civil Aviation Law issued by virtue of Law No. 14 of 2013

Required Documents

•Feasibility, technical, economic and financial studies
•Fill application Form ATD/ATCL/OF04
•Memorandum of Association

Other Documents

- Chicago Convention and its Annexes.
- Civil Aviation Law No.14 of 2013
- Minister of Transport and Telecommunication Decree No. 12 of 2016 amending some provisions of the Regulation under the Civil Aviation Law.
- Minister of Transportation and Telecommunication Decree No. 25 of 2016 of CAA fees and departure fees.
- Minster of Transportation and Telecommunication Decree No. 21 of 2013 issuing the regulations under the Civil Aviation Law.

Municipality Affairs (Post) (5223-6)

Approval Name	Description	Estimated Time
Site Approval for Transportation and Logistics Activities	Municipality Approval for the Commercial Registration address or the site in which the Activity will be practiced	3 Days

Fee Details (if any)

10

License Information

General Conditions:
1. Size of shop/premises must be sufficient for the activity
2. Businesses may not carry out the activity outside the boundaries of the shop/ premises
3. It is prohibited to display or store any items or equipment outside the shop / premises boundary without prior approval from the Municipality. In the event of non-compliance, the Ministry of Municipality Affairs has the right to take necessary action.
4. Maintain cleanliness of the site
5. Comply with the parking space regulations as per the Construction Regulatory Requirements

Activity Specific Conditions:
1. The commercial address of the Commercial Registration for this activity can an office address

Note: Uploading pictures of the site/shop may expedite the process of obtaining approval

Required Documents

- Lease agreement (after obtaining the necessary approvals from other licensing entities)
- Pictures of site/shop (optional)
- Shop photos

Other Documents

- Cabinet's Decision (56) of the year 2022 regarding the Regulatory Requirements of Construction for various areas in the Kingdom of Bahrain

Civil Aviation Affairs (Final Site Inspection) (5223-6)

Approval Name	Description	Estimated Time
Airport Lounge Operations	Provide services for first-class travelers and business class and lounges administration allocated to it.	10 Days

Fee Details (if any)

• Application fees: BD 100 (non-refundable in cases where the application is not approved).
• License fees: BD 2,000.
• Annual renewal 50% of the license fees.

License Information

• The capital of the company must not be less than 100,000.
• The license is valid for one year and renewal application must be submitted 2 months before expiry
• Adherence to the standards and regulatory requirements contained in the regulations under the Civil Aviation Law issued by virtue of Law No. 14 of 2013

Required Documents

•Feasibility, technical, economic and financial studies
•Fill application Form ATD/ATCL/OF04
•Memorandum of Association

Other Documents

- Chicago Convention and its Annexes.
- Civil Aviation Law No.14 of 2013
- Minister of Transport and Telecommunication Decree No. 12 of 2016 amending some provisions of the Regulation under the Civil Aviation Law.
- Minister of Transportation and Telecommunication Decree No. 25 of 2016 of CAA fees and departure fees.
- Minster of Transportation and Telecommunication Decree No. 21 of 2013 issuing the regulations under the Civil Aviation Law.

Transportation and storage

ISIC4	Business activity
5223-7	Service activities incidental to air transportation - Air and Ground Telecommunications Services for aircrafts

Description

This activity allows the holder to provide telecommunications services between surveillance at airports and aircraft tower
as well as dealing (import, export, sale and maintenance) wireless equipment to private networks used in airports,
communication equipment services which offers civil aviation and private companies in order to accomplish its functions
in the aviation industry as well as dealing in wireless equipment used board aircrafts.

Business Requirements

✔ Age

21 and above

✔ Allowed for Nationalities

Bahraini 100%		GCC 100%	
American 100%		Singaporean 100%	
Icelander 100%		Liechtenstein er 100%	
Norwegian 100%		Swiss 100%	

Foreign Allowed up to 100%

Legal Type

It is allowed to register according to the legal forms mentioned below

Allowed for Individual Commercial Registration (ICR) : Yes

Allowed for Company Commercial Registration (CCR) : Yes

- Bahrain Shareholding Company (Public)
- With Limited Liability Company
- Branch of a Foreign Company
- Bahrain Shareholding Company (Closed)
- Partnership Company
- Simple Commandite Company
- Commandite By Shares Company
- Non Profit Company

Required Step of Licenses and Approvals

Ministry / Directorate	License / Approval Requirements	Approval Type
Directorate Of Wireless Licensing And Frequency Monitoring	Notification Companies dealing in wireless equipment License - Aviation sector	Notification Only
General Directorate Of Criminal Investigation	Approval by General Directorate of Criminal Investigation	Pre
Municipality Affairs	Site Approval for Transportation and Logistics Activities	Post

Directorate Of Wireless Licensing And Frequency Monitoring (Notification Only) (5223-7)

Approval Name	Description	Estimated Time
Notification Companies dealing in wireless equipment License - Aviation sector	Notification	There is no License Information in this license. Days

Fee Details (if any)

There is no Estimated Processing Time (Days) in this license.

License Information

Requirements after obtaining the license :

The holder of a commercial registration with this activity should, under no circumstance, program or reprogram the radio-communication equipment without written approval from this Directorate.

The applicant must obtain a “Type approval” Certificate for all radio-communication equipment from this directorate prior to importing the equipment and making them available in the local market.

Wireless devices must be stored in bonded stores that are under the supervision of the customs directorate

A log record for the radios equipment to be sold must be maintained during the year, and the records shall be checked by the Directorate prior to the issuance of the renewal license.

Note: kindly note that for using licensed frequency please spectrum directorate to continue the process.

General Directorate Of Criminal Investigation (Pre) (5223-7)

Approval Name	Description	Estimated Time
Approval by General Directorate of Criminal Investigation	General Directorate of Criminal Investigation Approval for the Activity	7 Days

Fee Details (if any)

There is no Estimated Processing Time (Days) in this license.

License Information

- The applicant should not have a criminal record, unless they have been rehabilitated in criminal cases

Municipality Affairs (Post) (5223-7)

Approval Name	Description	Estimated Time
Site Approval for Transportation and Logistics Activities	Municipality Approval for the Commercial Registration address or the site in which the Activity will be practiced	3 Days

Fee Details (if any)

10

License Information

General Conditions:
1. Size of shop/premises must be sufficient for the activity
2. Businesses may not carry out the activity outside the boundaries of the shop/ premises
3. It is prohibited to display or store any items or equipment outside the shop / premises boundary without prior approval from the Municipality. In the event of non-compliance, the Ministry of Municipality Affairs has the right to take necessary action.
4. Maintain cleanliness of the site
5. Comply with the parking space regulations as per the Construction Regulatory Requirements

Activity Specific Conditions:
1. The commercial address of the Commercial Registration for this activity can an office address

Note: Uploading pictures of the site/shop may expedite the process of obtaining approval

Required Documents

- Lease agreement (after obtaining the necessary approvals from other licensing entities)
- Pictures of site/shop (optional)
- Shop photos

Other Documents

- Cabinet's Decision (56) of the year 2022 regarding the Regulatory Requirements of Construction for various areas in the Kingdom of Bahrain

Transportation and storage

ISIC4	Business activity
5223-8	Service activities incidental to air transportation - Areal Work air transport Operator services

Description

Providing airport services for agriculture works - advertising... etc. Not permitted to curry passengers, cargo and mail

Business Requirements

Age

18 and above

Allowed for Nationalities

- Bahraini 100%
- American 100%
- GCC 100%

Legal Type

It is allowed to register according to the legal forms mentioned below

Allowed for Individual Commercial Registration (ICR) : Yes

Allowed for Company Commercial Registration (CCR) : Yes

- Bahrain Shareholding Company (Public)
- With Limited Liability Company
- Branch of a Foreign Company
- Bahrain Shareholding Company (Closed)
- Partnership Company
- Simple Commandite Company
- Commandite By Shares Company
- Non Profit Company

Required Step of Licenses and Approvals

Ministry / Directorate	License / Approval Requirements	Approval Type
Civil Aviation Affairs	Areal Work Air Transportr Operator	Pre
General Directorate Of Criminal Investigation	Approval by General Directorate of Criminal Investigation	Pre
Municipality Affairs	Site Approval for Transportation and Logistics Activities	Post
Civil Aviation Affairs	Areal Work Air Transportr Operator	Post
Civil Aviation Affairs	Areal Work Air Transportr Operator	Final Site Inspection

Civil Aviation Affairs (Pre) (5223-8)

Approval Name	Description	Estimated Time
Areal Work Air Transportr Operator	Providing airport services for agriculture works - advertising... etc. Not permitted to curry passengers, cargo and mail.	10 Days

Fee Details (if any)

• Application fees: BD 100 (non-refundable in cases where the application is not approved).
• Visibility study: BD 1,000 (deducted from the license fee in case of approval).
• Issue AOC : BD 2,000.
• Annual renewal 50% of the license fees.

License Information

• The capital of the company must not be less than BD 1,000,000.
• Fulfil and adhere to the commitments of airline operations.
• The license is valid for one year and renewal application must be submitted 2 months before expiry
• No scheduled international air services may operate from, to and across the territory of the State except by obtaining a permanent or temporary flight authorization.
• Adherence to the standards and regulatory requirements contained in the regulations under the Civil Aviation Law issued by virtue of Law No. 14 of 2013
• Fulfil all AOC and airworthiness requirement, Civil Aviation Law and Chicago Convention and its Annexes.
• Fulfil all aviation safety and security requirements.

Required Documents

- Feasibility, technical, economic and financial studies
- Fill application Form ATD/ATCL/OF04
- Memorandum of Association

Other Documents

- Chicago Convention and its Annexes.
- Civil Aviation Law No.14 of 2013
- Decree No. 25 of 2016 of CAA fees and departure fees
- Minister of Transport and Telecommunication Decree No. 12 of 2016 amending some provisions of the Regulation under the Civil Aviation Law.
- Minster of Transportation and Telecommunication Decree No. 21 of 2013 issuing the regulations under the Civil Aviation Law.

General Directorate Of Criminal Investigation (Pre) (5223-8)

Approval Name	Description	Estimated Time
Approval by General Directorate of Criminal Investigation	General Directorate of Criminal Investigation Approval for the Activity	7 Days

Fee Details (if any)

There is no Estimated Processing Time (Days) in this license.

License Information

- The applicant should not have a criminal record, unless they have been rehabilitated in criminal cases

Municipality Affairs (Post) (5223-8)

Approval Name	Description	Estimated Time
Site Approval for Transportation and Logistics Activities	Municipality Approval for the Commercial Registration address or the site in which the Activity will be practiced	3 Days

Fee Details (if any)

10

License Information

General Conditions:
1. Size of shop/premises must be sufficient for the activity
2. Businesses may not carry out the activity outside the boundaries of the shop/ premises
3. It is prohibited to display or store any items or equipment outside the shop / premises boundary without prior approval from the Municipality. In the event of non-compliance, the Ministry of Municipality Affairs has the right to take necessary action.
4. Maintain cleanliness of the site
5. Comply with the parking space regulations as per the Construction Regulatory Requirements

Activity Specific Conditions:
1. The commercial address of the Commercial Registration for this activity can an office address

Note: Uploading pictures of the site/shop may expedite the process of obtaining approval

Required Documents

- Lease agreement (after obtaining the necessary approvals from other licensing entities)
- Pictures of site/shop (optional)
- Shop photos

Other Documents

- Cabinet's Decision (56) of the year 2022 regarding the Regulatory Requirements of Construction for various areas in the Kingdom of Bahrain

Civil Aviation Affairs (Post) (5223-8)

Approval Name	Description	Estimated Time
Areal Work Air Transportr Operator	Providing airport services for agriculture works - advertising... etc. Not permitted to curry passengers, cargo and mail.	10 Days

Fee Details (if any)

• Application fees: BD 100 (non-refundable in cases where the application is not approved).
• Visibility study: BD 1,000 (deducted from the license fee in case of approval).
• Issue AOC : BD 2,000.
• Annual renewal 50% of the license fees.

License Information

• The capital of the company must not be less than BD 1,000,000.
• Fulfil and adhere to the commitments of airline operations.
• The license is valid for one year and renewal application must be submitted 2 months before expiry
• No scheduled international air services may operate from, to and across the territory of the State except by obtaining a permanent or temporary flight authorization.
• Adherence to the standards and regulatory requirements contained in the regulations under the Civil Aviation Law issued by virtue of Law No. 14 of 2013
• Fulfil all AOC and airworthiness requirement, Civil Aviation Law and Chicago Convention and its Annexes.
• Fulfil all aviation safety and security requirements.

Required Documents

- Feasibility, technical, economic and financial studies
- Fill application Form ATD/ATCL/OF04
- Memorandum of Association

Other Documents

- Chicago Convention and its Annexes.
- Civil Aviation Law No.14 of 2013
- Decree No. 25 of 2016 of CAA fees and departure fees
- Minister of Transport and Telecommunication Decree No. 12 of 2016 amending some provisions of the Regulation under the Civil Aviation Law.
- Minster of Transportation and Telecommunication Decree No. 21 of 2013 issuing the regulations under the Civil Aviation Law.

Civil Aviation Affairs (Final Site Inspection) (5223-8)

Approval Name	Description	Estimated Time
Areal Work Air Transportr Operator	Providing airport services for agriculture works - advertising... etc. Not permitted to curry passengers, cargo and mail.	10 Days

Fee Details (if any)

• Application fees: BD 100 (non-refundable in cases where the application is not approved).
• Visibility study: BD 1,000 (deducted from the license fee in case of approval).
• Issue AOC : BD 2,000.
• Annual renewal 50% of the license fees.

License Information

• The capital of the company must not be less than BD 1,000,000.
• Fulfil and adhere to the commitments of airline operations.
• The license is valid for one year and renewal application must be submitted 2 months before expiry
• No scheduled international air services may operate from, to and across the territory of the State except by obtaining a permanent or temporary flight authorization.
• Adherence to the standards and regulatory requirements contained in the regulations under the Civil Aviation Law issued by virtue of Law No. 14 of 2013
• Fulfil all AOC and airworthiness requirement, Civil Aviation Law and Chicago Convention and its Annexes.
• Fulfil all aviation safety and security requirements.

Required Documents

- Feasibility, technical, economic and financial studies
- Fill application Form ATD/ATCL/OF04
- Memorandum of Association

Other Documents

- Chicago Convention and its Annexes.
- Civil Aviation Law No.14 of 2013
- Decree No. 25 of 2016 of CAA fees and departure fees
- Minister of Transport and Telecommunication Decree No. 12 of 2016 amending some provisions of the Regulation under the Civil Aviation Law.
- Minster of Transportation and Telecommunication Decree No. 21 of 2013 issuing the regulations under the Civil Aviation Law.

Transportation and storage

ISIC4	Business activity
5224-1	Cargo handling

Description

Loading and unloading of goods and providing the necessary arrangements for receiving the goods or assembling them from the owner or the shipper, using vehicles that are appropriate to the nature of this activity; for example using forklifts (these vehicles are not allowed to be driven on the streets and public roads). This activity does not permit transportation of goods in any way.

The activities that allow transportation of goods by road are as follows:
- Road transport of goods - Internal transport of goods: International code 4923-1
- Road transport of goods - International transport of goods: International code 4923-2

On the other hand, the below activity allows for cargo handling and freight unloading within the seaports:
- Cargo handling - Freight and unloading services in seaports 5224-2

The below activity allows for carrying out cargo handling at the airport:
The activities of air transport agencies and international freight: International code 522903

Business Requirements

Age

18 and above

Allowed for Nationalities

Bahraini 100%		GCC 100%	
American 100%		Singaporean 100%	
Icelander 100%		Liechtenstein er 100%	
Norwegian 100%		Swiss 100%	

Foreign Allowed up to 100%

Legal Type

It is allowed to register according to the legal forms mentioned below

Allowed for Individual Commercial Registration (ICR) : Yes

Allowed for Company Commercial Registration (CCR) : Yes

- Bahrain Shareholding Company (Public)
- With Limited Liability Company
- Branch of a Foreign Company
- Bahrain Shareholding Company (Closed)
- Partnership Company
- Simple Commandite Company
- Commandite By Shares Company
- Non Profit Company

Required Step of Licenses and Approvals

Ministry / Directorate	License / Approval Requirements	Approval Type
Municipality Affairs	Site Approval for Transportation and	Post

	Logistics Activities	

Municipality Affairs (Post) (5224-1)

Approval Name	Description	Estimated Time
Site Approval for Transportation and Logistics Activities	Municipality Approval for the Commercial Registration address or the site in which the Activity will be practiced	3 Days

Fee Details (if any)

10

License Information

General Conditions:
1. Size of shop/premises must be sufficient for the activity
2. Businesses may not carry out the activity outside the boundaries of the shop/ premises
3. It is prohibited to display or store any items or equipment outside the shop / premises boundary without prior approval from the Municipality. In the event of non-compliance, the Ministry of Municipality Affairs has the right to take necessary action.
4. Maintain cleanliness of the site
5. Comply with the parking space regulations as per the Construction Regulatory Requirements

Activity Specific Conditions:
1. The commercial address of the Commercial Registration for this activity can an office address

Note: Uploading pictures of the site/shop may expedite the process of obtaining approval

Required Documents

- Lease agreement (after obtaining the necessary approvals from other licensing entities)
- Pictures of site/shop (optional)
- Shop photos

Other Documents

- Cabinet's Decision (56) of the year 2022 regarding the Regulatory Requirements of Construction for various areas in the Kingdom of Bahrain

Transportation and storage

ISIC4	Business activity
5224-2	Cargo handling - Stevedoring

Description

This activity includes facilities involved mainly in providing services of cargo loading on ships in preparation for shipment or unloading of goods shipped.

Business Requirements

Age

18 and above

Allowed for Nationalities

Bahraini 100%	GCC 100%
American 100%	Singaporean 100%
Icelander 100%	Liechtenstein er 100%
Norwegian 100%	Swiss 100%

Foreign Allowed up to 100%

Legal Type

It is allowed to register according to the legal forms mentioned below

Allowed for Individual Commercial Registration (ICR) : Yes

Allowed for Company Commercial Registration (CCR) : Yes

- Bahrain Shareholding Company (Public)
- With Limited Liability Company
- Branch of a Foreign Company
- Bahrain Shareholding Company (Closed)
- Partnership Company
- Simple Commandite Company
- Commandite By Shares Company
- Non Profit Company

Required Step of Licenses and Approvals

Ministry / Directorate	License / Approval Requirements	Approval Type
Ports and Maritime Affairs	Stevedoring	Post
Municipality Affairs	Site Approval for Transportation and Logistics Activities	Post

Ports and Maritime Affairs (Post) (5224-2)

Approval Name	Description	Estimated Time
Stevedoring	Stevedoring	3 Days

Fee Details (if any)

550 BD

License Information

Application/ License related information:
- The license is valid for 1 year
- Renewal of the license is 50% of license fee
- In addition to the license fee applicants must pay a non-refundable application fee of 100 BD.
-
For further license specific requirements please refer to the document below (Stevedoring Requirements)

Required Documents

•Detailed business plan including a list of equipment that will be used
•Documents proving the educational qualifications of executives in (Port and Maritime studies, Nautical Science, Engineering, Business Management, Logistics, IT, Law) or professional experience in the sector of no less than 5 years.
•Safety and security plan

Other Documents

•Ministerial Regulation No. 15 for the year 2017 regarding PMA Tariff
•Ministerial Regulation No.9 for the year 2017 regarding licensing of Marine Services
•اشتراطات الشحن و التفريغ في الموانئ

Municipality Affairs (Post) (5224-2)

Approval Name	Description	Estimated Time
Site Approval for Transportation and Logistics Activities	Municipality Approval for the Commercial Registration address or the site in which the Activity will be practiced	3 Days

Fee Details (if any)

10

License Information

General Conditions:
1. Size of shop/premises must be sufficient for the activity
2. Businesses may not carry out the activity outside the boundaries of the shop/ premises
3. It is prohibited to display or store any items or equipment outside the shop / premises boundary without prior approval from the Municipality. In the event of non-compliance, the Ministry of Municipality Affairs has the right to take necessary action.
4. Maintain cleanliness of the site
5. Comply with the parking space regulations as per the Construction Regulatory Requirements

Activity Specific Conditions:
1. The commercial address of the Commercial Registration for this activity can an office address

Note: Uploading pictures of the site/shop may expedite the process of obtaining approval

Required Documents

- Lease agreement (after obtaining the necessary approvals from other licensing entities)
- Pictures of site/shop (optional)
- Shop photos

Other Documents

- Cabinet's Decision (56) of the year 2022 regarding the Regulatory Requirements of Construction for various areas in the Kingdom of Bahrain

Transportation and storage

ISIC4	Business activity
522901	Cargo Clearance

Description

This activity includes the activities of cargo clearance

Business Requirements

Age

18 and above

Allowed for Nationalities

Bahraini
100%

GCC
100%

Legal Type

It is allowed to register according to the legal forms mentioned below

Allowed for Individual Commercial Registration (ICR) : Yes

Allowed for Company Commercial Registration (CCR) : Yes

- Bahrain Shareholding Company (Public)
- Bahrain Shareholding Company (Closed)
- Simple Commandite Company
- Non Profit Company
- With Limited Liability Company
- Partnership Company
- Commandite By Shares Company

Required Step of Licenses and Approvals

Ministry / Directorate	License / Approval Requirements	Approval Type
Customs Affairs	Approval by Customs Affairs	Pre
Municipality Affairs	Site Approval for Transportation and Logistics Activities	Post

Customs Affairs (Pre) (522901)

Approval Name	Description	Estimated Time
Approval by Customs Affairs	This License for the activities of cargo clearance	4 Days

Fee Details (if any)

There is no Estimated Processing Time (Days) in this license.

License Information

Please refer to the Ministerial Decisions relating to customs affairs in the “Other Downloadable Documents” section below

Other Documents

•Legislative Decree (10) of 2002 approving the regulation "Law" of the Unified Customs of the Gulf Cooperation Council (GCC)
•Ministerial Decision (1) of 2020 regarding the regulation of Customs Affairs.

Municipality Affairs (Post) (522901)

Approval Name	Description	Estimated Time
Site Approval for Transportation and Logistics Activities	Municipality Approval for the Commercial Registration address or the site in which the Activity will be practiced	3 Days

Fee Details (if any)

10

License Information

General Conditions:
1. Size of shop/premises must be sufficient for the activity
2. Businesses may not carry out the activity outside the boundaries of the shop/ premises
3. It is prohibited to display or store any items or equipment outside the shop / premises boundary without prior approval from the Municipality. In the event of non-compliance, the Ministry of Municipality Affairs has the right to take necessary action.
4. Maintain cleanliness of the site
5. Comply with the parking space regulations as per the Construction Regulatory Requirements

Activity Specific Conditions:
1. The commercial address of the Commercial Registration for this activity can an office address

Note: Uploading pictures of the site/shop may expedite the process of obtaining approval

Required Documents

- Lease agreement (after obtaining the necessary approvals from other licensing entities)
- Pictures of site/shop (optional)
- Shop photos

Other Documents

- Cabinet's Decision (56) of the year 2022 regarding the Regulatory Requirements of Construction for various areas in the Kingdom of Bahrain

Transportation and storage

ISIC4	Business activity
5229021	Sea Freight Agent

Description

This activity includes providing the necessary arrangement to receive or gather the goods from the owner or shipper and arrange for their carriage and facilitate the task of completing the sea transport contract between the shipper and the ocean carrier, ship owner, or the agent.

Business Requirements

Age

18 and above

Allowed for Nationalities

Bahraini 100%	GCC 100%
American 100%	Singaporean 100%
Icelander 100%	Liechtensteiner 100%
Norwegian 100%	Swiss 100%

Foreign Allowed up to Allowed up to 49% (a minimum Bahraini ownership of 51% is required)

Legal Type

It is allowed to register according to the legal forms mentioned below

Allowed for Individual Commercial Registration (ICR) : Yes

Allowed for Company Commercial Registration (CCR) : Yes

- Bahrain Shareholding Company (Public)
- With Limited Liability Company
- Branch of a Foreign Company
- Bahrain Shareholding Company (Closed)
- Partnership Company
- Simple Commandite Company
- Commandite By Shares Company
- Non Profit Company

Required Step of Licenses and Approvals

Ministry / Directorate	License / Approval Requirements	Approval Type
Ports and Maritime Affairs	Sea Freight Agent	Pre
Municipality Affairs	Site Approval for Transportation and Logistics Activities	Post
Ports and Maritime Affairs	Sea Freight Agent	Post

Ports and Maritime Affairs (Pre) (5229021)

Approval Name	Description	Estimated Time
Sea Freight Agent	Sea Freight Agent	3 Days

Fee Details (if any)

BD 550

License Information

Application/ License related information:
- The license is valid for 1 year
- Renewal of the license is 50% of license fee
- In addition to the license fee applicants must pay a non-refundable application fee of 100BD

Required Documents

•Documents proving the educational qualifications of executives in (Port and Maritime studies, Nautical Science, Engineering, Business Management, Logistics, IT, Law) or professional experience in the sector of no less than 5 years.
•Permit for the storage of gangerous goods, supplied by the relevant government authorities
•Submission of a detailed business plan

Other Documents

•Ministerial Regulation No. 15 for the year 2017 regarding PMA Tariff
•Ministerial Regulation No.9 for the year 2017 regarding licensing of Marine Services

Municipality Affairs (Post) (5229021)

Approval Name	Description	Estimated Time
Site Approval for Transportation and Logistics Activities	Municipality Approval for the Commercial Registration address or the site in which the Activity will be practiced	3 Days

Fee Details (if any)

10

License Information

General Conditions:
1. Size of shop/premises must be sufficient for the activity
2. Businesses may not carry out the activity outside the boundaries of the shop/ premises
3. It is prohibited to display or store any items or equipment outside the shop / premises boundary without prior approval from the Municipality. In the event of non-compliance, the Ministry of Municipality Affairs has the right to take necessary action.
4. Maintain cleanliness of the site
5. Comply with the parking space regulations as per the Construction Regulatory Requirements

Activity Specific Conditions:
1. The commercial address of the Commercial Registration for this activity can an office address

Note: Uploading pictures of the site/shop may expedite the process of obtaining approval

Required Documents

- Lease agreement (after obtaining the necessary approvals from other licensing entities)
- Pictures of site/shop (optional)
- Shop photos

Other Documents

- Cabinet's Decision (56) of the year 2022 regarding the Regulatory Requirements of Construction for various areas in the Kingdom of Bahrain

Ports and Maritime Affairs (Post) (5229021)

Approval Name	Description	Estimated Time
Sea Freight Agent	Sea Freight Agent	3 Days

Fee Details (if any)

BD 550

License Information

Application/ License related information:
- The license is valid for 1 year
- Renewal of the license is 50% of license fee
- In addition to the license fee applicants must pay a non-refundable application fee of 100BD

Required Documents

•Documents proving the educational qualifications of executives in (Port and Maritime studies, Nautical Science, Engineering, Business Management, Logistics, IT, Law) or professional experience in the sector of no less than 5 years.
•Permit for the storage of gangerous goods, supplied by the relevant government authorities
•Submission of a detailed business plan

Other Documents

•Ministerial Regulation No. 15 for the year 2017 regarding PMA Tariff
•Ministerial Regulation No.9 for the year 2017 regarding licensing of Marine Services

Transportation and storage

ISIC4	Business activity
5229022	Shipping Agent

Description

This activity includes international navigation lines agents who organize the marine transportation for passengers and related services. It also includes international marine agents operating in organizing carriage of goods by sea, and are authorized to book places for goods imported from abroad or export or re-exported to abroad. This includes the operations of ship chartering, leasing and operating on specific marine lines.

Business Requirements

Age

18 and above

Allowed for Nationalities

Bahraini 100%	GCC 100%
American 100%	Singaporean 100%
Icelander Allowed up to 49% (a minimum Bahraini ownership of 51% is required)	Liechtensteiner Allowed up to 49% (a minimum Bahraini ownership of 51% is required)
Norwegian Allowed up to 49% (a minimum Bahraini ownership of 51% is required)	Swiss Allowed up to 49% (a minimum Bahraini ownership of 51% is required)

Foreign Allowed up to Allowed up to 49% (a minimum Bahraini ownership of 51% is required)

Legal Type

It is allowed to register according to the legal forms mentioned below

Allowed for Individual Commercial Registration (ICR) : Yes

Allowed for Company Commercial Registration (CCR) : Yes

- Bahrain Shareholding Company (Public)
- With Limited Liability Company
- Branch of a Foreign Company
- Bahrain Shareholding Company (Closed)
- Partnership Company
- Simple Commandite Company
- Commandite By Shares Company
- Non Profit Company

Required Step of Licenses and Approvals

Ministry / Directorate	License / Approval Requirements	Approval Type
Municipality Affairs	Site Approval for Transportation and Logistics Activities	Post
Ports and Maritime Affairs	Ship Agent	Post

Municipality Affairs (Post) (5229022)

Approval Name	Description	Estimated Time
Site Approval for Transportation and Logistics Activities	Municipality Approval for the Commercial Registration address or the site in which the Activity will be practiced	3 Days

Fee Details (if any)

10

License Information

General Conditions:
1. Size of shop/premises must be sufficient for the activity
2. Businesses may not carry out the activity outside the boundaries of the shop/ premises
3. It is prohibited to display or store any items or equipment outside the shop / premises boundary without prior approval from the Municipality. In the event of non-compliance, the Ministry of Municipality Affairs has the right to take necessary action.
4. Maintain cleanliness of the site
5. Comply with the parking space regulations as per the Construction Regulatory Requirements

Activity Specific Conditions:
1. The commercial address of the Commercial Registration for this activity can an office address

Note: Uploading pictures of the site/shop may expedite the process of obtaining approval

Required Documents

- Lease agreement (after obtaining the necessary approvals from other licensing entities)
- Pictures of site/shop (optional)
- Shop photos

Other Documents

- Cabinet's Decision (56) of the year 2022 regarding the Regulatory Requirements of Construction for various areas in the Kingdom of Bahrain

Ports and Maritime Affairs (Post) (5229022)

Approval Name	Description	Estimated Time
Ship Agent	هذا الترخيص خاص بوكلاء الخطوط الملاحية العالمية الذين يقومون بتنظيم عمليات النقل البحري للركاب والخدمات المتصلة بها ، كما يشمل هذا النشاط وكلاء الخطوط البحرية العالمية التي تعمل في تنظيم عمليات نقل البضائع بحرا والمخولين بحجز أماكن للبضائع التي تستورد من الخارج أو المصدرة او التي يعاد تصديرها إلى الخارج ، كما يشمل ذلك عمليات استئجار السفن وتأجيرها وتشغيلها على خطوط ملاحية معينة .	3 Days

Fee Details (if any)

BD 550

License Information

Application/ License related information:
- The license is valid for 1 year
- Renewal of the license is 50% of license fee
- In addition to the license fee applicants must pay a non-refundable application fee of 100 BD
- Submission of a bank guarantee of 10,000 BD, with the exception to Dhow agents.

Required Documents

- Detailed business plan.
- Documents proving the educational qualifications of executives in (Port and Maritime studies, Nautical Science, Engineering, Business Management, Logistics, IT, Law) or professional experience in the sector of no less than 5 years.
- Memorandum of understanding with Shipping Lines that will be worked with (or similar document).

Other Documents

- Ministerial Regulation No. 15 for the year 2017 regarding PMA Tariff
- Ministerial Regulation No.9 for the year 2017 regarding licensing of Marine Services

Transportation and storage

ISIC4	Business activity
522903	Air Cargo Agent

Description

This activity includes the company engaged in air activities and who is contracted with the air carrier or the owner of the goods to provide the necessary arrangement to receive or gather the goods from the owner or shipper and arrange for their carriage and facilitate the task of completing the air transport contract between the shipper and the air carrier, ship owner, or the agent. Imported from abroad or to be exported or re-exported.

Business Requirements

Age

18 and above

Allowed for Nationalities

Bahraini 100%	GCC 100%
American 100%	Singaporean 100%
Icelander Allowed up to 49% (a minimum Bahraini ownership of 51% is required)	Liechtensteiner Allowed up to 49% (a minimum Bahraini ownership of 51% is required)
Norwegian Allowed up to 49% (a minimum Bahraini ownership of 51% is required)	Swiss Allowed up to 49% (a minimum Bahraini ownership of 51% is required)

Foreign Allowed up to Allowed up to 49% (a minimum Bahraini ownership of 51% is required)

Legal Type

It is allowed to register according to the legal forms mentioned below

Allowed for Individual Commercial Registration (ICR) : Yes

Allowed for Company Commercial Registration (CCR) : Yes

- Bahrain Shareholding Company (Public)
- With Limited Liability Company
- Branch of a Foreign Company
- Bahrain Shareholding Company (Closed)
- Partnership Company
- Simple Commandite Company
- Commandite By Shares Company
- Non Profit Company

Required Step of Licenses and Approvals

Ministry / Directorate	License / Approval Requirements	Approval Type
Civil Aviation Affairs	Air Cargo Agent	Pre
General Directrate Of Civil Defence	Air Cargo Agent	Pre
General Directorate Of Criminal Investigation	Approval by General Directorate of Criminal Investigation	Pre
Civil Aviation Affairs	Air Cargo Agent	Post
Municipality Affairs	Site Approval for Transportation and Logistics Activities	Post
Civil Aviation Affairs	Air Cargo Agent	Final Site Inspection

Civil Aviation Affairs (Pre) (522903)

Approval Name	Description	Estimated Time
Air Cargo Agent	This activity includes the company engaged in air activits and who is contracted with the air carrier or the owner of the goods to provide the necessary arrangement to receive or gather the goods from the owner or shipper and arrange for their carriage and facilitate the task of completing the air transport contract between the shipper and the air carrier, ship owner, or the agent. imported from abroad or to be exported or re-exported. Applied Conditions: Large international companies to be allowed partial foreign ownership at 49% (or even 100% foreign ownership through Ministerial/ Cabinet exemption and approval.) The definition of a large company should satisfy the conditions below: - Minimum revenue of USD 100 million	10 Days

- Having legal entities in a minimum of 5 countries globally

Fee Details (if any)

• Application fees: BD 100 (non-refundable in cases where the application is not approved).
• New license fees: BD 150 (every two years).
• Renewal fees: BD 75 (every two years)

License Information

• The capital of the company must not be less than BD20,000
• The license is valid for 2 years and renewal application must be submitted 2 months before expiry
• Adherence to the standards and regulatory requirements contained in the regulations under the Civil Aviation Law issued by virtue of Law No. 14 of 2013
• Fulfil all aviation safety and security requirements.

Required Documents

•Fill application Form ATD/ATCL/OF03
•Memorandum of Association
•Security Manual

Other Documents

•Civil Aviation Law No.14 of 2013
•Minister of Transportation and Telecommunication Decree No. 25 of 2016 of CAA fees and departure fees.
•Minster of Transportation and Telecommunication Decree No. 21 of 2013 issuing the regulations under the Civil Aviation Law.

General Directrate Of Civil Defence (Pre) (522903)

Approval Name	Description	Estimated Time
Air Cargo Agent	checking the approval requirements of the general directorate of civil defense	5 Days

Fee Details (if any)

30 BD Fire prevention and protection certificate fees

License Information

1. Provide the documents mentioned in the “Required Documents” section
2. Comply with the requirements listed in the inspection checklist found in the “Other Downloadable Documents” section
3. Provide proof to the General Directorate of Civil Defense that an alarm and firefighting equipment have been installed within 6 months of obtaining a Commercial Registration and license

If a warehouse is used: A safety certificate must be obtained viaBahrain.bh

Required Documents

•No-objection letter for alarm and extinguisher installation from Civil Defense, or purchasing receipt of alarm equipment and extinguishers along with an annual maintenance contract from a company certified by Civil defense
•Photos required for civil defense activities
•Purchasing invoice of security camera system with specifying the type and storage capacity.

Other Documents

- Sample pictures of the general directorate of civil defense requirements
- licencing requirments of the general directorat of civil defense for activity number "522903"

General Directorate Of Criminal Investigation (Pre) (522903)

Approval Name	Description	Estimated Time
Approval by General Directorate of Criminal Investigation	General Directorate of Criminal Investigation Approval for the Activity	7 Days

Fee Details (if any)

There is no Estimated Processing Time (Days) in this license.

License Information

- The applicant should not have a criminal record, unless they have been rehabilitated in criminal cases

Civil Aviation Affairs (Post) (522903)

Approval Name	Description	Estimated Time
Air Cargo Agent	This activity includes the company engaged in air activits and who is contracted with the air carrier or the owner of the goods to provide the necessary arrangement to receive or gather the goods from the owner or shipper and arrange for their carriage and facilitate the task of completing the air transport contract between the shipper and the air carrier, ship owner, or the agent. imported from abroad or to be exported or re-exported. Applied Conditions: Large international companies to be allowed partial foreign ownership at 49% (or even 100% foreign ownership through Ministerial/ Cabinet exemption and approval.) The definition of a large company should satisfy the conditions below: - Minimum revenue of USD 100 million	10 Days

- Having legal entities in a minimum of 5 countries globally

Fee Details (if any)

• Application fees: BD 100 (non-refundable in cases where the application is not approved).
• New license fees: BD 150 (every two years).
• Renewal fees: BD 75 (every two years)

License Information

• The capital of the company must not be less than BD20,000
• The license is valid for 2 years and renewal application must be submitted 2 months before expiry
• Adherence to the standards and regulatory requirements contained in the regulations under the Civil Aviation Law issued by virtue of Law No. 14 of 2013
• Fulfil all aviation safety and security requirements.

Required Documents

•Fill application Form ATD/ATCL/OF03
•Memorandum of Association
•Security Manual

Other Documents

•Civil Aviation Law No.14 of 2013
•Minister of Transportation and Telecommunication Decree No. 25 of 2016 of CAA fees and departure fees.
•Minster of Transportation and Telecommunication Decree No. 21 of 2013 issuing the regulations under the Civil Aviation Law.

Municipality Affairs (Post) (522903)

Approval Name	Description	Estimated Time
Site Approval for Transportation and Logistics Activities	Municipality Approval for the Commercial Registration address or the site in which the Activity will be practiced	3 Days

Fee Details (if any)

10

License Information

General Conditions:
1. Size of shop/premises must be sufficient for the activity
2. Businesses may not carry out the activity outside the boundaries of the shop/ premises
3. It is prohibited to display or store any items or equipment outside the shop / premises boundary without prior approval from the Municipality. In the event of non-compliance, the Ministry of Municipality Affairs has the right to take necessary action.
4. Maintain cleanliness of the site
5. Comply with the parking space regulations as per the Construction Regulatory Requirements

Activity Specific Conditions:
1. The commercial address of the Commercial Registration for this activity can an office address

Note: Uploading pictures of the site/shop may expedite the process of obtaining approval

Required Documents

- Lease agreement (after obtaining the necessary approvals from other licensing entities)
- Pictures of site/shop (optional)
- Shop photos

Other Documents

- Cabinet's Decision (56) of the year 2022 regarding the Regulatory Requirements of Construction for various areas in the Kingdom of Bahrain

Civil Aviation Affairs (Final Site Inspection) (522903)

Approval Name	Description	Estimated Time
Air Cargo Agent	This activity includes the company engaged in air activits and who is contracted with the air carrier or the owner of the goods to provide the necessary arrangement to receive or gather the goods from the owner or shipper and arrange for their carriage and facilitate the task of completing the air transport contract between the shipper and the air carrier, ship owner, or the agent. imported from abroad or to be exported or re-exported. Applied Conditions: Large international companies to be allowed partial foreign ownership at 49% (or even 100% foreign ownership through Ministerial/ Cabinet exemption and approval.) The definition of a large company should satisfy the conditions below: - Minimum revenue of USD 100 million	10 Days

- Having legal entities in a minimum of 5 countries globally

Fee Details (if any)

• Application fees: BD 100 (non-refundable in cases where the application is not approved).
• New license fees: BD 150 (every two years).
• Renewal fees: BD 75 (every two years)

License Information

• The capital of the company must not be less than BD20,000
• The license is valid for 2 years and renewal application must be submitted 2 months before expiry
• Adherence to the standards and regulatory requirements contained in the regulations under the Civil Aviation Law issued by virtue of Law No. 14 of 2013
• Fulfil all aviation safety and security requirements.

Required Documents

•Fill application Form ATD/ATCL/OF03
•Memorandum of Association
•Security Manual

Other Documents

•Civil Aviation Law No.14 of 2013
•Minister of Transportation and Telecommunication Decree No. 25 of 2016 of CAA fees and departure fees.
•Minster of Transportation and Telecommunication Decree No. 21 of 2013 issuing the regulations under the Civil Aviation Law.

Transportation and storage

ISIC4	Business activity
5229091	Goods re-export and other logistics value add services

Description

This activity includes:
- Consolidating, sorting, labeling, packaging and packing
- Heavy cargo deconsolidation and consolidation
- Distribution of products
- Import, storage, re-export and delivery to final destination
- Other value add logistics services including product promotional labelling, packing, and packaging
- Import, storage, and re-export of spare parts used in maintenance of equipment and machinery sent to Bahrain to be maintained and re-exported to its work site abroad.
This activity includes all types of goods, including chemicals, according to the lists issued by the Supreme Council for the Environment and the Ministry of the Interior excluding weapons, alcoholic drinks or forbidden products based on Bahrain Customs Law

Activity Requirements:
- Regional distribution center must be setup in a custom bonded warehouse approved by Bahrain Customs Affairs
- In the event where the foreign company desires to sell in the local Bahraini market under the same CR without having a local partner, then it must either
(1) hire a local distribution agent
or (2) create a joint venture company with a Bahraini entity or person.

The foreign company will only be allowed to sell and deliver products to either (1) or (2)

Business Requirements

Age

18 and above

Allowed for Nationalities

Bahraini 100%		GCC 100%	
American 100%		Singaporean 100%	
Icelander 100%		Liechtenstein er 100%	
Norwegian 100%		Swiss 100%	

Foreign Allowed up to 100%

Legal Type

It is allowed to register according to the legal forms mentioned below

Allowed for Individual Commercial Registration (ICR) : Yes

Allowed for Company Commercial Registration (CCR) : Yes

- Bahrain Shareholding Company (Public)
- With Limited Liability Company
- Branch of a Foreign Company
- Bahrain Shareholding Company (Closed)
- Partnership Company
- Simple Commandite Company
- Commandite By Shares Company
- Non Profit Company

Required Step of Licenses and Approvals

Ministry / Directorate	License / Approval Requirements	Approval Type
Municipality Affairs	Site Approval for Transportation and	Post

	Logistics Activities	

Municipality Affairs (Post) (5229091)

Approval Name	Description	Estimated Time
Site Approval for Transportation and Logistics Activities	Municipality Approval for the Commercial Registration address or the site in which the Activity will be practiced	3 Days

Fee Details (if any)

10

License Information

General Conditions:
1. Size of shop/premises must be sufficient for the activity
2. Businesses may not carry out the activity outside the boundaries of the shop/ premises
3. It is prohibited to display or store any items or equipment outside the shop / premises boundary without prior approval from the Municipality. In the event of non-compliance, the Ministry of Municipality Affairs has the right to take necessary action.
4. Maintain cleanliness of the site
5. Comply with the parking space regulations as per the Construction Regulatory Requirements

Activity Specific Conditions:
1. The commercial address of the Commercial Registration for this activity can an office address

Note: Uploading pictures of the site/shop may expedite the process of obtaining approval

Required Documents

- Lease agreement (after obtaining the necessary approvals from other licensing entities)
- Pictures of site/shop (optional)
- Shop photos

Other Documents

- Cabinet's Decision (56) of the year 2022 regarding the Regulatory Requirements of Construction for various areas in the Kingdom of Bahrain

Transportation and storage

ISIC4	Business activity
5229092	Transport and storage of currency and precious items

Description

Includes establishments engaged in the activities of the transfer of money, coins and precious metals such as gold, silver and other precious collectibles and goods such as jewelry and antiques, inside Bahrain for individuals, banks or companies and the like . It also includes the services provided by these establishments.

Business Requirements

Age

18 and above

Allowed for Nationalities

Bahraini 100%	GCC 100%
American 100%	Singaporean 100%
Icelander 100%	Liechtenstein er 100%
Norwegian 100%	Swiss 100%

Foreign Allowed up to 100%

Legal Type

It is allowed to register according to the legal forms mentioned below

Allowed for Individual Commercial Registration (ICR) : Yes

Allowed for Company Commercial Registration (CCR) : Yes

- Bahrain Shareholding Company (Public)
- With Limited Liability Company
- Branch of a Foreign Company
- Bahrain Shareholding Company (Closed)
- Partnership Company
- Simple Commandite Company
- Commandite By Shares Company
- Non Profit Company

Required Step of Licenses and Approvals

Ministry / Directorate	License / Approval Requirements	Approval Type
CBB - Licensing directorate	Notification Only	Notification Only
Municipality Affairs	Site Approval for Transportation and Logistics Activities	Post
General Directorate For Guards Ministry Of Interior	Security Firm License	Post
General Directorate For Guards Ministry Of Interior	Security Firm License	Final Site Inspection

CBB - Licensing directorate (Notification Only) (5229092)

Approval Name	Description	Estimated Time
Notification Only	Notify license entity that new application is applied.	There is no License Information in this license. Days

Fee Details (if any)

Refer to "Licensing Requirement" Module of CBB Rulebook Vol. 1 inhttps://cbben.thomsonreuters.com/sites/default/files/net_file_store/Vol_1_LR_January_2022.pdf

License Information

The following documents must be submitted:

1. Form 1: “License Application Form”
2. Form 2: “Application for Authorization of Controller”
3. Form 3: “Application for Approved Person status)”, for each individual proposed to undertake controlled functions (as defined under the controlled functions in the respective rulebook) in the proposed licensee.
4. A comprehensive business plan for the application, addressing the matters described below:
a. An outline of the history of the applicant and its shareholders.
b. The reasons for applying for a license, including the applicant’s strategy and market objectives.
c. The proposed type of activities to be carried on by the applicant in/from the Kingdom of Bahrain including the work and fund flow model.
d. The proposed Board and senior management of the applicant and the proposed organizational structure of the applicant.
e. An assessment of the risks that may be faced by the applicant, together with the proposed systems and controls framework to be put in place for addressing those risks and to be used for the main businessfunctions.andf. An opening balance sheet for the applicant, together with a three-year financial projection, with all assumptions clearly outlined, demonstrating that the applicant will be able to meet applicable capital adequacy requirements.
5. For overseas companies, a copy of the company’s current commercial registration or

equivalent documentation.
6. Where the applicant is an existing Bahraini company, a certified copy of a Board resolution of the applicant, confirming its decision to seek a CBB license.
7. Details of the proposed licensee's close links, if any.
8. In the case of applicants that are part of a regulated group, a letter of non-objection to the proposed license application from the applicant's lead supervisor, together with confirmation that the group is in good regulatory standing and is in compliance with applicable supervisory requirements, including those relating to capital requirements.
9. In the case of branch applicants, a letter of non-objection to the proposed license application from the applicant's home supervisor, together with confirmation that the applicant is in good regulatory standing and the company concerned is in compliance with applicable supervisory requirements, including those relating to capital.
10. In the case of branch applicants, copies of the audited financial statements of the applicant (head office) for the three years immediately prior to the date of application.
11. In the case of applicants that are part of a group, copies of the audited financial statements of the applicant's group, for the three years immediately prior to the date of application.
12. In the case of applicants not falling under either of the above, copies of the audited financial statements of the applicant's major shareholder (where they are a legal person), for the three years immediately prior to the date of application.
13. In the case of applicants seeking to raise part of their capital through a private placement, a draft of the relevant private placement memorandum, together with a formal, independent legal opinion confirming that the memorandum complies with all applicable capital markets laws and regulations.
14. A copy of the applicant's memorandum and articles of association (in draft form for applicants creating a new company).

You may also Refer to "Licensing Requirement" Module of CBB Rulebook Vol. 1 by clicking the following linkhttps://cbben.thomsonreuters.com/sites/default/files/net_file_store/Vol_1_LR_January_2022.pdf

Required Documents

- Form 1: Application for a license
- Form 2: Application for authorization of controller
- Form 3: Application for approved person status

Municipality Affairs (Post) (5229092)

Approval Name	Description	Estimated Time
Site Approval for Transportation and Logistics Activities	Municipality Approval for the Commercial Registration address or the site in which the Activity will be practiced	3 Days

Fee Details (if any)

10

License Information

General Conditions:
1. Size of shop/premises must be sufficient for the activity
2. Businesses may not carry out the activity outside the boundaries of the shop/ premises
3. It is prohibited to display or store any items or equipment outside the shop / premises boundary without prior approval from the Municipality. In the event of non-compliance, the Ministry of Municipality Affairs has the right to take necessary action.
4. Maintain cleanliness of the site
5. Comply with the parking space regulations as per the Construction Regulatory Requirements

Activity Specific Conditions:
1. The commercial address of the Commercial Registration for this activity can an office address

Note: Uploading pictures of the site/shop may expedite the process of obtaining approval

Required Documents

- Lease agreement (after obtaining the necessary approvals from other licensing entities)
- Pictures of site/shop (optional)
- Shop photos

Other Documents

- Cabinet's Decision (56) of the year 2022 regarding the Regulatory Requirements of Construction for various areas in the Kingdom of Bahrain

General Directorate For Guards Ministry Of Interior (Post) (5229092)

Approval Name	Description	Estimated Time
Security Firm License	The licence is required if investor intends set up a security firm in Bahrain which offers security services such as security guard surveillance.	90 Days

Fee Details (if any)

3500 BD for a new license.
License Validity: 3 Years

License Information

-The Company's Logo should show the name and trademark of the company, and must not look similar to the Kingdom of Bahrain's logo nor any other security form licensed in Bahrain. The logo must not violate public morals.
-The company must have security as the primary activity of its business for at least ten years (for branches of foreign companies only)

Required Documents

•3 new photos size 4x6 of the management/ managing person of the company
•Application form
•Bank guarantee of Twenty Thousands Bahraini Dinars (BD 20,000) under the name of the Ministry of Interior nonrefundable for the duration of the license (once licensed)
•Copy of Good Conduct Certificate from Bahrain's General Directorate of Criminal Investigation for the management/ managing person of the company
•Copy of ID and Passport for the management/ managing person of the company
•Copy of academic qualifications for the management/ managing person of the company
•Copy of notarized Memorandum of Article of Association, attached with a letter from (parents, company representative) defining role and responsibility of the board members
•Provide any necessary documents to prove the validity of the mother company's license (branches of foreign companies only)
•Statement of the company's Past Experience (If available) in the field of security service along with the supporting documents
•Submit a copy of the company's logo

Other Documents

•Collection of Legislations regarding Private Security & Guards Firms - AR
•Collection of Legislations regarding Private Security & Guards Firms - EN

General Directorate For Guards Ministry Of Interior (Final Site Inspection) (5229092)

Approval Name	Description	Estimated Time
Security Firm License	The licence is required if investor intends set up a security firm in Bahrain which offers security services such as security guard surveillance.	90 Days

Fee Details (if any)

3500 BD for a new license.
License Validity: 3 Years

License Information

-The Company's Logo should show the name and trademark of the company, and must not look similar to the Kingdom of Bahrain's logo nor any other security form licensed in Bahrain. The logo must not violate public morals.
-The company must have security as the primary activity of its business for at least ten years (for branches of foreign companies only)

Required Documents

•3 new photos size 4x6 of the management/ managing person of the company
•Application form
•Bank guarantee of Twenty Thousands Bahraini Dinars (BD 20,000) under the name of the Ministry of Interior nonrefundable for the duration of the license (once licensed)
•Copy of Good Conduct Certificate from Bahrain's General Directorate of Criminal Investigation for the management/ managing person of the company
•Copy of ID and Passport for the management/ managing person of the company
•Copy of academic qualifications for the management/ managing person of the company
•Copy of notarized Memorandum of Article of Association, attached with a letter from (parents, company representative) defining role and responsibility of the board members
•Provide any necessary documents to prove the validity of the mother company's license (branches of foreign companies only)
•Statement of the company's Past Experience (If available) in the field of security service along with the supporting documents
•Submit a copy of the company's logo

Other Documents

•Collection of Legislations regarding Private Security & Guards Firms - AR
•Collection of Legislations regarding Private Security & Guards Firms - EN

Transportation and storage

ISIC4	Business activity
532-1	Courier Services - Local Courier and Express Operators up to 30 Kg

Description

Accepting,collecting, distributing and transporting of all quick correspondence and parcels bearing the addresses of individuals weighing between 50gm and 30Kg taking into account some of the restrictions contained in the law(Localy)

Business Requirements

Age

18 and above

Allowed for Nationalities

Bahraini 100%	GCC 100%
American 100%	Singaporean 100%
Icelander 100%	Liechtenstein er 100%
Norwegian 100%	Swiss 100%

Foreign Allowed up to 100%

Legal Type

It is allowed to register according to the legal forms mentioned below

Allowed for Individual Commercial Registration (ICR) : Yes

Allowed for Company Commercial Registration (CCR) : Yes

- Bahrain Shareholding Company (Public)
- With Limited Liability Company
- Branch of a Foreign Company
- Bahrain Shareholding Company (Closed)
- Partnership Company
- Simple Commandite Company
- Commandite By Shares Company
- Non Profit Company

Required Step of Licenses and Approvals

Ministry / Directorate	License / Approval Requirements	Approval Type
General Directorate Of Criminal Investigation	Approval by General Directorate of Criminal Investigation	Pre
Municipality Affairs	Site Approval for Transportation and Logistics Activities	Post
Postal Sector Regulation Directorate	Local Courier and Express Operators up to 30 Kg	Post
Postal Sector Regulation Directorate	Local Courier and Express Operators up to 30 Kg	Final Site Inspection

General Directorate Of Criminal Investigation (Pre) (532-1)

Approval Name	Description	Estimated Time
Approval by General Directorate of Criminal Investigation	General Directorate of Criminal Investigation Approval for the Activity	7 Days

Fee Details (if any)

There is no Estimated Processing Time (Days) in this license.

License Information

- The applicant should not have a criminal record, unless they have been rehabilitated in criminal cases

Municipality Affairs (Post) (532-1)

Approval Name	Description	Estimated Time
Site Approval for Transportation and Logistics Activities	Municipality Approval for the Commercial Registration address or the site in which the Activity will be practiced	3 Days

Fee Details (if any)

10

License Information

General Conditions:
1. Size of shop/premises must be sufficient for the activity
2. Businesses may not carry out the activity outside the boundaries of the shop/ premises
3. It is prohibited to display or store any items or equipment outside the shop / premises boundary without prior approval from the Municipality. In the event of non-compliance, the Ministry of Municipality Affairs has the right to take necessary action.
4. Maintain cleanliness of the site
5. Comply with the parking space regulations as per the Construction Regulatory Requirements

Activity Specific Conditions:
1. The commercial address of the Commercial Registration for this activity can an office address

Note: Uploading pictures of the site/shop may expedite the process of obtaining approval

Required Documents

- Lease agreement (after obtaining the necessary approvals from other licensing entities)
- Pictures of site/shop (optional)
- Shop photos

Other Documents

- Cabinet's Decision (56) of the year 2022 regarding the Regulatory Requirements of Construction for various areas in the Kingdom of Bahrain

Postal Sector Regulation Directorate (Post) (532-1)

Approval Name	Description	Estimated Time
Local Courier and Express Operators up to 30 Kg	Accepting, collecting, distributing and transporting of all quick correspondence and parcels bearing the addresses of individuals weighing between 50gm and 30Kg taking into account some of the restrictions contained in the law (Locally)	10 Days

Fee Details (if any)

Application fees: BD 100
License fees: BD 500
License Renewal 5% of the total sales not less than 500 BD

License Information

Must comply with law No. 49 of 2014 with respect to the issuance of the Postal Law an Ministerial decree No. 7 of 2015 of issuance the regulations under the Postal Law (refer to other downloadable documents section below)

Required Documents

- Act measures for neglected or reserved materials
- Audited financial report/appointment letter issued by an external financial auditor
- Rules and procedures for the consideration of complaints

Other Documents

- Ministerial decree No. 7 of 2015 of issuance the regulations under the Postal Law
- law No. 49 of 2014 with respect to the issuance of the Postal Law

Postal Sector Regulation Directorate (Final Site Inspection) (532-1)

Approval Name	Description	Estimated Time
Local Courier and Express Operators up to 30 Kg	Accepting, collecting, distributing and transporting of all quick correspondence and parcels bearing the addresses of individuals weighing between 50gm and 30Kg taking into account some of the restrictions contained in the law (Locally)	10 Days

Fee Details (if any)

Application fees: BD 100
License fees: BD 500
License Renewal 5% of the total sales not less than 500 BD

License Information

Must comply with law No. 49 of 2014 with respect to the issuance of the Postal Law an Ministerial decree No. 7 of 2015 of issuance the regulations under the Postal Law (refer to other downloadable documents section below)

Required Documents

- Act measures for neglected or reserved materials
- Audited financial report/appointment letter issued by an external financial auditor
- Rules and procedures for the consideration of complaints

Other Documents

- Ministerial decree No. 7 of 2015 of issuance the regulations under the Postal Law
- law No. 49 of 2014 with respect to the issuance of the Postal Law

Transportation and storage

ISIC4	Business activity
532-2	Courier Services - International Courier and Express Companies up to 30 Kg

Description

Accepting,collecting, distributing and transporting of all quick correspondence and parcels bearing the addresses of individuals weighing up to 30Kg taking into account in the law(internationally)

Business Requirements

Age

18 and above

Allowed for Nationalities

Bahraini 100%		GCC 100%	
American 100%		Singaporean 100%	
Icelander 100%		Liechtenstein er 100%	
Norwegian 100%		Swiss 100%	

Foreign Allowed up to 100%

Legal Type

It is allowed to register according to the legal forms mentioned below

Allowed for Individual Commercial Registration (ICR) : Yes

Allowed for Company Commercial Registration (CCR) : Yes

- Bahrain Shareholding Company (Public)
- With Limited Liability Company
- Branch of a Foreign Company
- Bahrain Shareholding Company (Closed)
- Partnership Company
- Simple Commandite Company
- Commandite By Shares Company
- Non Profit Company

Required Step of Licenses and Approvals

Ministry / Directorate	License / Approval Requirements	Approval Type
General Directorate Of Criminal Investigation	Approval by General Directorate of Criminal Investigation	Pre
Municipality Affairs	Site Approval for Transportation and Logistics Activities	Post
Postal Sector Regulation Directorate	International Courier and Express Companies up to 30 Kg	Post
Postal Sector Regulation Directorate	International Courier and Express Companies up to 30 Kg	Final Site Inspection

General Directorate Of Criminal Investigation (Pre) (532-2)

Approval Name	Description	Estimated Time
Approval by General Directorate of Criminal Investigation	General Directorate of Criminal Investigation Approval for the Activity	7 Days

Fee Details (if any)

There is no Estimated Processing Time (Days) in this license.

License Information

- The applicant should not have a criminal record, unless they have been rehabilitated in criminal cases

Municipality Affairs (Post) (532-2)

Approval Name	Description	Estimated Time
Site Approval for Transportation and Logistics Activities	Municipality Approval for the Commercial Registration address or the site in which the Activity will be practiced	3 Days

Fee Details (if any)

10

License Information

General Conditions:
1. Size of shop/premises must be sufficient for the activity
2. Businesses may not carry out the activity outside the boundaries of the shop/ premises
3. It is prohibited to display or store any items or equipment outside the shop / premises boundary without prior approval from the Municipality. In the event of non-compliance, the Ministry of Municipality Affairs has the right to take necessary action.
4. Maintain cleanliness of the site
5. Comply with the parking space regulations as per the Construction Regulatory Requirements

Activity Specific Conditions:
1. The commercial address of the Commercial Registration for this activity can an office address

Note: Uploading pictures of the site/shop may expedite the process of obtaining approval

Required Documents

- Lease agreement (after obtaining the necessary approvals from other licensing entities)
- Pictures of site/shop (optional)
- Shop photos

Other Documents

- Cabinet's Decision (56) of the year 2022 regarding the Regulatory Requirements of Construction for various areas in the Kingdom of Bahrain

Postal Sector Regulation Directorate (Post) (532-2)

Approval Name	Description	Estimated Time
International Courier and Express Companies up to 30 Kg	Accepting, collecting, distributing and transporting of all quick correspondence and parcels bearing the addresses of individuals weighing up to 30Kg taking into account in the law(internationally)	10 Days

Fee Details (if any)

Application fees: BD 100
License fees: BD 1,000
License Renewal 10% of the total sales not less than 1000 BD

License Information

- Must comply with law No. 49 of 2014 with respect to the issuance of the Postal Law an Ministerial decree No. 7 of 2015 of issuance the regulations under the Postal Law (refer to other downloadable documents section below)

Required Documents

- Act measures for neglected or reserved materials
- Audited financial report/appointment letter issued by an external financial auditor
- Rules and procedures for the consideration of complaints

Other Documents

- Ministerial decree No. 7 of 2015 of issuance the regulations under the Postal Law
- law No. 49 of 2014 with respect to the issuance of the Postal Law

Postal Sector Regulation Directorate (Final Site Inspection) (532-2)

Approval Name	Description	Estimated Time
International Courier and Express Companies up to 30 Kg	Accepting, collecting, distributing and transporting of all quick correspondence and parcels bearing the addresses of individuals weighing up to 30Kg taking into account in the law(internationally)	10 Days

Fee Details (if any)

Application fees: BD 100
License fees: BD 1,000
License Renewal 10% of the total sales not less than 1000 BD

License Information

- Must comply with law No. 49 of 2014 with respect to the issuance of the Postal Law an Ministerial decree No. 7 of 2015 of issuance the regulations under the Postal Law (refer to other downloadable documents section below)

Required Documents

- Act measures for neglected or reserved materials
- Audited financial report/appointment letter issued by an external financial auditor
- Rules and procedures for the consideration of complaints

Other Documents

- Ministerial decree No. 7 of 2015 of issuance the regulations under the Postal Law
- law No. 49 of 2014 with respect to the issuance of the Postal Law

Transportation and storage

ISIC4	Business activity
532-3	Courier Services - Distribution of newspapers and magazines and promotional materials transport companies

Description

Accepting,collecting, distributing and transporting of all newspaper and magazine and newsletters (daily or monthly) also include commercial and advertising materials which done with fees in Bahrain(locally)

Business Requirements

✔ Age

18 and above

✔ Allowed for Nationalities

Bahraini
100%

✔ Legal Type

It is allowed to register according to the legal forms mentioned below

Allowed for Individual Commercial Registration (ICR) : Yes

Allowed for Company Commercial Registration (CCR) : Yes

- Bahrain Shareholding Company (Public)
- Bahrain Shareholding Company (Closed)
- Simple Commandite Company
- Non Profit Company
- With Limited Liability Company
- Partnership Company
- Commandite By Shares Company

Required Step of Licenses and Approvals

Ministry / Directorate	License / Approval Requirements	Approval Type
General Directorate Of Criminal Investigation	Approval by General Directorate of Criminal Investigation	Pre
Postal Sector Regulation Directorate	Distribution of newspapers and magazines and promotional materials transport companies	Post
Municipality Affairs	Site Approval for Transportation and Logistics Activities	Post
Postal Sector Regulation Directorate	Distribution of newspapers and magazines and promotional materials transport companies	Final Site Inspection

General Directorate Of Criminal Investigation (Pre) (532-3)

Approval Name	Description	Estimated Time
Approval by General Directorate of Criminal Investigation	General Directorate of Criminal Investigation Approval for the Activity	7 Days

Fee Details (if any)

There is no Estimated Processing Time (Days) in this license.

License Information

- The applicant should not have a criminal record, unless they have been rehabilitated in criminal cases

Postal Sector Regulation Directorate (Post) (532-3)

Approval Name	Description	Estimated Time
Distribution of newspapers and magazines and promotional materials transport companies	Accepting, collecting, distributing and transporting of all newspaper and magazine and newsletters(daily or monthly)also include commercial and advertising materials which done with fees in Bahrain (locally)	10 Days

Fee Details (if any)

Application fees: BD 100
License fees: BD 500

License Information

- Must comply with law No. 49 of 2014 with respect to the issuance of the Postal Law an Ministerial decree No. 7 of 2015 of issuance the regulations under the Postal Law (refer to other downloadable documents section below)

Required Documents

- Act measures for neglected or reserved materials
- Audited financial report/appointment letter issued by an external financial auditor
- Rules and procedures for the consideration of complaints

Other Documents

- Ministerial decree No. 7 of 2015 of issuance the regulations under the Postal Law
- law No. 49 of 2014 with respect to the issuance of the Postal Law

Municipality Affairs (Post) (532-3)

Approval Name	Description	Estimated Time
Site Approval for Transportation and Logistics Activities	Municipality Approval for the Commercial Registration address or the site in which the Activity will be practiced	3 Days

Fee Details (if any)

10

License Information

General Conditions:
1. Size of shop/premises must be sufficient for the activity
2. Businesses may not carry out the activity outside the boundaries of the shop/ premises
3. It is prohibited to display or store any items or equipment outside the shop / premises boundary without prior approval from the Municipality. In the event of non-compliance, the Ministry of Municipality Affairs has the right to take necessary action.
4. Maintain cleanliness of the site
5. Comply with the parking space regulations as per the Construction Regulatory Requirements

Activity Specific Conditions:
1. The commercial address of the Commercial Registration for this activity can an office address

Note: Uploading pictures of the site/shop may expedite the process of obtaining approval

Required Documents

- Lease agreement (after obtaining the necessary approvals from other licensing entities)
- Pictures of site/shop (optional)
- Shop photos

Other Documents

- Cabinet's Decision (56) of the year 2022 regarding the Regulatory Requirements of Construction for various areas in the Kingdom of Bahrain

Postal Sector Regulation Directorate (Final Site Inspection) (532-3)

Approval Name	Description	Estimated Time
Distribution of newspapers and magazines and promotional materials transport companies	Accepting, collecting, distributing and transporting of all newspaper and magazine and newsletters(daily or monthly)also include commercial and advertising materials which done with fees in Bahrain (locally)	10 Days

Fee Details (if any)

Application fees: BD 100
License fees: BD 500

License Information

- Must comply with law No. 49 of 2014 with respect to the issuance of the Postal Law an Ministerial decree No. 7 of 2015 of issuance the regulations under the Postal Law (refer to other downloadable documents section below)

Required Documents

- Act measures for neglected or reserved materials
- Audited financial report/appointment letter issued by an external financial auditor
- Rules and procedures for the consideration of complaints

Other Documents

- Ministerial decree No. 7 of 2015 of issuance the regulations under the Postal Law
- law No. 49 of 2014 with respect to the issuance of the Postal Law

Accommodation and food service activities

سجلات
SIJILAT
نظام السجلات التجارية
COMMERCIAL REGISTRATION PORTAL

Accommodation and food service activities

ISIC4	Business activity
551-1	Short term accommodation activities

Description

This activity includes the provision of accommodation, typically on a daily or weekly basis, principally for short stay by visitors. This includes the provision of furnished accommodation in guest rooms and suites or complete self-contained units with kitchens, with or without daily or other regular housekeeping services, and may often include a range of additional services such as food and beverage services, parking, laundry services, swimming pools and exercise rooms, recreational facilities and conference and convention facilities.
This class includes the provision of short-term accommodation provided by:
- hotels
- resort hotels
- suite / apartment hotels
- motels
- motor hotels
- guesthouses
- pensions
- bed and breakfast units
- visitor flats and bungalows
- holiday homes
- chalets, housekeeping cottages and cabins

Business Requirements

Age

18 and above

Allowed for Nationalities

Bahraini 100%		GCC 100%	
American 100%		Singaporean 100%	
Icelander 100%		Liechtenstein er 100%	
Norwegian 100%		Swiss 100%	

Foreign Allowed up to 100%

Legal Type

It is allowed to register according to the legal forms mentioned below

Allowed for Individual Commercial Registration (ICR) : Yes

Allowed for Company Commercial Registration (CCR) : Yes

- Bahrain Shareholding Company (Public)
- With Limited Liability Company
- Branch of a Foreign Company
- Bahrain Shareholding Company (Closed)
- Partnership Company
- Simple Commandite Company
- Commandite By Shares Company
- Non Profit Company

Required Step of Licenses and Approvals

Ministry / Directorate	License / Approval Requirements	Approval Type
Bahrain Tourim and Exibitions Authority	Approval for short term accommodation activities	Pre

General Directorate Of Criminal Investigation	Approval for Accommodation Activities	Pre
Municipality Affairs	Site Approval for accommodation activities	Post
Ministry of Health	Health approval for accommodation activities	Post
Traffic Operation And Control Department	Traffic approval for Short term accommodation activities	Post
General Directrate Of Civil Defence	Short term accommodation activities	Post
Bahrain Tourim and Exibitions Authority	Approval for short term accommodation activities	Final Site Inspection

Bahrain Tourim and Exibitions Authority (Pre) (551-1)

Approval Name	Description	Estimated Time
Approval for short term accommodation activities	Approval for short term accommodation activities	3 Days

Fee Details (if any)

There is no Estimated Processing Time (Days) in this license.

License Information

- Site should be within a tourism classified zone as approved by Bahrain Tourism and Exhibitions Authority
- Please refer to the Hotel Classification Manual for detailed information and criteria regarding specific hotel levels/types
- Investors should ensure the employment of qualified staff with academic background and experience in hospitality management.

Note: Upon the commencement of operations, the hotel shall pay a license fee based on its classification, and shall also be charged with a 5% government levy on its revenue for each quarter of the year (end of every three months). In addition, the hotel must submit an audited financial report to the Bahrain Tourism and Exhibitions at year-end.

Required Documents

- A written approval from the property owner in case the property shall be leased
- An aerial map of the site (Google Maps)
- Copy of land title deed
- Full set of drawings of the proposed building with scale 1:100 & A3D rendering of the hotel's external view
- List of proposed management staff with details of academic qualifications and experience (Final Inspection stage)
- Location of Land / estate
- Project Feasibility Study (Details of project, Start and End Date of project, cost, employment rate)

Other Documents

- BTEA's Licensing form for short-term accommodation activities
- BTEA's Operational form for Short-term accommodation activities
- Hotel Classification Manual

General Directorate Of Criminal Investigation (Pre) (551-1)

Approval Name	Description	Estimated Time
Approval for Accommodation Activities	This License for Accommodation Activities	7 Days

Fee Details (if any)

There is no Estimated Processing Time (Days) in this license.

License Information

- The applicant should not have a criminal record, unless they have been rehabilitated in criminal cases
- Must not be located close to residential buildings, mosques, or schools

Municipality Affairs (Post) (551-1)

Approval Name	Description	Estimated Time
Site Approval for accommodation activities	Municipality Approval for the Commercial Registration address or the site in which the Activity will be practiced	3 Days

Fee Details (if any)

10 BD

License Information

General Conditions:
1. Size of shop/premises must be sufficient for the activity
2. Businesses may not carry out the activity outside the boundaries of the shop/ premises
3. It is prohibited to display or store any items or equipment outside the shop / premises boundary without prior approval from the Municipality
4. Provide garbage containers based on the size and quantity of the garbage disposed
5. Maintain cleanliness of the site

Activity Specific Conditions:
1. Investors must obtain a building permit(s) in the event the building(s) shall be constructed on proposed site.

Note: Uploading pictures of the site/shop may expedite the process of obtaining approval

Required Documents

- Lease agreement (after obtaining the necessary approvals from other licensing entities)
- Shop photos

Other Documents

- Cabinet's Decision (56) of the year 2022 regarding the Regulatory Requirements of Construction for various areas in the Kingdom of Bahrain

Ministry of Health (Post) (551-1)

Approval Name	Description	Estimated Time
Health approval for accommodation activities	Health approval for accommodation activities	5 Days

Fee Details (if any)

400 BD

License Information

• The drawings/ layout provided of the premises must show non-smoking and smoking areas
• Please refer to the “Health requirements of the Group of anti-smoking and Tobacco Types” document in the “other downloadable documents” section for the requirements relating to the serving of sheesha.
• Please refer to the “Health requirements for Hotels and Services apartments” document in the “other downloadable documents” section below for the requirements and specification relating to this activity

Required Documents

•Drawings/ layout of premises (approved by an engineering office).
•Photos of the premises
•Requirement Checklist (Stamped by an engineering office)
•drawings/layouts of the premises

Other Documents

•Health requirements of the Group of anti-smoking and Tobacco Types

Traffic Operation And Control Department (Post) (551-1)

Approval Name	Description	Estimated Time
Traffic approval for Short term accommodation activities	Traffic approval for Short term accommodation activities	7 Days

Fee Details (if any)

There is no Estimated Processing Time (Days) in this license.

License Information

1. One car park for every 3 rooms in the hotel.
2. One car park for every apartment sized 15mq, or two car parks if the apartment is larger than 150mq.
3. One carpark for every room with a kitchen (studio apartment).
4. Hotels and/or Restaurants, must allocate a car park for every 50mq.
5. All office management, entertainment, business and service centers, as well as kitchens and corridors being utilized by the hotel are exempted from the requirement to provide car parks.

Required Documents

- Architectural drawings and blueprints

General Directrate Of Civil Defence (Post) (551-1)

Approval Name	Description	Estimated Time
Short term accommodation activities	checking the approval requirements of the general directorate of civil defense	5 Days

Fee Details (if any)

50 BD Fire prevention and protection certificate fees

License Information

1. Provide the documents mentioned in the “Required Documents” section
2. Comply with the requirements listed in the inspection checklist found in the “Other Downloadable Documents” section
3. Provide proof to the General Directorate of Civil Defense that an alarm and firefighting equipment have been installed within 6 months of obtaining a Commercial Registration and license

If a warehouse is used: A safety certificate must be obtained viaBahrain.bh

Required Documents

•No-objection letter for alarm and extinguisher installation from Civil Defense, or purchasing receipt of alarm equipment and extinguishers along with an annual maintenance contract from a company certified by Civil defense
•Photos required for civil defense activities
•Purchasing invoice of security camera system with specifying the type and storage capacity.

Other Documents

- Sample pictures of the general directorate of civil defense requirements
- licencing requirments of the general directorat of civil defense for activity number "551-1"

Bahrain Tourim and Exibitions Authority (Final Site Inspection) (551-1)

Approval Name	Description	Estimated Time
Approval for short term accommodation activities	Approval for short term accommodation activities	3 Days

Fee Details (if any)

There is no Estimated Processing Time (Days) in this license.

License Information

- Site should be within a tourism classified zone as approved by Bahrain Tourism and Exhibitions Authority
- Please refer to the Hotel Classification Manual for detailed information and criteria regarding specific hotel levels/types
- Investors should ensure the employment of qualified staff with academic background and experience in hospitality management.

Note: Upon the commencement of operations, the hotel shall pay a license fee based on its classification, and shall also be charged with a 5% government levy on its revenue for each quarter of the year (end of every three months). In addition, the hotel must submit an audited financial report to the Bahrain Tourism and Exhibitions at year-end.

Required Documents

- A written approval from the property owner in case the property shall be leased
- An aerial map of the site (Google Maps)
- Copy of land title deed
- Full set of drawings of the proposed building with scale 1:100 & A3D rendering of the hotel's external view
- List of proposed management staff with details of academic qualifications and experience (Final Inspection stage)
- Location of Land / estate
- Project Feasibility Study (Details of project, Start and End Date of project, cost, employment rate)

Other Documents

- BTEA's Licensing form for short-term accommodation activities
- BTEA's Operational form for Short-term accommodation activities
- Hotel Classification Manual

Accommodation and food service activities

ISIC4	Business activity
551-2	Short term accommodation activities - Floating Tourist Hotel

Description

This option is required if the accommodation is going to be floating on water.
For Example: Stationary cruise ship hotels

Business Requirements

✔ Age

18 and above

✔ Allowed for Nationalities

Bahraini 100%	GCC 100%
American 100%	Singaporean 100%
Icelander 100%	Liechtensteiner 100%
Norwegian 100%	Swiss 100%

Foreign Allowed up to 100%

Legal Type

It is allowed to register according to the legal forms mentioned below

Allowed for Individual Commercial Registration (ICR) : Yes

Allowed for Company Commercial Registration (CCR) : Yes

- Bahrain Shareholding Company (Public)
- With Limited Liability Company
- Branch of a Foreign Company
- Bahrain Shareholding Company (Closed)
- Partnership Company
- Simple Commandite Company
- Commandite By Shares Company
- Non Profit Company

Required Step of Licenses and Approvals

Ministry / Directorate	License / Approval Requirements	Approval Type
Bahrain Tourim and Exibitions Authority	Approval for short term accommodation activities	Pre
Ministry of Health	Health approval for accommodation activities	Post
Municipality Affairs	Site Approval for accommodation activities	Post
General Directrate Of Civil Defence	Short term accommodation activities - Floating Tourist Hotel	Post
Bahrain Tourim and Exibitions Authority	Approval for short term accommodation activities	Final Site Inspection

Bahrain Tourim and Exibitions Authority (Pre) (551-2)

Approval Name	Description	Estimated Time
Approval for short term accommodation activities	Approval for short term accommodation activities	3 Days

Fee Details (if any)

There is no Estimated Processing Time (Days) in this license.

License Information

- Site should be within a tourism classified zone as approved by Bahrain Tourism and Exhibitions Authority
- Please refer to the Hotel Classification Manual for detailed information and criteria regarding specific hotel levels/types
- Investors should ensure the employment of qualified staff with academic background and experience in hospitality management.

Note: Upon the commencement of operations, the hotel shall pay a license fee based on its classification, and shall also be charged with a 5% government levy on its revenue for each quarter of the year (end of every three months). In addition, the hotel must submit an audited financial report to the Bahrain Tourism and Exhibitions at year-end.

Required Documents

- A written approval from the property owner in case the property shall be leased
- An aerial map of the site (Google Maps)
- Copy of land title deed
- Full set of drawings of the proposed building with scale 1:100 & A3D rendering of the hotel's external view
- List of proposed management staff with details of academic qualifications and experience (Final Inspection stage)
- Location of Land / estate
- Project Feasibility Study (Details of project, Start and End Date of project, cost, employment rate)

Other Documents

- BTEA's Licensing form for short-term accommodation activities
- BTEA's Operational form for Short-term accommodation activities
- Hotel Classification Manual

Ministry of Health (Post) (551-2)

Approval Name	Description	Estimated Time
Health approval for accommodation activities	Health approval for accommodation activities	5 Days

Fee Details (if any)

400 BD

License Information

• The drawings/ layout provided of the premises must show non-smoking and smoking areas
• Please refer to the “Health requirements of the Group of anti-smoking and Tobacco Types” document in the “other downloadable documents” section for the requirements relating to the serving of sheesha.
• Please refer to the “Health requirements for Hotels and Services apartments” document in the “other downloadable documents” section below for the requirements and specification relating to this activity

Required Documents

•Drawings/ layout of premises (approved by an engineering office).
•Photos of the premises
•Requirement Checklist (Stamped by an engineering office)
•drawings/layouts of the premises

Other Documents

•Health requirements of the Group of anti-smoking and Tobacco Types

Municipality Affairs (Post) (551-2)

Approval Name	Description	Estimated Time
Site Approval for accommodation activities	Municipality Approval for the Commercial Registration address or the site in which the Activity will be practiced	3 Days

Fee Details (if any)

10 BD

License Information

General Conditions:
1. Size of shop/premises must be sufficient for the activity
2. Businesses may not carry out the activity outside the boundaries of the shop/ premises
3. It is prohibited to display or store any items or equipment outside the shop / premises boundary without prior approval from the Municipality
4. Provide garbage containers based on the size and quantity of the garbage disposed
5. Maintain cleanliness of the site

Activity Specific Conditions:
1. Investors must obtain a building permit(s) in the event the building(s) shall be constructed on proposed site.

Note: Uploading pictures of the site/shop may expedite the process of obtaining approval

Required Documents

- Lease agreement (after obtaining the necessary approvals from other licensing entities)
- Shop photos

Other Documents

- Cabinet's Decision (56) of the year 2022 regarding the Regulatory Requirements of Construction for various areas in the Kingdom of Bahrain

General Directrate Of Civil Defence (Post) (551-2)

Approval Name	Description	Estimated Time
Short term accommodation activities - Floating Tourist Hotel	checking the approval requirements of the general directorate of civil defense	5 Days

Fee Details (if any)

50 BD Fire prevention and protection certificate fees

License Information

1. Provide the documents mentioned in the “Required Documents” section
2. Comply with the requirements listed in the inspection checklist found in the “Other Downloadable Documents” section
3. Provide proof to the General Directorate of Civil Defense that an alarm and firefighting equipment have been installed within 6 months of obtaining a Commercial Registration and license

If a warehouse is used: A safety certificate must be obtained viaBahrain.bh

Required Documents

•No-objection letter for alarm and extinguisher installation from Civil Defense, or purchasing receipt of alarm equipment and extinguishers along with an annual maintenance contract from a company certified by Civil defense
•Photos required for civil defense activities
•Purchasing invoice of security camera system with specifying the type and storage capacity.

Other Documents

- Sample pictures of the general directorate of civil defense requirements
- licencing requirments of the general directorat of civil defense for activity number "551-2"

Bahrain Tourim and Exibitions Authority (Final Site Inspection) (551-2)

Approval Name	Description	Estimated Time
Approval for short term accommodation activities	Approval for short term accommodation activities	3 Days

Fee Details (if any)

There is no Estimated Processing Time (Days) in this license.

License Information

- Site should be within a tourism classified zone as approved by Bahrain Tourism and Exhibitions Authority
- Please refer to the Hotel Classification Manual for detailed information and criteria regarding specific hotel levels/types
- Investors should ensure the employment of qualified staff with academic background and experience in hospitality management.

Note: Upon the commencement of operations, the hotel shall pay a license fee based on its classification, and shall also be charged with a 5% government levy on its revenue for each quarter of the year (end of every three months). In addition, the hotel must submit an audited financial report to the Bahrain Tourism and Exhibitions at year-end.

Required Documents

- A written approval from the property owner in case the property shall be leased
- An aerial map of the site (Google Maps)
- Copy of land title deed
- Full set of drawings of the proposed building with scale 1:100 & A3D rendering of the hotel's external view
- List of proposed management staff with details of academic qualifications and experience (Final Inspection stage)
- Location of Land / estate
- Project Feasibility Study (Details of project, Start and End Date of project, cost, employment rate)

Other Documents

- BTEA's Licensing form for short-term accommodation activities
- BTEA's Operational form for Short-term accommodation activities
- Hotel Classification Manual

Accommodation and food service activities

ISIC4	Business activity
559	Other accommodation

Description

This activity includes the provision of temporary or longer-term accommodation in single or shared rooms or dormitories for students, migrant (seasonal) workers and other individuals.
This includes accommodation provided by:
- student residences
- school dormitories
- workers hostels
- rooming and boarding houses
- railway sleeping cars

Business Requirements

Age

18 and above

Allowed for Nationalities

Bahraini 100%		GCC 100%	
American 100%		Singaporean 100%	
Icelander 100%		Liechtenstein er 100%	
Norwegian 100%		Swiss 100%	

Foreign Allowed up to 100%

Legal Type

It is allowed to register according to the legal forms mentioned below

Allowed for Individual Commercial Registration (ICR) : Yes

Allowed for Company Commercial Registration (CCR) : Yes

- Bahrain Shareholding Company (Public)
- With Limited Liability Company
- Branch of a Foreign Company
- Bahrain Shareholding Company (Closed)
- Partnership Company
- Simple Commandite Company
- Commandite By Shares Company
- Non Profit Company

Required Step of Licenses and Approvals

Ministry / Directorate	License / Approval Requirements	Approval Type
Ministry of Health	Notification Only For Other accommodation	Notification Only
General Directorate Of Criminal Investigation	Approval for Accommodation Activities	Pre
Municipality Affairs	Site Approval for accommodation activities	Post
General Directrate Of Civil Defence	Other accommodation	Post

Ministry of Health (Notification Only) (559)

Approval Name	Description	Estimated Time
Notification Only For Other accommodation	Notification Only For Other accommodation	There is no License Information in this license. Days

Fee Details (if any)

300 BD

License Information

There is no License Information in this license.

General Directorate Of Criminal Investigation (Pre) (559)

Approval Name	Description	Estimated Time
Approval for Accommodation Activities	This License for Accommodation Activities	7 Days

Fee Details (if any)

There is no Estimated Processing Time (Days) in this license.

License Information

- The applicant should not have a criminal record, unless they have been rehabilitated in criminal cases
- Must not be located close to residential buildings, mosques, or schools

Municipality Affairs (Post) (559)

Approval Name	Description	Estimated Time
Site Approval for accommodation activities	Municipality Approval for the Commercial Registration address or the site in which the Activity will be practiced	3 Days

Fee Details (if any)

10 BD

License Information

General Conditions:
1. Size of shop/premises must be sufficient for the activity
2. Businesses may not carry out the activity outside the boundaries of the shop/ premises
3. It is prohibited to display or store any items or equipment outside the shop / premises boundary without prior approval from the Municipality
4. Provide garbage containers based on the size and quantity of the garbage disposed
5. Maintain cleanliness of the site

Activity Specific Conditions:
1. Investors must obtain a building permit(s) in the event the building(s) shall be constructed on proposed site.

Note: Uploading pictures of the site/shop may expedite the process of obtaining approval

Required Documents

- Lease agreement (after obtaining the necessary approvals from other licensing entities)
- Shop photos

Other Documents

- Cabinet's Decision (56) of the year 2022 regarding the Regulatory Requirements of Construction for various areas in the Kingdom of Bahrain

General Directrate Of Civil Defence (Post) (559)

Approval Name	Description	Estimated Time
Other accommodation	checking the approval requirements of the general directorate of civil defense	5 Days

Fee Details (if any)

50 BD Fire prevention and protection certificate fees

License Information

1. Provide the documents mentioned in the “Required Documents” section
2. Comply with the requirements listed in the inspection checklist found in the “Other Downloadable Documents” section
3. Provide proof to the General Directorate of Civil Defense that an alarm and firefighting equipment have been installed within 6 months of obtaining a Commercial Registration and license

If a warehouse is used: A safety certificate must be obtained viaBahrain.bh

Other Documents

•Sample pictures of the general directorate of civil defense requirements
•licencing requirments of the general directorat of civil defense for activity number "559"

Accommodation and food service activities

ISIC4	Business activity
5610-1	Food and beverage service activities

Description

This activity includes the provision of food services to customers, whether they are served while seated or serve themselves from a display of items, whether they eat the prepared meals on the premises, take them out or have them delivered. This includes the preparation and serving of meals for immediate consumption from motorized vehicles or non-motorized carts.
This includes activities of:
- restaurants
- cafeterias
- fast-food restaurants
- pizza delivery
- take-out eating places
- ice cream truck vendors
- mobile food carts
- food preparation in market stalls

This activity also includes:
- restaurant activities connected to transportation, when carried out by separate units

Business Requirements

Age

18 and above

Allowed for Nationalities

Bahraini
100%

American
100%

GCC
100%

Legal Type

It is allowed to register according to the legal forms mentioned below

Allowed for Individual Commercial Registration (ICR) : Yes

Allowed for Company Commercial Registration (CCR) : Yes

- Bahrain Shareholding Company (Public)
- With Limited Liability Company
- Branch of a Foreign Company
- Bahrain Shareholding Company (Closed)
- Partnership Company
- Simple Commandite Company
- Commandite By Shares Company
- Non Profit Company

Required Step of Licenses and Approvals

Ministry / Directorate	License / Approval Requirements	Approval Type
Ministry of Health	Health approval for Food and beverage service activities	Post
Municipality Affairs	Site Approval for Food and Beverage service activities	Post
General Directrate Of Civil Defence	Food and beverage service activities	Post

Ministry of Health (Post) (5610-1)

Approval Name	Description	Estimated Time
Health approval for Food and beverage service activities	Health approval for Food and beverage service activities	5 Days

Fee Details (if any)

60 BD

License Information

Please refer to the “Activity License Checklist – Ministry of Health“ document under the “other downloadable documents” section for the licensing requirements.

For faster processing, you may engage any of the licensed engineering offices listed under the “Service Providers Directory” to provide drawings/layout of the premises, which should then be attached to the application that you will submit online. To access the list of licensed engineering offices follow the below steps:
1- Click on “Public Service” on the main navigation bar
2- Click on “Service Providers Directory”
3- Click on “Click Here” button adjacent to “List of Engineering Offices for Ministry of Health related activities”

Required Documents

- Drawings/ layout of premises (approved by an engineering office).
- Requirement Checklist (Stamped by an engineering office)
- drawings/layouts of the premises

Other Documents

- Activity License Checklist - Ministry of Health

Municipality Affairs (Post) (5610-1)

Approval Name	Description	Estimated Time
Site Approval for Food and Beverage service activities	Municipality Approval for the Commercial Registration address or the site in which the Activity will be practiced	3 Days

Fee Details (if any)

10 BD

License Information

General Conditions:
1. Size of shop/premises must be sufficient for the activity
2. Businesses may not carry out the activity outside the boundaries of the shop/ premises
3. It is prohibited to display or store any items or equipment outside the shop / premises boundary without prior approval from the Municipality
4. Provide garbage containers based on the size and quantity of the garbage disposed
5. Maintain cleanliness of the site

Activity Specific Conditions:
1. The commercial registration for this activity can be registered on commercial, service, and Industrial streets

Note: Uploading pictures of the site/shop may expedite the process of obtaining approval

Required Documents

- Lease agreement (after obtaining the necessary approvals from other licensing entities)
- Shop photos

Other Documents

- Cabinet's Decision (56) of the year 2022 regarding the Regulatory Requirements of Construction for various areas in the Kingdom of Bahrain

General Directrate Of Civil Defence (Post) (5610-1)

Approval Name	Description	Estimated Time
Food and beverage service activities	checking the approval requirements of the general directorate of civil defense	5 Days

Fee Details (if any)

50 BD Fire prevention and protection certificate fees

License Information

1. Provide the documents mentioned in the “Required Documents” section
2. Comply with the requirements listed in the inspection checklist found in the “Other Downloadable Documents” section
3. Provide proof to the General Directorate of Civil Defense that an alarm and firefighting equipment have been installed within 6 months of obtaining a Commercial Registration and license

If a warehouse is used: A safety certificate must be obtained viaBahrain.bh

Required Documents

•Annual maintenance contract from a company specialized in chimney.
•No-objection letter for alarm and extinguisher installation from Civil Defense, or purchasing receipt of alarm equipment and extinguishers along with an annual maintenance contract from a company certified by Civil defense
•Photos required for civil defense activities
•Purchasing invoice of security camera system with specifying the type and storage capacity.

Other Documents

- Sample pictures of the general directorate of civil defense requirements
- licencing requirments of the general directorat of civil defense for activity number "5610-1"

Accommodation and food service activities

ISIC4	Business activity
5610-2	Food and beverage service activities - With Sheesha

Description

This license/option is required to serve sheesha

Business Requirements

Age

18 and above

Allowed for Nationalities

- Bahraini 100%
- American 100%
- GCC 100%

Legal Type

It is allowed to register according to the legal forms mentioned below

Allowed for Individual Commercial Registration (ICR) : Yes

Allowed for Company Commercial Registration (CCR) : Yes

- Bahrain Shareholding Company (Public)
- With Limited Liability Company
- Branch of a Foreign Company
- Bahrain Shareholding Company (Closed)
- Partnership Company
- Simple Commandite Company
- Commandite By Shares Company
- Non Profit Company

Required Step of Licenses and Approvals

Ministry / Directorate	License / Approval Requirements	Approval Type
General Directorate Of Criminal Investigation	Approval for Food and beverage service activities	Pre
Ministry of Industry and Commerce	Approval for Sheesha services - Initial Approval	Pre
General Directrate Of Civil Defence	Food and beverage service activities - With Sheesha	Post
Ministry of Industry and Commerce	Approval for Sheesha services - Final Approval	Final Site Inspection

General Directorate Of Criminal Investigation (Pre) (5610-2)

Approval Name	Description	Estimated Time
Approval for Food and beverage service activities	General Directorate of Criminal Investigation Approval for the Activity	7 Days

Fee Details (if any)

There is no Estimated Processing Time (Days) in this license.

License Information

- The applicant should not have a criminal record, unless they have been rehabilitated in criminal cases
- Coffee shops must not be located close to residential buildings, mosques, or schools
- Interior cabins within coffee shops must not be closed with doors, curtains may be used instead

Ministry of Industry and Commerce (Pre) (5610-2)

Approval Name	Description	Estimated Time
Approval for Sheesha services - Initial Approval	This is an initial approval to practice the Sheesha Services activity. Kindly Note: This approval does not cover food and beverage service activities. A separate license must be obtained for such (Please refer to food and beverage service activity ISIC4 5610).	5 Days

Fee Details (if any)

500

License Information

Commercial Address Requirements:
The commercial address should not be in the following:
1- Residential areas
2- Parks and public beaches
3- Complexes and markets owned/operated by the Municipalities
4- Sports clubs of Ministry of Youth Affairs and Sports

Technical Requirements:
The below requirements are required to be satisfied at the final inspection stage:

1.The walls of the shop and ceilings shall be made of bricks, cement, or reinforced concrete
2.Adequate lighting and adequate ventilation in the shop according to its area

3.Safety and fire-fighting tools shall be available in the shop that wishes to carry out this activity
4.Allocation of a closed smoking section separate from the non-smoking section. The doors shall be self-locking and equipped with curtains. This section shall be equipped with an air exhaust system to draw sufficient volumes of smoke outside the premises. The air conditioning system of this section shall be separate from that of the non-smoking area
5.In addition to the requirements for cafes and other restaurants, a special room must be set up to prepare the sheesha and preserve its utensils, separate from the food and beverage preparation

Required Documents

- Drawing/layout of premises
- Letter of non-objection from the property owner regarding the provision of sheesha services

Other Documents

- Operational requirements food and beverage service activities – with shisha

General Directrate Of Civil Defence (Post) (5610-2)

Approval Name	Description	Estimated Time
Food and beverage service activities - With Sheesha	checking the approval requirements of the general directorate of civil defense	5 Days

Fee Details (if any)

30 BD Fire prevention and protection certificate fees

License Information

1. Provide the documents mentioned in the “Required Documents” section
2. Comply with the requirements listed in the inspection checklist found in the “Other Downloadable Documents” section
3. Provide proof to the General Directorate of Civil Defense that an alarm and firefighting equipment have been installed within 6 months of obtaining a Commercial Registration and license

If a warehouse is used: A safety certificate must be obtained viaBahrain.bh

Required Documents

•Annual maintenance contract from a company specialized in chimney.
•No-objection letter for alarm and extinguisher installation from Civil Defense, or purchasing receipt of alarm equipment and extinguishers along with an annual maintenance contract from a company certified by Civil defense
•Photos required for civil defense activities
•Purchasing invoice of security camera system with specifying the type and storage capacity.

Other Documents

- Sample pictures of the general directorate of civil defense requirements
- licencing requirments of the general directorat of civil defense for activity number "5610-2"

Ministry of Industry and Commerce (Final Site Inspection) (5610-2)

Approval Name	Description	Estimated Time
Approval for Sheesha services - Final Approval	This is the final approval required to practice the Sheesha Services activity. Kindly Note: This approval does not cover food and beverage service activities. A separate license must be obtained for such (Please refer to food and beverage service activity ISIC4 5610).	5 Days

Fee Details (if any)

500

License Information

The below requirements will be inspected to ensure compliance:

1.The walls of the shop and ceilings shall be made of bricks, cement, or reinforced concrete

2.Adequate lighting and adequate ventilation in the shop according to its area

3.Safety and fire-fighting tools shall be available in the shop that wishes to carry out this activity

4.Allocation of a closed smoking section separate from the non-smoking section. The

doors shall be self-locking and equipped with curtains. This section shall be equipped with an air exhaust system to draw sufficient volumes of smoke outside the premises. The air conditioning system of this section shall be separate from that of the non-smoking area

5.In addition to the requirements for cafes and other restaurants, a special room must be set up to prepare the sheesha and preserve its utensils, separate from the food and beverage preparation

Required Documents

- Photo(s) of dedicated area for preparing sheesha
- Photo(s) of fire-fighting tools in the premises
- Photo(s) of the wall and ceilings
- Photo(s) showing air exhaust systems in smoking areas
- Photo(s) showing the separation of smoking and non-smoking areas

Accommodation and food service activities

ISIC4	Business activity
5610-3	Food and beverage service activities - Restaurants for Tourist Services

Description

This license/option is required to provide tourist services

Business Requirements

Age

18 and above

Allowed for Nationalities

Bahraini 100%	GCC 100%
American 100%	Singaporean 100%
Icelander 100%	Liechtenstein er 100%
Norwegian 100%	Swiss 100%

Foreign Allowed up to 100%

Legal Type

It is allowed to register according to the legal forms mentioned below

Allowed for Individual Commercial Registration (ICR) : Yes

Allowed for Company Commercial Registration (CCR) : Yes

- Bahrain Shareholding Company (Public)
- With Limited Liability Company
- Branch of a Foreign Company
- Bahrain Shareholding Company (Closed)
- Partnership Company
- Simple Commandite Company
- Commandite By Shares Company
- Non Profit Company

Required Step of Licenses and Approvals

Ministry / Directorate	License / Approval Requirements	Approval Type
Bahrain Tourim and Exibitions Authority	Food and beverage services activities - Restaurants for Tourist Services- Pre Approval	Pre
Municipality Affairs	Site Approval for Restaurants for Tourist Services	Post
Ministry of Health	Health approval for Tourist related food and beverage service activities	Post
General Directrate Of Civil Defence	Food and beverage service activities - Restaurants for Tourist Services	Post
Traffic Operation And Control Department	Traffic approval for Restaurants for Tourist Services	Post
Bahrain Tourim and Exibitions Authority	Food and beverage services activities - Restaurants for Tourist Services - Final Approval	Final Site Inspection

Bahrain Tourim and Exibitions Authority (Pre) (5610-3)

Approval Name	Description	Estimated Time
Food and beverage services activities - Restaurants for Tourist Services- Pre Approval	Food and beverage services activities - Restaurants for Tourist Services - Pre Approval	3 Days

Fee Details (if any)

- License issuance fee: BD 200
- Annual license renewal fee: BD 200
- A fee of 5% of the restaurant's general revenue will be charged at the end of each month
- 250 Bahraini dinars paid only once to the service provider linking the restaurant's payment system with the electronic statistics system.

License Information

Site requirements:
- The restaurant should have separate entrances and exits from any adjoining or adjacent property
- The restaurant should not be in a property classified for residential purposes

Note: Upon the commencement of operations, the restaurant shall be charged a 5% government levy on its revenue for each quarter of the year (end of every three months). In addition, the restaurant must submit an audited financial report to the Bahrain Tourism and Exhibitions at year-end.

Required Documents

•Copy of land title deed
•Written approval attached to the lease from the landlord in the event of rent.

Other Documents

- Ministerial decision No. (1) for (2018) fees on grant and renewal of tourism service licenses
- Ministerial decision No. (106) for (2015) to amend Resolution (4) of (1994) on the amendment of hotel service fees
- Ministerial decision No. (109) for (2018) to amend Article (2) of Ministerial decision (196) of 2017 on hotel service fees
- Ministerial decision No. (23) for (2022) on the electronic tourism statistics system
- Ministerial decision No. (37) for (2015) on amending some provisions of Ministerial decision (2) of (1989) on the conditions and procedures for licensing and renewing tourism services
- Ministerial decision No. (42) for (2022) on the requirements and criteria for licensing restaurants for tourism services

Municipality Affairs (Post) (5610-3)

Approval Name	Description	Estimated Time
Site Approval for Restaurants for Tourist Services	Municipality Approval for the Commercial Registration address or the site in which the Activity will be practiced	3 Days

Fee Details (if any)

10 BD

License Information

General Conditions:
1. Site Approval for Restaurants for Tourist Services
2. Businesses may not carry out the activity outside the boundaries of the shop/ premises
3. It is prohibited to display or store any items or equipment outside the shop / premises boundary without prior approval from the Municipality
4. Provide garbage containers based on the size and quantity of the garbage disposed
5. Maintain cleanliness of the site

Activity Specific Conditions:
1. Site location is allowed to be registered in areas and properties designated by urban planning and Bahrain Tourism and Exhibition Authority to practice such activities.

Note: Uploading pictures of the site/shop may expedite the process of obtaining approval

Required Documents

- Lease agreement (after obtaining the necessary approvals from other licensing entities)
- Shop photos

Other Documents

- Cabinet's Decision (56) of the year 2022 regarding the Regulatory Requirements of Construction for various areas in the Kingdom of Bahrain

Ministry of Health (Post) (5610-3)

Approval Name	Description	Estimated Time
Health approval for Tourist related food and beverage service activities	Health approval for Tourist related food and beverage service activities	5 Days

Fee Details (if any)

150 BD

License Information

Please refer to the “Activity License Checklist – Ministry of Health“ document under the “other downloadable documents” section for the licensing requirements.

For faster processing, you may engage any of the licensed engineering offices listed under the “Service Providers Directory” to provide drawings/layout of the premises, which should then be attached to the application that you will submit online. To access the list of licensed engineering offices follow the below steps:
1- Click on “Public Service” on the main navigation bar
2- Click on “Service Providers Directory”
3- Click on “Click Here” button adjacent to “List of Engineering Offices for Ministry of Health related activities”

Required Documents

- Drawings/ layout of premises (approved by an engineering office).
- Requirement Checklist (Stamped by an engineering office)
- drawings/layouts of the premises

Other Documents

- Activity License Checklist - Ministry of Health

General Directrate Of Civil Defence (Post) (5610-3)

Approval Name	Description	Estimated Time
Food and beverage service activities - Restaurants for Tourist Services	checking the approval requirements of the general directorate of civil defense	5 Days

Fee Details (if any)

50 BD Fire prevention and protection certificate fees

License Information

1. Provide the documents mentioned in the “Required Documents” section
2. Comply with the requirements listed in the inspection checklist found in the “Other Downloadable Documents” section
3. Provide proof to the General Directorate of Civil Defense that an alarm and firefighting equipment have been installed within 6 months of obtaining a Commercial Registration and license

If a warehouse is used: A safety certificate must be obtained viaBahrain.bh

Required Documents

•Annual maintenance contract from a company specialized in chimney.
•No-objection letter for alarm and extinguisher installation from Civil Defense, or purchasing receipt of alarm equipment and extinguishers along with an annual maintenance contract from a company certified by Civil defense
•Photos required for civil defense activities
•Purchasing invoice of security camera system with specifying the type and storage capacity.

Other Documents

- Sample pictures of the general directorate of civil defense requirements
- licencing requirments of the general directorat of civil defense for activity number "5610-3"

Traffic Operation And Control Department (Post) (5610-3)

Approval Name	Description	Estimated Time
Traffic approval for Restaurants for Tourist Services	Traffic approval for Restaurants for Tourist Services	7 Days

Fee Details (if any)

There is no Estimated Processing Time (Days) in this license.

License Information

Applicant must provide the following to satisfy the requirement:
1. Applicant must provide 4 car parks for every 100mq.

Required Documents

•Architectural drawings and blueprints

Bahrain Tourim and Exibitions Authority (Final Site Inspection) (5610-3)

Approval Name	Description	Estimated Time
Food and beverage services activities - Restaurants for Tourist Services - Final Approval	Food and beverage services activities - Restaurants for Tourist Services - Final Approval	3 Days

Fee Details (if any)

- License issuance fee: BD 200
- Annual license renewal fee: BD 200
- A fee of 5% of the restaurant's general revenue will be charged at the end of each month
- 250 Bahraini dinars paid only once to the service provider linking the restaurant's payment system with the electronic statistics system.

License Information

License Information
- The facility must link the sales system to the tourism electronic statistics system
- Pay the tourism license fee.

Note: Upon the commencement of operations, the restaurant shall be charged a 5% government levy on its revenue for each quarter of the year (end of every three months). In addition, the restaurant must submit an audited financial report to the Bahrain Tourism and Exhibitions at year-end.

Accommodation and food service activities

ISIC4	Business activity
5610-4	Food and beverage service activities - Floating Tourist Restaurant

Description

This license/ option is required to operate a floating restaurant

Business Requirements

Age

18 and above

Allowed for Nationalities

Bahraini 100%	GCC 100%
American 100%	Singaporean 100%
Icelander 100%	Liechtensteiner 100%
Norwegian 100%	Swiss 100%

Foreign Allowed up to 100%

Legal Type

It is allowed to register according to the legal forms mentioned below

Allowed for Individual Commercial Registration (ICR) : Yes

Allowed for Company Commercial Registration (CCR) : Yes

- Bahrain Shareholding Company (Public)
- With Limited Liability Company
- Branch of a Foreign Company
- Bahrain Shareholding Company (Closed)
- Partnership Company
- Simple Commandite Company
- Commandite By Shares Company
- Non Profit Company

Required Step of Licenses and Approvals

Ministry / Directorate	License / Approval Requirements	Approval Type
Bahrain Tourim and Exibitions Authority	Food and beverage service activities - Floating Tourist Restaurant - Pre Approval	Pre
Ministry of Health	Health approval for Tourist related food and beverage service activities	Post
General Directrate Of Civil Defence	Food and beverage service activities - Floating Tourist Restaurant	Post
Municipality Affairs	Municipality Site Approval	Post
Bahrain Tourim and Exibitions Authority	Food and beverage services activities - floating tourist restaurant - Final Approval	Final Site Inspection

Bahrain Tourim and Exibitions Authority (Pre) (5610-4)

Approval Name	Description	Estimated Time
Food and beverage service activities - Floating Tourist Restaurant - Pre Approval	Food and beverage service activities - Floating Tourist Restaurant - Pre Approval	3 Days

Fee Details (if any)

- License issuance fee: BD 200
- Annual license renewal fee: BD 200
- A fee of 5% of the restaurant's general revenue will be charged at the end of each month
- 250 Bahraini dinars paid only once to the service provider linking the restaurant's payment system with the electronic statistics system

License Information

- The ship or yacht must be in a location approved by the Bahrain Tourism and Exhibitions Authority.
- The sales system must be linked to BTEA’s electronic statistics system

Note: Upon the commencement of operations, the restaurant shall be charged a 5% government levy on its revenue for each quarter of the year (end of every three months). In addition, the restaurant must submit an audited financial report to the Bahrain Tourism and Exhibitions at year-end.

Required Documents

•A copy of the captain's certified certificate from Port and Maritime Affairs.
•A copy of the insurance certificate and the examination certificate for the yacht or ship (valid).
•A copy of the yacht or ship registration certificate issued by Port and Maritime Affairs.
•Written approval attached to the lease contract from the port owner in the event of rent.

Other Documents

•Ministerial decision No. (1) for (2018) fees on grant and renewal of tourism service licenses
•Ministerial decision No. (106) for (2015) to amend Resolution (4) of (1994) on the amendment of hotel service fees
•Ministerial decision No. (109) for (2018) to amend Article (2) of Ministerial decision (196) of 2017 on hotel service fees
•Ministerial decision No. (23) for (2022) on the electronic tourism statistics system
•Ministerial decision No. (42) for (2022) on the requirements and criteria for licensing restaurants for tourism services

Ministry of Health (Post) (5610-4)

Approval Name	Description	Estimated Time
Health approval for Tourist related food and beverage service activities	Health approval for Tourist related food and beverage service activities	5 Days

Fee Details (if any)

150 BD

License Information

Please refer to the “Activity License Checklist – Ministry of Health“ document under the “other downloadable documents” section for the licensing requirements.

For faster processing, you may engage any of the licensed engineering offices listed under the “Service Providers Directory” to provide drawings/layout of the premises, which should then be attached to the application that you will submit online. To access the list of licensed engineering offices follow the below steps:
1- Click on “Public Service” on the main navigation bar
2- Click on “Service Providers Directory”
3- Click on “Click Here” button adjacent to “List of Engineering Offices for Ministry of Health related activities”

Required Documents

- Drawings/ layout of premises (approved by an engineering office).
- Requirement Checklist (Stamped by an engineering office)
- drawings/layouts of the premises

Other Documents

- Activity License Checklist - Ministry of Health

General Directrate Of Civil Defence (Post) (5610-4)

Approval Name	Description	Estimated Time
Food and beverage service activities - Floating Tourist Restaurant	التأكد من اشتراطات الترخيص للإدارة العامة للدفاع المدني	5 Days

Fee Details (if any)

50 BD Fire prevention and protection certificate fees

License Information

1. Provide the documents mentioned in the “Required Documents” section
2. Comply with the requirements listed in the inspection checklist found in the “Other Downloadable Documents” section
3. Provide proof to the General Directorate of Civil Defense that an alarm and firefighting equipment have been installed within 6 months of obtaining a Commercial Registration and license

If a warehouse is used: A safety certificate must be obtained viaBahrain.bh

Required Documents

•Annual maintenance contract from a company specialized in chimney.
•No-objection letter for alarm and extinguisher installation from Civil Defense, or purchasing receipt of alarm equipment and extinguishers along with an annual maintenance contract from a company certified by Civil defense
•Photos required for civil defense activities
•Purchasing invoice of security camera system with specifying the type and storage capacity.

Other Documents

- Sample pictures of the general directorate of civil defense requirements
- licencing requirments of the general directorat of civil defense for activity number "5610-4"

Municipality Affairs (Post) (5610-4)

Approval Name	Description	Estimated Time
Municipality Site Approval	Municipality approval of the business location (site) is required for all types of business activities. Municipalities verify that the proposed location / zone are appropriate for the proposed business activity. Site approval is issued automatically for pre-approved commercial areas, such as commercial malls and commercial buildings.	15 Days

Fee Details (if any)

Company application registration form
1. Copy of applicant's CPR card (passport for non-Bahrainis)
2. Two copies of property deed or rental agreement
3. If application is for relocation from one area to another, certificate of relocation by previous Municipality
4. Copy of electricity bill or electricity account number for new premises
5. Copy of sale agreement, if CR is purchased from another person
6. Copy of power of attorney, if required

License Information

There is no License Information in this license.

Required Documents

- Lease agreement (after obtaining the necessary approvals from other licensing entities)
- Photos of the premises

Other Documents

- قرار رقم (56) لسنة 2022 بإصدار الاشتراطات التنظيمية للتعمير بمختلف المناطق في المملكة

Bahrain Tourim and Exibitions Authority (Final Site Inspection) (5610-4)

Approval Name	Description	Estimated Time
Food and beverage services activities - floating tourist restaurant - Final Approval	Food and beverage services activities - floating tourist restaurant - Final Approval	3 Days

Fee Details (if any)

- License issuance fee: BD 200
- Annual license renewal fee: BD 200
- A fee of 5% of the restaurant's general revenue will be charged at the end of each month
- 250 Bahraini dinars paid only once to the service provider linking the restaurant's payment system with the electronic statistics system.

License Information

- The facility must link the sales system to the tourism electronic statistics system
- Pay the tourism license fee.

Note: Upon the commencement of operations, the restaurant shall be charged a 5% government levy on its revenue for each quarter of the year (end of every three months). In addition, the restaurant must submit an audited financial report to the Bahrain Tourism and Exhibitions at year-end.

Required Documents

•List of proposed management staff with details of academic qualifications and experience (Final Inspection stage)

Accommodation and food service activities

ISIC4	Business activity
5610-5	Food and beverage service activities - Mobile Food Service Activities

Description

This activity includes the preparation and serving of meals from motorized vehicles (Concession Trucks or Trailers). This activity does not require a physical location, however it does require the registration of concession trucks/trailers with the Directorate of Traffic after obtaining the Commercial Registration with the licenses before commencing operations.

Business Requirements

✔ Age

✔ Allowed for Nationalities

Bahraini
100%

✔ Legal Type

It is allowed to register according to the legal forms mentioned below

Allowed for Individual Commercial Registration (ICR) : Yes

Allowed for Company Commercial Registration (CCR) : Yes

- Bahrain Shareholding Company (Public)
- Bahrain Shareholding Company (Closed)
- Simple Commandite Company
- Non Profit Company
- With Limited Liability Company
- Partnership Company
- Commandite By Shares Company

Required Step of Licenses and Approvals

Ministry / Directorate	License / Approval Requirements	Approval Type
General Directorate Of Traffic Licensing Affair	Notification Only	Notification Only
General Directrate Of Civil Defence	Food and beverage service activities - Mobile Food Service Activities	Post
Ministry of Health	Mobile Food Service Activities	Post

General Directorate Of Traffic Licensing Affair (Notification Only) (5610-5)

Approval Name	Description	Estimated Time
Notification Only	Notify license entity that new application is applied.	There is no License Information in this license. Days

Fee Details (if any)

There is no Estimated Processing Time (Days) in this license.

License Information

After obtaining the commercial license, The conditions listed in “ traffic requirements for mobile food services activities ”-other downloadable documents must be satisfied to license the vehicle or the trailer at the General Traffic Licensing Department.

Other Documents

- Traffic Requirements For Mobile Food Service Activities

General Directrate Of Civil Defence (Post) (5610-5)

Approval Name	Description	Estimated Time
Food and beverage service activities - Mobile Food Service Activities	checking the approval requirements of the general directorate of civil defense	5 Days

Fee Details (if any)

30 BD Fire prevention and protection certificate fees

License Information

1. Provide the documents mentioned in the “Required Documents” section
2. Comply with the requirements listed in the inspection checklist found in the “Other Downloadable Documents” section
3. Provide proof to the General Directorate of Civil Defense that an alarm and firefighting equipment have been installed within 6 months of obtaining a Commercial Registration and license

If a warehouse is used: A safety certificate must be obtained viaBahrain.bh

Required Documents

•No-objection letter for alarm and extinguisher installation from Civil Defense, or purchasing receipt of alarm equipment and extinguishers along with an annual maintenance contract from a company certified by Civil defense
•Photos required for civil defense activities
•Purchasing invoice of security camera system with specifying the type and storage capacity.

Other Documents

- Sample pictures of the general directorate of civil defense requirements
- licencing requirments of the general directorat of civil defense for activity number "5610-5"

Ministry of Health (Post) (5610-5)

Approval Name	Description	Estimated Time
Mobile Food Service Activities	Mobile Food Service Activities	5 Days

Fee Details (if any)

There is no Estimated Processing Time (Days) in this license.

License Information

Please refer to the “Activity License Checklist – Ministry of Health“ document under the “other downloadable documents” section for the licensing requirements.

For faster processing, you may engage any of the licensed engineering offices listed under the “Service Providers Directory” to provide drawings/layout of the premises, which should then be attached to the application that you will submit online. To access the list of licensed engineering offices follow the below steps:
1- Click on “Public Service” on the main navigation bar
2- Click on “Service Providers Directory”
3- Click on “Click Here” button adjacent to “List of Engineering Offices for Ministry of Health related activities”

Required Documents

- Drawings/ layout of premises (approved by an engineering office).
- Requirement Checklist (Stamped by an engineering office)

Other Documents

- Activity License Checklist - Ministry of Health
- Food Truck Requirements
- Operational requirements form for food trucks

Accommodation and food service activities

ISIC4	Business activity
5621-1	Catering Services

Description

This activity includes the provision of food services to customers, whether they are served while seated or serve themselves from a display of items, whether they eat the prepared meals on the premises, take them out or have them delivered and also includes contracting with Mobile Food Trucks to sell food as a sale outlet.

This activity includes the provision of catering services based on contractual arrangements with the customer, at the location specified by the customer for a particular occasion and for a specified period such as:

- Various Events Catering
- Industrial Facilities Catering
- Sports Facilities Catering
- Catering Kitchens
- Operating restaurants or canteens (e.g. in factories, offices, hospitals or schools) on the basis of excellence and providing them with fresh, canned and preserved foodstuffs and supplies

This activity can't be practiced as a management office

Business Requirements

Age

18 and above

Allowed for Nationalities

- Bahraini 100%
- GCC 100%
- American 100%

Legal Type

It is allowed to register according to the legal forms mentioned below

Allowed for Individual Commercial Registration (ICR) : Yes

Allowed for Company Commercial Registration (CCR) : Yes

- Bahrain Shareholding Company (Public)
- With Limited Liability Company
- Branch of a Foreign Company
- Bahrain Shareholding Company (Closed)
- Partnership Company
- Simple Commandite Company
- Commandite By Shares Company
- Non Profit Company

Required Step of Licenses and Approvals

Ministry / Directorate	License / Approval Requirements	Approval Type
Municipality Affairs	Municipality Site Approval	Post
General Directrate Of Civil Defence	Catering Services	Post
Ministry of Health	Health approval for Catering Services	Post

Municipality Affairs (Post) (5621-1)

Approval Name	Description	Estimated Time
Municipality Site Approval	Municipality approval of the business location (site) is required for all types of business activities. Municipalities verify that the proposed location / zone are appropriate for the proposed business activity. Site approval is issued automatically for pre-approved commercial areas, such as commercial malls and commercial buildings.	15 Days

Fee Details (if any)

Company application registration form
1. Copy of applicant's CPR card (passport for non-Bahrainis)
2. Two copies of property deed or rental agreement
3. If application is for relocation from one area to another, certificate of relocation by previous Municipality
4. Copy of electricity bill or electricity account number for new premises
5. Copy of sale agreement, if CR is purchased from another person
6. Copy of power of attorney, if required

License Information

There is no License Information in this license.

Required Documents

- Lease agreement (after obtaining the necessary approvals from other licensing entities)
- Photos of the premises

Other Documents

- قرار رقم (56) لسنة 2022 بإصدار الاشتراطات التنظيمية للتعمير بمختلف المناطق في المملكة

General Directrate Of Civil Defence (Post) (5621-1)

Approval Name	Description	Estimated Time
Catering Services	checking the approval requirements of the general directorate of civil defense	5 Days

Fee Details (if any)

30 BD Fire prevention and protection certificate fees

License Information

1. Provide the documents mentioned in the “Required Documents” section
2. Comply with the requirements listed in the inspection checklist found in the “Other Downloadable Documents” section
3. Provide proof to the General Directorate of Civil Defense that an alarm and firefighting equipment have been installed within 6 months of obtaining a Commercial Registration and license.

If a warehouse is used: A safety certificate must be obtained viaBahrain.bh

Required Documents

•Annual maintenance contract from a company specialized in chimney.
•No-objection letter for alarm and extinguisher installation from Civil Defense, or purchasing receipt of alarm equipment and extinguishers along with an annual maintenance contract from a company certified by Civil defense
•Photos required for civil defense activities
•Purchasing invoice of security camera system with specifying the type and storage capacity.

Other Documents

- Sample pictures of the general directorate of civil defense requirements
- licencing requirments of the general directorat of civil defense for activity number "5621-1"

Ministry of Health (Post) (5621-1)

Approval Name	Description	Estimated Time
Health approval for Catering Services	Health approval for Catering Services	5 Days

Fee Details (if any)

100 BD

License Information

Please refer to the “Activity License Checklist – Ministry of Health“ document under the “other downloadable documents” section for the licensing requirements.

For faster processing, you may engage any of the licensed engineering offices listed under the “Service Providers Directory” to provide drawings/layout of the premises, which should then be attached to the application that you will submit online. To access the list of licensed engineering offices follow the below steps:
1- Click on “Public Service” on the main navigation bar
2- Click on “Service Providers Directory”
3- Click on “Click Here” button adjacent to “List of Engineering Offices for Ministry of Health related activities”

Required Documents

- Drawings/ layout of premises (approved by an engineering office).
- Requirement Checklist (Stamped by an engineering office)
- drawings/layouts of the premises

Other Documents

- Activity License Checklist - Ministry of Health
- Operational requirements for the activity of Catering Services

Accommodation and food service activities

ISIC4	Business activity
5621-2	Catering Services - Aircraft Catering Services

Description

This license is required to provide meals, beverage and other services aboard the aircraft

Business Requirements

Age

18 and above

Allowed for Nationalities

Bahraini 100%	GCC 100%
American 100%	Singaporean 100%
Icelander 100%	Liechtensteiner 100%
Norwegian 100%	Swiss 100%

Foreign Allowed up to 100%

Legal Type

It is allowed to register according to the legal forms mentioned below

Allowed for Individual Commercial Registration (ICR) : Yes

Allowed for Company Commercial Registration (CCR) : Yes

- Bahrain Shareholding Company (Public)
- With Limited Liability Company
- Branch of a Foreign Company
- Bahrain Shareholding Company (Closed)
- Partnership Company
- Simple Commandite Company
- Commandite By Shares Company
- Non Profit Company

Required Step of Licenses and Approvals

Ministry / Directorate	License / Approval Requirements	Approval Type
General Directorate Of Criminal Investigation	Approval by General Directorate of Criminal Investigation	Pre
Civil Aviation Affairs	Aircraft Catering Services	Pre
Ministry of Health	Health approval for Catering Services	Post
Civil Aviation Affairs	Aircraft Catering Services	Post
General Directrate Of Civil Defence	Catering Services - Aircraft Catering Services	Post
Municipality Affairs	Municipality Site Approval	Post
Civil Aviation Affairs	Aircraft Catering Services	Final Site Inspection

General Directorate Of Criminal Investigation (Pre) (5621-2)

Approval Name	Description	Estimated Time
Approval by General Directorate of Criminal Investigation	General Directorate of Criminal Investigation Approval for the Activity	7 Days

Fee Details (if any)

There is no Estimated Processing Time (Days) in this license.

License Information

- The applicant should not have a criminal record, unless they have been rehabilitated in criminal cases

Civil Aviation Affairs (Pre) (5621-2)

Approval Name	Description	Estimated Time
Aircraft Catering Services	Providing meals, beverage and other services.	10 Days

Fee Details (if any)

• Application fees: BD 100 (non-refundable in cases where the application is not approved).
• License fees BD10,000.
• Annual renewal fees 50% of the license fees.

License Information

• The license is valid for one year and renewal application must be submitted 2 months before expiry
• Adherence to the standards and regulatory requirements contained in the regulations under the Civil Aviation Law issued by virtue of Law No. 14 of 2013
• Fulfil obligations set out in the Civil Aviation Law, as well as the Chicago Convention and its annexes

Required Documents

•Feasibility, technical, economic and financial studies
•Fill application Form ATD/ATCL/OF04
•Memorandum of Association

Other Documents

- Chicago Convention and its Annexes.
- Civil Aviation Law No.14 of 2013
- Minister of Transportation and Telecommunication Decree No. 25 of 2016 of CAA fees and departure fees.
- Minster of Transportation and Telecommunication Decree No. 21 of 2013 issuing the regulations under the Civil Aviation Law.

Ministry of Health (Post) (5621-2)

Approval Name	Description	Estimated Time
Health approval for Catering Services	Health approval for Catering Services	5 Days

Fee Details (if any)

100 BD

License Information

Please refer to the “Activity License Checklist – Ministry of Health“ document under the “other downloadable documents” section for the licensing requirements.

For faster processing, you may engage any of the licensed engineering offices listed under the “Service Providers Directory” to provide drawings/layout of the premises, which should then be attached to the application that you will submit online. To access the list of licensed engineering offices follow the below steps:
1- Click on “Public Service” on the main navigation bar
2- Click on “Service Providers Directory”
3- Click on “Click Here” button adjacent to “List of Engineering Offices for Ministry of Health related activities”

Required Documents

- Drawings/ layout of premises (approved by an engineering office).
- Requirement Checklist (Stamped by an engineering office)
- drawings/layouts of the premises

Other Documents

- Activity License Checklist - Ministry of Health
- Operational requirements for the activity of Catering Services

Civil Aviation Affairs (Post) (5621-2)

Approval Name	Description	Estimated Time
Aircraft Catering Services	Providing meals, beverage and other services.	10 Days

Fee Details (if any)

• Application fees: BD 100 (non-refundable in cases where the application is not approved).
• License fees BD10,000.
• Annual renewal fees 50% of the license fees.

License Information

• The license is valid for one year and renewal application must be submitted 2 months before expiry
• Adherence to the standards and regulatory requirements contained in the regulations under the Civil Aviation Law issued by virtue of Law No. 14 of 2013
• Fulfil obligations set out in the Civil Aviation Law, as well as the Chicago Convention and its annexes

Required Documents

•Feasibility, technical, economic and financial studies
•Fill application Form ATD/ATCL/OF04
•Memorandum of Association

Other Documents

- Chicago Convention and its Annexes.
- Civil Aviation Law No.14 of 2013
- Minister of Transportation and Telecommunication Decree No. 25 of 2016 of CAA fees and departure fees.
- Minster of Transportation and Telecommunication Decree No. 21 of 2013 issuing the regulations under the Civil Aviation Law.

General Directrate Of Civil Defence (Post) (5621-2)

Approval Name	Description	Estimated Time
Catering Services - Aircraft Catering Services	checking the approval requirements of the general directorate of civil defense	5 Days

Fee Details (if any)

30 BD Fire prevention and protection certificate fees

License Information

1. Provide the documents mentioned in the “Required Documents” section
2. Comply with the requirements listed in the inspection checklist found in the “Other Downloadable Documents” section
3. Provide proof to the General Directorate of Civil Defense that an alarm and firefighting equipment have been installed within 6 months of obtaining a Commercial Registration and license

If a warehouse is used: A safety certificate must be obtained viaBahrain.bh

Required Documents

•Annual maintenance contract from a company specialized in chimney.
•No-objection letter for alarm and extinguisher installation from Civil Defense, or purchasing receipt of alarm equipment and extinguishers along with an annual maintenance contract from a company certified by Civil defense
•Photos required for civil defense activities
•Purchasing invoice of security camera system with specifying the type and storage capacity.

Other Documents

- Sample pictures of the general directorate of civil defense requirements
- licencing requirments of the general directorat of civil defense for activity number "5621-2"

Municipality Affairs (Post) (5621-2)

Approval Name	Description	Estimated Time
Municipality Site Approval	Municipality approval of the business location (site) is required for all types of business activities. Municipalities verify that the proposed location / zone are appropriate for the proposed business activity. Site approval is issued automatically for pre-approved commercial areas, such as commercial malls and commercial buildings.	15 Days

Fee Details (if any)

Company application registration form
1. Copy of applicant's CPR card (passport for non-Bahrainis)
2. Two copies of property deed or rental agreement
3. If application is for relocation from one area to another, certificate of relocation by previous Municipality
4. Copy of electricity bill or electricity account number for new premises
5. Copy of sale agreement, if CR is purchased from another person
6. Copy of power of attorney, if required

License Information

There is no License Information in this license.

Required Documents

- Lease agreement (after obtaining the necessary approvals from other licensing entities)
- Photos of the premises

Other Documents

- قرار رقم (56) لسنة 2022 بإصدار الاشتراطات التنظيمية للتعمير بمختلف المناطق في المملكة

Civil Aviation Affairs (Final Site Inspection) (5621-2)

Approval Name	Description	Estimated Time
Aircraft Catering Services	Providing meals, beverage and other services.	10 Days

Fee Details (if any)

• Application fees: BD 100 (non-refundable in cases where the application is not approved).
• License fees BD10,000.
• Annual renewal fees 50% of the license fees.

License Information

• The license is valid for one year and renewal application must be submitted 2 months before expiry
• Adherence to the standards and regulatory requirements contained in the regulations under the Civil Aviation Law issued by virtue of Law No. 14 of 2013
• Fulfil obligations set out in the Civil Aviation Law, as well as the Chicago Convention and its annexes

Required Documents

•Feasibility, technical, economic and financial studies
•Fill application Form ATD/ATCL/OF04
•Memorandum of Association

Other Documents

- Chicago Convention and its Annexes.
- Civil Aviation Law No.14 of 2013
- Minister of Transportation and Telecommunication Decree No. 25 of 2016 of CAA fees and departure fees.
- Minster of Transportation and Telecommunication Decree No. 21 of 2013 issuing the regulations under the Civil Aviation Law.

Accommodation and food service activities

ISIC4	Business activity
5621-3	Catering Services - Ship Chandelling Agent

Description

This activity includes suppliing ships with fresh or canned preserved food stuff to be used in preparation of meals. Also includes provision of prepared meals, other catering materials such first aid, tissues, cleaning materials and spare parts.

Business Requirements

Age

18 and above

Allowed for Nationalities

Bahraini 100%		GCC 100%	
American 100%		Singaporean 100%	
Icelander 100%		Liechtenstein er 100%	
Norwegian 100%		Swiss 100%	

Foreign Allowed up to 100%

Legal Type

It is allowed to register according to the legal forms mentioned below

Allowed for Individual Commercial Registration (ICR) : Yes

Allowed for Company Commercial Registration (CCR) : Yes

- Bahrain Shareholding Company (Public)
- With Limited Liability Company
- Branch of a Foreign Company
- Bahrain Shareholding Company (Closed)
- Partnership Company
- Simple Commandite Company
- Commandite By Shares Company
- Non Profit Company

Required Step of Licenses and Approvals

Ministry / Directorate	License / Approval Requirements	Approval Type
General Directrate Of Civil Defence	Catering Services - Ship Chandelling Agent	Post
Ports and Maritime Affairs	Ship Chandelling Agent	Post
Ministry of Health	Health approval for Catering Services	Post
Municipality Affairs	Municipality Site Approval	Post

General Directrate Of Civil Defence (Post) (5621-3)

Approval Name	Description	Estimated Time
Catering Services - Ship Chandelling Agent	checking the approval requirements of the general directorate of civil defense	5 Days

Fee Details (if any)

30 BD Fire prevention and protection certificate fees

License Information

1. Provide the documents mentioned in the “Required Documents” section
2. Comply with the requirements listed in the inspection checklist found in the “Other Downloadable Documents” section
3. Provide proof to the General Directorate of Civil Defense that an alarm and firefighting equipment have been installed within 6 months of obtaining a Commercial Registration and license

If a warehouse is used: A safety certificate must be obtained viaBahrain.bh

Required Documents

•Annual maintenance contract from a company specialized in chimney.
•No-objection letter for alarm and extinguisher installation from Civil Defense, or purchasing receipt of alarm equipment and extinguishers along with an annual maintenance contract from a company certified by Civil defense
•Photos required for civil defense activities
•Purchasing invoice of security camera system with specifying the type and storage capacity.

Other Documents

- Sample pictures of the general directorate of civil defense requirements
- licencing requirments of the general directorat of civil defense for activity number "5621-3"

Ports and Maritime Affairs (Post) (5621-3)

Approval Name	Description	Estimated Time
Ship Chandelling Agent	Ship Chandelling Agent	3 Days

Fee Details (if any)

BD 550

License Information

Application/ License related information:
- The license is valid for 1 year
- Renewal of the license is 50% of license fee
- In addition to the license fee applicants must pay a non-refundable application fee of 100 BD

Required Documents

•Documents proving the educational qualifications of executives in (Port and Maritime studies, Nautical Science, Engineering, Business Management, Logistics, IT, Law) or professional experience in the sector of no less than 5 years
•Submission of a detailed business plan
•Submission of consent form from the Ministry of Health for handling food.

Other Documents

•Ministerial Regulation No. 15 for the year 2017 regarding PMA Tariff
•Ministerial Regulation No.9 for the year 2017 regarding licensing of Marine Services

Ministry of Health (Post) (5621-3)

Approval Name	Description	Estimated Time
Health approval for Catering Services	Health approval for Catering Services	5 Days

Fee Details (if any)

100 BD

License Information

Please refer to the “Activity License Checklist – Ministry of Health“ document under the “other downloadable documents” section for the licensing requirements.

For faster processing, you may engage any of the licensed engineering offices listed under the “Service Providers Directory” to provide drawings/layout of the premises, which should then be attached to the application that you will submit online. To access the list of licensed engineering offices follow the below steps:
1- Click on “Public Service” on the main navigation bar
2- Click on “Service Providers Directory”
3- Click on “Click Here” button adjacent to “List of Engineering Offices for Ministry of Health related activities”

Required Documents

- Drawings/ layout of premises (approved by an engineering office).
- Requirement Checklist (Stamped by an engineering office)
- drawings/layouts of the premises

Other Documents

- Activity License Checklist - Ministry of Health
- Operational requirements for the activity of Catering Services

Municipality Affairs (Post) (5621-3)

Approval Name	Description	Estimated Time
Municipality Site Approval	Municipality approval of the business location (site) is required for all types of business activities. Municipalities verify that the proposed location / zone are appropriate for the proposed business activity. Site approval is issued automatically for pre-approved commercial areas, such as commercial malls and commercial buildings.	15 Days

Fee Details (if any)

Company application registration form
1. Copy of applicant's CPR card (passport for non-Bahrainis)
2. Two copies of property deed or rental agreement
3. If application is for relocation from one area to another, certificate of relocation by previous Municipality
4. Copy of electricity bill or electricity account number for new premises
5. Copy of sale agreement, if CR is purchased from another person
6. Copy of power of attorney, if required

License Information

There is no License Information in this license.

Required Documents

- Lease agreement (after obtaining the necessary approvals from other licensing entities)
- Photos of the premises

Other Documents

- قرار رقم (56) لسنة 2022 بإصدار الاشتراطات التنظيمية للتعمير بمختلف المناطق في المملكة

Accommodation and food service activities

ISIC4	Business activity
56291	Food Transportation Companies

Description

This activity includes delivering food from restaurants, cafeterias, etc to the client

Business Requirements

Age

18 and above

Allowed for Nationalities

- Bahraini 100%
- GCC 100%
- American 100%

Legal Type

It is allowed to register according to the legal forms mentioned below

Allowed for Individual Commercial Registration (ICR) : Yes

Allowed for Company Commercial Registration (CCR) : Yes

Allowed for Sijilli : Yes

- Bahrain Shareholding Company (Public)
- With Limited Liability Company
- Branch of a Foreign Company
- Bahrain Shareholding Company (Closed)
- Partnership Company
- Simple Commandite Company
- Commandite By Shares Company
- Non Profit Company

Required Step of Licenses and Approvals

Ministry / Directorate	License / Approval Requirements	Approval Type
Municipality Affairs	Site Approval for Administrative and support service activities	Post

Municipality Affairs (Post) (56291)

Approval Name	Description	Estimated Time
Site Approval for Administrative and support service activities	Municipality Approval for the Commercial Registration address or the site in which the Activity will be practiced	3 Days

Fee Details (if any)

10

License Information

General Conditions:
1. Size of shop/premises must be sufficient for the activity
2. Businesses may not carry out the activity outside the boundaries of the shop/ premises
3. It is prohibited to display or store any items or equipment outside the shop / premises boundary without prior approval from the Municipality. In the event of non-compliance, the Ministry of Municipality Affairs has the right to take necessary action.
4. Maintain cleanliness of the site
5. Comply with the parking space regulations as per the Construction Regulatory Requirements

Activity Specific Conditions:
1. The Commercial Registration for this activity can be registered on commercial, service, and industrial streets..
2. The commercial address of the Commercial Registration for this activity can an office address provided that the site is used for administrative purposes and is not located in a residential area

Note: Uploading pictures of the site/shop may expedite the process of obtaining

approval

Required Documents

- Lease agreement (after obtaining the necessary approvals from other licensing entities)
- Shop photos

Other Documents

- Cabinet's Decision (56) of the year 2022 regarding the Regulatory Requirements of Construction for various areas in the Kingdom of Bahrain

Accommodation and food service activities

ISIC4	Business activity
7990	Arranging and Assembling Tours

Description

Includes activities performed by tourism offices and destination management companies including:
- Arranging and assembling tours that are sold through travel agencies or directly by tour operators. The tours may include any or all of the following:
· Transportation
· Accommodation
· Food
· Visits to museums, historical or cultural sites, theatrical, musical or sporting events

This activity excludes:
- Travel Agency Activities, See 7911
- Operation of Land Tours, See 791202
- Operation of Sea/Diving Tours, See 791203

Business Requirements

Age

18 and above

Allowed for Nationalities

Bahraini 100%		GCC 100%	
American 100%		Singaporean 100%	
Icelander 100%		Liechtenstein er 100%	
Norwegian 100%		Swiss 100%	

Foreign Allowed up to 100%

Legal Type

It is allowed to register according to the legal forms mentioned below

Allowed for Individual Commercial Registration (ICR) : Yes

Allowed for Company Commercial Registration (CCR) : Yes

- Bahrain Shareholding Company (Public)
- With Limited Liability Company
- Branch of a Foreign Company
- Bahrain Shareholding Company (Closed)
- Partnership Company
- Simple Commandite Company
- Commandite By Shares Company
- Non Profit Company

Required Step of Licenses and Approvals

Ministry / Directorate	License / Approval Requirements	Approval Type
General Directorate Of Criminal Investigation	Approval by General Directorate of Criminal	Pre

	Investigation	
Municipality Affairs	Municipality Site Approval	Post
Bahrain Tourim and Exibitions Authority	Tourism offices	Final Site Inspection

General Directorate Of Criminal Investigation (Pre) (7990)

Approval Name	Description	Estimated Time
Approval by General Directorate of Criminal Investigation	General Directorate of Criminal Investigation Approval for the Activity	7 Days

Fee Details (if any)

There is no Estimated Processing Time (Days) in this license.

License Information

- The applicant should not have a criminal record, unless they have been rehabilitated in criminal cases

Municipality Affairs (Post) (7990)

Approval Name	Description	Estimated Time
Municipality Site Approval	Municipality approval of the business location (site) is required for all types of business activities. Municipalities verify that the proposed location / zone are appropriate for the proposed business activity. Site approval is issued automatically for pre-approved commercial areas, such as commercial malls and commercial buildings.	15 Days

Fee Details (if any)

Company application registration form
1. Copy of applicant's CPR card (passport for non-Bahrainis)
2. Two copies of property deed or rental agreement
3. If application is for relocation from one area to another, certificate of relocation by previous Municipality
4. Copy of electricity bill or electricity account number for new premises
5. Copy of sale agreement, if CR is purchased from another person
6. Copy of power of attorney, if required

License Information

There is no License Information in this license.

Required Documents

- Lease agreement (after obtaining the necessary approvals from other licensing entities)
- Photos of the premises

Other Documents

- قرار رقم (56) لسنة 2022 بإصدار الاشتراطات التنظيمية للتعمير بمختلف المناطق في المملكة

Bahrain Tourim and Exibitions Authority (Final Site Inspection) (7990)

Approval Name	Description	Estimated Time
Tourism offices	Includes activities carried out by tourist offices or destination management companies, including: Arrange and organize tours sold through travel agencies or directly by tour operators. Tours can include any or all of the following: - Transportation. - Accommodation. - Food - Visits to tourist sites, museums, historical or cultural sites, theatrical and musical events and sporting events. This activity does not include: - Travel agency activities, look at 7911 - Internal tourism transport, look at 791202 - Organize domestic cruises/diving trips, look at 791203	3 Days

Fee Details (if any)

There are no fee details (if any) in this license.

License Information

- The commercial title should not be among the business incubators or accelerators.
Requirements after obtaining the license:

- The license applicant must have a qualified office manager with appropriate experience (not less than 6 months) in the field of selling and marketing air transport services or airlines and the work of tourism programs. The office manager must also have obtained one of the approved courses from IATA in one of the fields previously mentioned."
- The employees of the office must be qualified to work in the field of activity of travel and tourism offices and companies, and the number of employees in the office must not be less than two.
- The office must be equipped with the necessary automatic reservation devices to practice the activity.
- In the case of contracting with tour guides, only tour guides licensed by the Bahrain Tourism and Exhibitions Authority are contracted.

Required Documents

•Pictures of the automated booking system.

Information and communication

سجلات
SIJILAT
نظام السجلات التجارية
COMMERCIAL REGISTRATION PORTAL

Information and communication

ISIC4	Business activity
581-1	Publishing of books, periodicals and other publishing activities - press, publishing, and distribution [Daily Newspaper]

Description

Publishing Daily, Non-Daily and Specialized Newspaper

Business Requirements

✔ Age

✔ Allowed for Nationalities

Bahraini
100%

✔ Legal Type

It is allowed to register according to the legal forms mentioned below

Allowed for Company Commercial Registration (CCR) : Yes

- Bahrain Shareholding Company (Public)
- Bahrain Shareholding Company (Closed)
- Simple Commandite Company
- Non Profit Company
- With Limited Liability Company
- Partnership Company
- Commandite By Shares Company

Required Step of Licenses and Approvals

Ministry / Directorate	License / Approval Requirements	Approval Type
Directorate of Publication and Press	Press, Publishing, and Distribution (Daily Newspaper)	Pre
Municipality Affairs	Site Approval for Publishing of books, periodicals and other publishing activities	Post
Directorate of Publication and Press	Press, Publishing, and Distribution (Daily Newspaper)	Final Site Inspection

Directorate of Publication and Press (Pre) (581-1)

Approval Name	Description	Estimated Time
Press, Publishing, and Distribution (Daily Newspaper)	Publishing Daily, Non-Daily and Specialized Newspaper.	5 Days

Fee Details (if any)

There is no Estimated Processing Time (Days) in this license.

License Information

Conditions for a press, publishing, and distribution house publishing a newspaper in accordance with the law regulating the press, printing, and publishing:

1. Any company owned by Bahrainis - whose number is not less than five - is entitled to publish a newspaper. The provisions of the law for commercial companies shall apply to such a company.

2. Send a copy of the newspaper, along with a copy of the contract to the Directorate of Publications and Press upon the establishment of the company containing all data pertaining to the company, the editor-in-chief, the title of the newspaper, the language in which it is published, the name of the printing house, and the company's legal representative.

3. The licensee licensed to publish a newspaper must keep regular records showing the newspaper's accounts, the sources of its income, its expenditure and supporting documents.

4. Every newspaper must have an editor-in-chief in charge of the newspaper and who supervises all its contents.

5. The editor-in-chief must be a Bahraini national with certain qualifications.

6. The capital of the company that wishes to publish a newspaper must be not less than one million Bahraini Dinars for a daily newspaper, and not less than two hundred thousand Bahraini Dinars for a non-daily newspaper. In the case of a specialized

newspaper the paid capital must be not less than fifty thousand Bahraini Dinars.

7. The licensee who has been licensed to publish a newspaper must deposit a cash or bank guarantee with the Ministry's treasury within three months of the date of license approval. The guarantee must be not less than ten percent of the paid capital.

8. The names of the licensee the proprietor of the newspaper, the editor-in-chief or the responsible editor, the division he or she supervises, and the name of the printing house if the newspaper does not have its own printing house must all be shown in a prominent place in the newspaper.

All business establishments producing audio-visual, print and electronic media in the Kingdom of Bahrain must comply with the law regulating the press, printing and publishing and other relevant laws

Required Documents

- Application form

Other Documents

- Legislative Decree No. (47) of 2002

Municipality Affairs (Post) (581-1)

Approval Name	Description	Estimated Time
Site Approval for Publishing of books, periodicals and other publishing activities	Municipality Approval for the Commercial Registration address or the site in which the Activity will be practiced	3 Days

Fee Details (if any)

10

License Information

General Conditions:
1. Size of shop/premises must be sufficient for the activity
2. Businesses may not carry out the activity outside the boundaries of the shop/ premises
3. It is prohibited to display or store any items or equipment outside the shop / premises boundary without prior approval from the Municipality
4. Provide garbage containers based on the size and quantity of the garbage disposed
5. Maintain cleanliness of the site

Activity Specific Conditions:
1. The commercial address of the Commercial Registration for this activity can an office address provided that there is complimentary site location for machinery and equipment in the event operations include printing.

Note: Uploading pictures of the site/shop may expedite the process of obtaining approval

Required Documents

- Lease agreement (after obtaining the necessary approvals from other licensing entities)
- Shop photos

Other Documents

- Cabinet's Decision (56) of the year 2022 regarding the Regulatory Requirements of Construction for various areas in the Kingdom of Bahrain

Directorate of Publication and Press (Final Site Inspection) (581-1)

Approval Name	Description	Estimated Time
Press, Publishing, and Distribution (Daily Newspaper)	Publishing Daily, Non-Daily and Specialized Newspaper.	5 Days

Fee Details (if any)

There is no Estimated Processing Time (Days) in this license.

License Information

Conditions for a press, publishing, and distribution house publishing a newspaper in accordance with the law regulating the press, printing, and publishing:

1. Any company owned by Bahrainis - whose number is not less than five - is entitled to publish a newspaper. The provisions of the law for commercial companies shall apply to such a company.

2. Send a copy of the newspaper, along with a copy of the contract to the Directorate of Publications and Press upon the establishment of the company containing all data pertaining to the company, the editor-in-chief, the title of the newspaper, the language in which it is published, the name of the printing house, and the company's legal representative.

3. The licensee licensed to publish a newspaper must keep regular records showing the newspaper's accounts, the sources of its income, its expenditure and supporting documents.

4. Every newspaper must have an editor-in-chief in charge of the newspaper and who supervises all its contents.

5. The editor-in-chief must be a Bahraini national with certain qualifications.

6. The capital of the company that wishes to publish a newspaper must be not less

than one million Bahraini Dinars for a daily newspaper, and not less than two hundred thousand Bahraini Dinars for a non-daily newspaper. In the case of a specialized newspaper the paid capital must be not less than fifty thousand Bahraini Dinars.

7. The licensee who has been licensed to publish a newspaper must deposit a cash or bank guarantee with the Ministry's treasury within three months of the date of license approval. The guarantee must be not less than ten percent of the paid capital.

8. The names of the licensee the proprietor of the newspaper, the editor-in-chief or the responsible editor, the division he or she supervises, and the name of the printing house if the newspaper does not have its own printing house must all be shown in a prominent place in the newspaper.

All business establishments producing audio-visual, print and electronic media in the Kingdom of Bahrain must comply with the law regulating the press, printing and publishing and other relevant laws

Required Documents

- Application form

Other Documents

- Legislative Decree No. (47) of 2002

Information and communication

ISIC4	Business activity
581-2	Publishing of books, periodicals and other publishing activities - press, publishing, and distribution [Non - Daily Newspaper]

Description

Publishing Non-Daily and Specialized Newspaper

Business Requirements

✔ Age

✔ Allowed for Nationalities

Bahraini
100%

✔ Legal Type

It is allowed to register according to the legal forms mentioned below

Allowed for Company Commercial Registration (CCR) : Yes

- Bahrain Shareholding Company (Public)
- Bahrain Shareholding Company (Closed)
- Simple Commandite Company
- Non Profit Company
- With Limited Liability Company
- Partnership Company
- Commandite By Shares Company

Required Step of Licenses and Approvals

Ministry / Directorate	License / Approval Requirements	Approval Type
Directorate of Publication and Press	Press, publishing, and distribution (Non - Daily Newspaper)	Pre
Municipality Affairs	Site Approval for Publishing of books, periodicals and other publishing activities	Post
Directorate of Publication and Press	Press, publishing, and distribution (Non - Daily Newspaper)	Final Site Inspection

Directorate of Publication and Press (Pre) (581-2)

Approval Name	Description	Estimated Time
Press, publishing, and distribution (Non - Daily Newspaper)	Publishing Non-Daily and Specialized Newspaper	5 Days

Fee Details (if any)

There is no Estimated Processing Time (Days) in this license.

License Information

Conditions for a press, publishing, and distribution house publishing a newspaper in accordance with the law regulating the press, printing, and publishing:

1. Any company owned by Bahrainis - whose number is not less than five - is entitled to publish a newspaper. The provisions of the law for commercial companies shall apply to such a company.

2. Send a copy of the newspaper, along with a copy of the contract to the Directorate of Publications and Press upon the establishment of the company containing all data pertaining to the company, the editor-in-chief, the title of the newspaper, the language in which it is published, the name of the printing house, and the company's legal representative.

3. The licensee licensed to publish a newspaper must keep regular records showing the newspaper's accounts, the sources of its income, its expenditure and supporting documents.

4. Every newspaper must have an editor-in-chief in charge of the newspaper and who supervises all its contents.

5. The editor-in-chief must be a Bahraini national with certain qualifications.

6. The capital of the company that wishes to publish a newspaper must be not less than one million Bahraini Dinars for a daily newspaper, and not less than two hundred thousand Bahraini Dinars for a non-daily newspaper. In the case of a specialized

newspaper the paid capital must be not less than fifty thousand Bahraini Dinars.

7. The licensee who has been licensed to publish a newspaper must deposit a cash or bank guarantee with the Ministry's treasury within three months of the date of license approval. The guarantee must be not less than ten percent of the paid capital.

8. The names of the licensee the proprietor of the newspaper, the editor-in-chief or the responsible editor, the division he or she supervises, and the name of the printing house if the newspaper does not have its own printing house must all be shown in a prominent place in the newspaper.
All business establishments producing audio-visual, print and electronic media in the Kingdom of Bahrain must comply with the law regulating the press, printing and publishing and other relevant laws

Required Documents

- Application form

Other Documents

- Legislative Decree No. (47) of 2002
- Resolution No. (1) of 2015 regarding standards for supervision and control of media contents

Municipality Affairs (Post) (581-2)

Approval Name	Description	Estimated Time
Site Approval for Publishing of books, periodicals and other publishing activities	Municipality Approval for the Commercial Registration address or the site in which the Activity will be practiced	3 Days

Fee Details (if any)

10

License Information

General Conditions:
1. Size of shop/premises must be sufficient for the activity
2. Businesses may not carry out the activity outside the boundaries of the shop/ premises
3. It is prohibited to display or store any items or equipment outside the shop / premises boundary without prior approval from the Municipality
4. Provide garbage containers based on the size and quantity of the garbage disposed
5. Maintain cleanliness of the site

Activity Specific Conditions:
1. The commercial address of the Commercial Registration for this activity can an office address provided that there is complimentary site location for machinery and equipment in the event operations include printing.

Note: Uploading pictures of the site/shop may expedite the process of obtaining approval

Required Documents

- Lease agreement (after obtaining the necessary approvals from other licensing entities)
- Shop photos

Other Documents

- Cabinet's Decision (56) of the year 2022 regarding the Regulatory Requirements of Construction for various areas in the Kingdom of Bahrain

Directorate of Publication and Press (Final Site Inspection) (581-2)

Approval Name	Description	Estimated Time
Press, publishing, and distribution (Non - Daily Newspaper)	Publishing Non-Daily and Specialized Newspaper	5 Days

Fee Details (if any)

There is no Estimated Processing Time (Days) in this license.

License Information

Conditions for a press, publishing, and distribution house publishing a newspaper in accordance with the law regulating the press, printing, and publishing:

1. Any company owned by Bahrainis - whose number is not less than five - is entitled to publish a newspaper. The provisions of the law for commercial companies shall apply to such a company.

2. Send a copy of the newspaper, along with a copy of the contract to the Directorate of Publications and Press upon the establishment of the company containing all data pertaining to the company, the editor-in-chief, the title of the newspaper, the language in which it is published, the name of the printing house, and the company's legal representative.

3. The licensee licensed to publish a newspaper must keep regular records showing the newspaper's accounts, the sources of its income, its expenditure and supporting documents.

4. Every newspaper must have an editor-in-chief in charge of the newspaper and who supervises all its contents.

5. The editor-in-chief must be a Bahraini national with certain qualifications.

6. The capital of the company that wishes to publish a newspaper must be not less

than one million Bahraini Dinars for a daily newspaper, and not less than two hundred thousand Bahraini Dinars for a non-daily newspaper. In the case of a specialized newspaper the paid capital must be not less than fifty thousand Bahraini Dinars.

7. The licensee who has been licensed to publish a newspaper must deposit a cash or bank guarantee with the Ministry's treasury within three months of the date of license approval. The guarantee must be not less than ten percent of the paid capital.

8. The names of the licensee the proprietor of the newspaper, the editor-in-chief or the responsible editor, the division he or she supervises, and the name of the printing house if the newspaper does not have its own printing house must all be shown in a prominent place in the newspaper.
All business establishments producing audio-visual, print and electronic media in the Kingdom of Bahrain must comply with the law regulating the press, printing and publishing and other relevant laws

Required Documents

•Application form

Other Documents

•Legislative Decree No. (47) of 2002
•Resolution No. (1) of 2015 regarding standards for supervision and control of media contents

Information and communication

ISIC4	Business activity
581-3	Publishing of books, periodicals and other publishing activities - press, publishing, and distribution [Specialized - Newspaper]

Description

Publishing Specialized Newspaper

Business Requirements

✔ Age

✔ Allowed for Nationalities

Bahraini
100%

✔ Legal Type

It is allowed to register according to the legal forms mentioned below

Allowed for Company Commercial Registration (CCR) : Yes

- Bahrain Shareholding Company (Public)
- Bahrain Shareholding Company (Closed)
- Simple Commandite Company
- Non Profit Company
- With Limited Liability Company
- Partnership Company
- Commandite By Shares Company

Required Step of Licenses and Approvals

Ministry / Directorate	License / Approval Requirements	Approval Type
Directorate of Publication and Press	Press, publishing, and distribution (Specialized – Newspaper)	Pre
Municipality Affairs	Site Approval for Publishing of books, periodicals and other publishing activities	Post
Directorate of Publication and Press	Press, publishing, and distribution (Specialized – Newspaper)	Final Site Inspection

Directorate of Publication and Press (Pre) (581-3)

Approval Name	Description	Estimated Time
Press, publishing, and distribution (Specialized – Newspaper)	Publishing Specialized Newspaper	5 Days

Fee Details (if any)

There is no Estimated Processing Time (Days) in this license.

License Information

Conditions for a press, publishing, and distribution house publishing a newspaper in accordance with the law regulating the press, printing, and publishing:

1. Any company owned by Bahrainis - whose number is not less than five - is entitled to publish a newspaper. The provisions of the law for commercial companies shall apply to such a company.

2. Send a copy of the newspaper, along with a copy of the contract to the Directorate of Publications and Press upon the establishment of the company containing all data pertaining to the company, the editor-in-chief, the title of the newspaper, the language in which it is published, the name of the printing house, and the company's legal representative.

3. The licensee licensed to publish a newspaper must keep regular records showing the newspaper's accounts, the sources of its income, its expenditure and supporting documents.

4. Every newspaper must have an editor-in-chief in charge of the newspaper and who supervises all its contents.

5. The editor-in-chief must be a Bahraini national with certain qualifications.

6. The capital of the company that wishes to publish a newspaper must be not less than one million Bahraini Dinars for a daily newspaper, and not less than two hundred

thousand Bahraini Dinars for a non-daily newspaper. In the case of a specialized newspaper the paid capital must be not less than fifty thousand Bahraini Dinars.

7. The licensee who has been licensed to publish a newspaper must deposit a cash or bank guarantee with the Ministry's treasury within three months of the date of license approval. The guarantee must be not less than ten percent of the paid capital.

8. The names of the licensee the proprietor of the newspaper, the editor-in-chief or the responsible editor, the division he or she supervises, and the name of the printing house if the newspaper does not have its own printing house must all be shown in a prominent place in the newspaper.
All business establishments producing audio-visual, print and electronic media in the Kingdom of Bahrain must comply with the law regulating the press, printing and publishing and other relevant laws

Required Documents

- Application form

Other Documents

- Legislative Decree No. (47) of 2002

Municipality Affairs (Post) (581-3)

Approval Name	Description	Estimated Time
Site Approval for Publishing of books, periodicals and other publishing activities	Municipality Approval for the Commercial Registration address or the site in which the Activity will be practiced	3 Days

Fee Details (if any)

10

License Information

General Conditions:
1. Size of shop/premises must be sufficient for the activity
2. Businesses may not carry out the activity outside the boundaries of the shop/ premises
3. It is prohibited to display or store any items or equipment outside the shop / premises boundary without prior approval from the Municipality
4. Provide garbage containers based on the size and quantity of the garbage disposed
5. Maintain cleanliness of the site

Activity Specific Conditions:
1. The commercial address of the Commercial Registration for this activity can an office address provided that there is complimentary site location for machinery and equipment in the event operations include printing.

Note: Uploading pictures of the site/shop may expedite the process of obtaining approval

Required Documents

- Lease agreement (after obtaining the necessary approvals from other licensing entities)
- Shop photos

Other Documents

- Cabinet's Decision (56) of the year 2022 regarding the Regulatory Requirements of Construction for various areas in the Kingdom of Bahrain

Directorate of Publication and Press (Final Site Inspection) (581-3)

Approval Name	Description	Estimated Time
Press, publishing, and distribution (Specialized – Newspaper)	Publishing Specialized Newspaper	5 Days

Fee Details (if any)

There is no Estimated Processing Time (Days) in this license.

License Information

Conditions for a press, publishing, and distribution house publishing a newspaper in accordance with the law regulating the press, printing, and publishing:

1. Any company owned by Bahrainis - whose number is not less than five - is entitled to publish a newspaper. The provisions of the law for commercial companies shall apply to such a company.

2. Send a copy of the newspaper, along with a copy of the contract to the Directorate of Publications and Press upon the establishment of the company containing all data pertaining to the company, the editor-in-chief, the title of the newspaper, the language in which it is published, the name of the printing house, and the company's legal representative.

3. The licensee licensed to publish a newspaper must keep regular records showing the newspaper's accounts, the sources of its income, its expenditure and supporting documents.

4. Every newspaper must have an editor-in-chief in charge of the newspaper and who supervises all its contents.

5. The editor-in-chief must be a Bahraini national with certain qualifications.

6. The capital of the company that wishes to publish a newspaper must be not less than one million Bahraini Dinars for a daily newspaper, and not less than two hundred thousand Bahraini Dinars for a non-daily newspaper. In the case of a specialized newspaper the paid capital must be not less than fifty thousand Bahraini Dinars.

7. The licensee who has been licensed to publish a newspaper must deposit a cash or bank guarantee with the Ministry's treasury within three months of the date of license approval. The guarantee must be not less than ten percent of the paid capital.

8. The names of the licensee the proprietor of the newspaper, the editor-in-chief or the responsible editor, the division he or she supervises, and the name of the printing house if the newspaper does not have its own printing house must all be shown in a prominent place in the newspaper.
All business establishments producing audio-visual, print and electronic media in the Kingdom of Bahrain must comply with the law regulating the press, printing and publishing and other relevant laws

Required Documents

- Application form

Other Documents

- Legislative Decree No. (47) of 2002

Information and communication

ISIC4	Business activity
581-4	Publishing of books, periodicals and other publishing activities - Publishing and Distribution Houses

Description

Publishing of literary and educational books and providing facilities and procedures for contracting with printing houses and libraries for distribution

This activity also includes publishing through websites and electronic applications that publish audio and read books

Business Requirements

✔ Age

✔ Allowed for Nationalities

Bahraini
100%

✔ Legal Type

It is allowed to register according to the legal forms mentioned below

Allowed for Individual Commercial Registration (ICR) : Yes

Allowed for Company Commercial Registration (CCR) : Yes

- Bahrain Shareholding Company (Public)
- Bahrain Shareholding Company (Closed)
- Simple Commandite Company
- Non Profit Company
- With Limited Liability Company
- Partnership Company
- Commandite By Shares Company

Required Step of Licenses and Approvals

Ministry / Directorate	License / Approval Requirements	Approval Type
Directorate of Publication and Press	Publishing and distribution houses	Pre
Municipality Affairs	Site Approval for Publishing of books, periodicals and other publishing activities	Post
Directorate of Publication and Press	Publishing and distribution houses	Final Site Inspection

Directorate of Publication and Press (Pre) (581-4)

Approval Name	Description	Estimated Time
Publishing and distribution houses	Publishing of literary and educational books and providing facilities and procedures for contracting with printing houses and libraries for distribution	5 Days

Fee Details (if any)

There is no Estimated Processing Time (Days) in this license.

License Information

All business establishments producing audio-visual, print and electronic media in the Kingdom of Bahrain must comply with the law regulating the press, printing and publishing and other relevant laws

Required Documents

- Application form

Other Documents

- Legislative Decree No. (47) of 2002
- Resolution No. (1) of 2015 regarding standards for supervision and control of media contents

Municipality Affairs (Post) (581-4)

Approval Name	Description	Estimated Time
Site Approval for Publishing of books, periodicals and other publishing activities	Municipality Approval for the Commercial Registration address or the site in which the Activity will be practiced	3 Days

Fee Details (if any)

10

License Information

General Conditions:
1. Size of shop/premises must be sufficient for the activity
2. Businesses may not carry out the activity outside the boundaries of the shop/ premises
3. It is prohibited to display or store any items or equipment outside the shop / premises boundary without prior approval from the Municipality
4. Provide garbage containers based on the size and quantity of the garbage disposed
5. Maintain cleanliness of the site

Activity Specific Conditions:
1. The commercial address of the Commercial Registration for this activity can an office address provided that there is complimentary site location for machinery and equipment in the event operations include printing.

Note: Uploading pictures of the site/shop may expedite the process of obtaining approval

Required Documents

- Lease agreement (after obtaining the necessary approvals from other licensing entities)
- Shop photos

Other Documents

- Cabinet's Decision (56) of the year 2022 regarding the Regulatory Requirements of Construction for various areas in the Kingdom of Bahrain

Directorate of Publication and Press (Final Site Inspection) (581-4)

Approval Name	Description	Estimated Time
Publishing and distribution houses	Publishing of literary and educational books and providing facilities and procedures for contracting with printing houses and libraries for distribution	5 Days

Fee Details (if any)

There is no Estimated Processing Time (Days) in this license.

License Information

All business establishments producing audio-visual, print and electronic media in the Kingdom of Bahrain must comply with the law regulating the press, printing and publishing and other relevant laws

Required Documents

•Application form

Other Documents

- Legislative Decree No. (47) of 2002
- Resolution No. (1) of 2015 regarding standards for supervision and control of media contents

Information and communication

ISIC4	Business activity
581-5	Publishing of books, periodicals and other publishing activities - Office Printing Services

Description

This activity includes establishments that prepare additional copies of documents and documents of various types. It also includes establishments that perform scanning services for documents and paper documents, electronic and other means, as well as print research and reports.

Business Requirements

✔ Age

✔ Allowed for Nationalities

Bahraini
100%

✔ Legal Type

It is allowed to register according to the legal forms mentioned below

Allowed for Individual Commercial Registration (ICR) : Yes

Allowed for Company Commercial Registration (CCR) : Yes

- Bahrain Shareholding Company (Public)
- Bahrain Shareholding Company (Closed)
- Simple Commandite Company
- Non Profit Company
- With Limited Liability Company
- Partnership Company
- Commandite By Shares Company

Required Step of Licenses and Approvals

Ministry / Directorate	License / Approval Requirements	Approval Type
Directorate of Publication and Press	Printing House	Pre
Municipality Affairs	Site Approval for Publishing of books, periodicals and other publishing activities	Post
Directorate of Publication and Press	Printing House	Final Site Inspection

Directorate of Publication and Press (Pre) (581-5)

Approval Name	Description	Estimated Time
Printing House	This activity includes: - Printing of Newspapers, - Magazines and other Periodicals - Books and Brochures, - Music and Music Manuscripts, - Maps, - Atlases - Posters - Advertising Catalogues, - Prospectuses and Other Printed Advertising, - Postage Stamps - Taxation Stamps - Documents of Title - Cheques and Other Security Papers - Diaries - Calendars - Business Forms and Other Commercial Printed Matter - Personal Stationery and Other Printed Matter by Letterpress - Offset, Photogravure - Flexographic and Other Printing Presses - Duplication Machines - Computer Printers - Embossers	5 Days

	- Including Quick Printing - Printing Directly onto Textiles, Plastic, Glass, Metal, Wood and Ceramics - Printing on Labels or Tags (Lithographic, Gravure Printing, Flexographic Printing, Other)	

Fee Details (if any)

There is no Estimated Processing Time (Days) in this license.

License Information

• The requirements/ conditions for operating a press, publishing, and distribution house include the following:
1. Any company owned by Bahrainis - whose number is not less than five - is entitled to publish a newspaper. The provisions of the law for commercial companies shall apply to such a company.
2. After obtaining the license, licensees must submit to the Directorate of Publications and Press a copy of the newspaper. A copy of the Memorandum or Articles of Association for the establishment of the company must also be submitted, and should contain all the data pertaining to the company including the editor-in-chief, the title of the newspaper, the language in which it will be published, the name of the printing house, and the company's legal representative.
3. The licensee must keep regular records showing the newspaper's accounts, the sources of its income, and its expenditure details along with the respective supporting documents.
4. Every newspaper must have an editor-in-chief in who actually supervises the content writing of the newspaper
5. The editor-in-chief must be a Bahraini national with certain qualifications.
6. The licensee who has been licensed to publish a newspaper must deposit a cash or bank guarantee with the Ministry's treasury within three months of the date of license approval. The guarantee must be not less than ten percent of the paid capital.
7. The licensee must clearly display on the newspaper the following: 1) Name of the licensee, 2) name of the editor-in-chief or the responsible editor 3) the division they supervise, and 4) the name of the printing house if the newspaper does not have its own

printing house
• Please refer to the Legislative Decree No. (47) of year 2002 for more details

Required Documents

•Application form

Other Documents

•Legislative Decree No. (47) of 2002

Municipality Affairs (Post) (581-5)

Approval Name	Description	Estimated Time
Site Approval for Publishing of books, periodicals and other publishing activities	Municipality Approval for the Commercial Registration address or the site in which the Activity will be practiced	3 Days

Fee Details (if any)

10

License Information

General Conditions:
1. Size of shop/premises must be sufficient for the activity
2. Businesses may not carry out the activity outside the boundaries of the shop/ premises
3. It is prohibited to display or store any items or equipment outside the shop / premises boundary without prior approval from the Municipality
4. Provide garbage containers based on the size and quantity of the garbage disposed
5. Maintain cleanliness of the site

Activity Specific Conditions:
1. The commercial address of the Commercial Registration for this activity can an office address provided that there is complimentary site location for machinery and equipment in the event operations include printing.

Note: Uploading pictures of the site/shop may expedite the process of obtaining approval

Required Documents

- Lease agreement (after obtaining the necessary approvals from other licensing entities)
- Shop photos

Other Documents

- Cabinet's Decision (56) of the year 2022 regarding the Regulatory Requirements of Construction for various areas in the Kingdom of Bahrain

Directorate of Publication and Press (Final Site Inspection) (581-5)

Approval Name	Description	Estimated Time
Printing House	This activity includes: - Printing of Newspapers, - Magazines and other Periodicals - Books and Brochures, - Music and Music Manuscripts, - Maps, - Atlases - Posters - Advertising Catalogues, - Prospectuses and Other Printed Advertising, - Postage Stamps - Taxation Stamps - Documents of Title - Cheques and Other Security Papers - Diaries - Calendars - Business Forms and Other Commercial Printed Matter - Personal Stationery and Other Printed Matter by Letterpress - Offset, Photogravure - Flexographic and Other Printing Presses - Duplication Machines - Computer Printers	5 Days

	- Embossers - Including Quick Printing - Printing Directly onto Textiles, Plastic, Glass, Metal, Wood and Ceramics - Printing on Labels or Tags (Lithographic, Gravure Printing, Flexographic Printing, Other)	

Fee Details (if any)

There is no Estimated Processing Time (Days) in this license.

License Information

• The requirements/ conditions for operating a press, publishing, and distribution house include the following:
1. Any company owned by Bahrainis - whose number is not less than five - is entitled to publish a newspaper. The provisions of the law for commercial companies shall apply to such a company.
2. After obtaining the license, licensees must submit to the Directorate of Publications and Press a copy of the newspaper. A copy of the Memorandum or Articles of Association for the establishment of the company must also be submitted, and should contain all the data pertaining to the company including the editor-in-chief, the title of the newspaper, the language in which it will be published, the name of the printing house, and the company's legal representative.
3. The licensee must keep regular records showing the newspaper's accounts, the sources of its income, and its expenditure details along with the respective supporting documents.
4. Every newspaper must have an editor-in-chief in who actually supervises the content writing of the newspaper
5. The editor-in-chief must be a Bahraini national with certain qualifications.
6. The licensee who has been licensed to publish a newspaper must deposit a cash or bank guarantee with the Ministry's treasury within three months of the date of license approval. The guarantee must be not less than ten percent of the paid capital.
7. The licensee must clearly display on the newspaper the following: 1) Name of the licensee, 2) name of the editor-in-chief or the responsible editor 3) the division they

supervise, and 4) the name of the printing house if the newspaper does not have its own printing house
• Please refer to the Legislative Decree No. (47) of year 2002 for more details

Required Documents

•Application form

Other Documents

•Legislative Decree No. (47) of 2002

Information and communication

ISIC4	Business activity
582	Software publishing

Description

This activity includes publishing of ready-made (non-customized) software such as:
- Operating systems
- Business and other applications
- Computer games for all platforms
- Softwares provided using artificial intelligence technologies

Business Requirements

Age

18 and above

Allowed for Nationalities

Bahraini 100%	GCC 100%
American 100%	Singaporean 100%
Icelander 100%	Liechtenstein er 100%
Norwegian 100%	Swiss 100%

Foreign Allowed up to 100%

Legal Type

It is allowed to register according to the legal forms mentioned below

Allowed for Individual Commercial Registration (ICR) : Yes

Allowed for Company Commercial Registration (CCR) : Yes

Allowed for Sijilli : Yes

- Bahrain Shareholding Company (Public)
- With Limited Liability Company
- Branch of a Foreign Company
- Bahrain Shareholding Company (Closed)
- Partnership Company
- Simple Commandite Company
- Commandite By Shares Company
- Non Profit Company

Required Step of Licenses and Approvals

Ministry / Directorate	License / Approval Requirements	Approval Type
Municipality Affairs	Site Approval for Information and Communication Activities	Post

Municipality Affairs (Post) (582)

Approval Name	Description	Estimated Time
Site Approval for Information and Communication Activities	Municipality Approval for the Commercial Registration address or the site in which the Activity will be practiced	3 Days

Fee Details (if any)

10

License Information

General Conditions:
1. Size of shop/premises must be sufficient for the activity
2. Businesses may not carry out the activity outside the boundaries of the shop/ premises
3. It is prohibited to display or store any items or equipment outside the shop / premises boundary without prior approval from the Municipality. In the event of non-compliance, the Ministry of Municipality Affairs has the right to take necessary action.
4. Maintain cleanliness of the site
5. Comply with the parking space regulations as per the Construction Regulatory Requirements

Activity Specific Conditions:
1. The Commercial Registration for this activity can be registered on commercial, service, and industrial streets.
2. The commercial address of the Commercial Registration for this activity can an office address provided that the site is used for administrative purposes and is not located in a residential area

Note: Uploading pictures of the site/shop may expedite the process of obtaining approval

Required Documents

- Lease agreement (after obtaining the necessary approvals from other licensing entities)
- Shop photos

Other Documents

- Cabinet's Decision (56) of the year 2022 regarding the Regulatory Requirements of Construction for various areas in the Kingdom of Bahrain

Information and communication

ISIC4	Business activity
591	Motion picture, video and television programme activities

Description

This activity includes production of theatrical and non-theatrical motion pictures whether on film, videotape, DVD or other media, including digital distribution, for direct projection in theatres or for broadcasting on television; supporting activities such as film editing, cutting, dubbing etc.; distribution of motion pictures or other film productions (video tapes, DVDs, etc) to other industries.

Business Requirements

Age

18 and above

Allowed for Nationalities

Bahraini 100%	GCC 100%
American 100%	Singaporean 100%
Icelander 100%	Liechtensteiner 100%
Norwegian 100%	Swiss 100%

Foreign Allowed up to 100%

Legal Type

It is allowed to register according to the legal forms mentioned below

Allowed for Individual Commercial Registration (ICR) : Yes

Allowed for Company Commercial Registration (CCR) : Yes

Allowed for Sijilli : Yes

- Bahrain Shareholding Company (Public)
- With Limited Liability Company
- Branch of a Foreign Company
- Bahrain Shareholding Company (Closed)
- Partnership Company
- Simple Commandite Company
- Commandite By Shares Company
- Non Profit Company

Required Step of Licenses and Approvals

Ministry / Directorate	License / Approval Requirements	Approval Type
Directorate of Publication and Press	Motion picture, video and television programme activities	Notification Only
Municipality Affairs	Site Approval for Information and Communication Activities	Post

Directorate of Publication and Press (Notification Only) (591)

Approval Name	Description	Estimated Time
Motion picture, video and television programme activities	Motion picture, video and television programme activities	5 Days

Fee Details (if any)

There is no Estimated Processing Time (Days) in this license.

License Information

All Business establishments of audio-visual, print and electronic media in the Kingdom of Bahrain must be comply with the law regulating the press, printing and publishing and other relevant laws

Other Documents

•Resolution No. (1) of 2015 regarding standards for supervision and control of media contents

Municipality Affairs (Post) (591)

Approval Name	Description	Estimated Time
Site Approval for Information and Communication Activities	Municipality Approval for the Commercial Registration address or the site in which the Activity will be practiced	3 Days

Fee Details (if any)

10

License Information

General Conditions:
1. Size of shop/premises must be sufficient for the activity
2. Businesses may not carry out the activity outside the boundaries of the shop/ premises
3. It is prohibited to display or store any items or equipment outside the shop / premises boundary without prior approval from the Municipality. In the event of non-compliance, the Ministry of Municipality Affairs has the right to take necessary action.
4. Maintain cleanliness of the site
5. Comply with the parking space regulations as per the Construction Regulatory Requirements

Activity Specific Conditions:
1. The Commercial Registration for this activity can be registered on commercial, service, and industrial streets.
2. The commercial address of the Commercial Registration for this activity can an office address provided that the site is used for administrative purposes and is not located in a residential area

Note: Uploading pictures of the site/shop may expedite the process of obtaining approval

Required Documents

- Lease agreement (after obtaining the necessary approvals from other licensing entities)
- Shop photos

Other Documents

- Cabinet's Decision (56) of the year 2022 regarding the Regulatory Requirements of Construction for various areas in the Kingdom of Bahrain

Information and communication

ISIC4	Business activity
5914	Motion picture projection activities

Description

This activity includes motion picture or videotape projection in cinemas, in the open air or in other projection facilities.
Also includes activities of cine-clubs.

Business Requirements

Age

18 and above

Allowed for Nationalities

Bahraini 100%	GCC 100%
American 100%	Singaporean 100%
Icelander 100%	Liechtenstein er 100%
Norwegian 100%	Swiss 100%

Foreign Allowed up to 100%

Legal Type

It is allowed to register according to the legal forms mentioned below

Allowed for Individual Commercial Registration (ICR) : Yes

Allowed for Company Commercial Registration (CCR) : Yes

- Bahrain Shareholding Company (Public)
- With Limited Liability Company
- Branch of a Foreign Company
- Bahrain Shareholding Company (Closed)
- Partnership Company
- Simple Commandite Company
- Commandite By Shares Company
- Non Profit Company

Required Step of Licenses and Approvals

Ministry / Directorate	License / Approval Requirements	Approval Type
Directorate of Publication and Press	Approval by Ministry of Information	Post
Municipality Affairs	Municipality Site Approval	Post

Directorate of Publication and Press (Post) (5914)

Approval Name	Description	Estimated Time
Approval by Ministry of Information	It is not actual license. You should select proper license to proceed.	5 Days

Fee Details (if any)

There is no Estimated Processing Time (Days) in this license.

License Information

All business establishments producing audio-visual, print and electronic media in the Kingdom of Bahrain must comply with the law regulating the press, printing and publishing and other relevant laws

Other Documents

•LAW NO. (17) OF 2010
•LAW NO. (24) OF 2004 WITH RESPECT TO THE TREATMENT OF THE NATIONALS OF THE GULF COOPERATION COUNCIL STATES REGARDING THE ECONOMIC ACTIVITY IN THE KINGDOM OF BAHRAIN
•Resolution No. (1) of 2015 regarding standards for supervision and control of media contents

Municipality Affairs (Post) (5914)

Approval Name	Description	Estimated Time
Municipality Site Approval	Municipality approval of the business location (site) is required for all types of business activities. Municipalities verify that the proposed location / zone are appropriate for the proposed business activity. Site approval is issued automatically for pre-approved commercial areas, such as commercial malls and commercial buildings.	15 Days

Fee Details (if any)

Company application registration form
1. Copy of applicant's CPR card (passport for non-Bahrainis)
2. Two copies of property deed or rental agreement
3. If application is for relocation from one area to another, certificate of relocation by previous Municipality
4. Copy of electricity bill or electricity account number for new premises
5. Copy of sale agreement, if CR is purchased from another person
6. Copy of power of attorney, if required

License Information

There is no License Information in this license.

Required Documents

- Lease agreement (after obtaining the necessary approvals from other licensing entities)
- Photos of the premises

Other Documents

- قرار رقم (56) لسنة 2022 بإصدار الاشتراطات التنظيمية للتعمير بمختلف المناطق في المملكة

Information and communication

ISIC4	Business activity
592	Sound recording and music publishing activities

Description

This activity includes:

- production of original (sound) master recordings, such as tapes, CDs

- sound recording service activities in a studio or elsewhere, including the production of taped (i.e. non-live) radio programming, audio for film, television etc.

- music publishing, i.e. activities of:

· acquiring and registering copyrights for musical compositions

· promoting, authorizing and using these compositions in recordings, radio, television, motion pictures, live performances, print and other media

· distributing sound recordings to wholesalers, retailers.

Units engaged in these activities may own the copyright or act as administrator of the music copyrights on behalf of the copyright owners.

- publishing of music and sheet books

Business Requirements

Age

18 and above

Allowed for Nationalities

Bahraini 100%	GCC 100%
American 100%	Singaporean 100%
Icelander 100%	Liechtenstein er 100%
Norwegian 100%	Swiss 100%

Foreign Allowed up to 100%

Legal Type

It is allowed to register according to the legal forms mentioned below

Allowed for Individual Commercial Registration (ICR) : Yes

Allowed for Company Commercial Registration (CCR) : Yes

Allowed for Sijilli : Yes

- Bahrain Shareholding Company (Public)
- With Limited Liability Company
- Branch of a Foreign Company
- Bahrain Shareholding Company (Closed)
- Partnership Company
- Simple Commandite Company
- Commandite By Shares Company
- Non Profit Company

Required Step of Licenses and Approvals

Ministry / Directorate	License / Approval Requirements	Approval Type
Directorate of Publication and Press	Sound recording and music publishing activities	Notification Only
Municipality Affairs	Site Approval for Information and Communication Activities	Post

Directorate of Publication and Press (Notification Only) (592)

Approval Name	Description	Estimated Time
Sound recording and music publishing activities	Sound recording and music publishing activities	5 Days

Fee Details (if any)

There is no Estimated Processing Time (Days) in this license.

License Information

All Business establishments of audio-visual, print and electronic media in the Kingdom of Bahrain must be comply with the law regulating the press, printing and publishing and other relevant laws

Other Documents

- قرار نائب رئيس الهيئة العليا للإعلام والاتصال رقم (1) لسنة 2015 بشأن معايير الإشراف والرقابة على المحتوى الإعلامي

Municipality Affairs (Post) (592)

Approval Name	Description	Estimated Time
Site Approval for Information and Communication Activities	Municipality Approval for the Commercial Registration address or the site in which the Activity will be practiced	3 Days

Fee Details (if any)

10

License Information

General Conditions:
1. Size of shop/premises must be sufficient for the activity
2. Businesses may not carry out the activity outside the boundaries of the shop/ premises
3. It is prohibited to display or store any items or equipment outside the shop / premises boundary without prior approval from the Municipality. In the event of non-compliance, the Ministry of Municipality Affairs has the right to take necessary action.
4. Maintain cleanliness of the site
5. Comply with the parking space regulations as per the Construction Regulatory Requirements

Activity Specific Conditions:
1. The Commercial Registration for this activity can be registered on commercial, service, and industrial streets.
2. The commercial address of the Commercial Registration for this activity can an office address provided that the site is used for administrative purposes and is not located in a residential area

Note: Uploading pictures of the site/shop may expedite the process of obtaining approval

Required Documents

- Lease agreement (after obtaining the necessary approvals from other licensing entities)
- Shop photos

Other Documents

- Cabinet's Decision (56) of the year 2022 regarding the Regulatory Requirements of Construction for various areas in the Kingdom of Bahrain

Information and communication

ISIC4	Business activity
601	Radio broadcasting

Description

This activity includes:
- Broadcasting audio signals through radio broadcasting studios and facilities for the transmission of aural programming to the public, to affiliates or to subscribers

This activity also includes:
- Activities of radio networks, i.e. assembling and transmitting aural programming to the affiliates or subscribers via over-the-air broadcasts, cable or satellite
- Radio broadcasting activities over the Internet (Internet radio stations)
- Data broadcasting integrated with radio broadcasting

Business Requirements

✔ Age

18 and above

✔ Allowed for Nationalities

Bahraini 100%		GCC 100%	
American 100%		Singaporean 100%	
Icelander 100%		Liechtenstein er 100%	
Norwegian 100%		Swiss 100%	

Foreign Allowed up to 100%

Legal Type

It is allowed to register according to the legal forms mentioned below

Allowed for Individual Commercial Registration (ICR) : Yes

Allowed for Company Commercial Registration (CCR) : Yes

- Bahrain Shareholding Company (Public)
- With Limited Liability Company
- Branch of a Foreign Company
- Bahrain Shareholding Company (Closed)
- Partnership Company
- Simple Commandite Company
- Commandite By Shares Company
- Non Profit Company

Required Step of Licenses and Approvals

Ministry / Directorate	License / Approval Requirements	Approval Type
Directorate of Publication and Press	Radio and television broadcasting	Pre
Municipality Affairs	Site Approval for Information and Communication Activities	Post
Directorate of Publication and Press	Radio and television broadcasting	Final Site Inspection

Directorate of Publication and Press (Pre) (601)

Approval Name	Description	Estimated Time
Radio and television broadcasting	The approval is required if the investor intends to perform radio and television broadcasting in Bahrain	5 Days

Fee Details (if any)

There is no Estimated Processing Time (Days) in this license.

License Information

All business establishments producing audio-visual, print and electronic media in the Kingdom of Bahrain must comply with the law regulating the press, printing and publishing and other relevant laws

Other Documents

•Resolution No. (1) of 2015 regarding standards for supervision and control of media contents

Municipality Affairs (Post) (601)

Approval Name	Description	Estimated Time
Site Approval for Information and Communication Activities	Municipality Approval for the Commercial Registration address or the site in which the Activity will be practiced	3 Days

Fee Details (if any)

10

License Information

General Conditions:
1. Size of shop/premises must be sufficient for the activity
2. Businesses may not carry out the activity outside the boundaries of the shop/ premises
3. It is prohibited to display or store any items or equipment outside the shop / premises boundary without prior approval from the Municipality. In the event of non-compliance, the Ministry of Municipality Affairs has the right to take necessary action.
4. Maintain cleanliness of the site
5. Comply with the parking space regulations as per the Construction Regulatory Requirements

Activity Specific Conditions:
1. The Commercial Registration for this activity can be registered on commercial, service, and industrial streets.
2. The commercial address of the Commercial Registration for this activity can an office address provided that the site is used for administrative purposes and is not located in a residential area

Note: Uploading pictures of the site/shop may expedite the process of obtaining approval

Required Documents

- Lease agreement (after obtaining the necessary approvals from other licensing entities)
- Shop photos

Other Documents

- Cabinet's Decision (56) of the year 2022 regarding the Regulatory Requirements of Construction for various areas in the Kingdom of Bahrain

Directorate of Publication and Press (Final Site Inspection) (601)

Approval Name	Description	Estimated Time
Radio and television broadcasting	The approval is required if the investor intends to perform radio and television broadcasting in Bahrain	5 Days

Fee Details (if any)

There is no Estimated Processing Time (Days) in this license.

License Information

All business establishments producing audio-visual, print and electronic media in the Kingdom of Bahrain must comply with the law regulating the press, printing and publishing and other relevant laws

Other Documents

•Resolution No. (1) of 2015 regarding standards for supervision and control of media contents

Information and communication

ISIC4	Business activity
602	Television programming and broadcasting activities

Description

This activity includes:
- Creation of a complete television channel programme, from purchased programme components (e.g. movies, documentaries etc.), self-produced programme components (e.g. local news, live reports) or a combination thereof.
This complete television programme can be either broadcast by the producing unit or produced for transmission by third party distributors, such as cable companies or satellite television providers.
The programming may be of a general or specialized nature (e.g. limited formats such as news, sports, education or youth oriented programming), may be made freely available to users or may be available only on a subscription basis.

This activity also includes:
- Programming of video-on-demand channels
- Data broadcasting integrated with television broadcasting

This activity excludes:
- Installation of ordinary satellite dishes, see 4321

Business Requirements

Age

18 and above

Allowed for Nationalities

Bahraini 100%		GCC 100%	
American 100%		Singaporean 100%	
Icelander 100%		Liechtenstein er 100%	
Norwegian 100%		Swiss 100%	

Foreign Allowed up to 100%

Legal Type

It is allowed to register according to the legal forms mentioned below

Allowed for Individual Commercial Registration (ICR) : Yes

Allowed for Company Commercial Registration (CCR) : Yes

- Bahrain Shareholding Company (Public)
- With Limited Liability Company
- Branch of a Foreign Company
- Bahrain Shareholding Company (Closed)
- Partnership Company
- Simple Commandite Company
- Commandite By Shares Company
- Non Profit Company

Required Step of Licenses and Approvals

Ministry / Directorate	License / Approval Requirements	Approval Type
Directorate of Publication and Press	Radio and television broadcasting	Pre

Municipality Affairs	Site Approval for Information and Communication Activities	Post
Directorate of Publication and Press	Radio and television broadcasting	Final Site Inspection

Directorate of Publication and Press (Pre) (602)

Approval Name	Description	Estimated Time
Radio and television broadcasting	The approval is required if the investor intends to perform radio and television broadcasting in Bahrain	5 Days

Fee Details (if any)

There is no Estimated Processing Time (Days) in this license.

License Information

All business establishments producing audio-visual, print and electronic media in the Kingdom of Bahrain must comply with the law regulating the press, printing and publishing and other relevant laws

Other Documents

•Resolution No. (1) of 2015 regarding standards for supervision and control of media contents

Municipality Affairs (Post) (602)

Approval Name	Description	Estimated Time
Site Approval for Information and Communication Activities	Municipality Approval for the Commercial Registration address or the site in which the Activity will be practiced	3 Days

Fee Details (if any)

10

License Information

General Conditions:
1. Size of shop/premises must be sufficient for the activity
2. Businesses may not carry out the activity outside the boundaries of the shop/ premises
3. It is prohibited to display or store any items or equipment outside the shop / premises boundary without prior approval from the Municipality. In the event of non-compliance, the Ministry of Municipality Affairs has the right to take necessary action.
4. Maintain cleanliness of the site
5. Comply with the parking space regulations as per the Construction Regulatory Requirements

Activity Specific Conditions:
1. The Commercial Registration for this activity can be registered on commercial, service, and industrial streets.
2. The commercial address of the Commercial Registration for this activity can an office address provided that the site is used for administrative purposes and is not located in a residential area

Note: Uploading pictures of the site/shop may expedite the process of obtaining approval

Required Documents

- Lease agreement (after obtaining the necessary approvals from other licensing entities)
- Shop photos

Other Documents

- Cabinet's Decision (56) of the year 2022 regarding the Regulatory Requirements of Construction for various areas in the Kingdom of Bahrain

Directorate of Publication and Press (Final Site Inspection) (602)

Approval Name	Description	Estimated Time
Radio and television broadcasting	The approval is required if the investor intends to perform radio and television broadcasting in Bahrain	5 Days

Fee Details (if any)

There is no Estimated Processing Time (Days) in this license.

License Information

All business establishments producing audio-visual, print and electronic media in the Kingdom of Bahrain must comply with the law regulating the press, printing and publishing and other relevant laws

Other Documents

•Resolution No. (1) of 2015 regarding standards for supervision and control of media contents

Information and communication

ISIC4	Business activity
61-1	Telecommunication Activities - Individual License for internet exchange

Description

The licensee is authorized on a non-exclusive basis to establish, operate, manage and maintain an internet exchange in the licensed area. The licensee is not authorized under this license to offer any Public Voice Services or to actively facilitate the use of its telecommunications facilities by a third party for the offer of such a service. Appropriate licenses must be obtained prior to the offering of such services

Business Requirements

Age

18 and above

Allowed for Nationalities

Bahraini 100%	GCC 100%
American 100%	Singaporean 100%
Icelander 100%	Liechtenstein er 100%
Norwegian 100%	Swiss 100%

Foreign Allowed up to 100%

Legal Type

It is allowed to register according to the legal forms mentioned below

Allowed for Individual Commercial Registration (ICR) : Yes

Allowed for Company Commercial Registration (CCR) : Yes

- Bahrain Shareholding Company (Public)
- With Limited Liability Company
- Branch of a Foreign Company
- Bahrain Shareholding Company (Closed)
- Partnership Company
- Simple Commandite Company
- Commandite By Shares Company
- Non Profit Company

Required Step of Licenses and Approvals

Ministry / Directorate	License / Approval Requirements	Approval Type
Telecommunications Regulatory Authority	Individual License for internet exchange	Pre
General Directorate Of Criminal Investigation	Approval by General Directorate of Criminal Investigation	Pre
Municipality Affairs	Site Approval for Information and Communication Activities	Post
Telecommunications Regulatory Authority	Individual License for internet exchange	Final Site Inspection

Telecommunications Regulatory Authority (Pre) (61-1)

Approval Name	Description	Estimated Time
Individual License for internet exchange	Individual License for internet exchange	10 Days

Fee Details (if any)

License Application Fee 500 BD.
License Fee 5000 BD
1% of gross annual turnover attributed to licensed activity.

The duration of the license is 15 years once granted and 10 years once renewed.

License Information

A business plan must be submitted covering the following:
Description of infrastructure and personnel associated with the provision of telecommunications services
List of Type of Technology to be used
Description of technical standards
Network infrastructure, design and operations, including block diagrams
Access to network infrastructure of other operators (eg. Leased Line).
Plans to roll out own network
List of areas to be covered, if applicable (whole of Bahrain, or part of)
Quality of service (implementations & operation services, performance)
Service availability by end users (how customers would be able to access your proposed service)
Description of technical competence
Description of resources, skills and expertise in the field of the subject matter of the application.
Evidence that the applicant can serve the interests of Subscribers and Users and promote competition among other Licensed Operators.
Description of proposed wholesale and retail services (including price and non-price items)
Revenue and cost projections in details (at least 2 years/month by month) - to be provided in non-locked Excel format

Funding requirements and source of funds
Evidence of financial stability
Customer services (availability of call centers etc.)
Submission of lawful access implementation plan as per article 5 of resolution No. (8) of 2009 and Article 78 of the Telecommunications Law.

Please refer to the Telecom Law and regulation by clicking on the links below:
Telecom Law:http://www.tra.org.bh/en/legal-instruments/telecommunications-law/
Regulations:http://www.tra.org.bh/en/legal-instruments/regulations/

Required Documents

- Business plan
- License application for internet exchange

Other Documents

- General Note to Applicants1 - Internet exchange
- Generic License Form - Internet exchange

General Directorate Of Criminal Investigation (Pre) (61-1)

Approval Name	Description	Estimated Time
Approval by General Directorate of Criminal Investigation	General Directorate of Criminal Investigation Approval for the Activity	7 Days

Fee Details (if any)

There is no Estimated Processing Time (Days) in this license.

License Information

- The applicant should not have a criminal record, unless they have been rehabilitated in criminal cases

Municipality Affairs (Post) (61-1)

Approval Name	Description	Estimated Time
Site Approval for Information and Communication Activities	Municipality Approval for the Commercial Registration address or the site in which the Activity will be practiced	3 Days

Fee Details (if any)

10

License Information

General Conditions:
1. Size of shop/premises must be sufficient for the activity
2. Businesses may not carry out the activity outside the boundaries of the shop/ premises
3. It is prohibited to display or store any items or equipment outside the shop / premises boundary without prior approval from the Municipality. In the event of non-compliance, the Ministry of Municipality Affairs has the right to take necessary action.
4. Maintain cleanliness of the site
5. Comply with the parking space regulations as per the Construction Regulatory Requirements

Activity Specific Conditions:
1. The Commercial Registration for this activity can be registered on commercial, service, and industrial streets.
2. The commercial address of the Commercial Registration for this activity can an office address provided that the site is used for administrative purposes and is not located in a residential area

Note: Uploading pictures of the site/shop may expedite the process of obtaining approval

Required Documents

- Lease agreement (after obtaining the necessary approvals from other licensing entities)
- Shop photos

Other Documents

- Cabinet's Decision (56) of the year 2022 regarding the Regulatory Requirements of Construction for various areas in the Kingdom of Bahrain

Telecommunications Regulatory Authority (Final Site Inspection) (61-1)

Approval Name	Description	Estimated Time
Individual License for internet exchange	Individual License for internet exchange	10 Days

Fee Details (if any)

License Application Fee 500 BD.
License Fee 5000 BD
1% of gross annual turnover attributed to licensed activity.

The duration of the license is 15 years once granted and 10 years once renewed.

License Information

A business plan must be submitted covering the following:
Description of infrastructure and personnel associated with the provision of telecommunications services
List of Type of Technology to be used
Description of technical standards
Network infrastructure, design and operations, including block diagrams
Access to network infrastructure of other operators (eg. Leased Line).
Plans to roll out own network
List of areas to be covered, if applicable (whole of Bahrain, or part of)
Quality of service (implementations & operation services, performance)
Service availability by end users (how customers would be able to access your proposed service)
Description of technical competence
Description of resources, skills and expertise in the field of the subject matter of the application.
Evidence that the applicant can serve the interests of Subscribers and Users and promote competition among other Licensed Operators.
Description of proposed wholesale and retail services (including price and non-price items)

Revenue and cost projections in details (at least 2 years/month by month) - to be provided in non-locked Excel format
Funding requirements and source of funds
Evidence of financial stability
Customer services (availability of call centers etc.)
Submission of lawful access implementation plan as per article 5 of resolution No. (8) of 2009 and Article 78 of the Telecommunications Law.

Please refer to the Telecom Law and regulation by clicking on the links below:
Telecom Law:http://www.tra.org.bh/en/legal-instruments/telecommunications-law/
Regulations:http://www.tra.org.bh/en/legal-instruments/regulations/

Required Documents

- Business plan
- License application for internet exchange

Other Documents

- General Note to Applicants1 - Internet exchange
- Generic License Form - Internet exchange

Information and communication

ISIC4	Business activity
61-10	Telecommunication Activities - Individual license for public access mobile radio services

Description

The licensee is authorised on a non-exclusive basis to provide public access mobile radio services in the licensed area. Nothing in the preceding sentence shall authorise the licensee to provide any telecommunications service that would require a mobile telecommunications license.

Business Requirements

Age

18 and above

Allowed for Nationalities

Bahraini 100%	GCC 100%
American 100%	Singaporean 100%
Icelander 100%	Liechtenstein er 100%
Norwegian 100%	Swiss 100%

Foreign Allowed up to 100%

Legal Type

It is allowed to register according to the legal forms mentioned below

Allowed for Individual Commercial Registration (ICR) : Yes

Allowed for Company Commercial Registration (CCR) : Yes

- Bahrain Shareholding Company (Public)
- With Limited Liability Company
- Branch of a Foreign Company
- Bahrain Shareholding Company (Closed)
- Partnership Company
- Simple Commandite Company
- Commandite By Shares Company
- Non Profit Company

Required Step of Licenses and Approvals

Ministry / Directorate	License / Approval Requirements	Approval Type
General Directorate Of Criminal Investigation	Approval by General Directorate of Criminal Investigation	Pre
Telecommunications Regulatory Authority	Individual license for public access mobile radio services	Pre
Municipality Affairs	Site Approval for Information and Communication Activities	Post
Telecommunications Regulatory Authority	Individual license for public access mobile radio services	Final Site Inspection

General Directorate Of Criminal Investigation (Pre) (61-10)

Approval Name	Description	Estimated Time
Approval by General Directorate of Criminal Investigation	General Directorate of Criminal Investigation Approval for the Activity	7 Days

Fee Details (if any)

There is no Estimated Processing Time (Days) in this license.

License Information

- The applicant should not have a criminal record, unless they have been rehabilitated in criminal cases

Telecommunications Regulatory Authority (Pre) (61-10)

Approval Name	Description	Estimated Time
Individual license for public access mobile radio services	The licensee is authorised on a non-exclusive basis to provide public access mobile radio services in the licensed area. Nothing in the preceding sentence shall authorise the licensee to provide any telecommunications service that would require a mobile telecommunications license.	10 Days

Fee Details (if any)

License Application Fee 500 BD.
License Fee 5,000 BD.
1% of gross annual turnover attributed to licensed activity.

License Information

A business plan must be submitted covering the following:
Description of infrastructure and personnel associated with the provision of telecommunications services
List of Type of Technology to be used
Description of technical standards
Network infrastructure, design and operations, including block diagrams
Access to network infrastructure of other operators (eg. Leased Line).
Plans to roll out own network
List of areas to be covered, if applicable (whole of Bahrain, or part of)

Quality of service (implementations & operation services, performance)
Service availability by end users (how customers would be able to access your proposed service)
Description of technical competence
Description of resources, skills and expertise in the field of the subject matter of the application.
Evidence that the applicant can serve the interests of subscribers and users and promote competition among other licensed operators.
Description of proposed wholesale and retail services (including price and non-price items)
Revenue and cost projections in details (at least 2 years/month by month) - to be provided in non-locked Excel format
Funding requirements and source of funds
Evidence of financial stability
Customer services (availability of call centers etc.)
Submission of lawful access implementation plan as per article 5 of resolution No. (8) of 2009 and Article 78 of the Telecommunications Law.

Please refer to the Telecom Law and regulation by clicking on the links below:
Telecom Law:http://www.tra.org.bh/en/legal-instruments/telecommunications-law/
Regulations:http://www.tra.org.bh/en/legal-instruments/regulations/

Required Documents

- Business plan

Other Documents

- Generic License Form - Public access mobile radio services
- Individual license for public access mobile radio services - General Note to Applicants1

Municipality Affairs (Post) (61-10)

Approval Name	Description	Estimated Time
Site Approval for Information and Communication Activities	Municipality Approval for the Commercial Registration address or the site in which the Activity will be practiced	3 Days

Fee Details (if any)

10

License Information

General Conditions:
1. Size of shop/premises must be sufficient for the activity
2. Businesses may not carry out the activity outside the boundaries of the shop/ premises
3. It is prohibited to display or store any items or equipment outside the shop / premises boundary without prior approval from the Municipality. In the event of non-compliance, the Ministry of Municipality Affairs has the right to take necessary action.
4. Maintain cleanliness of the site
5. Comply with the parking space regulations as per the Construction Regulatory Requirements

Activity Specific Conditions:
1. The Commercial Registration for this activity can be registered on commercial, service, and industrial streets.
2. The commercial address of the Commercial Registration for this activity can an office address provided that the site is used for administrative purposes and is not located in a residential area

Note: Uploading pictures of the site/shop may expedite the process of obtaining approval

Required Documents

- Lease agreement (after obtaining the necessary approvals from other licensing entities)
- Shop photos

Other Documents

- Cabinet's Decision (56) of the year 2022 regarding the Regulatory Requirements of Construction for various areas in the Kingdom of Bahrain

Telecommunications Regulatory Authority (Final Site Inspection) (61-10)

Approval Name	Description	Estimated Time
Individual license for public access mobile radio services	The licensee is authorised on a non-exclusive basis to provide public access mobile radio services in the licensed area. Nothing in the preceding sentence shall authorise the licensee to provide any telecommunications service that would require a mobile telecommunications license.	10 Days

Fee Details (if any)

License Application Fee 500 BD.
License Fee 5,000 BD.
1% of gross annual turnover attributed to licensed activity.

License Information

A business plan must be submitted covering the following:
Description of infrastructure and personnel associated with the provision of telecommunications services
List of Type of Technology to be used
Description of technical standards
Network infrastructure, design and operations, including block diagrams
Access to network infrastructure of other operators (eg. Leased Line).

Plans to roll out own network
List of areas to be covered, if applicable (whole of Bahrain, or part of)
Quality of service (implementations & operation services, performance)
Service availability by end users (how customers would be able to access your proposed service)
Description of technical competence
Description of resources, skills and expertise in the field of the subject matter of the application.
Evidence that the applicant can serve the interests of subscribers and users and promote competition among other licensed operators.
Description of proposed wholesale and retail services (including price and non-price items)
Revenue and cost projections in details (at least 2 years/month by month) - to be provided in non-locked Excel format
Funding requirements and source of funds
Evidence of financial stability
Customer services (availability of call centers etc.)
Submission of lawful access implementation plan as per article 5 of resolution No. (8) of 2009 and Article 78 of the Telecommunications Law.

Please refer to the Telecom Law and regulation by clicking on the links below:
Telecom Law:http://www.tra.org.bh/en/legal-instruments/telecommunications-law/
Regulations:http://www.tra.org.bh/en/legal-instruments/regulations/

Required Documents

•Business plan

Other Documents

•Generic License Form - Public access mobile radio services
•Individual license for public access mobile radio services - General Note to Applicants1

Information and communication

ISIC4	Business activity
61-11	Telecommunication Activities - Individual License for Earth Station Services

Description

Earth Station services means the uplink and downlink of communications between satellites and Earth Stations.
Earth Station is a fixed station located on the earth's surface and intended and used for communication with one or more satellites.
The licensee is authorized to install, maintain, operate, manage, and use Earth Stations in the licensed area.
The licensee is authorized to provide Earth Station services on a non-exclusive basis.

Business Requirements

Age

18 and above

Allowed for Nationalities

Bahraini 100%	GCC 100%
American 100%	Singaporean 100%
Icelander 100%	Liechtenstein er 100%
Norwegian 100%	Swiss 100%

Foreign Allowed up to 100%

Legal Type

It is allowed to register according to the legal forms mentioned below

Allowed for Individual Commercial Registration (ICR) : Yes

Allowed for Company Commercial Registration (CCR) : Yes

- Bahrain Shareholding Company (Public)
- With Limited Liability Company
- Branch of a Foreign Company
- Bahrain Shareholding Company (Closed)
- Partnership Company
- Simple Commandite Company
- Commandite By Shares Company
- Non Profit Company

Required Step of Licenses and Approvals

Ministry / Directorate	License / Approval Requirements	Approval Type
Telecommunications Regulatory Authority	TRA's approval for Individual License for Earth Station Services	Pre
General Directorate Of Criminal Investigation	Approval by General Directorate of Criminal Investigation	Pre
Municipality Affairs	Site Approval for Information and Communication Activities	Post
Telecommunications Regulatory Authority	TRA's approval for Individual License for Earth Station Services	Final Site Inspection

Telecommunications Regulatory Authority (Pre) (61-11)

Approval Name	Description	Estimated Time
TRA's approval for Individual License for Earth Station Services	TRA's approval for Individual License for Earth Station Services	10 Days

Fee Details (if any)

License Application Fee 500 BD.
License Fee 5,000 BD.
1% of gross annual turnover attributed to licensed activity.

License Information

1- Evidence shows License Applicant is a juristic entity incorporated in the Kingdom, or a branch of a foreign company licensed to operate in the Kingdom in accordance with the Commercial Companies Law.
2- Evidence shows License Applicant has the required level of infrastructure and personnel associated with the provision of telecommunications services within the Kingdom..
3- Copies of CR and CPRs of owners are produced.
4- Type of Technology to be used.
5- Technical Standards
6- Network infrastructure, design and operations, including block diagrams
7- Access to network infrastructure of other operators (eg. Leased Line).
8- Plans to roll out own network
9- Areas to be covered, if applicable (whole of Bahrain, or part of)
10- Quality of Service (implementations & operation services, performance)
11- Service availability by end users (how customers would be able to access your proposed service).
12- Evidence of technical competence.
13- Evidence of sufficient resources, skills and expertise in the field of the subject matter of the application.
14- Evidence that the applicant can meet the criteria for the license for which they have applied, as periodically determined and issued by the Authority.
15- Evidence that the applicant can serve the interests of subscribers and users and

promote competition among other licensed operators.
16- Description of proposed wholesale and retail services (including price and non-price items).
17- Revenue and Cost projections in details (at least 2 years/month by month) - to be provided in non-locked Excel format.
18- Funding Requirements and source of funds.
19- Evidence of financial stability
20- Customer Services (availability of call centers etc.)
21- Submission of lawful access implementation plan as per article 5 of resolution No. (8) of 2009 and Article 78 ofthe Telecommunications Law.
22- License Application submitted to TRA - Kingdom of Bahrain

General Directorate Of Criminal Investigation (Pre) (61-11)

Approval Name	Description	Estimated Time
Approval by General Directorate of Criminal Investigation	General Directorate of Criminal Investigation Approval for the Activity	7 Days

Fee Details (if any)

There is no Estimated Processing Time (Days) in this license.

License Information

- The applicant should not have a criminal record, unless they have been rehabilitated in criminal cases

Municipality Affairs (Post) (61-11)

Approval Name	Description	Estimated Time
Site Approval for Information and Communication Activities	Municipality Approval for the Commercial Registration address or the site in which the Activity will be practiced	3 Days

Fee Details (if any)

10

License Information

General Conditions:
1. Size of shop/premises must be sufficient for the activity
2. Businesses may not carry out the activity outside the boundaries of the shop/ premises
3. It is prohibited to display or store any items or equipment outside the shop / premises boundary without prior approval from the Municipality. In the event of non-compliance, the Ministry of Municipality Affairs has the right to take necessary action.
4. Maintain cleanliness of the site
5. Comply with the parking space regulations as per the Construction Regulatory Requirements

Activity Specific Conditions:
1. The Commercial Registration for this activity can be registered on commercial, service, and industrial streets.
2. The commercial address of the Commercial Registration for this activity can an office address provided that the site is used for administrative purposes and is not located in a residential area

Note: Uploading pictures of the site/shop may expedite the process of obtaining approval

Required Documents

- Lease agreement (after obtaining the necessary approvals from other licensing entities)
- Shop photos

Other Documents

- Cabinet's Decision (56) of the year 2022 regarding the Regulatory Requirements of Construction for various areas in the Kingdom of Bahrain

Telecommunications Regulatory Authority (Final Site Inspection) (61-11)

Approval Name	Description	Estimated Time
TRA's approval for Individual License for Earth Station Services	TRA's approval for Individual License for Earth Station Services	10 Days

Fee Details (if any)

License Application Fee 500 BD.
License Fee 5,000 BD.
1% of gross annual turnover attributed to licensed activity.

License Information

1- Evidence shows License Applicant is a juristic entity incorporated in the Kingdom, or a branch of a foreign company licensed to operate in the Kingdom in accordance with the Commercial Companies Law.
2- Evidence shows License Applicant has the required level of infrastructure and personnel associated with the provision of telecommunications services within the Kingdom..
3- Copies of CR and CPRs of owners are produced.
4- Type of Technology to be used.
5- Technical Standards
6- Network infrastructure, design and operations, including block diagrams
7- Access to network infrastructure of other operators (eg. Leased Line).
8- Plans to roll out own network
9- Areas to be covered, if applicable (whole of Bahrain, or part of)
10- Quality of Service (implementations & operation services, performance)
11- Service availability by end users (how customers would be able to access your proposed service).
12- Evidence of technical competence.
13- Evidence of sufficient resources, skills and expertise in the field of the subject matter of the application.
14- Evidence that the applicant can meet the criteria for the license for which they have

applied, as periodically determined and issued by the Authority.
15- Evidence that the applicant can serve the interests of subscribers and users and promote competition among other licensed operators.
16- Description of proposed wholesale and retail services (including price and non-price items).
17- Revenue and Cost projections in details (at least 2 years/month by month) - to be provided in non-locked Excel format.
18- Funding Requirements and source of funds.
19- Evidence of financial stability
20- Customer Services (availability of call centers etc.)
21- Submission of lawful access implementation plan as per article 5 of resolution No. (8) of 2009 and Article 78 ofthe Telecommunications Law.
22- License Application submitted to TRA - Kingdom of Bahrain

Information and communication

ISIC4	Business activity
61-12	Telecommunication Activities - Individual license for national wireless services

Description

the Licensee is authoraized, on non exclusive basis, to provide by means of national fixed wireless network the following services in the licensed area:
1- national fixed telecommunciations services
2- nomadic wireless services
3- telegraph service; and
4- telex services

The licensee is authorised to connect its international telecommunications facilities to:
(a) any telecommunications network operated under a telecommunications license; and
(b) any telecommunications equipment approved for connection in accordance with section 38 of the Telecommunications Law and any regulations issued pursuant to the Telecommunications Law.

Business Requirements

Age

18 and above

Allowed for Nationalities

Bahraini 100%		GCC 100%	
American 100%		Singaporean 100%	
Icelander 100%		Liechtenstein er 100%	
Norwegian 100%		Swiss 100%	

Foreign Allowed up to 100%

Legal Type

It is allowed to register according to the legal forms mentioned below

Allowed for Individual Commercial Registration (ICR) : Yes

Allowed for Company Commercial Registration (CCR) : Yes

- Bahrain Shareholding Company (Public)
- With Limited Liability Company
- Branch of a Foreign Company
- Bahrain Shareholding Company (Closed)
- Partnership Company
- Simple Commandite Company
- Commandite By Shares Company
- Non Profit Company

Required Step of Licenses and Approvals

Ministry / Directorate	License / Approval Requirements	Approval Type
General Directorate Of Criminal Investigation	Approval by General Directorate of Criminal	Pre

	Investigation	
Telecommunications Regulatory Authority	Individual license for national fixed wireless services	Pre
Municipality Affairs	Site Approval for Information and Communication Activities	Post
Telecommunications Regulatory Authority	Individual license for national fixed wireless services	Final Site Inspection

General Directorate Of Criminal Investigation (Pre) (61-12)

Approval Name	Description	Estimated Time
Approval by General Directorate of Criminal Investigation	General Directorate of Criminal Investigation Approval for the Activity	7 Days

Fee Details (if any)

There is no Estimated Processing Time (Days) in this license.

License Information

- The applicant should not have a criminal record, unless they have been rehabilitated in criminal cases

Telecommunications Regulatory Authority (Pre) (61-12)

Approval Name	Description	Estimated Time
Individual license for national fixed wireless services	the Licensee is authoraized, on non exclusive basis, to provide by means of national fixed wireless network the following services in the licensed area: 1- national fixed telecommunciations services 2- nomadic wireless services 3- telegraph service; and 4- telex services The licensee is authorised to connect its international telecommunications facilities to: (a) any telecommunications network operated under a telecommunications license; and (b) any telecommunications equipment approved for connection in accordance with section 38 of the Telecommunications Law and any regulations issued pursuant to the Telecommunications Law.	10 Days

Fee Details (if any)

There is no Estimated Processing Time (Days) in this license.

License Information

A business plan must be submitted covering the following:
Description of infrastructure and personnel associated with the provision of telecommunications services
List of Type of Technology to be used
Description of technical standards
Network infrastructure, design and operations, including block diagrams
Access to network infrastructure of other operators (eg. Leased Line).
Plans to roll out own network
List of areas to be covered, if applicable (whole of Bahrain, or part of)
Quality of service (implementations & operation services, performance)
Service availability by end users (how customers would be able to access your proposed service)
Description of technical competence
Description of resources, skills and expertise in the field of the subject matter of the application.
Evidence that the applicant can serve the interests of subscribers and users and promote competition among other licensed operators.
Description of proposed wholesale and retail services (including price and non-price items)
Revenue and cost projections in details (at least 2 years/month by month) - to be provided in non-locked Excel format
Funding requirements and source of funds
Evidence of financial stability
Customer services (availability of call centers etc.)
Submission of lawful access implementation plan as per article 5 of resolution No. (8) of 2009 and Article 78 of the Telecommunications Law.

Please refer to the Telecom Law and regulation by clicking on the links below:
Telecom Law:http://www.tra.org.bh/en/legal-instruments/telecommunications-law/
Regulations:http://www.tra.org.bh/en/legal-instruments/regulations/

Municipality Affairs (Post) (61-12)

Approval Name	Description	Estimated Time
Site Approval for Information and Communication Activities	Municipality Approval for the Commercial Registration address or the site in which the Activity will be practiced	3 Days

Fee Details (if any)

10

License Information

General Conditions:
1. Size of shop/premises must be sufficient for the activity
2. Businesses may not carry out the activity outside the boundaries of the shop/ premises
3. It is prohibited to display or store any items or equipment outside the shop / premises boundary without prior approval from the Municipality. In the event of non-compliance, the Ministry of Municipality Affairs has the right to take necessary action.
4. Maintain cleanliness of the site
5. Comply with the parking space regulations as per the Construction Regulatory Requirements

Activity Specific Conditions:
1. The Commercial Registration for this activity can be registered on commercial, service, and industrial streets.
2. The commercial address of the Commercial Registration for this activity can an office address provided that the site is used for administrative purposes and is not located in a residential area

Note: Uploading pictures of the site/shop may expedite the process of obtaining approval

Required Documents

- Lease agreement (after obtaining the necessary approvals from other licensing entities)
- Shop photos

Other Documents

- Cabinet's Decision (56) of the year 2022 regarding the Regulatory Requirements of Construction for various areas in the Kingdom of Bahrain

Telecommunications Regulatory Authority (Final Site Inspection) (61-12)

Approval Name	Description	Estimated Time
Individual license for national fixed wireless services	the Licensee is authoraized, on non exclusive basis, to provide by means of national fixed wireless network the following services in the licensed area: 1- national fixed telecommunciations services 2- nomadic wireless services 3- telegraph service; and 4- telex services The licensee is authorised to connect its international telecommunications facilities to: (a) any telecommunications network operated under a telecommunications license; and (b) any telecommunications equipment approved for connection in accordance with section 38 of the Telecommunications Law and any regulations issued pursuant to the Telecommunications Law.	10 Days

Fee Details (if any)

There is no Estimated Processing Time (Days) in this license.

License Information

A business plan must be submitted covering the following:
Description of infrastructure and personnel associated with the provision of telecommunications services
List of Type of Technology to be used
Description of technical standards
Network infrastructure, design and operations, including block diagrams
Access to network infrastructure of other operators (eg. Leased Line).
Plans to roll out own network
List of areas to be covered, if applicable (whole of Bahrain, or part of)
Quality of service (implementations & operation services, performance)
Service availability by end users (how customers would be able to access your proposed service)
Description of technical competence
Description of resources, skills and expertise in the field of the subject matter of the application.
Evidence that the applicant can serve the interests of subscribers and users and promote competition among other licensed operators.
Description of proposed wholesale and retail services (including price and non-price items)
Revenue and cost projections in details (at least 2 years/month by month) - to be provided in non-locked Excel format
Funding requirements and source of funds
Evidence of financial stability
Customer services (availability of call centers etc.)
Submission of lawful access implementation plan as per article 5 of resolution No. (8) of 2009 and Article 78 of the Telecommunications Law.

Please refer to the Telecom Law and regulation by clicking on the links below:
Telecom Law:http://www.tra.org.bh/en/legal-instruments/telecommunications-law/
Regulations:http://www.tra.org.bh/en/legal-instruments/regulations/

Information and communication

ISIC4	Business activity
61-13	Telecommunication Activities - Fixed Telecommunications Infrastructure Network License

Description

The licensee is authorized to deploy, operate and maintain a Fixed Telecommunications Infrastructure Network and to supply products and services to other Licensed Operators in the Kingdom over a Fixed Telecommunications Infrastructure Network on a wholesale only and on an equivalence of inputs basis

Business Requirements

Age

18 and above

Allowed for Nationalities

Bahraini 100%	GCC 100%
American 100%	Singaporean 100%
Icelander 100%	Liechtenstein er 100%
Norwegian 100%	Swiss 100%

Foreign Allowed up to 100%

Legal Type

It is allowed to register according to the legal forms mentioned below

Allowed for Individual Commercial Registration (ICR) : Yes

Allowed for Company Commercial Registration (CCR) : Yes

- Bahrain Shareholding Company (Public)
- With Limited Liability Company
- Branch of a Foreign Company
- Bahrain Shareholding Company (Closed)
- Partnership Company
- Simple Commandite Company
- Commandite By Shares Company
- Non Profit Company

Required Step of Licenses and Approvals

Ministry / Directorate	License / Approval Requirements	Approval Type
General Directorate Of Criminal Investigation	Approval by General Directorate of Criminal Investigation	Pre
Telecommunications Regulatory Authority	Telecommunication Activities - Individual License for Earth Station Services	Pre
Municipality Affairs	Site Approval for Information and Communication Activities	Post
Telecommunications Regulatory Authority	Telecommunication Activities - Individual License for Earth Station Services	Final Site Inspection

General Directorate Of Criminal Investigation (Pre) (61-13)

Approval Name	Description	Estimated Time
Approval by General Directorate of Criminal Investigation	General Directorate of Criminal Investigation Approval for the Activity	7 Days

Fee Details (if any)

There is no Estimated Processing Time (Days) in this license.

License Information

- The applicant should not have a criminal record, unless they have been rehabilitated in criminal cases

Telecommunications Regulatory Authority (Pre) (61-13)

Approval Name	Description	Estimated Time
Telecommunication Activities - Individual License for Earth Station Services	The licensee is authorized to deploy, operate and maintain a Fixed Telecommunications Infrastructure Network and to supply products and services to other Licensed Operators in the Kingdom over a Fixed Telecommunications Infrastructure Network on a wholesale only and on an equivalence of inputs basis	10 Days

Fee Details (if any)

License Application Fee 500 BD.
License Fee 35,000 BD.
1% of gross annual turnover attributed to licensed activity

License Information

A business plan must be submitted covering the following:
Description of infrastructure and personnel associated with the provision of telecommunications services
List of Type of Technology to be used
Description of technical standards
Network infrastructure, design and operations, including block diagrams

Access to network infrastructure of other operators (eg. Leased Line).
Plans to roll out own network
List of areas to be covered, if applicable (whole of Bahrain, or part of)
Quality of service (implementations & operation services, performance)
Service availability by end users (how customers would be able to access your proposed service)
Description of technical competence
Description of resources, skills and expertise in the field of the subject matter of the application.
Evidence that the applicant can serve the interests of subscribers and users and promote competition among other licensed operators.
Description of proposed wholesale and retail services (including price and non-price items)
Revenue and cost projections in details (at least 2 years/month by month) - to be provided in non-locked Excel format
Funding requirements and source of funds
Evidence of financial stability
Customer services (availability of call centers etc.)
Submission of lawful access implementation plan as per article 5 of resolution No. (8) of 2009 and Article 78 of the Telecommunications Law.

Please refer to the Telecom Law and regulation by clicking on the links below:
Telecom Law:http://www.tra.org.bh/en/legal-instruments/telecommunications-law/
Regulations:http://www.tra.org.bh/en/legal-instruments/regulations/

Required Documents

- Business plan
- License application For national fixed services

Municipality Affairs (Post) (61-13)

Approval Name	Description	Estimated Time
Site Approval for Information and Communication Activities	Municipality Approval for the Commercial Registration address or the site in which the Activity will be practiced	3 Days

Fee Details (if any)

10

License Information

General Conditions:
1. Size of shop/premises must be sufficient for the activity
2. Businesses may not carry out the activity outside the boundaries of the shop/ premises
3. It is prohibited to display or store any items or equipment outside the shop / premises boundary without prior approval from the Municipality. In the event of non-compliance, the Ministry of Municipality Affairs has the right to take necessary action.
4. Maintain cleanliness of the site
5. Comply with the parking space regulations as per the Construction Regulatory Requirements

Activity Specific Conditions:
1. The Commercial Registration for this activity can be registered on commercial, service, and industrial streets.
2. The commercial address of the Commercial Registration for this activity can an office address provided that the site is used for administrative purposes and is not located in a residential area

Note: Uploading pictures of the site/shop may expedite the process of obtaining approval

Required Documents

- Lease agreement (after obtaining the necessary approvals from other licensing entities)
- Shop photos

Other Documents

- Cabinet's Decision (56) of the year 2022 regarding the Regulatory Requirements of Construction for various areas in the Kingdom of Bahrain

Telecommunications Regulatory Authority (Final Site Inspection) (61-13)

Approval Name	Description	Estimated Time
Telecommunication Activities - Individual License for Earth Station Services	The licensee is authorized to deploy, operate and maintain a Fixed Telecommunications Infrastructure Network and to supply products and services to other Licensed Operators in the Kingdom over a Fixed Telecommunications Infrastructure Network on a wholesale only and on an equivalence of inputs basis	10 Days

Fee Details (if any)

License Application Fee 500 BD.
License Fee 35,000 BD.
1% of gross annual turnover attributed to licensed activity

License Information

A business plan must be submitted covering the following:
Description of infrastructure and personnel associated with the provision of telecommunications services
List of Type of Technology to be used

Description of technical standards
Network infrastructure, design and operations, including block diagrams
Access to network infrastructure of other operators (eg. Leased Line).
Plans to roll out own network
List of areas to be covered, if applicable (whole of Bahrain, or part of)
Quality of service (implementations & operation services, performance)
Service availability by end users (how customers would be able to access your proposed service)
Description of technical competence
Description of resources, skills and expertise in the field of the subject matter of the application.
Evidence that the applicant can serve the interests of subscribers and users and promote competition among other licensed operators.
Description of proposed wholesale and retail services (including price and non-price items)
Revenue and cost projections in details (at least 2 years/month by month) - to be provided in non-locked Excel format
Funding requirements and source of funds
Evidence of financial stability
Customer services (availability of call centers etc.)
Submission of lawful access implementation plan as per article 5 of resolution No. (8) of 2009 and Article 78 of the Telecommunications Law.

Please refer to the Telecom Law and regulation by clicking on the links below:
Telecom Law:http://www.tra.org.bh/en/legal-instruments/telecommunications-law/
Regulations:http://www.tra.org.bh/en/legal-instruments/regulations/

Required Documents

- Business plan
- License application For national fixed services

Information and communication

ISIC4	Business activity
61-2	Telecommunication Activities - Class License for internet services

Description

The licensee is authorised on a non-exclusive basis to provide internet services in the licensed area; provided, however, the licensee may not offer a basic voice service between the Kingdom of Bahrain and other countries, nor may it facilitate by the use of its telecommunications network the offer by a third party of such a service, unless and until such time as it is granted an international telecommunications license in accordance with the Telecommunications Law.

Business Requirements

Age

18 and above

Allowed for Nationalities

Bahraini 100%		GCC 100%	
American 100%		Singaporean 100%	
Icelander 100%		Liechtenstein er 100%	
Norwegian 100%		Swiss 100%	

Foreign Allowed up to 100%

Legal Type

It is allowed to register according to the legal forms mentioned below

Allowed for Individual Commercial Registration (ICR) : Yes

Allowed for Company Commercial Registration (CCR) : Yes

- Bahrain Shareholding Company (Public)
- With Limited Liability Company
- Branch of a Foreign Company
- Bahrain Shareholding Company (Closed)
- Partnership Company
- Simple Commandite Company
- Commandite By Shares Company
- Non Profit Company

Required Step of Licenses and Approvals

Ministry / Directorate	License / Approval Requirements	Approval Type
General Directorate Of Criminal Investigation	Approval by General Directorate of Criminal Investigation	Pre
Telecommunications Regulatory Authority	Class License for internet services	Pre
Municipality Affairs	Site Approval for Information and Communication Activities	Post
Telecommunications Regulatory Authority	Class License for internet services	Final Site Inspection

General Directorate Of Criminal Investigation (Pre) (61-2)

Approval Name	Description	Estimated Time
Approval by General Directorate of Criminal Investigation	General Directorate of Criminal Investigation Approval for the Activity	7 Days

Fee Details (if any)

There is no Estimated Processing Time (Days) in this license.

License Information

- The applicant should not have a criminal record, unless they have been rehabilitated in criminal cases

Telecommunications Regulatory Authority (Pre) (61-2)

Approval Name	Description	Estimated Time
Class License for internet services	Class License for internet services	10 Days

Fee Details (if any)

License Application Fee 500 BD.
License Fee 5000 BD
1% of gross annual turnover attributed to licensed activity.

The duration of the license is 15 years once granted and 10 years once renewed.

License Information

A business plan must be submitted covering the following:
Description of infrastructure and personnel associated with the provision of telecommunications services
List of Type of Technology to be used
Description of technical standards
Network infrastructure, design and operations, including block diagrams
Access to network infrastructure of other operators (eg. Leased Line).
Plans to roll out own network
List of areas to be covered, if applicable (whole of Bahrain, or part of)
Quality of service (implementations & operation services, performance)
Service availability by end users (how customers would be able to access your proposed service)
Description of technical competence
Description of resources, skills and expertise in the field of the subject matter of the application.
Evidence that the applicant can serve the interests of subscribers and users and promote competition among other licensed operators.
Description of proposed wholesale and retail services (including price and non-price items)
Revenue and cost projections in details (at least 2 years/month by month) - to be provided in non-locked Excel format

Funding requirements and source of funds
Evidence of financial stability
Customer services (availability of call centers etc.)
Submission of lawful access implementation plan as per article 5 of resolution No. (8) of 2009 and Article 78 of the Telecommunications Law.

Please refer to the Telecom Law and regulation by clicking on the links below:
Telecom Law:http://www.tra.org.bh/en/legal-instruments/telecommunications-law/
Regulations:http://www.tra.org.bh/en/legal-instruments/regulations/

Required Documents

- Business plan
- License application for Class License for internet services

Other Documents

- Class License for internet services - General Note to Applicants1
- Generic License Form - Class License for internet services

Municipality Affairs (Post) (61-2)

Approval Name	Description	Estimated Time
Site Approval for Information and Communication Activities	Municipality Approval for the Commercial Registration address or the site in which the Activity will be practiced	3 Days

Fee Details (if any)

10

License Information

General Conditions:
1. Size of shop/premises must be sufficient for the activity
2. Businesses may not carry out the activity outside the boundaries of the shop/ premises
3. It is prohibited to display or store any items or equipment outside the shop / premises boundary without prior approval from the Municipality. In the event of non-compliance, the Ministry of Municipality Affairs has the right to take necessary action.
4. Maintain cleanliness of the site
5. Comply with the parking space regulations as per the Construction Regulatory Requirements

Activity Specific Conditions:
1. The Commercial Registration for this activity can be registered on commercial, service, and industrial streets.
2. The commercial address of the Commercial Registration for this activity can an office address provided that the site is used for administrative purposes and is not located in a residential area

Note: Uploading pictures of the site/shop may expedite the process of obtaining approval

Required Documents

- Lease agreement (after obtaining the necessary approvals from other licensing entities)
- Shop photos

Other Documents

- Cabinet's Decision (56) of the year 2022 regarding the Regulatory Requirements of Construction for various areas in the Kingdom of Bahrain

Telecommunications Regulatory Authority (Final Site Inspection) (61-2)

Approval Name	Description	Estimated Time
Class License for internet services	Class License for internet services	10 Days

Fee Details (if any)

License Application Fee 500 BD.
License Fee 5000 BD
1% of gross annual turnover attributed to licensed activity.

The duration of the license is 15 years once granted and 10 years once renewed.

License Information

A business plan must be submitted covering the following:
Description of infrastructure and personnel associated with the provision of telecommunications services
List of Type of Technology to be used
Description of technical standards
Network infrastructure, design and operations, including block diagrams
Access to network infrastructure of other operators (eg. Leased Line).
Plans to roll out own network
List of areas to be covered, if applicable (whole of Bahrain, or part of)
Quality of service (implementations & operation services, performance)
Service availability by end users (how customers would be able to access your proposed service)
Description of technical competence
Description of resources, skills and expertise in the field of the subject matter of the application.
Evidence that the applicant can serve the interests of subscribers and users and promote competition among other licensed operators.
Description of proposed wholesale and retail services (including price and non-price items)

Revenue and cost projections in details (at least 2 years/month by month) - to be provided in non-locked Excel format
Funding requirements and source of funds
Evidence of financial stability
Customer services (availability of call centers etc.)
Submission of lawful access implementation plan as per article 5 of resolution No. (8) of 2009 and Article 78 of the Telecommunications Law.

Please refer to the Telecom Law and regulation by clicking on the links below:
Telecom Law:http://www.tra.org.bh/en/legal-instruments/telecommunications-law/
Regulations:http://www.tra.org.bh/en/legal-instruments/regulations/

Required Documents

- Business plan
- License application for Class License for internet services

Other Documents

- Class License for internet services - General Note to Applicants1
- Generic License Form - Class License for internet services

Information and communication

ISIC4	Business activity
61-3	Telecommunication Activities - Individual license for international telecommunications facilities

Description

The licensee is authorised on a non-exclusive basis to install, operate and manage its international telecommunications facilities in the licensed area.

The licensee is authorised to connect its international telecommunications facilities to: (a) any telecommunications network operated under a telecommunications license; and (b) any telecommunications equipment approved for connection in accordance with section 38 of the Telecommunications Law and any regulations issued pursuant to the Telecommunications Law.

Business Requirements

✔ Age

18 and above

✔ Allowed for Nationalities

Bahraini 100%		GCC 100%	
American 100%		Singaporean 100%	
Icelander 100%		Liechtenstein er 100%	
Norwegian 100%		Swiss 100%	

Foreign Allowed up to 100%

Legal Type

It is allowed to register according to the legal forms mentioned below

Allowed for Individual Commercial Registration (ICR) : Yes

Allowed for Company Commercial Registration (CCR) : Yes

- Bahrain Shareholding Company (Public)
- With Limited Liability Company
- Branch of a Foreign Company
- Bahrain Shareholding Company (Closed)
- Partnership Company
- Simple Commandite Company
- Commandite By Shares Company
- Non Profit Company

Required Step of Licenses and Approvals

Ministry / Directorate	License / Approval Requirements	Approval Type
Telecommunications Regulatory Authority	Individual license for international telecommunications facilities	Pre
General Directorate Of Criminal Investigation	Approval by General Directorate of Criminal Investigation	Pre
Municipality Affairs	Site Approval for Information and Communication Activities	Post
Telecommunications Regulatory Authority	Individual license for international telecommunications facilities	Final Site Inspection

Telecommunications Regulatory Authority (Pre) (61-3)

Approval Name	Description	Estimated Time
Individual license for international telecommunications facilities	This is a licence required for telecommunications facilities used or intended for use in connecting the Kingdom of Bahrain to countries or territories outside the Kingdom of Bahrain, or vice versa, for the provision of an international telecommunications service.	10 Days

Fee Details (if any)

License Application Fee 500 BD.
License Fee 20,000 BD
1% of gross annual turnover attributed to licensed activity.

The duration of the license is 15 years once granted and 10 years once renewed.

License Information

A business plan must be submitted covering the following:
Description of infrastructure and personnel associated with the provision of telecommunications services
List of Type of Technology to be used
Description of technical standards
Network infrastructure, design and operations, including block diagrams
Access to network infrastructure of other operators (eg. Leased Line).
Plans to roll out own network

List of areas to be covered, if applicable (whole of Bahrain, or part of)
Quality of service (implementations & operation services, performance)
Service availability by end users (how customers would be able to access your proposed service)
Description of technical competence
Description of resources, skills and expertise in the field of the subject matter of the application.
Evidence that the applicant can serve the interests of subscribers and users and promote competition among other licensed operators.
Description of proposed wholesale and retail services (including price and non-price items)
Revenue and cost projections in details (at least 2 years/month by month) - to be provided in non-locked Excel format
Funding requirements and source of funds
Evidence of financial stability
Customer services (availability of call centers etc.)
Submission of lawful access implementation plan as per article 5 of resolution No. (8) of 2009 and Article 78 of the Telecommunications Law.

Please refer to the Telecom Law and regulation by clicking on the links below:
Telecom Law:http://www.tra.org.bh/en/legal-instruments/telecommunications-law/
Regulations:http://www.tra.org.bh/en/legal-instruments/regulations/

Required Documents

- Business plan
- License application for international telecommunications facilities

Other Documents

- Generic License Form - International Telecommunications Facilities
- International Telecommunications Facilities - General Note to Applicants1

General Directorate Of Criminal Investigation (Pre) (61-3)

Approval Name	Description	Estimated Time
Approval by General Directorate of Criminal Investigation	General Directorate of Criminal Investigation Approval for the Activity	7 Days

Fee Details (if any)

There is no Estimated Processing Time (Days) in this license.

License Information

- The applicant should not have a criminal record, unless they have been rehabilitated in criminal cases

Municipality Affairs (Post) (61-3)

Approval Name	Description	Estimated Time
Site Approval for Information and Communication Activities	Municipality Approval for the Commercial Registration address or the site in which the Activity will be practiced	3 Days

Fee Details (if any)

10

License Information

General Conditions:
1. Size of shop/premises must be sufficient for the activity
2. Businesses may not carry out the activity outside the boundaries of the shop/ premises
3. It is prohibited to display or store any items or equipment outside the shop / premises boundary without prior approval from the Municipality. In the event of non-compliance, the Ministry of Municipality Affairs has the right to take necessary action.
4. Maintain cleanliness of the site
5. Comply with the parking space regulations as per the Construction Regulatory Requirements

Activity Specific Conditions:
1. The Commercial Registration for this activity can be registered on commercial, service, and industrial streets.
2. The commercial address of the Commercial Registration for this activity can an office address provided that the site is used for administrative purposes and is not located in a residential area

Note: Uploading pictures of the site/shop may expedite the process of obtaining approval

Required Documents

- Lease agreement (after obtaining the necessary approvals from other licensing entities)
- Shop photos

Other Documents

- Cabinet's Decision (56) of the year 2022 regarding the Regulatory Requirements of Construction for various areas in the Kingdom of Bahrain

Telecommunications Regulatory Authority (Final Site Inspection) (61-3)

Approval Name	Description	Estimated Time
Individual license for international telecommunications facilities	This is a licence required for telecommunications facilities used or intended for use in connecting the Kingdom of Bahrain to countries or territories outside the Kingdom of Bahrain, or vice versa, for the provision of an international telecommunications service.	10 Days

Fee Details (if any)

License Application Fee 500 BD.
License Fee 20,000 BD
1% of gross annual turnover attributed to licensed activity.

The duration of the license is 15 years once granted and 10 years once renewed.

License Information

A business plan must be submitted covering the following:
Description of infrastructure and personnel associated with the provision of telecommunications services
List of Type of Technology to be used
Description of technical standards
Network infrastructure, design and operations, including block diagrams

Access to network infrastructure of other operators (eg. Leased Line).
Plans to roll out own network
List of areas to be covered, if applicable (whole of Bahrain, or part of)
Quality of service (implementations & operation services, performance)
Service availability by end users (how customers would be able to access your proposed service)
Description of technical competence
Description of resources, skills and expertise in the field of the subject matter of the application.
Evidence that the applicant can serve the interests of subscribers and users and promote competition among other licensed operators.
Description of proposed wholesale and retail services (including price and non-price items)
Revenue and cost projections in details (at least 2 years/month by month) - to be provided in non-locked Excel format
Funding requirements and source of funds
Evidence of financial stability
Customer services (availability of call centers etc.)
Submission of lawful access implementation plan as per article 5 of resolution No. (8) of 2009 and Article 78 of the Telecommunications Law.

Please refer to the Telecom Law and regulation by clicking on the links below:
Telecom Law:http://www.tra.org.bh/en/legal-instruments/telecommunications-law/
Regulations:http://www.tra.org.bh/en/legal-instruments/regulations/

Required Documents

- Business plan
- License application for international telecommunications facilities

Other Documents

- Generic License Form - International Telecommunications Facilities
- International Telecommunications Facilities - General Note to Applicants1

Information and communication

ISIC4	Business activity
61-4	Telecommunication Activities - Individual license for international telecommunications services

Description

The licensee is authorised on a non-exclusive basis to install, operate and manage its international telecommunications facilities in the licensed area.

Business Requirements

Age

18 and above

Allowed for Nationalities

Bahraini 100%		GCC 100%	
American 100%		Singaporean 100%	
Icelander 100%		Liechtensteiner 100%	
Norwegian 100%		Swiss 100%	

Foreign Allowed up to 100%

Legal Type

It is allowed to register according to the legal forms mentioned below

Allowed for Individual Commercial Registration (ICR) : Yes

Allowed for Company Commercial Registration (CCR) : Yes

- Bahrain Shareholding Company (Public)
- With Limited Liability Company
- Branch of a Foreign Company
- Bahrain Shareholding Company (Closed)
- Partnership Company
- Simple Commandite Company
- Commandite By Shares Company
- Non Profit Company

Required Step of Licenses and Approvals

Ministry / Directorate	License / Approval Requirements	Approval Type
Telecommunications Regulatory Authority	Individual license for international telecommunications services	Pre
General Directorate Of Criminal Investigation	Approval by General Directorate of Criminal Investigation	Pre
Municipality Affairs	Site Approval for Information and Communication Activities	Post
Telecommunications Regulatory Authority	Individual license for international telecommunications services	Final Site Inspection

Telecommunications Regulatory Authority (Pre) (61-4)

Approval Name	Description	Estimated Time
Individual license for international telecommunications services	The licensee is authorised on a non-exclusive basis to install, operate and manage its international telecommunications facilities in the licensed area.	10 Days

Fee Details (if any)

License Application Fee 500 BD.
License Fee 10,000 BD
1% of gross annual turnover attributed to licensed activity.

The duration of the license is 15 years once granted and 10 years once renewed.

License Information

A business plan must be submitted covering the following:
Description of infrastructure and personnel associated with the provision of telecommunications services
List of Type of Technology to be used
Description of technical standards
Network infrastructure, design and operations, including block diagrams
Access to network infrastructure of other operators (eg. Leased Line).
Plans to roll out own network
List of areas to be covered, if applicable (whole of Bahrain, or part of)
Quality of service (implementations & operation services, performance)
Service availability by end users (how customers would be able to access your proposed service)
Description of technical competence

Description of resources, skills and expertise in the field of the subject matter of the application.
Evidence that the applicant can serve the interests of subscribers and users and promote competition among other licensed operators.
Description of proposed wholesale and retail services (including price and non-price items)
Revenue and cost projections in details (at least 2 years/month by month) - to be provided in non-locked Excel format
Funding requirements and source of funds
Evidence of financial stability
Customer services (availability of call centers etc.)
Submission of lawful access implementation plan as per article 5 of resolution No. (8) of 2009 and Article 78 of the Telecommunications Law.

Please refer to the Telecom Law and regulation by clicking on the links below:
Telecom Law:http://www.tra.org.bh/en/legal-instruments/telecommunications-law/
Regulations:http://www.tra.org.bh/en/legal-instruments/regulations/

Required Documents

- Business plan
- License application for international telecommunications services

Other Documents

- Generic License Form - International telecommunications services
- International telecommunications services - General Note to Applicants

General Directorate Of Criminal Investigation (Pre) (61-4)

Approval Name	Description	Estimated Time
Approval by General Directorate of Criminal Investigation	General Directorate of Criminal Investigation Approval for the Activity	7 Days

Fee Details (if any)

There is no Estimated Processing Time (Days) in this license.

License Information

- The applicant should not have a criminal record, unless they have been rehabilitated in criminal cases

Municipality Affairs (Post) (61-4)

Approval Name	Description	Estimated Time
Site Approval for Information and Communication Activities	Municipality Approval for the Commercial Registration address or the site in which the Activity will be practiced	3 Days

Fee Details (if any)

10

License Information

General Conditions:
1. Size of shop/premises must be sufficient for the activity
2. Businesses may not carry out the activity outside the boundaries of the shop/ premises
3. It is prohibited to display or store any items or equipment outside the shop / premises boundary without prior approval from the Municipality. In the event of non-compliance, the Ministry of Municipality Affairs has the right to take necessary action.
4. Maintain cleanliness of the site
5. Comply with the parking space regulations as per the Construction Regulatory Requirements

Activity Specific Conditions:
1. The Commercial Registration for this activity can be registered on commercial, service, and industrial streets.
2. The commercial address of the Commercial Registration for this activity can an office address provided that the site is used for administrative purposes and is not located in a residential area

Note: Uploading pictures of the site/shop may expedite the process of obtaining approval

Required Documents

- Lease agreement (after obtaining the necessary approvals from other licensing entities)
- Shop photos

Other Documents

- Cabinet's Decision (56) of the year 2022 regarding the Regulatory Requirements of Construction for various areas in the Kingdom of Bahrain

Telecommunications Regulatory Authority (Final Site Inspection) (61-4)

Approval Name	Description	Estimated Time
Individual license for international telecommunications services	The licensee is authorised on a non-exclusive basis to install, operate and manage its international telecommunications facilities in the licensed area.	10 Days

Fee Details (if any)

License Application Fee 500 BD.
License Fee 10,000 BD
1% of gross annual turnover attributed to licensed activity.

The duration of the license is 15 years once granted and 10 years once renewed.

License Information

A business plan must be submitted covering the following:
Description of infrastructure and personnel associated with the provision of telecommunications services
List of Type of Technology to be used
Description of technical standards
Network infrastructure, design and operations, including block diagrams
Access to network infrastructure of other operators (eg. Leased Line).
Plans to roll out own network
List of areas to be covered, if applicable (whole of Bahrain, or part of)
Quality of service (implementations & operation services, performance)
Service availability by end users (how customers would be able to access your proposed

service)
Description of technical competence
Description of resources, skills and expertise in the field of the subject matter of the application.
Evidence that the applicant can serve the interests of subscribers and users and promote competition among other licensed operators.
Description of proposed wholesale and retail services (including price and non-price items)
Revenue and cost projections in details (at least 2 years/month by month) - to be provided in non-locked Excel format
Funding requirements and source of funds
Evidence of financial stability
Customer services (availability of call centers etc.)
Submission of lawful access implementation plan as per article 5 of resolution No. (8) of 2009 and Article 78 of the Telecommunications Law.

Please refer to the Telecom Law and regulation by clicking on the links below:
Telecom Law:http://www.tra.org.bh/en/legal-instruments/telecommunications-law/
Regulations:http://www.tra.org.bh/en/legal-instruments/regulations/

Required Documents

- Business plan
- License application for international telecommunications services

Other Documents

- Generic License Form - International telecommunications services
- International telecommunications services - General Note to Applicants

Information and communication

ISIC4	Business activity
61-5	Telecommunication Activities - Individual license for mobile telecommunications

Description

The licensee is authorised on a non-exclusive basis to provide value added services in the licensed area.

Business Requirements

✔ Age

18 and above

✔ Allowed for Nationalities

Bahraini 100%		GCC 100%	
American 100%		Singaporean 100%	
Icelander 100%		Liechtensteiner 100%	
Norwegian 100%		Swiss 100%	

Foreign Allowed up to 100%

Legal Type

It is allowed to register according to the legal forms mentioned below

Allowed for Individual Commercial Registration (ICR) : Yes

Allowed for Company Commercial Registration (CCR) : Yes

- Bahrain Shareholding Company (Public)
- With Limited Liability Company
- Branch of a Foreign Company
- Bahrain Shareholding Company (Closed)
- Partnership Company
- Simple Commandite Company
- Commandite By Shares Company
- Non Profit Company

Required Step of Licenses and Approvals

Ministry / Directorate	License / Approval Requirements	Approval Type
Telecommunications Regulatory Authority	Individual license for mobile telecommunications	Pre
General Directorate Of Criminal Investigation	Approval by General Directorate of Criminal Investigation	Pre
Municipality Affairs	Site Approval for Information and Communication Activities	Post
Telecommunications Regulatory Authority	Individual license for mobile telecommunications	Final Site Inspection

Telecommunications Regulatory Authority (Pre) (61-5)

Approval Name	Description	Estimated Time
Individual license for mobile telecommunications	The licensee is authorised, on a non-exclusive basis, to provide by means of its mobile telecommunications network the mobile telecommunications services in the licensed area	10 Days

Fee Details (if any)

Auction based

License Information

A business plan must be submitted covering the following:
Description of infrastructure and personnel associated with the provision of telecommunications services
List of Type of Technology to be used
Description of technical standards
Network infrastructure, design and operations, including block diagrams
Access to network infrastructure of other operators (eg. Leased Line).
Plans to roll out own network
List of areas to be covered, if applicable (whole of Bahrain, or part of)
Quality of service (implementations & operation services, performance)
Service availability by end users (how customers would be able to access your proposed service)
Description of technical competence
Description of resources, skills and expertise in the field of the subject matter of the application.
Evidence that the applicant can serve the interests of subscribers and users and promote competition among other licensed operators.
Description of proposed wholesale and retail services (including price and non-price

items)
Revenue and cost projections in details (at least 2 years/month by month) - to be provided in non-locked Excel format
Funding requirements and source of funds
Evidence of financial stability
Customer services (availability of call centers etc.)
Submission of lawful access implementation plan as per article 5 of resolution No. (8) of 2009 and Article 78 of the Telecommunications Law.

Please refer to the Telecom Law and regulation by clicking on the links below:
Telecom Law:http://www.tra.org.bh/en/legal-instruments/telecommunications-law/
Regulations:http://www.tra.org.bh/en/legal-instruments/regulations/

Required Documents

- Business plan

General Directorate Of Criminal Investigation (Pre) (61-5)

Approval Name	Description	Estimated Time
Approval by General Directorate of Criminal Investigation	General Directorate of Criminal Investigation Approval for the Activity	7 Days

Fee Details (if any)

There is no Estimated Processing Time (Days) in this license.

License Information

- The applicant should not have a criminal record, unless they have been rehabilitated in criminal cases

Municipality Affairs (Post) (61-5)

Approval Name	Description	Estimated Time
Site Approval for Information and Communication Activities	Municipality Approval for the Commercial Registration address or the site in which the Activity will be practiced	3 Days

Fee Details (if any)

10

License Information

General Conditions:
1. Size of shop/premises must be sufficient for the activity
2. Businesses may not carry out the activity outside the boundaries of the shop/ premises
3. It is prohibited to display or store any items or equipment outside the shop / premises boundary without prior approval from the Municipality. In the event of non-compliance, the Ministry of Municipality Affairs has the right to take necessary action.
4. Maintain cleanliness of the site
5. Comply with the parking space regulations as per the Construction Regulatory Requirements

Activity Specific Conditions:
1. The Commercial Registration for this activity can be registered on commercial, service, and industrial streets.
2. The commercial address of the Commercial Registration for this activity can an office address provided that the site is used for administrative purposes and is not located in a residential area

Note: Uploading pictures of the site/shop may expedite the process of obtaining approval

Required Documents

- Lease agreement (after obtaining the necessary approvals from other licensing entities)
- Shop photos

Other Documents

- Cabinet's Decision (56) of the year 2022 regarding the Regulatory Requirements of Construction for various areas in the Kingdom of Bahrain

Telecommunications Regulatory Authority (Final Site Inspection) (61-5)

Approval Name	Description	Estimated Time
Individual license for mobile telecommunications	The licensee is authorised, on a non-exclusive basis, to provide by means of its mobile telecommunications network the mobile telecommunications services in the licensed area	10 Days

Fee Details (if any)

Auction based

License Information

A business plan must be submitted covering the following:
Description of infrastructure and personnel associated with the provision of telecommunications services
List of Type of Technology to be used
Description of technical standards
Network infrastructure, design and operations, including block diagrams
Access to network infrastructure of other operators (eg. Leased Line).
Plans to roll out own network
List of areas to be covered, if applicable (whole of Bahrain, or part of)
Quality of service (implementations & operation services, performance)
Service availability by end users (how customers would be able to access your proposed service)
Description of technical competence
Description of resources, skills and expertise in the field of the subject matter of the application.
Evidence that the applicant can serve the interests of subscribers and users and

promote competition among other licensed operators.
Description of proposed wholesale and retail services (including price and non-price items)
Revenue and cost projections in details (at least 2 years/month by month) - to be provided in non-locked Excel format
Funding requirements and source of funds
Evidence of financial stability
Customer services (availability of call centers etc.)
Submission of lawful access implementation plan as per article 5 of resolution No. (8) of 2009 and Article 78 of the Telecommunications Law.

Please refer to the Telecom Law and regulation by clicking on the links below:
Telecom Law:http://www.tra.org.bh/en/legal-instruments/telecommunications-law/
Regulations:http://www.tra.org.bh/en/legal-instruments/regulations/

Required Documents

- Business plan

Information and communication

ISIC4	Business activity
61-6	Telecommunication Activities - Class License for value added services

Description

This activity includes:
Provision of enhanced or value added telecommunications data and / or voice services that act on the format, content, code or protocol of information in order to provide the user with additional or different information or that involve subscriber interaction with stored information, including computer and data processing services, data information and exchange services, credit card verification services but excluding transmission services to or over the internet.

Business Requirements

Age

18 and above

Allowed for Nationalities

Bahraini 100%		GCC 100%	
American 100%		Singaporean 100%	
Icelander 100%		Liechtensteiner 100%	
Norwegian 100%		Swiss 100%	

Foreign Allowed up to 100%

Legal Type

It is allowed to register according to the legal forms mentioned below

Allowed for Individual Commercial Registration (ICR) : Yes

Allowed for Company Commercial Registration (CCR) : Yes

- Bahrain Shareholding Company (Public)
- With Limited Liability Company
- Branch of a Foreign Company
- Bahrain Shareholding Company (Closed)
- Partnership Company
- Simple Commandite Company
- Commandite By Shares Company
- Non Profit Company

Required Step of Licenses and Approvals

Ministry / Directorate	License / Approval Requirements	Approval Type
Telecommunications Regulatory Authority	Class License for value added services	Pre
General Directorate Of Criminal Investigation	Approval by General Directorate of Criminal Investigation	Pre
Municipality Affairs	Site Approval for Information and Communication Activities	Post
Telecommunications Regulatory Authority	Class License for value added services	Final Site Inspection

Telecommunications Regulatory Authority (Pre) (61-6)

Approval Name	Description	Estimated Time
Class License for value added services	The licensee is authorised on a non-exclusive basis to provide value added services in the licensed area.	10 Days

Fee Details (if any)

License Application Fee 500 BD.
License Fee 1000 BD
1% of gross annual turnover attributed to licensed activity.

The duration of the license is 15 years once granted and 10 years once renewed.

License Information

A business plan must be submitted covering the following:
Description of infrastructure and personnel associated with the provision of telecommunications services
List of Type of Technology to be used
Description of technical standards
Network infrastructure, design and operations, including block diagrams
Access to network infrastructure of other operators (eg. Leased Line).
Plans to roll out own network
List of areas to be covered, if applicable (whole of Bahrain, or part of)
Quality of service (implementations & operation services, performance)
Service availability by end users (how customers would be able to access your proposed service)
Description of technical competence
Description of resources, skills and expertise in the field of the subject matter of the application.
Evidence that the applicant can serve the interests of subscribers and users and promote competition among other licensed operators.

Description of proposed wholesale and retail services (including price and non-price items)
Revenue and cost projections in details (at least 2 years/month by month) - to be provided in non-locked Excel format
Funding requirements and source of funds
Evidence of financial stability
Customer services (availability of call centers etc.)
Submission of lawful access implementation plan as per article 5 of resolution No. (8) of 2009 and Article 78 of the Telecommunications Law.

Please refer to the Telecom Law and regulation by clicking on the links below:
Telecom Law:http://www.tra.org.bh/en/legal-instruments/telecommunications-law/
Regulations:http://www.tra.org.bh/en/legal-instruments/regulations/

Required Documents

- Business plan
- License application For value added services

Other Documents

- Class License for value added services - General Note to Applicants1
- Generic License Form - Class License for value added services

General Directorate Of Criminal Investigation (Pre) (61-6)

Approval Name	Description	Estimated Time
Approval by General Directorate of Criminal Investigation	General Directorate of Criminal Investigation Approval for the Activity	7 Days

Fee Details (if any)

There is no Estimated Processing Time (Days) in this license.

License Information

- The applicant should not have a criminal record, unless they have been rehabilitated in criminal cases

Municipality Affairs (Post) (61-6)

Approval Name	Description	Estimated Time
Site Approval for Information and Communication Activities	Municipality Approval for the Commercial Registration address or the site in which the Activity will be practiced	3 Days

Fee Details (if any)

10

License Information

General Conditions:
1. Size of shop/premises must be sufficient for the activity
2. Businesses may not carry out the activity outside the boundaries of the shop/ premises
3. It is prohibited to display or store any items or equipment outside the shop / premises boundary without prior approval from the Municipality. In the event of non-compliance, the Ministry of Municipality Affairs has the right to take necessary action.
4. Maintain cleanliness of the site
5. Comply with the parking space regulations as per the Construction Regulatory Requirements

Activity Specific Conditions:
1. The Commercial Registration for this activity can be registered on commercial, service, and industrial streets.
2. The commercial address of the Commercial Registration for this activity can an office address provided that the site is used for administrative purposes and is not located in a residential area

Note: Uploading pictures of the site/shop may expedite the process of obtaining approval

Required Documents

- Lease agreement (after obtaining the necessary approvals from other licensing entities)
- Shop photos

Other Documents

- Cabinet's Decision (56) of the year 2022 regarding the Regulatory Requirements of Construction for various areas in the Kingdom of Bahrain

Telecommunications Regulatory Authority (Final Site Inspection) (61-6)

Approval Name	Description	Estimated Time
Class License for value added services	The licensee is authorised on a non-exclusive basis to provide value added services in the licensed area.	10 Days

Fee Details (if any)

License Application Fee 500 BD.
License Fee 1000 BD
1% of gross annual turnover attributed to licensed activity.

The duration of the license is 15 years once granted and 10 years once renewed.

License Information

A business plan must be submitted covering the following:
Description of infrastructure and personnel associated with the provision of telecommunications services
List of Type of Technology to be used
Description of technical standards
Network infrastructure, design and operations, including block diagrams
Access to network infrastructure of other operators (eg. Leased Line).
Plans to roll out own network
List of areas to be covered, if applicable (whole of Bahrain, or part of)
Quality of service (implementations & operation services, performance)
Service availability by end users (how customers would be able to access your proposed service)
Description of technical competence
Description of resources, skills and expertise in the field of the subject matter of the application.

Evidence that the applicant can serve the interests of subscribers and users and promote competition among other licensed operators.
Description of proposed wholesale and retail services (including price and non-price items)
Revenue and cost projections in details (at least 2 years/month by month) - to be provided in non-locked Excel format
Funding requirements and source of funds
Evidence of financial stability
Customer services (availability of call centers etc.)
Submission of lawful access implementation plan as per article 5 of resolution No. (8) of 2009 and Article 78 of the Telecommunications Law.

Please refer to the Telecom Law and regulation by clicking on the links below:
Telecom Law:http://www.tra.org.bh/en/legal-instruments/telecommunications-law/
Regulations:http://www.tra.org.bh/en/legal-instruments/regulations/

Required Documents

- Business plan
- License application For value added services

Other Documents

- Class License for value added services - General Note to Applicants1
- Generic License Form - Class License for value added services

Information and communication

ISIC4	Business activity
61-7	Telecommunication Activities - Individual license for national fixed services

Description

The licensee is authorised on a non-exclusive basis to provide by means of its national fixed telecommunications network the following licensed services in the licensed area: (a) national fixed telecommunications services; (b) public payphone services; (c) telegraph services; and (d) telex services.

The licensee is authorised to connect its national fixed telecommunications network to: (a) any telecommunications network operated under a telecommunications license; and (b) any telecommunications equipment approved for connection in accordance with section
38 of the Telecommunications Law and any regulations issued pursuant to the Telecommunications Law.

Business Requirements

Age

18 and above

Allowed for Nationalities

Bahraini 100%		GCC 100%	
American 100%		Singaporean 100%	
Icelander 100%		Liechtenstein er 100%	
Norwegian 100%		Swiss 100%	

Foreign Allowed up to 100%

Legal Type

It is allowed to register according to the legal forms mentioned below

Allowed for Individual Commercial Registration (ICR) : Yes

Allowed for Company Commercial Registration (CCR) : Yes

- Bahrain Shareholding Company (Public)
- With Limited Liability Company
- Branch of a Foreign Company
- Bahrain Shareholding Company (Closed)
- Partnership Company
- Simple Commandite Company
- Commandite By Shares Company
- Non Profit Company

Required Step of Licenses and Approvals

Ministry / Directorate	License / Approval Requirements	Approval Type
Telecommunications Regulatory Authority	Individual license for national fixed services	Pre

General Directorate Of Criminal Investigation	Approval by General Directorate of Criminal Investigation	Pre
Municipality Affairs	Site Approval for Information and Communication Activities	Post
Telecommunications Regulatory Authority	Individual license for national fixed services	Final Site Inspection

Telecommunications Regulatory Authority (Pre) (61-7)

Approval Name	Description	Estimated Time
Individual license for national fixed services	This is a licence required for the provision of any basic data service, basic voice service other than an international telecommunications service or mobile radio-communications and offering access to or leasing telecommunications facilities to others.	10 Days

Fee Details (if any)

License Application Fee 500 BD.
License Fee 35,000 BD
1% of gross annual turnover attributed to licensed activity.

The duration of the license is 15 years once granted and 10 years once renewed.

License Information

A business plan must be submitted covering the following:
Description of infrastructure and personnel associated with the provisions of telecommunications services
List of Type of Technology to be used
Description of technical standards
Network infrastructure, design and operations, including block diagrams
Access to network infrastructure of other operators (eg. Leased Line).
Plans to roll out own network
List of areas to be covered, if applicable (whole of Bahrain, or part of)

Quality of service (implementations & operation services, performance)
Service availability by end users (how customers would be able to access your proposed service)
Description of technical competence
Description of resources, skills and expertise in the field of the subject matter of the application.
Individual license for national fixed services.
Description of proposed wholesale and retail services (including price and non-price items)
Revenue and cost projections in details (at least 2 years/month by month) - to be provided in non-locked Excel
format
Funding requirements and source of funds
Evidence of financial stability
Customer services (availability of call centers etc.)
Submission of lawful access implementation plan as per article 5 of resolution No. (8) of 2009 and Article 78 of
the Telecommunications Law.

Please refer to the Telecom Law and regulation by clicking on the links below:
Telecom Law:http://www.tra.org.bh/en/legal-instruments/telecommunications-law/
Regulations:http://www.tra.org.bh/en/legal-instruments/regulations/

Required Documents

- Business plan
- License application For national fixed services

Other Documents

- Generic License Form
- National Fixed Services License (NFL) - General Note to Applicants1

General Directorate Of Criminal Investigation (Pre) (61-7)

Approval Name	Description	Estimated Time
Approval by General Directorate of Criminal Investigation	General Directorate of Criminal Investigation Approval for the Activity	7 Days

Fee Details (if any)

There is no Estimated Processing Time (Days) in this license.

License Information

- The applicant should not have a criminal record, unless they have been rehabilitated in criminal cases

Municipality Affairs (Post) (61-7)

Approval Name	Description	Estimated Time
Site Approval for Information and Communication Activities	Municipality Approval for the Commercial Registration address or the site in which the Activity will be practiced	3 Days

Fee Details (if any)

10

License Information

General Conditions:
1. Size of shop/premises must be sufficient for the activity
2. Businesses may not carry out the activity outside the boundaries of the shop/ premises
3. It is prohibited to display or store any items or equipment outside the shop / premises boundary without prior approval from the Municipality. In the event of non-compliance, the Ministry of Municipality Affairs has the right to take necessary action.
4. Maintain cleanliness of the site
5. Comply with the parking space regulations as per the Construction Regulatory Requirements

Activity Specific Conditions:
1. The Commercial Registration for this activity can be registered on commercial, service, and industrial streets.
2. The commercial address of the Commercial Registration for this activity can an office address provided that the site is used for administrative purposes and is not located in a residential area

Note: Uploading pictures of the site/shop may expedite the process of obtaining approval

Required Documents

- Lease agreement (after obtaining the necessary approvals from other licensing entities)
- Shop photos

Other Documents

- Cabinet's Decision (56) of the year 2022 regarding the Regulatory Requirements of Construction for various areas in the Kingdom of Bahrain

Telecommunications Regulatory Authority (Final Site Inspection) (61-7)

Approval Name	Description	Estimated Time
Individual license for national fixed services	This is a licence required for the provision of any basic data service, basic voice service other than an international telecommunications service or mobile radio-communications and offering access to or leasing telecommunications facilities to others.	10 Days

Fee Details (if any)

License Application Fee 500 BD.
License Fee 35,000 BD
1% of gross annual turnover attributed to licensed activity.

The duration of the license is 15 years once granted and 10 years once renewed.

License Information

A business plan must be submitted covering the following:
Description of infrastructure and personnel associated with the provisions of telecommunications services
List of Type of Technology to be used
Description of technical standards
Network infrastructure, design and operations, including block diagrams
Access to network infrastructure of other operators (eg. Leased Line).

Plans to roll out own network
List of areas to be covered, if applicable (whole of Bahrain, or part of)
Quality of service (implementations & operation services, performance)
Service availability by end users (how customers would be able to access your proposed service)
Description of technical competence
Description of resources, skills and expertise in the field of the subject matter of the application.
Individual license for national fixed services.
Description of proposed wholesale and retail services (including price and non-price items)
Revenue and cost projections in details (at least 2 years/month by month) - to be provided in non-locked Excel
format
Funding requirements and source of funds
Evidence of financial stability
Customer services (availability of call centers etc.)
Submission of lawful access implementation plan as per article 5 of resolution No. (8) of 2009 and Article 78 of
the Telecommunications Law.

Please refer to the Telecom Law and regulation by clicking on the links below:
Telecom Law:http://www.tra.org.bh/en/legal-instruments/telecommunications-law/
Regulations:http://www.tra.org.bh/en/legal-instruments/regulations/

Required Documents

- Business plan
- License application For national fixed services

Other Documents

- Generic License Form
- National Fixed Services License (NFL) - General Note to Applicants1

Information and communication

ISIC4	Business activity
619001	Internet/ Call Cabins

Description

Allows the provision of local and international telecommunications services through shops or cabins that are equipped with telephone devices and equipment for calculating the time and fee. This include information transfer via Fax.

Business Requirements

Age

18 and above

Allowed for Nationalities

- Bahraini 100%
- American 100%
- GCC 100%

Legal Type

It is allowed to register according to the legal forms mentioned below

Allowed for Individual Commercial Registration (ICR) : Yes

Allowed for Company Commercial Registration (CCR) : Yes

- Bahrain Shareholding Company (Public)
- With Limited Liability Company
- Branch of a Foreign Company
- Bahrain Shareholding Company (Closed)
- Partnership Company
- Simple Commandite Company
- Commandite By Shares Company
- Non Profit Company

Required Step of Licenses and Approvals

Ministry / Directorate	License / Approval Requirements	Approval Type
Telecommunications Regulatory Authority	Telephone cabins services for local and international telecommunications (call shops)	Pre
General Directorate Of Criminal Investigation	Approval by General Directorate of Criminal Investigation	Pre
Municipality Affairs	Site Approval for internet/ call cabins	Post

Telecommunications Regulatory Authority (Pre) (619001)

Approval Name	Description	Estimated Time
Telephone cabins services for local and international telecommunications (call shops)	Telephone cabins services for local and international telecommunications (call shops)	10 Days

Fee Details (if any)

There is no License Fee (BHD) for this license.

License Information

A business plan must be submitted covering the following:
Description of infrastructure and personnel associated with the provision of telecommunications services
List of Type of Technology to be used
Description of technical standards
Network infrastructure, design and operations, including block diagrams
Access to network infrastructure of other operators (eg. Leased Line).
Plans to roll out own network
List of areas to be covered, if applicable (whole of Bahrain, or part of)
Quality of service (implementations & operation services, performance)
Service availability by end users (how customers would be able to access your proposed service)
Description of technical competence
Description of resources, skills and expertise in the field of the subject matter of the application.
Evidence that the applicant can serve the interests of subscribers and users and promote competition among other licensed operators.
Description of proposed wholesale and retail services (including price and non-price items)
Revenue and cost projections in details (at least 2 years/month by month) - to be provided in non-locked Excel format
Funding requirements and source of funds
Evidence of financial stability

Customer services (availability of call centers etc.)
Submission of lawful access implementation plan as per article 5 of resolution No. (8) of 2009 and Article 78 of the Telecommunications Law.
Note, this activity is requested to be approved through a physical visit to TRA.
Please refer to the Telecom Law and regulation by clicking on the links below:
Telecom Law:http://www.tra.org.bh/en/legal-instruments/telecommunications-law/
Regulations:http://www.tra.org.bh/en/legal-instruments/regulations/

Other Documents

- Call Shop Procedure Arabic
- Call Shop Procedure English

General Directorate Of Criminal Investigation (Pre) (619001)

Approval Name	Description	Estimated Time
Approval by General Directorate of Criminal Investigation	General Directorate of Criminal Investigation Approval for the Activity	7 Days

Fee Details (if any)

There is no Estimated Processing Time (Days) in this license.

License Information

- The applicant should not have a criminal record, unless they have been rehabilitated in criminal cases

Municipality Affairs (Post) (619001)

Approval Name	Description	Estimated Time
Site Approval for internet/call cabins	Municipality Approval for the Commercial Registration address or the site in which the Activity will be practiced	3 Days

Fee Details (if any)

10

License Information

General Conditions:
1. Size of shop/premises must be sufficient for the activity
2. Businesses may not carry out the activity outside the boundaries of the shop/ premises
3. It is prohibited to display or store any items or equipment outside the shop / premises boundary without prior approval from the Municipality. In the event of non-compliance, the Ministry of Municipality Affairs has the right to take necessary action.
4. Maintain cleanliness of the site
5. Comply with the parking space regulations as per the Construction Regulatory Requirements

Activity Specific Conditions:
1. The Commercial Registration for this activity can be registered on commercial, service, and industrial streets.

Note: Uploading pictures of the site/shop may expedite the process of obtaining approval

Required Documents

- Lease agreement (after obtaining the necessary approvals from other licensing entities)
- Shop photos

Other Documents

- Cabinet's Decision (56) of the year 2022 regarding the Regulatory Requirements of Construction for various areas in the Kingdom of Bahrain

Information and communication

ISIC4	Business activity
6201	Computer programming activities

Description

This activity includes:
- writing, modifying, testing and supporting of software.
- designing the structure and content of, and/or writing the computer code necessary to create and implement: systems software, software applications, databases, web pages.
- customizing of software, i.e. modifying and configuring an existing application so that it is functional within the clients' information system environment
-Services provided using artificial intelligence technologies

Business Requirements

✔ Age

18 and above

✔ Allowed for Nationalities

Bahraini 100%		GCC 100%	
American 100%		Singaporean 100%	
Icelander 100%		Liechtenstein er 100%	
Norwegian 100%		Swiss 100%	

Foreign Allowed up to 100%

Legal Type

It is allowed to register according to the legal forms mentioned below

Allowed for Individual Commercial Registration (ICR) : Yes

Allowed for Company Commercial Registration (CCR) : Yes

Allowed for Sijilli : Yes

- Bahrain Shareholding Company (Public)
- With Limited Liability Company
- Branch of a Foreign Company
- Bahrain Shareholding Company (Closed)
- Partnership Company
- Simple Commandite Company
- Commandite By Shares Company
- Non Profit Company

Required Step of Licenses and Approvals

Ministry / Directorate	License / Approval Requirements	Approval Type
Municipality Affairs	Site Approval for Information and Communication Activities	Post

Municipality Affairs (Post) (6201)

Approval Name	Description	Estimated Time
Site Approval for Information and Communication Activities	Municipality Approval for the Commercial Registration address or the site in which the Activity will be practiced	3 Days

Fee Details (if any)

10

License Information

General Conditions:
1. Size of shop/premises must be sufficient for the activity
2. Businesses may not carry out the activity outside the boundaries of the shop/ premises
3. It is prohibited to display or store any items or equipment outside the shop / premises boundary without prior approval from the Municipality. In the event of non-compliance, the Ministry of Municipality Affairs has the right to take necessary action.
4. Maintain cleanliness of the site
5. Comply with the parking space regulations as per the Construction Regulatory Requirements

Activity Specific Conditions:
1. The Commercial Registration for this activity can be registered on commercial, service, and industrial streets.
2. The commercial address of the Commercial Registration for this activity can an office address provided that the site is used for administrative purposes and is not located in a residential area

Note: Uploading pictures of the site/shop may expedite the process of obtaining approval

Required Documents

- Lease agreement (after obtaining the necessary approvals from other licensing entities)
- Shop photos

Other Documents

- Cabinet's Decision (56) of the year 2022 regarding the Regulatory Requirements of Construction for various areas in the Kingdom of Bahrain

Information and communication

ISIC4	Business activity
6202	Computer Consultancy and computer facilities management activities

Description

This activity includes:
- Planning and designing of computer systems that integrate computer hardware, software and communication technologies
The units classified in this class may provide the hardware and software components of the system as part of their integrated services or these components may be provided by third parties or vendors. The units classified in this class often install the system and train and support the users of the system.
This activity also includes:
—Provision of on-site management and operation of clients' computer systems and/or data processing facilities, as well as related support services

Business Requirements

✔ Age

18 and above

✔ Allowed for Nationalities

Bahraini 100%		GCC 100%	
American 100%		Singaporean 100%	
Icelander 100%		Liechtenstein er 100%	
Norwegian 100%		Swiss 100%	

Foreign Allowed up to 100%

Legal Type

It is allowed to register according to the legal forms mentioned below

Allowed for Individual Commercial Registration (ICR) : Yes

Allowed for Company Commercial Registration (CCR) : Yes

Allowed for Sijilli : Yes

- Bahrain Shareholding Company (Public)
- With Limited Liability Company
- Branch of a Foreign Company
- Bahrain Shareholding Company (Closed)
- Partnership Company
- Simple Commandite Company
- Commandite By Shares Company
- Non Profit Company

Required Step of Licenses and Approvals

Ministry / Directorate	License / Approval Requirements	Approval Type
Municipality Affairs	Site Approval for Information and Communication Activities	Post

Municipality Affairs (Post) (6202)

Approval Name	Description	Estimated Time
Site Approval for Information and Communication Activities	Municipality Approval for the Commercial Registration address or the site in which the Activity will be practiced	3 Days

Fee Details (if any)

10

License Information

General Conditions:
1. Size of shop/premises must be sufficient for the activity
2. Businesses may not carry out the activity outside the boundaries of the shop/ premises
3. It is prohibited to display or store any items or equipment outside the shop / premises boundary without prior approval from the Municipality. In the event of non-compliance, the Ministry of Municipality Affairs has the right to take necessary action.
4. Maintain cleanliness of the site
5. Comply with the parking space regulations as per the Construction Regulatory Requirements

Activity Specific Conditions:
1. The Commercial Registration for this activity can be registered on commercial, service, and industrial streets.
2. The commercial address of the Commercial Registration for this activity can an office address provided that the site is used for administrative purposes and is not located in a residential area

Note: Uploading pictures of the site/shop may expedite the process of obtaining approval

Required Documents

- Lease agreement (after obtaining the necessary approvals from other licensing entities)
- Shop photos

Other Documents

- Cabinet's Decision (56) of the year 2022 regarding the Regulatory Requirements of Construction for various areas in the Kingdom of Bahrain

Information and communication

ISIC4	Business activity
6209	Other information technology and computer services activities

Description

This activity includes other information technology and computer related activities not else-where classified, such as:
—Computer disaster recovery
—Installation (setting-up) of personal computers
—software installation

Business Requirements

Age

18 and above

Allowed for Nationalities

Bahraini 100%		GCC 100%	
American 100%		Singaporean 100%	
Icelander 100%		Liechtensteiner 100%	
Norwegian 100%		Swiss 100%	

Foreign Allowed up to 100%

Legal Type

It is allowed to register according to the legal forms mentioned below

Allowed for Individual Commercial Registration (ICR) : Yes

Allowed for Company Commercial Registration (CCR) : Yes

- Bahrain Shareholding Company (Public)
- With Limited Liability Company
- Branch of a Foreign Company
- Bahrain Shareholding Company (Closed)
- Partnership Company
- Simple Commandite Company
- Commandite By Shares Company
- Non Profit Company

Required Step of Licenses and Approvals

Ministry / Directorate	License / Approval Requirements	Approval Type
Municipality Affairs	Site Approval for Information and Communication Activities	Post

Municipality Affairs (Post) (6209)

Approval Name	Description	Estimated Time
Site Approval for Information and Communication Activities	Municipality Approval for the Commercial Registration address or the site in which the Activity will be practiced	3 Days

Fee Details (if any)

10

License Information

General Conditions:
1. Size of shop/premises must be sufficient for the activity
2. Businesses may not carry out the activity outside the boundaries of the shop/ premises
3. It is prohibited to display or store any items or equipment outside the shop / premises boundary without prior approval from the Municipality. In the event of non-compliance, the Ministry of Municipality Affairs has the right to take necessary action.
4. Maintain cleanliness of the site
5. Comply with the parking space regulations as per the Construction Regulatory Requirements

Activity Specific Conditions:
1. The Commercial Registration for this activity can be registered on commercial, service, and industrial streets.
2. The commercial address of the Commercial Registration for this activity can an office address provided that the site is used for administrative purposes and is not located in a residential area

Note: Uploading pictures of the site/shop may expedite the process of obtaining approval

Required Documents

- Lease agreement (after obtaining the necessary approvals from other licensing entities)
- Shop photos

Other Documents

- Cabinet's Decision (56) of the year 2022 regarding the Regulatory Requirements of Construction for various areas in the Kingdom of Bahrain

Information and communication

ISIC4	Business activity
6311	Data processing, hosting and related activities

Description

This activity includes:
Provision of infrastructure for hosting, data processing services and related activities-specialized hosting activities such as:
- Web hosting
- Streaming services
- Application hosting
- Application service provisioning
- General time share provision of mainframe facilities to clients

Data processing activities:
- Complete processing of data supplied by clients
- Generation of specialized reports from data supplied by clients
- Provision of data entry services

Business Requirements

Age

18 and above

Allowed for Nationalities

Bahraini 100%	GCC 100%
American 100%	Singaporean 100%
Icelander 100%	Liechtenstein er 100%
Norwegian 100%	Swiss 100%

Foreign Allowed up to 100%

Legal Type

It is allowed to register according to the legal forms mentioned below

Allowed for Individual Commercial Registration (ICR) : Yes

Allowed for Company Commercial Registration (CCR) : Yes

Allowed for Sijilli : Yes

- Bahrain Shareholding Company (Public)
- With Limited Liability Company
- Branch of a Foreign Company
- Bahrain Shareholding Company (Closed)
- Partnership Company
- Simple Commandite Company
- Commandite By Shares Company
- Non Profit Company

Required Step of Licenses and Approvals

Ministry / Directorate	License / Approval Requirements	Approval Type
Municipality Affairs	Site Approval for Information and Communication Activities	Post

Municipality Affairs (Post) (6311)

Approval Name	Description	Estimated Time
Site Approval for Information and Communication Activities	Municipality Approval for the Commercial Registration address or the site in which the Activity will be practiced	3 Days

Fee Details (if any)

10

License Information

General Conditions:
1. Size of shop/premises must be sufficient for the activity
2. Businesses may not carry out the activity outside the boundaries of the shop/ premises
3. It is prohibited to display or store any items or equipment outside the shop / premises boundary without prior approval from the Municipality. In the event of non-compliance, the Ministry of Municipality Affairs has the right to take necessary action.
4. Maintain cleanliness of the site
5. Comply with the parking space regulations as per the Construction Regulatory Requirements

Activity Specific Conditions:
1. The Commercial Registration for this activity can be registered on commercial, service, and industrial streets.
2. The commercial address of the Commercial Registration for this activity can an office address provided that the site is used for administrative purposes and is not located in a residential area

Note: Uploading pictures of the site/shop may expedite the process of obtaining approval

Required Documents

- Lease agreement (after obtaining the necessary approvals from other licensing entities)
- Shop photos

Other Documents

- Cabinet's Decision (56) of the year 2022 regarding the Regulatory Requirements of Construction for various areas in the Kingdom of Bahrain

Information and communication

ISIC4	Business activity
6312	Operations of eMarketplaces / websites / web portals

Description

This activity includes:
- Operation of an eMarketplace where products of other licensed businesses are displayed, listed, or advertised (i.e. the products are not owned by the commercial registration owner of the eMarketplace).
- Operation of web sites/mobile applications that use a search engine to generate and maintain extensive databases of Internet addresses and content in an easily searchable format
- Operation of other websites/mobile applications that act as portals to the Internet, such as media sites providing periodically updated content
- Operation of websites/mobile applications that employ cloud computing and network orchestration to provision services. For example, websites/mobile applications that connect suppliers with end-users
- The source of revenue from this activity could be from subscription, registration, commission, etc.
- If the owner of the commercial registration under this activity is intending to buy products to resell them via the eMarketplace, the following activity should be obtained “Retail Sale via the internet” (ISIC Code 4791)

Business Requirements

Age

18 and above

Allowed for Nationalities

Bahraini 100%	GCC 100%
American 100%	Singaporean 100%
Icelander 100%	Liechtenstein er 100%
Norwegian 100%	Swiss 100%

Foreign Allowed up to 100%

Legal Type

It is allowed to register according to the legal forms mentioned below

Allowed for Individual Commercial Registration (ICR) : Yes

Allowed for Company Commercial Registration (CCR) : Yes

Allowed for Sijilli : Yes

- Bahrain Shareholding Company (Public)
- With Limited Liability Company
- Branch of a Foreign Company
- Bahrain Shareholding Company (Closed)
- Partnership Company
- Simple Commandite Company
- Commandite By Shares Company
- Non Profit Company

Required Step of Licenses and Approvals

Ministry / Directorate	License / Approval Requirements	Approval Type
Information Systems Directorate	Notification For Operations of eMarketplaces / websites / web portals Activity	Notification Only
Municipality Affairs	Site Approval for Information and Communication Activities	Post

Information Systems Directorate (Notification Only) (6312)

Approval Name	Description	Estimated Time
Notification For Operations of eMarketplaces / websites / web portals Activity	Notify the Information Systems Directorate on obtaining a commercial registration with the license to practice the activity eMarketplaces / websites / web portals Activity	There is no License Information in this license. Days

Fee Details (if any)

There is no Estimated Processing Time (Days) in this license.

License Information

Licensing Requirements:
- The link of the eMarketplace must be provided in “eStore / eMarketplace Address” field in Sijilat system before commencing any business operations

Below are the operational requirements to be satisfied after obtaining the license to practice the activity:
- An online payment method must be provided as one of the options available to pay

- The listed products and services on the eMarketplace must belong to licensed and registered companies or commercial establishments.

- The eMarketplace owner should declare the names of companies and commercial establishments that are willing to sell their products and services

Other Documents

- Operations of eMarketplaces / websites / web portals Activity Approval Process

Municipality Affairs (Post) (6312)

Approval Name	Description	Estimated Time
Site Approval for Information and Communication Activities	Municipality Approval for the Commercial Registration address or the site in which the Activity will be practiced	3 Days

Fee Details (if any)

10

License Information

General Conditions:
1. Size of shop/premises must be sufficient for the activity
2. Businesses may not carry out the activity outside the boundaries of the shop/ premises
3. It is prohibited to display or store any items or equipment outside the shop / premises boundary without prior approval from the Municipality. In the event of non-compliance, the Ministry of Municipality Affairs has the right to take necessary action.
4. Maintain cleanliness of the site
5. Comply with the parking space regulations as per the Construction Regulatory Requirements

Activity Specific Conditions:
1. The Commercial Registration for this activity can be registered on commercial, service, and industrial streets.
2. The commercial address of the Commercial Registration for this activity can an office address provided that the site is used for administrative purposes and is not located in a residential area

Note: Uploading pictures of the site/shop may expedite the process of obtaining approval

Required Documents

- Lease agreement (after obtaining the necessary approvals from other licensing entities)
- Shop photos

Other Documents

- Cabinet's Decision (56) of the year 2022 regarding the Regulatory Requirements of Construction for various areas in the Kingdom of Bahrain

Information and communication

ISIC4	Business activity
6399	Other information service activities

Description

This activity includes other information service activities not elsewhere classified, such as:
- telephone based information services
- information search services on a contract or fee basis
- news clipping services, press clipping services, etc.

This activity excludes:
- activities of call centers

Business Requirements

Age

18 and above

Allowed for Nationalities

Bahraini 100%	GCC 100%
American 100%	Singaporean 100%
Icelander 100%	Liechtenstein er 100%
Norwegian 100%	Swiss 100%

Foreign Allowed up to 100%

Legal Type

It is allowed to register according to the legal forms mentioned below

Allowed for Individual Commercial Registration (ICR) : Yes

Allowed for Company Commercial Registration (CCR) : Yes

- Bahrain Shareholding Company (Public)
- With Limited Liability Company
- Branch of a Foreign Company
- Bahrain Shareholding Company (Closed)
- Partnership Company
- Simple Commandite Company
- Commandite By Shares Company
- Non Profit Company

Required Step of Licenses and Approvals

Ministry / Directorate	License / Approval Requirements	Approval Type
Municipality Affairs	Site Approval for Information and Communication Activities	Post

Municipality Affairs (Post) (6399)

Approval Name	Description	Estimated Time
Site Approval for Information and Communication Activities	Municipality Approval for the Commercial Registration address or the site in which the Activity will be practiced	3 Days

Fee Details (if any)

10

License Information

General Conditions:
1. Size of shop/premises must be sufficient for the activity
2. Businesses may not carry out the activity outside the boundaries of the shop/ premises
3. It is prohibited to display or store any items or equipment outside the shop / premises boundary without prior approval from the Municipality. In the event of non-compliance, the Ministry of Municipality Affairs has the right to take necessary action.
4. Maintain cleanliness of the site
5. Comply with the parking space regulations as per the Construction Regulatory Requirements

Activity Specific Conditions:
1. The Commercial Registration for this activity can be registered on commercial, service, and industrial streets.
2. The commercial address of the Commercial Registration for this activity can an office address provided that the site is used for administrative purposes and is not located in a residential area

Note: Uploading pictures of the site/shop may expedite the process of obtaining approval

Required Documents

- Lease agreement (after obtaining the necessary approvals from other licensing entities)
- Shop photos

Other Documents

- Cabinet's Decision (56) of the year 2022 regarding the Regulatory Requirements of Construction for various areas in the Kingdom of Bahrain

Financial and insurance activities

سجلات
SIJILAT
نظام السجلات التجارية
COMMERCIAL REGISTRATION PORTAL

Financial and insurance activities

ISIC4	Business activity
64191-1	Banks - Conventional Retail Banks - Locally Incorporated

Description

Deposit taking, providing credit, accepting deposits in accordance with Shariah Islamic principles (within specified rules determined by the Central Bank), managing Shariah-compliant profit and loss sharing investment accounts (restricted or unrestricted) in accordance with Shariah Islamic principles (within specified rules determined by the Central Bank), providing Islamic finance services (within specified rules determined by the Central Bank), doing any or all of the investment activities listed under Volume 4 of the Rulebook set out in the investment licenses category below (like dealing in financial instruments as principle etc.), providing money exchange services and issuing and managing payment operations.

Business Requirements

✔ Age

18 and above

✔ Allowed for Nationalities

Bahraini 100%	GCC 100%
American 100%	Singaporean 100%
Icelander 100%	Liechtenstein er 100%
Norwegian 100%	Swiss 100%

Foreign Allowed up to 100%

Legal Type

It is allowed to register according to the legal forms mentioned below

Allowed for Company Commercial Registration (CCR) : Yes

- Bahrain Shareholding Company (Public)
- Bahrain Shareholding Company (Closed)

Required Step of Licenses and Approvals

Ministry / Directorate	License / Approval Requirements	Approval Type
Municipality Affairs	Site Approval for Financial Services Activities	Post
CBB - Licensing directorate	Conventional Retail Banks - Locally Incorporated	Post

Municipality Affairs (Post) (64191-1)

Approval Name	Description	Estimated Time
Site Approval for Financial Services Activities	Municipality Approval for the Commercial Registration address or the site in which the Activity will be practiced	3 Days

Fee Details (if any)

10

License Information

General Conditions:
1. Size of shop/premises must be sufficient for the activity
2. Businesses may not carry out the activity outside the boundaries of the shop/ premises
3. It is prohibited to display or store any items or equipment outside the shop / premises boundary without prior approval from the Municipality. In the event of non-compliance, the Ministry of Municipality Affairs has the right to take necessary action.
4. Maintain cleanliness of the site
5. Comply with the parking space regulations as per the Construction Regulatory Requirements

Activity Specific Conditions:
1. The Commercial Registration for this activity can be registered on commercial, service, and industrial streets.
2. The commercial address of the Commercial Registration for this activity can an office address

Note: Uploading pictures of the site/shop may expedite the process of obtaining approval

Required Documents

- Lease agreement (after obtaining the necessary approvals from other licensing entities)
- Shop photos

Other Documents

- Cabinet's Decision (56) of the year 2022 regarding the Regulatory Requirements of Construction for various areas in the Kingdom of Bahrain

CBB - Licensing directorate (Post) (64191-1)

Approval Name	Description	Estimated Time
Conventional Retail Banks - Locally Incorporated	Deposit taking, providing credit, accepting deposits in accordance with Shariah Islamic principles (within specified rules determined by the Central Bank), managing Shariah-compliant profit and loss sharing investment accounts (restricted or unrestricted) in accordance with Shariah Islamic principles (within specified rules determined by the Central Bank), providing Islamic finance services (within specified rules determined by the Central Bank), doing any or all of the investment activities listed under Volume 4 of the Rulebook set out in the investment licenses category below (like dealing in financial instruments as principle etc.), providing money exchange services and issuing and managing payment	60 Days

operations.

Fee Details (if any)

Refer to "Licensing Requirement" module of CBB Rulebook Vol. 1 inhttps://cbben.thomsonreuters.com/rulebook/part-1

License Information

The following documents must be submitted:

1. Form 1: “License Application Form”
2. Form 2: “Application for Authorization of Controller”
3. Form 3: “Application for Approved Person status)”, for each individual proposed to undertake controlled functions (as defined under the controlled functions in the respective rulebook) in the proposed licensee.
4. A comprehensive business plan for the application, addressing the matters described below:
a. An outline of the history of the applicant and its shareholders.
b. The reasons for applying for a license, including the applicant’s strategy and market objectives.
c. The proposed type of activities to be carried on by the applicant in/from the Kingdom of Bahrain including the work and fund flow model.
d. The proposed board and senior management of the applicant and the proposed organizational structure of the applicant.
e. An assessment of the risks that may be faced by the applicant, together with the proposed systems and controls framework to be put in place for addressing those risks and to be used for key business functions
f. An opening balance sheet for the applicant, together with a three-year financial projection, with all assumptions clearly outlined, demonstrating that the applicant will be able to meet applicable capital adequacy requirements.
5. For overseas companies, a copy of the company’s current commercial registration or equivalent documentation.
6. Where the applicant is an existing Bahraini company, a certified copy of a board resolution of the applicant, confirming its decision to seek a CBB license.
7. Details of the proposed licensee’s close links, if any.
8. In the case of applicants that are part of a regulated group, a no-objection letter to the proposed license application from the applicant’s lead supervisor, together with confirmation that the group is in good regulatory standing and is in compliance with applicable supervisory requirements, including those relating to capital requirements.
9. In the case of branch applicants, a no-objection letter to the proposed license

application from the applicant's home supervisor, together with confirmation that the applicant is in good regulatory standing and the company concerned is in compliance with applicable supervisory requirements, including those relating to capital.
10. In the case of branch applicants, copies of the audited financial statements of the applicant (head office) for the three years immediately prior to the date of application.
11. In the case of applicants that are part of a group, copies of the audited financial statements of the applicant's group, for the three years immediately prior to the date of application.
12. In the case of applicants not falling under either of the above, copies of the audited financial statements of the applicant's major shareholder (where they are a legal person), for the three years immediately prior to the date of application.
13. In the case of applicants seeking to raise part of their capital through a private placement, a draft of the relevant private placement memorandum, together with a formal, independent legal opinion confirming that the memorandum complies with all applicable capital markets laws and regulations.
14. A copy of the applicant's memorandum and articles of association (in draft form for applicants creating a new company).

You may also refer to "Licensing Requirement" module of CBB Rulebook Vol. 1 by clicking the following linkhttps://cbben.thomsonreuters.com/sites/default/files/net_file_store/Vol_1_LR_January_2022.pdf

Required Documents

- Form 1: Application for a license
- Form 2: Application for authorization of controller
- Form 3: Application for approved person status

Financial and insurance activities

ISIC4	Business activity
64191-2	Banks - Conventional Retail Banks - Foreign Branch

Description

Deposit taking, providing credit, accepting deposits in accordance with Shariah Islamic principles (within specified rules determined by the Central Bank), managing Shariah-compliant profit and loss sharing investment accounts (restricted or unrestricted) in accordance with Shariah Islamic principles (within specified rules determined by the Central Bank), providing Islamic finance services (within specified rules determined by the Central Bank), doing any or all of the investment activities listed under Volume 4 of the Rulebook set out in the investment licenses category below (like dealing in financial instruments as principle etc.), providing money exchange services and issuing and managing payment operations.

Business Requirements

Age

18 and above

Allowed for Nationalities

Bahraini 100%	GCC 100%
American 100%	Singaporean 100%
Icelander 100%	Liechtenstein er 100%
Norwegian 100%	Swiss 100%

Foreign Allowed up to 100%

Legal Type

It is allowed to register according to the legal forms mentioned below

Allowed for Company Commercial Registration (CCR) : Yes

- Bahrain Shareholding Company (Public)
- Bahrain Shareholding Company (Closed)
- Branch of a Foreign Company

Required Step of Licenses and Approvals

Ministry / Directorate	License / Approval Requirements	Approval Type
Municipality Affairs	Site Approval for Financial Services Activities	Post
CBB - Licensing directorate	Conventional Retail Banks – Foreign Branch	Post

Municipality Affairs (Post) (64191-2)

Approval Name	Description	Estimated Time
Site Approval for Financial Services Activities	Municipality Approval for the Commercial Registration address or the site in which the Activity will be practiced	3 Days

Fee Details (if any)

10

License Information

General Conditions:
1. Size of shop/premises must be sufficient for the activity
2. Businesses may not carry out the activity outside the boundaries of the shop/ premises
3. It is prohibited to display or store any items or equipment outside the shop / premises boundary without prior approval from the Municipality. In the event of non-compliance, the Ministry of Municipality Affairs has the right to take necessary action.
4. Maintain cleanliness of the site
5. Comply with the parking space regulations as per the Construction Regulatory Requirements

Activity Specific Conditions:
1. The Commercial Registration for this activity can be registered on commercial, service, and industrial streets.
2. The commercial address of the Commercial Registration for this activity can an office address

Note: Uploading pictures of the site/shop may expedite the process of obtaining approval

Required Documents

- Lease agreement (after obtaining the necessary approvals from other licensing entities)
- Shop photos

Other Documents

- Cabinet's Decision (56) of the year 2022 regarding the Regulatory Requirements of Construction for various areas in the Kingdom of Bahrain

CBB - Licensing directorate (Post) (64191-2)

Approval Name	Description	Estimated Time
Conventional Retail Banks – Foreign Branch	Islamic principles (within specified rules determined by the Central Bank), managing Shariah-compliant profit and loss sharing investment accounts (restricted or unrestricted) in accordance with Shariah Islamic principles (within specified rules determined by the Central Bank), providing Islamic finance services (within specified rules determined by the Central Bank), doing any or all of the investment activities listed under Volume 4 of the Rulebook set out in the investment licenses category below (like dealing in financial instruments as principle etc.), providing money exchange services and issuing and managing payment operations.	60 Days

Fee Details (if any)

Refer to "Licensing Requirement" module of CBB Rulebook Vol. 1 inhttps://cbben.thomsonreuters.com/rulebook/part-1

License Information

The following documents must be submitted:

1. Form 1: “License Application Form”
2. Form 2: “Application for Authorization of Controller”
3. Form 3: “Application for Approved Person status)”, for each individual proposed to undertake controlled functions (as defined under the controlled functions in the respective rulebook) in the proposed licensee.
4. A comprehensive business plan for the application, addressing the matters described below:
a. An outline of the history of the applicant and its shareholders.
b. The reasons for applying for a license, including the applicant’s strategy and market objectives.
c. The proposed type of activities to be carried on by the applicant in/from the Kingdom of Bahrain including the work and fund flow model.
d. The proposed board and senior management of the applicant and the proposed organizational structure of the applicant.
e. An assessment of the risks that may be faced by the applicant, together with the proposed systems and controls framework to be put in place for addressing those risks and to be used for key business functions
f. An opening balance sheet for the applicant, together with a three-year financial projection, with all assumptions clearly outlined, demonstrating that the applicant will be able to meet applicable capital adequacy requirements.
5. For overseas companies, a copy of the company’s current commercial registration or equivalent documentation.
6. Where the applicant is an existing Bahraini company, a certified copy of a Board resolution of the applicant, confirming its decision to seek a CBB license.
7. Details of the proposed licensee’s close links, if any.
8. In the case of applicants that are part of a regulated group, a no-objection letter to the proposed license application from the applicant’s lead supervisor, together with confirmation that the group is in good regulatory standing and is in compliance with applicable supervisory requirements, including those relating to capital requirements.
9. In the case of branch applicants, a no-objection letter to the proposed license application from the applicant’s home supervisor, together with confirmation that the applicant is in good regulatory standing and the company concerned is in compliance with applicable supervisory requirements, including those relating to capital.
10. In the case of branch applicants, copies of the audited financial statements of the applicant (head office) for the three years immediately prior to the date of application.
11. In the case of applicants that are part of a group, copies of the audited financial statements of the applicant’s group, for the three years immediately prior to the date of application.

12. In the case of applicants not falling under either of the above, copies of the audited financial statements of the applicant's major shareholder (where they are a legal person), for the three years immediately prior to the date of application.
13. In the case of applicants seeking to raise part of their capital through a private placement, a draft of the relevant private placement memorandum, together with a formal, independent legal opinion confirming that the memorandum complies with all applicable capital markets laws and regulations.
14. A copy of the applicant's memorandum and articles of association (in draft form for applicants creating a new company).

You may also refer to "Licensing Requirement" module of CBB Rulebook Vol. 1 by clicking the following linkhttps://cbben.thomsonreuters.com/sites/default/files/net_file_store/Vol_1_LR_January_2022.pdf

Required Documents

- Form 1: Application for a license
- Form 2: Application for authorization of controller
- Form 3: Application for approved person status

Financial and insurance activities

ISIC4	Business activity
64191-3	Banks - Conventional Wholesale Banks - Locally Incorporated

Description

All the activities listed in the Conventional Retail Banks Category without any conditions or restrictions in relation only to non-resident individuals, institutions that do not have headquarters in the Kingdom of Bahrain, the Government of the Kingdom of Bahrain, other government institutions, in addition to Central-Bank-licensed financial institutions. Conventional Wholesale Banks may, however, undertake local translations with individuals residing in the Kingdom of Bahrain and local institutions (within specified rules determined by the Central Bank).

Business Requirements

✔ Age

18 and above

✔ Allowed for Nationalities

Bahraini 100%		GCC 100%	
American 100%		Singaporean 100%	
Icelander 100%		Liechtensteiner 100%	
Norwegian 100%		Swiss 100%	

Foreign Allowed up to 100%

Legal Type

It is allowed to register according to the legal forms mentioned below

Allowed for Company Commercial Registration (CCR) : Yes

- Bahrain Shareholding Company (Public)
- Bahrain Shareholding Company (Closed)

Required Step of Licenses and Approvals

Ministry / Directorate	License / Approval Requirements	Approval Type
CBB - Licensing directorate	Conventional Wholesale Banks - Locally Incorporated	Post
Municipality Affairs	Site Approval for Financial Services Activities	Post

CBB - Licensing directorate (Post) (64191-3)

Approval Name	Description	Estimated Time
Conventional Wholesale Banks - Locally Incorporated	Deposit taking, providing credit, accepting deposits in accordance with Shariah Islamic principles (within specified rules determined by the Central Bank), managing Shariah-compliant profit and loss sharing investment accounts (restricted or unrestricted) in accordance with Shariah Islamic principles (within specified rules determined by the Central Bank), providing Islamic finance services (within specified rules determined by the Central Bank), doing any or all of the investment activities listed under Volume 4 of the Rulebook set out in the investment licenses category below (like dealing in financial instruments as principle etc.), providing money exchange services and issuing and managing payment	60 Days

operations

Fee Details (if any)

Refer to "Licensing Requirement" module of CBB Rulebook Vol. 1 inhttps://cbben.thomsonreuters.com/rulebook/part-1

License Information

The following documents must be submitted:

1. Form 1: “License Application Form”
2. Form 2: “Application for Authorization of Controller”
3. Form 3: “Application for Approved Person status)”, for each individual proposed to undertake controlled functions (as defined under the controlled functions in the respective rulebook) in the proposed licensee.
4. A comprehensive business plan for the application, addressing the matters described below:
a. An outline of the history of the applicant and its shareholders.
b. The reasons for applying for a license, including the applicant’s strategy and market objectives.
c. The proposed type of activities to be carried on by the applicant in/from the Kingdom of Bahrain including the work and fund flow model.
d. The proposed Board and senior management of the applicant and the proposed organizational structure of the applicant.
e. An assessment of the risks that may be faced by the applicant, together with the proposed systems and controls framework to be put in place for addressing those risks and to be used for key business functions
f. An opening balance sheet for the applicant, together with a three-year financial projection, with all assumptions clearly outlined, demonstrating that the applicant will be able to meet applicable capital adequacy requirements.
5. For overseas companies, a copy of the company’s current commercial registration or equivalent documentation.
6. Where the applicant is an existing Bahraini company, a certified copy of a Board resolution of the applicant, confirming its decision to seek a CBB license.
7. Details of the proposed licensee’s close links, if any.
8. In the case of applicants that are part of a regulated group, a no-objection letter to the proposed license application from the applicant’s lead supervisor, together with confirmation that the group is in good regulatory standing and is in compliance with applicable supervisory requirements, including those relating to capital requirements.
9. In the case of branch applicants, a no-objection letter to the proposed license

application from the applicant's home supervisor, together with confirmation that the applicant is in good regulatory standing and the company concerned is in compliance with applicable supervisory requirements, including those relating to capital.
10. In the case of branch applicants, copies of the audited financial statements of the applicant (head office) for the three years immediately prior to the date of application.
11. In the case of applicants that are part of a group, copies of the audited financial statements of the applicant's group, for the three years immediately prior to the date of application.
12. In the case of applicants not falling under either of the above, copies of the audited financial statements of the applicant's major shareholder (where they are a legal person), for the three years immediately prior to the date of application.
13. In the case of applicants seeking to raise part of their capital through a private placement, a draft of the relevant private placement memorandum, together with a formal, independent legal opinion confirming that the memorandum complies with all applicable capital markets laws and regulations.
14. A copy of the applicant's memorandum and articles of association (in draft form for applicants creating a new company).

You may also refer to "Licensing Requirement" module of CBB Rulebook Vol. 1 by clicking the following linkhttps://cbben.thomsonreuters.com/sites/default/files/net_file_store/Vol_1_LR_January_2022.pdf

Required Documents

- Form 1: Application for a license
- Form 2: Application for authorization of controller
- Form 3: Application for approved person status

Municipality Affairs (Post) (64191-3)

Approval Name	Description	Estimated Time
Site Approval for Financial Services Activities	Municipality Approval for the Commercial Registration address or the site in which the Activity will be practiced	3 Days

Fee Details (if any)

10

License Information

General Conditions:
1. Size of shop/premises must be sufficient for the activity
2. Businesses may not carry out the activity outside the boundaries of the shop/ premises
3. It is prohibited to display or store any items or equipment outside the shop / premises boundary without prior approval from the Municipality. In the event of non-compliance, the Ministry of Municipality Affairs has the right to take necessary action.
4. Maintain cleanliness of the site
5. Comply with the parking space regulations as per the Construction Regulatory Requirements

Activity Specific Conditions:
1. The Commercial Registration for this activity can be registered on commercial, service, and industrial streets.
2. The commercial address of the Commercial Registration for this activity can an office address

Note: Uploading pictures of the site/shop may expedite the process of obtaining approval

Required Documents

- Lease agreement (after obtaining the necessary approvals from other licensing entities)
- Shop photos

Other Documents

- Cabinet's Decision (56) of the year 2022 regarding the Regulatory Requirements of Construction for various areas in the Kingdom of Bahrain

Financial and insurance activities

ISIC4	Business activity
64191-4	Banks - Conventional Wholesale Banks - Foreign Branch

Description

All the activities listed in the Conventional Retail Banks Category without any conditions or restrictions in relation only to non-resident individuals, institutions that do not have headquarters in the Kingdom of Bahrain, the Government of the Kingdom of Bahrain, other government institutions, in addition to Central-Bank-licensed financial institutions. Conventional Wholesale Banks may, however, undertake local translations with individuals residing in the Kingdom of Bahrain and local institutions (within specified rules determined by the Central Bank).

Business Requirements

✔ Age

18 and above

✔ Allowed for Nationalities

Bahraini 100%		GCC 100%	
American 100%		Singaporean 100%	
Icelander 100%		Liechtenstein er 100%	
Norwegian 100%		Swiss 100%	

Foreign Allowed up to 100%

Legal Type

It is allowed to register according to the legal forms mentioned below

Allowed for Company Commercial Registration (CCR) : Yes

- Bahrain Shareholding Company (Public)
- Bahrain Shareholding Company (Closed)
- Branch of a Foreign Company

Required Step of Licenses and Approvals

Ministry / Directorate	License / Approval Requirements	Approval Type
Municipality Affairs	Site Approval for Financial Services Activities	Post
CBB - Licensing directorate	Conventional Wholesale Banks - Foreign Branch	Post

Municipality Affairs (Post) (64191-4)

Approval Name	Description	Estimated Time
Site Approval for Financial Services Activities	Municipality Approval for the Commercial Registration address or the site in which the Activity will be practiced	3 Days

Fee Details (if any)

10

License Information

General Conditions:
1. Size of shop/premises must be sufficient for the activity
2. Businesses may not carry out the activity outside the boundaries of the shop/ premises
3. It is prohibited to display or store any items or equipment outside the shop / premises boundary without prior approval from the Municipality. In the event of non-compliance, the Ministry of Municipality Affairs has the right to take necessary action.
4. Maintain cleanliness of the site
5. Comply with the parking space regulations as per the Construction Regulatory Requirements

Activity Specific Conditions:
1. The Commercial Registration for this activity can be registered on commercial, service, and industrial streets.
2. The commercial address of the Commercial Registration for this activity can an office address

Note: Uploading pictures of the site/shop may expedite the process of obtaining approval

Required Documents

- Lease agreement (after obtaining the necessary approvals from other licensing entities)
- Shop photos

Other Documents

- Cabinet's Decision (56) of the year 2022 regarding the Regulatory Requirements of Construction for various areas in the Kingdom of Bahrain

CBB - Licensing directorate (Post) (64191-4)

Approval Name	Description	Estimated Time
Conventional Wholesale Banks - Foreign Branch	All the activities listed in the Conventional Retail Banks Category without any conditions or restrictions in relation only to non-resident individuals, institutions that do not have headquarters in the Kingdom of Bahrain, the Government of the Kingdom of Bahrain, other government institutions, in addition to Central-Bank-licensed financial institutions. Conventional Wholesale Banks may, however, undertake local translations with individuals residing in the Kingdom of Bahrain and local institutions (within specified rules determined by the Central Bank).	60 Days

Fee Details (if any)

Refer to "Licensing Requirement" module of CBB Rulebook Vol. 1 inhttps://cbben.thomsonreuters.com/rulebook/part-1

License Information

The following documents must be submitted:

1. Form 1: “License Application Form”
2. Form 2: “Application for Authorization of Controller”
3. Form 3: “Application for Approved Person status)”, for each individual proposed to undertake controlled functions (as defined under the controlled functions in the respective rulebook) in the proposed licensee.
4. A comprehensive business plan for the application, addressing the matters described below:
a. An outline of the history of the applicant and its shareholders.
b. The reasons for applying for a license, including the applicant’s strategy and market objectives.
c. The proposed type of activities to be carried on by the applicant in/from the Kingdom of Bahrain including the work and fund flow model.
d. The proposed board and senior management of the applicant and the proposed organizational structure of the applicant.
e. An assessment of the risks that may be faced by the applicant, together with the proposed systems and controls framework to be put in place for addressing those risks and to be used for key business functions
f. An opening balance sheet for the applicant, together with a three-year financial projection, with all assumptions clearly outlined, demonstrating that the applicant will be able to meet applicable capital adequacy requirements.
5. For overseas companies, a copy of the company’s current commercial registration or equivalent documentation.
6. Where the applicant is an existing Bahraini company, a certified copy of a Board resolution of the applicant, confirming its decision to seek a CBB license.
7. Details of the proposed licensee’s close links, if any.
8. In the case of applicants that are part of a regulated group, a no-objection letter to the proposed license application from the applicant’s lead supervisor, together with confirmation that the group is in good regulatory standing and is in compliance with applicable supervisory requirements, including those relating to capital requirements.
9. In the case of branch applicants, a no-objection letter to the proposed license application from the applicant’s home supervisor, together with confirmation that the applicant is in good regulatory standing and the company concerned is in compliance with applicable supervisory requirements, including those relating to capital.
10. In the case of branch applicants, copies of the audited financial statements of the applicant (head office) for the three years immediately prior to the date of application.
11. In the case of applicants that are part of a group, copies of the audited financial statements of the applicant’s group, for the three years immediately prior to the date of application.
12. In the case of applicants not falling under either of the above, copies of the audited financial statements of the applicant’s major shareholder (where they are a legal person), for the three years immediately prior to the date of application.

13. In the case of applicants seeking to raise part of their capital through a private placement, a draft of the relevant private placement memorandum, together with a formal, independent legal opinion confirming that the memorandum complies with all applicable capital markets laws and regulations.
14. A copy of the applicant's memorandum and articles of association (in draft form for applicants creating a new company).

You may also refer to "Licensing Requirement" module of CBB Rulebook Vol. 1 by clicking the following linkhttps://cbben.thomsonreuters.com/sites/default/files/net_file_store/Vol_1_LR_January_2022.pdf

Required Documents

- Form 1: Application for a license
- Form 2: Application for authorization of controller
- Form 3: Application for approved person status

Financial and insurance activities

ISIC4	Business activity
64191-5	Banks - Retail Banks (Islamic Principles) - Locally Incorporated

Description

Deposit taking in accordance with Islamic Shariah, managing Shariah profit and loss sharing investment accounts (restricted or unrestricted), providing Islamic finance services, doing any or all Central-Bank -regulated investment activities which are limited only to Islamic Shariah-compliant financial instruments, providing money exchange services and issuing and managing payment operations.

Business Requirements

✔ Age

18 and above

✔ Allowed for Nationalities

Bahraini 100%	GCC 100%
American 100%	Singaporean 100%
Icelander 100%	Liechtenstein er 100%
Norwegian 100%	Swiss 100%

Foreign Allowed up to 100%

Legal Type

It is allowed to register according to the legal forms mentioned below

Allowed for Company Commercial Registration (CCR) : Yes

- Bahrain Shareholding Company (Public)
- Bahrain Shareholding Company (Closed)

Required Step of Licenses and Approvals

Ministry / Directorate	License / Approval Requirements	Approval Type
Municipality Affairs	Site Approval for Financial Services Activities	Post
CBB - Licensing directorate	Retail Banks (Islamic Principles) - Locally Incorporated	Post

Municipality Affairs (Post) (64191-5)

Approval Name	Description	Estimated Time
Site Approval for Financial Services Activities	Municipality Approval for the Commercial Registration address or the site in which the Activity will be practiced	3 Days

Fee Details (if any)

10

License Information

General Conditions:
1. Size of shop/premises must be sufficient for the activity
2. Businesses may not carry out the activity outside the boundaries of the shop/ premises
3. It is prohibited to display or store any items or equipment outside the shop / premises boundary without prior approval from the Municipality. In the event of non-compliance, the Ministry of Municipality Affairs has the right to take necessary action.
4. Maintain cleanliness of the site
5. Comply with the parking space regulations as per the Construction Regulatory Requirements

Activity Specific Conditions:
1. The Commercial Registration for this activity can be registered on commercial, service, and industrial streets.
2. The commercial address of the Commercial Registration for this activity can an office address

Note: Uploading pictures of the site/shop may expedite the process of obtaining approval

Required Documents

- Lease agreement (after obtaining the necessary approvals from other licensing entities)
- Shop photos

Other Documents

- Cabinet's Decision (56) of the year 2022 regarding the Regulatory Requirements of Construction for various areas in the Kingdom of Bahrain

CBB - Licensing directorate (Post) (64191-5)

Approval Name	Description	Estimated Time
Retail Banks (Islamic Principles) - Locally Incorporated	All the activities listed in the Conventional Retail Banks Category without any conditions or restrictions in relation only to non-resident individuals, institutions that do not have headquarters in the Kingdom of Bahrain, the Government of the Kingdom of Bahrain, other government institutions, in addition to Central-Bank-licensed financial institutions. Conventional Wholesale Banks may, however, undertake local translations with individuals residing in the Kingdom of Bahrain and local institutions (within specified rules determined by the Central Bank).	60 Days

Fee Details (if any)

Refer to "Licensing Requirement" module of CBB Rulebook Vol. 1 inhttps://cbben.thomsonreuters.com/rulebook/part-2

License Information

The following documents must be submitted:

1. Form 1: “License Application Form”
2. Form 2: “Application for Authorization of Controller”
3. Form 3: “Application for Approved Person status)”, for each individual proposed to undertake controlled functions (as defined under the controlled functions in the respective rulebook) in the proposed licensee.
4. A comprehensive business plan for the application, addressing the matters described below:
a. An outline of the history of the applicant and its shareholders.
b. The reasons for applying for a license, including the applicant’s strategy and market objectives.
c. The proposed type of activities to be carried on by the applicant in/from the Kingdom of Bahrain including the work and fund flow model.
d. The proposed board and senior management of the applicant and the proposed organizational structure of the applicant.
e. An assessment of the risks that may be faced by the applicant, together with the proposed systems and controls framework to be put in place for addressing those risks and to be used for key business functions
f. An opening balance sheet for the applicant, together with a three-year financial projection, with all assumptions clearly outlined, demonstrating that the applicant will be able to meet applicable capital adequacy requirements.
5. For overseas companies, a copy of the company’s current commercial registration or equivalent documentation.
6. Where the applicant is an existing Bahraini company, a certified copy of a Board resolution of the applicant, confirming its decision to seek a CBB license.
7. Details of the proposed licensee’s close links, if any.
8. In the case of applicants that are part of a regulated group, a no-objection letter to the proposed license application from the applicant’s lead supervisor, together with confirmation that the group is in good regulatory standing and is in compliance with applicable supervisory requirements, including those relating to capital requirements.
9. In the case of branch applicants, a no-objection letter to the proposed license application from the applicant’s home supervisor, together with confirmation that the applicant is in good regulatory standing and the company concerned is in compliance with applicable supervisory requirements, including those relating to capital.
10. In the case of branch applicants, copies of the audited financial statements of the applicant (head office) for the three years immediately prior to the date of application.
11. In the case of applicants that are part of a group, copies of the audited financial statements of the applicant’s group, for the three years immediately prior to the date of application.
12. In the case of applicants not falling under either of the above, copies of the audited financial statements of the applicant’s major shareholder (where they are a legal person), for the three years immediately prior to the date of application.

13. In the case of applicants seeking to raise part of their capital through a private placement, a draft of the relevant private placement memorandum, together with a formal, independent legal opinion confirming that the memorandum complies with all applicable capital markets laws and regulations.
14. A copy of the applicant's memorandum and articles of association (in draft form for applicants creating a new company).

You may also refer to "Licensing Requirement" module of CBB Rulebook Vol. 1 by clicking the following linkhttps://cbben.thomsonreuters.com/sites/default/files/net_file_store/Vol_1_LR_January_2022.pdf

Required Documents

- Form 1: Application for a license
- Form 2: Application for authorization of controller
- Form 3: Application for approved person status

Financial and insurance activities

ISIC4	Business activity
64191-6	Banks - Retail Banks (Islamic Principles) - Foreign

Description

Deposit taking in accordance with Islamic Shariah, managing Shariah profit and loss sharing investment accounts (restricted or unrestricted), providing Islamic finance services, doing any or all Central-Bank -regulated investment activities which are limited only to Islamic Shariah-compliant financial instruments, providing money exchange services and issuing and managing payment operations.

Business Requirements

Age

18 and above

Allowed for Nationalities

Bahraini 100%	GCC 100%
American 100%	Singaporean 100%
Icelander 100%	Liechtensteiner 100%
Norwegian 100%	Swiss 100%

Foreign Allowed up to 100%

Legal Type

It is allowed to register according to the legal forms mentioned below

Allowed for Company Commercial Registration (CCR) : Yes

- Bahrain Shareholding Company (Public)
- Bahrain Shareholding Company (Closed)
- Branch of a Foreign Company

Required Step of Licenses and Approvals

Ministry / Directorate	License / Approval Requirements	Approval Type
Municipality Affairs	Site Approval for Financial Services Activities	Post
CBB - Licensing directorate	Retail Banks (Islamic Principles) - Foreign Branch	Post

Municipality Affairs (Post) (64191-6)

Approval Name	Description	Estimated Time
Site Approval for Financial Services Activities	Municipality Approval for the Commercial Registration address or the site in which the Activity will be practiced	3 Days

Fee Details (if any)

10

License Information

General Conditions:
1. Size of shop/premises must be sufficient for the activity
2. Businesses may not carry out the activity outside the boundaries of the shop/ premises
3. It is prohibited to display or store any items or equipment outside the shop / premises boundary without prior approval from the Municipality. In the event of non-compliance, the Ministry of Municipality Affairs has the right to take necessary action.
4. Maintain cleanliness of the site
5. Comply with the parking space regulations as per the Construction Regulatory Requirements

Activity Specific Conditions:
1. The Commercial Registration for this activity can be registered on commercial, service, and industrial streets.
2. The commercial address of the Commercial Registration for this activity can an office address

Note: Uploading pictures of the site/shop may expedite the process of obtaining approval

Required Documents

- Lease agreement (after obtaining the necessary approvals from other licensing entities)
- Shop photos

Other Documents

- Cabinet's Decision (56) of the year 2022 regarding the Regulatory Requirements of Construction for various areas in the Kingdom of Bahrain

CBB - Licensing directorate (Post) (64191-6)

Approval Name	Description	Estimated Time
Retail Banks (Islamic Principles) - Foreign Branch	All the activities listed in the Conventional Retail Banks Category without any conditions or restrictions in relation only to non-resident individuals, institutions that do not have headquarters in the Kingdom of Bahrain, the Government of the Kingdom of Bahrain, other government institutions, in addition to Central-Bank-licensed financial institutions. Conventional Wholesale Banks may, however, undertake local translations with individuals residing in the Kingdom of Bahrain and local institutions (within specified rules determined by the Central Bank).	60 Days

Fee Details (if any)

Refer to "Licensing Requirement" module of CBB Rulebook Vol. 1 in https://cbben.thomsonreuters.com/rulebook/part-2

License Information

The following documents must be submitted:

1. Form 1: “License Application Form”
2. Form 2: “Application for Authorization of Controller”
3. Form 3: “Application for Approved Person status)”, for each individual proposed to undertake controlled functions (as defined under the controlled functions in the respective rulebook) in the proposed licensee.
4. A comprehensive business plan for the application, addressing the matters described below:
a. An outline of the history of the applicant and its shareholders.
b. The reasons for applying for a license, including the applicant’s strategy and market objectives.
c. The proposed type of activities to be carried on by the applicant in/from the Kingdom of Bahrain including the work and fund flow model.
d. The proposed Board and senior management of the applicant and the proposed organizational structure of the applicant.
e. An assessment of the risks that may be faced by the applicant, together with the proposed systems and controls framework to be put in place for addressing those risks and to be used for key business functions
f. An opening balance sheet for the applicant, together with a three-year financial projection, with all assumptions clearly outlined, demonstrating that the applicant will be able to meet applicable capital adequacy requirements.
5. For overseas companies, a copy of the company’s current commercial registration or equivalent documentation.
6. Where the applicant is an existing Bahraini company, a certified copy of a Board resolution of the applicant, confirming its decision to seek a CBB license.
7. Details of the proposed licensee’s close links, if any.
8. In the case of applicants that are part of a regulated group, a no-objection letter to the proposed license application from the applicant’s lead supervisor, together with confirmation that the group is in good regulatory standing and is in compliance with applicable supervisory requirements, including those relating to capital requirements.
9. In the case of branch applicants, a no-objection letter to the proposed license application from the applicant’s home supervisor, together with confirmation that the applicant is in good regulatory standing and the company concerned is in compliance with applicable supervisory requirements, including those relating to capital.
10. In the case of branch applicants, copies of the audited financial statements of the applicant (head office) for the three years immediately prior to the date of application.
11. In the case of applicants that are part of a group, copies of the audited financial statements of the applicant’s group, for the three years immediately prior to the date of application.
12. In the case of applicants not falling under either of the above, copies of the audited financial statements of the applicant’s major shareholder (where they are a legal person), for the three years immediately prior to the date of application.

13. In the case of applicants seeking to raise part of their capital through a private placement, a draft of the relevant private placement memorandum, together with a formal, independent legal opinion confirming that the memorandum complies with all applicable capital markets laws and regulations.
14. A copy of the applicant's memorandum and articles of association (in draft form for applicants creating a new company).

You may also refer to "Licensing Requirement" module of CBB Rulebook Vol. 1 by clicking the following linkhttps://cbben.thomsonreuters.com/sites/default/files/net_file_store/Vol_1_LR_January_2022.pdf

Required Documents

- Form 1: Application for a license
- Form 2: Application for authorization of controller
- Form 3: Application for approved person status

Financial and insurance activities

ISIC4	Business activity
64191-7	Banks - Wholesale Banks (Islamic Principles) - Locally Incorporated

Description

All the activities listed in the Retail Banks (Islamic Principles) Category without any conditions or restrictions in relation only to non-resident individuals, institutions that do not have headquarters in the Kingdom of Bahrain, the Government of the Kingdom of Bahrain, other government institutions, in addition to Central-Bank-licensed financial institutions. Wholesale Banks (Islamic Principles) may, however, undertake local translations with individuals residing in the Kingdom of Bahrain and local institutions (within specified rules determined by the Central Bank).

Business Requirements

✔ Age

18 and above

✔ Allowed for Nationalities

Bahraini 100%		GCC 100%	
American 100%		Singaporean 100%	
Icelander 100%		Liechtensteiner 100%	
Norwegian 100%		Swiss 100%	

Foreign Allowed up to 100%

Legal Type

It is allowed to register according to the legal forms mentioned below

Allowed for Company Commercial Registration (CCR) : Yes

- Bahrain Shareholding Company (Public)
- Bahrain Shareholding Company (Closed)

Required Step of Licenses and Approvals

Ministry / Directorate	License / Approval Requirements	Approval Type
CBB - Licensing directorate	Wholesale Banks (Islamic Principles) - Locally Incorporated	Post
Municipality Affairs	Site Approval for Financial Services Activities	Post

CBB - Licensing directorate (Post) (64191-7)

Approval Name	Description	Estimated Time
Wholesale Banks (Islamic Principles) - Locally Incorporated	All the activities listed in the Retail Banks (Islamic Principles) Category without any conditions or restrictions in relation only to non-resident individuals, institutions that do not have headquarters in the Kingdom of Bahrain, the Government of the Kingdom of Bahrain, other government institutions, in addition to Central-Bank-licensed financial institutions. Wholesale Banks (Islamic Principles) may, however, undertake local translations with individuals residing in the Kingdom of Bahrain and local institutions (within specified rules determined by the Central Bank).	60 Days

Fee Details (if any)

Refer to "Licensing Requirement" module of CBB Rulebook Vol. 1 inhttps://cbben.thomsonreuters.com/rulebook/part-2

License Information

The following documents must be submitted:

1. Form 1: “License Application Form”
2. Form 2: “Application for Authorization of Controller”
3. Form 3: “Application for Approved Person status)”, for each individual proposed to undertake controlled functions (as defined under the controlled functions in the respective rulebook) in the proposed licensee.
4. A comprehensive business plan for the application, addressing the matters described below:
a. An outline of the history of the applicant and its shareholders.
b. The reasons for applying for a license, including the applicant’s strategy and market objectives.
c. The proposed type of activities to be carried on by the applicant in/from the Kingdom of Bahrain including the work and fund flow model.
d. The proposed board and senior management of the applicant and the proposed organizational structure of the applicant.
e. An assessment of the risks that may be faced by the applicant, together with the proposed systems and controls framework to be put in place for addressing those risks and to be used for key business functions
f. An opening balance sheet for the applicant, together with a three-year financial projection, with all assumptions clearly outlined, demonstrating that the applicant will be able to meet applicable capital adequacy requirements.
5. For overseas companies, a copy of the company’s current commercial registration or equivalent documentation.
6. Where the applicant is an existing Bahraini company, a certified copy of a Board resolution of the applicant, confirming its decision to seek a CBB license.
7. Details of the proposed licensee’s close links, if any.
8. In the case of applicants that are part of a regulated group, a no-objection letter to the proposed license application from the applicant’s lead supervisor, together with confirmation that the group is in good regulatory standing and is in compliance with applicable supervisory requirements, including those relating to capital requirements.
9. In the case of branch applicants, a no-objection letter to the proposed license application from the applicant’s home supervisor, together with confirmation that the applicant is in good regulatory standing and the company concerned is in compliance with applicable supervisory requirements, including those relating to capital.
10. In the case of branch applicants, copies of the audited financial statements of the applicant (head office) for the three years immediately prior to the date of application.
11. In the case of applicants that are part of a group, copies of the audited financial statements of the applicant’s group, for the three years immediately prior to the date of application.
12. In the case of applicants not falling under either of the above, copies of the audited financial statements of the applicant’s major shareholder (where they are a legal person), for the three years immediately prior to the date of application.

13. In the case of applicants seeking to raise part of their capital through a private placement, a draft of the relevant private placement memorandum, together with a formal, independent legal opinion confirming that the memorandum complies with all applicable capital markets laws and regulations.
14. A copy of the applicant's memorandum and articles of association (in draft form for applicants creating a new company).

You may also refer to "Licensing Requirement" module of CBB Rulebook Vol. 1 by clicking the following linkhttps://cbben.thomsonreuters.com/sites/default/files/net_file_store/Vol_1_LR_January_2022.pdf

Required Documents

- Form 1: Application for a license
- Form 2: Application for authorization of controller
- Form 3: Application for approved person status

Municipality Affairs (Post) (64191-7)

Approval Name	Description	Estimated Time
Site Approval for Financial Services Activities	Municipality Approval for the Commercial Registration address or the site in which the Activity will be practiced	3 Days

Fee Details (if any)

10

License Information

General Conditions:
1. Size of shop/premises must be sufficient for the activity
2. Businesses may not carry out the activity outside the boundaries of the shop/ premises
3. It is prohibited to display or store any items or equipment outside the shop / premises boundary without prior approval from the Municipality. In the event of non-compliance, the Ministry of Municipality Affairs has the right to take necessary action.
4. Maintain cleanliness of the site
5. Comply with the parking space regulations as per the Construction Regulatory Requirements

Activity Specific Conditions:
1. The Commercial Registration for this activity can be registered on commercial, service, and industrial streets.
2. The commercial address of the Commercial Registration for this activity can an office address

Note: Uploading pictures of the site/shop may expedite the process of obtaining approval

Required Documents

- Lease agreement (after obtaining the necessary approvals from other licensing entities)
- Shop photos

Other Documents

- Cabinet's Decision (56) of the year 2022 regarding the Regulatory Requirements of Construction for various areas in the Kingdom of Bahrain

Financial and insurance activities

ISIC4	Business activity
64191-8	Banks - Wholesale Banks (Islamic Principles) - Foreign

Description

All the activities listed in the Retail Banks (Islamic Principles) Category without any conditions or restrictions in relation only to non-resident individuals, institutions that do not have headquarters in the Kingdom of Bahrain, the Government of the Kingdom of Bahrain, other government institutions, in addition to Central-Bank-licensed financial institutions. Wholesale Banks (Islamic Principles) may, however, undertake local translations with individuals residing in the Kingdom of Bahrain and local institutions (within specified rules determined by the Central Bank).

Business Requirements

✔ Age

18 and above

✔ Allowed for Nationalities

Bahraini 100%		GCC 100%	
American 100%		Singaporean 100%	
Icelander 100%		Liechtenstein er 100%	
Norwegian 100%		Swiss 100%	

Foreign Allowed up to 100%

Legal Type

It is allowed to register according to the legal forms mentioned below

Allowed for Company Commercial Registration (CCR) : Yes

- Bahrain Shareholding Company (Public)
- Branch of a Foreign Company
- Bahrain Shareholding Company (Closed)

Required Step of Licenses and Approvals

Ministry / Directorate	License / Approval Requirements	Approval Type
Municipality Affairs	Site Approval for Financial Services Activities	Post
CBB - Licensing directorate	Wholesale Banks (Islamic Principles) - Foreign Branch	Post

Municipality Affairs (Post) (64191-8)

Approval Name	Description	Estimated Time
Site Approval for Financial Services Activities	Municipality Approval for the Commercial Registration address or the site in which the Activity will be practiced	3 Days

Fee Details (if any)

10

License Information

General Conditions:
1. Size of shop/premises must be sufficient for the activity
2. Businesses may not carry out the activity outside the boundaries of the shop/ premises
3. It is prohibited to display or store any items or equipment outside the shop / premises boundary without prior approval from the Municipality. In the event of non-compliance, the Ministry of Municipality Affairs has the right to take necessary action.
4. Maintain cleanliness of the site
5. Comply with the parking space regulations as per the Construction Regulatory Requirements

Activity Specific Conditions:
1. The Commercial Registration for this activity can be registered on commercial, service, and industrial streets.
2. The commercial address of the Commercial Registration for this activity can an office address

Note: Uploading pictures of the site/shop may expedite the process of obtaining approval

Required Documents

- Lease agreement (after obtaining the necessary approvals from other licensing entities)
- Shop photos

Other Documents

- Cabinet's Decision (56) of the year 2022 regarding the Regulatory Requirements of Construction for various areas in the Kingdom of Bahrain

CBB - Licensing directorate (Post) (64191-8)

Approval Name	Description	Estimated Time
Wholesale Banks (Islamic Principles) - Foreign Branch	All the activities listed in the Retail Banks (Islamic Principles) Category without any conditions or restrictions in relation only to non-resident individuals, institutions that do not have headquarters in the Kingdom of Bahrain, the Government of the Kingdom of Bahrain, other government institutions, in addition to Central-Bank-licensed financial institutions. Wholesale Banks (Islamic Principles) may, however, undertake local translations with individuals residing in the Kingdom of Bahrain and local institutions (within specified rules determined by the Central Bank).	60 Days

Fee Details (if any)

Refer to "Licensing Requirement" module of CBB Rulebook Vol. 1 inhttps://cbben.thomsonreuters.com/rulebook/part-2

License Information

The following documents must be submitted:

1. Form 1: “License Application Form”
2. Form 2: “Application for Authorization of Controller”
3. Form 3: “Application for Approved Person status)”, for each individual proposed to undertake controlled functions (as defined under the controlled functions in the respective rulebook) in the proposed licensee.
4. A comprehensive business plan for the application, addressing the matters described below:
a. An outline of the history of the applicant and its shareholders.
b. The reasons for applying for a license, including the applicant’s strategy and market objectives.
c. The proposed type of activities to be carried on by the applicant in/from the Kingdom of Bahrain including the work and fund flow model.
d. The proposed board and senior management of the applicant and the proposed organizational structure of the applicant.
e. An assessment of the risks that may be faced by the applicant, together with the proposed systems and controls framework to be put in place for addressing those risks and to be used for key business functions
f. An opening balance sheet for the applicant, together with a three-year financial projection, with all assumptions clearly outlined, demonstrating that the applicant will be able to meet applicable capital adequacy requirements.
5. For overseas companies, a copy of the company’s current commercial registration or equivalent documentation.
6. Where the applicant is an existing Bahraini company, a certified copy of a Board resolution of the applicant, confirming its decision to seek a CBB license.
7. Details of the proposed licensee’s close links, if any.
8. In the case of applicants that are part of a regulated group, a no-objection letter to the proposed license application from the applicant’s lead supervisor, together with confirmation that the group is in good regulatory standing and is in compliance with applicable supervisory requirements, including those relating to capital requirements.
9. In the case of branch applicants, a no-objection letter to the proposed license application from the applicant’s home supervisor, together with confirmation that the applicant is in good regulatory standing and the company concerned is in compliance with applicable supervisory requirements, including those relating to capital.
10. In the case of branch applicants, copies of the audited financial statements of the applicant (head office) for the three years immediately prior to the date of application.
11. In the case of applicants that are part of a group, copies of the audited financial statements of the applicant’s group, for the three years immediately prior to the date of application.
12. In the case of applicants not falling under either of the above, copies of the audited financial statements of the applicant’s major shareholder (where they are a legal person), for the three years immediately prior to the date of application.

13. In the case of applicants seeking to raise part of their capital through a private placement, a draft of the relevant private placement memorandum, together with a formal, independent legal opinion confirming that the memorandum complies with all applicable capital markets laws and regulations.
14. A copy of the applicant's memorandum and articles of association (in draft form for applicants creating a new company).

You may also refer to "Licensing Requirement" module of CBB Rulebook Vol. 1 by clicking the following linkhttps://cbben.thomsonreuters.com/sites/default/files/net_file_store/Vol_1_LR_January_2022.pdf

Required Documents

- Form 1: Application for a license
- Form 2: Application for authorization of controller
- Form 3: Application for approved person status

Financial and insurance activities

ISIC4	Business activity
64193	Money Exchange Companies

Description

Buying and selling and exchange of foreign currency, remittance of money out of the Kingdom of Bahrain, buying and selling of travelers cheques, dealing in precious metals within the permitted limits, or any other financial activity that the Central Bank licenses permits.

Business Requirements

Age

18 and above

Allowed for Nationalities

Bahraini 100%	GCC 100%
American 100%	Singaporean 100%
Icelander 100%	Liechtenstein er 100%
Norwegian 100%	Swiss 100%

Foreign Allowed up to 100%

Legal Type

It is allowed to register according to the legal forms mentioned below

Allowed for Company Commercial Registration (CCR) : Yes

- Bahrain Shareholding Company (Public)
- With Limited Liability Company
- Bahrain Shareholding Company (Closed)
- Non Profit Company

Required Step of Licenses and Approvals

Ministry / Directorate	License / Approval Requirements	Approval Type
CBB - Licensing directorate	Money Changer	Post
Municipality Affairs	Site Approval for Money Exchange Activities	Post

CBB - Licensing directorate (Post) (64193)

Approval Name	Description	Estimated Time
Money Changer	Buying and selling and exchange of foreign currency, remittance of money out of the Kingdom of Bahrain, buying and selling of travelers cheques, dealing in precious metals within the permitted limits, or any other financial activity that the Central Bank licenses permits.	60 Days

Fee Details (if any)

Refer to "Licensing Requirement" module of CBB Rulebook Vol. 1 inhttps://cbben.thomsonreuters.com/rulebook/central-bank-bahrain-volume-5-specialised-licensees

License Information

The following documents must be submitted:

1. Form 1: “License Application Form”
2. Form 2: “Application for Authorization of Controller”
3. Form 3: “Application for Approved Person status)”, for each individual proposed to undertake controlled functions (as defined under the controlled functions in the respective rulebook) in the proposed licensee.
4. A comprehensive business plan for the application, addressing the matters described below:

a. An outline of the history of the applicant and its shareholders.
b. The reasons for applying for a license, including the applicant’s strategy and market objectives.

c. The proposed type of activities to be carried on by the applicant in/from the Kingdom of Bahrain including the work and fund flow model.
d. The proposed board and senior management of the applicant and the proposed organizational structure of the applicant.
e. An assessment of the risks that may be faced by the applicant, together with the proposed systems and controls framework to be put in place for addressing those risks and to be used for key business functions
f. An opening balance sheet for the applicant, together with a three-year financial projection, with all assumptions clearly outlined, demonstrating that the applicant will be able to meet applicable capital adequacy requirements.
5. For overseas companies, a copy of the company's current commercial registration or equivalent documentation.
6. Where the applicant is an existing Bahraini company, a certified copy of a Board resolution of the applicant, confirming its decision to seek a CBB license.
7. Details of the proposed licensee's close links, if any.
8. In the case of applicants that are part of a regulated group, a no-objection letter to the proposed license application from the applicant's lead supervisor, together with confirmation that the group is in good regulatory standing and is in compliance with applicable supervisory requirements, including those relating to capital requirements.
9. In the case of branch applicants, a no-objection letter to the proposed license application from the applicant's home supervisor, together with confirmation that the applicant is in good regulatory standing and the company concerned is in compliance with applicable supervisory requirements, including those relating to capital.
10. In the case of branch applicants, copies of the audited financial statements of the applicant (head office) for the three years immediately prior to the date of application.
11. In the case of applicants that are part of a group, copies of the audited financial statements of the applicant's group, for the three years immediately prior to the date of application.
12. In the case of applicants not falling under either of the above, copies of the audited financial statements of the applicant's major shareholder (where they are a legal person), for the three years immediately prior to the date of application.
13. In the case of applicants seeking to raise part of their capital through a private placement, a draft of the relevant private placement memorandum, together with a formal, independent legal opinion confirming that the memorandum complies with all applicable capital markets laws and regulations.
14. A copy of the applicant's memorandum and articles of association (in draft form for applicants creating a new company).

You may also refer to "Licensing Requirement" module of CBB Rulebook Vol. 1 by clicking the following linkhttps://cbben.thomsonreuters.com/sites/default/files/net_file_store/Vol_1_LR_January_2022.pdf

Required Documents

- Form 1: Application for a license
- Form 2: Application for authorization of controller
- Form 3: Application for approved person status

Municipality Affairs (Post) (64193)

Approval Name	Description	Estimated Time
Site Approval for Money Exchange Activities	Municipality Approval for the Commercial Registration address or the site in which the Activity will be practiced	3 Days

Fee Details (if any)

10

License Information

General Conditions:
1. Size of shop/premises must be sufficient for the activity
2. Businesses may not carry out the activity outside the boundaries of the shop/ premises
3. It is prohibited to display or store any items or equipment outside the shop / premises boundary without prior approval from the Municipality. In the event of non-compliance, the Ministry of Municipality Affairs has the right to take necessary action.
4. Maintain cleanliness of the site
5. Comply with the parking space regulations as per the Construction Regulatory Requirements

Activity Specific Conditions:
1. The Commercial Registration for this activity can be registered on commercial, service, and industrial streets.
2. The commercial address of the Commercial Registration for this activity can an office address

Note: Uploading pictures of the site/shop may expedite the process of obtaining approval

Required Documents

- Lease agreement (after obtaining the necessary approvals from other licensing entities)
- Shop photos

Other Documents

- Cabinet's Decision (56) of the year 2022 regarding the Regulatory Requirements of Construction for various areas in the Kingdom of Bahrain

Financial and insurance activities

ISIC4	Business activity
642	Activities of holding companies

Description

This activity includes the activities of holding companies, i.e. units that hold the assets (owning controlling-levels of equity) of a group of subsidiary corporations and whose principal activity is owning the group. The holding companies in this activity do not provide any other service to the businesses in which the equity is held, i.e. they do not administer or manage other units.

Business Requirements

Age

18 and above

Allowed for Nationalities

Bahraini 100%	GCC 100%
American 100%	Singaporean 100%
Icelander 100%	Liechtenstein er 100%
Norwegian 100%	Swiss 100%

Foreign Allowed up to 100%

Legal Type

It is allowed to register according to the legal forms mentioned below

Allowed for Company Commercial Registration (CCR) : Yes

- Bahrain Shareholding Company (Public)
- With Limited Liability Company
- Branch of a Foreign Company
- Bahrain Shareholding Company (Closed)
- Non Profit Company

Required Step of Licenses and Approvals

Ministry / Directorate	License / Approval Requirements	Approval Type
Municipality Affairs	Site Approval for Financial Services Activities	Post

Municipality Affairs (Post) (642)

Approval Name	Description	Estimated Time
Site Approval for Financial Services Activities	Municipality Approval for the Commercial Registration address or the site in which the Activity will be practiced	3 Days

Fee Details (if any)

10

License Information

General Conditions:
1. Size of shop/premises must be sufficient for the activity
2. Businesses may not carry out the activity outside the boundaries of the shop/ premises
3. It is prohibited to display or store any items or equipment outside the shop / premises boundary without prior approval from the Municipality. In the event of non-compliance, the Ministry of Municipality Affairs has the right to take necessary action.
4. Maintain cleanliness of the site
5. Comply with the parking space regulations as per the Construction Regulatory Requirements

Activity Specific Conditions:
1. The Commercial Registration for this activity can be registered on commercial, service, and industrial streets.
2. The commercial address of the Commercial Registration for this activity can an office address

Note: Uploading pictures of the site/shop may expedite the process of obtaining approval

Required Documents

- Lease agreement (after obtaining the necessary approvals from other licensing entities)
- Shop photos

Other Documents

- Cabinet's Decision (56) of the year 2022 regarding the Regulatory Requirements of Construction for various areas in the Kingdom of Bahrain

Financial and insurance activities

ISIC4	Business activity
643-1	Trusts, Funds and Similar Financial Entities - Special Purpose Vehicle (SPV)

Description

a legal entity set up by a financial institution for specific purpose

Business Requirements

Age

18 and above

Allowed for Nationalities

Bahraini 100%	GCC 100%
American 100%	Singaporean 100%
Icelander 100%	Liechtensteiner 100%
Norwegian 100%	Swiss 100%

Foreign Allowed up to 100%

Legal Type

It is allowed to register according to the legal forms mentioned below

Allowed for Company Commercial Registration (CCR) : Yes

- Bahrain Shareholding Company (Public)
- Bahrain Shareholding Company (Closed)

Required Step of Licenses and Approvals

Ministry / Directorate	License / Approval Requirements	Approval Type
Municipality Affairs	Site Approval for Financial Services Activities	Post
CBB - Licensing directorate	Special Purpose Vehicle (SPV)	Post

Municipality Affairs (Post) (643-1)

Approval Name	Description	Estimated Time
Site Approval for Financial Services Activities	Municipality Approval for the Commercial Registration address or the site in which the Activity will be practiced	3 Days

Fee Details (if any)

10

License Information

General Conditions:
1. Size of shop/premises must be sufficient for the activity
2. Businesses may not carry out the activity outside the boundaries of the shop/ premises
3. It is prohibited to display or store any items or equipment outside the shop / premises boundary without prior approval from the Municipality. In the event of non-compliance, the Ministry of Municipality Affairs has the right to take necessary action.
4. Maintain cleanliness of the site
5. Comply with the parking space regulations as per the Construction Regulatory Requirements

Activity Specific Conditions:
1. The Commercial Registration for this activity can be registered on commercial, service, and industrial streets.
2. The commercial address of the Commercial Registration for this activity can an office address

Note: Uploading pictures of the site/shop may expedite the process of obtaining approval

Required Documents

- Lease agreement (after obtaining the necessary approvals from other licensing entities)
- Shop photos

Other Documents

- Cabinet's Decision (56) of the year 2022 regarding the Regulatory Requirements of Construction for various areas in the Kingdom of Bahrain

CBB - Licensing directorate (Post) (643-1)

Approval Name	Description	Estimated Time
Special Purpose Vehicle (SPV)	A legal entity set up by a financial institution for specific purpose.	60 Days

Fee Details (if any)

Refer to "Licensing Requirement" module of CBB Rulebook Vol. 1 inhttps://cbben.thomsonreuters.com/rulebook/part-15

License Information

The following documents must be submitted:

1. Form 1: “License Application Form”
2. Form 2: “Application for Authorization of Controller”
3. Form 3: “Application for Approved Person status)”, for each individual proposed to undertake controlled functions (as defined under the controlled functions in the respective rulebook) in the proposed licensee.
4. A comprehensive business plan for the application, addressing the matters described below:
a. An outline of the history of the applicant and its shareholders.
b. The reasons for applying for a license, including the applicant’s strategy and market objectives.
c. The proposed type of activities to be carried on by the applicant in/from the Kingdom of Bahrain including the work and fund flow model.
d. The proposed board and senior management of the applicant and the proposed organizational structure of the applicant.
e. An assessment of the risks that may be faced by the applicant, together with the proposed systems and controls framework to be put in place for addressing those risks and to be used for key business functions
f. An opening balance sheet for the applicant, together with a three-year financial projection, with all assumptions clearly outlined, demonstrating that the applicant will be able to meet applicable capital adequacy requirements.
5. For overseas companies, a copy of the company’s current commercial registration or

equivalent documentation.
6. Where the applicant is an existing Bahraini company, a certified copy of a Board resolution of the applicant, confirming its decision to seek a CBB license.
7. Details of the proposed licensee's close links, if any.
8. In the case of applicants that are part of a regulated group, a no-objection letter to the proposed license application from the applicant's lead supervisor, together with confirmation that the group is in good regulatory standing and is in compliance with applicable supervisory requirements, including those relating to capital requirements.
9. In the case of branch applicants, a no-objection letter to the proposed license application from the applicant's home supervisor, together with confirmation that the applicant is in good regulatory standing and the company concerned is in compliance with applicable supervisory requirements, including those relating to capital.
10. In the case of branch applicants, copies of the audited financial statements of the applicant (head office) for the three years immediately prior to the date of application.
11. In the case of applicants that are part of a group, copies of the audited financial statements of the applicant's group, for the three years immediately prior to the date of application.
12. In the case of applicants not falling under either of the above, copies of the audited financial statements of the applicant's major shareholder (where they are a legal person), for the three years immediately prior to the date of application.
13. In the case of applicants seeking to raise part of their capital through a private placement, a draft of the relevant private placement memorandum, together with a formal, independent legal opinion confirming that the memorandum complies with all applicable capital markets laws and regulations.
14. A copy of the applicant's memorandum and articles of association (in draft form for applicants creating a new company).

You may also refer to "Licensing Requirement" module of CBB Rulebook Vol. 1 by clicking the following linkhttps://cbben.thomsonreuters.com/sites/default/files/net_file_store/Vol_1_LR_January_2022.pdf

Required Documents

- Form 1: Application for a license
- Form 2: Application for authorization of controller
- Form 3: Application for approved person status

Financial and insurance activities

ISIC4	Business activity
643-2	Trusts, Funds and Similar Financial Entities - Trust Service Provider Subsidiaries

Description

The purpose and objectives of a subsidiary undertaking must be limited to providing support to the licensee's operations within the scope of the permissible activities of the license as defined under regulated trust service provider services.

Business Requirements

✔ Age

18 and above

✔ Allowed for Nationalities

Bahraini 100%		GCC 100%	
American 100%		Singaporean 100%	
Icelander 100%		Liechtenstein er 100%	
Norwegian 100%		Swiss 100%	

Foreign Allowed up to 100%

Legal Type

It is allowed to register according to the legal forms mentioned below

Allowed for Individual Commercial Registration (ICR) : Yes

Allowed for Company Commercial Registration (CCR) : Yes

- Bahrain Shareholding Company (Public)
- Bahrain Shareholding Company (Closed)

Required Step of Licenses and Approvals

Ministry / Directorate	License / Approval Requirements	Approval Type
CBB - Licensing directorate	Trust Service Provider Subsidiaries	Post
Municipality Affairs	Site Approval for Financial Services Activities	Post

CBB - Licensing directorate (Post) (643-2)

Approval Name	Description	Estimated Time
Trust Service Provider Subsidiaries	Trust Service Provider Subsidiaries	60 Days

Fee Details (if any)

Refer to "Licensing Requirement" module of CBB Rulebook Vol. 1 inhttps://cbben.thomsonreuters.com/rulebook/central-bank-bahrain-volume-5-specialised-licensees

License Information

The following documents must be submitted:

1. Form 1: “License Application Form”
2. Form 2: “Application for Authorization of Controller”
3. Form 3: “Application for Approved Person status)”, for each individual proposed to undertake controlled functions (as defined under the controlled functions in the respective rulebook) in the proposed licensee.
4. A comprehensive business plan for the application, addressing the matters described below:

a. An outline of the history of the applicant and its shareholders.
b. The reasons for applying for a license, including the applicant’s strategy and market objectives.
c. The proposed type of activities to be carried on by the applicant in/from the Kingdom of Bahrain including the work and fund flow model.
d. The proposed board and senior management of the applicant and the proposed organizational structure of the applicant.
e. An assessment of the risks that may be faced by the applicant, together with the proposed systems and controls framework to be put in place for addressing those risks and to be used for key business functions
f. An opening balance sheet for the applicant, together with a three-year financial projection, with all assumptions clearly outlined, demonstrating that the applicant will be able to meet applicable capital adequacy requirements.

5. For overseas companies, a copy of the company’s current commercial registration or equivalent documentation.

6. Where the applicant is an existing Bahraini company, a certified copy of a Board resolution of the applicant, confirming its decision to seek a CBB license.
7. Details of the proposed licensee's close links, if any.
8. In the case of applicants that are part of a regulated group, a no-objection letter to the proposed license application from the applicant's lead supervisor, together with confirmation that the group is in good regulatory standing and is in compliance with applicable supervisory requirements, including those relating to capital requirements.
9. In the case of branch applicants , a no-objection letter to the proposed license application from the applicant's home supervisor, together with confirmation that the applicant is in good regulatory standing and the company concerned is in compliance with applicable supervisory requirements, including those relating to capital.
10. In the case of branch applicants , copies of the audited financial statements of the applicant (head office) for the three years immediately prior to the date of application.
11. In the case of applicants that are part of a group, copies of the audited financial statements of the applicant's group, for the three years immediately prior to the date of application.
12. In the case of applicants not falling under either of the above, copies of the audited financial statements of the applicant's major shareholder (where they are a legal person), for the three years immediately prior to the date of application.
13. In the case of applicants seeking to raise part of their capital through a private placement, a draft of the relevant private placement memorandum, together with a formal, independent legal opinion confirming that the memorandum complies with all applicable capital markets laws and regulations.
14. A copy of the applicant's memorandum and articles of association (in draft form for applicants creating a new company).

You may also refer to "Licensing Requirement" module of CBB Rulebook Vol. 1 by clicking the following linkhttps://cbben.thomsonreuters.com/sites/default/files/net_file_store/Vol_1_LR_January_2022.pdf

Required Documents

- Form 1: Application for a license
- Form 2: Application for authorization of controller
- Form 3: Application for approved person status

Municipality Affairs (Post) (643-2)

Approval Name	Description	Estimated Time
Site Approval for Financial Services Activities	Municipality Approval for the Commercial Registration address or the site in which the Activity will be practiced	3 Days

Fee Details (if any)

10

License Information

General Conditions:
1. Size of shop/premises must be sufficient for the activity
2. Businesses may not carry out the activity outside the boundaries of the shop/ premises
3. It is prohibited to display or store any items or equipment outside the shop / premises boundary without prior approval from the Municipality. In the event of non-compliance, the Ministry of Municipality Affairs has the right to take necessary action.
4. Maintain cleanliness of the site
5. Comply with the parking space regulations as per the Construction Regulatory Requirements

Activity Specific Conditions:
1. The Commercial Registration for this activity can be registered on commercial, service, and industrial streets.
2. The commercial address of the Commercial Registration for this activity can an office address

Note: Uploading pictures of the site/shop may expedite the process of obtaining approval

Required Documents

- Lease agreement (after obtaining the necessary approvals from other licensing entities)
- Shop photos

Other Documents

- Cabinet's Decision (56) of the year 2022 regarding the Regulatory Requirements of Construction for various areas in the Kingdom of Bahrain

Financial and insurance activities

ISIC4	Business activity
643-3	Trusts, Funds and Similar Financial Entities - Fund Company

Description

To establish a fund

Business Requirements

Age

18 and above

Allowed for Nationalities

Bahraini 100%	GCC 100%
American 100%	Singaporean 100%
Icelander 100%	Liechtensteiner 100%
Norwegian 100%	Swiss 100%

Foreign Allowed up to 100%

Legal Type

It is allowed to register according to the legal forms mentioned below

Allowed for Company Commercial Registration (CCR) : Yes

- Bahrain Shareholding Company (Public)
- Bahrain Shareholding Company (Closed)

Required Step of Licenses and Approvals

Ministry / Directorate	License / Approval Requirements	Approval Type
Municipality Affairs	Site Approval for Financial Services Activities	Post
CBB - Licensing directorate	Fund Company	Post

Municipality Affairs (Post) (643-3)

Approval Name	Description	Estimated Time
Site Approval for Financial Services Activities	Municipality Approval for the Commercial Registration address or the site in which the Activity will be practiced	3 Days

Fee Details (if any)

10

License Information

General Conditions:
1. Size of shop/premises must be sufficient for the activity
2. Businesses may not carry out the activity outside the boundaries of the shop/ premises
3. It is prohibited to display or store any items or equipment outside the shop / premises boundary without prior approval from the Municipality. In the event of non-compliance, the Ministry of Municipality Affairs has the right to take necessary action.
4. Maintain cleanliness of the site
5. Comply with the parking space regulations as per the Construction Regulatory Requirements

Activity Specific Conditions:
1. The Commercial Registration for this activity can be registered on commercial, service, and industrial streets.
2. The commercial address of the Commercial Registration for this activity can an office address

Note: Uploading pictures of the site/shop may expedite the process of obtaining approval

Required Documents

- Lease agreement (after obtaining the necessary approvals from other licensing entities)
- Shop photos

Other Documents

- Cabinet's Decision (56) of the year 2022 regarding the Regulatory Requirements of Construction for various areas in the Kingdom of Bahrain

CBB - Licensing directorate (Post) (643-3)

Approval Name	Description	Estimated Time
Fund Company	To establish a fund	60 Days

Fee Details (if any)

Refer to "Licensing Requirement" module of CBB Rulebook Vol. 1 inhttps://cbben.thomsonreuters.com/rulebook/central-bank-bahrain-volume-5-specialised-licensees

License Information

The following documents must be submitted:

1. Form 1: “License Application Form”
2. Form 2: “Application for Authorization of Controller”
3. Form 3: “Application for Approved Person status)”, for each individual proposed to undertake controlled functions (as defined under the controlled functions in the respective rulebook) in the proposed licensee.
4. A comprehensive business plan for the application, addressing the matters described below:

a. An outline of the history of the applicant and its shareholders.
b. The reasons for applying for a license, including the applicant’s strategy and market objectives.
c. The proposed type of activities to be carried on by the applicant in/from the Kingdom of Bahrain including the work and fund flow model.
d. The proposed board and senior management of the applicant and the proposed organizational structure of the applicant.
e. An assessment of the risks that may be faced by the applicant, together with the proposed systems and controls framework to be put in place for addressing those risks and to be used for key business functions
f. An opening balance sheet for the applicant, together with a three-year financial projection, with all assumptions clearly outlined, demonstrating that the applicant will be able to meet applicable capital adequacy requirements.

5. For overseas companies, a copy of the company’s current commercial registration or equivalent documentation.
6. Where the applicant is an existing Bahraini company, a certified copy of a Board

resolution of the applicant, confirming its decision to seek a CBB license.
7. Details of the proposed licensee's close links, if any.
8. In the case of applicants that are part of a regulated group, a no-objection letter to the proposed license application from the applicant's lead supervisor, together with confirmation that the group is in good regulatory standing and is in compliance with applicable supervisory requirements, including those relating to capital requirements.
9. In the case of branch applicants, a no-objection letter to the proposed license application from the applicant's home supervisor, together with confirmation that the applicant is in good regulatory standing and the company concerned is in compliance with applicable supervisory requirements, including those relating to capital.
10. In the case of branch applicants, copies of the audited financial statements of the applicant (head office) for the three years immediately prior to the date of application.
11. In the case of applicants that are part of a group, copies of the audited financial statements of the applicant's group, for the three years immediately prior to the date of application.
12. In the case of applicants not falling under either of the above, copies of the audited financial statements of the applicant's major shareholder (where they are a legal person), for the three years immediately prior to the date of application.
13. In the case of applicants seeking to raise part of their capital through a private placement, a draft of the relevant private placement memorandum, together with a formal, independent legal opinion confirming that the memorandum complies with all applicable capital markets laws and regulations.
14. A copy of the applicant's memorandum and articles of association (in draft form for applicants creating a new company).

You may also refer to "Licensing Requirement" module of CBB Rulebook Vol. 1 by clicking the following linkhttps://cbben.thomsonreuters.com/sites/default/files/net_file_store/Vol_1_LR_January_2022.pdf

Required Documents

- Form 1: Application for a license
- Form 2: Application for authorization of controller
- Form 3: Application for approved person status

Financial and insurance activities

ISIC4	Business activity
643-4	Trusts, Funds and Similar Financial Entities - Insurance Pools & Syndicates

Description

Insurance Pools & Syndicates established by a group of insurance and reinsurance companies for the purpose of carrying out their objectives.

Business Requirements

Age

18 and above

Allowed for Nationalities

Bahraini 100%	GCC 100%
American 100%	Singaporean 100%
Icelander 100%	Liechtenstein er 100%
Norwegian 100%	Swiss 100%

Foreign Allowed up to 100%

Legal Type

It is allowed to register according to the legal forms mentioned below

Allowed for Individual Commercial Registration (ICR) : Yes

Allowed for Company Commercial Registration (CCR) : Yes

- Bahrain Shareholding Company (Public)
- Bahrain Shareholding Company (Closed)

Required Step of Licenses and Approvals

Ministry / Directorate	License / Approval Requirements	Approval Type
Municipality Affairs	Site Approval for Financial Services Activities	Post
CBB - Licensing directorate	Insurance Pools & Syndicates	Post

Municipality Affairs (Post) (643-4)

Approval Name	Description	Estimated Time
Site Approval for Financial Services Activities	Municipality Approval for the Commercial Registration address or the site in which the Activity will be practiced	3 Days

Fee Details (if any)

10

License Information

General Conditions:
1. Size of shop/premises must be sufficient for the activity
2. Businesses may not carry out the activity outside the boundaries of the shop/ premises
3. It is prohibited to display or store any items or equipment outside the shop / premises boundary without prior approval from the Municipality. In the event of non-compliance, the Ministry of Municipality Affairs has the right to take necessary action.
4. Maintain cleanliness of the site
5. Comply with the parking space regulations as per the Construction Regulatory Requirements

Activity Specific Conditions:
1. The Commercial Registration for this activity can be registered on commercial, service, and industrial streets.
2. The commercial address of the Commercial Registration for this activity can an office address

Note: Uploading pictures of the site/shop may expedite the process of obtaining approval

Required Documents

- Lease agreement (after obtaining the necessary approvals from other licensing entities)
- Shop photos

Other Documents

- Cabinet's Decision (56) of the year 2022 regarding the Regulatory Requirements of Construction for various areas in the Kingdom of Bahrain

CBB - Licensing directorate (Post) (643-4)

Approval Name	Description	Estimated Time
Insurance Pools & Syndicates	Insurance Pools & Syndicates established by a group of insurance and reinsurance companies for the purpose of carrying out their objectives.	60 Days

Fee Details (if any)

Refer to "Licensing Requirement" module of CBB Rulebook Vol. 1 inhttps://cbben.thomsonreuters.com/rulebook/part-3

License Information

The following documents must be submitted:

1. Form 1: “License Application Form”
2. Form 2: “Application for Authorization of Controller”
3. Form 3: “Application for Approved Person status)”, for each individual proposed to undertake controlled functions (as defined under the controlled functions in the respective rulebook) in the proposed licensee.
4. A comprehensive business plan for the application, addressing the matters described below:

a. An outline of the history of the applicant and its shareholders.
b. The reasons for applying for a license, including the applicant’s strategy and market objectives.
c. The proposed type of activities to be carried on by the applicant in/from the Kingdom of Bahrain including the work and fund flow model.
d. The proposed board and senior management of the applicant and the proposed organizational structure of the applicant.
e. An assessment of the risks that may be faced by the applicant, together with the proposed systems and controls framework to be put in place for addressing those risks and to be used for key business functions

f. An opening balance sheet for the applicant, together with a three-year financial projection, with all assumptions clearly outlined, demonstrating that the applicant will be able to meet applicable capital adequacy requirements.
5. For overseas companies, a copy of the company's current commercial registration or equivalent documentation.
6. Where the applicant is an existing Bahraini company, a certified copy of a Board resolution of the applicant, confirming its decision to seek a CBB license.
7. Details of the proposed licensee's close links, if any.
8. In the case of applicants that are part of a regulated group, a no-objection letter to the proposed license application from the applicant's lead supervisor, together with confirmation that the group is in good regulatory standing and is in compliance with applicable supervisory requirements, including those relating to capital requirements.
9. In the case of branch applicants, a no-objection letter to the proposed license application from the applicant's home supervisor, together with confirmation that the applicant is in good regulatory standing and the company concerned is in compliance with applicable supervisory requirements, including those relating to capital.
10. In the case of branch applicants, copies of the audited financial statements of the applicant (head office) for the three years immediately prior to the date of application.
11. In the case of applicants that are part of a group, copies of the audited financial statements of the applicant's group, for the three years immediately prior to the date of application.
12. In the case of applicants not falling under either of the above, copies of the audited financial statements of the applicant's major shareholder (where they are a legal person), for the three years immediately prior to the date of application.
13. In the case of applicants seeking to raise part of their capital through a private placement, a draft of the relevant private placement memorandum, together with a formal, independent legal opinion confirming that the memorandum complies with all applicable capital markets laws and regulations.
14. A copy of the applicant's memorandum and articles of association (in draft form for applicants creating a new company).

You may also refer to "Licensing Requirement" module of CBB Rulebook Vol. 1 by clicking the following linkhttps://cbben.thomsonreuters.com/sites/default/files/net_file_store/Vol_1_LR_January_2022.pdf

Required Documents

- Form 1: Application for a license
- Form 2: Application for authorization of controller
- Form 3: Application for approved person status

Financial and insurance activities

ISIC4	Business activity
643-5	Trusts, Funds and Similar Financial Entities - General Partner of Investment Limited Partnerships

Description

The partner responsible for managing the affairs of Investment Limited Partnerships
Note: Only allowed as a Bahraini Shareholding Company (closed)

Business Requirements

Age

18 and above

Allowed for Nationalities

Bahraini 100%	GCC 100%
American 100%	Singaporean 100%
Icelander 100%	Liechtenstein er 100%
Norwegian 100%	Swiss 100%

Foreign Allowed up to 100%

Legal Type

It is allowed to register according to the legal forms mentioned below

Allowed for Company Commercial Registration (CCR) : Yes

- Bahrain Shareholding Company (Public)
- Bahrain Shareholding Company (Closed)

Required Step of Licenses and Approvals

Ministry / Directorate	License / Approval Requirements	Approval Type
CBB - Licensing directorate	Special Purpose Vehicle (SPV)	Post
Municipality Affairs	Site Approval for Financial Services Activities	Post

CBB - Licensing directorate (Post) (643-5)

Approval Name	Description	Estimated Time
Special Purpose Vehicle (SPV)	A legal entity set up by a financial institution for specific purpose.	60 Days

Fee Details (if any)

Refer to "Licensing Requirement" module of CBB Rulebook Vol. 1 inhttps://cbben.thomsonreuters.com/rulebook/part-15

License Information

The following documents must be submitted:

1. Form 1: “License Application Form”
2. Form 2: “Application for Authorization of Controller”
3. Form 3: “Application for Approved Person status)”, for each individual proposed to undertake controlled functions (as defined under the controlled functions in the respective rulebook) in the proposed licensee.
4. A comprehensive business plan for the application, addressing the matters described below:
a. An outline of the history of the applicant and its shareholders.
b. The reasons for applying for a license, including the applicant’s strategy and market objectives.
c. The proposed type of activities to be carried on by the applicant in/from the Kingdom of Bahrain including the work and fund flow model.
d. The proposed board and senior management of the applicant and the proposed organizational structure of the applicant.
e. An assessment of the risks that may be faced by the applicant, together with the proposed systems and controls framework to be put in place for addressing those risks and to be used for key business functions
f. An opening balance sheet for the applicant, together with a three-year financial projection, with all assumptions clearly outlined, demonstrating that the applicant will be able to meet applicable capital adequacy requirements.
5. For overseas companies, a copy of the company’s current commercial registration or

equivalent documentation.
6. Where the applicant is an existing Bahraini company, a certified copy of a Board resolution of the applicant, confirming its decision to seek a CBB license.
7. Details of the proposed licensee's close links, if any.
8. In the case of applicants that are part of a regulated group, a no-objection letter to the proposed license application from the applicant's lead supervisor, together with confirmation that the group is in good regulatory standing and is in compliance with applicable supervisory requirements, including those relating to capital requirements.
9. In the case of branch applicants, a no-objection letter to the proposed license application from the applicant's home supervisor, together with confirmation that the applicant is in good regulatory standing and the company concerned is in compliance with applicable supervisory requirements, including those relating to capital.
10. In the case of branch applicants, copies of the audited financial statements of the applicant (head office) for the three years immediately prior to the date of application.
11. In the case of applicants that are part of a group, copies of the audited financial statements of the applicant's group, for the three years immediately prior to the date of application.
12. In the case of applicants not falling under either of the above, copies of the audited financial statements of the applicant's major shareholder (where they are a legal person), for the three years immediately prior to the date of application.
13. In the case of applicants seeking to raise part of their capital through a private placement, a draft of the relevant private placement memorandum, together with a formal, independent legal opinion confirming that the memorandum complies with all applicable capital markets laws and regulations.
14. A copy of the applicant's memorandum and articles of association (in draft form for applicants creating a new company).

You may also refer to "Licensing Requirement" module of CBB Rulebook Vol. 1 by clicking the following linkhttps://cbben.thomsonreuters.com/sites/default/files/net_file_store/Vol_1_LR_January_2022.pdf

Required Documents

- Form 1: Application for a license
- Form 2: Application for authorization of controller
- Form 3: Application for approved person status

Municipality Affairs (Post) (643-5)

Approval Name	Description	Estimated Time
Site Approval for Financial Services Activities	Municipality Approval for the Commercial Registration address or the site in which the Activity will be practiced	3 Days

Fee Details (if any)

10

License Information

General Conditions:
1. Size of shop/premises must be sufficient for the activity
2. Businesses may not carry out the activity outside the boundaries of the shop/ premises
3. It is prohibited to display or store any items or equipment outside the shop / premises boundary without prior approval from the Municipality. In the event of non-compliance, the Ministry of Municipality Affairs has the right to take necessary action.
4. Maintain cleanliness of the site
5. Comply with the parking space regulations as per the Construction Regulatory Requirements

Activity Specific Conditions:
1. The Commercial Registration for this activity can be registered on commercial, service, and industrial streets.
2. The commercial address of the Commercial Registration for this activity can an office address

Note: Uploading pictures of the site/shop may expedite the process of obtaining approval

Required Documents

- Lease agreement (after obtaining the necessary approvals from other licensing entities)
- Shop photos

Other Documents

- Cabinet's Decision (56) of the year 2022 regarding the Regulatory Requirements of Construction for various areas in the Kingdom of Bahrain

Financial and insurance activities

ISIC4	Business activity
643-6	Trusts, Funds and Similar Financial Entities - Securitization

Description

Collective Investment Undertakings are investment funds that pools assets of investors for the sake of investing the same on their behalf.

Business Requirements

Age

18 and above

Allowed for Nationalities

Bahraini 100%	GCC 100%
American 100%	Singaporean 100%
Icelander 100%	Liechtenstein er 100%
Norwegian 100%	Swiss 100%

Foreign Allowed up to 100%

Legal Type

It is allowed to register according to the legal forms mentioned below

Allowed for Company Commercial Registration (CCR) : Yes

- Bahrain Shareholding Company (Public)
- Bahrain Shareholding Company (Closed)
- Protected Cell Company
- Investment Limited Partnerships

Required Step of Licenses and Approvals

Ministry / Directorate	License / Approval Requirements	Approval Type
CBB - Licensing directorate	Special Purpose Vehicle (SPV)	Post
Municipality Affairs	Site Approval for Financial Services Activities	Post

CBB - Licensing directorate (Post) (643-6)

Approval Name	Description	Estimated Time
Special Purpose Vehicle (SPV)	A legal entity set up by a financial institution for specific purpose.	60 Days

Fee Details (if any)

Refer to "Licensing Requirement" module of CBB Rulebook Vol. 1 inhttps://cbben.thomsonreuters.com/rulebook/part-15

License Information

The following documents must be submitted:

1. Form 1: “License Application Form”
2. Form 2: “Application for Authorization of Controller”
3. Form 3: “Application for Approved Person status)”, for each individual proposed to undertake controlled functions (as defined under the controlled functions in the respective rulebook) in the proposed licensee.
4. A comprehensive business plan for the application, addressing the matters described below:
a. An outline of the history of the applicant and its shareholders.
b. The reasons for applying for a license, including the applicant’s strategy and market objectives.
c. The proposed type of activities to be carried on by the applicant in/from the Kingdom of Bahrain including the work and fund flow model.
d. The proposed board and senior management of the applicant and the proposed organizational structure of the applicant.
e. An assessment of the risks that may be faced by the applicant, together with the proposed systems and controls framework to be put in place for addressing those risks and to be used for key business functions
f. An opening balance sheet for the applicant, together with a three-year financial projection, with all assumptions clearly outlined, demonstrating that the applicant will be able to meet applicable capital adequacy requirements.
5. For overseas companies, a copy of the company’s current commercial registration or

equivalent documentation.
6. Where the applicant is an existing Bahraini company, a certified copy of a Board resolution of the applicant, confirming its decision to seek a CBB license.
7. Details of the proposed licensee's close links, if any.
8. In the case of applicants that are part of a regulated group, a no-objection letter to the proposed license application from the applicant's lead supervisor, together with confirmation that the group is in good regulatory standing and is in compliance with applicable supervisory requirements, including those relating to capital requirements.
9. In the case of branch applicants, a no-objection letter to the proposed license application from the applicant's home supervisor, together with confirmation that the applicant is in good regulatory standing and the company concerned is in compliance with applicable supervisory requirements, including those relating to capital.
10. In the case of branch applicants, copies of the audited financial statements of the applicant (head office) for the three years immediately prior to the date of application.
11. In the case of applicants that are part of a group, copies of the audited financial statements of the applicant's group, for the three years immediately prior to the date of application.
12. In the case of applicants not falling under either of the above, copies of the audited financial statements of the applicant's major shareholder (where they are a legal person), for the three years immediately prior to the date of application.
13. In the case of applicants seeking to raise part of their capital through a private placement, a draft of the relevant private placement memorandum, together with a formal, independent legal opinion confirming that the memorandum complies with all applicable capital markets laws and regulations.
14. A copy of the applicant's memorandum and articles of association (in draft form for applicants creating a new company).

You may also refer to "Licensing Requirement" module of CBB Rulebook Vol. 1 by clicking the following linkhttps://cbben.thomsonreuters.com/sites/default/files/net_file_store/Vol_1_LR_January_2022.pdf

Required Documents

- Form 1: Application for a license
- Form 2: Application for authorization of controller
- Form 3: Application for approved person status

Municipality Affairs (Post) (643-6)

Approval Name	Description	Estimated Time
Site Approval for Financial Services Activities	Municipality Approval for the Commercial Registration address or the site in which the Activity will be practiced	3 Days

Fee Details (if any)

10

License Information

General Conditions:
1. Size of shop/premises must be sufficient for the activity
2. Businesses may not carry out the activity outside the boundaries of the shop/ premises
3. It is prohibited to display or store any items or equipment outside the shop / premises boundary without prior approval from the Municipality. In the event of non-compliance, the Ministry of Municipality Affairs has the right to take necessary action.
4. Maintain cleanliness of the site
5. Comply with the parking space regulations as per the Construction Regulatory Requirements

Activity Specific Conditions:
1. The Commercial Registration for this activity can be registered on commercial, service, and industrial streets.
2. The commercial address of the Commercial Registration for this activity can an office address

Note: Uploading pictures of the site/shop may expedite the process of obtaining approval

Required Documents

- Lease agreement (after obtaining the necessary approvals from other licensing entities)
- Shop photos

Other Documents

- Cabinet's Decision (56) of the year 2022 regarding the Regulatory Requirements of Construction for various areas in the Kingdom of Bahrain

Financial and insurance activities

ISIC4	Business activity
643-7	Trusts, Funds and Similar Financial Entities - Collective Investment Undertaking

Description

Collective Investment Undertakings are investment funds that pools assets of investors for the sake of investing the same on their behalf.

Business Requirements

Age

18 and above

Allowed for Nationalities

Bahraini 100%	GCC 100%
American 100%	Singaporean 100%
Icelander 100%	Liechtenstein er 100%
Norwegian 100%	Swiss 100%

Foreign Allowed up to 100%

Legal Type

It is allowed to register according to the legal forms mentioned below

Allowed for Company Commercial Registration (CCR) : Yes

- Bahrain Shareholding Company (Public)
- Bahrain Shareholding Company (Closed)
- Protected Cell Company
- Investment Limited Partnerships

Required Step of Licenses and Approvals

Ministry / Directorate	License / Approval Requirements	Approval Type
Municipality Affairs	Site Approval for Financial Services Activities	Post
CBB - Licensing directorate	Special Purpose Vehicle (SPV)	Post

Municipality Affairs (Post) (643-7)

Approval Name	Description	Estimated Time
Site Approval for Financial Services Activities	Municipality Approval for the Commercial Registration address or the site in which the Activity will be practiced	3 Days

Fee Details (if any)

10

License Information

General Conditions:
1. Size of shop/premises must be sufficient for the activity
2. Businesses may not carry out the activity outside the boundaries of the shop/ premises
3. It is prohibited to display or store any items or equipment outside the shop / premises boundary without prior approval from the Municipality. In the event of non-compliance, the Ministry of Municipality Affairs has the right to take necessary action.
4. Maintain cleanliness of the site
5. Comply with the parking space regulations as per the Construction Regulatory Requirements

Activity Specific Conditions:
1. The Commercial Registration for this activity can be registered on commercial, service, and industrial streets.
2. The commercial address of the Commercial Registration for this activity can an office address

Note: Uploading pictures of the site/shop may expedite the process of obtaining approval

Required Documents

- Lease agreement (after obtaining the necessary approvals from other licensing entities)
- Shop photos

Other Documents

- Cabinet's Decision (56) of the year 2022 regarding the Regulatory Requirements of Construction for various areas in the Kingdom of Bahrain

CBB - Licensing directorate (Post) (643-7)

Approval Name	Description	Estimated Time
Special Purpose Vehicle (SPV)	A legal entity set up by a financial institution for specific purpose.	60 Days

Fee Details (if any)

Refer to "Licensing Requirement" module of CBB Rulebook Vol. 1 inhttps://cbben.thomsonreuters.com/rulebook/part-15

License Information

The following documents must be submitted:

1. Form 1: “License Application Form”
2. Form 2: “Application for Authorization of Controller”
3. Form 3: “Application for Approved Person status)”, for each individual proposed to undertake controlled functions (as defined under the controlled functions in the respective rulebook) in the proposed licensee.
4. A comprehensive business plan for the application, addressing the matters described below:
a. An outline of the history of the applicant and its shareholders.
b. The reasons for applying for a license, including the applicant’s strategy and market objectives.
c. The proposed type of activities to be carried on by the applicant in/from the Kingdom of Bahrain including the work and fund flow model.
d. The proposed board and senior management of the applicant and the proposed organizational structure of the applicant.
e. An assessment of the risks that may be faced by the applicant, together with the proposed systems and controls framework to be put in place for addressing those risks and to be used for key business functions
f. An opening balance sheet for the applicant, together with a three-year financial projection, with all assumptions clearly outlined, demonstrating that the applicant will be able to meet applicable capital adequacy requirements.
5. For overseas companies, a copy of the company’s current commercial registration or

equivalent documentation.
6. Where the applicant is an existing Bahraini company, a certified copy of a Board resolution of the applicant, confirming its decision to seek a CBB license.
7. Details of the proposed licensee's close links, if any.
8. In the case of applicants that are part of a regulated group, a no-objection letter to the proposed license application from the applicant's lead supervisor, together with confirmation that the group is in good regulatory standing and is in compliance with applicable supervisory requirements, including those relating to capital requirements.
9. In the case of branch applicants, a no-objection letter to the proposed license application from the applicant's home supervisor, together with confirmation that the applicant is in good regulatory standing and the company concerned is in compliance with applicable supervisory requirements, including those relating to capital.
10. In the case of branch applicants, copies of the audited financial statements of the applicant (head office) for the three years immediately prior to the date of application.
11. In the case of applicants that are part of a group, copies of the audited financial statements of the applicant's group, for the three years immediately prior to the date of application.
12. In the case of applicants not falling under either of the above, copies of the audited financial statements of the applicant's major shareholder (where they are a legal person), for the three years immediately prior to the date of application.
13. In the case of applicants seeking to raise part of their capital through a private placement, a draft of the relevant private placement memorandum, together with a formal, independent legal opinion confirming that the memorandum complies with all applicable capital markets laws and regulations.
14. A copy of the applicant's memorandum and articles of association (in draft form for applicants creating a new company).

You may also refer to "Licensing Requirement" module of CBB Rulebook Vol. 1 by clicking the following linkhttps://cbben.thomsonreuters.com/sites/default/files/net_file_store/Vol_1_LR_January_2022.pdf

Required Documents

- Form 1: Application for a license
- Form 2: Application for authorization of controller
- Form 3: Application for approved person status

Financial and insurance activities

ISIC4	Business activity
643-8	Trusts, Funds and Similar Financial Entities - Private Investment Undertaking

Description

Private Investment Undertakings are defined as investment undertakings/funds that are offered to high net worth individuals or institutional investors.

Business Requirements

Age

18 and above

Allowed for Nationalities

Bahraini 100%	GCC 100%
American 100%	Singaporean 100%
Icelander 100%	Liechtenstein er 100%
Norwegian 100%	Swiss 100%

Foreign Allowed up to 100%

Legal Type

It is allowed to register according to the legal forms mentioned below

Allowed for Company Commercial Registration (CCR) : Yes

- Bahrain Shareholding Company (Public)
- Bahrain Shareholding Company (Closed)
- Protected Cell Company
- Investment Limited Partnerships

Required Step of Licenses and Approvals

Ministry / Directorate	License / Approval Requirements	Approval Type
Municipality Affairs	Site Approval for Financial Services Activities	Post
CBB - Licensing directorate	Special Purpose Vehicle (SPV)	Post

Municipality Affairs (Post) (643-8)

Approval Name	Description	Estimated Time
Site Approval for Financial Services Activities	Municipality Approval for the Commercial Registration address or the site in which the Activity will be practiced	3 Days

Fee Details (if any)

10

License Information

General Conditions:
1. Size of shop/premises must be sufficient for the activity
2. Businesses may not carry out the activity outside the boundaries of the shop/ premises
3. It is prohibited to display or store any items or equipment outside the shop / premises boundary without prior approval from the Municipality. In the event of non-compliance, the Ministry of Municipality Affairs has the right to take necessary action.
4. Maintain cleanliness of the site
5. Comply with the parking space regulations as per the Construction Regulatory Requirements

Activity Specific Conditions:
1. The Commercial Registration for this activity can be registered on commercial, service, and industrial streets.
2. The commercial address of the Commercial Registration for this activity can an office address

Note: Uploading pictures of the site/shop may expedite the process of obtaining approval

Required Documents

- Lease agreement (after obtaining the necessary approvals from other licensing entities)
- Shop photos

Other Documents

- Cabinet's Decision (56) of the year 2022 regarding the Regulatory Requirements of Construction for various areas in the Kingdom of Bahrain

CBB - Licensing directorate (Post) (643-8)

Approval Name	Description	Estimated Time
Special Purpose Vehicle (SPV)	A legal entity set up by a financial institution for specific purpose.	60 Days

Fee Details (if any)

Refer to "Licensing Requirement" module of CBB Rulebook Vol. 1 inhttps://cbben.thomsonreuters.com/rulebook/part-15

License Information

The following documents must be submitted:

1. Form 1: “License Application Form”
2. Form 2: “Application for Authorization of Controller”
3. Form 3: “Application for Approved Person status)”, for each individual proposed to undertake controlled functions (as defined under the controlled functions in the respective rulebook) in the proposed licensee.
4. A comprehensive business plan for the application, addressing the matters described below:
a. An outline of the history of the applicant and its shareholders.
b. The reasons for applying for a license, including the applicant’s strategy and market objectives.
c. The proposed type of activities to be carried on by the applicant in/from the Kingdom of Bahrain including the work and fund flow model.
d. The proposed board and senior management of the applicant and the proposed organizational structure of the applicant.
e. An assessment of the risks that may be faced by the applicant, together with the proposed systems and controls framework to be put in place for addressing those risks and to be used for key business functions
f. An opening balance sheet for the applicant, together with a three-year financial projection, with all assumptions clearly outlined, demonstrating that the applicant will be able to meet applicable capital adequacy requirements.
5. For overseas companies, a copy of the company’s current commercial registration or

equivalent documentation.
6. Where the applicant is an existing Bahraini company, a certified copy of a Board resolution of the applicant, confirming its decision to seek a CBB license.
7. Details of the proposed licensee's close links, if any.
8. In the case of applicants that are part of a regulated group, a no-objection letter to the proposed license application from the applicant's lead supervisor, together with confirmation that the group is in good regulatory standing and is in compliance with applicable supervisory requirements, including those relating to capital requirements.
9. In the case of branch applicants, a no-objection letter to the proposed license application from the applicant's home supervisor, together with confirmation that the applicant is in good regulatory standing and the company concerned is in compliance with applicable supervisory requirements, including those relating to capital.
10. In the case of branch applicants, copies of the audited financial statements of the applicant (head office) for the three years immediately prior to the date of application.
11. In the case of applicants that are part of a group, copies of the audited financial statements of the applicant's group, for the three years immediately prior to the date of application.
12. In the case of applicants not falling under either of the above, copies of the audited financial statements of the applicant's major shareholder (where they are a legal person), for the three years immediately prior to the date of application.
13. In the case of applicants seeking to raise part of their capital through a private placement, a draft of the relevant private placement memorandum, together with a formal, independent legal opinion confirming that the memorandum complies with all applicable capital markets laws and regulations.
14. A copy of the applicant's memorandum and articles of association (in draft form for applicants creating a new company).

You may also refer to "Licensing Requirement" module of CBB Rulebook Vol. 1 by clicking the following linkhttps://cbben.thomsonreuters.com/sites/default/files/net_file_store/Vol_1_LR_January_2022.pdf

Required Documents

- Form 1: Application for a license
- Form 2: Application for authorization of controller
- Form 3: Application for approved person status

Financial and insurance activities

ISIC4	Business activity
6492-1	Other credit granting activities - Financing Companies

Description

Providing credit for personal, consumer, real estate, residential purposes, or any other purposes that do not contradict with the license. As well as carrying out credit card financing activities to consumers. The company is not allowed to accept deposits.

Business Requirements

Age

18 and above

Allowed for Nationalities

Bahraini 100%		GCC 100%	
American 100%		Singaporean 100%	
Icelander 100%		Liechtenstein er 100%	
Norwegian 100%		Swiss 100%	

Foreign Allowed up to 100%

Legal Type

It is allowed to register according to the legal forms mentioned below

Allowed for Company Commercial Registration (CCR) : Yes

- Bahrain Shareholding Company (Public)
- Bahrain Shareholding Company (Closed)

Required Step of Licenses and Approvals

Ministry / Directorate	License / Approval Requirements	Approval Type
CBB - Licensing directorate	Financing Companies	Post
Municipality Affairs	Site Approval for Financial Services Activities	Post

CBB - Licensing directorate (Post) (6492-1)

Approval Name	Description	Estimated Time
Financing Companies	Providing credit for personal, consumer, real estate, residential purposes, or any other purposes that do not contradict with the license. As well as carrying out credit card financing activities to consumers. The company is not allowed to accept deposits.	60 Days

Fee Details (if any)

Refer to "Licensing Requirement" module of CBB Rulebook Vol. 1 inhttps://cbben.thomsonreuters.com/rulebook/central-bank-bahrain-volume-5-specialised-licensees

License Information

The following documents must be submitted:

1. Form 1: “License Application Form”
2. Form 2: “Application for Authorization of Controller”
3. Form 3: “Application for Approved Person status)”, for each individual proposed to undertake controlled functions (as defined under the controlled functions in the respective rulebook) in the proposed licensee.
4. A comprehensive business plan for the application, addressing the matters described below:

a. An outline of the history of the applicant and its shareholders.
b. The reasons for applying for a license, including the applicant’s strategy and market objectives.

c. The proposed type of activities to be carried on by the applicant in/from the Kingdom of Bahrain including the work and fund flow model.
d. The proposed board and senior management of the applicant and the proposed organizational structure of the applicant..
e. An assessment of the risks that may be faced by the applicant, together with the proposed systems and controls framework to be put in place for addressing those risks and to be used for key business functions
f. An opening balance sheet for the applicant, together with a three-year financial projection, with all assumptions clearly outlined, demonstrating that the applicant will be able to meet applicable capital adequacy requirements.
5. For overseas companies, a copy of the company's current commercial registration or equivalent documentation.
6. Where the applicant is an existing Bahraini company, a certified copy of a Board resolution of the applicant, confirming its decision to seek a CBB license.
7. Details of the proposed licensee's close links, if any.
8. In the case of applicants that are part of a regulated group, a no-objection letter to the proposed license application from the applicant's lead supervisor, together with confirmation that the group is in good regulatory standing and is in compliance with applicable supervisory requirements, including those relating to capital requirements.
9. In the case of branch applicants , a no-objection letter to the proposed license application from the applicant's home supervisor, together with confirmation that the applicant is in good regulatory standing and the company concerned is in compliance with applicable supervisory requirements, including those relating to capital.
10. In the case of branch applicants , copies of the audited financial statements of the applicant (head office) for the three years immediately prior to the date of application.
11. In the case of applicants that are part of a group, copies of the audited financial statements of the applicant's group, for the three years immediately prior to the date of application.
12. In the case of applicants not falling under either of the above, copies of the audited financial statements of the applicant's major shareholder (where they are a legal person), for the three years immediately prior to the date of application.
13. In the case of applicants seeking to raise part of their capital through a private placement, a draft of the relevant private placement memorandum, together with a formal, independent legal opinion confirming that the memorandum complies with all applicable capital markets laws and regulations.
14. A copy of the applicant's memorandum and articles of association (in draft form for applicants creating a new company).

You may also refer to "Licensing Requirement" module of CBB Rulebook Vol. 1 by clicking the following linkhttps://cbben.thomsonreuters.com/sites/default/files/net_file_store/Vol_1_LR_January_2022.pdf

Required Documents

- Form 1: Application for a license
- Form 2: Application for authorization of controller
- Form 3: Application for approved person status

Municipality Affairs (Post) (6492-1)

Approval Name	Description	Estimated Time
Site Approval for Financial Services Activities	Municipality Approval for the Commercial Registration address or the site in which the Activity will be practiced	3 Days

Fee Details (if any)

10

License Information

General Conditions:
1. Size of shop/premises must be sufficient for the activity
2. Businesses may not carry out the activity outside the boundaries of the shop/ premises
3. It is prohibited to display or store any items or equipment outside the shop / premises boundary without prior approval from the Municipality. In the event of non-compliance, the Ministry of Municipality Affairs has the right to take necessary action.
4. Maintain cleanliness of the site
5. Comply with the parking space regulations as per the Construction Regulatory Requirements

Activity Specific Conditions:
1. The Commercial Registration for this activity can be registered on commercial, service, and industrial streets.
2. The commercial address of the Commercial Registration for this activity can an office address

Note: Uploading pictures of the site/shop may expedite the process of obtaining approval

Required Documents

- Lease agreement (after obtaining the necessary approvals from other licensing entities)
- Shop photos

Other Documents

- Cabinet's Decision (56) of the year 2022 regarding the Regulatory Requirements of Construction for various areas in the Kingdom of Bahrain

Financial and insurance activities

ISIC4	Business activity
6492-2	Other credit granting activities - Microfinance Institutions

Description

The Provision of relatively small credit facilities to persons of limited financial means who typically lack access to banking facilities and wish to fund small-scale enterprises.

Business Requirements

✔ Age

18 and above

✔ Allowed for Nationalities

Bahraini 100%	GCC 100%
American 100%	Singaporean 100%
Icelander 100%	Liechtenstein er 100%
Norwegian 100%	Swiss 100%

Foreign Allowed up to 100%

Legal Type

It is allowed to register according to the legal forms mentioned below

Allowed for Company Commercial Registration (CCR) : Yes

- Bahrain Shareholding Company (Public)
- Bahrain Shareholding Company (Closed)
- Branch of a Foreign Company

Required Step of Licenses and Approvals

Ministry / Directorate	License / Approval Requirements	Approval Type
CBB - Licensing directorate	Microfinance Institutions	Post
Municipality Affairs	Site Approval for Financial Services Activities	Post

CBB - Licensing directorate (Post) (6492-2)

Approval Name	Description	Estimated Time
Microfinance Institutions	The Provision of relatively small credit facilities to persons of limited financial means who typically lack access to banking facilities and wish to fund small-scale enterprises.	60 Days

Fee Details (if any)

Refer to "Licensing Requirement" module of CBB Rulebook Vol. 1 inhttps://cbben.thomsonreuters.com/rulebook/central-bank-bahrain-volume-5-specialised-licensees

License Information

The following documents must be submitted:

1. Form 1: “License Application Form”
2. Form 2: “Application for Authorization of Controller”
3. Form 3: “Application for Approved Person status)”, for each individual proposed to undertake controlled functions (as defined under the controlled functions in the respective rulebook) in the proposed licensee.
4. A comprehensive business plan for the application, addressing the matters described below:

a. An outline of the history of the applicant and its shareholders.
b. The reasons for applying for a license, including the applicant’s strategy and market objectives.
c. The proposed type of activities to be carried on by the applicant in/from the Kingdom of Bahrain including the work and fund flow model.
d. The proposed board and senior management of the applicant and the proposed organizational structure of the applicant.
e. An assessment of the risks that may be faced by the applicant, together with the

proposed systems and controls framework to be put in place for addressing those risks and to be used for key business functions
f. An opening balance sheet for the applicant, together with a three-year financial projection, with all assumptions clearly outlined, demonstrating that the applicant will be able to meet applicable capital adequacy requirements.
5. For overseas companies, a copy of the company's current commercial registration or equivalent documentation.
6. Where the applicant is an existing Bahraini company, a certified copy of a Board resolution of the applicant, confirming its decision to seek a CBB license.
7. Details of the proposed licensee's close links, if any.
8. In the case of applicants that are part of a regulated group, a no-objection letter to the proposed license application from the applicant's lead supervisor, together with confirmation that the group is in good regulatory standing and is in compliance with applicable supervisory requirements, including those relating to capital requirements.
9. In the case of branch applicants, a no-objection letter to the proposed license application from the applicant's home supervisor, together with confirmation that the applicant is in good regulatory standing and the company concerned is in compliance with applicable supervisory requirements, including those relating to capital.
10. In the case of branch applicants, copies of the audited financial statements of the applicant (head office) for the three years immediately prior to the date of application.
11. In the case of applicants that are part of a group, copies of the audited financial statements of the applicant's group, for the three years immediately prior to the date of application.
12. In the case of applicants not falling under either of the above, copies of the audited financial statements of the applicant's major shareholder (where they are a legal person), for the three years immediately prior to the date of application.
13. In the case of applicants seeking to raise part of their capital through a private placement, a draft of the relevant private placement memorandum, together with a formal, independent legal opinion confirming that the memorandum complies with all applicable capital markets laws and regulations.
14. A copy of the applicant's memorandum and articles of association (in draft form for applicants creating a new company).

You may also refer to "Licensing Requirement" module of CBB Rulebook Vol. 1 by clicking the following linkhttps://cbben.thomsonreuters.com/sites/default/files/net_file_store/Vol_1_LR_January_2022.pdf

Required Documents

- As per "Authorization" Module of CBB Rulebook Vol. 5

Municipality Affairs (Post) (6492-2)

Approval Name	Description	Estimated Time
Site Approval for Financial Services Activities	Municipality Approval for the Commercial Registration address or the site in which the Activity will be practiced	3 Days

Fee Details (if any)

10

License Information

General Conditions:
1. Size of shop/premises must be sufficient for the activity
2. Businesses may not carry out the activity outside the boundaries of the shop/ premises
3. It is prohibited to display or store any items or equipment outside the shop / premises boundary without prior approval from the Municipality. In the event of non-compliance, the Ministry of Municipality Affairs has the right to take necessary action.
4. Maintain cleanliness of the site
5. Comply with the parking space regulations as per the Construction Regulatory Requirements

Activity Specific Conditions:
1. The Commercial Registration for this activity can be registered on commercial, service, and industrial streets.
2. The commercial address of the Commercial Registration for this activity can an office address

Note: Uploading pictures of the site/shop may expedite the process of obtaining approval

Required Documents

- Lease agreement (after obtaining the necessary approvals from other licensing entities)
- Shop photos

Other Documents

- Cabinet's Decision (56) of the year 2022 regarding the Regulatory Requirements of Construction for various areas in the Kingdom of Bahrain

Financial and insurance activities

ISIC4	Business activity
64991	Selling and buying shares and securities for company's account only

Description

Includes activities of entities that buy and sell shares and securities for their own-account

Business Requirements

Age

18 and above

Allowed for Nationalities

Bahraini 100%	GCC 100%
American 100%	Singaporean 100%
Icelander 100%	Liechtenstein er 100%
Norwegian 100%	Swiss 100%

Foreign Allowed up to 100%

Legal Type

It is allowed to register according to the legal forms mentioned below

Allowed for Individual Commercial Registration (ICR) : Yes

Allowed for Company Commercial Registration (CCR) : Yes

- Bahrain Shareholding Company (Public)
- With Limited Liability Company
- Branch of a Foreign Company
- Bahrain Shareholding Company (Closed)
- Partnership Company
- Simple Commandite Company
- Commandite By Shares Company
- Non Profit Company

Required Step of Licenses and Approvals

Ministry / Directorate	License / Approval Requirements	Approval Type
Municipality Affairs	Municipality Site Approval	Post

Municipality Affairs (Post) (64991)

Approval Name	Description	Estimated Time
Municipality Site Approval	Municipality approval of the business location (site) is required for all types of business activities. Municipalities verify that the proposed location / zone are appropriate for the proposed business activity. Site approval is issued automatically for pre-approved commercial areas, such as commercial malls and commercial buildings.	15 Days

Fee Details (if any)

Company application registration form
1. Copy of applicant's CPR card (passport for non-Bahrainis)
2. Two copies of property deed or rental agreement
3. If application is for relocation from one area to another, certificate of relocation by previous Municipality
4. Copy of electricity bill or electricity account number for new premises
5. Copy of sale agreement, if CR is purchased from another person
6. Copy of power of attorney, if required

License Information

There is no License Information in this license.

Required Documents

- Lease agreement (after obtaining the necessary approvals from other licensing entities)
- Photos of the premises

Other Documents

- قرار رقم (56) لسنة 2022 بإصدار الاشتراطات التنظيمية للتعمير بمختلف المناطق في المملكة

Financial and insurance activities

ISIC4	Business activity
6500-1	Insurance/ Re-insurance Activities - Insurance and Re-insurance Companies - Locally

Description

Operating in the fields of insurance and re-insurance, conclusion and enforcement of insurance, re-insurance, takaful or re-takaful contracts.

Business Requirements

✔ Age

18 and above

✔ Allowed for Nationalities

Bahraini 100%	GCC 100%
American 100%	Singaporean 100%
Icelander 100%	Liechtenstein er 100%
Norwegian 100%	Swiss 100%

Foreign Allowed up to 100%

Legal Type

It is allowed to register according to the legal forms mentioned below

Allowed for Company Commercial Registration (CCR) : Yes

- Bahrain Shareholding Company (Public)
- Bahrain Shareholding Company (Closed)

Required Step of Licenses and Approvals

Ministry / Directorate	License / Approval Requirements	Approval Type
CBB - Licensing directorate	Insurance and Re-insurance Companies - Locally	Post
Municipality Affairs	Site Approval for Financial Services Activities	Post

CBB - Licensing directorate (Post) (6500-1)

Approval Name	Description	Estimated Time
Insurance and Re-insurance Companies - Locally	Operating in the fields of insurance and re-insurance, conclusion and enforcement of insurance, re-insurance, takaful or re-takaful contracts.	60 Days

Fee Details (if any)

Refer to "Licensing Requirement" module of CBB Rulebook Vol. 1 inhttps://cbben.thomsonreuters.com/rulebook/part-3

License Information

The following documents must be submitted:

1. Form 1: “License Application Form”
2. Form 2: “Application for Authorization of Controller”
3. Form 3: “Application for Approved Person status)”, for each individual proposed to undertake controlled functions (as defined under the controlled functions in the respective rulebook) in the proposed licensee.
4. A comprehensive business plan for the application, addressing the matters described below:

a. An outline of the history of the applicant and its shareholders.
b. The reasons for applying for a license, including the applicant’s strategy and market objectives.
c. The proposed type of activities to be carried on by the applicant in/from the Kingdom of Bahrain including the work and fund flow model.
d. The proposed board and senior management of the applicant and the proposed organizational structure of the applicant.
e. An assessment of the risks that may be faced by the applicant, together with the proposed systems and controls framework to be put in place for addressing those risks and to be used for key business functions

f. An opening balance sheet for the applicant, together with a three-year financial projection, with all assumptions clearly outlined, demonstrating that the applicant will be able to meet applicable capital adequacy requirements.
5. For overseas companies, a copy of the company's current commercial registration or equivalent documentation.
6. Where the applicant is an existing Bahraini company, a certified copy of a Board resolution of the applicant, confirming its decision to seek a CBB license.
7. Details of the proposed licensee's close links, if any.
8. In the case of applicants that are part of a regulated group, a no-objection lette to the proposed license application from the applicant's lead supervisor, together with confirmation that the group is in good regulatory standing and is in compliance with applicable supervisory requirements, including those relating to capital requirements.
9. In the case of branch applicants, a no-objection letter to the proposed license application from the applicant's home supervisor, together with confirmation that the applicant is in good regulatory standing and the company concerned is in compliance with applicable supervisory requirements, including those relating to capital.
10. In the case of branch applicants, copies of the audited financial statements of the applicant (head office) for the three years immediately prior to the date of application.
11. In the case of applicants that are part of a group, copies of the audited financial statements of the applicant's group, for the three years immediately prior to the date of application.
12. In the case of applicants not falling under either of the above, copies of the audited financial statements of the applicant's major shareholder (where they are a legal person), for the three years immediately prior to the date of application.
13. In the case of applicants seeking to raise part of their capital through a private placement, a draft of the relevant private placement memorandum, together with a formal, independent legal opinion confirming that the memorandum complies with all applicable capital markets laws and regulations.
14. A copy of the applicant's memorandum and articles of association (in draft form for applicants creating a new company).

You may also refer to "Licensing Requirement" module of CBB Rulebook Vol. 1 by clicking the following linkhttps://cbben.thomsonreuters.com/sites/default/files/net_file_store/Vol_1_LR_January_2022.pdf

Required Documents

- Form 1: Application for a license
- Form 2: Application for authorization of controller
- Form 3: Application for approved person status

Municipality Affairs (Post) (6500-1)

Approval Name	Description	Estimated Time
Site Approval for Financial Services Activities	Municipality Approval for the Commercial Registration address or the site in which the Activity will be practiced	3 Days

Fee Details (if any)

10

License Information

General Conditions:
1. Size of shop/premises must be sufficient for the activity
2. Businesses may not carry out the activity outside the boundaries of the shop/ premises
3. It is prohibited to display or store any items or equipment outside the shop / premises boundary without prior approval from the Municipality. In the event of non-compliance, the Ministry of Municipality Affairs has the right to take necessary action.
4. Maintain cleanliness of the site
5. Comply with the parking space regulations as per the Construction Regulatory Requirements

Activity Specific Conditions:
1. The Commercial Registration for this activity can be registered on commercial, service, and industrial streets.
2. The commercial address of the Commercial Registration for this activity can an office address

Note: Uploading pictures of the site/shop may expedite the process of obtaining approval

Required Documents

- Lease agreement (after obtaining the necessary approvals from other licensing entities)
- Shop photos

Other Documents

- Cabinet's Decision (56) of the year 2022 regarding the Regulatory Requirements of Construction for various areas in the Kingdom of Bahrain

Financial and insurance activities

ISIC4	Business activity
6500-2	Insurance/ Re-insurance Activities - Insurance and Re-insurance Companies - Branch

Description

Operating in the fields of insurance and re-insurance, conclusion and enforcement of insurance, re-insurance, takaful or re-takaful contracts.

Business Requirements

✔ Age

18 and above

✔ Allowed for Nationalities

Bahraini 100%	GCC 100%
American 100%	Singaporean 100%
Icelander 100%	Liechtenstein er 100%
Norwegian 100%	Swiss 100%

Foreign Allowed up to 100%

Legal Type

It is allowed to register according to the legal forms mentioned below

Allowed for Company Commercial Registration (CCR) : Yes

- Bahrain Shareholding Company (Public)
- Bahrain Shareholding Company (Closed)
- Branch of a Foreign Company

Required Step of Licenses and Approvals

Ministry / Directorate	License / Approval Requirements	Approval Type
CBB - Licensing directorate	Insurance and Re-insurance Companies - Locally	Post
Municipality Affairs	Site Approval for Financial Services Activities	Post

CBB - Licensing directorate (Post) (6500-2)

Approval Name	Description	Estimated Time
Insurance and Re-insurance Companies - Locally	Operating in the fields of insurance and re-insurance, conclusion and enforcement of insurance, re-insurance, takaful or re-takaful contracts.	60 Days

Fee Details (if any)

Refer to "Licensing Requirement" module of CBB Rulebook Vol. 1 inhttps://cbben.thomsonreuters.com/rulebook/part-3

License Information

The following documents must be submitted:

1. Form 1: “License Application Form”
2. Form 2: “Application for Authorization of Controller”
3. Form 3: “Application for Approved Person status)”, for each individual proposed to undertake controlled functions (as defined under the controlled functions in the respective rulebook) in the proposed licensee.
4. A comprehensive business plan for the application, addressing the matters described below:

a. An outline of the history of the applicant and its shareholders.
b. The reasons for applying for a license, including the applicant’s strategy and market objectives.
c. The proposed type of activities to be carried on by the applicant in/from the Kingdom of Bahrain including the work and fund flow model.
d. The proposed board and senior management of the applicant and the proposed organizational structure of the applicant.
e. An assessment of the risks that may be faced by the applicant, together with the proposed systems and controls framework to be put in place for addressing those risks and to be used for key business functions

f. An opening balance sheet for the applicant, together with a three-year financial projection, with all assumptions clearly outlined, demonstrating that the applicant will be able to meet applicable capital adequacy requirements.
5. For overseas companies, a copy of the company's current commercial registration or equivalent documentation.
6. Where the applicant is an existing Bahraini company, a certified copy of a Board resolution of the applicant, confirming its decision to seek a CBB license.
7. Details of the proposed licensee's close links, if any.
8. In the case of applicants that are part of a regulated group, a no-objection lette to the proposed license application from the applicant's lead supervisor, together with confirmation that the group is in good regulatory standing and is in compliance with applicable supervisory requirements, including those relating to capital requirements.
9. In the case of branch applicants, a no-objection letter to the proposed license application from the applicant's home supervisor, together with confirmation that the applicant is in good regulatory standing and the company concerned is in compliance with applicable supervisory requirements, including those relating to capital.
10. In the case of branch applicants, copies of the audited financial statements of the applicant (head office) for the three years immediately prior to the date of application.
11. In the case of applicants that are part of a group, copies of the audited financial statements of the applicant's group, for the three years immediately prior to the date of application.
12. In the case of applicants not falling under either of the above, copies of the audited financial statements of the applicant's major shareholder (where they are a legal person), for the three years immediately prior to the date of application.
13. In the case of applicants seeking to raise part of their capital through a private placement, a draft of the relevant private placement memorandum, together with a formal, independent legal opinion confirming that the memorandum complies with all applicable capital markets laws and regulations.
14. A copy of the applicant's memorandum and articles of association (in draft form for applicants creating a new company).

You may also refer to "Licensing Requirement" module of CBB Rulebook Vol. 1 by clicking the following linkhttps://cbben.thomsonreuters.com/sites/default/files/net_file_store/Vol_1_LR_January_2022.pdf

Required Documents

- Form 1: Application for a license
- Form 2: Application for authorization of controller
- Form 3: Application for approved person status

Municipality Affairs (Post) (6500-2)

Approval Name	Description	Estimated Time
Site Approval for Financial Services Activities	Municipality Approval for the Commercial Registration address or the site in which the Activity will be practiced	3 Days

Fee Details (if any)

10

License Information

General Conditions:
1. Size of shop/premises must be sufficient for the activity
2. Businesses may not carry out the activity outside the boundaries of the shop/ premises
3. It is prohibited to display or store any items or equipment outside the shop / premises boundary without prior approval from the Municipality. In the event of non-compliance, the Ministry of Municipality Affairs has the right to take necessary action.
4. Maintain cleanliness of the site
5. Comply with the parking space regulations as per the Construction Regulatory Requirements

Activity Specific Conditions:
1. The Commercial Registration for this activity can be registered on commercial, service, and industrial streets.
2. The commercial address of the Commercial Registration for this activity can an office address

Note: Uploading pictures of the site/shop may expedite the process of obtaining approval

Required Documents

- Lease agreement (after obtaining the necessary approvals from other licensing entities)
- Shop photos

Other Documents

- Cabinet's Decision (56) of the year 2022 regarding the Regulatory Requirements of Construction for various areas in the Kingdom of Bahrain

Financial and insurance activities

ISIC4	Business activity
6500-3	Insurance/ Re-insurance Activities - Captive Insurance Companies

Description

Performing insurance operations for the assets of a holding company only

Business Requirements

Age

18 and above

Allowed for Nationalities

Bahraini 100%	GCC 100%
American 100%	Singaporean 100%
Icelander 100%	Liechtensteiner 100%
Norwegian 100%	Swiss 100%

Foreign Allowed up to 100%

Legal Type

It is allowed to register according to the legal forms mentioned below

Allowed for Company Commercial Registration (CCR) : Yes

- Bahrain Shareholding Company (Public)
- Bahrain Shareholding Company (Closed)
- Protected Cell Company
- Investment Limited Partnerships

Required Step of Licenses and Approvals

Ministry / Directorate	License / Approval Requirements	Approval Type
CBB - Licensing directorate	Captive Insurance Companies	Post
Municipality Affairs	Site Approval for Financial Services Activities	Post

CBB - Licensing directorate (Post) (6500-3)

Approval Name	Description	Estimated Time
Captive Insurance Companies	Performing insurance operations for the assets of a holding company only.	60 Days

Fee Details (if any)

Refer to "Licensing Requirement" module of CBB Rulebook Vol. 1 inhttps://cbben.thomsonreuters.com/rulebook/part-3

License Information

The following documents must be submitted:

1. Form 1: “License Application Form”
2. Form 2: “Application for Authorization of Controller”
3. Form 3: “Application for Approved Person status)”, for each individual proposed to undertake controlled functions (as defined under the controlled functions in the respective rulebook) in the proposed licensee.
4. A comprehensive business plan for the application, addressing the matters described below:
a. An outline of the history of the applicant and its shareholders.
b. The reasons for applying for a license, including the applicant’s strategy and market objectives.
c. The proposed type of activities to be carried on by the applicant in/from the Kingdom of Bahrain including the work and fund flow model.
d. The proposed board and senior management of the applicant and the proposed organizational structure of the applicant.
e. An assessment of the risks that may be faced by the applicant, together with the proposed systems and controls framework to be put in place for addressing those risks and to be used for key business functions
f. An opening balance sheet for the applicant, together with a three-year financial projection, with all assumptions clearly outlined, demonstrating that the applicant will be able to meet applicable capital adequacy requirements.
5. For overseas companies, a copy of the company’s current commercial registration or

equivalent documentation.
6. Where the applicant is an existing Bahraini company, a certified copy of a Board resolution of the applicant, confirming its decision to seek a CBB license.
7. Details of the proposed licensee's close links, if any.
8. In the case of applicants that are part of a regulated group, a no-objection letter to the proposed license application from the applicant's lead supervisor, together with confirmation that the group is in good regulatory standing and is in compliance with applicable supervisory requirements, including those relating to capital requirements.
9. In the case of branch applicants, a no-objection letter to the proposed license application from the applicant's home supervisor, together with confirmation that the applicant is in good regulatory standing and the company concerned is in compliance with applicable supervisory requirements, including those relating to capital.
10. In the case of branch applicants, copies of the audited financial statements of the applicant (head office) for the three years immediately prior to the date of application.
11. In the case of applicants that are part of a group, copies of the audited financial statements of the applicant's group, for the three years immediately prior to the date of application.
12. In the case of applicants not falling under either of the above, copies of the audited financial statements of the applicant's major shareholder (where they are a legal person), for the three years immediately prior to the date of application.
13. In the case of applicants seeking to raise part of their capital through a private placement, a draft of the relevant private placement memorandum, together with a formal, independent legal opinion confirming that the memorandum complies with all applicable capital markets laws and regulations.
14. A copy of the applicant's memorandum and articles of association (in draft form for applicants creating a new company).

You may also refer to "Licensing Requirement" module of CBB Rulebook Vol. 1 by clicking the following linkhttps://cbben.thomsonreuters.com/sites/default/files/net_file_store/Vol_1_LR_January_2022.pdf

Required Documents

- Form 1: Application for a license
- Form 2: Application for authorization of controller
- Form 3: Application for approved person status

Municipality Affairs (Post) (6500-3)

Approval Name	Description	Estimated Time
Site Approval for Financial Services Activities	Municipality Approval for the Commercial Registration address or the site in which the Activity will be practiced	3 Days

Fee Details (if any)

10

License Information

General Conditions:
1. Size of shop/premises must be sufficient for the activity
2. Businesses may not carry out the activity outside the boundaries of the shop/ premises
3. It is prohibited to display or store any items or equipment outside the shop / premises boundary without prior approval from the Municipality. In the event of non-compliance, the Ministry of Municipality Affairs has the right to take necessary action.
4. Maintain cleanliness of the site
5. Comply with the parking space regulations as per the Construction Regulatory Requirements

Activity Specific Conditions:
1. The Commercial Registration for this activity can be registered on commercial, service, and industrial streets.
2. The commercial address of the Commercial Registration for this activity can an office address

Note: Uploading pictures of the site/shop may expedite the process of obtaining approval

Required Documents

- Lease agreement (after obtaining the necessary approvals from other licensing entities)
- Shop photos

Other Documents

- Cabinet's Decision (56) of the year 2022 regarding the Regulatory Requirements of Construction for various areas in the Kingdom of Bahrain

Financial and insurance activities

ISIC4	Business activity
6611-1	Administration of financial markets - Licensed Exchanges

Description

Establishing, Managing and Operating Markets and Systems for Trading in Securities and Financial Instruments in/from the Kingdom of Bahrain. And to under-take any other related activities.

Business Requirements

Age

18 and above

Allowed for Nationalities

Bahraini 100%		GCC 100%	
American 100%		Singaporean 100%	
Icelander 100%		Liechtenstein er 100%	
Norwegian 100%		Swiss 100%	

Foreign Allowed up to 100%

Legal Type

It is allowed to register according to the legal forms mentioned below

Allowed for Individual Commercial Registration (ICR) : Yes

Allowed for Company Commercial Registration (CCR) : Yes

- Bahrain Shareholding Company (Public)
- Bahrain Shareholding Company (Closed)
- Branch of a Foreign Company

Required Step of Licenses and Approvals

Ministry / Directorate	License / Approval Requirements	Approval Type
Municipality Affairs	Site Approval for Financial Services Activities	Post
CBB - Licensing directorate	licensed exchanges	Post

Municipality Affairs (Post) (6611-1)

Approval Name	Description	Estimated Time
Site Approval for Financial Services Activities	Municipality Approval for the Commercial Registration address or the site in which the Activity will be practiced	3 Days

Fee Details (if any)

10

License Information

General Conditions:
1. Size of shop/premises must be sufficient for the activity
2. Businesses may not carry out the activity outside the boundaries of the shop/ premises
3. It is prohibited to display or store any items or equipment outside the shop / premises boundary without prior approval from the Municipality. In the event of non-compliance, the Ministry of Municipality Affairs has the right to take necessary action.
4. Maintain cleanliness of the site
5. Comply with the parking space regulations as per the Construction Regulatory Requirements

Activity Specific Conditions:
1. The Commercial Registration for this activity can be registered on commercial, service, and industrial streets.
2. The commercial address of the Commercial Registration for this activity can an office address

Note: Uploading pictures of the site/shop may expedite the process of obtaining approval

Required Documents

- Lease agreement (after obtaining the necessary approvals from other licensing entities)
- Shop photos

Other Documents

- Cabinet's Decision (56) of the year 2022 regarding the Regulatory Requirements of Construction for various areas in the Kingdom of Bahrain

CBB - Licensing directorate (Post) (6611-1)

Approval Name	Description	Estimated Time
licensed exchanges	licensed exchanges	60 Days

Fee Details (if any)

Refer to "Licensing Requirement" module of CBB Rulebook Vol. 1 inhttps://cbben.thomsonreuters.com/rulebook/part-13

License Information

The following documents must be submitted:

1. Form 1: “License Application Form”
2. Form 2: “Application for Authorization of Controller”
3. Form 3: “Application for Approved Person status)”, for each individual proposed to undertake controlled functions (as defined under the controlled functions in the respective rulebook) in the proposed licensee.
4. A comprehensive business plan for the application, addressing the matters described below:
a. An outline of the history of the applicant and its shareholders.
b. The reasons for applying for a license, including the applicant’s strategy and market objectives.
c. The proposed type of activities to be carried on by the applicant in/from the Kingdom of Bahrain including the work and fund flow model.
d. The proposed board and senior management of the applicant and the proposed organizational structure of the applicant.
e. An assessment of the risks that may be faced by the applicant, together with the proposed systems and controls framework to be put in place for addressing those risks and to be used for key business functions
f. An opening balance sheet for the applicant, together with a three-year financial projection, with all assumptions clearly outlined, demonstrating that the applicant will be able to meet applicable capital adequacy requirements.
5. For overseas companies, a copy of the company’s current commercial registration or equivalent documentation.
6. Where the applicant is an existing Bahraini company, a certified copy of a Board resolution of the applicant, confirming its decision to seek a CBB license.

7. Details of the proposed licensee's close links, if any.
8. In the case of applicants that are part of a regulated group, a no-objection letter to the proposed license application from the applicant's lead supervisor, together with confirmation that the group is in good regulatory standing and is in compliance with applicable supervisory requirements, including those relating to capital requirements.
9. In the case of branch applicants , a no-objection letter to the proposed license application from the applicant's home supervisor, together with confirmation that the applicant is in good regulatory standing and the company concerned is in compliance with applicable supervisory requirements, including those relating to capital.
10. In the case of branch applicants , copies of the audited financial statements of the applicant (head office) for the three years immediately prior to the date of application.
11. In the case of applicants that are part of a group, copies of the audited financial statements of the applicant's group, for the three years immediately prior to the date of application.
12. In the case of applicants not falling under either of the above, copies of the audited financial statements of the applicant's major shareholder (where they are a legal person), for the three years immediately prior to the date of application.
13. In the case of applicants seeking to raise part of their capital through a private placement, a draft of the relevant private placement memorandum, together with a formal, independent legal opinion confirming that the memorandum complies with all applicable capital markets laws and regulations.
14. A copy of the applicant's memorandum and articles of association (in draft form for applicants creating a new company).

You may also refer to "Licensing Requirement" module of CBB Rulebook Vol. 1 by clicking the following linkhttps://cbben.thomsonreuters.com/sites/default/files/net_file_store/Vol_1_LR_January_2022.pdf

Required Documents

- Form 1: Application for a license
- Form 2: Application for authorization of controller
- Form 3: Application for approved person status

Financial and insurance activities

ISIC4	Business activity
6611-2	Administration of financial markets - Licensed Clearing, Settlement and Central Depository Systems

Description

Establishing, Managing and Operating Central Depository and Registry Systems and Clearing, Settlement of transactions executed through the Licensed Exchanges. And to under-take any other related activities.

Business Requirements

Age

18 and above

Allowed for Nationalities

Bahraini 100%		GCC 100%	
American 100%		Singaporean 100%	
Icelander 100%		Liechtenstein er 100%	
Norwegian 100%		Swiss 100%	

Foreign Allowed up to 100%

Legal Type

It is allowed to register according to the legal forms mentioned below

Allowed for Individual Commercial Registration (ICR) : Yes

Allowed for Company Commercial Registration (CCR) : Yes

- Bahrain Shareholding Company (Public)
- Bahrain Shareholding Company (Closed)
- Branch of a Foreign Company

Required Step of Licenses and Approvals

Ministry / Directorate	License / Approval Requirements	Approval Type
Municipality Affairs	Site Approval for Financial Services Activities	Post
CBB - Licensing directorate	Licensed Clearing, Settlement and Central Depository Systems	Post

Municipality Affairs (Post) (6611-2)

Approval Name	Description	Estimated Time
Site Approval for Financial Services Activities	Municipality Approval for the Commercial Registration address or the site in which the Activity will be practiced	3 Days

Fee Details (if any)

10

License Information

General Conditions:
1. Size of shop/premises must be sufficient for the activity
2. Businesses may not carry out the activity outside the boundaries of the shop/ premises
3. It is prohibited to display or store any items or equipment outside the shop / premises boundary without prior approval from the Municipality. In the event of non-compliance, the Ministry of Municipality Affairs has the right to take necessary action.
4. Maintain cleanliness of the site
5. Comply with the parking space regulations as per the Construction Regulatory Requirements

Activity Specific Conditions:
1. The Commercial Registration for this activity can be registered on commercial, service, and industrial streets.
2. The commercial address of the Commercial Registration for this activity can an office address

Note: Uploading pictures of the site/shop may expedite the process of obtaining approval

Required Documents

- Lease agreement (after obtaining the necessary approvals from other licensing entities)
- Shop photos

Other Documents

- Cabinet's Decision (56) of the year 2022 regarding the Regulatory Requirements of Construction for various areas in the Kingdom of Bahrain

CBB - Licensing directorate (Post) (6611-2)

Approval Name	Description	Estimated Time
Licensed Clearing, Settlement and Central Depository Systems	Establishing, Managing and Operating Central Depository and Registry Systems and Clearing, Settlement of transactions executed through the Licensed Exchanges. And to under-take any other related activities.	60 Days

Fee Details (if any)

Refer to "Licensing Requirement" module of CBB Rulebook Vol. 1 inhttps://cbben.thomsonreuters.com/rulebook/part-13

License Information

The following documents must be submitted:

1. Form 1: “License Application Form”
2. Form 2: “Application for Authorization of Controller”
3. Form 3: “Application for Approved Person status)”, for each individual proposed to undertake controlled functions (as defined under the controlled functions in the respective rulebook) in the proposed licensee.
4. A comprehensive business plan for the application, addressing the matters described below:

a. An outline of the history of the applicant and its shareholders.
b. The reasons for applying for a license, including the applicant’s strategy and market objectives.
c. The proposed type of activities to be carried on by the applicant in/from the Kingdom of Bahrain including the work and fund flow model.
d. The proposed board and senior management of the applicant and the proposed

organizational structure of the applicant.
e. An assessment of the risks that may be faced by the applicant, together with the proposed systems and controls framework to be put in place for addressing those risks and to be used for key business functions
f. An opening balance sheet for the applicant, together with a three-year financial projection, with all assumptions clearly outlined, demonstrating that the applicant will be able to meet applicable capital adequacy requirements.
5. For overseas companies, a copy of the company's current commercial registration or equivalent documentation.
6. Where the applicant is an existing Bahraini company, a certified copy of a Board resolution of the applicant, confirming its decision to seek a CBB license.
7. Details of the proposed licensee's close links, if any.
8. In the case of applicants that are part of a regulated group, a no-objection letter to the proposed license application from the applicant's lead supervisor, together with confirmation that the group is in good regulatory standing and is in compliance with applicable supervisory requirements, including those relating to capital requirements.
9. In the case of branch applicants, a no-objection letter to the proposed license application from the applicant's home supervisor, together with confirmation that the applicant is in good regulatory standing and the company concerned is in compliance with applicable supervisory requirements, including those relating to capital.
10. In the case of branch applicants, copies of the audited financial statements of the applicant (head office) for the three years immediately prior to the date of application.
11. In the case of applicants that are part of a group, copies of the audited financial statements of the applicant's group, for the three years immediately prior to the date of application.
12. In the case of applicants not falling under either of the above, copies of the audited financial statements of the applicant's major shareholder (where they are a legal person), for the three years immediately prior to the date of application.
13. In the case of applicants seeking to raise part of their capital through a private placement, a draft of the relevant private placement memorandum, together with a formal, independent legal opinion confirming that the memorandum complies with all applicable capital markets laws and regulations.
14. A copy of the applicant's memorandum and articles of association (in draft form for applicants creating a new company).

You may also refer to "Licensing Requirement" module of CBB Rulebook Vol. 1 by clicking the following linkhttps://cbben.thomsonreuters.com/sites/default/files/net_file_store/Vol_1_LR_January_2022.pdf

Required Documents

- Form 1: Application for a license
- Form 2: Application for authorization of controller
- Form 3: Application for approved person status

Financial and insurance activities

ISIC4	Business activity
6612-1	Security and commodity contracts brokerage - Licensed Securities Discount Broker

Description

Acting as an Agent, executes orders to buy and sell securities and financial instruments through other members of the Licensed Exchange.

Business Requirements

Age

18 and above

Allowed for Nationalities

Bahraini 100%	GCC 100%
American 100%	Singaporean 100%
Icelander 100%	Liechtenstein er 100%
Norwegian 100%	Swiss 100%

Foreign Allowed up to 100%

Legal Type

It is allowed to register according to the legal forms mentioned below

Allowed for Company Commercial Registration (CCR) : Yes

- Bahrain Shareholding Company (Public)
- Bahrain Shareholding Company (Closed)
- Branch of a Foreign Company

Required Step of Licenses and Approvals

Ministry / Directorate	License / Approval Requirements	Approval Type
Municipality Affairs	Site Approval for Financial Services Activities	Post
CBB - Licensing directorate	Licensed Securities Discount Broker	Post

Municipality Affairs (Post) (6612-1)

Approval Name	Description	Estimated Time
Site Approval for Financial Services Activities	Municipality Approval for the Commercial Registration address or the site in which the Activity will be practiced	3 Days

Fee Details (if any)

10

License Information

General Conditions:
1. Size of shop/premises must be sufficient for the activity
2. Businesses may not carry out the activity outside the boundaries of the shop/ premises
3. It is prohibited to display or store any items or equipment outside the shop / premises boundary without prior approval from the Municipality. In the event of non-compliance, the Ministry of Municipality Affairs has the right to take necessary action.
4. Maintain cleanliness of the site
5. Comply with the parking space regulations as per the Construction Regulatory Requirements

Activity Specific Conditions:
1. The Commercial Registration for this activity can be registered on commercial, service, and industrial streets.
2. The commercial address of the Commercial Registration for this activity can an office address

Note: Uploading pictures of the site/shop may expedite the process of obtaining approval

Required Documents

- Lease agreement (after obtaining the necessary approvals from other licensing entities)
- Shop photos

Other Documents

- Cabinet's Decision (56) of the year 2022 regarding the Regulatory Requirements of Construction for various areas in the Kingdom of Bahrain

CBB - Licensing directorate (Post) (6612-1)

Approval Name	Description	Estimated Time
Licensed Securities Discount Broker	Acting as an Agent, executes orders to buy and sell securities and financial instruments through other members of the Licensed Exchange.	1 Days

Fee Details (if any)

Refer to "Licensing Requirement" module of CBB Rulebook Vol. 1 inhttps://cbben.thomsonreuters.com/rulebook/part-13

License Information

The following documents must be submitted:

1. Form 1: “License Application Form”
2. Form 2: “Application for Authorization of Controller”
3. Form 3: “Application for Approved Person status)”, for each individual proposed to undertake controlled functions (as defined under the controlled functions in the respective rulebook) in the proposed licensee.
4. A comprehensive business plan for the application, addressing the matters described below:

a. An outline of the history of the applicant and its shareholders.
b. The reasons for applying for a license, including the applicant’s strategy and market objectives.
c. The proposed type of activities to be carried on by the applicant in/from the Kingdom of Bahrain including the work and fund flow model.
d. The proposed board and senior management of the applicant and the proposed organizational structure of the applicant.
e. An assessment of the risks that may be faced by the applicant, together with the proposed systems and controls framework to be put in place for addressing those risks and to be used for key business functions
f. An opening balance sheet for the applicant, together with a three-year financial

projection, with all assumptions clearly outlined, demonstrating that the applicant will be able to meet applicable capital adequacy requirements.
5. For overseas companies, a copy of the company's current commercial registration or equivalent documentation.
6. Where the applicant is an existing Bahraini company, a certified copy of a Board resolution of the applicant, confirming its decision to seek a CBB license.
7. Details of the proposed licensee's close links, if any.
8. In the case of applicants that are part of a regulated group, a no-objection letter to the proposed license application from the applicant's lead supervisor, together with confirmation that the group is in good regulatory standing and is in compliance with applicable supervisory requirements, including those relating to capital requirements.
9. In the case of branch applicants, a no-objection letter to the proposed license application from the applicant's home supervisor, together with confirmation that the applicant is in good regulatory standing and the company concerned is in compliance with applicable supervisory requirements, including those relating to capital.
10. In the case of branch applicants, copies of the audited financial statements of the applicant (head office) for the three years immediately prior to the date of application.
11. In the case of applicants that are part of a group, copies of the audited financial statements of the applicant's group, for the three years immediately prior to the date of application.
12. In the case of applicants not falling under either of the above, copies of the audited financial statements of the applicant's major shareholder (where they are a legal person), for the three years immediately prior to the date of application.
13. In the case of applicants seeking to raise part of their capital through a private placement, a draft of the relevant private placement memorandum, together with a formal, independent legal opinion confirming that the memorandum complies with all applicable capital markets laws and regulations.
14. A copy of the applicant's memorandum and articles of association (in draft form for applicants creating a new company).

You may also refer to "Licensing Requirement" module of CBB Rulebook Vol. 1 by clicking the following linkhttps://cbben.thomsonreuters.com/sites/default/files/net_file_store/Vol_1_LR_January_2022.pdf

Required Documents

- Form 1: Application for a license
- Form 2: Application for authorization of controller
- Form 3: Application for approved person status

Financial and insurance activities

ISIC4	Business activity
6612-2	Security and commodity contracts brokerage - Licensed Securities Broker

Description

Acting as an Agent, executes orders to buy and sell securities and financial instruments listed on a Licensed Exchange. As well as other related activities.

Business Requirements

✔ Age

18 and above

✔ Allowed for Nationalities

Bahraini 100%	GCC 100%
American 100%	Singaporean 100%
Icelander 100%	Liechtenstein er 100%
Norwegian 100%	Swiss 100%

Foreign Allowed up to 100%

Legal Type

It is allowed to register according to the legal forms mentioned below

Allowed for Company Commercial Registration (CCR) : Yes

- Bahrain Shareholding Company (Public)
- Bahrain Shareholding Company (Closed)
- Branch of a Foreign Company

Required Step of Licenses and Approvals

Ministry / Directorate	License / Approval Requirements	Approval Type
CBB - Licensing directorate	Licensed Securities Broker	Post
Municipality Affairs	Site Approval for Financial Services Activities	Post

CBB - Licensing directorate (Post) (6612-2)

Approval Name	Description	Estimated Time
Licensed Securities Broker	Acting as an Agent, executes orders to buy and sell securities and financial instruments listed on a Licensed Exchange, as well as other related activities.	60 Days

Fee Details (if any)

Refer to "Licensing Requirement" module of CBB Rulebook Vol. 1 inhttps://cbben.thomsonreuters.com/rulebook/part-13

License Information

The following documents must be submitted:

1. Form 1: “License Application Form”
2. Form 2: “Application for Authorization of Controller”
3. Form 3: “Application for Approved Person status)”, for each individual proposed to undertake controlled functions (as defined under the controlled functions in the respective rulebook) in the proposed licensee.
4. A comprehensive business plan for the application, addressing the matters described below:

a. An outline of the history of the applicant and its shareholders.
b. The reasons for applying for a license, including the applicant’s strategy and market objectives.
c. The proposed type of activities to be carried on by the applicant in/from the Kingdom of Bahrain including the work and fund flow model.
d. The proposed board and senior management of the applicant and the proposed organizational structure of the applicant.
e. An assessment of the risks that may be faced by the applicant, together with the proposed systems and controls framework to be put in place for addressing those risks and to be used for key business functions

f. An opening balance sheet for the applicant, together with a three-year financial projection, with all assumptions clearly outlined, demonstrating that the applicant will be able to meet applicable capital adequacy requirements.
5. For overseas companies, a copy of the company's current commercial registration or equivalent documentation.
6. Where the applicant is an existing Bahraini company, a certified copy of a Board resolution of the applicant, confirming its decision to seek a CBB license.
7. Details of the proposed licensee's close links, if any.
8. In the case of applicants that are part of a regulated group, a no-objection letter to the proposed license application from the applicant's lead supervisor, together with confirmation that the group is in good regulatory standing and is in compliance with applicable supervisory requirements, including those relating to capital requirements.
9. In the case of branch applicants, a no-objection letter to the proposed license application from the applicant's home supervisor, together with confirmation that the applicant is in good regulatory standing and the company concerned is in compliance with applicable supervisory requirements, including those relating to capital.
10. In the case of branch applicants, copies of the audited financial statements of the applicant (head office) for the three years immediately prior to the date of application.
11. In the case of applicants that are part of a group, copies of the audited financial statements of the applicant's group, for the three years immediately prior to the date of application.
12. In the case of applicants not falling under either of the above, copies of the audited financial statements of the applicant's major shareholder (where they are a legal person), for the three years immediately prior to the date of application.
13. In the case of applicants seeking to raise part of their capital through a private placement, a draft of the relevant private placement memorandum, together with a formal, independent legal opinion confirming that the memorandum complies with all applicable capital markets laws and regulations.
14. A copy of the applicant's memorandum and articles of association (in draft form for applicants creating a new company).

You may also refer to "Licensing Requirement" module of CBB Rulebook Vol. 1 by clicking the following linkhttps://cbben.thomsonreuters.com/sites/default/files/net_file_store/Vol_1_LR_January_2022.pdf

Required Documents

- Form 1: Application for a license
- Form 2: Application for authorization of controller
- Form 3: Application for approved person status

Municipality Affairs (Post) (6612-2)

Approval Name	Description	Estimated Time
Site Approval for Financial Services Activities	Municipality Approval for the Commercial Registration address or the site in which the Activity will be practiced	3 Days

Fee Details (if any)

10

License Information

General Conditions:
1. Size of shop/premises must be sufficient for the activity
2. Businesses may not carry out the activity outside the boundaries of the shop/ premises
3. It is prohibited to display or store any items or equipment outside the shop / premises boundary without prior approval from the Municipality. In the event of non-compliance, the Ministry of Municipality Affairs has the right to take necessary action.
4. Maintain cleanliness of the site
5. Comply with the parking space regulations as per the Construction Regulatory Requirements

Activity Specific Conditions:
1. The Commercial Registration for this activity can be registered on commercial, service, and industrial streets.
2. The commercial address of the Commercial Registration for this activity can an office address

Note: Uploading pictures of the site/shop may expedite the process of obtaining approval

Required Documents

- Lease agreement (after obtaining the necessary approvals from other licensing entities)
- Shop photos

Other Documents

- Cabinet's Decision (56) of the year 2022 regarding the Regulatory Requirements of Construction for various areas in the Kingdom of Bahrain

Financial and insurance activities

ISIC4	Business activity
6612-3	Security and commodity contracts brokerage - Licensed Securities Broker-Dealer

Description

Acting as an Agent and/or as Principal, executes orders to buy and sell securities and financial instruments listed on a Licensed Exchange. As well as other related activities.

Business Requirements

✔ Age

18 and above

✔ Allowed for Nationalities

Bahraini 100%	GCC 100%
American 100%	Singaporean 100%
Icelander 100%	Liechtenstein er 100%
Norwegian 100%	Swiss 100%

Foreign Allowed up to 100%

Legal Type

It is allowed to register according to the legal forms mentioned below

Allowed for Company Commercial Registration (CCR) : Yes

- Bahrain Shareholding Company (Public)
- Bahrain Shareholding Company (Closed)
- Branch of a Foreign Company

Required Step of Licenses and Approvals

Ministry / Directorate	License / Approval Requirements	Approval Type
CBB - Licensing directorate	Ancillary Service Provider	Post
Municipality Affairs	Site Approval for Financial Services Activities	Post

CBB - Licensing directorate (Post) (6612-3)

Approval Name	Description	Estimated Time
Ancillary Service Provider	This licence is required to provide ancillary services to the financial sector.	60 Days

Fee Details (if any)

Refer to "Licensing Requirement" module of CBB Rulebook Vol. 1 inhttps://cbben.thomsonreuters.com/rulebook/central-bank-bahrain-volume-5-specialised-licensees

License Information

The following documents must be submitted:

1. Form 1: “License Application Form”
2. Form 2: “Application for Authorization of Controller”
3. Form 3: “Application for Approved Person status)”, for each individual proposed to undertake controlled functions (as defined under the controlled functions in the respective rulebook) in the proposed licensee.
4. A comprehensive business plan for the application, addressing the matters described below:

a. An outline of the history of the applicant and its shareholders.
b. The reasons for applying for a license, including the applicant’s strategy and market objectives.
c. The proposed type of activities to be carried on by the applicant in/from the Kingdom of Bahrain including the work and fund flow model.
d. The proposed board and senior management of the applicant and the proposed organizational structure of the applicant.
e. An assessment of the risks that may be faced by the applicant, together with the proposed systems and controls framework to be put in place for addressing those risks and to be used for key business functions
f. An opening balance sheet for the applicant, together with a three-year financial projection, with all assumptions clearly outlined, demonstrating that the applicant will be able to meet applicable capital adequacy requirements.

5. For overseas companies, a copy of the company's current commercial registration or equivalent documentation.
6. Where the applicant is an existing Bahraini company, a certified copy of a Board resolution of the applicant, confirming its decision to seek a CBB license.
7. Details of the proposed licensee's close links, if any.
8. In the case of applicants that are part of a regulated group, a no-objection letter to the proposed license application from the applicant's lead supervisor, together with confirmation that the group is in good regulatory standing and is in compliance with applicable supervisory requirements, including those relating to capital requirements.
9. In the case of branch applicants, a no-objection letter to the proposed license application from the applicant's home supervisor, together with confirmation that the applicant is in good regulatory standing and the company concerned is in compliance with applicable supervisory requirements, including those relating to capital.
10. In the case of branch applicants, copies of the audited financial statements of the applicant (head office) for the three years immediately prior to the date of application.
11. In the case of applicants that are part of a group, copies of the audited financial statements of the applicant's group, for the three years immediately prior to the date of application.
12. In the case of applicants not falling under either of the above, copies of the audited financial statements of the applicant's major shareholder (where they are a legal person), for the three years immediately prior to the date of application.
13. In the case of applicants seeking to raise part of their capital through a private placement, a draft of the relevant private placement memorandum, together with a formal, independent legal opinion confirming that the memorandum complies with all applicable capital markets laws and regulations.
14. A copy of the applicant's memorandum and articles of association (in draft form for applicants creating a new company).

You may also refer to "Licensing Requirement" module of CBB Rulebook Vol. 1 by clicking the following linkhttps://cbben.thomsonreuters.com/sites/default/files/net_file_store/Vol_1_LR_January_2022.pdf

Required Documents

- Form 1: Application for a license
- Form 2: Application for authorization of controller
- Form 3: Application for approved person status

Municipality Affairs (Post) (6612-3)

Approval Name	Description	Estimated Time
Site Approval for Financial Services Activities	Municipality Approval for the Commercial Registration address or the site in which the Activity will be practiced	3 Days

Fee Details (if any)

10

License Information

General Conditions:
1. Size of shop/premises must be sufficient for the activity
2. Businesses may not carry out the activity outside the boundaries of the shop/ premises
3. It is prohibited to display or store any items or equipment outside the shop / premises boundary without prior approval from the Municipality. In the event of non-compliance, the Ministry of Municipality Affairs has the right to take necessary action.
4. Maintain cleanliness of the site
5. Comply with the parking space regulations as per the Construction Regulatory Requirements

Activity Specific Conditions:
1. The Commercial Registration for this activity can be registered on commercial, service, and industrial streets.
2. The commercial address of the Commercial Registration for this activity can an office address

Note: Uploading pictures of the site/shop may expedite the process of obtaining approval

Required Documents

- Lease agreement (after obtaining the necessary approvals from other licensing entities)
- Shop photos

Other Documents

- Cabinet's Decision (56) of the year 2022 regarding the Regulatory Requirements of Construction for various areas in the Kingdom of Bahrain

Financial and insurance activities

ISIC4	Business activity
6612-4	Security and commodity contracts brokerage - Licensed Securities Clearing Member

Description

Depositing of Securities and financial instruments and Clearing and Settling executed transactions on a licensed Exchange as principal and/or agent.

Business Requirements

✔ Age

18 and above

✔ Allowed for Nationalities

Bahraini 100%	GCC 100%
American 100%	Singaporean 100%
Icelander 100%	Liechtensteiner 100%
Norwegian 100%	Swiss 100%

Foreign Allowed up to 100%

Legal Type

It is allowed to register according to the legal forms mentioned below

Allowed for Individual Commercial Registration (ICR) : Yes

Allowed for Company Commercial Registration (CCR) : Yes

- Bahrain Shareholding Company (Public)
- Bahrain Shareholding Company (Closed)
- Branch of a Foreign Company

Required Step of Licenses and Approvals

Ministry / Directorate	License / Approval Requirements	Approval Type
CBB - Licensing directorate	Ancillary Service Provider	Post
Municipality Affairs	Site Approval for Financial Services Activities	Post

CBB - Licensing directorate (Post) (6612-4)

Approval Name	Description	Estimated Time
Ancillary Service Provider	This licence is required to provide ancillary services to the financial sector.	60 Days

Fee Details (if any)

Refer to "Licensing Requirement" module of CBB Rulebook Vol. 1 inhttps://cbben.thomsonreuters.com/rulebook/central-bank-bahrain-volume-5-specialised-licensees

License Information

The following documents must be submitted:

1. Form 1: “License Application Form”
2. Form 2: “Application for Authorization of Controller”
3. Form 3: “Application for Approved Person status)”, for each individual proposed to undertake controlled functions (as defined under the controlled functions in the respective rulebook) in the proposed licensee.
4. A comprehensive business plan for the application, addressing the matters described below:

a. An outline of the history of the applicant and its shareholders.
b. The reasons for applying for a license, including the applicant’s strategy and market objectives.
c. The proposed type of activities to be carried on by the applicant in/from the Kingdom of Bahrain including the work and fund flow model.
d. The proposed board and senior management of the applicant and the proposed organizational structure of the applicant.
e. An assessment of the risks that may be faced by the applicant, together with the proposed systems and controls framework to be put in place for addressing those risks and to be used for key business functions
f. An opening balance sheet for the applicant, together with a three-year financial projection, with all assumptions clearly outlined, demonstrating that the applicant will be able to meet applicable capital adequacy requirements.

5. For overseas companies, a copy of the company's current commercial registration or equivalent documentation.
6. Where the applicant is an existing Bahraini company, a certified copy of a Board resolution of the applicant, confirming its decision to seek a CBB license.
7. Details of the proposed licensee's close links, if any.
8. In the case of applicants that are part of a regulated group, a no-objection letter to the proposed license application from the applicant's lead supervisor, together with confirmation that the group is in good regulatory standing and is in compliance with applicable supervisory requirements, including those relating to capital requirements.
9. In the case of branch applicants, a no-objection letter to the proposed license application from the applicant's home supervisor, together with confirmation that the applicant is in good regulatory standing and the company concerned is in compliance with applicable supervisory requirements, including those relating to capital.
10. In the case of branch applicants, copies of the audited financial statements of the applicant (head office) for the three years immediately prior to the date of application.
11. In the case of applicants that are part of a group, copies of the audited financial statements of the applicant's group, for the three years immediately prior to the date of application.
12. In the case of applicants not falling under either of the above, copies of the audited financial statements of the applicant's major shareholder (where they are a legal person), for the three years immediately prior to the date of application.
13. In the case of applicants seeking to raise part of their capital through a private placement, a draft of the relevant private placement memorandum, together with a formal, independent legal opinion confirming that the memorandum complies with all applicable capital markets laws and regulations.
14. A copy of the applicant's memorandum and articles of association (in draft form for applicants creating a new company).

You may also refer to "Licensing Requirement" module of CBB Rulebook Vol. 1 by clicking the following linkhttps://cbben.thomsonreuters.com/sites/default/files/net_file_store/Vol_1_LR_January_2022.pdf

Required Documents

- Form 1: Application for a license
- Form 2: Application for authorization of controller
- Form 3: Application for approved person status

Municipality Affairs (Post) (6612-4)

Approval Name	Description	Estimated Time
Site Approval for Financial Services Activities	Municipality Approval for the Commercial Registration address or the site in which the Activity will be practiced	3 Days

Fee Details (if any)

10

License Information

General Conditions:
1. Size of shop/premises must be sufficient for the activity
2. Businesses may not carry out the activity outside the boundaries of the shop/ premises
3. It is prohibited to display or store any items or equipment outside the shop / premises boundary without prior approval from the Municipality. In the event of non-compliance, the Ministry of Municipality Affairs has the right to take necessary action.
4. Maintain cleanliness of the site
5. Comply with the parking space regulations as per the Construction Regulatory Requirements

Activity Specific Conditions:
1. The Commercial Registration for this activity can be registered on commercial, service, and industrial streets.
2. The commercial address of the Commercial Registration for this activity can an office address

Note: Uploading pictures of the site/shop may expedite the process of obtaining approval

Required Documents

- Lease agreement (after obtaining the necessary approvals from other licensing entities)
- Shop photos

Other Documents

- Cabinet's Decision (56) of the year 2022 regarding the Regulatory Requirements of Construction for various areas in the Kingdom of Bahrain

Financial and insurance activities

ISIC4	Business activity
661202-1	Commodity Contracts Brokerage

Description

Includes dealing in commodity brokerage contracts

Business Requirements

✔ Age

18 and above

✔ Allowed for Nationalities

Bahraini 100%	GCC 100%
American 100%	Singaporean 100%
Icelander 100%	Liechtenstein er 100%
Norwegian 100%	Swiss 100%

Foreign Allowed up to 100%

Legal Type

It is allowed to register according to the legal forms mentioned below

Allowed for Individual Commercial Registration (ICR) : Yes

Allowed for Company Commercial Registration (CCR) : Yes

- Bahrain Shareholding Company (Public)
- With Limited Liability Company
- Branch of a Foreign Company
- Bahrain Shareholding Company (Closed)
- Partnership Company
- Simple Commandite Company
- Commandite By Shares Company
- Non Profit Company

Required Step of Licenses and Approvals

Ministry / Directorate	License / Approval Requirements	Approval Type
Municipality Affairs	Site Approval for Financial Services Activities	Post

Municipality Affairs (Post) (661202-1)

Approval Name	Description	Estimated Time
Site Approval for Financial Services Activities	Municipality Approval for the Commercial Registration address or the site in which the Activity will be practiced	3 Days

Fee Details (if any)

10

License Information

General Conditions:
1. Size of shop/premises must be sufficient for the activity
2. Businesses may not carry out the activity outside the boundaries of the shop/ premises
3. It is prohibited to display or store any items or equipment outside the shop / premises boundary without prior approval from the Municipality. In the event of non-compliance, the Ministry of Municipality Affairs has the right to take necessary action.
4. Maintain cleanliness of the site
5. Comply with the parking space regulations as per the Construction Regulatory Requirements

Activity Specific Conditions:
1. The Commercial Registration for this activity can be registered on commercial, service, and industrial streets.
2. The commercial address of the Commercial Registration for this activity can an office address

Note: Uploading pictures of the site/shop may expedite the process of obtaining approval

Required Documents

- Lease agreement (after obtaining the necessary approvals from other licensing entities)
- Shop photos

Other Documents

- Cabinet's Decision (56) of the year 2022 regarding the Regulatory Requirements of Construction for various areas in the Kingdom of Bahrain

Financial and insurance activities

ISIC4	Business activity
661202-2	Commodity Contracts Brokerage - International Brokerage of Oil and Gas

Description

The license is required if the applicant intends to Carry out international mediation activity outside the kingdom of Bahrain by selling oil and gas. This activity includes negotiation of purchase and selling price and carrying out transactions between related parties in exchange for commission, without selling or buying for the broker's interest.

Business Requirements

Age

18 and above

Allowed for Nationalities

Bahraini 100%	GCC 100%
American 100%	Singaporean 100%
Icelander 100%	Liechtenstein er 100%
Norwegian 100%	Swiss 100%

Foreign Allowed up to 100%

Legal Type

It is allowed to register according to the legal forms mentioned below

Allowed for Individual Commercial Registration (ICR) : Yes

Allowed for Company Commercial Registration (CCR) : Yes

- Bahrain Shareholding Company (Public)
- With Limited Liability Company
- Branch of a Foreign Company
- Bahrain Shareholding Company (Closed)
- Partnership Company
- Simple Commandite Company
- Commandite By Shares Company
- Non Profit Company

Required Step of Licenses and Approvals

Ministry / Directorate	License / Approval Requirements	Approval Type
Municipality Affairs	Site Approval for Financial Services Activities	Post

Municipality Affairs (Post) (661202-2)

Approval Name	Description	Estimated Time
Site Approval for Financial Services Activities	Municipality Approval for the Commercial Registration address or the site in which the Activity will be practiced	3 Days

Fee Details (if any)

10

License Information

General Conditions:
1. Size of shop/premises must be sufficient for the activity
2. Businesses may not carry out the activity outside the boundaries of the shop/ premises
3. It is prohibited to display or store any items or equipment outside the shop / premises boundary without prior approval from the Municipality. In the event of non-compliance, the Ministry of Municipality Affairs has the right to take necessary action.
4. Maintain cleanliness of the site
5. Comply with the parking space regulations as per the Construction Regulatory Requirements

Activity Specific Conditions:
1. The Commercial Registration for this activity can be registered on commercial, service, and industrial streets.
2. The commercial address of the Commercial Registration for this activity can an office address

Note: Uploading pictures of the site/shop may expedite the process of obtaining approval

Required Documents

- Lease agreement (after obtaining the necessary approvals from other licensing entities)
- Shop photos

Other Documents

- Cabinet's Decision (56) of the year 2022 regarding the Regulatory Requirements of Construction for various areas in the Kingdom of Bahrain

Financial and insurance activities

ISIC4	Business activity
6619-1	Other activities auxiliary to financial service activities - Investment Business Firm, Category 3

Description

May undertake any of the following regulated activities: 1) Arranging deals in financial instruments, 2) Advising on financial instruments

Business Requirements

Age

18 and above

Allowed for Nationalities

Bahraini 100%	GCC 100%
American 100%	Singaporean 100%
Icelander 100%	Liechtensteiner 100%
Norwegian 100%	Swiss 100%

Foreign Allowed up to 100%

Legal Type

It is allowed to register according to the legal forms mentioned below

Allowed for Company Commercial Registration (CCR) : Yes

- Bahrain Shareholding Company (Public)
- With Limited Liability Company
- Bahrain Shareholding Company (Closed)

Required Step of Licenses and Approvals

Ministry / Directorate	License / Approval Requirements	Approval Type
Municipality Affairs	Site Approval for Financial Services Activities	Post
CBB - Licensing directorate	Investment Business Firm, Category 3	Post

Municipality Affairs (Post) (6619-1)

Approval Name	Description	Estimated Time
Site Approval for Financial Services Activities	Municipality Approval for the Commercial Registration address or the site in which the Activity will be practiced	3 Days

Fee Details (if any)

10

License Information

General Conditions:
1. Size of shop/premises must be sufficient for the activity
2. Businesses may not carry out the activity outside the boundaries of the shop/ premises
3. It is prohibited to display or store any items or equipment outside the shop / premises boundary without prior approval from the Municipality. In the event of non-compliance, the Ministry of Municipality Affairs has the right to take necessary action.
4. Maintain cleanliness of the site
5. Comply with the parking space regulations as per the Construction Regulatory Requirements

Activity Specific Conditions:
1. The Commercial Registration for this activity can be registered on commercial, service, and industrial streets.
2. The commercial address of the Commercial Registration for this activity can an office address

Note: Uploading pictures of the site/shop may expedite the process of obtaining approval

Required Documents

- Lease agreement (after obtaining the necessary approvals from other licensing entities)
- Shop photos

Other Documents

- Cabinet's Decision (56) of the year 2022 regarding the Regulatory Requirements of Construction for various areas in the Kingdom of Bahrain

CBB - Licensing directorate (Post) (6619-1)

Approval Name	Description	Estimated Time
Investment Business Firm, Category 3	May undertake any of the following regulated activities: 1) Arranging deals in financial instruments 2) Advising on financial instruments	60 Days

Fee Details (if any)

Refer to "Licensing Requirement" module of CBB Rulebook Vol. 1 inhttps://cbben.thomsonreuters.com/rulebook/part-4

License Information

The following documents must be submitted:

1. Form 1: “License Application Form”
2. Form 2: “Application for Authorization of Controller”
3. Form 3: “Application for Approved Person status)”, for each individual proposed to undertake controlled functions (as defined under the controlled functions in the respective rulebook) in the proposed licensee.
4. A comprehensive business plan for the application, addressing the matters described below:

a. An outline of the history of the applicant and its shareholders.
b. The reasons for applying for a license, including the applicant’s strategy and market objectives.
c. The proposed type of activities to be carried on by the applicant in/from the Kingdom of Bahrain including the work and fund flow model.
d. The proposed board and senior management of the applicant and the proposed organizational structure of the applicant.
e. An assessment of the risks that may be faced by the applicant, together with the proposed systems and controls framework to be put in place for addressing those risks and to be used for key business functions

f. An opening balance sheet for the applicant, together with a three-year financial projection, with all assumptions clearly outlined, demonstrating that the applicant will be able to meet applicable capital adequacy requirements.
5. For overseas companies, a copy of the company's current commercial registration or equivalent documentation.
6. Where the applicant is an existing Bahraini company, a certified copy of a Board resolution of the applicant, confirming its decision to seek a CBB license.
7. Details of the proposed licensee's close links, if any.
8. In the case of applicants that are part of a regulated group, a no-objection letter to the proposed license application from the applicant's lead supervisor, together with confirmation that the group is in good regulatory standing and is in compliance with applicable supervisory requirements, including those relating to capital requirements.
9. In the case of branch applicants, a no-objection letter to the proposed license application from the applicant's home supervisor, together with confirmation that the applicant is in good regulatory standing and the company concerned is in compliance with applicable supervisory requirements, including those relating to capital.
10. In the case of branch applicants, copies of the audited financial statements of the applicant (head office) for the three years immediately prior to the date of application.
11. In the case of applicants that are part of a group, copies of the audited financial statements of the applicant's group, for the three years immediately prior to the date of application.
12. In the case of applicants not falling under either of the above, copies of the audited financial statements of the applicant's major shareholder (where they are a legal person), for the three years immediately prior to the date of application.
13. In the case of applicants seeking to raise part of their capital through a private placement, a draft of the relevant private placement memorandum, together with a formal, independent legal opinion confirming that the memorandum complies with all applicable capital markets laws and regulations.
14. A copy of the applicant's memorandum and articles of association (in draft form for applicants creating a new company).

You may also refer to "Licensing Requirement" module of CBB Rulebook Vol. 1 by clicking the following linkhttps://cbben.thomsonreuters.com/sites/default/files/net_file_store/Vol_1_LR_January_2022.pdf

Required Documents

- Form 1: Application for a license
- Form 2: Application for authorization of controller
- Form 3: Application for approved person status

Financial and insurance activities

ISIC4	Business activity
6619-10	Other activities auxiliary to financial service activities - Ancillary Service Providers - Others

Description

Any other ancillary services that are related to the financial services industry

Business Requirements

Age

18 and above

Allowed for Nationalities

Bahraini 100%	GCC 100%
American 100%	Singaporean 100%
Icelander 100%	Liechtensteiner 100%
Norwegian 100%	Swiss 100%

Foreign Allowed up to 100%

Legal Type

It is allowed to register according to the legal forms mentioned below

Allowed for Company Commercial Registration (CCR) : Yes

- Bahrain Shareholding Company (Public)
- With Limited Liability Company
- Branch of a Foreign Company
- Bahrain Shareholding Company (Closed)

Required Step of Licenses and Approvals

Ministry / Directorate	License / Approval Requirements	Approval Type
Municipality Affairs	Site Approval for Financial Services Activities	Post
CBB - Licensing directorate	Ancillary Service Providers - Others	Post

Municipality Affairs (Post) (6619-10)

Approval Name	Description	Estimated Time
Site Approval for Financial Services Activities	Municipality Approval for the Commercial Registration address or the site in which the Activity will be practiced	3 Days

Fee Details (if any)

10

License Information

General Conditions:
1. Size of shop/premises must be sufficient for the activity
2. Businesses may not carry out the activity outside the boundaries of the shop/ premises
3. It is prohibited to display or store any items or equipment outside the shop / premises boundary without prior approval from the Municipality. In the event of non-compliance, the Ministry of Municipality Affairs has the right to take necessary action.
4. Maintain cleanliness of the site
5. Comply with the parking space regulations as per the Construction Regulatory Requirements

Activity Specific Conditions:
1. The Commercial Registration for this activity can be registered on commercial, service, and industrial streets.
2. The commercial address of the Commercial Registration for this activity can an office address

Note: Uploading pictures of the site/shop may expedite the process of obtaining approval

Required Documents

- Lease agreement (after obtaining the necessary approvals from other licensing entities)
- Shop photos

Other Documents

- Cabinet's Decision (56) of the year 2022 regarding the Regulatory Requirements of Construction for various areas in the Kingdom of Bahrain

CBB - Licensing directorate (Post) (6619-10)

Approval Name	Description	Estimated Time
Ancillary Service Providers - Others	Any other ancillary services that are related to the financial services industry	60 Days

Fee Details (if any)

Refer to "Licensing Requirement" module of CBB Rulebook Vol. 1 inhttps://cbben.thomsonreuters.com/rulebook/central-bank-bahrain-volume-5-specialised-licensees

License Information

The following documents must be submitted:

1. Form 1: “License Application Form”
2. Form 2: “Application for Authorization of Controller”
3. Form 3: “Application for Approved Person status)”, for each individual proposed to undertake controlled functions (as defined under the controlled functions in the respective rulebook) in the proposed licensee.
4. A comprehensive business plan for the application, addressing the matters described below:

a. An outline of the history of the applicant and its shareholders.
b. The reasons for applying for a license, including the applicant’s strategy and market objectives.
c. The proposed type of activities to be carried on by the applicant in/from the Kingdom of Bahrain including the work and fund flow model.
d. The proposed board and senior management of the applicant and the proposed organizational structure of the applicant.
e. An assessment of the risks that may be faced by the applicant, together with the proposed systems and controls framework to be put in place for addressing those risks and to be used for key business functions
f. An opening balance sheet for the applicant, together with a three-year financial projection, with all assumptions clearly outlined, demonstrating that the applicant will

be able to meet applicable capital adequacy requirements.
5. For overseas companies, a copy of the company's current commercial registration or equivalent documentation.
6. Where the applicant is an existing Bahraini company, a certified copy of a Board resolution of the applicant, confirming its decision to seek a CBB license.
7. Details of the proposed licensee's close links, if any.
8. In the case of applicants that are part of a regulated group, a no-objection letter to the proposed license application from the applicant's lead supervisor, together with confirmation that the group is in good regulatory standing and is in compliance with applicable supervisory requirements, including those relating to capital requirements.
9. In the case of branch applicants, a no-objection letter to the proposed license application from the applicant's home supervisor, together with confirmation that the applicant is in good regulatory standing and the company concerned is in compliance with applicable supervisory requirements, including those relating to capital.
10. In the case of branch applicants, copies of the audited financial statements of the applicant (head office) for the three years immediately prior to the date of application.
11. In the case of applicants that are part of a group, copies of the audited financial statements of the applicant's group, for the three years immediately prior to the date of application.
12. In the case of applicants not falling under either of the above, copies of the audited financial statements of the applicant's major shareholder (where they are a legal person), for the three years immediately prior to the date of application.
13. In the case of applicants seeking to raise part of their capital through a private placement, a draft of the relevant private placement memorandum, together with a formal, independent legal opinion confirming that the memorandum complies with all applicable capital markets laws and regulations.
14. A copy of the applicant's memorandum and articles of association (in draft form for applicants creating a new company).

You may also refer to "Licensing Requirement" module of CBB Rulebook Vol. 1 by clicking the following linkhttps://cbben.thomsonreuters.com/sites/default/files/net_file_store/Vol_1_LR_January_2022.pdf

Required Documents

- Form 1: Application for a license
- Form 2: Application for authorization of controller
- Form 3: Application for approved person status

Financial and insurance activities

ISIC4	Business activity
6619-12	Other activities auxiliary to financial service activities - Crowdfunding Platform Operator

Description

Crowdfunding platform operator refers to a person licensed by the CBB to operate an e-platform which takes place on an online portal, on which people lend money to businesses (Person to Business-P2B), for the purpose of gaining a financial return in the form of interest/profit payment and a repayment of credit over a pre-specified period of time (financing-based crowdfunding), and/or raising of capital by issuance of ordinary shares by closed, private, family companies, start-up and small and medium size companies, entities engaged in real estate projects (equity-based crowdfunding).

Business Requirements

✔ Age

18 and above

✔ Allowed for Nationalities

Bahraini 100%		GCC 100%	
American 100%		Singaporean 100%	
Icelander 100%		Liechtenstein er 100%	
Norwegian 100%		Swiss 100%	

Foreign Allowed up to 100%

Legal Type

It is allowed to register according to the legal forms mentioned below

Allowed for Company Commercial Registration (CCR) : Yes

- Bahrain Shareholding Company (Public)
- With Limited Liability Company
- Branch of a Foreign Company
- Bahrain Shareholding Company (Closed)

Required Step of Licenses and Approvals

Ministry / Directorate	License / Approval Requirements	Approval Type
Municipality Affairs	Site Approval for Financial Services Activities	Post
CBB - Licensing directorate	Ancillary Service Providers - Crowdfunding Platform Operator	Post

Municipality Affairs (Post) (6619-12)

Approval Name	Description	Estimated Time
Site Approval for Financial Services Activities	Municipality Approval for the Commercial Registration address or the site in which the Activity will be practiced	3 Days

Fee Details (if any)

10

License Information

General Conditions:
1. Size of shop/premises must be sufficient for the activity
2. Businesses may not carry out the activity outside the boundaries of the shop/ premises
3. It is prohibited to display or store any items or equipment outside the shop / premises boundary without prior approval from the Municipality. In the event of non-compliance, the Ministry of Municipality Affairs has the right to take necessary action.
4. Maintain cleanliness of the site
5. Comply with the parking space regulations as per the Construction Regulatory Requirements

Activity Specific Conditions:
1. The Commercial Registration for this activity can be registered on commercial, service, and industrial streets.
2. The commercial address of the Commercial Registration for this activity can an office address

Note: Uploading pictures of the site/shop may expedite the process of obtaining approval

Required Documents

- Lease agreement (after obtaining the necessary approvals from other licensing entities)
- Shop photos

Other Documents

- Cabinet's Decision (56) of the year 2022 regarding the Regulatory Requirements of Construction for various areas in the Kingdom of Bahrain

CBB - Licensing directorate (Post) (6619-12)

Approval Name	Description	Estimated Time
Ancillary Service Providers - Crowdfunding Platform Operator	Ancillary Service Providers - Crowdfunding Platform Operator	60 Days

Fee Details (if any)

Refer to "Licensing Requirement" module of CBB Rulebook Vol. 1 inhttps://cbben.thomsonreuters.com/rulebook/central-bank-bahrain-volume-5-specialised-licensees

License Information

The following documents must be submitted:

1. Form 1: “License Application Form”
2. Form 2: “Application for Authorization of Controller”
3. Form 3: “Application for Approved Person status)”, for each individual proposed to undertake controlled functions (as defined under the controlled functions in the respective rulebook) in the proposed licensee.
4. A comprehensive business plan for the application, addressing the matters described below:

a. An outline of the history of the applicant and its shareholders.
b. The reasons for applying for a license, including the applicant’s strategy and market objectives.
c. The proposed type of activities to be carried on by the applicant in/from the Kingdom of Bahrain including the work and fund flow model.
d. The proposed board and senior management of the applicant and the proposed organizational structure of the applicant.
e. An assessment of the risks that may be faced by the applicant, together with the proposed systems and controls framework to be put in place for addressing those risks and to be used for key business functions
f. An opening balance sheet for the applicant, together with a three-year financial projection, with all assumptions clearly outlined, demonstrating that the applicant will be able to meet applicable capital adequacy requirements.

5. For overseas companies, a copy of the company's current commercial registration or equivalent documentation.
6. Where the applicant is an existing Bahraini company, a certified copy of a Board resolution of the applicant, confirming its decision to seek a CBB license.
7. Details of the proposed licensee's close links, if any.
8. In the case of applicants that are part of a regulated group, a no-objection letter to the proposed license application from the applicant's lead supervisor, together with confirmation that the group is in good regulatory standing and is in compliance with applicable supervisory requirements, including those relating to capital requirements.
9. In the case of branch applicants, a no-objection letter to the proposed license application from the applicant's home supervisor, together with confirmation that the applicant is in good regulatory standing and the company concerned is in compliance with applicable supervisory requirements, including those relating to capital.
10. In the case of branch applicants, copies of the audited financial statements of the applicant (head office) for the three years immediately prior to the date of application.
11. In the case of applicants that are part of a group, copies of the audited financial statements of the applicant's group, for the three years immediately prior to the date of application.
12. In the case of applicants not falling under either of the above, copies of the audited financial statements of the applicant's major shareholder (where they are a legal person), for the three years immediately prior to the date of application.
13. In the case of applicants seeking to raise part of their capital through a private placement, a draft of the relevant private placement memorandum, together with a formal, independent legal opinion confirming that the memorandum complies with all applicable capital markets laws and regulations.
14. A copy of the applicant's memorandum and articles of association (in draft form for applicants creating a new company).

You may also refer to "Licensing Requirement" module of CBB Rulebook Vol. 1 by clicking the following linkhttps://cbben.thomsonreuters.com/sites/default/files/net_file_store/Vol_1_LR_January_2022.pdf

Required Documents

- Form 1: Application for a license
- Form 2: Application for authorization of controller
- Form 3: Application for approved person status

Financial and insurance activities

ISIC4	Business activity
6619-13	Other activities auxiliary to financial service activities - Account Information Service Provider (AISP)

Description

AISP refers to a person licensed by the CBB to provide account information services using an online portal, mobile or smart phone application, device or other electronic media, which a consenting customer can use to obtain aggregate or consolidated information about his account balances with licensed banks, financing companies and other licensees.

Business Requirements

✔ Age

✔ Allowed for Nationalities

Bahraini 100%	GCC 100%
American 100%	Singaporean 100%
Icelander 100%	Liechtensteiner 100%
Norwegian 100%	Swiss 100%

Foreign Allowed up to 100%

Legal Type

It is allowed to register according to the legal forms mentioned below

Allowed for Company Commercial Registration (CCR) : Yes

- Bahrain Shareholding Company (Public)
- With Limited Liability Company
- Branch of a Foreign Company
- Bahrain Shareholding Company (Closed)

Required Step of Licenses and Approvals

Ministry / Directorate	License / Approval Requirements	Approval Type
CBB - Licensing directorate	Account Information Service Provider (AISP)	Post
Municipality Affairs	Site Approval for Financial Services Activities	Post

CBB - Licensing directorate (Post) (6619-13)

Approval Name	Description	Estimated Time
Account Information Service Provider (AISP)	Account Information Service Provider (AISP)	60 Days

Fee Details (if any)

Refer to "Licensing Requirement" module of CBB Rulebook Vol. 1 inhttps://cbben.thomsonreuters.com/rulebook/central-bank-bahrain-volume-5-specialised-licensees

License Information

The following documents must be submitted:

1. Form 1: “License Application Form”
2. Form 2: “Application for Authorization of Controller”
3. Form 3: “Application for Approved Person status)”, for each individual proposed to undertake controlled functions (as defined under the controlled functions in the respective rulebook) in the proposed licensee.
4. A comprehensive business plan for the application, addressing the matters described below:
a. An outline of the history of the applicant and its shareholders.
b. The reasons for applying for a license, including the applicant’s strategy and market objectives.
c. The proposed type of activities to be carried on by the applicant in/from the Kingdom of Bahrain including the work and fund flow model.
d. The proposed board and senior management of the applicant and the proposed organizational structure of the applicant.
e. An assessment of the risks that may be faced by the applicant, together with the proposed systems and controls framework to be put in place for addressing those risks and to be used for key business functions
f. An opening balance sheet for the applicant, together with a three-year financial projection, with all assumptions clearly outlined, demonstrating that the applicant will be able to meet applicable capital adequacy requirements.
5. For overseas companies, a copy of the company’s current commercial registration or

equivalent documentation.
6. Where the applicant is an existing Bahraini company, a certified copy of a Board resolution of the applicant, confirming its decision to seek a CBB license.
7. Details of the proposed licensee's close links, if any.
8. In the case of applicants that are part of a regulated group, a no-objection letter to the proposed license application from the applicant's lead supervisor, together with confirmation that the group is in good regulatory standing and is in compliance with applicable supervisory requirements, including those relating to capital requirements.
9. In the case of branch applicants, a no-objection letter to the proposed license application from the applicant's home supervisor, together with confirmation that the applicant is in good regulatory standing and the company concerned is in compliance with applicable supervisory requirements, including those relating to capital.
10. In the case of branch applicants, copies of the audited financial statements of the applicant (head office) for the three years immediately prior to the date of application.
11. In the case of applicants that are part of a group, copies of the audited financial statements of the applicant's group, for the three years immediately prior to the date of application.
12. In the case of applicants not falling under either of the above, copies of the audited financial statements of the applicant's major shareholder (where they are a legal person), for the three years immediately prior to the date of application.
13. In the case of applicants seeking to raise part of their capital through a private placement, a draft of the relevant private placement memorandum, together with a formal, independent legal opinion confirming that the memorandum complies with all applicable capital markets laws and regulations.
14. A copy of the applicant's memorandum and articles of association (in draft form for applicants creating a new company).

You may also refer to "Licensing Requirement" module of CBB Rulebook Vol. 1 by clicking the following linkhttps://cbben.thomsonreuters.com/sites/default/files/net_file_store/Vol_1_LR_January_2022.pdf

Required Documents

- Form 1: Application for a license
- Form 2: Application for authorization of controller
- Form 3: Application for approved person status

Municipality Affairs (Post) (6619-13)

Approval Name	Description	Estimated Time
Site Approval for Financial Services Activities	Municipality Approval for the Commercial Registration address or the site in which the Activity will be practiced	3 Days

Fee Details (if any)

10

License Information

General Conditions:
1. Size of shop/premises must be sufficient for the activity
2. Businesses may not carry out the activity outside the boundaries of the shop/ premises
3. It is prohibited to display or store any items or equipment outside the shop / premises boundary without prior approval from the Municipality. In the event of non-compliance, the Ministry of Municipality Affairs has the right to take necessary action.
4. Maintain cleanliness of the site
5. Comply with the parking space regulations as per the Construction Regulatory Requirements

Activity Specific Conditions:
1. The Commercial Registration for this activity can be registered on commercial, service, and industrial streets.
2. The commercial address of the Commercial Registration for this activity can an office address

Note: Uploading pictures of the site/shop may expedite the process of obtaining approval

Required Documents

- Lease agreement (after obtaining the necessary approvals from other licensing entities)
- Shop photos

Other Documents

- Cabinet's Decision (56) of the year 2022 regarding the Regulatory Requirements of Construction for various areas in the Kingdom of Bahrain

Financial and insurance activities

ISIC4	Business activity
6619-14	Other activities auxiliary to financial service activities - Payment Initiation Service Provider (PISP)

Description

PISP refers to a person licensed by the CBB to initiate payment or credit transfers for the customer from an account held with a licensed bank, financing company or PSP.

Business Requirements

✔ Age

✔ Allowed for Nationalities

Bahraini 100%	GCC 100%
American 100%	Singaporean 100%
Icelander 100%	Liechtensteiner 100%
Norwegian 100%	Swiss 100%

Foreign Allowed up to 100%

Legal Type

It is allowed to register according to the legal forms mentioned below

Allowed for Company Commercial Registration (CCR) : Yes

- Bahrain Shareholding Company (Public)
- With Limited Liability Company
- Branch of a Foreign Company
- Bahrain Shareholding Company (Closed)

Required Step of Licenses and Approvals

Ministry / Directorate	License / Approval Requirements	Approval Type
Municipality Affairs	Site Approval for Financial Services Activities	Post
CBB - Licensing directorate	Account Information Service Provider (AISP)	Post

Municipality Affairs (Post) (6619-14)

Approval Name	Description	Estimated Time
Site Approval for Financial Services Activities	Municipality Approval for the Commercial Registration address or the site in which the Activity will be practiced	3 Days

Fee Details (if any)

10

License Information

General Conditions:
1. Size of shop/premises must be sufficient for the activity
2. Businesses may not carry out the activity outside the boundaries of the shop/ premises
3. It is prohibited to display or store any items or equipment outside the shop / premises boundary without prior approval from the Municipality. In the event of non-compliance, the Ministry of Municipality Affairs has the right to take necessary action.
4. Maintain cleanliness of the site
5. Comply with the parking space regulations as per the Construction Regulatory Requirements

Activity Specific Conditions:
1. The Commercial Registration for this activity can be registered on commercial, service, and industrial streets.
2. The commercial address of the Commercial Registration for this activity can an office address

Note: Uploading pictures of the site/shop may expedite the process of obtaining approval

Required Documents

- Lease agreement (after obtaining the necessary approvals from other licensing entities)
- Shop photos

Other Documents

- Cabinet's Decision (56) of the year 2022 regarding the Regulatory Requirements of Construction for various areas in the Kingdom of Bahrain

CBB - Licensing directorate (Post) (6619-14)

Approval Name	Description	Estimated Time
Account Information Service Provider (AISP)	Account Information Service Provider (AISP)	60 Days

Fee Details (if any)

Refer to "Licensing Requirement" module of CBB Rulebook Vol. 1 inhttps://cbben.thomsonreuters.com/rulebook/central-bank-bahrain-volume-5-specialised-licensees

License Information

The following documents must be submitted:

1. Form 1: “License Application Form”
2. Form 2: “Application for Authorization of Controller”
3. Form 3: “Application for Approved Person status)”, for each individual proposed to undertake controlled functions (as defined under the controlled functions in the respective rulebook) in the proposed licensee.
4. A comprehensive business plan for the application, addressing the matters described below:

a. An outline of the history of the applicant and its shareholders.
b. The reasons for applying for a license, including the applicant’s strategy and market objectives.
c. The proposed type of activities to be carried on by the applicant in/from the Kingdom of Bahrain including the work and fund flow model.
d. The proposed Board and senior management of the applicant and the proposed organizational structure of the applicant.
e. An assessment of the risks that may be faced by the applicant, together with the proposed systems and controls framework to be put in place for addressing those risks and to be used for key business functions
f. An opening balance sheet for the applicant, together with a three-year financial projection, with all assumptions clearly outlined, demonstrating that the applicant will

be able to meet applicable capital adequacy requirements.
5. For overseas companies, a copy of the company's current commercial registration or equivalent documentation.
6. Where the applicant is an existing Bahraini company, a certified copy of a Board resolution of the applicant, confirming its decision to seek a CBB license.
7. Details of the proposed licensee's close links, if any.
8. In the case of applicants that are part of a regulated group, a no-objection letter to the proposed license application from the applicant's lead supervisor, together with confirmation that the group is in good regulatory standing and is in compliance with applicable supervisory requirements, including those relating to capital requirements.
9. In the case of branch applicants, a no-objection letter to the proposed license application from the applicant's home supervisor, together with confirmation that the applicant is in good regulatory standing and the company concerned is in compliance with applicable supervisory requirements, including those relating to capital.
10. In the case of branch applicants, copies of the audited financial statements of the applicant (head office) for the three years immediately prior to the date of application.
11. In the case of applicants that are part of a group, copies of the audited financial statements of the applicant's group, for the three years immediately prior to the date of application.
12. In the case of applicants not falling under either of the above, copies of the audited financial statements of the applicant's major shareholder (where they are a legal person), for the three years immediately prior to the date of application.
13. In the case of applicants seeking to raise part of their capital through a private placement, a draft of the relevant private placement memorandum, together with a formal, independent legal opinion confirming that the memorandum complies with all applicable capital markets laws and regulations.
14. A copy of the applicant's memorandum and articles of association (in draft form for applicants creating a new company).

You may also refer to "Licensing Requirement" module of CBB Rulebook Vol. 1 by clicking the following linkhttps://cbben.thomsonreuters.com/sites/default/files/net_file_store/Vol_1_LR_January_2022.pdf

Required Documents

- Form 1: Application for a license
- Form 2: Application for authorization of controller
- Form 3: Application for approved person status

Financial and insurance activities

ISIC4	Business activity
6619-15	Other activities auxiliary to financial service activities - Trust Service Provider – Category A

Description

To manage and invest trusts in accordance with the trust deed (which is the written contract between the trustee and the trust service provider and which creates the trust.

Business Requirements

✔ Age

✔ Allowed for Nationalities

Bahraini 100%	GCC 100%
American 100%	Singaporean 100%
Icelander 100%	Liechtensteiner 100%
Norwegian 100%	Swiss 100%

Foreign Allowed up to 100%

Legal Type

It is allowed to register according to the legal forms mentioned below

Allowed for Company Commercial Registration (CCR) : Yes

- Bahrain Shareholding Company (Public)
- Bahrain Shareholding Company (Closed)
- Branch of a Foreign Company

Required Step of Licenses and Approvals

Ministry / Directorate	License / Approval Requirements	Approval Type
CBB - Licensing directorate	Other activities auxiliary to financial service activities - Trust Service Provider – Category A	Post
Municipality Affairs	Site Approval for Financial Services Activities	Post

CBB - Licensing directorate (Post) (6619-15)

Approval Name	Description	Estimated Time
Other activities auxiliary to financial service activities - Trust Service Provider – Category A	To manage and invest trusts in accordance with the trust deed (which is the written contract between the trustee and the trust service provider and which creates the trust.	60 Days

Fee Details (if any)

Refer to "Licensing Requirement" module of CBB Rulebook Vol. 1 inhttps://cbben.thomsonreuters.com/rulebook/central-bank-bahrain-volume-5-specialised-licensees

License Information

The following documents must be submitted:

1. Form 1: “License Application Form”
2. Form 2: “Application for Authorization of Controller”
3. Form 3: “Application for Approved Person status)”, for each individual proposed to undertake controlled functions (as defined under the controlled functions in the respective rulebook) in the proposed licensee.
4. A comprehensive business plan for the application, addressing the matters described below:

a. An outline of the history of the applicant and its shareholders.
b. The reasons for applying for a license, including the applicant’s strategy and market objectives.
c. The proposed type of activities to be carried on by the applicant in/from the Kingdom of Bahrain including the work and fund flow model.
d. The proposed Board and senior management of the applicant and the proposed organizational structure of the applicant.
e. An assessment of the risks that may be faced by the applicant, together with the

proposed systems and controls framework to be put in place for addressing those risks and to be used for key business functions
f. An opening balance sheet for the applicant, together with a three-year financial projection, with all assumptions clearly outlined, demonstrating that the applicant will be able to meet applicable capital adequacy requirements.
5. For overseas companies, a copy of the company's current commercial registration or equivalent documentation.
6. Where the applicant is an existing Bahraini company, a certified copy of a Board resolution of the applicant, confirming its decision to seek a CBB license.
7. Details of the proposed licensee's close links, if any.
8. In the case of applicants that are part of a regulated group, a no-objection letter to the proposed license application from the applicant's lead supervisor, together with confirmation that the group is in good regulatory standing and is in compliance with applicable supervisory requirements, including those relating to capital requirements.
9. In the case of branch applicants, a no-objection letter to the proposed license application from the applicant's home supervisor, together with confirmation that the applicant is in good regulatory standing and the company concerned is in compliance with applicable supervisory requirements, including those relating to capital.
10. In the case of branch applicants, copies of the audited financial statements of the applicant (head office) for the three years immediately prior to the date of application.
11. In the case of applicants that are part of a group, copies of the audited financial statements of the applicant's group, for the three years immediately prior to the date of application.
12. In the case of applicants not falling under either of the above, copies of the audited financial statements of the applicant's major shareholder (where they are a legal person), for the three years immediately prior to the date of application.
13. In the case of applicants seeking to raise part of their capital through a private placement, a draft of the relevant private placement memorandum, together with a formal, independent legal opinion confirming that the memorandum complies with all applicable capital markets laws and regulations.
14. A copy of the applicant's memorandum and articles of association (in draft form for applicants creating a new company).

You may also refer to "Licensing Requirement" module of CBB Rulebook Vol. 1 by clicking the following linkhttps://cbben.thomsonreuters.com/sites/default/files/net_file_store/Vol_1_LR_January_2022.pdf

Required Documents

- Form 1: Application for a license
- Form 2: Application for authorization of controller
- Form 3: Application for approved person status

Municipality Affairs (Post) (6619-15)

Approval Name	Description	Estimated Time
Site Approval for Financial Services Activities	Municipality Approval for the Commercial Registration address or the site in which the Activity will be practiced	3 Days

Fee Details (if any)

10

License Information

General Conditions:
1. Size of shop/premises must be sufficient for the activity
2. Businesses may not carry out the activity outside the boundaries of the shop/ premises
3. It is prohibited to display or store any items or equipment outside the shop / premises boundary without prior approval from the Municipality. In the event of non-compliance, the Ministry of Municipality Affairs has the right to take necessary action.
4. Maintain cleanliness of the site
5. Comply with the parking space regulations as per the Construction Regulatory Requirements

Activity Specific Conditions:
1. The Commercial Registration for this activity can be registered on commercial, service, and industrial streets.
2. The commercial address of the Commercial Registration for this activity can an office address

Note: Uploading pictures of the site/shop may expedite the process of obtaining approval

Required Documents

- Lease agreement (after obtaining the necessary approvals from other licensing entities)
- Shop photos

Other Documents

- Cabinet's Decision (56) of the year 2022 regarding the Regulatory Requirements of Construction for various areas in the Kingdom of Bahrain

Financial and insurance activities

ISIC4	Business activity
6619-16	Other activities auxiliary to financial service activities - Trust Service Provider – Category B

Description

To manage and invest trusts in accordance with the trust deed (which is the written contract between the trustee and the trust service provider and which creates the trust.

Business Requirements

✔ Age

✔ Allowed for Nationalities

Bahraini 100%	GCC 100%
American 100%	Singaporean 100%
Icelander 100%	Liechtensteiner 100%
Norwegian 100%	Swiss 100%

Foreign Allowed up to 100%

Legal Type

It is allowed to register according to the legal forms mentioned below

Allowed for Company Commercial Registration (CCR) : Yes

- With Limited Liability Company
- Bahrain Shareholding Company (Closed)
- Non Profit Company

Required Step of Licenses and Approvals

Ministry / Directorate	License / Approval Requirements	Approval Type
CBB - Licensing directorate	Other activities auxiliary to financial service activities - Trust Service Provider – Category B	Post
Municipality Affairs	Site Approval for Financial Services Activities	Post

CBB - Licensing directorate (Post) (6619-16)

Approval Name	Description	Estimated Time
Other activities auxiliary to financial service activities - Trust Service Provider – Category B	To manage and invest trusts in accordance with the trust deed (which is the written contract between the trustee and the trust service provider and which creates the trust.	60 Days

Fee Details (if any)

Refer to "Licensing Requirement" module of CBB Rulebook Vol. 1 inhttps://cbben.thomsonreuters.com/rulebook/central-bank-bahrain-volume-5-specialised-licensees

License Information

The following documents must be submitted:

1. Form 1: “License Application Form”
2. Form 2: “Application for Authorization of Controller”
3. Form 3: “Application for Approved Person status)”, for each individual proposed to undertake controlled functions (as defined under the controlled functions in the respective rulebook) in the proposed licensee.
4. A comprehensive business plan for the application, addressing the matters described below:

a. An outline of the history of the applicant and its shareholders.
b. The reasons for applying for a license, including the applicant’s strategy and market objectives.
c. The proposed type of activities to be carried on by the applicant in/from the Kingdom of Bahrain including the work and fund flow model.
d. The proposed Board and senior management of the applicant and the proposed

organizational structure of the applicant.
e. An assessment of the risks that may be faced by the applicant, together with the proposed systems and controls framework to be put in place for addressing those risks and to be used for key business functions
f. An opening balance sheet for the applicant, together with a three-year financial projection, with all assumptions clearly outlined, demonstrating that the applicant will be able to meet applicable capital adequacy requirements.
5. For overseas companies, a copy of the company's current commercial registration or equivalent documentation.
6. Where the applicant is an existing Bahraini company, a certified copy of a Board resolution of the applicant, confirming its decision to seek a CBB license.
7. Details of the proposed licensee's close links, if any.
8. In the case of applicants that are part of a regulated group, a no-objection letter to the proposed license application from the applicant's lead supervisor, together with confirmation that the group is in good regulatory standing and is in compliance with applicable supervisory requirements, including those relating to capital requirements.
9. In the case of branch applicants, a no-objection letter to the proposed license application from the applicant's home supervisor, together with confirmation that the applicant is in good regulatory standing and the company concerned is in compliance with applicable supervisory requirements, including those relating to capital.
10. In the case of branch applicants, copies of the audited financial statements of the applicant (head office) for the three years immediately prior to the date of application.
11. In the case of applicants that are part of a group, copies of the audited financial statements of the applicant's group, for the three years immediately prior to the date of application.
12. In the case of applicants not falling under either of the above, copies of the audited financial statements of the applicant's major shareholder (where they are a legal person), for the three years immediately prior to the date of application.
13. In the case of applicants seeking to raise part of their capital through a private placement, a draft of the relevant private placement memorandum, together with a formal, independent legal opinion confirming that the memorandum complies with all applicable capital markets laws and regulations.
14. A copy of the applicant's memorandum and articles of association (in draft form for applicants creating a new company).

You may also refer to "Licensing Requirement" module of CBB Rulebook Vol. 1 by clicking the following linkhttps://cbben.thomsonreuters.com/sites/default/files/net_file_store/Vol_1_LR_January_2022.pdf

Required Documents

- Form 1: Application for a license
- Form 2: Application for authorization of controller
- Form 3: Application for approved person status

Municipality Affairs (Post) (6619-16)

Approval Name	Description	Estimated Time
Site Approval for Financial Services Activities	Municipality Approval for the Commercial Registration address or the site in which the Activity will be practiced	3 Days

Fee Details (if any)

10

License Information

General Conditions:
1. Size of shop/premises must be sufficient for the activity
2. Businesses may not carry out the activity outside the boundaries of the shop/ premises
3. It is prohibited to display or store any items or equipment outside the shop / premises boundary without prior approval from the Municipality. In the event of non-compliance, the Ministry of Municipality Affairs has the right to take necessary action.
4. Maintain cleanliness of the site
5. Comply with the parking space regulations as per the Construction Regulatory Requirements

Activity Specific Conditions:
1. The Commercial Registration for this activity can be registered on commercial, service, and industrial streets.
2. The commercial address of the Commercial Registration for this activity can an office address

Note: Uploading pictures of the site/shop may expedite the process of obtaining approval

Required Documents

- Lease agreement (after obtaining the necessary approvals from other licensing entities)
- Shop photos

Other Documents

- Cabinet's Decision (56) of the year 2022 regarding the Regulatory Requirements of Construction for various areas in the Kingdom of Bahrain

Financial and insurance activities

ISIC4	Business activity
6619-17	Other activities auxiliary to financial service activities - Crypto-asset services / Category 1

Description

This activity includes one or more regulated crypto-asset services, as listed below:
(i) Reception and transmission of sale and purchase orders for one or more of the accepted crypto-assets;
(ii) Provide investment advice in relation to accepted crypto-assets.

Business Requirements

✔ Age

18 and above

✔ Allowed for Nationalities

Bahraini 100%		GCC 100%	
American 100%		Singaporean 100%	
Icelander 100%		Liechtenstein er 100%	
Norwegian 100%		Swiss 100%	

Foreign Allowed up to 100%

Legal Type

It is allowed to register according to the legal forms mentioned below

Allowed for Company Commercial Registration (CCR) : Yes

- Bahrain Shareholding Company (Public)
- With Limited Liability Company
- Branch of a Foreign Company
- Bahrain Shareholding Company (Closed)
- Non Profit Company

Required Step of Licenses and Approvals

Ministry / Directorate	License / Approval Requirements	Approval Type
Municipality Affairs	Site Approval for Financial Services Activities	Post
CBB - Licensing directorate	Crypto-asset services / Category 1	Post

Municipality Affairs (Post) (6619-17)

Approval Name	Description	Estimated Time
Site Approval for Financial Services Activities	Municipality Approval for the Commercial Registration address or the site in which the Activity will be practiced	3 Days

Fee Details (if any)

10

License Information

General Conditions:
1. Size of shop/premises must be sufficient for the activity
2. Businesses may not carry out the activity outside the boundaries of the shop/ premises
3. It is prohibited to display or store any items or equipment outside the shop / premises boundary without prior approval from the Municipality. In the event of non-compliance, the Ministry of Municipality Affairs has the right to take necessary action.
4. Maintain cleanliness of the site
5. Comply with the parking space regulations as per the Construction Regulatory Requirements

Activity Specific Conditions:
1. The Commercial Registration for this activity can be registered on commercial, service, and industrial streets.
2. The commercial address of the Commercial Registration for this activity can an office address

Note: Uploading pictures of the site/shop may expedite the process of obtaining approval

Required Documents

- Lease agreement (after obtaining the necessary approvals from other licensing entities)
- Shop photos

Other Documents

- Cabinet's Decision (56) of the year 2022 regarding the Regulatory Requirements of Construction for various areas in the Kingdom of Bahrain

CBB - Licensing directorate (Post) (6619-17)

Approval Name	Description	Estimated Time
Crypto-asset services / Category 1	This activity includes one or more regulated crypto-asset services, as listed below: (i) Reception and transmission of sale and purchase orders for one or more of the accepted crypto-assets; (ii) Provide investment advice in relation to accepted crypto-assets.	60 Days

Fee Details (if any)

Refer to "Licensing Requirement" module of CBB Rulebook Vol. 1 inhttps://cbben.thomsonreuters.com/rulebook/part-13

License Information

The following documents must be submitted:

1. Form 1: “License Application Form”
2. Form 2: “Application for Authorization of Controller”
3. Form 3: “Application for Approved Person status)”, for each individual proposed to undertake controlled functions (as defined under the controlled functions in the respective rulebook) in the proposed licensee.
4. A comprehensive business plan for the application, addressing the matters described below:

a. An outline of the history of the applicant and its shareholders.
b. The reasons for applying for a license, including the applicant’s strategy and market objectives.

c. The proposed type of activities to be carried on by the applicant in/from the Kingdom of Bahrain including the work and fund flow model.
d. The proposed board and senior management of the applicant and the proposed organizational structure of the applicant.
e. An assessment of the risks that may be faced by the applicant, together with the proposed systems and controls framework to be put in place for addressing those risks and to be used for key business functions
f. An opening balance sheet for the applicant, together with a three-year financial projection, with all assumptions clearly outlined, demonstrating that the applicant will be able to meet applicable capital adequacy requirements.
5. For overseas companies, a copy of the company's current commercial registration or equivalent documentation.
6. Where the applicant is an existing Bahraini company, a certified copy of a Board resolution of the applicant, confirming its decision to seek a CBB license.
7. Details of the proposed licensee's close links, if any.
8. In the case of applicants that are part of a regulated group, a no-objection letter to the proposed license application from the applicant's lead supervisor, together with confirmation that the group is in good regulatory standing and is in compliance with applicable supervisory requirements, including those relating to capital requirements.
9. In the case of branch applicants, a no-objection letter to the proposed license application from the applicant's home supervisor, together with confirmation that the applicant is in good regulatory standing and the company concerned is in compliance with applicable supervisory requirements, including those relating to capital.
10. In the case of branch applicants, copies of the audited financial statements of the applicant (head office) for the three years immediately prior to the date of application.
11. In the case of applicants that are part of a group, copies of the audited financial statements of the applicant's group, for the three years immediately prior to the date of application.
12. In the case of applicants not falling under either of the above, copies of the audited financial statements of the applicant's major shareholder (where they are a legal person), for the three years immediately prior to the date of application.
13. In the case of applicants seeking to raise part of their capital through a private placement, a draft of the relevant private placement memorandum, together with a formal, independent legal opinion confirming that the memorandum complies with all applicable capital markets laws and regulations.
14. A copy of the applicant's memorandum and articles of association (in draft form for applicants creating a new company).

You may also refer to "Licensing Requirement" module of CBB Rulebook Vol. 1 by clicking the following linkhttps://cbben.thomsonreuters.com/sites/default/files/net_file_store/Vol_1_LR_January_2022.pdf

Required Documents

- Form 1: Application for a license
- Form 2: Application for authorization of controller
- Form 3: Application for approved person status

Financial and insurance activities

ISIC4	Business activity
6619-18	Other activities auxiliary to financial service activities - Crypto-asset services / Category 2

Description

This activity includes one or more regulated crypto-asset services, as listed below:
(i) Trading in accepted crypto-assets as agent;
(ii) Portfolio Management pertaining to accepted crypto-assets;
(iii)Crypto-asset custody;
(iv)Investment advice pertaining to accepted crypto-assets.

Business Requirements

Age

18 and above

Allowed for Nationalities

Bahraini 100%		GCC 100%	
American 100%		Singaporean 100%	
Icelander 100%		Liechtenstein er 100%	
Norwegian 100%		Swiss 100%	

Foreign Allowed up to 100%

Legal Type

It is allowed to register according to the legal forms mentioned below

Allowed for Company Commercial Registration (CCR) : Yes

- Bahrain Shareholding Company (Public)
- With Limited Liability Company
- Branch of a Foreign Company
- Bahrain Shareholding Company (Closed)
- Non Profit Company

Required Step of Licenses and Approvals

Ministry / Directorate	License / Approval Requirements	Approval Type
Municipality Affairs	Site Approval for Financial Services Activities	Post
CBB - Licensing directorate	Crypto-asset services / Category 2	Post

Municipality Affairs (Post) (6619-18)

Approval Name	Description	Estimated Time
Site Approval for Financial Services Activities	Municipality Approval for the Commercial Registration address or the site in which the Activity will be practiced	3 Days

Fee Details (if any)

10

License Information

General Conditions:
1. Size of shop/premises must be sufficient for the activity
2. Businesses may not carry out the activity outside the boundaries of the shop/ premises
3. It is prohibited to display or store any items or equipment outside the shop / premises boundary without prior approval from the Municipality. In the event of non-compliance, the Ministry of Municipality Affairs has the right to take necessary action.
4. Maintain cleanliness of the site
5. Comply with the parking space regulations as per the Construction Regulatory Requirements

Activity Specific Conditions:
1. The Commercial Registration for this activity can be registered on commercial, service, and industrial streets.
2. The commercial address of the Commercial Registration for this activity can an office address

Note: Uploading pictures of the site/shop may expedite the process of obtaining approval

Required Documents

- Lease agreement (after obtaining the necessary approvals from other licensing entities)
- Shop photos

Other Documents

- Cabinet's Decision (56) of the year 2022 regarding the Regulatory Requirements of Construction for various areas in the Kingdom of Bahrain

CBB - Licensing directorate (Post) (6619-18)

Approval Name	Description	Estimated Time
Crypto-asset services / Category 2	This activity includes one or more regulated crypto-asset services, as listed below: (i) Trading in accepted crypto-assets as agent; (ii) Portfolio Management pertaining to accepted crypto-assets; (iii)Crypto-asset custody; (iv)Investment advice pertaining to accepted crypto-assets.	60 Days

Fee Details (if any)

Refer to "Licensing Requirement" module of CBB Rulebook Vol. 1 inhttps://cbben.thomsonreuters.com/rulebook/part-13

License Information

The following documents must be submitted:

1. Form 1: “License Application Form”
2. Form 2: “Application for Authorization of Controller”
3. Form 3: “Application for Approved Person status)”, for each individual proposed to undertake controlled functions (as defined under the controlled functions in the respective rulebook) in the proposed licensee.
4. A comprehensive business plan for the application, addressing the matters described

below:
a. An outline of the history of the applicant and its shareholders.
b. The reasons for applying for a license, including the applicant's strategy and market objectives.
c. The proposed type of activities to be carried on by the applicant in/from the Kingdom of Bahrain including the work and fund flow model.
d. The proposed board and senior management of the applicant and the proposed organizational structure of the applicant.
e. An assessment of the risks that may be faced by the applicant, together with the proposed systems and controls framework to be put in place for addressing those risks and to be used for key business functions
f. An opening balance sheet for the applicant, together with a three-year financial projection, with all assumptions clearly outlined, demonstrating that the applicant will be able to meet applicable capital adequacy requirements.
5. For overseas companies, a copy of the company's current commercial registration or equivalent documentation.
6. Where the applicant is an existing Bahraini company, a certified copy of a Board resolution of the applicant, confirming its decision to seek a CBB license.
7. Details of the proposed licensee's close links, if any.
8. In the case of applicants that are part of a regulated group, a no-objection letter to the proposed license application from the applicant's lead supervisor, together with confirmation that the group is in good regulatory standing and is in compliance with applicable supervisory requirements, including those relating to capital requirements.
9. In the case of branch applicants, a no-objection letter to the proposed license application from the applicant's home supervisor, together with confirmation that the applicant is in good regulatory standing and the company concerned is in compliance with applicable supervisory requirements, including those relating to capital.
10. In the case of branch applicants, copies of the audited financial statements of the applicant (head office) for the three years immediately prior to the date of application.
11. In the case of applicants that are part of a group, copies of the audited financial statements of the applicant's group, for the three years immediately prior to the date of application.
12. In the case of applicants not falling under either of the above, copies of the audited financial statements of the applicant's major shareholder (where they are a legal person), for the three years immediately prior to the date of application.
13. In the case of applicants seeking to raise part of their capital through a private placement, a draft of the relevant private placement memorandum, together with a formal, independent legal opinion confirming that the memorandum complies with all applicable capital markets laws and regulations.
14. A copy of the applicant's memorandum and articles of association (in draft form for applicants creating a new company).

You may also refer to "Licensing Requirement" module of CBB Rulebook Vol. 1 by clicking the following linkhttps://cbben.thomsonreuters.com/sites/default/files/net_file_store/Vol_1_LR_January_2022.pdf

Required Documents

- Form 1: Application for a license
- Form 2: Application for authorization of controller
- Form 3: Application for approved person status

Financial and insurance activities

ISIC4	Business activity
6619-19	Other activities auxiliary to financial service activities - Crypto-asset services / Category 3

Description

This activity includes one or more regulated crypto-asset services, as listed below:
(i) Trading in accepted crypto-assets as agent;
(ii) Trading in accepted crypto-assets as principal;
(iii)Portfolio Management pertaining to accepted crypto-assets;
(iv)Custody of accepted crypto-asset;
(v) Investment advice pertaining to accepted crypto-assets.

Business Requirements

✔ Age

18 and above

✔ Allowed for Nationalities

Bahraini 100%		GCC 100%	
American 100%		Singaporean 100%	
Icelander 100%		Liechtenstein er 100%	
Norwegian 100%		Swiss 100%	

Foreign Allowed up to 100%

Legal Type

It is allowed to register according to the legal forms mentioned below

Allowed for Company Commercial Registration (CCR) : Yes

- Bahrain Shareholding Company (Public)
- With Limited Liability Company
- Branch of a Foreign Company
- Bahrain Shareholding Company (Closed)
- Non Profit Company

Required Step of Licenses and Approvals

Ministry / Directorate	License / Approval Requirements	Approval Type
CBB - Licensing directorate	Crypto-asset services / Category 3	Post
Municipality Affairs	Site Approval for Financial Services Activities	Post

CBB - Licensing directorate (Post) (6619-19)

Approval Name	Description	Estimated Time
Crypto-asset services / Category 3	This activity includes one or more regulated crypto-asset services, as listed below: (i) Trading in accepted crypto-assets as agent; (ii) Trading in accepted crypto-assets as principal; (iii)Portfolio Management pertaining to accepted crypto-assets; (iv)Custody of accepted crypto-asset; (v) Investment advice pertaining to accepted crypto-assets.	60 Days

Fee Details (if any)

Refer to "Licensing Requirement" module of CBB Rulebook Vol. 1 inhttps://cbben.thomsonreuters.com/rulebook/part-13

License Information

The following documents must be submitted:

1. Form 1: “License Application Form”
2. Form 2: “Application for Authorization of Controller”

3. Form 3: “Application for Approved Person status)”, for each individual proposed to undertake controlled functions (as defined under the controlled functions in the respective rulebook) in the proposed licensee.
4. A comprehensive business plan for the application, addressing the matters described below:
a. An outline of the history of the applicant and its shareholders.
b. The reasons for applying for a license, including the applicant’s strategy and market objectives.
c. The proposed type of activities to be carried on by the applicant in/from the Kingdom of Bahrain including the work and fund flow model.
d. The proposed board and senior management of the applicant and the proposed organizational structure of the applicant.
e. An assessment of the risks that may be faced by the applicant, together with the proposed systems and controls framework to be put in place for addressing those risks and to be used for key business functions
f. An opening balance sheet for the applicant, together with a three-year financial projection, with all assumptions clearly outlined, demonstrating that the applicant will be able to meet applicable capital adequacy requirements.
5. For overseas companies, a copy of the company’s current commercial registration or equivalent documentation.
6. Where the applicant is an existing Bahraini company, a certified copy of a Board resolution of the applicant, confirming its decision to seek a CBB license.
7. Details of the proposed licensee’s close links, if any.
8. In the case of applicants that are part of a regulated group, a no-objection letter to the proposed license application from the applicant’s lead supervisor, together with confirmation that the group is in good regulatory standing and is in compliance with applicable supervisory requirements, including those relating to capital requirements.
9. In the case of branch applicants, a no-objection letter to the proposed license application from the applicant’s home supervisor, together with confirmation that the applicant is in good regulatory standing and the company concerned is in compliance with applicable supervisory requirements, including those relating to capital.
10. In the case of branch applicants, copies of the audited financial statements of the applicant (head office) for the three years immediately prior to the date of application.
11. In the case of applicants that are part of a group, copies of the audited financial statements of the applicant’s group, for the three years immediately prior to the date of application.
12. In the case of applicants not falling under either of the above, copies of the audited financial statements of the applicant’s major shareholder (where they are a legal person), for the three years immediately prior to the date of application.
13. In the case of applicants seeking to raise part of their capital through a private placement, a draft of the relevant private placement memorandum, together with a formal, independent legal opinion confirming that the memorandum complies with all applicable capital markets laws and regulations.
14. A copy of the applicant’s memorandum and articles of association (in draft form for applicants creating a new company).

You may also refer to "Licensing Requirement" module of CBB Rulebook Vol. 1 by

clicking the following linkhttps://cbben.thomsonreuters.com/sites/default/files/net_file_store/Vol_1_LR_January_2022.pdf

Required Documents

- Form 1: Application for a license
- Form 2: Application for authorization of controller
- Form 3: Application for approved person status

Municipality Affairs (Post) (6619-19)

Approval Name	Description	Estimated Time
Site Approval for Financial Services Activities	Municipality Approval for the Commercial Registration address or the site in which the Activity will be practiced	3 Days

Fee Details (if any)

10

License Information

General Conditions:
1. Size of shop/premises must be sufficient for the activity
2. Businesses may not carry out the activity outside the boundaries of the shop/ premises
3. It is prohibited to display or store any items or equipment outside the shop / premises boundary without prior approval from the Municipality. In the event of non-compliance, the Ministry of Municipality Affairs has the right to take necessary action.
4. Maintain cleanliness of the site
5. Comply with the parking space regulations as per the Construction Regulatory Requirements

Activity Specific Conditions:
1. The Commercial Registration for this activity can be registered on commercial, service, and industrial streets.
2. The commercial address of the Commercial Registration for this activity can an office address

Note: Uploading pictures of the site/shop may expedite the process of obtaining approval

Required Documents

- Lease agreement (after obtaining the necessary approvals from other licensing entities)
- Shop photos

Other Documents

- Cabinet's Decision (56) of the year 2022 regarding the Regulatory Requirements of Construction for various areas in the Kingdom of Bahrain

Financial and insurance activities

ISIC4	Business activity
6619-2	Other activities auxiliary to financial service activities - Representitive Office of Foreign companies providing regulated activities

Description

Communicating with relevant parties, the promotion of the services and products of the holding company to its clients in the local or foreign market, as well as providing the main headquarters of the company with information relating to the economic developments and investment opportunities, and providing information to any local party intending to promote its activities with the countries that those banks or insurance companies or investment companies operate in.

Business Requirements

✔ Age

18 and above

✔ Allowed for Nationalities

Bahraini 100%	GCC 100%
American 100%	Singaporean 100%
Icelander 100%	Liechtenstein er 100%
Norwegian 100%	Swiss 100%

Foreign Allowed up to 100%

Legal Type

It is allowed to register according to the legal forms mentioned below

Allowed for Company Commercial Registration (CCR) : Yes

- Bahrain Shareholding Company (Public)
- Bahrain Shareholding Company (Closed)
- Branch of a Foreign Company

Required Step of Licenses and Approvals

Ministry / Directorate	License / Approval Requirements	Approval Type
Municipality Affairs	Site Approval for Financial Services Activities	Post
CBB - Licensing directorate	Representative Office of Foreign companies providing regulated activities	Post

Municipality Affairs (Post) (6619-2)

Approval Name	Description	Estimated Time
Site Approval for Financial Services Activities	Municipality Approval for the Commercial Registration address or the site in which the Activity will be practiced	3 Days

Fee Details (if any)

10

License Information

General Conditions:
1. Size of shop/premises must be sufficient for the activity
2. Businesses may not carry out the activity outside the boundaries of the shop/ premises
3. It is prohibited to display or store any items or equipment outside the shop / premises boundary without prior approval from the Municipality. In the event of non-compliance, the Ministry of Municipality Affairs has the right to take necessary action.
4. Maintain cleanliness of the site
5. Comply with the parking space regulations as per the Construction Regulatory Requirements

Activity Specific Conditions:
1. The Commercial Registration for this activity can be registered on commercial, service, and industrial streets.
2. The commercial address of the Commercial Registration for this activity can an office address

Note: Uploading pictures of the site/shop may expedite the process of obtaining approval

Required Documents

- Lease agreement (after obtaining the necessary approvals from other licensing entities)
- Shop photos

Other Documents

- Cabinet's Decision (56) of the year 2022 regarding the Regulatory Requirements of Construction for various areas in the Kingdom of Bahrain

CBB - Licensing directorate (Post) (6619-2)

Approval Name	Description	Estimated Time
Representative Office of Foreign companies providing regulated activities	Communicating with relevant parties, the promotion of the services and products of the holding company to its clients in the local or foreign market, as well as providing the main headquarters of the company with information relating to the economic developments and investment opportunities, and providing information to any local party intending to promote its activities with the countries that those banks or insurance companies or investment companies operate in.	60 Days

Fee Details (if any)

Refer to "Licensing Requirement" module of CBB Rulebook Vol. 1 inhttps://cbben.thomsonreuters.com/rulebook/central-bank-bahrain-volume-5-specialised-licensees

License Information

The following documents must be submitted:

1. Form 1: “License Application Form”
2. Form 2: “Application for Authorization of Controller”
3. Form 3: “Application for Approved Person status)”, for each individual proposed to undertake controlled functions (as defined under the controlled functions in the respective rulebook) in the proposed licensee.
4. A comprehensive business plan for the application, addressing the matters described below:
a. An outline of the history of the applicant and its shareholders.
b. The reasons for applying for a license, including the applicant’s strategy and market objectives.
c. The proposed type of activities to be carried on by the applicant in/from the Kingdom of Bahrain including the work and fund flow model.
d. The proposed board and senior management of the applicant and the proposed organizational structure of the applicant.
e. An assessment of the risks that may be faced by the applicant, together with the proposed systems and controls framework to be put in place for addressing those risks and to be used for key business functions
f. An opening balance sheet for the applicant, together with a three-year financial projection, with all assumptions clearly outlined, demonstrating that the applicant will be able to meet applicable capital adequacy requirements.
5. For overseas companies, a copy of the company’s current commercial registration or equivalent documentation.
6. Where the applicant is an existing Bahraini company, a certified copy of a Board resolution of the applicant, confirming its decision to seek a CBB license.
7. Details of the proposed licensee’s close links, if any.
8. In the case of applicants that are part of a regulated group, a no-objection letter to the proposed license application from the applicant’s lead supervisor, together with confirmation that the group is in good regulatory standing and is in compliance with applicable supervisory requirements, including those relating to capital requirements.
9. In the case of branch applicants, a no-objection letter to the proposed license application from the applicant’s home supervisor, together with confirmation that the applicant is in good regulatory standing and the company concerned is in compliance with applicable supervisory requirements, including those relating to capital.
10. In the case of branch applicants, copies of the audited financial statements of the applicant (head office) for the three years immediately prior to the date of application.
11. In the case of applicants that are part of a group, copies of the audited financial statements of the applicant’s group, for the three years immediately prior to the date of application.
12. In the case of applicants not falling under either of the above, copies of the audited financial statements of the applicant’s major shareholder (where they are a legal person), for the three years immediately prior to the date of application.
13. In the case of applicants seeking to raise part of their capital through a private placement, a draft of the relevant private placement memorandum, together with a formal, independent legal opinion confirming that the memorandum complies with all applicable capital markets laws and regulations.
14. A copy of the applicant’s memorandum and articles of association (in draft form for applicants creating a new company).

You may also refer to "Licensing Requirement" module of CBB Rulebook Vol. 1 by clicking the following linkhttps://cbben.thomsonreuters.com/sites/default/files/net_file_store/Vol_1_LR_January_2022.pdf

Required Documents

- Form 1: Application for a license
- Form 2: Application for authorization of controller
- Form 3: Application for approved person status

Financial and insurance activities

ISIC4	Business activity
6619-20	Other activities auxiliary to financial service activities - Crypto-asset services / Category 4

Description

This activity includes one or more regulated crypto-asset service, as listed below:
(i) Operate a licensed accepted crypto-asset exchange;
(ii) Accepted crypto-asset custody service.

Business Requirements

Age

18 and above

Allowed for Nationalities

Bahraini 100%	GCC 100%
American 100%	Singaporean 100%
Icelander 100%	Liechtenstein er 100%
Norwegian 100%	Swiss 100%

Foreign Allowed up to 100%

Legal Type

It is allowed to register according to the legal forms mentioned below

Allowed for Company Commercial Registration (CCR) : Yes

- Bahrain Shareholding Company (Public)
- Bahrain Shareholding Company (Closed)
- Branch of a Foreign Company

Required Step of Licenses and Approvals

Ministry / Directorate	License / Approval Requirements	Approval Type
CBB - Licensing directorate	Crypto-asset services / Category 4	Post
Municipality Affairs	Site Approval for Financial Services Activities	Post

CBB - Licensing directorate (Post) (6619-20)

Approval Name	Description	Estimated Time
Crypto-asset services / Category 4	This activity includes one or more regulated crypto-asset service, as listed below: (i) Operate a licensed accepted crypto-asset exchange; (ii) Accepted crypto-asset custody service.	60 Days

Fee Details (if any)

Refer to "Licensing Requirement" module of CBB Rulebook Vol. 1 inhttps://cbben.thomsonreuters.com/rulebook/part-13

License Information

The following documents must be submitted:

1. Form 1: “License Application Form”
2. Form 2: “Application for Authorization of Controller”
3. Form 3: “Application for Approved Person status)”, for each individual proposed to undertake controlled functions (as defined under the controlled functions in the respective rulebook) in the proposed licensee.
4. A comprehensive business plan for the application, addressing the matters described below:

a. An outline of the history of the applicant and its shareholders.
b. The reasons for applying for a license, including the applicant’s strategy and market objectives.
c. The proposed type of activities to be carried on by the applicant in/from the Kingdom of Bahrain including the work and fund flow model.
d. The proposed board and senior management of the applicant and the proposed organizational structure of the applicant.
e. An assessment of the risks that may be faced by the applicant, together with the

proposed systems and controls framework to be put in place for addressing those risks and to be used for key business functions
f. An opening balance sheet for the applicant, together with a three-year financial projection, with all assumptions clearly outlined, demonstrating that the applicant will be able to meet applicable capital adequacy requirements.
5. For overseas companies, a copy of the company's current commercial registration or equivalent documentation.
6. Where the applicant is an existing Bahraini company, a certified copy of a Board resolution of the applicant, confirming its decision to seek a CBB license.
7. Details of the proposed licensee's close links, if any.
8. In the case of applicants that are part of a regulated group, a no-objection letter to the proposed license application from the applicant's lead supervisor, together with confirmation that the group is in good regulatory standing and is in compliance with applicable supervisory requirements, including those relating to capital requirements.
9. In the case of branch applicants, a no-objection letter to the proposed license application from the applicant's home supervisor, together with confirmation that the applicant is in good regulatory standing and the company concerned is in compliance with applicable supervisory requirements, including those relating to capital.
10. In the case of branch applicants, copies of the audited financial statements of the applicant (head office) for the three years immediately prior to the date of application.
11. In the case of applicants that are part of a group, copies of the audited financial statements of the applicant's group, for the three years immediately prior to the date of application.
12. In the case of applicants not falling under either of the above, copies of the audited financial statements of the applicant's major shareholder (where they are a legal person), for the three years immediately prior to the date of application.
13. In the case of applicants seeking to raise part of their capital through a private placement, a draft of the relevant private placement memorandum, together with a formal, independent legal opinion confirming that the memorandum complies with all applicable capital markets laws and regulations.
14. A copy of the applicant's memorandum and articles of association (in draft form for applicants creating a new company).

You may also refer to "Licensing Requirement" module of CBB Rulebook Vol. 1 by clicking the following linkhttps://cbben.thomsonreuters.com/sites/default/files/net_file_store/Vol_1_LR_January_2022.pdf

Required Documents

- Form 1: Application for a license
- Form 2: Application for authorization of controller
- Form 3: Application for approved person status

Municipality Affairs (Post) (6619-20)

Approval Name	Description	Estimated Time
Site Approval for Financial Services Activities	Municipality Approval for the Commercial Registration address or the site in which the Activity will be practiced	3 Days

Fee Details (if any)

10

License Information

General Conditions:
1. Size of shop/premises must be sufficient for the activity
2. Businesses may not carry out the activity outside the boundaries of the shop/ premises
3. It is prohibited to display or store any items or equipment outside the shop / premises boundary without prior approval from the Municipality. In the event of non-compliance, the Ministry of Municipality Affairs has the right to take necessary action.
4. Maintain cleanliness of the site
5. Comply with the parking space regulations as per the Construction Regulatory Requirements

Activity Specific Conditions:
1. The Commercial Registration for this activity can be registered on commercial, service, and industrial streets.
2. The commercial address of the Commercial Registration for this activity can an office address

Note: Uploading pictures of the site/shop may expedite the process of obtaining approval

Required Documents

- Lease agreement (after obtaining the necessary approvals from other licensing entities)
- Shop photos

Other Documents

- Cabinet's Decision (56) of the year 2022 regarding the Regulatory Requirements of Construction for various areas in the Kingdom of Bahrain

Financial and insurance activities

ISIC4	Business activity
6619-3	Other activities auxiliary to financial service activities - Ancillary Service Providers-Third Party Administrators(TPA)

Description

TPA includes the following activities:
Processing claims in connection with health insurance coverage offered or provided by insurance firms.

Business Requirements

Age

18 and above

Allowed for Nationalities

Bahraini 100%		GCC 100%	
American 100%		Singaporean 100%	
Icelander 100%		Liechtenstein er 100%	
Norwegian 100%		Swiss 100%	

Foreign Allowed up to 100%

Legal Type

It is allowed to register according to the legal forms mentioned below

Allowed for Company Commercial Registration (CCR) : Yes

- Bahrain Shareholding Company (Public)
- With Limited Liability Company
- Branch of a Foreign Company
- Bahrain Shareholding Company (Closed)

Required Step of Licenses and Approvals

Ministry / Directorate	License / Approval Requirements	Approval Type
Municipality Affairs	Site Approval for Financial Services Activities	Post
CBB - Licensing directorate	Ancillary Service Providers - Third Party Administrators (TPA)	Post

Municipality Affairs (Post) (6619-3)

Approval Name	Description	Estimated Time
Site Approval for Financial Services Activities	Municipality Approval for the Commercial Registration address or the site in which the Activity will be practiced	3 Days

Fee Details (if any)

10

License Information

General Conditions:
1. Size of shop/premises must be sufficient for the activity
2. Businesses may not carry out the activity outside the boundaries of the shop/ premises
3. It is prohibited to display or store any items or equipment outside the shop / premises boundary without prior approval from the Municipality. In the event of non-compliance, the Ministry of Municipality Affairs has the right to take necessary action.
4. Maintain cleanliness of the site
5. Comply with the parking space regulations as per the Construction Regulatory Requirements

Activity Specific Conditions:
1. The Commercial Registration for this activity can be registered on commercial, service, and industrial streets.
2. The commercial address of the Commercial Registration for this activity can an office address

Note: Uploading pictures of the site/shop may expedite the process of obtaining approval

Required Documents

- Lease agreement (after obtaining the necessary approvals from other licensing entities)
- Shop photos

Other Documents

- Cabinet's Decision (56) of the year 2022 regarding the Regulatory Requirements of Construction for various areas in the Kingdom of Bahrain

CBB - Licensing directorate (Post) (6619-3)

Approval Name	Description	Estimated Time
Ancillary Service Providers - Third Party Administrators (TPA)	TPA includes the following activities: Processing claims in connection with health insurance coverage offered or provided by insurance firms.	60 Days

Fee Details (if any)

Refer to "Licensing Requirement" module of CBB Rulebook Vol. 1 inhttps://cbben.thomsonreuters.com/rulebook/central-bank-bahrain-volume-5-specialised-licensees

License Information

The following documents must be submitted:

1. Form 1: “License Application Form”
2. Form 2: “Application for Authorization of Controller”
3. Form 3: “Application for Approved Person status)”, for each individual proposed to undertake controlled functions (as defined under the controlled functions in the respective rulebook) in the proposed licensee.
4. A comprehensive business plan for the application, addressing the matters described below:

a. An outline of the history of the applicant and its shareholders.
b. The reasons for applying for a license, including the applicant’s strategy and market objectives.
c. The proposed type of activities to be carried on by the applicant in/from the Kingdom of Bahrain including the work and fund flow model.
d. The proposed board and senior management of the applicant and the proposed organizational structure of the applicant.
e. An assessment of the risks that may be faced by the applicant, together with the

proposed systems and controls framework to be put in place for addressing those risks and to be used for key business functions
f. An opening balance sheet for the applicant, together with a three-year financial projection, with all assumptions clearly outlined, demonstrating that the applicant will be able to meet applicable capital adequacy requirements.
5. For overseas companies, a copy of the company's current commercial registration or equivalent documentation.
6. Where the applicant is an existing Bahraini company, a certified copy of a Board resolution of the applicant, confirming its decision to seek a CBB license.
7. Details of the proposed licensee's close links, if any.
8. In the case of applicants that are part of a regulated group, a no-objection letter to the proposed license application from the applicant's lead supervisor, together with confirmation that the group is in good regulatory standing and is in compliance with applicable supervisory requirements, including those relating to capital requirements.
9. In the case of branch applicants, a no-objection letter to the proposed license application from the applicant's home supervisor, together with confirmation that the applicant is in good regulatory standing and the company concerned is in compliance with applicable supervisory requirements, including those relating to capital.
10. In the case of branch applicants, copies of the audited financial statements of the applicant (head office) for the three years immediately prior to the date of application.
11. In the case of applicants that are part of a group, copies of the audited financial statements of the applicant's group, for the three years immediately prior to the date of application.
12. In the case of applicants not falling under either of the above, copies of the audited financial statements of the applicant's major shareholder (where they are a legal person), for the three years immediately prior to the date of application.
13. In the case of applicants seeking to raise part of their capital through a private placement, a draft of the relevant private placement memorandum, together with a formal, independent legal opinion confirming that the memorandum complies with all applicable capital markets laws and regulations.
14. A copy of the applicant's memorandum and articles of association (in draft form for applicants creating a new company).

You may also refer to "Licensing Requirement" module of CBB Rulebook Vol. 1 by clicking the following linkhttps://cbben.thomsonreuters.com/sites/default/files/net_file_store/Vol_1_LR_January_2022.pdf

Required Documents

- Form 1: Application for a license
- Form 2: Application for authorization of controller
- Form 3: Application for approved person status

Financial and insurance activities

ISIC4	Business activity
6619-4	Other activities auxiliary to financial service activities - Fund Administrator

Description

Acting as administrators refers to administering certain specified functions in relation to financial instruments that include the following: 1] fund management accounting services; 2] client inquiries; 3] valuation and pricing [including tax returns]; 4] regulatory compliance; 5] maintenance of unit-holder register; 6] distribution of income; 7] unit issues and redemption; 8] contract settlements [including certificate dispatch]; and 9] record keeping.

Business Requirements

Age

18 and above

Allowed for Nationalities

Bahraini 100%	GCC 100%
American 100%	Singaporean 100%
Icelander 100%	Liechtenstein er 100%
Norwegian 100%	Swiss 100%

Foreign Allowed up to 100%

Legal Type

It is allowed to register according to the legal forms mentioned below

Allowed for Company Commercial Registration (CCR) : Yes

- Bahrain Shareholding Company (Public)
- With Limited Liability Company
- Branch of a Foreign Company
- Bahrain Shareholding Company (Closed)

Required Step of Licenses and Approvals

Ministry / Directorate	License / Approval Requirements	Approval Type
Municipality Affairs	Site Approval for Financial Services Activities	Post
CBB - Licensing directorate	Fund Administrator	Post

Municipality Affairs (Post) (6619-4)

Approval Name	Description	Estimated Time
Site Approval for Financial Services Activities	Municipality Approval for the Commercial Registration address or the site in which the Activity will be practiced	3 Days

Fee Details (if any)

10

License Information

General Conditions:
1. Size of shop/premises must be sufficient for the activity
2. Businesses may not carry out the activity outside the boundaries of the shop/ premises
3. It is prohibited to display or store any items or equipment outside the shop / premises boundary without prior approval from the Municipality. In the event of non-compliance, the Ministry of Municipality Affairs has the right to take necessary action.
4. Maintain cleanliness of the site
5. Comply with the parking space regulations as per the Construction Regulatory Requirements

Activity Specific Conditions:
1. The Commercial Registration for this activity can be registered on commercial, service, and industrial streets.
2. The commercial address of the Commercial Registration for this activity can an office address

Note: Uploading pictures of the site/shop may expedite the process of obtaining approval

Required Documents

- Lease agreement (after obtaining the necessary approvals from other licensing entities)
- Shop photos

Other Documents

- Cabinet's Decision (56) of the year 2022 regarding the Regulatory Requirements of Construction for various areas in the Kingdom of Bahrain

CBB - Licensing directorate (Post) (6619-4)

Approval Name	Description	Estimated Time
Fund Administrator	Acting as administrators refers to administering certain specified functions in relation to financial instruments that include the following: 1. Fund management accounting services; 2. Client inquiries; 3. Valuation and pricing [including tax returns]; 4. Regulatory compliance; 5. Maintenance of unit-holder register; 6. Distribution of income; 7. Unit issues and redemption; 8. Contract settlements [including certificate dispatch]; and 9. Record keeping.	60 Days

Fee Details (if any)

Refer to "Licensing Requirement" module of CBB Rulebook Vol. 1 inhttps://cbben.thomsonreuters.com/rulebook/central-bank-bahrain-volume-5-specialised-licensees

License Information

The following documents must be submitted:

1. Form 1: “License Application Form”
2. Form 2: “Application for Authorization of Controller”
3. Form 3: “Application for Approved Person status)”, for each individual proposed to undertake controlled functions (as defined under the controlled functions in the respective rulebook) in the proposed licensee.
4. A comprehensive business plan for the application, addressing the matters described below:
a. An outline of the history of the applicant and its shareholders.
b. The reasons for applying for a license, including the applicant’s strategy and market objectives.
c. The proposed type of activities to be carried on by the applicant in/from the Kingdom of Bahrain including the work and fund flow model.
d. The proposed board and senior management of the applicant and the proposed organizational structure of the applicant.
e. An assessment of the risks that may be faced by the applicant, together with the proposed systems and controls framework to be put in place for addressing those risks and to be used for key business functions
f. An opening balance sheet for the applicant, together with a three-year financial projection, with all assumptions clearly outlined, demonstrating that the applicant will be able to meet applicable capital adequacy requirements.
5. For overseas companies, a copy of the company’s current commercial registration or equivalent documentation.
6. Where the applicant is an existing Bahraini company, a certified copy of a Board resolution of the applicant, confirming its decision to seek a CBB license.
7. Details of the proposed licensee’s close links, if any.
8. In the case of applicants that are part of a regulated group, a no-objection letter to the proposed license application from the applicant’s lead supervisor, together with confirmation that the group is in good regulatory standing and is in compliance with applicable supervisory requirements, including those relating to capital requirements.
9. In the case of branch applicants, a no-objection letter to the proposed license application from the applicant’s home supervisor, together with confirmation that the applicant is in good regulatory standing and the company concerned is in compliance with applicable supervisory requirements, including those relating to capital.
10. In the case of branch applicants, copies of the audited financial statements of the applicant (head office) for the three years immediately prior to the date of application.
11. In the case of applicants that are part of a group, copies of the audited financial statements of the applicant’s group, for the three years immediately prior to the date of application.
12. In the case of applicants not falling under either of the above, copies of the audited financial statements of the applicant’s major shareholder (where they are a legal person), for the three years immediately prior to the date of application.
13. In the case of applicants seeking to raise part of their capital through a private

placement, a draft of the relevant private placement memorandum, together with a formal, independent legal opinion confirming that the memorandum complies with all applicable capital markets laws and regulations.
14. A copy of the applicant's memorandum and articles of association (in draft form for applicants creating a new company).

You may also refer to "Licensing Requirement" module of CBB Rulebook Vol. 1 by clicking the following linkhttps://cbben.thomsonreuters.com/sites/default/files/net_file_store/Vol_1_LR_January_2022.pdf

Required Documents

- Form 1: Application for a license
- Form 2: Application for authorization of controller
- Form 3: Application for approved person status

Financial and insurance activities

ISIC4	Business activity
6619-5	Other activities auxiliary to financial service activities - Registrar License

Description

Regulated adminstration services, in relation to a registrar, include: 1) client inquiries; 2) maintenance of unit-holder register; 3) distribution of income; 4) certificate dispatch; and 5) general record keeping.

Business Requirements

Age

18 and above

Allowed for Nationalities

Bahraini 100%	GCC 100%
American 100%	Singaporean 100%
Icelander 100%	Liechtenstein er 100%
Norwegian 100%	Swiss 100%

Foreign Allowed up to 100%

Legal Type

It is allowed to register according to the legal forms mentioned below

Allowed for Company Commercial Registration (CCR) : Yes

- Bahrain Shareholding Company (Public)
- Bahrain Shareholding Company (Closed)
- Branch of a Foreign Company

Required Step of Licenses and Approvals

Ministry / Directorate	License / Approval Requirements	Approval Type
Municipality Affairs	Site Approval for Financial Services Activities	Post
CBB - Licensing directorate	Registrar License	Post

Municipality Affairs (Post) (6619-5)

Approval Name	Description	Estimated Time
Site Approval for Financial Services Activities	Municipality Approval for the Commercial Registration address or the site in which the Activity will be practiced	3 Days

Fee Details (if any)

10

License Information

General Conditions:
1. Size of shop/premises must be sufficient for the activity
2. Businesses may not carry out the activity outside the boundaries of the shop/ premises
3. It is prohibited to display or store any items or equipment outside the shop / premises boundary without prior approval from the Municipality. In the event of non-compliance, the Ministry of Municipality Affairs has the right to take necessary action.
4. Maintain cleanliness of the site
5. Comply with the parking space regulations as per the Construction Regulatory Requirements

Activity Specific Conditions:
1. The Commercial Registration for this activity can be registered on commercial, service, and industrial streets.
2. The commercial address of the Commercial Registration for this activity can an office address

Note: Uploading pictures of the site/shop may expedite the process of obtaining approval

Required Documents

- Lease agreement (after obtaining the necessary approvals from other licensing entities)
- Shop photos

Other Documents

- Cabinet's Decision (56) of the year 2022 regarding the Regulatory Requirements of Construction for various areas in the Kingdom of Bahrain

CBB - Licensing directorate (Post) (6619-5)

Approval Name	Description	Estimated Time
Registrar License	Regulated administration services, in relation to a registrar, include: 1. Client inquiries; 2. Maintenance of unit-holder register; 3. Distribution of income; 4. Certificate dispatch; and 5. General record keeping.	60 Days

Fee Details (if any)

Refer to "Licensing Requirement" module of CBB Rulebook Vol. 1 inhttps://cbben.thomsonreuters.com/rulebook/central-bank-bahrain-volume-5-specialised-licensees

License Information

The following documents must be submitted:

1. Form 1: “License Application Form”
2. Form 2: “Application for Authorization of Controller”
3. Form 3: “Application for Approved Person status)”, for each individual proposed to undertake controlled functions (as defined under the controlled functions in the respective rulebook) in the proposed licensee.
4. A comprehensive business plan for the application, addressing the matters described below:

a. An outline of the history of the applicant and its shareholders.
b. The reasons for applying for a license, including the applicant’s strategy and market objectives.

c. The proposed type of activities to be carried on by the applicant in/from the Kingdom of Bahrain including the work and fund flow model.
d. The proposed board and senior management of the applicant and the proposed organizational structure of the applicant.
e. An assessment of the risks that may be faced by the applicant, together with the proposed systems and controls framework to be put in place for addressing those risks and to be used for key business functions
f. An opening balance sheet for the applicant, together with a three-year financial projection, with all assumptions clearly outlined, demonstrating that the applicant will be able to meet applicable capital adequacy requirements.
5. For overseas companies, a copy of the company's current commercial registration or equivalent documentation.
6. Where the applicant is an existing Bahraini company, a certified copy of a Board resolution of the applicant, confirming its decision to seek a CBB license.
7. Details of the proposed licensee's close links, if any.
8. In the case of applicants that are part of a regulated group, a no-objection letter to the proposed license application from the applicant's lead supervisor, together with confirmation that the group is in good regulatory standing and is in compliance with applicable supervisory requirements, including those relating to capital requirements.
9. In the case of branch applicants, a no-objection letter to the proposed license application from the applicant's home supervisor, together with confirmation that the applicant is in good regulatory standing and the company concerned is in compliance with applicable supervisory requirements, including those relating to capital.
10. In the case of branch applicants, copies of the audited financial statements of the applicant (head office) for the three years immediately prior to the date of application.
11. In the case of applicants that are part of a group, copies of the audited financial statements of the applicant's group, for the three years immediately prior to the date of application.
12. In the case of applicants not falling under either of the above, copies of the audited financial statements of the applicant's major shareholder (where they are a legal person), for the three years immediately prior to the date of application.
13. In the case of applicants seeking to raise part of their capital through a private placement, a draft of the relevant private placement memorandum, together with a formal, independent legal opinion confirming that the memorandum complies with all applicable capital markets laws and regulations.
14. A copy of the applicant's memorandum and articles of association (in draft form for applicants creating a new company).

You may also refer to "Licensing Requirement" module of CBB Rulebook Vol. 1 by clicking the following linkhttps://cbben.thomsonreuters.com/sites/default/files/net_file_store/Vol_1_LR_January_2022.pdf

Required Documents

- Form 1: Application for a license
- Form 2: Application for authorization of controller
- Form 3: Application for approved person status

Financial and insurance activities

ISIC4	Business activity
6619-6	Other activities auxiliary to financial service activities - Ancillary Service Providers - Card Processing

Description

Card processing includes the following activities:
(a) The act of processing or transmitting debit/credit card holder and transaction related data;
(b) Integrating customer delivery channels to enterprises to enable transactions at delivery channels (e.g. ATMs, POS, Interactive Voice Response, mobile, internet);;
(c) Hosting and managing card program;
(d) Approving and authenticating payment transactions as per financial institutions rules;
(e) E-commerce and M-commerce transactions;
(f) Interfacing with external networks/institutions (e.g. national switch, VISA, MasterCard), enabling automated exchange of transactions between the enterprise and external networks;
(g) Reporting and customising reporting engine;
(h) Call centre outsourcing services; and
(i) Online and mobile portals for bank customers.

Business Requirements

Age

18 and above

Allowed for Nationalities

Bahraini 100%		GCC 100%	
American 100%		Singaporean 100%	
Icelander 100%		Liechtenstein er 100%	
Norwegian 100%		Swiss 100%	

Foreign Allowed up to 100%

Legal Type

It is allowed to register according to the legal forms mentioned below

Allowed for Individual Commercial Registration (ICR) : Yes

Allowed for Company Commercial Registration (CCR) : Yes

- Bahrain Shareholding Company (Public)
- With Limited Liability Company
- Branch of a Foreign Company
- Bahrain Shareholding Company (Closed)

Required Step of Licenses and Approvals

Ministry / Directorate	License / Approval Requirements	Approval Type
Municipality Affairs	Site Approval for Financial Services Activities	Post
CBB - Licensing	Ancillary Service Providers	Post

directorate	- Card Processing	

Municipality Affairs (Post) (6619-6)

Approval Name	Description	Estimated Time
Site Approval for Financial Services Activities	Municipality Approval for the Commercial Registration address or the site in which the Activity will be practiced	3 Days

Fee Details (if any)

10

License Information

General Conditions:
1. Size of shop/premises must be sufficient for the activity
2. Businesses may not carry out the activity outside the boundaries of the shop/ premises
3. It is prohibited to display or store any items or equipment outside the shop / premises boundary without prior approval from the Municipality. In the event of non-compliance, the Ministry of Municipality Affairs has the right to take necessary action.
4. Maintain cleanliness of the site
5. Comply with the parking space regulations as per the Construction Regulatory Requirements

Activity Specific Conditions:
1. The Commercial Registration for this activity can be registered on commercial, service, and industrial streets.
2. The commercial address of the Commercial Registration for this activity can an office address

Note: Uploading pictures of the site/shop may expedite the process of obtaining approval

Required Documents

- Lease agreement (after obtaining the necessary approvals from other licensing entities)
- Shop photos

Other Documents

- Cabinet's Decision (56) of the year 2022 regarding the Regulatory Requirements of Construction for various areas in the Kingdom of Bahrain

CBB - Licensing directorate (Post) (6619-6)

Approval Name	Description	Estimated Time
Ancillary Service Providers - Card Processing	Card processing includes the following activities: (a) The act of processing or transmitting debit/ credit card holder and transaction related data; (b) Integrating customer delivery channels to enterprises to enable transactions at delivery channels (e.g. ATMs, POS, Interactive Voice Response, mobile, internet);; (c) Hosting and managing card program; (d) Approving and authenticating payment transactions as per financial institutions rules; (e) E-commerce and M-commerce transactions; (f) Interfacing with external networks/ institutions (e.g. national switch, VISA, MasterCard), enabling automated exchange of transactions between the enterprise and	60 Days

	external networks; (g) Reporting and customising reporting engine; (h) Call centre outsourcing services; and (i) Online and mobile portals for bank customers.	

Fee Details (if any)

Refer to "Licensing Requirement" module of CBB Rulebook Vol. 1 inhttps://cbben.thomsonreuters.com/rulebook/central-bank-bahrain-volume-5-specialised-licensees

License Information

The following documents must be submitted:

1. Form 1: “License Application Form”
2. Form 2: “Application for Authorization of Controller”
3. Form 3: “Application for Approved Person status)”, for each individual proposed to undertake controlled functions (as defined under the controlled functions in the respective rulebook) in the proposed licensee.
4. A comprehensive business plan for the application, addressing the matters described below:

a. An outline of the history of the applicant and its shareholders.
b. The reasons for applying for a license, including the applicant’s strategy and market objectives.
c. The proposed type of activities to be carried on by the applicant in/from the Kingdom of Bahrain including the work and fund flow model.
d. The proposed board and senior management of the applicant and the proposed organizational structure of the applicant.
e. An assessment of the risks that may be faced by the applicant, together with the proposed systems and controls framework to be put in place for addressing those risks and to be used for key business functions
f. An opening balance sheet for the applicant, together with a three-year financial projection, with all assumptions clearly outlined, demonstrating that the applicant will

be able to meet applicable capital adequacy requirements.
5. For overseas companies, a copy of the company's current commercial registration or equivalent documentation.
6. Where the applicant is an existing Bahraini company, a certified copy of a Board resolution of the applicant, confirming its decision to seek a CBB license.
7. Details of the proposed licensee's close links, if any.
8. In the case of applicants that are part of a regulated group, a no-objection letter to the proposed license application from the applicant's lead supervisor, together with confirmation that the group is in good regulatory standing and is in compliance with applicable supervisory requirements, including those relating to capital requirements.
9. In the case of branch applicants, a no-objection letter to the proposed license application from the applicant's home supervisor, together with confirmation that the applicant is in good regulatory standing and the company concerned is in compliance with applicable supervisory requirements, including those relating to capital.
10. In the case of branch applicants, copies of the audited financial statements of the applicant (head office) for the three years immediately prior to the date of application.
11. In the case of applicants that are part of a group, copies of the audited financial statements of the applicant's group, for the three years immediately prior to the date of application.
12. In the case of applicants not falling under either of the above, copies of the audited financial statements of the applicant's major shareholder (where they are a legal person), for the three years immediately prior to the date of application.
13. In the case of applicants seeking to raise part of their capital through a private placement, a draft of the relevant private placement memorandum, together with a formal, independent legal opinion confirming that the memorandum complies with all applicable capital markets laws and regulations.
14. A copy of the applicant's memorandum and articles of association (in draft form for applicants creating a new company).

You may also refer to "Licensing Requirement" module of CBB Rulebook Vol. 1 by clicking the following linkhttps://cbben.thomsonreuters.com/sites/default/files/net_file_store/Vol_1_LR_January_2022.pdf

Required Documents

- Form 1: Application for a license
- Form 2: Application for authorization of controller
- Form 3: Application for approved person status

Financial and insurance activities

ISIC4	Business activity
6619-7	Other activities auxiliary to financial service activities - Ancillary Service Providers - Credit Reference Bureau

Description

Credit reference bureau includes the following activities: compiling public record data, statutory information, identity information, credit transactions related information and payment histories of natural and legal persons

Business Requirements

Age

18 and above

Allowed for Nationalities

Bahraini 100%		GCC 100%	
American 100%		Singaporean 100%	
Icelander 100%		Liechtenstein er 100%	
Norwegian 100%		Swiss 100%	

Foreign Allowed up to 100%

Legal Type

It is allowed to register according to the legal forms mentioned below

Allowed for Individual Commercial Registration (ICR) : Yes

Allowed for Company Commercial Registration (CCR) : Yes

- Bahrain Shareholding Company (Public)
- Bahrain Shareholding Company (Closed)
- Branch of a Foreign Company

Required Step of Licenses and Approvals

Ministry / Directorate	License / Approval Requirements	Approval Type
Municipality Affairs	Site Approval for Financial Services Activities	Post
CBB - Licensing directorate	Ancillary Service Providers - Credit Reference Bureau	Post

Municipality Affairs (Post) (6619-7)

Approval Name	Description	Estimated Time
Site Approval for Financial Services Activities	Municipality Approval for the Commercial Registration address or the site in which the Activity will be practiced	3 Days

Fee Details (if any)

10

License Information

General Conditions:
1. Size of shop/premises must be sufficient for the activity
2. Businesses may not carry out the activity outside the boundaries of the shop/ premises
3. It is prohibited to display or store any items or equipment outside the shop / premises boundary without prior approval from the Municipality. In the event of non-compliance, the Ministry of Municipality Affairs has the right to take necessary action.
4. Maintain cleanliness of the site
5. Comply with the parking space regulations as per the Construction Regulatory Requirements

Activity Specific Conditions:
1. The Commercial Registration for this activity can be registered on commercial, service, and industrial streets.
2. The commercial address of the Commercial Registration for this activity can an office address

Note: Uploading pictures of the site/shop may expedite the process of obtaining approval

Required Documents

- Lease agreement (after obtaining the necessary approvals from other licensing entities)
- Shop photos

Other Documents

- Cabinet's Decision (56) of the year 2022 regarding the Regulatory Requirements of Construction for various areas in the Kingdom of Bahrain

CBB - Licensing directorate (Post) (6619-7)

Approval Name	Description	Estimated Time
Ancillary Service Providers - Credit Reference Bureau	Credit reference bureau includes the following activities: compiling public record data, statutory information, identity information, credit transactions related information and payment histories of natural and legal persons	60 Days

Fee Details (if any)

Refer to "Licensing Requirement" module of CBB Rulebook Vol. 1 inhttps://cbben.thomsonreuters.com/rulebook/central-bank-bahrain-volume-5-specialised-licensees

License Information

The following documents must be submitted:

1. Form 1: “License Application Form”
2. Form 2: “Application for Authorization of Controller”
3. Form 3: “Application for Approved Person status)”, for each individual proposed to undertake controlled functions (as defined under the controlled functions in the respective rulebook) in the proposed licensee.
4. A comprehensive business plan for the application, addressing the matters described below:

a. An outline of the history of the applicant and its shareholders.
b. The reasons for applying for a license, including the applicant’s strategy and market objectives.
c. The proposed type of activities to be carried on by the applicant in/from the Kingdom of Bahrain including the work and fund flow model.

d. The proposed board and senior management of the applicant and the proposed organizational structure of the applicant.
e. An assessment of the risks that may be faced by the applicant, together with the proposed systems and controls framework to be put in place for addressing those risks and to be used for key business functions
f. An opening balance sheet for the applicant, together with a three-year financial projection, with all assumptions clearly outlined, demonstrating that the applicant will be able to meet applicable capital adequacy requirements.
5. For overseas companies, a copy of the company's current commercial registration or equivalent documentation.
6. Where the applicant is an existing Bahraini company, a certified copy of a Board resolution of the applicant, confirming its decision to seek a CBB license.
7. Details of the proposed licensee's close links, if any.
8. In the case of applicants that are part of a regulated group, a no-objection letter to the proposed license application from the applicant's lead supervisor, together with confirmation that the group is in good regulatory standing and is in compliance with applicable supervisory requirements, including those relating to capital requirements.
9. In the case of branch applicants, a no-objection letter to the proposed license application from the applicant's home supervisor, together with confirmation that the applicant is in good regulatory standing and the company concerned is in compliance with applicable supervisory requirements, including those relating to capital.
10. In the case of branch applicants, copies of the audited financial statements of the applicant (head office) for the three years immediately prior to the date of application.
11. In the case of applicants that are part of a group, copies of the audited financial statements of the applicant's group, for the three years immediately prior to the date of application.
12. In the case of applicants not falling under either of the above, copies of the audited financial statements of the applicant's major shareholder (where they are a legal person), for the three years immediately prior to the date of application.
13. In the case of applicants seeking to raise part of their capital through a private placement, a draft of the relevant private placement memorandum, together with a formal, independent legal opinion confirming that the memorandum complies with all applicable capital markets laws and regulations.
14. A copy of the applicant's memorandum and articles of association (in draft form for applicants creating a new company).

You may also refer to "Licensing Requirement" module of CBB Rulebook Vol. 1 by clicking the following linkhttps://cbben.thomsonreuters.com/sites/default/files/net_file_store/Vol_1_LR_January_2022.pdf

Required Documents

- Form 1: Application for a license
- Form 2: Application for authorization of controller
- Form 3: Application for approved person status

Financial and insurance activities

ISIC4	Business activity
6619-8	Other activities auxiliary to financial service activities - Ancillary Service Providers - Payment Service Provider

Description

Payment service provider, includes the following activities:
(a) Services enabling cash to be placed on a payment account and all of the operations required for operating a payment account;
(b) Services enabling cash withdrawals from a payment account and all of the operations required for operating a payment account;
(c) The execution of the direct debits of payment transactions;
(d) Integrating customer delivery channels to enterprises to enable transactions at delivery channels (e.g. ATMs, POS, Interactive Voice Response, mobile, internet); and
(e) Interfacing with external networks/institutions (e.g. national switch, VISA, MasterCard), enabling automated exchange of transactions between the enterprise and external networks.

Business Requirements

Age

18 and above

Allowed for Nationalities

Bahraini 100%		GCC 100%	
American 100%		Singaporean 100%	
Icelander 100%		Liechtenstein er 100%	
Norwegian 100%		Swiss 100%	

Foreign Allowed up to 100%

Legal Type

It is allowed to register according to the legal forms mentioned below

Allowed for Company Commercial Registration (CCR) : Yes

- Bahrain Shareholding Company (Public)
- Bahrain Shareholding Company (Closed)
- Branch of a Foreign Company

Required Step of Licenses and Approvals

Ministry / Directorate	License / Approval Requirements	Approval Type
CBB - Licensing directorate	Ancillary Service Providers - Payment Service Provider	Post
Municipality Affairs	Site Approval for Financial Services Activities	Post

CBB - Licensing directorate (Post) (6619-8)

Approval Name	Description	Estimated Time
Ancillary Service Providers - Payment Service Provider	Payment service provider, includes the following activities: (a) Services enabling cash to be placed on a payment account and all of the operations required for operating a payment account; (b) Services enabling cash withdrawals from a payment account and all of the operations required for operating a payment account; (c) The execution of the direct debits of payment transactions; (d) Integrating customer delivery channels to enterprises to enable transactions at delivery channels (e.g. ATMs, POS, Interactive Voice Response, mobile, internet); and (e) Interfacing with external networks/ institutions (e.g. national switch, VISA, MasterCard), enabling automated exchange of transactions between the enterprise and	60 Days

external networks.

Fee Details (if any)

Refer to "Licensing Requirement" module of CBB Rulebook Vol. 1 inhttps://cbben.thomsonreuters.com/rulebook/central-bank-bahrain-volume-5-specialised-licensees

License Information

The following documents must be submitted:

1. Form 1: “License Application Form”
2. Form 2: “Application for Authorization of Controller”
3. Form 3: “Application for Approved Person status)”, for each individual proposed to undertake controlled functions (as defined under the controlled functions in the respective rulebook) in the proposed licensee.
4. A comprehensive business plan for the application, addressing the matters described below:
a. An outline of the history of the applicant and its shareholders.
b. The reasons for applying for a license, including the applicant’s strategy and market objectives.
c. The proposed type of activities to be carried on by the applicant in/from the Kingdom of Bahrain including the work and fund flow model.
d. The proposed board and senior management of the applicant and the proposed organizational structure of the applicant.
e. An assessment of the risks that may be faced by the applicant, together with the proposed systems and controls framework to be put in place for addressing those risks and to be used for key business functions
f. An opening balance sheet for the applicant, together with a three-year financial projection, with all assumptions clearly outlined, demonstrating that the applicant will be able to meet applicable capital adequacy requirements.
5. For overseas companies, a copy of the company’s current commercial registration or equivalent documentation.
6. Where the applicant is an existing Bahraini company, a certified copy of a Board resolution of the applicant, confirming its decision to seek a CBB license.
7. Details of the proposed licensee’s close links, if any.
8. In the case of applicants that are part of a regulated group, a no-objection letter to the proposed license application from the applicant’s lead supervisor, together with confirmation that the group is in good regulatory standing and is in compliance with

applicable supervisory requirements, including those relating to capital requirements.
9. In the case of branch applicants, a no-objection letter to the proposed license application from the applicant's home supervisor, together with confirmation that the applicant is in good regulatory standing and the company concerned is in compliance with applicable supervisory requirements, including those relating to capital.
10. In the case of branch applicants, copies of the audited financial statements of the applicant (head office) for the three years immediately prior to the date of application.
11. In the case of applicants that are part of a group, copies of the audited financial statements of the applicant's group, for the three years immediately prior to the date of application.
12. In the case of applicants not falling under either of the above, copies of the audited financial statements of the applicant's major shareholder (where they are a legal person), for the three years immediately prior to the date of application.
13. In the case of applicants seeking to raise part of their capital through a private placement, a draft of the relevant private placement memorandum, together with a formal, independent legal opinion confirming that the memorandum complies with all applicable capital markets laws and regulations.
14. A copy of the applicant's memorandum and articles of association (in draft form for applicants creating a new company).

You may also refer to "Licensing Requirement" module of CBB Rulebook Vol. 1 by clicking the following linkhttps://cbben.thomsonreuters.com/sites/default/files/net_file_store/Vol_1_LR_January_2022.pdf

Required Documents

- Form 1: Application for a license
- Form 2: Application for authorization of controller
- Form 3: Application for approved person status

Municipality Affairs (Post) (6619-8)

Approval Name	Description	Estimated Time
Site Approval for Financial Services Activities	Municipality Approval for the Commercial Registration address or the site in which the Activity will be practiced	3 Days

Fee Details (if any)

10

License Information

General Conditions:
1. Size of shop/premises must be sufficient for the activity
2. Businesses may not carry out the activity outside the boundaries of the shop/ premises
3. It is prohibited to display or store any items or equipment outside the shop / premises boundary without prior approval from the Municipality. In the event of non-compliance, the Ministry of Municipality Affairs has the right to take necessary action.
4. Maintain cleanliness of the site
5. Comply with the parking space regulations as per the Construction Regulatory Requirements

Activity Specific Conditions:
1. The Commercial Registration for this activity can be registered on commercial, service, and industrial streets.
2. The commercial address of the Commercial Registration for this activity can an office address

Note: Uploading pictures of the site/shop may expedite the process of obtaining approval

Required Documents

- Lease agreement (after obtaining the necessary approvals from other licensing entities)
- Shop photos

Other Documents

- Cabinet's Decision (56) of the year 2022 regarding the Regulatory Requirements of Construction for various areas in the Kingdom of Bahrain

Financial and insurance activities

ISIC4	Business activity
6619-9	Other activities auxiliary to financial service activities - Ancillary Service Providers - Shari'a Advisory/Review Services

Description

Shari'a advisory/review services includes the following activities:
(a) Regular assessment on Shari'a compliance in the activities and operations of Islamic financial institutions or any financial institution offering regulated Islamic financial services, by those qualified to offer Shari'a review services, with the objective of ensuring that the activities and operations carried out by these financial institutions do not contravene the Shari'a principles. The services include the examination and evaluation of the financial institutions' level of compliance to the Shari'a, remedial rectification measures to resolve non-compliance and control mechanism to avoid recurrences. The examination includes contracts, agreements, policies, products, transactions, memorandum and articles of association, financial statements and reports;
(b) Issuance of Shari'a pronouncements on any aspect of the Islamic financial institution's activities or operations; and
(c) Ad-hoc Shari'a advisory services

Business Requirements

Age

18 and above

Allowed for Nationalities

Bahraini 100%		GCC 100%	
American 100%		Singaporean 100%	
Icelander 100%		Liechtenstein er 100%	
Norwegian 100%		Swiss 100%	

Foreign Allowed up to 100%

Legal Type

It is allowed to register according to the legal forms mentioned below

Allowed for Company Commercial Registration (CCR) : Yes

- Bahrain Shareholding Company (Public)
- With Limited Liability Company
- Branch of a Foreign Company
- Bahrain Shareholding Company (Closed)

Required Step of Licenses and Approvals

Ministry / Directorate	License / Approval Requirements	Approval Type
CBB - Licensing directorate	Ancillary Service Providers - Shari'a Advisory/Review Services	Post
Municipality Affairs	Municipality Site Approval	Post

CBB - Licensing directorate (Post) (6619-9)

Approval Name	Description	Estimated Time
Ancillary Service Providers - Shari'a Advisory/Review Services	Shari'a advisory/ review services includes the following activities: (a) Regular assessment on Shari'a compliance in the activities and operations of Islamic financial institutions or any financial institution offering regulated Islamic financial services, by those qualified to offer Shari'a review services, with the objective of ensuring that the activities and operations carried out by these financial institutions do not contravene the Shari'a principles. The services include the examination and evaluation of the financial institutions' level of compliance to the Shari'a, remedial rectification measures to resolve non-compliance and control mechanism to avoid recurrences. The examination includes contracts, agreements, policies, products,	60 Days

	transactions, memorandum and articles of association, financial statements and reports; (b) Issuance of Shari'a pronouncements on any aspect of the Islamic financial institution's activities or operations; and (c) Ad-hoc Shari'a advisory services for products and services governed by financial services.	

Fee Details (if any)

Refer to "Licensing Requirement" module of CBB Rulebook Vol. 1 inhttps://cbben.thomsonreuters.com/rulebook/central-bank-bahrain-volume-5-specialised-licensees

License Information

The following documents must be submitted:

1. Form 1: "License Application Form"
2. Form 2: "Application for Authorization of Controller"
3. Form 3: "Application for Approved Person status)", for each individual proposed to undertake controlled functions (as defined under the controlled functions in the respective rulebook) in the proposed licensee.
4. A comprehensive business plan for the application, addressing the matters described below:

a. An outline of the history of the applicant and its shareholders.
b. The reasons for applying for a license, including the applicant's strategy and market objectives.
c. The proposed type of activities to be carried on by the applicant in/from the Kingdom of Bahrain including the work and fund flow model.
d. The proposed board and senior management of the applicant and the proposed

organizational structure of the applicant.
e. An assessment of the risks that may be faced by the applicant, together with the proposed systems and controls framework to be put in place for addressing those risks and to be used for key business functions
f. An opening balance sheet for the applicant, together with a three-year financial projection, with all assumptions clearly outlined, demonstrating that the applicant will be able to meet applicable capital adequacy requirements.
5. For overseas companies, a copy of the company's current commercial registration or equivalent documentation.
6. Where the applicant is an existing Bahraini company, a certified copy of a Board resolution of the applicant, confirming its decision to seek a CBB license.
7. Details of the proposed licensee's close links, if any.
8. In the case of applicants that are part of a regulated group, a no-objection letter to the proposed license application from the applicant's lead supervisor, together with confirmation that the group is in good regulatory standing and is in compliance with applicable supervisory requirements, including those relating to capital requirements.
9. In the case of branch applicants, a no-objection letter to the proposed license application from the applicant's home supervisor, together with confirmation that the applicant is in good regulatory standing and the company concerned is in compliance with applicable supervisory requirements, including those relating to capital.
10. In the case of branch applicants, copies of the audited financial statements of the applicant (head office) for the three years immediately prior to the date of application.
11. In the case of applicants that are part of a group, copies of the audited financial statements of the applicant's group, for the three years immediately prior to the date of application.
12. In the case of applicants not falling under either of the above, copies of the audited financial statements of the applicant's major shareholder (where they are a legal person), for the three years immediately prior to the date of application.
13. In the case of applicants seeking to raise part of their capital through a private placement, a draft of the relevant private placement memorandum, together with a formal, independent legal opinion confirming that the memorandum complies with all applicable capital markets laws and regulations.
14. A copy of the applicant's memorandum and articles of association (in draft form for applicants creating a new company).

You may also refer to "Licensing Requirement" module of CBB Rulebook Vol. 1 by clicking the following linkhttps://cbben.thomsonreuters.com/sites/default/files/net_file_store/Vol_1_LR_January_2022.pdf

Required Documents

- Form 1: Application for a license
- Form 2: Application for authorization of controller
- Form 3: Application for approved person status

Municipality Affairs (Post) (6619-9)

Approval Name	Description	Estimated Time
Municipality Site Approval	Municipality approval of the business location (site) is required for all types of business activities. Municipalities verify that the proposed location / zone are appropriate for the proposed business activity. Site approval is issued automatically for pre-approved commercial areas, such as commercial malls and commercial buildings.	15 Days

Fee Details (if any)

Company application registration form
1. Copy of applicant's CPR card (passport for non-Bahrainis)
2. Two copies of property deed or rental agreement
3. If application is for relocation from one area to another, certificate of relocation by previous Municipality
4. Copy of electricity bill or electricity account number for new premises
5. Copy of sale agreement, if CR is purchased from another person
6. Copy of power of attorney, if required

License Information

There is no License Information in this license.

Required Documents

- Lease agreement (after obtaining the necessary approvals from other licensing entities)
- Photos of the premises

Other Documents

- قرار رقم (56) لسنة 2022 بإصدار الاشتراطات التنظيمية للتعمير بمختلف المناطق في المملكة

Financial and insurance activities

ISIC4	Business activity
6621	Risk and damage evaluation (Loss Adjusters)

Description

The inspection and estimation of damages and the investigation of the causes thereof, the determination of the extent of coverage by the insurance policies thereof, the submittal of proposals to improve the methods of protection against risk and the preservation of the assets subject of insurance.

Business Requirements

✔ Age

18 and above

✔ Allowed for Nationalities

Bahraini 100%	GCC 100%
American 100%	Singaporean 100%
Icelander 100%	Liechtenstein er 100%
Norwegian 100%	Swiss 100%

Foreign Allowed up to 100%

Legal Type

It is allowed to register according to the legal forms mentioned below

Allowed for Individual Commercial Registration (ICR) : Yes

Allowed for Company Commercial Registration (CCR) : Yes

- Bahrain Shareholding Company (Public)
- With Limited Liability Company
- Branch of a Foreign Company
- Bahrain Shareholding Company (Closed)
- Partnership Company
- Simple Commandite Company
- Commandite By Shares Company
- Non Profit Company

Required Step of Licenses and Approvals

Ministry / Directorate	License / Approval Requirements	Approval Type
CBB - Licensing directorate	Risk and damage evaluation (Loss Adjusters)	Post
Municipality Affairs	Site Approval for Financial Services Activities	Post

CBB - Licensing directorate (Post) (6621)

Approval Name	Description	Estimated Time
Risk and damage evaluation (Loss Adjusters)	The inspection and estimation of damages and the investigation of the causes thereof, the determination of the extent of coverage by the insurance policies thereof, the submittal of proposals to improve the methods of protection against risk and the preservation of the assets subject of insurance.	60 Days

Fee Details (if any)

Refer to "Licensing Requirement" module of CBB Rulebook Vol. 1 inhttps://cbben.thomsonreuters.com/rulebook/part-3

License Information

The following documents must be submitted:

1. Form 1: “License Application Form”
2. Form 2: “Application for Authorization of Controller”
3. Form 3: “Application for Approved Person status)”, for each individual proposed to undertake controlled functions (as defined under the controlled functions in the respective rulebook) in the proposed licensee.
4. A comprehensive business plan for the application, addressing the matters described below:

a. An outline of the history of the applicant and its shareholders.
b. The reasons for applying for a license, including the applicant’s strategy and market

objectives.
c. The proposed type of activities to be carried on by the applicant in/from the Kingdom of Bahrain including the work and fund flow model.
d. The proposed board and senior management of the applicant and the proposed organizational structure of the applicant.
e. An assessment of the risks that may be faced by the applicant, together with the proposed systems and controls framework to be put in place for addressing those risks and to be used for key business functions
f. An opening balance sheet for the applicant, together with a three-year financial projection, with all assumptions clearly outlined, demonstrating that the applicant will be able to meet applicable capital adequacy requirements.
5. For overseas companies, a copy of the company's current commercial registration or equivalent documentation.
6. Where the applicant is an existing Bahraini company, a certified copy of a Board resolution of the applicant, confirming its decision to seek a CBB license.
7. Details of the proposed licensee's close links, if any.
8. In the case of applicants that are part of a regulated group, a no-objection letter to the proposed license application from the applicant's lead supervisor, together with confirmation that the group is in good regulatory standing and is in compliance with applicable supervisory requirements, including those relating to capital requirements.
9. In the case of branch applicants, a no-objection letter to the proposed license application from the applicant's home supervisor, together with confirmation that the applicant is in good regulatory standing and the company concerned is in compliance with applicable supervisory requirements, including those relating to capital.
10. In the case of branch applicants, copies of the audited financial statements of the applicant (head office) for the three years immediately prior to the date of application.
11. In the case of applicants that are part of a group, copies of the audited financial statements of the applicant's group, for the three years immediately prior to the date of application.
12. In the case of applicants not falling under either of the above, copies of the audited financial statements of the applicant's major shareholder (where they are a legal person), for the three years immediately prior to the date of application.
13. In the case of applicants seeking to raise part of their capital through a private placement, a draft of the relevant private placement memorandum, together with a formal, independent legal opinion confirming that the memorandum complies with all applicable capital markets laws and regulations.
14. A copy of the applicant's memorandum and articles of association (in draft form for applicants creating a new company).

You may also refer to "Licensing Requirement" module of CBB Rulebook Vol. 1 by clicking the following linkhttps://cbben.thomsonreuters.com/sites/default/files/net_file_store/Vol_1_LR_January_2022.pdf

Required Documents

- Form 1: Application for a license
- Form 2: Application for authorization of controller
- Form 3: Application for approved person status

Municipality Affairs (Post) (6621)

Approval Name	Description	Estimated Time
Site Approval for Financial Services Activities	Municipality Approval for the Commercial Registration address or the site in which the Activity will be practiced	3 Days

Fee Details (if any)

10

License Information

General Conditions:
1. Size of shop/premises must be sufficient for the activity
2. Businesses may not carry out the activity outside the boundaries of the shop/ premises
3. It is prohibited to display or store any items or equipment outside the shop / premises boundary without prior approval from the Municipality. In the event of non-compliance, the Ministry of Municipality Affairs has the right to take necessary action.
4. Maintain cleanliness of the site
5. Comply with the parking space regulations as per the Construction Regulatory Requirements

Activity Specific Conditions:
1. The Commercial Registration for this activity can be registered on commercial, service, and industrial streets.
2. The commercial address of the Commercial Registration for this activity can an office address

Note: Uploading pictures of the site/shop may expedite the process of obtaining approval

Required Documents

- Lease agreement (after obtaining the necessary approvals from other licensing entities)
- Shop photos

Other Documents

- Cabinet's Decision (56) of the year 2022 regarding the Regulatory Requirements of Construction for various areas in the Kingdom of Bahrain

Financial and insurance activities

ISIC4	Business activity
6622	Insurance Brokers

Description

Insurance brokerage on behalf of the insured in insurance operations with insurance companies, and providing consultation services in the fields of insurance and re-insurance.

Business Requirements

Age

18 and above

Allowed for Nationalities

Bahraini 100%		GCC 100%	
American 100%		Singaporean 100%	
Icelander 100%		Liechtenstein er 100%	
Norwegian 100%		Swiss 100%	

Foreign Allowed up to 100%

Legal Type

It is allowed to register according to the legal forms mentioned below

Allowed for Individual Commercial Registration (ICR) : Yes

Allowed for Company Commercial Registration (CCR) : Yes

- Bahrain Shareholding Company (Public)
- With Limited Liability Company
- Branch of a Foreign Company
- Bahrain Shareholding Company (Closed)
- Partnership Company
- Simple Commandite Company
- Commandite By Shares Company
- Non Profit Company

Required Step of Licenses and Approvals

Ministry / Directorate	License / Approval Requirements	Approval Type
Municipality Affairs	Site Approval for Financial Services Activities	Post
CBB - Licensing directorate	Insurance Brokers	Post

Municipality Affairs (Post) (6622)

Approval Name	Description	Estimated Time
Site Approval for Financial Services Activities	Municipality Approval for the Commercial Registration address or the site in which the Activity will be practiced	3 Days

Fee Details (if any)

10

License Information

General Conditions:
1. Size of shop/premises must be sufficient for the activity
2. Businesses may not carry out the activity outside the boundaries of the shop/ premises
3. It is prohibited to display or store any items or equipment outside the shop / premises boundary without prior approval from the Municipality. In the event of non-compliance, the Ministry of Municipality Affairs has the right to take necessary action.
4. Maintain cleanliness of the site
5. Comply with the parking space regulations as per the Construction Regulatory Requirements

Activity Specific Conditions:
1. The Commercial Registration for this activity can be registered on commercial, service, and industrial streets.
2. The commercial address of the Commercial Registration for this activity can an office address

Note: Uploading pictures of the site/shop may expedite the process of obtaining approval

Required Documents

- Lease agreement (after obtaining the necessary approvals from other licensing entities)
- Shop photos

Other Documents

- Cabinet's Decision (56) of the year 2022 regarding the Regulatory Requirements of Construction for various areas in the Kingdom of Bahrain

CBB - Licensing directorate (Post) (6622)

Approval Name	Description	Estimated Time
Insurance Brokers	Insurance brokerage on behalf of the insured in insurance operations with insurance companies, and providing consultation services in the fields of insurance and re-insurance.	60 Days

Fee Details (if any)

Refer to "Licensing Requirement" module of CBB Rulebook Vol. 1 inhttps://cbben.thomsonreuters.com/rulebook/part-3

License Information

The following documents must be submitted:

1. Form 1: “License Application Form”
2. Form 2: “Application for Authorization of Controller”
3. Form 3: “Application for Approved Person status)”, for each individual proposed to undertake controlled functions (as defined under the controlled functions in the respective rulebook) in the proposed licensee.
4. A comprehensive business plan for the application, addressing the matters described below:

a. An outline of the history of the applicant and its shareholders.
b. The reasons for applying for a license, including the applicant’s strategy and market objectives.
c. The proposed type of activities to be carried on by the applicant in/from the Kingdom of Bahrain including the work and fund flow model.
d. The proposed board and senior management of the applicant and the proposed organizational structure of the applicant.
e. An assessment of the risks that may be faced by the applicant, together with the

proposed systems and controls framework to be put in place for addressing those risks and to be used for key business functions
f. An opening balance sheet for the applicant, together with a three-year financial projection, with all assumptions clearly outlined, demonstrating that the applicant will be able to meet applicable capital adequacy requirements.
5. For overseas companies, a copy of the company's current commercial registration or equivalent documentation.
6. Where the applicant is an existing Bahraini company, a certified copy of a Board resolution of the applicant, confirming its decision to seek a CBB license.
7. Details of the proposed licensee's close links, if any.
8. In the case of applicants that are part of a regulated group, a no-objection letter to the proposed license application from the applicant's lead supervisor, together with confirmation that the group is in good regulatory standing and is in compliance with applicable supervisory requirements, including those relating to capital requirements.
9. In the case of branch applicants, a no-objection letter to the proposed license application from the applicant's home supervisor, together with confirmation that the applicant is in good regulatory standing and the company concerned is in compliance with applicable supervisory requirements, including those relating to capital.
10. In the case of branch applicants, copies of the audited financial statements of the applicant (head office) for the three years immediately prior to the date of application.
11. In the case of applicants that are part of a group, copies of the audited financial statements of the applicant's group, for the three years immediately prior to the date of application.
12. In the case of applicants not falling under either of the above, copies of the audited financial statements of the applicant's major shareholder (where they are a legal person), for the three years immediately prior to the date of application.
13. In the case of applicants seeking to raise part of their capital through a private placement, a draft of the relevant private placement memorandum, together with a formal, independent legal opinion confirming that the memorandum complies with all applicable capital markets laws and regulations.
14. A copy of the applicant's memorandum and articles of association (in draft form for applicants creating a new company).

You may also refer to "Licensing Requirement" module of CBB Rulebook Vol. 1 by clicking the following linkhttps://cbben.thomsonreuters.com/sites/default/files/net_file_store/Vol_1_LR_January_2022.pdf

Required Documents

- Form 1: Application for a license
- Form 2: Application for authorization of controller
- Form 3: Application for approved person status

Financial and insurance activities

ISIC4	Business activity
6629-1	Other activities auxiliary to insurance and pension funding - Insurance Consultants

Description

Providing consultancy services in the insurance field, including risk management and assessment, the valuation of assets and liabilities of insurance and reinsurance companies, the assessment of the rights and obligations of the insurer and the insured, and arbitration in insurance disputes.

Business Requirements

Age

18 and above

Allowed for Nationalities

Bahraini 100%	GCC 100%
American 100%	Singaporean 100%
Icelander 100%	Liechtenstein er 100%
Norwegian 100%	Swiss 100%

Foreign Allowed up to 100%

Legal Type

It is allowed to register according to the legal forms mentioned below

Allowed for Individual Commercial Registration (ICR) : Yes

Allowed for Company Commercial Registration (CCR) : Yes

- Bahrain Shareholding Company (Public)
- With Limited Liability Company
- Branch of a Foreign Company
- Bahrain Shareholding Company (Closed)
- Partnership Company
- Simple Commandite Company
- Commandite By Shares Company
- Non Profit Company

Required Step of Licenses and Approvals

Ministry / Directorate	License / Approval Requirements	Approval Type
CBB - Licensing directorate	Insurance consultant	Post
Municipality Affairs	Site Approval for Financial Services Activities	Post

CBB - Licensing directorate (Post) (6629-1)

Approval Name	Description	Estimated Time
Insurance consultant	Providing consultancy services in the insurance field, including risk management and assessment, the valuation of assets and liabilities of insurance and reinsurance companies, the assessment of the rights and obligations of the insurer and the insured, and arbitration in insurance disputes.	60 Days

Fee Details (if any)

Refer to "Licensing Requirement" module of CBB Rulebook Vol. 1 inhttps://cbben.thomsonreuters.com/rulebook/part-3

License Information

The following documents must be submitted:

1. Form 1: “License Application Form”
2. Form 2: “Application for Authorization of Controller”
3. Form 3: “Application for Approved Person status)”, for each individual proposed to undertake controlled functions (as defined under the controlled functions in the respective rulebook) in the proposed licensee.
4. A comprehensive business plan for the application, addressing the matters described below:

a. An outline of the history of the applicant and its shareholders.

b. The reasons for applying for a license, including the applicant's strategy and market objectives.
c. The proposed type of activities to be carried on by the applicant in/from the Kingdom of Bahrain including the work and fund flow model.
d. The proposed board and senior management of the applicant and the proposed organizational structure of the applicant.
e. An assessment of the risks that may be faced by the applicant, together with the proposed systems and controls framework to be put in place for addressing those risks and to be used for key business functions
f. An opening balance sheet for the applicant, together with a three-year financial projection, with all assumptions clearly outlined, demonstrating that the applicant will be able to meet applicable capital adequacy requirements.
5. For overseas companies, a copy of the company's current commercial registration or equivalent documentation.
6. Where the applicant is an existing Bahraini company, a certified copy of a Board resolution of the applicant, confirming its decision to seek a CBB license.
7. Details of the proposed licensee's close links, if any.
8. In the case of applicants that are part of a regulated group, a no-objection letter to the proposed license application from the applicant's lead supervisor, together with confirmation that the group is in good regulatory standing and is in compliance with applicable supervisory requirements, including those relating to capital requirements.
9. In the case of branch applicants, a no-objection letter to the proposed license application from the applicant's home supervisor, together with confirmation that the applicant is in good regulatory standing and the company concerned is in compliance with applicable supervisory requirements, including those relating to capital.
10. In the case of branch applicants, copies of the audited financial statements of the applicant (head office) for the three years immediately prior to the date of application.
11. In the case of applicants that are part of a group, copies of the audited financial statements of the applicant's group, for the three years immediately prior to the date of application.
12. In the case of applicants not falling under either of the above, copies of the audited financial statements of the applicant's major shareholder (where they are a legal person), for the three years immediately prior to the date of application.
13. In the case of applicants seeking to raise part of their capital through a private placement, a draft of the relevant private placement memorandum, together with a formal, independent legal opinion confirming that the memorandum complies with all applicable capital markets laws and regulations.
14. A copy of the applicant's memorandum and articles of association (in draft form for applicants creating a new company).

You may also refer to "Licensing Requirement" module of CBB Rulebook Vol. 1 by clicking the following linkhttps://cbben.thomsonreuters.com/sites/default/files/net_file_store/Vol_1_LR_January_2022.pdf

Required Documents

- Form 1: Application for a license
- Form 2: Application for authorization of controller
- Form 3: Application for approved person status

Municipality Affairs (Post) (6629-1)

Approval Name	Description	Estimated Time
Site Approval for Financial Services Activities	Municipality Approval for the Commercial Registration address or the site in which the Activity will be practiced	3 Days

Fee Details (if any)

10

License Information

General Conditions:
1. Size of shop/premises must be sufficient for the activity
2. Businesses may not carry out the activity outside the boundaries of the shop/ premises
3. It is prohibited to display or store any items or equipment outside the shop / premises boundary without prior approval from the Municipality. In the event of non-compliance, the Ministry of Municipality Affairs has the right to take necessary action.
4. Maintain cleanliness of the site
5. Comply with the parking space regulations as per the Construction Regulatory Requirements

Activity Specific Conditions:
1. The Commercial Registration for this activity can be registered on commercial, service, and industrial streets.
2. The commercial address of the Commercial Registration for this activity can an office address

Note: Uploading pictures of the site/shop may expedite the process of obtaining approval

Required Documents

- Lease agreement (after obtaining the necessary approvals from other licensing entities)
- Shop photos

Other Documents

- Cabinet's Decision (56) of the year 2022 regarding the Regulatory Requirements of Construction for various areas in the Kingdom of Bahrain

Financial and insurance activities

ISIC4	Business activity
6629-2	Other activities auxiliary to insurance and pension funding - Insurance Managers

Description

Providing insurance management services on behalf of insurance and reinsurance companies.

Business Requirements

✔ Age

18 and above

✔ Allowed for Nationalities

Bahraini 100%	GCC 100%
American 100%	Singaporean 100%
Icelander 100%	Liechtenstein er 100%
Norwegian 100%	Swiss 100%

Foreign Allowed up to 100%

Legal Type

It is allowed to register according to the legal forms mentioned below

Allowed for Individual Commercial Registration (ICR) : Yes

Allowed for Company Commercial Registration (CCR) : Yes

- Bahrain Shareholding Company (Public)
- With Limited Liability Company
- Branch of a Foreign Company
- Bahrain Shareholding Company (Closed)
- Partnership Company
- Simple Commandite Company
- Commandite By Shares Company
- Non Profit Company

Required Step of Licenses and Approvals

Ministry / Directorate	License / Approval Requirements	Approval Type
CBB - Licensing directorate	Insurance Manager	Post
Municipality Affairs	Site Approval for Financial Services Activities	Post

CBB - Licensing directorate (Post) (6629-2)

Approval Name	Description	Estimated Time
Insurance Manager	Providing insurance management services on behalf of insurance and reinsurance companies.	60 Days

Fee Details (if any)

Refer to "Licensing Requirement" module of CBB Rulebook Vol. 1 inhttps://cbben.thomsonreuters.com/rulebook/part-3

License Information

The following documents must be submitted:

1. Form 1: “License Application Form”
2. Form 2: “Application for Authorization of Controller”
3. Form 3: “Application for Approved Person status)”, for each individual proposed to undertake controlled functions (as defined under the controlled functions in the respective rulebook) in the proposed licensee.
4. A comprehensive business plan for the application, addressing the matters described below:

a. An outline of the history of the applicant and its shareholders.
b. The reasons for applying for a license, including the applicant’s strategy and market objectives.
c. The proposed type of activities to be carried on by the applicant in/from the Kingdom of Bahrain including the work and fund flow model.
d. The proposed board and senior management of the applicant and the proposed organizational structure of the applicant.
e. An assessment of the risks that may be faced by the applicant, together with the proposed systems and controls framework to be put in place for addressing those risks and to be used for key business functions
f. An opening balance sheet for the applicant, together with a three-year financial projection, with all assumptions clearly outlined, demonstrating that the applicant will be able to meet applicable capital adequacy requirements.

5. For overseas companies, a copy of the company's current commercial registration or equivalent documentation.
6. Where the applicant is an existing Bahraini company, a certified copy of a Board resolution of the applicant, confirming its decision to seek a CBB license.
7. Details of the proposed licensee's close links, if any.
8. In the case of applicants that are part of a regulated group, a no-objection letter to the proposed license application from the applicant's lead supervisor, together with confirmation that the group is in good regulatory standing and is in compliance with applicable supervisory requirements, including those relating to capital requirements.
9. In the case of branch applicants, a no-objection letter to the proposed license application from the applicant's home supervisor, together with confirmation that the applicant is in good regulatory standing and the company concerned is in compliance with applicable supervisory requirements, including those relating to capital.
10. In the case of branch applicants, copies of the audited financial statements of the applicant (head office) for the three years immediately prior to the date of application.
11. In the case of applicants that are part of a group, copies of the audited financial statements of the applicant's group, for the three years immediately prior to the date of application.
12. In the case of applicants not falling under either of the above, copies of the audited financial statements of the applicant's major shareholder (where they are a legal person), for the three years immediately prior to the date of application.
13. In the case of applicants seeking to raise part of their capital through a private placement, a draft of the relevant private placement memorandum, together with a formal, independent legal opinion confirming that the memorandum complies with all applicable capital markets laws and regulations.
14. A copy of the applicant's memorandum and articles of association (in draft form for applicants creating a new company).

You may also refer to "Licensing Requirement" module of CBB Rulebook Vol. 1 by clicking the following linkhttps://cbben.thomsonreuters.com/sites/default/files/net_file_store/Vol_1_LR_January_2022.pdf

Required Documents

- Form 1: Application for a license
- Form 2: Application for authorization of controller
- Form 3: Application for approved person status

Municipality Affairs (Post) (6629-2)

Approval Name	Description	Estimated Time
Site Approval for Financial Services Activities	Municipality Approval for the Commercial Registration address or the site in which the Activity will be practiced	3 Days

Fee Details (if any)

10

License Information

General Conditions:
1. Size of shop/premises must be sufficient for the activity
2. Businesses may not carry out the activity outside the boundaries of the shop/ premises
3. It is prohibited to display or store any items or equipment outside the shop / premises boundary without prior approval from the Municipality. In the event of non-compliance, the Ministry of Municipality Affairs has the right to take necessary action.
4. Maintain cleanliness of the site
5. Comply with the parking space regulations as per the Construction Regulatory Requirements

Activity Specific Conditions:
1. The Commercial Registration for this activity can be registered on commercial, service, and industrial streets.
2. The commercial address of the Commercial Registration for this activity can an office address

Note: Uploading pictures of the site/shop may expedite the process of obtaining approval

Required Documents

- Lease agreement (after obtaining the necessary approvals from other licensing entities)
- Shop photos

Other Documents

- Cabinet's Decision (56) of the year 2022 regarding the Regulatory Requirements of Construction for various areas in the Kingdom of Bahrain

Financial and insurance activities

ISIC4	Business activity
6629-3	Other activities auxiliary to insurance and pension funding - Actuaries

Description

The specialization in insurance mathematics provided that the person is accredited by an international body.

Business Requirements

✔ Age

18 and above

✔ Allowed for Nationalities

Bahraini 100%	GCC 100%
American 100%	Singaporean 100%
Icelander 100%	Liechtenstein er 100%
Norwegian 100%	Swiss 100%

Foreign Allowed up to 100%

Legal Type

It is allowed to register according to the legal forms mentioned below

Allowed for Individual Commercial Registration (ICR) : Yes

Allowed for Company Commercial Registration (CCR) : Yes

- Bahrain Shareholding Company (Public)
- With Limited Liability Company
- Branch of a Foreign Company
- Bahrain Shareholding Company (Closed)
- Partnership Company
- Simple Commandite Company
- Commandite By Shares Company
- Non Profit Company

Required Step of Licenses and Approvals

Ministry / Directorate	License / Approval Requirements	Approval Type
Municipality Affairs	Site Approval for Financial Services Activities	Post
CBB - Licensing directorate	Actuaries	Post

Municipality Affairs (Post) (6629-3)

Approval Name	Description	Estimated Time
Site Approval for Financial Services Activities	Municipality Approval for the Commercial Registration address or the site in which the Activity will be practiced	3 Days

Fee Details (if any)

10

License Information

General Conditions:
1. Size of shop/premises must be sufficient for the activity
2. Businesses may not carry out the activity outside the boundaries of the shop/ premises
3. It is prohibited to display or store any items or equipment outside the shop / premises boundary without prior approval from the Municipality. In the event of non-compliance, the Ministry of Municipality Affairs has the right to take necessary action.
4. Maintain cleanliness of the site
5. Comply with the parking space regulations as per the Construction Regulatory Requirements

Activity Specific Conditions:
1. The Commercial Registration for this activity can be registered on commercial, service, and industrial streets.
2. The commercial address of the Commercial Registration for this activity can an office address

Note: Uploading pictures of the site/shop may expedite the process of obtaining approval

Required Documents

- Lease agreement (after obtaining the necessary approvals from other licensing entities)
- Shop photos

Other Documents

- Cabinet's Decision (56) of the year 2022 regarding the Regulatory Requirements of Construction for various areas in the Kingdom of Bahrain

CBB - Licensing directorate (Post) (6629-3)

Approval Name	Description	Estimated Time
Actuaries	The specialization in insurance mathematics provided that the person is accredited by an international body.	60 Days

Fee Details (if any)

Refer to CBB's Rulebook Volume 3 "Authorization"https://cbben.thomsonreuters.com/rulebook/part-3

License Information

– Please refer to "Authorization" Module of CBB Rulebook Vol. 3http://cbb.complinet.com/net_file_store/new_rulebooks/v/o/Vol_3_AU_July_2017.pdfNo need for Site Inspection before issuing the license

Required Documents

- Form 1: Application for a license
- Form 2: Application for authorization of controller
- Form 3: Application for approved person status

Financial and insurance activities

ISIC4	Business activity
663-1	Fund management activities - Investment Business Firm, Category 1

Description

May undertake any of the following regulated activities:1] Dealing in financial instruments as principal [including underwriting]2] Dealing in financial instruments as agent3] Arranging deals in financial instruments4] Managing financial instruments5] Safeguarding financial instruments [i e Custodian]6] Advising on financial instruments7] Operating a Collective Investment Undertaking

Business Requirements

✔ Age

18 and above

✔ Allowed for Nationalities

Bahraini 100%		GCC 100%	
American 100%		Singaporean 100%	
Icelander 100%		Liechtensteiner 100%	
Norwegian 100%		Swiss 100%	

Foreign Allowed up to 100%

Legal Type

It is allowed to register according to the legal forms mentioned below

Allowed for Individual Commercial Registration (ICR) : Yes

Allowed for Company Commercial Registration (CCR) : Yes

- Bahrain Shareholding Company (Public)
- Bahrain Shareholding Company (Closed)

Required Step of Licenses and Approvals

Ministry / Directorate	License / Approval Requirements	Approval Type
CBB - Licensing directorate	Investment Business Firm - Category 1	Post
Municipality Affairs	Site Approval for Financial Services Activities	Post

CBB - Licensing directorate (Post) (663-1)

Approval Name	Description	Estimated Time
Investment Business Firm - Category 1	May undertake any of the following regulated activities: 1] Dealing in financial instruments as principal [including underwriting] 2] Dealing in financial instruments as agent 3] Arranging deals in financial instruments 4] Managing financial instruments 5] Safeguarding financial instruments [i.e. Custodian] 6] Advising on financial instruments 7] Operating a Collective Investment Undertaking	60 Days

Fee Details (if any)

Refer to "Licensing Requirement" module of CBB Rulebook Vol. 1 inhttps://cbben.thomsonreuters.com/rulebook/part-4

License Information

The following documents must be submitted:

1. Form 1: “License Application Form”
2. Form 2: “Application for Authorization of Controller”
3. Form 3: “Application for Approved Person status)”, for each individual proposed to

undertake controlled functions (as defined under the controlled functions in the respective rulebook) in the proposed licensee.
4. A comprehensive business plan for the application, addressing the matters described below:
a. An outline of the history of the applicant and its shareholders.
b. The reasons for applying for a license, including the applicant's strategy and market objectives.
c. The proposed type of activities to be carried on by the applicant in/from the Kingdom of Bahrain including the work and fund flow model.
d. The proposed board and senior management of the applicant and the proposed organizational structure of the applicant.
e. An assessment of the risks that may be faced by the applicant, together with the proposed systems and controls framework to be put in place for addressing those risks and to be used for key business functions
f. An opening balance sheet for the applicant, together with a three-year financial projection, with all assumptions clearly outlined, demonstrating that the applicant will be able to meet applicable capital adequacy requirements.
5. For overseas companies, a copy of the company's current commercial registration or equivalent documentation.
6. Where the applicant is an existing Bahraini company, a certified copy of a Board resolution of the applicant, confirming its decision to seek a CBB license.
7. Details of the proposed licensee's close links, if any.
8. In the case of applicants that are part of a regulated group, a no-objection letter to the proposed license application from the applicant's lead supervisor, together with confirmation that the group is in good regulatory standing and is in compliance with applicable supervisory requirements, including those relating to capital requirements.
9. In the case of branch applicants, a no-objection letter to the proposed license application from the applicant's home supervisor, together with confirmation that the applicant is in good regulatory standing and the company concerned is in compliance with applicable supervisory requirements, including those relating to capital.
10. In the case of branch applicants, copies of the audited financial statements of the applicant (head office) for the three years immediately prior to the date of application.
11. In the case of applicants that are part of a group, copies of the audited financial statements of the applicant's group, for the three years immediately prior to the date of application.
12. In the case of applicants not falling under either of the above, copies of the audited financial statements of the applicant's major shareholder (where they are a legal person), for the three years immediately prior to the date of application.
13. In the case of applicants seeking to raise part of their capital through a private placement, a draft of the relevant private placement memorandum, together with a formal, independent legal opinion confirming that the memorandum complies with all applicable capital markets laws and regulations.
14. A copy of the applicant's memorandum and articles of association (in draft form for applicants creating a new company).

You may also refer to "Licensing Requirement" module of CBB Rulebook Vol. 1 by clicking the following linkhttps://cbben.thomsonreuters.com/sites/default/files/

net_file_store/Vol_1_LR_January_2022.pdf

Required Documents

- Form 1: Application for a license
- Form 2: Application for authorization of controller
- Form 3: Application for approved person status

Municipality Affairs (Post) (663-1)

Approval Name	Description	Estimated Time
Site Approval for Financial Services Activities	Municipality Approval for the Commercial Registration address or the site in which the Activity will be practiced	3 Days

Fee Details (if any)

10

License Information

General Conditions:
1. Size of shop/premises must be sufficient for the activity
2. Businesses may not carry out the activity outside the boundaries of the shop/ premises
3. It is prohibited to display or store any items or equipment outside the shop / premises boundary without prior approval from the Municipality. In the event of non-compliance, the Ministry of Municipality Affairs has the right to take necessary action.
4. Maintain cleanliness of the site
5. Comply with the parking space regulations as per the Construction Regulatory Requirements

Activity Specific Conditions:
1. The Commercial Registration for this activity can be registered on commercial, service, and industrial streets.
2. The commercial address of the Commercial Registration for this activity can an office address

Note: Uploading pictures of the site/shop may expedite the process of obtaining approval

Required Documents

- Lease agreement (after obtaining the necessary approvals from other licensing entities)
- Shop photos

Other Documents

- Cabinet's Decision (56) of the year 2022 regarding the Regulatory Requirements of Construction for various areas in the Kingdom of Bahrain

Financial and insurance activities

ISIC4	Business activity
663-2	Fund management activities - Investment Business Firm, Category 2

Description

May undertake any of the following regulated activities:
1) Dealing in financial instruments as agent
2) Arranging deals in financial instruments
3) Managing financial instruments
4) Safeguarding financial instruments (i e Custodian)
5) Advising on financial instruments
6) Operating a Collective Investment Undertaking

Business Requirements

✔ Age

18 and above

✔ Allowed for Nationalities

Bahraini 100%		GCC 100%	
American 100%		Singaporean 100%	
Icelander 100%		Liechtenstein er 100%	
Norwegian 100%		Swiss 100%	

Foreign Allowed up to 100%

Legal Type

It is allowed to register according to the legal forms mentioned below

Allowed for Individual Commercial Registration (ICR) : Yes

Allowed for Company Commercial Registration (CCR) : Yes

- Bahrain Shareholding Company (Public)
- Bahrain Shareholding Company (Closed)

Required Step of Licenses and Approvals

Ministry / Directorate	License / Approval Requirements	Approval Type
Municipality Affairs	Site Approval for Financial Services Activities	Post
CBB - Licensing directorate	Investment Business Firm - Category 2	Post

Municipality Affairs (Post) (663-2)

Approval Name	Description	Estimated Time
Site Approval for Financial Services Activities	Municipality Approval for the Commercial Registration address or the site in which the Activity will be practiced	3 Days

Fee Details (if any)

10

License Information

General Conditions:
1. Size of shop/premises must be sufficient for the activity
2. Businesses may not carry out the activity outside the boundaries of the shop/ premises
3. It is prohibited to display or store any items or equipment outside the shop / premises boundary without prior approval from the Municipality. In the event of non-compliance, the Ministry of Municipality Affairs has the right to take necessary action.
4. Maintain cleanliness of the site
5. Comply with the parking space regulations as per the Construction Regulatory Requirements

Activity Specific Conditions:
1. The Commercial Registration for this activity can be registered on commercial, service, and industrial streets.
2. The commercial address of the Commercial Registration for this activity can an office address

Note: Uploading pictures of the site/shop may expedite the process of obtaining approval

Required Documents

- Lease agreement (after obtaining the necessary approvals from other licensing entities)
- Shop photos

Other Documents

- Cabinet's Decision (56) of the year 2022 regarding the Regulatory Requirements of Construction for various areas in the Kingdom of Bahrain

CBB - Licensing directorate (Post) (663-2)

Approval Name	Description	Estimated Time
Investment Business Firm - Category 2	May undertake any of the following regulated activities: 1) Dealing in financial instruments as agent 2) Arranging deals in financial instruments 3) Managing financial instruments 4) Safeguarding financial instruments (i.e Custodian) 5) Advising on financial instruments 6) Operating a Collective Investment Undertaking	60 Days

Fee Details (if any)

Refer to "Licensing Requirement" module of CBB Rulebook Vol. 1 inhttps://cbben.thomsonreuters.com/rulebook/part-4

License Information

The following documents must be submitted:

1. Form 1: “License Application Form”
2. Form 2: “Application for Authorization of Controller”
3. Form 3: “Application for Approved Person status)”, for each individual proposed to undertake controlled functions (as defined under the controlled functions in the respective rulebook) in the proposed licensee.
4. A comprehensive business plan for the application, addressing the matters described below:

a. An outline of the history of the applicant and its shareholders.
b. The reasons for applying for a license, including the applicant's strategy and market objectives.
c. The proposed type of activities to be carried on by the applicant in/from the Kingdom of Bahrain including the work and fund flow model.
d. The proposed board and senior management of the applicant and the proposed organizational structure of the applicant.
e. An assessment of the risks that may be faced by the applicant, together with the proposed systems and controls framework to be put in place for addressing those risks and to be used for key business functions
f. An opening balance sheet for the applicant, together with a three-year financial projection, with all assumptions clearly outlined, demonstrating that the applicant will be able to meet applicable capital adequacy requirements.
5. For overseas companies, a copy of the company's current commercial registration or equivalent documentation.
6. Where the applicant is an existing Bahraini company, a certified copy of a Board resolution of the applicant, confirming its decision to seek a CBB license.
7. Details of the proposed licensee's close links, if any.
8. In the case of applicants that are part of a regulated group, a no-objection letter to the proposed license application from the applicant's lead supervisor, together with confirmation that the group is in good regulatory standing and is in compliance with applicable supervisory requirements, including those relating to capital requirements.
9. In the case of branch applicants, a no-objection letter to the proposed license application from the applicant's home supervisor, together with confirmation that the applicant is in good regulatory standing and the company concerned is in compliance with applicable supervisory requirements, including those relating to capital.
10. In the case of branch applicants, copies of the audited financial statements of the applicant (head office) for the three years immediately prior to the date of application.
11. In the case of applicants that are part of a group, copies of the audited financial statements of the applicant's group, for the three years immediately prior to the date of application.
12. In the case of applicants not falling under either of the above, copies of the audited financial statements of the applicant's major shareholder (where they are a legal person), for the three years immediately prior to the date of application.
13. In the case of applicants seeking to raise part of their capital through a private placement, a draft of the relevant private placement memorandum, together with a formal, independent legal opinion confirming that the memorandum complies with all applicable capital markets laws and regulations.
14. A copy of the applicant's memorandum and articles of association (in draft form for applicants creating a new company).

You may also refer to "Licensing Requirement" module of CBB Rulebook Vol. 1 by clicking the following linkhttps://cbben.thomsonreuters.com/sites/default/files/net_file_store/Vol_1_LR_January_2022.pdf

Required Documents

- Form 1: Application for a license
- Form 2: Application for authorization of controller
- Form 3: Application for approved person status

Financial and insurance activities

ISIC4	Business activity
663-3	Fund management activities - Investment Business Firm, Category 4

Description

May undertake any of the following regulated activities:
1) Operating a collective investment undertaking (CIU)
2) In respect of venture capital CIUs that the category 4 investment firm operates/ manages, act as custodian (i.e., safeguarding financial instruments).

Business Requirements

✔ Age

18 and above

✔ Allowed for Nationalities

Bahraini 100%	GCC 100%
American 100%	Singaporean 100%
Icelander 100%	Liechtenstein er 100%
Norwegian 100%	Swiss 100%

Foreign Allowed up to 100%

Legal Type

It is allowed to register according to the legal forms mentioned below

Allowed for Individual Commercial Registration (ICR) : Yes

Allowed for Company Commercial Registration (CCR) : Yes

- Bahrain Shareholding Company (Public)
- With Limited Liability Company
- Bahrain Shareholding Company (Closed)

Required Step of Licenses and Approvals

Ministry / Directorate	License / Approval Requirements	Approval Type
Municipality Affairs	Site Approval for Financial Services Activities	Post
CBB - Licensing directorate	Investment Business Firm, Category 4	Post

Municipality Affairs (Post) (663-3)

Approval Name	Description	Estimated Time
Site Approval for Financial Services Activities	Municipality Approval for the Commercial Registration address or the site in which the Activity will be practiced	3 Days

Fee Details (if any)

10

License Information

General Conditions:
1. Size of shop/premises must be sufficient for the activity
2. Businesses may not carry out the activity outside the boundaries of the shop/ premises
3. It is prohibited to display or store any items or equipment outside the shop / premises boundary without prior approval from the Municipality. In the event of non-compliance, the Ministry of Municipality Affairs has the right to take necessary action.
4. Maintain cleanliness of the site
5. Comply with the parking space regulations as per the Construction Regulatory Requirements

Activity Specific Conditions:
1. The Commercial Registration for this activity can be registered on commercial, service, and industrial streets.
2. The commercial address of the Commercial Registration for this activity can an office address

Note: Uploading pictures of the site/shop may expedite the process of obtaining approval

Required Documents

- Lease agreement (after obtaining the necessary approvals from other licensing entities)
- Shop photos

Other Documents

- Cabinet's Decision (56) of the year 2022 regarding the Regulatory Requirements of Construction for various areas in the Kingdom of Bahrain

CBB - Licensing directorate (Post) (663-3)

Approval Name	Description	Estimated Time
Investment Business Firm, Category 4	May undertake any of the following regulated activities: 1) Operating a collective investment undertaking (CIU) 2) In respect of venture capital CIUs that the category 4 investment firm operates/manages, act as custodian (i.e. safeguarding financial instruments).	60 Days

Fee Details (if any)

Refer to "Licensing Requirement" module of CBB Rulebook Vol. 1 inhttps://cbben.thomsonreuters.com/rulebook/part-4

License Information

The following documents must be submitted:

1. Form 1: “License Application Form”
2. Form 2: “Application for Authorization of Controller”
3. Form 3: “Application for Approved Person status)”, for each individual proposed to undertake controlled functions (as defined under the controlled functions in the respective rulebook) in the proposed licensee.
4. A comprehensive business plan for the application, addressing the matters described below:

a. An outline of the history of the applicant and its shareholders.
b. The reasons for applying for a license, including the applicant’s strategy and market objectives.
c. The proposed type of activities to be carried on by the applicant in/from the Kingdom

of Bahrain including the work and fund flow model.
d. The proposed board and senior management of the applicant and the proposed organizational structure of the applicant.
e. An assessment of the risks that may be faced by the applicant, together with the proposed systems and controls framework to be put in place for addressing those risks and to be used for the main business functions.
f. An opening balance sheet for the applicant, together with a three-year financial projection, with all assumptions clearly outlined, demonstrating that the applicant will be able to meet applicable capital adequacy requirements.
5. For overseas companies, a copy of the company's current commercial registration or equivalent documentation.
6. Where the applicant is an existing Bahraini company, a certified copy of a Board resolution of the applicant, confirming its decision to seek a CBB license.
7. Details of the proposed licensee's close links, if any.
8. In the case of applicants that are part of a regulated group, a no-objection letter to the proposed license application from the applicant's lead supervisor, together with confirmation that the group is in good regulatory standing and is in compliance with applicable supervisory requirements, including those relating to capital requirements.
9. In the case of branch applicants, a no-objection letter to the proposed license application from the applicant's home supervisor, together with confirmation that the applicant is in good regulatory standing and the company concerned is in compliance with applicable supervisory requirements, including those relating to capital.
10. In the case of branch applicants, copies of the audited financial statements of the applicant (head office) for the three years immediately prior to the date of application.
11. In the case of applicants that are part of a group, copies of the audited financial statements of the applicant's group, for the three years immediately prior to the date of application.
12. In the case of applicants not falling under either of the above, copies of the audited financial statements of the applicant's major shareholder (where they are a legal person), for the three years immediately prior to the date of application.
13. In the case of applicants seeking to raise part of their capital through a private placement, a draft of the relevant private placement memorandum, together with a formal, independent legal opinion confirming that the memorandum complies with all applicable capital markets laws and regulations.
14. A copy of the applicant's memorandum and articles of association (in draft form for applicants creating a new company).

You may also refer to "Licensing Requirement" module of CBB Rulebook Vol. 4 by clicking the following linkhttps://cbben.thomsonreuters.com/sites/default/files/net_file_store/Vol_4_C4_January_2022.pdf

Required Documents

- Business plan
- Form 1: Application for a license
- Form 2: Application for authorization of controller
- Form 3: Application for approved person status

Real estate activities

سجلات
SIJILAT
نظام السجلات التجارية
COMMERCIAL REGISTRATION PORTAL

Real estate activities

ISIC4	Business activity
681	Real estate activities with own or leased property

Description

This activity includes:
—buying, selling, renting and operating of self-owned or leased real estate, such as:
- apartment buildings and dwellings
- non-residential buildings, including exhibition halls, self-storage facilities, malls and shopping centers
- land
—provision of homes and furnished or unfurnished flats or apartments for more permanent use, typically on a monthly or annual basis
This activity also includes:
-development of building projects for own operation, i.e. for renting of space in these buildings
-subdividing real estate into lots, without land improvement
-operation of residential mobile home sites
This activity excludes:
-development of building projects for sale
-subdividing and improving of land
-operation of hotels, suite hotels and similar accommodation,
-operation of campgrounds, trailer parks and similar accommodation
-operation of workers hostels, rooming houses and similar accommodation

Business Requirements

Age

18 and above

Allowed for Nationalities

Bahraini 100%		GCC 100%	
American 100%		Singaporean 100%	
Icelander 100%		Liechtenstein er 100%	
Norwegian 100%		Swiss 100%	

Foreign Allowed up to 100%

Legal Type

It is allowed to register according to the legal forms mentioned below

Allowed for Individual Commercial Registration (ICR) : Yes

Allowed for Company Commercial Registration (CCR) : Yes

- Bahrain Shareholding Company (Public)
- With Limited Liability Company
- Branch of a Foreign Company
- Bahrain Shareholding Company (Closed)
- Partnership Company
- Simple Commandite Company
- Commandite By Shares Company
- Non Profit Company

Required Step of Licenses and Approvals

Ministry / Directorate	License / Approval Requirements	Approval Type
Real Estate Regulatory Authority	Notification For Activity Real estate activities with	Notification Only

	own or leased property	
Municipality Affairs	Site Approval for Administrative and support service activities	Post

Real Estate Regulatory Authority (Notification Only) (681)

Approval Name	Description	Estimated Time
Notification For Activity Real estate activities with own or leased property	Notification For Activity Real estate activities with own or leased property	There is no License Information in this license. Days

Fee Details (if any)

There is no Estimated Processing Time (Days) in this license.

License Information

Kindly note that in order to start practicing this activity you should login to the Real Estate Regulatory Authority website (www.rera.gov.bh) and continue the registration steps to get a developer's license.

The license allows the licensee to develop in real estate and construct off-plan developments after obtaining the necessary license.

Municipality Affairs (Post) (681)

Approval Name	Description	Estimated Time
Site Approval for Administrative and support service activities	Municipality Approval for the Commercial Registration address or the site in which the Activity will be practiced	3 Days

Fee Details (if any)

10

License Information

General Conditions:
1. Size of shop/premises must be sufficient for the activity
2. Businesses may not carry out the activity outside the boundaries of the shop/ premises
3. It is prohibited to display or store any items or equipment outside the shop / premises boundary without prior approval from the Municipality. In the event of non-compliance, the Ministry of Municipality Affairs has the right to take necessary action.
4. Maintain cleanliness of the site
5. Comply with the parking space regulations as per the Construction Regulatory Requirements

Activity Specific Conditions:
1. The Commercial Registration for this activity can be registered on commercial, service, and industrial streets..
2. The commercial address of the Commercial Registration for this activity can an office address provided that the site is used for administrative purposes and is not located in a residential area

Note: Uploading pictures of the site/shop may expedite the process of obtaining

approval

Required Documents

- Lease agreement (after obtaining the necessary approvals from other licensing entities)
- Shop photos

Other Documents

- Cabinet's Decision (56) of the year 2022 regarding the Regulatory Requirements of Construction for various areas in the Kingdom of Bahrain

Real estate activities

ISIC4	Business activity
682-1	Real estate activities on a fee or contract basis - Management of Real estate

Description

This activity includes the provision of real estate activities including real estate related services.
This class includes:
—management of real estate
—appraisal services for real estate
This class excludes:
—legal activities
—facilities support services, see 8110

Business Requirements

Age

18 and above

Allowed for Nationalities

Bahraini 100%		GCC 100%	
American 100%		Singaporean 100%	
Icelander 100%		Liechtenstein er 100%	
Norwegian 100%		Swiss 100%	

Foreign Allowed up to 100%

Legal Type

It is allowed to register according to the legal forms mentioned below

Allowed for Individual Commercial Registration (ICR) : Yes

Allowed for Company Commercial Registration (CCR) : Yes

- Bahrain Shareholding Company (Public)
- With Limited Liability Company
- Branch of a Foreign Company
- Bahrain Shareholding Company (Closed)
- Partnership Company
- Simple Commandite Company
- Commandite By Shares Company
- Non Profit Company

Required Step of Licenses and Approvals

Ministry / Directorate	License / Approval Requirements	Approval Type
Real Estate Regulatory Authority	Notification For Activity Real estate activities on a fee or contract basis - Management of Real estate	Notification Only
Municipality Affairs	Site Approval for Administrative and support service activities	Post

Real Estate Regulatory Authority (Notification Only) (682-1)

Approval Name	Description	Estimated Time
Notification For Activity Real estate activities on a fee or contract basis - Management of Real estate	The license permits the licensee to operate and manage properties owned by others, the license also permits the licensee to manage Owner Associations when the licensee has the expertise.	There is no License Information in this license. Days

Fee Details (if any)

There is no Estimated Processing Time (Days) in this license.

License Information

Kindly note that in order to start practicing this activity you should login to the Real Estate Regulatory Authority website (www.rera.gov.bh) and continue the registration steps to get licensee to manage Owner Associations.

The license allows the licensee to develop in real estate and construct off-plan developments after obtaining the necessary license.

Municipality Affairs (Post) (682-1)

Approval Name	Description	Estimated Time
Site Approval for Administrative and support service activities	Municipality Approval for the Commercial Registration address or the site in which the Activity will be practiced	3 Days

Fee Details (if any)

10

License Information

General Conditions:
1. Size of shop/premises must be sufficient for the activity
2. Businesses may not carry out the activity outside the boundaries of the shop/ premises
3. It is prohibited to display or store any items or equipment outside the shop / premises boundary without prior approval from the Municipality. In the event of non-compliance, the Ministry of Municipality Affairs has the right to take necessary action.
4. Maintain cleanliness of the site
5. Comply with the parking space regulations as per the Construction Regulatory Requirements

Activity Specific Conditions:
1. The Commercial Registration for this activity can be registered on commercial, service, and industrial streets..
2. The commercial address of the Commercial Registration for this activity can an office address provided that the site is used for administrative purposes and is not located in a residential area

Note: Uploading pictures of the site/shop may expedite the process of obtaining

approval

Required Documents

- Lease agreement (after obtaining the necessary approvals from other licensing entities)
- Shop photos

Other Documents

- Cabinet's Decision (56) of the year 2022 regarding the Regulatory Requirements of Construction for various areas in the Kingdom of Bahrain

Real estate activities

ISIC4	Business activity
682-2	Real estate activities on a fee or contract basis - brokerage in Real estate

Description

This activity includes the provision of real estate activities on a commition or contract basis including real estate related services.
This class includes:
—activities of real estate agents and brokers
—intermediation in buying, selling and renting of real estate on a fee or contract basis
—appraisal services for real estate
This class excludes:
—legal activities
—facilities support services, see 8110

Business Requirements

Age

18 and above

Allowed for Nationalities

Bahraini
100%

Legal Type

It is allowed to register according to the legal forms mentioned below

Allowed for Individual Commercial Registration (ICR) : Yes

Allowed for Company Commercial Registration (CCR) : Yes

- Bahrain Shareholding Company (Public)
- Bahrain Shareholding Company (Closed)
- Simple Commandite Company
- Non Profit Company
- With Limited Liability Company
- Partnership Company
- Commandite By Shares Company

Required Step of Licenses and Approvals

Ministry / Directorate	License / Approval Requirements	Approval Type
Real Estate Regulatory Authority	Notification For Activity Real estate activities on a fee or contract basis - brokerage in Real estate	Notification Only
Municipality Affairs	Site Approval for Administrative and support activities	Post

Real Estate Regulatory Authority (Notification Only) (682-2)

Approval Name	Description	Estimated Time
Notification For Activity Real estate activities on a fee or contract basis - brokerage in Real estate	Notification For Activity Real estate activities on a fee or contract basis - brokerage in Real estate	There is no License Information in this license. Days

Fee Details (if any)

There is no Estimated Processing Time (Days) in this license.

License Information

Kindly note that in order to start practicing this activity you should login to the Real Estate Regulatory Authority website (www.rera.gov.bh) and continue the registration steps to get a real estate broker license.

The license permits the licensee to practice Brokerage in Real Estate in selling and leasing/renting for a commission based on a mutual agreement between the Broker and the clients.

Duration of the license is one year from its issuance; licensee is allowed to renew the license 60 days before the expiration date. Only CR owners can apply to get a license which must hold the required activity.

Municipality Affairs (Post) (682-2)

Approval Name	Description	Estimated Time
Site Approval for Administrative and support activities	Municipality Approval for the Commercial Registration address or the site in which the Activity will be practiced	3 Days

Fee Details (if any)

10 BD

License Information

General Conditions:
1. Size of shop/premises must be sufficient for the activity
2. Businesses may not carry out the activity outside the boundaries of the shop/ premises
3. It is prohibited to display or store any items or equipment outside the shop / premises boundary without prior approval from the Municipality
4. Maintain cleanliness of the site
5. Comply with the parking space regulations as per the Construction Regulatory Requirements

Activity Specific Conditions:
1. The commercial address for this activity can be registered in areas classified as commercial, services, or industrial
2. The commercial address of the Commercial Registration for this activity can an office address
provided that the site is used for administrative purposes and is not located in a residential area

Note: Uploading pictures of the site/shop may expedite the process of obtaining approval

Required Documents

- Lease agreement (after obtaining the necessary approvals from other licensing entities)
- Shop photos

Other Documents

- Cabinet's Decision (56) of the year 2022 regarding the Regulatory Requirements of Construction for various areas in the Kingdom of Bahrain

Real estate activities

ISIC4	Business activity
682091	Duty Free Services

Description

This activity includes:
Management of merchandising shops within the airport, domestic or foreign origin products, deposited, stored, packed, exhibited, sold, processed or manufactured for the purpose of Selling, marketing and exporting it outside the country.

Business Requirements

Age

18 and above

Allowed for Nationalities

- Bahraini 100%
- American 100%
- GCC 100%

Legal Type

It is allowed to register according to the legal forms mentioned below

Allowed for Company Commercial Registration (CCR) : Yes

- Bahrain Shareholding Company (Public)
- With Limited Liability Company
- Branch of a Foreign Company
- Bahrain Shareholding Company (Closed)
- Partnership Company
- Simple Commandite Company
- Commandite By Shares Company
- Non Profit Company

Required Step of Licenses and Approvals

Ministry / Directorate	License / Approval Requirements	Approval Type
Civil Aviation Affairs	Duty Free Services	Pre
Municipality Affairs	Site Approval for Administrative and support activities	Post
Civil Aviation Affairs	Duty Free Services	Post
Civil Aviation Affairs	Duty Free Services	Final Site Inspection

Civil Aviation Affairs (Pre) (682091)

Approval Name	Description	Estimated Time
Duty Free Services	Selling and marketing of merchandise at airport free area.	10 Days

Fee Details (if any)

• Application fees: BD 100 (non-refundable in cases where the application is not approved).
• License fees BD20,000.
• Annual renewal 50% of the license fees.

License Information

• Capital of the company should not be less than BD1,000,000
• The license is valid for one year and renewal application must be submitted 2 months before expiry
• Adherence to the standards and regulatory requirements contained in the regulations under the Civil Aviation Law issued by virtue of Law No. 14 of 2013

Required Documents

•Feasibility, technical, economic and financial studies
•Fill application Form ATD/ATCL/OF04
•Memorandum of Association

Other Documents

- Chicago Convention and its Annexes.
- Civil Aviation Law No.14 of 2013
- Minister of Transport and Telecommunication Decree No. 12 of 2016 amending some provisions of the Regulation under the Civil Aviation Law.
- Minister of Transportation and Telecommunication Decree No. 25 of 2016 of CAA fees and departure fees.
- Minster of Transportation and Telecommunication Decree No. 21 of 2013 issuing the regulations under the Civil Aviation Law.

Municipality Affairs (Post) (682091)

Approval Name	Description	Estimated Time
Site Approval for Administrative and support activities	Municipality Approval for the Commercial Registration address or the site in which the Activity will be practiced	3 Days

Fee Details (if any)

10 BD

License Information

General Conditions:
1. Size of shop/premises must be sufficient for the activity
2. Businesses may not carry out the activity outside the boundaries of the shop/ premises
3. It is prohibited to display or store any items or equipment outside the shop / premises boundary without prior approval from the Municipality
4. Maintain cleanliness of the site
5. Comply with the parking space regulations as per the Construction Regulatory Requirements

Activity Specific Conditions:
1. The commercial address for this activity can be registered in areas classified as commercial, services, or industrial
2. The commercial address of the Commercial Registration for this activity can an office address
provided that the site is used for administrative purposes and is not located in a residential area

Note: Uploading pictures of the site/shop may expedite the process of obtaining approval

Required Documents

- Lease agreement (after obtaining the necessary approvals from other licensing entities)
- Shop photos

Other Documents

- Cabinet's Decision (56) of the year 2022 regarding the Regulatory Requirements of Construction for various areas in the Kingdom of Bahrain

Civil Aviation Affairs (Post) (682091)

Approval Name	Description	Estimated Time
Duty Free Services	Selling and marketing of merchandise at airport free area.	10 Days

Fee Details (if any)

• Application fees: BD 100 (non-refundable in cases where the application is not approved).
• License fees BD20,000.
• Annual renewal 50% of the license fees.

License Information

• Capital of the company should not be less than BD1,000,000
• The license is valid for one year and renewal application must be submitted 2 months before expiry
• Adherence to the standards and regulatory requirements contained in the regulations under the Civil Aviation Law issued by virtue of Law No. 14 of 2013

Required Documents

•Feasibility, technical, economic and financial studies
•Fill application Form ATD/ATCL/OF04
•Memorandum of Association

Other Documents

- Chicago Convention and its Annexes.
- Civil Aviation Law No.14 of 2013
- Minister of Transport and Telecommunication Decree No. 12 of 2016 amending some provisions of the Regulation under the Civil Aviation Law.
- Minister of Transportation and Telecommunication Decree No. 25 of 2016 of CAA fees and departure fees.
- Minster of Transportation and Telecommunication Decree No. 21 of 2013 issuing the regulations under the Civil Aviation Law.

Civil Aviation Affairs (Final Site Inspection) (682091)

Approval Name	Description	Estimated Time
Duty Free Services	Selling and marketing of merchandise at airport free area.	10 Days

Fee Details (if any)

• Application fees: BD 100 (non-refundable in cases where the application is not approved).
• License fees BD20,000.
• Annual renewal 50% of the license fees.

License Information

• Capital of the company should not be less than BD1,000,000
• The license is valid for one year and renewal application must be submitted 2 months before expiry
• Adherence to the standards and regulatory requirements contained in the regulations under the Civil Aviation Law issued by virtue of Law No. 14 of 2013

Required Documents

•Feasibility, technical, economic and financial studies
•Fill application Form ATD/ATCL/OF04
•Memorandum of Association

Other Documents

- Chicago Convention and its Annexes.
- Civil Aviation Law No.14 of 2013
- Minister of Transport and Telecommunication Decree No. 12 of 2016 amending some provisions of the Regulation under the Civil Aviation Law.
- Minister of Transportation and Telecommunication Decree No. 25 of 2016 of CAA fees and departure fees.
- Minster of Transportation and Telecommunication Decree No. 21 of 2013 issuing the regulations under the Civil Aviation Law.

Professional, scientific and technical activities

سجلات
SIJILAT
نظام السجلات التجارية
COMMERCIAL REGISTRATION PORTAL

Professional, scientific and technical activities

ISIC4	Business activity
691-1	Legal activities - Lawyers

Description

This activity includes:

1. Regularly representing clients :
• Before the various courts on all levels, judicial and administrative committees with judicial jurisdiction as well as arbitration.
• In criminal and administrative investigations and police stations.
• Defending them in cases against them and all pleadings and judicial procedures.

2. Regularly give legal advice, opinion or consultation and performing any legal activity or procedure on behalf of another.

3. Regularly and exclusively incorporating companies and registering intellectual property rights and trademarks in the Kingdom

Business Requirements

Age

18 and above

Allowed for Nationalities

Bahraini
100%

Legal Type

It is allowed to register according to the legal forms mentioned below

Allowed for Individual Commercial Registration (ICR) : Yes

Allowed for Company Commercial Registration (CCR) : Yes

- Partnership Company
- Simple Commandite Company

Required Step of Licenses and Approvals

Ministry / Directorate	License / Approval Requirements	Approval Type
General Registrar Office	Legal activities	Post
Municipality Affairs	Site Approval for Administrative and support service activities	Post

General Registrar Office (Post) (691-1)

Approval Name	Description	Estimated Time
Legal activities	This activity includes: - legal representation of one party`s interest against another party, whether or not before courts or other judicial bodies by, or under supervision of, persons who are members of the bar: · advice and representation in civil cases · advice and representation in criminal cases · advice and representation in connection with labour disputes - general counselling and advising, preparation of legal documents: · articles of incorporation, partnership agreements or similar documents in connection with company formation · patents and copyrights · preparation of deeds, wills, trusts etc. - other activities of notaries public, civil	1 Days

	law notaries, bailiffs, arbitrators, examiners and referees	

Fee Details (if any)

There is no Estimated Processing Time (Days) in this license.

License Information

To practice this activity the owner must have a valid lawyer license issued by the Ministry of Justice

Required Documents

- Valid lawyer license card

Municipality Affairs (Post) (691-1)

Approval Name	Description	Estimated Time
Site Approval for Administrative and support service activities	Municipality Approval for the Commercial Registration address or the site in which the Activity will be practiced	3 Days

Fee Details (if any)

10

License Information

General Conditions:
1. Size of shop/premises must be sufficient for the activity
2. Businesses may not carry out the activity outside the boundaries of the shop/ premises
3. It is prohibited to display or store any items or equipment outside the shop / premises boundary without prior approval from the Municipality. In the event of non-compliance, the Ministry of Municipality Affairs has the right to take necessary action.
4. Maintain cleanliness of the site
5. Comply with the parking space regulations as per the Construction Regulatory Requirements

Activity Specific Conditions:
1. The Commercial Registration for this activity can be registered on commercial, service, and industrial streets..
2. The commercial address of the Commercial Registration for this activity can an office address provided that the site is used for administrative purposes and is not located in a residential area

Note: Uploading pictures of the site/shop may expedite the process of obtaining

approval

Required Documents

•Lease agreement (after obtaining the necessary approvals from other licensing entities)
•Shop photos

Other Documents

•Cabinet's Decision (56) of the year 2022 regarding the Regulatory Requirements of Construction for various areas in the Kingdom of Bahrain

Professional, scientific and technical activities

ISIC4	Business activity
691-2	Legal activities - Foreign Legal Consultancy Offices

Description

This activity includes:

Foreign legal consultancy firms with specialized international expertise that are not sufficiently available and needed by the country, and licensed by the Ministry of Justice.

Business Requirements

Age

18 and above

Allowed for Nationalities

- GCC 100%
- American 100%
- Singaporean 100%
- Icelander 100%
- Liechtenstein er 100%
- Norwegian 100%
- Swiss 100%

Foreign Allowed up to 100%

Legal Type

It is allowed to register according to the legal forms mentioned below

Allowed for Company Commercial Registration (CCR) : Yes

- Branch of a Foreign Company

Required Step of Licenses and Approvals

Ministry / Directorate	License / Approval Requirements	Approval Type
Municipality Affairs	Site Approval for Administrative and support service activities	Post
General Registrar Office	Foreign Legal Consultancy Offices	Post

Municipality Affairs (Post) (691-2)

Approval Name	Description	Estimated Time
Site Approval for Administrative and support service activities	Municipality Approval for the Commercial Registration address or the site in which the Activity will be practiced	3 Days

Fee Details (if any)

10

License Information

General Conditions:
1. Size of shop/premises must be sufficient for the activity
2. Businesses may not carry out the activity outside the boundaries of the shop/ premises
3. It is prohibited to display or store any items or equipment outside the shop / premises boundary without prior approval from the Municipality. In the event of non-compliance, the Ministry of Municipality Affairs has the right to take necessary action.
4. Maintain cleanliness of the site
5. Comply with the parking space regulations as per the Construction Regulatory Requirements

Activity Specific Conditions:
1. The Commercial Registration for this activity can be registered on commercial, service, and industrial streets..
2. The commercial address of the Commercial Registration for this activity can an office address provided that the site is used for administrative purposes and is not located in a residential area

Note: Uploading pictures of the site/shop may expedite the process of obtaining

approval

Required Documents

•Lease agreement (after obtaining the necessary approvals from other licensing entities)
•Shop photos

Other Documents

•Cabinet's Decision (56) of the year 2022 regarding the Regulatory Requirements of Construction for various areas in the Kingdom of Bahrain

General Registrar Office (Post) (691-2)

Approval Name	Description	Estimated Time
Foreign Legal Consultancy Offices	approval to open the register of a foreign legal consultancy office in the Kingdom of Bahrain	2 Days

Fee Details (if any)

- 6,000 dinars for granting a license and enrolling in the register for the first time.
- 3,000 dinars for renewing the license (every five years)
- 3,000 dinars for renewing the register (annually)

License Information

• The foreign firm must have specialized international experience
• The person responsible for managing the firm must have a legal academic qualification, has experience in the legal field, residing in the Kingdom of Bahrain, and authorized by the parent firm to run the legal firm in Bahrain

Required Documents

•certificate to open a foreign legal consultancy office in the Kingdom of Bahrain issued by the Ministry of Justice, Islamic Affairs and waqf.

Other Documents

- Decision No. (16) for 2007 to issue a regulation regulating the work of foreign legal consulting offices in the Kingdom of Bahrain
- Decree of Law No. (26) of 1980
- Decree of Law No. (28) of 2020
- Decree of Law No. (77) of 2006 amending some provisions of the Law issued by Decree No. (26) of 1980
- Generalization No 5 For Year 2019

Professional, scientific and technical activities

ISIC4	Business activity
692-1	Accounting Activities - Audit Firms

Description

Includes specialized and qualified offices carry out companies and establishments accounts reviews, comprehensive audits on all types of accounts, records and books and final works and prepares reports to present financial status, in addition to carrying out other accounts work in various branches.

Business Requirements

Age

18 and above

Allowed for Nationalities

Bahraini 100%	GCC 100%
American 100%	Singaporean 100%
Icelander 100%	Liechtenstein er 100%
Norwegian 100%	Swiss 100%

Foreign Allowed up to 100%

Legal Type

It is allowed to register according to the legal forms mentioned below

Allowed for Individual Commercial Registration (ICR) : Yes

Allowed for Company Commercial Registration (CCR) : Yes

- Branch of a Foreign Company
- Partnership Company

Required Step of Licenses and Approvals

Ministry / Directorate	License / Approval Requirements	Approval Type
Ministry of Industry and Commerce	Auditing firms	
Municipality Affairs	Site Approval for Administrative and support service activities	Post

Ministry of Industry and Commerce () (692-1)

Approval Name	Description	Estimated Time
Auditing firms	Includes specialized and qualified offices carry out companies and establishments accounts reviews, comprehensive audits on all types of accounts, records and books and final works and prepares reports to present financial status, in addition to carrying out other accounts work in various branches.	15 Days

Fee Details (if any)

There is no Estimated Processing Time (Days) in this license.

License Information

1. The legal type of the auditing firm must either be a Specialized Partnership Company or Individual Establishment

2. The owner/shareholder must satisfy the following:
a. Have to be registered as a practicing auditor with the Ministry of Industry and Commerce (refer to auditor registration requirements in the “other downloadable documents” section below)
b. Have a Professional certificate in the field of accounting
c. Have at least 5 years of continuously experience in the field of accounting in a leading position (Head of unit, Manager, or Partner).
d. Not an employee in the government or private sector

3. Foreign auditing firms must satisfy the following requirements to be licensed:
a. Have a valid license to practice auditing in the country of origin.
b. Operates in 3 countries
c. Has a minimum annual income of BD50mn (or equivalent in foreign currency) for the past 3 years
d. Have at least 15 years of auditing experience
e. The person in charge of managing the branch or the authorized signatory must have at least 10 years of experience and be registered as a Practicing Auditor with the Ministry of Industry and Commerce.

The following requirements are to be satisfied after obtaining the license:
1. The auditing firm must submit a professional indemnity insurance policy issued from a recognized insurance company in the Kingdom of Bahrain within 30 days from the date of the auditor's registration in the Register. The value of the insurance coverage must not be less than 5,000 Bahraini Dinars (Please note that once licensed the value of the insurance coverage must be at least 5% of the total income from the professional business revenue related to the audit activities of the last financial year that has passed)

2. Employ Bahraini auditors whenever possible

Required Documents

- Please refer to the list of opening audit firm requirements
- Professional Certificates in Accounting of all owners
- Proof of at least five years of continuously experience in the field of accounting in a leading position (Head of unit, Manager, or Partner) for all owners
- Proof that the firm has BD50mn (or equivalent in foreign currency) in annual income for the past 3 years
- Proof that the firm has at least 15 years of auditing experience (for foreign auditing firms only)
- Proof that the person in charge of managing the branch or the authorized signatory has at least 10 years of experience (for foreign auditing firms only)
- Valid License to practice auditing in the country of origin (for foreign auditing firms only)

Other Documents

- Conditions for engaging in the Auditor’s practice at Ministry of Industry, Commerce
- Legislative Decree No. (15) of 2021
- Legislative Decree No.26 of 1996 with respect to Auditors
- Ministerial Decree No. (31) of 2022
- Ministerial Decree No. (32) of 2022
- Ministerial Decree No. (34) of 2022

- Ministerial Decree No. (35) of 2022
- Registering auditors - procedures and conditions

Municipality Affairs (Post) (692-1)

Approval Name	Description	Estimated Time
Site Approval for Administrative and support service activities	Municipality Approval for the Commercial Registration address or the site in which the Activity will be practiced	3 Days

Fee Details (if any)

10

License Information

General Conditions:
1. Size of shop/premises must be sufficient for the activity
2. Businesses may not carry out the activity outside the boundaries of the shop/ premises
3. It is prohibited to display or store any items or equipment outside the shop / premises boundary without prior approval from the Municipality. In the event of non-compliance, the Ministry of Municipality Affairs has the right to take necessary action.
4. Maintain cleanliness of the site
5. Comply with the parking space regulations as per the Construction Regulatory Requirements

Activity Specific Conditions:
1. The Commercial Registration for this activity can be registered on commercial, service, and industrial streets..
2. The commercial address of the Commercial Registration for this activity can an office address provided that the site is used for administrative purposes and is not located in a residential area

Note: Uploading pictures of the site/shop may expedite the process of obtaining

approval

Required Documents

•Lease agreement (after obtaining the necessary approvals from other licensing entities)
•Shop photos

Other Documents

•Cabinet's Decision (56) of the year 2022 regarding the Regulatory Requirements of Construction for various areas in the Kingdom of Bahrain

Professional, scientific and technical activities

ISIC4	Business activity
692-2	Accounting Activities - Booking-keeping / Accounting firms

Description

Includes offices carry out design of accounts systems for companies and establishments and prepares their initial financial data and implements and applies their accounting systems. In addition preparing budgets, periodical internal reports and designs and applies internal control systems for companies and establishments. Excluded external audit work and financial consultations.

Business Requirements

Age

18 and above

Allowed for Nationalities

Bahraini 100%	GCC 100%
American 100%	Singaporean Allowed up to 49% (a minimum Bahraini ownership of 51% is required)
Icelander Allowed up to 49% (a minimum Bahraini ownership of 51% is required)	Liechtenstein er Allowed up to 49% (a minimum Bahraini ownership of 51% is required)
Norwegian Allowed up to 49% (a minimum Bahraini ownership of 51% is required)	Swiss Allowed up to 49% (a minimum Bahraini ownership of 51% is required)

Foreign Allowed up to Allowed up to 49% (a minimum Bahraini ownership of 51% is required)

Legal Type

It is allowed to register according to the legal forms mentioned below

Allowed for Individual Commercial Registration (ICR) : Yes

Allowed for Company Commercial Registration (CCR) : Yes

- Bahrain Shareholding Company (Public)
- Bahrain Shareholding Company (Closed)
- Simple Commandite Company
- Non Profit Company
- With Limited Liability Company
- Partnership Company
- Commandite By Shares Company

Required Step of Licenses and Approvals

Ministry / Directorate	License / Approval Requirements	Approval Type
Ministry of Industry and Commerce	Booking-keeping / Accounting firms	
Municipality Affairs	Site Approval for Administrative and support service activities	Post

Ministry of Industry and Commerce () (692-2)

Approval Name	Description	Estimated Time
Booking-keeping / Accounting firms	Includes offices carry out design of accounts systems for companies and establishments and prepares their initial financial data and implements and applies their accounting systems. In addition preparing budgets, periodical internal reports and designs and applies internal control systems for companies and establishments. Excluded external audit work and financial consultations.	5 Days

Fee Details (if any)

There is no Estimated Processing Time (Days) in this license.

License Information

The owner/shareholder must satisfy the following:

1. Have at least a Bachelor's degree in accounting, or commerce, or business administration with specialization in accounting and a period of study not less than three years. Alternatively, a Chartered Accounting Certificate can be provided (for example: ACCA, CA, CPA)

2. Have at least 2 years of work experience in auditing or accounting

3. Must not be employed in the government or private sector

The operational requirements after obtaining the business license:

1. The following phrase must be included in all official papers, in a clear font and in a prominent place: “Not authorized to practice internal and external auditing”
2. . The periodic reports or studies that are prepared on behalf of the clients must be on the official papers of the firm
3. Comply with the International Accounting Standards

Required Documents

- Copy of academic qualifications in accounting or commerce/ business administration with specialization in accounting, or a Chartered Accounting Certificate
- Please refer to the list of requirements for booking-keeping and Accounting firms
- Work Certificate indicating work experience duration

Other Documents

- Ministerial Decree No. (15) of 2018

Municipality Affairs (Post) (692-2)

Approval Name	Description	Estimated Time
Site Approval for Administrative and support service activities	Municipality Approval for the Commercial Registration address or the site in which the Activity will be practiced	3 Days

Fee Details (if any)

10

License Information

General Conditions:
1. Size of shop/premises must be sufficient for the activity
2. Businesses may not carry out the activity outside the boundaries of the shop/ premises
3. It is prohibited to display or store any items or equipment outside the shop / premises boundary without prior approval from the Municipality. In the event of non-compliance, the Ministry of Municipality Affairs has the right to take necessary action.
4. Maintain cleanliness of the site
5. Comply with the parking space regulations as per the Construction Regulatory Requirements

Activity Specific Conditions:
1. The Commercial Registration for this activity can be registered on commercial, service, and industrial streets..
2. The commercial address of the Commercial Registration for this activity can an office address provided that the site is used for administrative purposes and is not located in a residential area

Note: Uploading pictures of the site/shop may expedite the process of obtaining

approval

Required Documents

•Lease agreement (after obtaining the necessary approvals from other licensing entities)
•Shop photos

Other Documents

•Cabinet's Decision (56) of the year 2022 regarding the Regulatory Requirements of Construction for various areas in the Kingdom of Bahrain

Professional, scientific and technical activities

ISIC4	Business activity
692-4	Accounting Activities - Tax Advisory Services

Description

This activity allows providing tax advisory services to comply with tax legislation in accordance with the applicable laws and regulations in the Kingdom of Bahrain, which contribute to understanding the compliance requirements, guiding the client in preparation of tax returns, this activity excludes the activities performed by a Tax agent and Tax representative.

Business Requirements

Age

18 and above

Allowed for Nationalities

Bahraini 100%	GCC 100%
American 100%	

Foreign Allowed up to 100%

Legal Type

It is allowed to register according to the legal forms mentioned below

Allowed for Individual Commercial Registration (ICR) : Yes

Allowed for Company Commercial Registration (CCR) : Yes

- Bahrain Shareholding Company (Public)
- With Limited Liability Company
- Branch of a Foreign Company
- Bahrain Shareholding Company (Closed)
- Partnership Company
- Simple Commandite Company
- Commandite By Shares Company
- Protected Cell Company
- Investment Limited Partnerships
- Non Profit Company

Required Step of Licenses and Approvals

Ministry / Directorate	License / Approval Requirements	Approval Type
National Bureau for Revenue	Approval of National Bureau for Revenue for Tax Consultancy Activity	Pre
Municipality Affairs	Site Approval for Administrative and support activities	Post

National Bureau for Revenue (Pre) (692-4)

Approval Name	Description	Estimated Time
Approval of National Bureau for Revenue for Tax Consultancy Activity	Approval of National Bureau for Revenue for Tax Consultancy Activity	7 Days

Fee Details (if any)

There is no Estimated Processing Time (Days) in this license.

License Information

The following conditions must be met by the owner of the individual establishment, owners or shareholders of commercial companies or authorized signatory to engage in tax consulting services:
1. Have at least a bachelor's degree in accounting, or Commerce with specialization in Accounting, or Business Administration with specialization in Accounting, or Bachelor's degree in Law, and period of study not less than three years, Alternatively, holds a professional certificate in Accounting, for example (ACCA, CPA, CA).
2. Have at least five years of continuous experience in accounting or legal consulting.
3. The license applicant must be fully dedicated to practicing the activity.
4. Have a professional indemnity insurance policy for professional errors before commencing the activity, which should remain valid throughout the license period and be relative to the scale of the business.

Special conditions for branches of foreign global companies and companies that are fully or partially owned by non-Bahraini shareholders, provided they are subsidiaries of or represented by a global company:
1. The parent company holding the commercial registration or trademark must have an annual income of no less than fifty million Bahraini dinars or its equivalent in foreign currencies for the three years preceding the application for a license to conduct the activity.
2. The parent company must have a presence in at least three markets.

Required Documents

- Copy of the academic qualification in accounting, business administration/commerce, accounting major, or law or a copy of a professional certificate in accounting
- Proof of work experience of five continuous years in the field of accounting or legal consultancy

Municipality Affairs (Post) (692-4)

Approval Name	Description	Estimated Time
Site Approval for Administrative and support activities	Municipality Approval for the Commercial Registration address or the site in which the Activity will be practiced	3 Days

Fee Details (if any)

10 BD

License Information

General Conditions:
1. Size of shop/premises must be sufficient for the activity
2. Businesses may not carry out the activity outside the boundaries of the shop/ premises
3. It is prohibited to display or store any items or equipment outside the shop / premises boundary without prior approval from the Municipality
4. Maintain cleanliness of the site
5. Comply with the parking space regulations as per the Construction Regulatory Requirements

Activity Specific Conditions:
1. The commercial address for this activity can be registered in areas classified as commercial, services, or industrial
2. The commercial address of the Commercial Registration for this activity can an office address
provided that the site is used for administrative purposes and is not located in a residential area

Note: Uploading pictures of the site/shop may expedite the process of obtaining approval

Required Documents

- Lease agreement (after obtaining the necessary approvals from other licensing entities)
- Shop photos

Other Documents

- Cabinet's Decision (56) of the year 2022 regarding the Regulatory Requirements of Construction for various areas in the Kingdom of Bahrain

ISIC4	Business activity
701-1	Activities of head offices or Management Offices

Description

This activity includes the overseeing and managing of other units of the company or enterprise; undertaking the strategic or organizational planning and decision making role of the company or enterprise; exercising operational control and manage the day-to-day operations of their related units.

This activity includes activities of:
- Head offices
- Centralized administrative offices
- Corporate offices
- District and regional offices
- Subsidiary management offices
- Restaurants and Coffee-Shops Management

This class excludes:
- Activities of holding companies, not engaged in managing

Business Requirements

Age

18 and above

Allowed for Nationalities

Bahraini 100%		GCC 100%	
American 100%		Singaporean 100%	
Icelander 100%		Liechtenstein er 100%	
Norwegian 100%		Swiss 100%	

Foreign Allowed up to 100%

Legal Type

It is allowed to register according to the legal forms mentioned below

Allowed for Individual Commercial Registration (ICR) : Yes

Allowed for Company Commercial Registration (CCR) : Yes

- Bahrain Shareholding Company (Public)
- With Limited Liability Company
- Branch of a Foreign Company
- Bahrain Shareholding Company (Closed)
- Partnership Company
- Simple Commandite Company
- Commandite By Shares Company
- Non Profit Company

Required Step of Licenses and Approvals

Ministry / Directorate	License / Approval Requirements	Approval Type
Municipality Affairs	Site Approval for Administrative and	Post

	support service activities	

Municipality Affairs (Post) (701-1)

Approval Name	Description	Estimated Time
Site Approval for Administrative and support service activities	Municipality Approval for the Commercial Registration address or the site in which the Activity will be practiced	3 Days

Fee Details (if any)

10

License Information

General Conditions:
1. Size of shop/premises must be sufficient for the activity
2. Businesses may not carry out the activity outside the boundaries of the shop/ premises
3. It is prohibited to display or store any items or equipment outside the shop / premises boundary without prior approval from the Municipality. In the event of non-compliance, the Ministry of Municipality Affairs has the right to take necessary action.
4. Maintain cleanliness of the site
5. Comply with the parking space regulations as per the Construction Regulatory Requirements

Activity Specific Conditions:
1. The Commercial Registration for this activity can be registered on commercial, service, and industrial streets..
2. The commercial address of the Commercial Registration for this activity can an office address provided that the site is used for administrative purposes and is not located in a residential area

Note: Uploading pictures of the site/shop may expedite the process of obtaining

approval

Required Documents

•Lease agreement (after obtaining the necessary approvals from other licensing entities)
•Shop photos

Other Documents

•Cabinet's Decision (56) of the year 2022 regarding the Regulatory Requirements of Construction for various areas in the Kingdom of Bahrain

Professional, scientific and technical activities

ISIC4	Business activity
701-2	Activities of head offices or Management Offices - Hospitality Management

Description

This option is required for management offices that will be managing hospitality properties such as hotels and resorts

Business Requirements

✔ Age

18 and above

✔ Allowed for Nationalities

Bahraini 100%		GCC 100%	
American 100%		Singaporean 100%	
Icelander 100%		Liechtenstein er 100%	
Norwegian 100%		Swiss 100%	

Foreign Allowed up to 100%

Legal Type

It is allowed to register according to the legal forms mentioned below

Allowed for Individual Commercial Registration (ICR) : Yes

Allowed for Company Commercial Registration (CCR) : Yes

- Bahrain Shareholding Company (Public)
- With Limited Liability Company
- Branch of a Foreign Company
- Bahrain Shareholding Company (Closed)
- Partnership Company
- Simple Commandite Company
- Commandite By Shares Company
- Non Profit Company

Required Step of Licenses and Approvals

Ministry / Directorate	License / Approval Requirements	Approval Type
General Directorate Of Criminal Investigation	Approval by General Directorate of Criminal Investigation	Pre
Municipality Affairs	Site Approval for Administrative and support service activities	Post
Bahrain Tourim and Exibitions Authority	Management of hotels, hotel apartments/ furnished apartments (tourist) and tourist restaurants	Final Site Inspection

General Directorate Of Criminal Investigation (Pre) (701-2)

Approval Name	Description	Estimated Time
Approval by General Directorate of Criminal Investigation	General Directorate of Criminal Investigation Approval for the Activity	7 Days

Fee Details (if any)

There is no Estimated Processing Time (Days) in this license.

License Information

- The applicant should not have a criminal record, unless they have been rehabilitated in criminal cases

Municipality Affairs (Post) (701-2)

Approval Name	Description	Estimated Time
Site Approval for Administrative and support service activities	Municipality Approval for the Commercial Registration address or the site in which the Activity will be practiced	3 Days

Fee Details (if any)

10

License Information

General Conditions:
1. Size of shop/premises must be sufficient for the activity
2. Businesses may not carry out the activity outside the boundaries of the shop/ premises
3. It is prohibited to display or store any items or equipment outside the shop / premises boundary without prior approval from the Municipality. In the event of non-compliance, the Ministry of Municipality Affairs has the right to take necessary action.
4. Maintain cleanliness of the site
5. Comply with the parking space regulations as per the Construction Regulatory Requirements

Activity Specific Conditions:
1. The Commercial Registration for this activity can be registered on commercial, service, and industrial streets..
2. The commercial address of the Commercial Registration for this activity can an office address provided that the site is used for administrative purposes and is not located in a residential area

Note: Uploading pictures of the site/shop may expedite the process of obtaining

approval

Required Documents

•Lease agreement (after obtaining the necessary approvals from other licensing entities)
•Shop photos

Other Documents

•Cabinet's Decision (56) of the year 2022 regarding the Regulatory Requirements of Construction for various areas in the Kingdom of Bahrain

Bahrain Tourim and Exibitions Authority (Final Site Inspection) (701-2)

Approval Name	Description	Estimated Time
Management of hotels, hotel apartments/furnished apartments (tourist) and tourist restaurants	This option is required for administrative offices that will manage tourist facilities and guest houses such as hotels, furnished tourist apartments and tourist restaurants. This activity does not include: - Food and Beverage Services Activities - Floating Tourist Restaurant, see 5610-4 - Food and beverage services activities - restaurants for tourist services, see 5610-3 - Short-term accommodation activities, see 551-1	3 Days

Fee Details (if any)

Upon final approval, the license issue/renewal fee (B.D 500) will be charged.

License Information

Requirements after obtaining the license:

To have a qualified office manager with appropriate hotel experience.
- Office staff must be eligible to work in hospitality management.
- The licensee's obligation to hand over to the Bahrain Tourism and Exhibition Authority annually the list of facilities managed by the licensee.
- Pay the tourist license fee.

Professional, scientific and technical activities

ISIC4	Business activity
701-3	Activities of head offices or Management Offices - Drilling for oil and gas outside Bahrain

Description

This activity includes the overseeing and managing of other units of the company or enterprise; undertaking the strategic or organizational planning and decision making role of the company or enterprise; exercising operational control and manage the day-to-day operations of their related units.
This activity includes activities of:
- Head offices
- Centralized administrative offices
- Corporate offices
- District and regional offices
- Subsidiary management offices

This class excludes:
- Activities of holding companies, not engaged in managing

Business Requirements

Age

18 and above

Allowed for Nationalities

Bahraini 100%		GCC 100%	
American 100%		Singaporean 100%	
Icelander 100%		Liechtenstein er 100%	
Norwegian 100%		Swiss 100%	

Foreign Allowed up to 100%

Legal Type

It is allowed to register according to the legal forms mentioned below

Allowed for Individual Commercial Registration (ICR) : Yes

Allowed for Company Commercial Registration (CCR) : Yes

- Bahrain Shareholding Company (Public)
- With Limited Liability Company
- Branch of a Foreign Company
- Bahrain Shareholding Company (Closed)
- Partnership Company
- Simple Commandite Company
- Commandite By Shares Company
- Non Profit Company

Required Step of Licenses and Approvals

Ministry / Directorate	License / Approval Requirements	Approval Type
Municipality Affairs	Site Approval for Administrative and	Post

	support service activities	

Municipality Affairs (Post) (701-3)

Approval Name	Description	Estimated Time
Site Approval for Administrative and support service activities	Municipality Approval for the Commercial Registration address or the site in which the Activity will be practiced	3 Days

Fee Details (if any)

10

License Information

General Conditions:
1. Size of shop/premises must be sufficient for the activity
2. Businesses may not carry out the activity outside the boundaries of the shop/ premises
3. It is prohibited to display or store any items or equipment outside the shop / premises boundary without prior approval from the Municipality. In the event of non-compliance, the Ministry of Municipality Affairs has the right to take necessary action.
4. Maintain cleanliness of the site
5. Comply with the parking space regulations as per the Construction Regulatory Requirements

Activity Specific Conditions:
1. The Commercial Registration for this activity can be registered on commercial, service, and industrial streets..
2. The commercial address of the Commercial Registration for this activity can an office address provided that the site is used for administrative purposes and is not located in a residential area

Note: Uploading pictures of the site/shop may expedite the process of obtaining

approval

Required Documents

•Lease agreement (after obtaining the necessary approvals from other licensing entities)
•Shop photos

Other Documents

•Cabinet's Decision (56) of the year 2022 regarding the Regulatory Requirements of Construction for various areas in the Kingdom of Bahrain

ISIC4	Business activity
701-4	Activities of head offices or Management Offices - Offshore Contracting/EPC

Description

This activity includes overseeing and managing turnkey solutions for overseas contracting projects out of Bahrain. This activity includes marketing, sales, business and financial planning, bidding for projects and supervision, procurement of all materials and equipment from Bahrain and international markets for overseas construction projects, receiving payments for overseas projects, issuing payments for overseas projects, and all other activities and functions related to sourcing, managing, and delivering overseas construction projects. Examples for overseas projects include:

- Construction of power generation, transmission, and distribution projects
- Construction of water desalination projects
- Construction of telecom infrastructure projects
- Construction of sewer systems, sewage disposal plants, pumping stations, power plants
- Construction of residential, commercial, tourism, industrial, and all other types of buildings and projects
- Assembly and erection of prefabricated constructions on the site overseas
- Remodeling or renovating existing structures of all types
- All other generic and specialized types of overseas construction projects

This activity does not permit performing any construction activities within the Kingdom of Bahrain.

Business Requirements

Age

18 and above

Allowed for Nationalities

Bahraini 100%		GCC 100%	
American 100%		Singaporean 100%	
Icelander 100%		Liechtenstein er 100%	
Norwegian 100%		Swiss 100%	

Foreign Allowed up to 100%

Legal Type

It is allowed to register according to the legal forms mentioned below

Allowed for Individual Commercial Registration (ICR) : Yes

Allowed for Company Commercial Registration (CCR) : Yes

- Bahrain Shareholding Company (Public)
- With Limited Liability Company
- Branch of a Foreign Company
- Bahrain Shareholding Company (Closed)
- Partnership Company
- Simple Commandite Company
- Commandite By Shares Company
- Non Profit Company

Required Step of Licenses and Approvals

Ministry / Directorate	License / Approval Requirements	Approval Type
Municipality Affairs	Site Approval for Administrative and	Post

	support activities	

Municipality Affairs (Post) (701-4)

Approval Name	Description	Estimated Time
Site Approval for Administrative and support activities	Municipality Approval for the Commercial Registration address or the site in which the Activity will be practiced	3 Days

Fee Details (if any)

10 BD

License Information

General Conditions:
1. Size of shop/premises must be sufficient for the activity
2. Businesses may not carry out the activity outside the boundaries of the shop/ premises
3. It is prohibited to display or store any items or equipment outside the shop / premises boundary without prior approval from the Municipality
4. Maintain cleanliness of the site
5. Comply with the parking space regulations as per the Construction Regulatory Requirements

Activity Specific Conditions:
1. The commercial address for this activity can be registered in areas classified as commercial, services, or industrial
2. The commercial address of the Commercial Registration for this activity can an office address
provided that the site is used for administrative purposes and is not located in a residential area

Note: Uploading pictures of the site/shop may expedite the process of obtaining approval

Required Documents

- Lease agreement (after obtaining the necessary approvals from other licensing entities)
- Shop photos

Other Documents

- Cabinet's Decision (56) of the year 2022 regarding the Regulatory Requirements of Construction for various areas in the Kingdom of Bahrain

Professional, scientific and technical activities

ISIC4	Business activity
702	Management consultancy activities

Description

This activity includes the provision of advice, guidance and operational assistance to businesses and other organizations on management issues, such as strategic and organizational planning; decision areas that are financial in nature; marketing objectives and policies; human resource policies, practices and planning; production scheduling and control planning.

This provision of business services may include advice, guidance or operational assistance to businesses and the public service regarding:
- Public relations and communication
- Design of accounting methods or procedures, cost accounting programmes, budgetary control procedures
- Advice and help to businesses and public services in planning, organization, efficiency and control, management information etc.

- it also includes the issuance of studies and research in various fields

This activity excludes:
- Design of computer software for accounting systems
- Legal advice and representation
- Accounting, bookkeeping and auditing activities, tax consulting
- Architectural, engineering and other technical advisory activities
- Advertising activities
- Executive placement or search consulting services
- Educational consulting activities

Business Requirements

Age

18 and above

Allowed for Nationalities

Bahraini 100%	GCC 100%
American 100%	Singaporean 100%
Icelander 100%	Liechtenstein er 100%
Norwegian 100%	Swiss 100%

Foreign Allowed up to 100%

Legal Type

It is allowed to register according to the legal forms mentioned below

Allowed for Individual Commercial Registration (ICR) : Yes

Allowed for Company Commercial Registration (CCR) : Yes

Allowed for Sijilli : Yes

- Bahrain Shareholding Company (Public)
- With Limited Liability Company
- Branch of a Foreign Company
- Bahrain Shareholding Company (Closed)
- Partnership Company
- Simple Commandite Company
- Commandite By Shares Company
- Non Profit Company

Required Step of Licenses and Approvals

Ministry / Directorate	License / Approval Requirements	Approval Type
Municipality Affairs	Site Approval for Administrative and support service activities	Post

Municipality Affairs (Post) (702)

Approval Name	Description	Estimated Time
Site Approval for Administrative and support service activities	Municipality Approval for the Commercial Registration address or the site in which the Activity will be practiced	3 Days

Fee Details (if any)

10

License Information

General Conditions:
1. Size of shop/premises must be sufficient for the activity
2. Businesses may not carry out the activity outside the boundaries of the shop/ premises
3. It is prohibited to display or store any items or equipment outside the shop / premises boundary without prior approval from the Municipality. In the event of non-compliance, the Ministry of Municipality Affairs has the right to take necessary action.
4. Maintain cleanliness of the site
5. Comply with the parking space regulations as per the Construction Regulatory Requirements

Activity Specific Conditions:
1. The Commercial Registration for this activity can be registered on commercial, service, and industrial streets..
2. The commercial address of the Commercial Registration for this activity can an office address provided that the site is used for administrative purposes and is not located in a residential area

Note: Uploading pictures of the site/shop may expedite the process of obtaining

approval

Required Documents

•Lease agreement (after obtaining the necessary approvals from other licensing entities)
•Shop photos

Other Documents

•Cabinet's Decision (56) of the year 2022 regarding the Regulatory Requirements of Construction for various areas in the Kingdom of Bahrain

Professional, scientific and technical activities

ISIC4	Business activity
70209	Public Relations

Description

This activity includes helping organizations or individuals build and gain exposure to their audiences as well as improve their public image.
It also includes providing support services for organizing and managing conferences and events, etc.

Business Requirements

Age

18 and above

Allowed for Nationalities

Bahraini 100%	GCC 100%
American 100%	Singaporean 100%
Icelander 100%	Liechtenstein er 100%
Norwegian 100%	Swiss 100%

Foreign Allowed up to 100%

Legal Type

It is allowed to register according to the legal forms mentioned below

Allowed for Individual Commercial Registration (ICR) : Yes

Allowed for Company Commercial Registration (CCR) : Yes

Allowed for Sijilli : Yes

- Bahrain Shareholding Company (Public)
- With Limited Liability Company
- Branch of a Foreign Company
- Bahrain Shareholding Company (Closed)
- Partnership Company
- Simple Commandite Company
- Commandite By Shares Company
- Non Profit Company

Required Step of Licenses and Approvals

Ministry / Directorate	License / Approval Requirements	Approval Type
Directorate of Publication and Press	Public Relations	Notification Only
Municipality Affairs	Site Approval for Administrative and support service activities	Post

Directorate of Publication and Press (Notification Only) (70209)

Approval Name	Description	Estimated Time
Public Relations	Public Relations	5 Days

Fee Details (if any)

There is no Estimated Processing Time (Days) in this license.

License Information

All Business establishments of audio-visual, print and electronic media in the Kingdom of Bahrain must be comply with the law regulating the press, printing and publishing and other relevant laws

Other Documents

•Resolution No. (1) of 2015 regarding standards for supervision and control of media contents

Municipality Affairs (Post) (70209)

Approval Name	Description	Estimated Time
Site Approval for Administrative and support service activities	Municipality Approval for the Commercial Registration address or the site in which the Activity will be practiced	3 Days

Fee Details (if any)

10

License Information

General Conditions:
1. Size of shop/premises must be sufficient for the activity
2. Businesses may not carry out the activity outside the boundaries of the shop/ premises
3. It is prohibited to display or store any items or equipment outside the shop / premises boundary without prior approval from the Municipality. In the event of non-compliance, the Ministry of Municipality Affairs has the right to take necessary action.
4. Maintain cleanliness of the site
5. Comply with the parking space regulations as per the Construction Regulatory Requirements

Activity Specific Conditions:
1. The Commercial Registration for this activity can be registered on commercial, service, and industrial streets..
2. The commercial address of the Commercial Registration for this activity can an office address provided that the site is used for administrative purposes and is not located in a residential area

Note: Uploading pictures of the site/shop may expedite the process of obtaining

approval

Required Documents

•Lease agreement (after obtaining the necessary approvals from other licensing entities)
•Shop photos

Other Documents

•Cabinet's Decision (56) of the year 2022 regarding the Regulatory Requirements of Construction for various areas in the Kingdom of Bahrain

Professional, scientific and technical activities

ISIC4	Business activity
711-1	Architectural and engineering activities and related technical consultancy - Categories (A), (B), (C) – Engineering Offices

Description

This activity includes the preparation of Architectural and Engineering drawings, diagrams and designs; advice and conducting surveys; conducting feasibility studies, researches; setting specifications; supervising the execution, maintenance and operation; estimating costs, quantity surveying; and implementing and managing Engineering projects. This includes Architectural, Civil, Electrical, Mechanical, Chemical, Mining, Petroleum Engineering and other disciplines of Engineering.

Category "A": are offices that have the right of undertaking studies, designs, quantity surveying or management and supervision of the implementation of the engineering projects falling within the area licensed for the engineering office, regardless of the value thereof.

Category "B": are offices that have the right of undertaking studies, designs, quantity surveying and management and supervision of the implementation of engineering projects falling within the licensed area, each of which has a total value not exceeding four million Dinars.
Category "C": are offices that have the right of undertaking studies, designs, quantity surveying and management and supervision of the implementation of engineering projects, falling within the licensed area, each of which has a total value not exceeding one million Dinars

Business Requirements

Age

18 and above

Allowed for Nationalities

Bahraini 100%		GCC 100%	
American 100%		Singaporean 100%	
Icelander 100%		Liechtenstein er 100%	
Norwegian 100%		Swiss 100%	

Foreign Allowed up to 100%

Legal Type

It is allowed to register according to the legal forms mentioned below

Allowed for Individual Commercial Registration (ICR) : Yes

Allowed for Company Commercial Registration (CCR) : Yes

- With Limited Liability Company
- Branch of a Foreign Company
- Bahrain Shareholding Company (Closed)
- Partnership Company
- Simple Commandite Company

Required Step of Licenses and Approvals

Ministry / Directorate	License / Approval Requirements	Approval Type
The Council for Regulating the Practice of Engineering Professions	Architectural and engineering activities and related technical	Pre

	consultancy - Categories (A), (B), (C) – Engineering Offices	
Municipality Affairs	Site Approval for Administrative and support service activities	Post
The Council for Regulating the Practice of Engineering Professions	Architectural and engineering activities and related technical consultancy - Categories (A), (B), (C) – Engineering Offices	Final Site Inspection

The Council for Regulating the Practice of Engineering Professions (Pre) (711-1)

Approval Name	Description	Estimated Time
Architectural and engineering activities and related technical consultancy - Categories (A), (B), (C) – Engineering Offices	This activity includes the preparation of Architectural and Engineering drawings, diagrams and designs; advice and conducting surveys; conducting feasibility studies, researches; setting specifications; supervising the execution, maintenance and operation; estimating costs, quantity surveying; and implementing and managing Engineering projects. This includes Architectural, Civil, Electrical, Mechanical, Chemical, Mining, Petroleum Engineering and other disciplines of Engineering. Category "A": are offices that have the right of undertaking studies, designs, quantity surveying or management and supervision of the implementation of the engineering projects falling within the area licensed for the	30 Days

	engineering office, regardless of the value thereof. Category "B": are offices that have the right of undertaking studies, designs, quantity surveying and management and supervision of the implementation of engineering projects falling within the licensed area, each of which has a total value not exceeding four million Dinars. Category "C": are offices that have the right of undertaking studies, designs, quantity surveying and management and supervision of the implementation of engineering projects, falling within the licensed area, each of which has a total value not exceeding one million Dinars	

Fee Details (if any)

- Bahraini engineering office license - Application submission: BD 100
- Foreign branch engineering office license application submission: BD 1,000

Note:
- As per Prime Minister Edict No 2 for 2017 with respect to CRPEP's service fees

License Information

As per the rules and regulations.
- Should have had actual practice in an engineering profession for not less than consecutive five (5) years or seven intermittent years immediately after obtaining the engineering qualification.
- Shall be fully engaged in practicing within the engineering profession in accordance with the provisions set forth in the implementing regulations. Nevertheless, the Council may permit the licensee, as per its request, to delegate one of its licensed engineers to administer the licensee's office, on a part-time or a full-time basis, for a temporary period not exceeding six months, provided that the office's owner shall bear any responsibility pertaining to the office's works.
- Minimum of two applications for engineers', per discipline required in line with engineering office's category (Bahraini), as per the executive regulation.
- Minimum of three engineers applications for each discipline (Two Cat."A" and One Cat. "B") (Foreign Branch).
- Shall take an insurance policy to cover the legal responsibility with respect to the professional errors according to the conditions and requirements set forth in the implementing regulation.
- Minimum office area:
o Category (A): 150 m2
o Category (B): 100 m2'
o Category (B): 50 m2

- Subject to the provisions of the Commercial Companies Law, an exemption may be granted to foreign entities to establish engineering offices for the practice of engineering professions in the Kingdom of Bahrain, provided that the foreign entity shall fulfill the following conditions:
- The entity shall be existing and holding a license to practice one of the engineering professions out of the Kingdom for a period not less than 15 years.
- The office shall have a responsible full-time manager holding a license to practice an engineering profession in accordance with this law and its implementing regulations.

Required Documents

• Application for Engineering Office's License
•Application for engineer's license

Other Documents

- Law No. 51 of 2014 with respect to Regulating the Practice of Engineering Professions
- Legislative Decree No. (18) of 2021 With respect to amending some provisions of Law No. (51) of 2014 with respect to Regulating the Practice of the Engineering Professions.
- Ministerial Decree No 2 for 2017
- Ministerial Order No 27 for 2016 with respect to Issuance of Executive Regulation of CRPEP
- Renewal Form of Engineering Office's License

Municipality Affairs (Post) (711-1)

Approval Name	Description	Estimated Time
Site Approval for Administrative and support service activities	Municipality Approval for the Commercial Registration address or the site in which the Activity will be practiced	3 Days

Fee Details (if any)

10

License Information

General Conditions:
1. Size of shop/premises must be sufficient for the activity
2. Businesses may not carry out the activity outside the boundaries of the shop/ premises
3. It is prohibited to display or store any items or equipment outside the shop / premises boundary without prior approval from the Municipality. In the event of non-compliance, the Ministry of Municipality Affairs has the right to take necessary action.
4. Maintain cleanliness of the site
5. Comply with the parking space regulations as per the Construction Regulatory Requirements

Activity Specific Conditions:
1. The Commercial Registration for this activity can be registered on commercial, service, and industrial streets..
2. The commercial address of the Commercial Registration for this activity can an office address provided that the site is used for administrative purposes and is not located in a residential area

Note: Uploading pictures of the site/shop may expedite the process of obtaining

approval

Required Documents

•Lease agreement (after obtaining the necessary approvals from other licensing entities)
•Shop photos

Other Documents

•Cabinet's Decision (56) of the year 2022 regarding the Regulatory Requirements of Construction for various areas in the Kingdom of Bahrain

The Council for Regulating the Practice of Engineering Professions (Final Site Inspection) (711-1)

Approval Name	Description	Estimated Time
Architectural and engineering activities and related technical consultancy - Categories (A), (B), (C) – Engineering Offices	This activity includes the preparation of Architectural and Engineering drawings, diagrams and designs; advice and conducting surveys; conducting feasibility studies, researches; setting specifications; supervising the execution, maintenance and operation; estimating costs, quantity surveying; and implementing and managing Engineering projects. This includes Architectural, Civil, Electrical, Mechanical, Chemical, Mining, Petroleum Engineering and other disciplines of Engineering. Category "A": are offices that have the right of undertaking studies, designs, quantity surveying or management and supervision of the implementation of the engineering projects falling within the area licensed for the	30 Days

	engineering office, regardless of the value thereof. Category "B": are offices that have the right of undertaking studies, designs, quantity surveying and management and supervision of the implementation of engineering projects falling within the licensed area, each of which has a total value not exceeding four million Dinars. Category "C": are offices that have the right of undertaking studies, designs, quantity surveying and management and supervision of the implementation of engineering projects, falling within the licensed area, each of which has a total value not exceeding one million Dinars	

Fee Details (if any)

- Bahraini engineering office license - Application submission: BD 100
- Foreign branch engineering office license application submission: BD 1,000

Note:
- As per Prime Minister Edict No 2 for 2017 with respect to CRPEP's service fees

License Information

As per the rules and regulations.
- Should have had actual practice in an engineering profession for not less than consecutive five (5) years or seven intermittent years immediately after obtaining the engineering qualification.
- Shall be fully engaged in practicing within the engineering profession in accordance with the provisions set forth in the implementing regulations. Nevertheless, the Council may permit the licensee, as per its request, to delegate one of its licensed engineers to administer the licensee's office, on a part-time or a full-time basis, for a temporary period not exceeding six months, provided that the office's owner shall bear any responsibility pertaining to the office's works.
- Minimum of two applications for engineers', per discipline required in line with engineering office's category (Bahraini), as per the executive regulation.
- Minimum of three engineers applications for each discipline (Two Cat."A" and One Cat. "B") (Foreign Branch).
- Shall take an insurance policy to cover the legal responsibility with respect to the professional errors according to the conditions and requirements set forth in the implementing regulation.
- Minimum office area:
o Category (A): 150 m2
o Category (B): 100 m2'
o Category (B): 50 m2

- Subject to the provisions of the Commercial Companies Law, an exemption may be granted to foreign entities to establish engineering offices for the practice of engineering professions in the Kingdom of Bahrain, provided that the foreign entity shall fulfill the following conditions:
- The entity shall be existing and holding a license to practice one of the engineering professions out of the Kingdom for a period not less than 15 years.
- The office shall have a responsible full-time manager holding a license to practice an engineering profession in accordance with this law and its implementing regulations.

Required Documents

• Application for Engineering Office's License
•Application for engineer's license

Other Documents

- Law No. 51 of 2014 with respect to Regulating the Practice of Engineering Professions
- Legislative Decree No. (18) of 2021 With respect to amending some provisions of Law No. (51) of 2014 with respect to Regulating the Practice of the Engineering Professions.
- Ministerial Decree No 2 for 2017
- Ministerial Order No 27 for 2016 with respect to Issuance of Executive Regulation of CRPEP
- Renewal Form of Engineering Office's License

Professional, scientific and technical activities

ISIC4	Business activity
711-2	Architectural and engineering activities and related technical consultancy - Categories (D), (E) - Companies having their own Engineering Departments

Description

Category "D": are entities, institutions and companies that have in-house engineering units for carrying out the preparation of studies, designs, quantity surveying and management and supervision of the implementation of their own engineering projects, regardless of the value thereof.

Category "E": are entities, institutions and companies that have in-house engineering units for undertaking designs, quantity surveying and project management, provided that a licensed engineering office, which is classified based on the project value, shall inspect such designs and supervise their implementation, subject to the specific licensed area as determined by CRPEP in terms of the value of the project and Categories of engineers undertaking the designs, on a case-by-case basis.

Business Requirements

Age

18 and above

Allowed for Nationalities

Bahraini 100%		GCC 100%	
American 100%		Singaporean 100%	
Icelander 100%		Liechtenstein er 100%	
Norwegian 100%		Swiss 100%	

Foreign Allowed up to 100%

Legal Type

It is allowed to register according to the legal forms mentioned below

Allowed for Individual Commercial Registration (ICR) : Yes

Allowed for Company Commercial Registration (CCR) : Yes

- With Limited Liability Company
- Branch of a Foreign Company
- Bahrain Shareholding Company (Closed)
- Partnership Company
- Simple Commandite Company

Required Step of Licenses and Approvals

Ministry / Directorate	License / Approval Requirements	Approval Type
The Council for Regulating the Practice of Engineering Professions	Architectural and engineering activities and related technical	Pre

	consultancy - Categories (D), (E) - Companies having their ow	
Supreme Council for Environment	Environmental Approval for Structural and Building Welding and X-ray Testing	Post
Municipality Affairs	Site Approval for Administrative and support service activities	Post
The Council for Regulating the Practice of Engineering Professions	Architectural and engineering activities and related technical consultancy - Categories (D), (E) - Companies having their ow	Final Site Inspection

The Council for Regulating the Practice of Engineering Professions (Pre) (711-2)

Approval Name	Description	Estimated Time
Architectural and engineering activities and related technical consultancy - Categories (D), (E) - Companies having their ow	Category "D": are entities, institutions and companies that have in-house engineering units for carrying out the preparation of studies, designs, quantity surveying and management and supervision of the implementation of their own engineering projects, regardless of the value thereof. Category "E": are entities, institutions and companies that have in-house engineering units for undertaking designs, quantity surveying and project management, provided that a licensed engineering office, which is classified based on the project value, shall inspect such designs and supervise their implementation, subject to the specific licensed area as determined by CRPEP in terms of the value of the project and	30 Days

	Categories of engineers undertaking the designs, on a case-by-case basis.	

Fee Details (if any)

- License application submission (BHD1,000/-)

Note:
- As per Prime Minister Edict No 2 for 2017 with respect to CRPEP's service fees

License Information

As per the rules and regulations.
- Minimum of two applications for Engineers', per Discipline required in line with Engineering office's category (Bahraini), as per the Executive Regulation.

Required Documents

• Application for Engineering Office's License
•Application for engineer's license

Other Documents

•Law No. 51 of 2014 with respect to Regulating the Practice of Engineering Professions
•Legislative Decree No. (18) of 2021 With respect to amending some provisions of Law No. (51) of 2014 with respect to Regulating the Practice of the Engineering Professions.
•Ministerial Decree No 2 for 2017
•Ministerial Order No 27 for 2016 with respect to Issuance of Executive Regulation of CRPEP
•Renewal Form of Engineering Office's License

Supreme Council for Environment (Post) (711-2)

Approval Name	Description	Estimated Time
Environmental Approval for Structural and Building Welding and X-ray Testing	Environmental Approval for Structural and Building Welding and X-ray Testing	10 Days

Fee Details (if any)

The fee varies depending on the devices and materials that will be used

License Information

To check the requirements for this approval, kindly download the detailed requirements sheet from the other downloadable documents section, which includes the following requirements:

- Building layout Engineering and Equipment Requirements
- Work-place Requirements
- Storage Requirements
- Material Management Requirements
- Waste Management Requirements
- Documents and Reporting Requirements
- General Requirements

Subject to the information provided in the (EA-2) electronic form, some projects may require preparation and submission of an Environmental Impact Assessment Study that must be prepared by an environmental consultancy office “accredited by the Supreme Council for Environment”; where the scope of the study shall be agreed upon in writing between the Council, the Investor, and the Consultant. Each consultant office shall determine its fees for preparing the study.

Other Documents

- Requirements for business activities
- Resolution (3) 2005 requirements and environmental standards
- Resolution (5) 2005 environmental conditions required on service activity sites

Municipality Affairs (Post) (711-2)

Approval Name	Description	Estimated Time
Site Approval for Administrative and support service activities	Municipality Approval for the Commercial Registration address or the site in which the Activity will be practiced	3 Days

Fee Details (if any)

10

License Information

General Conditions:
1. Size of shop/premises must be sufficient for the activity
2. Businesses may not carry out the activity outside the boundaries of the shop/ premises
3. It is prohibited to display or store any items or equipment outside the shop / premises boundary without prior approval from the Municipality. In the event of non-compliance, the Ministry of Municipality Affairs has the right to take necessary action.
4. Maintain cleanliness of the site
5. Comply with the parking space regulations as per the Construction Regulatory Requirements

Activity Specific Conditions:
1. The Commercial Registration for this activity can be registered on commercial, service, and industrial streets..
2. The commercial address of the Commercial Registration for this activity can an office address provided that the site is used for administrative purposes and is not located in a residential area

Note: Uploading pictures of the site/shop may expedite the process of obtaining

approval

Required Documents

•Lease agreement (after obtaining the necessary approvals from other licensing entities)
•Shop photos

Other Documents

•Cabinet's Decision (56) of the year 2022 regarding the Regulatory Requirements of Construction for various areas in the Kingdom of Bahrain

The Council for Regulating the Practice of Engineering Professions (Final Site Inspection) (711-2)

Approval Name	Description	Estimated Time
Architectural and engineering activities and related technical consultancy - Categories (D), (E) - Companies having their ow	Category "D": are entities, institutions and companies that have in-house engineering units for carrying out the preparation of studies, designs, quantity surveying and management and supervision of the implementation of their own engineering projects, regardless of the value thereof. Category "E": are entities, institutions and companies that have in-house engineering units for undertaking designs, quantity surveying and project management, provided that a licensed engineering office, which is classified based on the project value, shall inspect such designs and supervise their implementation, subject to the specific licensed area as determined by CRPEP in terms of the value of the project and	30 Days

	Categories of engineers undertaking the designs, on a case-by-case basis.	

Fee Details (if any)

- License application submission (BHD1,000/-)

Note:
- As per Prime Minister Edict No 2 for 2017 with respect to CRPEP's service fees

License Information

As per the rules and regulations.
- Minimum of two applications for Engineers', per Discipline required in line with Engineering office's category (Bahraini), as per the Executive Regulation.

Required Documents

• Application for Engineering Office's License
•Application for engineer's license

Other Documents

•Law No. 51 of 2014 with respect to Regulating the Practice of Engineering Professions
•Legislative Decree No. (18) of 2021 With respect to amending some provisions of Law No. (51) of 2014 with respect to Regulating the Practice of the Engineering Professions.
•Ministerial Decree No 2 for 2017
•Ministerial Order No 27 for 2016 with respect to Issuance of Executive Regulation of CRPEP
•Renewal Form of Engineering Office's License

Professional, scientific and technical activities

ISIC4	Business activity
711-3	Architectural and engineering activities and related technical consultancy - Category (K) – Opinion Office

Description

Category "K": are offices that have the right of undertaking studies and providing expertise and advisory in engineering areas in specific field licensed by CRPEP. Such offices shall be called “Opinion Engineering Office”, and shall only be licensed for Bahraini engineers with experience in engineering.

Business Requirements

Age

18 and above

Allowed for Nationalities

Bahraini 100%		GCC 100%	
American 100%		Singaporean 100%	
Icelander 100%		Liechtenstein er 100%	
Norwegian 100%		Swiss 100%	

Foreign Allowed up to 100%

Legal Type

It is allowed to register according to the legal forms mentioned below

Allowed for Individual Commercial Registration (ICR) : Yes

Allowed for Company Commercial Registration (CCR) : Yes

- With Limited Liability Company
- Branch of a Foreign Company
- Bahrain Shareholding Company (Closed)
- Partnership Company
- Simple Commandite Company

Required Step of Licenses and Approvals

Ministry / Directorate	License / Approval Requirements	Approval Type
The Council for Regulating the Practice of Engineering Professions	Architectural and engineering activities and related technical consultancy - Category (K) – Opinion Office	Pre
Municipality Affairs	Site Approval for Administrative and support service activities	Post
The Council for Regulating the Practice of Engineering Professions	Architectural and engineering activities and related technical consultancy - Category (K) – Opinion Office	Final Site Inspection

The Council for Regulating the Practice of Engineering Professions (Pre) (711-3)

Approval Name	Description	Estimated Time
Architectural and engineering activities and related technical consultancy - Category (K) – Opinion Office	Category "K": are offices that have the right of undertaking studies and providing expertise and advisory in engineering areas in specific field licensed by CRPEP. Such offices shall be called “Opinion Engineering Office”, and shall only be licensed for Bahraini engineers with experience in engineering.	30 Days

Fee Details (if any)

- License application submission (BHD100/-)

Note:

- As per Prime Minister Edict No 2 for 2017 with respect to CRPEP's service fees

License Information

As per the rules and regulations.

- Should be classified in Category (A) and should have practiced the profession actually for a period of not less than 20 years.
- The opinion engineer should work independently or within an existing and licensed engineering office. He is required to submit a copy of the work contract signed between him and the engineering office which should be valid for not less than one year.
- The opinion engineer should practice the profession in the specialization he is licensed

for by CRPEP only.
- The opinion engineer should not design or execute any Turnkey project.
- Minimum of one application for Engineer, per Discipline required in line with Engineering office's category (Bahraini), as per the Executive Regulation.
- Shall take an insurance policy to cover the legal responsibility with respect to the professional errors according to the conditions and requirements set forth in the implementing regulation.
- Minimum office area:
o Category (K): 20 m2

Required Documents

• Application for Engineering Office's License
•Application for engineer's license

Other Documents

•Law No. 51 of 2014 with respect to Regulating the Practice of Engineering Professions
•Legislative Decree No. (18) of 2021 With respect to amending some provisions of Law No. (51) of 2014 with respect to Regulating the Practice of the Engineering Professions.
•Ministerial Decree No 2 for 2017
•Ministerial Order No 27 for 2016 with respect to Issuance of Executive Regulation of CRPEP
•Renewal Form of Engineering Office's License

Municipality Affairs (Post) (711-3)

Approval Name	Description	Estimated Time
Site Approval for Administrative and support service activities	Municipality Approval for the Commercial Registration address or the site in which the Activity will be practiced	3 Days

Fee Details (if any)

10

License Information

General Conditions:
1. Size of shop/premises must be sufficient for the activity
2. Businesses may not carry out the activity outside the boundaries of the shop/ premises
3. It is prohibited to display or store any items or equipment outside the shop / premises boundary without prior approval from the Municipality. In the event of non-compliance, the Ministry of Municipality Affairs has the right to take necessary action.
4. Maintain cleanliness of the site
5. Comply with the parking space regulations as per the Construction Regulatory Requirements

Activity Specific Conditions:
1. The Commercial Registration for this activity can be registered on commercial, service, and industrial streets..
2. The commercial address of the Commercial Registration for this activity can an office address provided that the site is used for administrative purposes and is not located in a residential area

Note: Uploading pictures of the site/shop may expedite the process of obtaining

approval

Required Documents

•Lease agreement (after obtaining the necessary approvals from other licensing entities)
•Shop photos

Other Documents

•Cabinet's Decision (56) of the year 2022 regarding the Regulatory Requirements of Construction for various areas in the Kingdom of Bahrain

The Council for Regulating the Practice of Engineering Professions (Final Site Inspection) (711-3)

Approval Name	Description	Estimated Time
Architectural and engineering activities and related technical consultancy - Category (K) – Opinion Office	Category "K": are offices that have the right of undertaking studies and providing expertise and advisory in engineering areas in specific field licensed by CRPEP. Such offices shall be called “Opinion Engineering Office”, and shall only be licensed for Bahraini engineers with experience in engineering.	30 Days

Fee Details (if any)

- License application submission (BHD100/-)

Note:

- As per Prime Minister Edict No 2 for 2017 with respect to CRPEP's service fees

License Information

As per the rules and regulations.

- Should be classified in Category (A) and should have practiced the profession actually for a period of not less than 20 years.
- The opinion engineer should work independently or within an existing and licensed engineering office. He is required to submit a copy of the work contract signed between him and the engineering office which should be valid for not less than one year.
- The opinion engineer should practice the profession in the specialization he is licensed

for by CRPEP only.
- The opinion engineer should not design or execute any Turnkey project.
- Minimum of one application for Engineer, per Discipline required in line with Engineering office's category (Bahraini), as per the Executive Regulation.
- Shall take an insurance policy to cover the legal responsibility with respect to the professional errors according to the conditions and requirements set forth in the implementing regulation.
- Minimum office area:
o Category (K): 20 m2

Required Documents

• Application for Engineering Office's License
•Application for engineer's license

Other Documents

•Law No. 51 of 2014 with respect to Regulating the Practice of Engineering Professions
•Legislative Decree No. (18) of 2021 With respect to amending some provisions of Law No. (51) of 2014 with respect to Regulating the Practice of the Engineering Professions.
•Ministerial Decree No 2 for 2017
•Ministerial Order No 27 for 2016 with respect to Issuance of Executive Regulation of CRPEP
•Renewal Form of Engineering Office's License

Professional, scientific and technical activities

ISIC4	Business activity
711-4	Architectural and engineering activities and related technical consultancy - Category (F) – Engineering Laboratories and testing activities

Description

Category "F": are engineering laboratories that have their own engineering personnel for the preparation of various studies.

Business Requirements

Age

18 and above

Allowed for Nationalities

Bahraini 100%		GCC 100%	
American 100%		Singaporean 100%	
Icelander 100%		Liechtenstein er 100%	
Norwegian 100%		Swiss 100%	

Foreign Allowed up to 100%

Legal Type

It is allowed to register according to the legal forms mentioned below

Allowed for Individual Commercial Registration (ICR) : Yes

Allowed for Company Commercial Registration (CCR) : Yes

- With Limited Liability Company
- Branch of a Foreign Company
- Bahrain Shareholding Company (Closed)
- Partnership Company
- Simple Commandite Company

Required Step of Licenses and Approvals

Ministry / Directorate	License / Approval Requirements	Approval Type
The Council for Regulating the Practice of Engineering Professions	Architectural and engineering activities and related technical consultancy - Category (F) – Engineering Laboratories and test	Pre
Municipality Affairs	Site Approval for Administrative and support service activities	Post
The Council for Regulating the Practice of Engineering Professions	Architectural and engineering activities and related technical consultancy - Category (F) – Engineering Laboratories and test	Final Site Inspection

The Council for Regulating the Practice of Engineering Professions (Pre) (711-4)

Approval Name	Description	Estimated Time
Architectural and engineering activities and related technical consultancy - Category (F) – Engineering Laboratories and test	Category "F": are engineering laboratories that have their own engineering personnel for the preparation of various studies.	30 Days

Fee Details (if any)

- License application submission (BHD500/-)
Note:
- As per Prime Minister Edict No 2 for 2017 with respect to CRPEP's service fees

License Information

As per the rules and regulations.
- Minimum of two applications for Engineers' (Cat."A" and Cat. "B"), per Discipline required in line with Engineering office's category, as per the Executive Regulation.
- Minimum office area:
o Category (F): 50 m2

Required Documents

• Application for Engineering Office's License
•Application for engineer's license

Other Documents

- Law No. 51 of 2014 with respect to Regulating the Practice of Engineering Professions
- Legislative Decree No. (18) of 2021 With respect to amending some provisions of Law No. (51) of 2014 with respect to Regulating the Practice of the Engineering Professions.
- Ministerial Decree No 2 for 2017
- Ministerial Order No 27 for 2016 with respect to Issuance of Executive Regulation of CRPEP
- Renewal Form of Engineering Office's License

Municipality Affairs (Post) (711-4)

Approval Name	Description	Estimated Time
Site Approval for Administrative and support service activities	Municipality Approval for the Commercial Registration address or the site in which the Activity will be practiced	3 Days

Fee Details (if any)

10

License Information

General Conditions:
1. Size of shop/premises must be sufficient for the activity
2. Businesses may not carry out the activity outside the boundaries of the shop/ premises
3. It is prohibited to display or store any items or equipment outside the shop / premises boundary without prior approval from the Municipality. In the event of non-compliance, the Ministry of Municipality Affairs has the right to take necessary action.
4. Maintain cleanliness of the site
5. Comply with the parking space regulations as per the Construction Regulatory Requirements

Activity Specific Conditions:
1. The Commercial Registration for this activity can be registered on commercial, service, and industrial streets..
2. The commercial address of the Commercial Registration for this activity can an office address provided that the site is used for administrative purposes and is not located in a residential area

Note: Uploading pictures of the site/shop may expedite the process of obtaining

approval

Required Documents

•Lease agreement (after obtaining the necessary approvals from other licensing entities)
•Shop photos

Other Documents

•Cabinet's Decision (56) of the year 2022 regarding the Regulatory Requirements of Construction for various areas in the Kingdom of Bahrain

The Council for Regulating the Practice of Engineering Professions (Final Site Inspection) (711-4)

Approval Name	Description	Estimated Time
Architectural and engineering activities and related technical consultancy - Category (F) – Engineering Laboratories and test	Category "F": are engineering laboratories that have their own engineering personnel for the preparation of various studies.	30 Days

Fee Details (if any)

- License application submission (BHD500/-)
Note:
- As per Prime Minister Edict No 2 for 2017 with respect to CRPEP's service fees

License Information

As per the rules and regulations.
- Minimum of two applications for Engineers' (Cat."A" and Cat. "B"), per Discipline required in line with Engineering office's category, as per the Executive Regulation.
- Minimum office area:
o Category (F): 50 m2

Required Documents

• Application for Engineering Office's License
•Application for engineer's license

Other Documents

- Law No. 51 of 2014 with respect to Regulating the Practice of Engineering Professions
- Legislative Decree No. (18) of 2021 With respect to amending some provisions of Law No. (51) of 2014 with respect to Regulating the Practice of the Engineering Professions.
- Ministerial Decree No 2 for 2017
- Ministerial Order No 27 for 2016 with respect to Issuance of Executive Regulation of CRPEP
- Renewal Form of Engineering Office's License

Professional, scientific and technical activities

ISIC4	Business activity
711-5	Architectural and engineering activities and related technical consultancy - Renewable Energy Engineering

Description

This activity includes Renewable Energy Engineering including Solar Photovoltaics (PV), Solar Thermal, Wind Energy, Bio Energy, etc.

Business Requirements

Age

18 and above

Allowed for Nationalities

Bahraini 100%		GCC 100%	
American 100%		Singaporean 100%	
Icelander 100%		Liechtenstein er 100%	
Norwegian 100%		Swiss 100%	

Foreign Allowed up to 100%

Legal Type

It is allowed to register according to the legal forms mentioned below

Allowed for Individual Commercial Registration (ICR) : Yes

Allowed for Company Commercial Registration (CCR) : Yes

- With Limited Liability Company
- Branch of a Foreign Company
- Bahrain Shareholding Company (Closed)
- Partnership Company
- Simple Commandite Company

Required Step of Licenses and Approvals

Ministry / Directorate	License / Approval Requirements	Approval Type
The Council for Regulating the Practice of Engineering Professions	Architectural and engineering activities and related technical consultancy - Renewable Energy Engineering	Pre
Municipality Affairs	Site Approval for Administrative and support service activities	Post
The Council for Regulating the Practice of Engineering Professions	Architectural and engineering activities and related technical consultancy - Renewable Energy Engineering	Final Site Inspection

The Council for Regulating the Practice of Engineering Professions (Pre) (711-5)

Approval Name	Description	Estimated Time
Architectural and engineering activities and related technical consultancy - Renewable Energy Engineering	This activity includes Renewable Energy Engineering including Solar Photovoltaics (PV), Solar Thermal, Wind Energy, Bio Energy, etc.	30 Days

Fee Details (if any)

- Bahraini engineering office license - Application submission: BD 100
- Foreign branch engineering office license application submission: BD 1,000
- Companies having their own Engineering Departments License application submission (BHD1,000/-)

Note:
- As per Prime Minister Edict No 2 for 2017 with respect to CRPEP's service fees

License Information

As per the rules and regulations.
- Should have had actual practice in an engineering profession for not less than consecutive five (5) years or seven intermittent years immediately after obtaining the engineering qualification.
- Shall be fully engaged in practicing within the engineering profession in accordance with the provisions set forth in the implementing regulations. Nevertheless, the Council may permit the licensee, as per its request, to delegate one of its licensed engineers to administer the licensee's office, on a part-time or a full-time basis, for a temporary period not exceeding six months, provided that the office's owner shall bear any responsibility pertaining to the office's works.
- Minimum of two applications for engineers', per discipline required in line with engineering office's category (Bahraini), as per the executive regulation.

- Minimum of three engineers applications for each discipline (Two Cat."A" and One Cat. "B") (Foreign Branch).
- Shall take an insurance policy to cover the legal responsibility with respect to the professional errors according to the conditions and requirements set forth in the implementing regulation.
- Minimum office area:
o Category (K): 20 m2
o Category (A): 150 m2
o Category (B): 100 m2'
o Category (B): 50 m2

- Subject to the provisions of the Commercial Companies Law, an exemption may be granted to foreign entities to establish engineering offices for the practice of engineering professions in the Kingdom of Bahrain, provided that the foreign entity shall fulfill the following conditions:
o The entity shall be existing and holding a license to practice one of the engineering professions out of the Kingdom for a period not less than 15 years.
o The office shall have a responsible full-time manager holding a license to practice an engineering profession in accordance with this law and its implementing regulations.
- Should be classified in Category (A) and should have practiced the profession actually for a period of not less than 20 years.
- The opinion engineer should work independently or within an existing and licensed engineering office. He is required to submit a copy of the work contract signed between him and the engineering office which should be valid for not less than one year.
- The opinion engineer should practice the profession in the specialization he is licensed for by CRPEP only.
- The opinion engineer should not design or execute any Turnkey project.
- Minimum of one application for Engineer, per Discipline required in line with Engineering office's category (Bahraini), as per the Executive Regulation.
- Shall take an insurance policy to cover the legal responsibility with respect to the professional errors according to the conditions and requirements set forth in the Implementing Regulation.

Required Documents

• Application for Engineering Office's License
•Application for engineer's license

Other Documents

- Law No. 51 of 2014 with respect to Regulating the Practice of Engineering Professions
- Legislative Decree No. (18) of 2021 With respect to amending some provisions of Law No. (51) of 2014 with respect to Regulating the Practice of the Engineering Professions.
- Ministerial Decree No 2 for 2017
- Ministerial Order No 27 for 2016 with respect to Issuance of Executive Regulation of CRPEP
- Renewal Form of Engineering Office's License

Municipality Affairs (Post) (711-5)

Approval Name	Description	Estimated Time
Site Approval for Administrative and support service activities	Municipality Approval for the Commercial Registration address or the site in which the Activity will be practiced	3 Days

Fee Details (if any)

10

License Information

General Conditions:
1. Size of shop/premises must be sufficient for the activity
2. Businesses may not carry out the activity outside the boundaries of the shop/ premises
3. It is prohibited to display or store any items or equipment outside the shop / premises boundary without prior approval from the Municipality. In the event of non-compliance, the Ministry of Municipality Affairs has the right to take necessary action.
4. Maintain cleanliness of the site
5. Comply with the parking space regulations as per the Construction Regulatory Requirements

Activity Specific Conditions:
1. The Commercial Registration for this activity can be registered on commercial, service, and industrial streets..
2. The commercial address of the Commercial Registration for this activity can an office address provided that the site is used for administrative purposes and is not located in a residential area

Note: Uploading pictures of the site/shop may expedite the process of obtaining

approval

Required Documents

•Lease agreement (after obtaining the necessary approvals from other licensing entities)
•Shop photos

Other Documents

•Cabinet's Decision (56) of the year 2022 regarding the Regulatory Requirements of Construction for various areas in the Kingdom of Bahrain

The Council for Regulating the Practice of Engineering Professions (Final Site Inspection) (711-5)

Approval Name	Description	Estimated Time
Architectural and engineering activities and related technical consultancy - Renewable Energy Engineering	This activity includes Renewable Energy Engineering including Solar Photovoltaics (PV), Solar Thermal, Wind Energy, Bio Energy, etc.	30 Days

Fee Details (if any)

- Bahraini engineering office license - Application submission: BD 100
- Foreign branch engineering office license application submission: BD 1,000
- Companies having their own Engineering Departments License application submission (BHD1,000/-)

Note:
- As per Prime Minister Edict No 2 for 2017 with respect to CRPEP's service fees

License Information

As per the rules and regulations.
- Should have had actual practice in an engineering profession for not less than consecutive five (5) years or seven intermittent years immediately after obtaining the engineering qualification.
- Shall be fully engaged in practicing within the engineering profession in accordance with the provisions set forth in the implementing regulations. Nevertheless, the Council may permit the licensee, as per its request, to delegate one of its licensed engineers to administer the licensee's office, on a part-time or a full-time basis, for a temporary period not exceeding six months, provided that the office's owner shall bear any responsibility pertaining to the office's works.
- Minimum of two applications for engineers', per discipline required in line with engineering office's category (Bahraini), as per the executive regulation.

- Minimum of three engineers applications for each discipline (Two Cat."A" and One Cat. "B") (Foreign Branch).
- Shall take an insurance policy to cover the legal responsibility with respect to the professional errors according to the conditions and requirements set forth in the implementing regulation.
- Minimum office area:
o Category (K): 20 m2
o Category (A): 150 m2
o Category (B): 100 m2'
o Category (B): 50 m2

- Subject to the provisions of the Commercial Companies Law, an exemption may be granted to foreign entities to establish engineering offices for the practice of engineering professions in the Kingdom of Bahrain, provided that the foreign entity shall fulfill the following conditions:
o The entity shall be existing and holding a license to practice one of the engineering professions out of the Kingdom for a period not less than 15 years.
o The office shall have a responsible full-time manager holding a license to practice an engineering profession in accordance with this law and its implementing regulations.
- Should be classified in Category (A) and should have practiced the profession actually for a period of not less than 20 years.
- The opinion engineer should work independently or within an existing and licensed engineering office. He is required to submit a copy of the work contract signed between him and the engineering office which should be valid for not less than one year.
- The opinion engineer should practice the profession in the specialization he is licensed for by CRPEP only.
- The opinion engineer should not design or execute any Turnkey project.
- Minimum of one application for Engineer, per Discipline required in line with Engineering office's category (Bahraini), as per the Executive Regulation.
- Shall take an insurance policy to cover the legal responsibility with respect to the professional errors according to the conditions and requirements set forth in the Implementing Regulation.

Required Documents

• Application for Engineering Office's License
•Application for engineer's license

Other Documents

- Law No. 51 of 2014 with respect to Regulating the Practice of Engineering Professions
- Legislative Decree No. (18) of 2021 With respect to amending some provisions of Law No. (51) of 2014 with respect to Regulating the Practice of the Engineering Professions.
- Ministerial Decree No 2 for 2017
- Ministerial Order No 27 for 2016 with respect to Issuance of Executive Regulation of CRPEP
- Renewal Form of Engineering Office's License

Professional, scientific and technical activities

ISIC4	Business activity
711-6	Architectural and engineering activities and related technical consultancy - Energy efficiency services

Description

This activity includes the management of energy efficiency projects, including the provision of energy efficiency audit services in buildings and facilities, design review, installation, maintenance, operation and monitoring of energy efficiency systems.

Business Requirements

Age

18 and above

Allowed for Nationalities

Bahraini 100%	GCC 100%
American 100%	Singaporean 100%
Icelander 100%	Liechtensteiner 100%
Norwegian 100%	Swiss 100%

Foreign Allowed up to 100%

Legal Type

It is allowed to register according to the legal forms mentioned below

Allowed for Individual Commercial Registration (ICR) : Yes

Allowed for Company Commercial Registration (CCR) : Yes

- Bahrain Shareholding Company (Public)
- With Limited Liability Company
- Branch of a Foreign Company
- Bahrain Shareholding Company (Closed)
- Partnership Company
- Simple Commandite Company
- Commandite By Shares Company

Required Step of Licenses and Approvals

Ministry / Directorate	License / Approval Requirements	Approval Type
Municipality Affairs	Site Approval for Administrative and support service activities	Post
Electricity and Water Conservation Directorate	Approval For Energy efficiency services Activity	Post

Municipality Affairs (Post) (711-6)

Approval Name	Description	Estimated Time
Site Approval for Administrative and support service activities	Municipality Approval for the Commercial Registration address or the site in which the Activity will be practiced	3 Days

Fee Details (if any)

10

License Information

General Conditions:
1. Size of shop/premises must be sufficient for the activity
2. Businesses may not carry out the activity outside the boundaries of the shop/ premises
3. It is prohibited to display or store any items or equipment outside the shop / premises boundary without prior approval from the Municipality. In the event of non-compliance, the Ministry of Municipality Affairs has the right to take necessary action.
4. Maintain cleanliness of the site
5. Comply with the parking space regulations as per the Construction Regulatory Requirements

Activity Specific Conditions:
1. The Commercial Registration for this activity can be registered on commercial, service, and industrial streets..
2. The commercial address of the Commercial Registration for this activity can an office address provided that the site is used for administrative purposes and is not located in a residential area

Note: Uploading pictures of the site/shop may expedite the process of obtaining

approval

Required Documents

•Lease agreement (after obtaining the necessary approvals from other licensing entities)
•Shop photos

Other Documents

•Cabinet's Decision (56) of the year 2022 regarding the Regulatory Requirements of Construction for various areas in the Kingdom of Bahrain

Electricity and Water Conservation Directorate (Post) (711-6)

Approval Name	Description	Estimated Time
Approval For Energy efficiency services Activity	This activity includes the management of energy efficiency projects, including the provision of energy efficiency audit services in buildings and facilities, design review, installation, maintenance, operation and monitoring of energy efficiency systems.	3 Days

Fee Details (if any)

Full Accreditation
Registration 1000 BD
Renewal 500 BD

Provisional Accreditation
Registration 500 BD
Renewal 250 BD

License Information

Full Accreditation Validity
3 Years

Provisional Accreditation Validity
1 Year

Other Documents

- Application Form for Accreditation of Energy Services Company
- ESCO-Accreditation-Scheme Final
- Procedure of Approval for ESCO
- قرار بشأن تنظيم عمل الشركات المتخصصة بكفاءة الطاقة

Professional, scientific and technical activities

ISIC4	Business activity
71202-1	Testing, Inspection, and Certification Services - ISO Standards Consulting

Description

This activity includes providing advice, guidance and operational assistance to companies and other organizations on management issues and applying ISO standards in various fields.

Applicant for this activity cannot add “ISO standards certification” activity to the same commercial registration of any other commercial registration or any other commercial register of its own

Business Requirements

✔ Age

18 and above

✔ Allowed for Nationalities

Bahraini 100%	GCC 100%
American 100%	Singaporean 100%
Icelander 100%	Liechtenstein er 100%
Norwegian 100%	Swiss 100%

Foreign Allowed up to 100%

Legal Type

It is allowed to register according to the legal forms mentioned below

Allowed for Individual Commercial Registration (ICR) : Yes

Allowed for Company Commercial Registration (CCR) : Yes

Allowed for Sijilli : Yes

- Bahrain Shareholding Company (Public)
- With Limited Liability Company
- Branch of a Foreign Company
- Bahrain Shareholding Company (Closed)
- Partnership Company
- Simple Commandite Company
- Commandite By Shares Company
- Non Profit Company

Required Step of Licenses and Approvals

Ministry / Directorate	License / Approval Requirements	Approval Type
Directorate Of Standards And Metrology	Notification to Directorate of Testing and Metrology - ISO Standards Consulting	Notification Only
Municipality Affairs	Site Approval for Administrative and support service activities	Post

Directorate Of Standards And Metrology (Notification Only) (71202-1)

Approval Name	Description	Estimated Time
Notification to Directorate of Testing and Metrology - ISO Standards Consulting	A notification will be sent to the Directorate of Testing and Metrology informing them that a Commercial Registration with this activity has been issued. The entity, being a regulator of this activity, shall monitor the adherence to the operational requirements of this activity.	1 Days

Fee Details (if any)

MOIC's activity fees apply (BD100 for the first 3 Activities)

License Information

The following operational requirements must be adhered to during the practice of this activity:
1- Consulting firm does not engage in the activity of issuing ISO certificates
2- Adherence to all clauses related to impartiality according to the latest version of the ISO 17021 Standard (https://bsmd.moic.gov.bh/store/standards/iso:pub:std:IS:61651/ISO-IEC%2017021-1:2015)
3- Consultants must be certified as lead auditors within the consultation scope

Municipality Affairs (Post) (71202-1)

Approval Name	Description	Estimated Time
Site Approval for Administrative and support service activities	Municipality Approval for the Commercial Registration address or the site in which the Activity will be practiced	3 Days

Fee Details (if any)

10

License Information

General Conditions:
1. Size of shop/premises must be sufficient for the activity
2. Businesses may not carry out the activity outside the boundaries of the shop/ premises
3. It is prohibited to display or store any items or equipment outside the shop / premises boundary without prior approval from the Municipality. In the event of non-compliance, the Ministry of Municipality Affairs has the right to take necessary action.
4. Maintain cleanliness of the site
5. Comply with the parking space regulations as per the Construction Regulatory Requirements

Activity Specific Conditions:
1. The Commercial Registration for this activity can be registered on commercial, service, and industrial streets..
2. The commercial address of the Commercial Registration for this activity can an office address provided that the site is used for administrative purposes and is not located in a residential area

Note: Uploading pictures of the site/shop may expedite the process of obtaining

approval

Required Documents

•Lease agreement (after obtaining the necessary approvals from other licensing entities)
•Shop photos

Other Documents

•Cabinet's Decision (56) of the year 2022 regarding the Regulatory Requirements of Construction for various areas in the Kingdom of Bahrain

Professional, scientific and technical activities

ISIC4	Business activity
71202-2	Testing, Inspection, and Certification Services - ISO Standards Certification

Description

This activity includes establishments and companies that operate independently or as agents of international organizations and bodies specialized in the granting and issuance of ISO certificates in various fields.

Applicant for this activity cannot add “ISO standards consultation” activity to the same commercial registration of any other commercial registration
or any other commercial register of its own

Business Requirements

✔ Age

18 and above

✔ Allowed for Nationalities

Bahraini 100%	GCC 100%
American 100%	Singaporean 100%
Icelander 100%	Liechtenstein er 100%
Norwegian 100%	Swiss 100%

Foreign Allowed up to 100%

Legal Type

It is allowed to register according to the legal forms mentioned below

Allowed for Individual Commercial Registration (ICR) : Yes

Allowed for Company Commercial Registration (CCR) : Yes

- Bahrain Shareholding Company (Public)
- With Limited Liability Company
- Branch of a Foreign Company
- Bahrain Shareholding Company (Closed)
- Partnership Company
- Simple Commandite Company
- Commandite By Shares Company
- Non Profit Company

Required Step of Licenses and Approvals

Ministry / Directorate	License / Approval Requirements	Approval Type
Directorate Of Standards And Metrology	Notification to Directorate of Testing and Metrology - ISO Standards Certification	Notification Only
Municipality Affairs	Site Approval for Administrative and support service activities	Post

Directorate Of Standards And Metrology (Notification Only) (71202-2)

Approval Name	Description	Estimated Time
Notification to Directorate of Testing and Metrology - ISO Standards Certification	A notification will be sent to the Directorate of Testing and Metrology informing them that a Commercial Registration with this activity has been issued. The entity, being a regulator of this activity, shall monitor the adherence to the operational requirements of this activity.	1 Days

Fee Details (if any)

MOIC's activity fees apply (BD100 for the first 3 Activities)

License Information

The following operational requirements must be adhered to, during the practice of this activity:
1- Must not engage in the activity of ISO Standards Consulting
2- Seek accreditation from an International Accreditation Forum Multilateral Recognition Arrangement (IAF / MLA) signatory accreditation body within a period not exceeding two years from the date of license approval. (Branches of an overseas ISO certification/registration body should be accredited with such before applying for this activity)
3- Ensure the audit team members, even if subcontracted, have not previously offered consultation for the same client as free-lance consultants or through a consultancy firm.

Municipality Affairs (Post) (71202-2)

Approval Name	Description	Estimated Time
Site Approval for Administrative and support service activities	Municipality Approval for the Commercial Registration address or the site in which the Activity will be practiced	3 Days

Fee Details (if any)

10

License Information

General Conditions:
1. Size of shop/premises must be sufficient for the activity
2. Businesses may not carry out the activity outside the boundaries of the shop/ premises
3. It is prohibited to display or store any items or equipment outside the shop / premises boundary without prior approval from the Municipality. In the event of non-compliance, the Ministry of Municipality Affairs has the right to take necessary action.
4. Maintain cleanliness of the site
5. Comply with the parking space regulations as per the Construction Regulatory Requirements

Activity Specific Conditions:
1. The Commercial Registration for this activity can be registered on commercial, service, and industrial streets..
2. The commercial address of the Commercial Registration for this activity can an office address provided that the site is used for administrative purposes and is not located in a residential area

Note: Uploading pictures of the site/shop may expedite the process of obtaining

approval

Required Documents

•Lease agreement (after obtaining the necessary approvals from other licensing entities)
•Shop photos

Other Documents

•Cabinet's Decision (56) of the year 2022 regarding the Regulatory Requirements of Construction for various areas in the Kingdom of Bahrain

Professional, scientific and technical activities

ISIC4	Business activity
71205	Performance testing of complete machinery: motors, computers, electronic equipment etc.

Description

This activity includes:
- Specialized establishments that test (check) and operate devices to make sure of their validity
- It also includes industrial equipment inspection, technical examination, analysis of results and working out reports showing the position of individual cases and treatment programs
- It includes technical detection, analysis of technical results, and preparing studies and reports showing the status of cases and ways to address them

Business Requirements

Age

18 and above

Allowed for Nationalities

Bahraini 100%		GCC 100%	
American 100%		Singaporean 100%	
Icelander 100%		Liechtenstein er 100%	
Norwegian 100%		Swiss 100%	

Foreign Allowed up to 100%

Legal Type

It is allowed to register according to the legal forms mentioned below

Allowed for Individual Commercial Registration (ICR) : Yes

Allowed for Company Commercial Registration (CCR) : Yes

- Bahrain Shareholding Company (Public)
- With Limited Liability Company
- Branch of a Foreign Company
- Bahrain Shareholding Company (Closed)
- Partnership Company
- Simple Commandite Company
- Commandite By Shares Company
- Non Profit Company

Required Step of Licenses and Approvals

Ministry / Directorate	License / Approval Requirements	Approval Type
Supreme Council for Environment	Environmental Approval for Performance testing of complete machinery: motors, computers, electronic equipment etc activity	Post
Municipality Affairs	Site Approval for Testing and analysis activities	Post

Supreme Council for Environment (Post) (71205)

Approval Name	Description	Estimated Time
Environmental Approval for Performance testing of complete machinery: motors, computers, electronic equipment etc activity	This service aims to assess the environmental impact and licensing of development, industrial and production projects and activities, in accordance with the standards of protecting the environment and its natural resources	10 Days

Fee Details (if any)

- 30 Bahraini Dinars or 200 Bahraini Dinars for the fast-track procedure (when the data requested within the EA-2 form is sufficient without the need for additional studies)
- 4000 Bahraini Dinars or 6000 Bahraini Dinars for the fast-track procedure (when it is required to submit an environmental impact assessment study for the project) + with the additional payment amount of “100 Bahraini Dinars when it is required to submit a proposal for the scope of study before submitting it or 500 Bahraini Dinars for a fast-track procedure when the proposed scope of the study is being submitted before study submitting stage”

License Information

To check the requirements for this approval, kindly download the detailed requirements sheet from the other downloadable documents section, which includes the following requirements:

- Building layout Engineering and Equipment Requirements
- Work-place Requirements
- Storage Requirements
- Material Management Requirements

- Waste Management Requirements
- Documents and Reporting Requirements
- General Requirements

Other Documents

- Annex to the Minister of Housing, Municipalities and Environment order regarding the project's environmental assessment
- Law No. (2) of 2021 regarding the environmental standards of air as decided by the Chairman of the Supreme Council for Environment
- Law No. (3) of 2021 regarding the environmental standards of water as decided by the Chairman of the Supreme Council for the Environment
- Law No. (54) of 2014 regarding the approval of the unified law regarding substances that deplete the ozone layer for the GCC countries
- Law No. (7) of 2022 regarding the environment
- Law No. (7) of 2022 regarding the environment
- Ministerial Order No. (1) of 1998 regarding Project's Environmental Assessment
- Ministerial Order No. (10) of 2006 regarding the installation of devices for on-line monitoring of atmospheric air pollutants
- Ministerial Order No. (11) of 2019 regarding the issue of technical specification of plastic products
- Ministerial Order No. (3) of 2005 regarding environmental requirements and standards in workplaces, especially regarding workers' exposure to heat and noise, and the provision of tools and protective clothing such as gloves, glasses, face masks and earplugs, with a commitment to use them during work
- Ministerial Order No. (3) of 2006 regarding the management of hazardous waste
- Ministerial Order No. (4) of 2005 regarding the management of used oils
- Ministerial Order No. (4) of 2006 regarding the management of hazardous chemicals
- Ministerial Order No. (4) of 2021 regarding the fees of the licenses and services provided by the Supreme Council for Environment
- Ministerial Order No. (6) of 2013 amending order No. (4) of 2006 regarding the management of hazardous chemicals
- Ministerial Order No. (7) of 2002 regarding the control importation and use of prohibited and severely restricted chemicals, and not to import any chemical compound except after obtaining approvals of all concerned authorities, including the executive body of the Supreme Council for Environment
- Ministerial Order No. (7) of 2013 amending order No. (3) of 2006 regarding the management of hazardous waste
- Ministerial Order No. 4 of 2014 regarding the management of the environmental consulting offices operations in the Kingdom of Bahrain
- Order No. (2) of 2020 determining the categories of fees for licensing refrigeration media, refrigeration units and air conditioning units as decided by the Chairman of the Supreme Council for the Environment
- Requirements for business activities
- law No. (1) of 2020 regarding the management of refrigeration media, refrigeration

units and air conditioning units as decided by the Chairman of the Supreme Council for the Environment
•law No. (1) of 2020 regarding the management of refrigeration media, refrigeration units and air conditioning units as decided by the Chairman of the Supreme Council for the Environment

Municipality Affairs (Post) (71205)

Approval Name	Description	Estimated Time
Site Approval for Testing and analysis activities	Municipality Approval for the Commercial Registration address or the site in which the Activity will be practiced	3 Days

Fee Details (if any)

10

License Information

General Conditions:
1. Size of shop/premises must be sufficient for the activity
2. Businesses may not carry out the activity outside the boundaries of the shop/ premises
3. It is prohibited to display or store any items or equipment outside the shop / premises boundary without prior approval from the Municipality. In the event of non-compliance, the Ministry of Municipality Affairs has the right to take necessary action.
4. Maintain cleanliness of the site
5. Comply with the parking space regulations as per the Construction Regulatory Requirements

Activity Specific Conditions:
1. The commercial address can be registered on workshops in service or industrial classified areas.
2. The commercial address of the Commercial Registration for this activity can an office address
provided that a separate workshop is made available, with the workshop being located in service or industrial classified areas

Note: Uploading pictures of the site/shop may expedite the process of obtaining approval

Required Documents

- Lease agreement (after obtaining the necessary approvals from other licensing entities)
- Shop photos

Other Documents

- Cabinet's Decision (56) of the year 2022 regarding the Regulatory Requirements of Construction for various areas in the Kingdom of Bahrain

Professional, scientific and technical activities

ISIC4	Business activity
71206-1	Performance testing of automobiles

Description

This activity includes performance testing of automobiles

Business Requirements

Age

18 and above

Allowed for Nationalities

Bahraini 100%	GCC 100%
American 100%	Singaporean 100%
Icelander 100%	Liechtensteiner 100%
Norwegian 100%	Swiss 100%

Foreign Allowed up to 100%

Legal Type

It is allowed to register according to the legal forms mentioned below

Allowed for Individual Commercial Registration (ICR) : Yes

Allowed for Company Commercial Registration (CCR) : Yes

Allowed for Sijilli : Yes

- Bahrain Shareholding Company (Public)
- With Limited Liability Company
- Branch of a Foreign Company
- Bahrain Shareholding Company (Closed)
- Partnership Company
- Simple Commandite Company
- Commandite By Shares Company
- Non Profit Company

Required Step of Licenses and Approvals

Ministry / Directorate	License / Approval Requirements	Approval Type
Municipality Affairs	Site Approval for Testing and analysis activities	Post

Municipality Affairs (Post) (71206-1)

Approval Name	Description	Estimated Time
Site Approval for Testing and analysis activities	Municipality Approval for the Commercial Registration address or the site in which the Activity will be practiced	3 Days

Fee Details (if any)

10

License Information

General Conditions:
1. Size of shop/premises must be sufficient for the activity
2. Businesses may not carry out the activity outside the boundaries of the shop/ premises
3. It is prohibited to display or store any items or equipment outside the shop / premises boundary without prior approval from the Municipality. In the event of non-compliance, the Ministry of Municipality Affairs has the right to take necessary action.
4. Maintain cleanliness of the site
5. Comply with the parking space regulations as per the Construction Regulatory Requirements

Activity Specific Conditions:
1. The commercial address can be registered on workshops in service or industrial classified areas.
2. The commercial address of the Commercial Registration for this activity can an office address
provided that a separate workshop is made available, with the workshop being located in service or industrial classified areas

Note: Uploading pictures of the site/shop may expedite the process of obtaining approval

Required Documents

- Lease agreement (after obtaining the necessary approvals from other licensing entities)
- Shop photos

Other Documents

- Cabinet's Decision (56) of the year 2022 regarding the Regulatory Requirements of Construction for various areas in the Kingdom of Bahrain

Professional, scientific and technical activities

ISIC4	Business activity
71206-2	Performance testing of automobiles - Vehicles Technical Inspection

Description

Examine the vehicle technically and ensure its safety and fitness to operate and meet the conditions of security and durability provided in the Traffic Law

Business Requirements

✔ Age

18 and above

✔ Allowed for Nationalities

Bahraini
100%

GCC
100%

✔ Legal Type

It is allowed to register according to the legal forms mentioned below

Allowed for Individual Commercial Registration (ICR) : Yes

Allowed for Company Commercial Registration (CCR) : Yes

- Bahrain Shareholding Company (Public)
- Bahrain Shareholding Company (Closed)
- Simple Commandite Company
- Non Profit Company
- With Limited Liability Company
- Partnership Company
- Commandite By Shares Company

Required Step of Licenses and Approvals

Ministry / Directorate	License / Approval Requirements	Approval Type
General Directorate Of Traffic Licensing Affair	Approval For Vehicles Technical Inspection Activity	Pre
General Directrate Of Civil Defence	Performance testing of automobiles - Vehicles Technical Inspection	Post
Supreme Council for Environment	Environmental Approval for Performance testing of automobiles - Vehicles Technical Inspection activity	Post
Municipality Affairs	Site Approval for Testing and analysis activities	Post
General Directorate Of Traffic Licensing Affair	Approval For Vehicles Technical Inspection Activity	Final Site Inspection

General Directorate Of Traffic Licensing Affair (Pre) (71206-2)

Approval Name	Description	Estimated Time
Approval For Vehicles Technical Inspection Activity	General Directorate Of Traffic Licensing Affair	10 Days

Fee Details (if any)

Application Fee 200 BD
License Fee 500 BD

License Information

Please refer to : "A guide to the conditions, requirements and technical standards of the vehicle inspection activity technically" in the “Other Downloadable Documents” section below.

Other Documents

•A guide to the conditions, requirements and technical standards of the vehicle inspection activity technically - Arabic
•A guide to the conditions, requirements and technical standards of the vehicle inspection activity technically - English

General Directrate Of Civil Defence (Post) (71206-2)

Approval Name	Description	Estimated Time
Performance testing of automobiles - Vehicles Technical Inspection	checking the approval requirements of the general directorate of civil defense	5 Days

Fee Details (if any)

50 BD Fire prevention and protection certificate fees

License Information

1. Provide the documents mentioned in the “Required Documents” section
2. Comply with the requirements listed in the inspection checklist found in the “Other Downloadable Documents” section
3. Provide proof to the General Directorate of Civil Defense that an alarm and firefighting equipment have been installed within 6 months of obtaining a Commercial Registration and license

If a warehouse is used: A safety certificate must be obtained viaBahrain.bh

Required Documents

•No-objection letter for alarm and extinguisher installation from Civil Defense, or purchasing receipt of alarm equipment and extinguishers along with an annual maintenance contract from a company certified by Civil defense
•Photos required for civil defense activities
•Purchasing invoice of security camera system with specifying the type and storage capacity.

Other Documents

- Sample pictures of the general directorate of civil defense requirements
- licencing requirments of the general directorat of civil defense for activity number "71206-2"

Supreme Council for Environment (Post) (71206-2)

Approval Name	Description	Estimated Time
Environmental Approval for Performance testing of automobiles - Vehicles Technical Inspection activity	This service aims to assess the environmental impact and licensing of development, industrial and production projects and activities, in accordance with the standards of protecting the environment and its natural resources	10 Days

Fee Details (if any)

30 Bahraini Dinars

License Information

To check the requirements for this approval, kindly download the detailed requirements sheet from the other downloadable documents section, which includes the following requirements:

- Building layout engineering and equipment requirements
- Workplace requirements
- Storage requirements
- Material management requirements
- Waste Management Requirements
- Documents and reporting requirements
- General requirements

Other Documents

- Requirements for business activities

Municipality Affairs (Post) (71206-2)

Approval Name	Description	Estimated Time
Site Approval for Testing and analysis activities	Municipality Approval for the Commercial Registration address or the site in which the Activity will be practiced	3 Days

Fee Details (if any)

10

License Information

General Conditions:
1. Size of shop/premises must be sufficient for the activity
2. Businesses may not carry out the activity outside the boundaries of the shop/ premises
3. It is prohibited to display or store any items or equipment outside the shop / premises boundary without prior approval from the Municipality. In the event of non-compliance, the Ministry of Municipality Affairs has the right to take necessary action.
4. Maintain cleanliness of the site
5. Comply with the parking space regulations as per the Construction Regulatory Requirements

Activity Specific Conditions:
1. The commercial address can be registered on workshops in service or industrial classified areas.
2. The commercial address of the Commercial Registration for this activity can an office address
provided that a separate workshop is made available, with the workshop being located in service or industrial classified areas

Note: Uploading pictures of the site/shop may expedite the process of obtaining approval

Required Documents

- Lease agreement (after obtaining the necessary approvals from other licensing entities)
- Shop photos

Other Documents

- Cabinet's Decision (56) of the year 2022 regarding the Regulatory Requirements of Construction for various areas in the Kingdom of Bahrain

General Directorate Of Traffic Licensing Affair (Final Site Inspection) (71206-2)

Approval Name	Description	Estimated Time
Approval For Vehicles Technical Inspection Activity	General Directorate Of Traffic Licensing Affair	10 Days

Fee Details (if any)

Application Fee 200 BD
License Fee 500 BD

License Information

Please refer to : "A guide to the conditions, requirements and technical standards of the vehicle inspection activity technically" in the “Other Downloadable Documents” section below.

Other Documents

•A guide to the conditions, requirements and technical standards of the vehicle inspection activity technically - Arabic
•A guide to the conditions, requirements and technical standards of the vehicle inspection activity technically - English

Professional, scientific and technical activities

ISIC4	Business activity
71209-1	Other Testing and analysis activities

Description

This activity includes testing and analysis activities not specified elsewhere

Business Requirements

Age

18 and above

Allowed for Nationalities

Bahraini 100%	GCC 100%
American 100%	Singaporean 100%
Icelander 100%	Liechtensteiner 100%
Norwegian 100%	Swiss 100%

Foreign Allowed up to 100%

Legal Type

It is allowed to register according to the legal forms mentioned below

Allowed for Individual Commercial Registration (ICR) : Yes

Allowed for Company Commercial Registration (CCR) : Yes

- Bahrain Shareholding Company (Public)
- With Limited Liability Company
- Branch of a Foreign Company
- Bahrain Shareholding Company (Closed)
- Partnership Company
- Simple Commandite Company
- Commandite By Shares Company
- Non Profit Company

Required Step of Licenses and Approvals

Ministry / Directorate	License / Approval Requirements	Approval Type
Municipality Affairs	Site Approval for Testing and analysis activities	Post

Municipality Affairs (Post) (71209-1)

Approval Name	Description	Estimated Time
Site Approval for Testing and analysis activities	Municipality Approval for the Commercial Registration address or the site in which the Activity will be practiced	3 Days

Fee Details (if any)

10

License Information

General Conditions:
1. Size of shop/premises must be sufficient for the activity
2. Businesses may not carry out the activity outside the boundaries of the shop/ premises
3. It is prohibited to display or store any items or equipment outside the shop / premises boundary without prior approval from the Municipality. In the event of non-compliance, the Ministry of Municipality Affairs has the right to take necessary action.
4. Maintain cleanliness of the site
5. Comply with the parking space regulations as per the Construction Regulatory Requirements

Activity Specific Conditions:
1. The commercial address can be registered on workshops in service or industrial classified areas.
2. The commercial address of the Commercial Registration for this activity can an office address
provided that a separate workshop is made available, with the workshop being located in service or industrial classified areas

Note: Uploading pictures of the site/shop may expedite the process of obtaining approval

Required Documents

- Lease agreement (after obtaining the necessary approvals from other licensing entities)
- Shop photos

Other Documents

- Cabinet's Decision (56) of the year 2022 regarding the Regulatory Requirements of Construction for various areas in the Kingdom of Bahrain

Professional, scientific and technical activities

ISIC4	Business activity
721	Research and experimental development on natural sciences and engineering

Description

This activity includes research and experimental development on natural science and engineering, such as:
- research and development on natural sciences
- research and development on engineering and technology
- research and development on medical sciences
- research and development on biotechnology
- research and development on agricultural sciences
- interdisciplinary research and development, predominantly on natural sciences and engineering

Business Requirements

Age

18 and above

Allowed for Nationalities

Bahraini 100%	GCC 100%
American 100%	Singaporean 100%
Icelander 100%	Liechtensteiner 100%
Norwegian 100%	Swiss 100%

Foreign Allowed up to 100%

Legal Type

It is allowed to register according to the legal forms mentioned below

Allowed for Individual Commercial Registration (ICR) : Yes

Allowed for Company Commercial Registration (CCR) : Yes

Allowed for Sijilli : Yes

- Bahrain Shareholding Company (Public)
- With Limited Liability Company
- Branch of a Foreign Company
- Bahrain Shareholding Company (Closed)
- Partnership Company
- Simple Commandite Company
- Commandite By Shares Company
- Non Profit Company

Required Step of Licenses and Approvals

Ministry / Directorate	License / Approval Requirements	Approval Type
Municipality Affairs	Site Approval for Administrative and support service activities	Post

Municipality Affairs (Post) (721)

Approval Name	Description	Estimated Time
Site Approval for Administrative and support service activities	Municipality Approval for the Commercial Registration address or the site in which the Activity will be practiced	3 Days

Fee Details (if any)

10

License Information

General Conditions:
1. Size of shop/premises must be sufficient for the activity
2. Businesses may not carry out the activity outside the boundaries of the shop/ premises
3. It is prohibited to display or store any items or equipment outside the shop / premises boundary without prior approval from the Municipality. In the event of non-compliance, the Ministry of Municipality Affairs has the right to take necessary action.
4. Maintain cleanliness of the site
5. Comply with the parking space regulations as per the Construction Regulatory Requirements

Activity Specific Conditions:
1. The Commercial Registration for this activity can be registered on commercial, service, and industrial streets..
2. The commercial address of the Commercial Registration for this activity can an office address provided that the site is used for administrative purposes and is not located in a residential area

Note: Uploading pictures of the site/shop may expedite the process of obtaining

approval

Required Documents

•Lease agreement (after obtaining the necessary approvals from other licensing entities)
•Shop photos

Other Documents

•Cabinet's Decision (56) of the year 2022 regarding the Regulatory Requirements of Construction for various areas in the Kingdom of Bahrain

Professional, scientific and technical activities

ISIC4	Business activity
722	Research and experimental development on social sciences and humanities

Description

This activity includes:
- Research and development on social sciences
- Research and development on humanities
- Interdisciplinary research and development, predominantly on social sciences and humanities

Business Requirements

Age

18 and above

Allowed for Nationalities

Bahraini 100%		GCC 100%	
American 100%		Singaporean 100%	
Icelander 100%		Liechtenstein er 100%	
Norwegian 100%		Swiss 100%	

Foreign Allowed up to 100%

Legal Type

It is allowed to register according to the legal forms mentioned below

Allowed for Individual Commercial Registration (ICR) : Yes

Allowed for Company Commercial Registration (CCR) : Yes

Allowed for Sijilli : Yes

- Bahrain Shareholding Company (Public)
- With Limited Liability Company
- Branch of a Foreign Company
- Bahrain Shareholding Company (Closed)
- Partnership Company
- Simple Commandite Company
- Commandite By Shares Company
- Non Profit Company

Required Step of Licenses and Approvals

Ministry / Directorate	License / Approval Requirements	Approval Type
Municipality Affairs	Site Approval for Administrative and support service activities	Post

Municipality Affairs (Post) (722)

Approval Name	Description	Estimated Time
Site Approval for Administrative and support service activities	Municipality Approval for the Commercial Registration address or the site in which the Activity will be practiced	3 Days

Fee Details (if any)

10

License Information

General Conditions:
1. Size of shop/premises must be sufficient for the activity
2. Businesses may not carry out the activity outside the boundaries of the shop/ premises
3. It is prohibited to display or store any items or equipment outside the shop / premises boundary without prior approval from the Municipality. In the event of non-compliance, the Ministry of Municipality Affairs has the right to take necessary action.
4. Maintain cleanliness of the site
5. Comply with the parking space regulations as per the Construction Regulatory Requirements

Activity Specific Conditions:
1. The Commercial Registration for this activity can be registered on commercial, service, and industrial streets..
2. The commercial address of the Commercial Registration for this activity can an office address provided that the site is used for administrative purposes and is not located in a residential area

Note: Uploading pictures of the site/shop may expedite the process of obtaining

approval

Required Documents

•Lease agreement (after obtaining the necessary approvals from other licensing entities)
•Shop photos

Other Documents

•Cabinet's Decision (56) of the year 2022 regarding the Regulatory Requirements of Construction for various areas in the Kingdom of Bahrain

ISIC4	Business activity
73101	Publicity and Advertising

Description

This activity includes the provision of a full range of advertising services (i.e. through in-house capabilities or subcontracting), including advice, creative services, production of advertising material, media planning and buying.

This activiy includes:
. Creation and realization of advertising campaigns:
- creating and placing advertising in newspapers, periodicals, radio, television, the Internet and other media
- creating and placing of outdoor advertising, e.g. billboards, panels, bulletins and frames, window dressing, showroom design, car and bus carding etc.
- Media representation, i.e. sale of time and space for various media soliciting advertising
- Aerial advertising
- Distribution or delivery of advertising material or samples
- Provision of advertising space on billboards etc.
- Creation of stands and other display structures and sites

. Conducting marketing campaigns and other advertising services aimed at attracting and retaining customers:
- Promotion of products
- Point-of-sale marketing
- Direct mail advertising
- marketing consulting

This activiy excludes:
- publishing of advertising material
- Production of commercial messages for radio, television and film
- Public-relations activities
- Market research
- Graphic design activities
- Advertising photography
- Convention and trade show organizers
- Mailing activities

Business Requirements

Age

18 and above

Allowed for Nationalities

Bahraini 100%	GCC 100%
American 100%	Singaporean 100%
Icelander 100%	Liechtenstein er 100%
Norwegian 100%	Swiss 100%

Foreign Allowed up to 100%

Legal Type

It is allowed to register according to the legal forms mentioned below

Allowed for Individual Commercial Registration (ICR) : Yes

Allowed for Company Commercial Registration (CCR) : Yes

Allowed for Sijilli : Yes

- Bahrain Shareholding Company (Public)
- With Limited Liability Company
- Branch of a Foreign Company
- Bahrain Shareholding Company (Closed)
- Partnership Company
- Simple Commandite Company
- Commandite By Shares Company
- Non Profit Company

Required Step of Licenses and Approvals

Ministry / Directorate	License / Approval Requirements	Approval Type
Directorate of Publication and Press	Publicity and Advertising	Notification Only
Municipality Affairs	Site Approval for Administrative and support service activities	Post

Directorate of Publication and Press (Notification Only) (73101)

Approval Name	Description	Estimated Time
Publicity and Advertising	Publicity and Advertising	5 Days

Fee Details (if any)

There is no Estimated Processing Time (Days) in this license.

License Information

- Do not print any advertising publication only after applying for official approval by the media department.

- Apply for the International Registration Number (ISSN)

All Business establishments of audio-visual, print and electronic media in the Kingdom of Bahrain must be comply with the law regulating the press, printing and publishing and other relevant laws

Other Documents

•Resolution No. (1) of 2015 regarding standards for supervision and control of media contents

Municipality Affairs (Post) (73101)

Approval Name	Description	Estimated Time
Site Approval for Administrative and support service activities	Municipality Approval for the Commercial Registration address or the site in which the Activity will be practiced	3 Days

Fee Details (if any)

10

License Information

General Conditions:
1. Size of shop/premises must be sufficient for the activity
2. Businesses may not carry out the activity outside the boundaries of the shop/ premises
3. It is prohibited to display or store any items or equipment outside the shop / premises boundary without prior approval from the Municipality. In the event of non-compliance, the Ministry of Municipality Affairs has the right to take necessary action.
4. Maintain cleanliness of the site
5. Comply with the parking space regulations as per the Construction Regulatory Requirements

Activity Specific Conditions:
1. The Commercial Registration for this activity can be registered on commercial, service, and industrial streets..
2. The commercial address of the Commercial Registration for this activity can an office address provided that the site is used for administrative purposes and is not located in a residential area

Note: Uploading pictures of the site/shop may expedite the process of obtaining

approval

Required Documents

•Lease agreement (after obtaining the necessary approvals from other licensing entities)
•Shop photos

Other Documents

•Cabinet's Decision (56) of the year 2022 regarding the Regulatory Requirements of Construction for various areas in the Kingdom of Bahrain

Professional, scientific and technical activities

ISIC4	Business activity
73103	Fixing and Removing of Advertisement Boards

Description

This activity includes fixing and removing of advertisement boards only

Business Requirements

Age

18 and above

Allowed for Nationalities

- Bahraini 100%
- American 100%
- GCC 100%

Legal Type

It is allowed to register according to the legal forms mentioned below

Allowed for Individual Commercial Registration (ICR) : Yes

Allowed for Company Commercial Registration (CCR) : Yes

- Bahrain Shareholding Company (Public)
- With Limited Liability Company
- Branch of a Foreign Company
- Bahrain Shareholding Company (Closed)
- Partnership Company
- Simple Commandite Company
- Commandite By Shares Company
- Non Profit Company

Required Step of Licenses and Approvals

Ministry / Directorate	License / Approval Requirements	Approval Type
Municipality Affairs	Site Approval for Administrative and support service activities	Post

Municipality Affairs (Post) (73103)

Approval Name	Description	Estimated Time
Site Approval for Administrative and support service activities	Municipality Approval for the Commercial Registration address or the site in which the Activity will be practiced	3 Days

Fee Details (if any)

10

License Information

General Conditions:
1. Size of shop/premises must be sufficient for the activity
2. Businesses may not carry out the activity outside the boundaries of the shop/ premises
3. It is prohibited to display or store any items or equipment outside the shop / premises boundary without prior approval from the Municipality. In the event of non-compliance, the Ministry of Municipality Affairs has the right to take necessary action.
4. Maintain cleanliness of the site
5. Comply with the parking space regulations as per the Construction Regulatory Requirements

Activity Specific Conditions:
1. The Commercial Registration for this activity can be registered on commercial, service, and industrial streets..
2. The commercial address of the Commercial Registration for this activity can an office address provided that the site is used for administrative purposes and is not located in a residential area

Note: Uploading pictures of the site/shop may expedite the process of obtaining

approval

Required Documents

•Lease agreement (after obtaining the necessary approvals from other licensing entities)
•Shop photos

Other Documents

•Cabinet's Decision (56) of the year 2022 regarding the Regulatory Requirements of Construction for various areas in the Kingdom of Bahrain

ISIC4	Business activity
73109	Other Marketing/ Promotion Activities

Description

This activity includes other marketing/ promotion activities not mentioned elsewhere, such as:

- Marketing discount cards
- Marketing of Local products globally
- Promotion of foreign products in local market
- Distribution of promotion of trial samples
- Operation of show cars
- Management and rental of road furniture for the advertisement purposes
- Provision of time-share exchange services
- Sale of holidays in tourist resorts worldwide

Business Requirements

Age

18 and above

Allowed for Nationalities

Bahraini 100%		GCC 100%	
American 100%		Singaporean 100%	
Icelander 100%		Liechtenstein er 100%	
Norwegian 100%		Swiss 100%	

Foreign Allowed up to 100%

Legal Type

It is allowed to register according to the legal forms mentioned below

Allowed for Individual Commercial Registration (ICR) : Yes

Allowed for Company Commercial Registration (CCR) : Yes

- Bahrain Shareholding Company (Public)
- With Limited Liability Company
- Branch of a Foreign Company
- Bahrain Shareholding Company (Closed)
- Partnership Company
- Simple Commandite Company
- Commandite By Shares Company
- Non Profit Company

Required Step of Licenses and Approvals

Ministry / Directorate	License / Approval Requirements	Approval Type
Municipality Affairs	Site Approval for Administrative and	Post

	support service activities	

Municipality Affairs (Post) (73109)

Approval Name	Description	Estimated Time
Site Approval for Administrative and support service activities	Municipality Approval for the Commercial Registration address or the site in which the Activity will be practiced	3 Days

Fee Details (if any)

10

License Information

General Conditions:
1. Size of shop/premises must be sufficient for the activity
2. Businesses may not carry out the activity outside the boundaries of the shop/ premises
3. It is prohibited to display or store any items or equipment outside the shop / premises boundary without prior approval from the Municipality. In the event of non-compliance, the Ministry of Municipality Affairs has the right to take necessary action.
4. Maintain cleanliness of the site
5. Comply with the parking space regulations as per the Construction Regulatory Requirements

Activity Specific Conditions:
1. The Commercial Registration for this activity can be registered on commercial, service, and industrial streets..
2. The commercial address of the Commercial Registration for this activity can an office address provided that the site is used for administrative purposes and is not located in a residential area

Note: Uploading pictures of the site/shop may expedite the process of obtaining

approval

Required Documents

•Lease agreement (after obtaining the necessary approvals from other licensing entities)
•Shop photos

Other Documents

•Cabinet's Decision (56) of the year 2022 regarding the Regulatory Requirements of Construction for various areas in the Kingdom of Bahrain

Professional, scientific and technical activities

ISIC4	Business activity
732	Public opinion polling

Description

This activity includes:
- Investigation into market potential, acceptance and familiarity of products and buying habits of consumers for the purpose of sales promotion and development of new products, including statistical analyses of the results

Business Requirements

Age

18 and above

Allowed for Nationalities

- Bahraini 100%
- American 100%
- GCC 100%

Legal Type

It is allowed to register according to the legal forms mentioned below

Allowed for Individual Commercial Registration (ICR) : Yes

Allowed for Company Commercial Registration (CCR) : Yes

Allowed for Sijilli : Yes

- Bahrain Shareholding Company (Public)
- With Limited Liability Company
- Branch of a Foreign Company
- Bahrain Shareholding Company (Closed)
- Partnership Company
- Simple Commandite Company
- Commandite By Shares Company
- Non Profit Company

Required Step of Licenses and Approvals

Ministry / Directorate	License / Approval Requirements	Approval Type
Directorate of Publication and Press	Public opinion polling	Notification Only
Municipality Affairs	Site Approval for Administrative and support service activities	Post

Directorate of Publication and Press (Notification Only) (732)

Approval Name	Description	Estimated Time
Public opinion polling	Public opinion polling	5 Days

Fee Details (if any)

There is no Estimated Processing Time (Days) in this license.

License Information

There is no License Information in this license.

Municipality Affairs (Post) (732)

Approval Name	Description	Estimated Time
Site Approval for Administrative and support service activities	Municipality Approval for the Commercial Registration address or the site in which the Activity will be practiced	3 Days

Fee Details (if any)

10

License Information

General Conditions:
1. Size of shop/premises must be sufficient for the activity
2. Businesses may not carry out the activity outside the boundaries of the shop/ premises
3. It is prohibited to display or store any items or equipment outside the shop / premises boundary without prior approval from the Municipality. In the event of non-compliance, the Ministry of Municipality Affairs has the right to take necessary action.
4. Maintain cleanliness of the site
5. Comply with the parking space regulations as per the Construction Regulatory Requirements

Activity Specific Conditions:
1. The Commercial Registration for this activity can be registered on commercial, service, and industrial streets..
2. The commercial address of the Commercial Registration for this activity can an office address provided that the site is used for administrative purposes and is not located in a residential area

Note: Uploading pictures of the site/shop may expedite the process of obtaining

approval

Required Documents

•Lease agreement (after obtaining the necessary approvals from other licensing entities)
•Shop photos

Other Documents

•Cabinet's Decision (56) of the year 2022 regarding the Regulatory Requirements of Construction for various areas in the Kingdom of Bahrain

Professional, scientific and technical activities

ISIC4	Business activity
741010	Fashion Design

Description

This activity includes:
- fashion design related to textiles, wearing apparel, shoes, jewelry, furniture and other interior decoration and other fashion goods as well as other personal or household goods

Business Requirements

Age

18 and above

Allowed for Nationalities

Bahraini 100%	GCC 100%
American 100%	Singaporean 100%
Icelander 100%	Liechtenstein er 100%
Norwegian 100%	Swiss 100%

Foreign Allowed up to 100%

Legal Type

It is allowed to register according to the legal forms mentioned below

Allowed for Individual Commercial Registration (ICR) : Yes

Allowed for Company Commercial Registration (CCR) : Yes

Allowed for Sijilli : Yes

- Bahrain Shareholding Company (Public)
- With Limited Liability Company
- Branch of a Foreign Company
- Bahrain Shareholding Company (Closed)
- Partnership Company
- Simple Commandite Company
- Commandite By Shares Company
- Non Profit Company

Required Step of Licenses and Approvals

Ministry / Directorate	License / Approval Requirements	Approval Type
Municipality Affairs	Site Approval for Administrative and support service activities	Post

Municipality Affairs (Post) (741010)

Approval Name	Description	Estimated Time
Site Approval for Administrative and support service activities	Municipality Approval for the Commercial Registration address or the site in which the Activity will be practiced	3 Days

Fee Details (if any)

10

License Information

General Conditions:
1. Size of shop/premises must be sufficient for the activity
2. Businesses may not carry out the activity outside the boundaries of the shop/ premises
3. It is prohibited to display or store any items or equipment outside the shop / premises boundary without prior approval from the Municipality. In the event of non-compliance, the Ministry of Municipality Affairs has the right to take necessary action.
4. Maintain cleanliness of the site
5. Comply with the parking space regulations as per the Construction Regulatory Requirements

Activity Specific Conditions:
1. The Commercial Registration for this activity can be registered on commercial, service, and industrial streets..
2. The commercial address of the Commercial Registration for this activity can an office address provided that the site is used for administrative purposes and is not located in a residential area

Note: Uploading pictures of the site/shop may expedite the process of obtaining

approval

Required Documents

•Lease agreement (after obtaining the necessary approvals from other licensing entities)
•Shop photos

Other Documents

•Cabinet's Decision (56) of the year 2022 regarding the Regulatory Requirements of Construction for various areas in the Kingdom of Bahrain

Professional, scientific and technical activities

ISIC4	Business activity
741011	Jewellery Design

Description

This activity includes:
Design of jewelry and ornaments of different shapes such as rings, bracelets, necklaces, earrings and other jewelry and items made of gold.

Business Requirements

Age

18 and above

Allowed for Nationalities

Bahraini 100%		GCC 100%	
American 100%		Singaporean 100%	
Icelander 100%		Liechtenstein er 100%	
Norwegian 100%		Swiss 100%	

Foreign Allowed up to 100%

Legal Type

It is allowed to register according to the legal forms mentioned below

Allowed for Individual Commercial Registration (ICR) : Yes

Allowed for Company Commercial Registration (CCR) : Yes

Allowed for Sijilli : Yes

- Bahrain Shareholding Company (Public)
- With Limited Liability Company
- Branch of a Foreign Company
- Bahrain Shareholding Company (Closed)
- Partnership Company
- Simple Commandite Company
- Commandite By Shares Company
- Non Profit Company

Required Step of Licenses and Approvals

Ministry / Directorate	License / Approval Requirements	Approval Type
Precious Metals Gemstones Directorate Moic	Notification Only For Jewelry Design Activity	Notification Only
Municipality Affairs	Site Approval for Administrative and support service activities	Post

Precious Metals Gemstones Directorate Moic (Notification Only) (741011)

Approval Name	Description	Estimated Time
Notification Only For Jewelry Design Activity	Notify license entity that new application is applied for Jewelry Design Activity	There is no License Information in this license. Days

Fee Details (if any)

MOIC's activity fees apply (BD100 for the first 3 Activities)

License Information

All precious metal articles must satisfy the technical requirements including testing and hallmark stamping, using welding materials of the same Caratage fineness of precious metals, and that jewelry articles do not have other non-precious metals that exceed the weight of the precious metals content

Other Documents

•Decree by Law no. 6 of 1990 with Respect to the Control over Precious Metals articles.
•Decree by Law no. 65 of 2014 with respect to the amending of the Decree by law no. 10 of 1990 concerning the control over Pearls and Gemstones.
•Ministerial Order no. 10 of 1999 with respect to the Hallmarking Signs for Precious Metals Articles.
•Ministerial Order no. 10 of 1999 with respect to the Hallmarking Signs for Precious Metals Articles.
•Ministerial Order no. 12 of 2004 with respect to the amending of Ministerial order no. 20 of 1994 concerning the Technical Requirements of Precious Metals articles.
•Ministerial Order no. 162 of 2016 With respect to the executive regulations of the decree by law no. 10 of 1990 concerning control over Pearls and Gemstones.
•Ministerial Order no. 163 of 2016 with respect to the Determination of the Regulations Required to be Complied with by the Companies Licensed to Test Pearls and

Gemstones.
•Ministerial Order no. 177 of 2017 with respect to the Fees of Assaying and Hallmarking Precious Metals and Other Relevant Services.
•Ministerial Order no. 20 of 1994 with respect to the Technical Requirements for Precious Metals Articles.
•Ministerial Order no. 58 of 2016 with respect to the accreditation of Precious Metals special Hallmarks signs.
•Ministerial order no. 25 of 2007 with respect to the Hallmarks signs of Imported Precious Metals Articles.

Municipality Affairs (Post) (741011)

Approval Name	Description	Estimated Time
Site Approval for Administrative and support service activities	Municipality Approval for the Commercial Registration address or the site in which the Activity will be practiced	3 Days

Fee Details (if any)

10

License Information

General Conditions:
1. Size of shop/premises must be sufficient for the activity
2. Businesses may not carry out the activity outside the boundaries of the shop/ premises
3. It is prohibited to display or store any items or equipment outside the shop / premises boundary without prior approval from the Municipality. In the event of non-compliance, the Ministry of Municipality Affairs has the right to take necessary action.
4. Maintain cleanliness of the site
5. Comply with the parking space regulations as per the Construction Regulatory Requirements

Activity Specific Conditions:
1. The Commercial Registration for this activity can be registered on commercial, service, and industrial streets..
2. The commercial address of the Commercial Registration for this activity can an office address provided that the site is used for administrative purposes and is not located in a residential area

Note: Uploading pictures of the site/shop may expedite the process of obtaining

approval

Required Documents

•Lease agreement (after obtaining the necessary approvals from other licensing entities)
•Shop photos

Other Documents

•Cabinet's Decision (56) of the year 2022 regarding the Regulatory Requirements of Construction for various areas in the Kingdom of Bahrain

Professional, scientific and technical activities

ISIC4	Business activity
74102	Interior Decoration

Description

This activity Includes establishments specializing in the creation and development of interior design and specifications for the use of the best and give the value and appearance of the place, including the identification of materials and machinery construction and choice of form, color and the internal surfaces, lighting and other elements, taking the characteristics and human needs and safety.
(This does not include interior design activities involving architectural drawings or engineering)

Business Requirements

✔ Age

18 and above

✔ Allowed for Nationalities

Bahraini 100%		GCC 100%	
American 100%		Singaporean 100%	
Icelander 100%		Liechtenstein er 100%	
Norwegian 100%		Swiss 100%	

Foreign Allowed up to 100%

Legal Type

It is allowed to register according to the legal forms mentioned below

Allowed for Individual Commercial Registration (ICR) : Yes

Allowed for Company Commercial Registration (CCR) : Yes

Allowed for Sijilli : Yes

- Bahrain Shareholding Company (Public)
- With Limited Liability Company
- Branch of a Foreign Company
- Bahrain Shareholding Company (Closed)
- Partnership Company
- Simple Commandite Company
- Commandite By Shares Company
- Non Profit Company

Required Step of Licenses and Approvals

Ministry / Directorate	License / Approval Requirements	Approval Type
Municipality Affairs	Site Approval for Administrative and support service activities	Post

Municipality Affairs (Post) (74102)

Approval Name	Description	Estimated Time
Site Approval for Administrative and support service activities	Municipality Approval for the Commercial Registration address or the site in which the Activity will be practiced	3 Days

Fee Details (if any)

10

License Information

General Conditions:
1. Size of shop/premises must be sufficient for the activity
2. Businesses may not carry out the activity outside the boundaries of the shop/ premises
3. It is prohibited to display or store any items or equipment outside the shop / premises boundary without prior approval from the Municipality. In the event of non-compliance, the Ministry of Municipality Affairs has the right to take necessary action.
4. Maintain cleanliness of the site
5. Comply with the parking space regulations as per the Construction Regulatory Requirements

Activity Specific Conditions:
1. The Commercial Registration for this activity can be registered on commercial, service, and industrial streets..
2. The commercial address of the Commercial Registration for this activity can an office address provided that the site is used for administrative purposes and is not located in a residential area

Note: Uploading pictures of the site/shop may expedite the process of obtaining

approval

Required Documents

•Lease agreement (after obtaining the necessary approvals from other licensing entities)
•Shop photos

Other Documents

•Cabinet's Decision (56) of the year 2022 regarding the Regulatory Requirements of Construction for various areas in the Kingdom of Bahrain

Professional, scientific and technical activities

ISIC4	Business activity
74103	Graphic Design

Description

This activity includes graphic design activties

Business Requirements

Age

18 and above

Allowed for Nationalities

Bahraini 100%	GCC 100%
American 100%	Singaporean 100%
Icelander 100%	Liechtenstein er 100%
Norwegian 100%	Swiss 100%

Foreign Allowed up to 100%

Legal Type

It is allowed to register according to the legal forms mentioned below

Allowed for Individual Commercial Registration (ICR) : Yes

Allowed for Company Commercial Registration (CCR) : Yes

Allowed for Sijilli : Yes

- Bahrain Shareholding Company (Public)
- With Limited Liability Company
- Branch of a Foreign Company
- Bahrain Shareholding Company (Closed)
- Partnership Company
- Simple Commandite Company
- Commandite By Shares Company
- Non Profit Company

Required Step of Licenses and Approvals

Ministry / Directorate	License / Approval Requirements	Approval Type
Municipality Affairs	Site Approval for Administrative and support service activities	Post

Municipality Affairs (Post) (74103)

Approval Name	Description	Estimated Time
Site Approval for Administrative and support service activities	Municipality Approval for the Commercial Registration address or the site in which the Activity will be practiced	3 Days

Fee Details (if any)

10

License Information

General Conditions:
1. Size of shop/premises must be sufficient for the activity
2. Businesses may not carry out the activity outside the boundaries of the shop/ premises
3. It is prohibited to display or store any items or equipment outside the shop / premises boundary without prior approval from the Municipality. In the event of non-compliance, the Ministry of Municipality Affairs has the right to take necessary action.
4. Maintain cleanliness of the site
5. Comply with the parking space regulations as per the Construction Regulatory Requirements

Activity Specific Conditions:
1. The Commercial Registration for this activity can be registered on commercial, service, and industrial streets..
2. The commercial address of the Commercial Registration for this activity can an office address provided that the site is used for administrative purposes and is not located in a residential area

Note: Uploading pictures of the site/shop may expedite the process of obtaining

approval

Required Documents

•Lease agreement (after obtaining the necessary approvals from other licensing entities)
•Shop photos

Other Documents

•Cabinet's Decision (56) of the year 2022 regarding the Regulatory Requirements of Construction for various areas in the Kingdom of Bahrain

Professional, scientific and technical activities

ISIC4	Business activity
74109	Other Specialized Design Activities

Description

This activity includes other design activities not mentioned elsewhere such as:
- Specialized facilities that prepare technical designs for advertisements and commercial products and other
- Offices which design bottles used for packaging products to be sold to consumers or used for other purposes
- Creating and developing industrial designs for various goods and products

(This activity does not include engineering activities)

Business Requirements

Age

18 and above

Allowed for Nationalities

Bahraini 100%		GCC 100%	
American 100%		Singaporean 100%	
Icelander 100%		Liechtenstein er 100%	
Norwegian 100%		Swiss 100%	

Foreign Allowed up to 100%

Legal Type

It is allowed to register according to the legal forms mentioned below

Allowed for Individual Commercial Registration (ICR) : Yes

Allowed for Company Commercial Registration (CCR) : Yes

Allowed for Sijilli : Yes

- Bahrain Shareholding Company (Public)
- With Limited Liability Company
- Branch of a Foreign Company
- Bahrain Shareholding Company (Closed)
- Partnership Company
- Simple Commandite Company
- Commandite By Shares Company
- Non Profit Company

Required Step of Licenses and Approvals

Ministry / Directorate	License / Approval Requirements	Approval Type
Municipality Affairs	Site Approval for Administrative and support service activities	Post

Municipality Affairs (Post) (74109)

Approval Name	Description	Estimated Time
Site Approval for Administrative and support service activities	Municipality Approval for the Commercial Registration address or the site in which the Activity will be practiced	3 Days

Fee Details (if any)

10

License Information

General Conditions:
1. Size of shop/premises must be sufficient for the activity
2. Businesses may not carry out the activity outside the boundaries of the shop/ premises
3. It is prohibited to display or store any items or equipment outside the shop / premises boundary without prior approval from the Municipality. In the event of non-compliance, the Ministry of Municipality Affairs has the right to take necessary action.
4. Maintain cleanliness of the site
5. Comply with the parking space regulations as per the Construction Regulatory Requirements

Activity Specific Conditions:
1. The Commercial Registration for this activity can be registered on commercial, service, and industrial streets..
2. The commercial address of the Commercial Registration for this activity can an office address provided that the site is used for administrative purposes and is not located in a residential area

Note: Uploading pictures of the site/shop may expedite the process of obtaining

approval

Required Documents

•Lease agreement (after obtaining the necessary approvals from other licensing entities)
•Shop photos

Other Documents

•Cabinet's Decision (56) of the year 2022 regarding the Regulatory Requirements of Construction for various areas in the Kingdom of Bahrain

ISIC4	Business activity
742-1	Photographic activities

Description

This activity includes:
- Commercial and consumer photograph production:
. Portrait photography for passports, schools, weddings etc.
. Photography for commercials, publishers, fashion, real estate or tourism purposes
. Aerial photography
. Videotaping of events: weddings, meetings etc.
- film processing:
. One hour photo shops (not part of camera stores)
. Mounting of slides
. Copying and restoring or transparency retouching in connection with photographs

This activity excludes:
- processing motion picture film related to the motion picture and television industries
- Cartographic and spatial information activities

Business Requirements

Age

18 and above

Allowed for Nationalities

Bahraini 100%		GCC 100%	
American 100%		Singaporean 100%	
Icelander 100%		Liechtensteiner 100%	
Norwegian 100%		Swiss 100%	

Legal Type

It is allowed to register according to the legal forms mentioned below

Allowed for Individual Commercial Registration (ICR) : Yes

Allowed for Company Commercial Registration (CCR) : Yes

Allowed for Sijilli : Yes

- Bahrain Shareholding Company (Public)
- With Limited Liability Company
- Branch of a Foreign Company
- Bahrain Shareholding Company (Closed)
- Partnership Company
- Simple Commandite Company
- Commandite By Shares Company
- Non Profit Company

Required Step of Licenses and Approvals

Ministry / Directorate	License / Approval Requirements	Approval Type
Municipality Affairs	Site Approval for Photographic activities	Post

Municipality Affairs (Post) (742-1)

Approval Name	Description	Estimated Time
Site Approval for Photographic activities	Municipality Approval for the Commercial Registration address or the site in which the Activity will be practiced	3 Days

Fee Details (if any)

10

License Information

General Conditions:
1. Size of shop/premises must be sufficient for the activity
2. Businesses may not carry out the activity outside the boundaries of the shop/ premises
3. It is prohibited to display or store any items or equipment outside the shop / premises boundary without prior approval from the Municipality. In the event of non-compliance, the Ministry of Municipality Affairs has the right to take necessary action.
4. Maintain cleanliness of the site
5. Comply with the parking space regulations as per the Construction Regulatory Requirements

Activity Specific Conditions:
1. The commercial address for this activity can only be on areas classified as commercial.
2. The commercial address of the Commercial Registration for this activity can an office address provided that is used for administrative purposes only and not for photographic activities

Note: Uploading pictures of the site/shop may expedite the process of obtaining approval

Required Documents

- Lease agreement (after obtaining the necessary approvals from other licensing entities)
- Shop photos

Other Documents

- Cabinet's Decision (56) of the year 2022 regarding the Regulatory Requirements of Construction for various areas in the Kingdom of Bahrain

Professional, scientific and technical activities

ISIC4	Business activity
742-2	Photographic activities - Laboratory for developing colour films

Description

This activity includes:
- Commercial and consumer photograph production:
- Film processing:
. Developing, printing and enlarging from client-taken negatives or cine-films
. Film developing and photo printing laboratories
- Activities of photojournalists
- Microfilming of documents

This activity excludes:
- Processing motion picture film related to the motion picture and television industries, see 5912
- Cartographic and spatial information activities, see 7110

Business Requirements

Age

18 and above

Allowed for Nationalities

Bahraini 100%	GCC 100%
American 100%	Singaporean 100%
Icelander 100%	Liechtensteiner 100%
Norwegian 100%	Swiss 100%

Legal Type

It is allowed to register according to the legal forms mentioned below

Allowed for Individual Commercial Registration (ICR) : Yes

Allowed for Company Commercial Registration (CCR) : Yes

- Bahrain Shareholding Company (Public)
- With Limited Liability Company
- Branch of a Foreign Company
- Bahrain Shareholding Company (Closed)
- Partnership Company
- Simple Commandite Company
- Commandite By Shares Company
- Non Profit Company

Required Step of Licenses and Approvals

Ministry / Directorate	License / Approval Requirements	Approval Type
General Directorate Of Criminal Investigation	Approval by General Directorate of Criminal Investigation	Pre
Municipality Affairs	Site Approval for Laboratory for developing colour films	Post
Supreme Council for Environment	Environmental Approval for printing activity	Post

General Directorate Of Criminal Investigation (Pre) (742-2)

Approval Name	Description	Estimated Time
Approval by General Directorate of Criminal Investigation	General Directorate of Criminal Investigation Approval for the Activity	7 Days

Fee Details (if any)

There is no Estimated Processing Time (Days) in this license.

License Information

- The applicant should not have a criminal record, unless they have been rehabilitated in criminal cases

Municipality Affairs (Post) (742-2)

Approval Name	Description	Estimated Time
Site Approval for Laboratory for developing colour films	Municipality Approval for the Commercial Registration address or the site in which the Activity will be practiced	3 Days

Fee Details (if any)

10

License Information

General Conditions:
1. Size of shop/premises must be sufficient for the activity
2. Businesses may not carry out the activity outside the boundaries of the shop/ premises
3. It is prohibited to display or store any items or equipment outside the shop / premises boundary without prior approval from the Municipality. In the event of non-compliance, the Ministry of Municipality Affairs has the right to take necessary action.
4. Maintain cleanliness of the site
5. Comply with the parking space regulations as per the Construction Regulatory Requirements

Activity Specific Conditions:
1. The commercial address for this activity can be registered in areas classified as commercial, services, or industrial
Note: Uploading pictures of the site/shop may expedite the process of obtaining approval

Required Documents

- Lease agreement (after obtaining the necessary approvals from other licensing entities)
- Shop photos

Other Documents

- Cabinet's Decision (56) of the year 2022 regarding the Regulatory Requirements of Construction for various areas in the Kingdom of Bahrain

Supreme Council for Environment (Post) (742-2)

Approval Name	Description	Estimated Time
Environmental Approval for printing activity	This service aims to assess the environmental impact and licensing of development, industrial and production projects and activities, in accordance with the standards of protecting the environment and its natural resources	10 Days

Fee Details (if any)

30 Bahraini Dinars

License Information

To check the requirements for this approval, kindly download the detailed requirements sheet from the other downloadable documents section, which includes the following requirements:

- Building layout Engineering and Equipment Requirements
- Work-place Requirements
- Storage Requirements
- Material Management Requirements
- Waste Management Requirements
- Documents and Reporting Requirements
- General Requirements

Other Documents

- Law No. (2) of 2021 regarding the environmental standards of air as decided by the Chairman of the Supreme Council for Environment
- Law No. (3) of 2021 regarding the environmental standards of water as decided by the Chairman of the Supreme Council for the Environment
- Law No. (7) of 2022 regarding the environment
- Law No. (7) of 2022 regarding the environment
- Ministerial Order No. (10) of 2006 regarding the installation of devices for on-line monitoring of atmospheric air pollutants
- Ministerial Order No. (3) of 2005 regarding environmental requirements and standards in workplaces, especially regarding workers' exposure to heat and noise, and the provision of tools and protective clothing such as gloves, glasses, face masks and earplugs, with a commitment to use them during work
- Ministerial Order No. (3) of 2006 regarding the management of hazardous waste
- Ministerial Order No. (4) of 2005 regarding the management of used oils
- Ministerial Order No. (4) of 2006 regarding the management of hazardous chemicals
- Ministerial Order No. (4) of 2021 regarding the fees of the licenses and services provided by the Supreme Council for Environment
- Ministerial Order No. (6) of 2013 amending order No. (4) of 2006 regarding the management of hazardous chemicals
- Ministerial Order No. (7) of 2002 regarding the control importation and use of prohibited and severely restricted chemicals, and not to import any chemical compound except after obtaining approvals of all concerned authorities, including the executive body of the Supreme Council for Environment
- Ministerial Order No. 4 of 2014 regarding the management of the environmental consulting offices operations in the Kingdom of Bahrain
- Requirements for business activities

Professional, scientific and technical activities

ISIC4	Business activity
7490901	Chef

Description

This activity includes the provision of food and beverage services to customers including preparation and/or cooking of food and beverages without being confined to a specific location, while ensuring proper hygiene and safe handling of food. Those practicing this activity may sell directly to consumers or work based on contractual agreements with consumers, restaurants, hotels, and any other organization

Activity requirements:
1) Ensure proper hygiene and safe handling of food and ingredients at all stages from preparation to preservation.
2) Ensure that the commercial registration number is visible on the main electronic platforms such as websites or social media accounts

Note: Work visa permits cannot be obtained for those licensed to practice this activity under Sijili

Business Requirements

✔ Age

18 and above

✔ Allowed for Nationalities

Bahraini
100%

Legal Type

It is allowed to register according to the legal forms mentioned below

Allowed for Sijilli : Yes

Required Step of Licenses and Approvals

Ministry / Directorate	License / Approval Requirements	Approval Type
Municipality Affairs	Site Approval for Administrative and support activities	Post

Municipality Affairs (Post) (7490901)

Approval Name	Description	Estimated Time
Site Approval for Administrative and support activities	Municipality Approval for the Commercial Registration address or the site in which the Activity will be practiced	3 Days

Fee Details (if any)

10 BD

License Information

General Conditions:
1. Size of shop/premises must be sufficient for the activity
2. Businesses may not carry out the activity outside the boundaries of the shop/ premises
3. It is prohibited to display or store any items or equipment outside the shop / premises boundary without prior approval from the Municipality
4. Maintain cleanliness of the site
5. Comply with the parking space regulations as per the Construction Regulatory Requirements

Activity Specific Conditions:
1. The commercial address for this activity can be registered in areas classified as commercial, services, or industrial
2. The commercial address of the Commercial Registration for this activity can an office address
provided that the site is used for administrative purposes and is not located in a residential area

Note: Uploading pictures of the site/shop may expedite the process of obtaining approval

Required Documents

- Lease agreement (after obtaining the necessary approvals from other licensing entities)
- Shop photos

Other Documents

- Cabinet's Decision (56) of the year 2022 regarding the Regulatory Requirements of Construction for various areas in the Kingdom of Bahrain

Professional, scientific and technical activities

ISIC4	Business activity
75	Veterinary activities

Description

This activity includes:
- Animal health care and control activities for farm animals (fixed and movable)
- Animal health care and control activities for pet animals (fixed and movable)

These activities are carried out by qualified veterinarians when working in veterinary hospitals as well as when visiting farms, kennels or homes, in own consulting and surgery rooms or elsewhere.

- Activities of veterinary assistants or other auxiliary veterinary personnel
- Clinico-pathological and other diagnostic activities pertaining to animals
- Animal ambulance activities

This activity excludes:
- Farm animal boarding activities without health care
- Sheep shearing
- Herd testing services, droving services, agistment services, poultry caponizing
- Activities related to artificial insemination
- Pet animal boarding activities without health care

Business Requirements

Age

18 and above

Allowed for Nationalities

Bahraini
100%

American
100%

GCC
100%

Legal Type

It is allowed to register according to the legal forms mentioned below

Allowed for Individual Commercial Registration (ICR) : Yes

Allowed for Company Commercial Registration (CCR) : Yes

- Bahrain Shareholding Company (Public)
- With Limited Liability Company
- Branch of a Foreign Company
- Bahrain Shareholding Company (Closed)
- Partnership Company
- Simple Commandite Company
- Commandite By Shares Company
- Non Profit Company

Required Step of Licenses and Approvals

Ministry / Directorate	License / Approval Requirements	Approval Type
Control And Animal Health Directorate	Approval for Veterinary activities	Pre
Municipality Affairs	Site Approval for Veterinary Activities	Post
Control And Animal Health Directorate	Approval for Veterinary activities	Final Site Inspection

Control And Animal Health Directorate (Pre) (75)

Approval Name	Description	Estimated Time
Approval for Veterinary activities	Approval for Veterinary activities	5 Days

Fee Details (if any)

From 300 to 500 BD

License Information

The license application to display animals in zoos, bird parks, children's gardens, animal rental places, circuses or the like must be accompanied by a plan of the facility's location and another detailing its various buildings and facilities along with an operation plan that includes employment
Please refer to the standards of animal welfare practices
o Cruelty to animals
o Animal owner duties
o Conditions for dealing with animals
o Conditions for establishing animal facilities
o Animal transport
o The use of animals for scientific purposes
o Disposal of animals

Operational requirements after obtaining the Business license
1. Each commercial animal facility must appoint a veterinarian permanently, and he must be licensed by the competent authority to practice the veterinary profession, except for the temporary commercial or recreational facilities where the supervision of a veterinarian, a veterinary clinic, or a veterinary hospital is sufficient.
2. The competent authority issues a license for each animal observer in any commercial animal facility by the competent authority after the following conditions are met:
* Conducting a competency test in dealing with animals.
* Animal observers must submit scientific certificates that are duly documented and equivalent in the field of animal care.
* Animal observers are required to have duly documented experience certificates of no less than (5) five years in the same field.
* A duly documented (2) two-year experience certificate for animal observers in the

same field is sufficient.
A- The term of the license shall be according to the type and size of the facility, provided that it does not exceed one year;
3. The license granted to operate the animal facility shall be withdrawn if the license owner violates the Animal Welfare Law of the GCC countries or the regulations issued thereof, or if they violate the license terms issued by the competent authority.

Required Documents

- Drawing / Layout of Premises

Other Documents

- Fee decision for veterinary licenses
- GCC's Unified Standards for Veterinary Facilities
- Guidelines for licensing veterinary facilities
- Minister of Works, Municipalities Affairs and Urban Planning Decision No. (37) of 2020 issuing the executive regulations of the Animal Welfare Law for the Gulf Cooperation Council states issued by Law No. (52) of 2014
- Standards of animal welfare practices

Municipality Affairs (Post) (75)

Approval Name	Description	Estimated Time
Site Approval for Veterinary Activities	Municipality Approval for the Commercial Registration address or the site in which the Activity will be practiced	3 Days

Fee Details (if any)

10

License Information

General Conditions:
1. Size of shop/premises must be sufficient for the activity
2. Businesses may not carry out the activity outside the boundaries of the shop/ premises
3. It is prohibited to display or store any items or equipment outside the shop / premises boundary without prior approval from the Municipality. In the event of non-compliance, the Ministry of Municipality Affairs has the right to take necessary action.
4. Maintain cleanliness of the site
5. Comply with the parking space regulations as per the Construction Regulatory Requirements

Activity Specific Conditions:
1. The commercial address for this activity can be registered in areas classified as commercial, services, or industrial

Note: Uploading pictures of the site/shop may expedite the process of obtaining approval

Required Documents

- Lease agreement (after obtaining the necessary approvals from other licensing entities)
- Shop photos

Other Documents

- GCC's Unified Standards for Veterinary Facilities

Control And Animal Health Directorate (Final Site Inspection) (75)

Approval Name	Description	Estimated Time
Approval for Veterinary activities	Approval for Veterinary activities	5 Days

Fee Details (if any)

From 300 to 500 BD

License Information

The license application to display animals in zoos, bird parks, children's gardens, animal rental places, circuses or the like must be accompanied by a plan of the facility's location and another detailing its various buildings and facilities along with an operation plan that includes employment
Please refer to the standards of animal welfare practices
o Cruelty to animals
o Animal owner duties
o Conditions for dealing with animals
o Conditions for establishing animal facilities
o Animal transport
o The use of animals for scientific purposes
o Disposal of animals

Operational requirements after obtaining the Business license
1. Each commercial animal facility must appoint a veterinarian permanently, and he must be licensed by the competent authority to practice the veterinary profession, except for the temporary commercial or recreational facilities where the supervision of a veterinarian, a veterinary clinic, or a veterinary hospital is sufficient.
2. The competent authority issues a license for each animal observer in any commercial animal facility by the competent authority after the following conditions are met:
* Conducting a competency test in dealing with animals.
* Animal observers must submit scientific certificates that are duly documented and equivalent in the field of animal care.
* Animal observers are required to have duly documented experience certificates of no

less than (5) five years in the same field.
* A duly documented (2) two-year experience certificate for animal observers in the same field is sufficient.
A- The term of the license shall be according to the type and size of the facility, provided that it does not exceed one year;
3. The license granted to operate the animal facility shall be withdrawn if the license owner violates the Animal Welfare Law of the GCC countries or the regulations issued thereof, or if they violate the license terms issued by the competent authority.

Required Documents

- Drawing / Layout of Premises

Other Documents

- Fee decision for veterinary licenses
- GCC's Unified Standards for Veterinary Facilities
- Guidelines for licensing veterinary facilities
- Minister of Works, Municipalities Affairs and Urban Planning Decision No. (37) of 2020 issuing the executive regulations of the Animal Welfare Law for the Gulf Cooperation Council states issued by Law No. (52) of 2014
- Standards of animal welfare practices

ISIC4	Business activity
8129-1	Other building and industrial cleaning activities

Description

This activity includes:
- exterior cleaning of buildings of all types, including offices, factories, shops, institutions and other business and professional premises and multiunit residential buildings
- specialized cleaning activities for buildings such as window cleaning, chimney cleaning and cleaning of fireplaces, stoves, furnaces, incinerators, boilers, ventilation ducts and exhaust units
- Swimming pool cleaning and maintenance services
- cleaning of industrial machinery
- bottle cleaning
- cleaning of trains, buses, planes, etc.
- cleaning of the inside of road and sea tankers
- Disinfecting and exterminating activities
- Street sweeping and snow and ice removal
- Other building and industrial cleaning activities
-Pest control and spraying

This activity excludes:
- Agriculture pest control
- cleaning of sewers and drains
- Automobile cleaning, car wash

Business Requirements

Age

18 and above

Allowed for Nationalities

Bahraini
100%

American
100%

GCC
100%

Legal Type

It is allowed to register according to the legal forms mentioned below

Allowed for Individual Commercial Registration (ICR) : Yes

Allowed for Company Commercial Registration (CCR) : Yes

- Bahrain Shareholding Company (Public)
- With Limited Liability Company
- Branch of a Foreign Company
- Bahrain Shareholding Company (Closed)
- Partnership Company
- Simple Commandite Company
- Commandite By Shares Company
- Non Profit Company

Required Step of Licenses and Approvals

Ministry / Directorate	License / Approval Requirements	Approval Type
Supreme Council for Environment	Environmental Approval for Other building and industrial cleaning activities activity	Post
Municipality Affairs	Site Approval for Administrative and support activities	Post

Supreme Council for Environment (Post) (8129-1)

Approval Name	Description	Estimated Time
Environmental Approval for Other building and industrial cleaning activities activity	This service aims to assess the environmental impact and licensing of development, industrial and production projects and activities, in accordance with the standards of protecting the environment and its natural resources	10 Days

Fee Details (if any)

There is no Estimated Processing Time (Days) in this license.

License Information

To check the requirements for this approval, kindly download the detailed requirements sheet from the other downloadable documents section, which includes the following requirements:

- Building layout Engineering and Equipment Requirements
- Work-place Requirements
- Storage Requirements
- Material Management Requirements
- Waste Management Requirements
- Documents and Reporting Requirements
- General Requirements

Other Documents

- Law No. (2) of 2021 regarding the environmental standards of air as decided by the Chairman of the Supreme Council for Environment
- Law No. (3) of 2021 regarding the environmental standards of water as decided by the Chairman of the Supreme Council for the Environment
- Law No. (54) of 2014 regarding the approval of the unified law regarding substances that deplete the ozone layer for the GCC countries
- Law No. (7) of 2022 regarding the environment
- Ministerial Order No. (10) of 2006 regarding the installation of devices for on-line monitoring of atmospheric air pollutants
- Ministerial Order No. (3) of 2005 regarding environmental requirements and standards in workplaces, especially regarding workers' exposure to heat and noise, and the provision of tools and protective clothing such as gloves, glasses, face masks and earplugs, with a commitment to use them during work
- Ministerial Order No. (3) of 2006 regarding the management of hazardous waste
- Ministerial Order No. (4) of 2005 regarding the management of used oils
- Ministerial Order No. (4) of 2006 regarding the management of hazardous chemicals
- Ministerial Order No. (4) of 2021 regarding the fees of the licenses and services provided by the Supreme Council for Environment
- Ministerial Order No. (6) of 2013 amending order No. (4) of 2006 regarding the management of hazardous chemicals
- Ministerial Order No. (7) of 2002 regarding the control importation and use of prohibited and severely restricted chemicals, and not to import any chemical compound except after obtaining approvals of all concerned authorities, including the executive body of the Supreme Council for Environment
- Ministerial Order No. (7) of 2013 amending order No. (3) of 2006 regarding the management of hazardous waste
- Ministerial Order No. 4 of 2014 regarding the management of the environmental consulting offices operations in the Kingdom of Bahrain
- Order No. (2) of 2020 determining the categories of fees for licensing refrigeration media, refrigeration units and air conditioning units as decided by the Chairman of the Supreme Council for the Environment
- Other building and industrial cleaning activities practicing conditions
- Requirements for business activities
- law No. (1) of 2020 regarding the management of refrigeration media, refrigeration units and air conditioning units as decided by the Chairman of the Supreme Council for the Environment

Municipality Affairs (Post) (8129-1)

Approval Name	Description	Estimated Time
Site Approval for Administrative and support activities	Municipality Approval for the Commercial Registration address or the site in which the Activity will be practiced	3 Days

Fee Details (if any)

10 BD

License Information

General Conditions:
1. Size of shop/premises must be sufficient for the activity
2. Businesses may not carry out the activity outside the boundaries of the shop/ premises
3. It is prohibited to display or store any items or equipment outside the shop / premises boundary without prior approval from the Municipality
4. Maintain cleanliness of the site
5. Comply with the parking space regulations as per the Construction Regulatory Requirements

Activity Specific Conditions:
1. The commercial address for this activity can be registered in areas classified as commercial, services, or industrial
2. The commercial address of the Commercial Registration for this activity can an office address
provided that the site is used for administrative purposes and is not located in a residential area

Note: Uploading pictures of the site/shop may expedite the process of obtaining approval

Required Documents

- Lease agreement (after obtaining the necessary approvals from other licensing entities)
- Shop photos

Other Documents

- Cabinet's Decision (56) of the year 2022 regarding the Regulatory Requirements of Construction for various areas in the Kingdom of Bahrain

Professional, scientific and technical activities

ISIC4	Business activity
823-1	Organization of conventions, events, and trade shows

Description

This activity includes:
- organization, promotion and/or management of events, such as business and trade shows, conventions, conferences and meetings, whether or not including the management and provision of the staff to operate the facilities in which these events take place

Business Requirements

Age

18 and above

Allowed for Nationalities

Bahraini 100%	GCC 100%
American 100%	Singaporean 100%
Icelander 100%	Liechtenstein er 100%
Norwegian 100%	Swiss 100%

Foreign Allowed up to 100%

Legal Type

It is allowed to register according to the legal forms mentioned below

Allowed for Individual Commercial Registration (ICR) : Yes

Allowed for Company Commercial Registration (CCR) : Yes

Allowed for Sijilli : Yes

- Bahrain Shareholding Company (Public)
- With Limited Liability Company
- Branch of a Foreign Company
- Bahrain Shareholding Company (Closed)
- Partnership Company
- Simple Commandite Company
- Commandite By Shares Company
- Non Profit Company

Required Step of Licenses and Approvals

Ministry / Directorate	License / Approval Requirements	Approval Type
Municipality Affairs	Site Approval for Administrative and support activities	Post

Municipality Affairs (Post) (823-1)

Approval Name	Description	Estimated Time
Site Approval for Administrative and support activities	Municipality Approval for the Commercial Registration address or the site in which the Activity will be practiced	3 Days

Fee Details (if any)

10 BD

License Information

General Conditions:
1. Size of shop/premises must be sufficient for the activity
2. Businesses may not carry out the activity outside the boundaries of the shop/ premises
3. It is prohibited to display or store any items or equipment outside the shop / premises boundary without prior approval from the Municipality
4. Maintain cleanliness of the site
5. Comply with the parking space regulations as per the Construction Regulatory Requirements

Activity Specific Conditions:
1. The commercial address for this activity can be registered in areas classified as commercial, services, or industrial
2. The commercial address of the Commercial Registration for this activity can an office address
provided that the site is used for administrative purposes and is not located in a residential area

Note: Uploading pictures of the site/shop may expedite the process of obtaining approval

Required Documents

- Lease agreement (after obtaining the necessary approvals from other licensing entities)
- Shop photos

Other Documents

- Cabinet's Decision (56) of the year 2022 regarding the Regulatory Requirements of Construction for various areas in the Kingdom of Bahrain

Professional, scientific and technical activities

ISIC4	Business activity
8292-1	Packaging activities

Description

Includes establishments primarily engaged in providing packaging services to others such as goods packaging and preparing for shipment, and transporting them to the loading dock, sites, or final destination. It also includes the provision of packaging services for household and personal luggage or goods.

Business Requirements

Age

18 and above

Allowed for Nationalities

Bahraini 100%	GCC 100%
American 100%	Singaporean 100%
Icelander 100%	Liechtenstein er 100%
Norwegian 100%	Swiss 100%

Foreign Allowed up to 100%

Legal Type

It is allowed to register according to the legal forms mentioned below

Allowed for Individual Commercial Registration (ICR) : Yes

Allowed for Company Commercial Registration (CCR) : Yes

Allowed for Sijilli : Yes

- Bahrain Shareholding Company (Public)
- With Limited Liability Company
- Branch of a Foreign Company
- Bahrain Shareholding Company (Closed)
- Partnership Company
- Simple Commandite Company
- Commandite By Shares Company
- Non Profit Company

Required Step of Licenses and Approvals

Ministry / Directorate	License / Approval Requirements	Approval Type
Municipality Affairs	Site Approval for Administrative and support activities	Post

Municipality Affairs (Post) (8292-1)

Approval Name	Description	Estimated Time
Site Approval for Administrative and support activities	Municipality Approval for the Commercial Registration address or the site in which the Activity will be practiced	3 Days

Fee Details (if any)

10 BD

License Information

General Conditions:
1. Size of shop/premises must be sufficient for the activity
2. Businesses may not carry out the activity outside the boundaries of the shop/ premises
3. It is prohibited to display or store any items or equipment outside the shop / premises boundary without prior approval from the Municipality
4. Maintain cleanliness of the site
5. Comply with the parking space regulations as per the Construction Regulatory Requirements

Activity Specific Conditions:
1. The commercial address for this activity can be registered in areas classified as commercial, services, or industrial
2. The commercial address of the Commercial Registration for this activity can an office address
provided that the site is used for administrative purposes and is not located in a residential area

Note: Uploading pictures of the site/shop may expedite the process of obtaining approval

Required Documents

- Lease agreement (after obtaining the necessary approvals from other licensing entities)
- Shop photos

Other Documents

- Cabinet's Decision (56) of the year 2022 regarding the Regulatory Requirements of Construction for various areas in the Kingdom of Bahrain

Professional, scientific and technical activities

ISIC4	Business activity
932902-1	Operational of recreational water transportation facilities

Description

This activity includes:
- Operation of recreational water transportation facilities
- Management and operation of marina clubs boats.
- Operation of water sport activities using water transportation vehicles

Business Requirements

Age

18 and above

Allowed for Nationalities

Bahraini 100%	GCC 100%
American 100%	Singaporean 100%
Icelander 100%	Liechtenstein er 100%
Norwegian 100%	Swiss 100%

Foreign Allowed up to 100%

Legal Type

It is allowed to register according to the legal forms mentioned below

Allowed for Individual Commercial Registration (ICR) : Yes

Allowed for Company Commercial Registration (CCR) : Yes

- Bahrain Shareholding Company (Public)
- With Limited Liability Company
- Branch of a Foreign Company
- Bahrain Shareholding Company (Closed)
- Partnership Company
- Simple Commandite Company
- Commandite By Shares Company
- Non Profit Company

Required Step of Licenses and Approvals

Ministry / Directorate	License / Approval Requirements	Approval Type
Municipality Affairs	Site Approval for Operation of recreational water transportation facilities	Post

Municipality Affairs (Post) (932902-1)

Approval Name	Description	Estimated Time
Site Approval for Operation of recreational water transportation facilities	Municipality Approval for the Commercial Registration address or the site in which the Activity will be practiced	3 Days

Fee Details (if any)

10 BD

License Information

General Conditions:
1. Size of shop/premises must be sufficient for the activity
2. Businesses may not carry out the activity outside the boundaries of the shop/ premises
3. It is prohibited to display or store any items or equipment outside the shop / premises boundary without prior approval from the Municipality
4. Maintain cleanliness of the site
5. Comply with the parking space regulations as per the Construction Regulatory Requirements

Activity Specific Conditions:
1. The commercial address can be registered on administrative offices

Note: Uploading pictures of the site/shop may expedite the process of obtaining approval

Required Documents

- Lease agreement (after obtaining the necessary approvals from other licensing entities)
- Shop photos

Other Documents

- Cabinet's Decision (56) of the year 2022 regarding the Regulatory Requirements of Construction for various areas in the Kingdom of Bahrain

Administrative and support service activities

سجلات
SIJILAT
نظام السجلات التجارية
COMMERCIAL REGISTRATION PORTAL

Administrative and support service activities

ISIC4	Business activity
771-1	Renting and leasing of motor vehicles

Description

This activity includes renting and operational leasing of the following types of vehicles:
- Passenger cars (without drivers)
- Trucks, utility trailers and recreational vehicles

Business Requirements

Age

18 and above

Allowed for Nationalities

- Bahraini 100%
- American 100%
- GCC 100%

Legal Type

It is allowed to register according to the legal forms mentioned below

Allowed for Individual Commercial Registration (ICR) : Yes

Allowed for Company Commercial Registration (CCR) : Yes

- Bahrain Shareholding Company (Public)
- With Limited Liability Company
- Branch of a Foreign Company
- Bahrain Shareholding Company (Closed)
- Partnership Company
- Simple Commandite Company
- Commandite By Shares Company
- Non Profit Company

Required Step of Licenses and Approvals

Ministry / Directorate	License / Approval Requirements	Approval Type
General Directorate Of Criminal Investigation	Approval by General Directorate of Criminal Investigation	Pre
Land Transportation Regulation Directorate	Car Rental - Pre	Pre
Municipality Affairs	Site Approval for Renting and leasing of motor vehicles	Post
Land Transportation Regulation Directorate	Final site inspection Renting and Leasing of Motor Vehicles	Final Site Inspection

General Directorate Of Criminal Investigation (Pre) (771-1)

Approval Name	Description	Estimated Time
Approval by General Directorate of Criminal Investigation	General Directorate of Criminal Investigation Approval for the Activity	7 Days

Fee Details (if any)

There is no Estimated Processing Time (Days) in this license.

License Information

- The applicant should not have a criminal record, unless they have been rehabilitated in criminal cases

Land Transportation Regulation Directorate (Pre) (771-1)

Approval Name	Description	Estimated Time
Car Rental - Pre	Car Rental - Pre	15 Days

Fee Details (if any)

Other Fees include:
- Application Fee: BD100
- License Fee : BD500
- Yard Site Visit: BD50 (for each yard)
- Issuance of each operating card (per vehicle): BD 40
- Renewal of each operating card (per vehicle): BD 40

License Information

The requirements for the vehicles that will be used in practicing the licensed activity

1. The minimum number of vehicles required is 10 vehicles.

2. The vehicles must be in a good condition throughout their usage. The vehicles must not have been used for more than 3 years at the time the operating card for the vehicle is requested, and in any case must not exceed 5 years from the date of manufacture upon the renewal of the operating card.

3. The investor shall bear any liability resulting from the purchase of the vehicles before obtaining the final approval (license) from the Ministry of Transportation and Telecommunications.

- The requirements for the vehicles yard site:

1. The yard must not be located in an area classified as a residential area.

2. The yard size must accommodate 10% of the vehicles that will be used to operate the

licensed activity with minimum of 5 parks.

3. Comply with other requirements specified by the Land Transportation Regulation Directorate

• If the licensee wishes to add a branch with the same license, the licensee must comply with the requirements of the headquarters without prejudice to the requirements of the vehicles yard.

Required Documents

•A list with the names of the drivers and details of their driving permits (if any)
•Audited financial statements (only in the case of companies that have been established three years or more)
•Business Plan
•List of proposed vehicles
•List of vehicles used for the current land transport activity indicating the type of vehicle, model, and year of manufacture (only for existing entities practicing any land transportation activity)
•Photos showing the location of the headquarters from different angles, with pictures showing availability of customer parking
•Statement with the proposed address of the car yard

Other Documents

•Ministerial Order No. 11 for the year 2015
•Ministerial order No. (23) of 2016 regarding the regulation of renting of cars and motorcycles
•Ministerial order number (13) for the year 2020 for renting motor vehicles
•Ministerial order number)12(for the year 2017 regarding amendment for Ministerial order number (11) for the year 2015

Municipality Affairs (Post) (771-1)

Approval Name	Description	Estimated Time
Site Approval for Renting and leasing of motor vehicles	Municipality Approval for the Commercial Registration address or the site in which the Activity will be practiced	3 Days

Fee Details (if any)

10 BD

License Information

General Conditions:
1. Size of shop/premises must be sufficient for the activity
2. Businesses may not carry out the activity outside the boundaries of the shop/ premises
3. It is prohibited to display or store any items or equipment outside the shop / premises boundary without prior approval from the Municipality. In the event of non-compliance, the Ministry of Municipality Affairs has the right to take necessary action.
4. Maintain cleanliness of the site
5. Comply with the parking space regulations as per the Construction Regulatory Requirements

Activity Specific Conditions:
1. The commercial address for this activity is allowed to be registered in areas classified as investment or industrial, or on commercial or service streets.
2. Comply with the regulations of Land Transportation Affairs regarding the office and yard location

Note: Uploading pictures of the site/shop may expedite the process of obtaining approval

Required Documents

- Lease agreement (after obtaining the necessary approvals from other licensing entities)
- Pictures of site/shop (optional)
- Shop photos

Other Documents

- Cabinet's Decision (56) of the year 2022 regarding the Regulatory Requirements of Construction for various areas in the Kingdom of Bahrain

Land Transportation Regulation Directorate (Final Site Inspection) (771-1)

Approval Name	Description	Estimated Time
Final site inspection Renting and Leasing of Motor Vehicles	Final site inspection Renting and Leasing of Motor Vehicles	15 Days

Fee Details (if any)

There is no Estimated Processing Time (Days) in this license.

License Information

• The requirements for the vehicles yard site:

1. The yard must not be located in an area classified as a residential area.

2. The yard size should accommodate 10% of the vehicles that will be used to operate the licensed activity with minimum of 5 parks.

3. The yard site should be fenced and have an emergency exit as well as security and safety facilities.

4. Erecting a metal fence or wall around the yard with a height of at least 1.2 meters.
5. The exits leading to the area must be suitable and safe.

6. The exits leading to the yard cannot face main roads with heavy traffic activity.
7. The exits leading to the yard cannot directly face major or minor crossroads and intersections.
8. Both the entrance and the exist to the yard must be suitably sized, as well as being able to be locked.

• The requirements of the placard:
1. Must place a placard in the rest area for vehicles showing the commercial

registrations name and number (made from metal of any other suitable materials that have been approved by the Directorate).
2. The placard must be at least 1 m x 60 cm and contains the name of the approved company / Individual in a clear text.
3. Erecting a sign showing the rest area belonging to the company / the individual establishment if the yard is located near a warehouse.
• Comply with other requirements specified by the Land Transportation Regulation Directorate

• If the licensee wishes to add a branch with the same license, the licensee must comply with the requirements of the headquarters without prejudice to the requirements of the vehicles yard.

Required Documents

•Copy of survey certificate or title deed of the proposed yard
•Yard agreement between the owner and the lessee, if the agreement is a sub-lease a no objection letter should be submitted by the owner

Other Documents

•Ministerial order number (13) for the year 2020 for renting motor vehicles
•Ministerial order number 11 for the year 2015 regarding Issuing the list of Public Transportation licenses
•Ministerial order number 12 for the year 2017 regarding amendment for Ministerial order number 11 for the year 2015

Administrative and support service activities

ISIC4	Business activity
771-2	Renting and leasing of motor vehicles - Luxury Vehicles Rental With Driver

Description

Luxury Vehicles Rental With Driver

Business Requirements

✔ Age

✔ Allowed for Nationalities

- Bahraini 100%
- American 100%
- GCC 100%

✔ Legal Type

It is allowed to register according to the legal forms mentioned below

Allowed for Individual Commercial Registration (ICR) : Yes

Allowed for Company Commercial Registration (CCR) : Yes

- Bahrain Shareholding Company (Public)
- With Limited Liability Company
- Branch of a Foreign Company
- Bahrain Shareholding Company (Closed)
- Partnership Company
- Simple Commandite Company
- Commandite By Shares Company
- Non Profit Company

Required Step of Licenses and Approvals

Ministry / Directorate	License / Approval Requirements	Approval Type
General Directorate Of Criminal Investigation	Approval by General Directorate of Criminal Investigation	Pre
Land Transportation Regulation Directorate	Luxury Vehicles Rental With Driver - Pre	Pre
Municipality Affairs	Site Approval for Renting and leasing of motor vehicles	Post
Land Transportation Regulation Directorate	Final site inspection for Luxury Vehicles Rental With Driver	Final Site Inspection

General Directorate Of Criminal Investigation (Pre) (771-2)

Approval Name	Description	Estimated Time
Approval by General Directorate of Criminal Investigation	General Directorate of Criminal Investigation Approval for the Activity	7 Days

Fee Details (if any)

There is no Estimated Processing Time (Days) in this license.

License Information

- The applicant should not have a criminal record, unless they have been rehabilitated in criminal cases

Land Transportation Regulation Directorate (Pre) (771-2)

Approval Name	Description	Estimated Time
Luxury Vehicles Rental With Driver - Pre	Luxury Vehicles Rental With Driver - Pre	15 Days

Fee Details (if any)

Other Fees include:
- Application Fee: BD100
- License Fee : BD1000
- Yard Site Visit: BD50 (for each yard)
- Issuance of each operating card (per vehicle): BD 100
- Renewal of each operating card (per vehicle): BD 100

License Information

The requirements for the vehicles that will be used in practicing the licensed activity

1. The minimum number of vehicles required to practice this activity is 5 vehicles.

2. The vehicles must be in a good condition throughout their usage. The vehicles must not have been used for more than 1 years at the time the operating card for the vehicle is requested, and the vehicle's life must not have exceed 6 years from the date of manufacture upon the renewal of the operating card.

3. The investor shall bear any liability resulting from the purchase of the vehicles before obtaining the final approval (license) from the Ministry of Transportation and Telecommunications.

- The requirements for the vehicles yard address:

1. The yard must not be located in an area classified as a residential area.

2. The yard size should accommodate 20% of the vehicles that will be used to operate the licensed activity.

- Comply with other requirements specified by the Land Transportation Regulation Directorate

- If the licensee wishes to add a branch with the same license, the licensee must comply with the requirements of the headquarters without prejudice to the requirements of the vehicles yard.

Required Documents

- List of proposed vehicles to be used in the activity, indicating the vehicle type, model, and year of manufacture
- Statement with the proposed address of the car vehicles yard

Other Documents

- Ministerial order number (11) for the year 2015 regarding Issuing the list of Public Transportation licenses
- Ministerial order number (12) for the year 2017 regarding amendment for Ministerial order number (11) for the year 2015
- Ministerial order number (12) for the year 2018 for Luxury Vehicles Rental with Driver
- Ministerial order number 10 for the year 2018 regarding amendment for Ministerial order number (11) for the year 2015

Municipality Affairs (Post) (771-2)

Approval Name	Description	Estimated Time
Site Approval for Renting and leasing of motor vehicles	Municipality Approval for the Commercial Registration address or the site in which the Activity will be practiced	3 Days

Fee Details (if any)

10 BD

License Information

General Conditions:
1. Size of shop/premises must be sufficient for the activity
2. Businesses may not carry out the activity outside the boundaries of the shop/ premises
3. It is prohibited to display or store any items or equipment outside the shop / premises boundary without prior approval from the Municipality. In the event of non-compliance, the Ministry of Municipality Affairs has the right to take necessary action.
4. Maintain cleanliness of the site
5. Comply with the parking space regulations as per the Construction Regulatory Requirements

Activity Specific Conditions:
1. The commercial address for this activity is allowed to be registered in areas classified as investment or industrial, or on commercial or service streets.
2. Comply with the regulations of Land Transportation Affairs regarding the office and yard location

Note: Uploading pictures of the site/shop may expedite the process of obtaining approval

Required Documents

- Lease agreement (after obtaining the necessary approvals from other licensing entities)
- Pictures of site/shop (optional)
- Shop photos

Other Documents

- Cabinet's Decision (56) of the year 2022 regarding the Regulatory Requirements of Construction for various areas in the Kingdom of Bahrain

Land Transportation Regulation Directorate (Final Site Inspection) (771-2)

Approval Name	Description	Estimated Time
Final site inspection for Luxury Vehicles Rental With Driver	Final site inspection for Luxury Vehicles Rental With Driver	15 Days

Fee Details (if any)

There is no Estimated Processing Time (Days) in this license.

License Information

• The requirements for the vehicles yard address:

1. The yard must not be located in an area classified as a residential area.

2. The yard size should accommodate 20% of the vehicles that will be used to operate the licensed activity

3. The yard site should be fenced and have an emergency exit as well as security and safety facilities.

4. Erecting a metal fence or wall around the yard with a height of at least 1.2 meters.
5. The exits leading to the area must be suitable and safe.

6. The exits leading to the yard cannot face main roads which see heavy traffic activity.
7. The exits leading to the yard cannot directly face major or minor crossroads and intersections.
8. Both the entrance and the exist to the yard must be suitably sized, as well as being able to be locked.

• The requirements of the placard:
1. Must place a placard in the rest area for vehicles showing the commercial

registrations name and number (made from metal of any other suitable materials that have been approved by the Directorate).
2. The placard must be at least 1 m x 60 cm and contains the name of the approved company or institute in a clear text.
3. Erecting a sign showing the rest area belonging to the company or the individual establishment if the yard is located near a warehouse.
Comply with other requirements specified by the Land Transportation Regulation Directorate

• If the licensee wishes to add a branch with the same license, the licensee must comply with the requirements of the headquarters without prejudice to the requirements of the vehicles yard.

Required Documents

•Copy of survey certificate or title deed of the proposed yard
•Yard agreement between the owner and the lessee, if the agreement is a sub-lease a no objection letter should be submitted by the owner

Other Documents

•Ministerial order number (11) for the year 2015 regarding Issuing the list of Public Transportation licenses
•Ministerial order number (12) for the year 2017 regarding amendment for Ministerial order number (11) for the year 2015
•Ministerial order number (12) for the year 2018 for Luxury Vehicles Rental with Driver
•Ministerial order number 10 for the year 2018 regarding amendment for Ministerial order number (11) for the year 2015

Administrative and support service activities

ISIC4	Business activity
7721	Renting and leasing of recreational and sports goods

Description

This activity includes renting of recreational and sports equipment:
- Pleasure boats, canoes, sailboats
- Bicycles
- Beach chairs and umbrellas
- Other sports equipment
- Skis

This activity excludes:
- Renting & leasing of Motorbikes & Electric Bikes
- Renting of video tapes and disks
- Renting of other personal and household goods
- Renting of leisure and pleasure equipment as an integral part of recreational facilities

Business Requirements

Age

18 and above

Allowed for Nationalities

Bahraini
100%

GCC
100%

American
100%

Legal Type

It is allowed to register according to the legal forms mentioned below

Allowed for Individual Commercial Registration (ICR) : Yes

Allowed for Company Commercial Registration (CCR) : Yes

Allowed for Sijilli : Yes

- Bahrain Shareholding Company (Public)
- With Limited Liability Company
- Branch of a Foreign Company
- Bahrain Shareholding Company (Closed)
- Partnership Company
- Simple Commandite Company
- Commandite By Shares Company
- Non Profit Company

Required Step of Licenses and Approvals

Ministry / Directorate	License / Approval Requirements	Approval Type
Municipality Affairs	Site Approval for Administrative and support activities	Post

Municipality Affairs (Post) (7721)

Approval Name	Description	Estimated Time
Site Approval for Administrative and support activities	Municipality Approval for the Commercial Registration address or the site in which the Activity will be practiced	3 Days

Fee Details (if any)

10 BD

License Information

General Conditions:
1. Size of shop/premises must be sufficient for the activity
2. Businesses may not carry out the activity outside the boundaries of the shop/ premises
3. It is prohibited to display or store any items or equipment outside the shop / premises boundary without prior approval from the Municipality
4. Maintain cleanliness of the site
5. Comply with the parking space regulations as per the Construction Regulatory Requirements

Activity Specific Conditions:
1. The commercial address for this activity can be registered in areas classified as commercial, services, or industrial
2. The commercial address of the Commercial Registration for this activity can an office address
provided that the site is used for administrative purposes and is not located in a residential area

Note: Uploading pictures of the site/shop may expedite the process of obtaining approval

Required Documents

- Lease agreement (after obtaining the necessary approvals from other licensing entities)
- Shop photos

Other Documents

- Cabinet's Decision (56) of the year 2022 regarding the Regulatory Requirements of Construction for various areas in the Kingdom of Bahrain

Administrative and support service activities

ISIC4	Business activity
7722	Renting of video tapes and disks

Description

This activity includes renting of video tapes, records, CD's, DVDs etc.

Business Requirements

Age

18 and above

Allowed for Nationalities

- Bahraini 100%
- American 100%
- GCC 100%

Legal Type

It is allowed to register according to the legal forms mentioned below

Allowed for Individual Commercial Registration (ICR) : Yes

Allowed for Company Commercial Registration (CCR) : Yes

- Bahrain Shareholding Company (Public)
- With Limited Liability Company
- Branch of a Foreign Company
- Bahrain Shareholding Company (Closed)
- Partnership Company
- Simple Commandite Company
- Commandite By Shares Company
- Non Profit Company

Required Step of Licenses and Approvals

Ministry / Directorate	License / Approval Requirements	Approval Type
Municipality Affairs	Site Approval for Administrative and support activities	Post

Municipality Affairs (Post) (7722)

Approval Name	Description	Estimated Time
Site Approval for Administrative and support activities	Municipality Approval for the Commercial Registration address or the site in which the Activity will be practiced	3 Days

Fee Details (if any)

10 BD

License Information

General Conditions:
1. Size of shop/premises must be sufficient for the activity
2. Businesses may not carry out the activity outside the boundaries of the shop/ premises
3. It is prohibited to display or store any items or equipment outside the shop / premises boundary without prior approval from the Municipality
4. Maintain cleanliness of the site
5. Comply with the parking space regulations as per the Construction Regulatory Requirements

Activity Specific Conditions:
1. The commercial address for this activity can be registered in areas classified as commercial, services, or industrial
2. The commercial address of the Commercial Registration for this activity can an office address
provided that the site is used for administrative purposes and is not located in a residential area

Note: Uploading pictures of the site/shop may expedite the process of obtaining approval

Required Documents

- Lease agreement (after obtaining the necessary approvals from other licensing entities)
- Shop photos

Other Documents

- Cabinet's Decision (56) of the year 2022 regarding the Regulatory Requirements of Construction for various areas in the Kingdom of Bahrain

Administrative and support service activities

ISIC4	Business activity
7729	Renting and leasing of other personal and household goods

Description

This activity includes renting of all kinds of household or personal goods, to households or industries (except recreational and sports equipment):
- Textiles, wearing apparel and footwear
- Furniture, pottery and glass, kitchen and tableware, electrical appliances and house wares
- Jewellery, musical instruments, scenery and costumes
- Books, journals and magazines
- Machinery and equipment used by amateurs or as a hobby e.g. tools for home repairs
- Flowers and plants
- Electronic equipment for household use

This activity excludes:
- Renting of cars, trucks, trailers and recreational vehicles without driver
- Renting of recreational and sports goods
- Renting of video tapes and disks
- Renting of motorcycles and caravans without driver
- Renting of office furniture
- Provision of linen, work uniforms and related items by laundries

Business Requirements

Age

18 and above

Allowed for Nationalities

Bahraini 100%

American 100%

GCC 100%

Legal Type

It is allowed to register according to the legal forms mentioned below

Allowed for Individual Commercial Registration (ICR) : Yes

Allowed for Company Commercial Registration (CCR) : Yes

- Bahrain Shareholding Company (Public)
- With Limited Liability Company
- Branch of a Foreign Company
- Bahrain Shareholding Company (Closed)
- Partnership Company
- Simple Commandite Company
- Commandite By Shares Company
- Non Profit Company

Required Step of Licenses and Approvals

Ministry / Directorate	License / Approval Requirements	Approval Type
Municipality Affairs	Site Approval for Administrative and support activities	Post

Municipality Affairs (Post) (7729)

Approval Name	Description	Estimated Time
Site Approval for Administrative and support activities	Municipality Approval for the Commercial Registration address or the site in which the Activity will be practiced	3 Days

Fee Details (if any)

10 BD

License Information

General Conditions:
1. Size of shop/premises must be sufficient for the activity
2. Businesses may not carry out the activity outside the boundaries of the shop/ premises
3. It is prohibited to display or store any items or equipment outside the shop / premises boundary without prior approval from the Municipality
4. Maintain cleanliness of the site
5. Comply with the parking space regulations as per the Construction Regulatory Requirements

Activity Specific Conditions:
1. The commercial address for this activity can be registered in areas classified as commercial, services, or industrial
2. The commercial address of the Commercial Registration for this activity can an office address
provided that the site is used for administrative purposes and is not located in a residential area

Note: Uploading pictures of the site/shop may expedite the process of obtaining approval

Required Documents

- Lease agreement (after obtaining the necessary approvals from other licensing entities)
- Shop photos

Other Documents

- Cabinet's Decision (56) of the year 2022 regarding the Regulatory Requirements of Construction for various areas in the Kingdom of Bahrain

Administrative and support service activities

ISIC4	Business activity
77301	Renting and operational leasing of machinery and equipment

Description

This activity includes renting and operational leasing, without operator, of other machinery and equipment that are generally used as capital goods by industries:
- Engines and turbines
- Machine tools
- measuring and controlling equipment

Business Requirements

Age

18 and above

Allowed for Nationalities

Bahraini 100%	GCC 100%
American 100%	Icelander 100%
Liechtenstein er 100%	Norwegian 100%
Swiss 100%	

Legal Type

It is allowed to register according to the legal forms mentioned below

Allowed for Individual Commercial Registration (ICR) : Yes

Allowed for Company Commercial Registration (CCR) : Yes

- Bahrain Shareholding Company (Public)
- With Limited Liability Company
- Branch of a Foreign Company
- Bahrain Shareholding Company (Closed)
- Partnership Company
- Simple Commandite Company
- Commandite By Shares Company
- Non Profit Company

Required Step of Licenses and Approvals

Ministry / Directorate	License / Approval Requirements	Approval Type
Municipality Affairs	Site Approval for Administrative and support activities	Post

Municipality Affairs (Post) (77301)

Approval Name	Description	Estimated Time
Site Approval for Administrative and support activities	Municipality Approval for the Commercial Registration address or the site in which the Activity will be practiced	3 Days

Fee Details (if any)

10 BD

License Information

General Conditions:
1. Size of shop/premises must be sufficient for the activity
2. Businesses may not carry out the activity outside the boundaries of the shop/ premises
3. It is prohibited to display or store any items or equipment outside the shop / premises boundary without prior approval from the Municipality
4. Maintain cleanliness of the site
5. Comply with the parking space regulations as per the Construction Regulatory Requirements

Activity Specific Conditions:
1. The commercial address for this activity can be registered in areas classified as commercial, services, or industrial
2. The commercial address of the Commercial Registration for this activity can an office address
provided that the site is used for administrative purposes and is not located in a residential area

Note: Uploading pictures of the site/shop may expedite the process of obtaining approval

Required Documents

- Lease agreement (after obtaining the necessary approvals from other licensing entities)
- Shop photos

Other Documents

- Cabinet's Decision (56) of the year 2022 regarding the Regulatory Requirements of Construction for various areas in the Kingdom of Bahrain

Administrative and support service activities

ISIC4	Business activity
773021	Motorcycle Rental

Description

This activity includes renting and leasing of bikes such as:
1- Motorbikes
2- Electric bikes

Business Requirements

Age

18 and above

Allowed for Nationalities

- Bahraini 100%
- American 100%
- GCC 100%

Legal Type

It is allowed to register according to the legal forms mentioned below

Allowed for Individual Commercial Registration (ICR) : Yes

Allowed for Company Commercial Registration (CCR) : Yes

- Bahrain Shareholding Company (Public)
- With Limited Liability Company
- Branch of a Foreign Company
- Bahrain Shareholding Company (Closed)
- Partnership Company
- Simple Commandite Company
- Commandite By Shares Company
- Non Profit Company

Required Step of Licenses and Approvals

Ministry / Directorate	License / Approval Requirements	Approval Type
Land Transportation Regulation Directorate	Motorcycle Rental - Pre	Pre
General Directorate Of Criminal Investigation	Approval by General Directorate of Criminal Investigation	Pre
Municipality Affairs	Site Approval for Motorcycle Rental	Post
Land Transportation Regulation Directorate	Final site inspection for Motorcycle Rental	Final Site Inspection

Land Transportation Regulation Directorate (Pre) (773021)

Approval Name	Description	Estimated Time
Motorcycle Rental - Pre	Motorcycle Rental - Pre	15 Days

Fee Details (if any)

Other Fees include:
- Application Fee: BD100
- License Fee : BD500
- Yard Site Visit: BD50 (for each yard)
- Issuance of each operating card (per vehicle): BD 40
- Renewal of each operating card (per vehicle): BD 40

License Information

The requirements for the vehicles that will be used in practicing the licensed activity

1. The minimum number of vehicles required to practice Motorcycle Rental activity is 10 vehicles.

2. The vehicles must be in a good condition throughout their usage. The vehicles must not have been used for more than 3 years at the time the operating card for the vehicle is requested, and in any case must not have exceed 5 years from the date of manufacture upon the renewal of the operating card.

3. The minimum number of vehicles required to practice Electric Bikes is 20 vehicles.

4. The vehicles must be in a good condition throughout their usage. The vehicles must not have been used for more than 1 years at the time the operating card for the vehicle is requested, and the vehicle's life must not have exceed 3 years from the date of manufacture upon the renewal of the operating card .

5. The investor shall bear any liability resulting from the purchase of the vehicles before

obtaining the final approval (license) from the Ministry of Transportation and Telecommunications.

• The requirements for the vehicles yard address:

1. The yard must not be located in an area classified as a residential area.

2. The yard size should accommodate 10% of the vehicles that will be used to operate the licensed activity with minimum of 5 parks.

3. Comply with other requirements specified by the Land Transportation Regulation Directorate.

• If the licensee wishes to add a branch with the same license, the licensee must comply with the requirements of the headquarters without prejudice to the requirements of the vehicles yard.

Required Documents

•Audited financial statements (only in the case of companies that have been established three years or more)
•Business Plan
•List of proposed vehicles to be used in the activity, indicating the vehicle type, model, and year of manufacture
•Photos showing the location of the headquarters from different angles, with pictures showing availability of customer parking
•Statement with the proposed address of the yard

Other Documents

•Ministerial Order No. 11 for the year 2015
•Ministerial order No. (23) of 2016 regarding the regulation of renting of cars and motorcycles
•Ministerial order number (12) for the year 2017 regarding amendment for Ministerial order number (11) for the year 2015
•Ministerial order number (13) for the year 2020 for renting motor vehicles

General Directorate Of Criminal Investigation (Pre) (773021)

Approval Name	Description	Estimated Time
Approval by General Directorate of Criminal Investigation	General Directorate of Criminal Investigation Approval for the Activity	7 Days

Fee Details (if any)

There is no Estimated Processing Time (Days) in this license.

License Information

- The applicant should not have a criminal record, unless they have been rehabilitated in criminal cases

Municipality Affairs (Post) (773021)

Approval Name	Description	Estimated Time
Site Approval for Motorcycle Rental	This activity includes Motorcycle Rental	3 Days

Fee Details (if any)

There is no Estimated Processing Time (Days) in this license.

License Information

General Conditions:
1. Size of shop/premises must be sufficient for the activity
2. Businesses may not carry out the activity outside the boundaries of the shop/ premises
3. It is prohibited to display or store any items or equipment outside the shop / premises boundary without prior approval from the Municipality. In the event of non-compliance, the Ministry of Municipality Affairs has the right to take necessary action.
4. Maintain cleanliness of the site
5. Comply with the parking space regulations as per the Construction Regulatory Requirements

Activity Specific Conditions:
1. The commercial address for this activity is allowed to be registered in areas classified as investment or industrial, or on commercial or service streets.
2. Comply with the regulations of Land Transportation Affairs regarding the office and yard location

Note: Uploading pictures of the site/shop may expedite the process of obtaining approval

Required Documents

- Lease agreement (after obtaining the necessary approvals from other licensing entities)
- Shop photos

Other Documents

- Cabinet's Decision (56) of the year 2022 regarding the Regulatory Requirements of Construction for various areas in the Kingdom of Bahrain

Land Transportation Regulation Directorate (Final Site Inspection) (773021)

Approval Name	Description	Estimated Time
Final site inspection for Motorcycle Rental	Final site inspection for Motorcycle Rental	15 Days

Fee Details (if any)

There is no Estimated Processing Time (Days) in this license.

License Information

• The requirements for the vehicles yard address:

1. The yard must not be located in an area classified as a residential area.

2. The yard size should accommodate 10% of the vehicles that will be used to operate the licensed activity with minimum of 5 parks.

3. The yard site should be fenced and have an emergency exit as well as security and safety facilities.

4. Erecting a metal fence or wall around the yard with a height of at least 1.2 meters.
5. The exits leading to the area must be suitable and safe.

6. The exits leading to the yard cannot face main roads which see heavy traffic activity.
7. The exits leading to the yard cannot directly face major or minor crossroads and intersections.
8. Both the entrance and the exist to the yard must be suitably sized, as well as being able to be locked.

• The requirements of the placard:
1. Must place a placard in the rest area for vehicles showing the commercial registrations name and number (made from metal of any other suitable materials that have been approved by the Directorate).
2. The placard must be at least 1 m x 60 cm and contains the name of the approved

company or institute in a clear text.
3. Erecting a sign showing the rest area belonging to the company or the individual establishment if the yard is located near a warehouse.
Comply with other requirements specified by the Land Transportation Regulation Directorate

• If the licensee wishes to add a branch with the same license, the licensee must comply with the requirements of the headquarters without prejudice to the requirements of the vehicles yard.

Required Documents

•Copy of survey certificate or title deed of the proposed yard
•Yard agreement between the owner and the lessee, if the agreement is a sub-lease a no objection letter should be submitted by the owner

Other Documents

•Ministerial order number (11) for the year 2015 regarding Issuing the list of Public Transportation licenses
•Ministerial order number (12) for the year 2017 regarding amendment for Ministerial order number (11) for the year 2015
•Ministerial order number (13) for the year 2020 for renting motor vehicles

Administrative and support service activities

ISIC4	Business activity
77303	Renting and operational leasing of water-transport equipment

Description

This activity includes renting or leasing of marine equipment's and engines.

Business Requirements

Age

18 and above

Allowed for Nationalities

Bahraini 100%	GCC 100%
American 100%	Singaporean 100%
Icelander 100%	Liechtensteiner 100%
Norwegian 100%	Swiss 100%

Foreign Allowed up to 100%

Legal Type

It is allowed to register according to the legal forms mentioned below

Allowed for Individual Commercial Registration (ICR) : Yes

Allowed for Company Commercial Registration (CCR) : Yes

- Bahrain Shareholding Company (Public)
- With Limited Liability Company
- Branch of a Foreign Company
- Bahrain Shareholding Company (Closed)
- Partnership Company
- Simple Commandite Company
- Commandite By Shares Company
- Non Profit Company

Required Step of Licenses and Approvals

Ministry / Directorate	License / Approval Requirements	Approval Type
Municipality Affairs	Site Approval for Administrative and support activities	Post

Municipality Affairs (Post) (77303)

Approval Name	Description	Estimated Time
Site Approval for Administrative and support activities	Municipality Approval for the Commercial Registration address or the site in which the Activity will be practiced	3 Days

Fee Details (if any)

10 BD

License Information

General Conditions:
1. Size of shop/premises must be sufficient for the activity
2. Businesses may not carry out the activity outside the boundaries of the shop/ premises
3. It is prohibited to display or store any items or equipment outside the shop / premises boundary without prior approval from the Municipality
4. Maintain cleanliness of the site
5. Comply with the parking space regulations as per the Construction Regulatory Requirements

Activity Specific Conditions:
1. The commercial address for this activity can be registered in areas classified as commercial, services, or industrial
2. The commercial address of the Commercial Registration for this activity can an office address
provided that the site is used for administrative purposes and is not located in a residential area

Note: Uploading pictures of the site/shop may expedite the process of obtaining approval

Required Documents

- Lease agreement (after obtaining the necessary approvals from other licensing entities)
- Shop photos

Other Documents

- Cabinet's Decision (56) of the year 2022 regarding the Regulatory Requirements of Construction for various areas in the Kingdom of Bahrain

Administrative and support service activities

ISIC4	Business activity
77304	Selling, Renting, and operational leasing of Aircraft or air transport equipment

Description

This activity includes:
Firms specialized in import, export and sale of all kinds of civil aircrafts for passenger transport or cargo,
whether they are owned by the company or chartered. It includes import, export and sale all items related
equipment such as tools, spare parts, components as well as other equipment for maintenance either in
air or on the ground like escalators, belts, engines, hydraulic lifts, turbo operating units, batteries. etc.

Business Requirements

Age

18 and above

Allowed for Nationalities

- Bahraini 100%
- American 100%
- Liechtenstein er 100%
- Swiss 100%
- GCC 100%
- Icelander 100%
- Norwegian 100%

Legal Type

It is allowed to register according to the legal forms mentioned below

Allowed for Individual Commercial Registration (ICR) : Yes

Allowed for Company Commercial Registration (CCR) : Yes

- Bahrain Shareholding Company (Public)
- With Limited Liability Company
- Branch of a Foreign Company
- Bahrain Shareholding Company (Closed)
- Partnership Company
- Simple Commandite Company
- Commandite By Shares Company
- Non Profit Company

Required Step of Licenses and Approvals

Ministry / Directorate	License / Approval Requirements	Approval Type
Civil Aviation Affairs	Aircraft selling, Buying and Leasing Services	Pre
General Directorate Of Criminal Investigation	Approval by General Directorate of Criminal Investigation	Pre
Municipality Affairs	Site Approval for Selling, Renting, and operational leasing of Aircraft or air transport equipment	Post
Civil Aviation Affairs	Aircraft selling, Buying and Leasing Services	Post
Civil Aviation Affairs	Aircraft selling, Buying and Leasing Services	Final Site Inspection

Civil Aviation Affairs (Pre) (77304)

Approval Name	Description	Estimated Time
Aircraft selling, Buying and Leasing Services	This is a licence for the purchase, sale of and leasing of aircrafts.	10 Days

Fee Details (if any)

• Application fees: BD 100 (non-refundable in cases where the application is not approved).
• License fees BD1,000.
• Annual renewal fees 50% of the license fees.

License Information

• The capital of the company must not be less than 10,000,000.
• The license is valid for one year and renewal application must be submitted 2 months before expiry
• Adherence to the standards and regulatory requirements contained in the regulations under the Civil Aviation Law issued by virtue of Law No. 14 of 2013

Required Documents

•Feasibility, technical, economic and financial studies
•Fill application Form ATD/ATCL/OF04
•Memorandum of Association

Other Documents

- Chicago Convention and its Annexes.
- Civil Aviation Law No.14 of 2013
- Minister of Transportation and Telecommunication Decree No. 25 of 2016 of CAA fees and departure fees.
- Minster of Transportation and Telecommunication Decree No. 21 of 2013 issuing the regulations under the Civil Aviation Law.

General Directorate Of Criminal Investigation (Pre) (77304)

Approval Name	Description	Estimated Time
Approval by General Directorate of Criminal Investigation	General Directorate of Criminal Investigation Approval for the Activity	7 Days

Fee Details (if any)

There is no Estimated Processing Time (Days) in this license.

License Information

- The applicant should not have a criminal record, unless they have been rehabilitated in criminal cases

Municipality Affairs (Post) (77304)

Approval Name	Description	Estimated Time
Site Approval for Selling, Renting, and operational leasing of Aircraft or air transport equipment	Municipality Approval for the Commercial Registration address or the site in which the Activity will be practiced	3 Days

Fee Details (if any)

10 BD

License Information

General Conditions:
1. Size of shop/premises must be sufficient for the activity
2. Businesses may not carry out the activity outside the boundaries of the shop/ premises
3. It is prohibited to display or store any items or equipment outside the shop / premises boundary without prior approval from the Municipality. In the event of non-compliance, the Ministry of Municipality Affairs has the right to take necessary action.
4. Maintain cleanliness of the site
5. Comply with the parking space regulations as per the Construction Regulatory Requirements

Activity Specific Conditions:
1. The commercial address for this activity is allowed to be registered in areas classified as investment or industrial, or on commercial or service streets (provided a separate yard is made available).
2. Comply with the regulations of Civil Aviation Affairs regarding the office and yard location

Note: Uploading pictures of the site/shop may expedite the process of obtaining approval

Required Documents

- Lease agreement (after obtaining the necessary approvals from other licensing entities)
- Shop photos

Other Documents

- Cabinet's Decision (56) of the year 2022 regarding the Regulatory Requirements of Construction for various areas in the Kingdom of Bahrain

Civil Aviation Affairs (Post) (77304)

Approval Name	Description	Estimated Time
Aircraft selling, Buying and Leasing Services	This is a licence for the purchase, sale of and leasing of aircrafts.	10 Days

Fee Details (if any)

• Application fees: BD 100 (non-refundable in cases where the application is not approved).
• License fees BD1,000.
• Annual renewal fees 50% of the license fees.

License Information

• The capital of the company must not be less than 10,000,000.
• The license is valid for one year and renewal application must be submitted 2 months before expiry
• Adherence to the standards and regulatory requirements contained in the regulations under the Civil Aviation Law issued by virtue of Law No. 14 of 2013

Required Documents

•Feasibility, technical, economic and financial studies
•Fill application Form ATD/ATCL/OF04
•Memorandum of Association

Other Documents

- Chicago Convention and its Annexes.
- Civil Aviation Law No.14 of 2013
- Minister of Transportation and Telecommunication Decree No. 25 of 2016 of CAA fees and departure fees.
- Minster of Transportation and Telecommunication Decree No. 21 of 2013 issuing the regulations under the Civil Aviation Law.

Civil Aviation Affairs (Final Site Inspection) (77304)

Approval Name	Description	Estimated Time
Aircraft selling, Buying and Leasing Services	This is a licence for the purchase, sale of and leasing of aircrafts.	10 Days

Fee Details (if any)

• Application fees: BD 100 (non-refundable in cases where the application is not approved).
• License fees BD1,000.
• Annual renewal fees 50% of the license fees.

License Information

• The capital of the company must not be less than 10,000,000.
• The license is valid for one year and renewal application must be submitted 2 months before expiry
• Adherence to the standards and regulatory requirements contained in the regulations under the Civil Aviation Law issued by virtue of Law No. 14 of 2013

Required Documents

•Feasibility, technical, economic and financial studies
•Fill application Form ATD/ATCL/OF04
•Memorandum of Association

Other Documents

- Chicago Convention and its Annexes.
- Civil Aviation Law No.14 of 2013
- Minister of Transportation and Telecommunication Decree No. 25 of 2016 of CAA fees and departure fees.
- Minster of Transportation and Telecommunication Decree No. 21 of 2013 issuing the regulations under the Civil Aviation Law.

Administrative and support service activities

ISIC4	Business activity
77307	Renting and operational leasing of office machinery and equipment

Description

This activity includes renting or leasing computers or other office equipment for a period of time including supportive devise such as printers, scanners, servers and special devices of local networks.

Business Requirements

Age

18 and above

Allowed for Nationalities

- Bahraini 100%
- American 100%
- GCC 100%

Legal Type

It is allowed to register according to the legal forms mentioned below

Allowed for Individual Commercial Registration (ICR) : Yes

Allowed for Company Commercial Registration (CCR) : Yes

- Bahrain Shareholding Company (Public)
- With Limited Liability Company
- Branch of a Foreign Company
- Bahrain Shareholding Company (Closed)
- Partnership Company
- Simple Commandite Company
- Commandite By Shares Company
- Non Profit Company

Required Step of Licenses and Approvals

Ministry / Directorate	License / Approval Requirements	Approval Type
Municipality Affairs	Site Approval for Administrative and support activities	Post

Municipality Affairs (Post) (77307)

Approval Name	Description	Estimated Time
Site Approval for Administrative and support activities	Municipality Approval for the Commercial Registration address or the site in which the Activity will be practiced	3 Days

Fee Details (if any)

10 BD

License Information

General Conditions:
1. Size of shop/premises must be sufficient for the activity
2. Businesses may not carry out the activity outside the boundaries of the shop/ premises
3. It is prohibited to display or store any items or equipment outside the shop / premises boundary without prior approval from the Municipality
4. Maintain cleanliness of the site
5. Comply with the parking space regulations as per the Construction Regulatory Requirements

Activity Specific Conditions:
1. The commercial address for this activity can be registered in areas classified as commercial, services, or industrial
2. The commercial address of the Commercial Registration for this activity can an office address
provided that the site is used for administrative purposes and is not located in a residential area

Note: Uploading pictures of the site/shop may expedite the process of obtaining approval

Required Documents

- Lease agreement (after obtaining the necessary approvals from other licensing entities)
- Shop photos

Other Documents

- Cabinet's Decision (56) of the year 2022 regarding the Regulatory Requirements of Construction for various areas in the Kingdom of Bahrain

Administrative and support service activities

ISIC4	Business activity
77309	Renting of Animals

Description

This activity includes:
Renting or leasing of animals sometime with their carriage vehicles to tourists.

Business Requirements

Age

18 and above

Allowed for Nationalities

Bahraini
100%

American
100%

GCC
100%

Legal Type

It is allowed to register according to the legal forms mentioned below

Allowed for Individual Commercial Registration (ICR) : Yes

Allowed for Company Commercial Registration (CCR) : Yes

- Bahrain Shareholding Company (Public)
- With Limited Liability Company
- Branch of a Foreign Company
- Bahrain Shareholding Company (Closed)
- Partnership Company
- Simple Commandite Company
- Commandite By Shares Company
- Non Profit Company

Required Step of Licenses and Approvals

Ministry / Directorate	License / Approval Requirements	Approval Type
Control And Animal Health Directorate	Approval for Renting of Animals	Post
Municipality Affairs	Site Approval for Renting of Animals	Post

Control And Animal Health Directorate (Post) (77309)

Approval Name	Description	Estimated Time
Approval for Renting of Animals	Approval for Renting of Animals	5 Days

Fee Details (if any)

There is no Estimated Processing Time (Days) in this license.

License Information

The license application to display animals in zoos, bird parks, children's gardens, animal rental places, circuses or the like must be accompanied by a plan of the facility's location and another detailing its various buildings and facilities along with an operation plan that includes employment
Please refer to the standards of animal welfare practices
o Cruelty to animals
o Animal owner duties
o Conditions for dealing with animals
o Conditions for establishing animal facilities
o Animal transport
o The use of animals for scientific purposes
o Disposal of animals

Operational requirements after obtaining the Business license
1. Each commercial animal facility must appoint a veterinarian permanently, and he must be licensed by the competent authority to practice the veterinary profession, except for the temporary commercial or recreational facilities where the supervision of a veterinarian, a veterinary clinic, or a veterinary hospital is sufficient.
2. The competent authority issues a license for each animal observer in any commercial animal facility by the competent authority after the following conditions are met:
* Conducting a competency test in dealing with animals.
* Animal observers must submit scientific certificates that are duly documented and equivalent in the field of animal care.
* Animal observers are required to have duly documented experience certificates of no less than (5) five years in the same field.
* A duly documented (2) two-year experience certificate for animal observers in the

same field is sufficient.
A- The term of the license shall be according to the type and size of the facility, provided that it does not exceed one year;
3. The license granted to operate the animal facility shall be withdrawn if the license owner violates the Animal Welfare Law of the GCC countries or the regulations issued thereof, or if they violate the license terms issued by the competent authority.

Required Documents

- Lease agreement/ ownership certificate of a farm/ stockyard

Other Documents

- Minister of Works, Municipalities Affairs and Urban Planning Decision No. (37) of 2020 issuing the executive regulations of the Animal Welfare Law for the Gulf Cooperation Council states issued by Law No. (52) of 2014
- Standards of animal welfare practices

Municipality Affairs (Post) (77309)

Approval Name	Description	Estimated Time
Site Approval for Renting of Animals	Municipality Approval for the Commercial Registration address or the site in which the Activity will be practiced	3 Days

Fee Details (if any)

10 BD

License Information

General Conditions:
1. Size of shop/premises must be sufficient for the activity
2. Businesses may not carry out the activity outside the boundaries of the shop/ premises
3. It is prohibited to display or store any items or equipment outside the shop / premises boundary without prior approval from the Municipality. In the event of non-compliance, the Ministry of Municipality Affairs has the right to take necessary action.
4. Maintain cleanliness of the site
5. Comply with the parking space regulations as per the Construction Regulatory Requirements

Activity Specific Conditions:
1. Comply with the regulations of Control & Animal Health Directorate

Note: Uploading pictures of the site/shop may expedite the process of obtaining approval

Required Documents

- Cabinet's Decision (56) of the year 2022 regarding the Regulatory Requirements of Construction for various areas in the Kingdom of Bahrain
- Lease agreement (after obtaining the necessary approvals from other licensing entities)
- Shop photos

Administrative and support service activities

ISIC4	Business activity
774	Leasing of intellectual property and similar products, except copyrighted works

Description

This activity includes the activities of allowing others to use intellectual property products and similar products for which a royalty payment or licensing fee is paid to the owner of the product (i.e. the asset holder). The leasing of these products can take various forms, such as permission for reproduction, use in subsequent processes or products, operating businesses under a franchise etc. The current owners may or may not have created these products.

This activity includes:
- leasing of intellectual property products (except copyrighted works, such as books or software)
- receiving royalties or licensing fees for the use of:
. patented entities
. Trademarks or service marks
. Brand names
. Mineral exploration and evaluation
. Franchise agreements

This activity excludes:
- Acquisition of rights and publishing
- producing, reproducing and distributing copyrighted works (books, software, film)
- leasing of real estate
- leasing of tangible products (assets)
- renting of video tapes and disks
- renting of books

Business Requirements

Age

18 and above

Allowed for Nationalities

Bahraini 100%		GCC 100%	
American 100%		Singaporean 100%	
Icelander 100%		Liechtenstein er 100%	
Norwegian 100%		Swiss 100%	

Foreign Allowed up to 100%

Legal Type

It is allowed to register according to the legal forms mentioned below

Allowed for Individual Commercial Registration (ICR) : Yes

Allowed for Company Commercial Registration (CCR) : Yes

- Bahrain Shareholding Company (Public)
- With Limited Liability Company
- Branch of a Foreign Company
- Bahrain Shareholding Company (Closed)
- Partnership Company
- Simple Commandite Company
- Commandite By Shares Company
- Non Profit Company

Required Step of Licenses and Approvals

Ministry / Directorate	License / Approval Requirements	Approval Type
Municipality Affairs	Site Approval for Administrative and	Post

	support activities	

Municipality Affairs (Post) (774)

Approval Name	Description	Estimated Time
Site Approval for Administrative and support activities	Municipality Approval for the Commercial Registration address or the site in which the Activity will be practiced	3 Days

Fee Details (if any)

10 BD

License Information

General Conditions:
1. Size of shop/premises must be sufficient for the activity
2. Businesses may not carry out the activity outside the boundaries of the shop/ premises
3. It is prohibited to display or store any items or equipment outside the shop / premises boundary without prior approval from the Municipality
4. Maintain cleanliness of the site
5. Comply with the parking space regulations as per the Construction Regulatory Requirements

Activity Specific Conditions:
1. The commercial address for this activity can be registered in areas classified as commercial, services, or industrial
2. The commercial address of the Commercial Registration for this activity can an office address
provided that the site is used for administrative purposes and is not located in a residential area

Note: Uploading pictures of the site/shop may expedite the process of obtaining approval

Required Documents

- Lease agreement (after obtaining the necessary approvals from other licensing entities)
- Shop photos

Other Documents

- Cabinet's Decision (56) of the year 2022 regarding the Regulatory Requirements of Construction for various areas in the Kingdom of Bahrain

Administrative and support service activities

ISIC4	Business activity
781	Recruiting Manpower Agency

Description

This license allows the licensee to supply manpower to work for third party for a specific period or to complete a certain mission without supervision from the employer (the supplier) on the work execution. Applicant may practice the activity after the license issuance that will be valid for one year, provided that the applicant shall apply for renewal on annual basis

Business Requirements

✔ Age

18 and above

✔ Allowed for Nationalities

Bahraini
100%

✔ Legal Type

It is allowed to register according to the legal forms mentioned below

Allowed for Individual Commercial Registration (ICR) : Yes

Allowed for Company Commercial Registration (CCR) : Yes

- Bahrain Shareholding Company (Public)
- Bahrain Shareholding Company (Closed)
- Simple Commandite Company
- Non Profit Company
- With Limited Liability Company
- Partnership Company
- Commandite By Shares Company

Required Step of Licenses and Approvals

Ministry / Directorate	License / Approval Requirements	Approval Type
Client services directorate -LMRA	Recruiting Manpower Agency - Pre Approval	Pre
General Directorate Of Criminal Investigation	Approval by General Directorate of Criminal Investigation	Pre
Municipality Affairs	Site Approval for Administrative and support activities	Post
Client services directorate -LMRA	Recruiting Manpower Agency - Final Approval	Final Site Inspection

Client services directorate -LMRA (Pre) (781)

Approval Name	Description	Estimated Time
Recruiting Manpower Agency - Pre Approval	This license allows the licensee to supply manpower to work for third party for a specific period or to complete a certain mission without supervision from the employer (the supplier) on the work execution. Applicant may practice the activity after the license issuance that will be valid for one year, provided that the applicant shall apply for renewal on annual basis	20 Days

Fee Details (if any)

BD500 Licensing Fee
BD100 License Renewal Fee

License Information

Pre-licensing requirements:
1. Owner(s) must be a Bahraini citizen or a juridical person fully owned by him.
2. Owner(s) must not be a registered employee in the public/private sector
3. Owner(s) must not have any outstanding dues with the Labour Marker Regulatory Authority
4. Owner(s) must not have breached any of the fundamental obligations that are imposed by the of Labor Market Regulation Law and the regulations, rules or orders issued in implementation thereof.

5. Owner(s) must pass an interview conducted by the Labour Marker Regulatory Authority (LMRA will schedule an appointment with the owners within 20 days from the submission of the application, hence owners are advised to provide valid contact number)
6. Specify the economic or professional specialization for which he wants to supply workers for in the “Manpower Recruitment Agency Business plan form”

Please note that the LMRA will also take into consideration the following aspects as part of its approval process:
- Whether any of the owners have had their manpower agency, that was issued by LMRA, revoked in the past

License holders must comply with the following requirements while practicing the activity:

1. Not practice other commercial activities on the same commercial address without the consent of LMRA
2. Use employee contracts that comply with the Ministry of Labour’s regulations (for commercial workers)
3. Provide accommodation to the agency’s workers, which must meet the conditions concerning numbers and gender which are set out in the corresponding laws.
4. Notify the LMRA in any changes to the accommodation address.
5. Not to use the commercial address registered under the Recruiting Manpower Agency as an accommodation for workers.
6. Must operate the business from the approved premises and independently from any other activity except for any other relevant activities according to license terms & conditions.
7. Must deposit BD200 for each work permit issued to them as an insurance amount with LMRA in addition to the prescribed fee for the work permit.
8. Enable LMRA and its inspectors to access the establishment's premises or the accommodation dedicated for foreign manpower at any time.
9. Shall obtain the necessary professional license from the relevant authority which oversees the profession(s) being practiced by the workers (in case it is legally necessary to obtain a professional license for their practice in the Kingdom).
10. It should not be proved that the licensee has ceased practicing his activity, or closed his activity or changed the headquarters for practicing the activity, in violation of the provisions of the Law and the existing orders in this regard.

Required Documents

•A copy of the SIO statement upon submitting the application. The application will not be accepted if not attached
•Business plan or feasibility study

Other Documents

- Business plan or feasibility study
- Resolution No. 3 of 2014 regulating licenses for labor supply agencies

General Directorate Of Criminal Investigation (Pre) (781)

Approval Name	Description	Estimated Time
Approval by General Directorate of Criminal Investigation	General Directorate of Criminal Investigation Approval for the Activity	7 Days

Fee Details (if any)

There is no Estimated Processing Time (Days) in this license.

License Information

- The applicant should not have a criminal record, unless they have been rehabilitated in criminal cases

Municipality Affairs (Post) (781)

Approval Name	Description	Estimated Time
Site Approval for Administrative and support activities	Municipality Approval for the Commercial Registration address or the site in which the Activity will be practiced	3 Days

Fee Details (if any)

10 BD

License Information

General Conditions:
1. Size of shop/premises must be sufficient for the activity
2. Businesses may not carry out the activity outside the boundaries of the shop/ premises
3. It is prohibited to display or store any items or equipment outside the shop / premises boundary without prior approval from the Municipality
4. Maintain cleanliness of the site
5. Comply with the parking space regulations as per the Construction Regulatory Requirements

Activity Specific Conditions:
1. The commercial address for this activity can be registered in areas classified as commercial, services, or industrial
2. The commercial address of the Commercial Registration for this activity can an office address
provided that the site is used for administrative purposes and is not located in a residential area

Note: Uploading pictures of the site/shop may expedite the process of obtaining approval

Required Documents

- Lease agreement (after obtaining the necessary approvals from other licensing entities)
- Shop photos

Other Documents

- Cabinet's Decision (56) of the year 2022 regarding the Regulatory Requirements of Construction for various areas in the Kingdom of Bahrain

Client services directorate -LMRA (Final Site Inspection) (781)

Approval Name	Description	Estimated Time
Recruiting Manpower Agency - Final Approval	Any business owner who is licensed to import workers, to work for a third parties for a fixed period or until the completion certain project without the supervision of the recruiting agent.	20 Days

Fee Details (if any)

500 BD licensing fees - 100 BD license renewal fees, and they are collected through the LMRA

License Information

License holders must comply with the following requirements while practicing the activity:

1. Not practice other commercial activities on the same commercial address without the consent of LMRA
2. Use employee contracts that comply with the Ministry of Labour's regulations (for commercial workers)
3. Provide accommodation to the agency's workers, which must meet the conditions concerning numbers and gender which are set out in the corresponding laws.
4. Notify the LMRA in any changes to the accommodation address.
5. Not to use the commercial address registered under the Recruiting Manpower Agency as an accommodation for workers.
6. Must operate the business from the approved premises and independently from any

other activity except for any other relevant activities according to license terms & conditions.
7. Must deposit BD200 for each work permit issued to them as an insurance amount with LMRA in addition to the prescribed fee for the work permit.
8. Enable LMRA and its inspectors to access the establishment's premises or the accommodation dedicated for foreign manpower at any time.
9. Shall obtain the necessary professional license from the relevant authority which oversees the profession(s) being practiced by the workers (in case it is legally necessary to obtain a professional license for their practice in the Kingdom).
It should not be proved that the licensee has ceased practicing his activity, or closed his activity or changed the headquarters for practicing the activity, in violation of the provisions of the Law and the existing orders in this regard.

Other Documents

- Resolution No. 3 of 2014 regulating licenses for labor supply agencies

Administrative and support service activities

ISIC4	Business activity
7810	Activities of Attraction and Nomination For Senior Executive Positions

Description

This activity includes:

- Study and analysis of professions for senior executive positions
- Announcing the employer's vacant careers and professions
- Searching for suitable candidates from inside and outside Bahrain
- Coordinating the process of screening and nominating career applicants
- Coordinate personal interviews for candidates
- It excludes the nomination of domestic workers
- Does not allow to sign contracts and hire employees

Business Requirements

Age

18 and above

Allowed for Nationalities

Bahraini 100%		GCC 100%	
American 100%		Singaporean 100%	
Icelander 100%		Liechtensteiner 100%	
Norwegian 100%		Swiss 100%	

Foreign Allowed up to 100%

Legal Type

It is allowed to register according to the legal forms mentioned below

Allowed for Individual Commercial Registration (ICR) : Yes

Allowed for Company Commercial Registration (CCR) : Yes

Allowed for Sijilli : Yes

- Bahrain Shareholding Company (Public)
- With Limited Liability Company
- Branch of a Foreign Company
- Bahrain Shareholding Company (Closed)
- Partnership Company
- Simple Commandite Company
- Commandite By Shares Company
- Non Profit Company

Required Step of Licenses and Approvals

Ministry / Directorate	License / Approval Requirements	Approval Type
Municipality Affairs	Site Approval for Administrative and support activities	Post

Municipality Affairs (Post) (7810)

Approval Name	Description	Estimated Time
Site Approval for Administrative and support activities	Municipality Approval for the Commercial Registration address or the site in which the Activity will be practiced	3 Days

Fee Details (if any)

10 BD

License Information

General Conditions:
1. Size of shop/premises must be sufficient for the activity
2. Businesses may not carry out the activity outside the boundaries of the shop/ premises
3. It is prohibited to display or store any items or equipment outside the shop / premises boundary without prior approval from the Municipality
4. Maintain cleanliness of the site
5. Comply with the parking space regulations as per the Construction Regulatory Requirements

Activity Specific Conditions:
1. The commercial address for this activity can be registered in areas classified as commercial, services, or industrial
2. The commercial address of the Commercial Registration for this activity can an office address
provided that the site is used for administrative purposes and is not located in a residential area

Note: Uploading pictures of the site/shop may expedite the process of obtaining approval

Required Documents

- Lease agreement (after obtaining the necessary approvals from other licensing entities)
- Shop photos

Other Documents

- Cabinet's Decision (56) of the year 2022 regarding the Regulatory Requirements of Construction for various areas in the Kingdom of Bahrain

Administrative and support service activities

ISIC4	Business activity
782	Employment Office

Description

Office that searches for suitable workers for an employer and do contract of employment between the parties , includes recruiting housemaids to work in the private housing and provide services to others of various companies and institutions in order to bring in foreign labor to fill certain jobs at those companies or institutions, also includes hiring Bahraini. The License should renew yearly.

Business Requirements

✔ Age

18 and above

✔ Allowed for Nationalities

Bahraini
100%

✔ Legal Type

It is allowed to register according to the legal forms mentioned below

Allowed for Individual Commercial Registration (ICR) : Yes

Allowed for Company Commercial Registration (CCR) : Yes

- Bahrain Shareholding Company (Public)
- Bahrain Shareholding Company (Closed)
- Simple Commandite Company
- Non Profit Company
- With Limited Liability Company
- Partnership Company
- Commandite By Shares Company

Required Step of Licenses and Approvals

Ministry / Directorate	License / Approval Requirements	Approval Type
General Directorate Of Criminal Investigation	Approval by General Directorate of Criminal Investigation	Pre
Client services directorate -LMRA	Employment office - Pre Approval	Pre
Municipality Affairs	Site Approval for Administrative and support activities	Post
Client services directorate -LMRA	Employment office - Final Approval	Final Site Inspection

General Directorate Of Criminal Investigation (Pre) (782)

Approval Name	Description	Estimated Time
Approval by General Directorate of Criminal Investigation	General Directorate of Criminal Investigation Approval for the Activity	7 Days

Fee Details (if any)

There is no Estimated Processing Time (Days) in this license.

License Information

- The applicant should not have a criminal record, unless they have been rehabilitated in criminal cases

Client services directorate -LMRA (Pre) (782)

Approval Name	Description	Estimated Time
Employment office - Pre Approval	This activity involves the searching of workers and facilitation of employment contract signing between parties for both commercial/domestic workers. It also includes providing services to companies and various organizations relating to sourcing foreign workers to work at these companies and organizations. Employment of Bahraini's is included in this activity.	20 Days

Fee Details (if any)

200 BD licensing fees - 100 BD license renewal fees, and they are collected through the LMRA

License Information

Pre-licensing requirements:
1. Owner(s) must be a Bahraini citizen or a juridical person fully owned by him.
2. Owner(s) must not be a registered employee in the public/private sector
3. Owner(s) must not have any outstanding dues with the Labour Marker Regulatory Authority
4. Owner(s) must not have breached any of the fundamental obligations that are

imposed by the of Labor Market Regulation Law and the regulations, rules or orders issued in implementation thereof.
5. Owner(s) must pass an interview conducted by the Labour Marker Regulatory Authority (LMRA will schedule an appointment with the owners within 20 days from the submission of the application, hence owners are advised to provide valid contact number)

Please note that the LMRA will also take into consideration the following aspects as part of its approval process:
- Whether any of the owners have had their Employment Office license, that was issued by LMRA, revoked in the past

Final approval requirements:

- Deposit BD 10,000 as a guarantee with the LMRA (Only applicable if providing services for employment of non-bahraini workers)

License holders must comply with the following requirements while practicing the activity:

1. Not practice other commercial activities on the same commercial address without the consent of LMRA
2. Use employee contracts that comply with the Ministry of Labour's regulations (for commercial workers)
3. Use the standard tripartite agreement approved by the LMRA (for domestic workers)
4. Provide a temporary accommodation for domestic workers ensuring the separation between male and female accommodations (Female accommodation must be under supervision of a female)
5. Notify the LMRA in any changes to the accommodation address.
6. Not use the commercial address, in which the license is issued as an accommodation for domestic workers
7. Enable Ministry of Labour and LMRA inspectors to enter the premises of the facility at any time to fulfill their inspection duties.

Required Documents

•A copy of the SIO statement upon submitting the application. The application will not be accepted if not attached

Other Documents

•Resolution No. 1 of 2014 regulating licenses for employment offices

Municipality Affairs (Post) (782)

Approval Name	Description	Estimated Time
Site Approval for Administrative and support activities	Municipality Approval for the Commercial Registration address or the site in which the Activity will be practiced	3 Days

Fee Details (if any)

10 BD

License Information

General Conditions:
1. Size of shop/premises must be sufficient for the activity
2. Businesses may not carry out the activity outside the boundaries of the shop/ premises
3. It is prohibited to display or store any items or equipment outside the shop / premises boundary without prior approval from the Municipality
4. Maintain cleanliness of the site
5. Comply with the parking space regulations as per the Construction Regulatory Requirements

Activity Specific Conditions:
1. The commercial address for this activity can be registered in areas classified as commercial, services, or industrial
2. The commercial address of the Commercial Registration for this activity can an office address
provided that the site is used for administrative purposes and is not located in a residential area

Note: Uploading pictures of the site/shop may expedite the process of obtaining approval

Required Documents

- Lease agreement (after obtaining the necessary approvals from other licensing entities)
- Shop photos

Other Documents

- Cabinet's Decision (56) of the year 2022 regarding the Regulatory Requirements of Construction for various areas in the Kingdom of Bahrain

Client services directorate -LMRA (Final Site Inspection) (782)

Approval Name	Description	Estimated Time
Employment office - Final Approval	An office that searches for the suitable workers for business properties and facilitate the conclusion of agreements between the parties.	20 Days

Fee Details (if any)

200 BD licensing fees - 100 BD license renewal fees, and they are collected through the LMRA

License Information

Final approval requirements:

1. Deposit BD 10,000 as a guarantee with the LMRA (Only applicable if providing services for employment of non-bahraini workers)

License holders must comply with the following requirements while practicing the activity:

1. Not practice other commercial activities on the same commercial address without the consent of LMRA
2. Use employee contracts that comply with the Ministry of Labour's regulations (for commercial workers)
3. Use the standard tripartite agreement approved by the LMRA (for domestic workers)
4. Provide a temporary accommodation for domestic workers ensuring the separation between male and female accommodations (Female accommodation must be under supervision of a female)
5. Notify the LMRA in any changes to the accommodation address.

6. Not use the commercial address, in which the license is issued as an accommodation for domestic workers
7. Enable Ministry of Labour and LMRA inspectors to enter the premises of the facility at any time to fulfill their inspection duties.

Required Documents

•The approval of the Ministry of Health confirming the suitability of the temporary housing for females – incase of domestic employment

Other Documents

•Resolution No. 1 of 2014 regulating licenses for employment offices

Administrative and support service activities

ISIC4	Business activity
7911-1	Travel office activities - Travel Agencies Office

Description

This activity includes activities of agencies primarily engaged in selling travel, tour, transportation and accommodation services to the general public and commercial clients.

This includes arranging and assembling tours that are sold through travel agencies or directly by tour operators. The tours may include any or all of the following:
- Transportation
- Accommodation
- Food
- Visits to museums, historical or cultural sites, theatrical, musical or sporting events

Business Requirements

Age

18 and above

Allowed for Nationalities

Bahraini
100%

American
100%

GCC
100%

Legal Type

It is allowed to register according to the legal forms mentioned below

Allowed for Individual Commercial Registration (ICR) : Yes

Allowed for Company Commercial Registration (CCR) : Yes

- Bahrain Shareholding Company (Public)
- With Limited Liability Company
- Branch of a Foreign Company
- Bahrain Shareholding Company (Closed)
- Partnership Company
- Simple Commandite Company
- Commandite By Shares Company
- Non Profit Company

Required Step of Licenses and Approvals

Ministry / Directorate	License / Approval Requirements	Approval Type
General Directorate Of Criminal Investigation	Approval by General Directorate of Criminal Investigation	Pre
Municipality Affairs	Site Approval for Administrative and support activities	Post
Civil Aviation Affairs	Travel Agencies Office	Post
Bahrain Tourim and Exibitions Authority	Travel offices	Final Site Inspection

General Directorate Of Criminal Investigation (Pre) (7911-1)

Approval Name	Description	Estimated Time
Approval by General Directorate of Criminal Investigation	General Directorate of Criminal Investigation Approval for the Activity	7 Days

Fee Details (if any)

There is no Estimated Processing Time (Days) in this license.

License Information

- The applicant should not have a criminal record, unless they have been rehabilitated in criminal cases

Municipality Affairs (Post) (7911-1)

Approval Name	Description	Estimated Time
Site Approval for Administrative and support activities	Municipality Approval for the Commercial Registration address or the site in which the Activity will be practiced	3 Days

Fee Details (if any)

10 BD

License Information

General Conditions:
1. Size of shop/premises must be sufficient for the activity
2. Businesses may not carry out the activity outside the boundaries of the shop/ premises
3. It is prohibited to display or store any items or equipment outside the shop / premises boundary without prior approval from the Municipality
4. Maintain cleanliness of the site
5. Comply with the parking space regulations as per the Construction Regulatory Requirements

Activity Specific Conditions:
1. The commercial address for this activity can be registered in areas classified as commercial, services, or industrial
2. The commercial address of the Commercial Registration for this activity can an office address
provided that the site is used for administrative purposes and is not located in a residential area

Note: Uploading pictures of the site/shop may expedite the process of obtaining approval

Required Documents

- Lease agreement (after obtaining the necessary approvals from other licensing entities)
- Shop photos

Other Documents

- Cabinet's Decision (56) of the year 2022 regarding the Regulatory Requirements of Construction for various areas in the Kingdom of Bahrain

Civil Aviation Affairs (Post) (7911-1)

Approval Name	Description	Estimated Time
Travel Agencies Office	Offices that responsible for the sales of tickets of different airlines.	10 Days

Fee Details (if any)

There is no Estimated Processing Time (Days) in this license.

License Information

• Adherence to the standards and regulatory requirements contained in the regulations under the Civil Aviation Law issued by virtue of Law No. 14 of 2013

Required Documents

•Completed staff details form
•Copy of the owner/s Identity cards
•Copy of the owner/s passport
•Fill the Application to obtain CAA approval to practice the activity of travel offices Form
•The agreement between the travel agency and the provider of computer reservation system services for air transport

Other Documents

- Civil Aviation Law No.14 of 2013
- Fill the Application to obtain CAA approval to practice the activity of travel offices Form
- Fill the staff details Form
- Minister of Transportation and Telecommunication Decree No. 3 of 2019 amend some provisions of the Regulation under the Civil Aviation Law.
- Terms and conditions of Civil Aviation Affairs approval for Travel Agencies Office

Bahrain Tourim and Exibitions Authority (Final Site Inspection) (7911-1)

Approval Name	Description	Estimated Time
Travel offices	This activity includes the activities of agencies that mainly sell travel tickets.	3 Days

Fee Details (if any)

-

License Information

- The commercial title should not be among the business incubators or accelerators.
Requirements after obtaining the license:
- The license applicant must have a qualified office manager with appropriate experience (not less than 6 months) in the field of selling and marketing air transport services or airlines and the work of tourism programs. The office manager must also have obtained one of the approved courses from IATA in one of the fields previously mentioned."
- The employees of the office must be qualified to work in the field of activity of travel and tourism offices and companies, and the number of employees in the office must not be less than two.
- The office must be equipped with the necessary automatic reservation devices to practice the activity.
- In the case of contracting with tour guides, only tour guides licensed by the Bahrain Tourism and Exhibitions Authority are contracted.

Administrative and support service activities

ISIC4	Business activity
7911-2	Travel office activities - Airline General Sales Agent

Description

The licence is required if the investor intends to start up airline companies which issues airline tickets

Business Requirements

Age

18 and above

Allowed for Nationalities

- Bahraini 100%
- American 100%
- GCC 100%

Legal Type

It is allowed to register according to the legal forms mentioned below

Allowed for Individual Commercial Registration (ICR) : Yes

Allowed for Company Commercial Registration (CCR) : Yes

- Bahrain Shareholding Company (Public)
- With Limited Liability Company
- Branch of a Foreign Company
- Bahrain Shareholding Company (Closed)
- Partnership Company
- Simple Commandite Company
- Commandite By Shares Company
- Non Profit Company

Required Step of Licenses and Approvals

Ministry / Directorate	License / Approval Requirements	Approval Type
Civil Aviation Affairs	Airline General Sales Agent	Pre
General Directorate Of Criminal Investigation	Approval by General Directorate of Criminal Investigation	Pre
Civil Aviation Affairs	Airline General Sales Agent	Post
Municipality Affairs	Site Approval for Administrative and support activities	Post
Bahrain Tourim and Exibitions Authority	Approval for Airline General Sales Agent	Post
Civil Aviation Affairs	Airline General Sales Agent	Final Site Inspection

Civil Aviation Affairs (Pre) (7911-2)

Approval Name	Description	Estimated Time
Airline General Sales Agent	Agencies that represent airlines and in accordance with the requirements set forth in the tourism legislation.	10 Days

Fee Details (if any)

• Application fees: BD 100 (non-refundable in cases where the application is not approved).

• New license fees: BD 150 (every two years).

• BD 75 Renewal fee every two years.

License Information

• The capital of the company must not be less than BD 20,000
• The license is valid for two year and renewal application must be submitted 2 months before expiry
• Adherence to the standards and regulatory requirements contained in the regulations under the Civil Aviation Law issued by virtue of Law No. 14 of 2013

Required Documents

•Designated letter from the airline
•Fill application Form ATD/ATCL/OF01
•Memorandum of Association

Other Documents

- Chicago Convention and its Annexes.
- Civil Aviation Law No.14 of 2013
- Minister of Transport and Telecommunication Decree No. 12 of 2016 amending some provisions of the Regulation under the Civil Aviation Law.
- Minister of Transportation and Telecommunication Decree No. 25 of 2016 of CAA fees and departure fees.
- Minster of Transportation and Telecommunication Decree No. 21 of 2013 issuing the regulations under the Civil Aviation Law.

General Directorate Of Criminal Investigation (Pre) (7911-2)

Approval Name	Description	Estimated Time
Approval by General Directorate of Criminal Investigation	General Directorate of Criminal Investigation Approval for the Activity	7 Days

Fee Details (if any)

There is no Estimated Processing Time (Days) in this license.

License Information

- The applicant should not have a criminal record, unless they have been rehabilitated in criminal cases

Civil Aviation Affairs (Post) (7911-2)

Approval Name	Description	Estimated Time
Airline General Sales Agent	Agencies that represent airlines and in accordance with the requirements set forth in the tourism legislation.	10 Days

Fee Details (if any)

• Application fees: BD 100 (non-refundable in cases where the application is not approved).

• New license fees: BD 150 (every two years).

• BD 75 Renewal fee every two years.

License Information

• The capital of the company must not be less than BD 20,000
• The license is valid for two year and renewal application must be submitted 2 months before expiry
• Adherence to the standards and regulatory requirements contained in the regulations under the Civil Aviation Law issued by virtue of Law No. 14 of 2013

Required Documents

•Designated letter from the airline
•Fill application Form ATD/ATCL/OF01
•Memorandum of Association

Other Documents

- Chicago Convention and its Annexes.
- Civil Aviation Law No.14 of 2013
- Minister of Transport and Telecommunication Decree No. 12 of 2016 amending some provisions of the Regulation under the Civil Aviation Law.
- Minister of Transportation and Telecommunication Decree No. 25 of 2016 of CAA fees and departure fees.
- Minster of Transportation and Telecommunication Decree No. 21 of 2013 issuing the regulations under the Civil Aviation Law.

Municipality Affairs (Post) (7911-2)

Approval Name	Description	Estimated Time
Site Approval for Administrative and support activities	Municipality Approval for the Commercial Registration address or the site in which the Activity will be practiced	3 Days

Fee Details (if any)

10 BD

License Information

General Conditions:
1. Size of shop/premises must be sufficient for the activity
2. Businesses may not carry out the activity outside the boundaries of the shop/ premises
3. It is prohibited to display or store any items or equipment outside the shop / premises boundary without prior approval from the Municipality
4. Maintain cleanliness of the site
5. Comply with the parking space regulations as per the Construction Regulatory Requirements

Activity Specific Conditions:
1. The commercial address for this activity can be registered in areas classified as commercial, services, or industrial
2. The commercial address of the Commercial Registration for this activity can an office address
provided that the site is used for administrative purposes and is not located in a residential area

Note: Uploading pictures of the site/shop may expedite the process of obtaining approval

Required Documents

- Lease agreement (after obtaining the necessary approvals from other licensing entities)
- Shop photos

Other Documents

- Cabinet's Decision (56) of the year 2022 regarding the Regulatory Requirements of Construction for various areas in the Kingdom of Bahrain

Bahrain Tourim and Exibitions Authority (Post) (7911-2)

Approval Name	Description	Estimated Time
Approval for Airline General Sales Agent	The licence is required if the investor intends to start up airline companies which issues airline tickets.	3 Days

Fee Details (if any)

There is no Estimated Processing Time (Days) in this license.

License Information

- Commercial Address of the office should be located in a tourism/commercial zone and with a minimum space of 65 sq.m.
- Experience of the General Manager (or equivalent) should be not less than 5 years in the same field
- Commercial Registrations for this activity should not have another activity registered under the same address unless it is related.
- The capital of the company should be not less than BD60,000

Required Documents

•Academic qualifications and experience of proposed General Manager (or equivalent)
•Bank letter stating the required amount of capital

Civil Aviation Affairs (Final Site Inspection) (7911-2)

Approval Name	Description	Estimated Time
Airline General Sales Agent	Agencies that represent airlines and in accordance with the requirements set forth in the tourism legislation.	10 Days

Fee Details (if any)

• Application fees: BD 100 (non-refundable in cases where the application is not approved).

• New license fees: BD 150 (every two years).

• BD 75 Renewal fee every two years.

License Information

• The capital of the company must not be less than BD 20,000
• The license is valid for two year and renewal application must be submitted 2 months before expiry
• Adherence to the standards and regulatory requirements contained in the regulations under the Civil Aviation Law issued by virtue of Law No. 14 of 2013

Required Documents

•Designated letter from the airline
•Fill application Form ATD/ATCL/OF01
•Memorandum of Association

Other Documents

- Chicago Convention and its Annexes.
- Civil Aviation Law No.14 of 2013
- Minister of Transport and Telecommunication Decree No. 12 of 2016 amending some provisions of the Regulation under the Civil Aviation Law.
- Minister of Transportation and Telecommunication Decree No. 25 of 2016 of CAA fees and departure fees.
- Minster of Transportation and Telecommunication Decree No. 21 of 2013 issuing the regulations under the Civil Aviation Law.

Administrative and support service activities

ISIC4	Business activity
7911-3	Travel office activities - Direct Sales for the airline operating in Bahrain

Description

Agencies that are founded by international airlines that have regular lines and through which to promote the activity of the company and overseeing the management of its affairs, and all related activities, and that thy process of direct sales of airline tickets.

Business Requirements

Age

18 and above

Allowed for Nationalities

Bahraini 100%		GCC 100%	
American 100%		Singaporean 100%	
Icelander 100%		Liechtenstein er 100%	
Norwegian 100%		Swiss 100%	

Foreign Allowed up to 100%

Legal Type

It is allowed to register according to the legal forms mentioned below

Allowed for Individual Commercial Registration (ICR) : Yes

Allowed for Company Commercial Registration (CCR) : Yes

- Bahrain Shareholding Company (Public)
- With Limited Liability Company
- Branch of a Foreign Company
- Bahrain Shareholding Company (Closed)
- Partnership Company
- Simple Commandite Company
- Commandite By Shares Company
- Non Profit Company

Required Step of Licenses and Approvals

Ministry / Directorate	License / Approval Requirements	Approval Type
General Directorate Of Criminal Investigation	Approval by General Directorate of Criminal Investigation	Pre
Civil Aviation Affairs	Direct Sales for the Airline Operating in Bahrain	Pre
Municipality Affairs	Site Approval for Administrative and support activities	Post
Civil Aviation Affairs	Direct Sales for the Airline Operating in Bahrain	Post
Civil Aviation Affairs	Direct Sales for the Airline Operating in Bahrain	Final Site Inspection

General Directorate Of Criminal Investigation (Pre) (7911-3)

Approval Name	Description	Estimated Time
Approval by General Directorate of Criminal Investigation	General Directorate of Criminal Investigation Approval for the Activity	7 Days

Fee Details (if any)

There is no Estimated Processing Time (Days) in this license.

License Information

- The applicant should not have a criminal record, unless they have been rehabilitated in criminal cases

Civil Aviation Affairs (Pre) (7911-3)

Approval Name	Description	Estimated Time
Direct Sales for the Airline Operating in Bahrain	It the offices that are founded by international airlines that have regular lines and through which to promote the activity of the company and overseeing the management of its affairs, and all related activities, and that thy process of direct sales of airline tickets.	10 Days

Fee Details (if any)

• Application fees: BD 100 (non-refundable in cases where the application is not approved).

• New license fees: BD 150 (every two years).

• BD 75 Renewal fee every two years.

License Information

• The capital of the company must not be less than BD 20,000
• The license is valid for two year and renewal application must be submitted 2 months before expiry
• Adherence to the standards and regulatory requirements contained in the regulations under the Civil Aviation Law issued by virtue of Law No. 14 of 2013

Required Documents

- Fill application Form ATD/ATCL/OF02
- Memorandum of Association

Other Documents

- Chicago Convention and its Annexes.
- Civil Aviation Law No.14 of 2013
- Minister of Transport and Telecommunication Decree No. 12 of 2016 amending some provisions of the Regulation under the Civil Aviation Law.
- Minister of Transportation and Telecommunication Decree No. 25 of 2016 of CAA fees and departure fees.
- Minster of Transportation and Telecommunication Decree No. 21 of 2013 issuing the regulations under the Civil Aviation Law.

Municipality Affairs (Post) (7911-3)

Approval Name	Description	Estimated Time
Site Approval for Administrative and support activities	Municipality Approval for the Commercial Registration address or the site in which the Activity will be practiced	3 Days

Fee Details (if any)

10 BD

License Information

General Conditions:
1. Size of shop/premises must be sufficient for the activity
2. Businesses may not carry out the activity outside the boundaries of the shop/ premises
3. It is prohibited to display or store any items or equipment outside the shop / premises boundary without prior approval from the Municipality
4. Maintain cleanliness of the site
5. Comply with the parking space regulations as per the Construction Regulatory Requirements

Activity Specific Conditions:
1. The commercial address for this activity can be registered in areas classified as commercial, services, or industrial
2. The commercial address of the Commercial Registration for this activity can an office address
provided that the site is used for administrative purposes and is not located in a residential area

Note: Uploading pictures of the site/shop may expedite the process of obtaining approval

Required Documents

- Lease agreement (after obtaining the necessary approvals from other licensing entities)
- Shop photos

Other Documents

- Cabinet's Decision (56) of the year 2022 regarding the Regulatory Requirements of Construction for various areas in the Kingdom of Bahrain

Civil Aviation Affairs (Post) (7911-3)

Approval Name	Description	Estimated Time
Direct Sales for the Airline Operating in Bahrain	It the offices that are founded by international airlines that have regular lines and through which to promote the activity of the company and overseeing the management of its affairs, and all related activities, and that thy process of direct sales of airline tickets.	10 Days

Fee Details (if any)

• Application fees: BD 100 (non-refundable in cases where the application is not approved).

• New license fees: BD 150 (every two years).

• BD 75 Renewal fee every two years.

License Information

• The capital of the company must not be less than BD 20,000
• The license is valid for two year and renewal application must be submitted 2 months before expiry
• Adherence to the standards and regulatory requirements contained in the regulations under the Civil Aviation Law issued by virtue of Law No. 14 of 2013

Required Documents

- Fill application Form ATD/ATCL/OF02
- Memorandum of Association

Other Documents

- Chicago Convention and its Annexes.
- Civil Aviation Law No.14 of 2013
- Minister of Transport and Telecommunication Decree No. 12 of 2016 amending some provisions of the Regulation under the Civil Aviation Law.
- Minister of Transportation and Telecommunication Decree No. 25 of 2016 of CAA fees and departure fees.
- Minster of Transportation and Telecommunication Decree No. 21 of 2013 issuing the regulations under the Civil Aviation Law.

Civil Aviation Affairs (Final Site Inspection) (7911-3)

Approval Name	Description	Estimated Time
Direct Sales for the Airline Operating in Bahrain	It the offices that are founded by international airlines that have regular lines and through which to promote the activity of the company and overseeing the management of its affairs, and all related activities, and that thy process of direct sales of airline tickets.	10 Days

Fee Details (if any)

• Application fees: BD 100 (non-refundable in cases where the application is not approved).

• New license fees: BD 150 (every two years).

• BD 75 Renewal fee every two years.

License Information

• The capital of the company must not be less than BD 20,000
• The license is valid for two year and renewal application must be submitted 2 months before expiry
• Adherence to the standards and regulatory requirements contained in the regulations under the Civil Aviation Law issued by virtue of Law No. 14 of 2013

Required Documents

- Fill application Form ATD/ATCL/OF02
- Memorandum of Association

Other Documents

- Chicago Convention and its Annexes.
- Civil Aviation Law No.14 of 2013
- Minister of Transport and Telecommunication Decree No. 12 of 2016 amending some provisions of the Regulation under the Civil Aviation Law.
- Minister of Transportation and Telecommunication Decree No. 25 of 2016 of CAA fees and departure fees.
- Minster of Transportation and Telecommunication Decree No. 21 of 2013 issuing the regulations under the Civil Aviation Law.

Administrative and support service activities

ISIC4	Business activity
7911-4	Travel office activities - Sales of private air transport services

Description

Sales and marketing of private executive air transport services.

Business Requirements

Age

18 and above

Allowed for Nationalities

Bahraini 100%	GCC 100%
American 100%	Singaporean 100%
Icelander 100%	Liechtensteiner 100%
Norwegian 100%	Swiss 100%

Foreign Allowed up to 100%

Legal Type

It is allowed to register according to the legal forms mentioned below

Allowed for Individual Commercial Registration (ICR) : Yes

Allowed for Company Commercial Registration (CCR) : Yes

- Bahrain Shareholding Company (Public)
- With Limited Liability Company
- Branch of a Foreign Company
- Bahrain Shareholding Company (Closed)
- Partnership Company
- Simple Commandite Company
- Commandite By Shares Company
- Non Profit Company

Required Step of Licenses and Approvals

Ministry / Directorate	License / Approval Requirements	Approval Type
Civil Aviation Affairs	Sales of Private Air Transport Services	Pre
Municipality Affairs	Site Approval for Administrative and support activities	Post
Civil Aviation Affairs	Sales of Private Air Transport Services	Post
Civil Aviation Affairs	Sales of Private Air Transport Services	Final Site Inspection

Civil Aviation Affairs (Pre) (7911-4)

Approval Name	Description	Estimated Time
Sales of Private Air Transport Services	Sales and marketing of private executive air transport services.	5 Days

Fee Details (if any)

• Application fees: BD 100 (non-refundable in cases where the application is not approved).

• New license fees: BD 150 (every two years).

• BD 75 Renewal fee every two years

License Information

• Capital of the company should not be less than 20,000
• The license is valid for two years and renewal application must be submitted 2 months before expiry.
• Adherence to the standards and regulatory requirements contained in the regulations under the Civil Aviation Law issued by virtue of Law No. 14 of 2013

Required Documents

•Copy of Passport & ID for the owners
•Fill application Form ATD/ATCL/OF04
•Memorandum of Association
•Technical, Financial & Economic Study

Other Documents

- Chicago Convention and its Annexes.
- Civil Aviation Law No.14 of 2013
- Minister of Transportation and Telecommunication Decree No. 25 of 2016 of CAA fees and departure fees.
- Minster of Transportation and Telecommunication Decree No. 21 of 2013 issuing the regulations under the Civil Aviation Law.

Municipality Affairs (Post) (7911-4)

Approval Name	Description	Estimated Time
Site Approval for Administrative and support activities	Municipality Approval for the Commercial Registration address or the site in which the Activity will be practiced	3 Days

Fee Details (if any)

10 BD

License Information

General Conditions:
1. Size of shop/premises must be sufficient for the activity
2. Businesses may not carry out the activity outside the boundaries of the shop/ premises
3. It is prohibited to display or store any items or equipment outside the shop / premises boundary without prior approval from the Municipality
4. Maintain cleanliness of the site
5. Comply with the parking space regulations as per the Construction Regulatory Requirements

Activity Specific Conditions:
1. The commercial address for this activity can be registered in areas classified as commercial, services, or industrial
2. The commercial address of the Commercial Registration for this activity can an office address
provided that the site is used for administrative purposes and is not located in a residential area

Note: Uploading pictures of the site/shop may expedite the process of obtaining approval

Required Documents

- Lease agreement (after obtaining the necessary approvals from other licensing entities)
- Shop photos

Other Documents

- Cabinet's Decision (56) of the year 2022 regarding the Regulatory Requirements of Construction for various areas in the Kingdom of Bahrain

Civil Aviation Affairs (Post) (7911-4)

Approval Name	Description	Estimated Time
Sales of Private Air Transport Services	Sales and marketing of private executive air transport services.	5 Days

Fee Details (if any)

• Application fees: BD 100 (non-refundable in cases where the application is not approved).

• New license fees: BD 150 (every two years).

• BD 75 Renewal fee every two years

License Information

• Capital of the company should not be less than 20,000
• The license is valid for two years and renewal application must be submitted 2 months before expiry.
• Adherence to the standards and regulatory requirements contained in the regulations under the Civil Aviation Law issued by virtue of Law No. 14 of 2013

Required Documents

•Copy of Passport & ID for the owners
•Fill application Form ATD/ATCL/OF04
•Memorandum of Association
•Technical, Financial & Economic Study

Other Documents

- Chicago Convention and its Annexes.
- Civil Aviation Law No.14 of 2013
- Minister of Transportation and Telecommunication Decree No. 25 of 2016 of CAA fees and departure fees.
- Minster of Transportation and Telecommunication Decree No. 21 of 2013 issuing the regulations under the Civil Aviation Law.

Civil Aviation Affairs (Final Site Inspection) (7911-4)

Approval Name	Description	Estimated Time
Sales of Private Air Transport Services	Sales and marketing of private executive air transport services.	5 Days

Fee Details (if any)

• Application fees: BD 100 (non-refundable in cases where the application is not approved).

• New license fees: BD 150 (every two years).

• BD 75 Renewal fee every two years

License Information

• Capital of the company should not be less than 20,000
• The license is valid for two years and renewal application must be submitted 2 months before expiry.
• Adherence to the standards and regulatory requirements contained in the regulations under the Civil Aviation Law issued by virtue of Law No. 14 of 2013

Required Documents

•Copy of Passport & ID for the owners
•Fill application Form ATD/ATCL/OF04
•Memorandum of Association
•Technical, Financial & Economic Study

Other Documents

- Chicago Convention and its Annexes.
- Civil Aviation Law No.14 of 2013
- Minister of Transportation and Telecommunication Decree No. 25 of 2016 of CAA fees and departure fees.
- Minster of Transportation and Telecommunication Decree No. 21 of 2013 issuing the regulations under the Civil Aviation Law.

Administrative and support service activities

ISIC4	Business activity
791202-1	Operation of Land Tours - Internal Transport of Tourists

Description

This activity includes:
Renting or leasing of carriers [buses] and collective means of transport for passengers and tourist groups, and others whether for personal lease on a temporary basis [by request] or through contracts for the transportation of passengers and tourist groups

Business Requirements

Age

18 and above

Allowed for Nationalities

Bahraini 100%	GCC 100%
American 100%	Singaporean 100%
Icelander 100%	Liechtenstein er 100%
Norwegian 100%	Swiss 100%

Foreign Allowed up to 100%

Legal Type

It is allowed to register according to the legal forms mentioned below

Allowed for Individual Commercial Registration (ICR) : Yes

Allowed for Company Commercial Registration (CCR) : Yes

- Bahrain Shareholding Company (Public)
- With Limited Liability Company
- Branch of a Foreign Company
- Bahrain Shareholding Company (Closed)
- Partnership Company
- Simple Commandite Company
- Commandite By Shares Company
- Non Profit Company

Required Step of Licenses and Approvals

Ministry / Directorate	License / Approval Requirements	Approval Type
Bahrain Tourim and Exibitions Authority	Internal Transport of Tourists	Notification Only
Land Transportation Regulation Directorate	Internal Transport of Tourists - Pre	Pre
General Directorate Of Criminal Investigation	Approval by General Directorate of Criminal Investigation	Pre
Municipality Affairs	Site Approval for Operation of Land Tours	Post
Land Transportation Regulation Directorate	Final site inspection for Internal Transport of Tourists	Final Site Inspection

Bahrain Tourim and Exibitions Authority (Notification Only) (791202-1)

Approval Name	Description	Estimated Time
Internal Transport of Tourists	Approval for Internal Transport of Tourists	3 Days

Fee Details (if any)

There is no Estimated Processing Time (Days) in this license.

License Information

- Commercial Address of the office should be located in a tourism/commercial zone and with a minimum space of 30 sq.m.
- The investor should ensure there is a waiting area and sufficient car park space for customers.
- Commercial Registrations for this activity should not have another activity registered under the same address unless it is related.

Land Transportation Regulation Directorate (Pre) (791202-1)

Approval Name	Description	Estimated Time
Internal Transport of Tourists - Pre	Internal Transport of Tourists - Pre	15 Days

Fee Details (if any)

Other Fees include:
- Application Fee: BD100
- License Fee : BD500
- Yard Site Visit: BD50 (for each yard)
- Issuance of each operating card (per vehicle): BD 40
- Renewal of each operating card (per vehicle): BD 40

License Information

The requirements for the vehicles that will be used in practicing the licensed activity

1. The minimum number of vehicles required to practice this activity is 3 with the condition that the passenger capacity for each vehicle is not less than 16 passengers.

2. The vehicles must be in a good condition throughout their usage. The vehicles must not have been used for more than 2 years at the time the operating card for the vehicle is requested, and the vehicle's life must not exceed 15 years from the date of manufacture upon the renewal of the operating card.

3. Bus color must not be similar to the color used by the public transport buses.

4. The investor shall bear any liability resulting from the purchase of the vehicles before obtaining the final approval (license) from the Ministry of Transportation and Telecommunications.

- The requirements for the vehicles yard address:

1. The yard must be located in an area classified as industrial or a service area.

2. The yard size should accommodate 100% of the vehicles that will be used to operate the licensed activity.

3. Comply with other requirements specified by the Land Transportation Regulation Directorate.

• If the licensee wishes to add a branch with the same license, the licensee must comply with the requirements of the headquarters without prejudice to the requirements of the vehicles yard.

Required Documents

•A list with the names of the drivers and details of their driving permits (if any)
•Audited financial statements (only in the case of companies that have been established three years or more)
•Business Plan
•List of proposed vehicles
•List of vehicles used for the current land transport activity indicating the type of vehicle, model, and year of manufacture (only for existing entities practicing any land transportation activity)
•Photos showing the location of the headquarters from different angles, with pictures showing availability of customer parking
•Statement with the proposed address of the car yard

Other Documents

•Ministerial Order No. 11 for the year 2015
•Ministerial order No. (22) of 2016 regarding regulation of Public Transport Activities Internal, International & Tourist
•Ministerial order number (12) for the year 2017 regarding amendment for Ministerial order number (11) for the year 2015
•Ministerial order number (8) for the year 2017 regarding amendment for Ministerial order number (22) of year 2016 regulation of Public Transport Activities Internal, International & Tourist

General Directorate Of Criminal Investigation (Pre) (791202-1)

Approval Name	Description	Estimated Time
Approval by General Directorate of Criminal Investigation	General Directorate of Criminal Investigation Approval for the Activity	7 Days

Fee Details (if any)

There is no Estimated Processing Time (Days) in this license.

License Information

- The applicant should not have a criminal record, unless they have been rehabilitated in criminal cases

Municipality Affairs (Post) (791202-1)

Approval Name	Description	Estimated Time
Site Approval for Operation of Land Tours	Municipality Approval for the Commercial Registration address or the site in which the Activity will be practiced	3 Days

Fee Details (if any)

10 BD

License Information

General Conditions:
1. Size of shop/premises must be sufficient for the activity
2. Businesses may not carry out the activity outside the boundaries of the shop/ premises
3. It is prohibited to display or store any items or equipment outside the shop / premises boundary without prior approval from the Municipality. In the event of non-compliance, the Ministry of Municipality Affairs has the right to take necessary action.
4. Maintain cleanliness of the site
5. Comply with the parking space regulations as per the Construction Regulatory Requirements

Activity Specific Conditions:
1. The commercial address for this activity is allowed to be registered in areas classified as investment or industrial, or on commercial or service streets.
2. Comply with the regulations of Land Transportation Affairs regarding the office and yard location

Note: Uploading pictures of the site/shop may expedite the process of obtaining approval

Required Documents

- Lease agreement (after obtaining the necessary approvals from other licensing entities)
- Shop photos

Other Documents

- Cabinet's Decision (56) of the year 2022 regarding the Regulatory Requirements of Construction for various areas in the Kingdom of Bahrain

Land Transportation Regulation Directorate (Final Site Inspection) (791202-1)

Approval Name	Description	Estimated Time
Final site inspection for Internal Transport of Tourists	Final site inspection for Internal Transport of Tourists	15 Days

Fee Details (if any)

There is no Estimated Processing Time (Days) in this license.

License Information

• The requirements for the vehicles yard address:

1. The yard must be located in an area classified as industrial or a service area.

2. The yard size should accommodate 100% of the vehicles that will be used to operate the licensed activity.

3. The yard site should be fenced and have an emergency exit as well as security and safety facilities.
4. Erecting a metal fence or wall around the yard with a height of at least 1.2 meters.
5. The exits leading to the area must be suitable and safe.
6. The exits leading to the yard cannot face main roads with heavy traffic activity.
7. The exits leading to the yard cannot directly face major or minor crossroads and intersections.
8. Both the entrance and the exist to the yard must be suitably sized, that can be locked.

• The requirements of the placard:
1. Must place a placard in the rest area for vehicles showing the commercial registrations name and number (made from metal of any other suitable materials that have been approved by the Directorate).
2. The placard must be at least 1 m x 60 cm and contains the name of the approved company / individual establishment in a clear text.

3. A sign must be erected, showing the rest area belonging to the company/individual establishment if the yard is located near a warehouse.
• Comply with other requirements specified by the Land Transportation Regulation Directorate

• If the licensee wishes to add a branch with the same license, the licensee must comply with the requirements of the headquarters without prejudice to the requirements of the vehicles yard.

Required Documents

•Copy of survey certificate or title deed of the proposed yard
•Yard agreement between the owner and the lessee, if the agreement is a sub-lease a no objection letter should be submitted by the owner

Other Documents

•Ministerial order number (11) for the year 2015 regarding Issuing the list of Public Transportation licenses
•Ministerial order number (12) for the year 2017 regarding amendment for Ministerial order number (11) for the year 2015
•Ministerial order number (22) for the year 2016 regarding regulation of Public Transport Activities Internal, International & Tourist
•Ministerial order number (8) for the year 2017 regarding amendment for Ministerial order number (22) of year 2016 regulation of Public Transport Activities Internal, International & Tourist

Administrative and support service activities

ISIC4	Business activity
791202-2	Operation of Land Tours - International Transport of Tourists

Description

This activity includes:
- Arranging and assembling tours that are sold through travel agencies or directly by tour operators. The tours may include any or all of the following:
· Transportation
· Accommodation
· Food
· Visits to museums, historical or cultural sites, theatrical, musical or sporting events

Business Requirements

Age

18 and above

Allowed for Nationalities

Bahraini 100%	GCC 100%
American 100%	

Legal Type

It is allowed to register according to the legal forms mentioned below

Allowed for Individual Commercial Registration (ICR) : Yes

Allowed for Company Commercial Registration (CCR) : Yes

- Bahrain Shareholding Company (Public)
- With Limited Liability Company
- Branch of a Foreign Company
- Bahrain Shareholding Company (Closed)
- Partnership Company
- Simple Commandite Company
- Commandite By Shares Company
- Non Profit Company

Required Step of Licenses and Approvals

Ministry / Directorate	License / Approval Requirements	Approval Type
Land Transportation Regulation Directorate	International Tourism Transport	Pre
General Directorate Of Criminal Investigation	Approval by General Directorate of Criminal Investigation	Pre
Municipality Affairs	Site Approval for Operation of Land Tours	Post
Land Transportation Regulation Directorate	International Tourism Transport	Final Site Inspection

Land Transportation Regulation Directorate (Pre) (791202-2)

Approval Name	Description	Estimated Time
International Tourism Transport	International Tourism Transport	15 Days

Fee Details (if any)

Other Fees include:
- Application Fee: BD100
- License Fee : BD1000
- Yard Site Visit: BD50 (for each yard)
- Issuance of each operating card (per vehicle): BD 40
- Renewal of each operating card (per vehicle): BD 40

License Information

- Applicants must first obtain a commercial registration and a license from the Ministry of Transportation and Telecommunications to practice this activity
- The requirements for the vehicles that will be used in practicing the licensed activity

1. The minimum number of vehicles required to practice this activity is 5 with the condition that the passenger capacity for each vehicle not less than 25 passengers.
2. The vehicles must be in a good condition throughout their usage. The vehicles must not have been used for more than 5 years at the time the operating card for the vehicle is requested, and in any case the vehicle's life must not have exceeded 10 years from the date of manufacture.
3. Bus color must not be similar to the same color used by the public transport Buses.
4. The investor shall bear any liability resulting from the purchase of the vehicles before obtaining the final approval (license) from the Ministry of Transportation and Telecommunications.

- The requirements for the commercial registration address (Office/ Shop):

1. The office/shop should be on a road classified as commercial or services, or in an area classified as investment or industrial and the office / shop should have public parking space for the customers.
2. The office/shop should have waiting room for the passengers and parking space.
3. The cars used for this activity must not be parked in front of the office/shop, or in any

other location except for the dedicated car yard.
4. The office / shop should have security and safety facilities.
• The applicant should submit an official contract (either owned or leased) for the office shop.
• The requirements for the car yard site:
1. The yard must not be located in an area classified as industrial or services
2. The yard size should accommodate 50% of the vehicles that will be used in practicing the licensed activity.
3. The yard site should be enclosed with an emergency exit as well as security and safety facilities
4. Comply with other requirements specified by the Land Transportation Regulation Directorate
• The business plan required must cover the first 5 years of operations and must provide a comprehensive description of the proposed operations
• In the event that the licensee wishes to add a branch with this license the licensee must comply with the requirements of the headquarters without prejudice to the requirements of the car yard.
• For more details, please refer to the Ministerial order No. (22) of 2016 regarding regulation of Public Transport Activities Internal, International & Tourist, as well as the Ministerial order No. (11) of 2015 regarding issuing the list of Public Transportation licenses, which can be found in the “Other Downloadable Documents” section.

Required Documents

•A list with the names of the drivers and details of their driving permits (if any)
•Audited financial statements (only in the case of companies that have been established three years or more)
•Business Plan
•List of proposed vehicles
•List of vehicles used for the current land transport activity indicating the type of vehicle, model, and year of manufacture (only for existing entities practicing any land transportation activity)
•Photos showing the location of the headquarters from different angles, with pictures showing availability of customer parking
•Statement with the proposed address of the car yard

Other Documents

•Ministerial Order No. 11 for the year 2015
•Ministerial Order No. 22 of the year 2016 regarding regulation of Public Transport Activities Internal, International & Tourist

General Directorate Of Criminal Investigation (Pre) (791202-2)

Approval Name	Description	Estimated Time
Approval by General Directorate of Criminal Investigation	General Directorate of Criminal Investigation Approval for the Activity	7 Days

Fee Details (if any)

There is no Estimated Processing Time (Days) in this license.

License Information

- The applicant should not have a criminal record, unless they have been rehabilitated in criminal cases

Municipality Affairs (Post) (791202-2)

Approval Name	Description	Estimated Time
Site Approval for Operation of Land Tours	Municipality Approval for the Commercial Registration address or the site in which the Activity will be practiced	3 Days

Fee Details (if any)

10 BD

License Information

General Conditions:
1. Size of shop/premises must be sufficient for the activity
2. Businesses may not carry out the activity outside the boundaries of the shop/ premises
3. It is prohibited to display or store any items or equipment outside the shop / premises boundary without prior approval from the Municipality. In the event of non-compliance, the Ministry of Municipality Affairs has the right to take necessary action.
4. Maintain cleanliness of the site
5. Comply with the parking space regulations as per the Construction Regulatory Requirements

Activity Specific Conditions:
1. The commercial address for this activity is allowed to be registered in areas classified as investment or industrial, or on commercial or service streets.
2. Comply with the regulations of Land Transportation Affairs regarding the office and yard location

Note: Uploading pictures of the site/shop may expedite the process of obtaining approval

Required Documents

- Lease agreement (after obtaining the necessary approvals from other licensing entities)
- Shop photos

Other Documents

- Cabinet's Decision (56) of the year 2022 regarding the Regulatory Requirements of Construction for various areas in the Kingdom of Bahrain

Land Transportation Regulation Directorate (Final Site Inspection) (791202-2)

Approval Name	Description	Estimated Time
International Tourism Transport	International Tourism Transport	15 Days

Fee Details (if any)

Other Fees include:
- Application Fee: BD100
- License Fee : BD1000
- Yard Site Visit: BD50 (for each yard)
- Issuance of each operating card (per vehicle): BD 40
- Renewal of each operating card (per vehicle): BD 40

License Information

- Applicants must first obtain a commercial registration and a license from the Ministry of Transportation and Telecommunications to practice this activity
- The requirements for the vehicles that will be used in practicing the licensed activity

1. The minimum number of vehicles required to practice this activity is 5 with the condition that the passenger capacity for each vehicle not less than 25 passengers.
2. The vehicles must be in a good condition throughout their usage. The vehicles must not have been used for more than 5 years at the time the operating card for the vehicle is requested, and in any case the vehicle's life must not have exceeded 10 years from the date of manufacture.
3. Bus color must not be similar to the same color used by the public transport Buses.
4. The investor shall bear any liability resulting from the purchase of the vehicles before obtaining the final approval (license) from the Ministry of Transportation and Telecommunications.

- The requirements for the commercial registration address (Office/ Shop):

1. The office/shop should be on a road classified as commercial or services, or in an area classified as investment or industrial and the office / shop should have public parking space for the customers.

2. The office/shop should have waiting room for the passengers and parking space.
3. The cars used for this activity must not be parked in front of the office/shop, or in any other location except for the dedicated car yard.
4. The office / shop should have security and safety facilities.
• The applicant should submit an official contract (either owned or leased) for the office shop.
• The requirements for the car yard site:
1. The yard must not be located in an area classified as industrial or services
2. The yard size should accommodate 50% of the vehicles that will be used in practicing the licensed activity.
3. The yard site should be enclosed with an emergency exit as well as security and safety facilities
4. Comply with other requirements specified by the Land Transportation Regulation Directorate
• The business plan required must cover the first 5 years of operations and must provide a comprehensive description of the proposed operations
• In the event that the licensee wishes to add a branch with this license the licensee must comply with the requirements of the headquarters without prejudice to the requirements of the car yard.
• For more details, please refer to the Ministerial order No. (22) of 2016 regarding regulation of Public Transport Activities Internal, International & Tourist, as well as the Ministerial order No. (11) of 2015 regarding issuing the list of Public Transportation licenses, which can be found in the “Other Downloadable Documents” section.

Required Documents

•A list with the names of the drivers and details of their driving permits (if any)
•Audited financial statements (only in the case of companies that have been established three years or more)
•Business Plan
•List of proposed vehicles
•List of vehicles used for the current land transport activity indicating the type of vehicle, model, and year of manufacture (only for existing entities practicing any land transportation activity)
•Photos showing the location of the headquarters from different angles, with pictures showing availability of customer parking
•Statement with the proposed address of the car yard

Other Documents

•Ministerial Order No. 11 for the year 2015
•Ministerial Order No. 22 of the year 2016 regarding regulation of Public Transport Activities Internal, International & Tourist

Administrative and support service activities

ISIC4	Business activity
791203-1	Operation of Sea/Diving Tours - Operation of Sea/Diving Tours without Pearl Diving

Description

This activity includes:
Facilities that conducts marine tours through regular and irregular marine transport lines, including the transfer of individuals and tourist groups providing them with accommodation and subsistence services in addition to other tourists services

Business Requirements

Age

18 and above

Allowed for Nationalities

Bahraini 100%	GCC 100%
American 100%	Singaporean 100%
Icelander 100%	Liechtenstein er 100%
Norwegian 100%	Swiss 100%

Foreign Allowed up to 100%

Legal Type

It is allowed to register according to the legal forms mentioned below

Allowed for Individual Commercial Registration (ICR) : Yes

Allowed for Company Commercial Registration (CCR) : Yes

- Bahrain Shareholding Company (Public)
- With Limited Liability Company
- Branch of a Foreign Company
- Bahrain Shareholding Company (Closed)
- Partnership Company
- Simple Commandite Company
- Commandite By Shares Company
- Non Profit Company

Required Step of Licenses and Approvals

Ministry / Directorate	License / Approval Requirements	Approval Type
General Directorate Of Criminal Investigation	Approval by General Directorate of Criminal Investigation	Pre
Bahrain Tourim and Exibitions Authority	Approval for operation of sea/diving tours	Pre
Municipality Affairs	Site Approval for Administrative and support activities	Post
Bahrain Tourim and Exibitions Authority	Approval for operation of sea/diving tours	Final Site Inspection

General Directorate Of Criminal Investigation (Pre) (791203-1)

Approval Name	Description	Estimated Time
Approval by General Directorate of Criminal Investigation	General Directorate of Criminal Investigation Approval for the Activity	7 Days

Fee Details (if any)

There is no Estimated Processing Time (Days) in this license.

License Information

- The applicant should not have a criminal record, unless they have been rehabilitated in criminal cases

Bahrain Tourim and Exibitions Authority (Pre) (791203-1)

Approval Name	Description	Estimated Time
Approval for operation of sea/ diving tours	Approval for operation of sea/ diving tours	3 Days

Fee Details (if any)

There is no Estimated Processing Time (Days) in this license.

License Information

- Commercial Address of the office should be located in a tourism/commercial zone and with a minimum space of 30 sq.m.
- The investor should ensure there is a waiting area and sufficient car park space for customers.
- Commercial Registrations for this activity should not have another activity registered under the same address unless it is related.

Required Documents

- Description of project and concept
- Pictures of proposed marine transport

Municipality Affairs (Post) (791203-1)

Approval Name	Description	Estimated Time
Site Approval for Administrative and support activities	Municipality Approval for the Commercial Registration address or the site in which the Activity will be practiced	3 Days

Fee Details (if any)

10 BD

License Information

General Conditions:
1. Size of shop/premises must be sufficient for the activity
2. Businesses may not carry out the activity outside the boundaries of the shop/ premises
3. It is prohibited to display or store any items or equipment outside the shop / premises boundary without prior approval from the Municipality
4. Maintain cleanliness of the site
5. Comply with the parking space regulations as per the Construction Regulatory Requirements

Activity Specific Conditions:
1. The commercial address for this activity can be registered in areas classified as commercial, services, or industrial
2. The commercial address of the Commercial Registration for this activity can an office address
provided that the site is used for administrative purposes and is not located in a residential area

Note: Uploading pictures of the site/shop may expedite the process of obtaining approval

Required Documents

- Lease agreement (after obtaining the necessary approvals from other licensing entities)
- Shop photos

Other Documents

- Cabinet's Decision (56) of the year 2022 regarding the Regulatory Requirements of Construction for various areas in the Kingdom of Bahrain

Bahrain Tourim and Exibitions Authority (Final Site Inspection) (791203-1)

Approval Name	Description	Estimated Time
Approval for operation of sea/ diving tours	Approval for operation of sea/ diving tours	3 Days

Fee Details (if any)

There is no Estimated Processing Time (Days) in this license.

License Information

- Commercial Address of the office should be located in a tourism/commercial zone and with a minimum space of 30 sq.m.
- The investor should ensure there is a waiting area and sufficient car park space for customers.
- Commercial Registrations for this activity should not have another activity registered under the same address unless it is related.

Required Documents

- Description of project and concept
- Pictures of proposed marine transport

Administrative and support service activities

ISIC4	Business activity
791203-2	Operation of Sea/Diving Tours - Operation of Sea/Diving Tours with Pearl Diving

Description

This activity includes:
- Arranging and assembling tours that are sold through travel agencies or directly by tour operators.
The tours may include any or all of the following:
· Diving Tour

Business Requirements

✔ Age

18 and above

✔ Allowed for Nationalities

Bahraini 100%		GCC 100%	
American 100%		Singaporean 100%	
Icelander 100%		Liechtenstein er 100%	
Norwegian 100%		Swiss 100%	

Foreign Allowed up to 100%

Legal Type

It is allowed to register according to the legal forms mentioned below

Allowed for Individual Commercial Registration (ICR) : Yes

Allowed for Company Commercial Registration (CCR) : Yes

- Bahrain Shareholding Company (Public)
- With Limited Liability Company
- Branch of a Foreign Company
- Bahrain Shareholding Company (Closed)
- Partnership Company
- Simple Commandite Company
- Commandite By Shares Company
- Non Profit Company

Required Step of Licenses and Approvals

Ministry / Directorate	License / Approval Requirements	Approval Type
Bahrain Tourim and Exibitions Authority	Approval for operation of sea/diving tours	Pre
General Directorate Of Criminal Investigation	Approval by General Directorate of Criminal Investigation	Pre
Municipality Affairs	Site Approval for Administrative and support activities	Post
Directorate of Fisheries	Pearl Diving License	Post
Bahrain Tourim and Exibitions Authority	Approval for operation of sea/diving tours	Final Site Inspection

Bahrain Tourim and Exibitions Authority (Pre) (791203-2)

Approval Name	Description	Estimated Time
Approval for operation of sea/ diving tours	Approval for operation of sea/ diving tours	3 Days

Fee Details (if any)

There is no Estimated Processing Time (Days) in this license.

License Information

- Commercial Address of the office should be located in a tourism/commercial zone and with a minimum space of 30 sq.m.
- The investor should ensure there is a waiting area and sufficient car park space for customers.
- Commercial Registrations for this activity should not have another activity registered under the same address unless it is related.

Required Documents

- Description of project and concept
- Pictures of proposed marine transport

General Directorate Of Criminal Investigation (Pre) (791203-2)

Approval Name	Description	Estimated Time
Approval by General Directorate of Criminal Investigation	General Directorate of Criminal Investigation Approval for the Activity	7 Days

Fee Details (if any)

There is no Estimated Processing Time (Days) in this license.

License Information

- The applicant should not have a criminal record, unless they have been rehabilitated in criminal cases

Municipality Affairs (Post) (791203-2)

Approval Name	Description	Estimated Time
Site Approval for Administrative and support activities	Municipality Approval for the Commercial Registration address or the site in which the Activity will be practiced	3 Days

Fee Details (if any)

10 BD

License Information

General Conditions:
1. Size of shop/premises must be sufficient for the activity
2. Businesses may not carry out the activity outside the boundaries of the shop/ premises
3. It is prohibited to display or store any items or equipment outside the shop / premises boundary without prior approval from the Municipality
4. Maintain cleanliness of the site
5. Comply with the parking space regulations as per the Construction Regulatory Requirements

Activity Specific Conditions:
1. The commercial address for this activity can be registered in areas classified as commercial, services, or industrial
2. The commercial address of the Commercial Registration for this activity can an office address
provided that the site is used for administrative purposes and is not located in a residential area

Note: Uploading pictures of the site/shop may expedite the process of obtaining approval

Required Documents

- Lease agreement (after obtaining the necessary approvals from other licensing entities)
- Shop photos

Other Documents

- Cabinet's Decision (56) of the year 2022 regarding the Regulatory Requirements of Construction for various areas in the Kingdom of Bahrain

Directorate of Fisheries (Post) (791203-2)

Approval Name	Description	Estimated Time
Pearl Diving License	This license allows for the practice of diving tours which incorporates the extraction of oysters	5 Days

Fee Details (if any)

Application Fee: BD 50
License Fee: BD1000

License Information

The license is valid for one year and must be renewed 15 days before it expires

Pre-Licensing Conditions/ requirements:

• A license from the Marine Monitoring Directorate at the Agriculture and Marine Resources Affairs in the Ministry of Works, Municipalities Affairs and Urban Planning must first be obtained before practicing pearl diving and extraction

• Pearl diving and extraction tours may only be practiced after completing all the requirements by the related official directorate and other relevant entities

Post-Licensing conditions/ requirements:

• Pearl diving and extraction tours may only be practiced through professional instructors who have been pre-approved by the concerned official directorate and other relevant entities

• License holders must provide the General Directorate of Coast Guard with the names of the individuals aboard the ship before the commencement of any pearl diving and

extraction tour

• License holders must make available a professional diving instructor holding a PADI Master certificate or equivalent for every four divers participating in the tour

• License holders must ensure availability of a captain with a recognized certificate, and ensure that the ship's crew members are experienced and trained on first aid for maritime rescue.

• The license may not be transferred to others.

• Provide staff license details to the related official directorate and authorities upon request

• Adhere not to organize any tours except in the boat designated for this purpose as per the license granted for the Center

• To provide any information required by the related official directorate upon request

Other conditions/information:

• In the event oysters will be extracted by a member of the staff, he/she must either hold an “Individual License” from the Marine Monitoring Directorate, or prior to each trip purchase tickets from BTEA

• A maximum of 60 oysters can be collected per diver on board

• Pearl diving and extraction shall only be allowed in the permitted areas in accordance with the provisions of laws, regulations and decrees applied in the Kingdom of Bahrain.

• All pearl diving and extraction tours must commence and end at Ras Rayah Harbour

• License holders must notify the concerned department by registered mail within thirty days from the date of suspending pearl diving and extraction tours and when changing the information related to the license granted to the center.

• License holder must not engage in any fishing or any other activity that violates the license granted

Required Documents

- Boat Captain's Card
- Boat ownership Certificate
- Certificate of Completion of Supreme Council of Environment's Pearl Diving Training Course
- Instructors' PADI Dive Master certificates or equivalent
- Pearl diving license application form

Other Documents

- Chairman of Supreme Council for Environment Order (2) of 2017 with respect to designating Najwat Bulthama as a protected marine area
- Chairman of Supreme Council for Environment Order (3) of 2017 with respect to designating Hayr Bulthama, Hayr Shtayyah, Hayr Bu Ammama and the buffer zone as a protected marine area
- Decree Law (20) of 2002 with respect to the regulation of fishing and exploitation of marine resources
- Ministerial Order (43) of 2017 with respect to the regulation of Pearl Diving

Bahrain Tourim and Exibitions Authority (Final Site Inspection) (791203-2)

Approval Name	Description	Estimated Time
Approval for operation of sea/ diving tours	Approval for operation of sea/ diving tours	3 Days

Fee Details (if any)

There is no Estimated Processing Time (Days) in this license.

License Information

- Commercial Address of the office should be located in a tourism/commercial zone and with a minimum space of 30 sq.m.
- The investor should ensure there is a waiting area and sufficient car park space for customers.
- Commercial Registrations for this activity should not have another activity registered under the same address unless it is related.

Required Documents

- Description of project and concept
- Pictures of proposed marine transport

Administrative and support service activities

ISIC4	Business activity
79902	Reservation/Ticket Sales Activities for entertainment or recreational purposes (excluding air transportation)

Description

This activity includes:
- Provision of other travel-related reservation services: Reservations for transportation, hotels, restaurants, car rentals, entertainment and sport etc.
- Ticket sales activities for theatrical, sports and other amusement and entertainment events

This class excludes:
- Activities of travel agencies and tour operators
- Organization and management of events such as meetings, conventions and conferences

Business Requirements

Age

18 and above

Allowed for Nationalities

Bahraini 100%	GCC 100%
American 100%	Singaporean 100%
Icelander 100%	Liechtensteiner 100%
Norwegian 100%	Swiss 100%

Foreign Allowed up to 100%

Legal Type

It is allowed to register according to the legal forms mentioned below

Allowed for Individual Commercial Registration (ICR) : Yes

Allowed for Company Commercial Registration (CCR) : Yes

Allowed for Sijilli : Yes

- Bahrain Shareholding Company (Public)
- With Limited Liability Company
- Branch of a Foreign Company
- Bahrain Shareholding Company (Closed)
- Partnership Company
- Simple Commandite Company
- Commandite By Shares Company
- Non Profit Company

Required Step of Licenses and Approvals

Ministry / Directorate	License / Approval Requirements	Approval Type
Municipality Affairs	Site Approval for Administrative and support activities	Post

Municipality Affairs (Post) (79902)

Approval Name	Description	Estimated Time
Site Approval for Administrative and support activities	Municipality Approval for the Commercial Registration address or the site in which the Activity will be practiced	3 Days

Fee Details (if any)

10 BD

License Information

General Conditions:
1. Size of shop/premises must be sufficient for the activity
2. Businesses may not carry out the activity outside the boundaries of the shop/ premises
3. It is prohibited to display or store any items or equipment outside the shop / premises boundary without prior approval from the Municipality
4. Maintain cleanliness of the site
5. Comply with the parking space regulations as per the Construction Regulatory Requirements

Activity Specific Conditions:
1. The commercial address for this activity can be registered in areas classified as commercial, services, or industrial
2. The commercial address of the Commercial Registration for this activity can an office address
provided that the site is used for administrative purposes and is not located in a residential area

Note: Uploading pictures of the site/shop may expedite the process of obtaining approval

Required Documents

- Lease agreement (after obtaining the necessary approvals from other licensing entities)
- Shop photos

Other Documents

- Cabinet's Decision (56) of the year 2022 regarding the Regulatory Requirements of Construction for various areas in the Kingdom of Bahrain

Administrative and support service activities

ISIC4	Business activity
79903	Visitor Assistance Services

Description

This activity includes provision of visitor assistance services:
- Provision of travel information to visitors
- Activities of tourist guides

Business Requirements

Age

18 and above

Allowed for Nationalities

Bahraini 100%	GCC 100%
American 100%	Singaporean 100%
Icelander 100%	Liechtenstein er 100%
Norwegian 100%	Swiss 100%

Foreign Allowed up to 100%

Legal Type

It is allowed to register according to the legal forms mentioned below

Allowed for Individual Commercial Registration (ICR) : Yes

Allowed for Company Commercial Registration (CCR) : Yes

Allowed for Sijilli : Yes

- Bahrain Shareholding Company (Public)
- With Limited Liability Company
- Branch of a Foreign Company
- Bahrain Shareholding Company (Closed)
- Partnership Company
- Simple Commandite Company
- Commandite By Shares Company
- Non Profit Company

Required Step of Licenses and Approvals

Ministry / Directorate	License / Approval Requirements	Approval Type
Municipality Affairs	Site Approval for Administrative and support activities	Post

Municipality Affairs (Post) (79903)

Approval Name	Description	Estimated Time
Site Approval for Administrative and support activities	Municipality Approval for the Commercial Registration address or the site in which the Activity will be practiced	3 Days

Fee Details (if any)

10 BD

License Information

General Conditions:
1. Size of shop/premises must be sufficient for the activity
2. Businesses may not carry out the activity outside the boundaries of the shop/ premises
3. It is prohibited to display or store any items or equipment outside the shop / premises boundary without prior approval from the Municipality
4. Maintain cleanliness of the site
5. Comply with the parking space regulations as per the Construction Regulatory Requirements

Activity Specific Conditions:
1. The commercial address for this activity can be registered in areas classified as commercial, services, or industrial
2. The commercial address of the Commercial Registration for this activity can an office address
provided that the site is used for administrative purposes and is not located in a residential area

Note: Uploading pictures of the site/shop may expedite the process of obtaining approval

Required Documents

- Lease agreement (after obtaining the necessary approvals from other licensing entities)
- Shop photos

Other Documents

- Cabinet's Decision (56) of the year 2022 regarding the Regulatory Requirements of Construction for various areas in the Kingdom of Bahrain

Administrative and support service activities

ISIC4	Business activity
79904	Offices for the coordination of medical treatments

Description

This activity includes:
Offices that provide coordination and communication services only with hospitals and other medical institutions and health insurance companies both inside and outside Bahrain for patients suffering from different types of health conditions without providing any kind of treatment services.

Business Requirements

Age

18 and above

Allowed for Nationalities

Bahraini 100%		GCC 100%	
American 100%		Singaporean 100%	
Icelander 100%		Liechtensteiner 100%	
Norwegian 100%		Swiss 100%	

Foreign Allowed up to 100%

Legal Type

It is allowed to register according to the legal forms mentioned below

Allowed for Individual Commercial Registration (ICR) : Yes

Allowed for Company Commercial Registration (CCR) : Yes

Allowed for Sijilli : Yes

- Bahrain Shareholding Company (Public)
- With Limited Liability Company
- Branch of a Foreign Company
- Bahrain Shareholding Company (Closed)
- Partnership Company
- Simple Commandite Company
- Commandite By Shares Company
- Non Profit Company

Required Step of Licenses and Approvals

Ministry / Directorate	License / Approval Requirements	Approval Type
Municipality Affairs	Site Approval for Administrative and support activities	Post

Municipality Affairs (Post) (79904)

Approval Name	Description	Estimated Time
Site Approval for Administrative and support activities	Municipality Approval for the Commercial Registration address or the site in which the Activity will be practiced	3 Days

Fee Details (if any)

10 BD

License Information

General Conditions:
1. Size of shop/premises must be sufficient for the activity
2. Businesses may not carry out the activity outside the boundaries of the shop/ premises
3. It is prohibited to display or store any items or equipment outside the shop / premises boundary without prior approval from the Municipality
4. Maintain cleanliness of the site
5. Comply with the parking space regulations as per the Construction Regulatory Requirements

Activity Specific Conditions:
1. The commercial address for this activity can be registered in areas classified as commercial, services, or industrial
2. The commercial address of the Commercial Registration for this activity can an office address
provided that the site is used for administrative purposes and is not located in a residential area

Note: Uploading pictures of the site/shop may expedite the process of obtaining approval

Required Documents

- Lease agreement (after obtaining the necessary approvals from other licensing entities)
- Shop photos

Other Documents

- Cabinet's Decision (56) of the year 2022 regarding the Regulatory Requirements of Construction for various areas in the Kingdom of Bahrain

Administrative and support service activities

ISIC4	Business activity
799091	Computer Reservation System for air transportation

Description

This activity includes:
Offices that operate automated reservation systems for travel agencies to book airline passenger seats. It also includes bookings at hotels , restaurants and car rental offices .

Business Requirements

Age

18 and above

Allowed for Nationalities

Bahraini 100%		GCC 100%	
American 100%		Singaporean 100%	
Icelander 100%		Liechtenstein er 100%	
Norwegian 100%		Swiss 100%	

Foreign Allowed up to 100%

Legal Type

It is allowed to register according to the legal forms mentioned below

Allowed for Individual Commercial Registration (ICR) : Yes

Allowed for Company Commercial Registration (CCR) : Yes

- Bahrain Shareholding Company (Public)
- With Limited Liability Company
- Branch of a Foreign Company
- Bahrain Shareholding Company (Closed)
- Partnership Company
- Simple Commandite Company
- Commandite By Shares Company
- Non Profit Company

Required Step of Licenses and Approvals

Ministry / Directorate	License / Approval Requirements	Approval Type
Civil Aviation Affairs	Computer Reservation System	Pre
General Directorate Of Criminal Investigation	Approval by General Directorate of Criminal Investigation	Pre
Municipality Affairs	Site Approval for Administrative and support activities	Post
Civil Aviation Affairs	Computer Reservation System	Post
Civil Aviation Affairs	Computer Reservation System	Final Site Inspection

Civil Aviation Affairs (Pre) (799091)

Approval Name	Description	Estimated Time
Computer Reservation System	Including providing computer reservation services through internet to sale and marketing of air transport services shall be through an approved computer reservation system agent or any organization/ establishment delegated by the agent to provide such services.	10 Days

Fee Details (if any)

• Application fees: BD 100 (non-refundable in cases where the application is not approved).
• License fees: BD 2,000.
• Annual renewal 50% of the license fees.

License Information

• The capital of the company must not be less than BD 100,000
• The license is valid for two year and renewal application must be submitted 2 months before expiry
• Adherence to the standards and regulatory requirements contained in the regulations under the Civil Aviation Law issued by virtue of Law No. 14 of 2013

Required Documents

- Feasibility, technical, economic and financial studies
- Fill application Form ATD/ATCL/OF04
- Memorandum of Association

Other Documents

- Civil Aviation Law No.14 of 2013
- Minister of Transportation and Telecommunication Decree No. 25 of 2016 of CAA fees and departure fees.
- Minster of Transportation and Telecommunication Decree No. 21 of 2013 issuing the regulations under the Civil Aviation Law.

General Directorate Of Criminal Investigation (Pre) (799091)

Approval Name	Description	Estimated Time
Approval by General Directorate of Criminal Investigation	General Directorate of Criminal Investigation Approval for the Activity	7 Days

Fee Details (if any)

There is no Estimated Processing Time (Days) in this license.

License Information

- The applicant should not have a criminal record, unless they have been rehabilitated in criminal cases

Municipality Affairs (Post) (799091)

Approval Name	Description	Estimated Time
Site Approval for Administrative and support activities	Municipality Approval for the Commercial Registration address or the site in which the Activity will be practiced	3 Days

Fee Details (if any)

10 BD

License Information

General Conditions:
1. Size of shop/premises must be sufficient for the activity
2. Businesses may not carry out the activity outside the boundaries of the shop/ premises
3. It is prohibited to display or store any items or equipment outside the shop / premises boundary without prior approval from the Municipality
4. Maintain cleanliness of the site
5. Comply with the parking space regulations as per the Construction Regulatory Requirements

Activity Specific Conditions:
1. The commercial address for this activity can be registered in areas classified as commercial, services, or industrial
2. The commercial address of the Commercial Registration for this activity can an office address
provided that the site is used for administrative purposes and is not located in a residential area

Note: Uploading pictures of the site/shop may expedite the process of obtaining approval

Required Documents

- Lease agreement (after obtaining the necessary approvals from other licensing entities)
- Shop photos

Other Documents

- Cabinet's Decision (56) of the year 2022 regarding the Regulatory Requirements of Construction for various areas in the Kingdom of Bahrain

Civil Aviation Affairs (Post) (799091)

Approval Name	Description	Estimated Time
Computer Reservation System	Including providing computer reservation services through internet to sale and marketing of air transport services shall be through an approved computer reservation system agent or any organization/ establishment delegated by the agent to provide such services.	10 Days

Fee Details (if any)

• Application fees: BD 100 (non-refundable in cases where the application is not approved).
• License fees: BD 2,000.
• Annual renewal 50% of the license fees.

License Information

• The capital of the company must not be less than BD 100,000
• The license is valid for two year and renewal application must be submitted 2 months before expiry
• Adherence to the standards and regulatory requirements contained in the regulations under the Civil Aviation Law issued by virtue of Law No. 14 of 2013

Required Documents

- Feasibility, technical, economic and financial studies
- Fill application Form ATD/ATCL/OF04
- Memorandum of Association

Other Documents

- Civil Aviation Law No.14 of 2013
- Minister of Transportation and Telecommunication Decree No. 25 of 2016 of CAA fees and departure fees.
- Minster of Transportation and Telecommunication Decree No. 21 of 2013 issuing the regulations under the Civil Aviation Law.

Civil Aviation Affairs (Final Site Inspection) (799091)

Approval Name	Description	Estimated Time
Computer Reservation System	Including providing computer reservation services through internet to sale and marketing of air transport services shall be through an approved computer reservation system agent or any organization/ establishment delegated by the agent to provide such services.	10 Days

Fee Details (if any)

- Application fees: BD 100 (non-refundable in cases where the application is not approved).
- License fees: BD 2,000.
- Annual renewal 50% of the license fees.

License Information

- The capital of the company must not be less than BD 100,000
- The license is valid for two year and renewal application must be submitted 2 months before expiry
- Adherence to the standards and regulatory requirements contained in the regulations under the Civil Aviation Law issued by virtue of Law No. 14 of 2013

Required Documents

- Feasibility, technical, economic and financial studies
- Fill application Form ATD/ATCL/OF04
- Memorandum of Association

Other Documents

- Civil Aviation Law No.14 of 2013
- Minister of Transportation and Telecommunication Decree No. 25 of 2016 of CAA fees and departure fees.
- Minster of Transportation and Telecommunication Decree No. 21 of 2013 issuing the regulations under the Civil Aviation Law.

Administrative and support service activities

ISIC4	Business activity
801	Private security activities

Description

This activity includes the provision of one or more of the following: guard and patrol services, picking up and delivering money, receipts or other valuable items with needed personnel and equipments to protect such properties while in transit.
This activity includes:
- Armored car services
- Bodyguard services
- Polygraph services
- Fingerprinting services
- Security guard services

This activity excludes:
- Public order and safety activities

Business Requirements

Age

18 and above

Allowed for Nationalities

Bahraini 100%	GCC 100%
American 100%	Singaporean Allowed up to 49% (a minimum Bahraini ownership of 51% is required)
Icelander Allowed up to 49% (a minimum Bahraini ownership of 51% is required)	Liechtenstein er Allowed up to 49% (a minimum Bahraini ownership of 51% is required)
Norwegian Allowed up to 49% (a minimum Bahraini ownership of 51% is required)	Swiss Allowed up to 49% (a minimum Bahraini ownership of 51% is required)

Foreign Allowed up to Allowed up to 49% (a minimum Bahraini ownership of 51% is required)

Legal Type

It is allowed to register according to the legal forms mentioned below

Allowed for Company Commercial Registration (CCR) : Yes

- Bahrain Shareholding Company (Public)
- With Limited Liability Company
- Branch of a Foreign Company
- Bahrain Shareholding Company (Closed)
- Partnership Company
- Simple Commandite Company
- Commandite By Shares Company
- Non Profit Company

Required Step of Licenses and Approvals

Ministry / Directorate	License / Approval Requirements	Approval Type
General Directorate Of Criminal Investigation	Approval by General Directorate of Criminal Investigation	Pre
General Directorate For Guards Ministry Of Interior	Security Firm License	Post
Municipality Affairs	Site Approval for Administrative and support activities	Post
General Directorate For Guards Ministry Of Interior	Security Firm License	Final Site Inspection

General Directorate Of Criminal Investigation (Pre) (801)

Approval Name	Description	Estimated Time
Approval by General Directorate of Criminal Investigation	General Directorate of Criminal Investigation Approval for the Activity	7 Days

Fee Details (if any)

There is no Estimated Processing Time (Days) in this license.

License Information

- The applicant should not have a criminal record, unless they have been rehabilitated in criminal cases

General Directorate For Guards Ministry Of Interior (Post) (801)

Approval Name	Description	Estimated Time
Security Firm License	The licence is required if investor intends set up a security firm in Bahrain which offers security services such as security guard surveillance.	90 Days

Fee Details (if any)

3500 BD for a new license.
License Validity: 3 Years

License Information

-The Company's Logo should show the name and trademark of the company, and must not look similar to the Kingdom of Bahrain's logo nor any other security form licensed in Bahrain. The logo must not violate public morals.
-The company must have security as the primary activity of its business for at least ten years (for branches of foreign companies only)

Required Documents

•3 new photos size 4x6 of the management/ managing person of the company
•Application form
•Bank guarantee of Twenty Thousands Bahraini Dinars (BD 20,000) under the name of the Ministry of Interior nonrefundable for the duration of the license (once licensed)
•Copy of Good Conduct Certificate from Bahrain's General Directorate of Criminal Investigation for the management/ managing person of the company
•Copy of ID and Passport for the management/ managing person of the company
•Copy of academic qualifications for the management/ managing person of the company
•Copy of notarized Memorandum of Article of Association, attached with a letter from (parents, company representative) defining role and responsibility of the board members
•Provide any necessary documents to prove the validity of the mother company's license (branches of foreign companies only)
•Statement of the company's Past Experience (If available) in the field of security service along with the supporting documents
•Submit a copy of the company's logo

Other Documents

•Collection of Legislations regarding Private Security & Guards Firms - AR
•Collection of Legislations regarding Private Security & Guards Firms - EN

Municipality Affairs (Post) (801)

Approval Name	Description	Estimated Time
Site Approval for Administrative and support activities	Municipality Approval for the Commercial Registration address or the site in which the Activity will be practiced	3 Days

Fee Details (if any)

10 BD

License Information

General Conditions:
1. Size of shop/premises must be sufficient for the activity
2. Businesses may not carry out the activity outside the boundaries of the shop/ premises
3. It is prohibited to display or store any items or equipment outside the shop / premises boundary without prior approval from the Municipality
4. Maintain cleanliness of the site
5. Comply with the parking space regulations as per the Construction Regulatory Requirements

Activity Specific Conditions:
1. The commercial address for this activity can be registered in areas classified as commercial, services, or industrial
2. The commercial address of the Commercial Registration for this activity can an office address
provided that the site is used for administrative purposes and is not located in a residential area

Note: Uploading pictures of the site/shop may expedite the process of obtaining approval

Required Documents

- Lease agreement (after obtaining the necessary approvals from other licensing entities)
- Shop photos

Other Documents

- Cabinet's Decision (56) of the year 2022 regarding the Regulatory Requirements of Construction for various areas in the Kingdom of Bahrain

General Directorate For Guards Ministry Of Interior (Final Site Inspection) (801)

Approval Name	Description	Estimated Time
Security Firm License	The licence is required if investor intends set up a security firm in Bahrain which offers security services such as security guard surveillance.	90 Days

Fee Details (if any)

3500 BD for a new license.
License Validity: 3 Years

License Information

-The Company's Logo should show the name and trademark of the company, and must not look similar to the Kingdom of Bahrain's logo nor any other security form licensed in Bahrain. The logo must not violate public morals.
-The company must have security as the primary activity of its business for at least ten years (for branches of foreign companies only)

Required Documents

•3 new photos size 4x6 of the management/ managing person of the company
•Application form
•Bank guarantee of Twenty Thousands Bahraini Dinars (BD 20,000) under the name of the Ministry of Interior nonrefundable for the duration of the license (once licensed)
•Copy of Good Conduct Certificate from Bahrain's General Directorate of Criminal Investigation for the management/ managing person of the company
•Copy of ID and Passport for the management/ managing person of the company
•Copy of academic qualifications for the management/ managing person of the company
•Copy of notarized Memorandum of Article of Association, attached with a letter from (parents, company representative) defining role and responsibility of the board members
•Provide any necessary documents to prove the validity of the mother company's license (branches of foreign companies only)
•Statement of the company's Past Experience (If available) in the field of security service along with the supporting documents
•Submit a copy of the company's logo

Other Documents

•Collection of Legislations regarding Private Security & Guards Firms - AR
•Collection of Legislations regarding Private Security & Guards Firms - EN

Administrative and support service activities

ISIC4	Business activity
802	Security systems service activities

Description

This activity includes:
- Monitoring close or remote electronic alarm systems, such as burglar alarm systems or installation and maintenance of alarm systems and fire extinguishing systems
- installing, repairing, rebuilding, and adjusting mechanical or electronic locking devices, safes and security vaults

The units carrying out these activities may also engage in selling such security systems, mechanical or electronic locking devices, safes and security vaults.

This activity excludes:
- Security consultants
- Public order and safety activities
- Providing key duplication services

Business Requirements

Age

18 and above

Allowed for Nationalities

Bahraini
100%

GCC
100%

American
100%

Legal Type

It is allowed to register according to the legal forms mentioned below

Allowed for Individual Commercial Registration (ICR) : Yes

Allowed for Company Commercial Registration (CCR) : Yes

- Bahrain Shareholding Company (Public)
- With Limited Liability Company
- Branch of a Foreign Company
- Bahrain Shareholding Company (Closed)
- Partnership Company
- Simple Commandite Company
- Commandite By Shares Company
- Non Profit Company

Required Step of Licenses and Approvals

Ministry / Directorate	License / Approval Requirements	Approval Type
Municipality Affairs	Site Approval for Administrative and support activities	Post
General Directrate Of Civil Defence	Security systems service activities	Post

Municipality Affairs (Post) (802)

Approval Name	Description	Estimated Time
Site Approval for Administrative and support activities	Municipality Approval for the Commercial Registration address or the site in which the Activity will be practiced	3 Days

Fee Details (if any)

10 BD

License Information

General Conditions:
1. Size of shop/premises must be sufficient for the activity
2. Businesses may not carry out the activity outside the boundaries of the shop/ premises
3. It is prohibited to display or store any items or equipment outside the shop / premises boundary without prior approval from the Municipality
4. Maintain cleanliness of the site
5. Comply with the parking space regulations as per the Construction Regulatory Requirements

Activity Specific Conditions:
1. The commercial address for this activity can be registered in areas classified as commercial, services, or industrial
2. The commercial address of the Commercial Registration for this activity can an office address
provided that the site is used for administrative purposes and is not located in a residential area

Note: Uploading pictures of the site/shop may expedite the process of obtaining approval

Required Documents

- Lease agreement (after obtaining the necessary approvals from other licensing entities)
- Shop photos

Other Documents

- Cabinet's Decision (56) of the year 2022 regarding the Regulatory Requirements of Construction for various areas in the Kingdom of Bahrain

General Directrate Of Civil Defence (Post) (802)

Approval Name	Description	Estimated Time
Security systems service activities	checking the approval requirements of the general directorate of civil defense	5 Days

Fee Details (if any)

30 BD Fire prevention and protection certificate fees

License Information

1. Provide the documents mentioned in the “Required Documents” section
2. Comply with the requirements listed in the inspection checklist found in the “Other Downloadable Documents” section
3. Provide proof to the General Directorate of Civil Defense that an alarm and firefighting equipment have been installed within 6 months of obtaining a Commercial Registration and license

If a warehouse is used: A safety certificate must be obtained viaBahrain.bh

Required Documents

•No-objection letter for alarm and extinguisher installation from Civil Defense, or purchasing receipt of alarm equipment and extinguishers along with an annual maintenance contract from a company certified by Civil defense
•Photos required for civil defense activities
•Purchasing invoice of security camera system with specifying the type and storage capacity.

Other Documents

- Sample pictures of the general directorate of civil defense requirements
- licencing requirments of the general directorat of civil defense for activity number "802"

Administrative and support service activities

ISIC4	Business activity
811	Combined facilities support activities (excluding guard and security activities)

Description

This activity includes:
- provision of a combination of support services within a client`s facility, such as general interior cleaning, maintenance, trash disposal, mail routing, reception, laundry and related services to support operations within facilities.

Units classified here provide operating staff to carry out these support activities, but are not involved with or responsible for the core business or activities of the client.

This activity excludes:
- Provision of on site management and operation of a client`s computer systems and/or data processing facilities
- Operation of correctional facilities on a contract or fee basis

Business Requirements

Age

18 and above

Allowed for Nationalities

Bahraini 100%		GCC 100%	
American 100%		Singaporean 100%	
Icelander 100%		Liechtenstein er 100%	
Norwegian 100%		Swiss 100%	

Foreign Allowed up to 100%

Legal Type

It is allowed to register according to the legal forms mentioned below

Allowed for Individual Commercial Registration (ICR) : Yes

Allowed for Company Commercial Registration (CCR) : Yes

- Bahrain Shareholding Company (Public)
- With Limited Liability Company
- Branch of a Foreign Company
- Bahrain Shareholding Company (Closed)
- Partnership Company
- Simple Commandite Company
- Commandite By Shares Company
- Non Profit Company

Required Step of Licenses and Approvals

Ministry / Directorate	License / Approval Requirements	Approval Type
Municipality Affairs	Site Approval for Administrative and	Post

	support activities	

Municipality Affairs (Post) (811)

Approval Name	Description	Estimated Time
Site Approval for Administrative and support activities	Municipality Approval for the Commercial Registration address or the site in which the Activity will be practiced	3 Days

Fee Details (if any)

10 BD

License Information

General Conditions:
1. Size of shop/premises must be sufficient for the activity
2. Businesses may not carry out the activity outside the boundaries of the shop/ premises
3. It is prohibited to display or store any items or equipment outside the shop / premises boundary without prior approval from the Municipality
4. Maintain cleanliness of the site
5. Comply with the parking space regulations as per the Construction Regulatory Requirements

Activity Specific Conditions:
1. The commercial address for this activity can be registered in areas classified as commercial, services, or industrial
2. The commercial address of the Commercial Registration for this activity can an office address
provided that the site is used for administrative purposes and is not located in a residential area

Note: Uploading pictures of the site/shop may expedite the process of obtaining approval

Required Documents

- Lease agreement (after obtaining the necessary approvals from other licensing entities)
- Shop photos

Other Documents

- Cabinet's Decision (56) of the year 2022 regarding the Regulatory Requirements of Construction for various areas in the Kingdom of Bahrain

Administrative and support service activities

ISIC4	Business activity
8121	General cleaning of buildings

Description

This activity includes:
- General (non-specialized) cleaning of all types of buildings, such as: offices, houses or apartments, factories, shops, institutions
- General (non-specialized) cleaning of other business and professional premises and multiunit residential buildings

These activities cover mostly interior cleaning although they may include the cleaning of associated exterior areas such as windows or passageways.

This activity excludes:
- specialized interior cleaning activities, such as chimney cleaning, cleaning of fireplaces, stoves, furnaces, incinerators, boilers, ventilation ducts, exhaust units

Business Requirements

Age

18 and above

Allowed for Nationalities

Bahraini
100%

American
100%

GCC
100%

Legal Type

It is allowed to register according to the legal forms mentioned below

Allowed for Individual Commercial Registration (ICR) : Yes

Allowed for Company Commercial Registration (CCR) : Yes

- Bahrain Shareholding Company (Public)
- With Limited Liability Company
- Branch of a Foreign Company
- Bahrain Shareholding Company (Closed)
- Partnership Company
- Simple Commandite Company
- Commandite By Shares Company
- Non Profit Company

Required Step of Licenses and Approvals

Ministry / Directorate	License / Approval Requirements	Approval Type
Municipality Affairs	Site Approval for Administrative and support activities	Post

Municipality Affairs (Post) (8121)

Approval Name	Description	Estimated Time
Site Approval for Administrative and support activities	Municipality Approval for the Commercial Registration address or the site in which the Activity will be practiced	3 Days

Fee Details (if any)

10 BD

License Information

General Conditions:
1. Size of shop/premises must be sufficient for the activity
2. Businesses may not carry out the activity outside the boundaries of the shop/ premises
3. It is prohibited to display or store any items or equipment outside the shop / premises boundary without prior approval from the Municipality
4. Maintain cleanliness of the site
5. Comply with the parking space regulations as per the Construction Regulatory Requirements

Activity Specific Conditions:
1. The commercial address for this activity can be registered in areas classified as commercial, services, or industrial
2. The commercial address of the Commercial Registration for this activity can an office address
provided that the site is used for administrative purposes and is not located in a residential area

Note: Uploading pictures of the site/shop may expedite the process of obtaining approval

Required Documents

- Lease agreement (after obtaining the necessary approvals from other licensing entities)
- Shop photos

Other Documents

- Cabinet's Decision (56) of the year 2022 regarding the Regulatory Requirements of Construction for various areas in the Kingdom of Bahrain

Administrative and support service activities

ISIC4	Business activity
8129-2	Other building and industrial cleaning activities - Public and Private utility Contracts

Description

This activity includes:
- exterior cleaning of buildings of all types, including offices, factories, shops, institutions and other business and professional premises and multiunit residential buildings
- specialized cleaning activities for buildings such as window cleaning, chimney cleaning and cleaning of fireplaces, stoves, furnaces, incinerators, boilers, ventilation ducts and exhaust units
- Swimming pool cleaning and maintenance services
- cleaning of industrial machinery
- bottle cleaning
- cleaning of trains, buses, planes, etc.
- cleaning of the inside of road and sea tankers
- Disinfecting and exterminating activities
- Street sweeping and snow and ice removal
- Other building and industrial cleaning activities

This activity excludes:
- Agriculture pest control
- cleaning of sewers and drains
- Automobile cleaning, car wash

Business Requirements

Age

18 and above

Allowed for Nationalities

Bahraini
100%

GCC
100%

American
100%

Legal Type

It is allowed to register according to the legal forms mentioned below

Allowed for Individual Commercial Registration (ICR) : Yes

Allowed for Company Commercial Registration (CCR) : Yes

- Bahrain Shareholding Company (Public)
- With Limited Liability Company
- Branch of a Foreign Company
- Bahrain Shareholding Company (Closed)
- Partnership Company
- Simple Commandite Company
- Commandite By Shares Company
- Non Profit Company

Required Step of Licenses and Approvals

Ministry / Directorate	License / Approval Requirements	Approval Type
Supreme Council for Environment	Environmental Approval for Other building and industrial cleaning activities activity	Post
Municipality Affairs	Site Approval for Administrative and support activities	Post

Supreme Council for Environment (Post) (8129-2)

Approval Name	Description	Estimated Time
Environmental Approval for Other building and industrial cleaning activities activity	This service aims to assess the environmental impact and licensing of development, industrial and production projects and activities, in accordance with the standards of protecting the environment and its natural resources	10 Days

Fee Details (if any)

There is no Estimated Processing Time (Days) in this license.

License Information

To check the requirements for this approval, kindly download the detailed requirements sheet from the other downloadable documents section, which includes the following requirements:

- Building layout Engineering and Equipment Requirements
- Work-place Requirements
- Storage Requirements
- Material Management Requirements
- Waste Management Requirements
- Documents and Reporting Requirements
- General Requirements

Other Documents

- Law No. (2) of 2021 regarding the environmental standards of air as decided by the Chairman of the Supreme Council for Environment
- Law No. (3) of 2021 regarding the environmental standards of water as decided by the Chairman of the Supreme Council for the Environment
- Law No. (54) of 2014 regarding the approval of the unified law regarding substances that deplete the ozone layer for the GCC countries
- Law No. (7) of 2022 regarding the environment
- Ministerial Order No. (10) of 2006 regarding the installation of devices for on-line monitoring of atmospheric air pollutants
- Ministerial Order No. (3) of 2005 regarding environmental requirements and standards in workplaces, especially regarding workers' exposure to heat and noise, and the provision of tools and protective clothing such as gloves, glasses, face masks and earplugs, with a commitment to use them during work
- Ministerial Order No. (3) of 2006 regarding the management of hazardous waste
- Ministerial Order No. (4) of 2005 regarding the management of used oils
- Ministerial Order No. (4) of 2006 regarding the management of hazardous chemicals
- Ministerial Order No. (4) of 2021 regarding the fees of the licenses and services provided by the Supreme Council for Environment
- Ministerial Order No. (6) of 2013 amending order No. (4) of 2006 regarding the management of hazardous chemicals
- Ministerial Order No. (7) of 2002 regarding the control importation and use of prohibited and severely restricted chemicals, and not to import any chemical compound except after obtaining approvals of all concerned authorities, including the executive body of the Supreme Council for Environment
- Ministerial Order No. (7) of 2013 amending order No. (3) of 2006 regarding the management of hazardous waste
- Ministerial Order No. 4 of 2014 regarding the management of the environmental consulting offices operations in the Kingdom of Bahrain
- Order No. (2) of 2020 determining the categories of fees for licensing refrigeration media, refrigeration units and air conditioning units as decided by the Chairman of the Supreme Council for the Environment
- Other building and industrial cleaning activities practicing conditions
- Requirements for business activities
- law No. (1) of 2020 regarding the management of refrigeration media, refrigeration units and air conditioning units as decided by the Chairman of the Supreme Council for the Environment

Municipality Affairs (Post) (8129-2)

Approval Name	Description	Estimated Time
Site Approval for Administrative and support activities	Municipality Approval for the Commercial Registration address or the site in which the Activity will be practiced	3 Days

Fee Details (if any)

10 BD

License Information

General Conditions:
1. Size of shop/premises must be sufficient for the activity
2. Businesses may not carry out the activity outside the boundaries of the shop/ premises
3. It is prohibited to display or store any items or equipment outside the shop / premises boundary without prior approval from the Municipality
4. Maintain cleanliness of the site
5. Comply with the parking space regulations as per the Construction Regulatory Requirements

Activity Specific Conditions:
1. The commercial address for this activity can be registered in areas classified as commercial, services, or industrial
2. The commercial address of the Commercial Registration for this activity can an office address
provided that the site is used for administrative purposes and is not located in a residential area

Note: Uploading pictures of the site/shop may expedite the process of obtaining approval

Required Documents

- Lease agreement (after obtaining the necessary approvals from other licensing entities)
- Shop photos

Other Documents

- Cabinet's Decision (56) of the year 2022 regarding the Regulatory Requirements of Construction for various areas in the Kingdom of Bahrain

Administrative and support service activities

ISIC4	Business activity
813	Landscape care and maintenance service activities

Description

This activity includes:
. Planting, care and maintenance of:
- Parks and gardens for:
- Private and public housing
- Public and semi-public buildings (schools, hospitals, administrative buildings, church buildings etc.)
- Municipal grounds (parks, green areas, cemeteries etc.)
- Highway greenery (roads, train lines and tramlines, waterways, ports)
- Industrial and commercial buildings
- Greenery for:
- Buildings (roof gardens, façade greenery, indoor gardens)
- sports grounds (e.g. football fields, golf courses etc.), play grounds, lawns for sunbathing and other recreational parks
- stationary and flowing water (basins, alternating wet areas, ponds, swimming pools, ditches, watercourses, plant sewage systems)
- Plants for protection against noise, wind, erosion, visibility and dazzling
This activity also includes:
. Maintenance of land in order to keep it in good ecological condition

This activity excludes:
- Commercial production and planting for commercial production of plants, trees
- Tree nurseries (except forest tree nurseries)
- Maintenance of land to keep it in good condition for agricultural use
- Construction activities for landscaping purposes
- landscape design and architecture activities
- Operation of botanical gardens

Business Requirements

Age

18 and above

Allowed for Nationalities

Bahraini
100%

American
100%

Liechtenstein
er
100%

Swiss
100%

GCC
100%

Icelander
100%

Norwegian
100%

Legal Type

It is allowed to register according to the legal forms mentioned below

Allowed for Individual Commercial Registration (ICR) : Yes

Allowed for Company Commercial Registration (CCR) : Yes

Allowed for Sijilli : Yes

- Bahrain Shareholding Company (Public)
- With Limited Liability Company
- Branch of a Foreign Company
- Bahrain Shareholding Company (Closed)
- Partnership Company
- Simple Commandite Company
- Commandite By Shares Company
- Non Profit Company

Required Step of Licenses and Approvals

Ministry / Directorate	License / Approval Requirements	Approval Type
Municipality Affairs	Site Approval for Administrative and support activities	Post

Municipality Affairs (Post) (813)

Approval Name	Description	Estimated Time
Site Approval for Administrative and support activities	Municipality Approval for the Commercial Registration address or the site in which the Activity will be practiced	3 Days

Fee Details (if any)

10 BD

License Information

General Conditions:
1. Size of shop/premises must be sufficient for the activity
2. Businesses may not carry out the activity outside the boundaries of the shop/ premises
3. It is prohibited to display or store any items or equipment outside the shop / premises boundary without prior approval from the Municipality
4. Maintain cleanliness of the site
5. Comply with the parking space regulations as per the Construction Regulatory Requirements

Activity Specific Conditions:
1. The commercial address for this activity can be registered in areas classified as commercial, services, or industrial
2. The commercial address of the Commercial Registration for this activity can an office address
provided that the site is used for administrative purposes and is not located in a residential area

Note: Uploading pictures of the site/shop may expedite the process of obtaining approval

Required Documents

- Lease agreement (after obtaining the necessary approvals from other licensing entities)
- Shop photos

Other Documents

- Cabinet's Decision (56) of the year 2022 regarding the Regulatory Requirements of Construction for various areas in the Kingdom of Bahrain

Administrative and support service activities

ISIC4	Business activity
821-1	Office administrative and support activities - Office administrative and support activities

Description

This activity includes the provision of a range of day-to-day office administrative services, such as personnel and physical distribution and logistics for others on a contract or fee basis.

This activity also includes support activities for others on a contract or fee basis, that are ongoing routine business support functions that businesses and organizations traditionally do for themselves.

Examples of activities include:
- provision of a combination of day-to-day office administrative services, such as reception, personnel and physical distribution (mail services) and logistics for others on a contract or fee basis.
- Document preparation
- document editing or proofreading
- typing, word processing, or desktop publishing
- Secretarial support services
- Transcription of documents, and other secretarial services
- Letter or resume writing
- Provision of mailbox rental and other mailing activities (except direct mail advertising)
- photocopying
- duplicating
- blueprinting
- other document copying services without also providing printing services, such as offset printing, quick printing, digital printing, prepress services

This activity excludes:
- Provision of operating staff to carry out the complete operations of a business
- Provision of only one particular aspect of these activities,
- Printing of documents (offset printing, quick printing etc.)
- Direct mail advertising
- Specialized stenotype services such as court reporting
- Public stenography services
- Financial planning, billing and record keeping,

Business Requirements

Age

18 and above

Allowed for Nationalities

Bahraini 100%		GCC 100%	
American 100%		Singaporean 100%	
Icelander 100%		Liechtenstein er 100%	
Norwegian 100%		Swiss 100%	

Foreign Allowed up to 100%

Legal Type

It is allowed to register according to the legal forms mentioned below

Allowed for Individual Commercial Registration (ICR) : Yes

Allowed for Company Commercial Registration (CCR) : Yes

- Bahrain Shareholding Company (Public)
- With Limited Liability Company
- Branch of a Foreign Company
- Bahrain Shareholding Company (Closed)
- Partnership Company
- Simple Commandite Company
- Commandite By Shares Company
- Non Profit Company

Required Step of Licenses and Approvals

Ministry / Directorate	License / Approval Requirements	Approval Type
Municipality Affairs	Site Approval for Administrative and support activities	Post

Municipality Affairs (Post) (821-1)

Approval Name	Description	Estimated Time
Site Approval for Administrative and support activities	Municipality Approval for the Commercial Registration address or the site in which the Activity will be practiced	3 Days

Fee Details (if any)

10 BD

License Information

General Conditions:
1. Size of shop/premises must be sufficient for the activity
2. Businesses may not carry out the activity outside the boundaries of the shop/ premises
3. It is prohibited to display or store any items or equipment outside the shop / premises boundary without prior approval from the Municipality
4. Maintain cleanliness of the site
5. Comply with the parking space regulations as per the Construction Regulatory Requirements

Activity Specific Conditions:
1. The commercial address for this activity can be registered in areas classified as commercial, services, or industrial
2. The commercial address of the Commercial Registration for this activity can an office address
provided that the site is used for administrative purposes and is not located in a residential area

Note: Uploading pictures of the site/shop may expedite the process of obtaining approval

Required Documents

- Lease agreement (after obtaining the necessary approvals from other licensing entities)
- Shop photos

Other Documents

- Cabinet's Decision (56) of the year 2022 regarding the Regulatory Requirements of Construction for various areas in the Kingdom of Bahrain

Administrative and support service activities

ISIC4	Business activity
821-2	Office administrative and support activities - Business Incubators and Accelerators

Description

This activity includes the provision of hosting services for start-up businesses for a pre-defined incubation period; where they can benefit from business support such as:
- Business guidance & counseling
- Co-working spaces
- Marketing
- Business planning
- Financial planning
- Public relations.

Business Requirements

✔ Age

18 and above

✔ Allowed for Nationalities

Bahraini 100%		GCC 100%	
American 100%		Singaporean 100%	
Icelander 100%		Liechtenstein er 100%	
Norwegian 100%		Swiss 100%	

Foreign Allowed up to 100%

Legal Type

It is allowed to register according to the legal forms mentioned below

Allowed for Company Commercial Registration (CCR) : Yes

- Bahrain Shareholding Company (Public)
- With Limited Liability Company
- Branch of a Foreign Company
- Bahrain Shareholding Company (Closed)
- Partnership Company
- Simple Commandite Company
- Commandite By Shares Company
- Non Profit Company

Required Step of Licenses and Approvals

Ministry / Directorate	License / Approval Requirements	Approval Type
SME`s Development Directorate	SME Development Directorate approval for the capacity of the building	Pre
Municipality Affairs	Site Approval for Administrative and support activities	Post

SME`s Development Directorate (Pre) (821-2)

Approval Name	Description	Estimated Time
SME Development Directorate approval for the capacity of the building	SME Development Directorate approval of the building capacity is required for incubator/ accelerator business activity. SME Development Directorate verify the building area and review floor plan in order to assign the capacity of Incubator and apply it to Sijilat.	3 Days

Fee Details (if any)

There is no Estimated Processing Time (Days) in this license.

License Information

License applicants must read the Terms and Conditions of Business Incubators / Accelerators and Startups document available in the Other Downloadable Documents section.
SME's Development Directorate shall assign the maximum capacity of SME's to be incubated based on the information provided in the Business Profile document.

Required Documents

- Business Pofile - Arabic
- Business Profile - English
- Floor Map

Other Documents

- Terms & Conditions of business incubators and Accelerators – October 2020 - English
- Terms & Conditions of business incubators and Accelerators – March 2021 - Arabic

Municipality Affairs (Post) (821-2)

Approval Name	Description	Estimated Time
Site Approval for Administrative and support activities	Municipality Approval for the Commercial Registration address or the site in which the Activity will be practiced	3 Days

Fee Details (if any)

10 BD

License Information

General Conditions:
1. Size of shop/premises must be sufficient for the activity
2. Businesses may not carry out the activity outside the boundaries of the shop/ premises
3. It is prohibited to display or store any items or equipment outside the shop / premises boundary without prior approval from the Municipality
4. Maintain cleanliness of the site
5. Comply with the parking space regulations as per the Construction Regulatory Requirements

Activity Specific Conditions:
1. The commercial address for this activity can be registered in areas classified as commercial, services, or industrial
2. The commercial address of the Commercial Registration for this activity can an office address
provided that the site is used for administrative purposes and is not located in a residential area

Note: Uploading pictures of the site/shop may expedite the process of obtaining approval

Required Documents

- Lease agreement (after obtaining the necessary approvals from other licensing entities)
- Shop photos

Other Documents

- Cabinet's Decision (56) of the year 2022 regarding the Regulatory Requirements of Construction for various areas in the Kingdom of Bahrain

Administrative and support service activities

ISIC4	Business activity
822	Activities of call centres

Description

This activity includes:
- activities of inbound call centers, answering calls from clients by using human operators, automatic call distribution, computer telephone integration, interactive voice response systems or similar methods to receive orders, provide product information, deal with customer requests for assistance or address customer complaints
- activities of outbound call centers using similar methods to sell or market goods or services to potential customers, undertake market research or public opinion polling and similar activities for clients

Business Requirements

✔ Age

18 and above

✔ Allowed for Nationalities

Bahraini 100%		GCC 100%	
American 100%		Singaporean 100%	
Icelander 100%		Liechtenstein er 100%	
Norwegian 100%		Swiss 100%	

Foreign Allowed up to 100%

Legal Type

It is allowed to register according to the legal forms mentioned below

Allowed for Individual Commercial Registration (ICR) : Yes

Allowed for Company Commercial Registration (CCR) : Yes

- Bahrain Shareholding Company (Public)
- With Limited Liability Company
- Branch of a Foreign Company
- Bahrain Shareholding Company (Closed)
- Partnership Company
- Simple Commandite Company
- Commandite By Shares Company
- Non Profit Company

Required Step of Licenses and Approvals

Ministry / Directorate	License / Approval Requirements	Approval Type
Municipality Affairs	Site Approval for Administrative and support activities	Post

Municipality Affairs (Post) (822)

Approval Name	Description	Estimated Time
Site Approval for Administrative and support activities	Municipality Approval for the Commercial Registration address or the site in which the Activity will be practiced	3 Days

Fee Details (if any)

10 BD

License Information

General Conditions:
1. Size of shop/premises must be sufficient for the activity
2. Businesses may not carry out the activity outside the boundaries of the shop/ premises
3. It is prohibited to display or store any items or equipment outside the shop / premises boundary without prior approval from the Municipality
4. Maintain cleanliness of the site
5. Comply with the parking space regulations as per the Construction Regulatory Requirements

Activity Specific Conditions:
1. The commercial address for this activity can be registered in areas classified as commercial, services, or industrial
2. The commercial address of the Commercial Registration for this activity can an office address
provided that the site is used for administrative purposes and is not located in a residential area

Note: Uploading pictures of the site/shop may expedite the process of obtaining approval

Required Documents

- Lease agreement (after obtaining the necessary approvals from other licensing entities)
- Shop photos

Other Documents

- Cabinet's Decision (56) of the year 2022 regarding the Regulatory Requirements of Construction for various areas in the Kingdom of Bahrain

Administrative and support service activities

ISIC4	Business activity
823-2	Organization of conventions, events, and trade shows - Offices for Organizing tourism festivals

Description

This activity includes activities of offices specialized in the organization of tourism festivals

Business Requirements

Age

18 and above

Allowed for Nationalities

Bahraini 100%	GCC 100%
American 100%	Singaporean 100%
Icelander 100%	Liechtenstein er 100%
Norwegian 100%	Swiss 100%

Foreign Allowed up to 100%

Legal Type

It is allowed to register according to the legal forms mentioned below

Allowed for Individual Commercial Registration (ICR) : Yes

Allowed for Company Commercial Registration (CCR) : Yes

- Bahrain Shareholding Company (Public)
- With Limited Liability Company
- Branch of a Foreign Company
- Bahrain Shareholding Company (Closed)
- Partnership Company
- Simple Commandite Company
- Commandite By Shares Company
- Non Profit Company

Required Step of Licenses and Approvals

Ministry / Directorate	License / Approval Requirements	Approval Type
General Directorate Of Criminal Investigation	Approval by General Directorate of Criminal Investigation	Pre
Municipality Affairs	Site Approval for Administrative and support activities	Post
Bahrain Tourim and Exibitions Authority	Organizing tourism festivals	Final Site Inspection

General Directorate Of Criminal Investigation (Pre) (823-2)

Approval Name	Description	Estimated Time
Approval by General Directorate of Criminal Investigation	General Directorate of Criminal Investigation Approval for the Activity	7 Days

Fee Details (if any)

There is no Estimated Processing Time (Days) in this license.

License Information

- The applicant should not have a criminal record, unless they have been rehabilitated in criminal cases

Municipality Affairs (Post) (823-2)

Approval Name	Description	Estimated Time
Site Approval for Administrative and support activities	Municipality Approval for the Commercial Registration address or the site in which the Activity will be practiced	3 Days

Fee Details (if any)

10 BD

License Information

General Conditions:
1. Size of shop/premises must be sufficient for the activity
2. Businesses may not carry out the activity outside the boundaries of the shop/ premises
3. It is prohibited to display or store any items or equipment outside the shop / premises boundary without prior approval from the Municipality
4. Maintain cleanliness of the site
5. Comply with the parking space regulations as per the Construction Regulatory Requirements

Activity Specific Conditions:
1. The commercial address for this activity can be registered in areas classified as commercial, services, or industrial
2. The commercial address of the Commercial Registration for this activity can an office address
provided that the site is used for administrative purposes and is not located in a residential area

Note: Uploading pictures of the site/shop may expedite the process of obtaining approval

Required Documents

- Lease agreement (after obtaining the necessary approvals from other licensing entities)
- Shop photos

Other Documents

- Cabinet's Decision (56) of the year 2022 regarding the Regulatory Requirements of Construction for various areas in the Kingdom of Bahrain

Bahrain Tourim and Exibitions Authority (Final Site Inspection) (823-2)

Approval Name	Description	Estimated Time
Organizing tourism festivals	This activity includes specialized offices for tourism festivals.	5 Days

Fee Details (if any)

Upon final approval, the license issue/renewal fee (BD 250) will be charged.

License Information

Requirements after obtaining the license:
- The license applicant must have a qualified office manager with appropriate experience in the field of organizing festivals.
- That the office workers are qualified to work in the field of organizing festivals.
- Pay the tourism license fee.

Administrative and support service activities

ISIC4	Business activity
8291-1	Activities of collection agencies and credit bureaus

Description

This activity includes:
- Collection of payments for claims and remittance of payments collected to the clients, such as bill or debt collection services
- compiling of information, such as credit and employment histories on individuals and credit histories on businesses and providing the information to financial institutions, retailers and others who have a need to evaluate the creditworthiness of these persons and businesses

Business Requirements

✔ Age

18 and above

✔ Allowed for Nationalities

Bahraini 100%		GCC 100%	
American 100%		Singaporean 100%	
Icelander 100%		Liechtenstein er 100%	
Norwegian 100%		Swiss 100%	

Foreign Allowed up to 100%

Legal Type

It is allowed to register according to the legal forms mentioned below

Allowed for Individual Commercial Registration (ICR) : Yes

Allowed for Company Commercial Registration (CCR) : Yes

- Bahrain Shareholding Company (Public)
- With Limited Liability Company
- Branch of a Foreign Company
- Bahrain Shareholding Company (Closed)
- Partnership Company
- Simple Commandite Company
- Commandite By Shares Company
- Non Profit Company

Required Step of Licenses and Approvals

Ministry / Directorate	License / Approval Requirements	Approval Type
Municipality Affairs	Site Approval for Administrative and support activities	Post

Municipality Affairs (Post) (8291-1)

Approval Name	Description	Estimated Time
Site Approval for Administrative and support activities	Municipality Approval for the Commercial Registration address or the site in which the Activity will be practiced	3 Days

Fee Details (if any)

10 BD

License Information

General Conditions:
1. Size of shop/premises must be sufficient for the activity
2. Businesses may not carry out the activity outside the boundaries of the shop/ premises
3. It is prohibited to display or store any items or equipment outside the shop / premises boundary without prior approval from the Municipality
4. Maintain cleanliness of the site
5. Comply with the parking space regulations as per the Construction Regulatory Requirements

Activity Specific Conditions:
1. The commercial address for this activity can be registered in areas classified as commercial, services, or industrial
2. The commercial address of the Commercial Registration for this activity can an office address
provided that the site is used for administrative purposes and is not located in a residential area

Note: Uploading pictures of the site/shop may expedite the process of obtaining approval

Required Documents

- Lease agreement (after obtaining the necessary approvals from other licensing entities)
- Shop photos

Other Documents

- Cabinet's Decision (56) of the year 2022 regarding the Regulatory Requirements of Construction for various areas in the Kingdom of Bahrain

Administrative and support service activities

ISIC4	Business activity
8291-2	Activities of collection agencies and credit bureaus - Tax Reclaim Services

Description

Provision of VAT refund services to tourists

Business Requirements

Age

18 and above

Allowed for Nationalities

- Bahraini 100%
- GCC 100%
- American 100%
- Singaporean 100%
- Icelander 100%
- Liechtensteiner 100%
- Norwegian 100%
- Swiss 100%

Foreign Allowed up to 100%

Legal Type

It is allowed to register according to the legal forms mentioned below

Allowed for Company Commercial Registration (CCR) : Yes

- Bahrain Shareholding Company (Public)
- With Limited Liability Company
- Branch of a Foreign Company
- Bahrain Shareholding Company (Closed)
- Partnership Company
- Simple Commandite Company
- Commandite By Shares Company
- Non Profit Company

Required Step of Licenses and Approvals

Ministry / Directorate	License / Approval Requirements	Approval Type
National Bureau for Revenue	Approval of National Bureau Revenue for Tax Reclaim Services activity	Post
Municipality Affairs	Site Approval for Administrative and support activities	Post

National Bureau for Revenue (Post) (8291-2)

Approval Name	Description	Estimated Time
Approval of National Bureau Revenue for Tax Reclaim Services activity	Approval of National Bureau Revenue for Tax Reclaim Services activity	7 Days

Fee Details (if any)

There is no Estimated Processing Time (Days) in this license.

License Information

- Licensee must provide electronic solutions for processes and services provided
- Licensee must provide a 24/7 customer services call center with a domestic number to reply to queries related to the services provided in the Kingdom of Bahrain
- Licensee must have an office for administrative purposes
- Licensee must provide the following:
o Office(s) or shops at the port(s) specified by the National Bureau for Revenue to perform the required services
o Desk(s) or shops must be open 24/7, depending on port working hours, or if otherwise instructed by the National Bureau for Revenue
- Licensee must submit all authorization(s) and appointing official documents (stamped and signed by the company's authorized signatory) in writing related to authorized signatory(ies) and manager(s). Additionally, licensee must notify the National Bureau for Revenue if any changes occur in a written notice
- Licensee must notify the National Bureau for Revenue in a written notice of any changes in the legal name at least one week prior to effecting the changes
- Licensee must maintain a database that contains data and records of all transactions, registered merchants, and all related information related to the services within the Kingdom of Bahrain (electronic and hard copy form) which can be accessed easily
- Licensee must maintain strong security for all systems, servers, and databases that licensee owns
- Licensee must maintain servers and databases in the Kingdom of Bahrain
- Licensee must be able to integrate systems and databases electronically with the National Bureau for Revenue and must be ready to integrate whenever notified accordingly by the Bureau

- Licensee is required to always maintain the following insurance coverage:
o Money in transit and money owned by customers (tourists)
o Fire, theft, and other risks

Other Documents

- https://www.nbr.gov.bh/media/Decree_Law_no48_for_the_year_2018
- https://www.nbr.gov.bh/media/Executive_Regulations_of_the_VAT_Law

Municipality Affairs (Post) (8291-2)

Approval Name	Description	Estimated Time
Site Approval for Administrative and support activities	Municipality Approval for the Commercial Registration address or the site in which the Activity will be practiced	3 Days

Fee Details (if any)

10 BD

License Information

General Conditions:
1. Size of shop/premises must be sufficient for the activity
2. Businesses may not carry out the activity outside the boundaries of the shop/ premises
3. It is prohibited to display or store any items or equipment outside the shop / premises boundary without prior approval from the Municipality
4. Maintain cleanliness of the site
5. Comply with the parking space regulations as per the Construction Regulatory Requirements

Activity Specific Conditions:
1. The commercial address for this activity can be registered in areas classified as commercial, services, or industrial
2. The commercial address of the Commercial Registration for this activity can an office address
provided that the site is used for administrative purposes and is not located in a residential area

Note: Uploading pictures of the site/shop may expedite the process of obtaining approval

Required Documents

- Lease agreement (after obtaining the necessary approvals from other licensing entities)
- Shop photos

Other Documents

- Cabinet's Decision (56) of the year 2022 regarding the Regulatory Requirements of Construction for various areas in the Kingdom of Bahrain

Administrative and support service activities

ISIC4	Business activity
8292-2	Packaging activities - Packaging of Food

Description

This activity includes:
- packaging activities on a fee or contract basis, whether or not these involve an automated process:
· bottling of liquids, including beverages and food

Business Requirements

Age

18 and above

Allowed for Nationalities

Bahraini 100%	GCC 100%
American 100%	Singaporean 100%
Icelander 100%	Liechtensteiner 100%
Norwegian 100%	Swiss 100%

Foreign Allowed up to 100%

Legal Type

It is allowed to register according to the legal forms mentioned below

Allowed for Individual Commercial Registration (ICR) : Yes

Allowed for Company Commercial Registration (CCR) : Yes

Allowed for Sijilli : Yes

- Bahrain Shareholding Company (Public)
- With Limited Liability Company
- Branch of a Foreign Company
- Bahrain Shareholding Company (Closed)
- Partnership Company
- Simple Commandite Company
- Commandite By Shares Company
- Non Profit Company

Required Step of Licenses and Approvals

Ministry / Directorate	License / Approval Requirements	Approval Type
Ministry of Health	Health approval for Packaging activities	Post
Municipality Affairs	Site Approval for Administrative and support activities	Post

Ministry of Health (Post) (8292-2)

Approval Name	Description	Estimated Time
Health approval for Packaging activities	Health approval for Packaging activities	5 Days

Fee Details (if any)

100 BD

License Information

Please refer to the “Health requirements checklist document in the “other downloadable documents” section for the requirements and specifications for this activity.

You could employ one of the licensed engineering offices listed in the business support organizations list to provide engineering drawings that will be attached when submitting an application via the Sijilat system.

Required Documents

- Drawings/ layout of premises (approved by an engineering office).
- Requirement Checklist (Stamped by an engineering office)
- drawings/layouts of the premises

Other Documents

- Health requirements for Commercial establishments licensed by the public health directorate - 2022

Municipality Affairs (Post) (8292-2)

Approval Name	Description	Estimated Time
Site Approval for Administrative and support activities	Municipality Approval for the Commercial Registration address or the site in which the Activity will be practiced	3 Days

Fee Details (if any)

10 BD

License Information

General Conditions:
1. Size of shop/premises must be sufficient for the activity
2. Businesses may not carry out the activity outside the boundaries of the shop/ premises
3. It is prohibited to display or store any items or equipment outside the shop / premises boundary without prior approval from the Municipality
4. Maintain cleanliness of the site
5. Comply with the parking space regulations as per the Construction Regulatory Requirements

Activity Specific Conditions:
1. The commercial address for this activity can be registered in areas classified as commercial, services, or industrial
2. The commercial address of the Commercial Registration for this activity can an office address
provided that the site is used for administrative purposes and is not located in a residential area

Note: Uploading pictures of the site/shop may expedite the process of obtaining approval

Required Documents

- Lease agreement (after obtaining the necessary approvals from other licensing entities)
- Shop photos

Other Documents

- Cabinet's Decision (56) of the year 2022 regarding the Regulatory Requirements of Construction for various areas in the Kingdom of Bahrain

Administrative and support service activities

ISIC4	Business activity
8292-3	Packaging activities - Packaging of Chemicals

Description

This activity includes:
Packing, refilling or bottling of household detergents and disinfectants, these products normally used on inanimate surfaces for cleaning, removing dirt, grease and other unwanted material in suitable consumer containers without mentioning any medical claims to prevent disease Other chemicals which are used in clinics, hospitals, laboratories and industries for other purposes such as analysis, sterilization, diagnosis and prevention of disease are excluded from this category of chemicals els, restaurants and car rental offices

Business Requirements

✔ Age

18 and above

✔ Allowed for Nationalities

Bahraini 100%		GCC 100%	
American 100%		Singaporean 100%	
Icelander 100%		Liechtenstein er 100%	
Norwegian 100%		Swiss 100%	

Foreign Allowed up to 100%

Legal Type

It is allowed to register according to the legal forms mentioned below

Allowed for Individual Commercial Registration (ICR) : Yes

Allowed for Company Commercial Registration (CCR) : Yes

- Bahrain Shareholding Company (Public)
- With Limited Liability Company
- Branch of a Foreign Company
- Bahrain Shareholding Company (Closed)
- Partnership Company
- Simple Commandite Company
- Commandite By Shares Company
- Non Profit Company

Required Step of Licenses and Approvals

Ministry / Directorate	License / Approval Requirements	Approval Type
Ministry of Health	Notification Only For Packaging activities - Packaging of Chemicals	Notification Only
Municipality Affairs	Site Approval for Administrative and support activities	Post
Supreme Council for Environment	Environmental Approval for Packaging activities - Packaging of Chemicals activity	Post

Ministry of Health (Notification Only) (8292-3)

Approval Name	Description	Estimated Time
Notification Only For Packaging activities - Packaging of Chemicals	Notification Only For Packaging activities - Packaging of Chemicals	There is no License Information in this license. Days

Fee Details (if any)

150 BD

License Information

There is no License Information in this license.

Municipality Affairs (Post) (8292-3)

Approval Name	Description	Estimated Time
Site Approval for Administrative and support activities	Municipality Approval for the Commercial Registration address or the site in which the Activity will be practiced	3 Days

Fee Details (if any)

10 BD

License Information

General Conditions:
1. Size of shop/premises must be sufficient for the activity
2. Businesses may not carry out the activity outside the boundaries of the shop/ premises
3. It is prohibited to display or store any items or equipment outside the shop / premises boundary without prior approval from the Municipality
4. Maintain cleanliness of the site
5. Comply with the parking space regulations as per the Construction Regulatory Requirements

Activity Specific Conditions:
1. The commercial address for this activity can be registered in areas classified as commercial, services, or industrial
2. The commercial address of the Commercial Registration for this activity can an office address
provided that the site is used for administrative purposes and is not located in a residential area

Note: Uploading pictures of the site/shop may expedite the process of obtaining approval

Required Documents

- Lease agreement (after obtaining the necessary approvals from other licensing entities)
- Shop photos

Other Documents

- Cabinet's Decision (56) of the year 2022 regarding the Regulatory Requirements of Construction for various areas in the Kingdom of Bahrain

Supreme Council for Environment (Post) (8292-3)

Approval Name	Description	Estimated Time
Environmental Approval for Packaging activities - Packaging of Chemicals activity	This service aims to assess the environmental impact and licensing of development, industrial and production projects and activities, in accordance with the standards of protecting the environment and its natural resources	10 Days

Fee Details (if any)

- 30 Bahraini Dinars or 200 Bahraini Dinars for the fast-track procedure (when the data requested within the EA-2 form is sufficient without the need for additional studies)
- 4000 Bahraini Dinars or 6000 Bahraini Dinars for the fast track procedure (when it is necessary to submit an environmental impact assessment study for the project), with an additional payment of 100 Bahraini Dinars when it is necessary to submit a proposal for the scope of the study before submitting it or 500 Bahraini Dinars for a fast track procedure when the proposed scope of the study is being submitted before the study

License Information

To check the requirements for this approval, kindly download the detailed requirements sheet from the other downloadable documents section, which includes the following requirements:

- Building layout engineering and equipment requirements
- Workplace requirements
- Storage requirements
- Material management requirements
- Waste Management Requirements

- Documents and reporting requirements
- General requirements

Other Documents

- Annex to the Minister of Housing, Municipalities and Environment order regarding the project's environmental assessment
- Law No. (2) of 2021 regarding the environmental standards of air as decided by the Chairman of the Supreme Council for Environment
- Law No. (3) of 2021 regarding the environmental standards of water as decided by the Chairman of the Supreme Council for the Environment
- Law No. (54) of 2014 regarding the approval of the unified law regarding substances that deplete the ozone layer for the GCC countries
- Law No. (7) of 2022 regarding the environment
- Ministerial Order No. (1) of 1998 regarding Project's Environmental Assessment
- Ministerial Order No. (10) of 2006 regarding the installation of devices for on-line monitoring of atmospheric air pollutants
- Ministerial Order No. (11) of 2019 regarding the issue of technical specification of plastic products
- Ministerial Order No. (3) of 2005 regarding environmental requirements and standards in workplaces, especially regarding workers' exposure to heat and noise, and the provision of tools and protective clothing such as gloves, glasses, face masks and earplugs, with a commitment to use them during work
- Ministerial Order No. (3) of 2006 regarding the management of hazardous waste
- Ministerial Order No. (4) of 2005 regarding the management of used oils
- Ministerial Order No. (4) of 2006 regarding the management of hazardous chemicals
- Ministerial Order No. (4) of 2021 regarding the fees of the licenses and services provided by the Supreme Council for Environment
- Ministerial Order No. (6) of 2013 amending order No. (4) of 2006 regarding the management of hazardous chemicals
- Ministerial Order No. (7) of 2002 regarding the control importation and use of prohibited and severely restricted chemicals, and not to import any chemical compound except after obtaining approvals of all concerned authorities, including the executive body of the Supreme Council for Environment
- Ministerial Order No. (7) of 2013 amending order No. (3) of 2006 regarding the management of hazardous waste
- Ministerial Order No. 4 of 2014 regarding the management of the environmental consulting offices operations in the Kingdom of Bahrain
- Order No. (2) of 2020 determining the categories of fees for licensing refrigeration media, refrigeration units and air conditioning units as decided by the Chairman of the Supreme Council for the Environment
- Requirements for business activities
- law No. (1) of 2020 regarding the management of refrigeration media, refrigeration units and air conditioning units as decided by the Chairman of the Supreme Council for the Environment

•law No. (2) of 2019 regarding the ban on the import of plastic waste of all kinds as decided by the Chairman of the Supreme Council for the Environment

Administrative and support service activities

ISIC4	Business activity
8292-4	Packaging activities - Packaging of Cosmetics or herbs

Description

This Activity includes:
- packaging activities on a fee or contract basis, whether or not these involve an automated process:
· labeling, stamping and imprinting

Business Requirements

Age

18 and above

Allowed for Nationalities

Bahraini 100%	GCC 100%
American 100%	Singaporean 100%
Icelander 100%	Liechtenstein er 100%
Norwegian 100%	Swiss 100%

Foreign Allowed up to 100%

Legal Type

It is allowed to register according to the legal forms mentioned below

Allowed for Individual Commercial Registration (ICR) : Yes

Allowed for Company Commercial Registration (CCR) : Yes

Allowed for Sijilli : Yes

- Bahrain Shareholding Company (Public)
- With Limited Liability Company
- Branch of a Foreign Company
- Bahrain Shareholding Company (Closed)
- Partnership Company
- Simple Commandite Company
- Commandite By Shares Company
- Non Profit Company

Required Step of Licenses and Approvals

Ministry / Directorate	License / Approval Requirements	Approval Type
Ministry of Health	Notification Only For Packaging activities - Packaging of Cosmetics or herbs	Notification Only
Municipality Affairs	Site Approval for Administrative and support activities	Post

Ministry of Health (Notification Only) (8292-4)

Approval Name	Description	Estimated Time
Notification Only For Packaging activities - Packaging of Cosmetics or herbs	Notification Only For Packaging activities - Packaging of Cosmetics or herbs	There is no License Information in this license. Days

Fee Details (if any)

150 BD

License Information

There is no License Information in this license.

Municipality Affairs (Post) (8292-4)

Approval Name	Description	Estimated Time
Site Approval for Administrative and support activities	Municipality Approval for the Commercial Registration address or the site in which the Activity will be practiced	3 Days

Fee Details (if any)

10 BD

License Information

General Conditions:
1. Size of shop/premises must be sufficient for the activity
2. Businesses may not carry out the activity outside the boundaries of the shop/ premises
3. It is prohibited to display or store any items or equipment outside the shop / premises boundary without prior approval from the Municipality
4. Maintain cleanliness of the site
5. Comply with the parking space regulations as per the Construction Regulatory Requirements

Activity Specific Conditions:
1. The commercial address for this activity can be registered in areas classified as commercial, services, or industrial
2. The commercial address of the Commercial Registration for this activity can an office address
provided that the site is used for administrative purposes and is not located in a residential area

Note: Uploading pictures of the site/shop may expedite the process of obtaining approval

Required Documents

- Lease agreement (after obtaining the necessary approvals from other licensing entities)
- Shop photos

Other Documents

- Cabinet's Decision (56) of the year 2022 regarding the Regulatory Requirements of Construction for various areas in the Kingdom of Bahrain

Administrative and support service activities

ISIC4	Business activity
8292-5	Packaging activities - Packaging of vegetable/ animal/ fish oil

Description

This activity includes:
Includes factories that filled vegetable and animal and fish oils and fats in consumer sized bottles of metal, plastic or glass atomically, on the condition that the production process be in large-scale quantities using automated power.

Business Requirements

Age

18 and above

Allowed for Nationalities

Bahraini 100%	GCC 100%
American 100%	Singaporean 100%
Icelander 100%	Liechtenstein er 100%
Norwegian 100%	Swiss 100%

Foreign Allowed up to 100%

Legal Type

It is allowed to register according to the legal forms mentioned below

Allowed for Individual Commercial Registration (ICR) : Yes

Allowed for Company Commercial Registration (CCR) : Yes

- Bahrain Shareholding Company (Public)
- With Limited Liability Company
- Branch of a Foreign Company
- Bahrain Shareholding Company (Closed)
- Partnership Company
- Simple Commandite Company
- Commandite By Shares Company
- Non Profit Company

Required Step of Licenses and Approvals

Ministry / Directorate	License / Approval Requirements	Approval Type
Supreme Council for Environment	Environmental Approval for Packaging activities - Packaging of vegetable/ animal/ fish oil activity	Post
Municipality Affairs	Site Approval for Administrative and support activities	Post
Ministry of Health	Health approval for Packaging activities	Post

Supreme Council for Environment (Post) (8292-5)

Approval Name	Description	Estimated Time
Environmental Approval for Packaging activities - Packaging of vegetable/ animal/ fish oil activity	This service aims to assess the environmental impact and licensing of development, industrial and production projects and activities, in accordance with the standards of protecting the environment and its natural resources	10 Days

Fee Details (if any)

- 30 Bahraini Dinars or 200 Bahraini Dinars for the fast-track procedure (when the data requested within the EA-2 form is sufficient without the need for additional studies)
- 4000 Bahraini Dinars or 6000 Bahraini Dinars for the fast track procedure (when it is necessary to submit an environmental impact assessment study for the project), with an additional payment of 100 Bahraini Dinars when it is necessary to submit a proposal for the scope of the study before submitting it or 500 Bahraini Dinars for a fast track procedure when the proposed scope of the study is being submitted before the study

License Information

To check the requirements for this approval, kindly download the detailed requirements sheet from the other downloadable documents section, which includes the following requirements:

- Building layout engineering and equipment requirements
- Workplace requirements
- Storage requirements
- Material management requirements
- Waste Management Requirements

- Documents and reporting requirements
- General requirements

Other Documents

•Annex to the Minister of Housing, Municipalities and Environment order regarding the project's environmental assessment
•Law No. (2) of 2021 regarding the environmental standards of air as decided by the Chairman of the Supreme Council for Environment
•Law No. (3) of 2021 regarding the environmental standards of water as decided by the Chairman of the Supreme Council for the Environment
•Law No. (5) of 2021 regarding CITES Annexes to the Convention on International Trade in Endangered Fauna and Flora
•Law No. (54) of 2014 regarding the approval of the unified law regarding substances that deplete the ozone layer for the GCC countries
•Law No. (7) of 2022 regarding the environment
•Ministerial Order No. (1) of 1998 regarding Project's Environmental Assessment
•Ministerial Order No. (10) of 2006 regarding the installation of devices for on-line monitoring of atmospheric air pollutants
•Ministerial Order No. (11) of 2019 regarding the issue of technical specification of plastic products
•Ministerial Order No. (3) of 2005 regarding environmental requirements and standards in workplaces, especially regarding workers' exposure to heat and noise, and the provision of tools and protective clothing such as gloves, glasses, face masks and earplugs, with a commitment to use them during work
•Ministerial Order No. (3) of 2006 regarding the management of hazardous waste
•Ministerial Order No. (4) of 2005 regarding the management of used oils
•Ministerial Order No. (4) of 2006 regarding the management of hazardous chemicals
•Ministerial Order No. (4) of 2021 regarding the fees of the licenses and services provided by the Supreme Council for Environment
•Ministerial Order No. (6) of 2013 amending order No. (4) of 2006 regarding the management of hazardous chemicals
•Ministerial Order No. (7) of 2002 regarding the control importation and use of prohibited and severely restricted chemicals, and not to import any chemical compound except after obtaining approvals of all concerned authorities, including the executive body of the Supreme Council for Environment
•Ministerial Order No. (7) of 2013 amending order No. (3) of 2006 regarding the management of hazardous waste
•Ministerial Order No. 4 of 2014 regarding the management of the environmental consulting offices operations in the Kingdom of Bahrain
•Order No. (2) of 2020 determining the categories of fees for licensing refrigeration media, refrigeration units and air conditioning units as decided by the Chairman of the Supreme Council for the Environment
•Requirements for business activities
•law No. (1) of 2020 regarding the management of refrigeration media, refrigeration

units and air conditioning units as decided by the Chairman of the Supreme Council for the Environment
•law No. (2) of 2019 regarding the ban on the import of plastic waste of all kinds as decided by the Chairman of the Supreme Council for the Environment
•law No. (204) of 2018 regarding banning the export of some types of local fishes, shrimps and other aquatic organisms, and coordinating with the Agriculture and Marine Resources at the Ministry of Works, Municipalities and Urban Planning regarding the import and export of some species

Municipality Affairs (Post) (8292-5)

Approval Name	Description	Estimated Time
Site Approval for Administrative and support activities	Municipality Approval for the Commercial Registration address or the site in which the Activity will be practiced	3 Days

Fee Details (if any)

10 BD

License Information

General Conditions:
1. Size of shop/premises must be sufficient for the activity
2. Businesses may not carry out the activity outside the boundaries of the shop/ premises
3. It is prohibited to display or store any items or equipment outside the shop / premises boundary without prior approval from the Municipality
4. Maintain cleanliness of the site
5. Comply with the parking space regulations as per the Construction Regulatory Requirements

Activity Specific Conditions:
1. The commercial address for this activity can be registered in areas classified as commercial, services, or industrial
2. The commercial address of the Commercial Registration for this activity can an office address
provided that the site is used for administrative purposes and is not located in a residential area

Note: Uploading pictures of the site/shop may expedite the process of obtaining approval

Required Documents

- Lease agreement (after obtaining the necessary approvals from other licensing entities)
- Shop photos

Other Documents

- Cabinet's Decision (56) of the year 2022 regarding the Regulatory Requirements of Construction for various areas in the Kingdom of Bahrain

Ministry of Health (Post) (8292-5)

Approval Name	Description	Estimated Time
Health approval for Packaging activities	Health approval for Packaging activities	5 Days

Fee Details (if any)

100 BD

License Information

Please refer to the “Health requirements checklist document in the “other downloadable documents” section for the requirements and specifications for this activity.

You could employ one of the licensed engineering offices listed in the business support organizations list to provide engineering drawings that will be attached when submitting an application via the Sijilat system.

Required Documents

- Drawings/ layout of premises (approved by an engineering office).
- Requirement Checklist (Stamped by an engineering office)
- drawings/layouts of the premises

Other Documents

- Health requirements for Commercial establishments licensed by the public health directorate - 2022

Administrative and support service activities

ISIC4	Business activity
8299-1	Other business support service activities

Description

This activity includes:
providing verbatim reporting and stenotype recording of live legal proceedings and transcribing subsequent recorded materials, such as:
- Court reporting or stenotype recording services
- Public stenography services
- Real-time (i.e. simultaneous) closed captioning of live television performances of meetings, conferences
- Address bar coding services
- Bar code imprinting services
- mail presorting services
- Repossession services
- Parking meter coin collection services
- Assistance in the maintenance and registration of cars in addition to the renewal of the insurance policy
- Administration of loyalty programmes
- Other support activities typically provided to businesses not elsewhere classified

This activity does not allow the clearance of government transactions
To carry out the activity of clearing government transactions, please select the activity (other business support services activities - clearance of government transactions) activity number 8299-2

Business Requirements

Age

18 and above

Allowed for Nationalities

Bahraini 100%	GCC 100%
American 100%	Singaporean 100%
Icelander 100%	Liechtenstein er 100%
Norwegian 100%	Swiss 100%

Foreign Allowed up to 100%

Legal Type

It is allowed to register according to the legal forms mentioned below

Allowed for Individual Commercial Registration (ICR) : Yes

Allowed for Company Commercial Registration (CCR) : Yes

Allowed for Sijilli : Yes

- Bahrain Shareholding Company (Public)
- With Limited Liability Company
- Branch of a Foreign Company
- Bahrain Shareholding Company (Closed)
- Partnership Company
- Simple Commandite Company
- Commandite By Shares Company
- Non Profit Company

Required Step of Licenses and Approvals

Ministry / Directorate	License / Approval Requirements	Approval Type
Municipality Affairs	Site Approval for Administrative and support activities	Post

Municipality Affairs (Post) (8299-1)

Approval Name	Description	Estimated Time
Site Approval for Administrative and support activities	Municipality Approval for the Commercial Registration address or the site in which the Activity will be practiced	3 Days

Fee Details (if any)

10 BD

License Information

General Conditions:
1. Size of shop/premises must be sufficient for the activity
2. Businesses may not carry out the activity outside the boundaries of the shop/ premises
3. It is prohibited to display or store any items or equipment outside the shop / premises boundary without prior approval from the Municipality
4. Maintain cleanliness of the site
5. Comply with the parking space regulations as per the Construction Regulatory Requirements

Activity Specific Conditions:
1. The commercial address for this activity can be registered in areas classified as commercial, services, or industrial
2. The commercial address of the Commercial Registration for this activity can an office address
provided that the site is used for administrative purposes and is not located in a residential area

Note: Uploading pictures of the site/shop may expedite the process of obtaining approval

Required Documents

- Lease agreement (after obtaining the necessary approvals from other licensing entities)
- Shop photos

Other Documents

- Cabinet's Decision (56) of the year 2022 regarding the Regulatory Requirements of Construction for various areas in the Kingdom of Bahrain

Administrative and support service activities

ISIC4	Business activity
8299-2	Other business support service activities - Clearance of Government Transactions

Description

Offices that work in the preparation and completion of documents, personal and business transactions document to submit those documents to the governmental and non-governmental bodies and follow-up

Business Requirements

Age

18 and above

Allowed for Nationalities

Bahraini
100%

Legal Type

It is allowed to register according to the legal forms mentioned below

Allowed for Individual Commercial Registration (ICR) : Yes

Allowed for Company Commercial Registration (CCR) : Yes

Allowed for Sijilli : Yes

- Bahrain Shareholding Company (Public)
- Bahrain Shareholding Company (Closed)
- Simple Commandite Company
- Non Profit Company
- With Limited Liability Company
- Partnership Company
- Commandite By Shares Company

Required Step of Licenses and Approvals

Ministry / Directorate	License / Approval Requirements	Approval Type
Municipality Affairs	Site Approval for Administrative and support activities	Post

Municipality Affairs (Post) (8299-2)

Approval Name	Description	Estimated Time
Site Approval for Administrative and support activities	Municipality Approval for the Commercial Registration address or the site in which the Activity will be practiced	3 Days

Fee Details (if any)

10 BD

License Information

General Conditions:
1. Size of shop/premises must be sufficient for the activity
2. Businesses may not carry out the activity outside the boundaries of the shop/ premises
3. It is prohibited to display or store any items or equipment outside the shop / premises boundary without prior approval from the Municipality
4. Maintain cleanliness of the site
5. Comply with the parking space regulations as per the Construction Regulatory Requirements

Activity Specific Conditions:
1. The commercial address for this activity can be registered in areas classified as commercial, services, or industrial
2. The commercial address of the Commercial Registration for this activity can an office address
provided that the site is used for administrative purposes and is not located in a residential area

Note: Uploading pictures of the site/shop may expedite the process of obtaining approval

Required Documents

- Lease agreement (after obtaining the necessary approvals from other licensing entities)
- Shop photos

Other Documents

- Cabinet's Decision (56) of the year 2022 regarding the Regulatory Requirements of Construction for various areas in the Kingdom of Bahrain

Administrative and support service activities

ISIC4	Business activity
8299-3	Other business support service activities - Enforcement Agent

Description

This activity includes:
- Filing for enforcement upon request of the concerned parties.
- Following up the enforcement procedures.
- Implementing the decisions of the enforcement court judge in accordance with capacity legally conferred.
- Taking procedures of the seizure and preparing for sale of movables.
- Taking procedures of the seizure and preparing for sale of real states.
- Taking procedures of In-kind implementation.

Business Requirements

Age

18 and above

Allowed for Nationalities

Bahraini 100%	GCC 100%
American 100%	Singaporean 100%
Icelander 100%	Liechtenstein er 100%
Norwegian 100%	Swiss 100%

Foreign Allowed up to 100%

Legal Type

It is allowed to register according to the legal forms mentioned below

Allowed for Company Commercial Registration (CCR) : Yes

- Bahrain Shareholding Company (Public)
- With Limited Liability Company
- Bahrain Shareholding Company (Closed)
- Partnership Company
- Simple Commandite Company
- Commandite By Shares Company

Required Step of Licenses and Approvals

Ministry / Directorate	License / Approval Requirements	Approval Type
General Registrar Office	Enforcement Agent	Post
Municipality Affairs	Site Approval for Administrative and support activities	Post

General Registrar Office (Post) (8299-3)

Approval Name	Description	Estimated Time
Enforcement Agent	Enforcement Agent	3 Days

Fee Details (if any)

BD500 for the first three enforcement agents
BD100 for every additional enforcement agent

License Information

Conditions for the License:
1- The license applicant should be a legal person licensed to work in the Kingdom.
2- To add the activity of bailiff from the Ministry of Industry, Commerce , provided that the CR does not combine the activity of the bailiff with the activity of the legal profession or the activity of a private notary.
3- The legal representative of the legal person has not been previously convicted by a final judgment of a felony or misdemeanor relating to dishonesty or breach of trust, and he has not been previously dismissed from his job, removed from his position, or his profession license withdrawn by a final judicial ruling or by a final disciplinary decision, unless at least three years have passed for either of them.
4- Pay the prescribed license fee.
5- To submit a valid insurance policy for the duration of the license against liability for professional negligence, issued by one of the insurance companies licensed in the Kingdom, provided that the insurance amount is not less than thirty thousand dinars.
6- Nominate at least three persons to practice as bailiffs as licensed natural persons, provided that each of them fulfills the following conditions:
a) He must not have been convicted by a final judgment of a felony or misdemeanor relating to dishonesty or breach of trust.
b) He has not been previously dismissed from his job, dismissed from his position, or his profession license withdrawn by virtue of a final judicial ruling or a final disciplinary decision, unless at least three years have elapsed since the issuance of either of them.
c) To successfully pass the training and exams conducted by the Judicial and Legal Studies Institute.

Other Documents

- Application Form To Obtain License of Bailiffs
- Enforcement Agent Decree

Municipality Affairs (Post) (8299-3)

Approval Name	Description	Estimated Time
Site Approval for Administrative and support activities	Municipality Approval for the Commercial Registration address or the site in which the Activity will be practiced	3 Days

Fee Details (if any)

10 BD

License Information

General Conditions:
1. Size of shop/premises must be sufficient for the activity
2. Businesses may not carry out the activity outside the boundaries of the shop/ premises
3. It is prohibited to display or store any items or equipment outside the shop / premises boundary without prior approval from the Municipality
4. Maintain cleanliness of the site
5. Comply with the parking space regulations as per the Construction Regulatory Requirements

Activity Specific Conditions:
1. The commercial address for this activity can be registered in areas classified as commercial, services, or industrial
2. The commercial address of the Commercial Registration for this activity can an office address
provided that the site is used for administrative purposes and is not located in a residential area

Note: Uploading pictures of the site/shop may expedite the process of obtaining approval

Required Documents

- Lease agreement (after obtaining the necessary approvals from other licensing entities)
- Shop photos

Other Documents

- Cabinet's Decision (56) of the year 2022 regarding the Regulatory Requirements of Construction for various areas in the Kingdom of Bahrain

Administrative and support service activities

ISIC4	Business activity
8299-4	Other business support service activities - Employment Registration Center

Description

This activity allows receiving applications for registration of foreign workers willing to obtain a permit to practice professional activities and referring them to the LMRA for examination and decision

Business Requirements

Age

18 and above

Allowed for Nationalities

Bahraini 100%	GCC 100%
American Allowed up to 49% (a minimum Bahraini ownership of 51% is required)	Singaporean Allowed up to 49% (a minimum Bahraini ownership of 51% is required)
Icelander Allowed up to 49% (a minimum Bahraini ownership of 51% is required)	Liechtenstein er Allowed up to 49% (a minimum Bahraini ownership of 51% is required)
Norwegian Allowed up to 49% (a minimum Bahraini ownership of 51% is required)	Swiss Allowed up to 49% (a minimum Bahraini ownership of 51% is required)

Foreign Allowed up to Allowed up to 49% (a minimum Bahraini ownership of 51% is required)

Legal Type

It is allowed to register according to the legal forms mentioned below

Allowed for Individual Commercial Registration (ICR) : Yes

Allowed for Company Commercial Registration (CCR) : Yes

- Bahrain Shareholding Company (Public)
- With Limited Liability Company
- Bahrain Shareholding Company (Closed)
- Partnership Company
- Simple Commandite Company
- Commandite By Shares Company

Required Step of Licenses and Approvals

Ministry / Directorate	License / Approval Requirements	Approval Type
Municipality Affairs	Site Approval for Administrative and support activities	Post
Client services directorate -LMRA	Employment Registration Center	Post

Municipality Affairs (Post) (8299-4)

Approval Name	Description	Estimated Time
Site Approval for Administrative and support activities	Municipality Approval for the Commercial Registration address or the site in which the Activity will be practiced	3 Days

Fee Details (if any)

10 BD

License Information

General Conditions:
1. Size of shop/premises must be sufficient for the activity
2. Businesses may not carry out the activity outside the boundaries of the shop/ premises
3. It is prohibited to display or store any items or equipment outside the shop / premises boundary without prior approval from the Municipality
4. Maintain cleanliness of the site
5. Comply with the parking space regulations as per the Construction Regulatory Requirements

Activity Specific Conditions:
1. The commercial address for this activity can be registered in areas classified as commercial, services, or industrial
2. The commercial address of the Commercial Registration for this activity can an office address
provided that the site is used for administrative purposes and is not located in a residential area

Note: Uploading pictures of the site/shop may expedite the process of obtaining approval

Required Documents

- Lease agreement (after obtaining the necessary approvals from other licensing entities)
- Shop photos

Other Documents

- Cabinet's Decision (56) of the year 2022 regarding the Regulatory Requirements of Construction for various areas in the Kingdom of Bahrain

Client services directorate -LMRA (Post) (8299-4)

Approval Name	Description	Estimated Time
Employment Registration Center	The authorized center is allowed to register the target groups through this activity, as this activity will be the link with the Labor Market Regulatory Authority by submitting a labor card to the Labor Market Regulatory Authority system.	60 Days

Fee Details (if any)

There is no Estimated Processing Time (Days) in this license.

License Information

1- Identification of relevant employees to register employment in proportion to the volume of work and subject to the assessment of the Labor Market Regulatory Authority.
2- The employer commitment to the Bahrainization percentage imposed on the register.
3- The absence of administrative or legal violations against the owner of the activity.
4- Providing an electronic system for registering workers according to the requirements of the Labor Market Regulatory Authority.
5 Preparing a suitable and appropriate site to meet with the labor, this site is subject to the approval of the Labor Market Regulatory Authority in accordance with the requirements set.
6- Obligating the center to provide the residence address and updated data for each registered worker, bank account number, and the worker's contact numbers.
7- Obligating the center to submit a monthly report or upon request, as the report must be up-to-date with the records of the foreign workers registered with it, including the contact numbers with the worker.

Required Documents

- A recent electricity bill for the facility
- Established site lease agreement
- Interior photos of the establishment
- Pictures of the establishment from outside (showing the name of the sign board)

Education

سجلات
SIJILAT
نظام السجلات التجارية
COMMERCIAL REGISTRATION PORTAL

Education

ISIC4	Business activity
85101	Pre-primary

Description

This activity includes the provision of instruction designed primarily to introduce very young children (3-5 Years) to a school-type environment and instruction that gives students a sound basic education.

Business Requirements

Age

25 and above

Allowed for Nationalities

Bahraini 100%		GCC 100%	
American 100%		Singaporean 100%	
Icelander 100%		Liechtenstein er 100%	
Norwegian 100%		Swiss 100%	

Foreign Allowed up to 100%

Legal Type

It is allowed to register according to the legal forms mentioned below

Allowed for Individual Commercial Registration (ICR) : Yes

Allowed for Company Commercial Registration (CCR) : Yes

- Bahrain Shareholding Company (Public)
- With Limited Liability Company
- Branch of a Foreign Company
- Bahrain Shareholding Company (Closed)
- Partnership Company
- Simple Commandite Company
- Commandite By Shares Company
- Non Profit Company

Required Step of Licenses and Approvals

Ministry / Directorate	License / Approval Requirements	Approval Type
General Directorate Of Criminal Investigation	Approval by General Directorate of Criminal Investigation	Pre
Early Childhood Education Licensing and Follow-up Directorate	Kindergarten/Child Day-Care - Pre Approval	Pre
Municipality Affairs	Site Approval for Educational Institutions	Post
General Directrate Of Civil Defence	Pre-primary	Post
Traffic Operation And Control Department	Traffic Site Approval	Post
Early Childhood Education Licensing and Follow-up Directorate	Kindergarten/Child Day-Care - Final Approval	Final Site Inspection

General Directorate Of Criminal Investigation (Pre) (85101)

Approval Name	Description	Estimated Time
Approval by General Directorate of Criminal Investigation	General Directorate of Criminal Investigation Approval for the Activity	7 Days

Fee Details (if any)

There is no Estimated Processing Time (Days) in this license.

License Information

- The applicant should not have a criminal record, unless they have been rehabilitated in criminal cases

Early Childhood Education Licensing and Follow-up Directorate (Pre) (85101)

Approval Name	Description	Estimated Time
Kindergarten/Child Day-Care - Pre Approval	This licence is required if the investor intends to start up kindergartens providing education to children aged between 0-5 years old.	90 Days

Fee Details (if any)

There is no Estimated Processing Time (Days) in this license.

License Information

For an applicant to obtain a license for a kindergarten, they should fulfill the following conditions:

If the applicant is a natural person:

1. Must be at least 25 years of age.
2. Must be fully competent and of good conduct. A final court ruling should not have been passed against them in a felony or misdemeanor affecting honor, integrity or public morals, unless they have since been exculpated or exonerated.
3. Must at least have the General Secondary School Certificate or an equivalent.
4. Must be capable of financing the establishment and continued functioning of the private educational or training institution in accordance with the standards and guarantees prescribed and laid down by the Ministry of Education.
5. Must not be a civil servant or an employee of public organizations or private institutions

If applicant is a corporate entity:

In this case, the applicant shall appoint a representative to deal with third parties who shall fulfil the foregoing conditions except for the stipulation (4), provided that they specify in their application the source of finance for the private educational or training institution, as well as their ability to maintain the appropriate finances.

1. The license issued establishing a private educational or training institutions shall be considered personal, and it may not be assigned in favor of third parties except with the approval of the concerned Ministry, and it should be renewed once every three years.
2. In the event of the death of the educational or training institution's owner, the Ministry may transfer the license to their heirs. If the heirs do not comply with the conditions laid down in this law, the Ministry may exempt them, provided that the heirs or their guardian's appoint a representative who has fulfilled such conditions.
3. A fee shall be charged for issuing the license to establish a private educational or training institution and for the renewal thereof, and an order by the Minister, after the approval of the Cabinet, shall be issued fixing this fee.
4. Holder of a license to establish a private educational institution shall undertake to provide a financial guarantee to the concerned Ministry, which shall be determined by an order to be issued by the Minister, subject to the Cabinet's approval.

Building Requirements for Private educational or training institutions:

The institution must be in an independent building and meet health, educational, and occupational safety requirements. The final approval for the school building will be given after obtaining approval from the following entities: Ministry of Works, Urban Planning, and Municipality Affairs, Directorate of Civil Defense, and General Traffic Directorate. Other requirements include the following:

1. A suitable health environment and independent premises equipped with furniture and equipment. Approval from the Ministry of Education must be obtained before constructing a new building or adding new facilities.
2. The headquarters of the private educational or training institution may only be transferred after the approval of the Ministry of Education.
3. A residential building/facility may not be established in the private educational or training institution unless an approval from the Ministry of Education is obtained in accordance with its regulations
4. The educational or training institution shall bear a distinguishable name that is approved by the Ministry of Education.

Please refer to Legislative Decree No. (25) of the year 1998 concerning Private Educational and Training Institutions in the “other downloadable documents” for further requirements.

Required Documents

•A document from the bank showing the amount allocated to the capital of the project.
•Completed Form Child Day-Care Nursery License Request
•Completed Form Kindergarten License Request
•High school diploma and the latest scientific qualification of the representative of the legal person
•Release Letter from latest employer

Other Documents

•LAW NO. (37) OF 2012 WITH RESPECT TO THE PROMULGATION OF THE CHILD LAW
•Legislative Decree No. (25) of the year 1998 concerning Private Educational and Training Institutions

Municipality Affairs (Post) (85101)

Approval Name	Description	Estimated Time
Site Approval for Educational Institutions	Municipality Approval for the Commercial Registration address or the site in which the Activity will be practiced	3 Days

Fee Details (if any)

10 BD

License Information

General Conditions:
1. Size of shop/premises must be sufficient for the activity
2. Businesses may not carry out the activity outside the boundaries of the shop/ premises
3. It is prohibited to display or store any items or equipment outside the shop / premises boundary without prior approval from the Municipality
4. Maintain cleanliness of the site
5. Comply with the parking space regulations as per the Construction Regulatory Requirements

Activity Specific Conditions:
1. Comply with the regulatory requirements for construction
2. Submit a copy of the building permit (if applicable)
3. Comply with the parking requirements as per cabinet's decision (28) of the year 2009 regarding the Regulatory Requirements of Construction for various areas in the Kingdom of Bahrain
4. In the event of a site on a non-commercial street, then the standards pertaining to projects with a special nature should be followed

Note: Uploading pictures of the site/shop may expedite the process of obtaining approval

Required Documents

- Lease agreement (after obtaining the necessary approvals from other licensing entities)
- Shop photos

Other Documents

- Cabinet's Decision (56) of the year 2022 regarding the Regulatory Requirements of Construction for various areas in the Kingdom of Bahrain

General Directrate Of Civil Defence (Post) (85101)

Approval Name	Description	Estimated Time
Pre-primary	checking the approval requirements of the general directorate of civil defense	5 Days

Fee Details (if any)

30 BD Fire prevention and protection certificate fees

License Information

1. Provide the documents mentioned in the “Required Documents” section
2. Comply with the requirements listed in the inspection checklist found in the “Other Downloadable Documents” section
3. Provide proof to the General Directorate of Civil Defense that an alarm and firefighting equipment have been installed within 6 months of obtaining a Commercial Registration and license

If a warehouse is used: A safety certificate must be obtained viaBahrain.bh

Required Documents

•No-objection letter for alarm and extinguisher installation from Civil Defense, or purchasing receipt of alarm equipment and extinguishers along with an annual maintenance contract from a company certified by Civil defense
•Photos required for civil defense activities
•Purchasing invoice of security camera system with specifying the type and storage capacity.

Other Documents

- Sample pictures of the general directorate of civil defense requirements
- licencing requirments of the general directorat of civil defense for activity number "85101"

Traffic Operation And Control Department (Post) (85101)

Approval Name	Description	Estimated Time
Traffic Site Approval	The objective of this approval is to ensure that there is ample parking space and road accessibility to the premise operating a particular business activity	7 Days

Fee Details (if any)

There is no Estimated Processing Time (Days) in this license.

License Information

There is no License Information in this license.

Required Documents

- Architecture drawings for restaurant and Blueprints for parking
- Copy of CPR card
- Copy of Passport
- Project description

Early Childhood Education Licensing and Follow-up Directorate (Final Site Inspection) (85101)

Approval Name	Description	Estimated Time
Kindergarten/Child Day-Care - Final Approval	This licence is required if the investor intends to start up kindergartens providing education to children aged between 0-5 years old.	90 Days

Fee Details (if any)

There is no Estimated Processing Time (Days) in this license.

License Information

For an applicant to obtain a license for a kindergarten, they should fulfill the following conditions:

If the applicant is a natural person:

1. Must be at least 25 years of age.
2. Must be fully competent and of good conduct. A final court ruling should not have been passed against them in a felony or misdemeanor affecting honor, integrity or public morals, unless they have since been exculpated or exonerated.
3. Must at least have the General Secondary School Certificate or an equivalent.
4. Must be capable of financing the establishment and continued functioning of the private educational or training institution in accordance with the standards and guarantees prescribed and laid down by the Ministry of Education.
5. Must not be a civil servant or an employee of public organizations or private institutions

If applicant is a corporate entity:

In this case, the applicant shall appoint a representative to deal with third parties who shall fulfil the foregoing conditions except for the stipulation (4), provided that they specify in their application the source of finance for the private educational or training institution, as well as their ability to maintain the appropriate finances.

1. The license issued for the establishment of a private educational or training institution shall be considered personal. It may not be assigned in favor of third parties except with the approval of the concerned Ministry and it should be renewed once every three years.
2. In the event of the death of the educational or training institution's owner, the Ministry may transfer the license to their heirs. If the heirs do not comply with the conditions laid down in this law, the Ministry may exempt them, provided that the heirs or their guardian's appoint a representative who has fulfilled such conditions.
3. A fee shall be charged for issuing the license to establish a private educational or training institution and for the renewal thereof, and an order by the Minister, after the approval of the Cabinet, shall be issued fixing this fee.
4. Holder of a license to establish a private educational institution shall undertake to provide a financial guarantee to the concerned Ministry, which shall be determined by an order to be issued by the Minister, subject to the Cabinet's approval.

Building Requirements for Private educational or training institutions:

The institution must be in an independent building and meet health, educational, and occupational safety requirements. The final approval for the school building will be given after obtaining approval from the following entities: Ministry of Works, Urban Planning, and Municipality Affairs, Directorate of Civil Defense, and General Traffic Directorate. Other requirements include the following:

1. Having a suitable health environment and independent premises equipped with furniture and equipment. An approval from the Ministry of Education must be obtained before constructing a new building or adding new facilities.
2. The headquarters of the private educational or training institution may only be transferred after the approval of the Ministry of Education.
3. A residential building/facility may not be established in the private educational or training institution unless an approval from the Ministry of Education is obtained in accordance with its regulations
4. The educational or training institution shall bear a distinguishable name that is approved by the Ministry of Education.

Please refer to Legislative Decree No. (25) of the year 1998 concerning Private Educational and Training Institutions in the “other downloadable documents” for further requirements.

Required Documents

•Completed Form “Data on tuition fees and other fees of a proposed Kindergarten
•Copy of the institution’s rules of procedure
•Maps and drawings of the building, outdoor spaces and outdoor play spaces, and clarification of the plan of use.
•Two copies of the educational curriculum/program

Other Documents

•LAW NO. (37) OF 2012 WITH RESPECT TO THE PROMULGATION OF THE CHILD LAW

Education

ISIC4	Business activity
8521-1	Private Education - National Private School

Description

This activity includes Private Schools [non-governmental]. Which provide education and award completion certificates for the following levels:
- Primary
- Intermediate
- Secondary

Kindergarten "no need to add Kindergartens Activity (ISIC Code 85101) as it's included in the School License provided that the licensee's requirements are met"

Business Requirements

✔ Age

25 and above

✔ Allowed for Nationalities

Bahraini 100%		GCC 100%	
American 100%		Singaporean 100%	
Icelander 100%		Liechtenstein er 100%	
Norwegian 100%		Swiss 100%	

Foreign Allowed up to 100%

Legal Type

It is allowed to register according to the legal forms mentioned below

Allowed for Individual Commercial Registration (ICR) : Yes

Allowed for Company Commercial Registration (CCR) : Yes

- Bahrain Shareholding Company (Public)
- With Limited Liability Company
- Branch of a Foreign Company
- Bahrain Shareholding Company (Closed)
- Partnership Company
- Simple Commandite Company
- Commandite By Shares Company
- Non Profit Company

Required Step of Licenses and Approvals

Ministry / Directorate	License / Approval Requirements	Approval Type
Directorate Of Private Education	Establishment and Management Of Private Educational and Training Institutions - Pre Approval	Pre
General Directorate Of Criminal Investigation	Approval by General Directorate of Criminal Investigation	Pre
Municipality Affairs	Site Approval for Educational Institutions	Post
Traffic Operation And Control Department	Traffic Site Approval	Post
General Directrate Of Civil Defence	Private Education - National Private School	Post
Directorate Of Private Education	Establishment and Management Of Private Educational and Training Institutions - Final Approval	Final Site Inspection

Directorate Of Private Education (Pre) (8521-1)

Approval Name	Description	Estimated Time
Establishment and Management Of Private Educational and Training Institutions - Pre Approval	Establishment and Management Of Private Educational and Training Institutions	90 Days

Fee Details (if any)

There is no Estimated Processing Time (Days) in this license.

License Information

For an applicant to obtain a license for private educational institution, they should fulfill the following conditions:

If the applicant is a natural person:

1. Must be at least 25 years of age.
2. Must be fully competent and of good conduct. A final court ruling should not have been passed against them in a felony or misdemeanor affecting honor, integrity or public morals, unless they have since been exculpated or exonerated.
3. Must at least have the General Secondary School Certificate or an equivalent.
4. Must be capable of financing the establishment and continued functioning of the private educational or training institution in accordance with the standards and guarantees prescribed and laid down by the Ministry of Education.
5. Must not be a civil servant or an employee of public organizations or private institutions

If applicant is a corporate entity:

In this case, the applicant shall appoint a representative to deal with third parties who shall fulfil the foregoing conditions except for the stipulation (4), provided that they specify in their application the source of finance for the private educational or training institution, as well as their ability to maintain the appropriate finances.

Building Requirements for Private educational or training institutions:

The institution must be in an independent building and meet health, educational, and occupational safety requirements. The final approval for the school building will be given after obtaining approval from the following entities: Ministry of Works, Urban Planning, and Municipality Affairs, Directorate of Civil Defense, and General Traffic Directorate. Other requirements include the following:

1. A suitable health environment and independent premises equipped with furniture and equipment. Approval from the Ministry of Education must be obtained before constructing a new building or adding new facilities.
2. The headquarters of the private educational or training institution may only be transferred after the approval of the Ministry of Education.
3. A residential building/facility may not be established in the private educational or training institution unless an approval from the Ministry of Education is obtained in accordance with its regulations
4. The educational or training institution shall bear a distinguishable name that is approved by the Ministry of Education.

Please refer to Legislative Decree No. (25) of the year 1998 concerning Private Educational and Training Institutions in the “other downloadable documents” for further requirements.

Required Documents

•A document from the bank showing the amount allocated to the capital of the project.
•Completed Form “Educational Programs & Courses Offered by Private school”
•Completed form: Details on proposed tuition fees for all educational centers & institutes”
•Completed form: “Details on proposed tuition fees for all schools' educational levels”
•Completed form: “Private education & training institutions license request”
•High school diploma and the latest scientific qualification of the representative of the legal person

Other Documents

•Decree-Law No. 25 of 1998 Concerning Private Educational and Training Institutions

General Directorate Of Criminal Investigation (Pre) (8521-1)

Approval Name	Description	Estimated Time
Approval by General Directorate of Criminal Investigation	General Directorate of Criminal Investigation Approval for the Activity	7 Days

Fee Details (if any)

There is no Estimated Processing Time (Days) in this license.

License Information

- The applicant should not have a criminal record, unless they have been rehabilitated in criminal cases

Municipality Affairs (Post) (8521-1)

Approval Name	Description	Estimated Time
Site Approval for Educational Institutions	Municipality Approval for the Commercial Registration address or the site in which the Activity will be practiced	3 Days

Fee Details (if any)

10 BD

License Information

General Conditions:
1. Size of shop/premises must be sufficient for the activity
2. Businesses may not carry out the activity outside the boundaries of the shop/ premises
3. It is prohibited to display or store any items or equipment outside the shop / premises boundary without prior approval from the Municipality
4. Maintain cleanliness of the site
5. Comply with the parking space regulations as per the Construction Regulatory Requirements

Activity Specific Conditions:
1. Comply with the regulatory requirements for construction
2. Submit a copy of the building permit (if applicable)
3. Comply with the parking requirements as per cabinet's decision (28) of the year 2009 regarding the Regulatory Requirements of Construction for various areas in the Kingdom of Bahrain
4. In the event of a site on a non-commercial street, then the standards pertaining to projects with a special nature should be followed

Note: Uploading pictures of the site/shop may expedite the process of obtaining approval

Required Documents

- Lease agreement (after obtaining the necessary approvals from other licensing entities)
- Shop photos

Other Documents

- Cabinet's Decision (56) of the year 2022 regarding the Regulatory Requirements of Construction for various areas in the Kingdom of Bahrain

Traffic Operation And Control Department (Post) (8521-1)

Approval Name	Description	Estimated Time
Traffic Site Approval	The objective of this approval is to ensure that there is ample parking space and road accessibility to the premise operating a particular business activity	7 Days

Fee Details (if any)

There is no Estimated Processing Time (Days) in this license.

License Information

There is no License Information in this license.

Required Documents

- Architecture drawings for restaurant and Blueprints for parking
- Copy of CPR card
- Copy of Passport
- Project description

General Directrate Of Civil Defence (Post) (8521-1)

Approval Name	Description	Estimated Time
Private Education - National Private School	checking the approval requirements of the general directorate of civil defense	5 Days

Fee Details (if any)

50 BD Fire prevention and protection certificate fees

License Information

1. Provide the documents mentioned in the “Required Documents” section
2. Comply with the requirements listed in the inspection checklist found in the “Other Downloadable Documents” section
3. Provide proof to the General Directorate of Civil Defense that an alarm and firefighting equipment have been installed within 6 months of obtaining a Commercial Registration and license

If a warehouse is used: A safety certificate must be obtained viaBahrain.bh

Required Documents

•No-objection letter for alarm and extinguisher installation from Civil Defense, or purchasing receipt of alarm equipment and extinguishers along with an annual maintenance contract from a company certified by Civil defense
•Photos required for civil defense activities
•Purchasing invoice of security camera system with specifying the type and storage capacity.

Other Documents

- Sample pictures of the general directorate of civil defense requirements
- licencing requirments of the general directorat of civil defense for activity number "8521-1"

Directorate Of Private Education (Final Site Inspection) (8521-1)

Approval Name	Description	Estimated Time
Establishment and Management Of Private Educational and Training Institutions - Final Approval	Establishment and Management Of Private Educational and Training Institutions	90 Days

Fee Details (if any)

There is no Estimated Processing Time (Days) in this license.

License Information

For an applicant to obtain a license for private educational institution, they should fulfill the following conditions:

If the applicant is a natural person:

1. Must be at least 25 years of age.
2. Must be fully competent and of good conduct. A final court ruling should not have been passed against them in a felony or misdemeanor affecting honor, integrity or public morals, unless they have since been exculpated or exonerated.
3. Must at least have the General Secondary School Certificate or an equivalent.
4. Must be capable of financing the establishment and continued functioning of the private educational or training institution in accordance with the standards and guarantees prescribed and laid down by the Ministry of Education.
5. Must not be a civil servant or an employee of public organizations or private institutions

If applicant is a corporate entity:

In this case, the applicant shall appoint a representative to deal with third parties who shall fulfil the foregoing conditions except for the stipulation (4), provided that they

specify in their application the source of finance for the private educational or training institution, as well as their ability to maintain the appropriate finances.

Building Requirements for Private educational or training institutions:

The institution must be in an independent building and meet health, educational, and occupational safety requirements. The final approval for the school building will be given after obtaining approval from the following entities: Ministry of Works, Urban Planning, and Municipality Affairs, Directorate of Civil Defense, and General Traffic Directorate. Other requirements include the following:

1. A suitable health environment and independent premises equipped with furniture and equipment. Approval from the Ministry of Education must be obtained before constructing a new building or adding new facilities.
2. The headquarters of the private educational or training institution may only be transferred after the approval of the Ministry of Education.
3. A residential building/facility may not be established in the private educational or training institution unless an approval from the Ministry of Education is obtained in accordance with its regulations
4. The educational or training institution shall bear a distinguishable name that is approved by the Ministry of Education.

Please refer to Legislative Decree No. (25) of the year 1998 concerning Private Educational and Training Institutions in the “other downloadable documents” for further requirements.

Required Documents

- Copy of the institution’s rules of procedure
- Copy of the title deed, and a copy of the public website.
- Maps and drawings of the building, outdoor spaces and outdoor play spaces, and clarification of the plan of use.
- Provide a complete curriculum for each subject and educational stage

Education

ISIC4	Business activity
8521-2	Private Education - National Educational Institute

Description

This activity includes private educational [non-governmental] institutes or centres. Which provide programmes andor courses and award attendance or course certificates.

Business Requirements

✔ Age

25 and above

✔ Allowed for Nationalities

Bahraini 100%	GCC 100%
American 100%	Singaporean 100%
Icelander 100%	Liechtenstein er 100%
Norwegian 100%	Swiss 100%

Foreign Allowed up to 100%

Legal Type

It is allowed to register according to the legal forms mentioned below

Allowed for Individual Commercial Registration (ICR) : Yes

Allowed for Company Commercial Registration (CCR) : Yes

- Bahrain Shareholding Company (Public)
- With Limited Liability Company
- Branch of a Foreign Company
- Bahrain Shareholding Company (Closed)
- Partnership Company
- Simple Commandite Company
- Commandite By Shares Company
- Non Profit Company

Required Step of Licenses and Approvals

Ministry / Directorate	License / Approval Requirements	Approval Type
General Directorate Of Criminal Investigation	Approval by General Directorate of Criminal Investigation	Pre
Directorate Of Private Education	Establishment and Management Of Private Educational and Training Institutions - Pre Approval	Pre
General Directrate Of Civil Defence	Private Education - National Educational Institute	Post
Traffic Operation And Control Department	Traffic Site Approval	Post
Municipality Affairs	Site Approval for Educational Institutions	Post
Directorate Of Private Education	Establishment and Management Of Private Educational and Training Institutions - Final Approval	Final Site Inspection

General Directorate Of Criminal Investigation (Pre) (8521-2)

Approval Name	Description	Estimated Time
Approval by General Directorate of Criminal Investigation	General Directorate of Criminal Investigation Approval for the Activity	7 Days

Fee Details (if any)

There is no Estimated Processing Time (Days) in this license.

License Information

- The applicant should not have a criminal record, unless they have been rehabilitated in criminal cases

Directorate Of Private Education (Pre) (8521-2)

Approval Name	Description	Estimated Time
Establishment and Management Of Private Educational and Training Institutions - Pre Approval	Establishment and Management Of Private Educational and Training Institutions	90 Days

Fee Details (if any)

There is no Estimated Processing Time (Days) in this license.

License Information

For an applicant to obtain a license for private educational institution, they should fulfill the following conditions:

If the applicant is a natural person:

1. Must be at least 25 years of age.
2. Must be fully competent and of good conduct. A final court ruling should not have been passed against them in a felony or misdemeanor affecting honor, integrity or public morals, unless they have since been exculpated or exonerated.
3. Must at least have the General Secondary School Certificate or an equivalent.
4. Must be capable of financing the establishment and continued functioning of the private educational or training institution in accordance with the standards and guarantees prescribed and laid down by the Ministry of Education.
5. Must not be a civil servant or an employee of public organizations or private institutions

If applicant is a corporate entity:

In this case, the applicant shall appoint a representative to deal with third parties who shall fulfil the foregoing conditions except for the stipulation (4), provided that they specify in their application the source of finance for the private educational or training institution, as well as their ability to maintain the appropriate finances.

Building Requirements for Private educational or training institutions:

The institution must be in an independent building and meet health, educational, and occupational safety requirements. The final approval for the school building will be given after obtaining approval from the following entities: Ministry of Works, Urban Planning, and Municipality Affairs, Directorate of Civil Defense, and General Traffic Directorate. Other requirements include the following:

1. A suitable health environment and independent premises equipped with furniture and equipment. Approval from the Ministry of Education must be obtained before constructing a new building or adding new facilities.
2. The headquarters of the private educational or training institution may only be transferred after the approval of the Ministry of Education.
3. A residential building/facility may not be established in the private educational or training institution unless an approval from the Ministry of Education is obtained in accordance with its regulations
4. The educational or training institution shall bear a distinguishable name that is approved by the Ministry of Education.

Please refer to Legislative Decree No. (25) of the year 1998 concerning Private Educational and Training Institutions in the “other downloadable documents” for further requirements.

Required Documents

•A document from the bank showing the amount allocated to the capital of the project.
•Completed Form “Educational Programs & Courses Offered by Private school”
•Completed form: Details on proposed tuition fees for all educational centers & institutes”
•Completed form: “Details on proposed tuition fees for all schools' educational levels”
•Completed form: “Private education & training institutions license request”
•High school diploma and the latest scientific qualification of the representative of the legal person

Other Documents

•Decree-Law No. 25 of 1998 Concerning Private Educational and Training Institutions

General Directrate Of Civil Defence (Post) (8521-2)

Approval Name	Description	Estimated Time
Private Education - National Educational Institute	checking the approval requirements of the general directorate of civil defense	5 Days

Fee Details (if any)

50 BD Fire prevention and protection certificate fees

License Information

1. Provide the documents mentioned in the “Required Documents” section
2. Comply with the requirements listed in the inspection checklist found in the “Other Downloadable Documents” section
3. Provide proof to the General Directorate of Civil Defense that an alarm and firefighting equipment have been installed within 6 months of obtaining a Commercial Registration and license

If a warehouse is used: A safety certificate must be obtained viaBahrain.bh

Required Documents

•No-objection letter for alarm and extinguisher installation from Civil Defense, or purchasing receipt of alarm equipment and extinguishers along with an annual maintenance contract from a company certified by Civil defense
•Photos required for civil defense activities
•Purchasing invoice of security camera system with specifying the type and storage capacity.

Other Documents

- Sample pictures of the general directorate of civil defense requirements
- licencing requirments of the general directorat of civil defense for activity number "8521-2"

Traffic Operation And Control Department (Post) (8521-2)

Approval Name	Description	Estimated Time
Traffic Site Approval	The objective of this approval is to ensure that there is ample parking space and road accessibility to the premise operating a particular business activity	7 Days

Fee Details (if any)

There is no Estimated Processing Time (Days) in this license.

License Information

There is no License Information in this license.

Required Documents

- Architecture drawings for restaurant and Blueprints for parking
- Copy of CPR card
- Copy of Passport
- Project description

Municipality Affairs (Post) (8521-2)

Approval Name	Description	Estimated Time
Site Approval for Educational Institutions	Municipality Approval for the Commercial Registration address or the site in which the Activity will be practiced	3 Days

Fee Details (if any)

10 BD

License Information

General Conditions:
1. Size of shop/premises must be sufficient for the activity
2. Businesses may not carry out the activity outside the boundaries of the shop/ premises
3. It is prohibited to display or store any items or equipment outside the shop / premises boundary without prior approval from the Municipality
4. Maintain cleanliness of the site
5. Comply with the parking space regulations as per the Construction Regulatory Requirements

Activity Specific Conditions:
1. Comply with the regulatory requirements for construction
2. Submit a copy of the building permit (if applicable)
3. Comply with the parking requirements as per cabinet's decision (28) of the year 2009 regarding the Regulatory Requirements of Construction for various areas in the Kingdom of Bahrain
4. In the event of a site on a non-commercial street, then the standards pertaining to projects with a special nature should be followed

Note: Uploading pictures of the site/shop may expedite the process of obtaining approval

Required Documents

- Lease agreement (after obtaining the necessary approvals from other licensing entities)
- Shop photos

Other Documents

- Cabinet's Decision (56) of the year 2022 regarding the Regulatory Requirements of Construction for various areas in the Kingdom of Bahrain

Directorate Of Private Education (Final Site Inspection) (8521-2)

Approval Name	Description	Estimated Time
Establishment and Management Of Private Educational and Training Institutions - Final Approval	Establishment and Management Of Private Educational and Training Institutions	90 Days

Fee Details (if any)

There is no Estimated Processing Time (Days) in this license.

License Information

For an applicant to obtain a license for private educational institution, they should fulfill the following conditions:

If the applicant is a natural person:

1. Must be at least 25 years of age.
2. Must be fully competent and of good conduct. A final court ruling should not have been passed against them in a felony or misdemeanor affecting honor, integrity or public morals, unless they have since been exculpated or exonerated.
3. Must at least have the General Secondary School Certificate or an equivalent.
4. Must be capable of financing the establishment and continued functioning of the private educational or training institution in accordance with the standards and guarantees prescribed and laid down by the Ministry of Education.
5. Must not be a civil servant or an employee of public organizations or private institutions

If applicant is a corporate entity:

In this case, the applicant shall appoint a representative to deal with third parties who shall fulfil the foregoing conditions except for the stipulation (4), provided that they

specify in their application the source of finance for the private educational or training institution, as well as their ability to maintain the appropriate finances.

Building Requirements for Private educational or training institutions:

The institution must be in an independent building and meet health, educational, and occupational safety requirements. The final approval for the school building will be given after obtaining approval from the following entities: Ministry of Works, Urban Planning, and Municipality Affairs, Directorate of Civil Defense, and General Traffic Directorate. Other requirements include the following:

1. A suitable health environment and independent premises equipped with furniture and equipment. Approval from the Ministry of Education must be obtained before constructing a new building or adding new facilities.
2. The headquarters of the private educational or training institution may only be transferred after the approval of the Ministry of Education.
3. A residential building/facility may not be established in the private educational or training institution unless an approval from the Ministry of Education is obtained in accordance with its regulations
4. The educational or training institution shall bear a distinguishable name that is approved by the Ministry of Education.

Please refer to Legislative Decree No. (25) of the year 1998 concerning Private Educational and Training Institutions in the “other downloadable documents” for further requirements.

Required Documents

- Copy of the institution’s rules of procedure
- Copy of the title deed, and a copy of the public website.
- Maps and drawings of the building, outdoor spaces and outdoor play spaces, and clarification of the plan of use.
- Provide a complete curriculum for each subject and educational stage

Education

ISIC4	Business activity
8522-1	Technical and Vocational Training - Management and Business Training Centers and Institutes

Description

They are institutions that offer training in management and business related occupations

Business Requirements

Age

25 and above

Allowed for Nationalities

Bahraini 100%	GCC 100%
American 100%	Singaporean 100%
Icelander 100%	Liechtensteiner 100%
Norwegian 100%	Swiss 100%

Foreign Allowed up to 100%

Legal Type

It is allowed to register according to the legal forms mentioned below

Allowed for Individual Commercial Registration (ICR) : Yes

Allowed for Company Commercial Registration (CCR) : Yes

- Bahrain Shareholding Company (Public)
- With Limited Liability Company
- Branch of a Foreign Company
- Bahrain Shareholding Company (Closed)
- Partnership Company
- Simple Commandite Company
- Commandite By Shares Company
- Non Profit Company

Required Step of Licenses and Approvals

Ministry / Directorate	License / Approval Requirements	Approval Type
General Directorate Of Criminal Investigation	Approval by General Directorate of Criminal Investigation	Pre
Directorate Of Training And Institute Ministry Of Labor	Management and Business Training Centers and Institutes - Pre Approval	Pre
Municipality Affairs	Site Approval for Educational Institutions	Post
General Directrate Of Civil Defence	Technical and Vocational Training - Management and Business Training Centers and Institutes	Post
Directorate Of Training And Institute Ministry Of Labor	Management and Business Training Centers and Institutes - Final Approval	Final Site Inspection

General Directorate Of Criminal Investigation (Pre) (8522-1)

Approval Name	Description	Estimated Time
Approval by General Directorate of Criminal Investigation	General Directorate of Criminal Investigation Approval for the Activity	7 Days

Fee Details (if any)

There is no Estimated Processing Time (Days) in this license.

License Information

- The applicant should not have a criminal record, unless they have been rehabilitated in criminal cases

Directorate Of Training And Institute Ministry Of Labor (Pre) (8522-1)

Approval Name	Description	Estimated Time
Management and Business Training Centers and Institutes - Pre Approval	This license is required to set up training institutions that offer training programmes in the field of administrative and commercial disciplines.	3 Days

Fee Details (if any)

There is no Estimated Processing Time (Days) in this license.

License Information

• Applicant should be aged 25 or over

• Minimum capital requirement (Vocational and Technical Institutes and Centres):
- For Individual establishments: BD50,000
- For Companies: BD70,000

• Minimum capital requirement (Administrative and commercial Training Institutes and Centres):
- For Individual establishments: BD30,000
- For Companies: BD50,000

• For individual promoters, academic qualifications should not be less than general secondary certificate level.
• Please refer to Legislative Decree No. (25) of 1998 concerning private educational and training institutions and Law No. 17 of 2007 concerning vocational training in “other downloadable documents” for requirements

Required Documents

- Bio-data, qualifications and experience of the corporate entity's representative (only for companies)
- Completed Form No. (A-1) concerning Application for Licensing a Private Training Institution
- Feasibility study
- Internal policies of the training institution proposed to be established
- Programme Application Form A, B & C for each proposed programme.

Other Documents

- Documents required in change processes in private training institutions
- Law No. 17 of 2007 concerning Vocational training.
- Legislative Decree No. (25) of the year 1998 concerning Private Educational and Training Institutions.
- Technical and Vocational Training - Management and Business Training Centers and Institutes - Activity Licensing Form
- Technical and Vocational Training - Vocational and Technical Centers and Institutes - Activity Licensing Form
- Technical specifications guide for professional institutes updated July 2, 2024

Municipality Affairs (Post) (8522-1)

Approval Name	Description	Estimated Time
Site Approval for Educational Institutions	Municipality Approval for the Commercial Registration address or the site in which the Activity will be practiced	3 Days

Fee Details (if any)

10 BD

License Information

General Conditions:
1. Size of shop/premises must be sufficient for the activity
2. Businesses may not carry out the activity outside the boundaries of the shop/ premises
3. It is prohibited to display or store any items or equipment outside the shop / premises boundary without prior approval from the Municipality
4. Maintain cleanliness of the site
5. Comply with the parking space regulations as per the Construction Regulatory Requirements

Activity Specific Conditions:
1. Comply with the regulatory requirements for construction
2. Submit a copy of the building permit (if applicable)
3. Comply with the parking requirements as per cabinet's decision (28) of the year 2009 regarding the Regulatory Requirements of Construction for various areas in the Kingdom of Bahrain
4. In the event of a site on a non-commercial street, then the standards pertaining to projects with a special nature should be followed

Note: Uploading pictures of the site/shop may expedite the process of obtaining approval

Required Documents

- Lease agreement (after obtaining the necessary approvals from other licensing entities)
- Shop photos

Other Documents

- Cabinet's Decision (56) of the year 2022 regarding the Regulatory Requirements of Construction for various areas in the Kingdom of Bahrain

General Directrate Of Civil Defence (Post) (8522-1)

Approval Name	Description	Estimated Time
Technical and Vocational Training - Management and Business Training Centers and Institutes	checking the approval requirements of the general directorate of civil defense	5 Days

Fee Details (if any)

30 BD Fire prevention and protection certificate fees

License Information

1. Provide the documents mentioned in the “Required Documents” section
2. Comply with the requirements listed in the inspection checklist found in the “Other Downloadable Documents” section
3. Provide proof to the General Directorate of Civil Defense that an alarm and firefighting equipment have been installed within 6 months of obtaining a Commercial Registration and license

If a warehouse is used: A safety certificate must be obtained viaBahrain.bh

Required Documents

•No-objection letter for alarm and extinguisher installation from Civil Defense, or purchasing receipt of alarm equipment and extinguishers along with an annual maintenance contract from a company certified by Civil defense
•Photos required for civil defense activities
•Purchasing invoice of security camera system with specifying the type and storage capacity.

Other Documents

- Sample pictures of the general directorate of civil defense requirements
- licencing requirments of the general directorat of civil defense for activity number "8522-1"

Directorate Of Training And Institute Ministry Of Labor (Final Site Inspection) (8522-1)

Approval Name	Description	Estimated Time
Management and Business Training Centers and Institutes - Final Approval	This license is required to set up training institutions that offer training programmes in the field of administrative and commercial disciplines.	3 Days

Fee Details (if any)

There is no Estimated Processing Time (Days) in this license.

License Information

• The age requirement for the applicant should be 25 years of age or more

• Minimum capital requirement (Vocational and Technical Institutes and Centres):
- For Individual establishments: BD50,000
- For Companies: BD70,000

• Minimum capital requirement (Administrative and commercial Training Institutes and Centres):
- For Individual establishments: BD30,000
- For Companies: BD50,000

• For individual promoters, academic qualifications should not be less than general secondary certificate level.
• Please refer to Legislative Decree No. (25) of 1998 concerning private educational and training institutions and Law No. 17 of 2007 concerning vocational training in “other downloadable documents” for requirements

Required Documents

- Bio-data, qualifications and experience (only for Individual establishments)

Other Documents

- Technical and Vocational Training - Management and Business Training Centers and Institutes - Activity Licensing Form

Education

ISIC4	Business activity
8522-2	Technical and Vocational Training - Vocational and Technical Centers and Institutes

Description

These are institutions that provide vocational or technical training programs comprising broad practical and applied in occupational and technical jobs

Business Requirements

Age

25 and above

Allowed for Nationalities

Bahraini 100%		GCC 100%	
American 100%		Singaporean 100%	
Icelander 100%		Liechtenstein er 100%	
Norwegian 100%		Swiss 100%	

Foreign Allowed up to 100%

Legal Type

It is allowed to register according to the legal forms mentioned below

Allowed for Individual Commercial Registration (ICR) : Yes

Allowed for Company Commercial Registration (CCR) : Yes

- Bahrain Shareholding Company (Public)
- With Limited Liability Company
- Branch of a Foreign Company
- Bahrain Shareholding Company (Closed)
- Partnership Company
- Simple Commandite Company
- Commandite By Shares Company
- Non Profit Company

Required Step of Licenses and Approvals

Ministry / Directorate	License / Approval Requirements	Approval Type
Directorate Of Training And Institute Ministry Of Labor	Management and Business Training Centers and Institutes - Pre Approval	Pre
General Directorate Of Criminal Investigation	Approval by General Directorate of Criminal Investigation	Pre
Municipality Affairs	Site Approval for Educational Institutions	Post
General Directrate Of Civil Defence	Technical and Vocational Training - Vocational and Technical Centers and Institutes	Post
Directorate Of Training And Institute Ministry Of Labor	Management and Business Training Centers and Institutes - Final Approval	Final Site Inspection

Directorate Of Training And Institute Ministry Of Labor (Pre) (8522-2)

Approval Name	Description	Estimated Time
Management and Business Training Centers and Institutes - Pre Approval	This license is required to set up training institutions that offer training programmes in the field of administrative and commercial disciplines.	3 Days

Fee Details (if any)

There is no Estimated Processing Time (Days) in this license.

License Information

• Applicant should be aged 25 or over

• Minimum capital requirement (Vocational and Technical Institutes and Centres):
- For Individual establishments: BD50,000
- For Companies: BD70,000

• Minimum capital requirement (Administrative and commercial Training Institutes and Centres):
- For Individual establishments: BD30,000
- For Companies: BD50,000

• For individual promoters, academic qualifications should not be less than general secondary certificate level.
• Please refer to Legislative Decree No. (25) of 1998 concerning private educational and training institutions and Law No. 17 of 2007 concerning vocational training in “other downloadable documents” for requirements

Required Documents

- Bio-data, qualifications and experience of the corporate entity's representative (only for companies)
- Completed Form No. (A-1) concerning Application for Licensing a Private Training Institution
- Feasibility study
- Internal policies of the training institution proposed to be established
- Programme Application Form A, B & C for each proposed programme.

Other Documents

- Documents required in change processes in private training institutions
- Law No. 17 of 2007 concerning Vocational training.
- Legislative Decree No. (25) of the year 1998 concerning Private Educational and Training Institutions.
- Technical and Vocational Training - Management and Business Training Centers and Institutes - Activity Licensing Form
- Technical and Vocational Training - Vocational and Technical Centers and Institutes - Activity Licensing Form
- Technical specifications guide for professional institutes updated July 2, 2024

General Directorate Of Criminal Investigation (Pre) (8522-2)

Approval Name	Description	Estimated Time
Approval by General Directorate of Criminal Investigation	General Directorate of Criminal Investigation Approval for the Activity	7 Days

Fee Details (if any)

There is no Estimated Processing Time (Days) in this license.

License Information

- The applicant should not have a criminal record, unless they have been rehabilitated in criminal cases

Municipality Affairs (Post) (8522-2)

Approval Name	Description	Estimated Time
Site Approval for Educational Institutions	Municipality Approval for the Commercial Registration address or the site in which the Activity will be practiced	3 Days

Fee Details (if any)

10 BD

License Information

General Conditions:
1. Size of shop/premises must be sufficient for the activity
2. Businesses may not carry out the activity outside the boundaries of the shop/ premises
3. It is prohibited to display or store any items or equipment outside the shop / premises boundary without prior approval from the Municipality
4. Maintain cleanliness of the site
5. Comply with the parking space regulations as per the Construction Regulatory Requirements

Activity Specific Conditions:
1. Comply with the regulatory requirements for construction
2. Submit a copy of the building permit (if applicable)
3. Comply with the parking requirements as per cabinet's decision (28) of the year 2009 regarding the Regulatory Requirements of Construction for various areas in the Kingdom of Bahrain
4. In the event of a site on a non-commercial street, then the standards pertaining to projects with a special nature should be followed

Note: Uploading pictures of the site/shop may expedite the process of obtaining approval

Required Documents

- Lease agreement (after obtaining the necessary approvals from other licensing entities)
- Shop photos

Other Documents

- Cabinet's Decision (56) of the year 2022 regarding the Regulatory Requirements of Construction for various areas in the Kingdom of Bahrain

General Directrate Of Civil Defence (Post) (8522-2)

Approval Name	Description	Estimated Time
Technical and Vocational Training - Vocational and Technical Centers and Institutes	checking the approval requirements of the general directorate of civil defense	5 Days

Fee Details (if any)

30 BD Fire prevention and protection certificate fees

License Information

1. Provide the documents mentioned in the “Required Documents” section
2. Comply with the requirements listed in the inspection checklist found in the “Other Downloadable Documents” section
3. Provide proof to the General Directorate of Civil Defense that an alarm and firefighting equipment have been installed within 6 months of obtaining a Commercial Registration and license

If a warehouse is used: A safety certificate must be obtained viaBahrain.bh

Required Documents

•No-objection letter for alarm and extinguisher installation from Civil Defense, or purchasing receipt of alarm equipment and extinguishers along with an annual maintenance contract from a company certified by Civil defense
•Photos required for civil defense activities
•Purchasing invoice of security camera system with specifying the type and storage capacity.

Other Documents

- Sample pictures of the general directorate of civil defense requirements
- licencing requirments of the general directorat of civil defense for activity number "8522-2"

Directorate Of Training And Institute Ministry Of Labor (Final Site Inspection) (8522-2)

Approval Name	Description	Estimated Time
Management and Business Training Centers and Institutes - Final Approval	This license is required to set up training institutions that offer training programmes in the field of administrative and commercial disciplines.	3 Days

Fee Details (if any)

There is no Estimated Processing Time (Days) in this license.

License Information

• The age requirement for the applicant should be 25 years of age or more

• Minimum capital requirement (Vocational and Technical Institutes and Centres):
- For Individual establishments: BD50,000
- For Companies: BD70,000

• Minimum capital requirement (Administrative and commercial Training Institutes and Centres):
- For Individual establishments: BD30,000
- For Companies: BD50,000

• For individual promoters, academic qualifications should not be less than general secondary certificate level.
• Please refer to Legislative Decree No. (25) of 1998 concerning private educational and training institutions and Law No. 17 of 2007 concerning vocational training in “other downloadable documents” for requirements

Required Documents

- Bio-data, qualifications and experience (only for Individual establishments)

Other Documents

- Technical and Vocational Training - Management and Business Training Centers and Institutes - Activity Licensing Form

Education

ISIC4	Business activity
8530	Higher education

Description

This activity includes the provision of post-secondary non-tertiary and tertiary education, including granting of degrees at baccalaureate, graduate or post-graduate level. The requirement for admission is at least a high school diploma or equivalent general academic training. Education can be provided in classrooms or through radio, television broadcast, Internet or correspondence.
This activity includes:
- Post-secondary non-tertiary education
- First stage of tertiary education (not leading to an advanced research qualification)
- Second stage of tertiary education (leading to an advanced research qualification)

This activity also includes:
- performing arts schools providing higher education

This activity excludes:
- Provision of primary education, secondary education or higher education

Business Requirements

Age

18 and above

Allowed for Nationalities

Bahraini 100%		GCC 100%	
American 100%		Singaporean 100%	
Icelander 100%		Liechtenstein er 100%	
Norwegian 100%		Swiss 100%	

Foreign Allowed up to 100%

Legal Type

It is allowed to register according to the legal forms mentioned below

Allowed for Individual Commercial Registration (ICR) : Yes

Allowed for Company Commercial Registration (CCR) : Yes

- Bahrain Shareholding Company (Public)
- With Limited Liability Company
- Branch of a Foreign Company
- Bahrain Shareholding Company (Closed)
- Partnership Company
- Simple Commandite Company
- Commandite By Shares Company
- Non Profit Company

Required Step of Licenses and Approvals

Ministry / Directorate	License / Approval Requirements	Approval Type
Higher Education	Private Higher Education Institution License - Pre	Pre

	Approval	
General Directorate Of Criminal Investigation	Certificate of good conduct	Pre
General Directrate Of Civil Defence	Approval by General Directorate of Civil Defense	Post
Traffic Operation And Control Department	Traffic Site Approval	Post
Municipality Affairs	Site Approval for Educational Institutions	Post
Higher Education	Private Higher Education Institution License - Final Approval	Final Site Inspection

Higher Education (Pre) (8530)

Approval Name	Description	Estimated Time
Private Higher Education Institution License - Pre Approval	license to establish a higher education institution is granted to institutions that offer courses of at least one academic year in an institution recognized academically after secondary school or its equivalent.	120 Days

Fee Details (if any)

There is no Estimated Processing Time (Days) in this license.

License Information

To obtain a pre-approval the following documents must be submitted:
1. Proposed Fee Structure
2. List of Academic Programs and their specifications, including brief description of objectives/aims, learning outcomes, number of credit hours, study plan, the requirements for admission & registrations, period and mode of study, Teaching language, Maximum and minimum to end the program, teaching and learning resources
3. Course/Module specifications of the courses/modules for each academic program, including: brief description of the course/module, its objectives, learning outcomes, the number of credit hours, study plan, requirements for admission and registration in the course/module, teaching and learning resources.
4. Copies of the drafts of all memoranda of understanding and any other cooperation agreements that the institution intends to conclude with other institutions (if applicable and Optional).
5. Detailed architectural drawings for the entire campus stamped by a licensed engineering firm in Bahrain (Optional).

Notes:

• All the required documents & data to be attached to this application must be submitted in accordance with the requirements stipulated in the regulations and decisions related to the Higher Education in the Kingdom of Bahrain
• All documents and data attached to this application, must be officially signed and stamped by the authorized persons that claim responsibility for the information provided. The role of the agent (if any) is limited to submitting the aforementioned documents and s/he may not sign on behalf of the license applicant unless the power of attorney gives him/her such right.
• The submitted copies of academic partnerships to be concluded with other higher education institutions that are written in a language other than Arabic must be accompanied by translated copies into Arabic, provided that the translation has been undertaken by an office licensed in the Kingdom of Bahrain to translate this type of legal document and contract.

Required Documents

•Copies of the drafts of all memoranda of understanding and any other cooperation agreements that the institution intends to conclude with other institutions (if applicable and Optional)
•Course/Module specifications of the courses/modules for each academic program, including brief description of the course/module, its objectives, learning outcomes, the number of credit hours, study plan, requirements for admission and registration in the course/module, teaching and learning resources.
•Detailed Architectural drawings for the entire campus stamped by a Licensed Engineering Firm in Bahrain (Optional)
•Estimated budget for the first five years
•List of Academic Programs and their specifications, including brief description of objectives/aims, learning outcomes, number of credit hours, study plan, the requirements for admission & registrations, period, educational system, Teaching language, Maximum and minimum to end the program, teaching and learning resources
•Proposed Fee Structure

General Directorate Of Criminal Investigation (Pre) (8530)

Approval Name	Description	Estimated Time
Certificate of good conduct	The approval is required if the commercial registration or licences require the investor to provide proof that he or she does not have any previous criminal records or blacklist activities.	7 Days

Fee Details (if any)

There is no Estimated Processing Time (Days) in this license.

License Information

There is no License Information in this license.

General Directrate Of Civil Defence (Post) (8530)

Approval Name	Description	Estimated Time
Approval by General Directorate of Civil Defense	This Approval is required to insure compliance with the fire prevention and protection requirements of General Directorate of Civil Defense	5 Days

Fee Details (if any)

There is no Estimated Processing Time (Days) in this license.

License Information

Please refer to the Fire prevention and protection requirements in the Other Downloadable Documents

Other Documents

- Fire prevention and protection requirements- 1
- Fire prevention and protection requirements- 2
- Fire prevention and protection requirements- 3
- Fire prevention and protection requirements- 4
- Fire prevention and protection requirements- 5
- Fire prevention and protection requirements- 6
- Fire prevention and protection requirements- 7
- Fire prevention and protection requirements- 8
- Protection & Safety Requirements From Fire in Restaurants

Traffic Operation And Control Department (Post) (8530)

Approval Name	Description	Estimated Time
Traffic Site Approval	The objective of this approval is to ensure that there is ample parking space and road accessibility to the premise operating a particular business activity	7 Days

Fee Details (if any)

There is no Estimated Processing Time (Days) in this license.

License Information

There is no License Information in this license.

Required Documents

- Architecture drawings for restaurant and Blueprints for parking
- Copy of CPR card
- Copy of Passport
- Project description

Municipality Affairs (Post) (8530)

Approval Name	Description	Estimated Time
Site Approval for Educational Institutions	Municipality Approval for the Commercial Registration address or the site in which the Activity will be practiced	3 Days

Fee Details (if any)

10 BD

License Information

General Conditions:
1. Size of shop/premises must be sufficient for the activity
2. Businesses may not carry out the activity outside the boundaries of the shop/ premises
3. It is prohibited to display or store any items or equipment outside the shop / premises boundary without prior approval from the Municipality
4. Maintain cleanliness of the site
5. Comply with the parking space regulations as per the Construction Regulatory Requirements

Activity Specific Conditions:
1. Comply with the regulatory requirements for construction
2. Submit a copy of the building permit (if applicable)
3. Comply with the parking requirements as per cabinet's decision (28) of the year 2009 regarding the Regulatory Requirements of Construction for various areas in the Kingdom of Bahrain
4. In the event of a site on a non-commercial street, then the standards pertaining to projects with a special nature should be followed

Note: Uploading pictures of the site/shop may expedite the process of obtaining approval

Required Documents

- Lease agreement (after obtaining the necessary approvals from other licensing entities)
- Shop photos

Other Documents

- Cabinet's Decision (56) of the year 2022 regarding the Regulatory Requirements of Construction for various areas in the Kingdom of Bahrain

Higher Education (Final Site Inspection) (8530)

Approval Name	Description	Estimated Time
Private Higher Education Institution License - Final Approval	license to establish a higher education institution is granted to institutions that offer courses of at least one academic year in an institution recognized academically after secondary school or its equivalent.	120 Days

Fee Details (if any)

There is no Estimated Processing Time (Days) in this license.

License Information

To obtain a Final-approval the following documents must be submitted:
1. Bank guarantee in the name of the private higher education institution to be licensed.
2. Copies of the drafts of all memoranda of understanding and any other cooperation agreements that the institution intends to conclude with other institutions (if applicable).
3. Detailed architectural drawings for the entire campus stamped by a licensed engineering firm in Bahrain.

After obtaining approval the below requirements should be provided:
Documents related to The bylaws of the Higher Education Institution:

1. A copy of the internal regulation for organizing the academic, financial & administrative affairs of the institution.
2. Organizational structure of the corporation
3. The organizational structure of the institution's colleges, scientific department, and academic programs

4. Faculty Guide
5. Employee Guide
6. Student Guide

Documents related to human resources that are required to operate and manage the organization :

1. A list of the names of the proposed members of the Institution's Board of Trustees, with a copy of their CV and academic qualifications
2. A list of the names of the proposed holders of senior positions in the organizational structure of the institution (the President of the institution/Vice Presidents/ Deans/ Head of Scientific Department & Administrative Units) with a copy of their CV and academic qualifications.
3. A list of the names of the suggested academic staff members for each academic program/specialization, provided that the list includes the academic title of the faculty member and their academic qualifications, with a copy of their CV
4. A list of the names of the proposed administrative body, their job titles and a copy of their CV and academic qualifications
5. A list of the names of the proposed technical staff members with copies of their CV and academic qualifications.

Notes:

• All the required documents & data to be attached to this application must be submitted in accordance with the requirements stipulated in the regulations and decisions related to the Higher Education in the Kingdom of Bahrain

• All documents and data attached to this application, must be officially signed and stamped by the authorized persons that claim responsibility for the information provided. The role of the agent (if any) is limited to submitting the aforementioned documents and s/he may not sign on behalf of the license applicant unless the power of attorney gives him/her such right.

• The submitted copies of academic partnerships to be concluded with other higher education institutions that are written in a language other than Arabic must be accompanied by translated copies into Arabic, provided that the translation has been undertaken by an office licensed in the Kingdom of Bahrain to translate this type of legal document and contract.

Required Documents

- Bank guarantee in the name of the private higher education institution to be licensed
- Copies of the drafts of all memoranda of understanding and any other cooperation agreements that the institution intends to conclude with other institutions (if applicable)
- Detailed Architectural drawings for the entire campus stamped by a Licensed Engineering Firm in Bahrain

Education

ISIC4	Business activity
854101	Sports Instruction (baseball, basketball, cricket, football, swimming, or any sports Instruction activity not specified elsewhere)

Description

This activity includes the provision of instruction in athletic activities to groups or individuals, such as by camps and schools. Instruction may be provided in diverse settings, such as the unit`s or client`s training facilities, educational institutions or by other means. Instruction provided in this class is formally organized.

This includes:
- sports instruction (baseball, basketball, cricket, football, etc)
- camps, sports instruction
- cheerleading instruction
- gymnastics instruction
- riding instruction, academies or schools
- swimming instruction
- professional sports instructors, teachers, coaches
- martial arts instruction
- card game instruction (such as bridge)
- yoga instruction

Business Requirements

Age

18 and above

Allowed for Nationalities

Bahraini 100%	GCC 100%
American 100%	Singaporean 100%
Icelander 100%	Liechtenstein er 100%
Norwegian 100%	Swiss 100%

Foreign Allowed up to 100%

Legal Type

It is allowed to register according to the legal forms mentioned below

Allowed for Individual Commercial Registration (ICR) : Yes

Allowed for Company Commercial Registration (CCR) : Yes

Allowed for Sijilli : Yes

- Bahrain Shareholding Company (Public)
- With Limited Liability Company
- Branch of a Foreign Company
- Bahrain Shareholding Company (Closed)
- Partnership Company
- Simple Commandite Company
- Commandite By Shares Company
- Non Profit Company

Required Step of Licenses and Approvals

Ministry / Directorate	License / Approval Requirements	Approval Type
Legal Affairs and Licensing Directorate	Approval of Sports Facilities	Post
Municipality Affairs	Site Approval for Educational Activities	Post

Legal Affairs and Licensing Directorate (Post) (854101)

Approval Name	Description	Estimated Time
Approval of Sports Facilities	This approval is required to ensure that all sport facilities are as per the general Sports Authority	5 Days

Fee Details (if any)

There is no Estimated Processing Time (Days) in this license.

License Information

Sports academies:
Establishments, shops and places where games, exercises, activities, sports services, or places prepared for this are practiced or provided, such as sports training centers of all kinds for different age groups, health clubs, swimming pools, fitness and sports halls, body building centers and others.

Conditions that must be met in the facility:
1. Existence of a contract of ownership or lease of the facility on which the project will be built.
2. Detailed engineering drawing of the facility.
3. The space of the place must be suitable to allow the exercise of the activity without obstacles.

age categories
1- From 5-15 years:
• Provide specialized trainers for this age group with scientific and practical experience.
• It is forbidden to use bodybuilding and weightlifting equipment for this category
• Be satisfied with free or recreational sports activities.
• The trainers and workers belonging to this category must have a certificate of good conduct from the concerned authorities.
• It is prohibited to sell or use any food supplement or protein for this category except under the supervision of a competent medical practitioner.
• A written consent from the guardian must be attached to register this category and

approve the training program.
2- From 16 years and over:
• Provide specialized trainers with scientific and practical experience.
• It is permissible to use bodybuilding and weightlifting equipment for this category.
• Providing the appropriate sports equipment and machines for this category.
• The trainers and workers of this category must have a certificate of good conduct from the concerned authority.
• It is permissible to sell or use any food supplement or proteins of this category under the supervision of a competent medical practitioner.

Disabled people:
• An approved medical report must be provided to describe the type of disability.
• A medical report must be provided for health fitness.
• It is preferable to provide specialized trainers for this category if they are received by the club.
• It is preferable to provide suitable sports equipment and machines for this category.
• It is prohibited to sell or use any food supplement or protein for this category except under the supervision of a competent medical practitioner.
• A written consent of the guardian must be attached to register this category if he is under 16 years of age.
• Compliance with the requirements of the Kingdom of Bahrain for construction regarding security and safety procedures for this category

To obtain conditional approval, you must:
1. Attach the required documents with a commitment to implement the conditions set forth in the “License of Activity Regulations.” You can refer to the “Activity Guide” in the Other Documents section.

In the case of a virtual record (my record), the holder of the record must have an academic or professional certificate in the field to be taught or trained in.

Required Documents

•Drawings of Sport Facility
•Photos of the shop or facility from the inside and outside showing the shop number and commercial advertisement. Attach the rental contract, electricity and water bill, and commercial address card
•The certificates and qualifications of the record holder (in the case of the virtual record only)

Other Documents

•operation of sports, halls for entertainment games and recreational facilities - Activity Licensing Form

Municipality Affairs (Post) (854101)

Approval Name	Description	Estimated Time
Site Approval for Educational Activities	Municipality Approval for the Commercial Registration address or the site in which the Activity will be practiced	3 Days

Fee Details (if any)

10 BD

License Information

General Conditions:
1. Size of shop/premises must be sufficient for the activity
2. Businesses may not carry out the activity outside the boundaries of the shop/ premises
3. It is prohibited to display or store any items or equipment outside the shop / premises boundary without prior approval from the Municipality
4. Maintain cleanliness of the site
5. Comply with the parking space regulations as per the Construction Regulatory Requirements

Activity Specific Conditions:
1. The commercial address for this activity can be registered in areas classified as commercial, services, or industrial
2. The commercial address of the Commercial Registration for this activity can an office address provided that the site is used for administrative purposes

Note: Uploading pictures of the site/shop may expedite the process of obtaining approval

Required Documents

- Lease agreement (after obtaining the necessary approvals from other licensing entities)
- Shop photos

Other Documents

- Cabinet's Decision (56) of the year 2022 regarding the Regulatory Requirements of Construction for various areas in the Kingdom of Bahrain

Education

ISIC4	Business activity
854103	Horse Riding Instruction

Description

This activity includes horse riding training and education

Business Requirements

Age

18 and above

Allowed for Nationalities

Bahraini 100%	GCC 100%
American 100%	Singaporean 100%
Icelander 100%	Liechtensteiner 100%
Norwegian 100%	Swiss 100%

Foreign Allowed up to 100%

Legal Type

It is allowed to register according to the legal forms mentioned below

Allowed for Individual Commercial Registration (ICR) : Yes

Allowed for Company Commercial Registration (CCR) : Yes

Allowed for Sijilli : Yes

- Bahrain Shareholding Company (Public)
- With Limited Liability Company
- Branch of a Foreign Company
- Bahrain Shareholding Company (Closed)
- Partnership Company
- Simple Commandite Company
- Commandite By Shares Company
- Non Profit Company

Required Step of Licenses and Approvals

Ministry / Directorate	License / Approval Requirements	Approval Type
Legal Affairs and Licensing Directorate	Approval of Sports Facilities	Post
Municipality Affairs	Site Approval for Educational Activities	Post

Legal Affairs and Licensing Directorate (Post) (854103)

Approval Name	Description	Estimated Time
Approval of Sports Facilities	This approval is required to ensure that all sport facilities are as per the general Sports Authority	5 Days

Fee Details (if any)

There is no Estimated Processing Time (Days) in this license.

License Information

Sports academies:
Establishments, shops and places where games, exercises, activities, sports services, or places prepared for this are practiced or provided, such as sports training centers of all kinds for different age groups, health clubs, swimming pools, fitness and sports halls, body building centers and others.

Conditions that must be met in the facility:
1. Existence of a contract of ownership or lease of the facility on which the project will be built.
2. Detailed engineering drawing of the facility.
3. The space of the place must be suitable to allow the exercise of the activity without obstacles.

age categories
1- From 5-15 years:
• Provide specialized trainers for this age group with scientific and practical experience.
• It is forbidden to use bodybuilding and weightlifting equipment for this category
• Be satisfied with free or recreational sports activities.
• The trainers and workers belonging to this category must have a certificate of good conduct from the concerned authorities.
• It is prohibited to sell or use any food supplement or protein for this category except under the supervision of a competent medical practitioner.
• A written consent from the guardian must be attached to register this category and

approve the training program.
2- From 16 years and over:
• Provide specialized trainers with scientific and practical experience.
• It is permissible to use bodybuilding and weightlifting equipment for this category.
• Providing the appropriate sports equipment and machines for this category.
• The trainers and workers of this category must have a certificate of good conduct from the concerned authority.
• It is permissible to sell or use any food supplement or proteins of this category under the supervision of a competent medical practitioner.

Disabled people:
• An approved medical report must be provided to describe the type of disability.
• A medical report must be provided for health fitness.
• It is preferable to provide specialized trainers for this category if they are received by the club.
• It is preferable to provide suitable sports equipment and machines for this category.
• It is prohibited to sell or use any food supplement or protein for this category except under the supervision of a competent medical practitioner.
• A written consent of the guardian must be attached to register this category if he is under 16 years of age.
• Compliance with the requirements of the Kingdom of Bahrain for construction regarding security and safety procedures for this category

To obtain conditional approval, you must:
1. Attach the required documents with a commitment to implement the conditions set forth in the “License of Activity Regulations.” You can refer to the “Activity Guide” in the Other Documents section.

In the case of a virtual record (my record), the holder of the record must have an academic or professional certificate in the field to be taught or trained in.

Required Documents

•Drawings of Sport Facility
•Photos of the shop or facility from the inside and outside showing the shop number and commercial advertisement. Attach the rental contract, electricity and water bill, and commercial address card
•The certificates and qualifications of the record holder (in the case of the virtual record only)

Other Documents

•operation of sports, halls for entertainment games and recreational facilities - Activity Licensing Form

Municipality Affairs (Post) (854103)

Approval Name	Description	Estimated Time
Site Approval for Educational Activities	Municipality Approval for the Commercial Registration address or the site in which the Activity will be practiced	3 Days

Fee Details (if any)

10 BD

License Information

General Conditions:
1. Size of shop/premises must be sufficient for the activity
2. Businesses may not carry out the activity outside the boundaries of the shop/ premises
3. It is prohibited to display or store any items or equipment outside the shop / premises boundary without prior approval from the Municipality
4. Maintain cleanliness of the site
5. Comply with the parking space regulations as per the Construction Regulatory Requirements

Activity Specific Conditions:
1. The commercial address for this activity can be registered in areas classified as commercial, services, or industrial
2. The commercial address of the Commercial Registration for this activity can an office address provided that the site is used for administrative purposes

Note: Uploading pictures of the site/shop may expedite the process of obtaining approval

Required Documents

- Lease agreement (after obtaining the necessary approvals from other licensing entities)
- Shop photos

Other Documents

- Cabinet's Decision (56) of the year 2022 regarding the Regulatory Requirements of Construction for various areas in the Kingdom of Bahrain

Education

ISIC4	Business activity
8541041	Scuba Diving Instructions

Description

This activity includes scuba diving training and education

Business Requirements

Age

18 and above

Allowed for Nationalities

Bahraini 100%	GCC 100%
American 100%	Singaporean 100%
Icelander 100%	Liechtensteiner 100%
Norwegian 100%	Swiss 100%

Foreign Allowed up to 100%

Legal Type

It is allowed to register according to the legal forms mentioned below

Allowed for Individual Commercial Registration (ICR) : Yes

Allowed for Company Commercial Registration (CCR) : Yes

- Bahrain Shareholding Company (Public)
- With Limited Liability Company
- Branch of a Foreign Company
- Bahrain Shareholding Company (Closed)
- Partnership Company
- Simple Commandite Company
- Commandite By Shares Company
- Non Profit Company

Required Step of Licenses and Approvals

Ministry / Directorate	License / Approval Requirements	Approval Type
Directorate of Fisheries	Notification Only	Notification Only
Municipality Affairs	Site Approval for Educational Activities	Post

Directorate of Fisheries (Notification Only) (8541041)

Approval Name	Description	Estimated Time
Notification Only	Notify license entity that new application is applied.	There is no License Information in this license. Days

Fee Details (if any)

There is no Estimated Processing Time (Days) in this license.

License Information

There is no License Information in this license.

Municipality Affairs (Post) (8541041)

Approval Name	Description	Estimated Time
Site Approval for Educational Activities	Municipality Approval for the Commercial Registration address or the site in which the Activity will be practiced	3 Days

Fee Details (if any)

10 BD

License Information

General Conditions:
1. Size of shop/premises must be sufficient for the activity
2. Businesses may not carry out the activity outside the boundaries of the shop/ premises
3. It is prohibited to display or store any items or equipment outside the shop / premises boundary without prior approval from the Municipality
4. Maintain cleanliness of the site
5. Comply with the parking space regulations as per the Construction Regulatory Requirements

Activity Specific Conditions:
1. The commercial address for this activity can be registered in areas classified as commercial, services, or industrial
2. The commercial address of the Commercial Registration for this activity can an office address provided that the site is used for administrative purposes

Note: Uploading pictures of the site/shop may expedite the process of obtaining approval

Required Documents

- Lease agreement (after obtaining the necessary approvals from other licensing entities)
- Shop photos

Other Documents

- Cabinet's Decision (56) of the year 2022 regarding the Regulatory Requirements of Construction for various areas in the Kingdom of Bahrain

Education

ISIC4	Business activity
854105	Martial Arts Instruction

Description

This activity includes:
- Professional sports instructors, teachers, coaches
- Martial arts instructors

Business Requirements

Age

18 and above

Allowed for Nationalities

Bahraini 100%	GCC 100%
American 100%	Singaporean 100%
Icelander 100%	Liechtensteiner 100%
Norwegian 100%	Swiss 100%

Foreign Allowed up to 100%

Legal Type

It is allowed to register according to the legal forms mentioned below

Allowed for Individual Commercial Registration (ICR) : Yes

Allowed for Company Commercial Registration (CCR) : Yes

Allowed for Sijilli : Yes

- Bahrain Shareholding Company (Public)
- With Limited Liability Company
- Branch of a Foreign Company
- Bahrain Shareholding Company (Closed)
- Partnership Company
- Simple Commandite Company
- Commandite By Shares Company
- Non Profit Company

Required Step of Licenses and Approvals

Ministry / Directorate	License / Approval Requirements	Approval Type
Legal Affairs and Licensing Directorate	Approval of Sports Facilities	Post
Municipality Affairs	Site Approval for Educational Activities	Post

Legal Affairs and Licensing Directorate (Post) (854105)

Approval Name	Description	Estimated Time
Approval of Sports Facilities	This approval is required to ensure that all sport facilities are as per the general Sports Authority	5 Days

Fee Details (if any)

There is no Estimated Processing Time (Days) in this license.

License Information

Sports academies:
Establishments, shops and places where games, exercises, activities, sports services, or places prepared for this are practiced or provided, such as sports training centers of all kinds for different age groups, health clubs, swimming pools, fitness and sports halls, body building centers and others.

Conditions that must be met in the facility:
1. Existence of a contract of ownership or lease of the facility on which the project will be built.
2. Detailed engineering drawing of the facility.
3. The space of the place must be suitable to allow the exercise of the activity without obstacles.

age categories
1- From 5-15 years:
• Provide specialized trainers for this age group with scientific and practical experience.
• It is forbidden to use bodybuilding and weightlifting equipment for this category
• Be satisfied with free or recreational sports activities.
• The trainers and workers belonging to this category must have a certificate of good conduct from the concerned authorities.
• It is prohibited to sell or use any food supplement or protein for this category except under the supervision of a competent medical practitioner.
• A written consent from the guardian must be attached to register this category and

approve the training program.
2- From 16 years and over:
• Provide specialized trainers with scientific and practical experience.
• It is permissible to use bodybuilding and weightlifting equipment for this category.
• Providing the appropriate sports equipment and machines for this category.
• The trainers and workers of this category must have a certificate of good conduct from the concerned authority.
• It is permissible to sell or use any food supplement or proteins of this category under the supervision of a competent medical practitioner.

Disabled people:
• An approved medical report must be provided to describe the type of disability.
• A medical report must be provided for health fitness.
• It is preferable to provide specialized trainers for this category if they are received by the club.
• It is preferable to provide suitable sports equipment and machines for this category.
• It is prohibited to sell or use any food supplement or protein for this category except under the supervision of a competent medical practitioner.
• A written consent of the guardian must be attached to register this category if he is under 16 years of age.
• Compliance with the requirements of the Kingdom of Bahrain for construction regarding security and safety procedures for this category

To obtain conditional approval, you must:
1. Attach the required documents with a commitment to implement the conditions set forth in the “License of Activity Regulations.” You can refer to the “Activity Guide” in the Other Documents section.

In the case of a virtual record (my record), the holder of the record must have an academic or professional certificate in the field to be taught or trained in.

Required Documents

•Drawings of Sport Facility
•Photos of the shop or facility from the inside and outside showing the shop number and commercial advertisement. Attach the rental contract, electricity and water bill, and commercial address card
•The certificates and qualifications of the record holder (in the case of the virtual record only)

Other Documents

•operation of sports, halls for entertainment games and recreational facilities - Activity Licensing Form

Municipality Affairs (Post) (854105)

Approval Name	Description	Estimated Time
Site Approval for Educational Activities	Municipality Approval for the Commercial Registration address or the site in which the Activity will be practiced	3 Days

Fee Details (if any)

10 BD

License Information

General Conditions:
1. Size of shop/premises must be sufficient for the activity
2. Businesses may not carry out the activity outside the boundaries of the shop/ premises
3. It is prohibited to display or store any items or equipment outside the shop / premises boundary without prior approval from the Municipality
4. Maintain cleanliness of the site
5. Comply with the parking space regulations as per the Construction Regulatory Requirements

Activity Specific Conditions:
1. The commercial address for this activity can be registered in areas classified as commercial, services, or industrial
2. The commercial address of the Commercial Registration for this activity can an office address provided that the site is used for administrative purposes

Note: Uploading pictures of the site/shop may expedite the process of obtaining approval

Required Documents

- Lease agreement (after obtaining the necessary approvals from other licensing entities)
- Shop photos

Other Documents

- Cabinet's Decision (56) of the year 2022 regarding the Regulatory Requirements of Construction for various areas in the Kingdom of Bahrain

Education

ISIC4	Business activity
854106	Fitness/ Yoga Instruction

Description

This activity includes:
- Professional sports instructors, teachers, coaches
- Yoga instructors

Business Requirements

Age

18 and above

Allowed for Nationalities

Bahraini 100%	GCC 100%
American 100%	Singaporean 100%
Icelander 100%	Liechtensteiner 100%
Norwegian 100%	Swiss 100%

Foreign Allowed up to 100%

Legal Type

It is allowed to register according to the legal forms mentioned below

Allowed for Individual Commercial Registration (ICR) : Yes

Allowed for Company Commercial Registration (CCR) : Yes

Allowed for Sijilli : Yes

- Bahrain Shareholding Company (Public)
- With Limited Liability Company
- Branch of a Foreign Company
- Bahrain Shareholding Company (Closed)
- Partnership Company
- Simple Commandite Company
- Commandite By Shares Company
- Non Profit Company

Required Step of Licenses and Approvals

Ministry / Directorate	License / Approval Requirements	Approval Type
Legal Affairs and Licensing Directorate	Approval of Sports Facilities	Post
Municipality Affairs	Site Approval for Educational Activities	Post

Legal Affairs and Licensing Directorate (Post) (854106)

Approval Name	Description	Estimated Time
Approval of Sports Facilities	This approval is required to ensure that all sport facilities are as per the general Sports Authority	5 Days

Fee Details (if any)

There is no Estimated Processing Time (Days) in this license.

License Information

Sports academies:
Establishments, shops and places where games, exercises, activities, sports services, or places prepared for this are practiced or provided, such as sports training centers of all kinds for different age groups, health clubs, swimming pools, fitness and sports halls, body building centers and others.

Conditions that must be met in the facility:
1. Existence of a contract of ownership or lease of the facility on which the project will be built.
2. Detailed engineering drawing of the facility.
3. The space of the place must be suitable to allow the exercise of the activity without obstacles.

age categories
1- From 5-15 years:
• Provide specialized trainers for this age group with scientific and practical experience.
• It is forbidden to use bodybuilding and weightlifting equipment for this category
• Be satisfied with free or recreational sports activities.
• The trainers and workers belonging to this category must have a certificate of good conduct from the concerned authorities.
• It is prohibited to sell or use any food supplement or protein for this category except under the supervision of a competent medical practitioner.
• A written consent from the guardian must be attached to register this category and

approve the training program.
2- From 16 years and over:
• Provide specialized trainers with scientific and practical experience.
• It is permissible to use bodybuilding and weightlifting equipment for this category.
• Providing the appropriate sports equipment and machines for this category.
• The trainers and workers of this category must have a certificate of good conduct from the concerned authority.
• It is permissible to sell or use any food supplement or proteins of this category under the supervision of a competent medical practitioner.

Disabled people:
• An approved medical report must be provided to describe the type of disability.
• A medical report must be provided for health fitness.
• It is preferable to provide specialized trainers for this category if they are received by the club.
• It is preferable to provide suitable sports equipment and machines for this category.
• It is prohibited to sell or use any food supplement or protein for this category except under the supervision of a competent medical practitioner.
• A written consent of the guardian must be attached to register this category if he is under 16 years of age.
• Compliance with the requirements of the Kingdom of Bahrain for construction regarding security and safety procedures for this category

To obtain conditional approval, you must:
1. Attach the required documents with a commitment to implement the conditions set forth in the “License of Activity Regulations.” You can refer to the “Activity Guide” in the Other Documents section.

In the case of a virtual record (my record), the holder of the record must have an academic or professional certificate in the field to be taught or trained in.

Required Documents

•Drawings of Sport Facility
•Photos of the shop or facility from the inside and outside showing the shop number and commercial advertisement. Attach the rental contract, electricity and water bill, and commercial address card
•The certificates and qualifications of the record holder (in the case of the virtual record only)

Other Documents

•operation of sports, halls for entertainment games and recreational facilities - Activity Licensing Form

Municipality Affairs (Post) (854106)

Approval Name	Description	Estimated Time
Site Approval for Educational Activities	Municipality Approval for the Commercial Registration address or the site in which the Activity will be practiced	3 Days

Fee Details (if any)

10 BD

License Information

General Conditions:
1. Size of shop/premises must be sufficient for the activity
2. Businesses may not carry out the activity outside the boundaries of the shop/ premises
3. It is prohibited to display or store any items or equipment outside the shop / premises boundary without prior approval from the Municipality
4. Maintain cleanliness of the site
5. Comply with the parking space regulations as per the Construction Regulatory Requirements

Activity Specific Conditions:
1. The commercial address for this activity can be registered in areas classified as commercial, services, or industrial
2. The commercial address of the Commercial Registration for this activity can an office address provided that the site is used for administrative purposes

Note: Uploading pictures of the site/shop may expedite the process of obtaining approval

Required Documents

- Lease agreement (after obtaining the necessary approvals from other licensing entities)
- Shop photos

Other Documents

- Cabinet's Decision (56) of the year 2022 regarding the Regulatory Requirements of Construction for various areas in the Kingdom of Bahrain

Education

ISIC4	Business activity
854109	Other Sports and recreation education

Description

This activity includes the provision of instruction in athletic activities to groups or individuals, such as by camps and schools. Overnight and day sports instruction camps are also included. This activity does not include activities of academic schools, colleges and universities. Instruction may be provided in diverse settings, such as the unit`s or client`s training facilities, educational institutions or by other means. Instruction provided in this activity is formally organized.
This activity includes:
- Sports instruction (baseball, basketball, cricket, football, etc)
- Camps, sports instruction
- Cheerleading instruction
- Gymnastics instruction
- riding instruction, academies or schools
- swimming instruction
- Professional sports instructors, teachers, and coaches
- Martial arts instruction
- Card game instruction (such as bridge)
- Yoga instruction

This activity excludes:
- Cultural education

Business Requirements

Age

18 and above

Allowed for Nationalities

Bahraini 100%		GCC 100%	
American 100%		Singaporean 100%	
Icelander 100%		Liechtenstein er 100%	
Norwegian 100%		Swiss 100%	

Foreign Allowed up to 100%

Legal Type

It is allowed to register according to the legal forms mentioned below

Allowed for Individual Commercial Registration (ICR) : Yes

Allowed for Company Commercial Registration (CCR) : Yes

- Bahrain Shareholding Company (Public)
- With Limited Liability Company
- Branch of a Foreign Company
- Bahrain Shareholding Company (Closed)
- Partnership Company
- Simple Commandite Company
- Commandite By Shares Company
- Non Profit Company

Required Step of Licenses and Approvals

Ministry / Directorate	License / Approval Requirements	Approval Type
Municipality Affairs	Site Approval for Educational Activities	Post

Legal Affairs and Licensing Directorate	Approval of Sports Facilities	Post

Municipality Affairs (Post) (854109)

Approval Name	Description	Estimated Time
Site Approval for Educational Activities	Municipality Approval for the Commercial Registration address or the site in which the Activity will be practiced	3 Days

Fee Details (if any)

10 BD

License Information

General Conditions:
1. Size of shop/premises must be sufficient for the activity
2. Businesses may not carry out the activity outside the boundaries of the shop/ premises
3. It is prohibited to display or store any items or equipment outside the shop / premises boundary without prior approval from the Municipality
4. Maintain cleanliness of the site
5. Comply with the parking space regulations as per the Construction Regulatory Requirements

Activity Specific Conditions:
1. The commercial address for this activity can be registered in areas classified as commercial, services, or industrial
2. The commercial address of the Commercial Registration for this activity can an office address provided that the site is used for administrative purposes

Note: Uploading pictures of the site/shop may expedite the process of obtaining approval

Required Documents

- Lease agreement (after obtaining the necessary approvals from other licensing entities)
- Shop photos

Other Documents

- Cabinet's Decision (56) of the year 2022 regarding the Regulatory Requirements of Construction for various areas in the Kingdom of Bahrain

Legal Affairs and Licensing Directorate (Post) (854109)

Approval Name	Description	Estimated Time
Approval of Sports Facilities	This approval is required to ensure that all sport facilities are as per the general Sports Authority	5 Days

Fee Details (if any)

There is no Estimated Processing Time (Days) in this license.

License Information

Sports academies:
Establishments, shops and places where games, exercises, activities, sports services, or places prepared for this are practiced or provided, such as sports training centers of all kinds for different age groups, health clubs, swimming pools, fitness and sports halls, body building centers and others.

Conditions that must be met in the facility:
1. Existence of a contract of ownership or lease of the facility on which the project will be built.
2. Detailed engineering drawing of the facility.
3. The space of the place must be suitable to allow the exercise of the activity without obstacles.

age categories
1- From 5-15 years:
• Provide specialized trainers for this age group with scientific and practical experience.
• It is forbidden to use bodybuilding and weightlifting equipment for this category
• Be satisfied with free or recreational sports activities.
• The trainers and workers belonging to this category must have a certificate of good conduct from the concerned authorities.
• It is prohibited to sell or use any food supplement or protein for this category except under the supervision of a competent medical practitioner.
• A written consent from the guardian must be attached to register this category and

approve the training program.
2- From 16 years and over:
• Provide specialized trainers with scientific and practical experience.
• It is permissible to use bodybuilding and weightlifting equipment for this category.
• Providing the appropriate sports equipment and machines for this category.
• The trainers and workers of this category must have a certificate of good conduct from the concerned authority.
• It is permissible to sell or use any food supplement or proteins of this category under the supervision of a competent medical practitioner.

Disabled people:
• An approved medical report must be provided to describe the type of disability.
• A medical report must be provided for health fitness.
• It is preferable to provide specialized trainers for this category if they are received by the club.
• It is preferable to provide suitable sports equipment and machines for this category.
• It is prohibited to sell or use any food supplement or protein for this category except under the supervision of a competent medical practitioner.
• A written consent of the guardian must be attached to register this category if he is under 16 years of age.
• Compliance with the requirements of the Kingdom of Bahrain for construction regarding security and safety procedures for this category

To obtain conditional approval, you must:
1. Attach the required documents with a commitment to implement the conditions set forth in the “License of Activity Regulations.” You can refer to the “Activity Guide” in the Other Documents section.

In the case of a virtual record (my record), the holder of the record must have an academic or professional certificate in the field to be taught or trained in.

Required Documents

•Drawings of Sport Facility
•Photos of the shop or facility from the inside and outside showing the shop number and commercial advertisement. Attach the rental contract, electricity and water bill, and commercial address card
•The certificates and qualifications of the record holder (in the case of the virtual record only)

Other Documents

•operation of sports, halls for entertainment games and recreational facilities - Activity Licensing Form

Education

ISIC4	Business activity
85421	Performing arts/ drama school

Description

This activity includes provision of instruction in the arts, drama and music. This includes businesses that provide formally organized instruction, mainly for hobby, recreational or self-development purposes, but such instruction does not lead to a professional diploma, baccalaureate or graduate degree.

This activity includes:
- piano teachers and other music instruction
- art instruction
- dance instruction and dance studios
- drama schools (except academic)
- fine arts schools (except academic)
- performing arts schools (except academic)
- photography schools (except commercial)

Business Requirements

Age

18 and above

Allowed for Nationalities

Bahraini 100%	GCC 100%
American 100%	Singaporean 100%
Icelander 100%	Liechtenstein er 100%
Norwegian 100%	Swiss 100%

Foreign Allowed up to 100%

Legal Type

It is allowed to register according to the legal forms mentioned below

Allowed for Individual Commercial Registration (ICR) : Yes

Allowed for Company Commercial Registration (CCR) : Yes

Allowed for Sijilli : Yes

- Bahrain Shareholding Company (Public)
- With Limited Liability Company
- Branch of a Foreign Company
- Bahrain Shareholding Company (Closed)
- Partnership Company
- Simple Commandite Company
- Commandite By Shares Company
- Non Profit Company

Required Step of Licenses and Approvals

Ministry / Directorate	License / Approval Requirements	Approval Type
Municipality Affairs	Site Approval for Educational Activities	Post

Municipality Affairs (Post) (85421)

Approval Name	Description	Estimated Time
Site Approval for Educational Activities	Municipality Approval for the Commercial Registration address or the site in which the Activity will be practiced	3 Days

Fee Details (if any)

10 BD

License Information

General Conditions:
1. Size of shop/premises must be sufficient for the activity
2. Businesses may not carry out the activity outside the boundaries of the shop/ premises
3. It is prohibited to display or store any items or equipment outside the shop / premises boundary without prior approval from the Municipality
4. Maintain cleanliness of the site
5. Comply with the parking space regulations as per the Construction Regulatory Requirements

Activity Specific Conditions:
1. The commercial address for this activity can be registered in areas classified as commercial, services, or industrial
2. The commercial address of the Commercial Registration for this activity can an office address provided that the site is used for administrative purposes

Note: Uploading pictures of the site/shop may expedite the process of obtaining approval

Required Documents

- Lease agreement (after obtaining the necessary approvals from other licensing entities)
- Shop photos

Other Documents

- Cabinet's Decision (56) of the year 2022 regarding the Regulatory Requirements of Construction for various areas in the Kingdom of Bahrain

Education

ISIC4	Business activity
854953	Design of Training Programs

Description

This activity Includes:
- Preparing and designing of training programs, and supplying companies, institutions and corporate bodies with such programs in return for charges.

Business Requirements

Age

18 and above

Allowed for Nationalities

Bahraini 100%	GCC 100%
American 100%	Singaporean 100%
Icelander 100%	Liechtenstein er 100%
Norwegian 100%	Swiss 100%

Foreign Allowed up to 100%

Legal Type

It is allowed to register according to the legal forms mentioned below

Allowed for Individual Commercial Registration (ICR) : Yes

Allowed for Company Commercial Registration (CCR) : Yes

Allowed for Sijilli : Yes

- Bahrain Shareholding Company (Public)
- With Limited Liability Company
- Branch of a Foreign Company
- Bahrain Shareholding Company (Closed)
- Partnership Company
- Simple Commandite Company
- Commandite By Shares Company
- Non Profit Company

Required Step of Licenses and Approvals

Ministry / Directorate	License / Approval Requirements	Approval Type
Municipality Affairs	Site Approval for Educational Activities	Post

Municipality Affairs (Post) (854953)

Approval Name	Description	Estimated Time
Site Approval for Educational Activities	Municipality Approval for the Commercial Registration address or the site in which the Activity will be practiced	3 Days

Fee Details (if any)

10 BD

License Information

General Conditions:
1. Size of shop/premises must be sufficient for the activity
2. Businesses may not carry out the activity outside the boundaries of the shop/ premises
3. It is prohibited to display or store any items or equipment outside the shop / premises boundary without prior approval from the Municipality
4. Maintain cleanliness of the site
5. Comply with the parking space regulations as per the Construction Regulatory Requirements

Activity Specific Conditions:
1. The commercial address for this activity can be registered in areas classified as commercial, services, or industrial
2. The commercial address of the Commercial Registration for this activity can an office address provided that the site is used for administrative purposes

Note: Uploading pictures of the site/shop may expedite the process of obtaining approval

Required Documents

- Lease agreement (after obtaining the necessary approvals from other licensing entities)
- Shop photos

Other Documents

- Cabinet's Decision (56) of the year 2022 regarding the Regulatory Requirements of Construction for various areas in the Kingdom of Bahrain

Education

ISIC4	Business activity
85499	Other education

Description

Includes an administrative office only to support the education and training of individuals and public and private institutions not contrary to the regulations of the educational institutions and training of the licensed, and the service to the client or through correspondence or radio, television or the Internet, does not support this type of education or training to issue a certificate of An attendance statement may be issued in the event that the beneficiary requests no academic or professional consideration.

For example:
- Individual assistance to review professional and language examinations.
- Cooperation with training institutions with the technical support of trainers and training programs.
- Training of rescue workers
Life saving training

This section does not cover:
Conducting training programs that grant certificates of attendance, completion or international professional acquisition and the equivalent thereof
- Certificate of completion of high school or higher.
- Educational, rehabilitation or care programs for children under the age of six.
- Provide guidance for prisoners.
- Diagnosis, education, or sheltering of persons with disabilities

Business Requirements

Age

18 and above

Allowed for Nationalities

Bahraini 100%	GCC 100%
American 100%	Singaporean 100%
Icelander 100%	Liechtenstein er 100%
Norwegian 100%	Swiss 100%

Foreign Allowed up to 100%

Legal Type

It is allowed to register according to the legal forms mentioned below

Allowed for Individual Commercial Registration (ICR) : Yes

Allowed for Company Commercial Registration (CCR) : Yes

Allowed for Sijilli : Yes

- Bahrain Shareholding Company (Public)
- With Limited Liability Company
- Branch of a Foreign Company
- Bahrain Shareholding Company (Closed)
- Partnership Company
- Simple Commandite Company
- Commandite By Shares Company
- Non Profit Company

Required Step of Licenses and Approvals

Ministry / Directorate	License / Approval Requirements	Approval Type
Municipality Affairs	Site Approval for Educational Activities	Post

Municipality Affairs (Post) (85499)

Approval Name	Description	Estimated Time
Site Approval for Educational Activities	Municipality Approval for the Commercial Registration address or the site in which the Activity will be practiced	3 Days

Fee Details (if any)

10 BD

License Information

General Conditions:
1. Size of shop/premises must be sufficient for the activity
2. Businesses may not carry out the activity outside the boundaries of the shop/ premises
3. It is prohibited to display or store any items or equipment outside the shop / premises boundary without prior approval from the Municipality
4. Maintain cleanliness of the site
5. Comply with the parking space regulations as per the Construction Regulatory Requirements

Activity Specific Conditions:
1. The commercial address for this activity can be registered in areas classified as commercial, services, or industrial
2. The commercial address of the Commercial Registration for this activity can an office address provided that the site is used for administrative purposes

Note: Uploading pictures of the site/shop may expedite the process of obtaining approval

Required Documents

- Lease agreement (after obtaining the necessary approvals from other licensing entities)
- Shop photos

Other Documents

- Cabinet's Decision (56) of the year 2022 regarding the Regulatory Requirements of Construction for various areas in the Kingdom of Bahrain

Education

ISIC4	Business activity
854991	Training in Civil Aviation

Description

Conducting training courses in all aviation activities in aviation school or institutions

Business Requirements

Age

18 and above

Allowed for Nationalities

Bahraini 100%	GCC 100%
American 100%	Singaporean 100%
Icelander 100%	Liechtensteiner 100%
Norwegian 100%	Swiss 100%

Foreign Allowed up to 100%

Legal Type

It is allowed to register according to the legal forms mentioned below

Allowed for Individual Commercial Registration (ICR) : Yes

Allowed for Company Commercial Registration (CCR) : Yes

- Bahrain Shareholding Company (Public)
- With Limited Liability Company
- Branch of a Foreign Company
- Bahrain Shareholding Company (Closed)
- Partnership Company
- Simple Commandite Company
- Commandite By Shares Company
- Non Profit Company

Required Step of Licenses and Approvals

Ministry / Directorate	License / Approval Requirements	Approval Type
Civil Aviation Affairs	Training in Civil Aviation	Pre
General Directorate Of Criminal Investigation	Approval by General Directorate of Criminal Investigation	Pre
Municipality Affairs	Site Approval for Educational Activities	Post
Civil Aviation Affairs	Training in Civil Aviation	Post
Civil Aviation Affairs	Training in Civil Aviation	Final Site Inspection

Civil Aviation Affairs (Pre) (854991)

Approval Name	Description	Estimated Time
Training in Civil Aviation	Conducting training courses in all aviation activities in aviation school or institutions.	10 Days

Fee Details (if any)

• Application fees: BD 100 (non-refundable in cases where the application is not approved).
• License fees: BD 5,000.
• Renewal fees: BD 3,000 (every two years).
• One-time approval for training fees: BD 1,000

License Information

• Capital of the company should not be less than 500,000 BD.
• The license is valid for two years and renewal application must be submitted 2 months before expiry
• Adherence to the standards and regulatory requirements contained in the regulations under the Civil Aviation Law issued by virtue of Law No. 14 of 2013

Required Documents

•Feasibility, technical, economic and financial studies
•Fill application Form ATD/ATCL/OF04
•Memorandum of Association

Other Documents

- Chicago Convention and its Annexes.
- Civil Aviation Law No.14 of 2013
- Minister of Transport and Telecommunication Decree No. 12 of 2016 amending some provisions of the Regulation under the Civil Aviation Law.
- Minister of Transportation and Telecommunication Decree No. 25 of 2016 of CAA fees and departure fees.
- Minster of Transportation and Telecommunication Decree No. 21 of 2013 issuing the regulations under the Civil Aviation Law.

General Directorate Of Criminal Investigation (Pre) (854991)

Approval Name	Description	Estimated Time
Approval by General Directorate of Criminal Investigation	General Directorate of Criminal Investigation Approval for the Activity	7 Days

Fee Details (if any)

There is no Estimated Processing Time (Days) in this license.

License Information

- The applicant should not have a criminal record, unless they have been rehabilitated in criminal cases

Municipality Affairs (Post) (854991)

Approval Name	Description	Estimated Time
Site Approval for Educational Activities	Municipality Approval for the Commercial Registration address or the site in which the Activity will be practiced	3 Days

Fee Details (if any)

10 BD

License Information

General Conditions:
1. Size of shop/premises must be sufficient for the activity
2. Businesses may not carry out the activity outside the boundaries of the shop/ premises
3. It is prohibited to display or store any items or equipment outside the shop / premises boundary without prior approval from the Municipality
4. Maintain cleanliness of the site
5. Comply with the parking space regulations as per the Construction Regulatory Requirements

Activity Specific Conditions:
1. The commercial address for this activity can be registered in areas classified as commercial, services, or industrial
2. The commercial address of the Commercial Registration for this activity can an office address provided that the site is used for administrative purposes

Note: Uploading pictures of the site/shop may expedite the process of obtaining approval

Required Documents

- Lease agreement (after obtaining the necessary approvals from other licensing entities)
- Shop photos

Other Documents

- Cabinet's Decision (56) of the year 2022 regarding the Regulatory Requirements of Construction for various areas in the Kingdom of Bahrain

Civil Aviation Affairs (Post) (854991)

Approval Name	Description	Estimated Time
Training in Civil Aviation	Conducting training courses in all aviation activities in aviation school or institutions.	10 Days

Fee Details (if any)

• Application fees: BD 100 (non-refundable in cases where the application is not approved).
• License fees: BD 5,000.
• Renewal fees: BD 3,000 (every two years).
• One-time approval for training fees: BD 1,000

License Information

• Capital of the company should not be less than 500,000 BD.
• The license is valid for two years and renewal application must be submitted 2 months before expiry
• Adherence to the standards and regulatory requirements contained in the regulations under the Civil Aviation Law issued by virtue of Law No. 14 of 2013

Required Documents

•Feasibility, technical, economic and financial studies
•Fill application Form ATD/ATCL/OF04
•Memorandum of Association

Other Documents

- Chicago Convention and its Annexes.
- Civil Aviation Law No.14 of 2013
- Minister of Transport and Telecommunication Decree No. 12 of 2016 amending some provisions of the Regulation under the Civil Aviation Law.
- Minister of Transportation and Telecommunication Decree No. 25 of 2016 of CAA fees and departure fees.
- Minster of Transportation and Telecommunication Decree No. 21 of 2013 issuing the regulations under the Civil Aviation Law.

Civil Aviation Affairs (Final Site Inspection) (854991)

Approval Name	Description	Estimated Time
Training in Civil Aviation	Conducting training courses in all aviation activities in aviation school or institutions.	10 Days

Fee Details (if any)

• Application fees: BD 100 (non-refundable in cases where the application is not approved).
• License fees: BD 5,000.
• Renewal fees: BD 3,000 (every two years).
• One-time approval for training fees: BD 1,000

License Information

• Capital of the company should not be less than 500,000 BD.
• The license is valid for two years and renewal application must be submitted 2 months before expiry
• Adherence to the standards and regulatory requirements contained in the regulations under the Civil Aviation Law issued by virtue of Law No. 14 of 2013

Required Documents

•Feasibility, technical, economic and financial studies
•Fill application Form ATD/ATCL/OF04
•Memorandum of Association

Other Documents

- Chicago Convention and its Annexes.
- Civil Aviation Law No.14 of 2013
- Minister of Transport and Telecommunication Decree No. 12 of 2016 amending some provisions of the Regulation under the Civil Aviation Law.
- Minister of Transportation and Telecommunication Decree No. 25 of 2016 of CAA fees and departure fees.
- Minster of Transportation and Telecommunication Decree No. 21 of 2013 issuing the regulations under the Civil Aviation Law.

Education

ISIC4	Business activity
855-1	Educational support activities

Description

it includes an administrative office only to rehabilitate and train individuals and public and private institutions in a manner that does not violate the applicable regulations of the Ministry of Education and does not conflict with the activities practiced by private educational institutions, for example:

- Individual assistance to review professional certification exams
-Cooperating with training institutions by providing technical support for trainers and training programs
-Training of rescue workers
-Lifesaving training

The activity does not include:

-Implementation of training programs that grant certificates of attendance, completion or selection of an international profession or its equivalent
- Certificate of completion of any of the educational levels or above
-Educational, rehabilitation or sponsorship programs under the age of six
-Family counseling assessment
-Diagnosing, educating, caring for, or accommodating people with disabilities

Business Requirements

Age

18 and above

Allowed for Nationalities

Bahraini 100%		GCC 100%	
American 100%		Singaporean 100%	
Icelander 100%		Liechtenstein er 100%	
Norwegian 100%		Swiss 100%	

Foreign Allowed up to 100%

Legal Type

It is allowed to register according to the legal forms mentioned below

Allowed for Individual Commercial Registration (ICR) : Yes

Allowed for Company Commercial Registration (CCR) : Yes

- Bahrain Shareholding Company (Public)
- With Limited Liability Company
- Branch of a Foreign Company
- Bahrain Shareholding Company (Closed)
- Partnership Company
- Simple Commandite Company
- Commandite By Shares Company
- Non Profit Company

Required Step of Licenses and Approvals

Ministry / Directorate	License / Approval Requirements	Approval Type
Municipality Affairs	Site Approval for Educational Activities	Post

Municipality Affairs (Post) (855-1)

Approval Name	Description	Estimated Time
Site Approval for Educational Activities	Municipality Approval for the Commercial Registration address or the site in which the Activity will be practiced	3 Days

Fee Details (if any)

10 BD

License Information

General Conditions:
1. Size of shop/premises must be sufficient for the activity
2. Businesses may not carry out the activity outside the boundaries of the shop/ premises
3. It is prohibited to display or store any items or equipment outside the shop / premises boundary without prior approval from the Municipality
4. Maintain cleanliness of the site
5. Comply with the parking space regulations as per the Construction Regulatory Requirements

Activity Specific Conditions:
1. The commercial address for this activity can be registered in areas classified as commercial, services, or industrial
2. The commercial address of the Commercial Registration for this activity can an office address provided that the site is used for administrative purposes

Note: Uploading pictures of the site/shop may expedite the process of obtaining approval

Required Documents

- Lease agreement (after obtaining the necessary approvals from other licensing entities)
- Shop photos

Other Documents

- Cabinet's Decision (56) of the year 2022 regarding the Regulatory Requirements of Construction for various areas in the Kingdom of Bahrain

Education

ISIC4	Business activity
855-2	Educational support activities - Educational Services Offices for Students Studying Abroad

Description

Educational Services Offices for Students Studying Abroad

Business Requirements

✔ Age

✔ Allowed for Nationalities

Bahraini 100%	GCC 100%
American 100%	Singaporean 100%
Icelander 100%	Liechtensteiner 100%
Norwegian 100%	Swiss 100%

Foreign Allowed up to 100%

Legal Type

It is allowed to register according to the legal forms mentioned below

Allowed for Individual Commercial Registration (ICR) : Yes

Allowed for Company Commercial Registration (CCR) : Yes

Allowed for Sijilli : Yes

- Bahrain Shareholding Company (Public)
- With Limited Liability Company
- Branch of a Foreign Company
- Bahrain Shareholding Company (Closed)
- Partnership Company
- Simple Commandite Company
- Commandite By Shares Company
- Non Profit Company

Required Step of Licenses and Approvals

Ministry / Directorate	License / Approval Requirements	Approval Type
Municipality Affairs	Site Approval for Educational Activities	Post

Municipality Affairs (Post) (855-2)

Approval Name	Description	Estimated Time
Site Approval for Educational Activities	Municipality Approval for the Commercial Registration address or the site in which the Activity will be practiced	3 Days

Fee Details (if any)

10 BD

License Information

General Conditions:
1. Size of shop/premises must be sufficient for the activity
2. Businesses may not carry out the activity outside the boundaries of the shop/ premises
3. It is prohibited to display or store any items or equipment outside the shop / premises boundary without prior approval from the Municipality
4. Maintain cleanliness of the site
5. Comply with the parking space regulations as per the Construction Regulatory Requirements

Activity Specific Conditions:
1. The commercial address for this activity can be registered in areas classified as commercial, services, or industrial
2. The commercial address of the Commercial Registration for this activity can an office address provided that the site is used for administrative purposes

Note: Uploading pictures of the site/shop may expedite the process of obtaining approval

Required Documents

- Lease agreement (after obtaining the necessary approvals from other licensing entities)
- Shop photos

Other Documents

- Cabinet's Decision (56) of the year 2022 regarding the Regulatory Requirements of Construction for various areas in the Kingdom of Bahrain

Human health and social work activities

سجلات
SIJILAT
نظام السجلات التجارية
COMMERCIAL REGISTRATION PORTAL

Human health and social work activities

ISIC4	Business activity
74901	Translation and interpretation

Description

This activity includes translation and interpretation services and Sign language

Business Requirements

Age

18 and above

Allowed for Nationalities

- Bahraini 100%
- American 100%
- Liechtenstein er 100%
- Swiss 100%
- GCC 100%
- Icelander 100%
- Norwegian 100%

Legal Type

It is allowed to register according to the legal forms mentioned below

Allowed for Individual Commercial Registration (ICR) : Yes

Allowed for Company Commercial Registration (CCR) : Yes

Allowed for Sijilli : Yes

- Bahrain Shareholding Company (Public)
- With Limited Liability Company
- Branch of a Foreign Company
- Bahrain Shareholding Company (Closed)
- Partnership Company
- Simple Commandite Company
- Commandite By Shares Company
- Non Profit Company

Required Step of Licenses and Approvals

Ministry / Directorate	License / Approval Requirements	Approval Type
Directorate of Publication and Press	Translation and interpretation	Notification Only
Municipality Affairs	Site Approval for Administrative and support service activities	Post

Directorate of Publication and Press (Notification Only) (74901)

Approval Name	Description	Estimated Time
Translation and interpretation	Translation and interpretation	5 Days

Fee Details (if any)

There is no Estimated Processing Time (Days) in this license.

License Information

All Business establishments of audio-visual, print and electronic media in the Kingdom of Bahrain must be comply with the law regulating the press, printing and publishing and other relevant laws

Other Documents

•Resolution No. (1) of 2015 regarding standards for supervision and control of media contents

Municipality Affairs (Post) (74901)

Approval Name	Description	Estimated Time
Site Approval for Administrative and support service activities	Municipality Approval for the Commercial Registration address or the site in which the Activity will be practiced	3 Days

Fee Details (if any)

10

License Information

General Conditions:
1. Size of shop/premises must be sufficient for the activity
2. Businesses may not carry out the activity outside the boundaries of the shop/ premises
3. It is prohibited to display or store any items or equipment outside the shop / premises boundary without prior approval from the Municipality. In the event of non-compliance, the Ministry of Municipality Affairs has the right to take necessary action.
4. Maintain cleanliness of the site
5. Comply with the parking space regulations as per the Construction Regulatory Requirements

Activity Specific Conditions:
1. The Commercial Registration for this activity can be registered on commercial, service, and industrial streets..
2. The commercial address of the Commercial Registration for this activity can an office address provided that the site is used for administrative purposes and is not located in a residential area

Note: Uploading pictures of the site/shop may expedite the process of obtaining

approval

Required Documents

- Lease agreement (after obtaining the necessary approvals from other licensing entities)
- Shop photos

Other Documents

- Cabinet's Decision (56) of the year 2022 regarding the Regulatory Requirements of Construction for various areas in the Kingdom of Bahrain

Human health and social work activities

ISIC4	Business activity
74902	Valuation/ evaluation Activities

Description

This activity includes valuation and/or evaluation activities

Business Requirements

Age

18 and above

Allowed for Nationalities

Bahraini 100%	GCC 100%
American 100%	Singaporean 100%
Icelander 100%	Liechtensteiner 100%
Norwegian 100%	Swiss 100%

Foreign Allowed up to 100%

Legal Type

It is allowed to register according to the legal forms mentioned below

Allowed for Individual Commercial Registration (ICR) : Yes

Allowed for Company Commercial Registration (CCR) : Yes

- Bahrain Shareholding Company (Public)
- With Limited Liability Company
- Branch of a Foreign Company
- Bahrain Shareholding Company (Closed)
- Partnership Company
- Simple Commandite Company
- Commandite By Shares Company
- Non Profit Company

Required Step of Licenses and Approvals

Ministry / Directorate	License / Approval Requirements	Approval Type
Municipality Affairs	Site Approval for Administrative and support service activities	Post

Municipality Affairs (Post) (74902)

Approval Name	Description	Estimated Time
Site Approval for Administrative and support service activities	Municipality Approval for the Commercial Registration address or the site in which the Activity will be practiced	3 Days

Fee Details (if any)

10

License Information

General Conditions:
1. Size of shop/premises must be sufficient for the activity
2. Businesses may not carry out the activity outside the boundaries of the shop/ premises
3. It is prohibited to display or store any items or equipment outside the shop / premises boundary without prior approval from the Municipality. In the event of non-compliance, the Ministry of Municipality Affairs has the right to take necessary action.
4. Maintain cleanliness of the site
5. Comply with the parking space regulations as per the Construction Regulatory Requirements

Activity Specific Conditions:
1. The Commercial Registration for this activity can be registered on commercial, service, and industrial streets..
2. The commercial address of the Commercial Registration for this activity can an office address provided that the site is used for administrative purposes and is not located in a residential area

Note: Uploading pictures of the site/shop may expedite the process of obtaining

approval

Required Documents

- Lease agreement (after obtaining the necessary approvals from other licensing entities)
- Shop photos

Other Documents

- Cabinet's Decision (56) of the year 2022 regarding the Regulatory Requirements of Construction for various areas in the Kingdom of Bahrain

Human health and social work activities

ISIC4	Business activity
749031	Security Consulting

Description

This activity includes Providing technical consultancy and technical security systems and safety developed in the residential and commercial properties of all kinds, and also includes establishments operating in the detection of defects oil installations or civil construction such as bridges, roads and high rises as well as disadvantages of engines for ships, aircraft or equipment and equipment in oil refineries or terminals energy and desalination of sea water, etc., including the detection and analysis of technical results and preparing Darsat and reports showing the status of cases and treatment programs.

Business Requirements

Age

18 and above

Allowed for Nationalities

Bahraini 100%	GCC 100%
American 100%	Singaporean 100%
Icelander 100%	Liechtenstein er 100%
Norwegian 100%	Swiss 100%

Foreign Allowed up to 100%

Legal Type

It is allowed to register according to the legal forms mentioned below

Allowed for Individual Commercial Registration (ICR) : Yes

Allowed for Company Commercial Registration (CCR) : Yes

- Bahrain Shareholding Company (Public)
- With Limited Liability Company
- Branch of a Foreign Company
- Bahrain Shareholding Company (Closed)
- Partnership Company
- Simple Commandite Company
- Commandite By Shares Company
- Non Profit Company

Required Step of Licenses and Approvals

Ministry / Directorate	License / Approval Requirements	Approval Type
General Directorate For Guards Ministry Of Interior	Security Firm License	Post
Municipality Affairs	Site Approval for Administrative and support service activities	Post

General Directorate For Guards Ministry Of Interior (Post) (749031)

Approval Name	Description	Estimated Time
Security Firm License	The licence is required if investor intends set up a security firm in Bahrain which offers security services such as security guard surveillance.	90 Days

Fee Details (if any)

3500 BD for a new license.
License Validity: 3 Years

License Information

-The Company's Logo should show the name and trademark of the company, and must not look similar to the Kingdom of Bahrain's logo nor any other security form licensed in Bahrain. The logo must not violate public morals.
-The company must have security as the primary activity of its business for at least ten years (for branches of foreign companies only)

Required Documents

•3 new photos size 4x6 of the management/ managing person of the company
•Application form
•Bank guarantee of Twenty Thousands Bahraini Dinars (BD 20,000) under the name of the Ministry of Interior nonrefundable for the duration of the license (once licensed)
•Copy of Good Conduct Certificate from Bahrain's General Directorate of Criminal Investigation for the management/ managing person of the company
•Copy of ID and Passport for the management/ managing person of the company
•Copy of academic qualifications for the management/ managing person of the company
•Copy of notarized Memorandum of Article of Association, attached with a letter from (parents, company representative) defining role and responsibility of the board members
•Provide any necessary documents to prove the validity of the mother company's license (branches of foreign companies only)
•Statement of the company's Past Experience (If available) in the field of security service along with the supporting documents
•Submit a copy of the company's logo

Other Documents

•Collection of Legislations regarding Private Security & Guards Firms - AR
•Collection of Legislations regarding Private Security & Guards Firms - EN

Municipality Affairs (Post) (749031)

Approval Name	Description	Estimated Time
Site Approval for Administrative and support service activities	Municipality Approval for the Commercial Registration address or the site in which the Activity will be practiced	3 Days

Fee Details (if any)

10

License Information

General Conditions:
1. Size of shop/premises must be sufficient for the activity
2. Businesses may not carry out the activity outside the boundaries of the shop/ premises
3. It is prohibited to display or store any items or equipment outside the shop / premises boundary without prior approval from the Municipality. In the event of non-compliance, the Ministry of Municipality Affairs has the right to take necessary action.
4. Maintain cleanliness of the site
5. Comply with the parking space regulations as per the Construction Regulatory Requirements

Activity Specific Conditions:
1. The Commercial Registration for this activity can be registered on commercial, service, and industrial streets..
2. The commercial address of the Commercial Registration for this activity can an office address provided that the site is used for administrative purposes and is not located in a residential area

Note: Uploading pictures of the site/shop may expedite the process of obtaining

approval

Required Documents

- Lease agreement (after obtaining the necessary approvals from other licensing entities)
- Shop photos

Other Documents

- Cabinet's Decision (56) of the year 2022 regarding the Regulatory Requirements of Construction for various areas in the Kingdom of Bahrain

Human health and social work activities

ISIC4	Business activity
749032	Agriculture related consultancy

Description

This activity includes agriculture related consultancy services

Business Requirements

Age

18 and above

Allowed for Nationalities

Bahraini 100%	GCC 100%
American 100%	Singaporean 100%
Icelander 100%	Liechtensteiner 100%
Norwegian 100%	Swiss 100%

Foreign Allowed up to 100%

Legal Type

It is allowed to register according to the legal forms mentioned below

Allowed for Individual Commercial Registration (ICR) : Yes

Allowed for Company Commercial Registration (CCR) : Yes

Allowed for Sijilli : Yes

- Bahrain Shareholding Company (Public)
- With Limited Liability Company
- Branch of a Foreign Company
- Bahrain Shareholding Company (Closed)
- Partnership Company
- Simple Commandite Company
- Commandite By Shares Company
- Non Profit Company

Required Step of Licenses and Approvals

Ministry / Directorate	License / Approval Requirements	Approval Type
Municipality Affairs	Site Approval for Administrative and support service activities	Post

Municipality Affairs (Post) (749032)

Approval Name	Description	Estimated Time
Site Approval for Administrative and support service activities	Municipality Approval for the Commercial Registration address or the site in which the Activity will be practiced	3 Days

Fee Details (if any)

10

License Information

General Conditions:
1. Size of shop/premises must be sufficient for the activity
2. Businesses may not carry out the activity outside the boundaries of the shop/ premises
3. It is prohibited to display or store any items or equipment outside the shop / premises boundary without prior approval from the Municipality. In the event of non-compliance, the Ministry of Municipality Affairs has the right to take necessary action.
4. Maintain cleanliness of the site
5. Comply with the parking space regulations as per the Construction Regulatory Requirements

Activity Specific Conditions:
1. The Commercial Registration for this activity can be registered on commercial, service, and industrial streets..
2. The commercial address of the Commercial Registration for this activity can an office address provided that the site is used for administrative purposes and is not located in a residential area

Note: Uploading pictures of the site/shop may expedite the process of obtaining

approval

Required Documents

- Lease agreement (after obtaining the necessary approvals from other licensing entities)
- Shop photos

Other Documents

- Cabinet's Decision (56) of the year 2022 regarding the Regulatory Requirements of Construction for various areas in the Kingdom of Bahrain

Human health and social work activities

ISIC4	Business activity
749033	Environment related consultancy

Description

This activity includes environmental consulting services

Business Requirements

Age

18 and above

Allowed for Nationalities

Bahraini 100%	GCC 100%
American 100%	Singaporean 100%
Icelander 100%	Liechtensteiner 100%
Norwegian 100%	Swiss 100%

Foreign Allowed up to 100%

Legal Type

It is allowed to register according to the legal forms mentioned below

Allowed for Individual Commercial Registration (ICR) : Yes

Allowed for Company Commercial Registration (CCR) : Yes

- Bahrain Shareholding Company (Public)
- With Limited Liability Company
- Branch of a Foreign Company
- Bahrain Shareholding Company (Closed)
- Partnership Company
- Simple Commandite Company
- Commandite By Shares Company
- Non Profit Company

Required Step of Licenses and Approvals

Ministry / Directorate	License / Approval Requirements	Approval Type
Supreme Council for Environment	Environmental Approval for Environment related consultancy activity	Post
Municipality Affairs	Site Approval for Administrative and support service activities	Post

Supreme Council for Environment (Post) (749033)

Approval Name	Description	Estimated Time
Environmental Approval for Environment related consultancy activity	This service aims to assess the environmental impact and licensing of development, industrial and production projects and activities, in accordance with the standards of protecting the environment and its natural resources	10 Days

Fee Details (if any)

Description This service aims to assess the environmental impact and licensing of development, industrial and production projects and activities, in accordance with the standards of protecting the environment and its natural resources

License Fee (BHD) - BD 1000 (Category A)
- BD 800 (Category B)
- BD 500 (Category C)

- The same fees applied during licensing renewal every two years Estimated Processing Time (Days) 10

License Information

To check the requirements for this approval, kindly download the detailed requirements sheet from the other downloadable documents section, which includes the following requirements:

- Building layout Engineering and Equipment Requirements
- Work-place Requirements

- Storage Requirements
- Material Management Requirements
- Waste Management Requirements
- Documents and Reporting Requirements
- General Requirements

Other Documents

- Annex to the Minister of Housing, Municipalities and Environment order regarding the project's environmental assessment
- Law No. (2) of 2021 regarding the environmental standards of air as decided by the Chairman of the Supreme Council for Environment
- Law No. (3) of 2021 regarding the environmental standards of water as decided by the Chairman of the Supreme Council for the Environment
- Law No. (5) of 2021 regarding CITES Annexes to the Convention on International Trade in Endangered Fauna and Flora
- Law No. (54) of 2014 regarding the approval of the unified law regarding substances that deplete the ozone layer for the GCC countries
- Law No. (7) of 2022 regarding the environment
- Ministerial Order No. (1) of 1998 regarding Project's Environmental Assessment
- Ministerial Order No. (10) of 2006 regarding the installation of devices for on-line monitoring of atmospheric air pollutants
- Ministerial Order No. (11) of 2019 regarding the issue of technical specification of plastic products
- Ministerial Order No. (3) of 2005 regarding environmental requirements and standards in workplaces, especially regarding workers' exposure to heat and noise, and the provision of tools and protective clothing such as gloves, glasses, face masks and earplugs, with a commitment to use them during work
- Ministerial Order No. (3) of 2006 regarding the management of hazardous waste
- Ministerial Order No. (4) of 2005 regarding the management of used oils
- Ministerial Order No. (4) of 2006 regarding the management of hazardous chemicals
- Ministerial Order No. (4) of 2021 regarding the fees of the licenses and services provided by the Supreme Council for Environment
- Ministerial Order No. (6) of 2013 amending order No. (4) of 2006 regarding the management of hazardous chemicals
- Ministerial Order No. (7) of 2002 regarding the control importation and use of prohibited and severely restricted chemicals, and not to import any chemical compound except after obtaining approvals of all concerned authorities, including the executive body of the Supreme Council for Environment
- Ministerial Order No. (7) of 2013 amending order No. (3) of 2006 regarding the management of hazardous waste
- Ministerial Order No. 4 of 2014 regarding the management of the environmental consulting offices operations in the Kingdom of Bahrain
- Order No. (2) of 2020 determining the categories of fees for licensing refrigeration media, refrigeration units and air conditioning units as decided by the Chairman of the

Supreme Council for the Environment
•Requirements for business activities
•law No. (1) of 2020 regarding the management of refrigeration media, refrigeration units and air conditioning units as decided by the Chairman of the Supreme Council for the Environment
•law No. (2) of 2019 regarding the ban on the import of plastic waste of all kinds as decided by the Chairman of the Supreme Council for the Environment
•law No. (204) of 2018 regarding banning the export of some types of local fishes, shrimps and other aquatic organisms, and coordinating with the Agriculture and Marine Resources at the Ministry of Works, Municipalities and Urban Planning regarding the import and export of some species

Municipality Affairs (Post) (749033)

Approval Name	Description	Estimated Time
Site Approval for Administrative and support service activities	Municipality Approval for the Commercial Registration address or the site in which the Activity will be practiced	3 Days

Fee Details (if any)

10

License Information

General Conditions:
1. Size of shop/premises must be sufficient for the activity
2. Businesses may not carry out the activity outside the boundaries of the shop/ premises
3. It is prohibited to display or store any items or equipment outside the shop / premises boundary without prior approval from the Municipality. In the event of non-compliance, the Ministry of Municipality Affairs has the right to take necessary action.
4. Maintain cleanliness of the site
5. Comply with the parking space regulations as per the Construction Regulatory Requirements

Activity Specific Conditions:
1. The Commercial Registration for this activity can be registered on commercial, service, and industrial streets..
2. The commercial address of the Commercial Registration for this activity can an office address provided that the site is used for administrative purposes and is not located in a residential area

Note: Uploading pictures of the site/shop may expedite the process of obtaining

approval

Required Documents

- Lease agreement (after obtaining the necessary approvals from other licensing entities)
- Shop photos

Other Documents

- Cabinet's Decision (56) of the year 2022 regarding the Regulatory Requirements of Construction for various areas in the Kingdom of Bahrain

Human health and social work activities

ISIC4	Business activity
7490341	Tourism related consultancy

Description

This activity includes:
Specialized firms engaged in preparing marketing and feasibility studies along with the required surveys and fields questionnaires, in addition to providing technical consultancies in connection with investing in hotels or any hotel related services whether for new projects or for enhancing the existing ones.

Business Requirements

Age

18 and above

Allowed for Nationalities

Bahraini 100%	GCC 100%
American 100%	Singaporean 100%
Icelander 100%	Liechtenstein er 100%
Norwegian 100%	Swiss 100%

Foreign Allowed up to 100%

Legal Type

It is allowed to register according to the legal forms mentioned below

Allowed for Individual Commercial Registration (ICR) : Yes

Allowed for Company Commercial Registration (CCR) : Yes

- Bahrain Shareholding Company (Public)
- With Limited Liability Company
- Branch of a Foreign Company
- Bahrain Shareholding Company (Closed)
- Partnership Company
- Simple Commandite Company
- Commandite By Shares Company
- Non Profit Company

Required Step of Licenses and Approvals

Ministry / Directorate	License / Approval Requirements	Approval Type
Municipality Affairs	Site Approval for Administrative and support service activities	Post
Bahrain Tourim and Exibitions Authority	Providing consulting services in the field of tourism	Final Site Inspection

Municipality Affairs (Post) (7490341)

Approval Name	Description	Estimated Time
Site Approval for Administrative and support service activities	Municipality Approval for the Commercial Registration address or the site in which the Activity will be practiced	3 Days

Fee Details (if any)

10

License Information

General Conditions:
1. Size of shop/premises must be sufficient for the activity
2. Businesses may not carry out the activity outside the boundaries of the shop/ premises
3. It is prohibited to display or store any items or equipment outside the shop / premises boundary without prior approval from the Municipality. In the event of non-compliance, the Ministry of Municipality Affairs has the right to take necessary action.
4. Maintain cleanliness of the site
5. Comply with the parking space regulations as per the Construction Regulatory Requirements

Activity Specific Conditions:
1. The Commercial Registration for this activity can be registered on commercial, service, and industrial streets..
2. The commercial address of the Commercial Registration for this activity can an office address provided that the site is used for administrative purposes and is not located in a residential area

Note: Uploading pictures of the site/shop may expedite the process of obtaining

approval

Required Documents

- Lease agreement (after obtaining the necessary approvals from other licensing entities)
- Shop photos

Other Documents

- Cabinet's Decision (56) of the year 2022 regarding the Regulatory Requirements of Construction for various areas in the Kingdom of Bahrain

Bahrain Tourim and Exibitions Authority (Final Site Inspection) (7490341)

Approval Name	Description	Estimated Time
Providing consulting services in the field of tourism	This activity includes: Specialized companies working in the preparation of marketing studies and feasibility along with the required surveys and questionnaires, in addition to providing technical advice regarding investment in tourism facilities both for new projects and to strengthen the existing ones.	5 Days

Fee Details (if any)

Upon final approval, the license issue/renewal fee (BD 200) will be charged.

License Information

Requirements after obtaining the license:
- The license applicant must have a qualified office manager with appropriate consultancy experience.
- Office staff must be qualified to work in the field of consultancy.
- Pay the tourism license fee.

Human health and social work activities

ISIC4	Business activity
7490342	Water resources related consultancy

Description

This activity includes:
Provision of advisory services in the development of groundwater resources including the search for water, properties of rocks, reservoir mechanics, drilling wells and groundwater testing, etc.

Business Requirements

Age

18 and above

Allowed for Nationalities

Bahraini 100%	GCC 100%
American 100%	Singaporean 100%
Icelander 100%	Liechtenstein er 100%
Norwegian 100%	Swiss 100%

Foreign Allowed up to 100%

Legal Type

It is allowed to register according to the legal forms mentioned below

Allowed for Individual Commercial Registration (ICR) : Yes

Allowed for Company Commercial Registration (CCR) : Yes

- Bahrain Shareholding Company (Public)
- With Limited Liability Company
- Branch of a Foreign Company
- Bahrain Shareholding Company (Closed)
- Partnership Company
- Simple Commandite Company
- Commandite By Shares Company
- Non Profit Company

Required Step of Licenses and Approvals

Ministry / Directorate	License / Approval Requirements	Approval Type
Municipality Affairs	Site Approval for Administrative and support service activities	Post
Agricultural Engineering and Resources Directorate	Water resources related consultancy	Post

Municipality Affairs (Post) (7490342)

Approval Name	Description	Estimated Time
Site Approval for Administrative and support service activities	Municipality Approval for the Commercial Registration address or the site in which the Activity will be practiced	3 Days

Fee Details (if any)

10

License Information

General Conditions:
1. Size of shop/premises must be sufficient for the activity
2. Businesses may not carry out the activity outside the boundaries of the shop/ premises
3. It is prohibited to display or store any items or equipment outside the shop / premises boundary without prior approval from the Municipality. In the event of non-compliance, the Ministry of Municipality Affairs has the right to take necessary action.
4. Maintain cleanliness of the site
5. Comply with the parking space regulations as per the Construction Regulatory Requirements

Activity Specific Conditions:
1. The Commercial Registration for this activity can be registered on commercial, service, and industrial streets..
2. The commercial address of the Commercial Registration for this activity can an office address provided that the site is used for administrative purposes and is not located in a residential area

Note: Uploading pictures of the site/shop may expedite the process of obtaining

approval

Required Documents

- Lease agreement (after obtaining the necessary approvals from other licensing entities)
- Shop photos

Other Documents

- Cabinet's Decision (56) of the year 2022 regarding the Regulatory Requirements of Construction for various areas in the Kingdom of Bahrain

Agricultural Engineering and Resources Directorate (Post) (7490342)

Approval Name	Description	Estimated Time
Water resources related consultancy	This activity includes: Provision of advisory services in the development of groundwater resources including the search for water, properties of rocks, reservoir mechanics, drilling wells and groundwater testing, etc.	5 Days

Fee Details (if any)

There is no Estimated Processing Time (Days) in this license.

License Information

After the CR holder obtain the license in water resources related consultancy, they must submit an official letter to the Local Agriculture Production Directorate to include them among the Authorized companies that provide consultancy services in water resources.

Required Documents

- Application Form for Site Investigation Boreholes & Its Related Activities
- Application for Well Drilling Permit
- Application for water well drilling

Other Documents

- Decree of law No. (12) for the year of 1980 Regulating the Groundwater Use
- Decree of law No. (12) for the year of 1997
- Decree of law No. (9) for the year of 1999

Human health and social work activities

ISIC4	Business activity
7490343	Family Counseling

Description

This activity includes counseling Family members to cope with various difficulties

Business Requirements

Age

27 and above

Allowed for Nationalities

Bahraini 100%	GCC 100%
American 100%	Singaporean 100%
Icelander 100%	Liechtensteiner 100%
Norwegian 100%	Swiss 100%

Foreign Allowed up to 100%

Legal Type

It is allowed to register according to the legal forms mentioned below

Allowed for Individual Commercial Registration (ICR) : Yes

Allowed for Company Commercial Registration (CCR) : Yes

- Bahrain Shareholding Company (Public)
- With Limited Liability Company
- Branch of a Foreign Company
- Bahrain Shareholding Company (Closed)
- Partnership Company
- Simple Commandite Company
- Commandite By Shares Company
- Non Profit Company

Required Step of Licenses and Approvals

Ministry / Directorate	License / Approval Requirements	Approval Type
Family Counseling Unit	Family Counseling	Pre
General Directorate Of Criminal Investigation	Approval by General Directorate of Criminal Investigation	Pre
General Directrate Of Civil Defence	Family Counseling	Post
Municipality Affairs	Municipality Site Approval	Post
Family Counseling Unit	Family Counseling	Final Site Inspection

Family Counseling Unit (Pre) (7490343)

Approval Name	Description	Estimated Time
Family Counseling	Family Counseling	5 Days

Fee Details (if any)

There is no Estimated Processing Time (Days) in this license.

License Information

• Applicant should be aged 30 or above
• A minimum capital requirement of BD5,000
• The applicant should have a bachelor's degree in the field of family counseling
• The director should have at least 5 years' experience in the field of family counseling
• Operate from a separate building with complete approval from the concerned municipality and satisfy the conditions and requirements of the General Directorate of Civil Defense.
• The feasibility study must cover the following: About the Project Family Counseling Center, objectives, outputs, applied work procedures, programs and services, target group, expected number of beneficiaries, working hours, organizational structure for the management of the center and a statement identifying the required functions and qualifications, recruitment strategy, salary structure, and source of salary

Required Documents

- A copy of the lease or title deed of the building
- Academic qualification of the proposed Director of the center
- Academic qualifications of the proposed director
- Bank Account Certificate
- Certificate of good conduct of the proposed director
- Completed application form
- Copy of the curriculum, procedures, and sample of forms, tests, and tools
- Copy of the internal regulations and by laws
- Credentials and experience certificate of the proposed director who will be responsible for all technical and administrative work of the Foundation
- Statement clarifying the source of funding, the amount allocated for the operation, and the ability to sustain funding

Other Documents

- Administrative Schedule Template
- Financial Schedule Template
- Ministerial Decision No. (44) of 2011 regarding the requirements and procedures for licensing the opening of family counseling centers
- Requirements and procedures for licensing the opening of family counseling centers

General Directorate Of Criminal Investigation (Pre) (7490343)

Approval Name	Description	Estimated Time
Approval by General Directorate of Criminal Investigation	General Directorate of Criminal Investigation Approval for the Activity	7 Days

Fee Details (if any)

There is no Estimated Processing Time (Days) in this license.

License Information

- The applicant should not have a criminal record, unless they have been rehabilitated in criminal cases

General Directrate Of Civil Defence (Post) (7490343)

Approval Name	Description	Estimated Time
Family Counseling	checking the approval requirements of the general directorate of civil defense	5 Days

Fee Details (if any)

30 BD Fire prevention and protection certificate fees

License Information

1. Provide the documents mentioned in the “Required Documents” section
2. Comply with the requirements listed in the inspection checklist found in the “Other Downloadable Documents” section
3. Provide proof to the General Directorate of Civil Defense that an alarm and firefighting equipment have been installed within 6 months of obtaining a Commercial Registration and license

If a warehouse is used: A safety certificate must be obtained viaBahrain.bh

Required Documents

•No-objection letter for alarm and extinguisher installation from Civil Defense, or purchasing receipt of alarm equipment and extinguishers along with an annual maintenance contract from a company certified by Civil defense
•Photos required for civil defense activities
•Purchasing invoice of security camera system with specifying the type and storage capacity.

Other Documents

- Sample pictures of the general directorate of civil defense requirements
- licencing requirments of the general directorat of civil defense for activity number "7490343"

Municipality Affairs (Post) (7490343)

Approval Name	Description	Estimated Time
Municipality Site Approval	Municipality approval of the business location (site) is required for all types of business activities. Municipalities verify that the proposed location / zone are appropriate for the proposed business activity. Site approval is issued automatically for pre-approved commercial areas, such as commercial malls and commercial buildings.	15 Days

Fee Details (if any)

Company application registration form
1. Copy of applicant's CPR card (passport for non-Bahrainis)
2. Two copies of property deed or rental agreement
3. If application is for relocation from one area to another, certificate of relocation by previous Municipality
4. Copy of electricity bill or electricity account number for new premises
5. Copy of sale agreement, if CR is purchased from another person
6. Copy of power of attorney, if required

License Information

There is no License Information in this license.

Required Documents

- Lease agreement (after obtaining the necessary approvals from other licensing entities)
- Photos of the premises

Other Documents

- قرار رقم (56) لسنة 2022 بإصدار الاشتراطات التنظيمية للتعمير بمختلف المناطق في المملكة

Family Counseling Unit (Final Site Inspection) (7490343)

Approval Name	Description	Estimated Time
Family Counseling	Family Counseling	5 Days

Fee Details (if any)

There is no Estimated Processing Time (Days) in this license.

License Information

- Applicant should be aged 30 or above
- A minimum capital requirement of BD5,000
- The applicant should have a bachelor's degree in the field of family counseling
- The director should have at least 5 years' experience in the field of family counseling
- Operate from a separate building with complete approval from the concerned municipality and satisfy the conditions and requirements of the General Directorate of Civil Defense.
- The feasibility study must cover the following: About the Project Family Counseling Center, objectives, outputs, applied work procedures, programs and services, target group, expected number of beneficiaries, working hours, organizational structure for the management of the center and a statement identifying the required functions and qualifications, recruitment strategy, salary structure, and source of salary

Required Documents

- A copy of the lease or title deed of the building
- Academic qualification of the proposed Director of the center
- Academic qualifications of the proposed director
- Bank Account Certificate
- Certificate of good conduct of the proposed director
- Completed application form
- Copy of the curriculum, procedures, and sample of forms, tests, and tools
- Copy of the internal regulations and by laws
- Credentials and experience certificate of the proposed director who will be responsible for all technical and administrative work of the Foundation
- Statement clarifying the source of funding, the amount allocated for the operation, and the ability to sustain funding

Other Documents

- Administrative Schedule Template
- Financial Schedule Template
- Ministerial Decision No. (44) of 2011 regarding the requirements and procedures for licensing the opening of family counseling centers
- Requirements and procedures for licensing the opening of family counseling centers

Human health and social work activities

ISIC4	Business activity
74909	Other professional, scientific and technical activities

Description

This activity includes professional, scientific and technical activities that are not mentioned elsewhere in the list of activities.

For example, this activity includes but not limited to:
- Business brokerage activities, i.e. arranging for the purchase and sale of small and medium-sized businesses, including professional practices, but not including real estate or insurance brokerage
- Patent brokerage activities (arranging for the purchase and sale of patents)
- Bill auditing and freight rate information
- Weather forecasting activities
- Other technical activities
- Time-share units
- Art consultants

This activity excludes:
- Translation and Interpretation (see 74901)
- Valuation/evaluation activities (see 74902)
- Security Consulting (see 749031)
- Agriculture related consultancy (see 749032)
- Environment Related consultancy (see 749033)
- Tourism related consultancy (see 7490341)
- Water Resources related consultancy (see 7490342)
- Family Counseling (see 7490343)

Business Requirements

Age

18 and above

Allowed for Nationalities

Bahraini 100%		GCC 100%	
American 100%		Singaporean 100%	
Icelander 100%		Liechtenstein er 100%	
Norwegian 100%		Swiss 100%	

Foreign Allowed up to 100%

Legal Type

It is allowed to register according to the legal forms mentioned below

Allowed for Individual Commercial Registration (ICR) : Yes

Allowed for Company Commercial Registration (CCR) : Yes

- Bahrain Shareholding Company (Public)
- With Limited Liability Company
- Branch of a Foreign Company
- Bahrain Shareholding Company (Closed)
- Partnership Company
- Simple Commandite Company
- Commandite By Shares Company
- Non Profit Company

Required Step of Licenses and Approvals

Ministry / Directorate	License / Approval Requirements	Approval Type
Municipality Affairs	Site Approval for Administrative and	Post

	support service activities	

Municipality Affairs (Post) (74909)

Approval Name	Description	Estimated Time
Site Approval for Administrative and support service activities	Municipality Approval for the Commercial Registration address or the site in which the Activity will be practiced	3 Days

Fee Details (if any)

10

License Information

General Conditions:
1. Size of shop/premises must be sufficient for the activity
2. Businesses may not carry out the activity outside the boundaries of the shop/ premises
3. It is prohibited to display or store any items or equipment outside the shop / premises boundary without prior approval from the Municipality. In the event of non-compliance, the Ministry of Municipality Affairs has the right to take necessary action.
4. Maintain cleanliness of the site
5. Comply with the parking space regulations as per the Construction Regulatory Requirements

Activity Specific Conditions:
1. The Commercial Registration for this activity can be registered on commercial, service, and industrial streets..
2. The commercial address of the Commercial Registration for this activity can an office address provided that the site is used for administrative purposes and is not located in a residential area

Note: Uploading pictures of the site/shop may expedite the process of obtaining

approval

Required Documents

- Lease agreement (after obtaining the necessary approvals from other licensing entities)
- Shop photos

Other Documents

- Cabinet's Decision (56) of the year 2022 regarding the Regulatory Requirements of Construction for various areas in the Kingdom of Bahrain

Human health and social work activities

ISIC4	Business activity
86101-1	General Hospital - General Hospital

Description

A health facility that provides its health services in essential medical specialties and its sub-specialties, which include, but are not limited to, general surgery, internal medicine, paediatrics, gynaecology and obstetrics.

Business Requirements

Age

18 and above

Allowed for Nationalities

Bahraini 100%	GCC 100%
American 100%	Singaporean 100%
Icelander 100%	Liechtenstein er 100%
Norwegian 100%	Swiss 100%

Foreign Allowed up to 100%

Legal Type

It is allowed to register according to the legal forms mentioned below

Allowed for Individual Commercial Registration (ICR) : Yes

Allowed for Company Commercial Registration (CCR) : Yes

- Bahrain Shareholding Company (Public)
- With Limited Liability Company
- Branch of a Foreign Company
- Bahrain Shareholding Company (Closed)
- Partnership Company
- Simple Commandite Company
- Commandite By Shares Company
- Non Profit Company

Required Step of Licenses and Approvals

Ministry / Directorate	License / Approval Requirements	Approval Type
Radiation Affairs In Supreme Council for Environment	Notification for the Radiation Affairs In Supreme Council for Environment.	Notification Only
General Directrate Of Civil Defence	General Hospital	Post
NHRA-Health Care Facilities	General Hospital	Post
Municipality Affairs	Site Approval for Human Health Activities	Post
NHRA-Health Care Facilities	General Hospital	Final Site Inspection

Radiation Affairs In Supreme Council for Environment (Notification Only) (86101-1)

Approval Name	Description	Estimated Time
Notification for the Radiation Affairs In Supreme Council for Environment.	Notification Only	10 Days

Fee Details (if any)

There is no Estimated Processing Time (Days) in this license.

License Information

After obtaining the commercial license, kindly apply for an environmental license on: Licensingradiation@SCE.GOV.BH.

General Directrate Of Civil Defence (Post) (86101-1)

Approval Name	Description	Estimated Time
General Hospital	checking the approval requirements of the general directorate of civil defense	5 Days

Fee Details (if any)

50 BD Fire prevention and protection certificate fees

License Information

1. Provide the documents mentioned in the “Required Documents” section
2. Comply with the requirements listed in the inspection checklist found in the “Other Downloadable Documents” section
3. Provide proof to the General Directorate of Civil Defense that an alarm and firefighting equipment have been installed within 6 months of obtaining a Commercial Registration and license

If a warehouse is used: A safety certificate must be obtained viaBahrain.bh

Required Documents

•No-objection letter for alarm and extinguisher installation from Civil Defense, or purchasing receipt of alarm equipment and extinguishers along with an annual maintenance contract from a company certified by Civil defense
•Photos required for civil defense activities
•Purchasing invoice of security camera system with specifying the type and storage capacity.

Other Documents

- Sample pictures of the general directorate of civil defense requirements
- licencing requirments of the general directorat of civil defense for activity number "86101"

NHRA-Health Care Facilities (Post) (86101-1)

Approval Name	Description	Estimated Time
General Hospital	There are two licenses that could be obtained under this activity: 1. General Hospital: Any place equipped with beds and prepared for providing medical treatment, nursing care, medical examination of patients, and/or medicating or accommodating convalescents, free or for a fee. Such place provides health services in one of the following major medical specializations: general surgery, internal medicine, pediatrics, obstetrics and Gynecology, and the related minor specializations. 2. Teaching Hospital: A facility that provides health services in at least the basic medical disciplines, in addition to providing educational programs (accredited locally, regionally or internationally) to	5 Days

train Interns, resident physicians, and other health professions.

• The following fee Structure applies separately to each of the licensed mentioned above:
• Application fee: BD 50 (one-time)
• Initial Approval Fee: BD50 (one time)
• New License Fee:
a) Less Than 50 beds: BD2000
b) 51 to 100 beds: BD3000
c) 100 beds or above: BD4000
Renewal License Fees:
a) Less Than 50 beds: BD1000
b) 51 to 100 beds: BD2000
c) 100 beds or above: BD3000

• You may visit NHRA's website for the regulations applicable to these licenses:http://www.nhra.bh/SitePages/View.aspx?PageId=11

Fee Details (if any)

There is no Estimated Processing Time (Days) in this license.

License Information

There are two licenses that could be obtained under this activity:
1. General Hospital: Any place equipped with beds and prepared for providing medical treatment, nursing care, medical examination of patients, and/or medicating or accommodating convalescents, free or for a fee. Such place provides health services in one of the following major medical specializations: general surgery, internal medicine, pediatrics, obstetrics and Gynecology, and the related minor specializations.
2. Teaching Hospital: A facility that provides health services in at least the basic medical disciplines, in addition to providing educational programs (accredited locally, regionally or internationally) to train Interns, resident physicians, and other health professions.

• You may visit NHRA's website for the regulations applicable to these licenses:http://www.nhra.bh/SitePages/View.aspx?PageId=11

Required Documents

- Application form (from NHRA web site)
- Approval from environment in case of radiation
- Architectural drawings from a licensed office
- Detailed proposal of the project
- License to practice (if applicant is a doctor or medical practitioner)
- List of equipment to be used
- List of specialties and activities within the hospital
- Name of the nominated hospital director
- Number of doctors in case of a hospital or a medical center

Municipality Affairs (Post) (86101-1)

Approval Name	Description	Estimated Time
Site Approval for Human Health Activities	Municipality Approval for the Commercial Registration address or the site in which the Activity will be practiced	3 Days

Fee Details (if any)

10 BD

License Information

General Conditions:
1. Size of shop/premises must be sufficient for the activity
2. Businesses may not carry out the activity outside the boundaries of the shop/ premises
3. It is prohibited to display or store any items or equipment outside the shop / premises boundary without prior approval from the Municipality
4. Maintain cleanliness of the site
5. Comply with the parking space regulations as per the Construction Regulatory Requirements

Activity Specific Conditions:
1. Comply with the regulatory requirements for construction as well as the requirements of the National Health Regulatory Authority (NHRA)
2. Comply with the parking requirements as per cabinet's decision (28) of the year 2009 regarding the Regulatory Requirements of Construction for various areas in the Kingdom of Bahrain

Required Documents

- Lease agreement (after obtaining the necessary approvals from other licensing entities)
- Shop photos

Other Documents

- Cabinet's Decision (56) of the year 2022 regarding the Regulatory Requirements of Construction for various areas in the Kingdom of Bahrain

NHRA-Health Care Facilities (Final Site Inspection) (86101-1)

Approval Name	Description	Estimated Time
General Hospital	There are two licenses that could be obtained under this activity: 1. General Hospital: Any place equipped with beds and prepared for providing medical treatment, nursing care, medical examination of patients, and/or medicating or accommodating convalescents, free or for a fee. Such place provides health services in one of the following major medical specializations: general surgery, internal medicine, pediatrics, obstetrics and Gynecology, and the related minor specializations. 2. Teaching Hospital: A facility that provides health services in at least the basic medical disciplines, in addition to providing educational programs (accredited locally, regionally or	5 Days

internationally) to train Interns, resident physicians, and other health professions.

• The following fee Structure applies separately to each of the licensed mentioned above:
• Application fee: BD 50 (one-time)
• Initial Approval Fee: BD50 (one time)
• New License Fee:
a) Less Than 50 beds: BD2000
b) 51 to 100 beds: BD3000
c) 100 beds or above: BD4000
Renewal License Fees:
a) Less Than 50 beds: BD1000
b) 51 to 100 beds: BD2000
c) 100 beds or above: BD3000

• You may visit NHRA's website for the regulations applicable to these licenses:http://www.nhra.bh/SitePages/View.aspx?PageId=11

Fee Details (if any)

There is no Estimated Processing Time (Days) in this license.

License Information

There are two licenses that could be obtained under this activity:
1. General Hospital: Any place equipped with beds and prepared for providing medical treatment, nursing care, medical examination of patients, and/or medicating or accommodating convalescents, free or for a fee. Such place provides health services in one of the following major medical specializations: general surgery, internal medicine, pediatrics, obstetrics and Gynecology, and the related minor specializations.
2. Teaching Hospital: A facility that provides health services in at least the basic medical disciplines, in addition to providing educational programs (accredited locally, regionally or internationally) to train Interns, resident physicians, and other health professions.

• You may visit NHRA's website for the regulations applicable to these licenses:http://www.nhra.bh/SitePages/View.aspx?PageId=11

Required Documents

- Application form (from NHRA web site)
- Approval from environment in case of radiation
- Architectural drawings from a licensed office
- Detailed proposal of the project
- License to practice (if applicant is a doctor or medical practitioner)
- List of equipment to be used
- List of specialties and activities within the hospital
- Name of the nominated hospital director
- Number of doctors in case of a hospital or a medical center

Human health and social work activities

ISIC4	Business activity
86101-2	General Hospital - Teaching Hospital

Description

A health facility providing services in at least four basic medical specialties, including general surgery, internal medicine, gynecology, and obstetrics. It has a teaching program approved by a university institution or a local, regional, or international higher education council, where Interns, resident physicians and other health professionals` training is conducted in it.

Business Requirements

✔ Age

✔ Allowed for Nationalities

Bahraini 100%	GCC 100%
American 100%	Singaporean 100%
Icelander 100%	Liechtensteiner 100%
Norwegian 100%	Swiss 100%

Foreign Allowed up to 100%

Legal Type

It is allowed to register according to the legal forms mentioned below

Allowed for Individual Commercial Registration (ICR) : Yes

Allowed for Company Commercial Registration (CCR) : Yes

Required Step of Licenses and Approvals

Ministry / Directorate	License / Approval Requirements	Approval Type
Radiation Affairs In Supreme Council for Environment	Notification for the Radiation Affairs In Supreme Council for Environment.	Notification Only
General Directrate Of Civil Defence	General Hospital	Post
NHRA-Health Care Facilities	General Hospital	Post
Municipality Affairs	Site Approval for Human Health Activities	Post
NHRA-Health Care Facilities	General Hospital	Final Site Inspection

Radiation Affairs In Supreme Council for Environment (Notification Only) (86101-2)

Approval Name	Description	Estimated Time
Notification for the Radiation Affairs In Supreme Council for Environment.	Notification Only	10 Days

Fee Details (if any)

There is no Estimated Processing Time (Days) in this license.

License Information

After obtaining the commercial license, kindly apply for an environmental license on: Licensingradiation@SCE.GOV.BH.

General Directrate Of Civil Defence (Post) (86101-2)

Approval Name	Description	Estimated Time
General Hospital	checking the approval requirements of the general directorate of civil defense	5 Days

Fee Details (if any)

50 BD Fire prevention and protection certificate fees

License Information

1. Provide the documents mentioned in the “Required Documents” section
2. Comply with the requirements listed in the inspection checklist found in the “Other Downloadable Documents” section
3. Provide proof to the General Directorate of Civil Defense that an alarm and firefighting equipment have been installed within 6 months of obtaining a Commercial Registration and license

If a warehouse is used: A safety certificate must be obtained viaBahrain.bh

Required Documents

•No-objection letter for alarm and extinguisher installation from Civil Defense, or purchasing receipt of alarm equipment and extinguishers along with an annual maintenance contract from a company certified by Civil defense
•Photos required for civil defense activities
•Purchasing invoice of security camera system with specifying the type and storage capacity.

Other Documents

- Sample pictures of the general directorate of civil defense requirements
- licencing requirments of the general directorat of civil defense for activity number "86101"

NHRA-Health Care Facilities (Post) (86101-2)

Approval Name	Description	Estimated Time
General Hospital	There are two licenses that could be obtained under this activity: 1. General Hospital: Any place equipped with beds and prepared for providing medical treatment, nursing care, medical examination of patients, and/or medicating or accommodating convalescents, free or for a fee. Such place provides health services in one of the following major medical specializations: general surgery, internal medicine, pediatrics, obstetrics and Gynecology, and the related minor specializations. 2. Teaching Hospital: A facility that provides health services in at least the basic medical disciplines, in addition to providing educational programs (accredited locally, regionally or internationally) to	5 Days

train Interns, resident physicians, and other health professions.

• The following fee Structure applies separately to each of the licensed mentioned above:
• Application fee: BD 50 (one-time)
• Initial Approval Fee: BD50 (one time)
• New License Fee:
a) Less Than 50 beds: BD2000
b) 51 to 100 beds: BD3000
c) 100 beds or above: BD4000
Renewal License Fees:
a) Less Than 50 beds: BD1000
b) 51 to 100 beds: BD2000
c) 100 beds or above: BD3000

• You may visit NHRA's website for the regulations applicable to these licenses:http://www.nhra.bh/SitePages/View.aspx?PageId=11

Fee Details (if any)

There is no Estimated Processing Time (Days) in this license.

License Information

There are two licenses that could be obtained under this activity:
1. General Hospital: Any place equipped with beds and prepared for providing medical treatment, nursing care, medical examination of patients, and/or medicating or accommodating convalescents, free or for a fee. Such place provides health services in one of the following major medical specializations: general surgery, internal medicine, pediatrics, obstetrics and Gynecology, and the related minor specializations.
2. Teaching Hospital: A facility that provides health services in at least the basic medical disciplines, in addition to providing educational programs (accredited locally, regionally or internationally) to train Interns, resident physicians, and other health professions.

• You may visit NHRA's website for the regulations applicable to these licenses:http://www.nhra.bh/SitePages/View.aspx?PageId=11

Required Documents

- Application form (from NHRA web site)
- Approval from environment in case of radiation
- Architectural drawings from a licensed office
- Detailed proposal of the project
- License to practice (if applicant is a doctor or medical practitioner)
- List of equipment to be used
- List of specialties and activities within the hospital
- Name of the nominated hospital director
- Number of doctors in case of a hospital or a medical center

Municipality Affairs (Post) (86101-2)

Approval Name	Description	Estimated Time
Site Approval for Human Health Activities	Municipality Approval for the Commercial Registration address or the site in which the Activity will be practiced	3 Days

Fee Details (if any)

10 BD

License Information

General Conditions:
1. Size of shop/premises must be sufficient for the activity
2. Businesses may not carry out the activity outside the boundaries of the shop/ premises
3. It is prohibited to display or store any items or equipment outside the shop / premises boundary without prior approval from the Municipality
4. Maintain cleanliness of the site
5. Comply with the parking space regulations as per the Construction Regulatory Requirements

Activity Specific Conditions:
1. Comply with the regulatory requirements for construction as well as the requirements of the National Health Regulatory Authority (NHRA)
2. Comply with the parking requirements as per cabinet's decision (28) of the year 2009 regarding the Regulatory Requirements of Construction for various areas in the Kingdom of Bahrain

Required Documents

- Lease agreement (after obtaining the necessary approvals from other licensing entities)
- Shop photos

Other Documents

- Cabinet's Decision (56) of the year 2022 regarding the Regulatory Requirements of Construction for various areas in the Kingdom of Bahrain

NHRA-Health Care Facilities (Final Site Inspection) (86101-2)

Approval Name	Description	Estimated Time
General Hospital	There are two licenses that could be obtained under this activity: 1. General Hospital: Any place equipped with beds and prepared for providing medical treatment, nursing care, medical examination of patients, and/or medicating or accommodating convalescents, free or for a fee. Such place provides health services in one of the following major medical specializations: general surgery, internal medicine, pediatrics, obstetrics and Gynecology, and the related minor specializations. 2. Teaching Hospital: A facility that provides health services in at least the basic medical disciplines, in addition to providing educational programs (accredited locally, regionally or	5 Days

internationally) to train Interns, resident physicians, and other health professions.

• The following fee Structure applies separately to each of the licensed mentioned above:
• Application fee: BD 50 (one-time)
• Initial Approval Fee: BD50 (one time)
• New License Fee:
a) Less Than 50 beds: BD2000
b) 51 to 100 beds: BD3000
c) 100 beds or above: BD4000
Renewal License Fees:
a) Less Than 50 beds: BD1000
b) 51 to 100 beds: BD2000
c) 100 beds or above: BD3000

• You may visit NHRA's website for the regulations applicable to these licenses:http://www.nhra.bh/SitePages/View.aspx?PageId=11

Fee Details (if any)

There is no Estimated Processing Time (Days) in this license.

License Information

There are two licenses that could be obtained under this activity:
1. General Hospital: Any place equipped with beds and prepared for providing medical treatment, nursing care, medical examination of patients, and/or medicating or accommodating convalescents, free or for a fee. Such place provides health services in one of the following major medical specializations: general surgery, internal medicine, pediatrics, obstetrics and Gynecology, and the related minor specializations.
2. Teaching Hospital: A facility that provides health services in at least the basic medical disciplines, in addition to providing educational programs (accredited locally, regionally or internationally) to train Interns, resident physicians, and other health professions.

• You may visit NHRA's website for the regulations applicable to these licenses:http://www.nhra.bh/SitePages/View.aspx?PageId=11

Required Documents

- Application form (from NHRA web site)
- Approval from environment in case of radiation
- Architectural drawings from a licensed office
- Detailed proposal of the project
- License to practice (if applicant is a doctor or medical practitioner)
- List of equipment to be used
- List of specialties and activities within the hospital
- Name of the nominated hospital director
- Number of doctors in case of a hospital or a medical center

Human health and social work activities

ISIC4	Business activity
86102-1	Specialized Hospital - Specialized Medical Hospital

Description

A health facility that provides its health services in internal medicine specialty or in one or more of its subspecialties.

Business Requirements

Age

18 and above

Allowed for Nationalities

Bahraini 100%	GCC 100%
American 100%	Singaporean 100%
Icelander 100%	Liechtensteiner 100%
Norwegian 100%	Swiss 100%

Foreign Allowed up to 100%

Legal Type

It is allowed to register according to the legal forms mentioned below

Allowed for Individual Commercial Registration (ICR) : Yes

Allowed for Company Commercial Registration (CCR) : Yes

- Bahrain Shareholding Company (Public)
- With Limited Liability Company
- Branch of a Foreign Company
- Bahrain Shareholding Company (Closed)
- Partnership Company
- Simple Commandite Company
- Commandite By Shares Company
- Non Profit Company

Required Step of Licenses and Approvals

Ministry / Directorate	License / Approval Requirements	Approval Type
Radiation Affairs In Supreme Council for Environment	Notification for the Radiation Affairs In Supreme Council for Environment.	Notification Only
NHRA-Health Care Facilities	Specialized Hospital	Post
Municipality Affairs	Site Approval for Human Health Activities	Post
General Directrate Of Civil Defence	Specialized Hospital	Post
NHRA-Health Care Facilities	Specialized Hospital	Final Site Inspection

Radiation Affairs In Supreme Council for Environment (Notification Only) (86102-1)

Approval Name	Description	Estimated Time
Notification for the Radiation Affairs In Supreme Council for Environment.	Notification Only	10 Days

Fee Details (if any)

There is no Estimated Processing Time (Days) in this license.

License Information

After obtaining the commercial license, kindly apply for an environmental license on: Licensingradiation@SCE.GOV.BH.

NHRA-Health Care Facilities (Post) (86102-1)

Approval Name	Description	Estimated Time
Specialized Hospital	Specialized Hospital Any place equipped with beds and prepared for providing medical medicament nursing care and medical examination of patients medicating or accommodating Convalescents whatever the name of this place. This applies to providing services for free or for consideration. Such place provides health services in one of the major medical specializations or in one or more of the minor specializations. Specialized Dental Hospital This applies to providing services for free or for consideration. Such place provides dental health services. One Day Surgery Hospital Namely that they offer health services in one of the basic medical specialties or in one or more sub-	5 Days

disciplines emanating from it that the patient comes out of them on the same day.

Rehabilitation Hospital
Are hospitals that provide rehabilitation services or long residence or nursing care only.

Fee Details (if any)

• Application fee: BD 50 (one-time)
• Initial approval fee: BD 50 (one-time)
• New License fee:
a) Less than 50 beds: BD2000
b) 51 to 100 beds: BD3000
c) 100 beds or above: BD4000
• Renewal license fees:
a) Less than 50 beds: BD1000
b) 51 to 100 beds: BD2000
c) 100 beds or above: BD3000

License Information

There are four licenses that could be obtained under this activity:
1. One day surgery hospital: Hospitals that offer health services in one of the basic medical specialties or in one or more sub-disciplines emanating from it, given that the patient comes out of them on the same day
2. Rehabilitation Hospital: Hospitals that provide rehabilitation services, or long residency, or nursing care only.
3. Specialized Dental Hospital: Hospital that provide services for free or for consideration. Such hospitals provide dental health services.
4. Specialized Hospital: Any place equipped with beds and prepared for providing medical treatment, nursing care, medical examination of patients, and/or medicating or accommodating convalescents, free or for a fee. Such hospitals provide health services

in one of the major medical specializations or in one or more of the minor specializations.

- The fees mentioned apply separately to each of the licensed mentioned above
- You may visit NHRA's website for the regulations applicable to these licenses:http://www.nhra.bh/SitePages/View.aspx?PageId=11

Required Documents

- Application form (from NHRA web site)
- Approval from environment in case of radiation
- Architectural drawings from a licensed office
- Detailed proposal of the project
- License to practice (if applicant is a doctor or medical practitioner)
- List of equipment to be used
- List of specialties and activities within the hospital
- Name of the nominated hospital director
- Number of doctors in case of a hospital or a medical center

Municipality Affairs (Post) (86102-1)

Approval Name	Description	Estimated Time
Site Approval for Human Health Activities	Municipality Approval for the Commercial Registration address or the site in which the Activity will be practiced	3 Days

Fee Details (if any)

10 BD

License Information

General Conditions:
1. Size of shop/premises must be sufficient for the activity
2. Businesses may not carry out the activity outside the boundaries of the shop/ premises
3. It is prohibited to display or store any items or equipment outside the shop / premises boundary without prior approval from the Municipality
4. Maintain cleanliness of the site
5. Comply with the parking space regulations as per the Construction Regulatory Requirements

Activity Specific Conditions:
1. Comply with the regulatory requirements for construction as well as the requirements of the National Health Regulatory Authority (NHRA)
2. Comply with the parking requirements as per cabinet's decision (28) of the year 2009 regarding the Regulatory Requirements of Construction for various areas in the Kingdom of Bahrain

Required Documents

- Lease agreement (after obtaining the necessary approvals from other licensing entities)
- Shop photos

Other Documents

- Cabinet's Decision (56) of the year 2022 regarding the Regulatory Requirements of Construction for various areas in the Kingdom of Bahrain

General Directrate Of Civil Defence (Post) (86102-1)

Approval Name	Description	Estimated Time
Specialized Hospital	checking the approval requirements of the general directorate of civil defense	5 Days

Fee Details (if any)

50 BD Fire prevention and protection certificate fees

License Information

1. Provide the documents mentioned in the “Required Documents” section
2. Comply with the requirements listed in the inspection checklist found in the “Other Downloadable Documents” section
3. Provide proof to the General Directorate of Civil Defense that an alarm and firefighting equipment have been installed within 6 months of obtaining a Commercial Registration and license

If a warehouse is used: A safety certificate must be obtained viaBahrain.bh

Required Documents

•No-objection letter for alarm and extinguisher installation from Civil Defense, or purchasing receipt of alarm equipment and extinguishers along with an annual maintenance contract from a company certified by Civil defense
•Photos required for civil defense activities
•Purchasing invoice of security camera system with specifying the type and storage capacity.

Other Documents

- Sample pictures of the general directorate of civil defense requirements
- licencing requirments of the general directorat of civil defense for activity number "86102"

NHRA-Health Care Facilities (Final Site Inspection) (86102-1)

Approval Name	Description	Estimated Time
Specialized Hospital	Specialized Hospital Any place equipped with beds and prepared for providing medical medicament nursing care and medical examination of patients medicating or accommodating Convalescents whatever the name of this place. This applies to providing services for free or for consideration. Such place provides health services in one of the major medical specializations or in one or more of the minor specializations. Specialized Dental Hospital This applies to providing services for free or for consideration. Such place provides dental health services. One Day Surgery Hospital Namely that they offer health services in one of the basic medical specialties or	5 Days

	in one or more sub-disciplines emanating from it that the patient comes out of them on the same day. Rehabilitation Hospital Are hospitals that provide rehabilitation services or long residence or nursing care only.	

Fee Details (if any)

• Application fee: BD 50 (one-time)
• Initial approval fee: BD 50 (one-time)
• New License fee:
a) Less than 50 beds: BD2000
b) 51 to 100 beds: BD3000
c) 100 beds or above: BD4000
• Renewal license fees:
a) Less than 50 beds: BD1000
b) 51 to 100 beds: BD2000
c) 100 beds or above: BD3000

License Information

There are four licenses that could be obtained under this activity:
1. One day surgery hospital: Hospitals that offer health services in one of the basic medical specialties or in one or more sub-disciplines emanating from it, given that the patient comes out of them on the same day
2. Rehabilitation Hospital: Hospitals that provide rehabilitation services, or long residency, or nursing care only.
3. Specialized Dental Hospital: Hospital that provide services for free or for consideration. Such hospitals provide dental health services.
4. Specialized Hospital: Any place equipped with beds and prepared for providing medical treatment, nursing care, medical examination of patients, and/or medicating or

accommodating convalescents, free or for a fee. Such hospitals provide health services in one of the major medical specializations or in one or more of the minor specializations.

- The fees mentioned apply separately to each of the licensed mentioned above
- You may visit NHRA's website for the regulations applicable to these licenses:http://www.nhra.bh/SitePages/View.aspx?PageId=11

Required Documents

- Application form (from NHRA web site)
- Approval from environment in case of radiation
- Architectural drawings from a licensed office
- Detailed proposal of the project
- License to practice (if applicant is a doctor or medical practitioner)
- List of equipment to be used
- List of specialties and activities within the hospital
- Name of the nominated hospital director
- Number of doctors in case of a hospital or a medical center

Human health and social work activities

ISIC4	Business activity
86102-2	Specialized Hospital - Specialized Surgical Hospital

Description

A health facility that provides its health services in general surgery specialty or in one or more of its subspecialties.

Business Requirements

✔ Age

✔ Allowed for Nationalities

Bahraini 100%	GCC 100%
American 100%	Singaporean 100%
Icelander 100%	Liechtensteiner 100%
Norwegian 100%	Swiss 100%

Foreign Allowed up to 100%

✔ Legal Type

It is allowed to register according to the legal forms mentioned below

Allowed for Individual Commercial Registration (ICR) : Yes

Allowed for Company Commercial Registration (CCR) : Yes

Required Step of Licenses and Approvals

Ministry / Directorate	License / Approval Requirements	Approval Type
Radiation Affairs In Supreme Council for Environment	Notification for the Radiation Affairs In Supreme Council for Environment.	Notification Only
NHRA-Health Care Facilities	Specialized Hospital	Post
Municipality Affairs	Site Approval for Human Health Activities	Post
General Directrate Of Civil Defence	Specialized Hospital	Post
NHRA-Health Care Facilities	Specialized Hospital	Final Site Inspection

Radiation Affairs In Supreme Council for Environment (Notification Only) (86102-2)

Approval Name	Description	Estimated Time
Notification for the Radiation Affairs In Supreme Council for Environment.	Notification Only	10 Days

Fee Details (if any)

There is no Estimated Processing Time (Days) in this license.

License Information

After obtaining the commercial license, kindly apply for an environmental license on: Licensingradiation@SCE.GOV.BH.

NHRA-Health Care Facilities (Post) (86102-2)

Approval Name	Description	Estimated Time
Specialized Hospital	Specialized Hospital Any place equipped with beds and prepared for providing medical medicament nursing care and medical examination of patients medicating or accommodating Convalescents whatever the name of this place. This applies to providing services for free or for consideration. Such place provides health services in one of the major medical specializations or in one or more of the minor specializations. Specialized Dental Hospital This applies to providing services for free or for consideration. Such place provides dental health services. One Day Surgery Hospital Namely that they offer health services in one of the basic medical specialties or in one or more sub-	5 Days

disciplines emanating from it that the patient comes out of them on the same day.

Rehabilitation Hospital
Are hospitals that provide rehabilitation services or long residence or nursing care only.

Fee Details (if any)

• Application fee: BD 50 (one-time)
• Initial approval fee: BD 50 (one-time)
• New License fee:
a) Less than 50 beds: BD2000
b) 51 to 100 beds: BD3000
c) 100 beds or above: BD4000
• Renewal license fees:
a) Less than 50 beds: BD1000
b) 51 to 100 beds: BD2000
c) 100 beds or above: BD3000

License Information

There are four licenses that could be obtained under this activity:
1. One day surgery hospital: Hospitals that offer health services in one of the basic medical specialties or in one or more sub-disciplines emanating from it, given that the patient comes out of them on the same day
2. Rehabilitation Hospital: Hospitals that provide rehabilitation services, or long residency, or nursing care only.
3. Specialized Dental Hospital: Hospital that provide services for free or for consideration. Such hospitals provide dental health services.
4. Specialized Hospital: Any place equipped with beds and prepared for providing medical treatment, nursing care, medical examination of patients, and/or medicating or accommodating convalescents, free or for a fee. Such hospitals provide health services

in one of the major medical specializations or in one or more of the minor specializations.

- The fees mentioned apply separately to each of the licensed mentioned above
- You may visit NHRA's website for the regulations applicable to these licenses:http://www.nhra.bh/SitePages/View.aspx?PageId=11

Required Documents

- Application form (from NHRA web site)
- Approval from environment in case of radiation
- Architectural drawings from a licensed office
- Detailed proposal of the project
- License to practice (if applicant is a doctor or medical practitioner)
- List of equipment to be used
- List of specialties and activities within the hospital
- Name of the nominated hospital director
- Number of doctors in case of a hospital or a medical center

Municipality Affairs (Post) (86102-2)

Approval Name	Description	Estimated Time
Site Approval for Human Health Activities	Municipality Approval for the Commercial Registration address or the site in which the Activity will be practiced	3 Days

Fee Details (if any)

10 BD

License Information

General Conditions:
1. Size of shop/premises must be sufficient for the activity
2. Businesses may not carry out the activity outside the boundaries of the shop/ premises
3. It is prohibited to display or store any items or equipment outside the shop / premises boundary without prior approval from the Municipality
4. Maintain cleanliness of the site
5. Comply with the parking space regulations as per the Construction Regulatory Requirements

Activity Specific Conditions:
1. Comply with the regulatory requirements for construction as well as the requirements of the National Health Regulatory Authority (NHRA)
2. Comply with the parking requirements as per cabinet's decision (28) of the year 2009 regarding the Regulatory Requirements of Construction for various areas in the Kingdom of Bahrain

Required Documents

- Lease agreement (after obtaining the necessary approvals from other licensing entities)
- Shop photos

Other Documents

- Cabinet's Decision (56) of the year 2022 regarding the Regulatory Requirements of Construction for various areas in the Kingdom of Bahrain

General Directrate Of Civil Defence (Post) (86102-2)

Approval Name	Description	Estimated Time
Specialized Hospital	checking the approval requirements of the general directorate of civil defense	5 Days

Fee Details (if any)

50 BD Fire prevention and protection certificate fees

License Information

1. Provide the documents mentioned in the “Required Documents” section
2. Comply with the requirements listed in the inspection checklist found in the “Other Downloadable Documents” section
3. Provide proof to the General Directorate of Civil Defense that an alarm and firefighting equipment have been installed within 6 months of obtaining a Commercial Registration and license

If a warehouse is used: A safety certificate must be obtained viaBahrain.bh

Required Documents

•No-objection letter for alarm and extinguisher installation from Civil Defense, or purchasing receipt of alarm equipment and extinguishers along with an annual maintenance contract from a company certified by Civil defense
•Photos required for civil defense activities
•Purchasing invoice of security camera system with specifying the type and storage capacity.

Other Documents

- Sample pictures of the general directorate of civil defense requirements
- licencing requirments of the general directorat of civil defense for activity number "86102"

NHRA-Health Care Facilities (Final Site Inspection) (86102-2)

Approval Name	Description	Estimated Time
Specialized Hospital	Specialized Hospital Any place equipped with beds and prepared for providing medical medicament nursing care and medical examination of patients medicating or accommodating Convalescents whatever the name of this place. This applies to providing services for free or for consideration. Such place provides health services in one of the major medical specializations or in one or more of the minor specializations. Specialized Dental Hospital This applies to providing services for free or for consideration. Such place provides dental health services. One Day Surgery Hospital Namely that they offer health services in one of the basic medical specialties or	5 Days

	in one or more sub-disciplines emanating from it that the patient comes out of them on the same day. Rehabilitation Hospital Are hospitals that provide rehabilitation services or long residence or nursing care only.	

Fee Details (if any)

• Application fee: BD 50 (one-time)
• Initial approval fee: BD 50 (one-time)
• New License fee:
a) Less than 50 beds: BD2000
b) 51 to 100 beds: BD3000
c) 100 beds or above: BD4000
• Renewal license fees:
a) Less than 50 beds: BD1000
b) 51 to 100 beds: BD2000
c) 100 beds or above: BD3000

License Information

There are four licenses that could be obtained under this activity:
1. One day surgery hospital: Hospitals that offer health services in one of the basic medical specialties or in one or more sub-disciplines emanating from it, given that the patient comes out of them on the same day
2. Rehabilitation Hospital: Hospitals that provide rehabilitation services, or long residency, or nursing care only.
3. Specialized Dental Hospital: Hospital that provide services for free or for consideration. Such hospitals provide dental health services.
4. Specialized Hospital: Any place equipped with beds and prepared for providing medical treatment, nursing care, medical examination of patients, and/or medicating or

accommodating convalescents, free or for a fee. Such hospitals provide health services in one of the major medical specializations or in one or more of the minor specializations.

- The fees mentioned apply separately to each of the licensed mentioned above
- You may visit NHRA's website for the regulations applicable to these licenses:http://www.nhra.bh/SitePages/View.aspx?PageId=11

Required Documents

- Application form (from NHRA web site)
- Approval from environment in case of radiation
- Architectural drawings from a licensed office
- Detailed proposal of the project
- License to practice (if applicant is a doctor or medical practitioner)
- List of equipment to be used
- List of specialties and activities within the hospital
- Name of the nominated hospital director
- Number of doctors in case of a hospital or a medical center

Human health and social work activities

ISIC4	Business activity
86102-3	Specialized Hospital - Specialized Obstetrics and Gynecology Hospital

Description

A health facility that provides its health services in Obstetrics and Gynecology specialty or in one or more of its subspecialties.

Business Requirements

✔ Age

✔ Allowed for Nationalities

Bahraini 100%	GCC 100%
American 100%	Singaporean 100%
Icelander 100%	Liechtensteiner 100%
Norwegian 100%	Swiss 100%

Foreign Allowed up to 100%

✔ Legal Type

It is allowed to register according to the legal forms mentioned below

Allowed for Individual Commercial Registration (ICR) : Yes

Allowed for Company Commercial Registration (CCR) : Yes

Required Step of Licenses and Approvals

Ministry / Directorate	License / Approval Requirements	Approval Type
Radiation Affairs In Supreme Council for Environment	Notification for the Radiation Affairs In Supreme Council for Environment.	Notification Only
General Directrate Of Civil Defence	Specialized Hospital	Post
Municipality Affairs	Site Approval for Human Health Activities	Post
NHRA-Health Care Facilities	Specialized Hospital	Post
NHRA-Health Care Facilities	Specialized Hospital	Final Site Inspection

Radiation Affairs In Supreme Council for Environment (Notification Only) (86102-3)

Approval Name	Description	Estimated Time
Notification for the Radiation Affairs In Supreme Council for Environment.	Notification Only	10 Days

Fee Details (if any)

There is no Estimated Processing Time (Days) in this license.

License Information

After obtaining the commercial license, kindly apply for an environmental license on: Licensingradiation@SCE.GOV.BH.

General Directrate Of Civil Defence (Post) (86102-3)

Approval Name	Description	Estimated Time
Specialized Hospital	checking the approval requirements of the general directorate of civil defense	5 Days

Fee Details (if any)

50 BD Fire prevention and protection certificate fees

License Information

1. Provide the documents mentioned in the “Required Documents” section
2. Comply with the requirements listed in the inspection checklist found in the “Other Downloadable Documents” section
3. Provide proof to the General Directorate of Civil Defense that an alarm and firefighting equipment have been installed within 6 months of obtaining a Commercial Registration and license

If a warehouse is used: A safety certificate must be obtained viaBahrain.bh

Required Documents

•No-objection letter for alarm and extinguisher installation from Civil Defense, or purchasing receipt of alarm equipment and extinguishers along with an annual maintenance contract from a company certified by Civil defense
•Photos required for civil defense activities
•Purchasing invoice of security camera system with specifying the type and storage capacity.

Other Documents

- Sample pictures of the general directorate of civil defense requirements
- licencing requirments of the general directorat of civil defense for activity number "86102"

Municipality Affairs (Post) (86102-3)

Approval Name	Description	Estimated Time
Site Approval for Human Health Activities	Municipality Approval for the Commercial Registration address or the site in which the Activity will be practiced	3 Days

Fee Details (if any)

10 BD

License Information

General Conditions:
1. Size of shop/premises must be sufficient for the activity
2. Businesses may not carry out the activity outside the boundaries of the shop/ premises
3. It is prohibited to display or store any items or equipment outside the shop / premises boundary without prior approval from the Municipality
4. Maintain cleanliness of the site
5. Comply with the parking space regulations as per the Construction Regulatory Requirements

Activity Specific Conditions:
1. Comply with the regulatory requirements for construction as well as the requirements of the National Health Regulatory Authority (NHRA)
2. Comply with the parking requirements as per cabinet's decision (28) of the year 2009 regarding the Regulatory Requirements of Construction for various areas in the Kingdom of Bahrain

Required Documents

- Lease agreement (after obtaining the necessary approvals from other licensing entities)
- Shop photos

Other Documents

- Cabinet's Decision (56) of the year 2022 regarding the Regulatory Requirements of Construction for various areas in the Kingdom of Bahrain

NHRA-Health Care Facilities (Post) (86102-3)

Approval Name	Description	Estimated Time
Specialized Hospital	Specialized Hospital Any place equipped with beds and prepared for providing medical medicament nursing care and medical examination of patients medicating or accommodating Convalescents whatever the name of this place. This applies to providing services for free or for consideration. Such place provides health services in one of the major medical specializations or in one or more of the minor specializations. Specialized Dental Hospital This applies to providing services for free or for consideration. Such place provides dental health services. One Day Surgery Hospital Namely that they offer health services in one of the basic medical specialties or in one or more sub-	5 Days

disciplines emanating from it that the patient comes out of them on the same day.

Rehabilitation Hospital
Are hospitals that provide rehabilitation services or long residence or nursing care only.

Fee Details (if any)

• Application fee: BD 50 (one-time)
• Initial approval fee: BD 50 (one-time)
• New License fee:
a) Less than 50 beds: BD2000
b) 51 to 100 beds: BD3000
c) 100 beds or above: BD4000
• Renewal license fees:
a) Less than 50 beds: BD1000
b) 51 to 100 beds: BD2000
c) 100 beds or above: BD3000

License Information

There are four licenses that could be obtained under this activity:
1. One day surgery hospital: Hospitals that offer health services in one of the basic medical specialties or in one or more sub-disciplines emanating from it, given that the patient comes out of them on the same day
2. Rehabilitation Hospital: Hospitals that provide rehabilitation services, or long residency, or nursing care only.
3. Specialized Dental Hospital: Hospital that provide services for free or for consideration. Such hospitals provide dental health services.
4. Specialized Hospital: Any place equipped with beds and prepared for providing medical treatment, nursing care, medical examination of patients, and/or medicating or accommodating convalescents, free or for a fee. Such hospitals provide health services

in one of the major medical specializations or in one or more of the minor specializations.

- The fees mentioned apply separately to each of the licensed mentioned above
- You may visit NHRA's website for the regulations applicable to these licenses:http://www.nhra.bh/SitePages/View.aspx?PageId=11

Required Documents

- Application form (from NHRA web site)
- Approval from environment in case of radiation
- Architectural drawings from a licensed office
- Detailed proposal of the project
- License to practice (if applicant is a doctor or medical practitioner)
- List of equipment to be used
- List of specialties and activities within the hospital
- Name of the nominated hospital director
- Number of doctors in case of a hospital or a medical center

NHRA-Health Care Facilities (Final Site Inspection) (86102-3)

Approval Name	Description	Estimated Time
Specialized Hospital	Specialized Hospital Any place equipped with beds and prepared for providing medical medicament nursing care and medical examination of patients medicating or accommodating Convalescents whatever the name of this place. This applies to providing services for free or for consideration. Such place provides health services in one of the major medical specializations or in one or more of the minor specializations. Specialized Dental Hospital This applies to providing services for free or for consideration. Such place provides dental health services. One Day Surgery Hospital Namely that they offer health services in one of the basic medical specialties or	5 Days

	in one or more sub-disciplines emanating from it that the patient comes out of them on the same day. Rehabilitation Hospital Are hospitals that provide rehabilitation services or long residence or nursing care only.	

Fee Details (if any)

• Application fee: BD 50 (one-time)
• Initial approval fee: BD 50 (one-time)
• New License fee:
a) Less than 50 beds: BD2000
b) 51 to 100 beds: BD3000
c) 100 beds or above: BD4000
• Renewal license fees:
a) Less than 50 beds: BD1000
b) 51 to 100 beds: BD2000
c) 100 beds or above: BD3000

License Information

There are four licenses that could be obtained under this activity:
1. One day surgery hospital: Hospitals that offer health services in one of the basic medical specialties or in one or more sub-disciplines emanating from it, given that the patient comes out of them on the same day
2. Rehabilitation Hospital: Hospitals that provide rehabilitation services, or long residency, or nursing care only.
3. Specialized Dental Hospital: Hospital that provide services for free or for consideration. Such hospitals provide dental health services.
4. Specialized Hospital: Any place equipped with beds and prepared for providing medical treatment, nursing care, medical examination of patients, and/or medicating or

accommodating convalescents, free or for a fee. Such hospitals provide health services in one of the major medical specializations or in one or more of the minor specializations.

- The fees mentioned apply separately to each of the licensed mentioned above
- You may visit NHRA's website for the regulations applicable to these licenses:http://www.nhra.bh/SitePages/View.aspx?PageId=11

Required Documents

- Application form (from NHRA web site)
- Approval from environment in case of radiation
- Architectural drawings from a licensed office
- Detailed proposal of the project
- License to practice (if applicant is a doctor or medical practitioner)
- List of equipment to be used
- List of specialties and activities within the hospital
- Name of the nominated hospital director
- Number of doctors in case of a hospital or a medical center

Human health and social work activities

ISIC4	Business activity
86102-4	Specialized Hospital - Specialized Pediatric Hospital

Description

A health facility that provides its health services in Pediatric specialty or in one or more of its subspecialties.

Business Requirements

✔ Age

✔ Allowed for Nationalities

Bahraini 100%	GCC 100%
American 100%	Singaporean 100%
Icelander 100%	Liechtensteiner 100%
Norwegian 100%	Swiss 100%

Foreign Allowed up to 100%

✔ Legal Type

It is allowed to register according to the legal forms mentioned below

Allowed for Individual Commercial Registration (ICR) : Yes

Allowed for Company Commercial Registration (CCR) : Yes

Required Step of Licenses and Approvals

Ministry / Directorate	License / Approval Requirements	Approval Type
Radiation Affairs In Supreme Council for Environment	Notification for the Radiation Affairs In Supreme Council for Environment.	Notification Only
Municipality Affairs	Site Approval for Human Health Activities	Post
General Directrate Of Civil Defence	Specialized Hospital	Post
NHRA-Health Care Facilities	Specialized Hospital	Post
NHRA-Health Care Facilities	Specialized Hospital	Final Site Inspection

Radiation Affairs In Supreme Council for Environment (Notification Only) (86102-4)

Approval Name	Description	Estimated Time
Notification for the Radiation Affairs In Supreme Council for Environment.	Notification Only	10 Days

Fee Details (if any)

There is no Estimated Processing Time (Days) in this license.

License Information

After obtaining the commercial license, kindly apply for an environmental license on: Licensingradiation@SCE.GOV.BH.

Municipality Affairs (Post) (86102-4)

Approval Name	Description	Estimated Time
Site Approval for Human Health Activities	Municipality Approval for the Commercial Registration address or the site in which the Activity will be practiced	3 Days

Fee Details (if any)

10 BD

License Information

General Conditions:
1. Size of shop/premises must be sufficient for the activity
2. Businesses may not carry out the activity outside the boundaries of the shop/ premises
3. It is prohibited to display or store any items or equipment outside the shop / premises boundary without prior approval from the Municipality
4. Maintain cleanliness of the site
5. Comply with the parking space regulations as per the Construction Regulatory Requirements

Activity Specific Conditions:
1. Comply with the regulatory requirements for construction as well as the requirements of the National Health Regulatory Authority (NHRA)
2. Comply with the parking requirements as per cabinet's decision (28) of the year 2009 regarding the Regulatory Requirements of Construction for various areas in the Kingdom of Bahrain

Required Documents

- Lease agreement (after obtaining the necessary approvals from other licensing entities)
- Shop photos

Other Documents

- Cabinet's Decision (56) of the year 2022 regarding the Regulatory Requirements of Construction for various areas in the Kingdom of Bahrain

General Directrate Of Civil Defence (Post) (86102-4)

Approval Name	Description	Estimated Time
Specialized Hospital	checking the approval requirements of the general directorate of civil defense	5 Days

Fee Details (if any)

50 BD Fire prevention and protection certificate fees

License Information

1. Provide the documents mentioned in the “Required Documents” section
2. Comply with the requirements listed in the inspection checklist found in the “Other Downloadable Documents” section
3. Provide proof to the General Directorate of Civil Defense that an alarm and firefighting equipment have been installed within 6 months of obtaining a Commercial Registration and license

If a warehouse is used: A safety certificate must be obtained viaBahrain.bh

Required Documents

•No-objection letter for alarm and extinguisher installation from Civil Defense, or purchasing receipt of alarm equipment and extinguishers along with an annual maintenance contract from a company certified by Civil defense
•Photos required for civil defense activities
•Purchasing invoice of security camera system with specifying the type and storage capacity.

Other Documents

- Sample pictures of the general directorate of civil defense requirements
- licencing requirments of the general directorat of civil defense for activity number "86102"

NHRA-Health Care Facilities (Post) (86102-4)

Approval Name	Description	Estimated Time
Specialized Hospital	Specialized Hospital Any place equipped with beds and prepared for providing medical medicament nursing care and medical examination of patients medicating or accommodating Convalescents whatever the name of this place. This applies to providing services for free or for consideration. Such place provides health services in one of the major medical specializations or in one or more of the minor specializations. Specialized Dental Hospital This applies to providing services for free or for consideration. Such place provides dental health services. One Day Surgery Hospital Namely that they offer health services in one of the basic medical specialties or in one or more sub-	5 Days

disciplines emanating from it that the patient comes out of them on the same day.

Rehabilitation Hospital
Are hospitals that provide rehabilitation services or long residence or nursing care only.

Fee Details (if any)

• Application fee: BD 50 (one-time)
• Initial approval fee: BD 50 (one-time)
• New License fee:
a) Less than 50 beds: BD2000
b) 51 to 100 beds: BD3000
c) 100 beds or above: BD4000
• Renewal license fees:
a) Less than 50 beds: BD1000
b) 51 to 100 beds: BD2000
c) 100 beds or above: BD3000

License Information

There are four licenses that could be obtained under this activity:
1. One day surgery hospital: Hospitals that offer health services in one of the basic medical specialties or in one or more sub-disciplines emanating from it, given that the patient comes out of them on the same day
2. Rehabilitation Hospital: Hospitals that provide rehabilitation services, or long residency, or nursing care only.
3. Specialized Dental Hospital: Hospital that provide services for free or for consideration. Such hospitals provide dental health services.
4. Specialized Hospital: Any place equipped with beds and prepared for providing medical treatment, nursing care, medical examination of patients, and/or medicating or accommodating convalescents, free or for a fee. Such hospitals provide health services

in one of the major medical specializations or in one or more of the minor specializations.

- The fees mentioned apply separately to each of the licensed mentioned above
- You may visit NHRA's website for the regulations applicable to these licenses:http://www.nhra.bh/SitePages/View.aspx?PageId=11

Required Documents

- Application form (from NHRA web site)
- Approval from environment in case of radiation
- Architectural drawings from a licensed office
- Detailed proposal of the project
- License to practice (if applicant is a doctor or medical practitioner)
- List of equipment to be used
- List of specialties and activities within the hospital
- Name of the nominated hospital director
- Number of doctors in case of a hospital or a medical center

NHRA-Health Care Facilities (Final Site Inspection) (86102-4)

Approval Name	Description	Estimated Time
Specialized Hospital	Specialized Hospital Any place equipped with beds and prepared for providing medical medicament nursing care and medical examination of patients medicating or accommodating Convalescents whatever the name of this place. This applies to providing services for free or for consideration. Such place provides health services in one of the major medical specializations or in one or more of the minor specializations. Specialized Dental Hospital This applies to providing services for free or for consideration. Such place provides dental health services. One Day Surgery Hospital Namely that they offer health services in one of the basic medical specialties or	5 Days

	in one or more sub-disciplines emanating from it that the patient comes out of them on the same day. Rehabilitation Hospital Are hospitals that provide rehabilitation services or long residence or nursing care only.	

Fee Details (if any)

• Application fee: BD 50 (one-time)
• Initial approval fee: BD 50 (one-time)
• New License fee:
a) Less than 50 beds: BD2000
b) 51 to 100 beds: BD3000
c) 100 beds or above: BD4000
• Renewal license fees:
a) Less than 50 beds: BD1000
b) 51 to 100 beds: BD2000
c) 100 beds or above: BD3000

License Information

There are four licenses that could be obtained under this activity:
1. One day surgery hospital: Hospitals that offer health services in one of the basic medical specialties or in one or more sub-disciplines emanating from it, given that the patient comes out of them on the same day
2. Rehabilitation Hospital: Hospitals that provide rehabilitation services, or long residency, or nursing care only.
3. Specialized Dental Hospital: Hospital that provide services for free or for consideration. Such hospitals provide dental health services.
4. Specialized Hospital: Any place equipped with beds and prepared for providing medical treatment, nursing care, medical examination of patients, and/or medicating or

accommodating convalescents, free or for a fee. Such hospitals provide health services in one of the major medical specializations or in one or more of the minor specializations.

- The fees mentioned apply separately to each of the licensed mentioned above
- You may visit NHRA's website for the regulations applicable to these licenses:http://www.nhra.bh/SitePages/View.aspx?PageId=11

Required Documents

- Application form (from NHRA web site)
- Approval from environment in case of radiation
- Architectural drawings from a licensed office
- Detailed proposal of the project
- License to practice (if applicant is a doctor or medical practitioner)
- List of equipment to be used
- List of specialties and activities within the hospital
- Name of the nominated hospital director
- Number of doctors in case of a hospital or a medical center

Human health and social work activities

ISIC4	Business activity
86102-5	Specialized Hospital - Specialized Rehabilitation Hospital

Description

A health facility providing rehabilitation, long-term care, nursing care only or any other allied health services.

Business Requirements

✔ Age

✔ Allowed for Nationalities

Bahraini 100%	GCC 100%
American 100%	Singaporean 100%
Icelander 100%	Liechtensteiner 100%
Norwegian 100%	Swiss 100%

Foreign Allowed up to 100%

✔ Legal Type

It is allowed to register according to the legal forms mentioned below

Allowed for Individual Commercial Registration (ICR) : Yes

Allowed for Company Commercial Registration (CCR) : Yes

Required Step of Licenses and Approvals

Ministry / Directorate	License / Approval Requirements	Approval Type
Radiation Affairs In Supreme Council for Environment	Notification for the Radiation Affairs In Supreme Council for Environment.	Notification Only
NHRA-Health Care Facilities	Specialized Hospital	Post
Municipality Affairs	Site Approval for Human Health Activities	Post
General Directrate Of Civil Defence	Specialized Hospital	Post
NHRA-Health Care Facilities	Specialized Hospital	Final Site Inspection

Radiation Affairs In Supreme Council for Environment (Notification Only) (86102-5)

Approval Name	Description	Estimated Time
Notification for the Radiation Affairs In Supreme Council for Environment.	Notification Only	10 Days

Fee Details (if any)

There is no Estimated Processing Time (Days) in this license.

License Information

After obtaining the commercial license, kindly apply for an environmental license on: Licensingradiation@SCE.GOV.BH.

NHRA-Health Care Facilities (Post) (86102-5)

Approval Name	Description	Estimated Time
Specialized Hospital	Specialized Hospital Any place equipped with beds and prepared for providing medical medicament nursing care and medical examination of patients medicating or accommodating Convalescents whatever the name of this place. This applies to providing services for free or for consideration. Such place provides health services in one of the major medical specializations or in one or more of the minor specializations. Specialized Dental Hospital This applies to providing services for free or for consideration. Such place provides dental health services. One Day Surgery Hospital Namely that they offer health services in one of the basic medical specialties or in one or more sub-	5 Days

disciplines emanating from it that the patient comes out of them on the same day.

Rehabilitation Hospital
Are hospitals that provide rehabilitation services or long residence or nursing care only.

Fee Details (if any)

• Application fee: BD 50 (one-time)
• Initial approval fee: BD 50 (one-time)
• New License fee:
a) Less than 50 beds: BD2000
b) 51 to 100 beds: BD3000
c) 100 beds or above: BD4000
• Renewal license fees:
a) Less than 50 beds: BD1000
b) 51 to 100 beds: BD2000
c) 100 beds or above: BD3000

License Information

There are four licenses that could be obtained under this activity:
1. One day surgery hospital: Hospitals that offer health services in one of the basic medical specialties or in one or more sub-disciplines emanating from it, given that the patient comes out of them on the same day
2. Rehabilitation Hospital: Hospitals that provide rehabilitation services, or long residency, or nursing care only.
3. Specialized Dental Hospital: Hospital that provide services for free or for consideration. Such hospitals provide dental health services.
4. Specialized Hospital: Any place equipped with beds and prepared for providing medical treatment, nursing care, medical examination of patients, and/or medicating or accommodating convalescents, free or for a fee. Such hospitals provide health services

in one of the major medical specializations or in one or more of the minor specializations.

- The fees mentioned apply separately to each of the licensed mentioned above
- You may visit NHRA's website for the regulations applicable to these licenses:http://www.nhra.bh/SitePages/View.aspx?PageId=11

Required Documents

- Application form (from NHRA web site)
- Approval from environment in case of radiation
- Architectural drawings from a licensed office
- Detailed proposal of the project
- License to practice (if applicant is a doctor or medical practitioner)
- List of equipment to be used
- List of specialties and activities within the hospital
- Name of the nominated hospital director
- Number of doctors in case of a hospital or a medical center

Municipality Affairs (Post) (86102-5)

Approval Name	Description	Estimated Time
Site Approval for Human Health Activities	Municipality Approval for the Commercial Registration address or the site in which the Activity will be practiced	3 Days

Fee Details (if any)

10 BD

License Information

General Conditions:
1. Size of shop/premises must be sufficient for the activity
2. Businesses may not carry out the activity outside the boundaries of the shop/ premises
3. It is prohibited to display or store any items or equipment outside the shop / premises boundary without prior approval from the Municipality
4. Maintain cleanliness of the site
5. Comply with the parking space regulations as per the Construction Regulatory Requirements

Activity Specific Conditions:
1. Comply with the regulatory requirements for construction as well as the requirements of the National Health Regulatory Authority (NHRA)
2. Comply with the parking requirements as per cabinet's decision (28) of the year 2009 regarding the Regulatory Requirements of Construction for various areas in the Kingdom of Bahrain

Required Documents

- Lease agreement (after obtaining the necessary approvals from other licensing entities)
- Shop photos

Other Documents

- Cabinet's Decision (56) of the year 2022 regarding the Regulatory Requirements of Construction for various areas in the Kingdom of Bahrain

General Directrate Of Civil Defence (Post) (86102-5)

Approval Name	Description	Estimated Time
Specialized Hospital	checking the approval requirements of the general directorate of civil defense	5 Days

Fee Details (if any)

50 BD Fire prevention and protection certificate fees

License Information

1. Provide the documents mentioned in the “Required Documents” section
2. Comply with the requirements listed in the inspection checklist found in the “Other Downloadable Documents” section
3. Provide proof to the General Directorate of Civil Defense that an alarm and firefighting equipment have been installed within 6 months of obtaining a Commercial Registration and license

If a warehouse is used: A safety certificate must be obtained viaBahrain.bh

Required Documents

•No-objection letter for alarm and extinguisher installation from Civil Defense, or purchasing receipt of alarm equipment and extinguishers along with an annual maintenance contract from a company certified by Civil defense
•Photos required for civil defense activities
•Purchasing invoice of security camera system with specifying the type and storage capacity.

Other Documents

- Sample pictures of the general directorate of civil defense requirements
- licencing requirments of the general directorat of civil defense for activity number "86102"

NHRA-Health Care Facilities (Final Site Inspection) (86102-5)

Approval Name	Description	Estimated Time
Specialized Hospital	Specialized Hospital Any place equipped with beds and prepared for providing medical medicament nursing care and medical examination of patients medicating or accommodating Convalescents whatever the name of this place. This applies to providing services for free or for consideration. Such place provides health services in one of the major medical specializations or in one or more of the minor specializations. Specialized Dental Hospital This applies to providing services for free or for consideration. Such place provides dental health services. One Day Surgery Hospital Namely that they offer health services in one of the basic medical specialties or	5 Days

	in one or more sub-disciplines emanating from it that the patient comes out of them on the same day. Rehabilitation Hospital Are hospitals that provide rehabilitation services or long residence or nursing care only.	

Fee Details (if any)

• Application fee: BD 50 (one-time)
• Initial approval fee: BD 50 (one-time)
• New License fee:
a) Less than 50 beds: BD2000
b) 51 to 100 beds: BD3000
c) 100 beds or above: BD4000
• Renewal license fees:
a) Less than 50 beds: BD1000
b) 51 to 100 beds: BD2000
c) 100 beds or above: BD3000

License Information

There are four licenses that could be obtained under this activity:
1. One day surgery hospital: Hospitals that offer health services in one of the basic medical specialties or in one or more sub-disciplines emanating from it, given that the patient comes out of them on the same day
2. Rehabilitation Hospital: Hospitals that provide rehabilitation services, or long residency, or nursing care only.
3. Specialized Dental Hospital: Hospital that provide services for free or for consideration. Such hospitals provide dental health services.
4. Specialized Hospital: Any place equipped with beds and prepared for providing medical treatment, nursing care, medical examination of patients, and/or medicating or

accommodating convalescents, free or for a fee. Such hospitals provide health services in one of the major medical specializations or in one or more of the minor specializations.

- The fees mentioned apply separately to each of the licensed mentioned above
- You may visit NHRA's website for the regulations applicable to these licenses:http://www.nhra.bh/SitePages/View.aspx?PageId=11

Required Documents

- Application form (from NHRA web site)
- Approval from environment in case of radiation
- Architectural drawings from a licensed office
- Detailed proposal of the project
- License to practice (if applicant is a doctor or medical practitioner)
- List of equipment to be used
- List of specialties and activities within the hospital
- Name of the nominated hospital director
- Number of doctors in case of a hospital or a medical center

Human health and social work activities

ISIC4	Business activity
86102-6	Specialized Hospital - One Day Surgery Hospital

Description

A health facility that provides services only in the field of surgery, or in the sub-specialties linked to it for surgeries that does not require to be monitored for more than 24 hours.

Business Requirements

✔ Age

✔ Allowed for Nationalities

Bahraini 100%	GCC 100%
American 100%	Singaporean 100%
Icelander 100%	Liechtensteiner 100%
Norwegian 100%	Swiss 100%

Foreign Allowed up to 100%

Legal Type

It is allowed to register according to the legal forms mentioned below

Allowed for Individual Commercial Registration (ICR) : Yes

Allowed for Company Commercial Registration (CCR) : Yes

Required Step of Licenses and Approvals

Ministry / Directorate	License / Approval Requirements	Approval Type
Radiation Affairs In Supreme Council for Environment	Notification for the Radiation Affairs In Supreme Council for Environment.	Notification Only
General Directrate Of Civil Defence	Specialized Hospital	Post
Municipality Affairs	Site Approval for Human Health Activities	Post
NHRA-Health Care Facilities	Specialized Hospital	Post
NHRA-Health Care Facilities	Specialized Hospital	Final Site Inspection

Radiation Affairs In Supreme Council for Environment (Notification Only) (86102-6)

Approval Name	Description	Estimated Time
Notification for the Radiation Affairs In Supreme Council for Environment.	Notification Only	10 Days

Fee Details (if any)

There is no Estimated Processing Time (Days) in this license.

License Information

After obtaining the commercial license, kindly apply for an environmental license on: Licensingradiation@SCE.GOV.BH.

General Directrate Of Civil Defence (Post) (86102-6)

Approval Name	Description	Estimated Time
Specialized Hospital	checking the approval requirements of the general directorate of civil defense	5 Days

Fee Details (if any)

50 BD Fire prevention and protection certificate fees

License Information

1. Provide the documents mentioned in the “Required Documents” section
2. Comply with the requirements listed in the inspection checklist found in the “Other Downloadable Documents” section
3. Provide proof to the General Directorate of Civil Defense that an alarm and firefighting equipment have been installed within 6 months of obtaining a Commercial Registration and license

If a warehouse is used: A safety certificate must be obtained viaBahrain.bh

Required Documents

•No-objection letter for alarm and extinguisher installation from Civil Defense, or purchasing receipt of alarm equipment and extinguishers along with an annual maintenance contract from a company certified by Civil defense
•Photos required for civil defense activities
•Purchasing invoice of security camera system with specifying the type and storage capacity.

Other Documents

- Sample pictures of the general directorate of civil defense requirements
- licencing requirments of the general directorat of civil defense for activity number "86102"

Municipality Affairs (Post) (86102-6)

Approval Name	Description	Estimated Time
Site Approval for Human Health Activities	Municipality Approval for the Commercial Registration address or the site in which the Activity will be practiced	3 Days

Fee Details (if any)

10 BD

License Information

General Conditions:
1. Size of shop/premises must be sufficient for the activity
2. Businesses may not carry out the activity outside the boundaries of the shop/ premises
3. It is prohibited to display or store any items or equipment outside the shop / premises boundary without prior approval from the Municipality
4. Maintain cleanliness of the site
5. Comply with the parking space regulations as per the Construction Regulatory Requirements

Activity Specific Conditions:
1. Comply with the regulatory requirements for construction as well as the requirements of the National Health Regulatory Authority (NHRA)
2. Comply with the parking requirements as per cabinet's decision (28) of the year 2009 regarding the Regulatory Requirements of Construction for various areas in the Kingdom of Bahrain

Required Documents

- Lease agreement (after obtaining the necessary approvals from other licensing entities)
- Shop photos

Other Documents

- Cabinet's Decision (56) of the year 2022 regarding the Regulatory Requirements of Construction for various areas in the Kingdom of Bahrain

NHRA-Health Care Facilities (Post) (86102-6)

Approval Name	Description	Estimated Time
Specialized Hospital	Specialized Hospital Any place equipped with beds and prepared for providing medical medicament nursing care and medical examination of patients medicating or accommodating Convalescents whatever the name of this place. This applies to providing services for free or for consideration. Such place provides health services in one of the major medical specializations or in one or more of the minor specializations. Specialized Dental Hospital This applies to providing services for free or for consideration. Such place provides dental health services. One Day Surgery Hospital Namely that they offer health services in one of the basic medical specialties or in one or more sub-	5 Days

disciplines emanating from it that the patient comes out of them on the same day.

Rehabilitation Hospital
Are hospitals that provide rehabilitation services or long residence or nursing care only.

Fee Details (if any)

• Application fee: BD 50 (one-time)
• Initial approval fee: BD 50 (one-time)
• New License fee:
a) Less than 50 beds: BD2000
b) 51 to 100 beds: BD3000
c) 100 beds or above: BD4000
• Renewal license fees:
a) Less than 50 beds: BD1000
b) 51 to 100 beds: BD2000
c) 100 beds or above: BD3000

License Information

There are four licenses that could be obtained under this activity:
1. One day surgery hospital: Hospitals that offer health services in one of the basic medical specialties or in one or more sub-disciplines emanating from it, given that the patient comes out of them on the same day
2. Rehabilitation Hospital: Hospitals that provide rehabilitation services, or long residency, or nursing care only.
3. Specialized Dental Hospital: Hospital that provide services for free or for consideration. Such hospitals provide dental health services.
4. Specialized Hospital: Any place equipped with beds and prepared for providing medical treatment, nursing care, medical examination of patients, and/or medicating or accommodating convalescents, free or for a fee. Such hospitals provide health services

in one of the major medical specializations or in one or more of the minor specializations.

- The fees mentioned apply separately to each of the licensed mentioned above
- You may visit NHRA's website for the regulations applicable to these licenses:http://www.nhra.bh/SitePages/View.aspx?PageId=11

Required Documents

- Application form (from NHRA web site)
- Approval from environment in case of radiation
- Architectural drawings from a licensed office
- Detailed proposal of the project
- License to practice (if applicant is a doctor or medical practitioner)
- List of equipment to be used
- List of specialties and activities within the hospital
- Name of the nominated hospital director
- Number of doctors in case of a hospital or a medical center

NHRA-Health Care Facilities (Final Site Inspection) (86102-6)

Approval Name	Description	Estimated Time
Specialized Hospital	Specialized Hospital Any place equipped with beds and prepared for providing medical medicament nursing care and medical examination of patients medicating or accommodating Convalescents whatever the name of this place. This applies to providing services for free or for consideration. Such place provides health services in one of the major medical specializations or in one or more of the minor specializations. Specialized Dental Hospital This applies to providing services for free or for consideration. Such place provides dental health services. One Day Surgery Hospital Namely that they offer health services in one of the basic medical specialties or	5 Days

	in one or more sub-disciplines emanating from it that the patient comes out of them on the same day. Rehabilitation Hospital Are hospitals that provide rehabilitation services or long residence or nursing care only.	

Fee Details (if any)

• Application fee: BD 50 (one-time)
• Initial approval fee: BD 50 (one-time)
• New License fee:
a) Less than 50 beds: BD2000
b) 51 to 100 beds: BD3000
c) 100 beds or above: BD4000
• Renewal license fees:
a) Less than 50 beds: BD1000
b) 51 to 100 beds: BD2000
c) 100 beds or above: BD3000

License Information

There are four licenses that could be obtained under this activity:
1. One day surgery hospital: Hospitals that offer health services in one of the basic medical specialties or in one or more sub-disciplines emanating from it, given that the patient comes out of them on the same day
2. Rehabilitation Hospital: Hospitals that provide rehabilitation services, or long residency, or nursing care only.
3. Specialized Dental Hospital: Hospital that provide services for free or for consideration. Such hospitals provide dental health services.
4. Specialized Hospital: Any place equipped with beds and prepared for providing medical treatment, nursing care, medical examination of patients, and/or medicating or

accommodating convalescents, free or for a fee. Such hospitals provide health services in one of the major medical specializations or in one or more of the minor specializations.

- The fees mentioned apply separately to each of the licensed mentioned above
- You may visit NHRA's website for the regulations applicable to these licenses:http://www.nhra.bh/SitePages/View.aspx?PageId=11

Required Documents

- Application form (from NHRA web site)
- Approval from environment in case of radiation
- Architectural drawings from a licensed office
- Detailed proposal of the project
- License to practice (if applicant is a doctor or medical practitioner)
- List of equipment to be used
- List of specialties and activities within the hospital
- Name of the nominated hospital director
- Number of doctors in case of a hospital or a medical center

Human health and social work activities

ISIC4	Business activity
86201	Specialized medical clinic

Description

Specialized Medical clinic
It is a health institution established for the purpose of providing healthcare minor consultative medical and medication services in only one medical specialist and first aid. The cases received must be referred to the nearest hospital or specialized medical center. It is equipped with the necessary tools and equipment pursuant to the provisions and conditions set out in the Legislative Decree No. 7 of 1989 concerning the Practice of the Medical Profession and Dentistry and the Applicable Decisions under the applicable rules of the NHRA.

Specialized Medical center
It is a health institution that includes more than one clinic in a sophisticated medical specialization. In terms of the requirements for obtaining license technical conditions and professional safety it shall conform to the controls and procedures set out in the NHRA Board Decision No. (3) Of 2014 and the condition lists approved by the NHRA Board.

Business Requirements

Age

18 and above

Allowed for Nationalities

Bahraini 100%	GCC 100%
American 100%	Singaporean 100%
Icelander 100%	Liechtenstein er 100%
Norwegian 100%	Swiss 100%

Foreign Allowed up to 100%

Legal Type

It is allowed to register according to the legal forms mentioned below

Allowed for Individual Commercial Registration (ICR) : Yes

Allowed for Company Commercial Registration (CCR) : Yes

- Bahrain Shareholding Company (Public)
- With Limited Liability Company
- Branch of a Foreign Company
- Bahrain Shareholding Company (Closed)
- Partnership Company
- Simple Commandite Company
- Commandite By Shares Company
- Non Profit Company

Required Step of Licenses and Approvals

Ministry / Directorate	License / Approval Requirements	Approval Type
Radiation Affairs In Supreme Council for	Notification for the Radiation Affairs In	Notification Only

Environment	Supreme Council for Environment.	
NHRA-Health Care Facilities	Specialized medical clinic	Post
Municipality Affairs	Site Approval for Human Health Activities	Post
General Directrate Of Civil Defence	Specialized medical clinic	Post
NHRA-Health Care Facilities	Specialized medical clinic	Final Site Inspection

Radiation Affairs In Supreme Council for Environment (Notification Only) (86201)

Approval Name	Description	Estimated Time
Notification for the Radiation Affairs In Supreme Council for Environment.	Notification Only	10 Days

Fee Details (if any)

There is no Estimated Processing Time (Days) in this license.

License Information

After obtaining the commercial license, kindly apply for an environmental license on: Licensingradiation@SCE.GOV.BH.

NHRA-Health Care Facilities (Post) (86201)

Approval Name	Description	Estimated Time
Specialized medical clinic	Specialized Medical clinic It is a health institution established for the purpose of providing healthcare minor consultative medical and medication services in only one medical specialist and first aid. The cases received must be referred to the nearest hospital or specialized medical center. It is equipped with the necessary tools and equipment pursuant to the provisions and conditions set out in the Legislative Decree No. 7 of 1989 concerning the Practice of the Medical Profession and Dentistry and the Applicable Decisions under the applicable rules of the NHRA. Fees : 100BD Specialized Medical center It is a health institution that includes more than	5 Days

	one clinic in a sophisticated medical specialization. In terms of the requirements for obtaining license technical conditions and professional safety it shall conform to the controls and procedures set out in the NHRA Board Decision No. (3) Of 2014 and the condition lists approved by the NHRA .	

Fee Details (if any)

For Specialized Medical Center:
- Application fee: BD 50 (one-time)
- Initial approval fee: BD 50 (one-time)
- New License fee: 1000
- Renewal license fees: 800

For Specialized Medical Clinic:
- Application fee: BD 50 (one-time)
- Initial approval fee: BD 50 (one-time)
- New License fee: 300
- Renewal license fees: 200

License Information

There are two licenses that could be obtained under this activity:
1. Specialized medical center: A health institution that includes more than one specialised medical clinic. In terms of the requirements for obtaining a license, technical conditions and professional safety, it shall conform to the controls and procedures set out in NHRA Board Decision No. (3) of 2014 as well as the condition lists approved by

the NHRA Board.
2. Specialized medical clinic: A health institution established for providing healthcare, first aid, and minor consultative medical and medication services in only one medical specialism. The cases received must be referred to the nearest hospital or specialized medical center. It is equipped with the necessary tools and equipment pursuant to the provisions and conditions set out in Legislative Decree No. 7 of 1989 concerning the practice of the medical profession and dentistry and the relevant decisions under the applicable rules of the NHRA.
• You may visit NHRA's website for the regulations applicable to these licenses:http://www.nhra.bh/SitePages/View.aspx?PageId=11

Required Documents

•Application form (from NHRA web site)
•Approval from environment in case of radiation
•Architectural drawings from a licensed office
•Detailed proposal of the project
•License to practice (if applicant is a doctor or medical practitioner)
•List of equipment to be used
•List of specialties and activities within the hospital
•Name of the nominated hospital director
•Number of doctors in case of a hospital or a medical center

Municipality Affairs (Post) (86201)

Approval Name	Description	Estimated Time
Site Approval for Human Health Activities	Municipality Approval for the Commercial Registration address or the site in which the Activity will be practiced	3 Days

Fee Details (if any)

10 BD

License Information

General Conditions:
1. Size of shop/premises must be sufficient for the activity
2. Businesses may not carry out the activity outside the boundaries of the shop/ premises
3. It is prohibited to display or store any items or equipment outside the shop / premises boundary without prior approval from the Municipality
4. Maintain cleanliness of the site
5. Comply with the parking space regulations as per the Construction Regulatory Requirements

Activity Specific Conditions:
1. Comply with the regulatory requirements for construction as well as the requirements of the National Health Regulatory Authority (NHRA)
2. Comply with the parking requirements as per cabinet's decision (28) of the year 2009 regarding the Regulatory Requirements of Construction for various areas in the Kingdom of Bahrain

Required Documents

- Lease agreement (after obtaining the necessary approvals from other licensing entities)
- Shop photos

Other Documents

- Cabinet's Decision (56) of the year 2022 regarding the Regulatory Requirements of Construction for various areas in the Kingdom of Bahrain

General Directrate Of Civil Defence (Post) (86201)

Approval Name	Description	Estimated Time
Specialized medical clinic	checking the approval requirements of the general directorate of civil defense	5 Days

Fee Details (if any)

30 BD Fire prevention and protection certificate fees

License Information

1. Provide the documents mentioned in the “Required Documents” section
2. Comply with the requirements listed in the inspection checklist found in the “Other Downloadable Documents” section
3. Provide proof to the General Directorate of Civil Defense that an alarm and firefighting equipment have been installed within 6 months of obtaining a Commercial Registration and license

If a warehouse is used: A safety certificate must be obtained viaBahrain.bh

Required Documents

•No-objection letter for alarm and extinguisher installation from Civil Defense, or purchasing receipt of alarm equipment and extinguishers along with an annual maintenance contract from a company certified by Civil defense
•Photos required for civil defense activities
•Purchasing invoice of security camera system with specifying the type and storage capacity.

Other Documents

- Sample pictures of the general directorate of civil defense requirements
- licencing requirments of the general directorat of civil defense for activity number "86201"

NHRA-Health Care Facilities (Final Site Inspection) (86201)

Approval Name	Description	Estimated Time
Specialized medical clinic	Specialized Medical clinic It is a health institution established for the purpose of providing healthcare minor consultative medical and medication services in only one medical specialist and first aid. The cases received must be referred to the nearest hospital or specialized medical center. It is equipped with the necessary tools and equipment pursuant to the provisions and conditions set out in the Legislative Decree No. 7 of 1989 concerning the Practice of the Medical Profession and Dentistry and the Applicable Decisions under the applicable rules of the NHRA. Fees : 100BD Specialized Medical center It is a health institution that includes more than	5 Days

	one clinic in a sophisticated medical specialization. In terms of the requirements for obtaining license technical conditions and professional safety it shall conform to the controls and procedures set out in the NHRA Board Decision No. (3) Of 2014 and the condition lists approved by the NHRA .	

Fee Details (if any)

For Specialized Medical Center:
- Application fee: BD 50 (one-time)
- Initial approval fee: BD 50 (one-time)
- New License fee: 1000
- Renewal license fees: 800

For Specialized Medical Clinic:
- Application fee: BD 50 (one-time)
- Initial approval fee: BD 50 (one-time)
- New License fee: 300
- Renewal license fees: 200

License Information

There are two licenses that could be obtained under this activity:
1. Specialized medical center: A health institution that includes more than one specialised medical clinic. In terms of the requirements for obtaining a license, technical conditions and professional safety, it shall conform to the controls and procedures set out in NHRA Board Decision No. (3) of 2014 as well as the condition lists approved by

the NHRA Board.
2. Specialized medical clinic: A health institution established for providing healthcare, first aid, and minor consultative medical and medication services in only one medical specialism. The cases received must be referred to the nearest hospital or specialized medical center. It is equipped with the necessary tools and equipment pursuant to the provisions and conditions set out in Legislative Decree No. 7 of 1989 concerning the practice of the medical profession and dentistry and the relevant decisions under the applicable rules of the NHRA.
• You may visit NHRA's website for the regulations applicable to these licenses:http://www.nhra.bh/SitePages/View.aspx?PageId=11

Required Documents

•Application form (from NHRA web site)
•Approval from environment in case of radiation
•Architectural drawings from a licensed office
•Detailed proposal of the project
•License to practice (if applicant is a doctor or medical practitioner)
•List of equipment to be used
•List of specialties and activities within the hospital
•Name of the nominated hospital director
•Number of doctors in case of a hospital or a medical center

Human health and social work activities

ISIC4	Business activity
86202	Non-specialized medical clinics

Description

General Medical center
It is a health institution prepared for receiving examining and medicating patients. The services of such institution cover at least three different medical specializations. In terms of the requirements for obtaining license technical conditions and professional safety it shall conform to the controls and procedures set out in the NHRA Board Decision No. (3) Of 2014 and the condition lists approved by the NHRA Board.

General Medical Clinic
It is a health institution established for the purpose of providing healthcare, minor consultative medical and medication services and first aid. No emergency services are provided therein. The cases received must be referred to the nearest hospital or specialized medical center. It is equipped with the necessary tools and equipment pursuant to the provisions and conditions set out in the Legislative Decree No. 7 of 1989 concerning the Practice of the Medical Profession and Dentistry and the Applicable Decisions

24 hours clinic
 It is an institution to be licensed to the licensed physicians. It shall work 24 hours a day including official holidays. A licensee must be a full-time physician specialized in his/her field of specialization according to the controls and conditions applicable by the NHRA.

Business Requirements

Age

18 and above

Allowed for Nationalities

Bahraini 100%		GCC 100%	
American 100%		Singaporean 100%	
Icelander 100%		Liechtenstein er 100%	
Norwegian 100%		Swiss 100%	

Foreign Allowed up to 100%

Legal Type

It is allowed to register according to the legal forms mentioned below

Allowed for Individual Commercial Registration (ICR) : Yes

Allowed for Company Commercial Registration (CCR) : Yes

- Bahrain Shareholding Company (Public)
- With Limited Liability Company
- Branch of a Foreign Company
- Bahrain Shareholding Company (Closed)
- Partnership Company
- Simple Commandite Company
- Commandite By Shares Company
- Non Profit Company

Required Step of Licenses and Approvals

Ministry / Directorate	License / Approval Requirements	Approval Type
Municipality Affairs	Site Approval for Human Health Activities	Post

General Directrate Of Civil Defence	Non-specialized medical clinics	Post
NHRA-Health Care Facilities	Non-specialized medical clinics	Post
NHRA-Health Care Facilities	Non-specialized medical clinics	Final Site Inspection

Municipality Affairs (Post) (86202)

Approval Name	Description	Estimated Time
Site Approval for Human Health Activities	Municipality Approval for the Commercial Registration address or the site in which the Activity will be practiced	3 Days

Fee Details (if any)

10 BD

License Information

General Conditions:
1. Size of shop/premises must be sufficient for the activity
2. Businesses may not carry out the activity outside the boundaries of the shop/ premises
3. It is prohibited to display or store any items or equipment outside the shop / premises boundary without prior approval from the Municipality
4. Maintain cleanliness of the site
5. Comply with the parking space regulations as per the Construction Regulatory Requirements

Activity Specific Conditions:
1. Comply with the regulatory requirements for construction as well as the requirements of the National Health Regulatory Authority (NHRA)
2. Comply with the parking requirements as per cabinet's decision (28) of the year 2009 regarding the Regulatory Requirements of Construction for various areas in the Kingdom of Bahrain

Required Documents

- Lease agreement (after obtaining the necessary approvals from other licensing entities)
- Shop photos

Other Documents

- Cabinet's Decision (56) of the year 2022 regarding the Regulatory Requirements of Construction for various areas in the Kingdom of Bahrain

General Directrate Of Civil Defence (Post) (86202)

Approval Name	Description	Estimated Time
Non-specialized medical clinics	checking the approval requirements of the general directorate of civil defense	5 Days

Fee Details (if any)

30 BD Fire prevention and protection certificate fees

License Information

1. Provide the documents mentioned in the “Required Documents” section
2. Comply with the requirements listed in the inspection checklist found in the “Other Downloadable Documents” section
3. Provide proof to the General Directorate of Civil Defense that an alarm and firefighting equipment have been installed within 6 months of obtaining a Commercial Registration and license

If a warehouse is used: A safety certificate must be obtained viaBahrain.bh

Required Documents

•No-objection letter for alarm and extinguisher installation from Civil Defense, or purchasing receipt of alarm equipment and extinguishers along with an annual maintenance contract from a company certified by Civil defense
•Photos required for civil defense activities
•Purchasing invoice of security camera system with specifying the type and storage capacity.

Other Documents

- Sample pictures of the general directorate of civil defense requirements
- licencing requirments of the general directorat of civil defense for activity number "86202"

NHRA-Health Care Facilities (Post) (86202)

Approval Name	Description	Estimated Time
Non-specialized medical clinics	General Medical center It is a health institution prepared for receiving examining and medicating patients. The services of such institution cover at least three different medical specializations. In terms of the requirements for obtaining license technical conditions and professional safety it shall conform to the controls and procedures set out in the NHRA Board Decision No. (3) Of 2014 and the condition lists approved by the NHRA Board. Fees: 300 B.D General Medical Clinic It is a health institution established for the purpose of providing healthcare, minor consultative medical and medication services and first aid. No	5 Days

emergency services are provided therein. The cases received must be referred to the nearest hospital or specialized medical center. It is equipped with the necessary tools and equipment pursuant to the provisions and conditions set out in the Legislative Decree No. 7 of 1989 concerning the Practice of the Medical Profession and Dentistry and the Applicable Decisions
Fees: 100 B.D

24 hours clinic
It is an institution to be licensed to the licensed physicians. It shall work 24 hours a day including official holidays. A licensee must be a full-time physician specialized in his/her field of specialization according to the controls and conditions applicable by the NHRA.
Fees: 100 B.D

Fee Details (if any)

Fee for each license:
- Application Fee: BD50 (one-time)
- Initial approval fee: BD 50 (one-time)

Fees for a General Medical Center:
- New License fee: 1000
- Renewal license fees: 800

Fees for a General Medical Clinic:
- New License fee: 300
- Renewal license fees: 200

Fees for a 24 hours clinic:
- New License Fee: 500
- Renewal license fees: 300

License Information

There are three licenses that could be obtained under this activity:
1. General Medical Center: Health institutions prepared for receiving examining and medicating patients. The services of such institutions cover at least three different medical specializations.

2. General Medical Clinic: Health institutions established for the purpose of providing healthcare, minor consultative medical and medication services, as well as first aid. This license does not allow the health institution to provide emergency services. The cases received must be referred to the nearest hospital or specialized medical center. The institution must be equipped with the necessary tools and equipment pursuant to the provisions and conditions set out in the Legislative Decree No. 7 of 1989 concerning the Practice of the Medical Profession and Dentistry and the Applicable Decisions

3. 24 hours clinic: An institution that is licensed to licensed physicians allowing them to operate 24 hours a day, including official holidays. The licensee must be a physician specialized in his/her field of specialization and must work on a full-time on daily basis in accordance to the regulations and requirements specified by NHRA.

- You may visit NHRA's website for the regulations applicable to these licenses:http://www.nhra.bh

Required Documents

- Application form (from NHRA web site)
- Approval from environment in case of radiation
- Architectural drawings from a licensed office
- License to practice (if applicant is a doctor or medical practitioner)
- List of equipment to be used
- List of specialties and activities within the hospital
- Name of the nominated hospital director
- Number of doctors in case of a hospital or a medical center
- Submit a detail proposal of the project

NHRA-Health Care Facilities (Final Site Inspection) (86202)

Approval Name	Description	Estimated Time
Non-specialized medical clinics	General Medical center It is a health institution prepared for receiving examining and medicating patients. The services of such institution cover at least three different medical specializations. In terms of the requirements for obtaining license technical conditions and professional safety it shall conform to the controls and procedures set out in the NHRA Board Decision No. (3) Of 2014 and the condition lists approved by the NHRA Board. Fees: 300 B.D General Medical Clinic It is a health institution established for the purpose of providing healthcare, minor consultative medical and medication services and first aid. No	5 Days

emergency services are provided therein. The cases received must be referred to the nearest hospital or specialized medical center. It is equipped with the necessary tools and equipment pursuant to the provisions and conditions set out in the Legislative Decree No. 7 of 1989 concerning the Practice of the Medical Profession and Dentistry and the Applicable Decisions
Fees: 100 B.D

24 hours clinic
It is an institution to be licensed to the licensed physicians. It shall work 24 hours a day including official holidays. A licensee must be a full-time physician specialized in his/her field of specialization according to the controls and conditions applicable by the NHRA.
Fees: 100 B.D

Fee Details (if any)

Fee for each license:
- Application Fee: BD50 (one-time)
- Initial approval fee: BD 50 (one-time)

Fees for a General Medical Center:
- New License fee: 1000
- Renewal license fees: 800

Fees for a General Medical Clinic:
- New License fee: 300
- Renewal license fees: 200

Fees for a 24 hours clinic:
- New License Fee: 500
- Renewal license fees: 300

License Information

There are three licenses that could be obtained under this activity:
1. General Medical Center: Health institutions prepared for receiving examining and medicating patients. The services of such institutions cover at least three different medical specializations.

2. General Medical Clinic: Health institutions established for the purpose of providing healthcare, minor consultative medical and medication services, as well as first aid. This license does not allow the health institution to provide emergency services. The cases received must be referred to the nearest hospital or specialized medical center. The institution must be equipped with the necessary tools and equipment pursuant to the provisions and conditions set out in the Legislative Decree No. 7 of 1989 concerning the Practice of the Medical Profession and Dentistry and the Applicable Decisions

3. 24 hours clinic: An institution that is licensed to licensed physicians allowing them to operate 24 hours a day, including official holidays. The licensee must be a physician specialized in his/her field of specialization and must work on a full-time on daily basis in accordance to the regulations and requirements specified by NHRA.

- You may visit NHRA's website for the regulations applicable to these licenses:http://www.nhra.bh

Required Documents

- Application form (from NHRA web site)
- Approval from environment in case of radiation
- Architectural drawings from a licensed office
- License to practice (if applicant is a doctor or medical practitioner)
- List of equipment to be used
- List of specialties and activities within the hospital
- Name of the nominated hospital director
- Number of doctors in case of a hospital or a medical center
- Submit a detail proposal of the project

Human health and social work activities

ISIC4	Business activity
86203	Dental Practice

Description

Dental Lab
An institution prepared and equipped according to the Terms and Conditions of the Legislative Decree No. (2) Of 1987 with Regard to the Practice of Non Doctors and Pharmacists As Paramedics and its related regulatory decisions to undertake laboratory procedures related to artificial devices and installations required for patients according to the specifications determined by the medicating dentist which are also set out in Table No. (1-b) attached to the Ministerial Decision No. (8) of 1994 and any other preconditions added by the NHRA.

Specialized dental clinic
It includes clinics specialized in dentistry receiving and caring patients by a dentist who has a license to practice the medical profession in the Kingdom of Bahrain according to the provisions and conditions applicable by the NHRA. The Clinic may include more physicians in case it is co-licensed.

General dental center
It is a dental health institution prepared for receiving medicating and examining patients. In terms of the requirements for obtaining license technical conditions and professional safety it shall conform to the controls and procedures set out in the NHRA Board Decision No. (3) Of 2014 and the condition lists approved by the NHRA Board.

Business Requirements

Age

18 and above

Allowed for Nationalities

Bahraini 100%	GCC 100%
American 100%	Singaporean 100%
Icelander 100%	Liechtenstein er 100%
Norwegian 100%	Swiss 100%

Foreign Allowed up to 100%

Legal Type

It is allowed to register according to the legal forms mentioned below

Allowed for Individual Commercial Registration (ICR) : Yes

Allowed for Company Commercial Registration (CCR) : Yes

- Bahrain Shareholding Company (Public)
- With Limited Liability Company
- Branch of a Foreign Company
- Bahrain Shareholding Company (Closed)
- Partnership Company
- Simple Commandite Company
- Commandite By Shares Company
- Non Profit Company

Required Step of Licenses and Approvals

Ministry / Directorate	License / Approval Requirements	Approval Type
Radiation Affairs In Supreme Council for	Notification for the Radiation Affairs In	Notification Only

Environment	Supreme Council for Environment.	
NHRA-Health Care Facilities	Dental Practice	Post
General Directrate Of Civil Defence	Dental Practice	Post
Municipality Affairs	Site Approval for Human Health Activities	Post
NHRA-Health Care Facilities	Dental Practice	Final Site Inspection

Radiation Affairs In Supreme Council for Environment (Notification Only) (86203)

Approval Name	Description	Estimated Time
Notification for the Radiation Affairs In Supreme Council for Environment.	Notification Only	10 Days

Fee Details (if any)

There is no Estimated Processing Time (Days) in this license.

License Information

After obtaining the commercial license, kindly apply for an environmental license on: Licensingradiation@SCE.GOV.BH.

NHRA-Health Care Facilities (Post) (86203)

Approval Name	Description	Estimated Time
Dental Practice	Dental Lab An institution prepared and equipped according to the Terms and Conditions of the Legislative Decree No. (2) Of 1987 with Regard to the Practice of Non Doctors and Pharmacists As Paramedics and its related regulatory decisions to undertake laboratory procedures related to artificial devices and installations required for patients according to the specifications determined by the medicating dentist which are also set out in Table No. (1-b) attached to the Ministerial Decision No. (8) of 1994 and any other preconditions added by the NHRA. Fees: 200 B.D Specialized dental clinic It includes clinics specialized in dentistry receiving and caring patients by a dentist who has a	5 Days

	license to practice the medical profession in the Kingdom of Bahrain according to the provisions and conditions applicable by the NHRA. The Clinic may include more physicians in case it is co-licensed. Fees: 100 B.D General dental center It is a dental health institution prepared for receiving medicating and examining patients. In terms of the requirements for obtaining license technical conditions and professional safety it shall conform to the controls and procedures set out in the NHRA Board Decision No. (3) Of 2014 and the condition lists approved by the NHRA Board. Fees: 300 B.D	

Fee Details (if any)

Fee for each license:
- Application fee: BD 50 (one-time)
- Initial approval fee: BD 50 (one-time)

Fees for a Dental Lab:
- New License Fee: 700
- Renewal license fees: 400

Fees for a Specialized Dental Clinic:
• New License fee: 300
• Renewal license fees: 200
Fees for General Dental Center:
• New License fee: 1000
• Renewal license fees: 800

License Information

There are three licenses that could be obtained under this activity:
1. Dental Lab: An institution prepared and equipped according to the Terms and Conditions of the Legislative Decree No. (2) Of 1987 with Regard to the Practice of Non Doctors and Pharmacists As Paramedics and its related regulatory decisions to undertake laboratory procedures related to artificial devices and installations required for patients according to the specifications determined by the medicating dentist which are also set out in Table No. (1-b) attached to the Ministerial Decision No. (8) of 1994 and any other preconditions added by the NHRA.

2. Specialized Dental Clinic: It includes clinics specialized in dentistry receiving and caring patients by a dentist who has a license to practice the medical profession in the Kingdom of Bahrain according to the rules and conditions applied by the NHRA. The Clinic may include more physicians in case it is co-licensed.

3. General Dental Center: It is a dental health institution prepared for receiving medicating and examining patients. The licensing, technical, and safety requirements for this license are set out in the NHRA Board Decision No. (3) Of 2014 and the condition lists approved by the NHRA Board.

• You may visit NHRA's website for the regulations applicable to these licenses:http://www.nhra.bh

Required Documents

•Application form (from NHRA web site)
•Approval from environment in case of radiation
•Architectural drawings from a licensed office
•License to practice (if applicant is a doctor or medical practitioner)
•List of equipment to be used
•List of specialties and activities within the hospital
•Name of the nominated hospital director
•Number of doctors in case of a hospital or a medical center
•Submit a detail proposal of the project

General Directrate Of Civil Defence (Post) (86203)

Approval Name	Description	Estimated Time
Dental Practice	checking the approval requirements of the general directorate of civil defense	5 Days

Fee Details (if any)

30 BD Fire prevention and protection certificate fees

License Information

1. Provide the documents mentioned in the “Required Documents” section
2. Comply with the requirements listed in the inspection checklist found in the “Other Downloadable Documents” section
3. Provide proof to the General Directorate of Civil Defense that an alarm and firefighting equipment have been installed within 6 months of obtaining a Commercial Registration and license

If a warehouse is used: A safety certificate must be obtained viaBahrain.bh

Required Documents

•No-objection letter for alarm and extinguisher installation from Civil Defense, or purchasing receipt of alarm equipment and extinguishers along with an annual maintenance contract from a company certified by Civil defense
•Photos required for civil defense activities
•Purchasing invoice of security camera system with specifying the type and storage capacity.

Other Documents

- Sample pictures of the general directorate of civil defense requirements
- licencing requirments of the general directorat of civil defense for activity number "86203"

Municipality Affairs (Post) (86203)

Approval Name	Description	Estimated Time
Site Approval for Human Health Activities	Municipality Approval for the Commercial Registration address or the site in which the Activity will be practiced	3 Days

Fee Details (if any)

10 BD

License Information

General Conditions:
1. Size of shop/premises must be sufficient for the activity
2. Businesses may not carry out the activity outside the boundaries of the shop/ premises
3. It is prohibited to display or store any items or equipment outside the shop / premises boundary without prior approval from the Municipality
4. Maintain cleanliness of the site
5. Comply with the parking space regulations as per the Construction Regulatory Requirements

Activity Specific Conditions:
1. Comply with the regulatory requirements for construction as well as the requirements of the National Health Regulatory Authority (NHRA)
2. Comply with the parking requirements as per cabinet's decision (28) of the year 2009 regarding the Regulatory Requirements of Construction for various areas in the Kingdom of Bahrain

Required Documents

- Lease agreement (after obtaining the necessary approvals from other licensing entities)
- Shop photos

Other Documents

- Cabinet's Decision (56) of the year 2022 regarding the Regulatory Requirements of Construction for various areas in the Kingdom of Bahrain

NHRA-Health Care Facilities (Final Site Inspection) (86203)

Approval Name	Description	Estimated Time
Dental Practice	Dental Lab An institution prepared and equipped according to the Terms and Conditions of the Legislative Decree No. (2) Of 1987 with Regard to the Practice of Non Doctors and Pharmacists As Paramedics and its related regulatory decisions to undertake laboratory procedures related to artificial devices and installations required for patients according to the specifications determined by the medicating dentist which are also set out in Table No. (1-b) attached to the Ministerial Decision No. (8) of 1994 and any other preconditions added by the NHRA. Fees: 200 B.D Specialized dental clinic It includes clinics specialized in dentistry receiving and caring patients by a dentist who has a	5 Days

	license to practice the medical profession in the Kingdom of Bahrain according to the provisions and conditions applicable by the NHRA. The Clinic may include more physicians in case it is co-licensed. Fees: 100 B.D General dental center It is a dental health institution prepared for receiving medicating and examining patients. In terms of the requirements for obtaining license technical conditions and professional safety it shall conform to the controls and procedures set out in the NHRA Board Decision No. (3) Of 2014 and the condition lists approved by the NHRA Board. Fees: 300 B.D	

Fee Details (if any)

Fee for each license:
- Application fee: BD 50 (one-time)
- Initial approval fee: BD 50 (one-time)

Fees for a Dental Lab:
- New License Fee: 700
- Renewal license fees: 400

Fees for a Specialized Dental Clinic:
• New License fee: 300
• Renewal license fees: 200
Fees for General Dental Center:
• New License fee: 1000
• Renewal license fees: 800

License Information

There are three licenses that could be obtained under this activity:
1. Dental Lab: An institution prepared and equipped according to the Terms and Conditions of the Legislative Decree No. (2) Of 1987 with Regard to the Practice of Non Doctors and Pharmacists As Paramedics and its related regulatory decisions to undertake laboratory procedures related to artificial devices and installations required for patients according to the specifications determined by the medicating dentist which are also set out in Table No. (1-b) attached to the Ministerial Decision No. (8) of 1994 and any other preconditions added by the NHRA.

2. Specialized Dental Clinic: It includes clinics specialized in dentistry receiving and caring patients by a dentist who has a license to practice the medical profession in the Kingdom of Bahrain according to the rules and conditions applied by the NHRA. The Clinic may include more physicians in case it is co-licensed.

3. General Dental Center: It is a dental health institution prepared for receiving medicating and examining patients. The licensing, technical, and safety requirements for this license are set out in the NHRA Board Decision No. (3) Of 2014 and the condition lists approved by the NHRA Board.

• You may visit NHRA's website for the regulations applicable to these licenses:http://www.nhra.bh

Required Documents

•Application form (from NHRA web site)
•Approval from environment in case of radiation
•Architectural drawings from a licensed office
•License to practice (if applicant is a doctor or medical practitioner)
•List of equipment to be used
•List of specialties and activities within the hospital
•Name of the nominated hospital director
•Number of doctors in case of a hospital or a medical center
•Submit a detail proposal of the project

Human health and social work activities

ISIC4	Business activity
86209-1	Other Medical center - General Medical Center

Description

A health facility licensed for only one physician in General Practice , licensed by the Authority to practice the profession to provide health care, consultation services, general and specialized medical treatments within the Kingdom in accordance with the terms and conditions required by the Authority.

Business Requirements

Age

18 and above

Allowed for Nationalities

Bahraini 100%	GCC 100%
American 100%	Singaporean 100%
Icelander 100%	Liechtensteiner 100%
Norwegian 100%	Swiss 100%

Foreign Allowed up to 100%

Legal Type

It is allowed to register according to the legal forms mentioned below

Allowed for Individual Commercial Registration (ICR) : Yes

Allowed for Company Commercial Registration (CCR) : Yes

- Bahrain Shareholding Company (Public)
- With Limited Liability Company
- Branch of a Foreign Company
- Bahrain Shareholding Company (Closed)
- Partnership Company
- Simple Commandite Company
- Commandite By Shares Company
- Non Profit Company

Required Step of Licenses and Approvals

Ministry / Directorate	License / Approval Requirements	Approval Type
Radiation Affairs In Supreme Council for Environment	Notification for the Radiation Affairs In Supreme Council for Environment.	Notification Only
NHRA-Health Care Facilities	The Approval of Health Care Facilities Department in NHRA - Post	Post
General Directrate Of Civil Defence	Other Medical center	Post
Municipality Affairs	Site Approval for Human Health Activities	Post
NHRA-Health Care Facilities	The Approval of Health Care Facilities Department in NHRA - Final Site Inspection	Final Site Inspection

Radiation Affairs In Supreme Council for Environment (Notification Only) (86209-1)

Approval Name	Description	Estimated Time
Notification for the Radiation Affairs In Supreme Council for Environment.	Notification Only	10 Days

Fee Details (if any)

There is no Estimated Processing Time (Days) in this license.

License Information

After obtaining the commercial license, kindly apply for an environmental license on: Licensingradiation@SCE.GOV.BH.

NHRA-Health Care Facilities (Post) (86209-1)

Approval Name	Description	Estimated Time
The Approval of Health Care Facilities Department in NHRA - Post	Preliminary Approval For Health Care Facilities Department in NHRA	5 Days

Fee Details (if any)

- Application Fee 50 BD
- Preliminary Approval Fee 50 BD

License Information

To obtain the initial approval, all requirements must be submitted, including the following:
- The name of the person officially authorized to represent the facility while dealing with NHRA and a documented proof of his delegation.
- The project proposal and a detailed statement of all its aspects, including a list of its specialties and activities, and the expected number of practitioners, doctors, and allied health professionals.
- All maps and engineering drawings for the project which are approved by a certified engineering office with engineering measurements.
- NHRA Application form

Required Documents

- Application form (from NHRA web site)
- Architectural drawings from a licensed office
- Name of the nominated hospital director
- Submit a detail proposal of the project

Other Documents

- Engineering Requirements
- Project Proposal Template
- Resolution No. (02) of 2019 Regarding Technical and Engineering Requirements in Health Care Facilities

General Directrate Of Civil Defence (Post) (86209-1)

Approval Name	Description	Estimated Time
Other Medical center	checking the approval requirements of the general directorate of civil defense	5 Days

Fee Details (if any)

30 BD Fire prevention and protection certificate fees

License Information

1. Provide the documents mentioned in the “Required Documents” section
2. Comply with the requirements listed in the inspection checklist found in the “Other Downloadable Documents” section
3. Provide proof to the General Directorate of Civil Defense that an alarm and firefighting equipment have been installed within 6 months of obtaining a Commercial Registration and license

If a warehouse is used: A safety certificate must be obtained viaBahrain.bh

Required Documents

•No-objection letter for alarm and extinguisher installation from Civil Defense, or purchasing receipt of alarm equipment and extinguishers along with an annual maintenance contract from a company certified by Civil defense
•Photos required for civil defense activities
•Purchasing invoice of security camera system with specifying the type and storage capacity.

Other Documents

- Sample pictures of the general directorate of civil defense requirements
- licencing requirments of the general directorat of civil defense for activity number "86209-1"

Municipality Affairs (Post) (86209-1)

Approval Name	Description	Estimated Time
Site Approval for Human Health Activities	Municipality Approval for the Commercial Registration address or the site in which the Activity will be practiced	3 Days

Fee Details (if any)

10 BD

License Information

General Conditions:
1. Size of shop/premises must be sufficient for the activity
2. Businesses may not carry out the activity outside the boundaries of the shop/ premises
3. It is prohibited to display or store any items or equipment outside the shop / premises boundary without prior approval from the Municipality
4. Maintain cleanliness of the site
5. Comply with the parking space regulations as per the Construction Regulatory Requirements

Activity Specific Conditions:
1. Comply with the regulatory requirements for construction as well as the requirements of the National Health Regulatory Authority (NHRA)
2. Comply with the parking requirements as per cabinet's decision (28) of the year 2009 regarding the Regulatory Requirements of Construction for various areas in the Kingdom of Bahrain

Required Documents

- Lease agreement (after obtaining the necessary approvals from other licensing entities)
- Shop photos

Other Documents

- Cabinet's Decision (56) of the year 2022 regarding the Regulatory Requirements of Construction for various areas in the Kingdom of Bahrain

NHRA-Health Care Facilities (Final Site Inspection) (86209-1)

Approval Name	Description	Estimated Time
The Approval of Health Care Facilities Department in NHRA - Final Site Inspection	Final Site Inspection of Health Care Facilities Department in NHRA	5 Days

Fee Details (if any)

- Less than 50 beds : 2000 B.D
- 51-100 beds : 3000 BD
- more than 100 beds : 4000 BD

License Information

To obtain approval, all requirements must be submitted, including the following:
- Pictures that prove the facility is ready for inspection and full equipped.

Required Documents

•List of equipment to be used
•pictures that prove the facility is ready for inspection and full equipped.

Human health and social work activities

ISIC4	Business activity
86209-2	Other Medical center - Residential nursing care facilities

Description

A health facility licensed to provide nursing and rehabilitation services or any allied health services authorized by the Authority and provided to individuals at home.

Business Requirements

Age

18 and above

Allowed for Nationalities

Bahraini 100%	GCC 100%
American 100%	Singaporean 100%
Icelander 100%	Liechtenstein er 100%
Norwegian 100%	Swiss 100%

Foreign Allowed up to 100%

Legal Type

It is allowed to register according to the legal forms mentioned below

Allowed for Individual Commercial Registration (ICR) : Yes

Allowed for Company Commercial Registration (CCR) : Yes

- Bahrain Shareholding Company (Public)
- With Limited Liability Company
- Branch of a Foreign Company
- Bahrain Shareholding Company (Closed)
- Partnership Company
- Simple Commandite Company
- Commandite By Shares Company
- Non Profit Company

Required Step of Licenses and Approvals

Ministry / Directorate	License / Approval Requirements	Approval Type
Municipality Affairs	Site Approval for Human Health Activities	Post
NHRA-Health Care Facilities	The Approval of Health Care Facilities Department in NHRA - Post	Post
NHRA-Health Care Facilities	The Approval of Health Care Facilities Department in NHRA - Final Site Inspection	Final Site Inspection

Municipality Affairs (Post) (86209-2)

Approval Name	Description	Estimated Time
Site Approval for Human Health Activities	Municipality Approval for the Commercial Registration address or the site in which the Activity will be practiced	3 Days

Fee Details (if any)

10 BD

License Information

General Conditions:
1. Size of shop/premises must be sufficient for the activity
2. Businesses may not carry out the activity outside the boundaries of the shop/ premises
3. It is prohibited to display or store any items or equipment outside the shop / premises boundary without prior approval from the Municipality
4. Maintain cleanliness of the site
5. Comply with the parking space regulations as per the Construction Regulatory Requirements

Activity Specific Conditions:
1. Comply with the regulatory requirements for construction as well as the requirements of the National Health Regulatory Authority (NHRA)
2. Comply with the parking requirements as per cabinet's decision (28) of the year 2009 regarding the Regulatory Requirements of Construction for various areas in the Kingdom of Bahrain

Required Documents

- Lease agreement (after obtaining the necessary approvals from other licensing entities)
- Shop photos

Other Documents

- Cabinet's Decision (56) of the year 2022 regarding the Regulatory Requirements of Construction for various areas in the Kingdom of Bahrain

NHRA-Health Care Facilities (Post) (86209-2)

Approval Name	Description	Estimated Time
The Approval of Health Care Facilities Department in NHRA - Post	Preliminary Approval For Health Care Facilities Department in NHRA	5 Days

Fee Details (if any)

- Application Fee 50 BD
- Preliminary Approval Fee 50 BD

License Information

To obtain the initial approval, all requirements must be submitted, including the following:
- The name of the person officially authorized to represent the facility while dealing with NHRA and a documented proof of his delegation.
- The project proposal and a detailed statement of all its aspects, including a list of its specialties and activities, and the expected number of practitioners, doctors, and allied health professionals.
- All maps and engineering drawings for the project which are approved by a certified engineering office with engineering measurements.
- NHRA Application form

Required Documents

- Application form (from NHRA web site)
- Architectural drawings from a licensed office
- Name of the nominated hospital director
- Submit a detail proposal of the project

Other Documents

- Engineering Requirements
- Project Proposal Template
- Resolution No. (02) of 2019 Regarding Technical and Engineering Requirements in Health Care Facilities

NHRA-Health Care Facilities (Final Site Inspection) (86209-2)

Approval Name	Description	Estimated Time
The Approval of Health Care Facilities Department in NHRA - Final Site Inspection	Final Site Inspection of Health Care Facilities Department in NHRA	5 Days

Fee Details (if any)

- Less than 50 beds : 2000 B.D
- 51-100 beds : 3000 BD
- more than 100 beds : 4000 BD

License Information

To obtain approval, all requirements must be submitted, including the following:
- Pictures that prove the facility is ready for inspection and full equipped.

Required Documents

•List of equipment to be used
•pictures that prove the facility is ready for inspection and full equipped.

Human health and social work activities

ISIC4	Business activity
86209-3	Other Medical center - Multi-Specialty Medical Center

Description

A health facility designed to provide health services in more than one branch of the disciplines of medicine and dentistry in at least three different disciplines.

Business Requirements

Age

18 and above

Allowed for Nationalities

Bahraini 100%	GCC 100%
American 100%	Singaporean 100%
Icelander 100%	Liechtenstein er 100%
Norwegian 100%	Swiss 100%

Foreign Allowed up to 100%

Legal Type

It is allowed to register according to the legal forms mentioned below

Allowed for Individual Commercial Registration (ICR) : Yes

Allowed for Company Commercial Registration (CCR) : Yes

- Bahrain Shareholding Company (Public)
- With Limited Liability Company
- Branch of a Foreign Company
- Bahrain Shareholding Company (Closed)
- Partnership Company
- Simple Commandite Company
- Commandite By Shares Company
- Non Profit Company

Required Step of Licenses and Approvals

Ministry / Directorate	License / Approval Requirements	Approval Type
Radiation Affairs In Supreme Council for Environment	Notification for the Radiation Affairs In Supreme Council for Environment.	Notification Only
Municipality Affairs	Site Approval for Human Health Activities	Post
General Directrate Of Civil Defence	Other Medical center	Post
NHRA-Health Care Facilities	The Approval of Health Care Facilities Department in NHRA - Post	Post
NHRA-Health Care Facilities	The Approval of Health Care Facilities Department in NHRA - Final Site Inspection	Final Site Inspection

Radiation Affairs In Supreme Council for Environment (Notification Only) (86209-3)

Approval Name	Description	Estimated Time
Notification for the Radiation Affairs In Supreme Council for Environment.	Notification Only	10 Days

Fee Details (if any)

There is no Estimated Processing Time (Days) in this license.

License Information

After obtaining the commercial license, kindly apply for an environmental license on: Licensingradiation@SCE.GOV.BH.

Municipality Affairs (Post) (86209-3)

Approval Name	Description	Estimated Time
Site Approval for Human Health Activities	Municipality Approval for the Commercial Registration address or the site in which the Activity will be practiced	3 Days

Fee Details (if any)

10 BD

License Information

General Conditions:
1. Size of shop/premises must be sufficient for the activity
2. Businesses may not carry out the activity outside the boundaries of the shop/ premises
3. It is prohibited to display or store any items or equipment outside the shop / premises boundary without prior approval from the Municipality
4. Maintain cleanliness of the site
5. Comply with the parking space regulations as per the Construction Regulatory Requirements

Activity Specific Conditions:
1. Comply with the regulatory requirements for construction as well as the requirements of the National Health Regulatory Authority (NHRA)
2. Comply with the parking requirements as per cabinet's decision (28) of the year 2009 regarding the Regulatory Requirements of Construction for various areas in the Kingdom of Bahrain

Required Documents

- Lease agreement (after obtaining the necessary approvals from other licensing entities)
- Shop photos

Other Documents

- Cabinet's Decision (56) of the year 2022 regarding the Regulatory Requirements of Construction for various areas in the Kingdom of Bahrain

General Directrate Of Civil Defence (Post) (86209-3)

Approval Name	Description	Estimated Time
Other Medical center	checking the approval requirements of the general directorate of civil defense	5 Days

Fee Details (if any)

30 BD Fire prevention and protection certificate fees

License Information

1. Provide the documents mentioned in the “Required Documents” section
2. Comply with the requirements listed in the inspection checklist found in the “Other Downloadable Documents” section
3. Provide proof to the General Directorate of Civil Defense that an alarm and firefighting equipment have been installed within 6 months of obtaining a Commercial Registration and license

If a warehouse is used: A safety certificate must be obtained viaBahrain.bh

Required Documents

•No-objection letter for alarm and extinguisher installation from Civil Defense, or purchasing receipt of alarm equipment and extinguishers along with an annual maintenance contract from a company certified by Civil defense
•Photos required for civil defense activities
•Purchasing invoice of security camera system with specifying the type and storage capacity.

Other Documents

- Sample pictures of the general directorate of civil defense requirements
- licencing requirments of the general directorat of civil defense for activity number "86209-1"

NHRA-Health Care Facilities (Post) (86209-3)

Approval Name	Description	Estimated Time
The Approval of Health Care Facilities Department in NHRA - Post	Preliminary Approval For Health Care Facilities Department in NHRA	5 Days

Fee Details (if any)

- Application Fee 50 BD
- Preliminary Approval Fee 50 BD

License Information

To obtain the initial approval, all requirements must be submitted, including the following:
- The name of the person officially authorized to represent the facility while dealing with NHRA and a documented proof of his delegation.
- The project proposal and a detailed statement of all its aspects, including a list of its specialties and activities, and the expected number of practitioners, doctors, and allied health professionals.
- All maps and engineering drawings for the project which are approved by a certified engineering office with engineering measurements.
- NHRA Application form

Required Documents

- Application form (from NHRA web site)
- Architectural drawings from a licensed office
- Name of the nominated hospital director
- Submit a detail proposal of the project

Other Documents

- Engineering Requirements
- Project Proposal Template
- Resolution No. (02) of 2019 Regarding Technical and Engineering Requirements in Health Care Facilities

NHRA-Health Care Facilities (Final Site Inspection) (86209-3)

Approval Name	Description	Estimated Time
The Approval of Health Care Facilities Department in NHRA - Final Site Inspection	Final Site Inspection of Health Care Facilities Department in NHRA	5 Days

Fee Details (if any)

- Less than 50 beds : 2000 B.D
- 51-100 beds : 3000 BD
- more than 100 beds : 4000 BD

License Information

To obtain approval, all requirements must be submitted, including the following:
- Pictures that prove the facility is ready for inspection and full equipped.

Required Documents

•List of equipment to be used
•pictures that prove the facility is ready for inspection and full equipped.

Human health and social work activities

ISIC4	Business activity
86209-4	Other Medical center - Specialized Medical Center

Description

A health facility designed to provide health services in a medical sub-specialty or fine specialty.

Business Requirements

Age

18 and above

Allowed for Nationalities

Bahraini 100%	GCC 100%
American 100%	Singaporean 100%
Icelander 100%	Liechtensteiner 100%
Norwegian 100%	Swiss 100%

Foreign Allowed up to 100%

Legal Type

It is allowed to register according to the legal forms mentioned below

Allowed for Individual Commercial Registration (ICR) : Yes

Allowed for Company Commercial Registration (CCR) : Yes

- Bahrain Shareholding Company (Public)
- With Limited Liability Company
- Branch of a Foreign Company
- Bahrain Shareholding Company (Closed)
- Partnership Company
- Simple Commandite Company
- Commandite By Shares Company
- Non Profit Company

Required Step of Licenses and Approvals

Ministry / Directorate	License / Approval Requirements	Approval Type
Radiation Affairs In Supreme Council for Environment	Notification for the Radiation Affairs In Supreme Council for Environment.	Notification Only
Municipality Affairs	Site Approval for Human Health Activities	Post
General Directrate Of Civil Defence	Other Medical center	Post
NHRA-Health Care Facilities	The Approval of Health Care Facilities Department in NHRA - Post	Post
NHRA-Health Care Facilities	The Approval of Health Care Facilities Department in NHRA - Final Site Inspection	Final Site Inspection

Radiation Affairs In Supreme Council for Environment (Notification Only) (86209-4)

Approval Name	Description	Estimated Time
Notification for the Radiation Affairs In Supreme Council for Environment.	Notification Only	10 Days

Fee Details (if any)

There is no Estimated Processing Time (Days) in this license.

License Information

After obtaining the commercial license, kindly apply for an environmental license on: Licensingradiation@SCE.GOV.BH.

Municipality Affairs (Post) (86209-4)

Approval Name	Description	Estimated Time
Site Approval for Human Health Activities	Municipality Approval for the Commercial Registration address or the site in which the Activity will be practiced	3 Days

Fee Details (if any)

10 BD

License Information

General Conditions:
1. Size of shop/premises must be sufficient for the activity
2. Businesses may not carry out the activity outside the boundaries of the shop/ premises
3. It is prohibited to display or store any items or equipment outside the shop / premises boundary without prior approval from the Municipality
4. Maintain cleanliness of the site
5. Comply with the parking space regulations as per the Construction Regulatory Requirements

Activity Specific Conditions:
1. Comply with the regulatory requirements for construction as well as the requirements of the National Health Regulatory Authority (NHRA)
2. Comply with the parking requirements as per cabinet's decision (28) of the year 2009 regarding the Regulatory Requirements of Construction for various areas in the Kingdom of Bahrain

Required Documents

- Lease agreement (after obtaining the necessary approvals from other licensing entities)
- Shop photos

Other Documents

- Cabinet's Decision (56) of the year 2022 regarding the Regulatory Requirements of Construction for various areas in the Kingdom of Bahrain

General Directrate Of Civil Defence (Post) (86209-4)

Approval Name	Description	Estimated Time
Other Medical center	checking the approval requirements of the general directorate of civil defense	5 Days

Fee Details (if any)

30 BD Fire prevention and protection certificate fees

License Information

1. Provide the documents mentioned in the “Required Documents” section
2. Comply with the requirements listed in the inspection checklist found in the “Other Downloadable Documents” section
3. Provide proof to the General Directorate of Civil Defense that an alarm and firefighting equipment have been installed within 6 months of obtaining a Commercial Registration and license

If a warehouse is used: A safety certificate must be obtained viaBahrain.bh

Required Documents

•No-objection letter for alarm and extinguisher installation from Civil Defense, or purchasing receipt of alarm equipment and extinguishers along with an annual maintenance contract from a company certified by Civil defense
•Photos required for civil defense activities
•Purchasing invoice of security camera system with specifying the type and storage capacity.

Other Documents

- Sample pictures of the general directorate of civil defense requirements
- licencing requirments of the general directorat of civil defense for activity number "86209-1"

NHRA-Health Care Facilities (Post) (86209-4)

Approval Name	Description	Estimated Time
The Approval of Health Care Facilities Department in NHRA - Post	Preliminary Approval For Health Care Facilities Department in NHRA	5 Days

Fee Details (if any)

- Application Fee 50 BD
- Preliminary Approval Fee 50 BD

License Information

To obtain the initial approval, all requirements must be submitted, including the following:
- The name of the person officially authorized to represent the facility while dealing with NHRA and a documented proof of his delegation.
- The project proposal and a detailed statement of all its aspects, including a list of its specialties and activities, and the expected number of practitioners, doctors, and allied health professionals.
- All maps and engineering drawings for the project which are approved by a certified engineering office with engineering measurements.
- NHRA Application form

Required Documents

- Application form (from NHRA web site)
- Architectural drawings from a licensed office
- Name of the nominated hospital director
- Submit a detail proposal of the project

Other Documents

- Engineering Requirements
- Project Proposal Template
- Resolution No. (02) of 2019 Regarding Technical and Engineering Requirements in Health Care Facilities

NHRA-Health Care Facilities (Final Site Inspection) (86209-4)

Approval Name	Description	Estimated Time
The Approval of Health Care Facilities Department in NHRA - Final Site Inspection	Final Site Inspection of Health Care Facilities Department in NHRA	5 Days

Fee Details (if any)

- Less than 50 beds : 2000 B.D
- 51-100 beds : 3000 BD
- more than 100 beds : 4000 BD

License Information

To obtain approval, all requirements must be submitted, including the following:
- Pictures that prove the facility is ready for inspection and full equipped.

Required Documents

•List of equipment to be used
•pictures that prove the facility is ready for inspection and full equipped.

Human health and social work activities

ISIC4	Business activity
86209-5	Other Medical center - Mobile Medical Center

Description

A health facility that provides its services to individuals through at least 2 mobile vehicles and by at least 2 medical practitioners one in each vehicle licensed by the Nhra to provide the health services within the Kingdom in accordance with the terms and conditions required by the Authority.

Business Requirements

Age

18 and above

Allowed for Nationalities

Bahraini 100%	GCC 100%
American 100%	Singaporean 100%
Icelander 100%	Liechtenstein er 100%
Norwegian 100%	Swiss 100%

Foreign Allowed up to 100%

Legal Type

It is allowed to register according to the legal forms mentioned below

Allowed for Individual Commercial Registration (ICR) : Yes

Allowed for Company Commercial Registration (CCR) : Yes

- Bahrain Shareholding Company (Public)
- With Limited Liability Company
- Branch of a Foreign Company
- Bahrain Shareholding Company (Closed)
- Partnership Company
- Simple Commandite Company
- Commandite By Shares Company
- Non Profit Company

Required Step of Licenses and Approvals

Ministry / Directorate	License / Approval Requirements	Approval Type
Radiation Affairs In Supreme Council for Environment	Notification for the Radiation Affairs In Supreme Council for Environment.	Notification Only
NHRA-Health Care Facilities	The Approval of Health Care Facilities Department in NHRA - Post	Post
General Directrate Of Civil Defence	Other Medical center	Post
Municipality Affairs	Site Approval for Human Health Activities	Post
NHRA-Health Care Facilities	The Approval of Health Care Facilities Department in NHRA - Final Site Inspection	Final Site Inspection

Radiation Affairs In Supreme Council for Environment (Notification Only) (86209-5)

Approval Name	Description	Estimated Time
Notification for the Radiation Affairs In Supreme Council for Environment.	Notification Only	10 Days

Fee Details (if any)

There is no Estimated Processing Time (Days) in this license.

License Information

After obtaining the commercial license, kindly apply for an environmental license on: Licensingradiation@SCE.GOV.BH.

NHRA-Health Care Facilities (Post) (86209-5)

Approval Name	Description	Estimated Time
The Approval of Health Care Facilities Department in NHRA - Post	Preliminary Approval For Health Care Facilities Department in NHRA	5 Days

Fee Details (if any)

- Application Fee 50 BD
- Preliminary Approval Fee 50 BD

License Information

To obtain the initial approval, all requirements must be submitted, including the following:
- The name of the person officially authorized to represent the facility while dealing with NHRA and a documented proof of his delegation.
- The project proposal and a detailed statement of all its aspects, including a list of its specialties and activities, and the expected number of practitioners, doctors, and allied health professionals.
- All maps and engineering drawings for the project which are approved by a certified engineering office with engineering measurements.
- NHRA Application form

Required Documents

- Application form (from NHRA web site)
- Architectural drawings from a licensed office
- Name of the nominated hospital director
- Submit a detail proposal of the project

Other Documents

- Engineering Requirements
- Project Proposal Template
- Resolution No. (02) of 2019 Regarding Technical and Engineering Requirements in Health Care Facilities

General Directrate Of Civil Defence (Post) (86209-5)

Approval Name	Description	Estimated Time
Other Medical center	checking the approval requirements of the general directorate of civil defense	5 Days

Fee Details (if any)

30 BD Fire prevention and protection certificate fees

License Information

1. Provide the documents mentioned in the “Required Documents” section
2. Comply with the requirements listed in the inspection checklist found in the “Other Downloadable Documents” section
3. Provide proof to the General Directorate of Civil Defense that an alarm and firefighting equipment have been installed within 6 months of obtaining a Commercial Registration and license

If a warehouse is used: A safety certificate must be obtained viaBahrain.bh

Required Documents

•No-objection letter for alarm and extinguisher installation from Civil Defense, or purchasing receipt of alarm equipment and extinguishers along with an annual maintenance contract from a company certified by Civil defense
•Photos required for civil defense activities
•Purchasing invoice of security camera system with specifying the type and storage capacity.

Other Documents

- Sample pictures of the general directorate of civil defense requirements
- licencing requirments of the general directorat of civil defense for activity number "86209-1"

Municipality Affairs (Post) (86209-5)

Approval Name	Description	Estimated Time
Site Approval for Human Health Activities	Municipality Approval for the Commercial Registration address or the site in which the Activity will be practiced	3 Days

Fee Details (if any)

10 BD

License Information

General Conditions:
1. Size of shop/premises must be sufficient for the activity
2. Businesses may not carry out the activity outside the boundaries of the shop/ premises
3. It is prohibited to display or store any items or equipment outside the shop / premises boundary without prior approval from the Municipality
4. Maintain cleanliness of the site
5. Comply with the parking space regulations as per the Construction Regulatory Requirements

Activity Specific Conditions:
1. Comply with the regulatory requirements for construction as well as the requirements of the National Health Regulatory Authority (NHRA)
2. Comply with the parking requirements as per cabinet's decision (28) of the year 2009 regarding the Regulatory Requirements of Construction for various areas in the Kingdom of Bahrain

Required Documents

- Lease agreement (after obtaining the necessary approvals from other licensing entities)
- Shop photos

Other Documents

- Cabinet's Decision (56) of the year 2022 regarding the Regulatory Requirements of Construction for various areas in the Kingdom of Bahrain

NHRA-Health Care Facilities (Final Site Inspection) (86209-5)

Approval Name	Description	Estimated Time
The Approval of Health Care Facilities Department in NHRA - Final Site Inspection	Final Site Inspection of Health Care Facilities Department in NHRA	5 Days

Fee Details (if any)

- Less than 50 beds : 2000 B.D
- 51-100 beds : 3000 BD
- more than 100 beds : 4000 BD

License Information

To obtain approval, all requirements must be submitted, including the following:
- Pictures that prove the facility is ready for inspection and full equipped.

Required Documents

•List of equipment to be used
•pictures that prove the facility is ready for inspection and full equipped.

Human health and social work activities

ISIC4	Business activity
86209-6	Other Medical center - General Dental Center

Description

A health facility designed to provide health services in the field of oral medicine and general dentistry.

Business Requirements

Age

18 and above

Allowed for Nationalities

Bahraini 100%	GCC 100%
American 100%	Singaporean 100%
Icelander 100%	Liechtensteiner 100%
Norwegian 100%	Swiss 100%

Foreign Allowed up to 100%

Legal Type

It is allowed to register according to the legal forms mentioned below

Allowed for Individual Commercial Registration (ICR) : Yes

Allowed for Company Commercial Registration (CCR) : Yes

- Bahrain Shareholding Company (Public)
- With Limited Liability Company
- Branch of a Foreign Company
- Bahrain Shareholding Company (Closed)
- Partnership Company
- Simple Commandite Company
- Commandite By Shares Company

Required Step of Licenses and Approvals

Ministry / Directorate	License / Approval Requirements	Approval Type
Radiation Affairs In Supreme Council for Environment	Notification for the Radiation Affairs In Supreme Council for Environment.	Notification Only
Municipality Affairs	Site Approval for Human Health Activities	Post
NHRA-Health Care Facilities	The Approval of Health Care Facilities Department in NHRA - Post	Post
General Directrate Of Civil Defence	Other Medical center	Post
NHRA-Health Care Facilities	The Approval of Health Care Facilities Department in NHRA - Final Site Inspection	Final Site Inspection

Radiation Affairs In Supreme Council for Environment (Notification Only) (86209-6)

Approval Name	Description	Estimated Time
Notification for the Radiation Affairs In Supreme Council for Environment.	Notification Only	10 Days

Fee Details (if any)

There is no Estimated Processing Time (Days) in this license.

License Information

After obtaining the commercial license, kindly apply for an environmental license on: Licensingradiation@SCE.GOV.BH.

Municipality Affairs (Post) (86209-6)

Approval Name	Description	Estimated Time
Site Approval for Human Health Activities	Municipality Approval for the Commercial Registration address or the site in which the Activity will be practiced	3 Days

Fee Details (if any)

10 BD

License Information

General Conditions:
1. Size of shop/premises must be sufficient for the activity
2. Businesses may not carry out the activity outside the boundaries of the shop/ premises
3. It is prohibited to display or store any items or equipment outside the shop / premises boundary without prior approval from the Municipality
4. Maintain cleanliness of the site
5. Comply with the parking space regulations as per the Construction Regulatory Requirements

Activity Specific Conditions:
1. Comply with the regulatory requirements for construction as well as the requirements of the National Health Regulatory Authority (NHRA)
2. Comply with the parking requirements as per cabinet's decision (28) of the year 2009 regarding the Regulatory Requirements of Construction for various areas in the Kingdom of Bahrain

Required Documents

- Lease agreement (after obtaining the necessary approvals from other licensing entities)
- Shop photos

Other Documents

- Cabinet's Decision (56) of the year 2022 regarding the Regulatory Requirements of Construction for various areas in the Kingdom of Bahrain

NHRA-Health Care Facilities (Post) (86209-6)

Approval Name	Description	Estimated Time
The Approval of Health Care Facilities Department in NHRA - Post	Preliminary Approval For Health Care Facilities Department in NHRA	5 Days

Fee Details (if any)

- Application Fee 50 BD
- Preliminary Approval Fee 50 BD

License Information

To obtain the initial approval, all requirements must be submitted, including the following:
- The name of the person officially authorized to represent the facility while dealing with NHRA and a documented proof of his delegation.
- The project proposal and a detailed statement of all its aspects, including a list of its specialties and activities, and the expected number of practitioners, doctors, and allied health professionals.
- All maps and engineering drawings for the project which are approved by a certified engineering office with engineering measurements.
- NHRA Application form

Required Documents

- Application form (from NHRA web site)
- Architectural drawings from a licensed office
- Name of the nominated hospital director
- Submit a detail proposal of the project

Other Documents

- Engineering Requirements
- Project Proposal Template
- Resolution No. (02) of 2019 Regarding Technical and Engineering Requirements in Health Care Facilities

General Directrate Of Civil Defence (Post) (86209-6)

Approval Name	Description	Estimated Time
Other Medical center	checking the approval requirements of the general directorate of civil defense	5 Days

Fee Details (if any)

30 BD Fire prevention and protection certificate fees

License Information

1. Provide the documents mentioned in the “Required Documents” section
2. Comply with the requirements listed in the inspection checklist found in the “Other Downloadable Documents” section
3. Provide proof to the General Directorate of Civil Defense that an alarm and firefighting equipment have been installed within 6 months of obtaining a Commercial Registration and license

If a warehouse is used: A safety certificate must be obtained viaBahrain.bh

Required Documents

•No-objection letter for alarm and extinguisher installation from Civil Defense, or purchasing receipt of alarm equipment and extinguishers along with an annual maintenance contract from a company certified by Civil defense
•Photos required for civil defense activities
•Purchasing invoice of security camera system with specifying the type and storage capacity.

Other Documents

- Sample pictures of the general directorate of civil defense requirements
- licencing requirments of the general directorat of civil defense for activity number "86209-1"

NHRA-Health Care Facilities (Final Site Inspection) (86209-6)

Approval Name	Description	Estimated Time
The Approval of Health Care Facilities Department in NHRA - Final Site Inspection	Final Site Inspection of Health Care Facilities Department in NHRA	5 Days

Fee Details (if any)

- Less than 50 beds : 2000 B.D
- 51-100 beds : 3000 BD
- more than 100 beds : 4000 BD

License Information

To obtain approval, all requirements must be submitted, including the following:
- Pictures that prove the facility is ready for inspection and full equipped.

Required Documents

•List of equipment to be used
•pictures that prove the facility is ready for inspection and full equipped.

Human health and social work activities

ISIC4	Business activity
86209-7	Other Medical center - Specialized Dental Center

Description

A health facility designed to provide health services in a dental sub-specialty or fine specialty.

Business Requirements

Age

18 and above

Allowed for Nationalities

Bahraini 100%	GCC 100%
American 100%	Singaporean 100%
Icelander 100%	Liechtenstein er 100%
Norwegian 100%	Swiss 100%

Foreign Allowed up to 100%

Legal Type

It is allowed to register according to the legal forms mentioned below

Allowed for Individual Commercial Registration (ICR) : Yes

Allowed for Company Commercial Registration (CCR) : Yes

- Bahrain Shareholding Company (Public)
- With Limited Liability Company
- Branch of a Foreign Company
- Bahrain Shareholding Company (Closed)
- Partnership Company
- Simple Commandite Company
- Commandite By Shares Company
- Non Profit Company

Required Step of Licenses and Approvals

Ministry / Directorate	License / Approval Requirements	Approval Type
Radiation Affairs In Supreme Council for Environment	Notification for the Radiation Affairs In Supreme Council for Environment.	Notification Only
NHRA-Health Care Facilities	The Approval of Health Care Facilities Department in NHRA - Post	Post
Municipality Affairs	Site Approval for Human Health Activities	Post
General Directrate Of Civil Defence	Other Medical center	Post
NHRA-Health Care Facilities	The Approval of Health Care Facilities Department in NHRA - Final Site Inspection	Final Site Inspection

Radiation Affairs In Supreme Council for Environment (Notification Only) (86209-7)

Approval Name	Description	Estimated Time
Notification for the Radiation Affairs In Supreme Council for Environment.	Notification Only	10 Days

Fee Details (if any)

There is no Estimated Processing Time (Days) in this license.

License Information

After obtaining the commercial license, kindly apply for an environmental license on: Licensingradiation@SCE.GOV.BH.

NHRA-Health Care Facilities (Post) (86209-7)

Approval Name	Description	Estimated Time
The Approval of Health Care Facilities Department in NHRA - Post	Preliminary Approval For Health Care Facilities Department in NHRA	5 Days

Fee Details (if any)

- Application Fee 50 BD
- Preliminary Approval Fee 50 BD

License Information

To obtain the initial approval, all requirements must be submitted, including the following:
- The name of the person officially authorized to represent the facility while dealing with NHRA and a documented proof of his delegation.
- The project proposal and a detailed statement of all its aspects, including a list of its specialties and activities, and the expected number of practitioners, doctors, and allied health professionals.
- All maps and engineering drawings for the project which are approved by a certified engineering office with engineering measurements.
- NHRA Application form

Required Documents

- Application form (from NHRA web site)
- Architectural drawings from a licensed office
- Name of the nominated hospital director
- Submit a detail proposal of the project

Other Documents

- Engineering Requirements
- Project Proposal Template
- Resolution No. (02) of 2019 Regarding Technical and Engineering Requirements in Health Care Facilities

Municipality Affairs (Post) (86209-7)

Approval Name	Description	Estimated Time
Site Approval for Human Health Activities	Municipality Approval for the Commercial Registration address or the site in which the Activity will be practiced	3 Days

Fee Details (if any)

10 BD

License Information

General Conditions:
1. Size of shop/premises must be sufficient for the activity
2. Businesses may not carry out the activity outside the boundaries of the shop/ premises
3. It is prohibited to display or store any items or equipment outside the shop / premises boundary without prior approval from the Municipality
4. Maintain cleanliness of the site
5. Comply with the parking space regulations as per the Construction Regulatory Requirements

Activity Specific Conditions:
1. Comply with the regulatory requirements for construction as well as the requirements of the National Health Regulatory Authority (NHRA)
2. Comply with the parking requirements as per cabinet's decision (28) of the year 2009 regarding the Regulatory Requirements of Construction for various areas in the Kingdom of Bahrain

Required Documents

- Lease agreement (after obtaining the necessary approvals from other licensing entities)
- Shop photos

Other Documents

- Cabinet's Decision (56) of the year 2022 regarding the Regulatory Requirements of Construction for various areas in the Kingdom of Bahrain

General Directrate Of Civil Defence (Post) (86209-7)

Approval Name	Description	Estimated Time
Other Medical center	checking the approval requirements of the general directorate of civil defense	5 Days

Fee Details (if any)

30 BD Fire prevention and protection certificate fees

License Information

1. Provide the documents mentioned in the “Required Documents” section
2. Comply with the requirements listed in the inspection checklist found in the “Other Downloadable Documents” section
3. Provide proof to the General Directorate of Civil Defense that an alarm and firefighting equipment have been installed within 6 months of obtaining a Commercial Registration and license

If a warehouse is used: A safety certificate must be obtained viaBahrain.bh

Required Documents

•No-objection letter for alarm and extinguisher installation from Civil Defense, or purchasing receipt of alarm equipment and extinguishers along with an annual maintenance contract from a company certified by Civil defense
•Photos required for civil defense activities
•Purchasing invoice of security camera system with specifying the type and storage capacity.

Other Documents

- Sample pictures of the general directorate of civil defense requirements
- licencing requirments of the general directorat of civil defense for activity number "86209-1"

NHRA-Health Care Facilities (Final Site Inspection) (86209-7)

Approval Name	Description	Estimated Time
The Approval of Health Care Facilities Department in NHRA - Final Site Inspection	Final Site Inspection of Health Care Facilities Department in NHRA	5 Days

Fee Details (if any)

- Less than 50 beds : 2000 B.D
- 51-100 beds : 3000 BD
- more than 100 beds : 4000 BD

License Information

To obtain approval, all requirements must be submitted, including the following:
- Pictures that prove the facility is ready for inspection and full equipped.

Required Documents

•List of equipment to be used
•pictures that prove the facility is ready for inspection and full equipped.

Human health and social work activities

ISIC4	Business activity
86209-8	Other Medical center - Multi-Specialty Dental Center

Description

A health facility designed to provide health services in more than one branch of the disciplines of dentistry in at least three different disciplines.

Business Requirements

Age

18 and above

Allowed for Nationalities

Bahraini 100%	GCC 100%
American 100%	

Foreign Allowed up to 100%

Legal Type

It is allowed to register according to the legal forms mentioned below

Allowed for Individual Commercial Registration (ICR) : Yes

Allowed for Company Commercial Registration (CCR) : Yes

- Bahrain Shareholding Company (Public)
- With Limited Liability Company
- Branch of a Foreign Company
- Bahrain Shareholding Company (Closed)
- Partnership Company
- Simple Commandite Company
- Commandite By Shares Company
- Non Profit Company

Required Step of Licenses and Approvals

Ministry / Directorate	License / Approval Requirements	Approval Type
Radiation Affairs In Supreme Council for Environment	Notification for the Radiation Affairs In Supreme Council for Environment.	Notification Only
General Directrate Of Civil Defence	Other Medical center	Post
Municipality Affairs	Site Approval for Human Health Activities	Post
NHRA-Health Care Facilities	The Approval of Health Care Facilities Department in NHRA - Post	Post
NHRA-Health Care Facilities	The Approval of Health Care Facilities Department in NHRA - Final Site Inspection	Final Site Inspection

Radiation Affairs In Supreme Council for Environment (Notification Only) (86209-8)

Approval Name	Description	Estimated Time
Notification for the Radiation Affairs In Supreme Council for Environment.	Notification Only	10 Days

Fee Details (if any)

There is no Estimated Processing Time (Days) in this license.

License Information

After obtaining the commercial license, kindly apply for an environmental license on: Licensingradiation@SCE.GOV.BH.

General Directrate Of Civil Defence (Post) (86209-8)

Approval Name	Description	Estimated Time
Other Medical center	checking the approval requirements of the general directorate of civil defense	5 Days

Fee Details (if any)

30 BD Fire prevention and protection certificate fees

License Information

1. Provide the documents mentioned in the “Required Documents” section
2. Comply with the requirements listed in the inspection checklist found in the “Other Downloadable Documents” section
3. Provide proof to the General Directorate of Civil Defense that an alarm and firefighting equipment have been installed within 6 months of obtaining a Commercial Registration and license

If a warehouse is used: A safety certificate must be obtained viaBahrain.bh

Required Documents

•No-objection letter for alarm and extinguisher installation from Civil Defense, or purchasing receipt of alarm equipment and extinguishers along with an annual maintenance contract from a company certified by Civil defense
•Photos required for civil defense activities
•Purchasing invoice of security camera system with specifying the type and storage capacity.

Other Documents

- Sample pictures of the general directorate of civil defense requirements
- licencing requirments of the general directorat of civil defense for activity number "86209-1"

Municipality Affairs (Post) (86209-8)

Approval Name	Description	Estimated Time
Site Approval for Human Health Activities	Municipality Approval for the Commercial Registration address or the site in which the Activity will be practiced	3 Days

Fee Details (if any)

10 BD

License Information

General Conditions:
1. Size of shop/premises must be sufficient for the activity
2. Businesses may not carry out the activity outside the boundaries of the shop/ premises
3. It is prohibited to display or store any items or equipment outside the shop / premises boundary without prior approval from the Municipality
4. Maintain cleanliness of the site
5. Comply with the parking space regulations as per the Construction Regulatory Requirements

Activity Specific Conditions:
1. Comply with the regulatory requirements for construction as well as the requirements of the National Health Regulatory Authority (NHRA)
2. Comply with the parking requirements as per cabinet's decision (28) of the year 2009 regarding the Regulatory Requirements of Construction for various areas in the Kingdom of Bahrain

Required Documents

- Lease agreement (after obtaining the necessary approvals from other licensing entities)
- Shop photos

Other Documents

- Cabinet's Decision (56) of the year 2022 regarding the Regulatory Requirements of Construction for various areas in the Kingdom of Bahrain

NHRA-Health Care Facilities (Post) (86209-8)

Approval Name	Description	Estimated Time
The Approval of Health Care Facilities Department in NHRA - Post	Preliminary Approval For Health Care Facilities Department in NHRA	5 Days

Fee Details (if any)

- Application Fee 50 BD
- Preliminary Approval Fee 50 BD

License Information

To obtain the initial approval, all requirements must be submitted, including the following:
- The name of the person officially authorized to represent the facility while dealing with NHRA and a documented proof of his delegation.
- The project proposal and a detailed statement of all its aspects, including a list of its specialties and activities, and the expected number of practitioners, doctors, and allied health professionals.
- All maps and engineering drawings for the project which are approved by a certified engineering office with engineering measurements.
- NHRA Application form

Required Documents

- Application form (from NHRA web site)
- Architectural drawings from a licensed office
- Name of the nominated hospital director
- Submit a detail proposal of the project

Other Documents

- Engineering Requirements
- Project Proposal Template
- Resolution No. (02) of 2019 Regarding Technical and Engineering Requirements in Health Care Facilities

NHRA-Health Care Facilities (Final Site Inspection) (86209-8)

Approval Name	Description	Estimated Time
The Approval of Health Care Facilities Department in NHRA - Final Site Inspection	Final Site Inspection of Health Care Facilities Department in NHRA	5 Days

Fee Details (if any)

- Less than 50 beds : 2000 B.D
- 51-100 beds : 3000 BD
- more than 100 beds : 4000 BD

License Information

To obtain approval, all requirements must be submitted, including the following:
- Pictures that prove the facility is ready for inspection and full equipped.

Required Documents

•List of equipment to be used
•pictures that prove the facility is ready for inspection and full equipped.

Human health and social work activities

ISIC4	Business activity
86209-9	Other Medical center - Mobile Dental Center

Description

A health facility that provides its services to individuals through at least 2 vehicles and by only one dentist in each vehicle licensed by the Nhra to provide general dental health services within the Kingdom in accordance with the terms and conditions required by the Authority.

Business Requirements

Age

18 and above

Allowed for Nationalities

Bahraini 100%	GCC 100%
American 100%	Singaporean 100%
Icelander 100%	Liechtensteiner 100%
Norwegian 100%	Swiss 100%

Foreign Allowed up to 100%

Legal Type

It is allowed to register according to the legal forms mentioned below

Allowed for Individual Commercial Registration (ICR) : Yes

Allowed for Company Commercial Registration (CCR) : Yes

- Bahrain Shareholding Company (Public)
- With Limited Liability Company
- Branch of a Foreign Company
- Bahrain Shareholding Company (Closed)
- Partnership Company
- Simple Commandite Company
- Commandite By Shares Company
- Non Profit Company

Required Step of Licenses and Approvals

Ministry / Directorate	License / Approval Requirements	Approval Type
Radiation Affairs In Supreme Council for Environment	Notification for the Radiation Affairs In Supreme Council for Environment.	Notification Only
NHRA-Health Care Facilities	The Approval of Health Care Facilities Department in NHRA - Post	Post
Municipality Affairs	Site Approval for Human Health Activities	Post
General Directrate Of Civil Defence	Other Medical center	Post
NHRA-Health Care Facilities	The Approval of Health Care Facilities Department in NHRA - Final Site Inspection	Final Site Inspection

Radiation Affairs In Supreme Council for Environment (Notification Only) (86209-9)

Approval Name	Description	Estimated Time
Notification for the Radiation Affairs In Supreme Council for Environment.	Notification Only	10 Days

Fee Details (if any)

There is no Estimated Processing Time (Days) in this license.

License Information

After obtaining the commercial license, kindly apply for an environmental license on: Licensingradiation@SCE.GOV.BH.

NHRA-Health Care Facilities (Post) (86209-9)

Approval Name	Description	Estimated Time
The Approval of Health Care Facilities Department in NHRA - Post	Preliminary Approval For Health Care Facilities Department in NHRA	5 Days

Fee Details (if any)

- Application Fee 50 BD
- Preliminary Approval Fee 50 BD

License Information

To obtain the initial approval, all requirements must be submitted, including the following:
- The name of the person officially authorized to represent the facility while dealing with NHRA and a documented proof of his delegation.
- The project proposal and a detailed statement of all its aspects, including a list of its specialties and activities, and the expected number of practitioners, doctors, and allied health professionals.
- All maps and engineering drawings for the project which are approved by a certified engineering office with engineering measurements.
- NHRA Application form

Required Documents

- Application form (from NHRA web site)
- Architectural drawings from a licensed office
- Name of the nominated hospital director
- Submit a detail proposal of the project

Other Documents

- Engineering Requirements
- Project Proposal Template
- Resolution No. (02) of 2019 Regarding Technical and Engineering Requirements in Health Care Facilities

Municipality Affairs (Post) (86209-9)

Approval Name	Description	Estimated Time
Site Approval for Human Health Activities	Municipality Approval for the Commercial Registration address or the site in which the Activity will be practiced	3 Days

Fee Details (if any)

10 BD

License Information

General Conditions:
1. Size of shop/premises must be sufficient for the activity
2. Businesses may not carry out the activity outside the boundaries of the shop/ premises
3. It is prohibited to display or store any items or equipment outside the shop / premises boundary without prior approval from the Municipality
4. Maintain cleanliness of the site
5. Comply with the parking space regulations as per the Construction Regulatory Requirements

Activity Specific Conditions:
1. Comply with the regulatory requirements for construction as well as the requirements of the National Health Regulatory Authority (NHRA)
2. Comply with the parking requirements as per cabinet's decision (28) of the year 2009 regarding the Regulatory Requirements of Construction for various areas in the Kingdom of Bahrain

Required Documents

- Lease agreement (after obtaining the necessary approvals from other licensing entities)
- Shop photos

Other Documents

- Cabinet's Decision (56) of the year 2022 regarding the Regulatory Requirements of Construction for various areas in the Kingdom of Bahrain

General Directrate Of Civil Defence (Post) (86209-9)

Approval Name	Description	Estimated Time
Other Medical center	checking the approval requirements of the general directorate of civil defense	5 Days

Fee Details (if any)

30 BD Fire prevention and protection certificate fees

License Information

1. Provide the documents mentioned in the “Required Documents” section
2. Comply with the requirements listed in the inspection checklist found in the “Other Downloadable Documents” section
3. Provide proof to the General Directorate of Civil Defense that an alarm and firefighting equipment have been installed within 6 months of obtaining a Commercial Registration and license

If a warehouse is used: A safety certificate must be obtained viaBahrain.bh

Required Documents

•No-objection letter for alarm and extinguisher installation from Civil Defense, or purchasing receipt of alarm equipment and extinguishers along with an annual maintenance contract from a company certified by Civil defense
•Photos required for civil defense activities
•Purchasing invoice of security camera system with specifying the type and storage capacity.

Other Documents

- Sample pictures of the general directorate of civil defense requirements
- licencing requirments of the general directorat of civil defense for activity number "86209-1"

NHRA-Health Care Facilities (Final Site Inspection) (86209-9)

Approval Name	Description	Estimated Time
The Approval of Health Care Facilities Department in NHRA - Final Site Inspection	Final Site Inspection of Health Care Facilities Department in NHRA	5 Days

Fee Details (if any)

- Less than 50 beds : 2000 B.D
- 51-100 beds : 3000 BD
- more than 100 beds : 4000 BD

License Information

To obtain approval, all requirements must be submitted, including the following:
- Pictures that prove the facility is ready for inspection and full equipped.

Required Documents

•List of equipment to be used
•pictures that prove the facility is ready for inspection and full equipped.

Human health and social work activities

ISIC4	Business activity
862092-1	Radiology Center - Comprehensive Radiology Center

Description

A health facility that is set up to perform at least three radiology tests, including tests requiring the use of medical dyes materials, as well as the use of ultrasound, magnetic resonance imaging, radioisotopes, and other medical radiological examinations.

Business Requirements

✔ Age

✔ Allowed for Nationalities

Bahraini 100%	GCC 100%
American 100%	Singaporean 100%
Icelander 100%	Liechtensteiner 100%
Norwegian 100%	Swiss 100%

Foreign Allowed up to 100%

Legal Type

It is allowed to register according to the legal forms mentioned below

Allowed for Individual Commercial Registration (ICR) : Yes

Allowed for Company Commercial Registration (CCR) : Yes

Required Step of Licenses and Approvals

Ministry / Directorate	License / Approval Requirements	Approval Type
Radiation Affairs In Supreme Council for Environment	Notification for the Radiation Affairs In Supreme Council for Environment.	Notification Only
NHRA-Health Care Facilities	Radiology Center	Post
Municipality Affairs	Site Approval for Human Health Activities	Post
General Directrate Of Civil Defence	Radiology Center	Post
NHRA-Health Care Facilities	Radiology Center	Final Site Inspection

Radiation Affairs In Supreme Council for Environment (Notification Only) (862092-1)

Approval Name	Description	Estimated Time
Notification for the Radiation Affairs In Supreme Council for Environment.	Notification Only	10 Days

Fee Details (if any)

There is no Estimated Processing Time (Days) in this license.

License Information

After obtaining the commercial license, kindly apply for an environmental license on: Licensingradiation@SCE.GOV.BH.

NHRA-Health Care Facilities (Post) (862092-1)

Approval Name	Description	Estimated Time
Radiology Center	Comprehensive Radiology center It undertakes all radiology examinations including examinations that require using colored medical materials ultrasound waves magnetic resonance imaging and radioactive isotopes. It shall be licensed in accordance with the terms and conditions of the Legislative Decree No. (2) Of 1987 with Regard to the Practice of Non Doctors and Pharmacists as Paramedics and its related regulatory decisions. Fees: 300 B.D Preliminary Radiology unit It undertakes radiology examinations that do not entail using colored medical materials or television imaging. It uses the ultrasound ray devices. It shall be licensed in	5 Days

accordance with the terms and conditions of the Legislative Decree No. (2) Of 1987 with Regard to the Practice of Non Doctors and Pharmacists As Paramedics and its related regulatory decisions.
Fees: 100 B.D

Specialized radiology unit
The field of its activity is limited to one of the radiology examination specializations which include: imaging and medicating individuals using rays and waves or by use of any other methods with a view to assist in the diagnosis and prevention of diseases. It shall be licensed in accordance with the terms and conditions of the Legislative Decree No. (2) Of 1987 with Regard to the Practice of Non Doctors and Pharmacists As Paramedics and its related regulatory decisions.
Fees: 200 B.D

Fee Details (if any)

Fee for each license:
• Application fee: BD 50 (one-time)
• Initial approval fee: BD 50 (one-time)
Fees for a Comprehensive Radiology center:
• New License fee: 700
• Renewal license fees: 500
Fees for a Preliminary Radiology unit:
• New License fee: 300
• Renewal license fees: 200
Fees for a Specialized radiology unit:
• New License fee: 500
• Renewal license fees: 400

License Information

There are three licenses that could be obtained under this activity:
1. Comprehensive Radiology center: Undertaking all radiology examinations including examinations that require using colored medical materials, ultrasound waves, magnetic resonance imaging, and radioactive isotopes. It shall be licensed in accordance with the terms and conditions of the Legislative Decree No. (2) Of 1987 with Regard to the Practice of Non Doctors and Pharmacists as Paramedics and its related regulatory decisions
2. Preliminary Radiology unit: Undertaking radiology examinations that do not entail using colored medical materials or television imaging. It uses ultrasound ray devices. It shall be licensed in accordance with the terms and conditions of the Legislative Decree No. (2) Of 1987 with Regard to the Practice of Non Doctors and Pharmacists As Paramedics and its related regulatory decisions
3. Specialized radiology unit: The field of this activity is limited to one of the radiology examination specializations which include: imaging and medicating individuals using rays and waves or by use of any other methods with a view to assist in the diagnosis and prevention of diseases. It shall be licensed in accordance with the terms and conditions of the Legislative Decree No. (2) Of 1987 with Regard to the Practice of Non Doctors and Pharmacists As Paramedics and its related regulatory decisions.
• You may visit NHRA's website for the regulations applicable to these licenses:http://www.nhra.bh

Required Documents

- Application form (from NHRA web site)
- Approval from environment in case of radiation
- Architectural drawings from a licensed office
- License to practice (if applicant is a doctor or medical practitioner)
- List of equipment to be used
- List of specialties and activities within the hospital
- Name of the nominated hospital director
- Number of doctors in case of a hospital or a medical center
- Submit a detail proposal of the project

Municipality Affairs (Post) (862092-1)

Approval Name	Description	Estimated Time
Site Approval for Human Health Activities	Municipality Approval for the Commercial Registration address or the site in which the Activity will be practiced	3 Days

Fee Details (if any)

10 BD

License Information

General Conditions:
1. Size of shop/premises must be sufficient for the activity
2. Businesses may not carry out the activity outside the boundaries of the shop/ premises
3. It is prohibited to display or store any items or equipment outside the shop / premises boundary without prior approval from the Municipality
4. Maintain cleanliness of the site
5. Comply with the parking space regulations as per the Construction Regulatory Requirements

Activity Specific Conditions:
1. Comply with the regulatory requirements for construction as well as the requirements of the National Health Regulatory Authority (NHRA)
2. Comply with the parking requirements as per cabinet's decision (28) of the year 2009 regarding the Regulatory Requirements of Construction for various areas in the Kingdom of Bahrain

Required Documents

- Lease agreement (after obtaining the necessary approvals from other licensing entities)
- Shop photos

Other Documents

- Cabinet's Decision (56) of the year 2022 regarding the Regulatory Requirements of Construction for various areas in the Kingdom of Bahrain

General Directrate Of Civil Defence (Post) (862092-1)

Approval Name	Description	Estimated Time
Radiology Center	checking the approval requirements of the general directorate of civil defense	5 Days

Fee Details (if any)

30 BD Fire prevention and protection certificate fees

License Information

1. Provide the documents mentioned in the “Required Documents” section
2. Comply with the requirements listed in the inspection checklist found in the “Other Downloadable Documents” section
3. Provide proof to the General Directorate of Civil Defense that an alarm and firefighting equipment have been installed within 6 months of obtaining a Commercial Registration and license

If a warehouse is used: A safety certificate must be obtained viaBahrain.bh

Required Documents

•No-objection letter for alarm and extinguisher installation from Civil Defense, or purchasing receipt of alarm equipment and extinguishers along with an annual maintenance contract from a company certified by Civil defense
•Photos required for civil defense activities
•Purchasing invoice of security camera system with specifying the type and storage capacity.

Other Documents

- Sample pictures of the general directorate of civil defense requirements
- licencing requirments of the general directorat of civil defense for activity number "862092"

NHRA-Health Care Facilities (Final Site Inspection) (862092-1)

Approval Name	Description	Estimated Time
Radiology Center	Comprehensive Radiology center It undertakes all radiology examinations including examinations that require using colored medical materials ultrasound waves magnetic resonance imaging and radioactive isotopes. It shall be licensed in accordance with the terms and conditions of the Legislative Decree No. (2) Of 1987 with Regard to the Practice of Non Doctors and Pharmacists as Paramedics and its related regulatory decisions. Fees: 300 B.D Preliminary Radiology unit It undertakes radiology examinations that do not entail using colored medical materials or television imaging. It uses the ultrasound ray devices. It shall be	5 Days

licensed in accordance with the terms and conditions of the Legislative Decree No. (2) Of 1987 with Regard to the Practice of Non Doctors and Pharmacists As Paramedics and its related regulatory decisions.
Fees: 100 B.D

Specialized radiology unit
The field of its activity is limited to one of the radiology examination specializations which include: imaging and medicating individuals using rays and waves or by use of any other methods with a view to assist in the diagnosis and prevention of diseases. It shall be licensed in accordance with the terms and conditions of the Legislative Decree No. (2) Of 1987 with Regard to the Practice of Non Doctors and Pharmacists As Paramedics and its related regulatory decisions.
Fees: 200 B.D

Fee Details (if any)

Fee for each license:
• Application fee: BD 50 (one-time)
• Initial approval fee: BD 50 (one-time)
Fees for a Comprehensive Radiology center:
• New License fee: 700
• Renewal license fees: 500
Fees for a Preliminary Radiology unit:
• New License fee: 300
• Renewal license fees: 200
Fees for a Specialized radiology unit:
• New License fee: 500
• Renewal license fees: 400

License Information

There are three licenses that could be obtained under this activity:
1. Comprehensive Radiology center: Undertaking all radiology examinations including examinations that require using colored medical materials, ultrasound waves, magnetic resonance imaging, and radioactive isotopes. It shall be licensed in accordance with the terms and conditions of the Legislative Decree No. (2) Of 1987 with Regard to the Practice of Non Doctors and Pharmacists as Paramedics and its related regulatory decisions
2. Preliminary Radiology unit: Undertaking radiology examinations that do not entail using colored medical materials or television imaging. It uses ultrasound ray devices. It shall be licensed in accordance with the terms and conditions of the Legislative Decree No. (2) Of 1987 with Regard to the Practice of Non Doctors and Pharmacists As Paramedics and its related regulatory decisions
3. Specialized radiology unit: The field of this activity is limited to one of the radiology examination specializations which include: imaging and medicating individuals using rays and waves or by use of any other methods with a view to assist in the diagnosis and prevention of diseases. It shall be licensed in accordance with the terms and conditions of the Legislative Decree No. (2) Of 1987 with Regard to the Practice of Non Doctors and Pharmacists As Paramedics and its related regulatory decisions.
• You may visit NHRA's website for the regulations applicable to these licenses:http://www.nhra.bh

Required Documents

- Application form (from NHRA web site)
- Approval from environment in case of radiation
- Architectural drawings from a licensed office
- License to practice (if applicant is a doctor or medical practitioner)
- List of equipment to be used
- List of specialties and activities within the hospital
- Name of the nominated hospital director
- Number of doctors in case of a hospital or a medical center
- Submit a detail proposal of the project

Human health and social work activities

ISIC4	Business activity
862092-2	Radiology Center - Preliminary Radiology Unit

Description

A health facility that is set up to perform radiological examinations that do not require the use of medical dyes materials or television imaging and that use ultrasound devices.

Business Requirements

Age

18 and above

Allowed for Nationalities

Bahraini 100%	GCC 100%
American 100%	Singaporean 100%
Icelander 100%	Liechtenstein er 100%
Norwegian 100%	Swiss 100%

Foreign Allowed up to 100%

Legal Type

It is allowed to register according to the legal forms mentioned below

Allowed for Individual Commercial Registration (ICR) : Yes

Allowed for Company Commercial Registration (CCR) : Yes

- Bahrain Shareholding Company (Public)
- With Limited Liability Company
- Branch of a Foreign Company
- Bahrain Shareholding Company (Closed)
- Partnership Company
- Simple Commandite Company
- Commandite By Shares Company
- Non Profit Company

Required Step of Licenses and Approvals

Ministry / Directorate	License / Approval Requirements	Approval Type
Radiation Affairs In Supreme Council for Environment	Notification for the Radiation Affairs In Supreme Council for Environment.	Notification Only
General Directrate Of Civil Defence	Radiology Center	Post
NHRA-Health Care Facilities	Radiology Center	Post
Municipality Affairs	Site Approval for Human Health Activities	Post
NHRA-Health Care Facilities	Radiology Center	Final Site Inspection

Radiation Affairs In Supreme Council for Environment (Notification Only) (862092-2)

Approval Name	Description	Estimated Time
Notification for the Radiation Affairs In Supreme Council for Environment.	Notification Only	10 Days

Fee Details (if any)

There is no Estimated Processing Time (Days) in this license.

License Information

After obtaining the commercial license, kindly apply for an environmental license on: Licensingradiation@SCE.GOV.BH.

General Directrate Of Civil Defence (Post) (862092-2)

Approval Name	Description	Estimated Time
Radiology Center	checking the approval requirements of the general directorate of civil defense	5 Days

Fee Details (if any)

30 BD Fire prevention and protection certificate fees

License Information

1. Provide the documents mentioned in the “Required Documents” section
2. Comply with the requirements listed in the inspection checklist found in the “Other Downloadable Documents” section
3. Provide proof to the General Directorate of Civil Defense that an alarm and firefighting equipment have been installed within 6 months of obtaining a Commercial Registration and license

If a warehouse is used: A safety certificate must be obtained viaBahrain.bh

Required Documents

•No-objection letter for alarm and extinguisher installation from Civil Defense, or purchasing receipt of alarm equipment and extinguishers along with an annual maintenance contract from a company certified by Civil defense
•Photos required for civil defense activities
•Purchasing invoice of security camera system with specifying the type and storage capacity.

Other Documents

- Sample pictures of the general directorate of civil defense requirements
- licencing requirments of the general directorat of civil defense for activity number "862092"

NHRA-Health Care Facilities (Post) (862092-2)

Approval Name	Description	Estimated Time
Radiology Center	Comprehensive Radiology center It undertakes all radiology examinations including examinations that require using colored medical materials ultrasound waves magnetic resonance imaging and radioactive isotopes. It shall be licensed in accordance with the terms and conditions of the Legislative Decree No. (2) Of 1987 with Regard to the Practice of Non Doctors and Pharmacists as Paramedics and its related regulatory decisions. Fees: 300 B.D Preliminary Radiology unit It undertakes radiology examinations that do not entail using colored medical materials or television imaging. It uses the ultrasound ray devices. It shall be licensed in	5 Days

accordance with the terms and conditions of the Legislative Decree No. (2) Of 1987 with Regard to the Practice of Non Doctors and Pharmacists As Paramedics and its related regulatory decisions.
Fees: 100 B.D

Specialized radiology unit
The field of its activity is limited to one of the radiology examination specializations which include: imaging and medicating individuals using rays and waves or by use of any other methods with a view to assist in the diagnosis and prevention of diseases. It shall be licensed in accordance with the terms and conditions of the Legislative Decree No. (2) Of 1987 with Regard to the Practice of Non Doctors and Pharmacists As Paramedics and its related regulatory decisions.
Fees: 200 B.D

Fee Details (if any)

Fee for each license:
• Application fee: BD 50 (one-time)
• Initial approval fee: BD 50 (one-time)
Fees for a Comprehensive Radiology center:
• New License fee: 700
• Renewal license fees: 500
Fees for a Preliminary Radiology unit:
• New License fee: 300
• Renewal license fees: 200
Fees for a Specialized radiology unit:
• New License fee: 500
• Renewal license fees: 400

License Information

There are three licenses that could be obtained under this activity:
1. Comprehensive Radiology center: Undertaking all radiology examinations including examinations that require using colored medical materials, ultrasound waves, magnetic resonance imaging, and radioactive isotopes. It shall be licensed in accordance with the terms and conditions of the Legislative Decree No. (2) Of 1987 with Regard to the Practice of Non Doctors and Pharmacists as Paramedics and its related regulatory decisions
2. Preliminary Radiology unit: Undertaking radiology examinations that do not entail using colored medical materials or television imaging. It uses ultrasound ray devices. It shall be licensed in accordance with the terms and conditions of the Legislative Decree No. (2) Of 1987 with Regard to the Practice of Non Doctors and Pharmacists As Paramedics and its related regulatory decisions
3. Specialized radiology unit: The field of this activity is limited to one of the radiology examination specializations which include: imaging and medicating individuals using rays and waves or by use of any other methods with a view to assist in the diagnosis and prevention of diseases. It shall be licensed in accordance with the terms and conditions of the Legislative Decree No. (2) Of 1987 with Regard to the Practice of Non Doctors and Pharmacists As Paramedics and its related regulatory decisions.
• You may visit NHRA's website for the regulations applicable to these licenses:http://www.nhra.bh

Required Documents

- Application form (from NHRA web site)
- Approval from environment in case of radiation
- Architectural drawings from a licensed office
- License to practice (if applicant is a doctor or medical practitioner)
- List of equipment to be used
- List of specialties and activities within the hospital
- Name of the nominated hospital director
- Number of doctors in case of a hospital or a medical center
- Submit a detail proposal of the project

Municipality Affairs (Post) (862092-2)

Approval Name	Description	Estimated Time
Site Approval for Human Health Activities	Municipality Approval for the Commercial Registration address or the site in which the Activity will be practiced	3 Days

Fee Details (if any)

10 BD

License Information

General Conditions:
1. Size of shop/premises must be sufficient for the activity
2. Businesses may not carry out the activity outside the boundaries of the shop/ premises
3. It is prohibited to display or store any items or equipment outside the shop / premises boundary without prior approval from the Municipality
4. Maintain cleanliness of the site
5. Comply with the parking space regulations as per the Construction Regulatory Requirements

Activity Specific Conditions:
1. Comply with the regulatory requirements for construction as well as the requirements of the National Health Regulatory Authority (NHRA)
2. Comply with the parking requirements as per cabinet's decision (28) of the year 2009 regarding the Regulatory Requirements of Construction for various areas in the Kingdom of Bahrain

Required Documents

- Lease agreement (after obtaining the necessary approvals from other licensing entities)
- Shop photos

Other Documents

- Cabinet's Decision (56) of the year 2022 regarding the Regulatory Requirements of Construction for various areas in the Kingdom of Bahrain

NHRA-Health Care Facilities (Final Site Inspection) (862092-2)

Approval Name	Description	Estimated Time
Radiology Center	Comprehensive Radiology center It undertakes all radiology examinations including examinations that require using colored medical materials ultrasound waves magnetic resonance imaging and radioactive isotopes. It shall be licensed in accordance with the terms and conditions of the Legislative Decree No. (2) Of 1987 with Regard to the Practice of Non Doctors and Pharmacists as Paramedics and its related regulatory decisions. Fees: 300 B.D Preliminary Radiology unit It undertakes radiology examinations that do not entail using colored medical materials or television imaging. It uses the ultrasound ray devices. It shall be	5 Days

licensed in accordance with the terms and conditions of the Legislative Decree No. (2) Of 1987 with Regard to the Practice of Non Doctors and Pharmacists As Paramedics and its related regulatory decisions.
Fees: 100 B.D

Specialized radiology unit
The field of its activity is limited to one of the radiology examination specializations which include: imaging and medicating individuals using rays and waves or by use of any other methods with a view to assist in the diagnosis and prevention of diseases. It shall be licensed in accordance with the terms and conditions of the Legislative Decree No. (2) Of 1987 with Regard to the Practice of Non Doctors and Pharmacists As Paramedics and its related regulatory decisions.
Fees: 200 B.D

Fee Details (if any)

Fee for each license:
• Application fee: BD 50 (one-time)
• Initial approval fee: BD 50 (one-time)
Fees for a Comprehensive Radiology center:
• New License fee: 700
• Renewal license fees: 500
Fees for a Preliminary Radiology unit:
• New License fee: 300
• Renewal license fees: 200
Fees for a Specialized radiology unit:
• New License fee: 500
• Renewal license fees: 400

License Information

There are three licenses that could be obtained under this activity:
1. Comprehensive Radiology center: Undertaking all radiology examinations including examinations that require using colored medical materials, ultrasound waves, magnetic resonance imaging, and radioactive isotopes. It shall be licensed in accordance with the terms and conditions of the Legislative Decree No. (2) Of 1987 with Regard to the Practice of Non Doctors and Pharmacists as Paramedics and its related regulatory decisions
2. Preliminary Radiology unit: Undertaking radiology examinations that do not entail using colored medical materials or television imaging. It uses ultrasound ray devices. It shall be licensed in accordance with the terms and conditions of the Legislative Decree No. (2) Of 1987 with Regard to the Practice of Non Doctors and Pharmacists As Paramedics and its related regulatory decisions
3. Specialized radiology unit: The field of this activity is limited to one of the radiology examination specializations which include: imaging and medicating individuals using rays and waves or by use of any other methods with a view to assist in the diagnosis and prevention of diseases. It shall be licensed in accordance with the terms and conditions of the Legislative Decree No. (2) Of 1987 with Regard to the Practice of Non Doctors and Pharmacists As Paramedics and its related regulatory decisions.
• You may visit NHRA's website for the regulations applicable to these licenses:http://www.nhra.bh

Required Documents

- Application form (from NHRA web site)
- Approval from environment in case of radiation
- Architectural drawings from a licensed office
- License to practice (if applicant is a doctor or medical practitioner)
- List of equipment to be used
- List of specialties and activities within the hospital
- Name of the nominated hospital director
- Number of doctors in case of a hospital or a medical center
- Submit a detail proposal of the project

Human health and social work activities

ISIC4	Business activity
862092-3	Radiology Center - Specialized Radiology Unit

Description

A health facility that is set up to perform only one radiology test.

Business Requirements

✔ Age

✔ Allowed for Nationalities

Bahraini 100%	GCC 100%
American 100%	Singaporean 100%
Icelander 100%	Liechtensteiner 100%
Norwegian 100%	Swiss 100%

Foreign Allowed up to 100%

✔ Legal Type

It is allowed to register according to the legal forms mentioned below

Allowed for Individual Commercial Registration (ICR) : Yes

Allowed for Company Commercial Registration (CCR) : Yes

Required Step of Licenses and Approvals

Ministry / Directorate	License / Approval Requirements	Approval Type
Radiation Affairs In Supreme Council for Environment	Notification for the Radiation Affairs In Supreme Council for Environment.	Notification Only
General Directrate Of Civil Defence	Radiology Center	Post
Municipality Affairs	Site Approval for Human Health Activities	Post
NHRA-Health Care Facilities	Radiology Center	Post
NHRA-Health Care Facilities	Radiology Center	Final Site Inspection

Radiation Affairs In Supreme Council for Environment (Notification Only) (862092-3)

Approval Name	Description	Estimated Time
Notification for the Radiation Affairs In Supreme Council for Environment.	Notification Only	10 Days

Fee Details (if any)

There is no Estimated Processing Time (Days) in this license.

License Information

After obtaining the commercial license, kindly apply for an environmental license on: Licensingradiation@SCE.GOV.BH.

General Directrate Of Civil Defence (Post) (862092-3)

Approval Name	Description	Estimated Time
Radiology Center	checking the approval requirements of the general directorate of civil defense	5 Days

Fee Details (if any)

30 BD Fire prevention and protection certificate fees

License Information

1. Provide the documents mentioned in the “Required Documents” section
2. Comply with the requirements listed in the inspection checklist found in the “Other Downloadable Documents” section
3. Provide proof to the General Directorate of Civil Defense that an alarm and firefighting equipment have been installed within 6 months of obtaining a Commercial Registration and license

If a warehouse is used: A safety certificate must be obtained viaBahrain.bh

Required Documents

•No-objection letter for alarm and extinguisher installation from Civil Defense, or purchasing receipt of alarm equipment and extinguishers along with an annual maintenance contract from a company certified by Civil defense
•Photos required for civil defense activities
•Purchasing invoice of security camera system with specifying the type and storage capacity.

Other Documents

- Sample pictures of the general directorate of civil defense requirements
- licencing requirments of the general directorat of civil defense for activity number "862092"

Municipality Affairs (Post) (862092-3)

Approval Name	Description	Estimated Time
Site Approval for Human Health Activities	Municipality Approval for the Commercial Registration address or the site in which the Activity will be practiced	3 Days

Fee Details (if any)

10 BD

License Information

General Conditions:
1. Size of shop/premises must be sufficient for the activity
2. Businesses may not carry out the activity outside the boundaries of the shop/ premises
3. It is prohibited to display or store any items or equipment outside the shop / premises boundary without prior approval from the Municipality
4. Maintain cleanliness of the site
5. Comply with the parking space regulations as per the Construction Regulatory Requirements

Activity Specific Conditions:
1. Comply with the regulatory requirements for construction as well as the requirements of the National Health Regulatory Authority (NHRA)
2. Comply with the parking requirements as per cabinet's decision (28) of the year 2009 regarding the Regulatory Requirements of Construction for various areas in the Kingdom of Bahrain

Required Documents

- Lease agreement (after obtaining the necessary approvals from other licensing entities)
- Shop photos

Other Documents

- Cabinet's Decision (56) of the year 2022 regarding the Regulatory Requirements of Construction for various areas in the Kingdom of Bahrain

NHRA-Health Care Facilities (Post) (862092-3)

Approval Name	Description	Estimated Time
Radiology Center	Comprehensive Radiology center It undertakes all radiology examinations including examinations that require using colored medical materials ultrasound waves magnetic resonance imaging and radioactive isotopes. It shall be licensed in accordance with the terms and conditions of the Legislative Decree No. (2) Of 1987 with Regard to the Practice of Non Doctors and Pharmacists as Paramedics and its related regulatory decisions. Fees: 300 B.D Preliminary Radiology unit It undertakes radiology examinations that do not entail using colored medical materials or television imaging. It uses the ultrasound ray devices. It shall be licensed in	5 Days

accordance with the terms and conditions of the Legislative Decree No. (2) Of 1987 with Regard to the Practice of Non Doctors and Pharmacists As Paramedics and its related regulatory decisions.
Fees: 100 B.D

Specialized radiology unit
The field of its activity is limited to one of the radiology examination specializations which include: imaging and medicating individuals using rays and waves or by use of any other methods with a view to assist in the diagnosis and prevention of diseases. It shall be licensed in accordance with the terms and conditions of the Legislative Decree No. (2) Of 1987 with Regard to the Practice of Non Doctors and Pharmacists As Paramedics and its related regulatory decisions.
Fees: 200 B.D

Fee Details (if any)

Fee for each license:
• Application fee: BD 50 (one-time)
• Initial approval fee: BD 50 (one-time)
Fees for a Comprehensive Radiology center:
• New License fee: 700
• Renewal license fees: 500
Fees for a Preliminary Radiology unit:
• New License fee: 300
• Renewal license fees: 200
Fees for a Specialized radiology unit:
• New License fee: 500
• Renewal license fees: 400

License Information

There are three licenses that could be obtained under this activity:
1. Comprehensive Radiology center: Undertaking all radiology examinations including examinations that require using colored medical materials, ultrasound waves, magnetic resonance imaging, and radioactive isotopes. It shall be licensed in accordance with the terms and conditions of the Legislative Decree No. (2) Of 1987 with Regard to the Practice of Non Doctors and Pharmacists as Paramedics and its related regulatory decisions
2. Preliminary Radiology unit: Undertaking radiology examinations that do not entail using colored medical materials or television imaging. It uses ultrasound ray devices. It shall be licensed in accordance with the terms and conditions of the Legislative Decree No. (2) Of 1987 with Regard to the Practice of Non Doctors and Pharmacists As Paramedics and its related regulatory decisions
3. Specialized radiology unit: The field of this activity is limited to one of the radiology examination specializations which include: imaging and medicating individuals using rays and waves or by use of any other methods with a view to assist in the diagnosis and prevention of diseases. It shall be licensed in accordance with the terms and conditions of the Legislative Decree No. (2) Of 1987 with Regard to the Practice of Non Doctors and Pharmacists As Paramedics and its related regulatory decisions.
• You may visit NHRA's website for the regulations applicable to these licenses:http://www.nhra.bh

Required Documents

- Application form (from NHRA web site)
- Approval from environment in case of radiation
- Architectural drawings from a licensed office
- License to practice (if applicant is a doctor or medical practitioner)
- List of equipment to be used
- List of specialties and activities within the hospital
- Name of the nominated hospital director
- Number of doctors in case of a hospital or a medical center
- Submit a detail proposal of the project

NHRA-Health Care Facilities (Final Site Inspection) (862092-3)

Approval Name	Description	Estimated Time
Radiology Center	Comprehensive Radiology center It undertakes all radiology examinations including examinations that require using colored medical materials ultrasound waves magnetic resonance imaging and radioactive isotopes. It shall be licensed in accordance with the terms and conditions of the Legislative Decree No. (2) Of 1987 with Regard to the Practice of Non Doctors and Pharmacists as Paramedics and its related regulatory decisions. Fees: 300 B.D Preliminary Radiology unit It undertakes radiology examinations that do not entail using colored medical materials or television imaging. It uses the ultrasound ray devices. It shall be	5 Days

licensed in accordance with the terms and conditions of the Legislative Decree No. (2) Of 1987 with Regard to the Practice of Non Doctors and Pharmacists As Paramedics and its related regulatory decisions.
Fees: 100 B.D

Specialized radiology unit
The field of its activity is limited to one of the radiology examination specializations which include: imaging and medicating individuals using rays and waves or by use of any other methods with a view to assist in the diagnosis and prevention of diseases. It shall be licensed in accordance with the terms and conditions of the Legislative Decree No. (2) Of 1987 with Regard to the Practice of Non Doctors and Pharmacists As Paramedics and its related regulatory decisions.
Fees: 200 B.D

Fee Details (if any)

Fee for each license:
• Application fee: BD 50 (one-time)
• Initial approval fee: BD 50 (one-time)
Fees for a Comprehensive Radiology center:
• New License fee: 700
• Renewal license fees: 500
Fees for a Preliminary Radiology unit:
• New License fee: 300
• Renewal license fees: 200
Fees for a Specialized radiology unit:
• New License fee: 500
• Renewal license fees: 400

License Information

There are three licenses that could be obtained under this activity:
1. Comprehensive Radiology center: Undertaking all radiology examinations including examinations that require using colored medical materials, ultrasound waves, magnetic resonance imaging, and radioactive isotopes. It shall be licensed in accordance with the terms and conditions of the Legislative Decree No. (2) Of 1987 with Regard to the Practice of Non Doctors and Pharmacists as Paramedics and its related regulatory decisions
2. Preliminary Radiology unit: Undertaking radiology examinations that do not entail using colored medical materials or television imaging. It uses ultrasound ray devices. It shall be licensed in accordance with the terms and conditions of the Legislative Decree No. (2) Of 1987 with Regard to the Practice of Non Doctors and Pharmacists As Paramedics and its related regulatory decisions
3. Specialized radiology unit: The field of this activity is limited to one of the radiology examination specializations which include: imaging and medicating individuals using rays and waves or by use of any other methods with a view to assist in the diagnosis and prevention of diseases. It shall be licensed in accordance with the terms and conditions of the Legislative Decree No. (2) Of 1987 with Regard to the Practice of Non Doctors and Pharmacists As Paramedics and its related regulatory decisions.
• You may visit NHRA's website for the regulations applicable to these licenses:http://www.nhra.bh

Required Documents

- Application form (from NHRA web site)
- Approval from environment in case of radiation
- Architectural drawings from a licensed office
- License to practice (if applicant is a doctor or medical practitioner)
- List of equipment to be used
- List of specialties and activities within the hospital
- Name of the nominated hospital director
- Number of doctors in case of a hospital or a medical center
- Submit a detail proposal of the project

Human health and social work activities

ISIC4	Business activity
869002-1	Medical Laboratory - General Medical Laboratory

Description

A health facility that carries out laboratory investigations of the attendants or samples referred to them by doctors in other health facilities. The field of work of these laboratories includes various investigations and laboratory studies such as microbiology, biochemistry, medical properties, blood analysis. A pathologist is required to work in such laboratories.

Business Requirements

Age

18 and above

Allowed for Nationalities

Bahraini 100%		GCC 100%	
American 100%		Singaporean 100%	
Icelander 100%		Liechtenstein er 100%	
Norwegian 100%		Swiss 100%	

Foreign Allowed up to 100%

Legal Type

It is allowed to register according to the legal forms mentioned below

Allowed for Individual Commercial Registration (ICR) : Yes

Allowed for Company Commercial Registration (CCR) : Yes

- Bahrain Shareholding Company (Public)
- With Limited Liability Company
- Branch of a Foreign Company
- Bahrain Shareholding Company (Closed)
- Partnership Company
- Simple Commandite Company
- Commandite By Shares Company
- Non Profit Company

Required Step of Licenses and Approvals

Ministry / Directorate	License / Approval Requirements	Approval Type
General Directrate Of Civil Defence	Medical Laboratory	Post
NHRA-Health Care Facilities	Medical Laboratory	Post
Municipality Affairs	Municipality Site Approval	Post
NHRA-Health Care Facilities	Medical Laboratory	Final Site Inspection

General Directrate Of Civil Defence (Post) (869002-1)

Approval Name	Description	Estimated Time
Medical Laboratory	checking the approval requirements of the general directorate of civil defense	5 Days

Fee Details (if any)

30 BD Fire prevention and protection certificate fees

License Information

1. Provide the documents mentioned in the “Required Documents” section
2. Comply with the requirements listed in the inspection checklist found in the “Other Downloadable Documents” section
3. Provide proof to the General Directorate of Civil Defense that an alarm and firefighting equipment have been installed within 6 months of obtaining a Commercial Registration and license

If a warehouse is used: A safety certificate must be obtained viaBahrain.bh

Required Documents

•No-objection letter for alarm and extinguisher installation from Civil Defense, or purchasing receipt of alarm equipment and extinguishers along with an annual maintenance contract from a company certified by Civil defense
•Photos required for civil defense activities
•Purchasing invoice of security camera system with specifying the type and storage capacity.

Other Documents

- Sample pictures of the general directorate of civil defense requirements
- licencing requirments of the general directorat of civil defense for activity number "869002"

NHRA-Health Care Facilities (Post) (869002-1)

Approval Name	Description	Estimated Time
Medical Laboratory	General Medical Lab An institution that undertake lab examinations on individuals who are referred to them or examinations on samples send by physicians licensed to practice the profession in the Kingdom of Bahrain including physicians of private clinics or clinics affiliated to companies authorities or hospitals. The field of general medical lab includes various lab specializations such as: microbiological biochemical physical nature blood (hematologic and cytological) and pathology examinations etc. in accordance with the conditions and procedures applied by the NHRA. Preliminary lab It undertakes simple examinations to frequenters of clinics licensed by the NHRA.	5 Days

Specialized medical lab
An institution that undertake lab examinations on individuals who are referred to them or examinations on samples send by physicians of private clinics or clinics affiliated to companies authorities or hospitals. Its field is limited to one of the lab examination specializations in accordance with the conditions and procedures applied by the NHRA.

Blood collection unit
It the facility that introduce blood collection service only then transfer this sample to the main laboratory.

Fee Details (if any)

Fee for each license:
- Application fee: BD 50 (one-time)
- Initial approval fee: BD 50 (one-time)

Fees for a General Medical Lab:
- New License fee: 600
- Renewal license fees: 500

Fees for a Preliminary Lab:
- New License fee: 400

• Renewal license fees: 300
Fees for a Specialized Medical Lab:
• New License fee: 500
• Renewal license fees: 400
Fees for a Blood Collection Unit:
• New License fee: 400
• Renewal license fees: 300

License Information

There are four licenses that could be obtained under this activity:
1. General Medical Lab: An institution that undertakes lab examinations on individuals who are referred to them or examinations on samples sent by physicians licensed to practice the profession in the Kingdom of Bahrain including physicians of private clinics or clinics affiliated to companies authorities or hospitals. The field of general medical lab includes various lab specializations such as: microbiological, biochemical, physical nature, blood (hematologic and cytological) and pathology examinations etc. in accordance to the regulations of the NHRA
2. Preliminary Lab: Labs that perform simple examinations to patients of clinics licensed by the NHRA
3. Specialized Medical Lab: An institution that undertakes lab examinations on individuals who are referred to them or examinations on samples sent by physicians of private clinics or clinics affiliated to companies, authorities, or hospitals. The field is limited to one of the lab examination specializations in accordance with the conditions and procedures applied by the NHRA.
4. Blood Collection Unit: Facilities that provide blood collection services only, then transfer the samples to the main laboratory

Required Documents

•Application form (from NHRA web site)
•Approval from environment in case of radiation
•Architectural drawings from a licensed office
•License to practice (if applicant is a doctor or medical practitioner)
•List of equipment to be used
•List of specialties and activities within the hospital
•Name of the nominated hospital director
•Number of doctors in case of a hospital or a medical center
•Submit a detail proposal of the project

Municipality Affairs (Post) (869002-1)

Approval Name	Description	Estimated Time
Municipality Site Approval	Municipality approval of the business location (site) is required for all types of business activities. Municipalities verify that the proposed location / zone are appropriate for the proposed business activity. Site approval is issued automatically for pre-approved commercial areas, such as commercial malls and commercial buildings.	15 Days

Fee Details (if any)

Company application registration form
1. Copy of applicant's CPR card (passport for non-Bahrainis)
2. Two copies of property deed or rental agreement
3. If application is for relocation from one area to another, certificate of relocation by previous Municipality
4. Copy of electricity bill or electricity account number for new premises
5. Copy of sale agreement, if CR is purchased from another person
6. Copy of power of attorney, if required

License Information

There is no License Information in this license.

Required Documents

- Lease agreement (after obtaining the necessary approvals from other licensing entities)
- Photos of the premises

Other Documents

- قرار رقم (56) لسنة 2022 بإصدار الاشتراطات التنظيمية للتعمير بمختلف المناطق في المملكة

NHRA-Health Care Facilities (Final Site Inspection) (869002-1)

Approval Name	Description	Estimated Time
Medical Laboratory	General Medical Lab An institution that undertake lab examinations on individuals who are referred to them or examinations on samples send by physicians licensed to practice the profession in the Kingdom of Bahrain including physicians of private clinics or clinics affiliated to companies authorities or hospitals. The field of general medical lab includes various lab specializations such as: microbiological biochemical physical nature blood (hematologic and cytological) and pathology examinations etc. in accordance with the conditions and procedures applied by the NHRA. Preliminary lab It undertakes simple examinations to frequenters of clinics licensed by the	5 Days

NHRA.

Specialized medical lab
An institution that undertake lab examinations on individuals who are referred to them or examinations on samples send by physicians of private clinics or clinics affiliated to companies authorities or hospitals. Its field is limited to one of the lab examination specializations in accordance with the conditions and procedures applied by the NHRA.

Blood collection unit
It the facility that introduce blood collection service only then transfer this sample to the main laboratory.

Fee Details (if any)

Fee for each license:
- Application fee: BD 50 (one-time)
- Initial approval fee: BD 50 (one-time)

Fees for a General Medical Lab:
- New License fee: 600
- Renewal license fees: 500

Fees for a Preliminary Lab:

• New License fee: 400
• Renewal license fees: 300

Fees for a Specialized Medical Lab:
• New License fee: 500
• Renewal license fees: 400

Fees for a Blood Collection Unit:
• New License fee: 400
• Renewal license fees: 300

License Information

There are four licenses that could be obtained under this activity:
1. General Medical Lab: An institution that undertakes lab examinations on individuals who are referred to them or examinations on samples sent by physicians licensed to practice the profession in the Kingdom of Bahrain including physicians of private clinics or clinics affiliated to companies authorities or hospitals. The field of general medical lab includes various lab specializations such as: microbiological, biochemical, physical nature, blood (hematologic and cytological) and pathology examinations etc. in accordance to the regulations of the NHRA
2. Preliminary Lab: Labs that perform simple examinations to patients of clinics licensed by the NHRA
3. Specialized Medical Lab: An institution that undertakes lab examinations on individuals who are referred to them or examinations on samples sent by physicians of private clinics or clinics affiliated to companies, authorities, or hospitals. The field is limited to one of the lab examination specializations in accordance with the conditions and procedures applied by the NHRA.
4. Blood Collection Unit: Facilities that provide blood collection services only, then transfer the samples to the main laboratory

Required Documents

•Application form (from NHRA web site)
•Approval from environment in case of radiation
•Architectural drawings from a licensed office
•License to practice (if applicant is a doctor or medical practitioner)
•List of equipment to be used
•List of specialties and activities within the hospital
•Name of the nominated hospital director
•Number of doctors in case of a hospital or a medical center
•Submit a detail proposal of the project

Human health and social work activities

ISIC4	Business activity
869002-2	Medical Laboratory - Preliminary Medical Laboratory

Description

A health facility that conducts simple laboratory investigations and analyzes for the attendants, and does not require the availability of a pathologist.

Business Requirements

✔ Age

✔ Allowed for Nationalities

Bahraini 100%	GCC 100%
American 100%	Singaporean 100%
Icelander 100%	Liechtensteiner 100%
Norwegian 100%	Swiss 100%

Foreign Allowed up to 100%

✔ Legal Type

It is allowed to register according to the legal forms mentioned below

Allowed for Individual Commercial Registration (ICR) : Yes

Allowed for Company Commercial Registration (CCR) : Yes

Required Step of Licenses and Approvals

Ministry / Directorate	License / Approval Requirements	Approval Type
NHRA-Health Care Facilities	Medical Laboratory	Post
General Directrate Of Civil Defence	Medical Laboratory	Post
Municipality Affairs	Municipality Site Approval	Post
NHRA-Health Care Facilities	Medical Laboratory	Final Site Inspection

NHRA-Health Care Facilities (Post) (869002-2)

Approval Name	Description	Estimated Time
Medical Laboratory	General Medical Lab An institution that undertake lab examinations on individuals who are referred to them or examinations on samples send by physicians licensed to practice the profession in the Kingdom of Bahrain including physicians of private clinics or clinics affiliated to companies authorities or hospitals. The field of general medical lab includes various lab specializations such as: microbiological biochemical physical nature blood (hematologic and cytological) and pathology examinations etc. in accordance with the conditions and procedures applied by the NHRA. Preliminary lab It undertakes simple examinations to frequenters of clinics licensed by the NHRA.	5 Days

Specialized medical lab
An institution that undertake lab examinations on individuals who are referred to them or examinations on samples send by physicians of private clinics or clinics affiliated to companies authorities or hospitals. Its field is limited to one of the lab examination specializations in accordance with the conditions and procedures applied by the NHRA.

Blood collection unit
It the facility that introduce blood collection service only then transfer this sample to the main laboratory.

Fee Details (if any)

Fee for each license:
- Application fee: BD 50 (one-time)
- Initial approval fee: BD 50 (one-time)

Fees for a General Medical Lab:
- New License fee: 600
- Renewal license fees: 500

Fees for a Preliminary Lab:
- New License fee: 400

• Renewal license fees: 300
Fees for a Specialized Medical Lab:
• New License fee: 500
• Renewal license fees: 400
Fees for a Blood Collection Unit:
• New License fee: 400
• Renewal license fees: 300

License Information

There are four licenses that could be obtained under this activity:
1. General Medical Lab: An institution that undertakes lab examinations on individuals who are referred to them or examinations on samples sent by physicians licensed to practice the profession in the Kingdom of Bahrain including physicians of private clinics or clinics affiliated to companies authorities or hospitals. The field of general medical lab includes various lab specializations such as: microbiological, biochemical, physical nature, blood (hematologic and cytological) and pathology examinations etc. in accordance to the regulations of the NHRA
2. Preliminary Lab: Labs that perform simple examinations to patients of clinics licensed by the NHRA
3. Specialized Medical Lab: An institution that undertakes lab examinations on individuals who are referred to them or examinations on samples sent by physicians of private clinics or clinics affiliated to companies, authorities, or hospitals. The field is limited to one of the lab examination specializations in accordance with the conditions and procedures applied by the NHRA.
4. Blood Collection Unit: Facilities that provide blood collection services only, then transfer the samples to the main laboratory

Required Documents

•Application form (from NHRA web site)
•Approval from environment in case of radiation
•Architectural drawings from a licensed office
•License to practice (if applicant is a doctor or medical practitioner)
•List of equipment to be used
•List of specialties and activities within the hospital
•Name of the nominated hospital director
•Number of doctors in case of a hospital or a medical center
•Submit a detail proposal of the project

General Directrate Of Civil Defence (Post) (869002-2)

Approval Name	Description	Estimated Time
Medical Laboratory	checking the approval requirements of the general directorate of civil defense	5 Days

Fee Details (if any)

30 BD Fire prevention and protection certificate fees

License Information

1. Provide the documents mentioned in the “Required Documents” section
2. Comply with the requirements listed in the inspection checklist found in the “Other Downloadable Documents” section
3. Provide proof to the General Directorate of Civil Defense that an alarm and firefighting equipment have been installed within 6 months of obtaining a Commercial Registration and license

If a warehouse is used: A safety certificate must be obtained viaBahrain.bh

Required Documents

•No-objection letter for alarm and extinguisher installation from Civil Defense, or purchasing receipt of alarm equipment and extinguishers along with an annual maintenance contract from a company certified by Civil defense
•Photos required for civil defense activities
•Purchasing invoice of security camera system with specifying the type and storage capacity.

Other Documents

- Sample pictures of the general directorate of civil defense requirements
- licencing requirments of the general directorat of civil defense for activity number "869002"

Municipality Affairs (Post) (869002-2)

Approval Name	Description	Estimated Time
Municipality Site Approval	Municipality approval of the business location (site) is required for all types of business activities. Municipalities verify that the proposed location / zone are appropriate for the proposed business activity. Site approval is issued automatically for pre-approved commercial areas, such as commercial malls and commercial buildings.	15 Days

Fee Details (if any)

Company application registration form
1. Copy of applicant's CPR card (passport for non-Bahrainis)
2. Two copies of property deed or rental agreement
3. If application is for relocation from one area to another, certificate of relocation by previous Municipality
4. Copy of electricity bill or electricity account number for new premises
5. Copy of sale agreement, if CR is purchased from another person
6. Copy of power of attorney, if required

License Information

There is no License Information in this license.

Required Documents

- Lease agreement (after obtaining the necessary approvals from other licensing entities)
- Photos of the premises

Other Documents

- قرار رقم (56) لسنة 2022 بإصدار الاشتراطات التنظيمية للتعمير بمختلف المناطق في المملكة

NHRA-Health Care Facilities (Final Site Inspection) (869002-2)

Approval Name	Description	Estimated Time
Medical Laboratory	General Medical Lab An institution that undertake lab examinations on individuals who are referred to them or examinations on samples send by physicians licensed to practice the profession in the Kingdom of Bahrain including physicians of private clinics or clinics affiliated to companies authorities or hospitals. The field of general medical lab includes various lab specializations such as: microbiological biochemical physical nature blood (hematologic and cytological) and pathology examinations etc. in accordance with the conditions and procedures applied by the NHRA. Preliminary lab It undertakes simple examinations to frequenters of clinics licensed by the	5 Days

NHRA.

Specialized medical lab
An institution that undertake lab examinations on individuals who are referred to them or examinations on samples send by physicians of private clinics or clinics affiliated to companies authorities or hospitals. Its field is limited to one of the lab examination specializations in accordance with the conditions and procedures applied by the NHRA.

Blood collection unit
It the facility that introduce blood collection service only then transfer this sample to the main laboratory.

Fee Details (if any)

Fee for each license:
- Application fee: BD 50 (one-time)
- Initial approval fee: BD 50 (one-time)

Fees for a General Medical Lab:
- New License fee: 600
- Renewal license fees: 500

Fees for a Preliminary Lab:

• New License fee: 400
• Renewal license fees: 300

Fees for a Specialized Medical Lab:
• New License fee: 500
• Renewal license fees: 400

Fees for a Blood Collection Unit:
• New License fee: 400
• Renewal license fees: 300

License Information

There are four licenses that could be obtained under this activity:
1. General Medical Lab: An institution that undertakes lab examinations on individuals who are referred to them or examinations on samples sent by physicians licensed to practice the profession in the Kingdom of Bahrain including physicians of private clinics or clinics affiliated to companies authorities or hospitals. The field of general medical lab includes various lab specializations such as: microbiological, biochemical, physical nature, blood (hematologic and cytological) and pathology examinations etc. in accordance to the regulations of the NHRA
2. Preliminary Lab: Labs that perform simple examinations to patients of clinics licensed by the NHRA
3. Specialized Medical Lab: An institution that undertakes lab examinations on individuals who are referred to them or examinations on samples sent by physicians of private clinics or clinics affiliated to companies, authorities, or hospitals. The field is limited to one of the lab examination specializations in accordance with the conditions and procedures applied by the NHRA.
4. Blood Collection Unit: Facilities that provide blood collection services only, then transfer the samples to the main laboratory

Required Documents

•Application form (from NHRA web site)
•Approval from environment in case of radiation
•Architectural drawings from a licensed office
•License to practice (if applicant is a doctor or medical practitioner)
•List of equipment to be used
•List of specialties and activities within the hospital
•Name of the nominated hospital director
•Number of doctors in case of a hospital or a medical center
•Submit a detail proposal of the project

Human health and social work activities

ISIC4	Business activity
869002-3	Medical Laboratory - Specialized Medical Laboratory

Description

A health facility that conducts laboratory tests for the attendants or samples referred to them by doctors in other health facilities. The field of their work is limited to one specialty of laboratory test and analysis, A pathologist is required to work in such laboratories.

Business Requirements

✔ Age

✔ Allowed for Nationalities

Bahraini 100%	GCC 100%
American 100%	Singaporean 100%
Icelander 100%	Liechtensteiner 100%
Norwegian 100%	Swiss 100%

Foreign Allowed up to 100%

Legal Type

It is allowed to register according to the legal forms mentioned below

Allowed for Individual Commercial Registration (ICR) : Yes

Allowed for Company Commercial Registration (CCR) : Yes

Required Step of Licenses and Approvals

Ministry / Directorate	License / Approval Requirements	Approval Type
General Directrate Of Civil Defence	Medical Laboratory	Post
NHRA-Health Care Facilities	Medical Laboratory	Post
Municipality Affairs	Municipality Site Approval	Post
NHRA-Health Care Facilities	Medical Laboratory	Final Site Inspection

General Directrate Of Civil Defence (Post) (869002-3)

Approval Name	Description	Estimated Time
Medical Laboratory	checking the approval requirements of the general directorate of civil defense	5 Days

Fee Details (if any)

30 BD Fire prevention and protection certificate fees

License Information

1. Provide the documents mentioned in the “Required Documents” section
2. Comply with the requirements listed in the inspection checklist found in the “Other Downloadable Documents” section
3. Provide proof to the General Directorate of Civil Defense that an alarm and firefighting equipment have been installed within 6 months of obtaining a Commercial Registration and license

If a warehouse is used: A safety certificate must be obtained viaBahrain.bh

Required Documents

•No-objection letter for alarm and extinguisher installation from Civil Defense, or purchasing receipt of alarm equipment and extinguishers along with an annual maintenance contract from a company certified by Civil defense
•Photos required for civil defense activities
•Purchasing invoice of security camera system with specifying the type and storage capacity.

Other Documents

- Sample pictures of the general directorate of civil defense requirements
- licencing requirments of the general directorat of civil defense for activity number "869002"

NHRA-Health Care Facilities (Post) (869002-3)

Approval Name	Description	Estimated Time
Medical Laboratory	General Medical Lab An institution that undertake lab examinations on individuals who are referred to them or examinations on samples send by physicians licensed to practice the profession in the Kingdom of Bahrain including physicians of private clinics or clinics affiliated to companies authorities or hospitals. The field of general medical lab includes various lab specializations such as: microbiological biochemical physical nature blood (hematologic and cytological) and pathology examinations etc. in accordance with the conditions and procedures applied by the NHRA. Preliminary lab It undertakes simple examinations to frequenters of clinics licensed by the NHRA.	5 Days

Specialized medical lab
An institution that undertake lab examinations on individuals who are referred to them or examinations on samples send by physicians of private clinics or clinics affiliated to companies authorities or hospitals. Its field is limited to one of the lab examination specializations in accordance with the conditions and procedures applied by the NHRA.

Blood collection unit
It the facility that introduce blood collection service only then transfer this sample to the main laboratory.

Fee Details (if any)

Fee for each license:
- Application fee: BD 50 (one-time)
- Initial approval fee: BD 50 (one-time)

Fees for a General Medical Lab:
- New License fee: 600
- Renewal license fees: 500

Fees for a Preliminary Lab:
- New License fee: 400

• Renewal license fees: 300
Fees for a Specialized Medical Lab:
• New License fee: 500
• Renewal license fees: 400
Fees for a Blood Collection Unit:
• New License fee: 400
• Renewal license fees: 300

License Information

There are four licenses that could be obtained under this activity:
1. General Medical Lab: An institution that undertakes lab examinations on individuals who are referred to them or examinations on samples sent by physicians licensed to practice the profession in the Kingdom of Bahrain including physicians of private clinics or clinics affiliated to companies authorities or hospitals. The field of general medical lab includes various lab specializations such as: microbiological, biochemical, physical nature, blood (hematologic and cytological) and pathology examinations etc. in accordance to the regulations of the NHRA
2. Preliminary Lab: Labs that perform simple examinations to patients of clinics licensed by the NHRA
3. Specialized Medical Lab: An institution that undertakes lab examinations on individuals who are referred to them or examinations on samples sent by physicians of private clinics or clinics affiliated to companies, authorities, or hospitals. The field is limited to one of the lab examination specializations in accordance with the conditions and procedures applied by the NHRA.
4. Blood Collection Unit: Facilities that provide blood collection services only, then transfer the samples to the main laboratory

Required Documents

•Application form (from NHRA web site)
•Approval from environment in case of radiation
•Architectural drawings from a licensed office
•License to practice (if applicant is a doctor or medical practitioner)
•List of equipment to be used
•List of specialties and activities within the hospital
•Name of the nominated hospital director
•Number of doctors in case of a hospital or a medical center
•Submit a detail proposal of the project

Municipality Affairs (Post) (869002-3)

Approval Name	Description	Estimated Time
Municipality Site Approval	Municipality approval of the business location (site) is required for all types of business activities. Municipalities verify that the proposed location / zone are appropriate for the proposed business activity. Site approval is issued automatically for pre-approved commercial areas, such as commercial malls and commercial buildings.	15 Days

Fee Details (if any)

Company application registration form
1. Copy of applicant's CPR card (passport for non-Bahrainis)
2. Two copies of property deed or rental agreement
3. If application is for relocation from one area to another, certificate of relocation by previous Municipality
4. Copy of electricity bill or electricity account number for new premises
5. Copy of sale agreement, if CR is purchased from another person
6. Copy of power of attorney, if required

License Information

There is no License Information in this license.

Required Documents

- Lease agreement (after obtaining the necessary approvals from other licensing entities)
- Photos of the premises

Other Documents

- قرار رقم (56) لسنة 2022 بإصدار الاشتراطات التنظيمية للتعمير بمختلف المناطق في المملكة

NHRA-Health Care Facilities (Final Site Inspection) (869002-3)

Approval Name	Description	Estimated Time
Medical Laboratory	General Medical Lab An institution that undertake lab examinations on individuals who are referred to them or examinations on samples send by physicians licensed to practice the profession in the Kingdom of Bahrain including physicians of private clinics or clinics affiliated to companies authorities or hospitals. The field of general medical lab includes various lab specializations such as: microbiological biochemical physical nature blood (hematologic and cytological) and pathology examinations etc. in accordance with the conditions and procedures applied by the NHRA. Preliminary lab It undertakes simple examinations to frequenters of clinics licensed by the	5 Days

NHRA.

Specialized medical lab
An institution that undertake lab examinations on individuals who are referred to them or examinations on samples send by physicians of private clinics or clinics affiliated to companies authorities or hospitals. Its field is limited to one of the lab examination specializations in accordance with the conditions and procedures applied by the NHRA.

Blood collection unit
It the facility that introduce blood collection service only then transfer this sample to the main laboratory.

Fee Details (if any)

Fee for each license:
- Application fee: BD 50 (one-time)
- Initial approval fee: BD 50 (one-time)

Fees for a General Medical Lab:
- New License fee: 600
- Renewal license fees: 500

Fees for a Preliminary Lab:

• New License fee: 400
• Renewal license fees: 300

Fees for a Specialized Medical Lab:
• New License fee: 500
• Renewal license fees: 400

Fees for a Blood Collection Unit:
• New License fee: 400
• Renewal license fees: 300

License Information

There are four licenses that could be obtained under this activity:
1. General Medical Lab: An institution that undertakes lab examinations on individuals who are referred to them or examinations on samples sent by physicians licensed to practice the profession in the Kingdom of Bahrain including physicians of private clinics or clinics affiliated to companies authorities or hospitals. The field of general medical lab includes various lab specializations such as: microbiological, biochemical, physical nature, blood (hematologic and cytological) and pathology examinations etc. in accordance to the regulations of the NHRA
2. Preliminary Lab: Labs that perform simple examinations to patients of clinics licensed by the NHRA
3. Specialized Medical Lab: An institution that undertakes lab examinations on individuals who are referred to them or examinations on samples sent by physicians of private clinics or clinics affiliated to companies, authorities, or hospitals. The field is limited to one of the lab examination specializations in accordance with the conditions and procedures applied by the NHRA.
4. Blood Collection Unit: Facilities that provide blood collection services only, then transfer the samples to the main laboratory

Required Documents

•Application form (from NHRA web site)
•Approval from environment in case of radiation
•Architectural drawings from a licensed office
•License to practice (if applicant is a doctor or medical practitioner)
•List of equipment to be used
•List of specialties and activities within the hospital
•Name of the nominated hospital director
•Number of doctors in case of a hospital or a medical center
•Submit a detail proposal of the project

Human health and social work activities

ISIC4	Business activity
869002-4	Medical Laboratory - Blood Collection Unit

Description

A health facility that performs blood withdrawal services only and then transfers the sample to the main laboratory.

Business Requirements

✔ Age

✔ Allowed for Nationalities

Bahraini 100%		GCC 100%	
American 100%		Singaporean 100%	
Icelander 100%		Liechtensteiner 100%	
Norwegian 100%		Swiss 100%	

Foreign Allowed up to 100%

✔ Legal Type

It is allowed to register according to the legal forms mentioned below

Allowed for Individual Commercial Registration (ICR) : Yes

Allowed for Company Commercial Registration (CCR) : Yes

Required Step of Licenses and Approvals

Ministry / Directorate	License / Approval Requirements	Approval Type
NHRA-Health Care Facilities	Medical Laboratory	Post
General Directrate Of Civil Defence	Medical Laboratory	Post
Municipality Affairs	Municipality Site Approval	Post
NHRA-Health Care Facilities	Medical Laboratory	Final Site Inspection

NHRA-Health Care Facilities (Post) (869002-4)

Approval Name	Description	Estimated Time
Medical Laboratory	General Medical Lab An institution that undertake lab examinations on individuals who are referred to them or examinations on samples send by physicians licensed to practice the profession in the Kingdom of Bahrain including physicians of private clinics or clinics affiliated to companies authorities or hospitals. The field of general medical lab includes various lab specializations such as: microbiological biochemical physical nature blood (hematologic and cytological) and pathology examinations etc. in accordance with the conditions and procedures applied by the NHRA. Preliminary lab It undertakes simple examinations to frequenters of clinics licensed by the NHRA.	5 Days

Specialized medical lab
An institution that undertake lab examinations on individuals who are referred to them or examinations on samples send by physicians of private clinics or clinics affiliated to companies authorities or hospitals. Its field is limited to one of the lab examination specializations in accordance with the conditions and procedures applied by the NHRA.

Blood collection unit
It the facility that introduce blood collection service only then transfer this sample to the main laboratory.

Fee Details (if any)

Fee for each license:
- Application fee: BD 50 (one-time)
- Initial approval fee: BD 50 (one-time)

Fees for a General Medical Lab:
- New License fee: 600
- Renewal license fees: 500

Fees for a Preliminary Lab:
- New License fee: 400

• Renewal license fees: 300
Fees for a Specialized Medical Lab:
• New License fee: 500
• Renewal license fees: 400
Fees for a Blood Collection Unit:
• New License fee: 400
• Renewal license fees: 300

License Information

There are four licenses that could be obtained under this activity:
1. General Medical Lab: An institution that undertakes lab examinations on individuals who are referred to them or examinations on samples sent by physicians licensed to practice the profession in the Kingdom of Bahrain including physicians of private clinics or clinics affiliated to companies authorities or hospitals. The field of general medical lab includes various lab specializations such as: microbiological, biochemical, physical nature, blood (hematologic and cytological) and pathology examinations etc. in accordance to the regulations of the NHRA
2. Preliminary Lab: Labs that perform simple examinations to patients of clinics licensed by the NHRA
3. Specialized Medical Lab: An institution that undertakes lab examinations on individuals who are referred to them or examinations on samples sent by physicians of private clinics or clinics affiliated to companies, authorities, or hospitals. The field is limited to one of the lab examination specializations in accordance with the conditions and procedures applied by the NHRA.
4. Blood Collection Unit: Facilities that provide blood collection services only, then transfer the samples to the main laboratory

Required Documents

•Application form (from NHRA web site)
•Approval from environment in case of radiation
•Architectural drawings from a licensed office
•License to practice (if applicant is a doctor or medical practitioner)
•List of equipment to be used
•List of specialties and activities within the hospital
•Name of the nominated hospital director
•Number of doctors in case of a hospital or a medical center
•Submit a detail proposal of the project

General Directrate Of Civil Defence (Post) (869002-4)

Approval Name	Description	Estimated Time
Medical Laboratory	checking the approval requirements of the general directorate of civil defense	5 Days

Fee Details (if any)

30 BD Fire prevention and protection certificate fees

License Information

1. Provide the documents mentioned in the “Required Documents” section
2. Comply with the requirements listed in the inspection checklist found in the “Other Downloadable Documents” section
3. Provide proof to the General Directorate of Civil Defense that an alarm and firefighting equipment have been installed within 6 months of obtaining a Commercial Registration and license

If a warehouse is used: A safety certificate must be obtained viaBahrain.bh

Required Documents

•No-objection letter for alarm and extinguisher installation from Civil Defense, or purchasing receipt of alarm equipment and extinguishers along with an annual maintenance contract from a company certified by Civil defense
•Photos required for civil defense activities
•Purchasing invoice of security camera system with specifying the type and storage capacity.

Other Documents

- Sample pictures of the general directorate of civil defense requirements
- licencing requirments of the general directorat of civil defense for activity number "869002"

Municipality Affairs (Post) (869002-4)

Approval Name	Description	Estimated Time
Municipality Site Approval	Municipality approval of the business location (site) is required for all types of business activities. Municipalities verify that the proposed location / zone are appropriate for the proposed business activity. Site approval is issued automatically for pre-approved commercial areas, such as commercial malls and commercial buildings.	15 Days

Fee Details (if any)

Company application registration form
1. Copy of applicant's CPR card (passport for non-Bahrainis)
2. Two copies of property deed or rental agreement
3. If application is for relocation from one area to another, certificate of relocation by previous Municipality
4. Copy of electricity bill or electricity account number for new premises
5. Copy of sale agreement, if CR is purchased from another person
6. Copy of power of attorney, if required

License Information

There is no License Information in this license.

Required Documents

- Lease agreement (after obtaining the necessary approvals from other licensing entities)
- Photos of the premises

Other Documents

- قرار رقم (56) لسنة 2022 بإصدار الاشتراطات التنظيمية للتعمير بمختلف المناطق في المملكة

NHRA-Health Care Facilities (Final Site Inspection) (869002-4)

Approval Name	Description	Estimated Time
Medical Laboratory	General Medical Lab An institution that undertake lab examinations on individuals who are referred to them or examinations on samples send by physicians licensed to practice the profession in the Kingdom of Bahrain including physicians of private clinics or clinics affiliated to companies authorities or hospitals. The field of general medical lab includes various lab specializations such as: microbiological biochemical physical nature blood (hematologic and cytological) and pathology examinations etc. in accordance with the conditions and procedures applied by the NHRA. Preliminary lab It undertakes simple examinations to frequenters of clinics licensed by the	5 Days

NHRA.

Specialized medical lab
An institution that undertake lab examinations on individuals who are referred to them or examinations on samples send by physicians of private clinics or clinics affiliated to companies authorities or hospitals. Its field is limited to one of the lab examination specializations in accordance with the conditions and procedures applied by the NHRA.

Blood collection unit
It the facility that introduce blood collection service only then transfer this sample to the main laboratory.

Fee Details (if any)

Fee for each license:
- Application fee: BD 50 (one-time)
- Initial approval fee: BD 50 (one-time)

Fees for a General Medical Lab:
- New License fee: 600
- Renewal license fees: 500

Fees for a Preliminary Lab:

• New License fee: 400
• Renewal license fees: 300

Fees for a Specialized Medical Lab:
• New License fee: 500
• Renewal license fees: 400

Fees for a Blood Collection Unit:
• New License fee: 400
• Renewal license fees: 300

License Information

There are four licenses that could be obtained under this activity:
1. General Medical Lab: An institution that undertakes lab examinations on individuals who are referred to them or examinations on samples sent by physicians licensed to practice the profession in the Kingdom of Bahrain including physicians of private clinics or clinics affiliated to companies authorities or hospitals. The field of general medical lab includes various lab specializations such as: microbiological, biochemical, physical nature, blood (hematologic and cytological) and pathology examinations etc. in accordance to the regulations of the NHRA
2. Preliminary Lab: Labs that perform simple examinations to patients of clinics licensed by the NHRA
3. Specialized Medical Lab: An institution that undertakes lab examinations on individuals who are referred to them or examinations on samples sent by physicians of private clinics or clinics affiliated to companies, authorities, or hospitals. The field is limited to one of the lab examination specializations in accordance with the conditions and procedures applied by the NHRA.
4. Blood Collection Unit: Facilities that provide blood collection services only, then transfer the samples to the main laboratory

Required Documents

•Application form (from NHRA web site)
•Approval from environment in case of radiation
•Architectural drawings from a licensed office
•License to practice (if applicant is a doctor or medical practitioner)
•List of equipment to be used
•List of specialties and activities within the hospital
•Name of the nominated hospital director
•Number of doctors in case of a hospital or a medical center
•Submit a detail proposal of the project

Human health and social work activities

ISIC4	Business activity
869002-5	Medical Laboratory - Dental Laboratory

Description

A health facility that performs laboratory procedures related to dental mobile or fixed fixtures, dental prostheses and orthodontic devices required for patients according to the specifications of the dentist, and is carried out by dental technicians.

Business Requirements

✔ Age

✔ Allowed for Nationalities

Bahraini 100%	GCC 100%
American 100%	Singaporean 100%
Icelander 100%	Liechtensteiner 100%
Norwegian 100%	Swiss 100%

Foreign Allowed up to 100%

Legal Type

It is allowed to register according to the legal forms mentioned below

Allowed for Individual Commercial Registration (ICR) : Yes

Allowed for Company Commercial Registration (CCR) : Yes

Required Step of Licenses and Approvals

Ministry / Directorate	License / Approval Requirements	Approval Type
NHRA-Health Care Facilities	Medical Laboratory	Post
General Directrate Of Civil Defence	Medical Laboratory	Post
Municipality Affairs	Municipality Site Approval	Post
NHRA-Health Care Facilities	Medical Laboratory	Final Site Inspection

NHRA-Health Care Facilities (Post) (869002-5)

Approval Name	Description	Estimated Time
Medical Laboratory	General Medical Lab An institution that undertake lab examinations on individuals who are referred to them or examinations on samples send by physicians licensed to practice the profession in the Kingdom of Bahrain including physicians of private clinics or clinics affiliated to companies authorities or hospitals. The field of general medical lab includes various lab specializations such as: microbiological biochemical physical nature blood (hematologic and cytological) and pathology examinations etc. in accordance with the conditions and procedures applied by the NHRA. Preliminary lab It undertakes simple examinations to frequenters of clinics licensed by the NHRA.	5 Days

Specialized medical lab
An institution that undertake lab examinations on individuals who are referred to them or examinations on samples send by physicians of private clinics or clinics affiliated to companies authorities or hospitals. Its field is limited to one of the lab examination specializations in accordance with the conditions and procedures applied by the NHRA.

Blood collection unit
It the facility that introduce blood collection service only then transfer this sample to the main laboratory.

Fee Details (if any)

Fee for each license:
- Application fee: BD 50 (one-time)
- Initial approval fee: BD 50 (one-time)

Fees for a General Medical Lab:
- New License fee: 600
- Renewal license fees: 500

Fees for a Preliminary Lab:
- New License fee: 400

• Renewal license fees: 300
Fees for a Specialized Medical Lab:
• New License fee: 500
• Renewal license fees: 400
Fees for a Blood Collection Unit:
• New License fee: 400
• Renewal license fees: 300

License Information

There are four licenses that could be obtained under this activity:
1. General Medical Lab: An institution that undertakes lab examinations on individuals who are referred to them or examinations on samples sent by physicians licensed to practice the profession in the Kingdom of Bahrain including physicians of private clinics or clinics affiliated to companies authorities or hospitals. The field of general medical lab includes various lab specializations such as: microbiological, biochemical, physical nature, blood (hematologic and cytological) and pathology examinations etc. in accordance to the regulations of the NHRA
2. Preliminary Lab: Labs that perform simple examinations to patients of clinics licensed by the NHRA
3. Specialized Medical Lab: An institution that undertakes lab examinations on individuals who are referred to them or examinations on samples sent by physicians of private clinics or clinics affiliated to companies, authorities, or hospitals. The field is limited to one of the lab examination specializations in accordance with the conditions and procedures applied by the NHRA.
4. Blood Collection Unit: Facilities that provide blood collection services only, then transfer the samples to the main laboratory

Required Documents

•Application form (from NHRA web site)
•Approval from environment in case of radiation
•Architectural drawings from a licensed office
•License to practice (if applicant is a doctor or medical practitioner)
•List of equipment to be used
•List of specialties and activities within the hospital
•Name of the nominated hospital director
•Number of doctors in case of a hospital or a medical center
•Submit a detail proposal of the project

General Directrate Of Civil Defence (Post) (869002-5)

Approval Name	Description	Estimated Time
Medical Laboratory	checking the approval requirements of the general directorate of civil defense	5 Days

Fee Details (if any)

30 BD Fire prevention and protection certificate fees

License Information

1. Provide the documents mentioned in the “Required Documents” section
2. Comply with the requirements listed in the inspection checklist found in the “Other Downloadable Documents” section
3. Provide proof to the General Directorate of Civil Defense that an alarm and firefighting equipment have been installed within 6 months of obtaining a Commercial Registration and license

If a warehouse is used: A safety certificate must be obtained viaBahrain.bh

Required Documents

•No-objection letter for alarm and extinguisher installation from Civil Defense, or purchasing receipt of alarm equipment and extinguishers along with an annual maintenance contract from a company certified by Civil defense
•Photos required for civil defense activities
•Purchasing invoice of security camera system with specifying the type and storage capacity.

Other Documents

- Sample pictures of the general directorate of civil defense requirements
- licencing requirments of the general directorat of civil defense for activity number "869002"

Municipality Affairs (Post) (869002-5)

Approval Name	Description	Estimated Time
Municipality Site Approval	Municipality approval of the business location (site) is required for all types of business activities. Municipalities verify that the proposed location / zone are appropriate for the proposed business activity. Site approval is issued automatically for pre-approved commercial areas, such as commercial malls and commercial buildings.	15 Days

Fee Details (if any)

Company application registration form
1. Copy of applicant's CPR card (passport for non-Bahrainis)
2. Two copies of property deed or rental agreement
3. If application is for relocation from one area to another, certificate of relocation by previous Municipality
4. Copy of electricity bill or electricity account number for new premises
5. Copy of sale agreement, if CR is purchased from another person
6. Copy of power of attorney, if required

License Information

There is no License Information in this license.

Required Documents

- Lease agreement (after obtaining the necessary approvals from other licensing entities)
- Photos of the premises

Other Documents

- قرار رقم (56) لسنة 2022 بإصدار الاشتراطات التنظيمية للتعمير بمختلف المناطق في المملكة

NHRA-Health Care Facilities (Final Site Inspection) (869002-5)

Approval Name	Description	Estimated Time
Medical Laboratory	General Medical Lab An institution that undertake lab examinations on individuals who are referred to them or examinations on samples send by physicians licensed to practice the profession in the Kingdom of Bahrain including physicians of private clinics or clinics affiliated to companies authorities or hospitals. The field of general medical lab includes various lab specializations such as: microbiological biochemical physical nature blood (hematologic and cytological) and pathology examinations etc. in accordance with the conditions and procedures applied by the NHRA. Preliminary lab It undertakes simple examinations to frequenters of clinics licensed by the	5 Days

NHRA.

Specialized medical lab
An institution that undertake lab examinations on individuals who are referred to them or examinations on samples send by physicians of private clinics or clinics affiliated to companies authorities or hospitals. Its field is limited to one of the lab examination specializations in accordance with the conditions and procedures applied by the NHRA.

Blood collection unit
It the facility that introduce blood collection service only then transfer this sample to the main laboratory.

Fee Details (if any)

Fee for each license:
- Application fee: BD 50 (one-time)
- Initial approval fee: BD 50 (one-time)

Fees for a General Medical Lab:
- New License fee: 600
- Renewal license fees: 500

Fees for a Preliminary Lab:

• New License fee: 400
• Renewal license fees: 300

Fees for a Specialized Medical Lab:
• New License fee: 500
• Renewal license fees: 400

Fees for a Blood Collection Unit:
• New License fee: 400
• Renewal license fees: 300

License Information

There are four licenses that could be obtained under this activity:
1. General Medical Lab: An institution that undertakes lab examinations on individuals who are referred to them or examinations on samples sent by physicians licensed to practice the profession in the Kingdom of Bahrain including physicians of private clinics or clinics affiliated to companies authorities or hospitals. The field of general medical lab includes various lab specializations such as: microbiological, biochemical, physical nature, blood (hematologic and cytological) and pathology examinations etc. in accordance to the regulations of the NHRA
2. Preliminary Lab: Labs that perform simple examinations to patients of clinics licensed by the NHRA
3. Specialized Medical Lab: An institution that undertakes lab examinations on individuals who are referred to them or examinations on samples sent by physicians of private clinics or clinics affiliated to companies, authorities, or hospitals. The field is limited to one of the lab examination specializations in accordance with the conditions and procedures applied by the NHRA.
4. Blood Collection Unit: Facilities that provide blood collection services only, then transfer the samples to the main laboratory

Required Documents

•Application form (from NHRA web site)
•Approval from environment in case of radiation
•Architectural drawings from a licensed office
•License to practice (if applicant is a doctor or medical practitioner)
•List of equipment to be used
•List of specialties and activities within the hospital
•Name of the nominated hospital director
•Number of doctors in case of a hospital or a medical center
•Submit a detail proposal of the project

Human health and social work activities

ISIC4 Business activity

869002-6 Medical Laboratory - Sleep Lab

Description

Healthcare facility in which testes are done during sleep hours to diagnose a varity of sleep disorders for example sleep apnea

Business Requirements

✔ Age

✔ Allowed for Nationalities

Bahraini 100%	GCC 100%
American 100%	Singaporean 100%
Icelander 100%	Liechtensteiner 100%
Norwegian 100%	Swiss 100%

Foreign Allowed up to 100%

✔ Legal Type

It is allowed to register according to the legal forms mentioned below

Allowed for Individual Commercial Registration (ICR) : Yes

Allowed for Company Commercial Registration (CCR) : Yes

Required Step of Licenses and Approvals

Ministry / Directorate	License / Approval Requirements	Approval Type
Municipality Affairs	Municipality Site Approval	Post
General Directrate Of Civil Defence	Medical Laboratory	Post
NHRA-Health Care Facilities	Medical Laboratory	Post
NHRA-Health Care Facilities	Medical Laboratory	Final Site Inspection

Municipality Affairs (Post) (869002-6)

Approval Name	Description	Estimated Time
Municipality Site Approval	Municipality approval of the business location (site) is required for all types of business activities. Municipalities verify that the proposed location / zone are appropriate for the proposed business activity. Site approval is issued automatically for pre-approved commercial areas, such as commercial malls and commercial buildings.	15 Days

Fee Details (if any)

Company application registration form
1. Copy of applicant's CPR card (passport for non-Bahrainis)
2. Two copies of property deed or rental agreement
3. If application is for relocation from one area to another, certificate of relocation by previous Municipality
4. Copy of electricity bill or electricity account number for new premises
5. Copy of sale agreement, if CR is purchased from another person
6. Copy of power of attorney, if required

License Information

There is no License Information in this license.

Required Documents

- Lease agreement (after obtaining the necessary approvals from other licensing entities)
- Photos of the premises

Other Documents

- قرار رقم (56) لسنة 2022 بإصدار الاشتراطات التنظيمية للتعمير بمختلف المناطق في المملكة

General Directrate Of Civil Defence (Post) (869002-6)

Approval Name	Description	Estimated Time
Medical Laboratory	checking the approval requirements of the general directorate of civil defense	5 Days

Fee Details (if any)

30 BD Fire prevention and protection certificate fees

License Information

1. Provide the documents mentioned in the “Required Documents” section
2. Comply with the requirements listed in the inspection checklist found in the “Other Downloadable Documents” section
3. Provide proof to the General Directorate of Civil Defense that an alarm and firefighting equipment have been installed within 6 months of obtaining a Commercial Registration and license

If a warehouse is used: A safety certificate must be obtained viaBahrain.bh

Required Documents

•No-objection letter for alarm and extinguisher installation from Civil Defense, or purchasing receipt of alarm equipment and extinguishers along with an annual maintenance contract from a company certified by Civil defense
•Photos required for civil defense activities
•Purchasing invoice of security camera system with specifying the type and storage capacity.

Other Documents

- Sample pictures of the general directorate of civil defense requirements
- licencing requirments of the general directorat of civil defense for activity number "869002"

NHRA-Health Care Facilities (Post) (869002-6)

Approval Name	Description	Estimated Time
Medical Laboratory	General Medical Lab An institution that undertake lab examinations on individuals who are referred to them or examinations on samples send by physicians licensed to practice the profession in the Kingdom of Bahrain including physicians of private clinics or clinics affiliated to companies authorities or hospitals. The field of general medical lab includes various lab specializations such as: microbiological biochemical physical nature blood (hematologic and cytological) and pathology examinations etc. in accordance with the conditions and procedures applied by the NHRA. Preliminary lab It undertakes simple examinations to frequenters of clinics licensed by the NHRA.	5 Days

Specialized medical lab
An institution that undertake lab examinations on individuals who are referred to them or examinations on samples send by physicians of private clinics or clinics affiliated to companies authorities or hospitals. Its field is limited to one of the lab examination specializations in accordance with the conditions and procedures applied by the NHRA.

Blood collection unit
It the facility that introduce blood collection service only then transfer this sample to the main laboratory.

Fee Details (if any)

Fee for each license:
- Application fee: BD 50 (one-time)
- Initial approval fee: BD 50 (one-time)

Fees for a General Medical Lab:
- New License fee: 600
- Renewal license fees: 500

Fees for a Preliminary Lab:
- New License fee: 400

• Renewal license fees: 300
Fees for a Specialized Medical Lab:
• New License fee: 500
• Renewal license fees: 400
Fees for a Blood Collection Unit:
• New License fee: 400
• Renewal license fees: 300

License Information

There are four licenses that could be obtained under this activity:
1. General Medical Lab: An institution that undertakes lab examinations on individuals who are referred to them or examinations on samples sent by physicians licensed to practice the profession in the Kingdom of Bahrain including physicians of private clinics or clinics affiliated to companies authorities or hospitals. The field of general medical lab includes various lab specializations such as: microbiological, biochemical, physical nature, blood (hematologic and cytological) and pathology examinations etc. in accordance to the regulations of the NHRA
2. Preliminary Lab: Labs that perform simple examinations to patients of clinics licensed by the NHRA
3. Specialized Medical Lab: An institution that undertakes lab examinations on individuals who are referred to them or examinations on samples sent by physicians of private clinics or clinics affiliated to companies, authorities, or hospitals. The field is limited to one of the lab examination specializations in accordance with the conditions and procedures applied by the NHRA.
4. Blood Collection Unit: Facilities that provide blood collection services only, then transfer the samples to the main laboratory

Required Documents

•Application form (from NHRA web site)
•Approval from environment in case of radiation
•Architectural drawings from a licensed office
•License to practice (if applicant is a doctor or medical practitioner)
•List of equipment to be used
•List of specialties and activities within the hospital
•Name of the nominated hospital director
•Number of doctors in case of a hospital or a medical center
•Submit a detail proposal of the project

NHRA-Health Care Facilities (Final Site Inspection) (869002-6)

Approval Name	Description	Estimated Time
Medical Laboratory	General Medical Lab An institution that undertake lab examinations on individuals who are referred to them or examinations on samples send by physicians licensed to practice the profession in the Kingdom of Bahrain including physicians of private clinics or clinics affiliated to companies authorities or hospitals. The field of general medical lab includes various lab specializations such as: microbiological biochemical physical nature blood (hematologic and cytological) and pathology examinations etc. in accordance with the conditions and procedures applied by the NHRA. Preliminary lab It undertakes simple examinations to frequenters of clinics licensed by the	5 Days

NHRA.

Specialized medical lab
An institution that undertake lab examinations on individuals who are referred to them or examinations on samples send by physicians of private clinics or clinics affiliated to companies authorities or hospitals. Its field is limited to one of the lab examination specializations in accordance with the conditions and procedures applied by the NHRA.

Blood collection unit
It the facility that introduce blood collection service only then transfer this sample to the main laboratory.

Fee Details (if any)

Fee for each license:
- Application fee: BD 50 (one-time)
- Initial approval fee: BD 50 (one-time)

Fees for a General Medical Lab:
- New License fee: 600
- Renewal license fees: 500

Fees for a Preliminary Lab:

• New License fee: 400
• Renewal license fees: 300

Fees for a Specialized Medical Lab:
• New License fee: 500
• Renewal license fees: 400

Fees for a Blood Collection Unit:
• New License fee: 400
• Renewal license fees: 300

License Information

There are four licenses that could be obtained under this activity:
1. General Medical Lab: An institution that undertakes lab examinations on individuals who are referred to them or examinations on samples sent by physicians licensed to practice the profession in the Kingdom of Bahrain including physicians of private clinics or clinics affiliated to companies authorities or hospitals. The field of general medical lab includes various lab specializations such as: microbiological, biochemical, physical nature, blood (hematologic and cytological) and pathology examinations etc. in accordance to the regulations of the NHRA
2. Preliminary Lab: Labs that perform simple examinations to patients of clinics licensed by the NHRA
3. Specialized Medical Lab: An institution that undertakes lab examinations on individuals who are referred to them or examinations on samples sent by physicians of private clinics or clinics affiliated to companies, authorities, or hospitals. The field is limited to one of the lab examination specializations in accordance with the conditions and procedures applied by the NHRA.
4. Blood Collection Unit: Facilities that provide blood collection services only, then transfer the samples to the main laboratory

Required Documents

•Application form (from NHRA web site)
•Approval from environment in case of radiation
•Architectural drawings from a licensed office
•License to practice (if applicant is a doctor or medical practitioner)
•List of equipment to be used
•List of specialties and activities within the hospital
•Name of the nominated hospital director
•Number of doctors in case of a hospital or a medical center
•Submit a detail proposal of the project

Human health and social work activities

ISIC4	Business activity
869003	Physiotherapy Centre

Description

A health facility that is prepared and equipped to provide treatment and rehabilitation services to individuals using preventive, corrective and therapeutic approved methods.

Business Requirements

Age

18 and above

Allowed for Nationalities

Bahraini 100%	GCC 100%
American 100%	Singaporean 100%
Icelander 100%	Liechtenstein er 100%
Norwegian 100%	Swiss 100%

Foreign Allowed up to 100%

Legal Type

It is allowed to register according to the legal forms mentioned below

Allowed for Individual Commercial Registration (ICR) : Yes

Allowed for Company Commercial Registration (CCR) : Yes

- Bahrain Shareholding Company (Public)
- With Limited Liability Company
- Branch of a Foreign Company
- Bahrain Shareholding Company (Closed)
- Partnership Company
- Simple Commandite Company
- Commandite By Shares Company
- Non Profit Company

Required Step of Licenses and Approvals

Ministry / Directorate	License / Approval Requirements	Approval Type
General Directrate Of Civil Defence	Physiotherapy Centre	Post
Municipality Affairs	Site Approval for Human Health Activities	Post
NHRA-Health Care Facilities	Physiotherapy Centre	Post
NHRA-Health Care Facilities	Physiotherapy Centre	Final Site Inspection

General Directrate Of Civil Defence (Post) (869003)

Approval Name	Description	Estimated Time
Physiotherapy Centre	checking the approval requirements of the general directorate of civil defense	5 Days

Fee Details (if any)

30 BD Fire prevention and protection certificate fees

License Information

1. Provide the documents mentioned in the “Required Documents” section
2. Comply with the requirements listed in the inspection checklist found in the “Other Downloadable Documents” section
3. Provide proof to the General Directorate of Civil Defense that an alarm and firefighting equipment have been installed within 6 months of obtaining a Commercial Registration and license

If a warehouse is used: A safety certificate must be obtained viaBahrain.bh

Required Documents

•No-objection letter for alarm and extinguisher installation from Civil Defense, or purchasing receipt of alarm equipment and extinguishers along with an annual maintenance contract from a company certified by Civil defense
•Photos required for civil defense activities
•Purchasing invoice of security camera system with specifying the type and storage capacity.

Other Documents

- Sample pictures of the general directorate of civil defense requirements
- licencing requirments of the general directorat of civil defense for activity number "869003"

Municipality Affairs (Post) (869003)

Approval Name	Description	Estimated Time
Site Approval for Human Health Activities	Municipality Approval for the Commercial Registration address or the site in which the Activity will be practiced	3 Days

Fee Details (if any)

10 BD

License Information

General Conditions:
1. Size of shop/premises must be sufficient for the activity
2. Businesses may not carry out the activity outside the boundaries of the shop/ premises
3. It is prohibited to display or store any items or equipment outside the shop / premises boundary without prior approval from the Municipality
4. Maintain cleanliness of the site
5. Comply with the parking space regulations as per the Construction Regulatory Requirements

Activity Specific Conditions:
1. Comply with the regulatory requirements for construction as well as the requirements of the National Health Regulatory Authority (NHRA)
2. Comply with the parking requirements as per cabinet's decision (28) of the year 2009 regarding the Regulatory Requirements of Construction for various areas in the Kingdom of Bahrain

Required Documents

- Lease agreement (after obtaining the necessary approvals from other licensing entities)
- Shop photos

Other Documents

- Cabinet's Decision (56) of the year 2022 regarding the Regulatory Requirements of Construction for various areas in the Kingdom of Bahrain

NHRA-Health Care Facilities (Post) (869003)

Approval Name	Description	Estimated Time
Physiotherapy Centre	Provides physical therapy to medicate and rehabilitate people with physical disabilities and diseases using the preventive corrective and therapeutic methods relying of a natural resource.	5 Days

Fee Details (if any)

- Application fee: BD 50 (one-time)
- Initial approval fee: BD 50 (one-time)
- New License fee: 800
- Renewal license fees: 500

License Information

- The institution must be equipped with the necessary tools and equipment pursuant to the provisions and conditions set out in the Legislative Decree No. 7 of 1989 concerning the Practice of the Medical Profession and Dentistry and the Applicable Decisions, which can be found in the “other downloadable documents” section.
- Please refer to Ministerial Decision No. (1) Of 1994 with regard to Regulating the Physical therapy Profession.

Required Documents

- Application form (from NHRA web site)
- Approval from environment in case of radiation
- Architectural drawings from a licensed office
- License to practice (if applicant is a doctor or medical practitioner)
- List of equipment to be used
- List of specialties and activities within the hospital
- Name of the nominated hospital director
- Number of doctors in case of a hospital or a medical center
- Submit a detail proposal of the project

Other Documents

- Legislative Decree No. 7 of 1989 concerning the Practice of the Medical Profession and Dentistry and the Applicable Decisions.
- Ministerial Decision No. (1) Of 1994 with regard to Regulating the Physical therapy Profession

NHRA-Health Care Facilities (Final Site Inspection) (869003)

Approval Name	Description	Estimated Time
Physiotherapy Centre	Provides physical therapy to medicate and rehabilitate people with physical disabilities and diseases using the preventive corrective and therapeutic methods relying of a natural resource.	5 Days

Fee Details (if any)

- Application fee: BD 50 (one-time)
- Initial approval fee: BD 50 (one-time)
- New License fee: 800
- Renewal license fees: 500

License Information

- The institution must be equipped with the necessary tools and equipment pursuant to the provisions and conditions set out in the Legislative Decree No. 7 of 1989 concerning the Practice of the Medical Profession and Dentistry and the Applicable Decisions, which can be found in the “other downloadable documents” section.
- Please refer to Ministerial Decision No. (1) Of 1994 with regard to Regulating the Physical therapy Profession.

Required Documents

- Application form (from NHRA web site)
- Approval from environment in case of radiation
- Architectural drawings from a licensed office
- License to practice (if applicant is a doctor or medical practitioner)
- List of equipment to be used
- List of specialties and activities within the hospital
- Name of the nominated hospital director
- Number of doctors in case of a hospital or a medical center
- Submit a detail proposal of the project

Other Documents

- Legislative Decree No. 7 of 1989 concerning the Practice of the Medical Profession and Dentistry and the Applicable Decisions.
- Ministerial Decision No. (1) Of 1994 with regard to Regulating the Physical therapy Profession

Human health and social work activities

ISIC4	Business activity
869005-2	Ambulance Services - Air Ambulance Services

Description

It is an umbrella term that covers the use of air transport by plane or helicopter to transport patients to and from health care facilities and locations of incidents. The specialized personnel on board to provide comprehensive emergency services and critical care for all types of patients during medical evacuation or air operations

Business Requirements

Age

18 and above

Allowed for Nationalities

Bahraini 100%	GCC 100%
American 100%	Singaporean 100%
Icelander 100%	Liechtenstein er 100%
Norwegian 100%	Swiss 100%

Foreign Allowed up to 100%

Legal Type

It is allowed to register according to the legal forms mentioned below

Allowed for Individual Commercial Registration (ICR) : Yes

Allowed for Company Commercial Registration (CCR) : Yes

- Bahrain Shareholding Company (Public)
- With Limited Liability Company
- Branch of a Foreign Company
- Bahrain Shareholding Company (Closed)
- Partnership Company
- Simple Commandite Company
- Commandite By Shares Company
- Non Profit Company

Required Step of Licenses and Approvals

Ministry / Directorate	License / Approval Requirements	Approval Type
Civil Aviation Affairs	Air Ambulance Services	Pre
General Directorate Of Criminal Investigation	Approval by General Directorate of Criminal Investigation	Pre
Municipality Affairs	Site Approval for Human Health Activities	Post
Civil Aviation Affairs	Air Ambulance Services	Post
NHRA-Health Care Facilities	NHRA approval for Air Ambulance Services - Post	Post
Civil Aviation Affairs	Air Ambulance Services	Final Site Inspection
NHRA-Health Care Facilities	NHRA approval for Air Ambulance Services - Final Site Inspection	Final Site Inspection

Civil Aviation Affairs (Pre) (869005-2)

Approval Name	Description	Estimated Time
Air Ambulance Services	Providing Air Ambulance services in the Kingdom of Bahrain.	10 Days

Fee Details (if any)

• Application fees: BD 100 (non-refundable in cases where the application is not approved).
• Feasibility study fees: BD 1000 (deducted from the license fee in case of approval)
• Issue AOC: BD 2,000.
• Annual renewal fees 50% of the license fees.

License Information

• Capital of the company should not be less than BD1,000,000
• The license is valid for one year and renewal application must be submitted 2 months before expiry
• Fulfill and adhere to airline operations
• No scheduled international air services may operate from, to, and across the territory of the country except by obtaining permanent or temporary flight authorization.
• Adherence to the standards and regulatory requirements contained in the regulations under the Civil Aviation Law issued by virtue of Law No. 14 of 2013
• Fulfil all AOC and airworthiness requirement, Civil Aviation Law and Chicago Convention and its Annexes
• Fulfil all aviation safety and security requirements

Required Documents

- Feasibility, technical, economic and financial studies
- Fill application Form ATD/ATCL/OF04
- Memorandum of Association

Other Documents

- Chicago Convention and its Annexes.
- Civil Aviation Law No.14 of 2013
- Minister of Transport and Telecommunication Decree No. 12 of 2016 amending some provisions of the Regulation under the Civil Aviation Law.
- Minister of Transportation and Telecommunication Decree No. 25 of 2016 of CAA fees and departure fees.
- Minster of Transportation and Telecommunication Decree No. 21 of 2013 issuing the regulations under the Civil Aviation Law.

General Directorate Of Criminal Investigation (Pre) (869005-2)

Approval Name	Description	Estimated Time
Approval by General Directorate of Criminal Investigation	General Directorate of Criminal Investigation Approval for the Activity	7 Days

Fee Details (if any)

There is no Estimated Processing Time (Days) in this license.

License Information

- The applicant should not have a criminal record, unless they have been rehabilitated in criminal cases

Municipality Affairs (Post) (869005-2)

Approval Name	Description	Estimated Time
Site Approval for Human Health Activities	Municipality Approval for the Commercial Registration address or the site in which the Activity will be practiced	3 Days

Fee Details (if any)

10 BD

License Information

General Conditions:
1. Size of shop/premises must be sufficient for the activity
2. Businesses may not carry out the activity outside the boundaries of the shop/ premises
3. It is prohibited to display or store any items or equipment outside the shop / premises boundary without prior approval from the Municipality
4. Maintain cleanliness of the site
5. Comply with the parking space regulations as per the Construction Regulatory Requirements

Activity Specific Conditions:
1. Comply with the regulatory requirements for construction as well as the requirements of the National Health Regulatory Authority (NHRA)
2. Comply with the parking requirements as per cabinet's decision (28) of the year 2009 regarding the Regulatory Requirements of Construction for various areas in the Kingdom of Bahrain

Required Documents

- Lease agreement (after obtaining the necessary approvals from other licensing entities)
- Shop photos

Other Documents

- Cabinet's Decision (56) of the year 2022 regarding the Regulatory Requirements of Construction for various areas in the Kingdom of Bahrain

Civil Aviation Affairs (Post) (869005-2)

Approval Name	Description	Estimated Time
Air Ambulance Services	Providing Air Ambulance services in the Kingdom of Bahrain.	10 Days

Fee Details (if any)

• Application fees: BD 100 (non-refundable in cases where the application is not approved).
• Feasibility study fees: BD 1000 (deducted from the license fee in case of approval)
• Issue AOC: BD 2,000.
• Annual renewal fees 50% of the license fees.

License Information

• Capital of the company should not be less than BD1,000,000
• The license is valid for one year and renewal application must be submitted 2 months before expiry
• Fulfill and adhere to airline operations
• No scheduled international air services may operate from, to, and across the territory of the country except by obtaining permanent or temporary flight authorization.
• Adherence to the standards and regulatory requirements contained in the regulations under the Civil Aviation Law issued by virtue of Law No. 14 of 2013
• Fulfil all AOC and airworthiness requirement, Civil Aviation Law and Chicago Convention and its Annexes
• Fulfil all aviation safety and security requirements

Required Documents

- Feasibility, technical, economic and financial studies
- Fill application Form ATD/ATCL/OF04
- Memorandum of Association

Other Documents

- Chicago Convention and its Annexes.
- Civil Aviation Law No.14 of 2013
- Minister of Transport and Telecommunication Decree No. 12 of 2016 amending some provisions of the Regulation under the Civil Aviation Law.
- Minister of Transportation and Telecommunication Decree No. 25 of 2016 of CAA fees and departure fees.
- Minster of Transportation and Telecommunication Decree No. 21 of 2013 issuing the regulations under the Civil Aviation Law.

NHRA-Health Care Facilities (Post) (869005-2)

Approval Name	Description	Estimated Time
NHRA approval for Air Ambulance Services - Post	NHRA approval for Air Ambulance Services	5 Days

Fee Details (if any)

- Application Fee: BD50 (one time)
- Initial Approval Fee: BD50 (one time)

License Information

Paramedics must hold the following certificates:
- Basic CPR (BCLS)
- Cardiopulmonary resuscitation advanced pulmonary (ACLS)
- Advanced session to support the life of the cases of injuries and accidents (ATLS)
- Advanced CPR in children (PALS) through ambulances

- You may visit NHRA's website for more information:http://www.nhra.bh

Required Documents

- Application form (from NHRA web site)
- Architectural drawings from a licensed office
- Name of the nominated hospital director
- Submit a detail proposal of the project

Other Documents

- Engineering Requirements
- Project Proposal Template
- Resolution No. (02) of 2019 Regarding Technical and Engineering Requirements in Health Care Facilities

Civil Aviation Affairs (Final Site Inspection) (869005-2)

Approval Name	Description	Estimated Time
Air Ambulance Services	Providing Air Ambulance services in the Kingdom of Bahrain.	10 Days

Fee Details (if any)

• Application fees: BD 100 (non-refundable in cases where the application is not approved).
• Feasibility study fees: BD 1000 (deducted from the license fee in case of approval)
• Issue AOC: BD 2,000.
• Annual renewal fees 50% of the license fees.

License Information

• Capital of the company should not be less than BD1,000,000
• The license is valid for one year and renewal application must be submitted 2 months before expiry
• Fulfill and adhere to airline operations
• No scheduled international air services may operate from, to, and across the territory of the country except by obtaining permanent or temporary flight authorization.
• Adherence to the standards and regulatory requirements contained in the regulations under the Civil Aviation Law issued by virtue of Law No. 14 of 2013
• Fulfil all AOC and airworthiness requirement, Civil Aviation Law and Chicago Convention and its Annexes
• Fulfil all aviation safety and security requirements

Required Documents

- Feasibility, technical, economic and financial studies
- Fill application Form ATD/ATCL/OF04
- Memorandum of Association

Other Documents

- Chicago Convention and its Annexes.
- Civil Aviation Law No.14 of 2013
- Minister of Transport and Telecommunication Decree No. 12 of 2016 amending some provisions of the Regulation under the Civil Aviation Law.
- Minister of Transportation and Telecommunication Decree No. 25 of 2016 of CAA fees and departure fees.
- Minster of Transportation and Telecommunication Decree No. 21 of 2013 issuing the regulations under the Civil Aviation Law.

NHRA-Health Care Facilities (Final Site Inspection) (869005-2)

Approval Name	Description	Estimated Time
NHRA approval for Air Ambulance Services - Final Site Inspection	NHRA approval for Air Ambulance Services	5 Days

Fee Details (if any)

- Application Fee: BD50 (one time)
- Initial Approval Fee: BD50 (one time)

License Information

Paramedics must hold the following certificates:
- Basic CPR (BCLS)
- Cardiopulmonary resuscitation advanced pulmonary (ACLS)
- Advanced session to support the life of the cases of injuries and accidents (ATLS)
- Advanced CPR in children (PALS) through ambulances

- You may visit NHRA's website for more information:http://www.nhra.bh

Required Documents

- List of equipment to be used
- pictures that prove the facility is ready for inspection and full equipped.

Human health and social work activities

ISIC4	Business activity
869007-1	Alternative Medicine - Alternative Medicine Center

Description

A health facility that practices health systems for treatment of diseases, health maintenance, care and prevention through the use of methods and means, and the use of various products, whether vegetable, animal, metal origin or the sum of all, which does not fall within the concept of modern treatment of drugs, radiation and surgery, and do not fall within the health care system of modern medical practice.

Business Requirements

Age

18 and above

Allowed for Nationalities

Bahraini 100%		GCC 100%	
American 100%		Singaporean 100%	
Icelander 100%		Liechtenstein er 100%	
Norwegian 100%		Swiss 100%	

Foreign Allowed up to 100%

Legal Type

It is allowed to register according to the legal forms mentioned below

Allowed for Individual Commercial Registration (ICR) : Yes

Allowed for Company Commercial Registration (CCR) : Yes

- Bahrain Shareholding Company (Public)
- With Limited Liability Company
- Branch of a Foreign Company
- Bahrain Shareholding Company (Closed)
- Partnership Company
- Simple Commandite Company
- Commandite By Shares Company
- Non Profit Company

Required Step of Licenses and Approvals

Ministry / Directorate	License / Approval Requirements	Approval Type
NHRA-Health Care Facilities	Registration of hospitals, clinics or centres	Post
Municipality Affairs	Site Approval for Human Health Activities	Post
NHRA-Health Care Facilities	Registration of hospitals, clinics or centres	Final Site Inspection

NHRA-Health Care Facilities (Post) (869007-1)

Approval Name	Description	Estimated Time
Registration of hospitals, clinics or centres	Registration of hospitals, clinics or centres	5 Days

Fee Details (if any)

1- General Hospital (500 BHD)
2-Teaching hospital (500 BHD)
3-Specialized Hospital (500 BHD)
4- Specialized Dental Hospital (500 BHD)
5- One Day Surgery Hospital (500 BHD)
6-Rehabilitation Hospital (500 BHD)
7-Specialized Medical clinic (100 BHD)
8- Specialized Medical center (300 BHD)
9- General Medical center (300 BHD)
10- General Medical Clinic (100 BHD)
11-Nuclear Medical center (300 BHD)
12 -Comprehensive Radiology center (300 BHD)
13- Preliminary Radiology unit (100 BHD)
14- Specialized radiology unit (200 BHD)

License Information

1- Copy of passport (identification) and CPR.
2- Licensing in a case of a normal person.
3- Copy of CR
4- Application letter if without CR
5- Application form (from NHRA web site).
6- Approval from municipalities.
7- Approval from the General Directorate of Civil Defence
8- Architectural drawings from a licensed office.
9- Approval for the any equipment needed.
10- No. of doctors in case of a hospital or a medical center.

11- Nomination of the medical director as per the law.
12- List of specialties and activities.
13- Detailed proposal of the project.
14-Approval from the Supreme Council for Environment in case of radiation

Municipality Affairs (Post) (869007-1)

Approval Name	Description	Estimated Time
Site Approval for Human Health Activities	Municipality Approval for the Commercial Registration address or the site in which the Activity will be practiced	3 Days

Fee Details (if any)

10 BD

License Information

General Conditions:
1. Size of shop/premises must be sufficient for the activity
2. Businesses may not carry out the activity outside the boundaries of the shop/ premises
3. It is prohibited to display or store any items or equipment outside the shop / premises boundary without prior approval from the Municipality
4. Maintain cleanliness of the site
5. Comply with the parking space regulations as per the Construction Regulatory Requirements

Activity Specific Conditions:
1. Comply with the regulatory requirements for construction as well as the requirements of the National Health Regulatory Authority (NHRA)
2. Comply with the parking requirements as per cabinet's decision (28) of the year 2009 regarding the Regulatory Requirements of Construction for various areas in the Kingdom of Bahrain

Required Documents

- Lease agreement (after obtaining the necessary approvals from other licensing entities)
- Shop photos

Other Documents

- Cabinet's Decision (56) of the year 2022 regarding the Regulatory Requirements of Construction for various areas in the Kingdom of Bahrain

NHRA-Health Care Facilities (Final Site Inspection) (869007-1)

Approval Name	Description	Estimated Time
Registration of hospitals, clinics or centres	Registration of hospitals, clinics or centres	5 Days

Fee Details (if any)

1- General Hospital (500 BHD)
2-Teaching hospital (500 BHD)
3-Specialized Hospital (500 BHD)
4- Specialized Dental Hospital (500 BHD)
5- One Day Surgery Hospital (500 BHD)
6-Rehabilitation Hospital (500 BHD)
7-Specialized Medical clinic (100 BHD)
8- Specialized Medical center (300 BHD)
9- General Medical center (300 BHD)
10- General Medical Clinic (100 BHD)
11-Nuclear Medical center (300 BHD)
12 -Comprehensive Radiology center (300 BHD)
13- Preliminary Radiology unit (100 BHD)
14- Specialized radiology unit (200 BHD)

License Information

1- Copy of passport (identification) and CPR.
2- Licensing in a case of a normal person.
3- Copy of CR
4- Application letter if without CR
5- Application form (from NHRA web site).
6- Approval from municipalities.
7- Approval from the General Directorate of Civil Defence
8- Architectural drawings from a licensed office.

9- Approval for the any equipment needed.
10- No. of doctors in case of a hospital or a medical center.
11- Nomination of the medical director as per the law.
12- List of specialties and activities.
13- Detailed proposal of the project.
14-Approval from the Supreme Council for Environment in case of radiation

Human health and social work activities

ISIC4	Business activity
869007-2	Alternative Medicine - Alternative Medicine Unit

Description

A health facility that only one allied professional practices health systems for treatment of diseases, health maintenance, care and prevention through the use of methods and means, and the use of various products, whether vegetable, animal, metal origin or the sum of all, which does not fall within the concept of modern treatment of drugs, radiation and surgery, and do not fall within the health care system of modern medical practice.

Business Requirements

✔ Age

✔ Allowed for Nationalities

Bahraini 100%		GCC 100%	
American 100%		Singaporean 100%	
Icelander 100%		Liechtensteiner 100%	
Norwegian 100%		Swiss 100%	

Foreign Allowed up to 100%

Legal Type

It is allowed to register according to the legal forms mentioned below

Allowed for Individual Commercial Registration (ICR) : Yes

Allowed for Company Commercial Registration (CCR) : Yes

Required Step of Licenses and Approvals

Ministry / Directorate	License / Approval Requirements	Approval Type
NHRA-Health Care Facilities	Registration of hospitals, clinics or centres	Post
Municipality Affairs	Site Approval for Human Health Activities	Post
NHRA-Health Care Facilities	Registration of hospitals, clinics or centres	Final Site Inspection

NHRA-Health Care Facilities (Post) (869007-2)

Approval Name	Description	Estimated Time
Registration of hospitals, clinics or centres	Registration of hospitals, clinics or centres	5 Days

Fee Details (if any)

1- General Hospital (500 BHD)
2-Teaching hospital (500 BHD)
3-Specialized Hospital (500 BHD)
4- Specialized Dental Hospital (500 BHD)
5- One Day Surgery Hospital (500 BHD)
6-Rehabilitation Hospital (500 BHD)
7-Specialized Medical clinic (100 BHD)
8- Specialized Medical center (300 BHD)
9- General Medical center (300 BHD)
10- General Medical Clinic (100 BHD)
11-Nuclear Medical center (300 BHD)
12 -Comprehensive Radiology center (300 BHD)
13- Preliminary Radiology unit (100 BHD)
14- Specialized radiology unit (200 BHD)

License Information

1- Copy of passport (identification) and CPR.
2- Licensing in a case of a normal person.
3- Copy of CR
4- Application letter if without CR
5- Application form (from NHRA web site).
6- Approval from municipalities.
7- Approval from the General Directorate of Civil Defence
8- Architectural drawings from a licensed office.
9- Approval for the any equipment needed.
10- No. of doctors in case of a hospital or a medical center.

11- Nomination of the medical director as per the law.
12- List of specialties and activities.
13- Detailed proposal of the project.
14-Approval from the Supreme Council for Environment in case of radiation

Municipality Affairs (Post) (869007-2)

Approval Name	Description	Estimated Time
Site Approval for Human Health Activities	Municipality Approval for the Commercial Registration address or the site in which the Activity will be practiced	3 Days

Fee Details (if any)

10 BD

License Information

General Conditions:
1. Size of shop/premises must be sufficient for the activity
2. Businesses may not carry out the activity outside the boundaries of the shop/ premises
3. It is prohibited to display or store any items or equipment outside the shop / premises boundary without prior approval from the Municipality
4. Maintain cleanliness of the site
5. Comply with the parking space regulations as per the Construction Regulatory Requirements

Activity Specific Conditions:
1. Comply with the regulatory requirements for construction as well as the requirements of the National Health Regulatory Authority (NHRA)
2. Comply with the parking requirements as per cabinet's decision (28) of the year 2009 regarding the Regulatory Requirements of Construction for various areas in the Kingdom of Bahrain

Required Documents

- Lease agreement (after obtaining the necessary approvals from other licensing entities)
- Shop photos

Other Documents

- Cabinet's Decision (56) of the year 2022 regarding the Regulatory Requirements of Construction for various areas in the Kingdom of Bahrain

NHRA-Health Care Facilities (Final Site Inspection) (869007-2)

Approval Name	Description	Estimated Time
Registration of hospitals, clinics or centres	Registration of hospitals, clinics or centres	5 Days

Fee Details (if any)

1- General Hospital (500 BHD)
2-Teaching hospital (500 BHD)
3-Specialized Hospital (500 BHD)
4- Specialized Dental Hospital (500 BHD)
5- One Day Surgery Hospital (500 BHD)
6-Rehabilitation Hospital (500 BHD)
7-Specialized Medical clinic (100 BHD)
8- Specialized Medical center (300 BHD)
9- General Medical center (300 BHD)
10- General Medical Clinic (100 BHD)
11-Nuclear Medical center (300 BHD)
12 -Comprehensive Radiology center (300 BHD)
13- Preliminary Radiology unit (100 BHD)
14- Specialized radiology unit (200 BHD)

License Information

1- Copy of passport (identification) and CPR.
2- Licensing in a case of a normal person.
3- Copy of CR
4- Application letter if without CR
5- Application form (from NHRA web site).
6- Approval from municipalities.
7- Approval from the General Directorate of Civil Defence
8- Architectural drawings from a licensed office.

9- Approval for the any equipment needed.
10- No. of doctors in case of a hospital or a medical center.
11- Nomination of the medical director as per the law.
12- List of specialties and activities.
13- Detailed proposal of the project.
14-Approval from the Supreme Council for Environment in case of radiation

Human health and social work activities

ISIC4	Business activity
869009	Other human health activities

Description

There are various licenses that could be obtained under this activity, including:
1. Artificial Limb Center
2. Audiology and Speech Center
3. Child and Maternity Care and Education Center
4. Eye Examination and Sales Lenses Store
5. Protective Nutritional Center
6. Quit Tobacco Services
7. Rehabilitation Center
8. Therapeutic Nutritional Center
9. Psychological Counseling Center

• You may visit NHRA's website for the regulations applicable to these licenses: http://www.nhra.bh/

Business Requirements

Age

18 and above

Allowed for Nationalities

Bahraini 100%		GCC 100%	
American 100%		Singaporean 100%	
Icelander 100%		Liechtenstein er 100%	
Norwegian 100%		Swiss 100%	

Foreign Allowed up to 100%

Legal Type

It is allowed to register according to the legal forms mentioned below

Allowed for Individual Commercial Registration (ICR) : Yes

Allowed for Company Commercial Registration (CCR) : Yes

- Bahrain Shareholding Company (Public)
- With Limited Liability Company
- Branch of a Foreign Company
- Bahrain Shareholding Company (Closed)
- Partnership Company
- Simple Commandite Company
- Commandite By Shares Company
- Non Profit Company

Required Step of Licenses and Approvals

Ministry / Directorate	License / Approval Requirements	Approval Type
Municipality Affairs	Site Approval for Human Health Activities	Post

NHRA-Health Care Facilities	Other human health activities	Post
General Directrate Of Civil Defence	Other human health activities	Post
NHRA-Health Care Facilities	Other human health activities	Final Site Inspection

Municipality Affairs (Post) (869009)

Approval Name	Description	Estimated Time
Site Approval for Human Health Activities	Municipality Approval for the Commercial Registration address or the site in which the Activity will be practiced	3 Days

Fee Details (if any)

10 BD

License Information

General Conditions:
1. Size of shop/premises must be sufficient for the activity
2. Businesses may not carry out the activity outside the boundaries of the shop/ premises
3. It is prohibited to display or store any items or equipment outside the shop / premises boundary without prior approval from the Municipality
4. Maintain cleanliness of the site
5. Comply with the parking space regulations as per the Construction Regulatory Requirements

Activity Specific Conditions:
1. Comply with the regulatory requirements for construction as well as the requirements of the National Health Regulatory Authority (NHRA)
2. Comply with the parking requirements as per cabinet's decision (28) of the year 2009 regarding the Regulatory Requirements of Construction for various areas in the Kingdom of Bahrain

Required Documents

- Lease agreement (after obtaining the necessary approvals from other licensing entities)
- Shop photos

Other Documents

- Cabinet's Decision (56) of the year 2022 regarding the Regulatory Requirements of Construction for various areas in the Kingdom of Bahrain

NHRA-Health Care Facilities (Post) (869009)

Approval Name	Description	Estimated Time
Other human health activities	Other human health activities	5 Days

Fee Details (if any)

Refer to “licenses under other human health activities” under the “other downloadable documents” section

License Information

There are various licenses that could be obtained under this activity, including:
1. Artificial Limb Center
2. Audiology and Speech Center
3. Child and Maternity Care and Education Center
4. Eye Examination and Sales Lenses Store
5. Protective Nutritional Center
6. Quit Tobacco Services
7. Rehabilitation Center
8. Therapeutic Nutritional Center
9. Psychological Counseling Center

• You may visit NHRA’s website for the regulations applicable to these licenses:http://www.nhra.bh/

Required Documents

- Application form (from NHRA web site)
- Approval from environment in case of radiation
- Architectural drawings from a licensed office
- Detailed proposal of the project
- License to practice (if applicant is a doctor or medical practitioner)
- List of equipment to be used
- List of specialties and activities within the hospital
- Name of the nominated hospital director
- Number of doctors in case of a hospital or a medical center

Other Documents

- Licenses under other human health activities

General Directrate Of Civil Defence (Post) (869009)

Approval Name	Description	Estimated Time
Other human health activities	checking the approval requirements of the general directorate of civil defense	5 Days

Fee Details (if any)

30 BD Fire prevention and protection certificate fees

License Information

1. Provide the documents mentioned in the “Required Documents” section
2. Comply with the requirements listed in the inspection checklist found in the “Other Downloadable Documents” section
3. Provide proof to the General Directorate of Civil Defense that an alarm and firefighting equipment have been installed within 6 months of obtaining a Commercial Registration and license

If a warehouse is used: A safety certificate must be obtained viaBahrain.bh

Required Documents

•No-objection letter for alarm and extinguisher installation from Civil Defense, or purchasing receipt of alarm equipment and extinguishers along with an annual maintenance contract from a company certified by Civil defense
•Photos required for civil defense activities
•Purchasing invoice of security camera system with specifying the type and storage capacity.

Other Documents

- Sample pictures of the general directorate of civil defense requirements
- licencing requirments of the general directorat of civil defense for activity number "869009"

NHRA-Health Care Facilities (Final Site Inspection) (869009)

Approval Name	Description	Estimated Time
Other human health activities	Other human health activities	5 Days

Fee Details (if any)

Refer to “licenses under other human health activities” under the “other downloadable documents” section

License Information

There are various licenses that could be obtained under this activity, including:
1. Artificial Limb Center
2. Audiology and Speech Center
3. Child and Maternity Care and Education Center
4. Eye Examination and Sales Lenses Store
5. Protective Nutritional Center
6. Quit Tobacco Services
7. Rehabilitation Center
8. Therapeutic Nutritional Center
9. Psychological Counseling Center

• You may visit NHRA’s website for the regulations applicable to these licenses:http://www.nhra.bh/

Required Documents

- Application form (from NHRA web site)
- Approval from environment in case of radiation
- Architectural drawings from a licensed office
- Detailed proposal of the project
- License to practice (if applicant is a doctor or medical practitioner)
- List of equipment to be used
- List of specialties and activities within the hospital
- Name of the nominated hospital director
- Number of doctors in case of a hospital or a medical center

Other Documents

- Licenses under other human health activities

Human health and social work activities

ISIC4	Business activity
872-1	Post addiction Rehabilitation centers - Without Accommodation

Description

only provide rehabilitation services for addicts after completed their treatment and without accomodation

Business Requirements

Age

18 and above

Allowed for Nationalities

Bahraini 100%	GCC 100%
American 100%	Singaporean 100%
Icelander 100%	Liechtensteiner 100%
Norwegian 100%	Swiss 100%

Foreign Allowed up to 100%

Legal Type

It is allowed to register according to the legal forms mentioned below

Allowed for Individual Commercial Registration (ICR) : Yes

Allowed for Company Commercial Registration (CCR) : Yes

- Bahrain Shareholding Company (Public)
- With Limited Liability Company
- Branch of a Foreign Company
- Bahrain Shareholding Company (Closed)
- Partnership Company
- Simple Commandite Company
- Commandite By Shares Company
- Non Profit Company

Required Step of Licenses and Approvals

Ministry / Directorate	License / Approval Requirements	Approval Type
NHRA-Health Care Facilities	Other human health activities	Post
Municipality Affairs	Site Approval for Social Work activities	Post
NHRA-Health Care Facilities	Other human health activities	Final Site Inspection

NHRA-Health Care Facilities (Post) (872-1)

Approval Name	Description	Estimated Time
Other human health activities	Other human health activities	5 Days

Fee Details (if any)

Refer to “licenses under other human health activities” under the “other downloadable documents” section

License Information

There are various licenses that could be obtained under this activity, including:
1. Artificial Limb Center
2. Audiology and Speech Center
3. Child and Maternity Care and Education Center
4. Eye Examination and Sales Lenses Store
5. Protective Nutritional Center
6. Quit Tobacco Services
7. Rehabilitation Center
8. Therapeutic Nutritional Center
9. Psychological Counseling Center

• You may visit NHRA’s website for the regulations applicable to these licenses:http://www.nhra.bh/

Required Documents

- Application form (from NHRA web site)
- Approval from environment in case of radiation
- Architectural drawings from a licensed office
- Detailed proposal of the project
- License to practice (if applicant is a doctor or medical practitioner)
- List of equipment to be used
- List of specialties and activities within the hospital
- Name of the nominated hospital director
- Number of doctors in case of a hospital or a medical center

Other Documents

- Licenses under other human health activities

Municipality Affairs (Post) (872-1)

Approval Name	Description	Estimated Time
Site Approval for Social Work activities	Municipality Approval for the Commercial Registration address or the site in which the Activity will be practiced	3 Days

Fee Details (if any)

BD10

License Information

General Conditions:
1. Size of shop/premises must be sufficient for the activity
2. Businesses may not carry out the activity outside the boundaries of the shop/ premises
3. It is prohibited to display or store any items or equipment outside the shop / premises boundary without prior approval from the Municipality
4. Maintain cleanliness of the site
5. Comply with the parking space regulations as per the Construction Regulatory Requirements

Activity Specific Conditions:
1. Comply with the regulatory requirements for construction
2. Submit a copy of the building permit (if applicable)
3. Comply with the parking requirements as per cabinet's decision (28) of the year 2009 regarding the Regulatory Requirements of Construction for various areas in the Kingdom of Bahrain
4. In the event of a site on a non-commercial street, then the standards pertaining to projects with a special nature should be followed

Required Documents

- Lease agreement (after obtaining the necessary approvals from other licensing entities)
- Shop photos

Other Documents

- Cabinet's Decision (56) of the year 2022 regarding the Regulatory Requirements of Construction for various areas in the Kingdom of Bahrain

NHRA-Health Care Facilities (Final Site Inspection) (872-1)

Approval Name	Description	Estimated Time
Other human health activities	Other human health activities	5 Days

Fee Details (if any)

Refer to “licenses under other human health activities” under the “other downloadable documents” section

License Information

There are various licenses that could be obtained under this activity, including:
1. Artificial Limb Center
2. Audiology and Speech Center
3. Child and Maternity Care and Education Center
4. Eye Examination and Sales Lenses Store
5. Protective Nutritional Center
6. Quit Tobacco Services
7. Rehabilitation Center
8. Therapeutic Nutritional Center
9. Psychological Counseling Center

• You may visit NHRA’s website for the regulations applicable to these licenses:http://www.nhra.bh/

Required Documents

- Application form (from NHRA web site)
- Approval from environment in case of radiation
- Architectural drawings from a licensed office
- Detailed proposal of the project
- License to practice (if applicant is a doctor or medical practitioner)
- List of equipment to be used
- List of specialties and activities within the hospital
- Name of the nominated hospital director
- Number of doctors in case of a hospital or a medical center

Other Documents

- Licenses under other human health activities

Human health and social work activities

ISIC4	Business activity
872-2	Post addiction Rehabilitation centers - With Accommodation

Description

only provide rehabilitation services for addicts after completed their treatment and with accomodation

Business Requirements

✔ Age

✔ Allowed for Nationalities

Bahraini 100%	GCC 100%
American 100%	Singaporean 100%
Icelander 100%	Liechtensteiner 100%
Norwegian 100%	Swiss 100%

Foreign Allowed up to 100%

✔ Legal Type

It is allowed to register according to the legal forms mentioned below

Allowed for Individual Commercial Registration (ICR) : Yes

Allowed for Company Commercial Registration (CCR) : Yes

Required Step of Licenses and Approvals

Ministry / Directorate	License / Approval Requirements	Approval Type
Municipality Affairs	Site Approval for Social Work activities	Post
NHRA-Health Care Facilities	Other human health activities	Post
NHRA-Health Care Facilities	Other human health activities	Final Site Inspection

Municipality Affairs (Post) (872-2)

Approval Name	Description	Estimated Time
Site Approval for Social Work activities	Municipality Approval for the Commercial Registration address or the site in which the Activity will be practiced	3 Days

Fee Details (if any)

BD10

License Information

General Conditions:
1. Size of shop/premises must be sufficient for the activity
2. Businesses may not carry out the activity outside the boundaries of the shop/ premises
3. It is prohibited to display or store any items or equipment outside the shop / premises boundary without prior approval from the Municipality
4. Maintain cleanliness of the site
5. Comply with the parking space regulations as per the Construction Regulatory Requirements

Activity Specific Conditions:
1. Comply with the regulatory requirements for construction
2. Submit a copy of the building permit (if applicable)
3. Comply with the parking requirements as per cabinet's decision (28) of the year 2009 regarding the Regulatory Requirements of Construction for various areas in the Kingdom of Bahrain
4. In the event of a site on a non-commercial street, then the standards pertaining to projects with a special nature should be followed

Required Documents

- Lease agreement (after obtaining the necessary approvals from other licensing entities)
- Shop photos

Other Documents

- Cabinet's Decision (56) of the year 2022 regarding the Regulatory Requirements of Construction for various areas in the Kingdom of Bahrain

NHRA-Health Care Facilities (Post) (872-2)

Approval Name	Description	Estimated Time
Other human health activities	Other human health activities	5 Days

Fee Details (if any)

Refer to “licenses under other human health activities” under the “other downloadable documents” section

License Information

There are various licenses that could be obtained under this activity, including:
1. Artificial Limb Center
2. Audiology and Speech Center
3. Child and Maternity Care and Education Center
4. Eye Examination and Sales Lenses Store
5. Protective Nutritional Center
6. Quit Tobacco Services
7. Rehabilitation Center
8. Therapeutic Nutritional Center
9. Psychological Counseling Center

• You may visit NHRA’s website for the regulations applicable to these licenses:http://www.nhra.bh/

Required Documents

- Application form (from NHRA web site)
- Approval from environment in case of radiation
- Architectural drawings from a licensed office
- Detailed proposal of the project
- License to practice (if applicant is a doctor or medical practitioner)
- List of equipment to be used
- List of specialties and activities within the hospital
- Name of the nominated hospital director
- Number of doctors in case of a hospital or a medical center

Other Documents

- Licenses under other human health activities

NHRA-Health Care Facilities (Final Site Inspection) (872-2)

Approval Name	Description	Estimated Time
Other human health activities	Other human health activities	5 Days

Fee Details (if any)

Refer to “licenses under other human health activities” under the “other downloadable documents” section

License Information

There are various licenses that could be obtained under this activity, including:
1. Artificial Limb Center
2. Audiology and Speech Center
3. Child and Maternity Care and Education Center
4. Eye Examination and Sales Lenses Store
5. Protective Nutritional Center
6. Quit Tobacco Services
7. Rehabilitation Center
8. Therapeutic Nutritional Center
9. Psychological Counseling Center

• You may visit NHRA’s website for the regulations applicable to these licenses:http://www.nhra.bh/

Required Documents

- Application form (from NHRA web site)
- Approval from environment in case of radiation
- Architectural drawings from a licensed office
- Detailed proposal of the project
- License to practice (if applicant is a doctor or medical practitioner)
- List of equipment to be used
- List of specialties and activities within the hospital
- Name of the nominated hospital director
- Number of doctors in case of a hospital or a medical center

Other Documents

- Licenses under other human health activities

Human health and social work activities

ISIC4	Business activity
873	Residential care activities for the elderly and disabled

Description

This activity includes the provision of residential and personal care services for the elderly and disabled who are unable to fully care for themselves and/or who do not desire to live independently. The care typically includes room, board, supervision, and assistance in daily living, such as housekeeping services. In some instances these units provide skilled nursing care for residents in separate on-site facilities.
This activity includes:
- Activities of:
• Assisted-living facilities
• continuing care retirement communities
• Homes for the elderly with minimal nursing care
• Rest homes without nursing care
This activity excludes:
- Activities of homes for the elderly with nursing care
- Social work activities with accommodation where medical treatment or accommodation are not important elements

Business Requirements

Age

18 and above

Allowed for Nationalities

Bahraini 100%		GCC 100%	
American 100%		Singaporean 100%	
Icelander 100%		Liechtenstein er 100%	
Norwegian 100%		Swiss 100%	

Foreign Allowed up to 100%

Legal Type

It is allowed to register according to the legal forms mentioned below

Allowed for Individual Commercial Registration (ICR) : Yes

Allowed for Company Commercial Registration (CCR) : Yes

- Bahrain Shareholding Company (Public)
- With Limited Liability Company
- Branch of a Foreign Company
- Bahrain Shareholding Company (Closed)
- Partnership Company
- Simple Commandite Company
- Commandite By Shares Company
- Non Profit Company

Required Step of Licenses and Approvals

Ministry / Directorate	License / Approval Requirements	Approval Type
Municipality Affairs	Site Approval for Social Work activities	Post

Municipality Affairs (Post) (873)

Approval Name	Description	Estimated Time
Site Approval for Social Work activities	Municipality Approval for the Commercial Registration address or the site in which the Activity will be practiced	3 Days

Fee Details (if any)

BD10

License Information

General Conditions:
1. Size of shop/premises must be sufficient for the activity
2. Businesses may not carry out the activity outside the boundaries of the shop/ premises
3. It is prohibited to display or store any items or equipment outside the shop / premises boundary without prior approval from the Municipality
4. Maintain cleanliness of the site
5. Comply with the parking space regulations as per the Construction Regulatory Requirements

Activity Specific Conditions:
1. Comply with the regulatory requirements for construction
2. Submit a copy of the building permit (if applicable)
3. Comply with the parking requirements as per cabinet's decision (28) of the year 2009 regarding the Regulatory Requirements of Construction for various areas in the Kingdom of Bahrain
4. In the event of a site on a non-commercial street, then the standards pertaining to projects with a special nature should be followed

Required Documents

- Lease agreement (after obtaining the necessary approvals from other licensing entities)
- Shop photos

Other Documents

- Cabinet's Decision (56) of the year 2022 regarding the Regulatory Requirements of Construction for various areas in the Kingdom of Bahrain

Human health and social work activities

ISIC4	Business activity
879	Other residential care activities

Description

This activity includes the provision of residential and personal care services for persons, except the elderly and disabled, who are unable to fully care for themselves or who do not desire to live independently.
This activity includes:
- activities provided on a round-the-clock basis directed to provide social assistance to children and special categories of persons with some limits on ability for self-care, but where medical treatment or education are not important elements:
• Orphanages
• Children's boarding homes and hostels
• Temporary homeless shelters
• Institutions that take care of unmarried mothers and their children
The activities may be carried out by public or private organizations.
This activity also includes:
- Activities of:
• Halfway group homes for persons with social or personal problems
• Halfway homes for delinquents and offenders
• Disciplinary camps
This activity excludes:
- Funding and administration of compulsory social security programmes
- Activities of nursing care facilities
- Residential care activities for mental retardation, mental health and substance abuse
- Residential care activities for the elderly or disabled
- Adoption activities
- Short-term shelter activities for disaster victims

Business Requirements

Age

18 and above

Allowed for Nationalities

Bahraini 100%		GCC 100%	
American 100%		Singaporean 100%	
Icelander 100%		Liechtenstein er 100%	
Norwegian 100%		Swiss 100%	

Foreign Allowed up to 100%

Legal Type

It is allowed to register according to the legal forms mentioned below

Allowed for Individual Commercial Registration (ICR) : Yes

Allowed for Company Commercial Registration (CCR) : Yes

- Bahrain Shareholding Company (Public)
- With Limited Liability Company
- Branch of a Foreign Company
- Bahrain Shareholding Company (Closed)
- Partnership Company
- Simple Commandite Company
- Commandite By Shares Company
- Non Profit Company

Required Step of Licenses and Approvals

Ministry / Directorate	License / Approval Requirements	Approval Type
Municipality Affairs	Site Approval for Social Work activities	Post

Municipality Affairs (Post) (879)

Approval Name	Description	Estimated Time
Site Approval for Social Work activities	Municipality Approval for the Commercial Registration address or the site in which the Activity will be practiced	3 Days

Fee Details (if any)

BD10

License Information

General Conditions:
1. Size of shop/premises must be sufficient for the activity
2. Businesses may not carry out the activity outside the boundaries of the shop/ premises
3. It is prohibited to display or store any items or equipment outside the shop / premises boundary without prior approval from the Municipality
4. Maintain cleanliness of the site
5. Comply with the parking space regulations as per the Construction Regulatory Requirements

Activity Specific Conditions:
1. Comply with the regulatory requirements for construction
2. Submit a copy of the building permit (if applicable)
3. Comply with the parking requirements as per cabinet's decision (28) of the year 2009 regarding the Regulatory Requirements of Construction for various areas in the Kingdom of Bahrain
4. In the event of a site on a non-commercial street, then the standards pertaining to projects with a special nature should be followed

Required Documents

- Lease agreement (after obtaining the necessary approvals from other licensing entities)
- Shop photos

Other Documents

- Cabinet's Decision (56) of the year 2022 regarding the Regulatory Requirements of Construction for various areas in the Kingdom of Bahrain

Human health and social work activities

ISIC4	Business activity
881-1	Social work activities without accommodation for the elderly and disabled - Centers For People With Disabilities

Description

Establishment and operation of centers providing care and shelter services, professional and academic rehabilitation, speech therapy and language, career and occupational therapy, physiotherapy professional evaluation and intelligence

Business Requirements

Age

25 and above

Allowed for Nationalities

Bahraini 100%		GCC 100%	
American 100%		Singaporean 100%	
Icelander 100%		Liechtenstein er 100%	
Norwegian 100%		Swiss 100%	

Foreign Allowed up to 100%

Legal Type

It is allowed to register according to the legal forms mentioned below

Allowed for Individual Commercial Registration (ICR) : Yes

Allowed for Company Commercial Registration (CCR) : Yes

- Bahrain Shareholding Company (Public)
- With Limited Liability Company
- Branch of a Foreign Company
- Bahrain Shareholding Company (Closed)
- Partnership Company
- Simple Commandite Company
- Commandite By Shares Company
- Non Profit Company

Required Step of Licenses and Approvals

Ministry / Directorate	License / Approval Requirements	Approval Type
General Directorate Of Criminal Investigation	Approval by General Directorate of Criminal Investigation	Pre
Department of Services for People with Special Needs	Social work activities without accommodation for the elderly and disabled	Pre
General Directrate Of Civil Defence	Social work activities without accommodation for the elderly and disabled - Centers For People With Disabilities	Post
Municipality Affairs	Site Approval for Social Work activities	Post
Department of Services for People with Special Needs	Social work activities without accommodation for the elderly and disabled	Final Site Inspection

General Directorate Of Criminal Investigation (Pre) (881-1)

Approval Name	Description	Estimated Time
Approval by General Directorate of Criminal Investigation	General Directorate of Criminal Investigation Approval for the Activity	7 Days

Fee Details (if any)

There is no Estimated Processing Time (Days) in this license.

License Information

- The applicant should not have a criminal record, unless they have been rehabilitated in criminal cases

Department of Services for People with Special Needs (Pre) (881-1)

Approval Name	Description	Estimated Time
Social work activities without accommodation for the elderly and disabled	Social work activities without accommodation for the elderly and disabled	5 Days

Fee Details (if any)

There is no Estimated Processing Time (Days) in this license.

License Information

• Applicant should be aged 25 or above
• A minimum capital requirement of BD10,000
• The director should have a bachelor's degree in the field of social services
• The director should have at least two years of experience in the field of social services
• Operate from a separate building with complete approval from the concerned municipality and satisfy the conditions and requirements of the General Directorate of Civil Defense.
• Provide a medical practice license if physiotherapy or speech and language therapy services will be provided. A license for use of medical equipment should also be provided if any health equipment will be used.
• A project plan must be submitted covering the following: About the project, the objectives and outputs of the project, applied work procedures, tests and assessment tools, forms, software and services, the target group, the number of beneficiaries, working hours and the time period individual and group therapy, operational cost.
• The licensed center will be subject to periodic inspection visits as needed. The visit criteria are summarized in the attached inspection visit form.

Required Documents

•A copy of qualification to the Director of the proposed center
•A copy of the lease or ownership agreement of the building
•A copy of the smart card or the passport proposal and responsible for all technical and administrative work for the Foundation director
•Academic qualifications of the applicant
•Certificate of an independent bank account of the center or of the founders
•Certificate of experience to the Director of the proposed center
•Certificate of good conduct of the applicant
•Certificate of good conduct to the Director of the proposed center
•Completed application form
•Documented administrative and financial regulations of the center
•Organizational structure for the management of the center and a statement identifying the required functions and qualifications, and how to set the amount of employees and their salaries estimated sources
•Project Plan
•Source of funding for the center, including the amount allocated to the operating statement and proof demonstrating ability to continue financing the center.

Other Documents

•Inspection visit form to evaluate the performance of private and private rehabilitation centers
•Social work activities without accommodation for the elderly and disabled-Activity Licensing requirements Form

General Directrate Of Civil Defence (Post) (881-1)

Approval Name	Description	Estimated Time
Social work activities without accommodation for the elderly and disabled - Centers For People With Disabilities	checking the approval requirements of the general directorate of civil defense	5 Days

Fee Details (if any)

50 BD Fire prevention and protection certificate fees

License Information

1. Provide the documents mentioned in the “Required Documents” section
2. Comply with the requirements listed in the inspection checklist found in the “Other Downloadable Documents” section
3. Provide proof to the General Directorate of Civil Defense that an alarm and firefighting equipment have been installed within 6 months of obtaining a Commercial Registration and license

If a warehouse is used: A safety certificate must be obtained viaBahrain.bh

Required Documents

•No-objection letter for alarm and extinguisher installation from Civil Defense, or purchasing receipt of alarm equipment and extinguishers along with an annual maintenance contract from a company certified by Civil defense
•Photos required for civil defense activities
•Purchasing invoice of security camera system with specifying the type and storage capacity.

Other Documents

- Sample pictures of the general directorate of civil defense requirements
- licencing requirments of the general directorat of civil defense for activity number "881-1"

Municipality Affairs (Post) (881-1)

Approval Name	Description	Estimated Time
Site Approval for Social Work activities	Municipality Approval for the Commercial Registration address or the site in which the Activity will be practiced	3 Days

Fee Details (if any)

BD10

License Information

General Conditions:
1. Size of shop/premises must be sufficient for the activity
2. Businesses may not carry out the activity outside the boundaries of the shop/ premises
3. It is prohibited to display or store any items or equipment outside the shop / premises boundary without prior approval from the Municipality
4. Maintain cleanliness of the site
5. Comply with the parking space regulations as per the Construction Regulatory Requirements

Activity Specific Conditions:
1. Comply with the regulatory requirements for construction
2. Submit a copy of the building permit (if applicable)
3. Comply with the parking requirements as per cabinet's decision (28) of the year 2009 regarding the Regulatory Requirements of Construction for various areas in the Kingdom of Bahrain
4. In the event of a site on a non-commercial street, then the standards pertaining to projects with a special nature should be followed

Required Documents

- Lease agreement (after obtaining the necessary approvals from other licensing entities)
- Shop photos

Other Documents

- Cabinet's Decision (56) of the year 2022 regarding the Regulatory Requirements of Construction for various areas in the Kingdom of Bahrain

Department of Services for People with Special Needs (Final Site Inspection) (881-1)

Approval Name	Description	Estimated Time
Social work activities without accommodation for the elderly and disabled	Social work activities without accommodation for the elderly and disabled	5 Days

Fee Details (if any)

There is no Estimated Processing Time (Days) in this license.

License Information

• Applicant should be aged 25 or above
• A minimum capital requirement of BD10,000
• The director should have a bachelor's degree in the field of social services
• The director should have at least two years of experience in the field of social services
• Operate from a separate building with complete approval from the concerned municipality and satisfy the conditions and requirements of the General Directorate of Civil Defense.
• Provide a medical practice license if physiotherapy or speech and language therapy services will be provided. A license for use of medical equipment should also be provided if any health equipment will be used.
• A project plan must be submitted covering the following: About the project, the objectives and outputs of the project, applied work procedures, tests and assessment tools, forms, software and services, the target group, the number of beneficiaries, working hours and the time period individual and group therapy, operational cost.
• The licensed center will be subject to periodic inspection visits as needed. The visit criteria are summarized in the attached inspection visit form.

Required Documents

•A copy of qualification to the Director of the proposed center
•A copy of the lease or ownership agreement of the building
•A copy of the smart card or the passport proposal and responsible for all technical and administrative work for the Foundation director
•Academic qualifications of the applicant
•Certificate of an independent bank account of the center or of the founders
•Certificate of experience to the Director of the proposed center
•Certificate of good conduct of the applicant
•Certificate of good conduct to the Director of the proposed center
•Completed application form
•Documented administrative and financial regulations of the center
•Organizational structure for the management of the center and a statement identifying the required functions and qualifications, and how to set the amount of employees and their salaries estimated sources
•Project Plan
•Source of funding for the center, including the amount allocated to the operating statement and proof demonstrating ability to continue financing the center.

Other Documents

•Inspection visit form to evaluate the performance of private and private rehabilitation centers
•Social work activities without accommodation for the elderly and disabled-Activity Licensing requirements Form

Human health and social work activities

ISIC4	Business activity
881-2	Social work activities without accommodation for the elderly and disabled - Daycare For Elderly

Description

Operation of places for shelters and centers for social care and rehabilitation for the elderly

Business Requirements

Age

21 and above

Allowed for Nationalities

Bahraini 100%	GCC 100%
American 100%	Singaporean 100%
Icelander 100%	Liechtensteiner 100%
Norwegian 100%	Swiss 100%

Foreign Allowed up to 100%

Legal Type

It is allowed to register according to the legal forms mentioned below

Allowed for Individual Commercial Registration (ICR) : Yes

Allowed for Company Commercial Registration (CCR) : Yes

- Bahrain Shareholding Company (Public)
- With Limited Liability Company
- Branch of a Foreign Company
- Bahrain Shareholding Company (Closed)
- Partnership Company
- Simple Commandite Company
- Commandite By Shares Company
- Non Profit Company

Required Step of Licenses and Approvals

Ministry / Directorate	License / Approval Requirements	Approval Type
Department of Elderly Care	Daycare for elderly	Pre
General Directorate Of Criminal Investigation	Approval by General Directorate of Criminal Investigation	Pre
General Directrate Of Civil Defence	Social work activities without accommodation for the elderly and disabled - Daycare For Elderly	Post
Municipality Affairs	Site Approval for Social Work activities	Post
Department of Elderly Care	Daycare for elderly	Final Site Inspection

Department of Elderly Care (Pre) (881-2)

Approval Name	Description	Estimated Time
Daycare for elderly	Daycare for elderly	5 Days

Fee Details (if any)

There is no Estimated Processing Time (Days) in this license.

License Information

For Individual Establishments:
• Individual must be a Bahraini National
• Individual should be aged 21 or above
• To be fully qualified and not have any record of criminal or misdemeanor offense
• Have the financial capability to fund the establishment of the center and its continuity in accordance with the criteria determined by the Ministry of Labor and Social Development
For companies:
• The Memorandum and Article of Association must mention the name of the activity
• Have a manager in place that represents the center, and he/she must satisfy the criteria under clauses 3 and 4 of Ministerial Decision No. 1 of 2011 regarding the executive schedule related to Law 58 of 2009 regarding the laws of elderly rights
• Must provide evidence of having the financial capability to fund the establishment of the center and its continuity in accordance with the criteria determined by the Ministry of Labor and Social Development

Required Documents

•A copy of qualification to the Director of the proposed center
•Certificate of experience to the Director of the proposed center
•Source of funding for the center, including the amount allocated to the operating statement and proof demonstrating ability to continue financing the center.

General Directorate Of Criminal Investigation (Pre) (881-2)

Approval Name	Description	Estimated Time
Approval by General Directorate of Criminal Investigation	General Directorate of Criminal Investigation Approval for the Activity	7 Days

Fee Details (if any)

There is no Estimated Processing Time (Days) in this license.

License Information

- The applicant should not have a criminal record, unless they have been rehabilitated in criminal cases

General Directrate Of Civil Defence (Post) (881-2)

Approval Name	Description	Estimated Time
Social work activities without accommodation for the elderly and disabled - Daycare For Elderly	checking the approval requirements of the general directorate of civil defense	5 Days

Fee Details (if any)

50 BD Fire prevention and protection certificate fees

License Information

1. Provide the documents mentioned in the “Required Documents” section
2. Comply with the requirements listed in the inspection checklist found in the “Other Downloadable Documents” section
3. Provide proof to the General Directorate of Civil Defense that an alarm and firefighting equipment have been installed within 6 months of obtaining a Commercial Registration and license

If a warehouse is used: A safety certificate must be obtained viaBahrain.bh

Required Documents

•No-objection letter for alarm and extinguisher installation from Civil Defense, or purchasing receipt of alarm equipment and extinguishers along with an annual maintenance contract from a company certified by Civil defense
•Photos required for civil defense activities
•Purchasing invoice of security camera system with specifying the type and storage capacity.

Other Documents

- Sample pictures of the general directorate of civil defense requirements
- licencing requirments of the general directorat of civil defense for activity number "881-2"

Municipality Affairs (Post) (881-2)

Approval Name	Description	Estimated Time
Site Approval for Social Work activities	Municipality Approval for the Commercial Registration address or the site in which the Activity will be practiced	3 Days

Fee Details (if any)

BD10

License Information

General Conditions:
1. Size of shop/premises must be sufficient for the activity
2. Businesses may not carry out the activity outside the boundaries of the shop/ premises
3. It is prohibited to display or store any items or equipment outside the shop / premises boundary without prior approval from the Municipality
4. Maintain cleanliness of the site
5. Comply with the parking space regulations as per the Construction Regulatory Requirements

Activity Specific Conditions:
1. Comply with the regulatory requirements for construction
2. Submit a copy of the building permit (if applicable)
3. Comply with the parking requirements as per cabinet's decision (28) of the year 2009 regarding the Regulatory Requirements of Construction for various areas in the Kingdom of Bahrain
4. In the event of a site on a non-commercial street, then the standards pertaining to projects with a special nature should be followed

Required Documents

- Lease agreement (after obtaining the necessary approvals from other licensing entities)
- Shop photos

Other Documents

- Cabinet's Decision (56) of the year 2022 regarding the Regulatory Requirements of Construction for various areas in the Kingdom of Bahrain

Department of Elderly Care (Final Site Inspection) (881-2)

Approval Name	Description	Estimated Time
Daycare for elderly	Daycare for elderly	5 Days

Fee Details (if any)

There is no Estimated Processing Time (Days) in this license.

License Information

For Individual Establishments:
• Individual must be a Bahraini National
• Individual should be aged 21 or above
• To be fully qualified and not have any record of criminal or misdemeanor offense
• Have the financial capability to fund the establishment of the center and its continuity in accordance with the criteria determined by the Ministry of Labor and Social Development
For companies:
• The Memorandum and Article of Association must mention the name of the activity
• Have a manager in place that represents the center, and he/she must satisfy the criteria under clauses 3 and 4 of Ministerial Decision No. 1 of 2011 regarding the executive schedule related to Law 58 of 2009 regarding the laws of elderly rights
• Must provide evidence of having the financial capability to fund the establishment of the center and its continuity in accordance with the criteria determined by the Ministry of Labor and Social Development

Required Documents

•A copy of qualification to the Director of the proposed center
•Certificate of experience to the Director of the proposed center
•Source of funding for the center, including the amount allocated to the operating statement and proof demonstrating ability to continue financing the center.

Human health and social work activities

ISIC4	Business activity
88902	Child day-care Activities

Description

The owner shall have the right to a license to run the nursery and is all a convenient place allocated to care of children (0-3 Years) who have not Abulgo the age of four and nurseries aiming at achieving the following objectives:Socially care for children and develop their talents and abilities.
Prepare children physically and culturally, psychologically and morally, consistent with the objectives of society and religious values.
Spreading awareness among the children's families for a Proper upbringing.
Strengthening and development of social links between the house and the children's families.
The nursery should provide for the children and to meet the basic of daily needs and provide the necessary health care during the period of his/her stay in the nursery, and works for the development of their capabilities and skills and their education and proper upbringing and to provide appropriate recreational activities.

Business Requirements

Age

25 and above

Allowed for Nationalities

Bahraini 100%		GCC 100%	
American 100%		Singaporean 100%	
Icelander 100%		Liechtenstein er 100%	
Norwegian 100%		Swiss 100%	

Foreign Allowed up to 100%

Legal Type

It is allowed to register according to the legal forms mentioned below

Allowed for Individual Commercial Registration (ICR) : Yes

Allowed for Company Commercial Registration (CCR) : Yes

- Bahrain Shareholding Company (Public)
- With Limited Liability Company
- Branch of a Foreign Company
- Bahrain Shareholding Company (Closed)
- Partnership Company
- Simple Commandite Company
- Commandite By Shares Company
- Non Profit Company

Required Step of Licenses and Approvals

Ministry / Directorate	License / Approval Requirements	Approval Type
Early Childhood Education Licensing and Follow-up	Kindergarten/Child Day-Care - Pre Approval	Pre

Directorate		
General Directorate Of Criminal Investigation	Approval by General Directorate of Criminal Investigation	Pre
Municipality Affairs	Site Approval for Social Work activities	Post
General Directrate Of Civil Defence	Child day-care Activities	Post
Early Childhood Education Licensing and Follow-up Directorate	Kindergarten/Child Day-Care - Final Approval	Final Site Inspection

Early Childhood Education Licensing and Follow-up Directorate (Pre) (88902)

Approval Name	Description	Estimated Time
Kindergarten/Child Day-Care - Pre Approval	This licence is required if the investor intends to start up kindergartens providing education to children aged between 0-5 years old.	90 Days

Fee Details (if any)

There is no Estimated Processing Time (Days) in this license.

License Information

For an applicant to obtain a license for a kindergarten, they should fulfill the following conditions:

If the applicant is a natural person:

1. Must be at least 25 years of age.
2. Must be fully competent and of good conduct. A final court ruling should not have been passed against them in a felony or misdemeanor affecting honor, integrity or public morals, unless they have since been exculpated or exonerated.
3. Must at least have the General Secondary School Certificate or an equivalent.
4. Must be capable of financing the establishment and continued functioning of the private educational or training institution in accordance with the standards and guarantees prescribed and laid down by the Ministry of Education.
5. Must not be a civil servant or an employee of public organizations or private institutions

If applicant is a corporate entity:

In this case, the applicant shall appoint a representative to deal with third parties who shall fulfil the foregoing conditions except for the stipulation (4), provided that they specify in their application the source of finance for the private educational or training institution, as well as their ability to maintain the appropriate finances.

1. The license issued establishing a private educational or training institutions shall be considered personal, and it may not be assigned in favor of third parties except with the approval of the concerned Ministry, and it should be renewed once every three years.
2. In the event of the death of the educational or training institution's owner, the Ministry may transfer the license to their heirs. If the heirs do not comply with the conditions laid down in this law, the Ministry may exempt them, provided that the heirs or their guardian's appoint a representative who has fulfilled such conditions.
3. A fee shall be charged for issuing the license to establish a private educational or training institution and for the renewal thereof, and an order by the Minister, after the approval of the Cabinet, shall be issued fixing this fee.
4. Holder of a license to establish a private educational institution shall undertake to provide a financial guarantee to the concerned Ministry, which shall be determined by an order to be issued by the Minister, subject to the Cabinet's approval.

Building Requirements for Private educational or training institutions:

The institution must be in an independent building and meet health, educational, and occupational safety requirements. The final approval for the school building will be given after obtaining approval from the following entities: Ministry of Works, Urban Planning, and Municipality Affairs, Directorate of Civil Defense, and General Traffic Directorate. Other requirements include the following:

1. A suitable health environment and independent premises equipped with furniture and equipment. Approval from the Ministry of Education must be obtained before constructing a new building or adding new facilities.
2. The headquarters of the private educational or training institution may only be transferred after the approval of the Ministry of Education.
3. A residential building/facility may not be established in the private educational or training institution unless an approval from the Ministry of Education is obtained in accordance with its regulations
4. The educational or training institution shall bear a distinguishable name that is approved by the Ministry of Education.

Please refer to Legislative Decree No. (25) of the year 1998 concerning Private Educational and Training Institutions in the “other downloadable documents” for further requirements.

Required Documents

•A document from the bank showing the amount allocated to the capital of the project.
•Completed Form Child Day-Care Nursery License Request
•Completed Form Kindergarten License Request
•High school diploma and the latest scientific qualification of the representative of the legal person
•Release Letter from latest employer

Other Documents

•LAW NO. (37) OF 2012 WITH RESPECT TO THE PROMULGATION OF THE CHILD LAW
•Legislative Decree No. (25) of the year 1998 concerning Private Educational and Training Institutions

General Directorate Of Criminal Investigation (Pre) (88902)

Approval Name	Description	Estimated Time
Approval by General Directorate of Criminal Investigation	General Directorate of Criminal Investigation Approval for the Activity	7 Days

Fee Details (if any)

There is no Estimated Processing Time (Days) in this license.

License Information

- The applicant should not have a criminal record, unless they have been rehabilitated in criminal cases

Municipality Affairs (Post) (88902)

Approval Name	Description	Estimated Time
Site Approval for Social Work activities	Municipality Approval for the Commercial Registration address or the site in which the Activity will be practiced	3 Days

Fee Details (if any)

BD10

License Information

General Conditions:
1. Size of shop/premises must be sufficient for the activity
2. Businesses may not carry out the activity outside the boundaries of the shop/ premises
3. It is prohibited to display or store any items or equipment outside the shop / premises boundary without prior approval from the Municipality
4. Maintain cleanliness of the site
5. Comply with the parking space regulations as per the Construction Regulatory Requirements

Activity Specific Conditions:
1. Comply with the regulatory requirements for construction
2. Submit a copy of the building permit (if applicable)
3. Comply with the parking requirements as per cabinet's decision (28) of the year 2009 regarding the Regulatory Requirements of Construction for various areas in the Kingdom of Bahrain
4. In the event of a site on a non-commercial street, then the standards pertaining to projects with a special nature should be followed

Required Documents

- Lease agreement (after obtaining the necessary approvals from other licensing entities)
- Shop photos

Other Documents

- Cabinet's Decision (56) of the year 2022 regarding the Regulatory Requirements of Construction for various areas in the Kingdom of Bahrain

General Directrate Of Civil Defence (Post) (88902)

Approval Name	Description	Estimated Time
Child day-care Activities	checking the approval requirements of the general directorate of civil defense	5 Days

Fee Details (if any)

30 BD Fire prevention and protection certificate fees

License Information

1. Provide the documents mentioned in the “Required Documents” section
2. Comply with the requirements listed in the inspection checklist found in the “Other Downloadable Documents” section
3. Provide proof to the General Directorate of Civil Defense that an alarm and firefighting equipment have been installed within 6 months of obtaining a Commercial Registration and license

If a warehouse is used: A safety certificate must be obtained viaBahrain.bh

Required Documents

•No-objection letter for alarm and extinguisher installation from Civil Defense, or purchasing receipt of alarm equipment and extinguishers along with an annual maintenance contract from a company certified by Civil defense
•Photos required for civil defense activities
•Purchasing invoice of security camera system with specifying the type and storage capacity.

Other Documents

- Sample pictures of the general directorate of civil defense requirements
- licencing requirments of the general directorat of civil defense for activity number "88902"

Early Childhood Education Licensing and Follow-up Directorate (Final Site Inspection) (88902)

Approval Name	Description	Estimated Time
Kindergarten/Child Day-Care - Final Approval	This licence is required if the investor intends to start up kindergartens providing education to children aged between 0-5 years old.	90 Days

Fee Details (if any)

There is no Estimated Processing Time (Days) in this license.

License Information

For an applicant to obtain a license for a kindergarten, they should fulfill the following conditions:

If the applicant is a natural person:

1. Must be at least 25 years of age.
2. Must be fully competent and of good conduct. A final court ruling should not have been passed against them in a felony or misdemeanor affecting honor, integrity or public morals, unless they have since been exculpated or exonerated.
3. Must at least have the General Secondary School Certificate or an equivalent.
4. Must be capable of financing the establishment and continued functioning of the private educational or training institution in accordance with the standards and guarantees prescribed and laid down by the Ministry of Education.
5. Must not be a civil servant or an employee of public organizations or private institutions

If applicant is a corporate entity:

In this case, the applicant shall appoint a representative to deal with third parties who shall fulfil the foregoing conditions except for the stipulation (4), provided that they specify in their application the source of finance for the private educational or training institution, as well as their ability to maintain the appropriate finances.

1. The license issued for the establishment of a private educational or training institution shall be considered personal. It may not be assigned in favor of third parties except with the approval of the concerned Ministry and it should be renewed once every three years.
2. In the event of the death of the educational or training institution's owner, the Ministry may transfer the license to their heirs. If the heirs do not comply with the conditions laid down in this law, the Ministry may exempt them, provided that the heirs or their guardian's appoint a representative who has fulfilled such conditions.
3. A fee shall be charged for issuing the license to establish a private educational or training institution and for the renewal thereof, and an order by the Minister, after the approval of the Cabinet, shall be issued fixing this fee.
4. Holder of a license to establish a private educational institution shall undertake to provide a financial guarantee to the concerned Ministry, which shall be determined by an order to be issued by the Minister, subject to the Cabinet's approval.

Building Requirements for Private educational or training institutions:

The institution must be in an independent building and meet health, educational, and occupational safety requirements. The final approval for the school building will be given after obtaining approval from the following entities: Ministry of Works, Urban Planning, and Municipality Affairs, Directorate of Civil Defense, and General Traffic Directorate. Other requirements include the following:

1. Having a suitable health environment and independent premises equipped with furniture and equipment. An approval from the Ministry of Education must be obtained before constructing a new building or adding new facilities.
2. The headquarters of the private educational or training institution may only be transferred after the approval of the Ministry of Education.
3. A residential building/facility may not be established in the private educational or training institution unless an approval from the Ministry of Education is obtained in accordance with its regulations
4. The educational or training institution shall bear a distinguishable name that is approved by the Ministry of Education.

Please refer to Legislative Decree No. (25) of the year 1998 concerning Private Educational and Training Institutions in the “other downloadable documents” for further requirements.

Required Documents

- Completed Form “Data on tuition fees and other fees of a proposed Kindergarten
- Copy of the institution’s rules of procedure
- Maps and drawings of the building, outdoor spaces and outdoor play spaces, and clarification of the plan of use.
- Two copies of the educational curriculum/program

Other Documents

- LAW NO. (37) OF 2012 WITH RESPECT TO THE PROMULGATION OF THE CHILD LAW

Human health and social work activities

ISIC4	Business activity
88909	Other social work activities without accommodation

Description

this class includes:
- social, counselling, welfare, referral and similar services which are aimed at the elderly and disabled in their homes or elsewhere and carried out by public or by private organizations, national or local self-help organizations and by specialists providing counselling services:
· visiting of the elderly and disabled
· day-care activities for the elderly or for handicapped adults
· vocational rehabilitation and habilitation activities for disabled persons provided that the education component is limited

Business Requirements

Age

18 and above

Allowed for Nationalities

Bahraini 100%	GCC 100%
American 100%	Singaporean 100%
Icelander 100%	Liechtensteiner 100%
Norwegian 100%	Swiss 100%

Foreign Allowed up to 100%

Legal Type

It is allowed to register according to the legal forms mentioned below

Allowed for Individual Commercial Registration (ICR) : Yes

Allowed for Company Commercial Registration (CCR) : Yes

- Bahrain Shareholding Company (Public)
- With Limited Liability Company
- Branch of a Foreign Company
- Bahrain Shareholding Company (Closed)
- Partnership Company
- Simple Commandite Company
- Commandite By Shares Company
- Non Profit Company

Required Step of Licenses and Approvals

Ministry / Directorate	License / Approval Requirements	Approval Type
Municipality Affairs	Site Approval for Social Work activities	Post

Municipality Affairs (Post) (88909)

Approval Name	Description	Estimated Time
Site Approval for Social Work activities	Municipality Approval for the Commercial Registration address or the site in which the Activity will be practiced	3 Days

Fee Details (if any)

BD10

License Information

General Conditions:
1. Size of shop/premises must be sufficient for the activity
2. Businesses may not carry out the activity outside the boundaries of the shop/ premises
3. It is prohibited to display or store any items or equipment outside the shop / premises boundary without prior approval from the Municipality
4. Maintain cleanliness of the site
5. Comply with the parking space regulations as per the Construction Regulatory Requirements

Activity Specific Conditions:
1. Comply with the regulatory requirements for construction
2. Submit a copy of the building permit (if applicable)
3. Comply with the parking requirements as per cabinet's decision (28) of the year 2009 regarding the Regulatory Requirements of Construction for various areas in the Kingdom of Bahrain
4. In the event of a site on a non-commercial street, then the standards pertaining to projects with a special nature should be followed

Required Documents

- Lease agreement (after obtaining the necessary approvals from other licensing entities)
- Shop photos

Other Documents

- Cabinet's Decision (56) of the year 2022 regarding the Regulatory Requirements of Construction for various areas in the Kingdom of Bahrain

Arts, entertainment, sports and recreation

سجلات
SIJILAT
نظام السجلات التجارية
COMMERCIAL REGISTRATION PORTAL

Arts, entertainment, sports and recreation

ISIC4	Business activity
90001	Production of live theatrical presentations and other stage productions

Description

This activity includes:
- Production and promotion of, and participation in, live performances, events or exhibits intended for public viewing
- The organization of entertainment events, including concerts, and bringing in foreign bands or singers or actors or musicians for the benefit of institutions and bodies authorized to carry on these activities, such as hotels and clubs according to the commission agreed.
- Production of live theatrical presentations, concerts and opera or dance productions and other stage productions, such as activities of groups, circuses or companies, orchestras or bands

Business Requirements

Age

18 and above

Allowed for Nationalities

Bahraini 100%	GCC 100%
American 100%	Singaporean 100%
Icelander 100%	Liechtenstein er 100%
Norwegian 100%	Swiss 100%

Foreign Allowed up to 100%

Legal Type

It is allowed to register according to the legal forms mentioned below

Allowed for Individual Commercial Registration (ICR) : Yes

Allowed for Company Commercial Registration (CCR) : Yes

Allowed for Sijilli : Yes

- Bahrain Shareholding Company (Public)
- With Limited Liability Company
- Branch of a Foreign Company
- Bahrain Shareholding Company (Closed)
- Partnership Company
- Simple Commandite Company
- Commandite By Shares Company
- Non Profit Company

Required Step of Licenses and Approvals

Ministry / Directorate	License / Approval Requirements	Approval Type
General Directorate Of Criminal Investigation	Approval by General Directorate of Criminal Investigation	Pre
Municipality Affairs	Site Approval for Production of live theatrical presentations and other stage productions	Post
Bahrain Tourim and Exibitions Authority	Concert operators and bringing in foreign art groups	Final Site Inspection

General Directorate Of Criminal Investigation (Pre) (90001)

Approval Name	Description	Estimated Time
Approval by General Directorate of Criminal Investigation	General Directorate of Criminal Investigation Approval for the Activity	7 Days

Fee Details (if any)

There is no Estimated Processing Time (Days) in this license.

License Information

- The applicant should not have a criminal record, unless they have been rehabilitated in criminal cases

Municipality Affairs (Post) (90001)

Approval Name	Description	Estimated Time
Site Approval for Production of live theatrical presentations and other stage productions	Municipality Approval for the Commercial Registration address or the site in which the Activity will be practiced	3 Days

Fee Details (if any)

10 BD

License Information

General Conditions:
1. Size of shop/premises must be sufficient for the activity
2. Businesses may not carry out the activity outside the boundaries of the shop/ premises
3. It is prohibited to display or store any items or equipment outside the shop / premises boundary without prior approval from the Municipality. In the event of non-compliance, the Ministry of Municipality Affairs has the right to take necessary action.
4. Maintain cleanliness of the site
5. Comply with the parking space regulations as per the Construction Regulatory Requirements

Activity Specific Conditions:
1. The Commercial Registration for this activity can be registered on commercial, service, and industrial streets.
2. The commercial address of the Commercial Registration for this activity can an office address

Note: Uploading pictures of the site/shop may expedite the process of obtaining approval

Required Documents

- Lease agreement (after obtaining the necessary approvals from other licensing entities)
- Shop photos

Other Documents

- Cabinet's Decision (56) of the year 2022 regarding the Regulatory Requirements of Construction for various areas in the Kingdom of Bahrain

Bahrain Tourim and Exibitions Authority (Final Site Inspection) (90001)

Approval Name	Description	Estimated Time
Concert operators and bringing in foreign art groups	This activity includes: Production, promotion and participation, in live performances, events and exhibitions held for public viewing. - Organize concerts, bring in foreign bands, singers, actors or musicians for the benefit of institutions and bodies authorized to practice and display these activities, such as hotels and clubs in accordance with the laws. - Production of live theatre performances, musical works, opera, dance and other theatrical productions such as the activities of orchestras, circus teams, orchestras and musical bands.	3 Days

Fee Details (if any)

Upon final approval, the license issue/renewal fee (BD 500) will be charged.

License Information

Requirements after obtaining the license:
- The license applicant must have a qualified office manager with appropriate experience in the field of organizing events and festivals.
- Office staff must be eligible to work in the field of organizing events and festivals.
- Pay the tourism license fee.

Arts, entertainment, sports and recreation

ISIC4	Business activity
90002	Operation of concert and theatre halls and other art facilities

Description

This activity includes:
Organizing funtioms and celebrations such as weddings, receptions. Launches, birthday parties, etc.... for an agreed upon monetary sum.

Business Requirements

Age

18 and above

Allowed for Nationalities

Bahraini 100%		GCC 100%	
American 100%		Singaporean 100%	
Icelander 100%		Liechtenstein er 100%	
Norwegian 100%		Swiss 100%	

Foreign Allowed up to 100%

Legal Type

It is allowed to register according to the legal forms mentioned below

Allowed for Individual Commercial Registration (ICR) : Yes

Allowed for Company Commercial Registration (CCR) : Yes

- Bahrain Shareholding Company (Public)
- With Limited Liability Company
- Branch of a Foreign Company
- Bahrain Shareholding Company (Closed)
- Partnership Company
- Simple Commandite Company
- Commandite By Shares Company
- Non Profit Company

Required Step of Licenses and Approvals

Ministry / Directorate	License / Approval Requirements	Approval Type
General Directorate Of Criminal Investigation	Approval by General Directorate of Criminal Investigation	Pre
Municipality Affairs	Site Approval for Operation of concert and theatre halls and other art facilities	Post

General Directorate Of Criminal Investigation (Pre) (90002)

Approval Name	Description	Estimated Time
Approval by General Directorate of Criminal Investigation	General Directorate of Criminal Investigation Approval for the Activity	7 Days

Fee Details (if any)

There is no Estimated Processing Time (Days) in this license.

License Information

- The applicant should not have a criminal record, unless they have been rehabilitated in criminal cases

Municipality Affairs (Post) (90002)

Approval Name	Description	Estimated Time
Site Approval for Operation of concert and theatre halls and other art facilities	Municipality Approval for the Commercial Registration address or the site in which the Activity will be practiced	3 Days

Fee Details (if any)

10 BD

License Information

General Conditions:
1. Size of shop/premises must be sufficient for the activity
2. Businesses may not carry out the activity outside the boundaries of the shop/ premises
3. It is prohibited to display or store any items or equipment outside the shop / premises boundary without prior approval from the Municipality
4. Maintain cleanliness of the site
5. Comply with the parking space regulations as per the Construction Regulatory Requirements

Activity Specific Conditions:
1. Comply with the regulatory requirements for construction
2. Submit a copy of the building permit (if applicable)
3. Comply with the parking requirements as per cabinet's decision (28) of the year 2009 regarding the Regulatory Requirements of Construction for various areas in the Kingdom of Bahrain
4. In the event of a site on a non-commercial street, then the standards pertaining to projects with a special nature should be followed

Note: Uploading pictures of the site/shop may expedite the process of obtaining approval

Required Documents

- Lease agreement (after obtaining the necessary approvals from other licensing entities)
- Shop photos

Other Documents

- Cabinet's Decision (56) of the year 2022 regarding the Regulatory Requirements of Construction for various areas in the Kingdom of Bahrain

Arts, entertainment, sports and recreation

ISIC4	Business activity
90003	Activities of sculptors, painters, cartoonists, etc.

Description

This activity includes
- Activities of sculptors, painters, cartoonists, engravers, etchers etc
- Activities of individual writers, for all subjects including fictional writing, technical writing etc.

Business Requirements

Age

18 and above

Allowed for Nationalities

Bahraini 100%	GCC 100%
American 100%	Singaporean 100%
Icelander 100%	Liechtenstein er 100%
Norwegian 100%	Swiss 100%

Foreign Allowed up to 100%

Legal Type

It is allowed to register according to the legal forms mentioned below

Allowed for Individual Commercial Registration (ICR) : Yes

Allowed for Company Commercial Registration (CCR) : Yes

Allowed for Sijilli : Yes

- Bahrain Shareholding Company (Public)
- With Limited Liability Company
- Branch of a Foreign Company
- Bahrain Shareholding Company (Closed)
- Partnership Company
- Simple Commandite Company
- Commandite By Shares Company
- Non Profit Company

Required Step of Licenses and Approvals

Ministry / Directorate	License / Approval Requirements	Approval Type
Municipality Affairs	Site Approval for Activities of sculptors, painters, cartoonists, writers etc.	Post

Municipality Affairs (Post) (90003)

Approval Name	Description	Estimated Time
Site Approval for Activities of sculptors, painters, cartoonists, writers etc.	Municipality Approval for the Commercial Registration address or the site in which the Activity will be practiced	3 Days

Fee Details (if any)

10 BD

License Information

General Conditions:
1. Size of shop/premises must be sufficient for the activity
2. Businesses may not carry out the activity outside the boundaries of the shop/ premises
3. It is prohibited to display or store any items or equipment outside the shop / premises boundary without prior approval from the Municipality
4. Maintain cleanliness of the site
5. Comply with the parking space regulations as per the Construction Regulatory Requirements

Activity Specific Conditions:
1. The commercial address for this activity can be registered in areas classified as commercial, services, or industrial
2. The commercial registration owner must have another site for heavy equipment or any equipment that may cause inconvenience to nearby properties.

Note: Uploading pictures of the site/shop may expedite the process of obtaining approval

Required Documents

- Lease agreement (after obtaining the necessary approvals from other licensing entities)
- Shop photos

Other Documents

- Cabinet's Decision (56) of the year 2022 regarding the Regulatory Requirements of Construction for various areas in the Kingdom of Bahrain

Arts, entertainment, sports and recreation

ISIC4	Business activity
90009	Other creative, arts, and entertainment activities

Description

This class includes other creative, arts, and entertainment activities not mentioned elsewhere, for example:
- restoring of works of art such as paintings etc.
- Activities of individual artists such as authors, actors, directors, musicians, lecturers or speakers, stage-set designers and builders etc.
- activities of producers or entrepreneurs of arts live events, with or without facilities

This class excludes:
- restoring of stained glass windows
- manufacture of statues, other than artistic originals
- restoring of organs and other historical musical instruments
- restoring of historical sites and buildings
- motion picture and video production
- operation of cinemas
- activities of personal theatrical or artistic agents or agencies
- casting activities
- activities of ticket agencies
- operation of museums of all kinds
- sports and amusement and recreation activities
- restoring of furniture (except museum type restoration)

Business Requirements

Age

18 and above

Allowed for Nationalities

Bahraini 100%		GCC 100%	
American 100%		Singaporean 100%	
Icelander 100%		Liechtenstein er 100%	
Norwegian 100%		Swiss 100%	

Foreign Allowed up to 100%

Legal Type

It is allowed to register according to the legal forms mentioned below

Allowed for Individual Commercial Registration (ICR) : Yes

Allowed for Company Commercial Registration (CCR) : Yes

- Bahrain Shareholding Company (Public)
- With Limited Liability Company
- Branch of a Foreign Company
- Bahrain Shareholding Company (Closed)
- Partnership Company
- Simple Commandite Company
- Commandite By Shares Company
- Non Profit Company

Required Step of Licenses and Approvals

Ministry / Directorate	License / Approval Requirements	Approval Type
Municipality Affairs	Site Approval for other creative, arts, and	Post

	entertainment activities	

Municipality Affairs (Post) (90009)

Approval Name	Description	Estimated Time
Site Approval for other creative, arts, and entertainment activities	Municipality Approval for the Commercial Registration address or the site in which the Activity will be practiced	3 Days

Fee Details (if any)

10 BD

License Information

General Conditions:
1. Size of shop/premises must be sufficient for the activity
2. Businesses may not carry out the activity outside the boundaries of the shop/ premises
3. It is prohibited to display or store any items or equipment outside the shop / premises boundary without prior approval from the Municipality
4. Maintain cleanliness of the site
5. Comply with the parking space regulations as per the Construction Regulatory Requirements

Activity Specific Conditions:
1. The commercial address for this activity can be registered in areas classified as commercial, services, or industrial
2. The commercial registration owner must have another site for heavy equipment or any equipment that may cause inconvenience to nearby properties.

Note: Uploading pictures of the site/shop may expedite the process of obtaining approval

Required Documents

- Lease agreement (after obtaining the necessary approvals from other licensing entities)
- Shop photos

Other Documents

- Cabinet's Decision (56) of the year 2022 regarding the Regulatory Requirements of Construction for various areas in the Kingdom of Bahrain

Arts, entertainment, sports and recreation

ISIC4	Business activity
9101	Library and archives activities

Description

This activity includes:
- documentation and information activities of libraries of all kinds, reading, listening and viewing rooms, public archives providing service to the general public or to a special clientele, such as students, scientists, staff, members as well as operation of government archives:
• Organization of a collection, whether specialized or not
• cataloguing collections
• Lending and storage of books, maps, periodicals, films, records, tapes, works of art etc.
• Retrieval activities in order to comply with information requests etc.
- Stock photo libraries and services

Business Requirements

✔ Age

18 and above

✔ Allowed for Nationalities

Bahraini
100%

American
100%

GCC
100%

Legal Type

It is allowed to register according to the legal forms mentioned below

Allowed for Individual Commercial Registration (ICR) : Yes

Allowed for Company Commercial Registration (CCR) : Yes

- Bahrain Shareholding Company (Public)
- With Limited Liability Company
- Branch of a Foreign Company
- Bahrain Shareholding Company (Closed)
- Partnership Company
- Simple Commandite Company
- Commandite By Shares Company
- Non Profit Company

Required Step of Licenses and Approvals

Ministry / Directorate	License / Approval Requirements	Approval Type
Municipality Affairs	Site Approval for Library and archives activities	Post

Municipality Affairs (Post) (9101)

Approval Name	Description	Estimated Time
Site Approval for Library and archives activities	Municipality Approval for the Commercial Registration address or the site in which the Activity will be practiced	3 Days

Fee Details (if any)

10 BD

License Information

General Conditions:
1. Size of shop/premises must be sufficient for the activity
2. Businesses may not carry out the activity outside the boundaries of the shop/ premises
3. It is prohibited to display or store any items or equipment outside the shop / premises boundary without prior approval from the Municipality
4. Maintain cleanliness of the site
5. Comply with the parking space regulations as per the Construction Regulatory Requirements

Activity Specific Conditions:
1. Comply with the regulatory requirements for construction
2. Submit a copy of the building permit (if applicable)
3. Comply with the parking requirements as per cabinet's decision (28) of the year 2009 regarding the Regulatory Requirements of Construction for various areas in the Kingdom of Bahrain
4. In the event of a site on a non-commercial street, then the standards pertaining to projects with a special nature should be followed

Note: Uploading pictures of the site/shop may expedite the process of obtaining approval

Required Documents

- Lease agreement (after obtaining the necessary approvals from other licensing entities)
- Shop photos

Other Documents

- Cabinet's Decision (56) of the year 2022 regarding the Regulatory Requirements of Construction for various areas in the Kingdom of Bahrain

Arts, entertainment, sports and recreation

ISIC4	Business activity
9102	Museums activities and operation of historical sites and buildings

Description

This activity includes:
- Operation of museums of all kinds:
• Art museums, museums of jewellery, furniture, costumes, ceramics, silverware
• Natural history, science and technological museums, historical museums, including military museums
• Other specialized museums
• Open-air museums
- Operation of historical sites and buildings

This activity excludes:
- Renovation and restoration of historical sites and buildings
- Restoration of works of art and museum collection objects
- Activities of libraries and archives

Business Requirements

Age

18 and above

Allowed for Nationalities

Bahraini
100%

American
100%

GCC
100%

Legal Type

It is allowed to register according to the legal forms mentioned below

Allowed for Individual Commercial Registration (ICR) : Yes

Allowed for Company Commercial Registration (CCR) : Yes

- Bahrain Shareholding Company (Public)
- With Limited Liability Company
- Branch of a Foreign Company
- Bahrain Shareholding Company (Closed)
- Partnership Company
- Simple Commandite Company
- Commandite By Shares Company
- Non Profit Company

Required Step of Licenses and Approvals

Ministry / Directorate	License / Approval Requirements	Approval Type
Municipality Affairs	Site Approval for Museums activities and operation of historical sites and buildings	Post

Municipality Affairs (Post) (9102)

Approval Name	Description	Estimated Time
Site Approval for Museums activities and operation of historical sites and buildings	Municipality Approval for the Commercial Registration address or the site in which the Activity will be practiced	3 Days

Fee Details (if any)

10 BD

License Information

General Conditions:
1. Size of shop/premises must be sufficient for the activity
2. Businesses may not carry out the activity outside the boundaries of the shop/ premises
3. It is prohibited to display or store any items or equipment outside the shop / premises boundary without prior approval from the Municipality
4. Maintain cleanliness of the site
5. Comply with the parking space regulations as per the Construction Regulatory Requirements

Activity Specific Conditions:
1. Comply with the regulatory requirements for construction
2. Submit a copy of the building permit (if applicable)
3. Comply with the parking requirements as per cabinet's decision (28) of the year 2009 regarding the Regulatory Requirements of Construction for various areas in the Kingdom of Bahrain
4. In the event of a site on a non-commercial street, then the standards pertaining to projects with a special nature should be followed
5. Obtain approval from Bahrain Culture and Antiquities Authority

Note: Uploading pictures of the site/shop may expedite the process of obtaining approval

Required Documents

- Lease agreement (after obtaining the necessary approvals from other licensing entities)
- Shop photos

Other Documents

- Cabinet's Decision (56) of the year 2022 regarding the Regulatory Requirements of Construction for various areas in the Kingdom of Bahrain

Arts, entertainment, sports and recreation

ISIC4	Business activity
9103	Botanical/ zoological gardens and nature reserves activities

Description

This activity includes:
- Operation of botanical and zoological gardens, including children`s zoos
- Operation of nature reserves, including wildlife preservation, etc.

This activity excludes:
- Landscape and gardening services

Business Requirements

Age

18 and above

Allowed for Nationalities

- Bahraini 100%
- American 100%
- GCC 100%

Legal Type

It is allowed to register according to the legal forms mentioned below

Allowed for Individual Commercial Registration (ICR) : Yes

Allowed for Company Commercial Registration (CCR) : Yes

- Bahrain Shareholding Company (Public)
- With Limited Liability Company
- Branch of a Foreign Company
- Bahrain Shareholding Company (Closed)
- Partnership Company
- Simple Commandite Company
- Commandite By Shares Company
- Non Profit Company

Required Step of Licenses and Approvals

Ministry / Directorate	License / Approval Requirements	Approval Type
Supreme Council for Environment	Environmental Approval for Botanical/ zoological gardens and nature reserves activities activity	Post
Municipality Affairs	Municipality approval for Botanical/ zoological gardens and nature reserves activities	Post
Control And Animal Health Directorate	Approval by Control and Animal Health Directorate	Post

Supreme Council for Environment (Post) (9103)

Approval Name	Description	Estimated Time
Environmental Approval for Botanical/ zoological gardens and nature reserves activities activity	This service aims to assess the environmental impact and licensing of development, industrial and production projects and activities, in accordance with the standards of protecting the environment and its natural resources	10 Days

Fee Details (if any)

- 100 Bahraini Dinars or 200 Bahraini Dinars for the fast-track procedure (when the data requested within the EA-1 form is sufficient without the need for additional studies)
- 4000 Bahraini Dinars or 6000 Bahraini Dinars for the fast track procedure (when it is necessary to submit an environmental impact assessment study for the project), with an additional payment of 100 Bahraini Dinars when it is necessary to submit a proposal for the scope of the study before submitting it or 500 Bahraini Dinars for a fast track procedure when the proposed scope of the study is being submitted before the study

License Information

To check the requirements for this approval, kindly download the detailed requirements sheet from the other downloadable documents section, which includes the following requirements:

- Building layout engineering and equipment requirements
- Workplace requirements
- Storage requirements
- Material management requirements
- Waste Management Requirements

- Documents and reporting requirements
- General requirements

Other Documents

- Annex to the Minister of Housing, Municipalities and Environment order regarding the project's environmental assessment
- Law No. (2) of 2021 regarding the environmental standards of air as decided by the Chairman of the Supreme Council for Environment
- Law No. (3) of 2021 regarding the environmental standards of water as decided by the Chairman of the Supreme Council for the Environment
- Law No. (5) of 2021 regarding CITES Annexes to the Convention on International Trade in Endangered Fauna and Flora
- Law No. (54) of 2014 regarding the approval of the unified law regarding substances that deplete the ozone layer for the GCC countries
- Law No. (7) of 2022 regarding the environment
- Ministerial Order No. (1) of 1998 regarding Project's Environmental Assessment
- Ministerial Order No. (10) of 2006 regarding the installation of devices for on-line monitoring of atmospheric air pollutants
- Ministerial Order No. (11) of 2019 regarding the issue of technical specification of plastic products
- Ministerial Order No. (3) of 2005 regarding environmental requirements and standards in workplaces, especially regarding workers' exposure to heat and noise, and the provision of tools and protective clothing such as gloves, glasses, face masks and earplugs, with a commitment to use them during work
- Ministerial Order No. (3) of 2006 regarding the management of hazardous waste
- Ministerial Order No. (4) of 2005 regarding the management of used oils
- Ministerial Order No. (4) of 2006 regarding the management of hazardous chemicals
- Ministerial Order No. (4) of 2021 regarding the fees of the licenses and services provided by the Supreme Council for Environment
- Ministerial Order No. (6) of 2013 amending order No. (4) of 2006 regarding the management of hazardous chemicals
- Ministerial Order No. (7) of 2002 regarding the control importation and use of prohibited and severely restricted chemicals, and not to import any chemical compound except after obtaining approvals of all concerned authorities, including the executive body of the Supreme Council for Environment
- Ministerial Order No. (7) of 2013 amending order No. (3) of 2006 regarding the management of hazardous waste
- Ministerial Order No. 4 of 2014 regarding the management of the environmental consulting offices operations in the Kingdom of Bahrain
- Order No. (2) of 2020 determining the categories of fees for licensing refrigeration media, refrigeration units and air conditioning units as decided by the Chairman of the Supreme Council for the Environment
- Requirements for business activities
- law No. (1) of 2020 regarding the management of refrigeration media, refrigeration

units and air conditioning units as decided by the Chairman of the Supreme Council for the Environment
•law No. (2) of 2019 regarding the ban on the import of plastic waste of all kinds as decided by the Chairman of the Supreme Council for the Environment
•law No. (204) of 2018 regarding banning the export of some types of local fishes, shrimps and other aquatic organisms, and coordinating with the Agriculture and Marine Resources at the Ministry of Works, Municipalities and Urban Planning regarding the import and export of some species

Municipality Affairs (Post) (9103)

Approval Name	Description	Estimated Time
Municipality approval for Botanical/ zoological gardens and nature reserves activities	Municipality Approval for the Commercial Registration address or the site in which the Activity will be practiced	3 Days

Fee Details (if any)

10 BD

License Information

General Conditions:
1. Size of shop/premises must be sufficient for the activity
2. Businesses may not carry out the activity outside the boundaries of the shop/ premises
3. It is prohibited to display or store any items or equipment outside the shop / premises boundary without prior approval from the Municipality
4. Maintain cleanliness of the site
5. Comply with the parking space regulations as per the Construction Regulatory Requirements

Activity Specific Conditions:
1. Have a building permit from the concerned entity

Note: Uploading pictures of the site/shop may expedite the process of obtaining approval

Required Documents

- Lease agreement (after obtaining the necessary approvals from other licensing entities)
- Shop photos

Other Documents

- Cabinet's Decision (56) of the year 2022 regarding the Regulatory Requirements of Construction for various areas in the Kingdom of Bahrain

Control And Animal Health Directorate (Post) (9103)

Approval Name	Description	Estimated Time
Approval by Control and Animal Health Directorate	Please refer to the “GCC’s Unified Standards for Veterinary Facilities” document in the “other downloadable documents” section	5 Days

Fee Details (if any)

There is no Estimated Processing Time (Days) in this license.

License Information

Please refer to the standards of animal welfare practices
o Cruelty to animals
o Animal owner duties
o Conditions for dealing with animals
o Conditions for establishing animal facilities
o Animal transport
o The use of animals for scientific purposes
o Disposal of animals

Other Documents

•GCC’s Unified Standards for Veterinary Facilities
•Standards of animal welfare practices

ISIC4	Business activity
9311	Operation of sports facilities

Description

This activity includes:
- Operation of facilities for indoor or outdoor sports events (open, closed or covered, with or without spectator seating):
• Football, hockey, cricket, baseball, jai-alai stadiums
• Racetracks for auto, dog, horse races
• Swimming pools and stadiums
• Track and field stadiums
• Winter sports arenas and stadiums
• Ice-hockey arenas
• Boxing arenas
• Golf courses
• bowling lanes
• Fitness centers
- Organization and operation of outdoor or indoor sports events for professionals or amateurs by organizations with own facilities
This activity includes managing and providing the staff to operate these facilities.
This activity excludes:
- Renting of recreation and sports equipment
- Operation of ski hills
- Park and beach activities

Business Requirements

Age

18 and above

Allowed for Nationalities

Bahraini 100%		GCC 100%	
American 100%		Singaporean 100%	
Icelander 100%		Liechtenstein er 100%	
Norwegian 100%		Swiss 100%	

Foreign Allowed up to 100%

Legal Type

It is allowed to register according to the legal forms mentioned below

Allowed for Individual Commercial Registration (ICR) : Yes

Allowed for Company Commercial Registration (CCR) : Yes

- Bahrain Shareholding Company (Public)
- With Limited Liability Company
- Branch of a Foreign Company
- Bahrain Shareholding Company (Closed)
- Partnership Company
- Simple Commandite Company
- Commandite By Shares Company
- Non Profit Company

Required Step of Licenses and Approvals

Ministry / Directorate	License / Approval Requirements	Approval Type
General Directorate Of Criminal Investigation	Approval for Sport Facilities	Pre

Legal Affairs and Licensing Directorate	Approval of Sports Facilities	Post
Municipality Affairs	Site Approval for Operation of sports facilities	Post
Ministry of Health	Health approval for sports and recreational facilities	Post

General Directorate Of Criminal Investigation (Pre) (9311)

Approval Name	Description	Estimated Time
Approval for Sport Facilities	General Directorate of Criminal Investigation Approval for the Activity	7 Days

Fee Details (if any)

There is no Estimated Processing Time (Days) in this license.

License Information

- The applicant should not have a criminal record, unless they have been rehabilitated in criminal cases
- Men’s entrance should be separated from the women’s entrance
- Gyms/ Sport facilities should completely separate men from women

Legal Affairs and Licensing Directorate (Post) (9311)

Approval Name	Description	Estimated Time
Approval of Sports Facilities	This approval is required to ensure that all sport facilities are as per the general Sports Authority	5 Days

Fee Details (if any)

There is no Estimated Processing Time (Days) in this license.

License Information

Sports academies:
Establishments, shops and places where games, exercises, activities, sports services, or places prepared for this are practiced or provided, such as sports training centers of all kinds for different age groups, health clubs, swimming pools, fitness and sports halls, body building centers and others.

Conditions that must be met in the facility:
1. Existence of a contract of ownership or lease of the facility on which the project will be built.
2. Detailed engineering drawing of the facility.
3. The space of the place must be suitable to allow the exercise of the activity without obstacles.

age categories
1- From 5-15 years:
• Provide specialized trainers for this age group with scientific and practical experience.
• It is forbidden to use bodybuilding and weightlifting equipment for this category
• Be satisfied with free or recreational sports activities.
• The trainers and workers belonging to this category must have a certificate of good conduct from the concerned authorities.
• It is prohibited to sell or use any food supplement or protein for this category except under the supervision of a competent medical practitioner.
• A written consent from the guardian must be attached to register this category and

approve the training program.
2- From 16 years and over:
• Provide specialized trainers with scientific and practical experience.
• It is permissible to use bodybuilding and weightlifting equipment for this category.
• Providing the appropriate sports equipment and machines for this category.
• The trainers and workers of this category must have a certificate of good conduct from the concerned authority.
• It is permissible to sell or use any food supplement or proteins of this category under the supervision of a competent medical practitioner.

Disabled people:
• An approved medical report must be provided to describe the type of disability.
• A medical report must be provided for health fitness.
• It is preferable to provide specialized trainers for this category if they are received by the club.
• It is preferable to provide suitable sports equipment and machines for this category.
• It is prohibited to sell or use any food supplement or protein for this category except under the supervision of a competent medical practitioner.
• A written consent of the guardian must be attached to register this category if he is under 16 years of age.
• Compliance with the requirements of the Kingdom of Bahrain for construction regarding security and safety procedures for this category

To obtain conditional approval, you must:
1. Attach the required documents with a commitment to implement the conditions set forth in the “License of Activity Regulations.” You can refer to the “Activity Guide” in the Other Documents section.

In the case of a virtual record (my record), the holder of the record must have an academic or professional certificate in the field to be taught or trained in.

Required Documents

•Drawings of Sport Facility
•Photos of the shop or facility from the inside and outside showing the shop number and commercial advertisement. Attach the rental contract, electricity and water bill, and commercial address card
•The certificates and qualifications of the record holder (in the case of the virtual record only)

Other Documents

•operation of sports, halls for entertainment games and recreational facilities - Activity Licensing Form

Municipality Affairs (Post) (9311)

Approval Name	Description	Estimated Time
Site Approval for Operation of sports facilities	Municipality Approval for the Commercial Registration address or the site in which the Activity will be practiced	3 Days

Fee Details (if any)

10 BD

License Information

General Conditions:
1. Size of shop/premises must be sufficient for the activity
2. Businesses may not carry out the activity outside the boundaries of the shop/ premises
3. It is prohibited to display or store any items or equipment outside the shop / premises boundary without prior approval from the Municipality
4. Maintain cleanliness of the site
5. Comply with the parking space regulations as per the Construction Regulatory Requirements

Activity Specific Conditions:
1. Comply with the regulatory requirements for construction
2. Submit a copy of the building permit (if applicable)
3. Comply with the parking requirements as per cabinet's decision (28) of the year 2009 regarding the Regulatory Requirements of Construction for various areas in the Kingdom of Bahrain
4. In the event of a site on a non-commercial street, then the standards pertaining to projects with a special nature should be followed

Note: Uploading pictures of the site/shop may expedite the process of obtaining approval

Required Documents

- Lease agreement (after obtaining the necessary approvals from other licensing entities)
- Shop photos

Other Documents

- Cabinet's Decision (56) of the year 2022 regarding the Regulatory Requirements of Construction for various areas in the Kingdom of Bahrain

Ministry of Health (Post) (9311)

Approval Name	Description	Estimated Time
Health approval for sports and recreational facilities	Health approval for sports and recreational facilities	5 Days

Fee Details (if any)

50 BD

License Information

Please refer to the “Health requirements checklist document in the “other downloadable documents” section for the requirements and specifications for this activity.

You could employ one of the licensed engineering offices listed in the business support organizations list to provide engineering drawings that will be attached when submitting an application via the Sijilat system.

Required Documents

- Drawings/ layout of premises (approved by an engineering office).
- Requirement Checklist (Stamped by an engineering office)
- drawings/layouts of the premises

Other Documents

- Health requirements for sports and recreational facilities
- operation of sports, halls for entertainment games and recreational facilities - Activity Licensing Form

Arts, entertainment, sports and recreation

ISIC4	Business activity
9312	Activities of private sports clubs

Description

This activity includes the activities of sports clubs, which, whether professional, semi-professional or amateur clubs, give their members the opportunity to engage in sporting activities.
This activity includes:
- Operation of sports clubs:
• Football clubs
• bowling clubs
• swimming clubs
• Golf clubs
• Boxing clubs
• Body-building clubs
• Winter sports clubs
• Chess clubs
• Track and field clubs
• shooting clubs, etc.

This activity excludes:
- Sports instruction by individual teachers, trainers
- Operation of sports facilities
- Organization and operation of outdoor or indoor sports events for professionals or amateurs by sports clubs with their own facilities

Business Requirements

Age

18 and above

Allowed for Nationalities

Bahraini 100%		GCC 100%	
American 100%		Singaporean 100%	
Icelander 100%		Liechtenstein er 100%	
Norwegian 100%		Swiss 100%	

Foreign Allowed up to 100%

Legal Type

It is allowed to register according to the legal forms mentioned below

Allowed for Individual Commercial Registration (ICR) : Yes

Allowed for Company Commercial Registration (CCR) : Yes

- Bahrain Shareholding Company (Public)
- With Limited Liability Company
- Branch of a Foreign Company
- Bahrain Shareholding Company (Closed)
- Partnership Company
- Simple Commandite Company
- Commandite By Shares Company
- Non Profit Company

Required Step of Licenses and Approvals

Ministry / Directorate	License / Approval Requirements	Approval Type
General Directorate Of Criminal Investigation	Approval for Sport Facilities	Pre

Municipality Affairs	Municipality Site Approval	Post
Legal Affairs and Licensing Directorate	Approval of Private Sports Facilities	Post

General Directorate Of Criminal Investigation (Pre) (9312)

Approval Name	Description	Estimated Time
Approval for Sport Facilities	General Directorate of Criminal Investigation Approval for the Activity	7 Days

Fee Details (if any)

There is no Estimated Processing Time (Days) in this license.

License Information

- The applicant should not have a criminal record, unless they have been rehabilitated in criminal cases
- Men’s entrance should be separated from the women’s entrance
- Gyms/ Sport facilities should completely separate men from women

Municipality Affairs (Post) (9312)

Approval Name	Description	Estimated Time
Municipality Site Approval	Municipality approval of the business location (site) is required for all types of business activities. Municipalities verify that the proposed location / zone are appropriate for the proposed business activity. Site approval is issued automatically for pre-approved commercial areas, such as commercial malls and commercial buildings.	15 Days

Fee Details (if any)

Company application registration form
1. Copy of applicant's CPR card (passport for non-Bahrainis)
2. Two copies of property deed or rental agreement
3. If application is for relocation from one area to another, certificate of relocation by previous Municipality
4. Copy of electricity bill or electricity account number for new premises
5. Copy of sale agreement, if CR is purchased from another person
6. Copy of power of attorney, if required

License Information

There is no License Information in this license.

Required Documents

- Lease agreement (after obtaining the necessary approvals from other licensing entities)
- Photos of the premises

Other Documents

- قرار رقم (56) لسنة 2022 بإصدار الاشتراطات التنظيمية للتعمير بمختلف المناطق في المملكة

Legal Affairs and Licensing Directorate (Post) (9312)

Approval Name	Description	Estimated Time
Approval of Private Sports Facilities	This approval is required to ensure that all Private sport facilities are as per the general Sports Authority	5 Days

Fee Details (if any)

There is no Estimated Processing Time (Days) in this license.

License Information

1. The activities of private sports clubs only for corporate clubs and the like.
2. The minutes of the general assembly meeting in which the decision was taken to change the legal entity of the club into a commercial company.
3. A statement of the names of the owner or owners proposed by the general assembly to own the club.
4. Submit a copy of the company's draft memorandum of association and articles of association, if any, that include:
• The name of the club in which he uses all his correspondence and amendments, and may not be changed without the permission of the Commission.
• The purposes for which he was established and his head office is to be in the Kingdom.
• The financial resources of the club.
5. An approved financial report that includes a statement of the club's revenues, lands, real estate, assets and property and its debts, as well as usufruct rights from the Kingdom's properties allocated for the benefit of the club, and the final account for the previous two financial years.
6. The final account for the previous two fiscal years.
7. A report from an approved appraisal company dealing with the appraisal of the club's lands, real estate, assets and properties.
8. The proposed plan for places of training and sports activity.

Required Documents

•Request to General Sports Authority, including the documents for transferring sports clubs to commercial companies

Other Documents

•Resolution No. (5) of 2021 regarding determining the form of companies that sports clubs may take, the rules regulating their work, and the mechanism for controlling them
•Resolution No. (6) of 2021 changing the legal entity of sports clubs into commercial companies
•operation of sports, halls for entertainment games and recreational facilities - Activity Licensing Form

Arts, entertainment, sports and recreation

ISIC4	Business activity
931901	Activities of producers or promoters of sports events

Description

This activity includes:
- activities of producers or promoters of sports events, with or without facilities

Business Requirements

Age

18 and above

Allowed for Nationalities

Bahraini 100%	GCC 100%
American 100%	Singaporean 100%
Icelander 100%	Liechtensteiner 100%
Norwegian 100%	Swiss 100%

Foreign Allowed up to 100%

Legal Type

It is allowed to register according to the legal forms mentioned below

Allowed for Individual Commercial Registration (ICR) : Yes

Allowed for Company Commercial Registration (CCR) : Yes

Allowed for Sijilli : Yes

- Bahrain Shareholding Company (Public)
- With Limited Liability Company
- Branch of a Foreign Company
- Bahrain Shareholding Company (Closed)
- Partnership Company
- Simple Commandite Company
- Commandite By Shares Company
- Non Profit Company

Required Step of Licenses and Approvals

Ministry / Directorate	License / Approval Requirements	Approval Type
Legal Affairs and Licensing Directorate	Notification Only	Notification Only
Municipality Affairs	Site Approval for Activities of producers or promoters of sports events.	Post

Legal Affairs and Licensing Directorate (Notification Only) (931901)

Approval Name	Description	Estimated Time
Notification Only	Notify the global sport authority upon issuance of the commercial license.	There is no License Information in this license. Days

Fee Details (if any)

There is no Estimated Processing Time (Days) in this license.

License Information

Must obtain an approval from the global sport authority, represented by the department of legal affairs and licensing to host any sport event or activity organized by any of the institutions, companies, clubs, sports federations or the Bahrain Olympic Committee or the Bahrain Paralympic Sports Committee, or any of the special bodies working in the field of youth and sports, as set out in the Law of Societies, Social and Cultural Clubs, and special bodies working in the field of youth and sports, and private institutions.

- A sports event license application form to be submitted for approval by the General Sports Authority (a copy of which is found in the Other Documents section below)

Other Documents

•Event Approval Application Form
•Resolution No. (1) of 2021 regulating the establishment of sporting events and activities

Municipality Affairs (Post) (931901)

Approval Name	Description	Estimated Time
Site Approval for Activities of producers or promoters of sports events.	Municipality Approval for the Commercial Registration address or the site in which the Activity will be practiced	3 Days

Fee Details (if any)

10 BD

License Information

General Conditions:
1. Size of shop/premises must be sufficient for the activity
2. Businesses may not carry out the activity outside the boundaries of the shop/ premises
3. It is prohibited to display or store any items or equipment outside the shop / premises boundary without prior approval from the Municipality
4. Maintain cleanliness of the site
5. Comply with the parking space regulations as per the Construction Regulatory Requirements

Activity Specific Conditions:
1. The commercial address for this activity can be registered in areas classified as commercial, services, or industrial

Note: Uploading pictures of the site/shop may expedite the process of obtaining approval

Required Documents

- Lease agreement (after obtaining the necessary approvals from other licensing entities)
- Shop photos

Other Documents

- Cabinet's Decision (56) of the year 2022 regarding the Regulatory Requirements of Construction for various areas in the Kingdom of Bahrain

Arts, entertainment, sports and recreation

ISIC4	Business activity
9321	Activities of amusement parks and theme parks

Description

This activity includes:
- activities of amusement parks or theme parks , managing and operating beaches and its facilities, including the operation of a variety of attractions, such as mechanical rides, water rides, games, shows, theme exhibits and picnic grounds

Business Requirements

Age

18 and above

Allowed for Nationalities

Bahraini 100%	GCC 100%
American 100%	Singaporean 100%
Icelander 100%	Liechtenstein er 100%
Norwegian 100%	Swiss 100%

Foreign Allowed up to 100%

Legal Type

It is allowed to register according to the legal forms mentioned below

Allowed for Individual Commercial Registration (ICR) : Yes

Allowed for Company Commercial Registration (CCR) : Yes

- Bahrain Shareholding Company (Public)
- With Limited Liability Company
- Branch of a Foreign Company
- Bahrain Shareholding Company (Closed)
- Partnership Company
- Simple Commandite Company
- Commandite By Shares Company
- Non Profit Company

Required Step of Licenses and Approvals

Ministry / Directorate	License / Approval Requirements	Approval Type
General Directorate Of Criminal Investigation	Approval by General Directorate of Criminal Investigation	Pre
Supreme Council for Environment	Environmental Approval for Activities of amusement parks and theme parks activity	Post
Municipality Affairs	Municipality approval for Activities of amusement parks and theme parks	Post
Bahrain Tourim and Exibitions Authority	Approval for Activities of amusement parks and theme parks	Post

General Directorate Of Criminal Investigation (Pre) (9321)

Approval Name	Description	Estimated Time
Approval by General Directorate of Criminal Investigation	General Directorate of Criminal Investigation Approval for the Activity	7 Days

Fee Details (if any)

There is no Estimated Processing Time (Days) in this license.

License Information

- The applicant should not have a criminal record, unless they have been rehabilitated in criminal cases

Supreme Council for Environment (Post) (9321)

Approval Name	Description	Estimated Time
Environmental Approval for Activities of amusement parks and theme parks activity	This service aims to assess the environmental impact and licensing of development, industrial and production projects and activities, in accordance with the standards of protecting the environment and its natural resources	10 Days

Fee Details (if any)

- 100 Bahraini Dinars or 200 Bahraini Dinars for the fast-track procedure (when the data requested within the EA-1 form is sufficient without the need for additional studies)
- 4000 Bahraini Dinars or 6000 Bahraini Dinars for the fast track procedure (when it is necessary to submit an environmental impact assessment study for the project), with an additional payment of 100 Bahraini Dinars when it is necessary to submit a proposal for the scope of the study before submitting it or 500 Bahraini Dinars for a fast track procedure when the proposed scope of the study is being submitted before the study

License Information

To check the requirements for this approval, kindly download the detailed requirements sheet from the other downloadable documents section, which includes the following requirements:

- Building layout engineering and equipment requirements
- Workplace requirements
- Storage requirements
- Material management requirements
- Waste management requirements

- Documents and reporting requirements
- General requirements

Other Documents

- Annex to the Minister of Housing, Municipalities and Environment order regarding the project's environmental assessment
- Law No. (2) of 2021 regarding the environmental standards of air as decided by the Chairman of the Supreme Council for Environment
- Law No. (3) of 2021 regarding the environmental standards of water as decided by the Chairman of the Supreme Council for the Environment
- Law No. (5) of 2021 regarding CITES Annexes to the Convention on International Trade in Endangered Fauna and Flora
- Law No. (54) of 2014 regarding the approval of the unified law regarding substances that deplete the ozone layer for the GCC countries
- Law No. (7) of 2022 regarding the environment
- Ministerial Order No. (1) of 1998 regarding Project's Environmental Assessment
- Ministerial Order No. (10) of 2006 regarding the installation of devices for on-line monitoring of atmospheric air pollutants
- Ministerial Order No. (11) of 2019 regarding the issue of technical specification of plastic products
- Ministerial Order No. (3) of 2005 regarding environmental requirements and standards in workplaces, especially regarding workers' exposure to heat and noise, and the provision of tools and protective clothing such as gloves, glasses, face masks and earplugs, with a commitment to use them during work
- Ministerial Order No. (3) of 2006 regarding the management of hazardous waste
- Ministerial Order No. (4) of 2005 regarding the management of used oils
- Ministerial Order No. (4) of 2006 regarding the management of hazardous chemicals
- Ministerial Order No. (4) of 2021 regarding the fees of the licenses and services provided by the Supreme Council for Environment
- Ministerial Order No. (6) of 2013 amending order No. (4) of 2006 regarding the management of hazardous chemicals
- Ministerial Order No. (7) of 2002 regarding the control importation and use of prohibited and severely restricted chemicals, and not to import any chemical compound except after obtaining approvals of all concerned authorities, including the executive body of the Supreme Council for Environment
- Ministerial Order No. (7) of 2013 amending order No. (3) of 2006 regarding the management of hazardous waste
- Ministerial Order No. 4 of 2014 regarding the management of the environmental consulting offices operations in the Kingdom of Bahrain
- Order No. (2) of 2020 determining the categories of fees for licensing refrigeration media, refrigeration units and air conditioning units as decided by the Chairman of the Supreme Council for the Environment
- Requirements for business activities
- law No. (1) of 2020 regarding the management of refrigeration media, refrigeration

units and air conditioning units as decided by the Chairman of the Supreme Council for the Environment
•law No. (2) of 2019 regarding the ban on the import of plastic waste of all kinds as decided by the Chairman of the Supreme Council for the Environment
•law No. (204) of 2018 regarding banning the export of some types of local fishes, shrimps and other aquatic organisms, and coordinating with the Agriculture and Marine Resources at the Ministry of Works, Municipalities and Urban Planning regarding the import and export of some species

Municipality Affairs (Post) (9321)

Approval Name	Description	Estimated Time
Municipality approval for Activities of amusement parks and theme parks	Municipality Approval for the Commercial Registration address or the site in which the Activity will be practiced	3 Days

Fee Details (if any)

10BD

License Information

General Conditions:
1. Size of shop/premises must be sufficient for the activity
2. Businesses may not carry out the activity outside the boundaries of the shop/ premises
3. It is prohibited to display or store any items or equipment outside the shop / premises boundary without prior approval from the Municipality
4. Maintain cleanliness of the site
5. Comply with the parking space regulations as per the Construction Regulatory Requirements

Activity Specific Conditions:
1. Have a building permit from the concerned entity

Note: Uploading pictures of the site/shop may expedite the process of obtaining approval

Required Documents

- Lease agreement (after obtaining the necessary approvals from other licensing entities)
- Shop photos

Other Documents

- Cabinet's Decision (56) of the year 2022 regarding the Regulatory Requirements of Construction for various areas in the Kingdom of Bahrain

Bahrain Tourim and Exibitions Authority (Post) (9321)

Approval Name	Description	Estimated Time
Approval for Activities of amusement parks and theme parks	This activity includes: - activities of amusement parks or theme parks, managing and operating beaches and its facilities, including the operation of a variety of attractions, such as mechanical rides, water rides, games, shows, theme exhibits and picnic grounds	3 Days

Fee Details (if any)

Upon final Approval of the Tourism License, a fee of BD 200 will be charged (issuance fee/ license renewal fee.)

License Information

- The Pursuance of any Activity related to of amusement parks or theme parks, Beach Management is forbidden, before having obtained the Approval of BAHRAIN TOURISM & EXHIBITIONS AUTHORITY.
- Location has to be in an area suitable or classified as a commercial or Touristic area.
- Project visualization of the beaches and facilities operated.
- Copy of Title Deed (land ownership) of the property, in case of the Beach Management operation or a written approval attached with the leasing contract by the owner of the beach in case of renting, operating and Management of Beaches.
- Commitment to Tourism License criteria and requirements specified by Tourism Facilities and Services Directorate at Bahrain Tourism & Exhibitions Authority in case of Beach Management Operation.
- Change of location, change of Management or allowing others to use or exploit the

facility is forbidden, unless BAHRAIN TOURISM & EXHIBITIONS AUTHORITY has approved.

Required Documents

•Copy of Title Deed (land ownership) of the property, in case of the Beach Management operation or a written approval attached with the leasing contract by the owner of the beach in case of renting, operating and Management of Beaches.
•Project visualization in the beaches and facilities operated

Other Documents

•- Resolution No (1) of the year 2018, in regards to the fees of issuance and renewal of the Tourism License and Services.
•Resolution No (37) for the year 2015, in regards to the amendment of the Provisions of decision No (2) for the year 1989, in regards to requirements and procedures of the issuance and renewal of Tourism licenses to pursue the Tourism Services.

Arts, entertainment, sports and recreation

ISIC4	Business activity
9329	Other amusement and recreation activities

Description

This activity includes:
- Activities of recreation parks, beaches, including renting of facilities such as bathhouses, lockers, chairs etc.
- renting of leisure and pleasure equipment as an integral part of recreational facilities
- Operation of fairs and shows of a recreational nature
- Other amusement and recreation activities (except amusement parks and theme parks) not elsewhere classified

This activity excludes:
- fishing cruises
- Provision of space and facilities for short stay by visitors in recreational parks and forests and campgrounds
- Trailer parks, campgrounds, recreational camps, hunting and fishing camps, campsites and campgrounds
- separate renting of leisure and pleasure equipment
- Activities of amusement parks and theme parks

Business Requirements

Age

18 and above

Allowed for Nationalities

Bahraini 100%		GCC 100%	
American 100%		Singaporean 100%	
Icelander 100%		Liechtenstein er 100%	
Norwegian 100%		Swiss 100%	

Foreign Allowed up to 100%

Legal Type

It is allowed to register according to the legal forms mentioned below

Allowed for Individual Commercial Registration (ICR) : Yes

Allowed for Company Commercial Registration (CCR) : Yes

- Bahrain Shareholding Company (Public)
- With Limited Liability Company
- Branch of a Foreign Company
- Bahrain Shareholding Company (Closed)
- Partnership Company
- Simple Commandite Company
- Commandite By Shares Company
- Non Profit Company

Required Step of Licenses and Approvals

Ministry / Directorate	License / Approval Requirements	Approval Type
Municipality Affairs	Municipality approval for other amusement and	Post

	recreation activities	

Municipality Affairs (Post) (9329)

Approval Name	Description	Estimated Time
Municipality approval for other amusement and recreation activities	Municipality Approval for the Commercial Registration address or the site in which the Activity will be practiced	3 Days

Fee Details (if any)

10 BD

License Information

General Conditions:
1. Size of shop/premises must be sufficient for the activity
2. Businesses may not carry out the activity outside the boundaries of the shop/ premises
3. It is prohibited to display or store any items or equipment outside the shop / premises boundary without prior approval from the Municipality
4. Maintain cleanliness of the site
5. Comply with the parking space regulations as per the Construction Regulatory Requirements

Note: Uploading pictures of the site/shop may expedite the process of obtaining approval

Required Documents

- Lease agreement (after obtaining the necessary approvals from other licensing entities)
- Shop photos

Other Documents

- Cabinet's Decision (56) of the year 2022 regarding the Regulatory Requirements of Construction for various areas in the Kingdom of Bahrain

Arts, entertainment, sports and recreation

ISIC4	Business activity
932901	Rental of Swimming Pools

Description

Includes renting of swimming pools for recreational purposes

Business Requirements

Age

18 and above

Allowed for Nationalities

- Bahraini 100%
- American 100%
- GCC 100%

Legal Type

It is allowed to register according to the legal forms mentioned below

Allowed for Individual Commercial Registration (ICR) : Yes

Allowed for Company Commercial Registration (CCR) : Yes

- Bahrain Shareholding Company (Public)
- With Limited Liability Company
- Branch of a Foreign Company
- Bahrain Shareholding Company (Closed)
- Partnership Company
- Simple Commandite Company
- Commandite By Shares Company
- Non Profit Company

Required Step of Licenses and Approvals

Ministry / Directorate	License / Approval Requirements	Approval Type
Municipality Affairs	Site Approval for Rental of Swimming Pools	Post
General Directrate Of Civil Defence	Rental of Swimming Pools	Post
Agricultural Engineering and Resources Directorate	Rental of Swimming Pools	Post
Ministry of Health	Health approval for Rental of Swimming Pools	Post
Agricultural Engineering and Resources Directorate	Rental of Swimming Pools	Final Site Inspection

Municipality Affairs (Post) (932901)

Approval Name	Description	Estimated Time
Site Approval for Rental of Swimming Pools	Municipality Approval for the Commercial Registration address or the site in which the Activity will be practiced	3 Days

Fee Details (if any)

10 BD

License Information

General Conditions:
1. Size of shop/premises must be sufficient for the activity
2. Businesses may not carry out the activity outside the boundaries of the shop/ premises
3. It is prohibited to display or store any items or equipment outside the shop / premises boundary without prior approval from the Municipality
4. Maintain cleanliness of the site
5. Comply with the parking space regulations as per the Construction Regulatory Requirements

Activity Specific Conditions:
1. Allowed in areas classified as agricultural or gardens based on the classification criteria related to projects with a special nature
2. Obtain a building permit to construct swimming pools

Note: Uploading pictures of the site/shop may expedite the process of obtaining approval

Required Documents

- Lease agreement (after obtaining the necessary approvals from other licensing entities)
- Shop photos

Other Documents

- Cabinet's Decision (56) of the year 2022 regarding the Regulatory Requirements of Construction for various areas in the Kingdom of Bahrain

General Directrate Of Civil Defence (Post) (932901)

Approval Name	Description	Estimated Time
Rental of Swimming Pools	checking the approval requirements of the general directorate of civil defense	5 Days

Fee Details (if any)

30 BD Fire prevention and protection certificate fees

License Information

1. Provide the documents mentioned in the “Required Documents” section
2. Comply with the requirements listed in the inspection checklist found in the “Other Downloadable Documents” section
3. Provide proof to the General Directorate of Civil Defense that an alarm and firefighting equipment have been installed within 6 months of obtaining a Commercial Registration and license

Required Documents

- No-objection letter for alarm and extinguisher installation from Civil Defense, or purchasing receipt of alarm equipment and extinguishers along with an annual maintenance contract from a company certified by Civil defense
- Photos required for civil defense activities
- Purchasing invoice of security camera system with specifying the type and storage capacity.

Other Documents

- Sample pictures of the general directorate of civil defense requirements
- licencing requirments of the general directorat of civil defense for activity number "932901"

Agricultural Engineering and Resources Directorate (Post) (932901)

Approval Name	Description	Estimated Time
Rental of Swimming Pools	Approval is required for any facility engaged in the activity of rental swimming pools.	5 Days

Fee Details (if any)

There is no Estimated Processing Time (Days) in this license.

License Information

Please refer to the Ministerial Decree (4)&(5)&(6) of the year 1997 in the (other downloadable documents) for further clarification.

Note:
If an investor wishes to rent a swimming pool using groundwater wells, they must first fill-out the pledge form and In the event of requesting to use of groundwater for the commercial activity, they must fill-out the Application Form for Groundwater Use Permit to obtain the required approvals from Local Agriculture Production Directorate and submit the required documents for that.

Required Documents

- Application for Well Drilling Permit
- Copy of the lease agreement in case of leased title deed
- Copy of title deed and location map
- Power of attorney from the owner if the property is leased
- The Pledge Form
- • Copy of CPR & Passport for Applicant

Other Documents

- Ministerial Decree (4-1997)
- Ministerial Decree (5-1997)
- Ministerial Decree (6-1997)

Ministry of Health (Post) (932901)

Approval Name	Description	Estimated Time
Health approval for Rental of Swimming Pools	Health approval for Rental of Swimming Pools	5 Days

Fee Details (if any)

There is no Estimated Processing Time (Days) in this license.

License Information

Please refer to the “Health requirements checklist document in the “other downloadable documents” section for the requirements and specifications for this activity.

You could employ one of the licensed engineering offices listed in the business support organizations list to provide engineering drawings that will be attached when submitting an application via the Sijilat system.

Required Documents

- Drawings/ layout of premises (approved by an engineering office).
- Requirement Checklist (Stamped by an engineering office)
- drawings/layouts of the premises

Other Documents

- Health requirements for swimming pools
- Rental of Swimming Pools Activity - Operational Requirements Form
- Rental of Swimming Pools Activity Licensing Form

Agricultural Engineering and Resources Directorate (Final Site Inspection) (932901)

Approval Name	Description	Estimated Time
Rental of Swimming Pools	Approval is required for any facility engaged in the activity of rental swimming pools.	5 Days

Fee Details (if any)

There is no Estimated Processing Time (Days) in this license.

License Information

Please refer to the Ministerial Decree (4)&(5)&(6) of the year 1997 in the (other downloadable documents) for further clarification.

Note:
If an investor wishes to rent a swimming pool using groundwater wells, they must first fill-out the pledge form and In the event of requesting to use of groundwater for the commercial activity, they must fill-out the Application Form for Groundwater Use Permit to obtain the required approvals from Local Agriculture Production Directorate and submit the required documents for that.

Required Documents

- Application for Well Drilling Permit
- Copy of the lease agreement in case of leased title deed
- Copy of title deed and location map
- Power of attorney from the owner if the property is leased
- The Pledge Form
- • Copy of CPR & Passport for Applicant

Other Documents

- Ministerial Decree (4-1997)
- Ministerial Decree (5-1997)
- Ministerial Decree (6-1997)

Arts, entertainment, sports and recreation

ISIC4	Business activity
932902-2	Operational of recreational water transportation facilities - Hiring yachts, boats and jet skies

Description

This activity include:
- Renting or Leasing boats, yacht, jet ski's and other water transportation vehicles

Business Requirements

Age

18 and above

Allowed for Nationalities

Bahraini 100%	GCC 100%
American 100%	Singaporean 100%
Icelander 100%	Liechtenstein er 100%
Norwegian 100%	Swiss 100%

Foreign Allowed up to 100%

Legal Type

It is allowed to register according to the legal forms mentioned below

Allowed for Individual Commercial Registration (ICR) : Yes

Allowed for Company Commercial Registration (CCR) : Yes

- Bahrain Shareholding Company (Public)
- With Limited Liability Company
- Branch of a Foreign Company
- Bahrain Shareholding Company (Closed)
- Partnership Company
- Simple Commandite Company
- Commandite By Shares Company
- Non Profit Company

Required Step of Licenses and Approvals

Ministry / Directorate	License / Approval Requirements	Approval Type
Municipality Affairs	Site Approval for Operation of recreational water transportation facilities	Post

Municipality Affairs (Post) (932902-2)

Approval Name	Description	Estimated Time
Site Approval for Operation of recreational water transportation facilities	Municipality Approval for the Commercial Registration address or the site in which the Activity will be practiced	3 Days

Fee Details (if any)

10 BD

License Information

General Conditions:
1. Size of shop/premises must be sufficient for the activity
2. Businesses may not carry out the activity outside the boundaries of the shop/ premises
3. It is prohibited to display or store any items or equipment outside the shop / premises boundary without prior approval from the Municipality
4. Maintain cleanliness of the site
5. Comply with the parking space regulations as per the Construction Regulatory Requirements

Activity Specific Conditions:
1. The commercial address can be registered on administrative offices

Note: Uploading pictures of the site/shop may expedite the process of obtaining approval

Required Documents

- Lease agreement (after obtaining the necessary approvals from other licensing entities)
- Shop photos

Other Documents

- Cabinet's Decision (56) of the year 2022 regarding the Regulatory Requirements of Construction for various areas in the Kingdom of Bahrain

Arts, entertainment, sports and recreation

ISIC4	Business activity
932910	Operation of halls/facilities for entertainment games and recreational facilities

Description

This activity includes the operation of halls or facilities used for entertainment games and recreational facilities such as arcade games, bowling halls, indoor skiing, indoor sky diving, operation of fairs and shows of recreational nature, renting of leisure equipment as an integral part of recreational facilities, etc

Business Requirements

Age

18 and above

Allowed for Nationalities

Bahraini 100%	GCC 100%
American 100%	Singaporean 100%
Icelander 100%	Liechtenstein er 100%
Norwegian 100%	Swiss 100%

Foreign Allowed up to 100%

Legal Type

It is allowed to register according to the legal forms mentioned below

Allowed for Individual Commercial Registration (ICR) : Yes

Allowed for Company Commercial Registration (CCR) : Yes

- Bahrain Shareholding Company (Public)
- With Limited Liability Company
- Branch of a Foreign Company
- Bahrain Shareholding Company (Closed)
- Partnership Company
- Simple Commandite Company
- Commandite By Shares Company
- Non Profit Company

Required Step of Licenses and Approvals

Ministry / Directorate	License / Approval Requirements	Approval Type
General Directorate Of Criminal Investigation	Approval for Operation of halls/facilities for entertainment games and recreational facilities	Post
Ministry of Health	Health approval for sports and recreational facilities	Post
Municipality Affairs	Site Approval for Operation of halls/ facilities for entertainment games and recreational facilities	Post

General Directorate Of Criminal Investigation (Post) (932910)

Approval Name	Description	Estimated Time
Approval for Operation of halls/ facilities for entertainment games and recreational facilities	This Licensefor the operation of halls or facilities used for entertainment games and recreational facilities	7 Days

Fee Details (if any)

There is no Estimated Processing Time (Days) in this license.

License Information

- The applicant should not have a criminal record, unless they have been rehabilitated in criminal cases
- The games should not breach public morality
- The shop is not located on a public street

Ministry of Health (Post) (932910)

Approval Name	Description	Estimated Time
Health approval for sports and recreational facilities	Health approval for sports and recreational facilities	5 Days

Fee Details (if any)

50 BD

License Information

Please refer to the “Health requirements checklist document in the “other downloadable documents” section for the requirements and specifications for this activity.

You could employ one of the licensed engineering offices listed in the business support organizations list to provide engineering drawings that will be attached when submitting an application via the Sijilat system.

Required Documents

- Drawings/ layout of premises (approved by an engineering office).
- Requirement Checklist (Stamped by an engineering office)
- drawings/layouts of the premises

Other Documents

- Health requirements for sports and recreational facilities
- operation of sports, halls for entertainment games and recreational facilities - Activity Licensing Form

Municipality Affairs (Post) (932910)

Approval Name	Description	Estimated Time
Site Approval for Operation of halls/ facilities for entertainment games and recreational facilities	Municipality Approval for the Commercial Registration address or the site in which the Activity will be practiced	3 Days

Fee Details (if any)

10 BD

License Information

General Conditions:
1. Size of shop/premises must be sufficient for the activity
2. Businesses may not carry out the activity outside the boundaries of the shop/ premises
3. It is prohibited to display or store any items or equipment outside the shop / premises boundary without prior approval from the Municipality
4. Maintain cleanliness of the site
5. Comply with the parking space regulations as per the Construction Regulatory Requirements

Activity Specific Conditions:
1. Comply with the regulatory requirements for construction
2. Submit a copy of the building permit (if applicable)
3. Comply with the parking requirements as per cabinet's decision (28) of the year 2009 regarding the Regulatory Requirements of Construction for various areas in the Kingdom of Bahrain
4. In the event of a site on a non-commercial street, then the standards pertaining to projects with a special nature should be followed

Note: Uploading pictures of the site/shop may expedite the process of obtaining approval

Required Documents

- Lease agreement (after obtaining the necessary approvals from other licensing entities)
- Shop photos

Personal service activities; Repair Activities

سجلات
SIJILAT
نظام السجلات التجارية
COMMERCIAL REGISTRATION PORTAL

Personal service activities; Repair Activities

ISIC4	Business activity
9511	Repair of computers and peripheral equipment

Description

This activity includes the repair of electronic equipment, such as computers and computing machinery and peripheral equipment.
This activity includes:
- Repair and maintenance of:
• Desktop computers
• Laptop computers
• Magnetic disk drives, flash drives and other storage devices
• Optical disk drives (CD-RW, CD-ROM, DVD-ROM, DVD-RW)
• Printers
• monitors
• Keyboards
• Mice, joysticks and trackball accessories
• Internal and external computer modems
• dedicated computer terminals
• Computer servers
• Scanners, including bar code scanners
• Smart card readers
• Virtual reality helmets
• Computer projectors
This activity also includes:
- Repair and maintenance of:
• Computer terminals like automatic teller machines (ATM`s); point-of-sale (POS) terminals, not mechanically operated
• Hand-held computers (PDA`s)
This activity excludes:
- repair and maintenance of carrier equipment modems

Business Requirements

Age

18 and above

Allowed for Nationalities

Bahraini
100%

American
100%

GCC
100%

Legal Type

It is allowed to register according to the legal forms mentioned below

Allowed for Individual Commercial Registration (ICR) : Yes

Allowed for Company Commercial Registration (CCR) : Yes

Allowed for Sijilli : Yes

- Bahrain Shareholding Company (Public)
- With Limited Liability Company
- Branch of a Foreign Company
- Bahrain Shareholding Company (Closed)
- Partnership Company
- Simple Commandite Company
- Commandite By Shares Company
- Non Profit Company

Required Step of Licenses and Approvals

Ministry / Directorate	License / Approval Requirements	Approval Type
Municipality Affairs	Site Approval for repair activities (Type A)	Post

Municipality Affairs (Post) (9511)

Approval Name	Description	Estimated Time
Site Approval for repair activities (Type A)	Municipality Approval for the Commercial Registration address or the site in which the Activity will be practiced	3 Days

Fee Details (if any)

10 BD

License Information

General Conditions:
1. Size of shop/premises must be sufficient for the activity
2. Businesses may not carry out the activity outside the boundaries of the shop/ premises
3. It is prohibited to display or store any items or equipment outside the shop / premises boundary without prior approval from the Municipality. In the event of non-compliance, the Ministry of Municipality Affairs has the right to take necessary action.
4. Maintain cleanliness of the site
5. Comply with the parking space regulations as per the Construction Regulatory Requirements

Activity Specific Conditions:
1. The commercial address for this activity can be registered in areas classified as commercial, services, or industrial

Note: Uploading pictures of the site/shop may expedite the process of obtaining approval

Required Documents

- Lease agreement (after obtaining the necessary approvals from other licensing entities)
- Shop photos

Other Documents

- Cabinet's Decision (56) of the year 2022 regarding the Regulatory Requirements of Construction for various areas in the Kingdom of Bahrain

Personal service activities; Repair Activities

ISIC4	Business activity
9512	Repair of communication equipment

Description

This activity includes:
- Repair and maintenance of communications equipment such as:
- Cordless telephones
- Cellular phones
- Carrier equipment modems
- Fax machines
- Communications transmission equipment (e.g. routers, bridges, modems)
- Two-way radios
- Commercial TV and video cameras

Business Requirements

Age

18 and above

Allowed for Nationalities

Bahraini 100%	GCC 100%
American 100%	Singaporean 100%
Icelander 100%	Liechtenstein er 100%
Norwegian 100%	Swiss 100%

Foreign Allowed up to 100%

Legal Type

It is allowed to register according to the legal forms mentioned below

Allowed for Individual Commercial Registration (ICR) : Yes

Allowed for Company Commercial Registration (CCR) : Yes

Allowed for Sijilli : Yes

- Bahrain Shareholding Company (Public)
- With Limited Liability Company
- Branch of a Foreign Company
- Bahrain Shareholding Company (Closed)
- Partnership Company
- Simple Commandite Company
- Commandite By Shares Company
- Non Profit Company

Required Step of Licenses and Approvals

Ministry / Directorate	License / Approval Requirements	Approval Type
Municipality Affairs	Site Approval for repair activities (Type A)	Post

Municipality Affairs (Post) (9512)

Approval Name	Description	Estimated Time
Site Approval for repair activities (Type A)	Municipality Approval for the Commercial Registration address or the site in which the Activity will be practiced	3 Days

Fee Details (if any)

10 BD

License Information

General Conditions:
1. Size of shop/premises must be sufficient for the activity
2. Businesses may not carry out the activity outside the boundaries of the shop/ premises
3. It is prohibited to display or store any items or equipment outside the shop / premises boundary without prior approval from the Municipality. In the event of non-compliance, the Ministry of Municipality Affairs has the right to take necessary action.
4. Maintain cleanliness of the site
5. Comply with the parking space regulations as per the Construction Regulatory Requirements

Activity Specific Conditions:
1. The commercial address for this activity can be registered in areas classified as commercial, services, or industrial

Note: Uploading pictures of the site/shop may expedite the process of obtaining approval

Required Documents

- Lease agreement (after obtaining the necessary approvals from other licensing entities)
- Shop photos

Other Documents

- Cabinet's Decision (56) of the year 2022 regarding the Regulatory Requirements of Construction for various areas in the Kingdom of Bahrain

Personal service activities; Repair Activities

ISIC4	Business activity
9521	Repair of consumer electronics

Description

This activity includes:
- Repair and maintenance of consumer electronics:
• Television, radio receivers
• Video cassette recorders (VCR)
• CD players
• Household-type video cameras

Business Requirements

Age

18 and above

Allowed for Nationalities

- Bahraini 100%
- American 100%
- Liechtenstein er 100%
- Swiss 100%
- GCC 100%
- Icelander 100%
- Norwegian 100%

Legal Type

It is allowed to register according to the legal forms mentioned below

Allowed for Individual Commercial Registration (ICR) : Yes

Allowed for Company Commercial Registration (CCR) : Yes

Allowed for Sijilli : Yes

- Bahrain Shareholding Company (Public)
- With Limited Liability Company
- Branch of a Foreign Company
- Bahrain Shareholding Company (Closed)
- Partnership Company
- Simple Commandite Company
- Commandite By Shares Company
- Non Profit Company

Required Step of Licenses and Approvals

Ministry / Directorate	License / Approval Requirements	Approval Type
Municipality Affairs	Site Approval for repair activities (Type A)	Post

Municipality Affairs (Post) (9521)

Approval Name	Description	Estimated Time
Site Approval for repair activities (Type A)	Municipality Approval for the Commercial Registration address or the site in which the Activity will be practiced	3 Days

Fee Details (if any)

10 BD

License Information

General Conditions:
1. Size of shop/premises must be sufficient for the activity
2. Businesses may not carry out the activity outside the boundaries of the shop/ premises
3. It is prohibited to display or store any items or equipment outside the shop / premises boundary without prior approval from the Municipality. In the event of non-compliance, the Ministry of Municipality Affairs has the right to take necessary action.
4. Maintain cleanliness of the site
5. Comply with the parking space regulations as per the Construction Regulatory Requirements

Activity Specific Conditions:
1. The commercial address for this activity can be registered in areas classified as commercial, services, or industrial

Note: Uploading pictures of the site/shop may expedite the process of obtaining approval

Required Documents

- Lease agreement (after obtaining the necessary approvals from other licensing entities)
- Shop photos

Other Documents

- Cabinet's Decision (56) of the year 2022 regarding the Regulatory Requirements of Construction for various areas in the Kingdom of Bahrain

Personal service activities; Repair Activities

ISIC4	Business activity
9522	Repair of household appliances and home and garden equipment

Description

This activity includes:
- repair and servicing of household appliances
• Refrigerators, stoves, washing machines, clothes dryers, etc.
- repair and servicing of home and garden equipment
• Lawnmowers, edgers, snow- and leaf- blowers, trimmers, etc.
This class excludes:
- Repair of hand held power tools
- repair of central air conditioning systems

Business Requirements

Age

18 and above

Allowed for Nationalities

Bahraini 100%	GCC 100%
American 100%	Icelander 100%
Liechtenstein er 100%	Norwegian 100%
Swiss 100%	

Legal Type

It is allowed to register according to the legal forms mentioned below

Allowed for Individual Commercial Registration (ICR) : Yes

Allowed for Company Commercial Registration (CCR) : Yes

Allowed for Sijilli : Yes

- Bahrain Shareholding Company (Public)
- With Limited Liability Company
- Branch of a Foreign Company
- Bahrain Shareholding Company (Closed)
- Partnership Company
- Simple Commandite Company
- Commandite By Shares Company
- Non Profit Company

Required Step of Licenses and Approvals

Ministry / Directorate	License / Approval Requirements	Approval Type
Municipality Affairs	Site Approval for repair activities (Type B)	Post

Municipality Affairs (Post) (9522)

Approval Name	Description	Estimated Time
Site Approval for repair activities (Type B)	Municipality Approval for the Commercial Registration address or the site in which the Activity will be practiced	3 Days

Fee Details (if any)

10 BD

License Information

General Conditions:
1. Size of shop/premises must be sufficient for the activity
2. Businesses may not carry out the activity outside the boundaries of the shop/ premises
3. It is prohibited to display or store any items or equipment outside the shop / premises boundary without prior approval from the Municipality. In the event of non-compliance, the Ministry of Municipality Affairs has the right to take necessary action.
4. Maintain cleanliness of the site
5. Comply with the parking space regulations as per the Construction Regulatory Requirements

Activity Specific Conditions:
1. The commercial address for this activity is allowed to be registered in areas classified as services or Industrial

Note: Uploading pictures of the site/shop may expedite the process of obtaining approval

Required Documents

- Lease agreement (after obtaining the necessary approvals from other licensing entities)
- Shop photos

Other Documents

- Cabinet's Decision (56) of the year 2022 regarding the Regulatory Requirements of Construction for various areas in the Kingdom of Bahrain

Personal service activities; Repair Activities

ISIC4	Business activity
9523	Repair of footwear and leather goods

Description

This activity includes:
- Repair and maintenance of footwear:
• Shoes, boots etc.
- fitting of heels
- Repair and maintenance of leather goods:
• Luggage and the like

Business Requirements

Age

18 and above

Allowed for Nationalities

Bahraini 100%	GCC 100%
American 100%	

Legal Type

It is allowed to register according to the legal forms mentioned below

Allowed for Individual Commercial Registration (ICR) : Yes

Allowed for Company Commercial Registration (CCR) : Yes

Allowed for Sijilli : Yes

- Bahrain Shareholding Company (Public)
- With Limited Liability Company
- Branch of a Foreign Company
- Bahrain Shareholding Company (Closed)
- Partnership Company
- Simple Commandite Company
- Commandite By Shares Company
- Non Profit Company

Required Step of Licenses and Approvals

Ministry / Directorate	License / Approval Requirements	Approval Type
Municipality Affairs	Site Approval for repair activities (Type A)	Post

Municipality Affairs (Post) (9523)

Approval Name	Description	Estimated Time
Site Approval for repair activities (Type A)	Municipality Approval for the Commercial Registration address or the site in which the Activity will be practiced	3 Days

Fee Details (if any)

10 BD

License Information

General Conditions:
1. Size of shop/premises must be sufficient for the activity
2. Businesses may not carry out the activity outside the boundaries of the shop/ premises
3. It is prohibited to display or store any items or equipment outside the shop / premises boundary without prior approval from the Municipality. In the event of non-compliance, the Ministry of Municipality Affairs has the right to take necessary action.
4. Maintain cleanliness of the site
5. Comply with the parking space regulations as per the Construction Regulatory Requirements

Activity Specific Conditions:
1. The commercial address for this activity can be registered in areas classified as commercial, services, or industrial

Note: Uploading pictures of the site/shop may expedite the process of obtaining approval

Required Documents

- Lease agreement (after obtaining the necessary approvals from other licensing entities)
- Shop photos

Other Documents

- Cabinet's Decision (56) of the year 2022 regarding the Regulatory Requirements of Construction for various areas in the Kingdom of Bahrain

Personal service activities; Repair Activities

ISIC4	Business activity
9524	Repair of furniture and home furnishings

Description

This activity includes:
- Reupholstering, refinishing, repairing and restoring of furniture and home furnishings including office furniture
- Assembly of self-standing furniture

This activity excludes:
- Installation of fitted kitchens, shop fittings

Business Requirements

Age

18 and above

Allowed for Nationalities

- Bahraini 100%
- American 100%
- GCC 100%

Legal Type

It is allowed to register according to the legal forms mentioned below

Allowed for Individual Commercial Registration (ICR) : Yes

Allowed for Company Commercial Registration (CCR) : Yes

Allowed for Sijilli : Yes

- Bahrain Shareholding Company (Public)
- With Limited Liability Company
- Branch of a Foreign Company
- Bahrain Shareholding Company (Closed)
- Partnership Company
- Simple Commandite Company
- Commandite By Shares Company
- Non Profit Company

Required Step of Licenses and Approvals

Ministry / Directorate	License / Approval Requirements	Approval Type
Municipality Affairs	Site Approval for repair activities (Type B)	Post

Municipality Affairs (Post) (9524)

Approval Name	Description	Estimated Time
Site Approval for repair activities (Type B)	Municipality Approval for the Commercial Registration address or the site in which the Activity will be practiced	3 Days

Fee Details (if any)

10 BD

License Information

General Conditions:
1. Size of shop/premises must be sufficient for the activity
2. Businesses may not carry out the activity outside the boundaries of the shop/ premises
3. It is prohibited to display or store any items or equipment outside the shop / premises boundary without prior approval from the Municipality. In the event of non-compliance, the Ministry of Municipality Affairs has the right to take necessary action.
4. Maintain cleanliness of the site
5. Comply with the parking space regulations as per the Construction Regulatory Requirements

Activity Specific Conditions:
1. The commercial address for this activity is allowed to be registered in areas classified as services or Industrial

Note: Uploading pictures of the site/shop may expedite the process of obtaining approval

Required Documents

- Lease agreement (after obtaining the necessary approvals from other licensing entities)
- Shop photos

Other Documents

- Cabinet's Decision (56) of the year 2022 regarding the Regulatory Requirements of Construction for various areas in the Kingdom of Bahrain

Personal service activities; Repair Activities

ISIC4	Business activity
9529	Repair of other personal and household goods

Description

This activity includes:
- Repair of bicycles
- Repair and alteration of clothing
- Repair and alteration of jewellery
- Repair of watches, clocks and their parts such as watchcases and housings of all materials; movements, chronometers, etc.
- Repair of sporting goods (except sporting guns)
- Repair of books
- Repair of musical instruments
- Repair of toys and similar articles
- Repair of other personal and household goods
- Piano-tuning

This activity excludes:
- Industrial engraving of metals
- Repair of sporting and recreational guns
- Repair of hand held power tools
- Repair of time clocks, time/date stamps, time locks and similar time recording devices

Business Requirements

Age

18 and above

Allowed for Nationalities

Bahraini
100%

American
100%

Liechtenstein
er
100%

Swiss
100%

GCC
100%

Icelander
100%

Norwegian
100%

Legal Type

It is allowed to register according to the legal forms mentioned below

Allowed for Individual Commercial Registration (ICR) : Yes

Allowed for Company Commercial Registration (CCR) : Yes

Allowed for Sijilli : Yes

- Bahrain Shareholding Company (Public)
- With Limited Liability Company
- Branch of a Foreign Company
- Bahrain Shareholding Company (Closed)
- Partnership Company
- Simple Commandite Company
- Commandite By Shares Company
- Non Profit Company

Required Step of Licenses and Approvals

Ministry / Directorate	License / Approval Requirements	Approval Type
Municipality Affairs	Site Approval for repair activities (Type A)	Post

Municipality Affairs (Post) (9529)

Approval Name	Description	Estimated Time
Site Approval for repair activities (Type A)	Municipality Approval for the Commercial Registration address or the site in which the Activity will be practiced	3 Days

Fee Details (if any)

10 BD

License Information

General Conditions:
1. Size of shop/premises must be sufficient for the activity
2. Businesses may not carry out the activity outside the boundaries of the shop/ premises
3. It is prohibited to display or store any items or equipment outside the shop / premises boundary without prior approval from the Municipality. In the event of non-compliance, the Ministry of Municipality Affairs has the right to take necessary action.
4. Maintain cleanliness of the site
5. Comply with the parking space regulations as per the Construction Regulatory Requirements

Activity Specific Conditions:
1. The commercial address for this activity can be registered in areas classified as commercial, services, or industrial

Note: Uploading pictures of the site/shop may expedite the process of obtaining approval

Required Documents

- Lease agreement (after obtaining the necessary approvals from other licensing entities)
- Shop photos

Other Documents

- Cabinet's Decision (56) of the year 2022 regarding the Regulatory Requirements of Construction for various areas in the Kingdom of Bahrain

Personal service activities; Repair Activities

ISIC4	Business activity
9601	Washing and (dry-) cleaning of textile and fur products

Description

This activity includes:
- laundering and dry-cleaning, pressing etc., of all kinds of clothing (including fur) and textiles, provided by mechanical equipment, by hand or by self-service coin-operated machines, whether for the general public or for industrial or commercial clients
- Laundry collection and delivery
- Carpet and rug shampooing and drapery and curtain cleaning, whether on clients` premises or not
- Provision of linens, work uniforms and related items by laundries

This activity also includes:
- Repair and minor alteration of garments or other textile articles when done in connection with cleaning

This activity excludes:
- renting of clothing other than work uniforms, even if cleaning of these goods is an integral part of the activity
- Repair and alteration of clothing etc., as an independent activity

Business Requirements

✔ Age

18 and above

✔ Allowed for Nationalities

Bahraini
100%

American
100%

GCC
100%

Legal Type

It is allowed to register according to the legal forms mentioned below

Allowed for Individual Commercial Registration (ICR) : Yes

Allowed for Company Commercial Registration (CCR) : Yes

- Bahrain Shareholding Company (Public)
- With Limited Liability Company
- Branch of a Foreign Company
- Bahrain Shareholding Company (Closed)
- Partnership Company
- Simple Commandite Company
- Commandite By Shares Company
- Non Profit Company

Required Step of Licenses and Approvals

Ministry / Directorate	License / Approval Requirements	Approval Type
Supreme Council for Environment	Environmental Approval for Washing and (dry-) cleaning of textile and fur products activity	Post
Municipality Affairs	Site Approval for Washing and (dry-) cleaning of textile and fur products	Post

Supreme Council for Environment (Post) (9601)

Approval Name	Description	Estimated Time
Environmental Approval for Washing and (dry-) cleaning of textile and fur products activity	This service aims to assess the environmental impact and licensing of development, industrial and production projects and activities, in accordance with the standards of protecting the environment and its natural resources	10 Days

Fee Details (if any)

30 Bahraini Dinars

License Information

To check the requirements for this approval, kindly download the detailed requirements sheet from the other downloadable documents section, which includes the following requirements:

- Building layout Engineering and Equipment Requirements
- Work-place Requirements
- Storage Requirements
- Material Management Requirements
- Waste Management Requirements
- Documents and Reporting Requirements
- General Requirements

Other Documents

- Law No. (2) of 2021 regarding the environmental standards of air as decided by the Chairman of the Supreme Council for Environment
- Law No. (3) of 2021 regarding the environmental standards of water as decided by the Chairman of the Supreme Council for the Environment
- Law No. (7) of 2022 regarding the environment
- Ministerial Order No. (10) of 2006 regarding the installation of devices for on-line monitoring of atmospheric air pollutants
- Ministerial Order No. (3) of 2005 regarding environmental requirements and standards in workplaces, especially regarding workers' exposure to heat and noise, and the provision of tools and protective clothing such as gloves, glasses, face masks and earplugs, with a commitment to use them during work
- Ministerial Order No. (3) of 2006 regarding the management of hazardous waste
- Ministerial Order No. (4) of 2005 regarding the management of used oils
- Ministerial Order No. (4) of 2006 regarding the management of hazardous chemicals
- Ministerial Order No. (4) of 2021 regarding the fees of the licenses and services provided by the Supreme Council for Environment
- Ministerial Order No. (6) of 2013 amending order No. (4) of 2006 regarding the management of hazardous chemicals
- Ministerial Order No. (7) of 2002 regarding the control importation and use of prohibited and severely restricted chemicals, and not to import any chemical compound except after obtaining approvals of all concerned authorities, including the executive body of the Supreme Council for Environment
- Ministerial Order No. (7) of 2013 amending order No. (3) of 2006 regarding the management of hazardous waste
- Ministerial Order No. 4 of 2014 regarding the management of the environmental consulting offices operations in the Kingdom of Bahrain
- Requirements for business activities

Municipality Affairs (Post) (9601)

Approval Name	Description	Estimated Time
Site Approval for Washing and (dry-) cleaning of textile and fur products	Municipality Approval for the Commercial Registration address or the site in which the Activity will be practiced	3 Days

Fee Details (if any)

10 BD

License Information

General Conditions:
1. Size of shop/premises must be sufficient for the activity
2. Businesses may not carry out the activity outside the boundaries of the shop/ premises
3. It is prohibited to display or store any items or equipment outside the shop / premises boundary without prior approval from the Municipality. In the event of non-compliance, the Ministry of Municipality Affairs has the right to take necessary action.
4. Maintain cleanliness of the site
5. Comply with the parking space regulations as per the Construction Regulatory Requirements

Activity Specific Conditions:
1. The commercial address for this activity can be registered in areas classified as commercial, services, or industrial
2. In the event heavy machinery will be used, the commercial address will be allowed only in areas classified as services or industrial

Note: Uploading pictures of the site/shop may expedite the process of obtaining approval

Required Documents

- Lease agreement (after obtaining the necessary approvals from other licensing entities)
- Shop photos

Other Documents

- Cabinet's Decision (56) of the year 2022 regarding the Regulatory Requirements of Construction for various areas in the Kingdom of Bahrain

Personal service activities; Repair Activities

ISIC4	Business activity
960111	Ironing of textiles and fur products

Description

This activity includes businesses that provide ironing services for all types of textiles and fur products, such as apparel

Business Requirements

Age

18 and above

Allowed for Nationalities

- Bahraini 100%
- American 100%
- GCC 100%

Legal Type

It is allowed to register according to the legal forms mentioned below

Allowed for Individual Commercial Registration (ICR) : Yes

Allowed for Company Commercial Registration (CCR) : Yes

Allowed for Sijilli : Yes

- Bahrain Shareholding Company (Public)
- With Limited Liability Company
- Branch of a Foreign Company
- Bahrain Shareholding Company (Closed)
- Partnership Company
- Simple Commandite Company
- Commandite By Shares Company
- Non Profit Company

Required Step of Licenses and Approvals

Ministry / Directorate	License / Approval Requirements	Approval Type
Municipality Affairs	Site Approval for Ironing of textiles and fur products	Post

Municipality Affairs (Post) (960111)

Approval Name	Description	Estimated Time
Site Approval for Ironing of textiles and fur products	Municipality Approval for the Commercial Registration address or the site in which the Activity will be practiced	3 Days

Fee Details (if any)

10 BD

License Information

General Conditions:
1. Size of shop/premises must be sufficient for the activity
2. Businesses may not carry out the activity outside the boundaries of the shop/ premises
3. It is prohibited to display or store any items or equipment outside the shop / premises boundary without prior approval from the Municipality. In the event of non-compliance, the Ministry of Municipality Affairs has the right to take necessary action.
4. Maintain cleanliness of the site
5. Comply with the parking space regulations as per the Construction Regulatory Requirements

Activity Specific Conditions:
1. The commercial address for this activity can be registered in areas classified as commercial, services, or industrial

Note: Uploading pictures of the site/shop may expedite the process of obtaining approval

Required Documents

- Lease agreement (after obtaining the necessary approvals from other licensing entities)
- Shop photos

Other Documents

- Cabinet's Decision (56) of the year 2022 regarding the Regulatory Requirements of Construction for various areas in the Kingdom of Bahrain

Personal service activities; Repair Activities

ISIC4	Business activity
9602-1	Hairdressing and other beauty treatment - Men

Description

This activity includes:
- Hair washing, trimming and cutting, setting, dyeing, tinting, waving, straightening and similar activities for men
- Shaving and beard trimming
- Facial massage, manicure and pedicure, make-up etc.

This activity excludes:
- Manufacture of wigs

Business Requirements

Age

18 and above

Allowed for Nationalities

Bahraini 100%		GCC 100%	
American 100%		Singaporean 100%	
Icelander 100%		Liechtenstein er 100%	
Norwegian 100%		Swiss 100%	

Foreign Allowed up to 100%

Legal Type

It is allowed to register according to the legal forms mentioned below

Allowed for Individual Commercial Registration (ICR) : Yes

Allowed for Company Commercial Registration (CCR) : Yes

- Bahrain Shareholding Company (Public)
- With Limited Liability Company
- Branch of a Foreign Company
- Bahrain Shareholding Company (Closed)
- Partnership Company
- Simple Commandite Company
- Commandite By Shares Company
- Non Profit Company

Required Step of Licenses and Approvals

Ministry / Directorate	License / Approval Requirements	Approval Type
General Directorate Of Criminal Investigation	Approval for Hairdressing and other beauty treatment	Pre
Municipality Affairs	Site Approval for Hairdressing and other beauty treatment	Post
Ministry of Health	Health approval for Hairdressing, beauty treatment, and massage parlours	Post

General Directorate Of Criminal Investigation (Pre) (9602-1)

Approval Name	Description	Estimated Time
Approval for Hairdressing and other beauty treatment	General Directorate of Criminal Investigation Approval for the Activity	7 Days

Fee Details (if any)

There is no Estimated Processing Time (Days) in this license.

License Information

- The applicant should not have a criminal record, unless they have been rehabilitated in criminal cases
- Separation between men and women

Municipality Affairs (Post) (9602-1)

Approval Name	Description	Estimated Time
Site Approval for Hairdressing and other beauty treatment	Municipality Approval for the Commercial Registration address or the site in which the Activity will be practiced	3 Days

Fee Details (if any)

10 BD

License Information

General Conditions:
1. Size of shop/premises must be sufficient for the activity
2. Businesses may not carry out the activity outside the boundaries of the shop/ premises
3. It is prohibited to display or store any items or equipment outside the shop / premises boundary without prior approval from the Municipality. In the event of non-compliance, the Ministry of Municipality Affairs has the right to take necessary action.
4. Maintain cleanliness of the site
5. Comply with the parking space regulations as per the Construction Regulatory Requirements

Activity Specific Conditions:
1. The commercial address for this activity can be registered in areas classified as commercial, services, or industrial

Note: Uploading pictures of the site/shop may expedite the process of obtaining approval

Required Documents

- Lease agreement (after obtaining the necessary approvals from other licensing entities)
- Shop photos

Other Documents

- Cabinet's Decision (56) of the year 2022 regarding the Regulatory Requirements of Construction for various areas in the Kingdom of Bahrain

Ministry of Health (Post) (9602-1)

Approval Name	Description	Estimated Time
Health approval for Hairdressing, beauty treatment, and massage parlours	Health approval for Hairdressing, beauty treatment, and massage parlours	5 Days

Fee Details (if any)

50 BD

License Information

Please refer to the “Health requirements checklist document in the “other downloadable documents” section for the requirements and specifications for this activity.

You could employ one of the licensed engineering offices listed in the business support organizations list to provide engineering drawings that will be attached when submitting an application via the Sijilat system.

Required Documents

- Drawings/ layout of premises (approved by an engineering office).
- Requirement Checklist (Stamped by an engineering office)
- drawings/layouts of the premises

Other Documents

- Hairdressing and other beauty treatment - Licensing Form
- Hairdressing and other beauty treatment - Operational Form
- Health requirements for hairdressing, beauty treatment, and massage parlours
- Massage parlours & other relaxation and bathing techniques services - Licensing Form
- Massage parlours & other relaxation and bathing techniques services - Operational Requirements Form

Personal service activities; Repair Activities

ISIC4	Business activity
9602-2	Hairdressing and other beauty treatment - Ladies

Description

This activity includes:
- Hair washing, trimming and cutting, setting, dyeing, tinting, waving, straightening and similar activities for women
- Facial massage, manicure and pedicure, make-up etc.

This activity excludes:
- Manufacture of wigs

Business Requirements

Age

18 and above

Allowed for Nationalities

Bahraini 100%	GCC 100%
American 100%	

Legal Type

It is allowed to register according to the legal forms mentioned below

Allowed for Individual Commercial Registration (ICR) : Yes

Allowed for Company Commercial Registration (CCR) : Yes

- Bahrain Shareholding Company (Public)
- With Limited Liability Company
- Branch of a Foreign Company
- Bahrain Shareholding Company (Closed)
- Partnership Company
- Simple Commandite Company
- Commandite By Shares Company
- Non Profit Company

Required Step of Licenses and Approvals

Ministry / Directorate	License / Approval Requirements	Approval Type
General Directorate Of Criminal Investigation	Approval for Hairdressing and other beauty treatment	Pre
Ministry of Health	Health approval for Hairdressing, beauty treatment, and massage parlours	Post
Municipality Affairs	Site Approval for Hairdressing and other beauty treatment	Post

General Directorate Of Criminal Investigation (Pre) (9602-2)

Approval Name	Description	Estimated Time
Approval for Hairdressing and other beauty treatment	General Directorate of Criminal Investigation Approval for the Activity	7 Days

Fee Details (if any)

There is no Estimated Processing Time (Days) in this license.

License Information

- The applicant should not have a criminal record, unless they have been rehabilitated in criminal cases
- Separation between men and women

Ministry of Health (Post) (9602-2)

Approval Name	Description	Estimated Time
Health approval for Hairdressing, beauty treatment, and massage parlours	Health approval for Hairdressing, beauty treatment, and massage parlours	5 Days

Fee Details (if any)

50 BD

License Information

Please refer to the “Health requirements checklist document in the “other downloadable documents” section for the requirements and specifications for this activity.

You could employ one of the licensed engineering offices listed in the business support organizations list to provide engineering drawings that will be attached when submitting an application via the Sijilat system.

Required Documents

- Drawings/ layout of premises (approved by an engineering office).
- Requirement Checklist (Stamped by an engineering office)
- drawings/layouts of the premises

Other Documents

- Hairdressing and other beauty treatment - Licensing Form
- Hairdressing and other beauty treatment - Operational Form
- Health requirements for hairdressing, beauty treatment, and massage parlours
- Massage parlours & other relaxation and bathing techniques services - Licensing Form
- Massage parlours & other relaxation and bathing techniques services - Operational Requirements Form

Municipality Affairs (Post) (9602-2)

Approval Name	Description	Estimated Time
Site Approval for Hairdressing and other beauty treatment	Municipality Approval for the Commercial Registration address or the site in which the Activity will be practiced	3 Days

Fee Details (if any)

10 BD

License Information

General Conditions:
1. Size of shop/premises must be sufficient for the activity
2. Businesses may not carry out the activity outside the boundaries of the shop/ premises
3. It is prohibited to display or store any items or equipment outside the shop / premises boundary without prior approval from the Municipality. In the event of non-compliance, the Ministry of Municipality Affairs has the right to take necessary action.
4. Maintain cleanliness of the site
5. Comply with the parking space regulations as per the Construction Regulatory Requirements

Activity Specific Conditions:
1. The commercial address for this activity can be registered in areas classified as commercial, services, or industrial

Note: Uploading pictures of the site/shop may expedite the process of obtaining approval

Required Documents

- Lease agreement (after obtaining the necessary approvals from other licensing entities)
- Shop photos

Other Documents

- Cabinet's Decision (56) of the year 2022 regarding the Regulatory Requirements of Construction for various areas in the Kingdom of Bahrain

Personal service activities; Repair Activities

ISIC4	Business activity
9602901	Beauty and Hairdressing Expert

Description

Providing traditional hair styling, cutting, hair removing and dyeing services, temporary make-up, nail care, henna and dyeing.

This activity does not include:
Hair straightening treatments (Keratin), semi-permanent make-up (microblading) and skin cleaning and any activity that is not mentioned.

Business Requirements

Age

18 and above

Allowed for Nationalities

Bahraini
100%

Legal Type

It is allowed to register according to the legal forms mentioned below

Allowed for Sijilli : Yes

Required Step of Licenses and Approvals

Ministry / Directorate	License / Approval Requirements	Approval Type
Ministry of Health	Beauty and Hairdressing Expert	Notification Only

Ministry of Health (Notification Only) (9602901)

Approval Name	Description	Estimated Time
Beauty and Hairdressing Expert	Providing traditional hair styling, cutting, hair removing and dyeing services, temporary make-up and nail care. This activity does not include: Hair straightening treatments (Keratin), semi-permanent make-up (microblading) and skin cleaning and any activity that is not mentioned.	3 Days

Fee Details (if any)

There is no Estimated Processing Time (Days) in this license.

License Information

Please refer to the “Beauty and Hairdressing Expert Operational Requirements" document in the “other downloadable documents” section for the requirements and specifications for this activity.

Other Documents

- Beauty and Hairdressing Expert Operational Requirements

Personal service activities; Repair Activities

ISIC4	Business activity
96092-1	Massage Parlours and other relaxation and bathing techniques services - Men

Description

This activity includes:
- Activities of Turkish baths, sauna and steam baths, solariums, reducing and slendering salons, massage salons etc
- Providing services to stimulate the muscles using chairs, and electric beds for mechanical massage

Business Requirements

✔ Age

✔ Allowed for Nationalities

- Bahraini 100%
- American 100%
- GCC 100%

Legal Type

It is allowed to register according to the legal forms mentioned below

Allowed for Individual Commercial Registration (ICR) : Yes

Allowed for Company Commercial Registration (CCR) : Yes

- Bahrain Shareholding Company (Public)
- With Limited Liability Company
- Branch of a Foreign Company
- Bahrain Shareholding Company (Closed)
- Partnership Company
- Simple Commandite Company
- Commandite By Shares Company
- Non Profit Company

Required Step of Licenses and Approvals

Ministry / Directorate	License / Approval Requirements	Approval Type
General Directorate Of Criminal Investigation	Approval for Massage Parlours and other relaxation and bathing techniques services	Pre
Ministry of Health	Health approval for Hairdressing, beauty treatment, and massage parlours	Post
Municipality Affairs	Site Approval for Massage Parlours and other relaxation and bathing techniques services	Post

General Directorate Of Criminal Investigation (Pre) (96092-1)

Approval Name	Description	Estimated Time
Approval for Massage Parlours and other relaxation and bathing techniques services	General Directorate of Criminal Investigation Approval for the Activity	7 Days

Fee Details (if any)

There is no Estimated Processing Time (Days) in this license.

License Information

- The applicant should not have a criminal record, unless they have been rehabilitated in criminal cases
- The building must have residents
- The building must be classified as a commercial building
- Men’s parlour and women’s parlour must be separated
- Men’s entrance should be separated from the women’s entrance

Ministry of Health (Post) (96092-1)

Approval Name	Description	Estimated Time
Health approval for Hairdressing, beauty treatment, and massage parlours	Health approval for Hairdressing, beauty treatment, and massage parlours	5 Days

Fee Details (if any)

50 BD

License Information

Please refer to the “Health requirements checklist document in the “other downloadable documents” section for the requirements and specifications for this activity.

You could employ one of the licensed engineering offices listed in the business support organizations list to provide engineering drawings that will be attached when submitting an application via the Sijilat system.

Required Documents

- Drawings/ layout of premises (approved by an engineering office).
- Requirement Checklist (Stamped by an engineering office)
- drawings/layouts of the premises

Other Documents

- Hairdressing and other beauty treatment - Licensing Form
- Hairdressing and other beauty treatment - Operational Form
- Health requirements for hairdressing, beauty treatment, and massage parlours
- Massage parlours & other relaxation and bathing techniques services - Licensing Form
- Massage parlours & other relaxation and bathing techniques services - Operational Requirements Form

Municipality Affairs (Post) (96092-1)

Approval Name	Description	Estimated Time
Site Approval for Massage Parlours and other relaxation and bathing techniques services	Municipality Approval for the Commercial Registration address or the site in which the Activity will be practiced	3 Days

Fee Details (if any)

10 BD

License Information

General Conditions:
1. Size of shop/premises must be sufficient for the activity
2. Businesses may not carry out the activity outside the boundaries of the shop/ premises
3. It is prohibited to display or store any items or equipment outside the shop / premises boundary without prior approval from the Municipality. In the event of non-compliance, the Ministry of Municipality Affairs has the right to take necessary action.
4. Maintain cleanliness of the site
5. Comply with the parking space regulations as per the Construction Regulatory Requirements

Activity Specific Conditions:
1. The commercial address for this activity is allowed to be registered in areas classified as commercial only

Note: Uploading pictures of the site/shop may expedite the process of obtaining approval

Required Documents

- Lease agreement (after obtaining the necessary approvals from other licensing entities)
- Shop photos

Other Documents

- Cabinet's Decision (56) of the year 2022 regarding the Regulatory Requirements of Construction for various areas in the Kingdom of Bahrain

Personal service activities; Repair Activities

ISIC4	Business activity
96092-2	Massage Parlours and other relaxation and bathing techniques services - Ladies

Description

This activity includes:
- Activities of Turkish baths, sauna and steam baths, solariums, reducing and slendering salons, massage salons etc
- Providing services to stimulate the muscles using chairs, and electric beds for mechanical massage

Business Requirements

✔ Age

✔ Allowed for Nationalities

- Bahraini 100%
- American 100%
- GCC 100%

Legal Type

It is allowed to register according to the legal forms mentioned below

Allowed for Individual Commercial Registration (ICR) : Yes

Allowed for Company Commercial Registration (CCR) : Yes

- Bahrain Shareholding Company (Public)
- With Limited Liability Company
- Branch of a Foreign Company
- Bahrain Shareholding Company (Closed)
- Partnership Company
- Simple Commandite Company
- Commandite By Shares Company
- Non Profit Company

Required Step of Licenses and Approvals

Ministry / Directorate	License / Approval Requirements	Approval Type
General Directorate Of Criminal Investigation	Approval for Massage Parlours and other relaxation and bathing techniques services	Pre
Ministry of Health	Health approval for Hairdressing, beauty treatment, and massage parlours	Post
Municipality Affairs	Site Approval for Massage Parlours and other relaxation and bathing techniques services	Post

General Directorate Of Criminal Investigation (Pre) (96092-2)

Approval Name	Description	Estimated Time
Approval for Massage Parlours and other relaxation and bathing techniques services	General Directorate of Criminal Investigation Approval for the Activity	7 Days

Fee Details (if any)

There is no Estimated Processing Time (Days) in this license.

License Information

- The applicant should not have a criminal record, unless they have been rehabilitated in criminal cases
- The building must have residents
- The building must be classified as a commercial building
- Men’s parlour and women’s parlour must be separated
- Men’s entrance should be separated from the women’s entrance

Ministry of Health (Post) (96092-2)

Approval Name	Description	Estimated Time
Health approval for Hairdressing, beauty treatment, and massage parlours	Health approval for Hairdressing, beauty treatment, and massage parlours	5 Days

Fee Details (if any)

50 BD

License Information

Please refer to the “Health requirements checklist document in the “other downloadable documents” section for the requirements and specifications for this activity.

You could employ one of the licensed engineering offices listed in the business support organizations list to provide engineering drawings that will be attached when submitting an application via the Sijilat system.

Required Documents

- Drawings/ layout of premises (approved by an engineering office).
- Requirement Checklist (Stamped by an engineering office)
- drawings/layouts of the premises

Other Documents

- Hairdressing and other beauty treatment - Licensing Form
- Hairdressing and other beauty treatment - Operational Form
- Health requirements for hairdressing, beauty treatment, and massage parlours
- Massage parlours & other relaxation and bathing techniques services - Licensing Form
- Massage parlours & other relaxation and bathing techniques services - Operational Requirements Form

Municipality Affairs (Post) (96092-2)

Approval Name	Description	Estimated Time
Site Approval for Massage Parlours and other relaxation and bathing techniques services	Municipality Approval for the Commercial Registration address or the site in which the Activity will be practiced	3 Days

Fee Details (if any)

10 BD

License Information

General Conditions:
1. Size of shop/premises must be sufficient for the activity
2. Businesses may not carry out the activity outside the boundaries of the shop/ premises
3. It is prohibited to display or store any items or equipment outside the shop / premises boundary without prior approval from the Municipality. In the event of non-compliance, the Ministry of Municipality Affairs has the right to take necessary action.
4. Maintain cleanliness of the site
5. Comply with the parking space regulations as per the Construction Regulatory Requirements

Activity Specific Conditions:
1. The commercial address for this activity is allowed to be registered in areas classified as commercial only

Note: Uploading pictures of the site/shop may expedite the process of obtaining approval

Required Documents

- Lease agreement (after obtaining the necessary approvals from other licensing entities)
- Shop photos

Other Documents

- Cabinet's Decision (56) of the year 2022 regarding the Regulatory Requirements of Construction for various areas in the Kingdom of Bahrain

Personal service activities; Repair Activities

ISIC4	Business activity
96093	Pet Care services; Animal Training

Description

This activity includes:
Pet care services such as boarding, grooming, sitting and training pets it also includes Equestrian schools

Business Requirements

Age

18 and above

Allowed for Nationalities

- Bahraini 100%
- American 100%
- GCC 100%

Legal Type

It is allowed to register according to the legal forms mentioned below

Allowed for Individual Commercial Registration (ICR) : Yes

Allowed for Company Commercial Registration (CCR) : Yes

Allowed for Sijilli : Yes

- Bahrain Shareholding Company (Public)
- With Limited Liability Company
- Branch of a Foreign Company
- Bahrain Shareholding Company (Closed)
- Partnership Company
- Simple Commandite Company
- Commandite By Shares Company
- Non Profit Company

Required Step of Licenses and Approvals

Ministry / Directorate	License / Approval Requirements	Approval Type
Municipality Affairs	Site Approval for Personal Services Activities	Post
Control And Animal Health Directorate	Approval for Pet Care services; Animal Training	Post
Control And Animal Health Directorate	Approval for Pet Care services; Animal Training	Final Site Inspection

Municipality Affairs (Post) (96093)

Approval Name	Description	Estimated Time
Site Approval for Personal Services Activities	Municipality Approval for the Commercial Registration address or the site in which the Activity will be practiced	3 Days

Fee Details (if any)

10 BD

License Information

General Conditions:
1. Size of shop/premises must be sufficient for the activity
2. Businesses may not carry out the activity outside the boundaries of the shop/ premises
3. It is prohibited to display or store any items or equipment outside the shop / premises boundary without prior approval from the Municipality. In the event of non-compliance, the Ministry of Municipality Affairs has the right to take necessary action.
4. Maintain cleanliness of the site
5. Comply with the parking space regulations as per the Construction Regulatory Requirements

Activity Specific Conditions:
1. The commercial address for this activity can be registered in areas classified as commercial, services, or industrial

Note: Uploading pictures of the site/shop may expedite the process of obtaining approval

Required Documents

- Lease agreement (after obtaining the necessary approvals from other licensing entities)
- Shop photos

Other Documents

- Cabinet's Decision (56) of the year 2022 regarding the Regulatory Requirements of Construction for various areas in the Kingdom of Bahrain

Control And Animal Health Directorate (Post) (96093)

Approval Name	Description	Estimated Time
Approval for Pet Care services; Animal Training	Approval for Pet Care services; Animal Training	5 Days

Fee Details (if any)

There is no Estimated Processing Time (Days) in this license.

License Information

The license application to display animals in zoos, bird parks, children's gardens, animal rental places, circuses or the like must be accompanied by a plan of the facility's location and another detailing its various buildings and facilities along with an operation plan that includes employment
Please refer to the standards of animal welfare practices
o Cruelty to animals
o Animal owner duties
o Conditions for dealing with animals
o Conditions for establishing animal facilities
o Animal transport
o The use of animals for scientific purposes
o Disposal of animals

Operational requirements after obtaining the Business license
1. Each commercial animal facility must appoint a veterinarian permanently, and he must be licensed by the competent authority to practice the veterinary profession, except for the temporary commercial or recreational facilities where the supervision of a veterinarian, a veterinary clinic, or a veterinary hospital is sufficient.
2. The competent authority issues a license for each animal observer in any commercial animal facility by the competent authority after the following conditions are met:
* Conducting a competency test in dealing with animals.
* Animal observers must submit scientific certificates that are duly documented and equivalent in the field of animal care.
* Animal observers are required to have duly documented experience certificates of no less than (5) five years in the same field.

* A duly documented (2) two-year experience certificate for animal observers in the same field is sufficient.
A- The term of the license shall be according to the type and size of the facility, provided that it does not exceed one year;
3. The license granted to operate the animal facility shall be withdrawn if the license owner violates the Animal Welfare Law of the GCC countries or the regulations issued thereof, or if they violate the license terms issued by the competent authority.

Other Documents

- GCC's Unified Standards for Veterinary Facilities
- Minister of Works, Municipalities Affairs and Urban Planning Decision No. (37) of 2020 issuing the executive regulations of the Animal Welfare Law for the Gulf Cooperation Council states issued by Law No. (52) of 2014
- Standards of animal welfare practices

Control And Animal Health Directorate (Final Site Inspection) (96093)

Approval Name	Description	Estimated Time
Approval for Pet Care services; Animal Training	Approval for Pet Care services; Animal Training	5 Days

Fee Details (if any)

There is no Estimated Processing Time (Days) in this license.

License Information

The license application to display animals in zoos, bird parks, children's gardens, animal rental places, circuses or the like must be accompanied by a plan of the facility's location and another detailing its various buildings and facilities along with an operation plan that includes employment
Please refer to the standards of animal welfare practices
o Cruelty to animals
o Animal owner duties
o Conditions for dealing with animals
o Conditions for establishing animal facilities
o Animal transport
o The use of animals for scientific purposes
o Disposal of animals

Operational requirements after obtaining the Business license
1. Each commercial animal facility must appoint a veterinarian permanently, and he must be licensed by the competent authority to practice the veterinary profession, except for the temporary commercial or recreational facilities where the supervision of a veterinarian, a veterinary clinic, or a veterinary hospital is sufficient.
2. The competent authority issues a license for each animal observer in any commercial animal facility by the competent authority after the following conditions are met:
* Conducting a competency test in dealing with animals.
* Animal observers must submit scientific certificates that are duly documented and equivalent in the field of animal care.

* Animal observers are required to have duly documented experience certificates of no less than (5) five years in the same field.
* A duly documented (2) two-year experience certificate for animal observers in the same field is sufficient.
A- The term of the license shall be according to the type and size of the facility, provided that it does not exceed one year;
3. The license granted to operate the animal facility shall be withdrawn if the license owner violates the Animal Welfare Law of the GCC countries or the regulations issued thereof, or if they violate the license terms issued by the competent authority.

Other Documents

- GCC's Unified Standards for Veterinary Facilities
- Minister of Works, Municipalities Affairs and Urban Planning Decision No. (37) of 2020 issuing the executive regulations of the Animal Welfare Law for the Gulf Cooperation Council states issued by Law No. (52) of 2014
- Standards of animal welfare practices

Personal service activities; Repair Activities

ISIC4	Business activity
960931	Consultancy in Animal Taming

Description

This activity includes providing consultancy services in the field of animal taming,Not include training

Business Requirements

Age

18 and above

Allowed for Nationalities

- Bahraini 100%
- GCC 100%
- American 100%

Legal Type

It is allowed to register according to the legal forms mentioned below

Allowed for Individual Commercial Registration (ICR) : Yes

Allowed for Company Commercial Registration (CCR) : Yes

Allowed for Sijilli : Yes

- Bahrain Shareholding Company (Public)
- With Limited Liability Company
- Branch of a Foreign Company
- Bahrain Shareholding Company (Closed)
- Partnership Company
- Simple Commandite Company
- Commandite By Shares Company
- Non Profit Company

Required Step of Licenses and Approvals

Ministry / Directorate	License / Approval Requirements	Approval Type
Municipality Affairs	Site Approval for Personal Services Activities	Post

Municipality Affairs (Post) (960931)

Approval Name	Description	Estimated Time
Site Approval for Personal Services Activities	Municipality Approval for the Commercial Registration address or the site in which the Activity will be practiced	3 Days

Fee Details (if any)

10 BD

License Information

General Conditions:
1. Size of shop/premises must be sufficient for the activity
2. Businesses may not carry out the activity outside the boundaries of the shop/ premises
3. It is prohibited to display or store any items or equipment outside the shop / premises boundary without prior approval from the Municipality. In the event of non-compliance, the Ministry of Municipality Affairs has the right to take necessary action.
4. Maintain cleanliness of the site
5. Comply with the parking space regulations as per the Construction Regulatory Requirements

Activity Specific Conditions:
1. The commercial address for this activity can be registered in areas classified as commercial, services, or industrial

Note: Uploading pictures of the site/shop may expedite the process of obtaining approval

Required Documents

- Lease agreement (after obtaining the necessary approvals from other licensing entities)
- Shop photos

Other Documents

- Cabinet's Decision (56) of the year 2022 regarding the Regulatory Requirements of Construction for various areas in the Kingdom of Bahrain

Personal service activities; Repair Activities

ISIC4	Business activity
960990	Other personal service activities

Description

This activity includes other personal service activities not mentioned anywhere else such as:
- Shoe shiners
- Concession operation of coin-operated personal service machines (photo booths, weighing machines, machines for checking blood pressure, coin-operated lockers etc.)

Business Requirements

Age

18 and above

Allowed for Nationalities

Bahraini 100%	GCC 100%
American 100%	

Legal Type

It is allowed to register according to the legal forms mentioned below

Allowed for Individual Commercial Registration (ICR) : Yes

Allowed for Company Commercial Registration (CCR) : Yes

- Bahrain Shareholding Company (Public)
- With Limited Liability Company
- Branch of a Foreign Company
- Bahrain Shareholding Company (Closed)
- Partnership Company
- Simple Commandite Company
- Commandite By Shares Company
- Non Profit Company

Required Step of Licenses and Approvals

Ministry / Directorate	License / Approval Requirements	Approval Type
Municipality Affairs	Site Approval for Personal Services Activities	Post

Municipality Affairs (Post) (960990)

Approval Name	Description	Estimated Time
Site Approval for Personal Services Activities	Municipality Approval for the Commercial Registration address or the site in which the Activity will be practiced	3 Days

Fee Details (if any)

10 BD

License Information

General Conditions:
1. Size of shop/premises must be sufficient for the activity
2. Businesses may not carry out the activity outside the boundaries of the shop/ premises
3. It is prohibited to display or store any items or equipment outside the shop / premises boundary without prior approval from the Municipality. In the event of non-compliance, the Ministry of Municipality Affairs has the right to take necessary action.
4. Maintain cleanliness of the site
5. Comply with the parking space regulations as per the Construction Regulatory Requirements

Activity Specific Conditions:
1. The commercial address for this activity can be registered in areas classified as commercial, services, or industrial

Note: Uploading pictures of the site/shop may expedite the process of obtaining approval

Required Documents

- Lease agreement (after obtaining the necessary approvals from other licensing entities)
- Shop photos

Other Documents

- Cabinet's Decision (56) of the year 2022 regarding the Regulatory Requirements of Construction for various areas in the Kingdom of Bahrain

Personal service activities; Repair Activities

ISIC4	Business activity
9609901	Personal shopper

Description

This activity allows a person, “personal shopper”, to assist his customers in the process of purchasing goods in exchange for a monetary return, either by accompanying them while shopping or by shopping on their behalf and organising or arranging their purchases.

The personal shopper can also provide advice and recommendations to his customers, and this can be done either by receiving orders through a list of products the customer wants to purchase or by accompanying them while shopping to assist them to choose products.

Business Requirements

✔ Age

18 and above

✔ Allowed for Nationalities

Bahraini
100%

✔ Legal Type

It is allowed to register according to the legal forms mentioned below

Allowed for Sijilli : Yes

Required Step of Licenses and Approvals

Ministry / Directorate	License / Approval Requirements	Approval Type
Municipality Affairs	Site Approval for Administrative and support activities	Post

Municipality Affairs (Post) (9609901)

Approval Name	Description	Estimated Time
Site Approval for Administrative and support activities	Municipality Approval for the Commercial Registration address or the site in which the Activity will be practiced	3 Days

Fee Details (if any)

10 BD

License Information

General Conditions:
1. Size of shop/premises must be sufficient for the activity
2. Businesses may not carry out the activity outside the boundaries of the shop/ premises
3. It is prohibited to display or store any items or equipment outside the shop / premises boundary without prior approval from the Municipality
4. Maintain cleanliness of the site
5. Comply with the parking space regulations as per the Construction Regulatory Requirements

Activity Specific Conditions:
1. The commercial address for this activity can be registered in areas classified as commercial, services, or industrial
2. The commercial address of the Commercial Registration for this activity can an office address
provided that the site is used for administrative purposes and is not located in a residential area

Note: Uploading pictures of the site/shop may expedite the process of obtaining approval

Required Documents

- Lease agreement (after obtaining the necessary approvals from other licensing entities)
- Shop photos

Other Documents

- Cabinet's Decision (56) of the year 2022 regarding the Regulatory Requirements of Construction for various areas in the Kingdom of Bahrain

Personal service activities; Repair Activities

ISIC4	Business activity
960991	Personal Events Planners

Description

This activity include:
Event management and party arrangements such as wedding, receptions and birthday parties.

Business Requirements

Age

18 and above

Allowed for Nationalities

- Bahraini 100%
- American 100%
- GCC 100%

Legal Type

It is allowed to register according to the legal forms mentioned below

Allowed for Individual Commercial Registration (ICR) : Yes

Allowed for Company Commercial Registration (CCR) : Yes

Allowed for Sijilli : Yes

- Bahrain Shareholding Company (Public)
- With Limited Liability Company
- Branch of a Foreign Company
- Bahrain Shareholding Company (Closed)
- Partnership Company
- Simple Commandite Company
- Commandite By Shares Company
- Non Profit Company

Required Step of Licenses and Approvals

Ministry / Directorate	License / Approval Requirements	Approval Type
Municipality Affairs	Site Approval for Personal Services Activities	Post

Municipality Affairs (Post) (960991)

Approval Name	Description	Estimated Time
Site Approval for Personal Services Activities	Municipality Approval for the Commercial Registration address or the site in which the Activity will be practiced	3 Days

Fee Details (if any)

10 BD

License Information

General Conditions:
1. Size of shop/premises must be sufficient for the activity
2. Businesses may not carry out the activity outside the boundaries of the shop/ premises
3. It is prohibited to display or store any items or equipment outside the shop / premises boundary without prior approval from the Municipality. In the event of non-compliance, the Ministry of Municipality Affairs has the right to take necessary action.
4. Maintain cleanliness of the site
5. Comply with the parking space regulations as per the Construction Regulatory Requirements

Activity Specific Conditions:
1. The commercial address for this activity can be registered in areas classified as commercial, services, or industrial

Note: Uploading pictures of the site/shop may expedite the process of obtaining approval

Required Documents

- Lease agreement (after obtaining the necessary approvals from other licensing entities)
- Shop photos

Other Documents

- Cabinet's Decision (56) of the year 2022 regarding the Regulatory Requirements of Construction for various areas in the Kingdom of Bahrain